

INTERDISCIPLINARY APPLIED MATHEMATICS

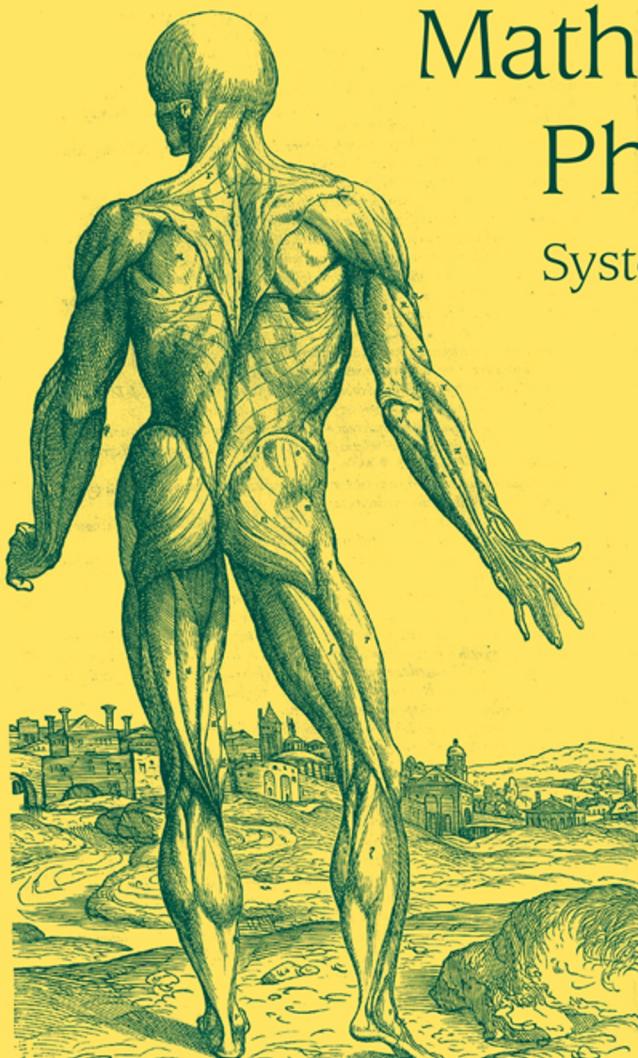
MATHEMATICAL BIOLOGY

# Mathematical Physiology

Systems Physiology

James Keener  
James Sneyd

Second Edition



 Springer

# Interdisciplinary Applied Mathematics

## Volume 8/I

*Editors*

**S.S. Antman J.E. Marsden**  
**L. Sirovich**

*Geophysics and Planetary Sciences*

*Mathematical Biology*

**L. Glass, J.D. Murray**

*Mechanics and Materials*

**R.V. Kohn**

*Systems and Control*

**S.S. Sastry, P.S. Krishnaprasad**

Problems in engineering, computational science, and the physical and biological sciences are using increasingly sophisticated mathematical techniques. Thus, the bridge between the mathematical sciences and other disciplines is heavily traveled. The correspondingly increased dialog between the disciplines has led to the establishment of the series: *Interdisciplinary Applied Mathematics*.

The purpose of this series is to meet the current and future needs for the interaction between various science and technology areas on the one hand and mathematics on the other. This is done, firstly, by encouraging the ways that mathematics may be applied in traditional areas, as well as point towards new and innovative areas of applications; and, secondly, by encouraging other scientific disciplines to engage in a dialog with mathematicians outlining their problems to both access new methods and suggest innovative developments within mathematics itself.

The series will consist of monographs and high-level texts from researchers working on the interplay between mathematics and other fields of science and technology.

## Interdisciplinary Applied Mathematics

---

1. *Gutzwiller*: Chaos in Classical and Quantum Mechanics
2. *Wiggins*: Chaotic Transport in Dynamical Systems
3. *Joseph/Renardy*: Fundamentals of Two-Fluid Dynamics:  
    Part I: Mathematical Theory and Applications
4. *Joseph/Renardy*: Fundamentals of Two-Fluid Dynamics:  
    Part II: Lubricated Transport, Drops and Miscible Liquids
5. *Seydel*: Practical Bifurcation and Stability Analysis:  
    From Equilibrium to Chaos
6. *Hornung*: Homogenization and Porous Media
7. *Simo/Hughes*: Computational Inelasticity
8. *Keener/Sneyd*: Mathematical Physiology, Second Edition:  
    I: Cellular Physiology  
    II: Systems Physiology
9. *Han/Reddy*: Plasticity: Mathematical Theory and Numerical Analysis
10. *Sastry*: Nonlinear Systems: Analysis, Stability, and Control
11. *McCarthy*: Geometric Design of Linkages
12. *Winfree*: The Geometry of Biological Time (Second Edition)
13. *Bleistein/Cohen/Stockwell*: Mathematics of Multidimensional Seismic Imaging, Migration, and Inversion
14. *Okubo/Levin*: Diffusion and Ecological Problems: Modern Perspectives
15. *Logan*: Transport Models in Hydrogeochemical Systems
16. *Torquato*: Random Heterogeneous Materials: Microstructure and Macroscopic Properties
17. *Murray*: Mathematical Biology: An Introduction
18. *Murray*: Mathematical Biology: Spatial Models and Biomedical Applications
19. *Kimmel/Axelrod*: Branching Processes in Biology
20. *Fall/Marland/Wagner/Tyson*: Computational Cell Biology
21. *Schlick*: Molecular Modeling and Simulation: An Interdisciplinary Guide
22. *Sahimi*: Heterogenous Materials: Linear Transport and Optical Properties (Volume I)
23. *Sahimi*: Heterogenous Materials: Non-linear and Breakdown Properties and Atomistic Modeling (Volume II)
24. *Bloch*: Nonhoioeconomic Mechanics and Control
25. *Beuter/Glass/Mackey/Titcombe*: Nonlinear Dynamics in Physiology and Medicine
26. *Ma/Soatto/Kosecka/Sastry*: An invitation to 3-D Vision
27. *Ewens*: Mathematical Population Genetics (Second Edition)
28. *Wyatt*: Quantum Dynamics with Trajectories
29. *Karniadakis*: Microflows and Nanoflows
30. *Macheras*: Modeling in Biopharmaceutics, Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics
31. *Samelson/Wiggins*: Lagrangian Transport in Geophysical Jets and Waves
32. *Wodarz*: Killer Cell Dynamics
33. *Pettini*: Geometry and Topology in Hamiltonian Dynamics and Statistical Mechanics
34. *Desolneux/Moisan/Morel*: From Gestalt Theory to Image Analysis

James Keener      James Sneyd

# Mathematical Physiology

## I: Cellular Physiology

Second Edition



Springer

James Keener  
Department of Mathematics  
University of Utah  
Salt Lake City, 84112  
USA  
[keener@math.utah.edu](mailto:keener@math.utah.edu)

James Sneyd  
Department of Mathematics  
University of Auckland  
Private Bag 92019  
Auckland, New Zealand  
[sneyd@math.auckland.ac.nz](mailto:sneyd@math.auckland.ac.nz)

*Series Editors*

S.S. Antman  
Department of Mathematics and  
Institute for Physical Science and  
Technology  
University of Maryland  
College Park, MD 20742  
USA  
[ssa@math.umd.edu](mailto:ssa@math.umd.edu)

J.E. Marsden  
Control and Dynamical Systems  
Mail Code 107-81  
California Institute of Technology  
Pasadena, CA 91125  
USA  
[marsden@cds.caltech.edu](mailto:marsden@cds.caltech.edu)

L. Sirovich  
Laboratory of Applied Mathematics  
Department of Biomathematics  
Mt. Sinai School of Medicine  
Box 1012  
NYC 10029  
USA  
[Lawrence.Sirovich@mssm.edu](mailto:Lawrence.Sirovich@mssm.edu)

ISBN 978-0-387-75846-6

e-ISBN 978-0-387-75847-3

DOI 10.1007/978-0-387-75847-3

Library of Congress Control Number: 2008931057

© 2009 Springer Science+Business Media, LLC  
All rights reserved. This work may not be translated or copied in whole or in part without the written permission of the publisher (Springer Science+Business Media, LLC, 233 Spring Street, New York, NY 10013, USA), except for brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis. Use in connection with any form of information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed is forbidden.

The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks, and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

Printed on acid-free paper.

[springer.com](http://springer.com)

To Monique,

and

To Kristine, patience personified.

# Preface to the Second Edition

If, in 1998, it was presumptuous to attempt to summarize the field of mathematical physiology in a single book, it is even more so now. In the last ten years, the number of applications of mathematics to physiology has grown enormously, so that the field, large then, is now completely beyond the reach of two people, no matter how many volumes they might write.

Nevertheless, although the bulk of the field can be addressed only briefly, there are certain fundamental models on which stands a great deal of subsequent work. We believe strongly that a prerequisite for understanding modern work in mathematical physiology is an understanding of these basic models, and thus books such as this one serve a useful purpose.

With this second edition we had two major goals. The first was to expand our discussion of many of the fundamental models and principles. For example, the connection between Gibbs free energy, the equilibrium constant, and kinetic rate theory is now discussed briefly, Markov models of ion exchangers and ATPase pumps are discussed at greater length, and agonist-controlled ion channels make an appearance. We also now include some of the older models of fluid transport, respiration/perfusion, blood diseases, molecular motors, smooth muscle, neuroendocrine cells, the baroreceptor loop, tubuloglomerular oscillations, blood clotting, and the retina. In addition, we have expanded our discussion of stochastic processes to include an introduction to Markov models, the Fokker–Planck equation, the Langevin equation, and applications to such things as diffusion, and single-channel data.

Our second goal was to provide a pointer to recent work in as many areas as we can. Some chapters, such as those on calcium dynamics or the heart, close to our own fields of expertise, provide more extensive references to recent work, while in other chapters, dealing with areas in which we are less expert, the pointers are neither complete nor

extensive. Nevertheless, we hope that in each chapter, enough information is given to enable the interested reader to pursue the topic further.

Of course, our survey has unavoidable omissions, some intentional, others not. We can only apologize, yet again, for these, and beg the reader's indulgence. As with the first edition, ignorance and exhaustion are the cause, although not the excuse.

Since the publication of the first edition, we have received many comments (some even polite) about mistakes and omissions, and a number of people have devoted considerable amounts of time to help us improve the book. Our particular thanks are due to Richard Bertram, Robin Callard, Erol Cerasi, Martin Falcke, Russ Hamer, Harold Layton, Ian Parker, Les Satin, Jim Selgrade and John Tyson, all of whom assisted above and beyond the call of duty. We also thank Peter Bates, Dan Beard, Andrea Ciliberto, Silvina Ponce Dawson, Charles Doering, Elan Gin, Erin Higgins, Peter Jung, Yue Xian Li, Mike Mackey, Robert Miura, Kim Montgomery, Bela Novak, Sasha Panfilov, Ed Pate, Antonio Politi, Tilak Ratnanather, Timothy Secomb, Eduardo Sontag, Mike Steel, and Wilbert van Meerwijk for their help and comments.

Finally, we thank the University of Auckland and the University of Utah for continuing to pay our salaries while we devoted large fractions of our time to writing, and we thank the Royal Society of New Zealand for the James Cook Fellowship to James Sneyd that has made it possible to complete this book in a reasonable time.

University of Utah  
University of Auckland  
2008

James Keener  
James Sneyd

## Preface to the First Edition

It can be argued that of all the biological sciences, physiology is the one in which mathematics has played the greatest role. From the work of Helmholtz and Frank in the last century through to that of Hodgkin, Huxley, and many others in this century, physiologists have repeatedly used mathematical methods and models to help their understanding of physiological processes. It might thus be expected that a close connection between applied mathematics and physiology would have developed naturally, but unfortunately, until recently, such has not been the case.

There are always barriers to communication between disciplines. Despite the quantitative nature of their subject, many physiologists seek only verbal descriptions, naming and learning the functions of an incredibly complicated array of components; often the complexity of the problem appears to preclude a mathematical description. Others want to become physicians, and so have little time for mathematics other than to learn about drug dosages, office accounting practices, and malpractice liability. Still others choose to study physiology precisely because thereby they hope not to study more mathematics, and that in itself is a significant benefit. On the other hand, many applied mathematicians are concerned with theoretical results, proving theorems and such, and prefer not to pay attention to real data or the applications of their results. Others hesitate to jump into a new discipline, with all its required background reading and its own history of modeling that must be learned.

But times are changing, and it is rapidly becoming apparent that applied mathematics and physiology have a great deal to offer one another. It is our view that teaching physiology without a mathematical description of the underlying dynamical processes is like teaching planetary motion to physicists without mentioning or using Kepler's laws; you can observe that there is a full moon every 28 days, but without Kepler's laws you cannot determine when the next total lunar or solar eclipse will be nor when

Halley's comet will return. Your head will be full of interesting and important facts, but it is difficult to organize those facts unless they are given a quantitative description. Similarly, if applied mathematicians were to ignore physiology, they would be losing the opportunity to study an extremely rich and interesting field of science.

To explain the goals of this book, it is most convenient to begin by emphasizing what this book is not; it is not a physiology book, and neither is it a mathematics book. Any reader who is seriously interested in learning physiology would be well advised to consult an introductory physiology book such as Guyton and Hall (1996) or Berne and Levy (1993), as, indeed, we ourselves have done many times. We give only a brief background for each physiological problem we discuss, certainly not enough to satisfy a real physiologist. Neither is this a book for learning mathematics. Of course, a great deal of mathematics is used throughout, but any reader who is not already familiar with the basic techniques would again be well advised to learn the material elsewhere.

Instead, this book describes work that lies on the border between mathematics and physiology; it describes ways in which mathematics may be used to give insight into physiological questions, and how physiological questions can, in turn, lead to new mathematical problems. In this sense, it is truly an interdisciplinary text, which, we hope, will be appreciated by physiologists interested in theoretical approaches to their subject as well as by mathematicians interested in learning new areas of application.

It is also an introductory survey of what a host of other people have done in employing mathematical models to describe physiological processes. It is necessarily brief, incomplete, and outdated (even before it was written), but we hope it will serve as an introduction to, and overview of, some of the most important contributions to the field. Perhaps some of the references will provide a starting point for more in-depth investigations.

Unfortunately, because of the nature of the respective disciplines, applied mathematicians who know little physiology will have an easier time with this material than will physiologists with little mathematical training. A complete understanding of all of the mathematics in this book will require a solid undergraduate training in mathematics, a fact for which we make no apology. We have made no attempt whatever to water down the models so that a lower level of mathematics could be used, but have instead used whatever mathematics the physiology demands. It would be misleading to imply that physiological modeling uses only trivial mathematics, or vice versa; the essential richness of the field results from the incorporation of complexities from both disciplines.

At the least, one needs a solid understanding of differential equations, including phase plane analysis and stability theory. To follow everything will also require an understanding of basic bifurcation theory, linear transform theory (Fourier and Laplace transforms), linear systems theory, complex variable techniques (the residue theorem), and some understanding of partial differential equations and their numerical simulation. However, for those whose mathematical background does not include all of these topics, we have included references that should help to fill the gap. We also make

extensive use of asymptotic methods and perturbation theory, but include explanatory material to help the novice understand the calculations.

This book can be used in several ways. It could be used to teach a full-year course in mathematical physiology, and we have used this material in that way. The book includes enough exercises to keep even the most diligent student busy. It could also be used as a supplement to other applied mathematics, bioengineering, or physiology courses. The models and exercises given here can add considerable interest and challenge to an otherwise traditional course.

The book is divided into two parts, the first dealing with the fundamental principles of cell physiology, and the second with the physiology of systems. After an introduction to basic biochemistry and enzyme reactions, we move on to a discussion of various aspects of cell physiology, including the problem of volume control, the membrane potential, ionic flow through channels, and excitability. Chapter 5 is devoted to calcium dynamics, emphasizing the two important ways that calcium is released from stores, while cells that exhibit electrical bursting are the subject of Chapter 6. This book is not intentionally organized around mathematical techniques, but it is a happy coincidence that there is no use of partial differential equations throughout these beginning chapters.

Spatial aspects, such as synaptic transmission, gap junctions, the linear cable equation, nonlinear wave propagation in neurons, and calcium waves, are the subject of the next few chapters, and it is here that the reader first meets partial differential equations. The most mathematical sections of the book arise in the discussion of signaling in two- and three-dimensional media—readers who are less mathematically inclined may wish to skip over these sections. This section on basic physiological mechanisms ends with a discussion of the biochemistry of RNA and DNA and the biochemical regulation of cell function.

The second part of the book gives an overview of organ physiology, mostly from the human body, beginning with an introduction to electrocardiology, followed by the physiology of the circulatory system, blood, muscle, hormones, and the kidneys. Finally, we examine the digestive system, the visual system, ending with the inner ear.

While this may seem to be an enormous amount of material (and it is!), there are many physiological topics that are not discussed here. For example, there is almost no discussion of the immune system and the immune response, and so the work of Perelson, Goldstein, Wofsy, Kirschner, and others of their persuasion is absent. Another glaring omission is the wonderful work of Michael Reed and his collaborators on axonal transport; this work is discussed in detail by Edelstein-Keshet (1988). The study of the central nervous system, including fascinating topics like nervous control, learning, cognition, and memory, is touched upon only very lightly, and the field of pharmacokinetics and compartmental modeling, including the work of John Jacquez, Elliot Landaw, and others, appears not at all. Neither does the wound-healing work of Maini, Sherratt, Murray, and others, or the tumor modeling of Chaplain and his colleagues. The list could continue indefinitely. Please accept our apologies if your favorite topic (or life's work) was omitted; the reason is exhaustion, not lack of interest.

As well as noticing the omission of a number of important areas of mathematical physiology, the reader may also notice that our view of what “mathematical” means appears to be somewhat narrow as well. For example, we include very little discussion of statistical methods, stochastic models, or discrete equations, but concentrate almost wholly on continuous, deterministic approaches. We emphasize that this is not from any inherent belief in the superiority of continuous differential equations. It results rather from the unpleasant fact that choices had to be made, and when push came to shove, we chose to include work with which we were most familiar. Again, apologies are offered.

Finally, with a project of this size there is credit to be given and blame to be cast; credit to the many people, like the pioneers in the field whose work we freely borrowed, and many reviewers and coworkers (Andrew LeBeau, Matthew Wilkins, Richard Bertram, Lee Segel, Bruce Knight, John Tyson, Eric Cytrunbaum, Eric Marland, Tim Lewis, J.G.T. Sneyd, Craig Marshall) who have given invaluable advice. Particular thanks are also due to the University of Canterbury, New Zealand, where a significant portion of this book was written. Of course, as authors we accept all the blame for not getting it right, or not doing it better.

University of Utah  
University of Michigan  
1998

James Keener  
James Sneyd



---

## Acknowledgments

With a project of this size it is impossible to give adequate acknowledgment to everyone who contributed: My family, whose patience with me is herculean; my students, who had to tolerate my rantings, ravings, and frequent mistakes; my colleagues, from whom I learned so much and often failed to give adequate attribution. Certainly the most profound contribution to this project was from the Creator who made it all possible in the first place. I don't know how He did it, but it was a truly astounding achievement. To all involved, thanks.

University of Utah

James Keener

Between the three of them, Jim Murray, Charlie Peskin and Dan Tranchina have taught me almost everything I know about mathematical physiology. This book could not have been written without them, and I thank them particularly for their, albeit unaware, contributions. Neither could this book have been written without many years of support from my parents and my wife, to whom I owe the greatest of debts.

University of Auckland

James Sneyd

# Table of Contents

## CONTENTS, I: Cellular Physiology

<b>Preface to the Second Edition</b>	vii
<b>Preface to the First Edition</b>	ix
<b>Acknowledgments</b>	xiii
<b>1 Biochemical Reactions</b>	1
1.1 The Law of Mass Action . . . . .	1
1.2 Thermodynamics and Rate Constants . . . . .	3
1.3 Detailed Balance . . . . .	6
1.4 Enzyme Kinetics . . . . .	7
1.4.1 The Equilibrium Approximation . . . . .	8
1.4.2 The Quasi-Steady-State Approximation . . . . .	9
1.4.3 Enzyme Inhibition . . . . .	12
1.4.4 Cooperativity . . . . .	15
1.4.5 Reversible Enzyme Reactions . . . . .	20
1.4.6 The Goldbeter–Koshland Function . . . . .	21
1.5 Glycolysis and Glycolytic Oscillations . . . . .	23

1.6	Appendix: Math Background . . . . .	33
1.6.1	Basic Techniques . . . . .	35
1.6.2	Asymptotic Analysis . . . . .	37
1.6.3	Enzyme Kinetics and Singular Perturbation Theory . . . . .	39
1.7	Exercises . . . . .	42
<b>2</b>	<b>Cellular Homeostasis</b>	<b>49</b>
2.1	The Cell Membrane . . . . .	49
2.2	Diffusion . . . . .	51
2.2.1	Fick's Law . . . . .	52
2.2.2	Diffusion Coefficients . . . . .	53
2.2.3	Diffusion Through a Membrane: Ohm's Law . . . . .	54
2.2.4	Diffusion into a Capillary . . . . .	55
2.2.5	Buffered Diffusion . . . . .	55
2.3	Facilitated Diffusion . . . . .	58
2.3.1	Facilitated Diffusion in Muscle Respiration . . . . .	61
2.4	Carrier-Mediated Transport . . . . .	63
2.4.1	Glucose Transport . . . . .	64
2.4.2	Symports and Antiports . . . . .	67
2.4.3	Sodium–Calcium Exchange . . . . .	69
2.5	Active Transport . . . . .	73
2.5.1	A Simple ATPase . . . . .	74
2.5.2	Active Transport of Charged Ions . . . . .	76
2.5.3	A Model of the $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$ ATPase . . . . .	77
2.5.4	Nuclear Transport . . . . .	79
2.6	The Membrane Potential . . . . .	80
2.6.1	The Nernst Equilibrium Potential . . . . .	80
2.6.2	Gibbs–Donnan Equilibrium . . . . .	82
2.6.3	Electrodiffusion: The Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz Equations . . . . .	83
2.6.4	Electrical Circuit Model of the Cell Membrane . . . . .	86
2.7	Osmosis . . . . .	88
2.8	Control of Cell Volume . . . . .	90
2.8.1	A Pump–Leak Model . . . . .	91
2.8.2	Volume Regulation and Ionic Transport . . . . .	98
2.9	Appendix: Stochastic Processes . . . . .	103
2.9.1	Markov Processes . . . . .	103
2.9.2	Discrete-State Markov Processes . . . . .	105
2.9.3	Numerical Simulation of Discrete Markov Processes . . . . .	107
2.9.4	Diffusion . . . . .	109
2.9.5	Sample Paths; the Langevin Equation . . . . .	110
2.9.6	The Fokker–Planck Equation and the Mean First Exit Time . . . . .	111
2.9.7	Diffusion and Fick's Law . . . . .	114
2.10	Exercises . . . . .	115

<b>3 Membrane Ion Channels</b>	<b>121</b>
3.1 Current–Voltage Relations . . . . .	121
3.1.1 Steady-State and Instantaneous Current–Voltage Relations . . . . .	123
3.2 Independence, Saturation, and the Ussing Flux Ratio . . . . .	125
3.3 Electrodiffusion Models . . . . .	128
3.3.1 Multi-Ion Flux: The Poisson–Nernst–Planck Equations . . . . .	129
3.4 Barrier Models . . . . .	134
3.4.1 Nonsaturating Barrier Models . . . . .	136
3.4.2 Saturating Barrier Models: One-Ion Pores . . . . .	139
3.4.3 Saturating Barrier Models: Multi-Ion Pores . . . . .	143
3.4.4 Electrogenic Pumps and Exchangers . . . . .	145
3.5 Channel Gating . . . . .	147
3.5.1 A Two-State K <sup>+</sup> Channel . . . . .	148
3.5.2 Multiple Subunits . . . . .	149
3.5.3 The Sodium Channel . . . . .	150
3.5.4 Agonist-Controlled Ion Channels . . . . .	152
3.5.5 Drugs and Toxins . . . . .	153
3.6 Single-Channel Analysis . . . . .	155
3.6.1 Single-Channel Analysis of a Sodium Channel . . . . .	155
3.6.2 Single-Channel Analysis of an Agonist-Controlled Ion Channel . . . . .	158
3.6.3 Comparing to Experimental Data . . . . .	160
3.7 Appendix: Reaction Rates . . . . .	162
3.7.1 The Boltzmann Distribution . . . . .	163
3.7.2 A Fokker–Planck Equation Approach . . . . .	165
3.7.3 Reaction Rates and Kramers’ Result . . . . .	166
3.8 Exercises . . . . .	170
<b>4 Passive Electrical Flow in Neurons</b>	<b>175</b>
4.1 The Cable Equation . . . . .	177
4.2 Dendritic Conduction . . . . .	180
4.2.1 Boundary Conditions . . . . .	181
4.2.2 Input Resistance . . . . .	182
4.2.3 Branching Structures . . . . .	182
4.2.4 A Dendrite with Synaptic Input . . . . .	185
4.3 The Rall Model of a Neuron . . . . .	187
4.3.1 A Semi-Infinite Neuron with a Soma . . . . .	187
4.3.2 A Finite Neuron and Soma . . . . .	189
4.3.3 Other Compartmental Models . . . . .	192
4.4 Appendix: Transform Methods . . . . .	192
4.5 Exercises . . . . .	193

<b>5 Excitability</b>	<b>195</b>
5.1 The Hodgkin–Huxley Model . . . . .	196
5.1.1 History of the Hodgkin–Huxley Equations . . . . .	198
5.1.2 Voltage and Time Dependence of Conductances . . . . .	200
5.1.3 Qualitative Analysis . . . . .	210
5.2 The FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations . . . . .	216
5.2.1 The Generalized FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations . . . . .	219
5.2.2 Phase-Plane Behavior . . . . .	220
5.3 Exercises . . . . .	223
<b>6 Wave Propagation in Excitable Systems</b>	<b>229</b>
6.1 Brief Overview of Wave Propagation . . . . .	229
6.2 Traveling Fronts . . . . .	231
6.2.1 The Bistable Equation . . . . .	231
6.2.2 Myelination . . . . .	236
6.2.3 The Discrete Bistable Equation . . . . .	238
6.3 Traveling Pulses . . . . .	242
6.3.1 The FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations . . . . .	242
6.3.2 The Hodgkin–Huxley Equations . . . . .	250
6.4 Periodic Wave Trains . . . . .	252
6.4.1 Piecewise-Linear FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations . . . . .	253
6.4.2 Singular Perturbation Theory . . . . .	254
6.4.3 Kinematics . . . . .	256
6.5 Wave Propagation in Higher Dimensions . . . . .	257
6.5.1 Propagating Fronts . . . . .	258
6.5.2 Spatial Patterns and Spiral Waves . . . . .	262
6.6 Exercises . . . . .	268
<b>7 Calcium Dynamics</b>	<b>273</b>
7.1 Calcium Oscillations and Waves . . . . .	276
7.2 Well-Mixed Cell Models: Calcium Oscillations . . . . .	281
7.2.1 Influx . . . . .	282
7.2.2 Mitochondria . . . . .	282
7.2.3 Calcium Buffers . . . . .	282
7.2.4 Calcium Pumps and Exchangers . . . . .	283
7.2.5 IP <sub>3</sub> Receptors . . . . .	285
7.2.6 Simple Models of Calcium Dynamics . . . . .	293
7.2.7 Open- and Closed-Cell Models . . . . .	296
7.2.8 IP <sub>3</sub> Dynamics . . . . .	298
7.2.9 Ryanodine Receptors . . . . .	301
7.3 Calcium Waves . . . . .	303
7.3.1 Simulation of Spiral Waves in <i>Xenopus</i> . . . . .	306
7.3.2 Traveling Wave Equations and Bifurcation Analysis . . . . .	307

7.4	Calcium Buffering . . . . .	309
7.4.1	Fast Buffers or Excess Buffers . . . . .	310
7.4.2	The Existence of Buffered Waves . . . . .	313
7.5	Discrete Calcium Sources . . . . .	315
7.5.1	The Fire–Diffuse–Fire Model . . . . .	318
7.6	Calcium Puffs and Stochastic Modeling . . . . .	321
7.6.1	Stochastic IPR Models . . . . .	323
7.6.2	Stochastic Models of Calcium Waves . . . . .	324
7.7	Intercellular Calcium Waves . . . . .	326
7.7.1	Mechanically Stimulated Intercellular $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ Waves . . . . .	327
7.7.2	Partial Regeneration . . . . .	330
7.7.3	Coordinated Oscillations in Hepatocytes . . . . .	331
7.8	Appendix: Mean Field Equations . . . . .	332
7.8.1	Microdomains . . . . .	332
7.8.2	Homogenization; Effective Diffusion Coefficients . . . . .	336
7.8.3	Bidomain Equations . . . . .	341
7.9	Exercises . . . . .	341
<b>8</b>	<b>Intercellular Communication</b>	<b>347</b>
8.1	Chemical Synapses . . . . .	348
8.1.1	Quantal Nature of Synaptic Transmission . . . . .	349
8.1.2	Presynaptic Voltage-Gated Calcium Channels . . . . .	352
8.1.3	Presynaptic Calcium Dynamics and Facilitation . . . . .	358
8.1.4	Neurotransmitter Kinetics . . . . .	364
8.1.5	The Postsynaptic Membrane Potential . . . . .	370
8.1.6	Agonist-Controlled Ion Channels . . . . .	371
8.1.7	Drugs and Toxins . . . . .	373
8.2	Gap Junctions . . . . .	373
8.2.1	Effective Diffusion Coefficients . . . . .	374
8.2.2	Homogenization . . . . .	376
8.2.3	Measurement of Permeabilities . . . . .	377
8.2.4	The Role of Gap-Junction Distribution . . . . .	377
8.3	Exercises . . . . .	383
<b>9</b>	<b>Neuroendocrine Cells</b>	<b>385</b>
9.1	Pancreatic $\beta$ Cells . . . . .	386
9.1.1	Bursting in the Pancreatic $\beta$ Cell . . . . .	386
9.1.2	ER Calcium as a Slow Controlling Variable . . . . .	392
9.1.3	Slow Bursting and Glycolysis . . . . .	399
9.1.4	Bursting in Clusters . . . . .	403
9.1.5	A Qualitative Bursting Model . . . . .	410
9.1.6	Bursting Oscillations in Other Cell Types . . . . .	412

9.2	Hypothalamic and Pituitary Cells . . . . .	419
9.2.1	The Gonadotroph . . . . .	419
9.3	Exercises . . . . .	424
<b>10</b>	<b>Regulation of Cell Function</b>	<b>427</b>
10.1	Regulation of Gene Expression . . . . .	428
10.1.1	The <i>trp</i> Repressor . . . . .	429
10.1.2	The <i>lac</i> Operon . . . . .	432
10.2	Circadian Clocks . . . . .	438
10.3	The Cell Cycle . . . . .	442
10.3.1	A Simple Generic Model . . . . .	445
10.3.2	Fission Yeast . . . . .	452
10.3.3	A Limit Cycle Oscillator in the <i>Xenopus</i> Oocyte . . . . .	461
10.3.4	Conclusion . . . . .	468
10.4	Exercises . . . . .	468
<b>Appendix: Units and Physical Constants</b>		<b>A-1</b>
<b>References</b>		<b>R-1</b>
<b>Index</b>		<b>I-1</b>

## CONTENTS, II: Systems Physiology

<b>Preface to the Second Edition</b>		<b>vii</b>
<b>Preface to the First Edition</b>		<b>ix</b>
<b>Acknowledgments</b>		<b>xiii</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>The Circulatory System</b>	<b>471</b>
11.1	Blood Flow . . . . .	473
11.2	Compliance . . . . .	476
11.3	The Microcirculation and Filtration . . . . .	479
11.4	Cardiac Output . . . . .	482
11.5	Circulation . . . . .	484
11.5.1	A Simple Circulatory System . . . . .	484
11.5.2	A Linear Circulatory System . . . . .	486
11.5.3	A Multicompartment Circulatory System . . . . .	488
11.6	Cardiovascular Regulation . . . . .	495
11.6.1	Autoregulation . . . . .	497
11.6.2	The Baroreceptor Loop . . . . .	500
11.7	Fetal Circulation . . . . .	507
11.7.1	Pathophysiology of the Circulatory System . . . . .	511

11.8	The Arterial Pulse . . . . .	513
11.8.1	The Conservation Laws . . . . .	513
11.8.2	The Windkessel Model . . . . .	514
11.8.3	A Small-Amplitude Pressure Wave . . . . .	516
11.8.4	Shock Waves in the Aorta . . . . .	516
11.9	Exercises . . . . .	521
<b>12</b>	<b>The Heart</b>	<b>523</b>
12.1	The Electrocardiogram . . . . .	525
12.1.1	The Scalar ECG . . . . .	525
12.1.2	The Vector ECG . . . . .	526
12.2	Cardiac Cells . . . . .	534
12.2.1	Purkinje Fibers . . . . .	535
12.2.2	Sinoatrial Node . . . . .	541
12.2.3	Ventricular Cells . . . . .	543
12.2.4	Cardiac Excitation–Contraction Coupling . . . . .	546
12.2.5	Common-Pool and Local-Control Models . . . . .	548
12.2.6	The L-type $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ Channel . . . . .	550
12.2.7	The Ryanodine Receptor . . . . .	551
12.2.8	The $\text{Na}^+–\text{Ca}^{2+}$ Exchanger . . . . .	552
12.3	Cellular Coupling . . . . .	553
12.3.1	One-Dimensional Fibers . . . . .	554
12.3.2	Propagation Failure . . . . .	561
12.3.3	Myocardial Tissue: The Bidomain Model . . . . .	566
12.3.4	Pacemakers . . . . .	572
12.4	Cardiac Arrhythmias . . . . .	583
12.4.1	Cellular Arrhythmias . . . . .	584
12.4.2	Atrioventricular Node—Wenckebach Rhythms . . . . .	586
12.4.3	Reentrant Arrhythmias . . . . .	593
12.5	Defibrillation . . . . .	604
12.5.1	The Direct Stimulus Threshold . . . . .	608
12.5.2	The Defibrillation Threshold . . . . .	610
12.6	Appendix: The Sawtooth Potential . . . . .	613
12.7	Appendix: The Phase Equations . . . . .	614
12.8	Appendix: The Cardiac Bidomain Equations . . . . .	618
12.9	Exercises . . . . .	622
<b>13</b>	<b>Blood</b>	<b>627</b>
13.1	Blood Plasma . . . . .	628
13.2	Blood Cell Production . . . . .	630
13.2.1	Periodic Hematological Diseases . . . . .	632
13.2.2	A Simple Model of Blood Cell Growth . . . . .	633
13.2.3	Peripheral or Local Control? . . . . .	639

13.3	Erythrocytes . . . . .	643
13.3.1	Myoglobin and Hemoglobin . . . . .	643
13.3.2	Hemoglobin Saturation Shifts . . . . .	648
13.3.3	Carbon Dioxide Transport . . . . .	649
13.4	Leukocytes . . . . .	652
13.4.1	Leukocyte Chemotaxis . . . . .	653
13.4.2	The Inflammatory Response . . . . .	655
13.5	Control of Lymphocyte Differentiation . . . . .	665
13.6	Clotting . . . . .	669
13.6.1	The Clotting Cascade . . . . .	669
13.6.2	Clotting Models . . . . .	671
13.6.3	<i>In Vitro</i> Clotting and the Spread of Inhibition . . . . .	671
13.6.4	Platelets . . . . .	675
13.7	Exercises . . . . .	678
<b>14</b>	<b>Respiration</b>	<b>683</b>
14.1	Capillary–Alveoli Gas Exchange . . . . .	684
14.1.1	Diffusion Across an Interface . . . . .	684
14.1.2	Capillary–Alveolar Transport . . . . .	685
14.1.3	Carbon Dioxide Removal . . . . .	688
14.1.4	Oxygen Uptake . . . . .	689
14.1.5	Carbon Monoxide Poisoning . . . . .	692
14.2	Ventilation and Perfusion . . . . .	694
14.2.1	The Oxygen–Carbon Dioxide Diagram . . . . .	698
14.2.2	Respiratory Exchange Ratio . . . . .	698
14.3	Regulation of Ventilation . . . . .	701
14.3.1	A More Detailed Model of Respiratory Regulation . . . . .	706
14.4	The Respiratory Center . . . . .	708
14.4.1	A Simple Mutual Inhibition Model . . . . .	710
14.5	Exercises . . . . .	714
<b>15</b>	<b>Muscle</b>	<b>717</b>
15.1	Crossbridge Theory . . . . .	719
15.2	The Force–Velocity Relationship: The Hill Model . . . . .	724
15.2.1	Fitting Data . . . . .	726
15.2.2	Some Solutions of the Hill Model . . . . .	727
15.3	A Simple Crossbridge Model: The Huxley Model . . . . .	730
15.3.1	Isotonic Responses . . . . .	737
15.3.2	Other Choices for Rate Functions . . . . .	738
15.4	Determination of the Rate Functions . . . . .	739
15.4.1	A Continuous Binding Site Model . . . . .	739
15.4.2	A General Binding Site Model . . . . .	741
15.4.3	The Inverse Problem . . . . .	742

15.5	The Discrete Distribution of Binding Sites . . . . .	747
15.6	High Time-Resolution Data . . . . .	748
15.6.1	High Time-Resolution Experiments . . . . .	748
15.6.2	The Model Equations . . . . .	749
15.7	In Vitro Assays . . . . .	755
15.8	Smooth Muscle . . . . .	756
15.8.1	The Hai–Murphy Model . . . . .	756
15.9	Large-Scale Muscle Models . . . . .	759
15.10	Molecular Motors . . . . .	759
15.10.1	Brownian Ratchets . . . . .	760
15.10.2	The Tilted Potential . . . . .	765
15.10.3	Flashing Ratchets . . . . .	767
15.11	Exercises . . . . .	770
<b>16</b>	<b>The Endocrine System</b>	<b>773</b>
16.1	The Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland . . . . .	775
16.1.1	Pulsatile Secretion of Luteinizing Hormone . . . . .	777
16.1.2	Neural Pulse Generator Models . . . . .	779
16.2	Ovulation in Mammals . . . . .	784
16.2.1	A Model of the Menstrual Cycle . . . . .	784
16.2.2	The Control of Ovulation Number . . . . .	788
16.2.3	Other Models of Ovulation . . . . .	802
16.3	Insulin and Glucose . . . . .	803
16.3.1	Insulin Sensitivity . . . . .	804
16.3.2	Pulsatile Insulin Secretion . . . . .	806
16.4	Adaptation of Hormone Receptors . . . . .	813
16.5	Exercises . . . . .	816
<b>17</b>	<b>Renal Physiology</b>	<b>821</b>
17.1	The Glomerulus . . . . .	821
17.1.1	Autoregulation and Tubuloglomerular Oscillations . . . . .	825
17.2	Urinary Concentration: The Loop of Henle . . . . .	831
17.2.1	The Countercurrent Mechanism . . . . .	836
17.2.2	The Countercurrent Mechanism in Nephrons . . . . .	837
17.3	Models of Tubular Transport . . . . .	848
17.4	Exercises . . . . .	849
<b>18</b>	<b>The Gastrointestinal System</b>	<b>851</b>
18.1	Fluid Absorption . . . . .	851
18.1.1	A Simple Model of Fluid Absorption . . . . .	853
18.1.2	Standing-Gradient Osmotic Flow . . . . .	857
18.1.3	Uphill Water Transport . . . . .	864

18.2	Gastric Protection . . . . .	866
18.2.1	A Steady-State Model . . . . .	867
18.2.2	Gastric Acid Secretion and Neutralization . . . . .	873
18.3	Coupled Oscillators in the Small Intestine . . . . .	874
18.3.1	Temporal Control of Contractions . . . . .	874
18.3.2	Waves of Electrical Activity . . . . .	875
18.3.3	Models of Coupled Oscillators . . . . .	878
18.3.4	Interstitial Cells of Cajal . . . . .	887
18.3.5	Biophysical and Anatomical Models . . . . .	888
18.4	Exercises . . . . .	890
<b>19</b>	<b>The Retina and Vision</b>	<b>893</b>
19.1	Retinal Light Adaptation . . . . .	895
19.1.1	Weber's Law and Contrast Detection . . . . .	897
19.1.2	Intensity–Response Curves and the Naka–Rushton Equation .	898
19.2	Photoreceptor Physiology . . . . .	902
19.2.1	The Initial Cascade . . . . .	905
19.2.2	Light Adaptation in Cones . . . . .	907
19.3	A Model of Adaptation in Amphibian Rods . . . . .	912
19.3.1	Single-Photon Responses . . . . .	915
19.4	Lateral Inhibition . . . . .	917
19.4.1	A Simple Model of Lateral Inhibition . . . . .	919
19.4.2	Photoreceptor and Horizontal Cell Interactions . . . . .	921
19.5	Detection of Motion and Directional Selectivity . . . . .	926
19.6	Receptive Fields . . . . .	929
19.7	The Pupil Light Reflex . . . . .	933
19.7.1	Linear Stability Analysis . . . . .	935
19.8	Appendix: Linear Systems Theory . . . . .	936
19.9	Exercises . . . . .	939
<b>20</b>	<b>The Inner Ear</b>	<b>943</b>
20.1	Frequency Tuning . . . . .	946
20.1.1	Cochlear Macromechanics . . . . .	947
20.2	Models of the Cochlea . . . . .	949
20.2.1	Equations of Motion for an Incompressible Fluid . . . . .	949
20.2.2	The Basilar Membrane as a Harmonic Oscillator . . . . .	950
20.2.3	An Analytical Solution . . . . .	952
20.2.4	Long-Wave and Short-Wave Models . . . . .	953
20.2.5	More Complex Models . . . . .	962
20.3	Electrical Resonance in Hair Cells . . . . .	962
20.3.1	An Electrical Circuit Analogue . . . . .	964
20.3.2	A Mechanistic Model of Frequency Tuning . . . . .	966

20.4	The Nonlinear Cochlear Amplifier . . . . .	969
20.4.1	Negative Stiffness, Adaptation, and Oscillations . . . . .	969
20.4.2	Nonlinear Compression and Hopf Bifurcations . . . . .	971
20.5	Exercises . . . . .	973
<b>Appendix: Units and Physical Constants</b>		<b>A-1</b>
<b>References</b>		<b>R-1</b>
<b>Index</b>		<b>I-1</b>

# Biochemical Reactions

Cells can do lots of wonderful things. Individually they can move, contract, excrete, reproduce, signal or respond to signals, and carry out the energy transactions necessary for this activity. Collectively they perform all of the numerous functions of any living organism necessary to sustain life. Yet, remarkably, all of what cells do can be described in terms of a few basic natural laws. The fascination with cells is that although the rules of behavior are relatively simple, they are applied to an enormously complex network of interacting chemicals and substrates. The effort of many lifetimes has been consumed in unraveling just a few of these reaction schemes, and there are many more mysteries yet to be uncovered.

## 1.1 The Law of Mass Action

The fundamental “law” of a chemical reaction is the law of mass action. This law describes the rate at which chemicals, whether large macromolecules or simple ions, collide and interact to form different chemical combinations. Suppose that two chemicals, say A and B, react upon collision with each other to form product C,



The rate of this reaction is the rate of accumulation of product,  $\frac{d[C]}{dt}$ . This rate is the product of the number of collisions per unit time between the two reactants and the probability that a collision is sufficiently energetic to overcome the free energy of activation of the reaction. The number of collisions per unit time is taken to be proportional

to the product of the concentrations of A and B with a factor of proportionality that depends on the geometrical shapes and sizes of the reactant molecules and on the temperature of the mixture. Combining these factors, we have

$$\frac{d[C]}{dt} = k[A][B]. \quad (1.2)$$

The identification of (1.2) with the reaction (1.1) is called the *law of mass action*, and the constant  $k$  is called the *rate constant* for the reaction. However, the law of mass action is not a law in the sense that it is inviolable, but rather it is a useful model, much like Ohm's law or Newton's law of cooling. As a model, there are situations in which it is not valid. For example, at high concentrations, doubling the concentration of one reactant need not double the overall reaction rate, and at extremely low concentrations, it may not be appropriate to represent concentration as a continuous variable.

For thermodynamic reasons all reactions proceed in both directions. Thus, the reaction scheme for A, B, and C should have been written as



with  $k_+$  and  $k_-$  denoting, respectively, the forward and reverse rate constants of reaction. If the reverse reaction is slow compared to the forward reaction, it is often ignored, and only the primary direction is displayed. Since the quantity A is consumed by the forward reaction and produced by the reverse reaction, the rate of change of [A] for this bidirectional reaction is

$$\frac{d[A]}{dt} = k_-[C] - k_+[A][B]. \quad (1.4)$$

At equilibrium, concentrations are not changing, so that

$$\frac{k_-}{k_+} \equiv K_{\text{eq}} = \frac{[A]_{\text{eq}}[B]_{\text{eq}}}{[C]_{\text{eq}}}. \quad (1.5)$$

The ratio  $k_-/k_+$ , denoted by  $K_{\text{eq}}$ , is called the *equilibrium constant* of the reaction. It describes the relative preference for the chemicals to be in the combined state C compared to the dissociated state. If  $K_{\text{eq}}$  is small, then at steady state most of A and B are combined to give C.

If there are no other reactions involving A and C, then  $[A] + [C] = A_0$  is constant, and

$$[C]_{\text{eq}} = A_0 \frac{[B]_{\text{eq}}}{K_{\text{eq}} + [B]_{\text{eq}}}, \quad [A]_{\text{eq}} = A_0 \frac{K_{\text{eq}}}{K_{\text{eq}} + [B]_{\text{eq}}}. \quad (1.6)$$

Thus, when  $[B]_{\text{eq}} = K_{\text{eq}}$ , half of A is in the bound state at equilibrium.

There are several other features of the law of mass action that need to be mentioned. Suppose that the reaction involves the dimerization of two monomers of the same species A to produce species C,



For every C that is made, two of A are used, and every time C degrades, two copies of A are produced. As a result, the rate of reaction for A is

$$\frac{d[A]}{dt} = 2k_- [C] - 2k_+[A]^2. \quad (1.8)$$

However, the rate of production of C is half that of A,

$$\frac{d[C]}{dt} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{d[A]}{dt}, \quad (1.9)$$

and the quantity  $[A]+2[C]$  is conserved (provided there are no other reactions).

In a similar way, with a trimolecular reaction, the rate at which the reaction takes place is proportional to the product of three concentrations, and three molecules are consumed in the process, or released in the degradation of product. In real life, there are probably no truly trimolecular reactions. Nevertheless, there are some situations in which a reaction might be effectively modeled as trimolecular (Exercise 2).

Unfortunately, the law of mass action cannot be used in all situations, because not all chemical reaction mechanisms are known with sufficient detail. In fact, a vast number of chemical reactions cannot be described by mass action kinetics. Those reactions that follow mass action kinetics are called *elementary reactions* because presumably, they proceed directly from collision of the reactants. Reactions that do not follow mass action kinetics usually proceed by a complex mechanism consisting of several elementary reaction steps. It is often the case with biochemical reactions that the elementary reaction steps are not known or are very complicated to write down.

## 1.2 Thermodynamics and Rate Constants

There is a close relationship between the rate constants of a reaction and thermodynamics. The fundamental concept is that of *chemical potential*, which is the Gibbs free energy,  $G$ , per mole of a substance. Often, the Gibbs free energy per mole is denoted by  $\mu$  rather than  $G$ . However, because  $\mu$  has many other uses in this text, we retain the notation  $G$  for the Gibbs free energy.

For a mixture of ideal gases,  $X_i$ , the chemical potential of gas  $i$  is a function of temperature, pressure, and concentration,

$$G_i = G_i^0(T, P) + RT \ln(x_i), \quad (1.10)$$

where  $x_i$  is the mole fraction of  $X_i$ ,  $R$  is the universal gas constant,  $T$  is the absolute temperature, and  $P$  is the pressure of the gas (in atmospheres); values of these constants, and their units, are given in the appendix. The quantity  $G_i^0(T, P)$  is the standard free energy per mole of the pure ideal gas, i.e., when the mole fraction of the gas is 1. Note

that, since  $x_i \leq 1$ , the free energy of an ideal gas in a mixture is always less than that of the pure ideal gas. The total Gibbs free energy of the mixture is

$$G = \sum_i n_i G_i, \quad (1.11)$$

where  $n_i$  is the number of moles of gas  $i$ .

The theory of Gibbs free energy in ideal gases can be extended to ideal dilute solutions. By redefining the standard Gibbs free energy to be the free energy at a concentration of 1 M, i.e., 1 mole per liter, we obtain

$$G = G^0 + RT \ln(c), \quad (1.12)$$

where the concentration,  $c$ , is in units of moles per liter. The standard free energy,  $G^0$ , is obtained by measuring the free energy for a dilute solution and then extrapolating to  $c = 1$  M. For biochemical applications, the dependence of free energy on pressure is ignored, and the pressure is assumed to be 1 atm, while the temperature is taken to be 25°C. Derivations of these formulas can be found in physical chemistry textbooks such as Levine (2002) and Castellan (1971).

For nonideal solutions, such as are typical in cells, the free energy formula (1.12) should use the chemical activity of the solute rather than its concentration. The relationship between chemical activity  $a$  and concentration is nontrivial. However, for dilute concentrations, they are approximately equal.

Since the free energy is a potential, it denotes the preference of one state compared to another. Consider, for example, the simple reaction



The change in chemical potential  $\Delta G$  is defined as the difference between the chemical potential for state B (the product), denoted by  $G_B$ , and the chemical potential for state A (the reactant), denoted by  $G_A$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G &= G_B - G_A \\ &= G_B^0 - G_A^0 + RT \ln([B]) - RT \ln([A]) \\ &= \Delta G^0 + RT \ln([B]/[A]). \end{aligned} \quad (1.14)$$

The sign of  $\Delta G$  is important, which is why it is defined with only one reaction direction shown, even though we know that the back reaction also occurs. In fact, there is a wonderful opportunity for confusion here, since there is no obvious way to decide which is the forward and which is the backward direction for a given reaction. If  $\Delta G < 0$ , then state B is preferred to state A, and the reaction tends to convert A into B, whereas, if  $\Delta G > 0$ , then state A is preferred to state B, and the reaction tends to convert B into A. Equilibrium occurs when neither state is preferred, so that  $\Delta G = 0$ , in which case

$$\frac{[B]_{\text{eq}}}{[A]_{\text{eq}}} = e^{\frac{-\Delta G^0}{RT}}. \quad (1.15)$$

Expressing this reaction in terms of forward and backward reaction rates,



we find that in steady state,  $k_+[A]_{\text{eq}} = k_-[B]_{\text{eq}}$ , so that

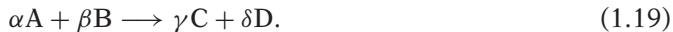
$$\frac{[A]_{\text{eq}}}{[B]_{\text{eq}}} = \frac{k_-}{k_+} = K_{\text{eq}}. \quad (1.17)$$

Combining this with (1.15), we observe that

$$K_{\text{eq}} = e^{\frac{\Delta G^0}{RT}}. \quad (1.18)$$

In other words, the more negative the difference in standard free energy, the greater the propensity for the reaction to proceed from left to right, and the smaller is  $K_{\text{eq}}$ . Notice, however, that this gives only the ratio of rate constants, and not their individual amplitudes. We learn nothing about whether a reaction is fast or slow from the change in free energy.

Similar relationships hold when there are multiple components in the reaction. Consider, for example, the more complex reaction



The change of free energy for this reaction is defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G &= \gamma G_C + \delta G_D - \alpha G_A - \beta G_B \\ &= \gamma G_C^0 + \delta G_D^0 - \alpha G_A^0 - \beta G_B^0 + RT \ln \left( \frac{[C]^{\gamma} [D]^{\delta}}{[A]^{\alpha} [B]^{\beta}} \right) \\ &= \Delta G^0 + RT \ln \left( \frac{[C]^{\gamma} [D]^{\delta}}{[A]^{\alpha} [B]^{\beta}} \right), \end{aligned} \quad (1.20)$$

and at equilibrium,

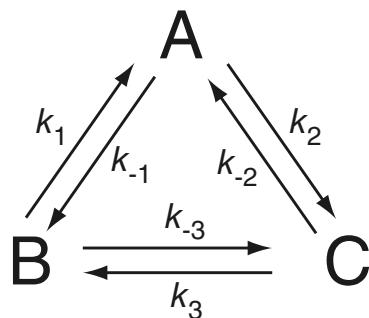
$$\Delta G^0 = RT \ln \left( \frac{[A]_{\text{eq}}^{\alpha} [B]_{\text{eq}}^{\beta}}{[C]_{\text{eq}}^{\gamma} [D]_{\text{eq}}^{\delta}} \right) = RT \ln(K_{\text{eq}}). \quad (1.21)$$

An important example of such a reaction is the hydrolysis of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and inorganic phosphate  $P_i$ , represented by the reaction



The standard free energy change for this reaction is

$$\Delta G^0 = G_{ADP}^0 + G_{P_i}^0 - G_{ATP}^0 = -31.0 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}, \quad (1.23)$$



**Figure 1.1** Schematic diagram of a reaction loop.

and from this we could calculate the equilibrium constant for this reaction. However, the primary significance of this is not the size of the equilibrium constant, but rather the fact that ATP has free energy that can be used to drive other less favorable reactions. For example, in all living cells, ATP is used to pump ions against their concentration gradient, a process called free energy transduction. In fact, if the equilibrium constant of this reaction is achieved, then one can confidently assert that the system is dead. In living systems, the ratio of [ATP] to [ADP][P<sub>i</sub>] is held well above the equilibrium value.

### 1.3 Detailed Balance

Suppose that a set of reactions forms a loop, as shown in Fig. 1.1. By applying the law of mass action and setting the derivatives to zero we can find the steady-state concentrations of A, B and C. However, for the system to be in thermodynamic equilibrium a stronger condition must hold. Thermodynamic equilibrium requires that the free energy of each state be the same so that each individual reaction is in equilibrium. In other words, at equilibrium there is not only, say, no net change in [B], there is also no net conversion of B to C or B to A. This condition means that, at equilibrium,  $k_1[B] = k_{-1}[A]$ ,  $k_2[A] = k_{-2}[C]$  and  $k_3[C] = k_{-3}[B]$ . Thus, it must be that

$$k_1 k_2 k_3 = k_{-1} k_{-2} k_{-3}, \quad (1.24)$$

or

$$K_1 K_2 K_3 = 1, \quad (1.25)$$

where  $K_i = k_{-i}/k_i$ . Since this condition does not depend on the concentrations of A, B or C, it must hold in general, not only at equilibrium.

For a more general reaction loop, the principle of detailed balance requires that the product of rates in one direction around the loop must equal the product of rates in the other direction. If any of the rates are dependent on concentrations of other chemicals, those concentrations must also be included.

## 1.4 Enzyme Kinetics

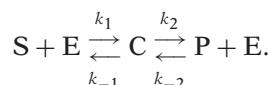
To see where some of the more complicated reaction schemes come from, we consider a reaction that is catalyzed by an enzyme. Enzymes are catalysts (generally proteins) that help convert other molecules called *substrates* into products, but they themselves are not changed by the reaction. Their most important features are catalytic power, specificity, and regulation. Enzymes accelerate the conversion of substrate into product by lowering the free energy of activation of the reaction. For example, enzymes may aid in overcoming charge repulsions and allowing reacting molecules to come into contact for the formation of new chemical bonds. Or, if the reaction requires breaking of an existing bond, the enzyme may exert a stress on a substrate molecule, rendering a particular bond more easily broken. Enzymes are particularly efficient at speeding up biological reactions, giving increases in speed of up to 10 million times or more. They are also highly specific, usually catalyzing the reaction of only one particular substrate or closely related substrates. Finally, they are typically regulated by an enormously complicated set of positive and negative feedbacks, thus allowing precise control over the rate of reaction. A detailed presentation of enzyme kinetics, including many different kinds of models, can be found in Dixon and Webb (1979), the encyclopedic Segel (1975) or Kernevez (1980). Here, we discuss only some of the simplest models.

One of the first things one learns about enzyme reactions is that they do not follow the law of mass action directly. For, as the concentration of substrate ( $S$ ) is increased, the rate of the reaction increases only to a certain extent, reaching a maximal reaction velocity at high substrate concentrations. This is in contrast to the law of mass action, which, when applied directly to the reaction of  $S$  with the enzyme  $E$

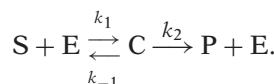


predicts that the reaction velocity increases linearly as  $[S]$  increases.

A model to explain the deviation from the law of mass action was first proposed by Michaelis and Menten (1913). In their reaction scheme, the enzyme  $E$  converts the substrate  $S$  into the product  $P$  through a two-step process. First  $E$  combines with  $S$  to form a complex  $C$  which then breaks down into the product  $P$  releasing  $E$  in the process. The reaction scheme is represented schematically by



Although all reactions must be reversible, as shown here, reaction rates are typically measured under conditions where  $P$  is continually removed, which effectively prevents the reverse reaction from occurring. Thus, it often suffices to assume that no reverse reaction occurs. For this reason, the reaction is usually written as



The reversible case is considered in Section 1.4.5.

There are two similar, but not identical, ways to analyze this equation; the equilibrium approximation, and the quasi-steady-state approximation. Because these methods give similar results it is easy to confuse them, so it is important to understand their differences.

We begin by defining  $s = [S]$ ,  $c = [C]$ ,  $e = [E]$ , and  $p = [P]$ . The law of mass action applied to this reaction mechanism gives four differential equations for the rates of change of  $s, c, e$ , and  $p$ ,

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = k_{-1}c - k_1se, \quad (1.26)$$

$$\frac{de}{dt} = (k_{-1} + k_2)c - k_1se, \quad (1.27)$$

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = k_1se - (k_2 + k_{-1})c, \quad (1.28)$$

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = k_2c. \quad (1.29)$$

Note that  $p$  can be found by direct integration, and that there is a conserved quantity since  $\frac{de}{dt} + \frac{dc}{dt} = 0$ , so that  $e + c = e_0$ , where  $e_0$  is the total amount of available enzyme.

### 1.4.1 The Equilibrium Approximation

In their original analysis, Michaelis and Menten assumed that the substrate is in instantaneous equilibrium with the complex, and thus

$$k_1se = k_{-1}c. \quad (1.30)$$

Since  $e + c = e_0$ , we find that

$$c = \frac{e_0s}{K_1 + s}, \quad (1.31)$$

where  $K_1 = k_{-1}/k_1$ . Hence, the velocity,  $V$ , of the reaction, i.e., the rate at which the product is formed, is given by

$$V = \frac{dp}{dt} = k_2c = \frac{k_2e_0s}{K_1 + s} = \frac{V_{\max}s}{K_1 + s}, \quad (1.32)$$

where  $V_{\max} = k_2e_0$  is the maximum reaction velocity, attained when all the enzyme is complexed with the substrate.

At small substrate concentrations, the reaction rate is linear, at a rate proportional to the amount of available enzyme  $e_0$ . At large concentrations, however, the reaction rate saturates to  $V_{\max}$ , so that the maximum rate of the reaction is limited by the amount of enzyme present and the dissociation rate constant  $k_2$ . For this reason, the dissociation reaction  $C \xrightarrow{k_2} P + E$  is said to be *rate limiting* for this reaction. At  $s = K_1$ , the reaction rate is half that of the maximum.

It is important to note that (1.30) cannot be exactly correct at all times; if it were, then according to (1.26) substrate would not be used up, and product would not be

formed. This points out the fact that (1.30) is an approximation. It also illustrates the need for a systematic way to make approximate statements, so that one has an idea of the magnitude and nature of the errors introduced in making such an approximation.

It is a common mistake with the equilibrium approximation to conclude that since (1.30) holds, it must be that  $\frac{ds}{dt} = 0$ , which if this is true, implies that no substrate is being used up, nor product produced. Furthermore, it appears that if (1.30) holds, then it must be (from (1.28)) that  $\frac{dc}{dt} = -k_2c$ , which is also false. Where is the error here?

The answer lies with the fact that the equilibrium approximation is equivalent to the assumption that the reaction (1.26) is a very fast reaction, faster than others, or more precisely, that  $k_{-1} \gg k_2$ . Adding (1.26) and (1.28), we find that

$$\frac{ds}{dt} + \frac{dc}{dt} = -k_2c, \quad (1.33)$$

expressing the fact that the total quantity  $s + c$  changes on a slower time scale. Now when we use that  $c = \frac{e_0 s}{K_s + s}$ , we learn that

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( s + \frac{e_0 s}{K_1 + s} \right) = -k_2 \frac{e_0 s}{K_1 + s}, \quad (1.34)$$

and thus,

$$\frac{ds}{dt} \left( 1 + \frac{e_0 K_1}{(K_1 + s)^2} \right) = -k_2 \frac{e_0 s}{K_1 + s}, \quad (1.35)$$

which specifies the rate at which  $s$  is consumed.

This way of simplifying reactions by using an equilibrium approximation is used many times throughout this book, and is an extremely important technique, particularly in the analysis of Markov models of ion channels, pumps and exchangers (Chapters 2 and 3). A more mathematically systematic description of this approach is left for Exercise 20.

## 1.4.2 The Quasi-Steady-State Approximation

An alternative analysis of an enzymatic reaction was proposed by Briggs and Haldane (1925) who assumed that the rates of formation and breakdown of the complex were essentially equal at all times (except perhaps at the beginning of the reaction, as the complex is “filling up”). Thus,  $dc/dt$  should be approximately zero.

To give this approximation a systematic mathematical basis, it is useful to introduce dimensionless variables

$$\sigma = \frac{s}{s_0}, \quad x = \frac{c}{e_0}, \quad \tau = k_1 e_0 t, \quad \kappa = \frac{k_{-1} + k_2}{k_1 s_0}, \quad \epsilon = \frac{e_0}{s_0}, \quad \alpha = \frac{k_{-1}}{k_1 s_0}, \quad (1.36)$$

in terms of which we obtain the system of two differential equations

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\tau} = -\sigma + x(\sigma + \alpha), \quad (1.37)$$

$$\epsilon \frac{dx}{d\tau} = \sigma - x(\sigma + \kappa). \quad (1.38)$$

There are usually a number of ways that a system of differential equations can be nondimensionalized. This nonuniqueness is often a source of great confusion, as it is often not obvious which choice of dimensionless variables and parameters is “best.” In Section 1.6 we discuss this difficult problem briefly.

The remarkable effectiveness of enzymes as catalysts of biochemical reactions is reflected by their small concentrations needed compared to the concentrations of the substrates. For this model, this means that  $\epsilon$  is small, typically in the range of  $10^{-2}$  to  $10^{-7}$ . Therefore, the reaction (1.38) is fast, equilibrates rapidly and remains in near-equilibrium even as the variable  $\sigma$  changes. Thus, we take the *quasi-steady-state approximation*  $\epsilon \frac{dx}{d\tau} = 0$ . Notice that this is *not* the same as taking  $\frac{dx}{d\tau} = 0$ . However, because of the different scaling of  $x$  and  $c$ , it is equivalent to taking  $\frac{dc}{dt} = 0$  as suggested in the introductory paragraph.

One useful way of looking at this system is as follows; since

$$\frac{dx}{d\tau} = \frac{\sigma - x(\sigma + \kappa)}{\epsilon}, \quad (1.39)$$

$dx/d\tau$  is large everywhere, except where  $\sigma - x(\sigma + \kappa)$  is small, of approximately the same size as  $\epsilon$ . Now, note that  $\sigma - x(\sigma + \kappa) = 0$  defines a curve in the  $\sigma, x$  phase plane, called the *slow manifold* (as illustrated in the right panel of Fig. 1.14). If the solution starts away from the slow manifold,  $dx/d\tau$  is initially large, and the solution moves rapidly to the vicinity of the slow manifold. The solution then moves along the slow manifold in the direction defined by the equation for  $\sigma$ ; in this case,  $\sigma$  is decreasing, and so the solution moves to the left along the slow manifold.

Another way of looking at this model is to notice that the reaction of  $x$  is an exponential process with time constant at least as large as  $\frac{\kappa}{\epsilon}$ . To see this we write (1.38) as

$$\epsilon \frac{dx}{d\tau} + \kappa x = \sigma(1 - x). \quad (1.40)$$

Thus, the variable  $x$  “tracks” the steady state with a short delay.

It follows from the quasi-steady-state approximation that

$$x = \frac{\sigma}{\sigma + \kappa}, \quad (1.41)$$

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\tau} = -\frac{q\sigma}{\sigma + \kappa}, \quad (1.42)$$

where  $q = \kappa - \alpha = \frac{k_2}{k_1 s_0}$ . Equation (1.42) describes the rate of uptake of the substrate and is called a *Michaelis–Menten law*. In terms of the original variables, this law is

$$V = \frac{dp}{dt} = -\frac{ds}{dt} = \frac{k_2 e_0 s}{s + K_m} = \frac{V_{\max} s}{s + K_m}, \quad (1.43)$$

where  $K_m = \frac{k_{-1} + k_2}{k_1}$ . In quasi-steady state, the concentration of the complex satisfies

$$c = \frac{e_0 s}{s + K_m}. \quad (1.44)$$

Note the similarity between (1.32) and (1.43), the only difference being that the equilibrium approximation uses  $K_1$ , while the quasi-steady-state approximation uses  $K_m$ . Despite this similarity of form, it is important to keep in mind that the two results are based on different approximations. The equilibrium approximation assumes that  $k_{-1} \gg k_2$  whereas the quasi-steady-state approximation assumes that  $\epsilon \ll 1$ . Notice, that if  $k_{-1} \gg k_2$ , then  $K_m \approx K_1$ , so that the two approximations give similar results.

As with the law of mass action, the Michaelis–Menten law (1.43) is not universally applicable but is a useful approximation. It may be applicable even if  $\epsilon = e_0/s_0$  is not small (see, for example, Exercise 14), and in model building it is often invoked without regard to the underlying assumptions.

While the individual rate constants are difficult to measure experimentally, the ratio  $K_m$  is relatively easy to measure because of the simple observation that (1.43) can be written in the form

$$\frac{1}{V} = \frac{1}{V_{\max}} + \frac{K_m}{V_{\max}} \frac{1}{s}. \quad (1.45)$$

In other words,  $1/V$  is a linear function of  $1/s$ . Plots of this double reciprocal curve are called *Lineweaver–Burk plots*, and from such (experimentally determined) plots,  $V_{\max}$  and  $K_m$  can be estimated.

Although a Lineweaver–Burk plot makes it easy to determine  $V_{\max}$  and  $K_m$  from reaction rate measurements, it is not a simple matter to determine the reaction rate as a function of substrate concentration during the course of a single experiment. Substrate concentrations usually cannot be measured with sufficient accuracy or time resolution to permit the calculation of a reliable derivative. In practice, since it is more easily measured, the initial reaction rate is determined for a range of different initial substrate concentrations.

An alternative method to determine  $K_m$  and  $V_{\max}$  from experimental data is the direct linear plot (Eisenthal and Cornish-Bowden, 1974; Cornish-Bowden and Eisenthal, 1974). First we write (1.43) in the form

$$V_{\max} = V + \frac{V}{s} K_m, \quad (1.46)$$

and then treat  $V_{\max}$  and  $K_m$  as variables for each experimental measurement of  $V$  and  $s$ . (Recall that typically only the initial substrate concentration and initial velocity are used.) Then a plot of the straight line of  $V_{\max}$  against  $K_m$  can be made. Repeating this for a number of different initial substrate concentrations and velocities gives a family of straight lines, which, in an ideal world free from experimental error, intersect at the single point  $V_{\max}$  and  $K_m$  for that reaction. In reality, experimental error precludes an exact intersection, but  $V_{\max}$  and  $K_m$  can be estimated from the median of the pairwise intersections.

### 1.4.3 Enzyme Inhibition

An enzyme inhibitor is a substance that inhibits the catalytic action of the enzyme. Enzyme inhibition is a common feature of enzyme reactions, and is an important means by which the activity of enzymes is controlled. Inhibitors come in many different types. For example, *irreversible inhibitors*, or *catalytic poisons*, decrease the activity of the enzyme to zero. This is the method of action of cyanide and many nerve gases. For this discussion, we restrict our attention to *competitive* inhibitors and *allosteric* inhibitors.

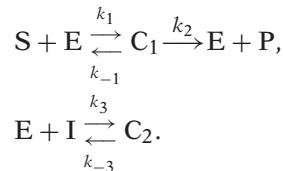
To understand the distinction between competitive and allosteric inhibition, it is useful to keep in mind that an enzyme molecule is usually a large protein, considerably larger than the substrate molecule whose reaction is catalyzed. Embedded in the large enzyme protein are one or more *active sites*, to which the substrate can bind to form the complex. In general, an enzyme catalyzes a single reaction of substrates with similar structures. This is believed to be a steric property of the enzyme that results from the three-dimensional shape of the enzyme allowing it to fit in a “lock-and-key” fashion with a corresponding substrate molecule.

If another molecule has a shape similar enough to that of the substrate molecule, it may also bind to the active site, preventing the binding of a substrate molecule, thus inhibiting the reaction. Because the inhibitor competes with the substrate molecule for the active site, it is called a competitive inhibitor.

However, because the enzyme molecule is large, it often has other binding sites, distinct from the active site, the binding of which affects the activity of the enzyme at the active site. These binding sites are called *allosteric* sites (from the Greek for “another solid”) to emphasize that they are structurally different from the catalytic active sites. They are also called *regulatory sites* to emphasize that the catalytic activity of the protein is regulated by binding at this allosteric site. The ligand (any molecule that binds to a specific site on a protein, from Latin *ligare*, to bind) that binds at the allosteric site is called an *effector* or *modifier*, which, if it increases the activity of the enzyme, is called an allosteric activator, while if it decreases the activity of the enzyme, is called an allosteric inhibitor. The allosteric effect is presumed to arise because of a conformational change of the enzyme, that is, a change in the folding of the polypeptide chain, called an *allosteric transition*.

## Competitive Inhibition

In the simplest example of a competitive inhibitor, the reaction is stopped when the inhibitor is bound to the active site of the enzyme. Thus,



Using the law of mass action we find

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = -k_1 se + k_{-1} c_1, \quad (1.47)$$

$$\frac{di}{dt} = -k_3 ie + k_{-3} c_2, \quad (1.48)$$

$$\frac{dc_1}{dt} = k_1 se - (k_{-1} + k_2) c_1, \quad (1.49)$$

$$\frac{dc_2}{dt} = k_3 ie - k_{-3} c_2. \quad (1.50)$$

where  $s = [S]$ ,  $c_1 = [C_1]$ , and  $c_2 = [C_2]$ . We know that  $e + c_1 + c_2 = e_0$ , so an equation for the dynamics of  $e$  is superfluous. As before, it is not necessary to write an equation for the accumulation of the product. To be systematic, the next step is to introduce dimensionless variables, and identify those reactions that are rapid and equilibrate rapidly to their quasi-steady states. However, from our previous experience (or from a calculation on a piece of scratch paper), we know, assuming the enzyme-to-substrate ratios are small, that the fast equations are those for  $c_1$  and  $c_2$ . Hence, the quasi-steady states are found by (formally) setting  $dc_1/dt = dc_2/dt = 0$  and solving for  $c_1$  and  $c_2$ . Recall that this does *not* mean that  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  are unchanging, rather that they are changing in quasi-steady-state fashion, keeping the right-hand sides of these equations nearly zero. This gives

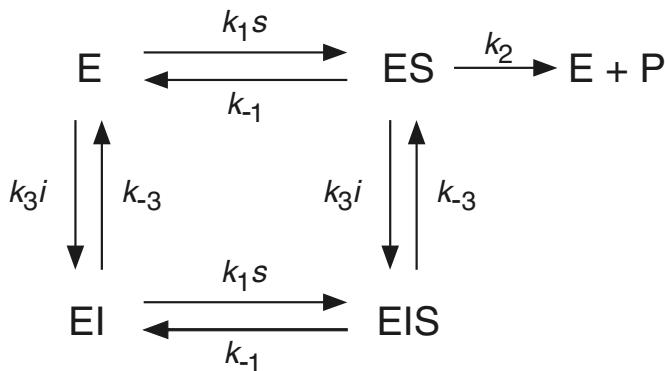
$$c_1 = \frac{K_i e_0 s}{K_m i + K_i s + K_m K_i}, \quad (1.51)$$

$$c_2 = \frac{K_m e_0 i}{K_m i + K_i s + K_m K_i}, \quad (1.52)$$

where  $K_m = \frac{k_{-1} + k_2}{k_1}$ ,  $K_i = k_{-3}/k_3$ . Thus, the velocity of the reaction is

$$V = k_2 c_1 = \frac{k_2 e_0 s K_i}{K_m i + K_i s + K_m K_i} = \frac{V_{\max} s}{s + K_m (1 + i/K_i)}. \quad (1.53)$$

Notice that the effect of the inhibitor is to increase the effective equilibrium constant of the enzyme by the factor  $1 + i/K_i$ , from  $K_m$  to  $K_m(1 + i/K_i)$ , thus decreasing the velocity of reaction, while leaving the maximum velocity unchanged.



**Figure 1.2** Diagram of the possible states of an enzyme with one allosteric and one catalytic binding site.

### Allosteric Inhibitors

If the inhibitor can bind at an allosteric site, we have the possibility that the enzyme could bind both the inhibitor and the substrate simultaneously. In this case, there are four possible binding states for the enzyme, and transitions between them, as demonstrated graphically in Fig. 1.2.

The simplest analysis of this reaction scheme is the equilibrium analysis. (The more complicated quasi-steady-state analysis is left for Exercise 6.) We define  $K_s = k_{-1}/k_1$ ,  $K_i = k_{-3}/k_3$ , and let  $x, y$ , and  $z$  denote, respectively, the concentrations of  $ES$ ,  $EI$  and  $EIS$ . Then, it follows from the law of mass action that at equilibrium (take each of the 4 transitions to be at equilibrium),

$$(e_0 - x - y - z)s - K_s x = 0, \quad (1.54)$$

$$(e_0 - x - y - z)i - K_i y = 0, \quad (1.55)$$

$$ys - K_s z = 0, \quad (1.56)$$

$$xi - K_i z = 0, \quad (1.57)$$

where  $e_0 = e + x + y + z$  is the total amount of enzyme. Notice that this is a linear system of equations for  $x, y$ , and  $z$ . Although there are four equations, one is a linear combination of the other three (the system is of rank three), so that we can determine  $x, y$ , and  $z$  as functions of  $i$  and  $s$ , finding

$$x = \frac{e_0 K_i}{K_i + i} \frac{s}{K_s + s}. \quad (1.58)$$

It follows that the reaction rate,  $V = k_2 x$ , is given by

$$V = \frac{V_{\max}}{1 + i/K_i} \frac{s}{K_s + s}, \quad (1.59)$$

where  $V_{\max} = k_2 e_0$ . Thus, in contrast to the competitive inhibitor, the allosteric inhibitor decreases the maximum velocity of the reaction, while leaving  $K_s$  unchanged.

(The situation is more complicated if the quasi-steady-state approximation is used, and no such simple conclusion follows.)

### 1.4.4 Cooperativity

For many enzymes, the reaction velocity is not a simple hyperbolic curve, as predicted by the Michaelis–Menten model, but often has a sigmoidal character. This can result from cooperative effects, in which the enzyme can bind more than one substrate molecule but the binding of one substrate molecule affects the binding of subsequent ones.

Much of the original theoretical work on cooperative behavior was stimulated by the properties of hemoglobin, and this is often the context in which cooperativity is discussed. A detailed discussion of hemoglobin and oxygen binding is given in Chapter 13, while here cooperativity is discussed in more general terms.

Suppose that an enzyme can bind two substrate molecules, so it can exist in one of three states, namely as a free molecule E, as a complex with one occupied binding site, C<sub>1</sub>, and as a complex with two occupied binding sites, C<sub>2</sub>. The reaction mechanism is then



Using the law of mass action, one can write the rate equations for the 5 concentrations [S], [E], [C<sub>1</sub>], [C<sub>2</sub>], and [P]. However, because the amount of product [P] can be determined by quadrature, and because the total amount of enzyme molecule is conserved, we only need three equations for the three quantities [S], [C<sub>1</sub>], and [C<sub>2</sub>]. These are

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = -k_1 se + k_{-1} c_1 - k_3 s c_1 + k_{-3} c_2, \quad (1.62)$$

$$\frac{dc_1}{dt} = k_1 se - (k_{-1} + k_2) c_1 - k_3 s c_1 + (k_4 + k_{-3}) c_2, \quad (1.63)$$

$$\frac{dc_2}{dt} = k_3 s c_1 - (k_4 + k_{-3}) c_2, \quad (1.64)$$

where  $s = [S]$ ,  $c_1 = [C_1]$ ,  $c_2 = [C_2]$ , and  $e + c_1 + c_2 = e_0$ .

Proceeding as before, we invoke the quasi-steady-state assumption that  $dc_1/dt = dc_2/dt = 0$ , and solve for  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  to get

$$c_1 = \frac{K_2 e_0 s}{K_1 K_2 + K_2 s + s^2}, \quad (1.65)$$

$$c_2 = \frac{e_0 s^2}{K_1 K_2 + K_2 s + s^2}, \quad (1.66)$$

where  $K_1 = \frac{k_{-1}+k_2}{k_1}$  and  $K_2 = \frac{k_4+k_{-3}}{k_3}$ . The reaction velocity is thus given by

$$V = k_2c_1 + k_4c_2 = \frac{(k_2K_2 + k_4s)e_0s}{K_1K_2 + K_2s + s^2}. \quad (1.67)$$

Use of the equilibrium approximation to simplify this reaction scheme gives, as expected, similar results, in which the formula looks the same, but with different definitions of  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  (Exercise 10).

It is instructive to examine two extreme cases. First, if the binding sites act independently and identically, then  $k_1 = 2k_3 = 2k_+$ ,  $2k_{-1} = k_{-3} = 2k_-$  and  $2k_2 = k_4$ , where  $k_+$  and  $k_-$  are the forward and backward reaction rates for the individual binding sites. The factors of 2 occur because two identical binding sites are involved in the reaction, doubling the amount of the reactant. In this case,

$$V = \frac{2k_2e_0(K+s)s}{K^2 + 2Ks + s^2} = 2\frac{k_2e_0s}{K+s}, \quad (1.68)$$

where  $K = \frac{k_-+k_2}{k_+}$  is the  $K_m$  of the individual binding site. As expected, the rate of reaction is exactly twice that for the individual binding site.

In the opposite extreme, suppose that the binding of the first substrate molecule is slow, but that with one site bound, binding of the second is fast (this is large positive cooperativity). This can be modeled by letting  $k_3 \rightarrow \infty$  and  $k_1 \rightarrow 0$ , while keeping  $k_1k_3$  constant, in which case  $K_2 \rightarrow 0$  and  $K_1 \rightarrow \infty$  while  $K_1K_2$  is constant. In this limit, the velocity of the reaction is

$$V = \frac{k_4e_0s^2}{K_m^2 + s^2} = \frac{V_{\max}s^2}{K_m^2 + s^2}, \quad (1.69)$$

where  $K_m^2 = K_1K_2$ , and  $V_{\max} = k_4e_0$ .

In general, if  $n$  substrate molecules can bind to the enzyme, there are  $n$  equilibrium constants,  $K_1$  through  $K_n$ . In the limit as  $K_n \rightarrow 0$  and  $K_1 \rightarrow \infty$  while keeping  $K_1K_n$  fixed, the rate of reaction is

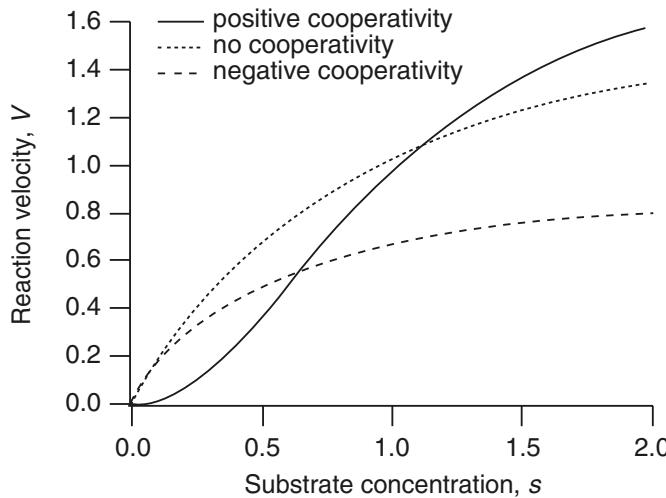
$$V = \frac{V_{\max}s^n}{K_m^n + s^n}, \quad (1.70)$$

where  $K_m^n = \prod_{i=1}^n K_i$ . This rate equation is known as the *Hill equation*. Typically, the Hill equation is used for reactions whose detailed intermediate steps are not known but for which cooperative behavior is suspected. The exponent  $n$  and the parameters  $V_{\max}$  and  $K_m$  are usually determined from experimental data. Observe that

$$n \ln s = n \ln K_m + \ln \left( \frac{V}{V_{\max} - V} \right), \quad (1.71)$$

so that a plot of  $\ln(\frac{V}{V_{\max}-V})$  against  $\ln s$  (called a *Hill plot*) should be a straight line of slope  $n$ . Although the exponent  $n$  suggests an  $n$ -step process (with  $n$  binding sites), in practice it is not unusual for the best fit for  $n$  to be noninteger.

An enzyme can also exhibit negative cooperativity (Koshland and Hamadani, 2002), in which the binding of the first substrate molecule *decreases* the rate of subsequent



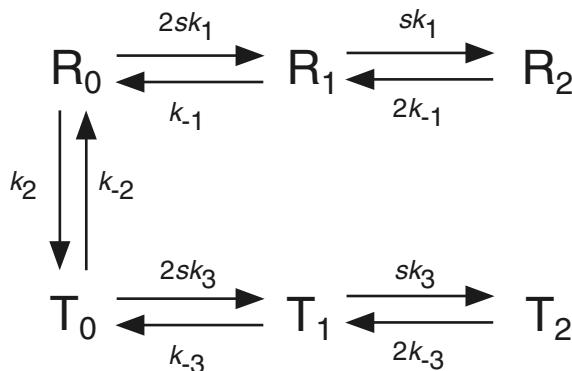
**Figure 1.3** Reaction velocity plotted against substrate concentration, for three different cases. Positive cooperativity,  $K_1 = 1000$ ,  $K_2 = 0.001$ ; independent binding sites,  $K_1 = 0.5$ ,  $K_2 = 2$ ; and negative cooperativity,  $K_1 = 0.5$ ,  $K_2 = 100$ . The other parameters are  $e_0 = 1$ ,  $k_2 = 1$ ,  $k_4 = 2$ . Concentration and time units are arbitrary.

binding. This can be modeled by decreasing  $k_3$ . In Fig. 1.3 we plot the reaction velocity against the substrate concentration for the cases of independent binding sites (no cooperativity), extreme positive cooperativity (the Hill equation), and negative cooperativity. From this figure it can be seen that with positive cooperativity, the reaction velocity is a sigmoidal function of the substrate concentration, while negative cooperativity primarily decreases the overall reaction velocity.

### The Monod–Wyman–Changeux Model

Cooperative effects occur when the binding of one substrate molecule alters the rate of binding of subsequent ones. However, the above models give no explanation of how such alterations in the binding rate occur. The earliest model proposed to account for cooperative effects in terms of the enzyme's conformation was that of Monod, Wyman, and Changeux (1965). Their model is based on the following assumptions about the structure and behavior of enzymes.

1. Cooperative proteins are composed of several identical reacting units, called *protomers*, or subunits, each containing one binding site, that occupy equivalent positions within the protein.
2. The protein has two conformational states, usually denoted by R and T, which differ in their ability to bind ligands.



**Figure 1.4** Diagram of the states of the protein, and the possible transitions, in a six-state Monod–Wyman–Changeux model.

3. If the binding of a ligand to one protomer induces a conformational change in that protomer, an identical conformational change is induced in all protomers. Because of this assumption, Monod–Wyman–Changeux (MWC) models are often called *concerted* models, as each subunit acts in concert with the others.

To illustrate how these assumptions can be quantified, we consider a protein with two binding sites. Thus, the protein can exist in one of six states:  $R_i, i = 0, 1, 2$ , or  $T_i, i = 0, 1, 2$ , where the subscript  $i$  is the number of bound ligands. (In the original model of Monod, Wyman and Changeux,  $R$  denoted a *relaxed* state, while  $T$  denoted a *tense* state.) For simplicity, we also assume that  $R_1$  cannot convert directly to  $T_1$ , or vice versa, and similarly for  $R_2$  and  $T_2$ . The general case is left for Exercise 7. The states of the protein and the allowable transitions are illustrated in Fig. 1.4. As with other enzyme models, we assume that the production rate of product is proportional to the amount of substrate that is bound to the enzyme.

We now assume that all the reactions are in equilibrium. We let a lowercase letter denote a concentration, and thus  $r_i$  and  $t_i$  denote the concentrations of chemical species  $R_i$  and  $T_i$  respectively. Also, as before, we let  $s$  denote the concentration of the substrate. Then, the fraction  $Y$  of occupied sites (also called the *saturation function*) is

$$Y = \frac{r_1 + 2r_2 + t_1 + 2t_2}{2(r_0 + r_1 + r_2 + t_0 + t_1 + t_2)}. \quad (1.72)$$

(This is also proportional to the production rate of product.) Furthermore, with  $K_i = k_{-i}/k_i$ , for  $i = 1, 2, 3$ , we find that

$$r_1 = 2sK_1^{-1}r_0, \quad r_2 = s^2K_1^{-2}r_0, \quad (1.73)$$

$$t_1 = 2sK_3^{-1}t_0, \quad t_2 = s^2K_3^{-2}t_0. \quad (1.74)$$

Substituting these into (1.72) gives

$$Y = \frac{sK_1^{-1}(1 + sK_1^{-1}) + K_2^{-1}[sK_3^{-1}(1 + sK_3^{-1})]}{(1 + sK_1^{-1})^2 + K_2^{-1}(1 + sK_3^{-1})^2}, \quad (1.75)$$

where we have used that  $r_0/t_0 = K_2$ . More generally, if there are  $n$  binding sites, then

$$Y = \frac{sK_1^{-1}(1+sK_1^{-1})^{n-1} + K_2^{-1}[sK_3^{-1}(1+sK_3^{-1})^{n-1}]}{(1+sK_1^{-1})^n + K_2^{-1}(1+sK_3^{-1})^n}. \quad (1.76)$$

In general,  $Y$  is a sigmoidal function of  $s$ .

It is not immediately apparent how cooperative binding kinetics arises from this model. After all, each binding site in the R conformation is identical, as is each binding site in the T conformation. In order to get cooperativity it is necessary that the binding affinity of the R conformation be different from that of the T conformation. In the special case that the binding affinities of the R and T conformations are equal (i.e.,  $K_1 = K_3 = K$ , say) the binding curve (1.76) reduces to

$$Y = \frac{s}{K+s}, \quad (1.77)$$

which is simply noncooperative Michaelis–Menten kinetics.

Suppose that one conformation, T say, binds the substrate with a higher affinity than does R. Then, when the substrate concentration increases,  $T_0$  is pushed through to  $T_1$  faster than  $R_0$  is pushed to  $R_1$ , resulting in an increase in the amount of substrate bound to the T state, and thus increased overall binding of substrate. Hence the cooperative behavior of the model.

If  $K_2 = \infty$ , so that only one conformation exists, then once again the saturation curve reduces to the Michaelis–Menten equation,  $Y = s/(s + K_1)$ . Hence each conformation, by itself, has noncooperative Michaelis–Menten binding kinetics. It is only when the overall substrate binding can be biased to one conformation or the other that cooperativity appears.

Interestingly, MWC models cannot exhibit negative cooperativity. No matter whether  $K_1 > K_3$  or *vice versa*, the binding curve always exhibits positive cooperativity.

### The Koshland–Nemethy–Filmer model

One alternative to the MWC model is that proposed by Koshland, Nemethy and Filmer in 1966 (the KNF model). Instead of requiring that all subunit transitions occur in concert, as in the MWC model, the KNF model assumes that substrate binding to one subunit causes a conformational change in that subunit only, and that this conformational change causes a change in the binding affinity of the neighboring subunits. Thus, in the KNF model, each subunit can be in a different conformational state, and transitions from one state to the other occur sequentially as more substrate is bound. For this reason KNF models are often called *sequential* models. The increased generality of the KNF model allows for the possibility of negative cooperativity, as the binding to one subunit can *decrease* the binding affinity of its neighbors.

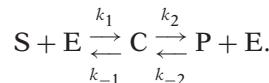
When binding shows positive cooperativity, it has proven difficult to distinguish between the MWC and KNF models on the basis of experimental data. In one of the most intensely studied cooperative mechanisms, that of oxygen binding to hemoglobin,

there is experimental evidence for both models, and the actual mechanism is probably a combination of both.

There are many other models of enzyme cooperativity, and the interested reader is referred to Dixon and Webb (1979) for a comprehensive discussion and comparison of other models in the literature.

### 1.4.5 Reversible Enzyme Reactions

Since all enzyme reactions are reversible, a general understanding of enzyme kinetics must take this reversibility into account. In this case, the reaction scheme is



Proceeding as usual, we let  $e + c = e_0$  and make the quasi-steady-state assumption

$$0 = \frac{dc}{dt} = k_1s(e_0 - c) - (k_{-1} + k_2)c + k_{-2}p(e_0 - c), \quad (1.78)$$

from which it follows that

$$c = \frac{e_0(k_1s + k_{-2}p)}{k_1s + k_{-2}p + k_{-1} + k_2}. \quad (1.79)$$

The reaction velocity,  $V = \frac{dp}{dt} = k_2c - k_{-2}pe$ , can then be calculated to be

$$V = e_0 \frac{k_1k_2s - k_{-1}k_{-2}p}{k_1s + k_{-2}p + k_{-1} + k_2}. \quad (1.80)$$

When  $p$  is small (e.g., if product is continually removed), the reverse reaction is negligible and we get the previous answer (1.43).

In contrast to the irreversible case, the equilibrium and quasi-steady-state assumptions for reversible enzyme kinetics give qualitatively different answers. If we assume that S, E, and C are in fast equilibrium (instead of assuming that C is at quasi-steady state) we get

$$k_1s(e_0 - c) = k_{-1}c, \quad (1.81)$$

from which it follows that

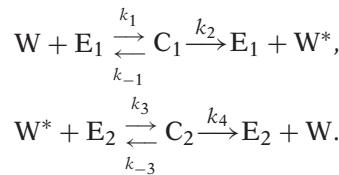
$$V = k_2c - k_{-2}p(e_0 - c) = e_0 \frac{k_1k_2s - k_{-1}k_{-2}p}{k_1s + k_{-1}}. \quad (1.82)$$

Comparing this to (1.80), we see that the quasi-steady-state assumption gives additional terms in the denominator involving the product  $p$ . These differences result from the assumption underlying the fast-equilibrium assumption, that  $k_{-1}$  and  $k_1$  are both substantially larger than  $k_{-2}$  and  $k_2$ , respectively. Which of these approximations is best depends, of course, on the details of the reaction.

Calculation of the equations for a reversible enzyme reaction in which the enzyme has multiple binding sites is left for the exercises (Exercise 11).

### 1.4.6 The Goldbeter–Koshland Function

As is seen in many ways in this book, cooperativity is an important ingredient in the construction of biochemical switches. However, highly sensitive switching behavior requires large Hill coefficients, which would seem to require multiple interacting enzymes or binding sites, making these unlikely to occur. An alternative mechanism by which highly sensitive switching behavior is possible, suggested by Goldbeter and Koshland (1981), uses only two enzymatic transitions. In this model reaction, a substrate can be in one of two forms, say  $W$  and  $W^*$ , and transferred from state  $W$  to  $W^*$  by one enzyme, say  $E_1$ , and transferred from state  $W^*$  to  $W$  by another enzyme, say  $E_2$ . For example,  $W^*$  could be a phosphorylated state of some enzyme,  $E_1$  could be the kinase that phosphorylates  $W$ , and  $E_2$  could be the phosphatase that dephosphorylates  $W^*$ . Numerous reactions of this type are described in Chapter 10, where  $W$  is itself an enzyme whose activity is determined by its phosphorylation state. Thus, the reaction scheme is



Although the full analysis of this reaction scheme is not particularly difficult, a simplified analysis quickly shows the salient features. If we suppose that the enzyme reactions take place at Michaelis–Menten rates, the reaction simplifies to



where

$$r_1 = \frac{V_1 E_1}{K_1 + W}, \quad r_{-1} = \frac{V_2 E_2}{K_2 + W^*}, \quad (1.84)$$

and the concentration of  $W$  is governed by the differential equation

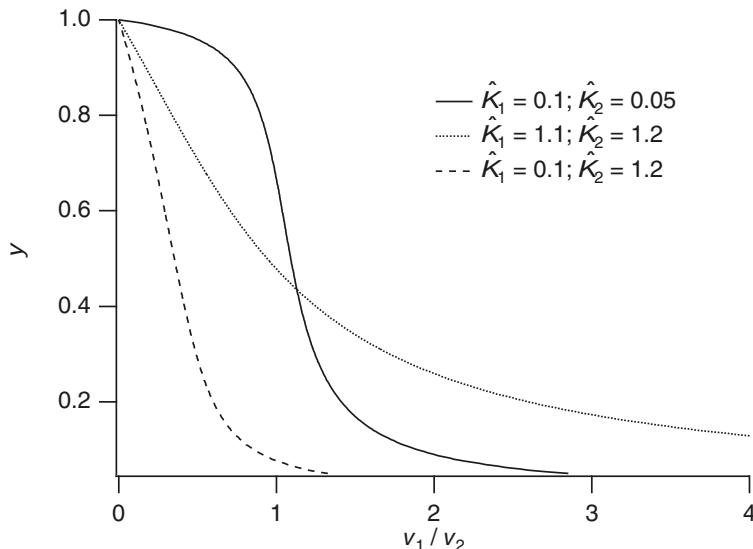
$$\frac{dW}{dt} = r_{-1}(W_t - W) - r_1 W, \quad (1.85)$$

where  $W + W^* = W_t$ . In steady state, the forward and backward reaction rates are the same, leading to the equation

$$\frac{V_1 E_1}{V_2 E_2} = \frac{W^*(K_1 + W)}{W(K_2 + W^*)}. \quad (1.86)$$

This can be rewritten as

$$\frac{v_1}{v_2} = \frac{(1-y)(\hat{K}_1 + y)}{y(\hat{K}_2 + 1-y)}, \quad (1.87)$$



**Figure 1.5** Plots of  $y$  as a function of the ratio  $\frac{v_1}{v_2}$ .

where  $y = \frac{W}{W_t}$ ,  $\hat{K}_i = K_i/W_t$ ,  $v_i = V_i E_i$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ . Plots of  $y$  as a function of the ratio  $\frac{v_1}{v_2}$  are easy to draw. One simply plots  $\frac{v_1}{v_2}$  as a function of  $y$  and then reverses the axes. Examples of these are shown in Fig. 1.5. As is seen in this figure, the ratio  $\frac{v_1}{v_2}$  controls the relative abundance of  $y$  in a switch-like fashion. In particular, the switch becomes quite sharp when the equilibrium constants  $\hat{K}_1$  and  $\hat{K}_2$  are small compared to 1. In other words, if the enzyme reactions are running at highly saturated levels, then there is sensitive switch-like dependence on the enzyme velocity ratio  $\frac{v_1}{v_2}$ .

Equation (1.87) is a quadratic polynomial in  $y$ , with explicit solution

$$y = \frac{\beta - \sqrt{\beta^2 - 4\alpha\gamma}}{2\alpha}, \quad (1.88)$$

where

$$\alpha = \frac{v_1}{v_2} - 1, \quad (1.89)$$

$$\beta = (1 - \hat{K}_1) - \frac{v_1}{v_2}(\hat{K}_2 + 1), \quad (1.90)$$

$$\gamma = \hat{K}_1. \quad (1.91)$$

The function

$$G(v_1, v_2, \hat{K}_1, \hat{K}_2) = \frac{\beta - \sqrt{\beta^2 - 4\alpha\gamma}}{2\alpha} \quad (1.92)$$

is called the *Goldbeter–Koshland function*. The Goldbeter–Koshland function is often used in descriptions of biochemical networks (Chapter 10). For example,  $V_1$  and  $V_2$

could depend on the concentration of another enzyme,  $\tilde{E}$  say, leading to switch-like regulation of the concentration of  $W$  as a function of the concentration of  $\tilde{E}$ . In this way, networks of biochemical reactions can be constructed in which some of the components are switched on or switched off, relatively abruptly, by other components.

## 1.5 Glycolysis and Glycolytic Oscillations

Metabolism is the process of extracting useful energy from chemical bonds. A metabolic pathway is the sequence of enzymatic reactions that take place in order to transfer chemical energy from one form to another. The common carrier of energy in the cell is the chemical adenosine triphosphate (ATP). ATP is formed by the addition of an inorganic phosphate group ( $\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$ ) to adenosine diphosphate (ADP), or by the addition of two inorganic phosphate groups to adenosine monophosphate (AMP). The process of adding an inorganic phosphate group to a molecule is called *phosphorylation*. Since the three phosphate groups on ATP carry negative charges, considerable energy is required to overcome the natural repulsion of like-charged phosphates as additional groups are added to AMP. Thus, the hydrolysis (the cleavage of a bond by water) of ATP to ADP releases large amounts of energy.

Energy to perform chemical work is made available to the cell by the oxidation of glucose to carbon dioxide and water, with a net release of energy. The overall chemical reaction for the oxidation of glucose can be written as



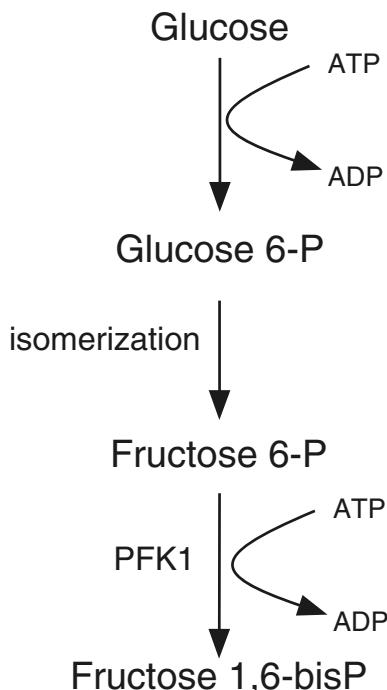
but of course, this is not an elementary reaction. Instead, this reaction takes place in a series of enzymatic reactions, with three major reaction stages, *glycolysis*, the *Krebs cycle*, and the *electron transport* (or *cytochrome*) system.

The oxidation of glucose is associated with a large negative free energy,  $\Delta G^0 = -2878.41 \text{ kJ/mol}$ , some of which is dissipated as heat. However, in living cells much of this free energy is stored in ATP, with one molecule of glucose resulting in 38 molecules of ATP.

Glycolysis involves 11 elementary reaction steps, each of which is an enzymatic reaction. Here we consider a simplified model of the initial steps. (To understand more of the labyrinthine complexity of glycolysis, interested readers are encouraged to consult a specialized book on biochemistry, such as Stryer, 1988.) The first three steps of glycolysis are (Fig. 1.6)

1. the phosphorylation of glucose to glucose 6-phosphate;
2. the isomerization of glucose 6-phosphate to fructose 6-phosphate; and
3. the phosphorylation of fructose 6-phosphate to fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.

The direct reaction of glucose with phosphate to form glucose 6-phosphate has a relatively large positive standard free energy change ( $\Delta G^0 = 14.3 \text{ kJ/mol}$ ) and so



**Figure 1.6** The first three reactions in the glycolytic pathway.

does not occur significantly under physiological conditions. However, the first step of metabolism is coupled with the hydrolysis of ATP to ADP (catalyzed by the enzyme hexokinase), giving this step a net negative standard free energy change and making the reaction strongly spontaneous. This feature turns out to be important for the efficient operation of glucose membrane transporters, which are described in the next chapter.

The second step of glycolysis has a relatively small positive standard free energy change ( $\Delta G^0 = 1.7 \text{ kJ/mol}$ ), with an equilibrium constant of 0.5. This means that significant amounts of product are formed under normal conditions.

The third step is, like the first step, energetically unfavorable, were it not coupled with the hydrolysis of ATP. However, the net standard free energy change ( $\Delta G^0 = -14.2 \text{ kJ/mol}$ ) means that not only is this reaction strongly favored, but also that it augments the reaction in the second step by depleting the product of the second step.

This third reaction is catalyzed by the enzyme phosphofructokinase (PFK1). PFK1 is an example of an allosteric enzyme as it is allosterically inhibited by ATP. Note that ATP is both a substrate of PFK1, binding at a catalytic site, and an allosteric inhibitor, binding at a regulatory site. The inhibition due to ATP is removed by AMP, and thus the activity of PFK1 increases as the ratio of ATP to AMP decreases. This feedback enables PFK1 to regulate the rate of glycolysis based on the availability of ATP. If ATP levels fall, PFK1 activity increases thereby increasing the rate of production of ATP, whereas, if ATP levels become high, PFK1 activity drops shutting down the production of ATP.

As PFK1 phosphorylates fructose 6-P, ATP is converted to ADP. ADP, in turn, is converted back to ATP and AMP by the reaction



which is catalyzed by the enzyme adenylate kinase. Since there is normally little AMP in cells, the conversion of ADP to ATP and AMP serves to significantly decrease the ATP/AMP ratio, thus activating PFK1. This is an example of a positive feedback loop; the greater the activity of PFK1, the lower the ATP/AMP ratio, thus further increasing PFK1 activity.

It was discovered in 1980 that in some cell types, another important allosteric activator of PFK1 is fructose 2,6-bisphosphate (Stryer, 1988), which is formed from fructose 6-phosphate in a reaction catalyzed by phosphofructokinase 2 (PFK2), a different enzyme from phosphofructokinase (PFK1) (you were given fair warning about the labyrinthine nature of this process!). Of particular significance is that an abundance of fructose 6-phosphate leads to a corresponding abundance of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate, and thus a corresponding increase in the activity of PFK1. This is an example of a negative feedback loop, where an increase in the substrate concentration leads to a greater rate of substrate reaction and consumption. Clearly, PFK1 activity is controlled by an intricate system of reactions, the collective behavior of which is not obvious *a priori*.

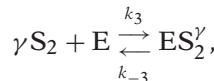
Under certain conditions the rate of glycolysis is known to be oscillatory, or even chaotic (Nielsen et al., 1997). This biochemical oscillator has been known and studied experimentally for some time. For example, Hess and Boiteux (1973) devised a flow reactor containing yeast cells into which a controlled amount of substrate (either glucose or fructose) was continuously added. They measured the pH and fluorescence of the reactants, thereby monitoring the glycolytic activity, and they found ranges of continuous input under which glycolysis was periodic.

Interestingly, the oscillatory behavior is different in intact yeast cells and in yeast extracts. In intact cells the oscillations are sinusoidal in shape, and there is strong evidence that they occur close to a Hopf bifurcation (Danø et al., 1999). In yeast extract the oscillations are of relaxation type, with widely differing time scales (Madsen et al., 2005).

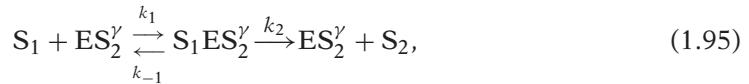
Feedback on PFK is one, but not the only, mechanism that has been proposed as causing glycolytic oscillations. For example, hexose transport kinetics and autocatalysis of ATP have both been proposed as possible mechanisms (Madsen et al., 2005), while some authors have claimed that the oscillations arise as part of the entire network of reactions, with no single feedback being of paramount importance (Bier et al., 1996; Reijenga et al., 2002). Here we focus only on PFK regulation as the oscillatory mechanism.

A mathematical model describing glycolytic oscillations was proposed by Sel'kov (1968) and later modified by Goldbeter and Lefever (1972). It is designed to capture only the positive feedback of ADP on PFK1 activity. In the Sel'kov model, PFK1 is inactive

in its unbound state but is activated by binding with several ADP molecules. Note that, for simplicity, the model does not take into account the conversion of ADP to AMP and ATP, but assumes that ADP activates PFK1 directly, since the overall effect is similar. In the active state, the enzyme catalyzes the production of ADP from ATP as fructose-6-P is phosphorylated. Sel'kov's reaction scheme for this process is as follows: PFK1 (denoted by E) is activated or deactivated by binding or unbinding with  $\gamma$  molecules of ADP (denoted by  $S_2$ )



and ATP (denoted  $S_1$ ) can bind with the activated form of enzyme to produce a product molecule of ADP. In addition, there is assumed to be a steady supply rate of  $S_1$ , while product  $S_2$  is irreversibly removed. Thus,



Note that (1.95) is an enzymatic reaction of exactly Michaelis-Menten form so we should expect a similar reduction of the governing equations.

Applying the law of mass action to the Sel'kov kinetic scheme, we find five differential equations for the production of the five species  $s_1 = [S_1]$ ,  $s_2 = [S_2]$ ,  $e = [E]$ ,  $x_1 = [ES_2^\gamma]$ ,  $x_2 = [S_1ES_2^\gamma]$ :

$$\frac{ds_1}{dt} = v_1 - k_1 s_1 x_1 + k_{-1} x_2, \quad (1.97)$$

$$\frac{ds_2}{dt} = k_2 x_2 - \gamma k_3 s_2^\gamma e + \gamma k_{-3} x_1 - v_2 s_2, \quad (1.98)$$

$$\frac{dx_1}{dt} = -k_1 s_1 x_1 + (k_{-1} + k_2) x_2 + k_3 s_2^\gamma e - k_{-3} x_1, \quad (1.99)$$

$$\frac{dx_2}{dt} = k_1 s_1 x_1 - (k_{-1} + k_2) x_2. \quad (1.100)$$

The fifth differential equation is not necessary, because the total available enzyme is conserved,  $e + x_1 + x_2 = e_0$ . Now we introduce dimensionless variables  $\sigma_1 = \frac{k_1 s_1}{k_2 + k_{-1}}$ ,  $\sigma_2 = (\frac{k_3}{k_{-3}})^{1/\gamma} s_2$ ,  $u_1 = x_1/e_0$ ,  $u_2 = x_2/e_0$ ,  $t = \frac{k_2 + k_{-1}}{e_0 k_1 k_2} \tau$  and find

$$\frac{d\sigma_1}{d\tau} = v - \frac{k_2 + k_{-1}}{k_2} u_1 \sigma_1 + \frac{k_{-1}}{k_2} u_2, \quad (1.101)$$

$$\frac{d\sigma_2}{d\tau} = \alpha \left[ u_2 - \frac{\gamma k_{-3}}{k_2} \sigma_2^\gamma (1 - u_1 - u_2) + \frac{\gamma k_{-3}}{k_2} u_1 \right] - \eta \sigma_2, \quad (1.102)$$

$$\epsilon \frac{du_1}{d\tau} = u_2 - \sigma_1 u_1 + \frac{k_{-3}}{k_2 + k_{-1}} [\sigma_2^\gamma (1 - u_1 - u_2) - u_1], \quad (1.103)$$

$$\epsilon \frac{du_2}{d\tau} = \sigma_1 u_1 - u_2, \quad (1.104)$$

where  $\epsilon = \frac{e_0 k_1 k_2}{(k_2 + k_{-1})^2}$ ,  $v = \frac{v_1}{k_2 e_0}$ ,  $\eta = \frac{v_2(k_2 + k_{-1})}{k_1 k_2 e_0}$ ,  $\alpha = \frac{k_2 + k_{-1}}{k_1} (\frac{k_3}{k_{-3}})^{1/\gamma}$ . If we assume that  $\epsilon$  is a small number, then both  $u_1$  and  $u_2$  are fast variables and can be set to their quasi-steady values,

$$u_1 = \frac{\sigma_2^\gamma}{\sigma_2^\gamma \sigma_1 + \sigma_2^\gamma + 1}, \quad (1.105)$$

$$u_2 = \frac{\sigma_1 \sigma_2^\gamma}{\sigma_2^\gamma \sigma_1 + \sigma_2^\gamma + 1} = f(\sigma_1, \sigma_2), \quad (1.106)$$

and with these quasi-steady values, the evolution of  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  is governed by

$$\frac{d\sigma_1}{d\tau} = v - f(\sigma_1, \sigma_2), \quad (1.107)$$

$$\frac{d\sigma_2}{d\tau} = \alpha f(\sigma_1, \sigma_2) - \eta \sigma_2. \quad (1.108)$$

The goal of the following analysis is to demonstrate that this system of equations has oscillatory solutions for some range of the supply rate  $v$ . First observe that because of saturation, the function  $f(\sigma_1, \sigma_2)$  is bounded by 1. Thus, if  $v > 1$ , the solutions of the differential equations are not bounded. For this reason we consider only  $0 < v < 1$ . The nullclines of the flow are given by the equations

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{v}{1-v} \frac{1 + \sigma_2^\gamma}{\sigma_2^\gamma} \quad \left( \frac{d\sigma_1}{d\tau} = 0 \right), \quad (1.109)$$

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{1 + \sigma_2^\gamma}{\sigma_2^{\gamma-1}(p - \sigma_2)} \quad \left( \frac{d\sigma_2}{d\tau} = 0 \right), \quad (1.110)$$

where  $p = \alpha/\eta$ . These two nullclines are shown plotted as dotted and dashed curves respectively in Fig. 1.7.

The steady-state solution is unique and satisfies

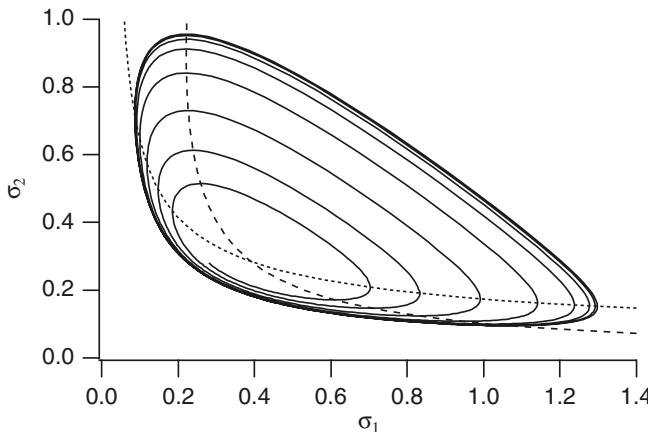
$$\sigma_2 = p v, \quad (1.111)$$

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{v(1 + \sigma_2^\gamma)}{(1 - v)\sigma_2^\gamma}. \quad (1.112)$$

The stability of the steady solution is found by linearizing the differential equations about the steady-state solution and examining the eigenvalues of the linearized system. The linearized system has the form

$$\frac{d\tilde{\sigma}_1}{d\tau} = -f_1 \tilde{\sigma}_1 - f_2 \tilde{\sigma}_2, \quad (1.113)$$

$$\frac{d\tilde{\sigma}_2}{d\tau} = \alpha f_1 \tilde{\sigma}_1 + (\alpha f_2 - \eta) \tilde{\sigma}_2, \quad (1.114)$$



**Figure 1.7** Phase portrait of the Sel'kov glycolysis model with  $v = 0.0285$ ,  $\eta = 0.1$ ,  $\alpha = 1.0$ , and  $\gamma = 2$ . Dotted curve:  $\frac{d\sigma_1}{d\tau} = 0$ . Dashed curve:  $\frac{d\sigma_2}{d\tau} = 0$ .

where  $f_j = \frac{\partial f}{\partial \sigma_j}$ ,  $j = 1, 2$ , evaluated at the steady-state solution, and where  $\tilde{\sigma}_i$  denotes the deviation from the steady-state value of  $\sigma_i$ . The characteristic equation for the eigenvalues  $\lambda$  of the linear system (1.113)–(1.114) is

$$\lambda^2 - (\alpha f_2 - \eta - f_1)\lambda + f_1\eta = 0. \quad (1.115)$$

Since  $f_1$  is always positive, the stability of the linear system is determined by the sign of  $H = \alpha f_2 - \eta - f_1$ , being stable if  $H < 0$  and unstable if  $H > 0$ . Changes of stability, if they exist, occur at  $H = 0$ , and are Hopf bifurcations to periodic solutions with approximate frequency  $\omega = \sqrt{f_1\eta}$ .

The function  $H(v)$  is given by

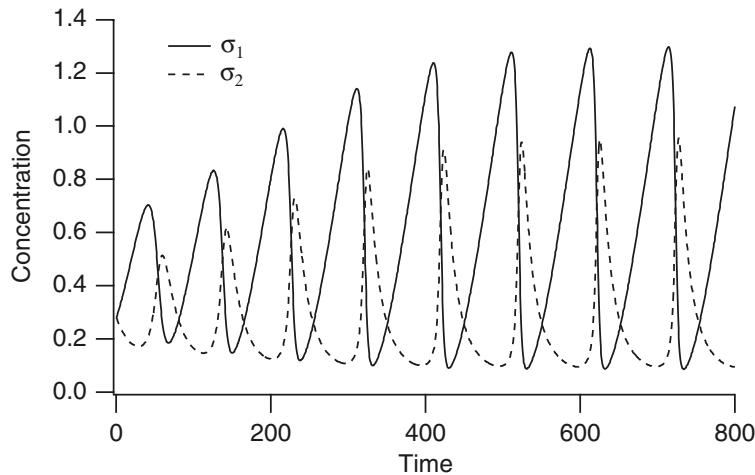
$$H(v) = \frac{(1-v)}{(1+y)}(\eta\gamma + (v-1)y) - \eta, \quad (1.116)$$

$$y = (pv)^\gamma. \quad (1.117)$$

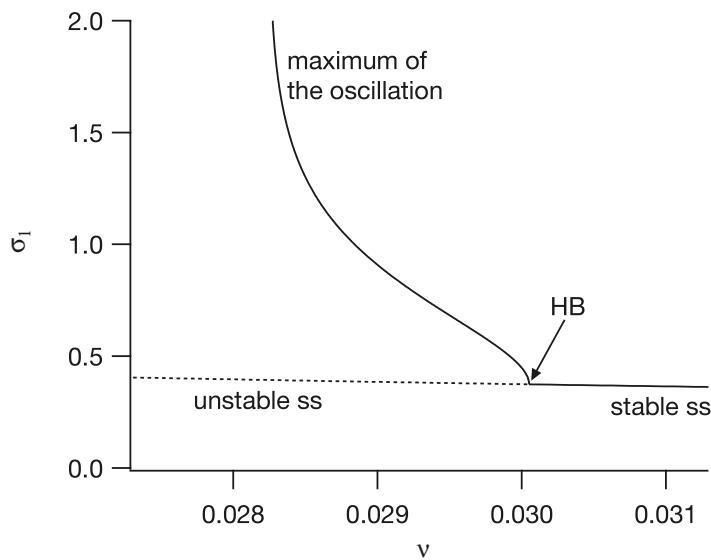
Clearly,  $H(0) = \eta(\gamma - 1)$ ,  $H(1) = -\eta$ , so for  $\gamma > 1$ , there must be at least one Hopf bifurcation point, below which the steady solution is unstable. Additional computations show that this Hopf bifurcation is supercritical, so that for  $v$  slightly below the bifurcation point, there is a stable periodic orbit.

An example of this periodic orbit is shown in Fig. 1.7 with coefficients  $v = 0.0285$ ,  $\eta = 0.1$ ,  $\alpha = 1.0$ , and  $\gamma = 2$ . The evolution of  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  are shown plotted as functions of time in Fig. 1.8.

A periodic orbit exists only in a very small region of parameter space, rapidly expanding until it becomes infinitely large in amplitude as  $v$  decreases. For still smaller values of  $v$ , there are no stable trajectories. This information is summarized in a bifurcation diagram (Fig. 1.9), where we plot the steady state,  $\sigma_1$ , against one of the



**Figure 1.8** Evolution of  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  for the Sel'kov glycolysis model toward a periodic solution. Parameters are the same as in Fig. 1.7.



**Figure 1.9** Bifurcation diagram for the Sel'kov glycolysis model.

parameters, in this case  $v$ . Thus,  $v$  is called the *bifurcation parameter*. The dashed line labeled “unstable ss” is the curve of unstable steady states as a function of  $v$ , while the solid line labeled “stable ss” is the curve of stable steady states as a function of  $v$ . As is typical in such bifurcation diagrams, we also include the maximum of the oscillation (when it exists) as a function of  $v$ . We could equally have chosen to plot the minimum

of the oscillation (or both the maximum and the minimum). Since the oscillation is stable, the maximum of the oscillation is plotted with a solid line.

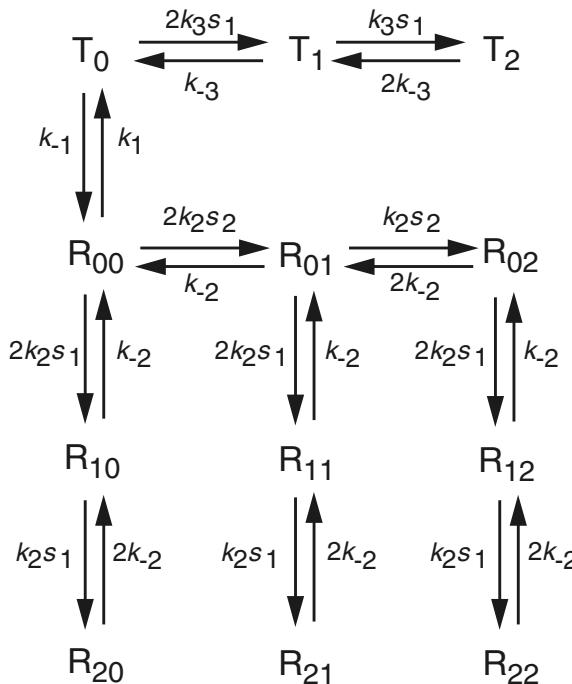
From the bifurcation diagram we see that the stable branch of oscillations originates at a supercritical Hopf bifurcation (labeled HB), and that the periodic orbits only exist for a narrow range of values of  $\nu$ . The question of how this branch of periodic orbits terminates is not important for the discussion here, so we ignore this important point for now.

We use bifurcation diagrams throughout this book, and many are considerably more complicated than that shown in Fig. 1.9. Readers who are unfamiliar with the basic theory of nonlinear bifurcations, and their representation in bifurcation diagrams, are urged to consult an elementary book such as Strogatz (1994).

While the Sel'kov model has certain features that are qualitatively correct, it fails to agree with the experimental results at a number of points. Hess and Boiteux (1973) report that for high and low substrate injection rates, there is a stable steady-state solution. There are two Hopf bifurcation points, one at the flow rate of 20 mM/hr and another at 160 mM/hr. The period of oscillation at the low flow rate is about 8 minutes and decreases as a function of flow rate to about 3 minutes at the upper Hopf bifurcation point. In contrast, the Sel'kov model has but one Hopf bifurcation point.

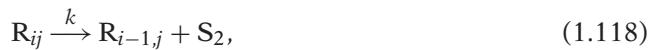
To reproduce these additional experimental features we consider a more detailed model of the reaction. In 1972, Goldbeter and Lefever proposed a model of Monod–Wyman–Changeux type that provided a more accurate description of the oscillations. More recently, by fitting a simpler model to experimental data on PFK1 kinetics in skeletal muscle, Smolen (1995) has shown that this level of complexity is not necessary; his model assumes that PFK1 consists of four independent, identical subunits, and reproduces the observed oscillations well. Despite this, we describe only the Goldbeter–Lefever model in detail, as it provides an excellent example of the use of Monod–Wyman–Changeux models.

In the Goldbeter–Lefever model of the phosphorylation of fructose-6-P, the enzyme PFK1 is assumed to be a dimer that exists in two states, an active state R and an inactive state T. The substrate,  $S_1$ , can bind to both forms, but the product,  $S_2$ , which is an activator, or positive effector, of the enzyme, binds only to the active form. The enzymatic forms of R carrying substrate decompose irreversibly to yield the product ADP. In addition, substrate is supplied to the system at a constant rate, while product is removed at a rate proportional to its concentration. The reaction scheme for this is as follows: let  $T_j$  represent the inactive T form of the enzyme bound to  $j$  molecules of substrate and let  $R_{ij}$  represent the active form R of the enzyme bound to  $i$  substrate molecules and  $j$  product molecules. This gives the reaction diagram shown in Fig. 1.10. In this system, the substrate  $S_1$  holds the enzyme in the inactive state by binding with  $T_0$  to produce  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ , while product  $S_2$  holds the enzyme in the active state by binding with  $R_{00}$  to produce  $R_{01}$  and binding with  $R_{01}$  to produce  $R_{02}$ . There is a factor of two in the rates of reaction because a dimer with two available binding sites reacts like twice the same amount of monomer.



**Figure 1.10** Possible states of the enzyme PFK1 in the Goldbeter–Lefever model of glycolytic oscillations.

In addition to the reactions shown in Fig. 1.10, the enzyme complex can disassociate to produce product via the reaction



provided  $i \geq 1$ .

The analysis of this reaction scheme is substantially more complicated than that of the Sel'kov scheme, although the idea is the same. We use the law of mass action to write differential equations for the fourteen chemical species. For example, the equation for  $s_1 = [S_1]$  is

$$\frac{ds_1}{dt} = v_1 - F, \quad (1.119)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} F = & k_{-2}(r_{10} + r_{11} + r_{12}) + 2k_{-2}(r_{20} + r_{21} + r_{22}) \\ & - 2k_2s_1(r_{00} + r_{01} + r_{02}) - k_2s_1(r_{10} + r_{11} + r_{12}) \\ & - 2k_3s_1t_0 - k_3s_1t_1 + k_{-3}t_1 + 2k_{-3}t_2, \end{aligned} \quad (1.120)$$

and the equation for  $r_{00} = [R_{00}]$  is

$$\frac{dr_{00}}{dt} = -(k_1 + 2k_2s_1 + 2k_2s_2)r_{00} + (k_{-2} + k)r_{10} + k_{-2}r_{01} + k_{-1}t_0. \quad (1.121)$$

We then assume that all twelve of the intermediates are in quasi-steady state. This leads to a 12 by 12 linear system of equations, which, if we take the total amount of enzyme to be  $e_0$ , can be solved. We substitute this solution into the differential equations for  $s_1$  and  $s_2$  with the result that

$$\frac{ds_1}{dt} = v_1 - F(s_1, s_2), \quad (1.122)$$

$$\frac{ds_2}{dt} = F(s_1, s_2) - v_2 s_2, \quad (1.123)$$

where

$$F(s_1, s_2) = \left( \frac{2k_2 k_{-1} k e_0}{k + k_{-2}} \right) \left( \frac{s_1 \left( 1 + \frac{k_2}{k+k_{-2}} s_1 \right) (s_2 + K_2)^2}{K_2^2 k_1 \left( \frac{k_3}{k_{-3}} s_1 + 1 \right)^2 + k_{-1} \left( 1 + \frac{k_2}{k+k_{-2}} s_1 \right)^2 (K_2 + s_2)^2} \right), \quad (1.124)$$

where  $K_2 = \frac{k_{-2}}{k_2}$ . Now we introduce dimensionless variables  $\sigma_1 = \frac{s_1}{K_2}$ ,  $\sigma_2 = \frac{s_2}{K_2}$ ,  $t = \frac{\tau}{\tau_c}$  and parameters  $v = \frac{k_2 v_1}{k_{-2} \tau_c}$ ,  $\eta = \frac{v_2}{\tau_c}$ , where  $\tau_c = \frac{2k_2 k_{-1} k e_0}{k_1 (k+k_{-2})}$ , and arrive at the system (1.107)–(1.108), but with a different function  $f(\sigma_1, \sigma_2)$ , and with  $\alpha = 1$ . If, in addition, we assume that

1. the substrate does not bind to the T form ( $k_3 = 0$ , T is completely inactive),
2.  $T_0$  is preferred over  $R_{00}$  ( $k_1 \gg k_{-1}$ ), and
3. if the substrate  $S_1$  binds to the R form, then formation of product  $S_2$  is preferred to dissociation ( $k \gg k_{-2}$ ),

then we can simplify the equations substantially to obtain

$$f(\sigma_1, \sigma_2) = \sigma_1 (1 + \sigma_2)^2. \quad (1.125)$$

The nullclines for this system of equations are somewhat different from the Sel'kov system, being

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{v}{(1 + \sigma_2)^2} \quad \left( \frac{d\sigma_1}{d\tau} = 0 \right), \quad (1.126)$$

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{\eta \sigma_2}{(1 + \sigma_2)^2} \quad \left( \frac{d\sigma_2}{d\tau} = 0 \right), \quad (1.127)$$

and the unique steady-state solution is given by

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{v}{(1 + \sigma_2)^2}, \quad (1.128)$$

$$\sigma_2 = \frac{v}{\eta}. \quad (1.129)$$

The stability of the steady-state solution is again determined by the characteristic equation (1.115), and the sign of the real part of the eigenvalues is the same as the sign of

$$H = f_2 - f_1 - \eta = 2\sigma_1(1 + \sigma_2) - (1 + \sigma_2)^2 - \eta, \quad (1.130)$$

evaluated at the steady state (1.126)–(1.127). Equation (1.130) can be written as the cubic polynomial

$$\frac{1}{\eta}y^3 - y + 2 = 0, \quad y = 1 + \frac{\nu}{\eta}. \quad (1.131)$$

For  $\eta$  sufficiently large, the polynomial (1.131) has two roots greater than 2, say,  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ . Recall that  $\nu$  is the nondimensional flow rate of substrate ATP. To make some correspondence with the experimental data, we assume that the flow rate  $\nu$  is proportional to the experimental supply rate of glucose. This is not strictly correct, although ATP is produced at about the same rate that glucose is supplied. Accepting this caveat, we see that to match experimental data, we require

$$\frac{y_2 - 1}{y_1 - 1} = \frac{\nu_2}{\nu_1} = \frac{160}{20} = 8. \quad (1.132)$$

Requiring (1.131) to hold at  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  and requiring (1.132) to hold as well, we find numerical values

$$y_1 = 2.08, \quad y_2 = 9.61, \quad \eta = 116.7, \quad (1.133)$$

corresponding to  $\nu_1 = 126$  and  $\nu_2 = 1005$ .

At the Hopf bifurcation point, the period of oscillation is

$$T_i = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_i} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{\eta}(1 + \sigma_2)} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{\eta}y_i}. \quad (1.134)$$

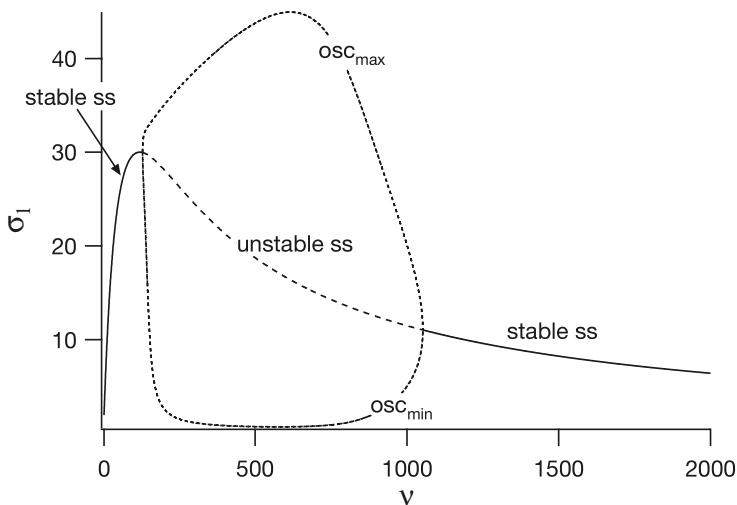
For the numbers (1.133), we obtain a ratio of periods  $T_1/T_2 = 4.6$ , which is acceptably close to the experimentally observed ratio  $T_1/T_2 = 2.7$ .

The behavior of the solution as a function of the parameter  $\nu$  is summarized in the bifurcation diagram, Fig. 1.11, shown here for  $\eta = 120$ . The steady-state solution is stable below  $\eta = 129$  and above  $\eta = 1052$ . Between these values of  $\eta$  the steady-state solution is unstable, but there is a branch of stable periodic solutions which terminates and collapses into the steady-state solution at the two points where the stability changes, the Hopf bifurcation points.

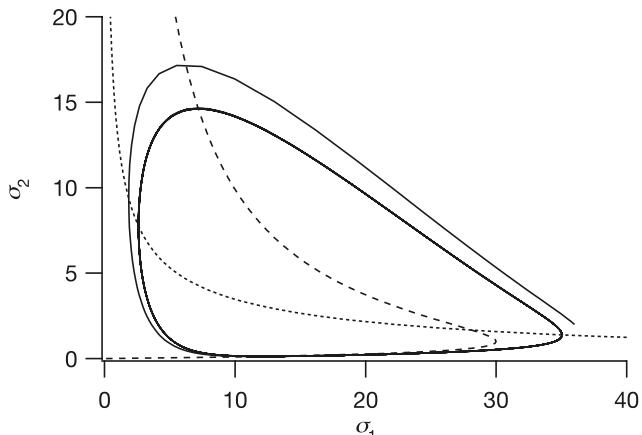
A typical phase portrait for the periodic solution that exists between the Hopf bifurcation points is shown in Fig. 1.12, and the concentrations of the two species are shown as functions of time in Fig. 1.13.

## 1.6 Appendix: Math Background

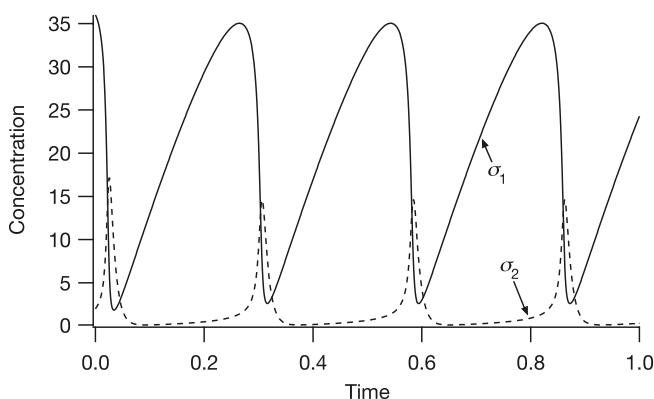
It is certain that some of the mathematical concepts and tools that we routinely invoke here are not familiar to all of our readers. In this first chapter alone, we have used nondimensionalization, phase-plane analysis, linear stability analysis, bifurcation theory, and asymptotic analysis, all the while assuming that these are familiar to the reader.



**Figure 1.11** Bifurcation diagram for the reduced Goldbeter–Lefever glycolysis model, with  $\eta = 120$ .



**Figure 1.12** Phase portrait of the Goldbeter–Lefever model with  $\nu = 200$ ,  $\eta = 120$ . Dotted curve:  $\frac{d\sigma_1}{d\tau} = 0$ . Dashed curve:  $\frac{d\sigma_2}{d\tau} = 0$ .



**Figure 1.13** Solution of the Goldbeter–Lefever model with  $\nu = 200$ ,  $\eta = 120$ .

The purpose of this appendix is to give a brief guide to those techniques that are a basic part of the applied mathematician's toolbox.

### 1.6.1 Basic Techniques

In any problem, there are a number of parameters that are dictated by the problem. However, it often happens that not all parameter variations are *independent*; that is, different variations in different parameters may lead to identical changes in the behavior of the model. Second, there may be parameters whose influence on a behavior is negligible and can be safely ignored for a given context.

The way to identify independent parameters and to determine their relative magnitudes is to nondimensionalize the problem. Unfortunately, there is not a unique algorithm for nondimensionalization; nondimensionalization is as much art as it is science.

There are, however, rules of thumb to apply. In any system of equations, there are a number of independent variables (time, space, etc.), dependent variables (concentrations, etc.) and parameters (rates of reaction, sizes of containers, etc.). Nondimensionalization begins by rescaling the independent and dependent variables by "typical" units, rendering them thereby dimensionless. One goal may be to ensure that the dimensionless variables remain of a fixed order of magnitude, not becoming too large or negligibly small. This usually requires some a priori knowledge about the solution, as it can be difficult to choose typical scales unless something is already known about typical solutions. Time and space scales can be vastly different depending on the context.

Once this selection of scales has been made, the governing equations are written in terms of the rescaled variables and dimensionless combinations of the remaining parameters are identified. The number of remaining free dimensionless parameters is usually less than the original number of physical parameters. The primary difficulty (at least to understand and apply the process) is that there is not necessarily a single way to scale and nondimensionalize the equations. Some scalings may highlight certain features of the solution, while other scalings may emphasize others. Nonetheless, nondimensionalization often (but not always) provides a good starting point for the analysis of a model system.

An excellent discussion of scaling and nondimensionalization can be found in Lin and Segel (1988, Chapter 6). A great deal of more advanced work has also been done on this subject, particularly its application to the quasi-steady-state approximation, by Segel and his collaborators (Segel, 1988; Segel and Slemrod, 1989; Segel and Perelson, 1992; Segel and Goldbeter, 1994; Borghans et al., 1996; see also Frenzen and Maini, 1988).

Phase-plane analysis and linear stability analysis are standard fare in introductory courses on differential equations. A nice introduction to these topics for the biologically inclined can be found in Edelstein-Keshet (1988, Chapter 5) or Braun (1993, Chapter 4). A large number of books discuss the qualitative theory of differential equations,

for example, Boyce and Diprima (1997), or at a more advanced level, Hale and Koçak (1991), or Hirsch and Smale (1974).

## Bifurcation Theory

Bifurcation theory is a topic that is gradually finding its way into introductory literature. The most important terms to understand are those of *steady-state* bifurcations, *Hopf* bifurcations, *homoclinic* bifurcations, and *saddle-node* bifurcations, all of which appear in this book. An excellent introduction to these concepts is found in Strogatz (1994, Chapters 3, 6, 7, 8), and an elementary treatment, with particular application to biological systems, is given by Beuter et al. (2003, Chapters 2, 3). More advanced treatments include those in Guckenheimer and Holmes (1983), Arnold (1983) or Wiggins (2003).

One way to summarize the behavior of the model is with a bifurcation diagram (examples of which are shown in Figs. 1.9 and 1.11), which shows how certain features of the model, such as steady states or limit cycles, vary as a parameter is varied. When models have many parameters there is a wide choice for which parameter to vary. Often, however, there are compelling physiological or experimental reasons for the choice of parameter. Bifurcation diagrams are important in a number of chapters of this book, and are widely used in the analysis of nonlinear systems. Thus, it is worth the time to become familiar with their properties and how they are constructed. Nowadays, most bifurcation diagrams of realistic models are constructed numerically, the most popular choice of software being AUTO (Doedel, 1986; Doedel et al., 1997, 2001). The bifurcation diagrams in this book were all prepared with XPPAUT (Ermentrout, 2002), a convenient implementation of AUTO.

In this text, the bifurcation that is seen most often is the Hopf bifurcation. The Hopf bifurcation theorem describes conditions for the appearance of small periodic solutions of a differential equation, say

$$\frac{du}{dt} = f(u, \lambda), \quad (1.135)$$

as a function of the parameter  $\lambda$ . Suppose that there is a steady-state solution,  $u = u_0(\lambda)$ , and that the system linearized about  $u_0$ ,

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = \frac{\partial f(u_0(\lambda), \lambda)}{\partial u} U, \quad (1.136)$$

has a pair of complex eigenvalues  $\mu(\lambda) = \alpha(\lambda) \pm i\beta(\lambda)$ . Suppose further that  $\alpha(\lambda_0) = 0$ ,  $\alpha'(\lambda_0) \neq 0$ , and  $\beta(\lambda_0) \neq 0$ , and that at  $\lambda = \lambda_0$  no other eigenvalues of the system have zero real part. Then  $\lambda_0$  is a Hopf bifurcation point, and there is a branch of periodic solutions emanating from the point  $\lambda = \lambda_0$ . The periodic solutions could exist (locally) for  $\lambda > \lambda_0$ , for  $\lambda < \lambda_0$ , or in the degenerate (nongeneric) case, for  $\lambda = \lambda_0$ . If the periodic solutions occur in the region of  $\lambda$  for which  $\alpha(\lambda) > 0$ , then the periodic solutions are stable (provided all other eigenvalues of the system have negative real part), and this branch of solutions is said to be supercritical. On the other hand, if the periodic

solutions occur in the region of  $\lambda$  for which  $\alpha(\lambda) < 0$ , then the periodic solutions are unstable, and this branch of solutions is said to be subcritical.

The Hopf bifurcation theorem applies to ordinary differential equations and delay differential equations. For partial differential equations, there are some technical issues having to do with the nature of the spectrum of the linearized operator that complicate matters, but we do not concern ourselves with these here. Instead, rather than checking all the conditions of the theorem, we find periodic solutions by looking only for a change of the sign of the real part of an eigenvalue, using numerical computations to verify the existence of periodic solutions, and calling it good.

## 1.6.2 Asymptotic Analysis

Applied mathematicians love small parameters, because of the hope that the solution of a problem with a small parameter might be approximated by an *asymptotic representation*. A commonplace notation has emerged in which  $\epsilon$  is often the small parameter. An asymptotic representation has a precise mathematical meaning. Suppose that  $G(\epsilon)$  is claimed to be an asymptotic representation of  $g(\epsilon)$ , expressed as

$$g(\epsilon) = G(\epsilon) + O(\phi(\epsilon)). \quad (1.137)$$

The precise meaning of this statement is that there is a constant  $A$  such that

$$\left| \frac{g(\epsilon) - G(\epsilon)}{\phi(\epsilon)} \right| \leq A \quad (1.138)$$

for all  $\epsilon$  with  $|\epsilon| \leq \epsilon_0$  and  $\epsilon > 0$ . The function  $\phi(\epsilon)$  is called a *gauge function*, a typical example of which is a power of  $\epsilon$ .

### Perturbation Expansions

It is often the case that an asymptotic representation can be found as a power series in powers of the small parameter  $\epsilon$ . Such representations are called *perturbation expansions*. Usually, a few terms of this power series representation suffice to give a good approximation to the solution. It should be kept in mind that under no circumstances does this power series development imply that a complete power series (with an infinite number of terms) exists or is convergent. Terminating the series at one or two terms is deliberate.

However, there are times when a full power series could be found and would be convergent in some nontrivial  $\epsilon$  domain. Such problems are called *regular perturbation problems* because their solutions are regular, or analytic, in the parameter  $\epsilon$ .

There are numerous examples of regular perturbation problems, including all of those related to bifurcation theory. These problems are regular because their solutions can be developed in a convergent power series of some parameter.

There are, however, many problems with small parameters whose solutions are not regular, called *singular perturbation problems*. Singular perturbation problems are

characterized by the fact that their dependence on the small parameter is not regular, but *singular*, and their convergence as a function of  $\epsilon$  is not uniform.

Singular problems come in two basic varieties. Characteristic of the first type is a small region of width  $\epsilon$  somewhere in the domain of interest (either space or time) in which the solution changes rapidly. For example, the solution of the boundary value problem

$$\epsilon u'' + u' + u = 0 \quad (1.139)$$

subject to boundary conditions  $u(0) = u(1) = 1$  is approximated by the asymptotic representation

$$u(x; \epsilon) = (1 - e)e^{-x/\epsilon} + e^{1-x} + O(\epsilon). \quad (1.140)$$

Notice the nonuniform nature of this solution, as

$$e = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \left( \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0^+} u(x; \epsilon) \right) \neq \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0^+} \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} u(x; \epsilon) \right) = 1.$$

Here the term  $e^{-x/\epsilon}$  is a *boundary layer correction*, as it is important only in a small region near the boundary at  $x = 0$ .

Other terms that are typical in singular perturbation problems are *interior layers* or *transition layers*, typified by expressions of the form  $\tan(\frac{x-x_0}{\epsilon})$ , and *corner layers*, locations where the derivative changes rapidly but the solution itself changes little. Transition layers are of great significance in the study of excitable systems (Chapter 5). While corner layers show up in this book, we do not study or use them in any detail.

Singular problems of this type can often be identified by the fact that the order of the system decreases if  $\epsilon$  is set to zero. An example that we have already seen is the quasi-steady-state analysis used to simplify reaction schemes in which some reactions are significantly faster than others. Setting  $\epsilon$  to zero in these examples reduces the order of the system of equations, signaling a possible problem. Indeed, solutions of these equations typically have *initial layers* near time  $t = 0$ . We take a closer look at this example below.

The second class of singular perturbation problems is that in which there are two scales in operation everywhere in the domain of interest. Problems of this type show up throughout this book. For example, action potential propagation in cardiac tissue is through a cellular medium whose detailed structure varies rapidly compared to the length scale of the action potential wave front. Physical properties of the cochlear membrane in the inner ear vary slowly compared to the wavelength of waves that propagate along it. For problems of this type, one must make explicit the dependence on multiple scales, and so solutions are often expressed as functions of two variables, say  $x$  and  $x/\epsilon$ , which are treated as independent variables. Solution techniques that exploit the multiple-scale nature of the solution are called *multiscale methods* or *averaging methods*.

Detailed discussions of these asymptotic methods may be found in Murray (1984), Kevorkian and Cole (1996), and Holmes (1995).

### 1.6.3 Enzyme Kinetics and Singular Perturbation Theory

In most of the examples of enzyme kinetics discussed in this chapter, extensive use was made of the quasi-steady-state approximation (1.44), according to which the concentration of the complex remains constant during the course of the reaction. Although this assumption gives the right answers (which, some might argue, is justification enough), mathematicians have sought for ways to justify this approximation rigorously. Bowen et al. (1963) and Heineken et al. (1967) were the first to show that the quasi-steady-state approximation can be derived as the lowest-order term in an asymptotic expansion of the solution. This has since become one of the standard examples of the application of singular perturbation theory to biological systems, and it is discussed in detail by Rubinow (1973), Lin and Segel (1988), and Murray (2002), among others.

Starting with (1.37) and (1.38),

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\tau} = -\sigma + x(\sigma + \alpha), \quad (1.141)$$

$$\epsilon \frac{dx}{d\tau} = \sigma - x(\sigma + \kappa), \quad (1.142)$$

with initial conditions

$$\sigma(0) = 1, \quad (1.143)$$

$$x(0) = 0, \quad (1.144)$$

we begin by looking for solutions of the form

$$\sigma = \sigma_0 + \epsilon \sigma_1 + \epsilon^2 \sigma_2 + \dots, \quad (1.145)$$

$$x = x_0 + \epsilon x_1 + \epsilon^2 x_2 + \dots. \quad (1.146)$$

We substitute these solutions into the differential equations and equate coefficients of powers of  $\epsilon$ . To lowest order (i.e., equating all those terms with no  $\epsilon$ ) we get

$$\frac{d\sigma_0}{d\tau} = -\sigma_0 + x_0(\sigma_0 + \alpha), \quad (1.147)$$

$$0 = \sigma_0 - x_0(\sigma_0 + \kappa). \quad (1.148)$$

Note that, because we are matching powers of  $\epsilon$ , the differential equation for  $x$  has been converted into an algebraic equation for  $x_0$ , which can be solved to give

$$x_0 = \frac{\sigma_0}{\sigma_0 + \kappa}. \quad (1.149)$$

It follows that

$$\frac{d\sigma_0}{d\tau} = -\sigma_0 + x_0(\sigma_0 + \alpha) = -\sigma_0 \left( \frac{\kappa - \alpha}{\sigma_0 + \kappa} \right). \quad (1.150)$$

These solutions for  $x_0$  and  $\sigma_0$  (i.e., for the lowest-order terms in the power series expansion) are the quasi-steady-state approximation of Section 1.4.2. We could carry

on and solve for  $\sigma_1$  and  $x_1$ , but since the calculations rapidly become quite tedious, with little to no benefit, the lowest-order solution suffices.

However, it is important to notice that this lowest-order solution cannot be correct for all times. For, clearly, the initial conditions  $\sigma(0) = 1, x(0) = 0$  are inconsistent with (1.149). In fact, by setting  $\epsilon$  to be zero, we have decreased the order of the differential equations system, making it impossible to satisfy the initial conditions.

There must therefore be a brief period of time at the start of the reaction during which the quasi-steady-state approximation does not hold. It is not that  $\epsilon$  is not small, but rather that  $\epsilon \frac{dx}{dt}$  is not small during this initial period, since  $dx/dt$  is large. Indeed, it is during this initial time period that the enzyme is “filling up” with substrate, until the concentration of complexed enzyme reaches the value given by the quasi-steady-state approximation. Since there is little enzyme compared to the total amount of substrate, the concentration of substrate remains essentially constant during this period.

For most biochemical reactions this transition to the quasi-steady state happens so fast that it is not physiologically important, but for mathematical reasons, it is interesting to understand these kinetics for early times as well. To see how the reaction behaves for early times, we make a change of time scale,  $\eta = \tau/\epsilon$ . This change of variables expands the time scale on which we look at the reaction and allows us to study events that happen on a fast time scale. To be more precise, we also denote the solution on this fast time scale by a tilde. In the new time scale, (1.37)–(1.38) become

$$\frac{d\tilde{\sigma}}{d\eta} = \epsilon(-\tilde{\sigma} + \tilde{x}(\tilde{\sigma} + \alpha)), \quad (1.151)$$

$$\frac{d\tilde{x}}{d\eta} = \tilde{\sigma} - \tilde{x}(\tilde{\sigma} + \kappa). \quad (1.152)$$

The initial conditions are  $\tilde{\sigma}(0) = 1, \tilde{x}(0) = 0$ .

As before, we expand  $\tilde{\sigma}$  and  $\tilde{x}$  in power series in  $\epsilon$ , substitute into the differential equations, and equate coefficients of powers of  $\epsilon$ . To lowest order in  $\epsilon$  this gives

$$\frac{d\tilde{\sigma}_0}{d\eta} = 0, \quad (1.153)$$

$$\frac{d\tilde{x}_0}{d\eta} = \tilde{\sigma}_0 - \tilde{x}_0(\tilde{\sigma}_0 + \kappa). \quad (1.154)$$

Simply stated, this means that  $\tilde{\sigma}_0$  does not change on this time scale, so that  $\tilde{\sigma}_0 = 1$ . Furthermore, we can solve for  $\tilde{x}_0$  as

$$\tilde{x}_0 = \frac{1}{1 + \kappa}(1 - e^{-(1+\kappa)\eta}), \quad (1.155)$$

where we have used the initial condition  $\tilde{x}_0(0) = 0$ .

Once again, we could go on to solve for  $\tilde{\sigma}_1$  and  $\tilde{x}_1$ , but such calculations, being long and of little use, are rarely done. Thus, from now on, we omit the subscript 0, since it plays no essential role.

One important thing to notice about this solution for  $\tilde{\sigma}$  and  $\tilde{x}$  is that it cannot be valid at large times. After all,  $\sigma$  cannot possibly be a constant for all times. Thus,  $\tilde{\sigma}$  and

$\tilde{x}$  are valid for small times (since they satisfy the initial conditions), but not for large times.

At first sight, it looks as if we are at an impasse. We have a solution,  $\sigma$  and  $x$ , that works for large times but not for small times, and we have another solution,  $\tilde{\sigma}$  and  $\tilde{x}$ , that works for small times, but not for large ones. The goal now is to match them to obtain a single solution that is valid for all times. Fortunately, this is relatively simple to do for this example.

In terms of the original time variable  $\tau$ , the solution for  $\tilde{x}$  is

$$\tilde{x}(\tau) = \frac{\tilde{\sigma}}{\tilde{\sigma} + \kappa} (1 - e^{-(1+\kappa)\frac{\tau}{\epsilon}}). \quad (1.156)$$

As  $\tau$  gets larger than order  $\epsilon$ , the exponential term disappears, leaving only

$$\tilde{x}(\tau) = \frac{\tilde{\sigma}}{\tilde{\sigma} + \kappa}, \quad (1.157)$$

which has the same form as (1.149). It thus follows that the solution

$$x(\tau) = \frac{\sigma}{\sigma + \kappa} (1 - e^{-(1+\kappa)\frac{\tau}{\epsilon}}) \quad (1.158)$$

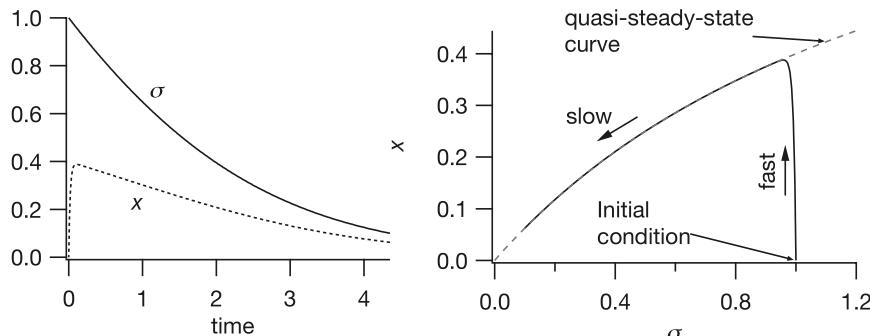
is valid for all times.

The solution for  $\sigma$  is obtained by direct solution of (1.150), which gives

$$\sigma + \kappa \log \sigma = (\alpha - \kappa)t + 1, \quad (1.159)$$

where we have used the initial condition  $\sigma(0) = 1$ . Since  $\sigma$  does not change on the short time scale, this solution is valid for both small and large times.

This simple analysis shows that there is first a time span during which the enzyme products rapidly equilibrate, consuming little substrate, and after this initial “layer” the reaction proceeds according to Michaelis–Menten kinetics along the quasi-steady-state curve. This is shown in Fig. 1.14. In the phase plane one can see clearly how the solution moves quickly until it reaches the quasi-steady-state curve (the slow manifold) and



**Figure 1.14** The solution to the quasi-steady-state approximation, plotted as functions of time (left panel) and in the phase plane (right panel). Calculated using  $\kappa = 1.5$ ,  $\alpha = 0.5$ ,  $\epsilon = 0.05$ .

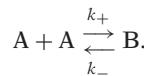
then moves slowly along that curve toward the steady state. Note that the movement to the quasi-steady-state curve is almost vertical, since during that time  $\sigma$  remains approximately unchanged from its initial value. A similar procedure can be followed for the equilibrium approximation (Exercise 20). In this case, the fast movement to the slow manifold is not along lines of constant  $\sigma$ , but along lines of constant  $\sigma + \alpha x$ , where  $\alpha = e_0/s_0$ .

In this problem, the analysis of the initial layer is relatively easy and not particularly revealing. However, this type of analysis is of much greater importance later in this book when we discuss the behavior of excitable systems.

## 1.7 EXERCISES

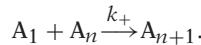
---

1. Consider the simple chemical reaction in which two monomers of A combine to form a dimer B, according to



- (a) Use the law of mass action to find the differential equations governing the rates of production of A and B.
  - (b) What quantity is conserved? Use this conserved quantity to find an equation governing the rate of production of A that depends only on the concentration of A.
  - (c) Nondimensionalize this equation and show that these dynamics depend on only one dimensionless parameter.
2. In the real world trimolecular reactions are rare, although trimerizations are not. Consider the following trimerization reaction in which three monomers of A combine to form the trimer C,
 
$$\begin{array}{c} k_1 \\ A + A \xrightleftharpoons[k_{-1}]{ } B, \\ k_2 \\ A + B \xrightleftharpoons[k_{-2}]{ } C. \end{array}$$
    - (a) Use the law of mass action to find the rate of production of the trimer C.
    - (b) Suppose  $k_{-1} \gg k_{-2}, k_2 A$ . Use the appropriate quasi-steady-state approximation to find the rates of production of A and C, and show that the rate of production of C is proportional to  $[A]^3$ . Explain in words why this is so.
  3. The length of microtubules changes by a process called treadmilling, in which monomer is added to one end of the microtubule and taken off at the other end. To model this process, suppose that monomer  $A_1$  is self-polymerizing in that it can form dimer  $A_2$  via
 
$$A_1 + A_1 \xrightleftharpoons{k_+} A_2.$$

Furthermore, suppose  $A_1$  can polymerize an  $n$ -polymer  $A_n$  at one end making an  $n + 1$ -polymer  $A_{n+1}$



Finally, degradation can occur one monomer at a time from the opposite end at rate  $k_-$ . Find the steady-state distribution of polymer lengths after an initial amount of monomer  $A_0$  has fully polymerized.

4. Suppose that the reaction rates for the three reactant loop of Fig. 1.1 do not satisfy detailed balance. What is the net rate of conversion of A into B when the reaction is at steady state?
5. Consider an enzymatic reaction in which an enzyme can be activated or inactivated by the same chemical substance, as follows:



Suppose further that X is supplied at a constant rate and removed at a rate proportional to its concentration. Use quasi-steady-state analysis to find the nondimensional equation describing the degradation of X,

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \gamma - x - \frac{\beta xy}{1 + x + y + \frac{\alpha}{\delta}x^2}. \quad (1.163)$$

Identify all the parameters and variables, and the conditions under which the quasi-steady state approximation is valid.

6. Using the quasi-steady-state approximation, show that the velocity of the reaction for an enzyme with an allosteric inhibitor (Section 1.4.3) is given by
- $$V = \left( \frac{V_{\max} K_3}{i + K_3} \right) \left( \frac{s(k_{-1} + k_3 i + k_1 s + k_{-3})}{k_1(s + K_1)^2 + (s + K_1)(k_3 i + k_{-3} + k_2) + k_2 k_{-3}/k_1} \right). \quad (1.164)$$
- Identify all parameters. Under what conditions on the rate constants is this a valid approximation? Show that this reduces to (1.59) in the case  $K_1 = \kappa_1$ .
7. (a) Derive the expression (1.76) for the fraction of occupied sites in a Monod–Wyman–Changeux model with  $n$  binding sites.
  - (b) Modify the Monod–Wyman–Changeux model shown in Fig. 1.4 to include transitions between states  $R_1$  and  $T_1$ , and between states  $R_2$  and  $T_2$ . Use the principle of detailed balance to derive an expression for the equilibrium constant of each of these transitions. Find the expression for  $Y$ , the fraction of occupied sites, and compare it to (1.72).
  8. An enzyme-substrate system is believed to proceed at a Michaelis–Menten rate. Data for the (initial) rate of reaction at different concentrations is shown in Table 1.1.
    - (a) Plot the data  $V$  vs.  $s$ . Is there evidence that this is a Michaelis–Menten type reaction?
    - (b) Plot  $V$  vs.  $V/s$ . Are these data well approximated by a straight line?

**Table 1.1** Data for Problem 8.

Substrate Concentration (mM)	Reaction Velocity (mM/s)
0.1	0.04
0.2	0.08
0.5	0.17
1.0	0.24
2.0	0.32
3.5	0.39
5.0	0.42

**Table 1.2** Data for Problem 9.

Substrate Concentration (mM)	Reaction Velocity (mM/s)
0.2	0.01
0.5	0.06
1.0	0.27
1.5	0.50
2.0	0.67
2.5	0.78
3.5	0.89
4.0	0.92
4.5	0.94
5.0	0.95

- (c) Use linear regression and (1.46) to estimate  $K_m$  and  $V_{\max}$ . Compare the data to the Michaelis–Menten rate function using these parameters. Does this provide a reasonable fit to the data?
9. Suppose the maximum velocity of a chemical reaction is known to be 1 mM/s, and the measured velocity  $V$  of the reaction at different concentrations  $s$  is shown in Table 1.2.
- Plot the data  $V$  vs.  $s$ . Is there evidence that this is a Hill type reaction?
  - Plot  $\ln \left( \frac{V}{V_{\max} - V} \right)$  vs.  $\ln(s)$ . Is this approximately a straight line, and if so, what is its slope?
  - Use linear regression and (1.71) to estimate  $K_m$  and the Hill exponent  $n$ . Compare the data to the Hill rate function with these parameters. Does this provide a reasonable fit to the data?
10. Use the equilibrium approximation to derive an expression for the reaction velocity of the scheme (1.60)–(1.61).

Answer:

$$V = \frac{(k_2 K_3 + k_4 s)e_0 s}{K_1 K_3 + K_3 s + s^2}, \quad (1.165)$$

where  $K_1 = k_{-1}/k_1$  and  $K_3 = k_{-3}/k_3$ .

11. (a) Find the velocity of reaction for an enzyme with three active sites.
- (b) Under what conditions does the velocity reduce to a Hill function with exponent three? Identify all parameters.
- (c) What is the relationship between rate constants when the three sites are independent? What is the velocity when the three sites are independent?
12. The Goldbeter–Koshland function (1.92) is defined using the solution of the quadratic equation with a negative square root. Why?
13. Suppose that a substrate can be broken down by two different enzymes with different kinetics. (This happens, for example, in the case of cAMP or cGMP, which can be hydrolyzed by two different forms of phosphodiesterase—see Chapter 19).
  - (a) Write the reaction scheme and differential equations, and nondimensionalize, to get the system of equations

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dt} = -\sigma + \alpha_1(\mu_1 + \sigma)x + \alpha_2(\mu_2 + \sigma)y, \quad (1.166)$$

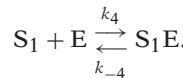
$$\epsilon_1 \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{1}{\lambda_1} \sigma(1-x) - x, \quad (1.167)$$

$$\epsilon_2 \frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{1}{\lambda_2} \sigma(1-y) - y. \quad (1.168)$$

where  $x$  and  $y$  are the nondimensional concentrations of the two complexes. Identify all parameters.

- (b) Apply the quasi-steady-state approximation to find the equation governing the dynamics of substrate  $\sigma$ . Under what conditions is the quasi-steady-state approximation valid?
- (c) Solve the differential equation governing  $\sigma$ .
- (d) For this system of equations, show that the solution can never leave the positive octant  $\sigma, x, y \geq 0$ . By showing that  $\sigma + \epsilon_1 x + \epsilon_2 y$  is decreasing everywhere in the positive octant, show that the solution approaches the origin for large time.
14. For some enzyme reactions (for example, the hydrolysis of cAMP by phosphodiesterase in vertebrate retinal cones) the enzyme is present in large quantities, so that  $e_0/s_0$  is not a small number. Fortunately, there is an alternate derivation of the Michaelis–Menten rate equation that does not require that  $\epsilon = \frac{e_0}{s_0}$  be small. Instead, if one or both of  $k_{-1}$  and  $k_2$  are much larger than  $k_1 e_0$ , then the formation of complex  $c$  is a rapid exponential process, and can be taken to be in quasi-steady state. Make this argument systematic by introducing appropriate nondimensional variables and then find the resulting quasi-steady-state dynamics. (Segel, 1988; Frenzen and Maini, 1988; Segel and Slemrod, 1989; Sneyd and Tranchina, 1989).

15. ATP is known to inhibit its own dephosphorylation. One possible way for this to occur is if ATP binds with the enzyme, holding it in an inactive state, via



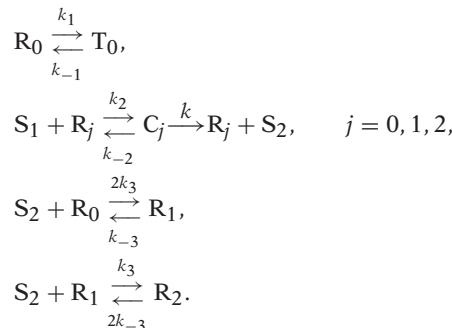
Add this reaction to the Sel'kov model of glycolysis and derive the equations governing glycolysis of the form (1.107)–(1.108). Explain from the model why this additional reaction is inhibitory.

16. In the case of noncompetitive inhibition, the inhibitor combines with the enzyme-substrate complex to give an inactive enzyme-substrate-inhibitor complex which cannot undergo further reaction, but the inhibitor does not combine directly with free enzyme or affect its reaction with substrate. Use the quasi-steady-state approximation to show that the velocity of this reaction is

$$V = V_{\max} \frac{s}{K_m + s + \frac{i}{K_i} s}. \quad (1.169)$$

Identify all parameters. Compare this velocity with the velocity for other types of inhibition discussed in the text.

17. The following reaction scheme is a simplified version of the Goldbeter-Lefever reaction scheme for glycolytic oscillations:



Show that, under appropriate assumptions about the ratios  $k_1/k_{-1}$  and  $\frac{k_{-2}+k_3}{k_2}$  the equations describing this reaction are of the form (1.107)–(1.108) with  $f(\sigma_1, \sigma_2)$  given by (1.125).

18. Use the law of mass action and the quasi-steady-state assumption for the enzymatic reactions to derive a system of equations of the form (1.107)–(1.108) for the Goldbeter-Lefever model of glycolytic oscillations. Verify (1.124).
19. When much of the ATP is depleted in a cell, a considerable amount of cAMP is formed as a product of ATP degradation. This cAMP activates an enzyme phosphorylase that splits glycogen, releasing glucose that is rapidly metabolized, replenishing the ATP supply. Devise a model of this control loop and determine conditions under which the production of ATP is oscillatory.
20. (a) Nondimensionalize (1.26)–(1.29) in a way appropriate for the equilibrium approximation (rather than the quasi-steady-state approximation of Section 1.4.2). Hint: Recall that for the equilibrium approximation, the assumption is that  $k_1 e_0$  and  $k_{-1}$  are large

compared to  $k_2$ . You should end up with equations that look something like

$$\epsilon \frac{d\sigma}{d\tau} = \alpha x - \beta \alpha \sigma (1 - x), \quad (1.170)$$

$$\epsilon \frac{dx}{d\tau} = \beta \sigma (1 - x) - x - \epsilon x, \quad (1.171)$$

where  $\epsilon = k_2/k_{-1}$ ,  $\alpha = e_0/s_0$  and  $\beta = s_0/K_1$ .

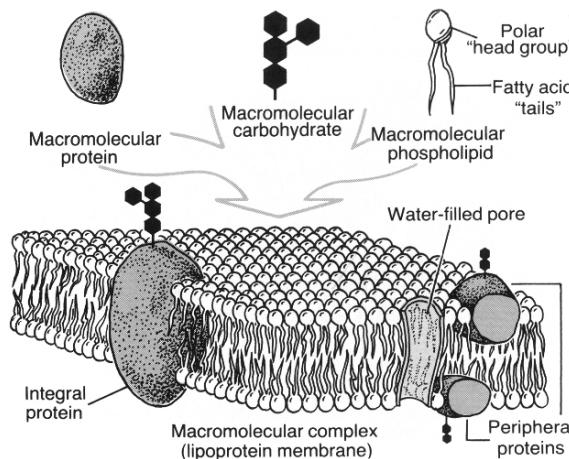
- (b) Find the behavior, to lowest order in  $\epsilon$  for this system. (Notice that the slow variable is  $\sigma + \alpha x$ .)
  - (c) To lowest order in  $\epsilon$ , what is the differential equation for  $\sigma$  on this time scale?
  - (d) Rescale time to find equations valid for small times.
  - (e) Show that, to lowest order in  $\epsilon$ ,  $\sigma + \alpha x = \text{constant}$  for small times.
  - (f) Without calculating the exact solution, sketch the solution in the phase plane, showing the initial fast movement to the slow manifold, and then the movement along the slow manifold.
-

# Cellular Homeostasis

## 2.1 The Cell Membrane

The cell membrane provides a boundary separating the internal workings of the cell from its external environment. More importantly, it is selectively permeable, permitting the free passage of some materials and restricting the passage of others, thus regulating the passage of materials into and out of the cell. It consists of a double layer (a *bilayer*) of phospholipid molecules about 7.5 nm (75 angstroms) thick (Fig. 2.1). The term *lipid* is used to specify a category of water-insoluble, energy rich macromolecules, typical of fats, waxes, and oils. Irregularly dispersed throughout the phospholipid bilayer are aggregates of globular proteins, which are free to move within the layer, giving the membrane a fluid-like appearance. The membrane also contains water-filled pores with diameters of about 0.8 nm, as well as protein-lined pores, called *channels*, which allow passage of specific molecules. Both the intracellular and extracellular environments consist of, among many other things, a dilute aqueous solution of dissolved salts, primarily NaCl and KCl, which dissociate into  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ , and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions. The cell membrane acts as a barrier to the free flow of these ions and maintains concentration differences of these ions. In addition, the cell membrane acts as a barrier to the flow of water.

Molecules can be transported across the cell membrane by passive transport or active processes. An active process is one that requires the expenditure of energy, while a passive process results solely from the inherent, random movement of molecules. *Osmosis*, i.e., the diffusion of water down its concentration gradient, is the most important process by which water moves through the cell membrane. Simple diffusion



**Figure 2.1** Schematic diagram of the cell membrane. (Davis et al., 1985, Fig. 3-1, p. 41.)

accounts for the passage of small molecules through pores and of lipid-soluble molecules through the lipid bilayer. For example, water, urea (a nitrogenous waste product of metabolism), and hydrated  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions diffuse through membrane pores. Oxygen and carbon dioxide diffuse through the membrane readily because they are soluble in lipids. Sodium and  $\text{K}^+$  ions pass through ion-specific channels, driven by diffusion and electrical forces. Some other mechanism must account for the transport of larger sugar molecules such as galactose, glucose, and sucrose, as they are too large to pass through membrane pores.

Concentration differences are set up and maintained by active mechanisms that use energy to pump ions against their concentration gradient. One of the most important of these pumps is the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  ATPase, which uses the energy stored in ATP molecules to pump  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cell and  $\text{K}^+$  in. Another pump, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase, pumps  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  out of the cell or into the endoplasmic reticulum. There are also a variety of exchange pumps that use the energy inherent in the concentration gradient of one ion type to pump another ion type against its concentration gradient. For example, the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger removes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the cell at the expense of  $\text{Na}^+$  entry, and similarly for the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{H}^+$  exchanger. Typical values for intracellular and extracellular ionic concentrations are given in Table 2.1.

Differences in ionic concentrations create a potential difference across the cell membrane that drives ionic currents. Water is also absorbed into the cell because of concentration differences of these ions and also because of other large molecules contained in the cell, whose presence provides an osmotic pressure for the absorption of water. It is the balance of these forces that regulates both the cell volume and the membrane potential.

**Table 2.1** Typical values for intracellular and extracellular ionic concentrations, Nernst potentials and resting potentials, from three different cell types. Concentrations are given in units of mM, and potentials are in units of mV. Extracellular concentrations for the squid giant axon are for seawater, while those for frog muscle and red blood cells are for plasma. (Adapted from Mountcastle, 1974, Table 1-1.)

	Squid Giant Axon	Frog Sartorius Muscle	Human Red Blood Cell
<b>Intracellular concentrations</b>			
Na <sup>+</sup>	50	13	19
K <sup>+</sup>	397	138	136
Cl <sup>-</sup>	40	3	78
Mg <sup>2+</sup>	80	14	5.5
<b>Extracellular concentrations</b>			
Na <sup>+</sup>	437	110	155
K <sup>+</sup>	20	2.5	5
Cl <sup>-</sup>	556	90	112
Mg <sup>2+</sup>	53	1	2.2
<b>Nernst potentials</b>			
V <sub>Na</sub>	+56	+55	+55
V <sub>K</sub>	-77	-101	-86
V <sub>Cl</sub>	-68	-86	-9
<b>Resting potentials</b>	-65	-99	-6 to -10

## 2.2 Diffusion

To keep track of a chemical concentration or any other measurable entity, we must track where it comes from and where it goes; that is, we must write a *conservation law*. If U is some chemical species in some region, then the appropriate conservation law takes the following form (in words):

$$\text{rate of change of } U = \text{rate of production of } U + \text{accumulation of } U \text{ due to transport.}$$

If  $\Omega$  is a region of space, this conservation law can be written symbolically as

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega} u \, dV = \int_{\Omega} f \, dV - \int_{\partial\Omega} \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{n} \, dA, \quad (2.1)$$

where  $u$  is the concentration of the chemical species U,  $\partial\Omega$  is the boundary of the region  $\Omega$ ,  $\mathbf{n}$  is the outward unit normal to the boundary of  $\Omega$ ,  $f$  represents the local production density of U per unit volume, and  $\mathbf{J}$  is the flux density of U. According to the divergence

theorem, if  $\mathbf{J}$  is sufficiently smooth, then

$$\int_{\partial\Omega} \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{n} dA = \int_{\Omega} \nabla \cdot \mathbf{J} dV, \quad (2.2)$$

so that if the volume in which  $u$  is being measured is fixed but arbitrary, the integrals can be dropped, with the result that

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = f - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{J}. \quad (2.3)$$

This, being a conservation law, is inviolable. However, there are many ways in which the production term  $f$  and the flux  $\mathbf{J}$  can vary. Indeed, much of our study in this book is involved in determining appropriate models of production and flux.

### 2.2.1 Fick's Law

Suppose that  $u$  is a function of a single spatial variable,  $x$ , and consider the two situations shown in Fig. 2.2, one where  $u$  has a steep gradient, the other with a shallow gradient. It is intuitively reasonable that the flux of  $u$  should be greater in magnitude in the first case than in the second, and this is indeed what is found experimentally, provided  $u$  is not too large. Thus

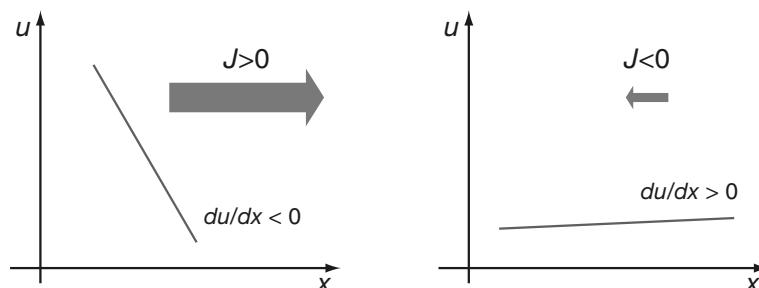
$$J = -D \frac{du}{dx}. \quad (2.4)$$

Note the sign of  $J$ . By definition, a flux of  $u$  from left to right is identified as a positive flux, and thus the flux is opposite in sign to the gradient.

In higher dimensions

$$\mathbf{J} = -D \nabla u. \quad (2.5)$$

Equation (2.5) is called a *constitutive relationship*, and for chemical species it is called *Fick's law*. The scalar  $D$  is the *diffusion coefficient* and is characteristic of the solute and the fluid in which it is dissolved. If  $u$  represents the heat content of the volume, (2.5) is called *Newton's law of cooling*. Fick's law is not really a law, but is a reasonable



**Figure 2.2** Fick's Law. The flux is proportional to the gradient, and opposite in sign.

approximation to reality if the concentration of the chemical species is not too high. When Fick's law applies, the conservation equation becomes the reaction–diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D \nabla u) + f, \quad (2.6)$$

or, if  $D$  is a constant,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D \nabla^2 u + f. \quad (2.7)$$

The diffusion equation can also be derived from a random walk (Section 2.9.1).

There is a vast literature on reaction–diffusion equations. To mention but a very few, Aronson and Weinberger (1975), Britton (1986) and Grindrod (1991) are biologically oriented, as is Murray (2002), while Smoller (1994) and Fife (1979) are more theoretical presentations.

## 2.2.2 Diffusion Coefficients

A quantitative understanding of diffusion was given by Einstein (1906) in his theory of Brownian motion. He showed that if a spherical solute molecule is large compared to the solvent molecule, then

$$D = \frac{kT}{6\pi\mu a}, \quad (2.8)$$

where  $k = \frac{R}{N_A}$  is Boltzmann's constant,  $N_A$  is Avogadro's number,  $T$  is the absolute temperature of the solution,  $\mu$  is the coefficient of viscosity for the solute, and  $a$  is the radius of the solute molecule. For nonspherical molecules, Einstein's formula generalizes to

$$D = \frac{kT}{f}, \quad (2.9)$$

where  $f$  is the Stokes frictional coefficient of the particle and  $f = 6\pi\mu a$  for a sphere of radius  $a$ . The molecular weight of a spherical molecule is

$$M = \frac{4}{3}\pi a^3 \rho, \quad (2.10)$$

where  $\rho$  is the molecular density, so that, in terms of molecular weight,

$$D = \frac{kT}{3\mu} \left( \frac{\rho}{6\pi^2 M} \right)^{1/3}. \quad (2.11)$$

The density of most large protein molecules is nearly constant (about 1.3–1.4 g/cm<sup>3</sup>), so that  $DM^{1/3}$  is nearly the same for spherical molecules at a fixed temperature. The diffusion of small molecules, such as the respiratory gases, is different, being proportional to  $M^{-1/2}$ .

**Table 2.2** Molecular weight and diffusion coefficients of some biochemical substances in dilute aqueous solution.

Substance	Molecular Weight	$D(\text{cm}^2/\text{s})$
hydrogen	1	$4.5 \times 10^{-5}$
oxygen	32	$2.1 \times 10^{-5}$
carbon dioxide	48	$1.92 \times 10^{-5}$
glucose	192	$6.60 \times 10^{-6}$
insulin	5,734	$2.10 \times 10^{-6}$
Cytochrome c	13,370	$1.14 \times 10^{-6}$
Myoglobin	16,900	$5.1 \times 10^{-7}$
Serum albumin	66,500	$6.03 \times 10^{-7}$
hemoglobin	64,500	$6.9 \times 10^{-7}$
Catalase	247,500	$4.1 \times 10^{-7}$
Urease	482,700	$3.46 \times 10^{-7}$
Fibrinogen	330,000	$1.97 \times 10^{-7}$
Myosin	524,800	$1.05 \times 10^{-7}$
Tobacco mosaic virus	40,590,000	$5.3 \times 10^{-8}$

### 2.2.3 Diffusion Through a Membrane: Ohm's Law

We can use Fick's law to derive the chemical analogue of Ohm's law for a membrane of thickness  $L$ . Suppose that a membrane separates two large reservoirs of a dilute chemical, with concentration  $c_l$  on the left (at  $x = 0$ ), and concentration  $c_r$  on the right (at  $x = L$ ). According to the diffusion equation, in the membrane (assuming that the only gradients are transverse to the membrane)

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2}, \quad (2.12)$$

subject to boundary conditions  $c(0, t) = c_l, c(L, t) = c_r$ .

The full time-dependent solution can be found using separation of variables, but for our purposes here, the steady-state solution is sufficient. At steady state,  $\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = 0$ , so that  $\frac{\partial J}{\partial x} = -D \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} = 0$ , from which it follows that  $J = -D \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} = \text{constant}$ , or that  $c(x) = ax + b$ , for some constants  $a$  and  $b$ . Applying the boundary conditions, we obtain

$$c(x) = c_l + (c_r - c_l) \frac{x}{L}. \quad (2.13)$$

From Fick's law it follows that the flux of chemical is constant, independent of  $x$ , and is given by

$$J = \frac{D}{L} (c_l - c_r). \quad (2.14)$$

The ratio  $L/D$  is the effective "resistance" of the membrane, and so  $D/L$  is called the *conductance*, or *permeability*, per unit area.

## 2.2.4 Diffusion into a Capillary

Suppose that a long capillary, open at one end, with uniform cross-sectional area  $A$  and filled with water, is inserted into a solution of known chemical concentration  $C_0$ , and the chemical species is free to diffuse into the capillary through the open end. Since the concentration of the chemical species depends only on the distance along the tube and time, it is governed by the diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2}, \quad 0 < x < \infty, \quad t > 0, \quad (2.15)$$

where for convenience we assume that the capillary is infinitely long. Because the solute bath in which the capillary sits is large, it is reasonable to assume that the chemical concentration at the tip is fixed at  $C(0, t) = C_0$ , and since the tube is initially filled with pure water we set  $C(x, 0) = 0$ .

The solution of this problem is given by

$$C(x, t) = 2C_0 \left( 1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^z \exp\left(-\frac{s^2}{2}\right) ds \right), \quad z = \frac{x}{\sqrt{2Dt}}. \quad (2.16)$$

From this, one can easily calculate that the total number of molecules that enter the capillary in a fixed time  $T$  is

$$N = A \int_0^\infty C(x, T) dx = 2C_0 A \sqrt{\frac{TD}{\pi}}. \quad (2.17)$$

From this equation it is possible to determine the diffusion coefficient by solving (2.17) for  $D$ , yielding

$$D = \frac{\pi N^2}{4C_0^2 A^2 T}. \quad (2.18)$$

A second useful piece of information is found from (2.16) by observing that  $C(x, t)/C_0$  is constant on any curve for which  $z$  is constant. Thus, the curve  $t = x^2/D$  is a level curve for the concentration, and gives a measure of how fast the substance is moving into the capillary. The time  $t = x^2/D$  is called the *diffusion time* for the process. To give some idea of the effectiveness of diffusion in various cellular contexts, in Table 2.3 is shown typical diffusion times for a variety of cellular structures. Clearly, diffusion is effective for transport when distances are short, but totally inadequate for longer distances, such as along a nerve axon. Obviously, biological systems must employ other transport mechanisms in these situations in order to survive.

## 2.2.5 Buffered Diffusion

It is often the case that reactants in an enzymatic reaction (as in Chapter 1) are free to diffuse, so that one must keep track of the effects of both diffusion and reaction. Such problems, called *reaction-diffusion systems*, are of fundamental significance in physiology and are also important and difficult mathematically.

**Table 2.3** Estimates of diffusion times for cellular structures of typical dimensions, computed from the relation  $t = x^2/D$  using  $D = 10^{-5}\text{cm}^2/\text{s}$  (typical for molecules the size of oxygen or carbon dioxide).

x	t	Example
10 nm	100 ns	Thickness of cell membrane
1 $\mu\text{m}$	1 ms	Size of mitochondrion
10 $\mu\text{m}$	100 ms	Radius of small mammalian cell
100 $\mu\text{m}$	10 s	Diameter of a large muscle fiber
250 $\mu\text{m}$	60 s	Radius of squid giant axon
1 mm	16.7 min	Half-thickness of frog sartorius muscle
2 mm	1.1 h	Half-thickness of lens in the eye
5 mm	6.9 h	Radius of mature ovarian follicle
2 cm	2.6 d	Thickness of ventricular myocardium
1 m	31.7 yrs	Length of a (long!) nerve axon

An important situation, in which reaction and diffusion interact to modify the behavior, occurs when a diffusing species is buffered by a larger diffusing molecule. This occurs, for example, with oxygen in muscle (which we discuss below), or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , or  $\text{H}^+$ . The earliest studies of the buffered diffusion equation were those of Irving et al. (1990) and Wagner and Keizer (1994), while Neher and his colleagues (Zhou and Neher, 1993; Naraghi and Neher, 1997; Naraghi et al. 1998) have done a great deal of work on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering. More theoretical analyses have been performed by Sneyd et al. (1998), Smith et al. (2001), and Tsai and Sneyd (2005, 2007a,b).

Consider a “one-dimensional” cell in which there are hydrogen ions (for example) and buffer, B. We assume that the buffering reaction follows



Conservation implies

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_h \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + k_- w - k_+ u v + f(t, x, u), \quad (2.20)$$

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = D_b \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + k_- w - k_+ u v, \quad (2.21)$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = D_b \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x^2} - k_- w + k_+ u v, \quad (2.22)$$

where  $u = [\text{H}^+]$ ,  $v = [\text{B}]$ , and  $w = [\text{HB}]$ . Since the buffer is a large molecule, we assume that the diffusion of B is the same as that of HB. We impose no-flux boundary conditions at the ends of the cell and assume that  $v$  and  $w$  are initially uniform (for example, if  $w$  is initially zero, and the buffer is uniformly distributed). The reaction term  $f(t, x, u)$  denotes all the other reactions of  $u$  apart from the buffering.

Adding (2.21) and (2.22) we obtain

$$\frac{\partial(v + w)}{\partial t} = D_b \frac{\partial^2(v + w)}{\partial x^2}. \quad (2.23)$$

Since  $v + w$  is initially uniform, it remains uniform for all time, so that  $v + w = w_0$ , where  $w_0$  is the total amount of buffer.

If the buffering reaction is fast compared to the other reactions (i.e., those described by  $f(t, x, u)$ ), then we can assume  $u$  and  $v$  to be in quasi-equilibrium, so that

$$k_-(w_0 - v) - k_+uv = 0, \quad (2.24)$$

which implies that

$$v = \frac{K_{\text{eq}}w_0}{K_{\text{eq}} + u}, \quad \text{where } K_{\text{eq}} = \frac{k_-}{k_+}. \quad (2.25)$$

Subtracting (2.21) from (2.20) yields

$$\frac{\partial(u - v)}{\partial t} = D_h \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - D_b \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + f(t, x, u). \quad (2.26)$$

However, since we know  $v$  as a function of  $u$ , we can eliminate  $v$  to find a nonlinear reaction-diffusion equation for  $u$  alone,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( u - \frac{K_{\text{eq}}w_0}{K_{\text{eq}} + u} \right) = D_h \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - D_b \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} \left( \frac{K_{\text{eq}}w_0}{K_{\text{eq}} + u} \right) + f(t, x, u). \quad (2.27)$$

We expand some of the derivatives and find

$$\left( 1 + \frac{K_{\text{eq}}w_0}{(K_{\text{eq}} + u)^2} \right) u_t = D_h \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + D_b \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{K_{\text{eq}}w_0}{(K_{\text{eq}} + u)^2} u_x \right) + f(t, x, u). \quad (2.28)$$

Letting

$$\theta(u) = \frac{K_{\text{eq}}w_0}{(K_{\text{eq}} + u)^2} \quad (2.29)$$

then gives

$$u_t = \frac{D_h + \theta(u)D_b}{1 + \theta(u)} u_{xx} + \frac{D_b\theta'(u)}{1 + \theta(u)} (u_x)^2 + \frac{f(t, x, u)}{1 + \theta(u)}. \quad (2.30)$$

Thus, buffering gives rise to a nonlinear transport equation with a diffusion coefficient that is a nonlinear function of  $u$ .

In some cases it is reasonable to assume that  $u \ll K_{\text{eq}}$ . In this limit we find that  $u$  has an effective diffusion coefficient

$$D_{\text{eff}} = \frac{D_h + D_b \frac{w_0}{K_{\text{eq}}}}{1 + \frac{w_0}{K_{\text{eq}}}}, \quad (2.31)$$

a convex linear combination of the two diffusion coefficients,  $D_h$  and  $D_b$ . In addition, the reaction terms are scaled by the constant factor  $\frac{1}{1+w_0/K_{\text{eq}}}$ . If, additionally,  $D_b = 0$ , we

recover the usual diffusion equation, but one for which both the diffusion coefficient and the reaction terms are scaled by the same constant factor.

## 2.3 Facilitated Diffusion

A second important example in which both diffusion and reaction play a role is known as *facilitated diffusion*. Facilitated diffusion occurs when the flux of a chemical is amplified by a reaction that takes place in the diffusing medium. An example of facilitated diffusion occurs with the flux of oxygen in muscle fibers. In muscle fibers, oxygen is bound to myoglobin and is transported as oxymyoglobin, and this transport is greatly enhanced above the flow of oxygen in the absence of myoglobin (Wyman, 1966; Murray, 1971; Murray and Wyman, 1971; Rubinow and Dembo, 1977).

This well-documented observation needs further explanation, because at first glance it seems counterintuitive. Myoglobin molecules are much larger (molecular weight  $M = 16,890$ ) than oxygen molecules (molecular weight  $M = 32$ ) and therefore have a much smaller diffusion coefficient ( $D = 4.4 \times 10^{-7}$  and  $D = 1.2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$  for myoglobin and oxygen, respectively). The diffusion of oxymyoglobin would therefore seem to be much slower than the diffusion of free oxygen. Further, from the calculation in the last section, the diffusion of free oxygen is much slower when it is buffered by myoglobin since the effective diffusion coefficient of oxygen is lowered substantially by diffusion.

To anticipate slightly, the answer is that, at steady state, the total transport of oxygen is the sum of the free oxygen transport and additional oxygen that is transported by the diffusing buffer. If there is a lot of buffer, with a lot of oxygen bound, this additional transport due to the buffer can be substantial.

A simple model of this phenomenon is as follows. Suppose we have a slab reactor containing diffusing myoglobin. On the left (at  $x = 0$ ) the oxygen concentration is held fixed at  $s_0$ , and on the right (at  $x = L$ ) it is held fixed at  $s_L$ , which is assumed to be less than  $s_0$ .

If  $f$  is the rate of uptake of oxygen into oxymyoglobin, then equations governing the concentrations of  $s = [O_2]$ ,  $e = [Mb]$ ,  $c = [MbO_2]$  are

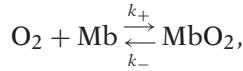
$$\frac{\partial s}{\partial t} = D_s \frac{\partial^2 s}{\partial x^2} - f, \quad (2.32)$$

$$\frac{\partial e}{\partial t} = D_e \frac{\partial^2 e}{\partial x^2} - f, \quad (2.33)$$

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} + f. \quad (2.34)$$

It is reasonable to take  $D_e = D_c$ , since myoglobin and oxymyoglobin are nearly identical in molecular weight and structure. Since myoglobin and oxymyoglobin remain inside the slab, it is also reasonable to specify the boundary conditions  $\partial e / \partial x = \partial c / \partial x = 0$  at  $x = 0$  and  $x = L$ . Because it reproduces the oxygen saturation curve (discussed in

Chapter 13), we assume that the reaction of oxygen with myoglobin is governed by the elementary reaction



so that (from the law of mass action)  $f = -k_-c + k_+s$ . The total amount of myoglobin is conserved by the reaction, so that at steady state  $e + c = e_0$  and (2.33) is superfluous.

At steady state,

$$0 = s_t + c_t = D_s s_{xx} + D_c c_{xx}, \quad (2.35)$$

and thus there is a second conserved quantity, namely

$$D_s \frac{ds}{dx} + D_c \frac{dc}{dx} = -J, \quad (2.36)$$

which follows by integrating (2.35) once with respect to  $x$ . The constant  $J$  (which is yet to be determined) is the sum of the flux of free oxygen and the flux of oxygen in the complex oxymyoglobin, and therefore represents the total flux of oxygen. Integrating (2.36) with respect to  $x$  between  $x = 0$  and  $x = L$ , we can express the total flux  $J$  in terms of boundary values of the two concentrations as

$$J = \frac{D_s}{L}(s_0 - s_L) + \frac{D_c}{L}(c_0 - c_L), \quad (2.37)$$

although the values  $c_0$  and  $c_L$  are as yet unknown.

To further understand this system of equations, we introduce dimensionless variables,  $\sigma = \frac{k_+}{k_-}s$ ,  $u = c/e_0$ , and  $x = Ly$ , in terms of which (2.32) and (2.34) become

$$\epsilon_1 \sigma_{yy} = \sigma(1 - u) - u = -\epsilon_2 u_{yy}, \quad (2.38)$$

$$\text{where } \epsilon_1 = \frac{D_s}{e_0 k_+ L^2}, \epsilon_2 = \frac{D_c}{k_- L^2}.$$

Reasonable numbers for the uptake of oxygen by myoglobin (Wittenberg, 1966) are  $k_+ = 1.4 \times 10^{10} \text{ cm}^3 \text{ M}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $k_- = 11 \text{ s}^{-1}$ , and  $L = 0.022 \text{ cm}$  in a solution with  $e_0 = 1.2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ M/cm}^3$ . (These numbers are for an experimental setup in which the concentration of myoglobin was substantially higher than what naturally occurs in living tissue.) With these numbers we estimate that  $\epsilon_1 = 1.5 \times 10^{-7}$ , and  $\epsilon_2 = 8.2 \times 10^{-5}$ . Clearly, both of these numbers are small, suggesting that oxygen and myoglobin are at quasi-steady state throughout the medium, with

$$c = e_0 \frac{s}{K + s}, \quad (2.39)$$

where  $K = k_-/k_+$ . Now we substitute (2.39) into (2.37) to find the flux

$$\begin{aligned} J &= \frac{D_s}{L}(s_0 - s_L) + \frac{D_c}{L}e_0\left(\frac{s_0}{K+s_0} - \frac{s_L}{K+s_L}\right) \\ &= \frac{D_s}{L}(s_0 - s_L)\left(1 + \frac{D_c}{D_s} \frac{e_0 K}{(s_0 + K)(s_L + K)}\right) \\ &= \frac{D_s}{L}(1 + \mu\rho)(s_0 - s_L), \end{aligned} \quad (2.40)$$

where  $\rho = \frac{D_c}{D_s} \frac{e_0}{K}$ ,  $\mu = \frac{K^2}{(s_0 + K)(s_L + K)}$ .

In terms of dimensionless variables the full solution is given by

$$\sigma(y) + \rho u(y) = y[\sigma(1) + \rho u(1)] + (1-y)[\sigma(0) + \rho u(0)], \quad (2.41)$$

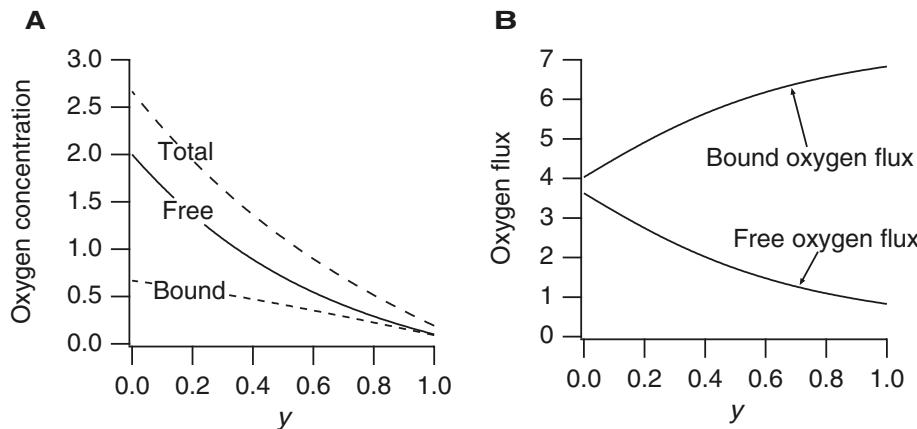
$$u(y) = \frac{\sigma(y)}{1 + \sigma(y)}. \quad (2.42)$$

Now we see how diffusion can be facilitated by an enzymatic reaction. In the absence of a diffusing carrier,  $\rho = 0$  and the flux is purely Fickian, as in (2.14). However, in the presence of carrier, diffusion is enhanced by the factor  $\mu\rho$ . The maximum enhancement possible is at zero concentration, when  $\mu = 1$ . With the above numbers for myoglobin, this maximum enhancement is substantial, being  $\rho = 560$ . If the oxygen supply is sufficiently high on the left side (near  $x = 0$ ), then oxygen is stored as oxymyoglobin. Moving to the right, as the total oxygen content drops, oxygen is released by the myoglobin. Thus, even though the bound oxygen diffuses slowly compared to free oxygen, the quantity of bound oxygen is high (provided that  $e_0$  is large compared to the half saturation level  $K$ ), so that lots of oxygen is transported. We can also understand that to take advantage of the myoglobin-bound oxygen, the concentration of oxygen must drop to sufficiently low levels so that myoglobin releases its stored oxygen.

To explain it another way, note from (2.40) that  $J$  is the sum of two terms, the usual ohmic flux term and an additional term that depends on the diffusion coefficient of  $\text{Mbo}_2$ . The total oxygen flux is the sum of the flux of free oxygen and the flux of oxygen bound to myoglobin. Clearly, if oxymyoglobin is free to diffuse, the total flux is thereby increased. But since oxymyoglobin can only diffuse down its gradient, the concentration of oxymyoglobin must be higher on one side than the other.

In Fig. 2.3A are shown the dimensionless free oxygen concentration  $\sigma$  and the dimensionless bound oxygen concentration  $u$  plotted as functions of position. Notice that the free oxygen content falls at first, indicating higher free oxygen flux, and the bound oxygen decreases more rapidly at larger  $y$ . Perhaps easier to interpret is Fig. 2.3B, where the dimensionless flux of free oxygen and the dimensionless flux of bound oxygen are shown as functions of position. Here we can see that as the free oxygen concentration drops, the flux of free oxygen also drops, but the flux of bound oxygen increases. For large  $y$ , most of the flux is due to the bound oxygen. For these figures,  $\rho = 10$ ,  $\sigma(0) = 2.0$ ,  $\sigma(1) = 0.1$ .

One mathematical detail that was ignored in this discussion is the validity of the quasi-steady-state solution (2.39) as an approximation of (2.38). Usually, when one



**Figure 2.3** A: Free oxygen content  $\sigma(y)$  and bound oxygen content  $u(y)$  as functions of  $y$ . B: Free oxygen flux  $-\sigma'(y)$  and bound oxygen flux  $-\rho u'(y)$  as functions of  $y$ .

makes an approximation to boundary value problems in which the order of the system is reduced (as here where the order is four, and drops by two when  $\epsilon_1$  and  $\epsilon_2$  are ignored), there are difficulties with the solution at the boundary, because the boundary conditions cannot, in general, be met. Such problems, discussed briefly in Chapter 1 in the context of enzyme kinetics, are called *singular perturbation problems*, because the behavior of the solutions as functions of the small parameters is not regular, but singular (certain derivatives become infinitely large as the parameters approach zero). In this problem, however, there are no boundary layers, and the quasi-steady-state solution is a uniformly valid approximation to the solution. This occurs because the boundary conditions on  $c$  are of no-flux (Neumann) type, rather than of fixed (Dirichlet) type. That is, since the value of  $c$  is not specified by the boundary conditions,  $c$  is readily adjusted so that there are no boundary layers. Only a slight correction to the quasi-steady-state solution is needed to meet the no-flux boundary conditions, but this correction affects only the derivative, not the value, of  $c$  in a small region near the boundaries.

### 2.3.1 Facilitated Diffusion in Muscle Respiration

Even at rest, muscle fibers consume oxygen. This is because ATP is constantly consumed to maintain a nonzero membrane potential across a muscle cell wall, and this consumption of energy requires constant metabolizing of sugar, which consumes oxygen. Although sugar can be metabolized anaerobically, the waste product of this reaction is lactic acid, which is toxic to the cell. In humans, the oxygen consumption of live muscle tissue at rest is about  $5 \times 10^{-8}$  mol/cm<sup>3</sup>s, and the concentration of myoglobin is about  $2.8 \times 10^{-7}$  mol/cm<sup>3</sup>. Thus, when myoglobin is fully saturated, it contains only about a 5 s supply of oxygen. Further, the oxygen at the exterior of the muscle cell must

penetrate to the center of the cell to prevent the oxygen concentration at the center falling to zero, a condition called *oxygen debt*.

To explain how myoglobin aids in providing oxygen to a muscle cell and helps to prevent oxygen debt, we examine a model of oxygen consumption that includes the effects of diffusion of oxygen and myoglobin. We suppose that a muscle fiber is a long circular cylinder (radius  $a = 2.5 \times 10^{-3}$  cm) and that diffusion takes place only in the radial direction. We suppose that the oxygen concentration at the boundary of the fiber is a fixed constant and that the distribution of chemical species is radially symmetric. With these assumptions, the steady-state equations governing the diffusion of oxygen and oxymyoglobin are

$$D_s \frac{1}{r} \frac{d}{dr} \left( r \frac{ds}{dr} \right) - f - g = 0, \quad (2.43)$$

$$D_c \frac{1}{r} \frac{d}{dr} \left( r \frac{dc}{dr} \right) + f = 0, \quad (2.44)$$

where, as before,  $s = [\text{O}_2]$ ,  $c = [\text{MbO}_2]$ , and  $f = -k_- c + k_+ s e$ . The coordinate  $r$  is in the radial direction. The new term in these equations is the constant  $g$ , corresponding to the constant consumption of oxygen. The boundary conditions are  $s = s_a$ ,  $dc/dr = 0$  at  $r = a$ , and  $ds/dr = dc/dr = 0$  at  $r = 0$ . For muscle,  $s_a$  is typically  $3.5 \times 10^{-8}$  mol/cm<sup>3</sup> (corresponding to the partial pressure 20 mm Hg). Numerical values for the parameters in this model are difficult to obtain, but reasonable numbers are  $D_s = 10^{-5}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/s,  $D_c = 5 \times 10^{-7}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/s,  $k_+ = 2.4 \times 10^{10}$  cm<sup>3</sup>/mol · s, and  $k_- = 65/\text{s}$  (Wyman, 1966).

Introducing nondimensional variables  $\sigma = \frac{k_+}{k_-} s$ ,  $u = c/e_0$ , and  $r = ay$ , we obtain the differential equations

$$\epsilon_1 \frac{1}{y} \frac{d}{dy} \left( y \frac{d\sigma}{dy} \right) - \gamma = \sigma(1-u) - u = -\epsilon_2 \frac{1}{y} \frac{d}{dy} \left( y \frac{du}{dy} \right), \quad (2.45)$$

where  $\epsilon_1 = \frac{D_s}{e_0 k_+ a^2}$ ,  $\epsilon_2 = \frac{D_c}{k_- a^2}$ ,  $\gamma = g/k_-$ . Using the parameters appropriate for muscle, we estimate that  $\epsilon_1 = 2.3 \times 10^{-4}$ ,  $\epsilon_2 = 1.2 \times 10^{-3}$ ,  $\gamma = 3.3 \times 10^{-3}$ . While these numbers are not as small as for the experimental slab described earlier, they are small enough to warrant the assumption that the quasi-steady-state approximation (2.39) holds in the interior of the muscle fiber.

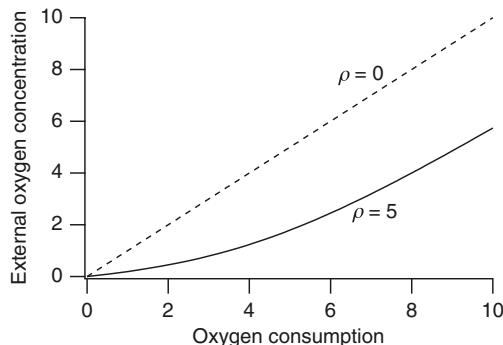
It also follows from (2.45) that

$$\epsilon_1 \frac{1}{y} \frac{d}{dy} \left( y \frac{d\sigma}{dy} \right) + \epsilon_2 \frac{1}{y} \frac{d}{dy} \left( y \frac{du}{dy} \right) = \gamma. \quad (2.46)$$

We integrate (2.46) twice with respect to  $y$  to find

$$\epsilon_1 \sigma + \epsilon_2 u = A \ln y + B + \frac{\gamma}{4} y^2. \quad (2.47)$$

The constants  $A$  and  $B$  are determined by boundary conditions. Since we want the solution to be bounded at the origin,  $A = 0$ , and  $B$  is related to the concentration at the origin.



**Figure 2.4** Critical concentration  $\sigma_0$  plotted as a function of oxygen consumption  $\frac{\gamma}{4\epsilon_1}$ . The dashed curve is the critical concentration with no facilitated diffusion.

Now suppose that there is just enough oxygen at the boundary to prevent oxygen debt. In this model, oxygen debt occurs if  $\sigma$  falls to zero. Marginal oxygen debt occurs if  $\sigma = u = 0$  at  $y = 0$ . For this boundary condition, we take  $A = B = 0$ . Then the concentration at the boundary must be at least as large as  $\sigma_0$ , where, using the quasi-steady state  $\sigma(1 - u) = u$ ,

$$\sigma_0 + \rho \frac{\sigma_0}{\sigma_0 + 1} = \frac{\gamma}{4\epsilon_1}, \quad (2.48)$$

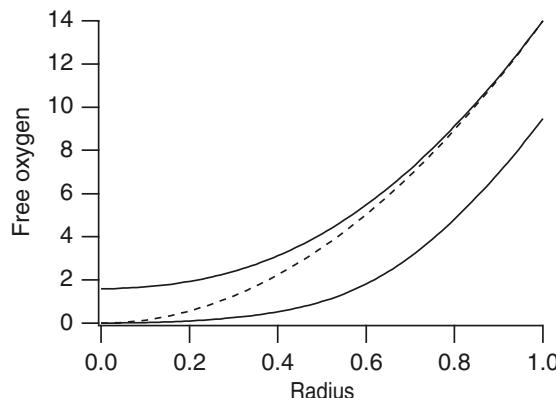
and where  $\rho = \epsilon_2/\epsilon_1$ . Otherwise, the center of the muscle is in oxygen debt. Note also that  $\sigma_0$  is a decreasing function of  $\rho$ , indicating a reduced need for external oxygen because of facilitated diffusion.

A plot of this critical concentration  $\sigma_0$  as a function of the scaled consumption  $\frac{\gamma}{4\epsilon_1}$  is shown in Fig. 2.4. For this plot  $\rho = 5$ , which is a reasonable estimate for muscle. The dashed curve is the critical concentration when there is no facilitated diffusion ( $\rho = 0$ ). The easy lesson from this plot is that facilitated diffusion decreases the likelihood of oxygen debt, since the external oxygen concentration necessary to prevent oxygen debt is smaller in the presence of myoglobin than without.

A similar lesson comes from Fig. 2.5, where the internal free oxygen content  $\sigma$  is shown, plotted as a function of radius  $y$ . The solid curves show the internal free oxygen with facilitated diffusion, and the dashed curve is without. The smaller of the two solid curves and the dashed curve have exactly the critical external oxygen concentration, showing clearly that in the presence of myoglobin, oxygen debt is less likely at a given external oxygen concentration. The larger of the two solid curves has the same external oxygen concentration as the dashed curve, showing again the contribution of facilitation toward preventing oxygen debt. For this figure,  $\rho = 5$ ,  $\gamma/\epsilon_1 = 14$ .

## 2.4 Carrier-Mediated Transport

Some substances are insoluble in the cell membrane and yet pass through by a process called *carrier-mediated transport*. It is also called *facilitated diffusion* in many physiology books, although we prefer to reserve this expression for the process described in the



**Figure 2.5** Free oxygen  $\sigma$  as a function of radius  $r$ . Solid curves show oxygen concentration in the presence of myoglobin ( $\rho = 5$ ), the lower of the two having the critical external oxygen concentration. The dashed curve shows the oxygen concentration without facilitation at the critical external concentration level.

previous section. Carrier-mediated transport is the means by which some sugars cross the cell membrane to provide an energy source for the cell. For example, glucose, the most important of the sugars, combines with a carrier protein at the outer boundary of the membrane, and by means of a conformational change is released from the inner boundary of the membrane.

There are three types of carrier-mediated transport. Carrier proteins that transport a single solute from one side of the membrane to the other are called *uniports*. Other proteins function as coupled transporters by which the simultaneous transport of two solute molecules is accomplished, either in the same direction (called a *symport*) or in the opposite direction (called an *antiport*).

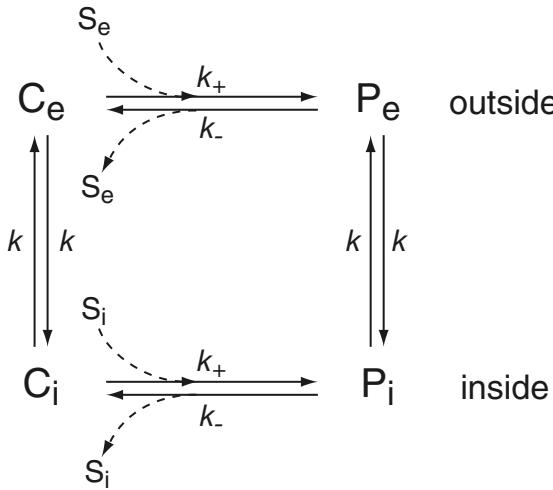
### 2.4.1 Glucose Transport

Although the details are not certain, the transport of glucose across the lipid bilayer of the cell membrane is thought to occur when the carrier molecule alternately exposes the solute binding site first on one side and then on the other side of the membrane. It is considered highly unlikely that the carrier molecule actually diffuses back and forth through the membrane.

We can model the process of glucose transport as follows: We suppose that the population of enzymatic carrier proteins  $C$  has two conformational states,  $C_i$  and  $C_e$ , with its glucose binding site exposed on the cell interior (subscript  $i$ ) or exterior (subscript  $e$ ) of the membrane, respectively. The glucose substrate on the interior  $S_i$  can bind with  $C_i$  and the glucose substrate on the exterior can bind with enzyme  $C_e$  to form the complex  $P_i$  or  $P_e$ , respectively. Finally, a conformational change transforms  $P_i$  into  $P_e$  and vice versa. These statements are summarized in Fig. 2.6.

The equations describing this model are

$$\frac{dp_i}{dt} = kp_e - kp_i + k_{+s_i}c_i - k_{-p_i}, \quad (2.49)$$



**Figure 2.6** Schematic diagram of the glucose transporter described by (2.49)–(2.52).

$$\frac{dp_e}{dt} = kp_i - kp_e + k_+s_e c_e - k_-p_e, \quad (2.50)$$

$$\frac{dc_i}{dt} = kc_e - kc_i + k_-p_i - k_+s_i c_i, \quad (2.51)$$

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = kc_i - kc_e + k_-p_e - k_+s_e c_e. \quad (2.52)$$

where  $s_i = [S_i]$ ,  $p_i = [P_i]$ , etc. Since the total amount of receptor is conserved, we have  $p_i + p_e + c_i + c_e = C_0$ , where  $C_0$  is a constant (the total transporter concentration). Hence there are only three independent equations, not four. The flux,  $J$ , is

$$J = k_-p_i - k_+s_i c_i = k_+s_e c_e - k_-p_e, \quad (2.53)$$

where we have defined a flux from outside to inside to be positive.

We find the steady-state flux by setting all derivatives to zero and solving the resulting algebraic system. It follows that

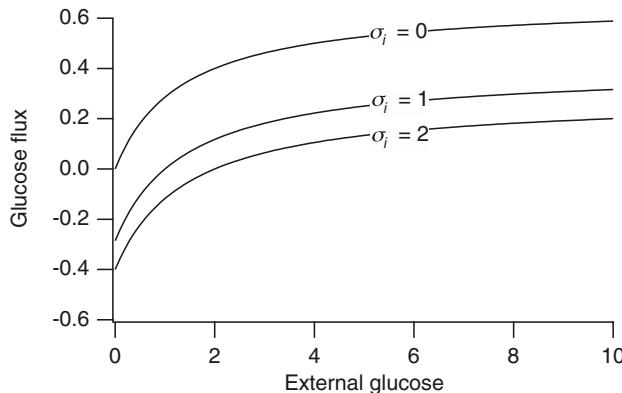
$$J = \frac{1}{2}KkC_0 \frac{s_e - s_i}{(s_i + K + K_d)(s_e + K + K_d) - K_d^2}, \quad (2.54)$$

where  $K = k_-/k_+$  and  $K_d = k/k_+$ . Since  $k$  is the rate at which conformational change takes place, it acts like a diffusion coefficient in that it reflects the effect of random thermal activity at the molecular level.

The nondimensional flux is

$$j = \frac{\sigma_e - \sigma_i}{(\sigma_i + 1 + \kappa)(\sigma_e + 1 + \kappa) - \kappa^2}, \quad (2.55)$$

where  $\sigma_i = s_i/K$ ,  $\sigma_e = s_e/K$ ,  $\kappa = K_d/K$ . A plot of this nondimensional flux is shown in Fig. 2.7, plotted as a function of extracellular glucose  $\sigma_e$ , with fixed intracellular glucose and fixed  $\kappa$ . We can see that the rate of transport is limited by saturation of the enzyme kinetics (this saturation is observed experimentally) and thermal conformational



**Figure 2.7** Plot of the (nondimensional) flux of glucose as a function of extracellular glucose, for three fixed intracellular glucose concentrations ( $\sigma_i$ ), with  $\kappa = K_d/K = 0.5$ .

change is crucial to the transport process, as transport  $J$  drops to zero if  $K_d = 0$ . The binding affinity of the carrier protein for glucose ( $k_+$ ), and hence the flux of glucose, is controlled by insulin.

It is important to recognize that the above expression for  $J$  is for the steady-state flux only. If the system is not at steady state, then the flux from the outside to the transporter,  $J_{\text{on}} = k_+ s_e c_e - k_- p_e$ , need not be the same as the flux off the transporter to the inside,  $J_{\text{off}} = k_- p_i - k_+ s_i c_i$ . Obviously, in this case the differential equations must be solved to obtain  $J_{\text{on}}$  and  $J_{\text{off}}$ .

It should be noted that there are two ways that the model of Fig. 2.6 can be understood. First, as we did here, we can let each variable represent the concentration of transporters in each of the four possible states. In this case, the conservation relationship is  $s_i + p_i + s_e + p_e = C_0$ . If each of the variables is scaled by  $C_0$ , the conservation relationship becomes  $s_i + p_i + s_e + p_e = 1$ , and each variable is then the fraction of the population in each state.

However, there is another way to interpret this second conservation relationship. If  $s_i + p_i + s_e + p_e = 1$  we can interpret the model as referring to the behavior of a single exchanger, in which case the variables are probabilities of being in a given state, and the exchanger is modeled as a Markov process (see the Appendix to this chapter).

Markov models such as that shown in Fig. 2.6 can often be simplified by assuming that some of the transitions are much faster than others. The technique of reduction using a fast time scale is used in many places throughout this book; indeed, it is used in Chapter 1, in the equilibrium and quasi-steady-state approximations of enzyme kinetics; even though the technique is described in Chapter 1, it is sufficiently important that it warrants repeating.

The procedure can be simply illustrated with this model of the glucose transporter. Suppose that the binding and release of glucose is much faster than the change in conformation, i.e., that the transitions between  $C_e$  and  $P_e$ , and between  $C_i$  and  $P_i$ , are

much faster than those between  $C_i$  and  $C_e$ , or between  $P_e$  and  $P_i$ , so that  $K_d \ll 1$ . Assuming fast equilibrium between  $C_e$  and  $P_e$ , and between  $C_i$  and  $P_i$ , gives

$$s_e c_e = K p_e, \quad s_i c_i = K p_i. \quad (2.56)$$

Now, we introduce two variables,  $x = c_e + p_e$ ,  $y = c_i + p_i = 1 - x$  (taking  $C_0 = 1$ ). The differential equation for  $x$  is found by adding (2.50) and (2.52) to be

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dx}{dt} &= k c_i + k p_i - k c_e - k p_e \\ &= k y - k x \\ &= k(1 - 2x), \end{aligned} \quad (2.57)$$

from which it follows that the steady value of  $x$  is  $x_0 = 1/2$ .

Next, from (2.56) we find that

$$x = c_e(1 + s_e/K) = p_e(1 + K/s_e), \quad (2.58)$$

with similar equations for  $y$ . Hence, at steady state, the flux through the transporter is given by

$$\begin{aligned} J &= k_+ s_e c_e - k_- p_e = k p_i - k p_e \\ &= \frac{k s_i x_0}{s_i + K} - \frac{k s_e x_0}{s_e + K} \\ &= \frac{k s_i \frac{1}{2}}{s_i + K} - \frac{k s_e \frac{1}{2}}{s_e + K} \\ &= k K \frac{1}{2} \frac{s_i - s_e}{(s_i + K)(s_e + K)}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.59)$$

where we have used (2.58) to replace  $p_e$ , and the analogous equation to replace  $p_i$ .

Notice that this answer is the same as found by letting  $K_d \rightarrow 0$  in (2.54). However, while the two approaches give the same answer, the quasi-steady-state reduction of the full model is often preferable, especially when the solution of the full model is difficult to obtain.

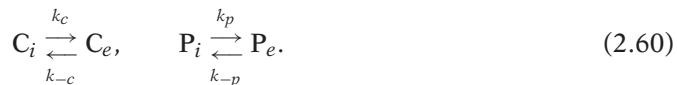
Other examples of how to simplify Markov models with a fast time scale reduction are given in Exercises 12 and 13.

## 2.4.2 Symports and Antiports

Models of symport and antiport transporters follow in similar fashion. For a symport the protein carrier has multiple binding sites, which can be exposed to the intracellular or extracellular space. A change of conformation exchanges the location of all of the participating binding sites, from inside to outside, or vice versa. An example of a symport is the  $\text{Na}^+$ -driven glucose symport that transports glucose and  $\text{Na}^+$  from the lumen of the gut to the intestinal epithelium. A similar process occurs in epithelial cells lining the proximal tubules in the kidney, to remove glucose and amino acids from the

filtrate (discussed in Chapter 17). Five different amino acid cotransporters have been identified.

If there are  $k$  binding sites that participate in the exchange, then there are  $2^k$  possible combinations of bound and unbound sites. The key assumption that makes this model of transport work is that only the completely unbound or completely bound carrier participates in a conformational change. Thus, there is a carrier molecule, say C, with two conformations,  $C_i$  and  $C_e$ , and a fully bound complex P, also with two conformations,  $P_i$  and  $P_e$ , and possible transformation between the two conformations,



In addition, there are  $2^k$  possible combinations of binding and unbinding in each of the two conformations. For example, with two substrates S and T, and one binding site for each, we have the complexes C, SC, CT, and SCT = P. The possible reactions are summarized in Fig. 2.8.

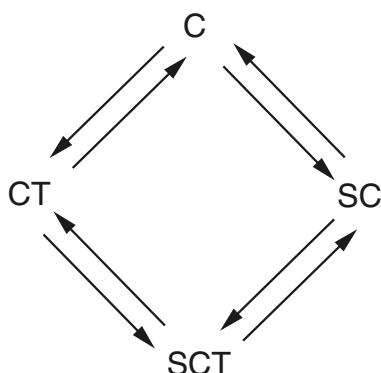
Unfortunately, the analysis of this fully general reaction scheme is quite complicated. However, it simplifies significantly if we assume that the intermediates can be safely ignored and postulate the multi-molecular reaction scheme



Now the result for a symport is strikingly similar to the uniport flux, with

$$J = \frac{1}{2} K_d K k_+ C_0 \frac{s_e^m t_e^n - s_i^m t_i^n}{(s_i^m t_i^n + K + K_d)(s_e^m t_e^n + K + K_d) - K_d^2}, \quad (2.62)$$

where the flux of  $s$  is  $mJ$  and the flux of  $t$  is  $nJ$ . Here we have set  $k_c = k_{-c} = k_p = k_{-p} = k$  and then  $K = k_-/k_+$  and  $K_d = k/k_+$ .



**Figure 2.8** States and possible transitions of a transporter with two substrates, S and T, and one binding site for each.

For an antiport, the subscripts on one of the substances must be exchanged, to give

$$J = \frac{1}{2} K_d K k_+ C_0 \frac{s_e^m t_i^n - s_i^m t_e^n}{(s_i^m t_e^n + K + K_d)(s_e^m t_i^n + K + K_d) - K_d^2}. \quad (2.63)$$

The effectiveness of this type of exchanger is determined by the coefficients  $m$  and  $n$ . For this antiport, flux is positive (S flows inward and T flows outward) if

$$\left(\frac{s_e}{s_i}\right)^m > \left(\frac{t_e}{t_i}\right)^n. \quad (2.64)$$

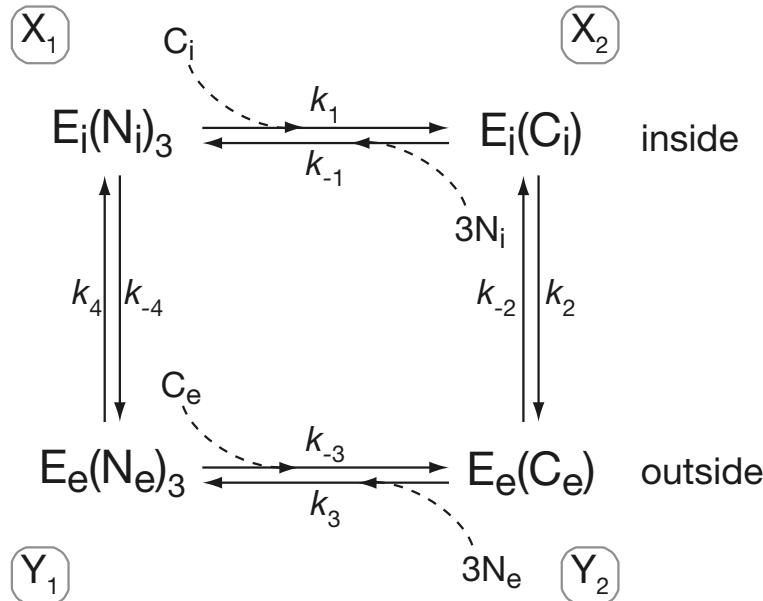
For example, for the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger (discussed in more detail in the next section) which exchanges three  $\text{Na}^+$  ions for one  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion, a ratio of extracellular to intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  of about 8 can be used to effectively pump  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  out of a cell even when the ratio of extracellular to intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is 500.

### 2.4.3 Sodium–Calcium Exchange

For the glucose transporter described above, membrane flux is driven by a concentration difference of glucose across the membrane, and if glucose concentrations equilibrate, the transmembrane flux becomes zero. However, because it relies on two concentration differences, an antiport transporter such as the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger can act as a pump. Although this transporter is a passive pump (because it consumes no chemical energy directly), it is often described as a secondarily active pump; it uses the  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient to pump  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  out of the cell against its concentration gradient, but energy is required to establish and maintain the  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient.  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange is an important mechanism for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  removal in a number of cell types, particularly cardiac ventricular cells, in which much of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  that enters the cell during an action potential is removed from the cell by the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger (Chapter 12). It has therefore been studied extensively, and a number of highly detailed models have been constructed (Hilgemann, 2004; Kang and Hilgemann, 2004). Here we describe a simple model of this important transporter.

In our model (see Fig. 2.9),  $E_i$  is the exchanger protein in the conformation for which the binding sites are exposed to the interior of the cell, and  $E_e$  is the conformation for which the binding sites are exposed to the exterior. Starting at state  $X_1$  in the top left of the figure, the exchanger can bind  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  inside the cell, simultaneously releasing three  $\text{Na}^+$  ions to the interior. A change of conformation to  $E_e$  then allows the exchanger to release the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to the outside and bind three external  $\text{Na}^+$ . A return to the  $E_i$  conformation completes the cycle. Of course, it is a crude approximation to assume that one  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and three  $\text{Na}^+$  ions bind or unbind the exchanger simultaneously.

It is now straightforward to calculate the steady flux for this model. As with the previous transporter models, we first solve for the steady-state values of  $x_1$ ,  $x_2$ ,  $y_1$ , and  $y_2$ , the fraction of exchangers in the state  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $Y_1$ , and  $Y_2$ , respectively. There are four equations: three differential equations for exchanger states and one conservation



**Figure 2.9** Schematic diagram of a simple model of the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger.

equation. These are

$$\frac{dx_1}{dt} = k_{-1}n_i^3x_2 + k_4y_1 - (k_1c_i + k_{-4})x_1, \quad (2.65)$$

$$\frac{dx_2}{dt} = k_{-2}y_2 + k_1c_ix_1 - (k_2 + k_{-1}n_i^3)x_2, \quad (2.66)$$

$$\frac{dy_1}{dt} = k_{-4}x_1 + k_3n_e^3y_2 - (k_4 + k_{-3}c_e)y_1, \quad (2.67)$$

$$1 = x_1 + x_2 + y_1 + y_2. \quad (2.68)$$

Here  $c$  and  $n$  denote, respectively,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration, and the subscripts  $e$  and  $i$  represent external and internal concentrations.

Using a symbolic package such as Maple, the steady-state solution of these equations is easily calculated. The flux,  $J$ , is found to be

$$J = k_4y_1 - k_{-4}x_1 = \frac{k_1k_2k_3k_4(c_i n_e^3 - K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 c_e n_i^3)}{16 \text{ positive terms}}, \quad (2.69)$$

where, as usual,  $K_i = k_{-i}/k_i$ .

Notice that the units of the flux  $J$  here (1/time) are different from those in the previous examples (concentration/time), because here the variables  $x_i$  and  $y_i$  are fractions of exchangers in a particular state (or probabilities) rather than concentrations of exchangers in a particular state. Hence, the flux in this model is a turnover rate, i.e., the

number of times the exchanger goes around the cycle per unit time. This can easily be converted to a concentration per time if the concentration of the exchangers is known.

### An Electrogenic Exchanger

An important difference between the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange process and the transport processes discussed previously is that  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  are ions. Since each cycle of the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger transports two positive charges out and three positive charges in, it generates an electric current. Such exchangers are said to be *electrogenic*.

As is discussed in Section 2.6, all cells have an electrical potential difference across their membranes. Clearly, additional work is necessary for the exchanger to move electric current against a potential difference. To take this into account, consider a ligand, L, with a charge  $z$ , and suppose that there is a process that moves L from the cell interior with potential  $V_i$  to the cell exterior with potential  $V_e$ , i.e.,



The change in chemical potential (cf. Section 1.2) for this reaction is

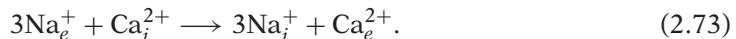
$$\begin{aligned} \Delta G &= G_{\text{L}_e}^0 + RT \ln([\text{L}_e]) + zFV_e - G_{\text{L}_i}^0 - RT \ln([\text{L}_i]) - zFV_i \\ &= RT \ln\left(\frac{[\text{L}_e]}{[\text{L}_i]}\right) - zFV, \end{aligned} \quad (2.71)$$

where  $V = V_i - V_e$  is the transmembrane potential. (The standard convention is to define the potential difference across the membrane as the internal potential minus the external potential, as discussed further in Section 2.6.1.) The standard free energy for L is the same on both sides of the membrane, so  $G_{\text{L}_e}^0 = G_{\text{L}_i}^0$ . At equilibrium,  $\Delta G = 0$ , so that

$$K = \frac{[\text{L}_i]_{\text{eq}}}{[\text{L}_e]_{\text{eq}}} = \exp\left(\frac{-zFV}{RT}\right), \quad (2.72)$$

where K is the equilibrium constant for the reaction.

For the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger, the overall reaction begins with three  $\text{Na}^+$  outside the cell and one  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  inside the cell, and ends with three  $\text{Na}^+$  inside the cell and one  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  outside. We can write this as



The change in chemical potential for this reaction is

$$\Delta G = RT \ln\left(\frac{n_i^3 c_e}{n_e^3 c_i}\right) + FV. \quad (2.74)$$

At equilibrium we must have  $\Delta G = 0$ , in which case

$$\frac{n_{i,\text{eq}}^3 c_{e,\text{eq}}}{n_{e,\text{eq}}^3 c_{i,\text{eq}}} = \exp\left(-\frac{FV}{RT}\right). \quad (2.75)$$

Recall that detailed balance requires that around any closed reaction loop the product of the forward rates must be the same as the product of the reverse rates. It follows that

$$k_1 c_{i,\text{eq}} k_2 k_3 n_{e,\text{eq}}^3 k_4 = n_{i,\text{eq}}^3 k_{-1} k_{-4} c_{e,\text{eq}} k_{-3} k_{-2}, \quad (2.76)$$

and thus

$$K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 = \frac{c_{i,\text{eq}}}{c_{e,\text{eq}}} \frac{n_{e,\text{eq}}^3}{n_{i,\text{eq}}^3}. \quad (2.77)$$

Combining (2.76) and (2.77), we get

$$K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 = \exp\left(\frac{FV}{RT}\right), \quad (2.78)$$

which, being independent of the concentrations, must hold in general.

It follows from (2.69) that the flux is given by

$$J = \frac{k_1 k_2 k_3 k_4 (c_i n_e^3 - e^{\frac{FV}{RT}} c_e n_i^3)}{16 \text{ positive terms}}. \quad (2.79)$$

All of the terms in the denominator are cubic products of rate constants, so that the flux  $J$  has units of inverse time. In general, the denominator of this expression also contains terms that depend on the membrane potential difference.

In writing (2.78), no assumption was made about where the charge transfer takes place. From Fig. 2.9 it might appear that the charge transfer takes place during the transitions  $Y_1 \rightarrow X_1$  and  $X_2 \rightarrow Y_2$ . However, this is not necessarily the case. It could be that those conformational changes are accompanied by no charge transfer, but that the charge transfer occurs during other transitions. However, if we assume that one  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion is transferred from inside to outside during the  $X_2 \rightarrow Y_2$  transition, and three  $\text{Na}^+$  ions are transferred during the  $Y_1 \rightarrow X_1$  transition, free energy arguments yield the additional constraints

$$\frac{k_{-2}}{k_2} = \tilde{K}_2 \exp\left(\frac{-2FV}{RT}\right), \quad \frac{k_4}{k_{-4}} = \tilde{K}_4^{-1} \exp\left(\frac{-3FV}{RT}\right), \quad (2.80)$$

where  $\tilde{K}_2$  and  $\tilde{K}_4$  are independent of voltage, and where  $K_1 \tilde{K}_2 K_3 \tilde{K}_4 = 1$ .

The most important observation is that for given  $n_i$  and  $n_e$  (set by other mechanisms such as the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase discussed in the next section), a negative  $V$  enhances the rate at which the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger removes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the cell. This makes sense; if  $V$  is negative, the potential inside the cell is negative compared to the outside and thus it is easier for the exchanger to move one positive charge into the cell. Since cells typically have a negative resting potential (Section 2.6), the electrogenic nature of the exchanger increases its ability to remove  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in resting conditions. To be specific, if the ratio of extracellular to intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  is 8, and the potential difference is

$V = -85$  mV (which is typical), then  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is removed, provided

$$\frac{c_i}{c_e} > \frac{n_i^3}{n_e^3} e^{\frac{FV}{RT}} = 7 \times 10^{-5}. \quad (2.81)$$

Notice that the difference in potential gives an improvement in the capability of the exchanger by a factor of 27 over an exchanger that is not electrogenic.

## 2.5 Active Transport

The carrier-mediated transport described above is always down electrochemical gradients, and so is identified with diffusion. Any process that works against gradients requires the expenditure of energy.

There are three primary means by which cells use energy to pump chemical species. The first is to keep the concentration of the cargo in the downstream domain small by binding or modifying it in some way. A binding protein in one compartment could sequester the transported cargo, or the cargo could be covalently modified in one compartment so that it no longer interacts with the transporter. For example, the flux of glucose is inward because intracellular glucose is quickly phosphorylated, thereby keeping the concentration of intracellular glucose low. However, phosphorylation of intracellular glucose requires the hydrolysis of an ATP molecule, from which the needed energy is extracted.

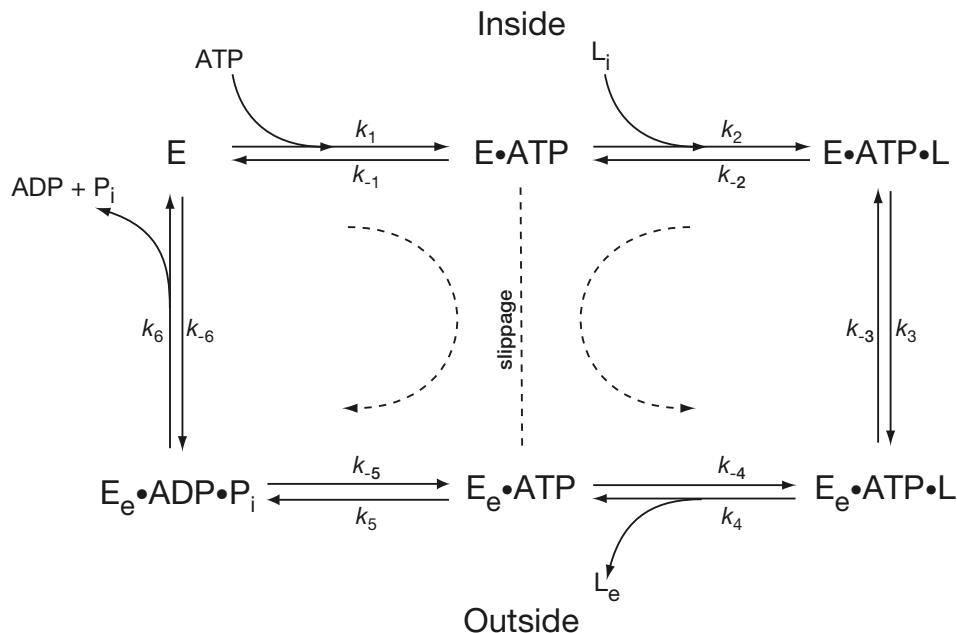
The second means is to use the gradient of one species to pump another species against its gradient. This is the mechanism of the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger as well as numerous other exchangers that use to advantage the energy stored in the  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient.

The third means is to regulate the binding of the cargo to the transporter in such a way that binding to the transporter is favored in one compartment and unbinding is favored in the other compartment. This change in affinity is driven by the hydrolysis of ATP or GTP. One important example of such an active (energy-consuming) exchanger is the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  ATPase. This pump acts as an antiport, actively pumping  $\text{Na}^+$  ions out of the cell and pumping  $\text{K}^+$  ions in, each against a steep electrochemical gradient. It accomplishes this by using the energy released by the hydrolysis of ATP, and thus is called an ATPase. As is described later in this chapter, the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  ATPase is important for regulating the cell volume and maintaining a membrane potential. Indeed, almost a third of the energy requirement of a typical animal cell is consumed in fueling this pump; in electrically active nerve cells, this figure approaches two-thirds of the cell's energy requirement. Other important ATPases are the sarco/endoplasmic reticulum calcium ATPase pumps (SERCA pumps) that pump  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the endoplasmic or sarcoplasmic reticulum, or the plasma membrane  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPases, which pump  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  out of the cell.

### 2.5.1 A Simple ATPase

We begin by considering a model of an ATPase that pumps a ligand, L, up its concentration gradient (Fig. 2.10). This hypothetical ATPase exists in six states. E is the base state; ATP can bind to E, followed by binding of the ligand L, to form the top line of states in Fig. 2.10. In each of these states the L binding site is exposed to the inside of the cell. Once ATP and L are bound, the ATPase changes conformation, exposing the L binding site to the outside, and at the same time decreasing the affinity of L for its binding site. Thus, L leaves the ATPase, followed by the hydrolysis of ATP and eventual return of the ATPase to its base state to complete the cycle. The overall cycle results in the transport of one L molecule from inside to outside. Although a realistic ATPase cycle is considerably more complicated than this one, this simple model serves to illustrate the basic principles.

If there is also a transition from  $E \cdot ATP$  to  $E_e \cdot ATP$ , as shown by the dashed line, then the overall cycle can break into two separate subcycles as indicated. This is called *slippage*, since each of the subcycles accomplishes nothing toward the goal of pumping L. The subcycle on the left goes naturally in a clockwise direction and hydrolyzes ATP to ADP and inorganic phosphate,  $P_i$ , without using this energy to pump L. Similarly,



**Figure 2.10** Schematic diagram of an ATPase pump that transports one ligand, L, from the inside to the outside against its concentration gradient. For each L transported, one molecule of ATP is hydrolyzed. A subscript e denotes the ATPase conformation in which the L binding sites are exposed to the exterior of the cell.

the subcycle on the right goes naturally in the direction that allows L to flow down its concentration gradient. The energy of the ATP is used to pump L against its gradient only when the ATPase proceeds around the entire cycle.

We use the law of mass action to write the differential equations for the six ATPase states. For example,

$$\frac{d[E]}{dt} = k_{-1}[E \cdot ATP] + k_6[E_e \cdot ADP \cdot P_i] - (k_1[ATP] + k_{-6}[P_i][ADP])[E], \quad (2.82)$$

with similar equations for each of the other states. The steady-state flux,  $J$ , is given by

$$J = k_1[ATP][E] - k_{-1}[E \cdot ATP]. \quad (2.83)$$

Even a relatively simple model of six states gives a long expression for the steady-state flux. In this case (with no slippage),

$$J = \frac{\frac{[ATP][L_i]}{[ADP][P_i][L_e]} - K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 K_5 K_6}{\phi}, \quad (2.84)$$

where  $\phi > 0$  is a complicated function of rate constants and concentrations, and where, as usual,  $K_i = k_{-i}/k_i$ . (Even though it is not obvious from the way it is written, the flux  $J$  has, as before, units of inverse time.)

Since detailed balance requires

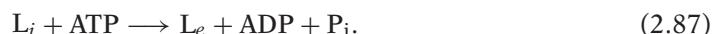
$$\prod_{i=1}^6 K_i = \frac{[L_i]_{eq}}{[L_e]_{eq}} \frac{[ATP]_{eq}}{[ADP]_{eq}[P_i]_{eq}}, \quad (2.85)$$

it follows that

$$J = \frac{\frac{[L_i]}{[L_e]} \frac{[ATP]}{[ADP][P_i]} - \frac{[L_i]_{eq}}{[L_e]_{eq}} \frac{[ATP]_{eq}}{[ADP]_{eq}[P_i]_{eq}}}{\phi}. \quad (2.86)$$

We see from the numerator that the flux is either positive or negative depending on how far the concentrations of L, ATP, ADP, and  $P_i$  are from their equilibrium concentrations. In general, [ATP] is much higher than its equilibrium concentration (due to other processes in the cell that are continuously generating ATP), and it is this that causes a positive pump flux, pumping L against its gradient. However, if  $[L_e]$  is high enough it can force the pump to work in reverse, allowing L to move from the outside to the inside of the cell, generating ATP in the process.

To relate the rate constants to the change in free energy we use that the overall reaction is



The change in free energy is given by

$$\Delta G = G_{\text{ADP}} + G_{\text{P}_i} + G_{\text{L}_e} - G_{\text{ATP}} - G_{\text{L}_i} \quad (2.88)$$

$$= G_{\text{ADP}}^0 + G_{\text{P}_i}^0 - G_{\text{ATP}}^0 - RT \ln \left( \frac{[\text{ATP}][\text{L}_i]}{[\text{ADP}][\text{P}_i][\text{L}_e]} \right) \quad (2.89)$$

$$= \Delta G_{\text{ATP}}^0 - RT \ln \left( \frac{[\text{ATP}][\text{L}_i]}{[\text{ADP}][\text{P}_i][\text{L}_e]} \right). \quad (2.90)$$

Note that the standard free energy of L is the same inside and outside the cell. At equilibrium  $\Delta G = 0$  and thus

$$\Delta G_{\text{ATP}}^0 = RT \ln \left( \frac{[\text{L}_i]_{\text{eq}}}{[\text{L}_e]_{\text{eq}}} \frac{[\text{ATP}]_{\text{eq}}}{[\text{ADP}]_{\text{eq}} [\text{P}_i]_{\text{eq}}} \right). \quad (2.91)$$

Combining this with (2.85) gives

$$\prod_{i=1}^6 K_i = e^{\frac{\Delta G_{\text{ATP}}^0}{RT}} M^{-1}, \quad (2.92)$$

which, because it is independent of concentrations, must hold in general. Notice from (2.91) that both sides of (2.92) must have units of liters per mole, or  $M^{-1}$ . In fact, since the free energy released by the hydrolysis of ATP is well known to be  $-31 \text{ kJ mole}^{-1}$ , it follows that

$$e^{\frac{\Delta G_{\text{ATP}}^0}{RT}} = 3.73 \times 10^{-6}. \quad (2.93)$$

Now from (2.84) it follows that

$$J = \frac{\frac{[\text{L}_i]}{[\text{L}_e]} \frac{[\text{ATP}]}{[\text{ADP}][\text{P}_i]} - e^{\frac{\Delta G_{\text{ATP}}^0}{RT}} M^{-1}}{\phi}. \quad (2.94)$$

### 2.5.2 Active Transport of Charged Ions

Suppose that the interior of the cell has an electric potential of  $V_i$  while the exterior has a potential of  $V_e$ , and suppose further that L has a charge  $z$ . Then the change in potential of the ATPase cycle (2.87) is

$$\Delta G = \Delta G_{\text{ATP}}^0 - RT \ln \left( \frac{[\text{ATP}][\text{L}_i]}{[\text{ADP}][\text{P}_i][\text{L}_e]} \right) - zFV, \quad (2.95)$$

where  $V = V_i - V_e$  is, as usual, the membrane potential difference.

An identical argument to before shows that

$$\prod_{i=1}^6 K_i = e^{\frac{\Delta G_{\text{ATP}}^0}{RT}} e^{\frac{-zFV}{RT}} \text{mole}^{-1}, \quad (2.96)$$

and thus

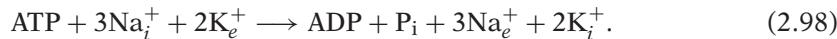
$$J = \frac{\frac{[L_i]}{[L_e]} \frac{[ATP]}{[ADP][P_i]} - e^{\frac{\Delta^0 G_{ATP}}{RT}} e^{\frac{-zFV}{RT}} M^{-1}}{\phi(V)}. \quad (2.97)$$

Note that the denominator is now a function of  $V$  also, since  $\phi$  depends on the rate constants, which are themselves functions of  $V$ , and thus the precise dependence of  $J$  on  $V$  is not immediately clear. However, if  $z > 0$  and  $V > 0$ , the flux is zero at lower concentrations of  $L_i$ , while if  $V < 0$ , the flux is zero at higher concentrations of  $L_i$ . Thus we conclude that a positive membrane potential makes it easier for the pump to move positive ions from inside to outside, while a negative membrane potential makes this more difficult. Although this is not a rigorous argument, a more detailed calculation shows that this result holds in general.

Although this thermodynamic argument shows that there must be some voltage-dependence in the rate constants, it does not tell us in which step (or steps) the voltage-dependence occurs. For example, in this model, the transition from  $E \cdot ATP \cdot L$  to  $E_e \cdot ATP \cdot L$  involves the net movement of the charge across the cell membrane, so that  $\frac{k_{-3}}{k_3} = e^{\frac{-zFV}{RT}}$ . (The argument here is identical to the argument used for the voltage-dependence of the  $Na^+ - Ca^{2+}$  exchanger.) However, there are other possibilities. Although each model must have the same solution when  $J = 0$ , and the expressions for  $J$  must have the same sign, the models can have significantly different expressions for  $\phi(V)$ .

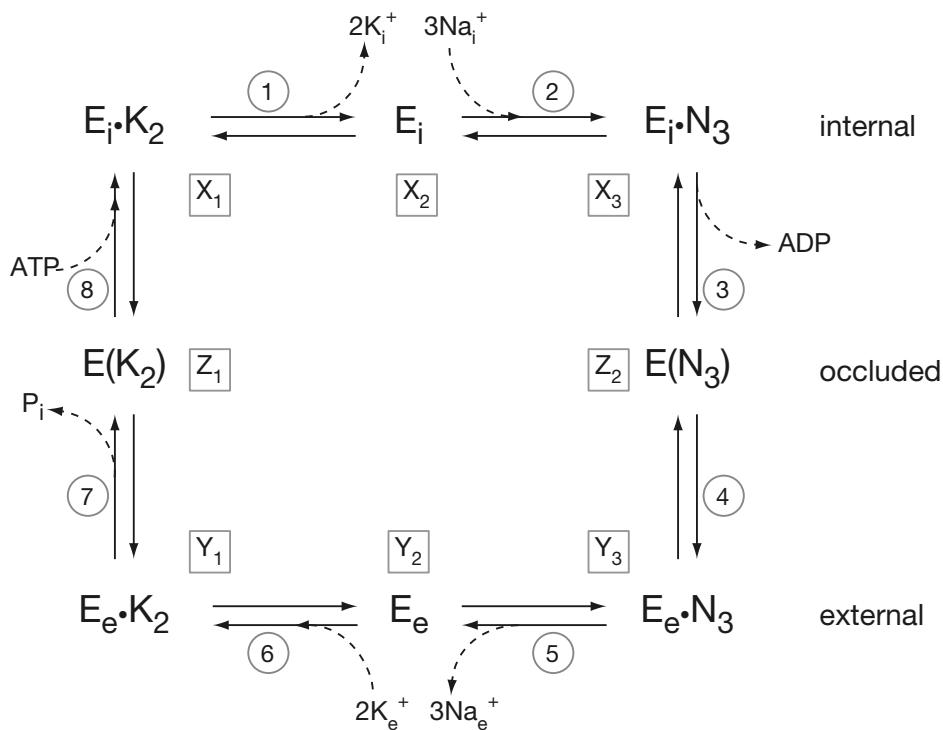
### 2.5.3 A Model of the $Na^+ - K^+$ ATPase

One of the best-known ATPases is the  $Na^+ - K^+$  ATPase, which pumps  $K^+$  into the cell and  $Na^+$  out of the cell through the overall reaction scheme



It is an electrogenic pump (each pump cycle transfers one positive charge from inside to out) and a member of the family of P-type active cation transporters which includes the SERCA ATPases that are discussed at length in Chapter 7. A great deal of work has been done to determine the mechanisms that underlie  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  transport by this ATPase; the most widely accepted model is the Post-Albers model which was developed by two independent groups in the 1960s (Albers et al., 1963; Charnock and Post, 1963). A more recent review is Apell (2004), while a history of investigations into the  $Na^+ - K^+$  ATPase is given by Glynn (2002). An excellent mathematical implementation of the Post-Albers scheme is that of Smith and Crampin (2004), and this is the model that we follow here.

In the Post-Albers scheme, phosphorylation of the pump (i.e., exchange of ATP for ADP) is associated with  $Na^+$  efflux, while hydrolysis (i.e., loss of the additional phosphate group) is associated with  $K^+$  influx. During the transition across the membrane each ion type is occluded, i.e., bound to the pump in a conformation in which



**Figure 2.11** Model of the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  ATPase based on the Post-Albers scheme.

it is accessible from neither side of the membrane. Occlusion prevents slippage, thus increasing the efficiency of the pump.

This scenario is illustrated in Fig. 2.11. Starting at the top left of the figure (state  $X_1$ ), the ATPase begins in the conformation  $E_i$ , in which the binding sites for  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  are exposed to the inside of the cell. The ATPase then loses two  $\text{K}^+$  ions (which is assumed to occur in a single step) and gains three  $\text{Na}^+$  ions, again in a single step, to move through states  $X_2$  and  $X_3$ . ATP remains bound to the pump in each of the states  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ , and  $X_3$ , although this is not shown explicitly in the diagram. Loss of ADP then drives the ATPase to the occluded state  $Z_2$ , in which the three  $\text{Na}^+$  ions are inaccessible to both the inside and outside of the cell. After another conformational change to the  $E_e$  state, in which the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  binding sites are exposed to the outside of the cell, the ATPase loses its three  $\text{Na}^+$  to the outside, picks up another two  $\text{K}^+$ , and loses its extra phosphate to move through to the occluded state  $Z_1$ , in which the  $\text{K}^+$  ions are shielded. Binding of ATP then returns the ATPase to the  $E_i$  conformation to complete the cycle. The rate constants are not shown explicitly, but each transition between states is labeled by a circled number. For each  $i = 1, \dots, 8$ , transition  $i$  has two rate constants,  $k_i$  in the clockwise direction and  $k_{-i}$  in the counterclockwise direction.

From this diagram we can easily write the differential equations for each of the ATPase states. For example, letting a lowercase letter denote the fraction of the ATPase in that state, we have

$$\frac{dx_1}{dt} = k_{-1}[K_i^+]^2 x_2 + k_8[ATP]z_1 - (k_{-8} + k_1)x_1, \quad (2.99)$$

and so on, subject to the constraint  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + y_1 + y_2 + y_3 + z_1 + z_2 = 1$ . The resultant expression for the flux is long and unwieldy, of the form

$$J = \frac{[ATP]n_i^3\kappa_e^2 - [ADP][P_i]\kappa_i^2n_e^3(\prod_{i=1}^8 K_i)}{\phi}, \quad (2.100)$$

where  $\phi$  is the sum of a large number of terms involving products of the rate constants and concentrations. Here,  $n$  denotes the  $Na^+$  concentration, and  $\kappa$  denotes the  $K^+$  concentration. This expression for the flux is similar to that derived in the simpler model of Section 2.5.1. The same thermodynamic constraints apply, and so some of the rate constants are functions of the membrane potential. Smith and Crampin (2004), following the ideas of Apell (1989), incorporate voltage dependence into the rate constants for  $Na^+$  binding and unbinding, i.e.,  $K_2$  and  $K_5$  in this model.

A simplified version of this model is discussed in Exercise 13.

## 2.5.4 Nuclear Transport

The transport of proteins from the cytoplasm to the nucleus (or the reverse) is accomplished by means that combine features of each of the above transport mechanisms. The nuclear membrane contains protein structures called nuclear pore complexes (NPCs) that allow free diffusion of soluble carrier proteins. However, these carrier proteins can pass through the pore complex only when they are bound. These carrier proteins (called importins) recognize and readily bind cargo destined for translocation. The energy to transport cargo against its gradient is provided by the hydrolysis of GTP via a GTPase enzyme called Ran. Ran-GTP has a very high binding affinity for the carrier protein ( $\Delta G^0 = -51 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}$ ), effectively excluding the cargo from binding. The transportin/Ran-GTP complex is disassembled by the hydrolysis of Ran-GTP ( $\Delta G^0 = -33 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}$ ) to Ran-GDP, which has a binding affinity for the carrier protein that is 10,000-fold lower than that of Ran-GTP. The endogenous GTPase activity rate is extremely slow ( $k_{cat} = 1.5 \times 10^{-5} \text{ s}^{-1}$ ). However, the hydrolysis of GTP to GDP on Ran is catalyzed by a cytoplasmic GTPase-activating protein called RanGAP, which accelerates this rate by as much as 500,000-fold.

One cycle of transport works as follows. Cargo in the cytoplasm that is targeted for transport binds to the carrier molecule and moves via diffusion through the NPC. In the nucleus, when the cargo unbinds, Ran-GTP quickly binds to the carrier, preventing the cargo from rebinding. Ran-GTP is kept at high concentration in the nucleus by another mechanism, so the Ran-GTP carrier complex diffuses into the cytoplasm through the NPC. On the cytoplasmic side of the membrane, Ran-GTP is quickly hydrolyzed to

Ran-GDP, which because of its much lower binding affinity, unbinds from the carrier molecule, completing the cycle. Although all the reactions are reversible, the directionality is maintained by the free energy of GTP hydrolysis and the high concentration of GTP in the nucleus.

We leave the development of a model of this transport mechanism to the interested reader. In the absence of RanGAP, the model is similar to that of the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  transporter described above. On the other hand, if the hydrolysis of Ran-GTP to RanGDP is assumed to be so fast that there is no unbinding of RanGTP in the cytoplasm, then the model is similar to that of the simple ATPase described above.

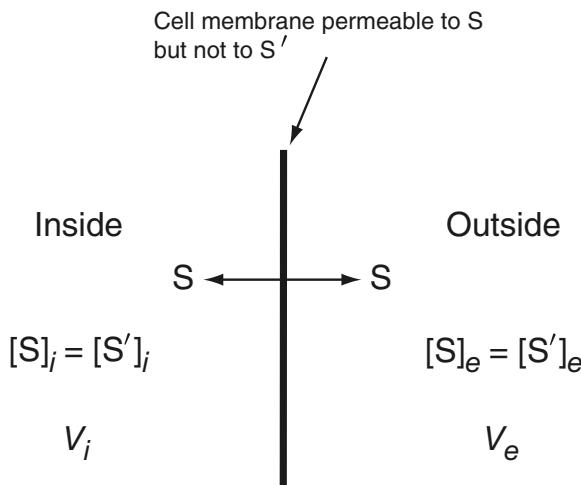
## 2.6 The Membrane Potential

The principal function of the active ATPase transport processes described above is to regulate the intracellular ionic composition of the cell. For example, the operation of the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase results in high intracellular  $\text{K}^+$  concentrations and low intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentrations. This is necessary for a cell's survival, as without such regulation, cells swell and burst. However, before we consider models of cell volume regulation, we consider the effects of ionic separation.

### 2.6.1 The Nernst Equilibrium Potential

One of the most important equations in electrophysiology is the Nernst equation, which describes how a difference in ionic concentration can result in a potential difference across the membrane separating the two concentrations.

Suppose there are two reservoirs containing the same ion  $S$ , but at different concentrations, as shown schematically in Fig. 2.12. The reservoirs are separated by a



**Figure 2.12** Schematic diagram of a membrane separating two solutions with different ionic concentrations. By convention, the potential difference,  $V$ , across the membrane is defined to be  $V = V_i - V_e$ .

semipermeable membrane. The solutions on each side of the membrane are assumed to be electrically neutral (at least initially), and thus each ion S is balanced by another ion, S', with opposite charge. For example, S could be  $\text{Na}^+$ , while S' could be  $\text{Cl}^-$ . Because we ultimately wish to apply the Nernst equation to cellular membranes, we call the left of the membrane the inside and the right the outside of the cell.

If the membrane is permeable to S but not to S', the concentration difference across the membrane results in a net flow of S from one side to another, down its concentration gradient. However, because S' cannot diffuse through the membrane, the diffusion of S causes a buildup of charge across the membrane. This charge imbalance, in turn, sets up an electric field that opposes the further net movement of S through the membrane. Equilibrium is reached when the electric field exactly balances the diffusion of S. Note that at steady state there are more S ions than S' ions on one side and fewer S ions than S' ions on the other, and thus neither side of the membrane is exactly electrically neutral. However, because the force from the charge buildup is so strong, only a small amount of S moves across the membrane. To a good approximation, the concentrations of S on either side of the membrane remain unchanged, the solutions on either side of the membrane remain electrically neutral, and the small excess charge accumulates near the interface. The region in which there is a charge imbalance is called the Debye layer, and is on the order of a few nanometers thick.

The chemical potential of S on the inside of the membrane is

$$G_{S,i} = G_S^0 + RT \ln([S]_i) + zFV_i, \quad (2.101)$$

while on the outside it is

$$G_{S,e} = G_S^0 + RT \ln([S]_e) + zFV_e. \quad (2.102)$$

The chemical potential difference is

$$\Delta G_S = G_{S,i} - G_{S,e} = RT \ln \left( \frac{[S]_i}{[S]_e} \right) + zFV. \quad (2.103)$$

At equilibrium, it must be that  $\Delta G_S = 0$ , and thus the equilibrium potential difference,  $V_S$ , across the membrane must be

$$V_S = \frac{RT}{zF} \ln \left( \frac{[S]_e}{[S]_i} \right) = \frac{kT}{zq} \ln \left( \frac{[S]_e}{[S]_i} \right), \quad (2.104)$$

called the *Nernst potential*. Here  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant  $k = \frac{R}{N_A}$ ,  $N_A$  is Avogadro's number,  $q$  is the charge on a proton, and  $z$  is the charge on the ion S. When  $V = V_S$ , there is no net current of S across the membrane, as the tendency of ions to move down their gradient is exactly balanced by the electric potential difference.

Throughout this book we follow the usual convention and define the potential difference,  $V$ , across the membrane to be

$$V = V_i - V_e, \quad (2.105)$$

i.e., the intracellular potential minus the extracellular potential.

Typical concentrations (in this case, for squid axon) are 397, 50, and 40 mM for  $K^+$ ,  $Na^+$ , and  $Cl^-$ , respectively, in the intracellular space, and 20, 437, and 556 mM in the extracellular space. With these concentrations, the Nernst potentials for squid nerve axon are  $V_{Na} = 56$  mV,  $V_K = -77$  mV,  $V_{Cl} = -68$  mV (using  $RT/F = 25.8$  mV at 27°C. See Table 2.1).

The Nernst equation is independent of how the ions move through the membrane and depends only on the ratio of concentrations. In this sense, it is a universal law (although because it was derived from an ideal, yet approximate, law, it too is approximate). Any equation that expresses the transmembrane current of  $S$  in terms of the membrane potential, no matter what its form, must have the reversal potential of  $V_S$ ; i.e., the current must be zero at the Nernst potential  $V = V_S$ . However, although this is true when a single ion species crosses the membrane, the situation is considerably more complicated when more than one type of ion can cross the membrane. In this case, the membrane potential that generates zero total current does not necessarily have zero current for each individual ion. For example, a current of  $S$  in one direction might be balanced by a current of  $S'$  in the same direction. Hence, when multiple ion types can diffuse through the membrane, the concentrations are not, in general, at equilibrium, even when there is no total current. Therefore, the arguments of chemical equilibrium used to derive the Nernst equation cannot be used, and there is no universal expression for the reversal potential in the multiple ion case. In this case, the reversal potential depends on the model used to describe the individual transmembrane ionic flows (see Chapter 3).

## 2.6.2 Gibbs–Donnan Equilibrium

Suppose one side of the membrane contains large charged macromolecules that cannot cross the membrane, but that both of the ion species  $S$  and  $S'$  freely diffuse across the membrane. To be specific, suppose that the macromolecules are negatively charged with valence  $-z_x$ ,  $S$  is positively charged with valence  $z$ , and  $S'$  is negatively charged with valence  $-z$ . Note that both  $z$  and  $z_x$  are defined to be positive.

Outside the cell,  $S$  and  $S'$  must have the same concentration, to maintain charge neutrality. Inside, charge neutrality requires more  $S$  than  $S'$ , in order to balance the negative charge on the macromolecules. At equilibrium, the membrane potential must be the Nernst potential for both  $S$  and  $S'$ , namely

$$V_S = \frac{RT}{zF} \ln \left( \frac{[S]_e}{[S]_i} \right) = -\frac{RT}{zF} \ln \left( \frac{[S']_e}{[S']_i} \right), \quad (2.106)$$

where

$$z_x[X] + z[S']_i = z[S]_i \quad \text{and} \quad [S']_e = [S]_e. \quad (2.107)$$

It follows that

$$[S']_e[S]_e = [S']_i[S]_i, \quad (2.108)$$

and thus

$$[\text{S}]_i \left( [\text{S}]_i - \frac{z_x}{z} [\text{X}] \right) - ([\text{S}]_e)^2 = 0. \quad (2.109)$$

Now, we assume that the external concentration is fixed, and treat  $[\text{S}]_e$  as a known parameter. In this case, (2.109) can be solved to find a unique positive value for  $[\text{S}]_i$ ,

$$[\text{S}]_i = \sigma [\text{S}]_e, \quad \sigma = \frac{1}{2}(Z + \sqrt{Z^2 + 4}), \quad (2.110)$$

where  $Z = \frac{z_x[\text{X}]}{z[\text{S}]_e}$ , and from this the transmembrane potential can be determined using (2.106).

If, instead, we have a fixed volume and a fixed total amount of S, say, then we use the constraint

$$\nu_i [\text{S}]_i + \nu_e [\text{S}]_e = [\text{S}]_{\text{tot}}, \quad (2.111)$$

where  $[\text{S}]_{\text{tot}}$  is a constant, and  $\nu_i$  and  $\nu_e$  are the internal and external volumes, respectively. We can now solve (2.109) subject to this constraint to find  $[\text{S}]_i$  and the transmembrane potential. Note, however, that a physical solution is not always possible in this case, as there may be insufficient S or S' to reach equilibrium.

This equilibrium is called the *Gibbs–Donnan equilibrium* (Exercise 15). The potential difference generated in this way is known to occur across cell membranes and also across the edge of a gel in aqueous solution. This potential drop occurs across the edge of a gel if the charged macromolecules are immobilized in the gel, and therefore unable to diffuse out of the gel.

### 2.6.3 Electrodiffusion: The Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz Equations

In general, the flow of ions through the membrane is driven by concentration gradients and also by the electric field. The contribution to the flow from the electric field is given by *Planck's equation*

$$\mathbf{J} = -u \frac{z}{|z|} c \nabla \phi, \quad (2.112)$$

where  $u$  is the *mobility* of the ion, defined as the velocity of the ion under a constant unit electric field;  $z$  is the valence of the ion, so that  $z/|z|$  is the sign of the force on the ion;  $c$  is the concentration of S; and  $\phi$  is the electrical potential, so that  $-\nabla \phi$  is the electrical field.

There is a relationship, determined by Einstein, between the ionic mobility  $u$  and Fick's diffusion constant:

$$D = \frac{uRT}{|z|F}. \quad (2.113)$$

When the effects of concentration gradients and electrical gradients are combined, we obtain the *Nernst–Planck equation*

$$\mathbf{J} = -D \left( \nabla c + \frac{zF}{RT} c \nabla \phi \right). \quad (2.114)$$

If the flow of ions and the electric field are transverse to the membrane, (2.114) can be viewed as the one-dimensional relation

$$J = -D \left( \frac{dc}{dx} + \frac{zF}{RT} c \frac{d\phi}{dx} \right). \quad (2.115)$$

### The Nernst Equation

The Nernst equation can also be derived from the Nernst–Planck equation (2.115). When the flux  $J$  is zero, we obtain

$$-D \left( \frac{dc}{dx} + \frac{zF}{RT} c \frac{d\phi}{dx} \right) = 0, \quad (2.116)$$

so that

$$\frac{1}{c} \frac{dc}{dx} + \frac{zF}{RT} \frac{d\phi}{dx} = 0. \quad (2.117)$$

Now suppose that the cell membrane extends from  $x = 0$  (the inside) to  $x = L$  (the outside), and let subscripts  $i$  and  $e$  denote internal and external quantities respectively. Then, integrating (2.117) from  $x = 0$  to  $x = L$  we get

$$\ln(c)|_{c_i}^{c_e} = \frac{zF}{RT} (\phi_i - \phi_e), \quad (2.118)$$

and thus the potential difference across the membrane,  $V = \phi_i - \phi_e$ , is given by

$$V = \frac{RT}{zF} \ln \left( \frac{c_e}{c_i} \right), \quad (2.119)$$

which is the Nernst equation.

### The Constant Field Approximation

In general, the electric potential  $\phi$  is determined by the local charge density, and so, if it is not zero,  $J$  must be found by solving a coupled system of equations (discussed in detail in Chapter 3). However, a useful result is obtained by assuming that the electric field in the membrane is constant, and thus decoupled from the effects of charges moving through the membrane. Suppose two reservoirs are separated by a semipermeable membrane of thickness  $L$ , such that the potential difference across the membrane is  $V$ . On the left of the membrane (the inside)  $[S] = c_i$ , and on the right (the outside)  $[S] = c_e$ . If the electric field is constant through the membrane,  $\partial\phi/\partial x = -V/L$ , where  $V = \phi(0) - \phi(L)$  is the membrane potential.

At steady state and with no production of ions, the flux must be constant. In this case, the Nernst–Planck equation (2.114) is an ordinary differential equation for the concentration  $c$ ,

$$\frac{dc}{dx} - \frac{zFV}{RTL}c + \frac{J}{D} = 0, \quad (2.120)$$

whose solution is

$$\exp\left(\frac{-zVFx}{RTL}\right)c(x) = \frac{JRTL}{DzVF} \left[ \exp\left(\frac{-zVFx}{RTL}\right) - 1 \right] + c_i, \quad (2.121)$$

where we have used the left boundary condition  $c(0) = c_i$ . To satisfy the boundary condition  $c(L) = c_e$ , it must be that

$$J = \frac{D}{L} \frac{zFV}{RT} \frac{c_i - c_e \exp\left(\frac{-zVF}{RT}\right)}{1 - \exp\left(\frac{-zVF}{RT}\right)}, \quad (2.122)$$

where  $J$  is the flux density with units (typically) of moles per area per unit time. Note that these units are equivalent to units of concentration  $\times$  speed. This flux density becomes an electrical current density (current per unit area) when multiplied by  $zF$ , the amount of charge carried per mole, and thus

$$I_S = P_S \frac{z^2 F^2}{RT} V \frac{c_i - c_e \exp\left(\frac{-zVF}{RT}\right)}{1 - \exp\left(\frac{-zVF}{RT}\right)}, \quad (2.123)$$

where  $P_S = D/L$  is the permeability of the membrane to S. This is the famous Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz (GHK) current equation, and plays an important role in models of cellular electrical activity. Notice that the GHK flux (2.122) reduces to Fick's law (2.14) in the limit  $V \rightarrow 0$ .

The current is zero if the diffusively driven flow and the electrically driven flow are in balance, which occurs, provided that  $z \neq 0$ , if

$$V = V_S = \frac{RT}{zF} \ln\left(\frac{c_e}{c_i}\right), \quad (2.124)$$

which is, as expected, the Nernst potential.

If there are several ions that are separated by the same membrane, then the flow of each of these is governed separately by its own current–voltage relationship. In general there is no potential at which these currents are all individually zero. However, the potential at which the net electrical current is zero is called the Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz potential. For a collection of ions all with valence  $z = \pm 1$ , we can calculate the GHK potential directly. For zero net electrical current, it must be that

$$0 = \sum_{z=1} P_j \frac{c_i^j - c_e^j \exp\left(\frac{-VF}{RT}\right)}{1 - \exp\left(\frac{-VF}{RT}\right)} + \sum_{z=-1} P_j \frac{c_i^j - c_e^j \exp\left(\frac{VF}{RT}\right)}{1 - \exp\left(\frac{VF}{RT}\right)}, \quad (2.125)$$

where  $P_j = D_j/L$ . This expression can be solved for  $V$ , to get

$$V = -\frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{\sum_{z=-1} P_j c_e^j + \sum_{z=1} P_j c_i^j}{\sum_{z=-1} P_j c_i^j + \sum_{z=1} P_j c_e^j} \right). \quad (2.126)$$

For example, if the membrane separates  $\text{Na}^+$  ( $z = 1$ ),  $\text{K}^+$  ( $z = 1$ ), and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ( $z = -1$ ) ions, then the GHK potential is

$$V_r = -\frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{P_{\text{Na}}[\text{Na}^+]_i + P_{\text{K}}[\text{K}^+]_i + P_{\text{Cl}}[\text{Cl}^-]_e}{P_{\text{Na}}[\text{Na}^+]_e + P_{\text{K}}[\text{K}^+]_e + P_{\text{Cl}}[\text{Cl}^-]_i} \right). \quad (2.127)$$

It is important to emphasize that neither the GHK potential nor the GHK current equation are universal expressions like the Nernst equation. Both depend on the assumption of a constant electric field, and other models give different expressions for the transmembrane current and reversal potential. In Chapter 3 we discuss other models of ionic current, and compare them to the GHK equations. However, the importance of the GHK equations is so great, and their use so widespread, that their separate presentation here is justified.

## 2.6.4 Electrical Circuit Model of the Cell Membrane

Since the cell membrane separates charge, it can be viewed as a capacitor. The capacitance of any insulator is defined as the ratio of the charge across the capacitor to the voltage potential necessary to hold that charge, and is denoted by

$$C_m = \frac{Q}{V}. \quad (2.128)$$

From standard electrostatics (Coulomb's law), one can derive the fact that for two parallel conducting plates separated by an insulator of thickness  $d$ , the capacitance is

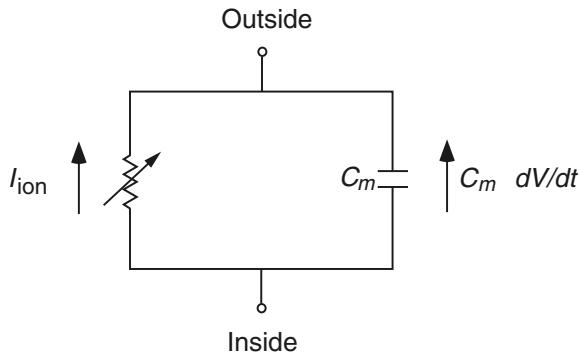
$$C_m = \frac{k\epsilon_0}{d}, \quad (2.129)$$

where  $k$  is the dielectric constant for the insulator and  $\epsilon_0$  is the permittivity of free space. The capacitance of cell membrane is typically  $1.0 \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$ . Using that  $\epsilon_0 = (10^{-9}/(36\pi))\text{F/m}$ , we calculate that the dielectric constant for cell membrane is about 8.5, compared to  $k = 3$  for oil.

A simple electrical circuit model of the cell membrane is shown in Fig. 2.13. It is assumed that the membrane acts like a capacitor in parallel with a resistor (although not necessarily ohmic). Since the current is  $dQ/dt$ , it follows from (2.128) that the capacitive current is  $C_m dV/dt$ , provided that  $C_m$  is constant. Since there can be no net buildup of charge on either side of the membrane, the sum of the ionic and capacitive currents must be zero, and so

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + I_{\text{ion}} = 0, \quad (2.130)$$

where, as usual,  $V = V_i - V_e$ .



**Figure 2.13** Electrical circuit model of the cell membrane.

This equation appears many times in this book, as it is the basis for much of theoretical electrophysiology. A significant challenge is to determine the form of  $I_{ion}$ . We have already derived one possible choice, the GHK current equation (2.123), and others are discussed in Chapter 3.

Another common model describes  $I_{ion}$  as a linear function of the membrane potential. In Chapter 3 we show how a linear  $I$ - $V$  curve can be derived from more realistic models; however, because it is used so widely, we present a brief, heuristic, derivation here. Consider the movement of an ion  $S$  across a membrane. We assume that the potential drop across the membrane has two components. First, the potential drop due to concentration differences is given by the Nernst equation

$$V_S = \frac{RT}{zF} \ln \left( \frac{[S]_e}{[S]_i} \right), \quad (2.131)$$

and, second, if the channel is ohmic, the potential drop due to an electrical current is  $rI_S$ , where  $r$  is the channel resistance and  $I_S$  is the transmembrane current (positive outward) of  $S$ . Summing these two contributions we obtain

$$V = rI_S + V_S, \quad (2.132)$$

and solving for the current, we get the current–voltage relationship

$$I_S = g(V - V_S), \quad (2.133)$$

where  $g = 1/r$  is the *membrane conductance*. The current  $I_S$  and conductance  $g$  are usually specified per unit area of membrane, being the product of the single channel conductance times the number of channels per unit area of membrane.

Notice that this current–voltage relationship also has zero current when  $V = V_S$ , the Nernst potential, as it must.

## 2.7 Osmosis

Suppose two chambers of water are separated by a rigid porous membrane. Because it is porous, water can flow between the two chambers. If the two chambers are topped by pistons, then water can be driven between the two chambers by applying different pressures to the two pistons. In general there is a linear relationship between the pressure difference and the flux of water through the membrane, given by

$$rQ = P_1 - P_2, \quad (2.134)$$

where  $Q$  is the flux (volume per unit time) of water from chamber one to chamber two,  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are the applied pressures for chambers one and two, respectively, and  $r$  is the flow resistance of the membrane (not the same as the resistance to flow of ions). The expression (2.134) is actually a definition of the flow resistance  $r$ , and this linear relationship is analogous to Ohm's law relating current and voltage in a conductor. It is useful but not universally correct.

Suppose that a solute is added to chamber one, and that the membrane is impermeable to the solute. The difference in free energy per mole (or chemical potential) of solvent (i.e., water) between the two chambers is

$$\Delta G = RT \ln \frac{S_1}{S_2}, \quad (2.135)$$

where  $S_i$  is the mole fraction of solvent in the  $i$ th chamber. Note that because this expression involves the ratio of  $S_1$  to  $S_2$ , we can use whatever units are most convenient. Hence we use mole fraction rather than concentration, which is standard. Because it dilutes the solvent ( $S_1 < S_2$ ), the presence of a solute lowers the chemical potential of the solvent and induces a flow of solvent from chamber two to chamber one. In other words, the solvent diffuses from a region of higher concentration to one of lower concentration.

At constant temperature, equilibrium can be attained either by diluting the solution until it is pure solvent, or by increasing the pressure on the solution. The *osmotic pressure*  $\pi_s$  is defined to be the pressure that must be applied to chamber 1 to bring the free energy back to the free energy of the pure solvent. It follows that

$$RT \ln \frac{S_1}{S_2} + \pi_s v_s = 0, \quad (2.136)$$

where  $v_s$  is the molar volume (liters per mole) of the solvent. Note that, from the ideal gas law  $PV = nRT$ , we see that  $\pi_s v_s$  has the same units as  $RT$ .

Since  $S_2 = 1$  it now follows that

$$\pi_s = -\frac{RT}{v_s} \ln(S_1) = -\frac{RT}{v_s} \ln(1 - N) \approx \frac{RT}{v_s} N, \quad (2.137)$$

where  $N$  is the mole fraction of solvent. Also, since  $N = \frac{n}{n+n_s} \approx \frac{n}{n_s}$ , where  $n$  and  $n_s$  are the number of moles of solute and solvent, respectively, we have that

$$\pi_s = \frac{RT}{v_s} \frac{n}{n_s} \approx RCT, \quad (2.138)$$

since  $n_s v_s$  is quite close to the volume,  $v$ , of solution. Here  $c$  is the concentration of solvent in units of moles per liter. Using that  $c = n/v$ , (2.138) becomes

$$\pi_s v = nRT, \quad (2.139)$$

which is the same as the ideal gas law. Equation (2.138) was first found empirically by van't Hoff.

If  $n$  has the units of numbers of molecules per liter, rather than moles per liter, as above, then (2.139) becomes

$$\pi_s v = nkT. \quad (2.140)$$

As with all things derived from ideal properties, the expression (2.139) is an approximation, and for real solutions at physiological concentrations, the deviation can be significant. The formula

$$\pi_s v = \phi nRT, \quad (2.141)$$

works much better, where  $\phi$  is a concentration-dependent correction factor found experimentally. For all solutes,  $\phi$  approaches one for sufficiently small concentrations. At concentrations typical of extracellular fluids in mammals,  $\phi = 1.01$  for glucose and lactose, whereas for NaCl and KCl,  $\phi = 0.93$  and 0.92, respectively. Deviation from ideality is even more significant for proteins, and is typically more concentration dependent as well. In spite of this, in the remainder of this book we use van't Hoff's law (2.138) to calculate osmotic pressure.

Notice that  $\pi_s$  is not the pressure of the solute but rather the pressure that must be applied to the solution to prevent solvent from flowing in through the semipermeable membrane. Thus, the flow rate of solvent is modified by osmotic pressure to be

$$rQ = P_1 - \pi_s - P_2, \quad (2.142)$$

The flux of water due to osmotic pressure is called *osmosis*. The effect of the osmotic pressure is to draw water into chamber one, causing an increase in its volume and thereby to decrease the concentration of solute.

Osmotic pressure is determined by the number of particles per unit volume of fluid, and not the mass of the particles. The unit that expresses the concentration in terms of number of particles is called the *osmole*. One osmole is 1 gram molecular weight (that is, one mole) of an undissociated solute. Thus, 180 grams of glucose (1 gram molecular weight) is 1 osmole of glucose, since glucose does not dissociate in water. On the other hand, 1 gram molecular weight of sodium chloride, 58.5 grams, is 2 osmoles, since it dissociates into 2 moles of osmotically active ions in water.

A solution with 1 osmole of solute dissolved in a kilogram of water is said to have osmolality of 1 osmole per kilogram. Since it is difficult to measure the amount of water

in a solution, a more common unit of measure is osmolarity, which is the osmoles per liter of aqueous solution. In dilute conditions, such as in the human body, osmolarity and osmolality differ by less than one percent. At body temperature, 37° C, a concentration of 1 osmole per liter of water has an osmotic pressure of 19,300 mm Hg, which corresponds to a column of water over 250 meters high. Clearly, osmotic pressures can be very large. It is for this reason that red blood cells burst when the blood serum is diluted with pure water, and this is known to have been the cause of death in hospital patients when pure water was accidentally injected into the veins.

Suppose two columns (of equal cross-section) of water are separated at the bottom by a rigid porous membrane. If  $n$  molecules of sugar are dissolved in column one, what will be the height difference between the two columns after they achieve steady state? At steady state there is no flux between the two columns, so at the level of the membrane,  $P_1 - \pi_s = P_2$ . Since  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are related to the height of the column of water through  $P = \rho gh$ , where  $\rho$  is the density of the fluid,  $g$  is the gravitational constant, and  $h$  is the height of the column. We suppose that the density of the two columns is the same, unaffected by the presence of the dissolved molecule, so we have

$$\rho gh_2 = \rho gh_1 - \frac{nkT}{h_1 A}, \quad (2.143)$$

where  $A$  is the cross-sectional area of the columns. Since fluid is conserved,  $h_1 + h_2 = 2h_0$ , where  $h_0$  is the height of the two columns of water before the sugar was added. From these, we find a single quadratic equation for  $h_1$ :

$$h_1^2 - h_0 h_1 - \frac{nkT}{2\rho g A} = 0. \quad (2.144)$$

The positive root of this equation is  $h_1 = h_0/2 + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{h_0^2 + \frac{2nkT}{\rho g A}}$ , so that

$$h_1 - h_2 = \sqrt{h_0^2 + \frac{2nkT}{\rho g A}} - h_0. \quad (2.145)$$

When the solute is at a high enough concentration, physical solutions of (2.145) are not possible. Specifically, if the solute is too concentrated with  $\frac{nkT}{\rho g A} > 4h_0^2$ , the weight of a column of water of height  $2h_0$  is insufficient to balance the osmotic pressure, in which case there is not enough water to reach equilibrium.

## 2.8 Control of Cell Volume

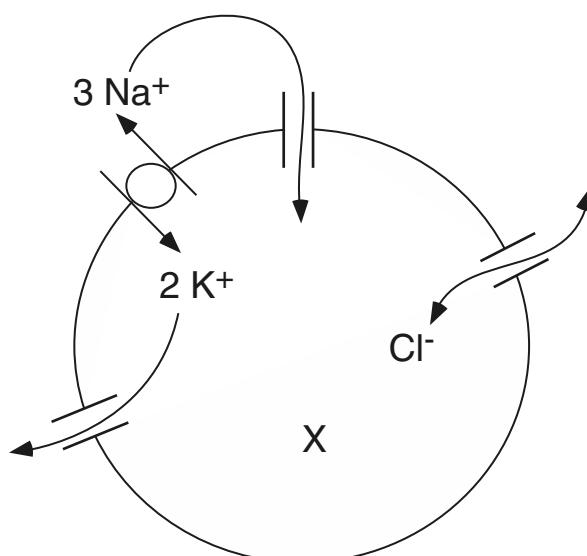
The principal function of the ionic pumps is to set up and maintain concentration differences across the cell membrane, concentration differences that are necessary for the cell to control its volume. In this section we describe how this works by means of a simple model in which the volume of the cell is regulated by the balance between ionic pumping and ionic flow down concentration gradients (Tosteson and Hoffman, 1960; Jakobsson, 1980; Hoppensteadt and Peskin, 2001).

Because the cell membrane is a thin lipid bilayer, it is incapable of withstanding any hydrostatic pressure differences. This is a potentially fatal weakness. For a cell to survive, it must contain a large number of intracellular proteins and ions, but if their concentrations become too large, osmosis causes the entry of water into the cell, causing it to swell and burst (this is what happens to many cells when their pumping machinery is disabled). Thus, for cells to survive, they must regulate their intracellular ionic composition (Macknight, 1988).

An even more difficult problem for some cells is to transport large quantities of water, ions, or other molecules while maintaining a steady volume. For example,  $\text{Na}^+$ -transporting epithelial cells, found (among other places) in the bladder, the colon, and nephrons of the kidney, are designed to transport large quantities of  $\text{Na}^+$  from the lumen of the gut or the nephron to the blood. Indeed, these cells can transport an amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  equal to their entire intracellular contents in one minute. However, the rate of transport varies widely, depending on the concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  on the mucosal side. Thus, these cells must regulate their volume and ionic composition under a wide variety of conditions and transport rates (Schultz, 1981).

### 2.8.1 A Pump-Leak Model

We begin by modeling the active and passive transport of ionic species across the cell membrane. We have already derived two equations for ionic current as a function of membrane potential: the GHK current equation (2.123) and the linear relationship (2.133). For our present purposes it is convenient to use the linear expression for ionic currents. Active transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  is performed primarily by the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  ATPase (see Section 2.5.3).



**Figure 2.14** Schematic diagram of the pump-leak model.

Combining the expressions for active and passive ion transport, we find that the  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ , and  $\text{Cl}^-$  currents are given by

$$I_{\text{Na}} = g_{\text{Na}} \left[ V - \frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{[\text{Na}^+]_e}{[\text{Na}^+]_i} \right) \right] + 3pq, \quad (2.146)$$

$$I_{\text{K}} = g_{\text{K}} \left[ V - \frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{[\text{K}^+]_e}{[\text{K}^+]_i} \right) \right] - 2pq, \quad (2.147)$$

$$I_{\text{Cl}} = g_{\text{Cl}} \left[ V + \frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{[\text{Cl}^-]_e}{[\text{Cl}^-]_i} \right) \right], \quad (2.148)$$

where  $p$  is the rate at which the ion exchange pump works and  $q$  is the charge of a single ion.

We can express these current–voltage equations as differential equations by noting that an outward ionic current of ion  $\text{A}^{z+}$  affects the intracellular concentration of that ion through

$$I_{\text{A}} = -\frac{d}{dt}(zFw[\text{A}^{z+}]), \quad (2.149)$$

with  $w$  denoting the cell volume. (We use  $w$  rather than  $v$  to denote the cell volume to prevent confusion with  $V$ , the membrane potential.) Thus we have

$$-\frac{d}{dt}(Fw[\text{Na}^+]_i) = g_{\text{Na}} \left[ V - \frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{[\text{Na}^+]_e}{[\text{Na}^+]_i} \right) \right] + 3pq, \quad (2.150)$$

$$-\frac{d}{dt}(Fw[\text{K}^+]_i) = g_{\text{K}} \left[ V - \frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{[\text{K}^+]_e}{[\text{K}^+]_i} \right) \right] - 2pq, \quad (2.151)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}(Fw[\text{Cl}^-]_i) = g_{\text{Cl}} \left[ V + \frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{[\text{Cl}^-]_e}{[\text{Cl}^-]_i} \right) \right]. \quad (2.152)$$

Next, we let  $X$  denote the number of moles of large negatively charged molecules (with valence  $z_x \leq -1$ ) that are trapped inside the cell. The flow of water across the membrane is driven by osmotic pressure, so that the change of cell volume is given by

$$r \frac{dw}{dt} = RT \left( [\text{Na}^+]_i - [\text{Na}^+]_e + [\text{K}^+]_i - [\text{K}^+]_e + [\text{Cl}^-]_i - [\text{Cl}^-]_e + \frac{X}{w} \right). \quad (2.153)$$

Here we have assumed that the mechanical (hydrostatic) pressure difference across the membrane is zero, and we have also assumed that the elastic restoring force for the membrane is negligible.

Now to determine the membrane potential, we could use the electrical circuit model of the cell membrane, and write

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + I_{\text{Na}} + I_{\text{K}} + I_{\text{Cl}} = 0. \quad (2.154)$$

However, the system of equations (2.150)–(2.154) has an infinite number of steady states. This can be seen from the fact that, at steady state, we must have  $I_{\text{Na}} = I_{\text{K}} = I_{\text{Cl}} = 0$ , from which it follows that  $dV/dt$  must also necessarily be zero. Since the

solution is thus determined by the choice of initial condition, it is better to use the integrated form of (2.154), i.e.,

$$C_m V = Q_i - Q_e, \quad (2.155)$$

where  $Q_i$  and  $Q_e$  are the total positive charge in the intracellular and extracellular spaces, respectively. (Note that here  $C_m$  refers to the total cell capacitance, assumed to be independent of cell volume. In other chapters of this book,  $C_m$  refers to membrane capacitance per unit area.) Since total charge is the difference between total number of positive and negative charges, we take

$$Q_i = qw([Na^+]_i + [K^+]_i - [Cl^-]_i) + z_x q X, \quad (2.156)$$

$$Q_e = qw_e([Na^+]_e + [K^+]_e - [Cl^-]_e). \quad (2.157)$$

This expression would be correct if the concentration of an ion was defined as the total number of ions in a region divided by the volume of that region, or if the distribution of ions was spatially homogeneous. But such is not the case here. This is because excess charge always accumulates in a thin region at the boundary of the domain (the Debye layer). However, this excess charge is quite small. To see this, consider a cylindrical piece of squid axon of typical radius 500  $\mu\text{m}$ . With a capacitance of 1  $\mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$  and a typical membrane potential of 100 mV, the total charge is  $Q = C_m V = \pi \times 10^{-8} \text{ C}/\text{cm}$ . In comparison, the charge associated with intracellular  $K^+$  ions at 400 mM is about  $0.1 \pi \text{ C}/\text{cm}$ , showing a relative charge deflection of about  $10^{-7}$ .

Thus, since  $Q_i$  and  $Q_e$  are so small compared to the charges of each ion, it is a excellent approximation to assume that both the extracellular and intracellular media are electroneutral. Thus,  $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ , and  $Cl^-$  are assumed to be in electrical balance in the extracellular space. In view of the numbers for squid axon, this assumption is not quite correct, indicating that there must be other ions around to maintain electrical balance. In the intracellular region,  $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ , and  $Cl^-$  are not even close to being in electrical balance, but here, electroneutrality is maintained by the large negatively charged proteins trapped within the cell's interior. It is, of course, precisely the presence of these proteins in the interior of the cell that makes this whole exercise necessary. If a cell were not full of proteins (negatively charged or otherwise), it could avoid excessive osmotic pressures simply by allowing ions to cross the plasma membrane freely.

The assumption of electroneutrality gives the two equations

$$[Na^+]_e + [K^+]_e - [Cl^-]_e = 0, \quad (2.158)$$

$$\frac{[Na^+]_i + [K^+]_i - [Cl^-]_i}{w} + z_x q X = 0. \quad (2.159)$$

It is convenient to assume that the cell is in an infinite bath, so that ionic currents do not change the external concentrations, which are thus assumed to be fixed and known, and to satisfy (2.158).

The differential equations (2.150), (2.151), (2.152), and (2.153) together with the requirement of intracellular electroneutrality (2.159) describe the changes of cell volume and membrane potential as functions of time. Note that we have 4 differential

equations and one algebraic equation for the five unknowns ( $[Na^+]_i$ ,  $[K^+]_i$ ,  $[Cl^-]_i$ ,  $w$  and  $V$ ).

Even though we formulated this model as a system of differential equations, we are interested, for the moment, only in their steady-state solution. Time-dependent currents and potentials become important in Chapter 5 for the discussion of excitability.

To understand these equations, we introduce the nondimensional variables  $v = \frac{FV}{RT}$ ,  $P = \frac{pFq}{RTg_{Na}}$ ,  $\mu = \frac{w}{X}[Cl^-]_e$  and set  $y = e^{-v}$ . Then, the equation of intracellular electroneutrality becomes

$$\alpha y - \frac{1}{y} + \frac{z_x}{\mu} = 0, \quad (2.160)$$

and the equation of osmotic pressure balance becomes

$$\alpha y + \frac{1}{y} + \frac{1}{\mu} - 2 = 0, \quad (2.161)$$

where  $\alpha = \frac{[Na^+]_e e^{-3P} + [K^+]_e e^{2P\gamma}}{[Na^+]_e + [K^+]_e}$  and  $\gamma = g_{Na}/g_K$ . In terms of these nondimensional variables, the ion concentrations are

$$\frac{[Na^+]_i}{[Na^+]_e} = e^{-3P}y, \quad (2.162)$$

$$\frac{[K^+]_i}{[K^+]_e} = e^{2P\gamma}y, \quad (2.163)$$

$$\frac{[Cl^-]_i}{[Cl^-]_e} = \frac{1}{y}. \quad (2.164)$$

Solving (2.160) for its unique positive root, we obtain

$$y = \frac{-z_x + \sqrt{z_x^2 + 4\alpha\mu^2}}{2\alpha\mu}, \quad (2.165)$$

and when we substitute for  $y$  back into (2.161), we find the quadratic equation for  $\mu$ :

$$4(1 - \alpha)\mu^2 - 4\mu + 1 - z_x^2 = 0. \quad (2.166)$$

For  $z_x \leq -1$ , this quadratic equation has one positive root if and only if  $\alpha < 1$ . Expressed in terms of concentrations, the condition  $\alpha < 1$  is

$$\rho(P) = \frac{[Na^+]_e e^{-3P} + [K^+]_e e^{2P\gamma}}{[Na^+]_e + [K^+]_e} < 1. \quad (2.167)$$

One can easily see that  $\rho(0) = 1$  and that for large  $P$ ,  $\rho(P)$  is exponentially large and positive. Thus, the only hope for  $\rho(P)$  to be less than one is if  $\rho'(0) < 0$ . This occurs if and only if

$$\frac{3[Na^+]_e}{g_{Na}} > \frac{2[K^+]_e}{g_K}, \quad (2.168)$$

in which case there is a range of values of  $P$  for which a finite, positive cell volume is possible and for which there is a corresponding nontrivial membrane potential.

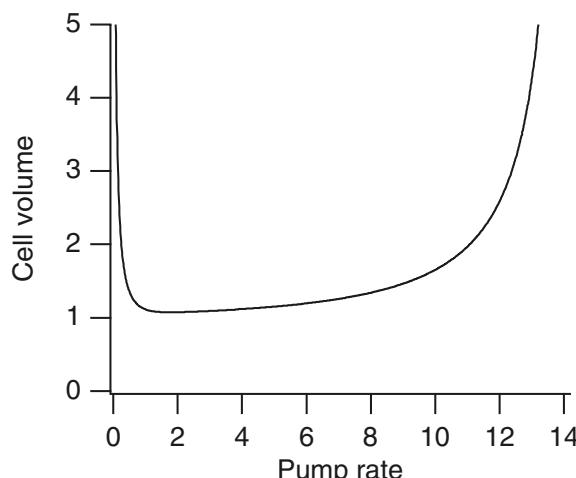
To decide if this condition is ever satisfied we must determine “typical” values for  $g_{\text{Na}}$  and  $g_{\text{K}}$ . This is difficult to do, because, as is described in Chapter 5, excitability of nerve tissue depends strongly on the fact that conductances are voltage-dependent and can vary rapidly over a large range of values. However, at rest, in squid axon, reasonable values are  $g_{\text{K}} = 0.367 \text{ mS/cm}^2$  and  $g_{\text{Na}} = 0.01 \text{ mS/cm}^2$ . For these values, and at the extracellular concentrations of 437 and 20 mM for  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$ , respectively, the condition (2.168) is readily met.

One important property of the model is that the resting value of  $V$  is equal to the Nernst potential of  $\text{Cl}^-$ , as can be seen from (2.152) or (2.164). Thus, the membrane potential is set by the activity of the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase, and the intracellular  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration is set by the membrane potential.

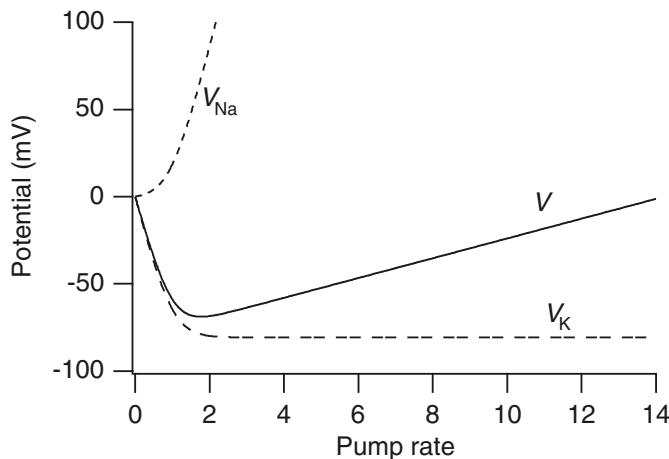
In Figs. 2.15 and 2.16 the nondimensional volume  $\mu$  and the potential  $V$  (assuming  $RT/F = 25.8 \text{ mV}$ ) are plotted as functions of the pump rate  $P$ . In addition, in Fig. 2.16 are shown the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potentials. For these plots,  $\gamma$  was chosen to be 0.11, and  $z_x = -1$ . Then, at  $P = 1.6$ , the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potentials and the membrane potentials are close to their observed values for squid axon, of 56, -77 and -68 mV, respectively.

From these plots we can see the effect of changing pump rate on cell volume and membrane potential. At zero pump rate, the membrane potential is zero and the cell volume is infinite (dead cells swell). As the pump rate increases from zero, the cell volume and membrane potential rapidly decrease to their minimal values and then gradually increase until at some upper limit for pump rate, the volume and potential become infinite. The  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potential is seen to decrease rapidly as a function of pump rate until it reaches a plateau at a minimum value. The  $\text{Na}^+$  equilibrium potential increases monotonically.

Physically realistic values of the membrane potential are achieved fairly close to the local minimum. Clearly, there is little advantage for a higher pump rate, and since



**Figure 2.15** Cell volume as a function of the pump rate.



**Figure 2.16** Membrane potential,  $\text{Na}^+$  equilibrium potential, and  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potential as functions of the pump rate.

**Table 2.4** Resting potentials in some typical excitable cells.

Cell Type	Resting Potential (mV)
Neuron	-70
Skeletal muscle (mammalian)	-80
Skeletal muscle (frog)	-90
Cardiac muscle (atrial and ventricular)	-80
Cardiac Purkinje fiber	-90
Atrioventricular nodal cell	-65
Sinoatrial nodal cell	-55
Smooth muscle cell	-55

the pump rate is proportional to energy expenditure, it would seem that the pump rate is chosen approximately to minimize cell volume, membrane potential, and energy expenditure. However, no mechanism for the regulation of energy expenditure is suggested.

### Generalizations

While the above model of volume control and membrane potential is useful and gives some insight into the control mechanisms, as with most models there are important features that have been ignored but that might lead to substantially different behavior.

There are (at least) two significant simplifications in the model presented here. First, the conductances  $g_{\text{Na}}$  and  $g_{\text{K}}$  are treated as constants. In Chapter 5 we show that the ability of cells to generate an electrical signal results from voltage and time dependence of the conductances. In fact, the discovery that ion channels have differing

properties of voltage sensitivity was of fundamental importance to the understanding of neurons. The second simplification relates to the operation of the ion exchange pump. Figure 2.16 suggests that the minimal membrane potential is achieved at a particular pump rate and suggests the need for a tight control of pump rate that maintains the potential near this minimum. If indeed, such a tight control is required, it is natural to ask what that control mechanism might be. There is also the difficulty that in this simple model there is nothing preventing the complete depletion of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions.

A different model of the pump activity might be beneficial. Recall from (2.98) that with each cycle of the ion exchange pump, three intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  ions are exchanged for two extracellular  $\text{K}^+$  ions. Our previous analysis of the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase (see (2.100)) suggests that at low internal  $\text{Na}^+$  concentrations, the pump rate can be represented in nondimensional variables as

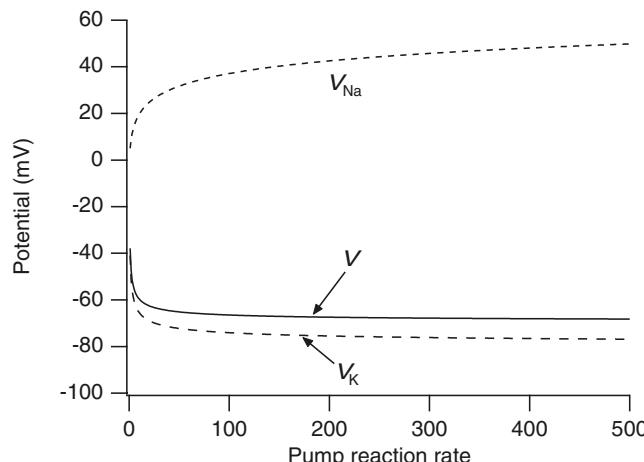
$$P = \rho u^3, \quad (2.169)$$

where  $u = [\text{Na}^+]_i/[\text{Na}^+]_e$ . This representation is appropriate at high pump rates, where effects of saturation are of no concern. Notice that  $P$  is proportional to the rate of ATP hydrolysis, and hence to energy consumption. Thus, as  $u$  decreases, so also does the rate of energy consumption. With this change, the equation for the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration becomes

$$u \exp(3\rho u^3) = y, \quad (2.170)$$

and this must be solved together with the quadratic polynomials (2.160) and (2.161), with (2.170) replacing (2.162).

In Fig. 2.17 are shown the membrane potential, and the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potentials, plotted as functions of the nondimensional reaction rate  $\rho$ . Here we



**Figure 2.17** Membrane potential,  $\text{Na}^+$  equilibrium potential, and  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potential as functions of the pump rate, for the modified pump rate (2.169).

see something qualitatively different from what is depicted in Fig. 2.16. There the membrane potential had a noticeable local minimum and was sensitive to changes in pump rate. In this modified model, the membrane potential is insensitive to changes in the pump rate. The reason for this difference is clear. Since the effectiveness of the pump depends on the internal  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration, increasing the speed of the pumping rate has little effect when the internal  $\text{Na}^+$  is depleted, because of the diminished number of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions available to be pumped.

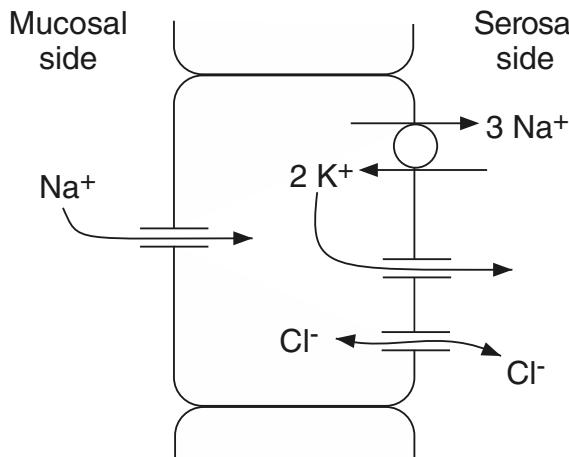
While the pump rate is certainly ATP dependent, there are a number of drugs and hormones that are known to affect the pump rate. Catecholamines rapidly increase the activity of the pump in skeletal muscle, thereby preserving proper  $\text{K}^+$  during strenuous exercise. Within minutes, insulin stimulates pump activity in the liver, muscle, and fat tissues, whereas over a period of hours, aldosterone and corticosterones increase activity in the intestine.

On the other hand, digitalis (clinically known as digoxin) is known to suppress pump activity. Digitalis is an important drug used in the treatment of congestive heart failure and during the 1980s was the fourth most widely prescribed drug in the United States. At therapeutic concentrations, digitalis inhibits a moderate fraction (say, 30–40%) of the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase, by binding with the  $\text{Na}^+$  binding site on the extracellular side. This causes an increase in internal  $\text{Na}^+$ , which has an inhibitory effect on the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger, slowing the rate by which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exits the cells. Increased levels of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  result in increased myocardial contractility, a positive and useful effect. However, it is also clear that at higher levels, the effect of digitalis is toxic.

### 2.8.2 Volume Regulation and Ionic Transport

Many cells have a more difficult problem to solve, that of maintaining their cell volume in widely varying conditions, while transporting large quantities of ions through the cell. Here we present a simplified model of transport and volume regulation in a  $\text{Na}^+$ -transporting epithelial cell.

As are virtually all models of transporting epithelia, the model is based on that of Koefoed-Johnsen and Ussing (1958), the so-called KJU model. In the KJU model, an epithelial cell is modeled as a single cell layer separating a mucosal solution from the serosal solution (Fig. 2.18). (The mucosal side of an epithelial cell is that side on which mucus is secreted and from which various chemicals are withdrawn, for example, from the stomach. The serosal side is the side of the epithelial cell facing the interstitium, wherein lie capillaries, etc.)  $\text{Na}^+$  transport is achieved by separating the  $\text{Na}^+$  pumping machinery from the channels that allow  $\text{Na}^+$  entry into the cell. Thus, the mucosal membrane contains  $\text{Na}^+$  channels that allow  $\text{Na}^+$  to diffuse down its concentration gradient into the cell, while the serosal membrane contains the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPases which remove  $\text{Na}^+$  from the cell. The overall result is the transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  from the mucosal side of the cell to the serosal side. The important question is whether the cell can maintain a steady volume under widely varying concentrations of  $\text{Na}^+$  on the mucosal side.



**Figure 2.18** Schematic diagram of the model of a Na<sup>+</sup>-transporting epithelial cell, based on the model of Koefoed-Johnsen and Ussing (1958).

We begin by letting  $N$ ,  $K$ , and  $C$  denote Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, and Cl<sup>-</sup> concentrations respectively, and letting subscripts  $m$ ,  $i$ , and  $s$  denote mucosal, intracellular and serosal concentrations. Thus, for example,  $N_i$  is the intracellular Na<sup>+</sup> concentration, and  $N_m$  is the mucosal Na<sup>+</sup> concentration. We now write the conservation equations for Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, and Cl<sup>-</sup> at steady state. The conservation equations are the same as those of the pump-leak model with some minor exceptions. First, instead of the linear  $I$ - $V$  curve used in the pump-leak model, we use the GHK formulation to represent the ionic currents. This makes little qualitative change to the results but is more convenient because it simplifies the analysis that follows. Second, we assume that the rate of the Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> ATPase is proportional to the intracellular Na<sup>+</sup> concentration,  $N_i$ , rather than  $N_i^3$ , as was assumed in the generalized version of the pump-leak model. Thus,

$$P_{\text{Na}}v \frac{N_i - N_m e^{-v}}{1 - e^{-v}} + 3qpN_i = 0, \quad (2.171)$$

$$P_{\text{K}}v \frac{K_i - K_s e^{-v}}{1 - e^{-v}} - 2qpN_i = 0, \quad (2.172)$$

$$P_{\text{Cl}}v \frac{C_i - C_s e^v}{1 - e^v} = 0. \quad (2.173)$$

Note that the voltage,  $v$ , is nondimensional, having been scaled by  $\frac{F}{RT}$ , and that the rate of the Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> ATPase is  $pN_i$ . Also note that the inward Na<sup>+</sup> current is assumed to enter from the mucosal side, and thus  $N_m$  appears in the GHK current expression, but that no other ions enter from the mucosa. Here the membrane potential is assumed to be the same across the luminal membrane and across the basal membrane. This is not quite correct, as the potential across the luminal membrane is typically  $-67$  mV while across the basal membrane it is about  $-70$  mV.

There are two further equations to describe the electroneutrality of the intracellular space and the osmotic balance. In steady state, these are, respectively,

$$w(N_i + K_i - C_i) + z_x X = 0, \quad (2.174)$$

$$N_i + K_i + C_i + \frac{X}{w} = N_s + K_s + C_s, \quad (2.175)$$

where  $X$  is the number of moles of protein, each with a charge of  $z_x \leq -1$ , that are trapped inside the cell, and  $w$  is the cell volume. Finally, the serosal solution is assumed to be electrically neutral, and so in specifying  $N_s, K_s$ , and  $C_s$  we must ensure that

$$N_s + K_s = C_s. \quad (2.176)$$

Since the mucosal and serosal concentrations are assumed to be known, we now have a system of 5 equations to solve for the 5 unknowns,  $N_i, K_i, C_i, v$ , and  $\mu = w/X$ . First, notice that (2.171), (2.172), and (2.173) can be solved for  $N_i, K_i$ , and  $C_i$ , respectively, to get

$$N_i(v) = \frac{v N_m e^{-v}}{v + 3\rho_n(1 - e^{-v})}, \quad (2.177)$$

$$K_i(v) = 2\rho_k N_i(v) \frac{1 - e^{-v}}{v} + K_s e^{-v}, \quad (2.178)$$

$$C_i(v) = C_s e^v, \quad (2.179)$$

where  $\rho_n = pq/P_{\text{Na}}$  and  $\rho_k = pq/P_{\text{K}}$ .

Next, eliminating  $N_i + K_i$  between (2.174) and (2.175), we find that

$$2\mu(C_i - C_s) = z_x - 1. \quad (2.180)$$

We now use (2.179) to find that

$$z_x - 1 = 2\mu C_s (e^v - 1), \quad (2.181)$$

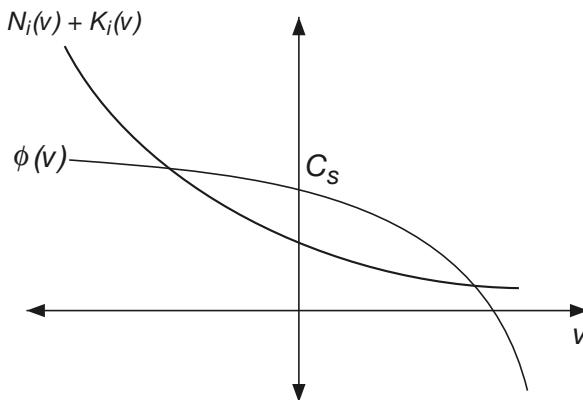
and thus, using (2.181) to eliminate  $\mu$  from (2.174), we get

$$N_i(v) + K_i(v) = \frac{C_s}{1 - z_x} [-2z_x + e^v(1 + z_x)] \equiv \phi(v). \quad (2.182)$$

Since  $z_x - 1 < 0$ , it must be (from (2.181)) that  $v < 0$ , and as  $v \rightarrow 0$ , the cell volume  $w = \mu X$  becomes infinite. Thus, we wish to find a negative solution of (2.182), with  $N_i(v)$  and  $K_i(v)$  specified by (2.177) and (2.178).

It is instructive to consider when solutions for  $v$  (with  $v < 0$ ) exist. First, notice that  $\phi(0) = C_s$ . Further, since  $z_x \leq -1$ ,  $\phi$  is a decreasing function of  $v$ , bounded above, with decreasing slope (i.e., concave down), as sketched in Fig. 2.19. Next, from (2.177) and (2.178) we determine that  $N_i(v) + K_i(v)$  is a decreasing function of  $v$  that approaches infinity as  $v \rightarrow -\infty$  and approaches zero as  $v \rightarrow \infty$ . It follows that a negative solution for  $v$  exists if  $N_i(0) + K_i(0) < C_s$ , i.e., if

$$\frac{N_m}{1 + 3\rho_n} + \frac{2\rho_k N_m}{1 + 3\rho_n} + K_s < C_s. \quad (2.183)$$



**Figure 2.19** Sketch (not to scale) of the function  $\phi(v)$ , defined as the right-hand side of (2.182), and of  $N_i(v) + K_i(v)$ , where  $N_i$  and  $K_i$  are defined by (2.177) and (2.178).  $\phi(v)$  is sketched for  $z_x < -1$ .

Since  $K_s + N_s = C_s$ , this becomes

$$\frac{N_m}{N_s} < \frac{1 + 3\rho_n}{1 + 2\rho_k}. \quad (2.184)$$

This condition is sufficient for the existence of a solution, but not necessary. That is, if this condition is satisfied, we are assured that a solution exists, but if this condition fails to hold, it is not certain that a solution fails to exist. The problem, of course, is that negative solutions are not necessarily unique, nor is it guaranteed that increasing  $N_m$  through  $N_s \frac{1+3\rho_n}{1+2\rho_k}$  causes a negative solution to disappear. It is apparent from (2.177) and (2.178) that  $N_i(v)$  and  $K_i(v)$  are monotone increasing functions of the parameter  $N_m$ , so that no negative solutions exist for  $N_m$  sufficiently large. However, for  $N_m = N_s \frac{1+3\rho_n}{1+2\rho_k}$  to be the value at which the cell bursts by increasing  $N_m$ , it must also be true that

$$N'_i(0) + K'_i(0) < \phi'(0), \quad (2.185)$$

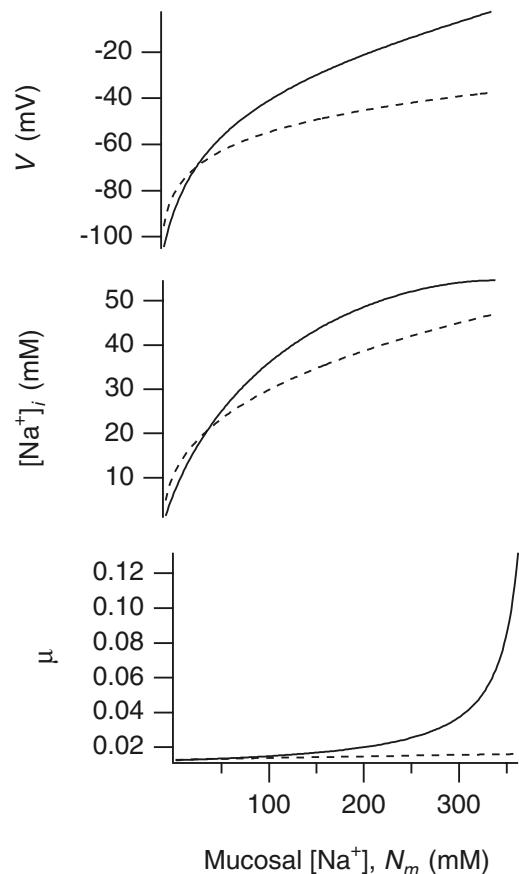
or that

$$4(1 + 3\rho_n)C_s + N_s(1 - z_x) \frac{3\rho_n - 2\rho_k}{1 + 2\rho_k} > 0. \quad (2.186)$$

For the remainder of this discussion we assume that this condition holds, so that the failure of (2.184) also implies that the cell bursts.

According to (2.184), a transporting epithelial cell can maintain its cell volume, provided the ratio of mucosal to serosal concentrations is not too large. When  $N_m/N_s$  becomes too large,  $\mu$  becomes unbounded, and the cell bursts. Typical solutions for the cell volume and membrane potential, as functions of the mucosal  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration, are shown in Fig. 2.20.

Obviously, this state of affairs is unsatisfactory. In fact, some epithelial cells, such as those in the loop of Henle in the nephron (Chapter 17), must work in environments with extremely high mucosal  $\text{Na}^+$  concentrations. To do so, these  $\text{Na}^+$ -transporting epithelial cells have mechanisms to allow operation over a much wider range of mucosal  $\text{Na}^+$  concentrations than suggested by this simple model.



**Figure 2.20** Numerical solutions of the model of epithelial cell volume regulation and  $\text{Na}^+$  transport. The membrane potential,  $V$ , the scaled cell volume,  $\mu$ , and the intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration,  $[\text{Na}^+]_i$ , are plotted as functions of the mucosal  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration. The solid lines are the solutions of the simpler version of the model, where  $P_{\text{Na}}$  and  $P_K$  are assumed to be constant. The dashed lines are the solutions of the model when  $P_{\text{Na}}$  is assumed to be a decreasing function of  $N_i$ , and  $P_K$  is assumed to be an increasing function of  $w$ , as described in the text. Parameter values are  $K_s = 2.5$ ,  $N_s = 120$ ,  $C_s = 122.5$ ,  $P = 2$ ,  $\gamma = 0.3$ ,  $z_X = -2$ . All concentrations are in mM.

From (2.184) we can suggest some mechanisms by which a cell might avoid bursting at high mucosal concentrations. For example, the possibility of bursting is decreased if  $\rho_n$  is increased or if  $\rho_k$  is decreased. The reasons for this are apparent from (2.177) and (2.178), since  $N_i(v) + K_i(v)$  is a decreasing function of  $\rho_n$  and an increasing function of  $\rho_k$ . From a physical perspective, increasing  $N_m$  causes an increase in  $N_i$ , which increases the osmotic pressure, inducing swelling. Decreasing the conductance of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions from the mucosal side helps to control this swelling. Similarly, increasing the conductance of  $\text{K}^+$  ions allows more  $\text{K}^+$  ions to flow out of the cell, thereby decreasing the osmotic pressure from  $\text{K}^+$  ions and counteracting the tendency to swell.

It has been conjectured for some time that epithelial cells use both of these mechanisms to control their volume (Schultz, 1981; Dawson and Richards, 1990; Beck et al., 1994). There is evidence that as  $N_i$  increases, epithelial cells decrease the  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance on the mucosal side of the cell, thus restricting  $\text{Na}^+$  entry. There is also evidence that as the cell swells, the  $\text{K}^+$  conductance is increased, possibly by means of stretch-activated  $\text{K}^+$  channels (Ussing, 1982). This assumption was used in the modeling work of Strieter et al., 1990).

To investigate the effects of these mechanisms in our simple model, we replace  $P_{\text{Na}}$  by  $P_{\text{Na}}20/N_i$  (20 is a scale factor, so that when  $N_i = 20 \text{ mM}$ ,  $P_{\text{Na}}$  has the same value as in the original version of the model) and replace  $P_K$  by  $P_Kw/w_0$ , where  $w_0$  is the volume of the cell when  $N_m = 100 \text{ mM}$ . As before, we can solve for  $v$  and  $\mu$  as functions of  $N_m$ , and the results are shown in Fig. 2.20. Clearly the incorporation of these mechanisms decreases the variation of cell volume and allows the cell to survive over a much wider range of mucosal  $\text{Na}^+$  concentrations.

The model of control of ion conductance used here is extremely simplistic, as for example, there is no parametric control of sensitivity, and the model is heuristic, not mechanistic. More realistic and mechanistic models have been constructed and analyzed in detail (Lew et al., 1979; Civan and Bookman, 1982; Strieter et al., 1990; Weinstein, 1992, 1994, 1996; Tang and Stephenson, 1996).

## 2.9 Appendix: Stochastic Processes

Although all of the models that have been presented so far in this text have been deterministic, the reality is that biological processes are fundamentally noisy. Furthermore, many of the assumptions underlying deterministic models are questionable, largely because of significant stochastic effects.

The purpose of this appendix is to outline some of the basic ideas of stochastic processes that play an important role in mathematical modeling of biological phenomena. Furthermore, there are a number of sections in the remainder of this book where stochastic models are crucial, and we hope that this appendix provides the necessary background for these. Of course, this is not a detailed treatment of these topics; for that one needs to consult a text on stochastic processes such as Gardiner (2004) or van Kampen (2007).

### 2.9.1 Markov Processes

A *Markov process* is any stochastic process that has no memory. More precisely, if the value of the state variable  $x$  is known at two times, say  $t_1 < t_2$ , to be  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ , respectively, then

$$P(x, t | x_1, t_1, x_2, t_2) = P(x, t | x_2, t_2), \quad (2.187)$$

where  $P(x | y)$  denotes the conditional probability of  $x$  given  $y$ . In words, the conditional probability for the value of the state variable depends only on the most recent condition and not on any previous conditions.

A simple example of a Markov process is radioactive decay. For example, an atom of carbon-14 may lose an electron and decay to nitrogen-14. This is a Markov process, because the probability of decay does not depend on how old the carbon-14 atom is. A newly formed carbon-14 atom has exactly the same probability of decay in the next second as a very old carbon-14 atom.

To model this process, we suppose that the state variable has two possible values, say C (for carbon) and N (for nitrogen), and we denote the probability that the molecule is in state S at time  $t$  by  $P(S, t)$ . Now suppose that the probability of radioactive decay in a small interval of time  $dt$  is  $\lambda dt$ . (Note that  $\lambda$  need not be independent of time for this to be a Markov process.) Then,

$$P(N, t + \Delta t) = P(N, t) + P(C, t)\lambda\Delta t. \quad (2.188)$$

For this problem we assume that  $P(C, t) + P(N, t) = 1$ . It follows that in the limit  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ ,

$$\frac{dP(N, t)}{dt} = \lambda(1 - P(N, t)). \quad (2.189)$$

By similar arguments, many of the differential equations in this chapter describing concentrations or fractions of molecules in a given state can be reinterpreted as equations for the probability that a single molecule is in a particular state. For example, for a transporter molecule that has two states,



under the assumption that transitions between states do not depend on how long the molecule has been in a given state, the probability  $P$  of being in state  $C_i$  at time  $t$ ,  $P(C_i, t)$ , is given by

$$\frac{dP(C_i, t)}{dt} = k(1 - P(C_e, t)) - kP(C_i, t). \quad (2.191)$$

Similarly, for the chemical reaction



the probability  $P(A, t)$  of a molecule being in state A at time  $t$  is determined by

$$\frac{dP(A, t)}{dt} = k_-P(B, t) - k_+P(A, t). \quad (2.193)$$

Of course, this is the same as the equation found using the law of mass action for the conversion of A to B, namely,

$$\frac{da}{dt} = k_-b - k_+a. \quad (2.194)$$

Even though these equations are identical, their interpretations are quite different. For example, at steady state,  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{k_-}{k_+}$  implies that the ratio of the number of molecules in state A to the number of those in state B is  $\frac{k_-}{k_+}$ . However, this cannot be the probabilistic interpretation, since there is no fractional state. Instead, the probabilistic interpretation is that the ratio of the time a single molecule spends in state A to the time it spends in state B is  $\frac{k_-}{k_+}$ .

## 2.9.2 Discrete-State Markov Processes

Often, the state space of a Markov process is discrete; for example, the model of the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase (Fig. 2.11) assumes that the ATPase can be in only a small number of different states. The simple chemical reaction in the previous section is also a model of this type, since the molecule can exist in only two states, A or B. Since time is a continuous variable, such models are called *discrete-space continuous-time Markov processes*. Such Markov processes play an enormously important role in modeling; indeed, a large fraction of the models of chemical reactions, exchangers, pumps, and ion channels we discuss in this book are discrete-space continuous-time Markov processes. As is described in Chapter 3, one of the most important applications of such models is the analysis of data from single ion channels.

To describe the stochastic behavior of a discrete-space continuous-time Markov process with  $n$  possible states (open, closed, inactivated, etc.), we introduce a discrete random variable  $S(t) \in 1, 2, \dots, n$  defined so that  $S(t) = i$  if the model is in state  $i$  at time  $t$ . Further, we suppose that the probability that the model changes from state  $i$  to state  $j$  in the time interval  $(t, t + dt)$  is  $k_{ij}dt$ . In more condensed notation,

$$P(S(t + dt) = j | S(t) = i) = k_{ij}dt. \quad (2.195)$$

Note that (2.195) is valid only in the limit of small  $dt$ , since for sufficiently large  $dt$  and  $k_{ij}$  nonzero, this probability exceeds 1. Also, the probability that the model does not change state in the time interval  $(t, t + dt)$  is given by

$$P(S(t + dt) = i | S(t) = i) = 1 - K_i dt, \quad (2.196)$$

where  $K_i = \sum_{j \neq i} k_{ij}$ .

Now we let  $\Phi_j(t) = P(S(t) = j)$ , i.e.,  $\Phi_j(t)$  is the probability that the model is in state  $j$  at time  $t$ . In words, the probability that the model is in state  $j$  at time  $t + dt$  is the probability that it was in state  $j$  at time  $t$  and did not leave state  $j$  between times  $t$  and  $t + dt$  plus the probability that at time  $t$  it was in another state and switched into state  $j$  in the time interval  $t$  to  $t + dt$ . In mathematical language,

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_j(t + dt) &= \Phi_j(t)P(S(t + dt) = i | S(t) = i) + \sum_{l \neq j} P(S(t + dt) = j | S(t) = l)\Phi_l(t) \\ &= \Phi_j(t)(1 - K_j dt) + \sum_{l \neq j} k_{lj}\Phi_l(t)dt, \end{aligned} \quad (2.197)$$

and thus, taking the limit  $dt \rightarrow 0$ ,

$$\frac{d\Phi_j}{dt} = -K_j\Phi_j(t) + \sum_{l \neq j} k_{lj}\Phi_l(t). \quad (2.198)$$

In vector notation, with  $\Phi$  the vector having elements  $\Phi_j$ , we have

$$\frac{d\Phi}{dt} = A^T\Phi(t), \quad (2.199)$$

where  $A$  is the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} -K_1 & k_{12} & \cdots & k_{1n} \\ k_{21} & -K_2 & \cdots & k_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.200)$$

Of course, this is exactly the system of differential equations we would have written down for a system of first-order chemical reactions with reaction rates between species  $k_{ij}$ . Here, however, the variables  $\Phi_i$  are probabilities and so must sum to one. In the terminology of stochastic processes, (2.199) is called the *master equation* for this Markov process.

### The Waiting Time

One important question is how long a Markov model stays in a particular state before switching. This is called the waiting-time problem. To solve this we let  $T_i$  be the random time at which the model switches from state  $i$  to some other state, and we let  $P_i(t) = P(T_i < t)$ , that is,  $P_i(t)$  is the probability that by time  $t$  the switch has occurred. In words, the probability that the switch has occurred by time  $t + dt$  is the probability that it has occurred by time  $t$  plus the probability that the switch has not occurred by time  $t$  and occurs in the time interval between  $t$  and  $t + dt$ . In mathematical language,

$$P_i(t + dt) = P_i(t) + (1 - P_i)K_i dt. \quad (2.201)$$

Taking the limit  $dt \rightarrow 0$  we obtain the differential equation for the waiting-time probability

$$\frac{dP_i}{dt} = K_i(1 - P_i), \quad (2.202)$$

which, since  $P_i(0) = 0$  (assuming that the switch has not occurred at time  $t = 0$ ), and if  $K_i$  is independent of time, yields

$$P_i(t) = 1 - \exp(-K_i t). \quad (2.203)$$

The function  $P_i(t)$  is a cumulative probability distribution function, with probability density function

$$p_i(t) = \frac{dP_i}{dt} = K_i \exp(-K_i t). \quad (2.204)$$

The probability that the switch occurs between two specified times,  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , is

$$P(t_1 < T_i < t_2) = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} p_i(s) ds = P_i(t_2) - P_i(t_1), \quad (2.205)$$

and the expected switching time is

$$E(T_i) = \int_0^\infty tp_i(t) dt. \quad (2.206)$$

If  $K_i$  is time-independent,

$$E(T_i) = \frac{1}{K_i}. \quad (2.207)$$

### The Transition Time

The waiting-time problem can be generalized to calculate the probability density function,  $\phi_{ij}$ , for the time it takes to move from state  $i$  to state  $j$ .

To do this we make state  $j$  an absorbing state and then solve the master equations starting in state  $i$ . That is, we set  $k_{jl} = 0$  for every  $l$ , and then solve for  $\Phi_j(t)$ , with the initial condition  $\Phi_i(0) = 1$ ,  $\Phi_l(0) = 0$  for  $l \neq i$ . Then,  $\Phi_j(t)$  is the probability that the process is in state  $j$  at time  $t$ , given that it started in state  $i$  at time 0. Hence,  $\Phi_j(t)$  is the cumulative probability that the transition to state  $j$  occurred at some time previous to  $t$ . Of course, this relies on the assumption that once state  $j$  is reached, it cannot be left. The probability density function for the transition time is the derivative of the cumulative probability. Hence,

$$\phi_{ij}(t) = \frac{d\Phi_j}{dt} = \sum_{l \neq j} k_{lj} \Phi_l. \quad (2.208)$$

Note that

$$\int_0^\infty \phi_{ij} dt = \Phi_j|_0^\infty = 1, \quad (2.209)$$

and thus  $\phi_{ij}$  is indeed a probability density as claimed.

### 2.9.3 Numerical Simulation of Discrete Markov Processes

It is becoming increasingly important and valuable to do numerical simulations of discrete stochastic processes. The definition (2.195) provides a natural numerical algorithm for such a simulation. For a fixed small time step of size  $dt$ , divide the unit interval into  $n - 1$  regions of length  $k_{ij}dt$  and one remaining region of length  $1 - K_i dt$ . Then, at each time step, pick a random number that is uniformly distributed on the unit interval and determine the next state by the subinterval in which the random number falls.

While this method of numerical simulation is simple and direct, it is not particularly efficient. Furthermore, it converges (i.e., gives the correct statistics) only in the limit that  $dt \rightarrow 0$ .

A method that is much more efficient is known as Gillespie's method (Gillespie, 1977). The idea of this method is to calculate the sequence of random switching times. For example, suppose that at time  $t = 0$ , the state variable is  $S(0) = i$ . We know from (2.204) that the probability that the first transition out of state  $i$  occurs in the interval  $(t, t+dt)$  is  $\int_t^{t+dt} K_i \exp(-K_i s) ds$ . Hence, we can calculate the time to the next transition by selecting a random number from the exponential waiting-time distribution,  $p_i(t)$ . We do this by selecting a random number  $x$  uniformly distributed on the unit interval,

and transforming that number via some transformation  $t = f(x)$  to get the time at which the transition occurs. The transformation we use should preserve probabilities,

$$p_i(t)dt = q(x)dx, \quad (2.210)$$

where  $q(x) = 1$  is the uniform distribution. Integrating gives  $x = \int_0^t p_i(s)ds = 1 - \exp(-K_i t) = P_i(t)$ , and solving for  $t$ , we get

$$t = -\frac{1}{K_i} \ln(1 - x). \quad (2.211)$$

However, since  $x$  is uniformly distributed on the unit interval, it is equivalent to replace  $1 - x$  by  $x$  to get

$$t = -\frac{1}{K_i} \ln(x). \quad (2.212)$$

Therefore, to calculate the next switching time, pick a random number that is uniformly distributed on the unit interval, say  $\xi$ , and then pick the time interval,  $T$ , to the next switch to be

$$T = -\frac{1}{K_i} \ln(\xi). \quad (2.213)$$

To determine the state into which to switch, divide the unit interval into segments of length  $\frac{k_{ij}}{K_i}$ , and select the next interval to be the subinterval in which another uniformly distributed random number  $\eta$  resides. The reasoning for this is that if a switch is to occur, then the probability that the switch is into state  $j$  is  $\frac{k_{ij}}{K_i}$ .

There are numerous advantages to Gillespie's method. First, it is maximally efficient and it is exact. That is, since there is no time discretization step  $dt$ , accuracy does not require taking a limit  $dt \rightarrow 0$ . However, other nice features of the method are that it is easier to collect statistics such as closed time and open time distributions, because these quantities are directly, not indirectly, calculated.

A word of caution, however, is that while this method works well for time-independent processes (which we assumed in this discussion), for time-dependent processes, or processes in which the transition rates depend on other time-varying variables, determination of the next transition time requires a more sophisticated calculation (Alfonsi et al., 2005).

Further difficulties with stochastic simulations occur when there are reactions with vastly different time scales. Then, it is often the case that the rapid reactions achieve quasi-equilibrium, but most of the computational time for a stochastic simulation is taken in calculating the many fast transitions of the fast reactions. It is beyond the scope of this text to describe what to do in these situations.

Gillespie's method is the method of choice in many situations. It has been implemented by Adalsteinsson et al. (2004) in a useful software package that is readily available.

## 2.9.4 Diffusion

The diffusion equation (2.7) was derived to describe the evolution of a chemical concentration, under the assumption that the concentration is a continuous variable, even though the number of molecules involved is necessarily an integer. Einstein recognized that the solution of the diffusion equation could also be interpreted as the probability distribution function for the location of a single particle undergoing some kind of a random walk. That is, if  $p(x, t)$  is the solution of the diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = D \nabla^2 p, \quad (2.214)$$

then  $\int_{\Omega} p(x, t) dx$  could be identified as the probability that a particle is in the region  $\Omega$  at time  $t$ . More specifically, if  $p(x, t | x_0, t_0)$  is the probability distribution function for the particle to be at position  $x$  at time  $t$ , given that it was at position  $x_0$  at time  $t_0$ , then

$$p(x, t_0 | x_0, t_0) = \delta(x - x_0), \quad (2.215)$$

and solving the diffusion equation (in one spatial dimension) gives

$$p(x, t | x_0, t_0) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi D(t-t_0)}} \exp\left(-\frac{(x-x_0)^2}{4D(t-t_0)}\right), \quad (2.216)$$

provided  $t > t_0$ . It follows immediately that the mean and variance of this distribution are

$$\langle x \rangle = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x p(x, t | 0, 0) dx = 0 \quad (2.217)$$

and

$$\langle x^2 \rangle = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 p(x, t | 0, 0) dx = 2Dt. \quad (2.218)$$

The conditional probability  $p(x, t | x_0, t_0)$  is the Green's function of the diffusion equation on an infinite domain (where we require, for physical reasons, that the solution and all its derivatives vanish at infinity). As a side issue (but a particularly interesting one), note that, from the transitive nature of Green's functions, it follows that

$$p(x_1, t_1 | x_3, t_3) = \int_{x_2} p(x_1, t_1 | x_2, t_2) p(x_2, t_2 | x_3, t_3) dx_2, \quad t_3 < t_2 < t_1, \quad (2.219)$$

which is known as the Chapman–Kolmogorov equation. From the point of view of conditional probabilities, the Chapman–Kolmogorov equation makes intuitive sense; for Markov processes, the probability of  $x_1$  given  $x_3$  is the sum of the probabilities of each path by which one can get from  $x_3$  to  $x_1$ .

Now suppose we let  $X(t)$  represent the position as a function of time of a sample path. We can readily calculate that  $X(t)$  is continuous, since for any  $\epsilon > 0$ , the

probability of escaping from a region of size  $\epsilon$  in time  $\Delta t$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{|x-z|>\epsilon} p(x, t + \Delta t | z, t) dx &= 2 \int_{\epsilon}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi D \Delta t}} \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{4D\Delta t}\right) dx \\ &= \int_{\frac{\epsilon}{2\sqrt{D\Delta t}}}^{\infty} \exp(-x^2) dx, \end{aligned}$$

which approaches zero in the limit  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ . On the other hand, the velocity of the particle is likely to be extremely large, since

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Prob}\left(\frac{1}{\Delta t}(X(t + \Delta t) - X(t)) > k\right) &= \int_{k\Delta t}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi D \Delta t}} \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{4D\Delta t}\right) dx \\ &= \int_{\frac{k}{2}\sqrt{\frac{\Delta t}{\pi D}}}^{\infty} \exp(-x^2) dx \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.220)$$

in the limit that  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ . In other words, with probability 1, the absolute value of the velocity is larger than any number  $k$ , hence infinite.

If  $D = 1$ , the stochastic process  $X(t)$  is known as a *Wiener process*, is usually denoted by  $W(t)$ , and is a model of Brownian motion.

### Diffusion as a Markov Process

A popular derivation of the diffusion equation is based on a Markovian random walk on a grid, as follows. We suppose that a particle moves along a one-dimensional line in discrete steps of length  $\Delta x$  at discrete times with time step  $\Delta t$ . At each step, however, the direction of motion is random, with probability  $\frac{1}{2}$  of going to the left and probability  $\frac{1}{2}$  of going to the right. If  $p(x, t)$  is the probability of being at position  $x$  at time  $t$ , then

$$p(x, t + \Delta t) = \frac{1}{2}p(x + \Delta x, t) + \frac{1}{2}p(x - \Delta x, t). \quad (2.221)$$

Now we make the assumption that  $p(x, t)$  is a smooth function of both  $x$  and  $t$  and obtain the Taylor series expansion of (2.221),

$$\Delta t \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + O(\Delta t^2) = \frac{\Delta x^2}{2} \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x^2} + O(\Delta x^4). \quad (2.222)$$

In the limit that  $\Delta t$  and  $\Delta x$  both approach zero, keeping  $\frac{\Delta x^2}{\Delta t} = 1$ , we obtain the diffusion equation with diffusion coefficient  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

### 2.9.5 Sample Paths; the Langevin Equation

The diffusion equation describes the probability distribution that a particle is at a particular place at some time, but does not describe how the particle actually moves. The challenge, of course, is to write (and solve) an equation for motion that is random and continuous, but nowhere differentiable. Obviously, one cannot use a standard differential equation to describe the motion of such a particle. So, instead of writing

$\frac{dx}{dt} = \text{something}$  (which does not make sense, since the velocity  $\frac{dx}{dt}$  of a Brownian particle is not finite), it is typical to write

$$dx = \sqrt{2D} dW. \quad (2.223)$$

To make careful mathematical sense of this expression requires a discussion of the Ito or Stratonovich calculus, topics that are beyond the scope of this text. However, a reasonable verbal description of what this means in practical terms is as follows. The term  $dW$  is intended to represent the fact that the displacement of a particle after a very short time interval, say  $dt$ , is a random variable having three properties, namely, it is uncorrelated with previous displacements (it has no memory and is therefore Markovian), it has zero mean, and it has variance  $dt$ , in the limit  $dt \rightarrow 0$ . This is also referred to as uncorrelated *Gaussian white noise*. In fact, this definition is rigged so that the probability distribution for this particle is described by the diffusion equation.

For this text, it is important to know how to numerically calculate representative sample paths, and to this end we write

$$dx = \sqrt{2D dt} N(0, 1), \quad (2.224)$$

where  $N(0, 1)$  represents the Gaussian (normal) distribution with zero mean and variance 1. The interpretation of this is that at any given time one randomly chooses a number  $n$  from a normal distribution, takes a step of size  $dx = \sqrt{2D dt} n$ , and then increments time by  $dt$ . It can be shown that in the limit that  $dt \rightarrow 0$ , this converges to the Wiener process (2.223).

Equation (2.223) is an example of a stochastic differential equation, also called a *Langevin equation*. More generally, Langevin equations are of the form

$$dx = a(x, t) dt + \sqrt{2b(x, t)} dW, \quad (2.225)$$

or, in a form that suggests a numerical algorithm,

$$dx = a(x, t) dt + \sqrt{2b(x, t) dt} N(0, 1). \quad (2.226)$$

Here  $a(x, t)$  represents the deterministic part of the velocity, since if there were no noise ( $b(x, t) = 0$ ), this would be the same as the deterministic equation

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = a(x, t). \quad (2.227)$$

Thus, the displacement  $dx$  is a random variable, with mean value  $a(x, t)dt$  and variance  $2b(x, t)dt$ , in the limit  $dt \rightarrow 0$ .

The special case  $a(x, t) = -x$ ,  $b(x, t) = 1$ , called an *Ornstein–Uhlenbeck* process, is important in the study of molecular motors, described in Chapter 15.

## 2.9.6 The Fokker–Planck Equation and the Mean First Exit Time

The diffusion equation is the simplest example of an equation describing the evolution of the probability distribution function for the position of a particle. More generally,

if we suppose that the position of the particle is continuous in time (no finite jumps are possible), that the Chapman–Kolmogorov equation (2.219) holds, and that the displacement of the particle in time  $dt$  has mean  $a(x, t)dt$  and variance  $2b(x, t)dt$ , then one can derive that the probability distribution  $p(x, t)$  for the position,  $x$ , of the particle at time  $t$  is governed by

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(a(x, t)p) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}(b(x, t)p), \quad (2.228)$$

called the *Fokker–Planck* equation. Note that, since this equation models the motion of a particle which must be at a single position  $y$  at the starting time  $t_0$ , the initial condition must be  $p(x, t_0 | y, t_0) = \delta(x - y)$ . Thus, the probability distribution for the position of the particle is the Green's function of (2.228).

More generally, it is possible to start with the Chapman–Kolmogorov equation (2.219) and derive a general version of the Fokker–Planck equation that includes discrete jump processes. This is the point of view usually taken in the stochastic processes literature, which treats the Chapman–Kolmogorov equation as a fundamental requirement of a Markov process.

An extremely important problem is the so-called *mean first exit time problem*, in which we wish to determine how long a particle stays in a particular region of space. Before we can solve this problem we must first determine the equation for the conditional probability,  $p(x, t | y, \tau)$ , as a function of  $y$  and  $\tau < t$ , with  $x$  and  $t$  fixed. That is, we want to know the probability distribution function for a particle with known position  $x$  at time  $t$  to have been at the location  $y$  at time  $\tau < t$ .

The equation governing this conditional probability is most easily derived by using the fact that  $p(x, t | y, \tau)$  is the Green's function of the Fokker–Planck equation. It follows from the properties of Green's functions (Keener, 1998) that

$$p(x, t | y, \tau) = p^*(y, \tau | x, t), \quad (2.229)$$

where  $p^*$  is the Green's function of the adjoint equation. The adjoint equation is easily calculated using integration by parts, and assuming that  $p$  and all its derivatives vanish at infinity. It follows that  $p$ , considered as a function of  $y$  and  $\tau$ , satisfies the adjoint equation

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial \tau} = -a(y, \tau) \frac{\partial p}{\partial y} - b(y, \tau) \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial y^2}, \quad (2.230)$$

subject to the condition  $p(x, t | y, t) = \delta(x - y)$ . This equation for the backward conditional probability is called the *backward Fokker–Planck equation*. Notice that this is a *backward diffusion* equation, which in forward time is ill posed. However, it is well posed when solved for backward times  $\tau < t$ .

Armed with the backward Fokker–Planck equation, we now turn our attention to the mean first exit time problem. Suppose a particle is initially at position  $y$ , inside a one-dimensional region  $\alpha < y < \beta$ , and that the wall at  $y = \alpha$  is impermeable, but the particle can leave the region freely at  $y = \beta$ . If we let  $\tau(y)$  represent the time at which

the particle first leaves the region having started from position  $y$ , then

$$P(\tau(y) > t) = G(y, t) = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} p(x, t | y, 0) dx, \quad (2.231)$$

which is the probability that the particle is inside the region at time  $t$ . Notice that since  $p(x, 0 | y, 0) = \delta(x - y)$ ,  $G(y, 0) = 1$ .

Since

$$P(\tau(y) > t) = G(y, t) = - \int_t^{\infty} G_t(y, s) ds, \quad (2.232)$$

it follows that  $G_t(y, t)$  is the probability density function for the random variable  $\tau(y)$ . Thus, the expected value of  $\tau(y)$  is

$$T(y) = E(\tau(y)) = - \int_0^{\infty} t G_t(y, t) dt = \int_0^{\infty} G(y, t) dt, \quad (2.233)$$

where we have integrated by parts to get the final expression. Note that  $T(y)$  is the mean time at which a particle leaves the domain, given that it starts at  $y$  at time  $t = 0$ .

For a time-independent process (i.e.,  $a(y, t) = a(y)$ ,  $b(y, t) = b(y)$ ) we have  $p(x, t | y, 0) = p(x, 0 | y, -t)$ . Hence, substituting  $-t$  for  $t$  in (2.230), and writing  $q(y, t | x) = p(x, t | y, 0)$ , it follows that  $q$  satisfies the negative backward Fokker–Planck equation

$$\frac{\partial q}{\partial t} = a(y) \frac{\partial q}{\partial y} + b(y) \frac{\partial^2 q}{\partial y^2}, \quad (2.234)$$

with  $q(y, 0 | x) = \delta(x - y)$ . Integrating with respect to  $x$  from  $x = \alpha$  to  $x = \beta$  (since  $G(y, t) = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} p(x, t | y, 0) dx$ ) then gives

$$\frac{\partial G}{\partial t} = a(y) \frac{\partial G}{\partial y} + b(y) \frac{\partial^2 G}{\partial y^2}, \quad (2.235)$$

with  $G(y, 0) = 1$ . Finally, we can determine the equation for the expected value of  $\tau(y)$  by integrating (2.235) in time to find

$$-1 = a(y) \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} + b(y) \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial y^2}. \quad (2.236)$$

To completely specify the problem, we must specify boundary conditions. At impermeable boundaries, we require  $\frac{\partial T}{\partial y} = 0$ , while at absorbing boundaries (boundaries through which exit is allowed but reentry is not permitted) we require  $T = 0$ .

As an example, consider a pure diffusion process on a domain of length  $L$  with a reflecting boundary at  $x = 0$  and an absorbing boundary at  $x = L$ . The mean first exit time satisfies the differential equation

$$DT_{xx} = -1, \quad (2.237)$$

subject to boundary conditions  $T_x(0) = 0$ ,  $T(L) = 0$ . This has solution

$$T(x) = \frac{-x^2 + L^2}{2D}. \quad (2.238)$$

We readily calculate that  $T(0) = \frac{L^2}{2D}$ , as might be expected from (2.218). In addition, as  $x$  increases,  $T(x)$  decreases, which again makes intuitive sense. The closer the particle starts to the absorbing boundary, the shorter is the mean first exit time.

### 2.9.7 Diffusion and Fick's Law

The Fokker–Planck equation describes the evolution of the probability distribution function for single particle diffusion. However, it also applies to the concentration of a dilute chemical species under the assumption that the chemical particles have no self-interaction. If the diffusion coefficient is homogeneous in space, then the Fokker–Planck equation and the diffusion equation are the same. However, if diffusion is not homogeneous in space, then the diffusion equation, derived using Fick's law, and the Fokker–Planck equation are not the same. With Fick's law, the diffusion equation is

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( D \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} \right) \quad (2.239)$$

and the Fokker–Planck equation is

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 (Dc)}{\partial x^2}. \quad (2.240)$$

Which of these is correct?

There is a simple observation that can help answer this question. If Fick's law is correct, then at steady state the flux in a closed container is zero, so that

$$D \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} = 0, \quad (2.241)$$

implying that  $c(x)$  is a uniform constant. On the other hand, if the Fokker–Planck equation is correct, then at steady state

$$D(x)c(x) = \text{constant}. \quad (2.242)$$

Notice that in this solution, the concentration varies inversely with  $D$ . That is, if  $D$  is low then  $c$  should be high, and vice versa. Further, if  $c$  is initially uniform, Fick's law predicts no change in the solution as a function of time, whereas the Fokker–Planck equation predicts transient behavior leading to a nonuniform distribution of  $c$ .

Van Milligen et al. (2006) reported a simple experimental test of this observation. They added green food coloring to water and then added differing amounts of gelatin to small quantities of the colored water. They then created gel bilayers consisting of two layers of the colored gelatin with differing gelatin concentrations under the assumption that diffusion of food coloring varies inversely with the amount of gelatin. They recorded the color intensity at several later times and compared these recordings with the solution of the partial differential equations.

The first observation is that the initially uniform concentration of food coloring did not remain uniform, but increased in regions where the gelatin density was highest. Even more striking, they were able to find very good fits of the data to the numerical

solution of the Fokker–Planck equation. These observations lead to the conclusion that Fick’s law is not the correct description of chemical diffusion in media where the diffusion coefficient is not constant. The more appropriate description, coming from the Fokker–Planck equation, is that

$$J = -\nabla(Dc). \quad (2.243)$$

## 2.10 EXERCISES

---

1. A rule of thumb (derived by Einstein) is that the diffusion coefficient for a globular molecule satisfies  $D \sim M^{-1/3}$ , where  $M$  is the molecular weight. Determine how well this relationship holds for the substances listed in Table 2.2 by plotting  $D$  and  $M$  on a log-log plot.
2. A fluorescent dye with a diffusion coefficient  $D = 10^{-7} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$  and binding equilibrium  $K_{\text{eq}} = 30 \text{ mM}$  is used to track the spread of hydrogen ( $D_h = 4.4 \times 10^{-5} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ ). Under these conditions the measured diffusion coefficient is  $8 \times 10^{-6} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ . How much dye is present? (Assume that the dye is a fast buffer of hydrogen and that the amount of hydrogen is much less than  $K_{\text{eq}}$ .)
3. Segel, Chet and Henis (1977) used (2.18) to estimate the diffusion coefficient for bacteria. With the external concentration  $C_0$  at  $7 \times 10^7 \text{ ml}^{-1}$ , at times  $t = 2, 5, 10, 12.5, 15$ , and  $20$  minutes, they counted  $N$  of  $1,800, 3,700, 4,800, 5,500, 6,700$ , and  $8,000$  bacteria, respectively, in a capillary of length  $32 \text{ mm}$  with  $1 \mu\text{l}$  total capacity. In addition, with external concentrations  $C_0$  of  $2.5, 4.6, 5.0$ , and  $12.0 \times 10^7$  bacteria per milliliter, counts of  $1,350, 2,300, 3,400$ , and  $6,200$  were found at  $t = 10$  minutes. Estimate  $D$ .
4. Calculate the effective diffusion coefficient of oxygen in a solution containing  $1.2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ M}/\text{cm}^3$  myoglobin. Assume that the rate constants for the uptake of oxygen by myoglobin are  $k_+ = 1.4 \times 10^{10} \text{ cm}^3 \text{ M}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-1}$  and  $k_- = 11 \text{ s}^{-1}$ .
5. Find the maximal enhancement for diffusive transport of carbon dioxide via binding with myoglobin using  $D_s = 1.92 \times 10^{-5} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ ,  $k_+ = 2 \times 10^8 \text{ cm}^3/\text{M} \cdot \text{s}$ ,  $k_- = 1.7 \times 10^{-2}/\text{s}$ . Compare the amount of facilitation of carbon dioxide transport with that of oxygen at similar concentration levels.
6. Devise a model to determine the rate of production of product for a “one-dimensional” enzyme capsule of length  $L$  in a bath of substrate at concentration  $S_0$ . Assume that the enzyme is confined to the domain  $0 \leq x \leq L$  and there is no flux through the boundary at  $x = 0$ . Assume that the enzyme cannot diffuse within the capsule but that the substrate and product can freely diffuse into, within, and out of the capsule. Show that the steady-state production per unit volume of enzyme is less than the production rate of a reactor of the same size in which substrate is homogeneously mixed (infinite diffusion).
7. Devise a model to determine the rate of production of product for a spherical enzyme capsule of radius  $R_0$  in a bath of substrate at concentration  $S_0$ . Assume that the enzyme cannot diffuse within the capsule but that the substrate and product can freely diffuse into, within, and out of the capsule. Show that spheres of small radius have a larger rate of production than spheres of large radius.

Hint: Reduce the problem to the nondimensional boundary value problem

$$\frac{1}{y^2} (y^2 \sigma')' - \alpha^2 \frac{\sigma}{\sigma + 1} = 0, \quad (2.244)$$

$$\sigma'(0) = 0, \quad (2.245)$$

$$\sigma(1) = \sigma_0, \quad (2.246)$$

and solve numerically as a function of  $\alpha$ . How does the radius of the sphere enter the parameter  $\alpha$ ?

8. Red blood cells have a passive exchanger that exchanges a single  $\text{Cl}^-$  ion for a bicarbonate ( $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ) ion. Develop a model of this exchanger and find the flux.
9. Almost immediately upon entering a cell, glucose is phosphorylated in the first reaction step of glycolysis. How does this rapid and nearly unidirectional reaction affect the transmembrane flux of glucose as represented by (2.54)? How is this reaction affected by the concentration of ATP?
10. In the model of the glucose transporter (Fig. 2.6) the reaction diagram was simplified by assuming that each conformation of the transporter is equally likely, and that the affinity of the glucose binding site is unaffected by a change in conformation.
  - (a) Construct a more detailed model in which these assumptions are relaxed, and calculate the flux through the model.
  - (b) What is the total change in chemical potential after one cycle of the exchanger? What is the equilibrium condition?
  - (c) Apply detailed balance to obtain a relationship between the rate constants.
11. Consider the model of a nonelectrogenic, 3 for 1,  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger. At equilibrium, the concentrations on either side of the membrane are related by the equation

$$\frac{n_e^3 c_i}{n_i^3 c_e} = 1. \quad (2.247)$$

Assume that the membrane separates two equal volumes. For a given set of initial concentrations and assuming there are no other exchange processes, what three additional conservation equations must be used to determine the equilibrium concentrations? Prove that there is a unique equilibrium solution. Hint: Give a graphical proof.

12. Simplify the model of the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger (Fig. 2.9) by assuming that the binding and unbinding of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  are fast compared to the exchange processes between the inside and the outside of the cell. Write the new model equations and calculate the steady-state flux. Hint: The assumption of fast equilibrium gives

$$k_1 c_i x_1 = k_{-1} n_i^3 x_2, \quad (2.248)$$

$$k_3 n_e^3 y_2 = k_{-3} c_e y_1. \quad (2.249)$$

Then introduce the new variables  $X = X_1 + X_2$  and  $Y = Y_1 + Y_2$  and derive the equations for  $X$  and  $Y$ .

13. Simplify the model of Fig. 2.11 by assuming fast binding of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$ , and draw the reaction diagram of the simplified model. Calculate the expression for the steady-state flux.

Hint: Combine the states  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ , and  $X_3$  into a single state,  $X$ , and similarly for  $Y_1$ ,  $Y_2$ , and  $Y_3$ . Then use the equilibrium conditions

$$x_1 = K_1 x_2 \kappa_i^2, \quad (2.250)$$

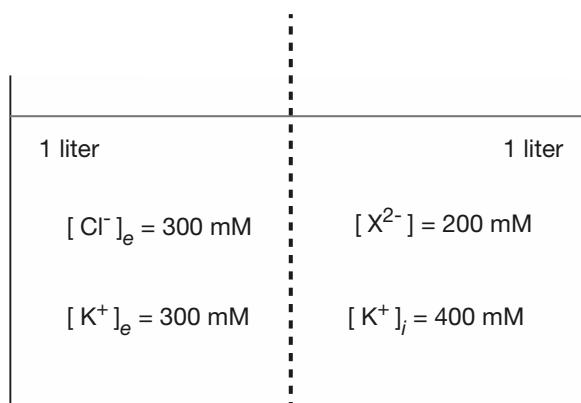
$$n_i^3 x_2 = K_2 x_3, \quad (2.251)$$

$$y_3 = K_5 n_e^3 y_2, \quad (2.252)$$

$$\kappa_e^2 y_2 = K_6 y_1, \quad (2.253)$$

where  $K_i = k_{-i}/k_i$ ,  $n$  denotes  $[Na^+]$ , and  $\kappa$  denotes  $[K^+]$ , to derive the differential equations for  $X$  and  $Y$ .

14. Calculate the flux of the Ran-GTP nuclear transporter. Use the information given in the text to estimate the concentrating ability of this transporter, assuming there is no difference in potential across the nuclear membrane.
15. Suppose that two compartments, each of one liter in volume, are connected by a membrane that is permeable to both  $K^+$  and  $Cl^-$ , but not to water or protein ( $X$ ). Suppose further that, as illustrated in Fig. 2.21, the compartment on the left initially contains 300 mM  $K^+$  and 300 mM  $Cl^-$ , while the compartment on the right initially contains 200 mM protein, with valence  $-2$ , and 400 mM  $K^+$ .
  - (a) Is the starting configuration electrically and osmotically balanced?
  - (b) Find the concentrations at equilibrium.
  - (c) Why is  $[K^+]_i$  at equilibrium greater than its starting value, even though  $[K^+]_i > [K^+]_e$  initially? Why does  $K^+$  not diffuse from right to left to equalize the concentrations?
  - (d) What is the equilibrium potential difference?
  - (e) What would happen if the connecting membrane were suddenly made permeable to water when the system is at equilibrium? How large would the osmotic pressure be?
16. The derivation of the Gibbs–Donnan equilibrium for the case when  $[S]_e$  is not fixed requires an additional constraint. Show that it is equivalent to use either  $v_i[S]_i + v_e[S]_e = [S]_{tot}$  or  $v_i[S']_i + v_e[S']_e = [S']_{tot}$ . How must  $[S]_{tot}$  and  $[S']_{tot}$  be related so that the answers for the two are the same?



**Figure 2.21** The initial configuration for Exercise 15.

17. Suppose the intracellular macromolecule X can bind  $b$  molecules of the ion S via  $X + bS \rightleftharpoons XS_b$ . What is the effect of this buffering on the Gibbs–Donnan equilibrium potential?
18. A 1.5 oz bag of potato chips (a typical single serving) contains about 200 mg of  $\text{Na}^+$ . When eaten and absorbed into the body, how many osmoles does this bag of potato chips represent?
19. (a) Confirm that  $\pi_s$  in (2.138) has units of pressure.  
(b) Confirm the statement that a pressure of 25 atm corresponds to a column of water over 250 meters high.  
(c) Consider a vertical tube with a cross-sectional area of  $1 \text{ cm}^2$ . The bottom of the tube is closed with a semipermeable membrane, and 1 gram of sugar is placed in the tube. The membrane-closed end of the tube is then put into an inexhaustible supply of pure water at  $T = 300 \text{ K}$ . What will be the height of the water in the tube at equilibrium? (The weight of a sugar molecule is  $3 \times 10^{-22} \text{ gm}$ , and the density of water is  $1 \text{ gm/cm}^3$ ).  
(d) Two columns with cross-sectional area  $1 \text{ cm}^2$  are initially filled to a height of one meter with water at  $T = 300 \text{ K}$ . Suppose 0.001 gm of sugar is dissolved in one of the two columns. How high will the sugary column be when equilibrium is reached?  
(e) Suppose that, in the previous question, 1 gm of sugar is dissolved in one of the two columns. What is the equilibrium height of the two columns?
20. Suppose an otherwise normal cell is placed in a bath of high extracellular  $\text{K}^+$ . What happens to the cell volume and resting potentials?
21. Based on what you know about glycolysis from Chapter 1, how would you expect anoxia (insufficient oxygen) to affect the volume of the cell? How might you incorporate this into a model of cell volume? Hint: Lactic acid does not diffuse out of a cell as does carbon dioxide.
22. Suppose 90% of the  $\text{Na}^+$  in the bath of a squid axon is replaced by inert choline, preserving electroneutrality. What happens to the equilibrium potentials and membrane potentials?
23. Determine the effect of temperature (through the Nernst equation) on cell volume and membrane potential.
24. Simulate the time-dependent differential equations governing cell volume and ionic concentrations. What happens if the extracellular ionic concentrations are suddenly increased or decreased?
25. Ouabain is known to compete with  $\text{K}^+$  for external  $\text{K}^+$  binding sites of the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase. Many animal cells swell and burst when treated with the drug ouabain. Why? Hint: How would you include this effect in a model of cell volume control?
26. Since the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase is electrogenic, the pump rate  $P$  in the pump-leak model must also include effects from the membrane potential. What effect does membrane potential have on the expression (2.169) and how does this modification affect the solution?
27. Use (2.224) to simulate a diffusion process, and verify that the mean and variance of the process are 0 and  $2Dt$ , respectively, as expected.
28. Find the steady-state probability distribution for the Ornstein–Uhlenbeck process.

29. A small particle (with diffusion constant  $D$  and viscosity  $\nu$ ) experiences a constant load  $F$  directed to the left but is not permitted to move into the region with  $x < 0$ . Suppose that the particle is initially at  $x = 0$ . What is the expected time to first reach location  $x = \delta$ ?
  30. Suppose that a molecule enters a spherical cell of radius  $5 \mu\text{m}$  at its boundary. How long will it take for the molecule to move by diffusion to find a binding target of radius  $0.5 \text{ nm}$  located at the center of the cell? Use a diffusion coefficient of  $10^{-6} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ . (Hint: In higher dimensions the differential equation for the mean first exit time is  $\nabla^2 T = -1$ .)
-

# Membrane Ion Channels

Every cell membrane contains ion channels, macromolecular pores that allow specific ions to travel through the channels by a passive process, driven by their concentration gradient and the membrane potential. One of the most extensively studied problems in physiology is the regulation of such ionic currents. Indeed, in practically every chapter of this book there are examples of how the control of ionic current is vital for cellular function. Already we have seen how the cell membrane uses ion channels and pumps to maintain an intracellular environment that is different from the extracellular environment, and we have seen how such ionic separation results in a membrane potential. In subsequent chapters we will see that modulation of the membrane potential is one of the most important ways in which cells control their behavior or communicate with other cells. However, to understand the role played by ion channels in the control of membrane potential, it is first necessary to understand how membrane ionic currents depend on the voltage and ionic concentrations.

There is a vast literature, both theoretical and experimental, on the properties of ion channels. One of the best books on the subject is that of Hille (2001), to which the reader is referred for a more detailed presentation than that given here. The bibliography provided there also serves as a starting point for more detailed studies.

## 3.1 Current–Voltage Relations

Before we discuss specific models of ion channels, we emphasize an important fact that can be a source of confusion. Although the Nernst equation (2.104) for the equilibrium voltage generated by ionic separation can be derived from thermodynamic considerations and is thus universally applicable, there is no universal expression for the ionic

current. An expression for, say, the  $\text{Na}^+$  current cannot be derived from thermodynamic first principles and depends on the particular model used to describe the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. Already we have seen two different models of ionic currents. In the previous chapter we described two common models of  $\text{Na}^+$  current as a function of the membrane potential and the internal and external  $\text{Na}^+$  concentrations. In the simpler model, the  $\text{Na}^+$  current across the cell membrane was assumed to be a linear function of the membrane potential, with a driving force given by the  $\text{Na}^+$  Nernst potential. Thus,

$$I_{\text{Na}} = g_{\text{Na}}(V - V_{\text{Na}}), \quad (3.1)$$

where  $V_{\text{Na}} = (RT/F) \ln([{\text{Na}^+}]_e/[{\text{Na}^+}]_i)$  is the Nernst potential of  $\text{Na}^+$ , and where  $V = V_i - V_e$ . (As usual, a subscript  $e$  denotes the external concentration, while a subscript  $i$  denotes the internal concentration.) Note that the  $\text{Na}^+$  current is zero when  $V$  is the Nernst potential, as it must be. However, we also discussed an alternative model, where integration of the Nernst–Planck equation (2.114), assuming a constant electric field, gave the Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz (GHK), or constant-field, current equation:

$$I_{\text{Na}} = P_{\text{Na}} \frac{F^2}{RT} V \left[ \frac{[{\text{Na}^+}]_i - [{{\text{Na}^+}_e} \exp\left(\frac{-VF}{RT}\right)]}{1 - \exp\left(\frac{-VF}{RT}\right)} \right]. \quad (3.2)$$

As before, the  $\text{Na}^+$  current is zero when  $V$  equals the Nernst potential, but here the current is a nonlinear function of the voltage and linear in the ionic concentrations. In Fig. 3.1A we compare the linear and GHK  $I$ – $V$  curves when there is only a single ion present.

There is no one “correct” expression for the  $\text{Na}^+$  current, or any other ionic current for that matter. Different cells have different types of ion channels, each of which may have different current–voltage relations. The challenge is to determine the current–voltage, or  $I$ – $V$ , curve for a given ion channel and relate it to underlying biophysical mechanisms.

Our choice of these two models as examples was not coincidental, as they are the two most commonly used in theoretical models of cellular electrical activity. Not only are they relatively simple (at least compared to some of the other models discussed later in this chapter), they also provide good quantitative descriptions of many ion channels. For example, the  $I$ – $V$  curves of open  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels in the squid giant axon are approximately linear, and thus the linear model was used by Hodgkin and Huxley in their classic model of the squid giant axon (discussed in detail in Chapter 5). However, the  $I$ – $V$  curves of open  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels in vertebrate axons are better described by the GHK equation, and so nonlinear  $I$ – $V$  curves are often used for vertebrate models (Frankenhaeuser, 1960a,b, 1963; Campbell and Hille, 1976).

Because of the importance of these two models, we illustrate another way in which they differ. This also serves to illustrate the fact that although the Nernst potential is universal when there is only one ion present, the situation is more complicated when two or more species of ion can pass through the membrane. If both  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  ions

are present and both obey the GHK current equation, we showed in (2.127) that the reversal potential  $V_r$  at which there is no net current flow is

$$V_r = \frac{RT}{F} \ln \left( \frac{P_{\text{Na}}[\text{Na}^+]_e + P_{\text{K}}[\text{K}^+]_e}{P_{\text{Na}}[\text{Na}^+]_i + P_{\text{K}}[\text{K}^+]_i} \right). \quad (3.3)$$

However, if instead that the  $I$ – $V$  curves for  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  are assumed to be linear, then the reversal potential is

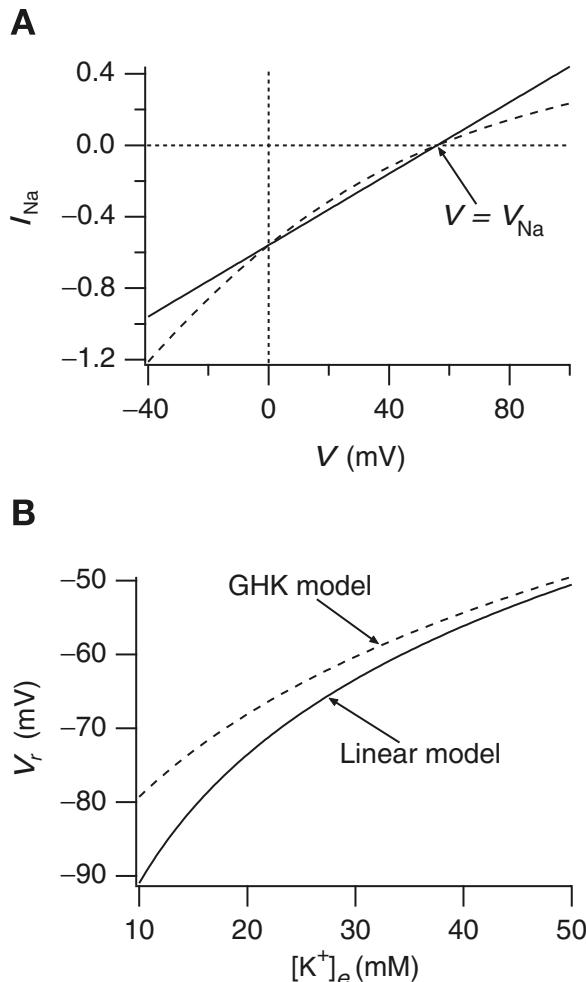
$$V_r = \frac{g_{\text{Na}}V_{\text{Na}} + g_{\text{K}}V_{\text{K}}}{g_{\text{Na}} + g_{\text{K}}}, \quad (3.4)$$

where  $V_{\text{K}}$  is the Nernst potential of  $\text{K}^+$ . Clearly, the reversal potential is model-dependent. This is due to the fact that at the reversal potential the net current flow is zero, but the individual  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  currents are not. Thus, the equilibrium arguments used to derive the Nernst equation do not apply, and a universal form for the reversal potential does not exist. As an illustration of this, in Fig. 3.1B we plot the reversal potentials  $V_r$  from (3.3) and (3.4) as functions of  $[\text{K}^+]_e$ . Although the linear and GHK  $I$ – $V$  curves predict different reversal potentials, the overall qualitative behavior is similar, making it difficult to distinguish between a linear and a GHK  $I$ – $V$  curve on the basis of reversal potential measurements alone.

### 3.1.1 Steady-State and Instantaneous Current–Voltage Relations

Measurement of  $I$ – $V$  curves is complicated by the fact that ion channels can open or close in response to changes in the membrane potential. Suppose that in a population of ion channels,  $I$  increases as  $V$  increases. This increase could be the result of two different factors. One possibility is that more channels open as  $V$  increases while the current through an individual channel remains unchanged. It is also possible that the same number of channels remain open but the current through each one increases. To understand how each channel operates, it is necessary to separate these two factors to determine the  $I$ – $V$  curve of a single open channel. This has motivated the definition of *steady-state* and *instantaneous*  $I$ – $V$  curves.

If channels open or close in response to a change in voltage, but this response is slower than the change in current in a channel that is already open, it should be possible to measure the  $I$ – $V$  curve of a single open channel by changing the voltage quickly and measuring the channel current soon after the change. Presumably, if the measurement is performed fast enough, no channels in the population have time to open or close in response to the voltage change, and thus the observed current change reflects the current change through the open channels. Of course, this relies on the assumption that the current through each open channel changes instantaneously. The  $I$ – $V$  curve measured in this way (at least in principle) is called the instantaneous  $I$ – $V$  curve and reflects properties of the individual open channels. If the current measurement is performed after channels have had time to open or close, then the current change reflects



**Figure 3.1** A:  $I$ - $V$  curves of the linear and GHK models for  $\text{Na}^+$  flux through a membrane. Both curves have the same reversal potential as expected, but the GHK model (dashed curve) gives a nonlinear  $I$ - $V$  curve. Typical concentrations and conductances of the squid axon were used:  $[\text{Na}^+]_i = 50 \text{ mM}$ ,  $[\text{Na}^+]_e = 437 \text{ mM}$ , and  $g_{\text{Na}} = 0.01 \text{ mS/cm}^2$ .  $P_{\text{Na}}$  was chosen so that the GHK  $I$ - $V$  curve intersects the linear  $I$ - $V$  curve at  $V = 0$ . B: Reversal potentials of the linear and GHK models as functions of  $[\text{K}^+]_e$ . The membrane is permeable to both  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$ . The same parameters as A, with  $[\text{K}^+]_i = 397 \text{ mM}$  and  $g_K = 0.367 \text{ mS/cm}^2$ .  $P_K$  was chosen so that the GHK  $I$ - $V$  curve for  $\text{K}^+$ , with  $[\text{K}^+]_e = 20 \text{ mM}$ , intersects the linear  $I$ - $V$  curve for  $\text{K}^+$  at  $V = 0$ .

the  $I$ - $V$  curve of a single channel as well as the proportion of open channels. In this way one obtains a steady-state  $I$ - $V$  curve.

There are two basic types of model that are used to describe ion flow through open channels, and we discuss simple versions of each. In the first type of model, the channel is described as a continuous medium, and the ionic current is determined by

the Nernst–Planck electrodiffusion equation, coupled to the electric field by means of the Poisson equation. In more complex models of this type, channel geometry and the effects of induced charge on the channel wall are incorporated. In the second type of model the channel is modeled as a sequence of binding sites, separated by barriers that impede the ion's progress: the passage of an ion through the channel is described as a process of “hopping” over barriers from one binding site to another. The height of each barrier is determined by the properties of the channel, as well as by the membrane potential. Thus, the rate at which an ion traverses the channel is a function both of the membrane potential and of the channel type. An excellent summary of the advantages and disadvantages of the two model types is given by Dani and Levitt (1990).

We also discuss simple models of the kinetics of channel gating, and the stochastic behavior of a single channel. These models are of fundamental importance in Chapter 5, where we use an early model of the voltage-dependent gating of ion channels proposed by Hodgkin and Huxley as part of their model of the action potential in the squid giant axon. More detailed recent models of channel gating are not discussed at any length. The interested reader is referred to Hille (2001), Armstrong (1981), Armstrong and Bezanilla (1973, 1974, 1977), Aldrich et al. (1983), and Finkelstein and Peskin (1984) for a selection of models of how channels can open and close in response to changes in membrane potential. An important question that we do not consider here is how channels can discriminate between different ions. Detailed discussions of this and related issues are in Hille (2001) and the references therein.

## 3.2 Independence, Saturation, and the Ussing Flux Ratio

One of the most fundamental questions to be answered about an ion channel is whether the passage of an ion through the channel is independent of other ions. If so, the channel is said to obey the *independence principle*.

Suppose a membrane separates two solutions containing an ion species S with external concentration  $c_e$  and internal concentration  $c_i$ . If the independence principle is satisfied, the flow of S is proportional to its local concentration, independent of the concentration on the opposite side of the membrane, and thus the flux from outside to inside,  $J_{\text{in}}$ , is

$$J_{\text{in}} = k_e c_e, \quad (3.5)$$

for some constant  $k_e$ . Similarly, the outward flux is given by

$$J_{\text{out}} = k_i c_i, \quad (3.6)$$

where in general,  $k_e \neq k_i$ . We let  $V_S$  denote the Nernst potential of the ion S, and let  $V$  denote the potential difference across the membrane. Now we let  $c_e^*$  be the external concentration for which  $V$  is the Nernst potential. Thus,

$$\frac{c_e}{c_i} = \exp\left(\frac{zV_S F}{RT}\right), \quad (3.7)$$

and

$$\frac{c_e^*}{c_i} = \exp\left(\frac{zVF}{RT}\right). \quad (3.8)$$

If the external concentration were  $c_e^*$  with internal concentration  $c_i$ , then there would be no net flux across the membrane; i.e., the outward flux equals the inward flux, and so

$$k_e c_e^* = k_i c_i. \quad (3.9)$$

It follows that the flux ratio is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{J_{\text{in}}}{J_{\text{out}}} &= \frac{k_e c_e}{k_i c_i} = \frac{k_e c_e}{k_e c_e^*} = \frac{c_e}{c_e^*} \\ &= \frac{\exp\left(\frac{zV_S F}{RT}\right)}{\exp\left(\frac{zV F}{RT}\right)} \\ &= \exp\left[\frac{z(V_S - V)F}{RT}\right]. \end{aligned} \quad (3.10)$$

This expression for the ratio of the inward to the outward flux is usually called the *Ussing flux ratio*. It was first derived by Ussing (1949), although the derivation given here is due to Hodgkin and Huxley (1952a). Alternatively, the Ussing flux ratio can be written as

$$\frac{J_{\text{in}}}{J_{\text{out}}} = \frac{c_e}{c_i} \exp\left(\frac{-zVF}{RT}\right). \quad (3.11)$$

Note that when  $V = 0$ , the ratio of the fluxes is equal to the ratio of the concentrations, as might be expected intuitively.

Although many ion channels follow the independence principle approximately over a range of ionic concentrations, most show deviations from independence when the ionic concentrations are sufficiently large. This has motivated the development of models that show saturation at high ionic concentrations. For example, one could assume that ion flow through the channel can be described by a barrier-type model, in which the ion jumps from one binding site to another as it moves through the channel. If there are only a limited number of binding sites available for ion passage through the channel, and each binding site can bind only one ion, then as the ionic concentration increases there are fewer binding sites available, and so the flux is not proportional to the concentration. Equivalently, one could say that each channel has a single binding site for ion transfer, but there are only a limited number of channels. However, in many of these models the Ussing flux ratio is obeyed, even though independence is not. Hence, although any ion channel obeying the independence principle must also satisfy the Ussing flux ratio, the converse is not true. We discuss saturating models later in this chapter.

Another way in which channels show deviations from independence is in flux-coupling. If ions can interact within a channel so that, for example, a group of ions

must move through the channel together, then the Ussing flux ratio is not satisfied. The most common type of model used to describe such behavior is the so-called *multi-ion model*, in which it is assumed that there are a number of binding sites within a single channel and that the channel can bind multiple ions at the same time. The consequent interactions between the ions in the channel can result in deviations from the Ussing flux ratio. A more detailed consideration of multi-ion models is given later in this chapter. However, it is instructive to consider how the Ussing flux ratio is modified by a simple multi-ion channel mechanism in which the ions progress through the channel in single file (Hodgkin and Keynes, 1955).

Suppose a membrane separates two solutions, the external one (on the right) containing an ion S at concentration  $c_e$ , and the internal one (on the left) at concentration  $c_i$ . To keep track of where each S ion has come from, all the S ions on the left are labeled A, while those on the right are labeled B. Suppose also that the membrane contains  $n$  binding sites and that S ions traverse the membrane by binding sequentially to the binding sites and moving across in single file. For simplicity we assume that there are no vacancies in the chain of binding sites. It follows that the possible configurations of the chain of binding sites are  $[A_r, B_{n-r}]$ , for  $r = 0, \dots, n$ , where  $[A_r, B_{n-r}]$  denotes the configuration such that the  $r$  leftmost sites are occupied by A ions, while the rightmost  $n - r$  sites are occupied by B ions. Notice that the only configuration that can result in the transfer of an A ion to the right-hand side is  $[A_n B_0]$ , i.e., if the chain of binding sites is completely filled with A ions.

Now we let  $\alpha$  denote the total rate at which S ions are transferred from left to right. Since  $\alpha$  denotes the total rate, irrespective of labeling, it does not take into account whether an A ion or a B ion is moved out of the channel from left to right. For this reason,  $\alpha$  is not the same as the flux of labeled ions. Similarly, let  $\beta$  denote the total flux of S ions, irrespective of labeling, from right to left. It follows that the rate at which  $[A_r B_{n-r}]$  is converted to  $[A_{r+1} B_{n-r-1}]$  is  $\alpha[A_r B_{n-r}]$ , and the rate of the reverse conversion is  $\beta[A_{r+1} B_{n-r-1}]$ . According to Hodgkin and Keynes, it is reasonable to assume that if there is a potential difference  $V$  across the membrane, then the total flux ratio obeys the Ussing flux ratio,

$$\frac{\alpha}{\beta} = \frac{c_e}{c_i} \exp\left(\frac{-VF}{RT}\right). \quad (3.12)$$

This assumption is justified by the fact that a flux of one ion involves the movement of a single charge (assuming  $z = 1$ ) through the membrane (as in the independent case treated above) and thus should have the same voltage dependence. We emphasize that  $\alpha/\beta$  is not the flux ratio of labeled ions, but the total flux ratio.

To obtain the flux ratio of labeled ions, notice that the rate at which A ions are transferred to the right-hand side is  $\alpha[A_n B_0]$ , and the rate at which B ions are transferred to the left-hand side is  $\beta[A_0 B_n]$ . Thus, the flux ratio of labeled ions is

$$\frac{J_{in}}{J_{out}} = \frac{\alpha}{\beta} \frac{[A_n B_0]}{[A_0 B_n]}. \quad (3.13)$$

At steady state there can be no net change in the distribution of configurations, so that

$$\frac{[A_{r+1}B_{n-r-1}]}{[A_rB_{n-r}]} = \frac{\alpha}{\beta}. \quad (3.14)$$

Thus,

$$\frac{J_{\text{in}}}{J_{\text{out}}} = \frac{\alpha}{\beta} \frac{[A_nB_0]}{[A_0B_n]} = \left( \frac{\alpha}{\beta} \right)^2 \frac{[A_{n-1}B_1]}{[A_0B_n]} = \dots = \left( \frac{\alpha}{\beta} \right)^{n+1}, \quad (3.15)$$

so that

$$\frac{J_{\text{in}}}{J_{\text{out}}} = \left[ \frac{c_e}{c_i} \exp \left( \frac{-VF}{RT} \right) \right]^{n+1}. \quad (3.16)$$

A similar argument, taking into account the fact that occasional vacancies in the chain arise when ions at the two ends dissociate and that these vacancies propagate through the chain, gives

$$\frac{J_{\text{in}}}{J_{\text{out}}} = \left[ \frac{c_e}{c_i} \exp \left( \frac{-VF}{RT} \right) \right]^n. \quad (3.17)$$

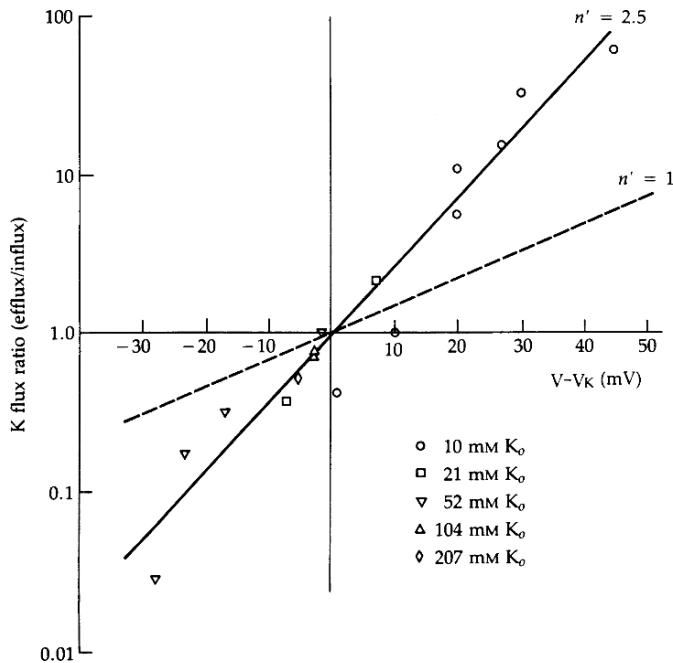
Experimental data confirm this theoretical prediction (although historically, the theory was motivated by the experimental result, as is often the case). Hodgkin and Keynes (1955) showed that flux ratios in the  $K^+$  channel of the *Sepia* giant axon could be described by the Ussing flux ratio raised to the power 2.5. Their result, as presented in modified form by Hille (2001), is shown in Fig. 3.2. Unidirectional  $K^+$  fluxes were measured with radioactive  $K^+$ , and the ratio of the outward to the inward flux was plotted as a function of  $V - V_K$ . The best-fit line on a semilogarithmic plot has a slope of 2.5, which suggests that at least 2  $K^+$  ions traverse the  $K^+$  channel simultaneously.

### 3.3 Electrodiffusion Models

Most early work on ion channels was based on the theory of electrodiffusion. Recall from Chapter 2 that the movement of ions in response to a concentration gradient and an electric field is described by the Nernst–Planck equation,

$$J = -D \left( \frac{dc}{dx} + \frac{zF}{RT} c \frac{d\phi}{dx} \right), \quad (3.18)$$

where  $J$  denotes the flux density,  $c$  is the concentration of the ion under consideration, and  $\phi$  is the electrical potential. If we make the simplifying assumption that the field  $d\phi/dx$  is constant through the membrane, then (3.18) can be solved to give the Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz current and voltage equations (2.123) and (2.126). However, in general there is no reason to believe that the potential has a constant gradient in the membrane. Ions moving through the channel affect the local electric field, and this local



**Figure 3.2**  $K^+$  flux ratios as measured by Hodgkin and Keynes (1955), Fig. 7. Slightly modified into modern conventions by Hille (2001), page 487.  $K_o$  is the external  $K^+$  concentration, and  $n'$  is the flux-ratio exponent, denoted by  $n$  in (3.17). (Hille, 2001, Fig. 15.7, p. 487.)

field in turn affects ionic fluxes. Thus, to determine the electric field and consequent ionic fluxes, one must solve a coupled problem.

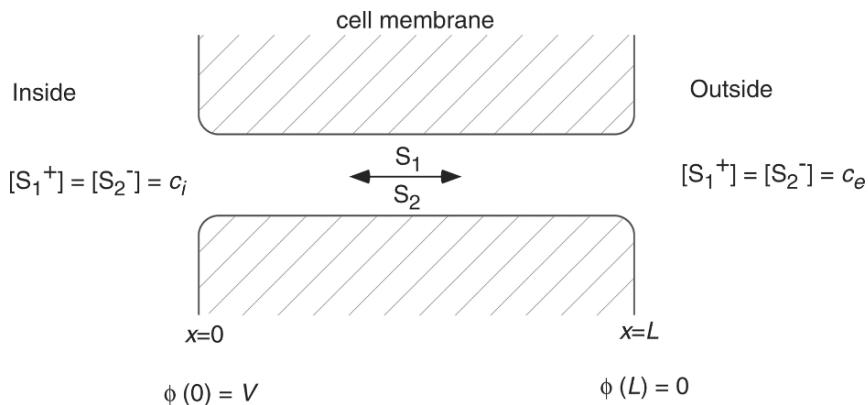
### 3.3.1 Multi-Ion Flux: The Poisson–Nernst–Planck Equations

Suppose there are two types of ions,  $S_1$  and  $S_2$ , with concentrations  $c_1$  and  $c_2$ , passing through an ion channel, as shown schematically in Fig. 3.3.

For convenience, we assume that the valence of the first ion is  $z > 0$  and that of the second is  $-z$ . Then, the potential in the channel  $\phi(x)$  must satisfy Poisson's equation,

$$\frac{d^2\phi}{dx^2} = -\frac{zq}{\epsilon} N_a (c_1 - c_2), \quad (3.19)$$

where  $q$  is the unit electric charge,  $\epsilon$  is the dielectric constant of the channel medium (usually assumed to be an aqueous solution), and  $N_a$  is Avogadro's number, necessary to convert units of concentration in moles per liter into number of molecules per liter. The flux densities  $J_1$  and  $J_2$  of  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  satisfy the Nernst–Planck equation, and at steady state  $dJ_1/dx$  and  $dJ_2/dx$  must both be zero to prevent charge buildup within the channel. Hence, the steady-state flux through the channel is described by (3.19)



**Figure 3.3** Schematic diagram of the electrodiffusion model of current through an ionic channel. Each side of the channel is electrically neutral, and both ion types can diffuse through the channel.

coupled with

$$J_1 = -D_1 \left( \frac{dc_1}{dx} + \frac{zF}{RT} c_1 \frac{d\phi}{dx} \right), \quad (3.20)$$

$$J_2 = -D_2 \left( \frac{dc_2}{dx} - \frac{zF}{RT} c_2 \frac{d\phi}{dx} \right), \quad (3.21)$$

where  $J_1$  and  $J_2$  are constants. To complete the specification of the problem, it is necessary to specify boundary conditions for  $c_1$ ,  $c_2$ , and  $\phi$ . We assume that the channel has length  $L$ , and that  $x = 0$  denotes the left border, or inside, of the membrane. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} c_1(0) &= c_i, & c_1(L) &= c_e, \\ c_2(0) &= c_i, & c_2(L) &= c_e, \\ \phi(0) &= V, & \phi(L) &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{3.22}$$

Note that the solutions on both sides of the membrane are electrically neutral.  $V$  is the potential difference across the membrane, defined, as usual, as the internal potential minus the external potential. While at first glance it might appear that there are too many boundary conditions for the differential equations, this is in fact not so, as the constants  $J_1$  and  $J_2$  are additional unknowns to be determined.

In general, it is not possible to obtain an exact solution to the Poisson–Nernst–Planck (PNP) equations (3.19)–(3.22). However, some simplified cases can be solved approximately. A great deal of work on the PNP equations has been done by Eisenberg and his colleagues (Chen et al., 1992; Barcilon, 1992; Barcilon et al., 1992; Chen and Eisenberg, 1993). Here we present simplified versions of their models, ignoring, for example, the charge induced on the channel wall by the presence of ions in the channel, and considering only the movement of two ion types through the channel. Similar models have also been discussed by Peskin (1991).

It is convenient first to nondimensionalize the PNP equations. We let  $y = x/L$ ,  $\psi = \phi z F / RT$ ,  $v = VF/RT$ ,  $u_k = c_k/\tilde{c}$ , for  $k = 1, 2, i$  and  $e$ , where  $\tilde{c} = c_e + c_i$ . Substituting into (3.19)–(3.21), we find

$$-j_1 = \frac{du_1}{dy} + u_1 \frac{d\psi}{dy}, \quad (3.23)$$

$$-j_2 = \frac{du_2}{dy} - u_2 \frac{d\psi}{dy}, \quad (3.24)$$

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dy^2} = -\lambda^2(u_1 - u_2), \quad (3.25)$$

where  $\lambda^2 = L^2 q F N_a \tilde{c} / (\epsilon R T)$ ,  $j_1 = J_1 L / (\tilde{c} D_1)$ , and  $j_2 = J_2 L / (\tilde{c} D_1)$ . The boundary conditions are

$$\begin{aligned} u_1(0) &= u_i, & u_1(1) &= u_e, \\ u_2(0) &= u_i, & u_2(1) &= u_e, \\ \psi(0) &= v, & \psi(1) &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (3.26)$$

### The Short-Channel or Low Concentration Limit

If the channel is short or the ionic concentrations on either side of the membrane are small, so that  $\lambda \ll 1$ , we can find an approximate solution to the PNP equations by setting  $\lambda = 0$ . This gives

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dy^2} = 0, \quad (3.27)$$

and thus

$$\frac{d\psi}{dy} = -v. \quad (3.28)$$

Hence,  $\lambda \approx 0$  implies that the electric potential has a constant gradient in the membrane, which is exactly the constant field assumption that was made in the derivation of the GHK equations (Chapter 2). The equation for  $u_1$  is then

$$\frac{du_1}{dy} - vu_1 = -j_1, \quad (3.29)$$

and thus

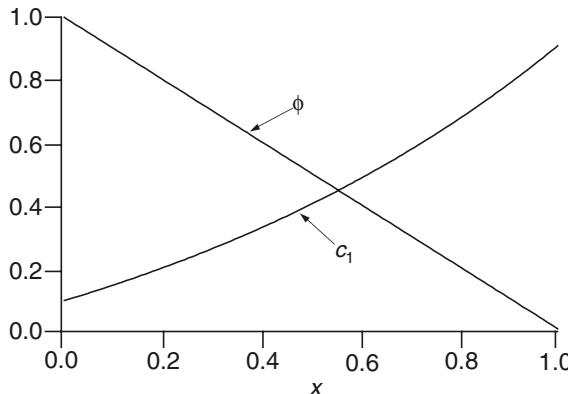
$$u_1 = \frac{j_1}{v} + K_1 e^{vy}. \quad (3.30)$$

From the boundary conditions  $u_1(0) = u_i$ ,  $u_1(1) = u_e$  it follows that

$$j_1 = v \frac{u_i - u_e e^{-v}}{1 - e^{-v}}. \quad (3.31)$$

In dimensional form, this is

$$I_1 = F J_1 = \frac{D_1}{L} \frac{F^2}{RT} V \left( \frac{c_i - c_e \exp(-\frac{-zVF}{RT})}{1 - \exp(-\frac{-zVF}{RT})} \right), \quad (3.32)$$



**Figure 3.4** The concentration and potential profiles for the short-channel limit of the Poisson–Nernst–Planck equations. Dimensionless parameters were set arbitrarily at  $u_i = 50/550 = 0.091$ ,  $u_e = 500/550 = 0.909$ ,  $v = 1$ . In this limit the electric field is constant through the channel (the potential has a constant slope), the concentration profile is nonlinear, and the GHK  $I$ – $V$  curve is obtained.

which is, as expected, the GHK current equation. Graphs of the concentration and voltage profiles through the membrane are shown in Fig. 3.4. It is reassuring that the widely used GHK equation for the ionic flux can be derived as a limiting case of a more general model.

### The Long-Channel Limit

Another interesting limit is obtained by letting the length of the channel go to infinity. If we let  $\eta = 1/\lambda$  denote a small parameter, the model equations are

$$-j_1 = \frac{du_1}{dy} + u_1 \frac{d\psi}{dy}, \quad (3.33)$$

$$-j_2 = \frac{du_2}{dy} - u_2 \frac{d\psi}{dy}, \quad (3.34)$$

$$-\eta^2 \frac{d^2\psi}{dy^2} = (u_1 - u_2). \quad (3.35)$$

Since there is a small parameter multiplying the highest derivative, this is a singular perturbation problem. The solution obtained by setting  $\eta = 0$  does not, in general, satisfy all the boundary conditions, as the degree of the differential equation has been reduced, resulting in an overdetermined system. In the present case, however, this reduction of order is not a problem.

Setting  $\eta = 0$  in (3.35) gives  $u_1 = u_2$ , which happens to satisfy both the left and right boundary conditions. Thus,  $u_1$  and  $u_2$  are identical throughout the channel. From (3.33) and (3.34) it follows that

$$\frac{d}{dy}(u_1 + u_2) = -j_1 - j_2. \quad (3.36)$$

Since both  $j_1$  and  $j_2$  are constants, it follows that  $du_1/dy$  is a constant, and hence, from the boundary conditions,

$$u_1 = u_2 = u_i + (u_e - u_i)y. \quad (3.37)$$

We are now able to solve for  $\psi$ . Subtracting (3.35) from (3.34) gives

$$2u_1 \frac{d\psi}{dy} = 2j, \quad (3.38)$$

where  $2j = j_2 - j_1$ , and hence

$$\psi = \frac{j}{u_e - u_i} \ln[u_i + (u_e - u_i)y] + K, \quad (3.39)$$

for some other constant  $K$ . Applying the boundary conditions  $\psi(0) = v$ ,  $\psi(1) = 0$  we determine  $j$  and  $K$ , with the result that

$$\psi = -\frac{v}{v_1} \ln \left[ \frac{u_i}{u_e} + \left( 1 - \frac{u_i}{u_e} \right) y \right], \quad (3.40)$$

where  $v_1 = \ln(u_e/u_i)$  is the dimensionless Nernst potential of ion  $S_1$ . The flux density of one of the ions, say  $S_1$ , is obtained by substituting the expressions for  $u_1$  and  $\psi$  into (3.33) to get

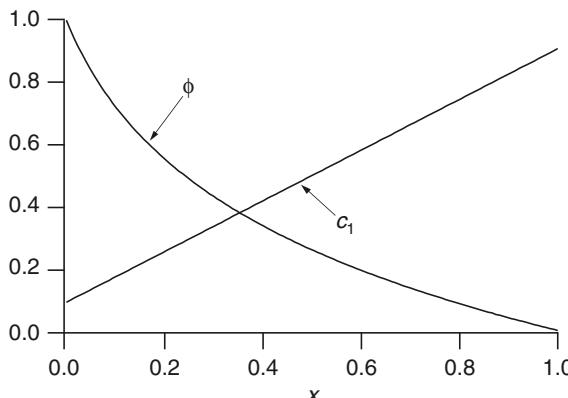
$$j_1 = \frac{u_e - u_i}{v_1} (v - v_1), \quad (3.41)$$

or in dimensional form,

$$J_1 = \frac{D_1}{L} \frac{zF}{RT} \frac{c_e - c_i}{\ln \frac{c_e}{c_i}} (V - \frac{RT}{zF} \ln \frac{c_e}{c_i}), \quad (3.42)$$

which is the linear  $I$ - $V$  curve that we met previously. Graphs of the corresponding concentration and voltage profiles through the channel are shown in Fig. 3.5.

In summary, by taking two different limits of the PNP equations we obtain either the GHK  $I$ - $V$  curve or a linear  $I$ - $V$  curve. In the short-channel limit,  $\psi$  has a constant gradient through the membrane, but the concentration does not. In the long-channel limit the reverse is true, with a constant gradient for the concentration through the channel, but not for the potential. It is left as an exercise to prove that although the GHK equation obeys the independence principle and the Ussing flux ratio, the linear



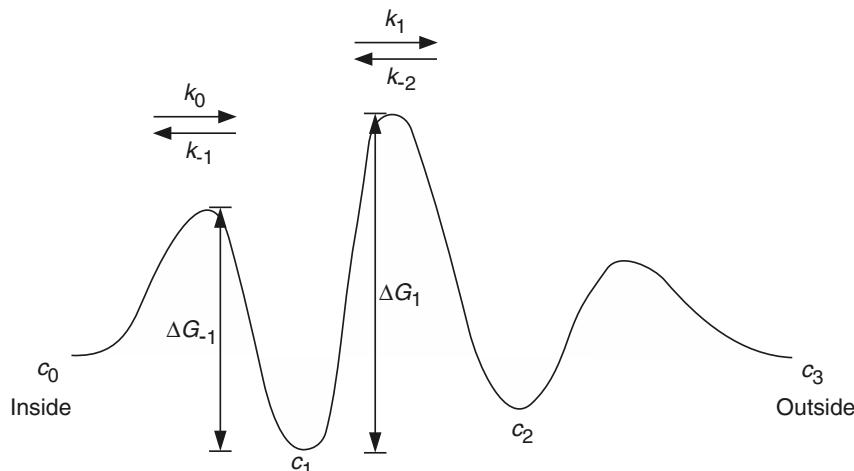
**Figure 3.5** The concentration and potential profiles for the long-channel limit of the Poisson–Nernst–Planck equations. Dimensionless parameters were set arbitrarily at  $u_i = 50/550 = 0.091$ ,  $u_e = 500/550 = 0.909$ ,  $v = 1$ . In this limit the concentration profile has a constant slope, the potential profile is nonlinear, and the linear  $I$ - $V$  curve is obtained.

$I$ - $V$  curve obeys neither. Given the above derivation of the linear  $I$ - $V$  curve, this is not surprising. A linear  $I$ - $V$  curve is obtained when either the channel is very long or the ionic concentrations on either side of the channel are very high. In either case, one should not expect the movement of an ion through the channel to be independent of other ions, and so that the independence principle is likely to fail. Conversely, the GHK equation is obtained in the limit of low ionic concentrations or short channels, in which case the independent movement of ions is not surprising.

### 3.4 Barrier Models

The second type of model that has been widely used to describe ion channels is based on the assumption that the movement of an ion through the channel can be modeled as the jumping of an ion over a discrete number of free-energy barriers (Eyring et al., 1949; Woodbury, 1971; Läuger, 1973). It is assumed that the potential energy of an ion passing through a channel is described by a potential energy profile of the general form shown in Fig. 3.6. The peaks of the potential energy profile correspond to barriers that impede the ion flow, while the local minima correspond to binding sites within the channel.

To traverse the channel the ion must hop from one binding site to another. According to the theory of chemical reaction rates, the rate at which an ion jumps from one binding site to the next is an exponential function of the height of the potential energy



**Figure 3.6** General potential energy profile for barrier models. The local minima correspond to binding sites within the channel, and the local maxima are barriers that impede the ion flow. An ion progresses through the channel by hopping over the barriers from one binding site to another.

barrier that it must cross. Thus, in the notation of the diagram,

$$k_j = \kappa \exp\left(\frac{-\Delta G_j}{RT}\right), \quad (3.43)$$

for some factor  $\kappa$  with units of 1/time. One of the most difficult questions in the use of this expression is deciding the precise form of the factor  $\kappa$ . According to Eyring rate theory (as used in this context by Hille (2001), for example),  $\kappa = kT/h$ , where  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant,  $T$  is the temperature, and  $h$  is Planck's constant. The derivation of this expression for  $\kappa$  relies on the quantization of the energy levels of the ion in some transition state as it binds to the channel binding sites. However, it is not clear that at biologically relevant temperatures energy quantization has an important effect on ionic flows. Using methods from nonequilibrium statistical thermodynamics, an alternative form of the factor has been derived by Kramers (1940), and discussions of this, and other, alternatives may be found in McQuarrie (1967) and Laidler (1969). In the appendix to this chapter, we give a derivation of Kramers' formula, but we do not enter into the debate of which answer is best. Instead, in what follows, we assume that  $\kappa$  is known, and independent of  $\Delta G_j$ , even though, for Kramers' formula, such is not the case.

For simplicity, we assume that each local maximum occurs halfway between the local minima on each side. Barriers with this property are called *symmetrical*. An electric field in the channel also affects the rate constants. If the potential difference across the cell membrane is positive (so that the inside is more positive than the outside), it is easier for positive ions to cross the barriers in the outward direction but more difficult for positive ions to enter the cell. Thus, the heights of the barriers in the outward direction are reduced, while the heights in the inward direction are increased. If there is a potential difference of  $\Delta V_j$  over the  $j$ th barrier, then

$$k_j = \kappa \exp\left[\frac{1}{RT}(-\Delta G_j + zF\Delta V_{j+1}/2)\right], \quad (3.44)$$

$$k_{-j} = \kappa \exp\left[\frac{1}{RT}(-\Delta G_{-j} - zF\Delta V_j/2)\right]. \quad (3.45)$$

The factor 2 appears because the barriers are assumed to be symmetrical, so that the maxima are lowered by  $zF\Delta V_j/2$ . A simple illustration of this is given in Fig. 3.7A and B and is discussed in detail in the next section.

In addition to symmetry, the barriers are assumed to have another important property, namely, that in the absence of an electric field the ends of the energy profile are at the same height, and thus

$$\sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \Delta G_j - \sum_{j=1}^n \Delta G_{-j} = 0. \quad (3.46)$$

If this were not so, then in the absence of an electric field and with equal concentrations on either side of the membrane, there would be a nonzero flux through the membrane, a situation that is clearly unphysiological.

A number of different models have been constructed along these general lines. First, we consider the simplest type of barrier model, in which the ionic concentration in the channel can become arbitrarily large, i.e., the channel does not saturate. This is similar to the continuous models discussed above and can be thought of as a discrete approximation to the constant field model. Because of this, nonsaturating models give the GHK  $I$ - $V$  curve in the limit of a homogeneous membrane. We then discuss saturating barrier models and multi-ion models. Before we do so, however, it is important to note that although barrier models can provide good quantitative descriptions of some experimental data, they are phenomenological. In other words, apart from the agreement between theory and experiment, there is often no reason to suppose that the potential energy barrier used to describe the channel corresponds in any way to physical properties of the channel. Thus, although their relative simplicity has led to their widespread use, mechanistic interpretations of the models should be made only with considerable caution. Of course, this does not imply that barrier models are inferior to continuous models such as the constant field model or the Poisson–Nernst–Planck equations, which suffer from their own disadvantages (Dani and Levitt, 1990).

### 3.4.1 Nonsaturating Barrier Models

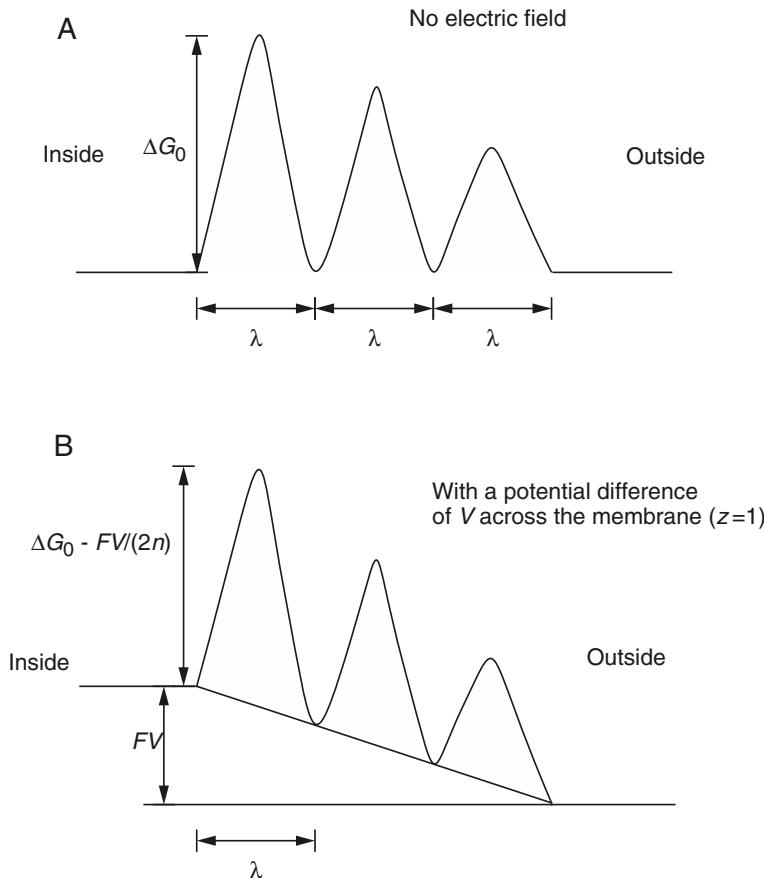
In the simplest barrier model (Eyring et al., 1949; Woodbury, 1971), the potential energy barrier has the general form shown in Fig. 3.7A, and it is assumed that the movement of an ion  $S$  over a barrier is independent of the ionic concentrations at the neighboring barriers. This is equivalent to assuming that the concentration of  $S$  at any particular binding site can be arbitrarily large.

The internal concentration of  $S$  is denoted by  $c_0$ , while the external concentration is denoted by  $c_n$ . There are  $n - 1$  binding sites (and thus  $n$  barriers) in the membrane, and the concentration of  $S$  at the  $j$ th binding site is denoted by  $c_j$ . Note the slight change in notation from above. Instead of using  $c_e$  and  $c_i$  to denote the external and internal concentrations of  $S$ , we use  $c_n$  and  $c_0$ . This allows the labeling of the concentrations on either side of the membrane to be consistent with the labeling of the concentrations at the binding sites. There is an equal voltage drop across each barrier, and thus the electrical distance between each binding site, denoted by  $\lambda$ , is the same. For convenience, we assume the stronger condition, that the physical distance between the binding sites is the same also, which is equivalent to assuming a constant electric field in the membrane. In the absence of an electric field, we assume that the heights of the energy barriers decrease linearly through the membrane, as in Fig. 3.7, with

$$\Delta G_j = \Delta G_0 - j\delta G, \quad (3.47)$$

for some constant increment  $\delta G$ . Finally, it is assumed that the flux from left to right, say, across the  $j$ th barrier, is proportional to  $c_{j-1}$ , and similarly for the flux in the opposite direction. Thus, the flux over the  $j$ th barrier,  $J$ , is given by

$$J = \lambda(k_{j-1}c_{j-1} - k_{-j}c_j). \quad (3.48)$$



**Figure 3.7** The potential energy diagram used in the nonsaturating model of Woodbury (1971). There is an equal distance between the binding sites, and the barriers are symmetrical. A. In the absence of an electric field the barrier height decreases linearly through the membrane. B. The presence of a constant electric field skews the energy profile, bringing the outside down relative to the inside. This increases the rate at which positive ions traverse the channel from inside to out and decreases their rate of entry.

Note that the units of  $J$  are concentration  $\times$  distance/time, or moles per unit area per time, so  $J$  is a flux density. As usual, a flux from inside to outside (i.e., left to right) is defined as a positive flux.

At steady state the flux over each barrier must be the same, in which case we obtain a system of linear equations,

$$k_0c_0 - k_{-1}c_1 = k_1c_1 - k_{-2}c_2 = \dots = k_{n-1}c_{n-1} - k_{-n}c_n = M, \quad (3.49)$$

where  $M = J/\lambda$  is a constant. Hence

$$k_0c_0 = (k_1 + k_{-1})c_1 - k_{-2}c_2, \quad (3.50)$$

$$k_1c_1 = (k_2 + k_{-2})c_2 - k_{-3}c_3, \quad (3.51)$$

$$k_2c_2 = (k_3 + k_{-3})c_3 - k_{-4}c_4, \quad (3.52)$$

⋮

We need to determine  $J$  in terms of the concentrations on either side of the membrane,  $c_0$  and  $c_n$ . Solving (3.51) for  $c_1$  and substituting into (3.50) gives

$$k_0c_0 = c_2k_2\phi_2 - c_3k_{-3}\phi_1, \quad (3.53)$$

where

$$\phi_j = \sum_{i=0}^j \pi_i, \quad (3.54)$$

$$\pi_j = \frac{k_{-1} \cdots k_{-j}}{k_1 \cdots k_j}, \quad \pi_0 = 1. \quad (3.55)$$

Then solving (3.52) for  $c_2$  and substituting into (3.53) gives

$$k_0c_0 = c_3k_3\phi_3 - c_4k_{-4}\phi_2. \quad (3.56)$$

Repeating this process of sequential substitutions, we find that

$$k_0c_0 = k_{n-1}c_{n-1}\phi_{n-1} - c_nk_{-n}\phi_{n-2}. \quad (3.57)$$

Since

$$c_{n-1} = \frac{M + k_{-n}c_n}{k_{n-1}}, \quad (3.58)$$

it follows that

$$k_0c_0 = \phi_{n-1}(M + k_{-n}c_n) - c_nk_{-n}\phi_{n-2}, \quad (3.59)$$

and hence

$$J = \lambda M = \frac{\lambda k_0 \left( c_0 - c_n \pi_n \frac{k_n}{k_0} \right)}{\phi_{n-1}}. \quad (3.60)$$

It remains to express the rate constants in terms of the membrane potential. If there is a potential difference  $V$  across the membrane (as shown in Fig. 3.7B), the constant electric field adds  $FzV/(2n)$  to the barrier when moving from right to left, and  $-FzV/(2n)$  when moving in the opposite direction. Hence

$$\Delta G_j = \Delta G_0 - j\delta G - \frac{FzV}{2n}, \quad (3.61)$$

$$\Delta G_{-j} = \Delta G_0 - (j-1)\delta G + \frac{FzV}{2n}. \quad (3.62)$$

Now we use (3.43) to get

$$\frac{k_{-j}}{k_{j-1}} = \exp(-\nu/n), \quad \frac{k_{-j}}{k_j} = \exp(-g - \nu/n), \quad (3.63)$$

where  $g = \delta G/(RT)$  and  $\nu = FzV/(RT)$ . Hence

$$\pi_j = \exp(-j(g + \nu/n)), \quad (3.64)$$

and

$$\phi_{n-1} = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \exp(-j(g + \nu/n)) = \frac{e^{-n(g+\nu/n)} - 1}{e^{-(g+\nu/n)} - 1}, \quad (3.65)$$

so that

$$J = k_0 \lambda (c_0 - c_n e^{-\nu}) \frac{e^{-(g+\nu/n)} - 1}{e^{-n(g+\nu/n)} - 1}. \quad (3.66)$$

As expected, (3.66) satisfies both the independence principle and the Ussing flux ratio. Also, the flux is zero when  $\nu$  is the Nernst potential of the ion.

### The Homogeneous Membrane Simplification

One useful simplification of the nonsaturating barrier model is obtained if it is assumed that the membrane is homogeneous. We model a homogeneous membrane by setting  $g = \delta G/(RT) = 0$  and letting  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Thus, there is no increase in barrier height through the membrane, and the number of barriers approaches infinity. In this limit, keeping  $n\lambda = L$  fixed,

$$J = \frac{k_{00}\lambda^2}{L} \nu \frac{c_0 - c_n e^{-\nu}}{1 - e^{-\nu}}, \quad (3.67)$$

where  $k_{00}$  is the value of  $k_0$  at  $V = 0$ ,  $L$  is the width of the membrane, and  $k_{00}\lambda^2$  is the diffusion coefficient of the ion over the first barrier in the absence of an electric field. Notice that for this to make sense it must be that  $k_{00}$  scales like  $\lambda^{-2}$  for small  $\lambda$ . In Section 3.7.3 we show that this is indeed the case.

It follows that in the homogeneous membrane case,

$$\begin{aligned} J &= \frac{D_S}{L} \nu \frac{c_0 - c_n e^{-\nu}}{1 - e^{-\nu}}, \\ &= P_S \nu \frac{c_0 - c_n e^{-\nu}}{1 - e^{-\nu}}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.68)$$

which is exactly the GHK current equation (2.122) derived previously.

### 3.4.2 Saturating Barrier Models: One-Ion Pores

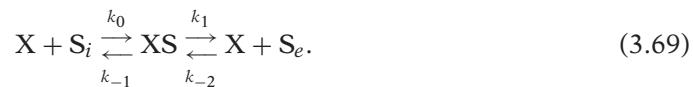
If an ion channel satisfies the independence principle, the flux of  $S$  is proportional to  $[S]$ , even when  $[S]$  gets large. However, this is not usually found to be true experimentally.

It is more common for the flux to saturate as  $[S]$  increases, reaching some maximum value as  $[S]$  gets large. This has motivated the development of models in which the flux is not proportional to  $[S]$  but is a nonlinear, saturating, function of  $[S]$ . As one might expect, equations for such models are similar to those of enzyme kinetics.

The basic assumptions behind saturating barrier models are that to pass through the channel, ions must bind to binding sites in the channel, but that each binding site can hold only a single ion (Läuger, 1973; Hille, 2001). Hence, if all the binding sites are full, an increase in ionic concentration does not increase the ionic flux—the channel is saturated. Saturating barrier models can be further subdivided into one-ion pore models, in which each channel can bind only a single ion at any one time, and multi-ion pore models, in which each channel can bind multiple ions simultaneously. The theory of one-ion pores is considerably simpler than that of multi-ion pores, and so we discuss those models first.

### The Simplest One-Ion Saturating Model

We begin by considering the simplest one-ion pore model, with a single binding site. If we let  $S_e$  denote the ion outside,  $S_i$  the ion inside, and  $X$  the binding site, the passage of an ion through the channel can be described by the kinetic scheme



Essentially, the binding site acts like an enzyme that transfers the ion from one side of the membrane to the other, such as was encountered in Chapter 2 for the transport of glucose across a membrane. Following the notation of the previous section, we let  $c_0$  denote  $[S_i]$  and  $c_2$  denote  $[S_e]$ . However, instead of using  $c_1$  to denote the concentration of  $S$  at the binding site, it is more convenient to let  $c_1$  denote the probability that the binding site is occupied. (In a population of channels,  $c_1$  denotes the proportion of channels that have an occupied binding site.) Then, at steady state,

$$k_0 c_0 x - k_{-1} c_1 = k_1 c_1 - k_{-2} c_2 x, \quad (3.70)$$

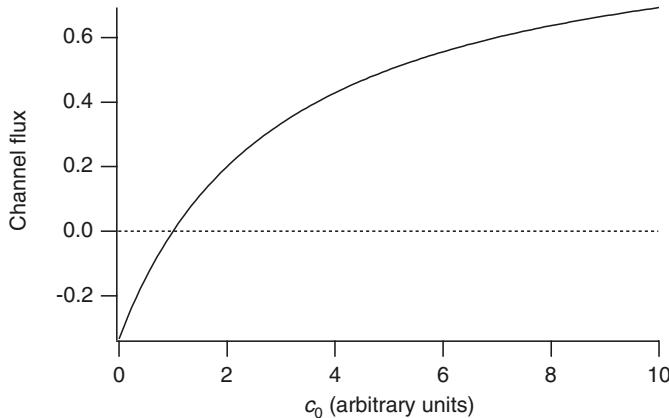
where  $x$  denotes the probability that the binding site is empty. Note that (3.70) is similar to the corresponding equation for the nonsaturating pore, (3.49), with the only difference that  $x$  appears in the saturating model. In addition, we have a conservation equation for  $x$ ,

$$x + c_1 = 1. \quad (3.71)$$

Solution of (3.70) and (3.71) gives the flux  $J$  as

$$J = k_0 c_0 x - k_{-1} c_1 = \frac{k_0 k_1 c_0 - k_{-1} k_{-2} c_2}{k_0 c_0 + k_{-2} c_2 + k_{-1} + k_1}. \quad (3.72)$$

It is important to note that  $J$ , as defined by (3.72), does not have the same units (concentration  $\times$  distance/time) as in the previous model, but here has units of number of ions crossing the membrane per unit time. The corresponding transmembrane current,



**Figure 3.8** Plot of  $J$  against  $c_0$  for the simplest saturating model with one binding site. When  $c_0$  is small, the flux is approximately a linear function of  $c_0$ , but as  $c_0$  increases, the flux saturates to a maximum value.

$I$ , is given by  $I = zqJ$ , where  $q$  is the unit charge, and has the usual units of number of charges crossing the membrane per unit time. A plot of  $J$  as a function of  $c_0$  is shown in Fig. 3.8. When  $c_0$  is small,  $J$  is approximately a linear function of  $c_0$ , but as  $c_0$  increases,  $J$  saturates at the maximum value  $k_1$ .

We now use (3.43) to express the rate constants in terms of the membrane potential. As before, we assume that the local maxima of the energy profile occur midway between the local minima; i.e., we assume that the barriers are symmetrical. However, we no longer assume that the barriers are equally spaced through the channel. If the local minimum occurs at an electrical distance  $\delta$  from the left-hand side, it follows that

$$k_0 = \kappa \exp \left[ \frac{1}{RT} (-\Delta G_0 + \delta zFV/2) \right], \quad (3.73)$$

$$k_1 = \kappa \exp \left[ \frac{1}{RT} (-\Delta G_1 + (1 - \delta)zFV/2) \right], \quad (3.74)$$

$$k_{-1} = \kappa \exp \left[ \frac{1}{RT} (-\Delta G_{-1} - \delta zFV/2) \right], \quad (3.75)$$

$$k_{-2} = \kappa \exp \left[ \frac{1}{RT} (-\Delta G_{-2} - (1 - \delta)zFV/2) \right]. \quad (3.76)$$

Because  $\delta$  denotes an electrical, not a physical, distance, it is not necessary to assume that the electric field in the membrane is constant, only that there is a drop of  $\delta V$  over the first barrier and  $(1 - \delta)V$  over the second. In general, the energy profile of any particular channel is unknown. However, the number and positions of the binding sites and the values of the local maxima and minima can, in principle at least, be determined by fitting to experimental data. We consider an example of this procedure (for a slightly more complicated model) below.

### The Ussing Flux Ratio

Earlier in this chapter we stated that it is possible for a model to obey the Ussing flux ratio but not the independence principle. Single-ion saturating models provide a simple example of this. First, note that they cannot obey the independence principle, since the flux is not linearly proportional to the ionic concentration. This nonlinear saturation effect is illustrated in Fig. 3.8.

To see that the model obeys the Ussing flux ratio, it is necessary to set up the model in a slightly different form. Suppose we have two isotopes, S and  $\bar{S}$ , similar enough so that they have identical energy profiles in the channel. Then, we suppose that a channel has only S on the left-hand side and only  $\bar{S}$  on the right. We let  $c$  denote [S] and  $\bar{c}$  denote [ $\bar{S}$ ]. Since S and  $\bar{S}$  have identical energy profiles in the channel, the rate constants for the passage of  $\bar{S}$  through the channel are the same as those for S. From the kinetic schemes for S and  $\bar{S}$  we obtain

$$k_0 c_0 x - k_{-1} c_1 = k_1 c_1 - k_{-2} c_2 x = J_S, \quad (3.77)$$

$$k_0 \bar{c}_0 x - k_{-1} \bar{c}_1 = k_1 \bar{c}_1 - k_{-2} \bar{c}_2 x = J_{\bar{S}}, \quad (3.78)$$

but here the conservation equation for  $x$  is

$$x + \bar{c}_1 + c_1 = 1. \quad (3.79)$$

To calculate the individual fluxes of S and  $\bar{S}$  it is necessary to eliminate  $x$  from (3.77) and (3.78) using the conservation equation (3.79). However, to calculate the flux ratio this is not necessary. Solving (3.77) for  $J_S$  in terms of  $x, c_0$ , and  $c_2$ , we find

$$J_S = x \left( \frac{k_0 c_0 - \frac{k_{-1} k_{-2}}{k_1} c_2}{1 + k_{-1}/k_1} \right), \quad (3.80)$$

and similarly,

$$J_{\bar{S}} = x \left( \frac{k_0 \bar{c}_0 - \frac{k_{-1} k_{-2}}{k_1} \bar{c}_2}{1 + k_{-1}/k_1} \right). \quad (3.81)$$

If S is present only on the left-hand side and  $\bar{S}$  only on the right, we then have  $c_2 = 0$  and  $\bar{c}_0 = 0$ , in which case

$$\frac{J_S}{J_{\bar{S}}} = - \frac{k_0 k_1}{k_{-1} k_{-2}} \frac{c_0}{\bar{c}_2}. \quad (3.82)$$

The minus sign on the right-hand side appears because the fluxes are in different directions. Now we substitute for the rate constants, (3.73) to (3.76), and use the fact that the

ends of the energy profile are at the same height (and thus  $\Delta G_0 + \Delta G_1 - \Delta G_{-1} - \Delta G_{-2} = 0$ ) to find

$$\left| \frac{J_S}{J_{\bar{S}}} \right| = \exp \left( \frac{zVF}{RT} \right) \frac{c_0}{\bar{c}_2}, \quad (3.83)$$

which is the Ussing flux ratio, as proposed.

### Multiple Binding Sites

When there are multiple binding sites within the channel, the analysis is essentially the same as the simpler case discussed above, but the details are more complicated. When there are  $n$  barriers in the membrane (and thus  $n - 1$  binding sites), the steady-state equations are

$$k_0 c_0 x - k_{-1} c_1 = k_1 c_1 - k_{-2} c_2 = \dots = k_{n-1} c_{n-1} - k_{-n} c_n x = J, \quad (3.84)$$

where  $x$  is the probability that all of the binding sites are empty and  $c_j$  is the probability that the ion is bound to the  $j$ th binding site. Because the channel must be in either state  $x$  or one of the states  $c_1, \dots, c_{n-1}$  (since there is only one ion in the channel at a time), it follows that

$$x = 1 - \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} c_i. \quad (3.85)$$

It is left as an exercise to show that

$$J = \frac{k_0 c_0 - k_{-n} c_n \pi_{n-1}}{\phi_{n-1} + \beta k_0 c_0 + k_{-n} c_n (\alpha \phi_{n-1} - \beta \phi_{n-2})}, \quad (3.86)$$

where

$$\alpha = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \frac{\phi_{n-2} - \phi_{j-1}}{k_j \pi_j}, \quad (3.87)$$

$$\beta = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \frac{\phi_{n-1} - \phi_{j-1}}{k_j \pi_j}, \quad (3.88)$$

where  $\phi_j$  and  $\pi_j$  are defined in (3.54) and (3.55).

Equation (3.86) does not satisfy the independence principle, but it does satisfy the Ussing flux ratio. However, the details are left as an exercise (Exercise 5).

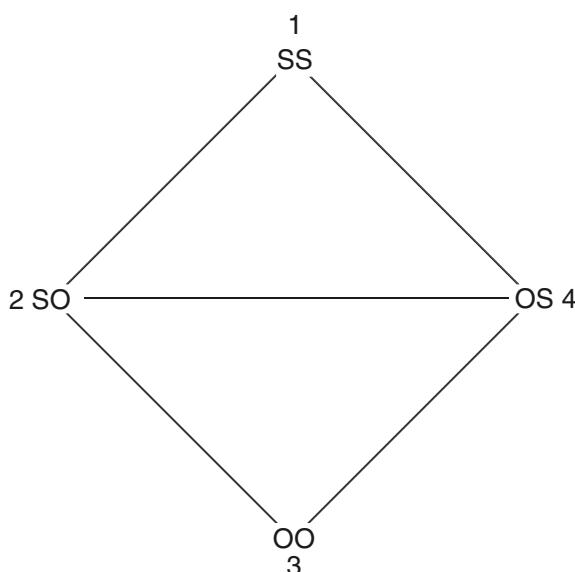
### 3.4.3 Saturating Barrier Models: Multi-Ion Pores

We showed above that single-ion models obey the Ussing flux ratio, even though they do not obey the independence principle. This means that to model the type of channel described in Fig. 3.2 it is necessary to use models that show flux coupling as predicted by Hodgkin and Keynes (1955). Such flux coupling arises in models in which more than one ion can be in the channel at any one time. Although the equations for such

multi-ion models are essentially the same as the equations for the single-ion models described in the previous section, the analysis is complicated considerably by the fact that there are many more possible channel states. Hence, numerical techniques are the most efficient for studying such models. A great deal has been written about multi-ion models (e.g., Hille and Schwartz, 1978; Begenisich and Cahalan, 1980; Schumaker and MacKinnon, 1990; Urban and Hladky, 1979; Kohler and Heckmann, 1979). Space does not allow for a detailed discussion of the properties of these models, but so we present only a brief discussion of the simplest model. Hille and Schwartz (1978) and Hille (2001) give more detailed discussions.

Multi-ion models are based on assumptions similar to one-ion models. It is assumed that the passage of an ion through the channel can be described as the jumping of an ion over energy barriers, from one binding site to another. In one-ion models each binding site can either have an ion bound or not, and thus a channel with  $n$  binding sites can be in one of  $n$  independent states (i.e., the ion can be bound to any one of the binding sites). Hence, the steady-state ion distribution is found by solving a system of  $n$  linear equations, treating the concentrations on either side of the membrane as known. If more than one ion can be present simultaneously in the channel, the situation is more complicated. Each binding site can be in one of two states: binding an ion or empty. Therefore, a channel with  $n$  binding sites can be in any of  $2^n$  states (at least; more states are possible if there is more than one ion type passing through the channel), and the steady-state probability distribution must be found by solving a large system of linear equations.

The simplest possible multi-ion model has three barriers and two binding sites, and so the channel can be in one of 4 possible states (Fig. 3.9). Arbitrary movements from one state to another are not possible. For example, the state OO (where both binding



**Figure 3.9** State diagram for a multi-ion barrier model with two binding sites and a single ion.

sites are empty) can change to OS or SO but cannot change to SS in a single step, as this would require two ions entering the channel simultaneously. We number the states as in Fig. 3.9 and let  $k_{ij}$  denote the rate of conversion of state  $i$  to state  $j$ . Also, let  $P_j$  denote the probability that the channel is in the  $j$ th state, and let  $c_e$  and  $c_i$  denote the external and internal ion concentrations, respectively. Then, the equations for the probabilities follow from the law of mass action; they are

$$\frac{dP_1}{dt} = -(k_{12} + k_{14})P_1 + k_{21}c_e P_2 + k_{41}c_i P_4, \quad (3.89)$$

$$\frac{dP_2}{dt} = -(k_{21}c_e + k_{23} + k_{24})P_2 + k_{12}P_1 + c_i k_{32}P_3 + k_{42}P_4, \quad (3.90)$$

$$\frac{dP_3}{dt} = -(c_i k_{32} + c_e k_{34})P_3 + k_{43}P_4 + k_{23}P_2, \quad (3.91)$$

$$\frac{dP_4}{dt} = -(k_{41}c_i + k_{42} + k_{43})P_4 + k_{14}P_1 + k_{24}P_2 + c_e k_{34}P_3. \quad (3.92)$$

The probabilities must also satisfy the conservation equation

$$\sum_{i=1}^4 P_i = 1. \quad (3.93)$$

Using the conservation equation in place of the equation for  $P_4$ , the steady-state probability distribution is given by the linear system

$$\begin{pmatrix} -k_{12} - k_{14} & k_{21} & 0 & k_{41} \\ k_{12} & -k_{21} - k_{23} - k_{24} & c_e k_{32} & k_{42} \\ 0 & k_{23} & -c_e k_{32} - c_i k_{34} & k_{43} \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} P_1 \\ P_2 \\ P_3 \\ P_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.94)$$

Since each rate constant is determined as a function of the voltage in the same way as one-ion models (as in, for example, (3.73)–(3.76)), solution of (3.94) gives each  $P_i$  as a function of voltage and the ionic concentrations on each side of the membrane. Finally, the membrane fluxes are calculated as the net rate of ions crossing any one barrier, and so, choosing the middle barrier arbitrarily, we have

$$J = P_2 k_{24} - P_4 k_{42}. \quad (3.95)$$

Although it is possible to solve such linear systems exactly (particularly with the help of symbolic manipulators such as Maple or Mathematica), it is often as useful to solve the equations numerically for a given energy profile. It is left as an exercise to show that the Ussing flux ratio is not obeyed by a multi-ion model with two binding sites and to compare the  $I$ - $V$  curves of multi-ion and single-ion models.

### 3.4.4 Electrogenic Pumps and Exchangers

Recall from Chapter 2 that detailed balance required that rate constants in models of electrogenic exchangers and pumps be dependent on the membrane potential. See,

for example, (2.78) or (2.96). However, although the arguments from chemical equilibrium show that voltage-dependency must exist, they do not specify exactly which rate constants depend on the voltage, or what the functional dependency is. As we have come to expect, it is much more difficult to answer these questions. Just as there are many ways to model ionic current flow, so there are many ways to model how rate constants depend on the membrane potential. In addition, depending on the exact assumptions, any of the steps in the model could depend on membrane potential. In other words, not only are there a number of ways to model the voltage-dependence when it occurs, there are also many places where it could occur. It is, in general, a very difficult task to determine the precise place and nature of the voltage-dependence.

One simple approach is to assume that the conformational change of the carrier protein is the step that moves the charge across the membrane, and thus requires the crossing of a free energy barrier. Consider the diagram shown in Fig. 2.9. If we assume that the transition from state  $X_2$  to  $Y_2$  involves the movement of 2 positive ions across an energy barrier and a potential difference  $V$ , then we can model the rate constants as

$$k_2 = \kappa \exp \left[ \frac{1}{RT} (-\Delta G_+ + 2FV/2) \right] \quad (3.96)$$

$$= \bar{k}_2 \exp \left( \frac{FV}{RT} \right), \quad (3.97)$$

$$k_{-2} = \kappa \exp \left[ \frac{1}{RT} (-\Delta G_- - 2FV/2) \right] \quad (3.98)$$

$$= \bar{k}_{-2} \exp \left( \frac{-FV}{RT} \right), \quad (3.99)$$

where  $\bar{k}_2 = \kappa \exp[-\Delta G_+/(RT)]$  and similarly for  $\bar{k}_{-2}$ . In (3.96) and (3.98)  $2FV$  is divided by 2 as we assume, for simplicity, that the energy barrier occurs halfway through the membrane.

If we make similar assumptions for  $k_4$  and  $k_{-4}$ , i.e., that these transitions involve the reverse movement of 3 positive charges across an energy barrier and a potential difference, we obtain similar equations for those rate constants. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{k_{-2}}{k_2} \frac{k_{-4}}{k_4} &= \frac{\bar{k}_{-2}}{\bar{k}_2} \frac{\bar{k}_{-4}}{\bar{k}_4} \exp \left( \frac{-2FV}{RT} \right) \exp \left( \frac{3FV}{RT} \right) \\ &= \frac{\bar{k}_{-2}}{\bar{k}_2} \frac{\bar{k}_{-4}}{\bar{k}_4} \exp \left( \frac{FV}{RT} \right), \end{aligned} \quad (3.100)$$

from which it follows that  $K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 = \exp \left( \frac{FV}{RT} \right)$  (cf. (2.78)), which is the necessary equilibrium condition.

## 3.5 Channel Gating

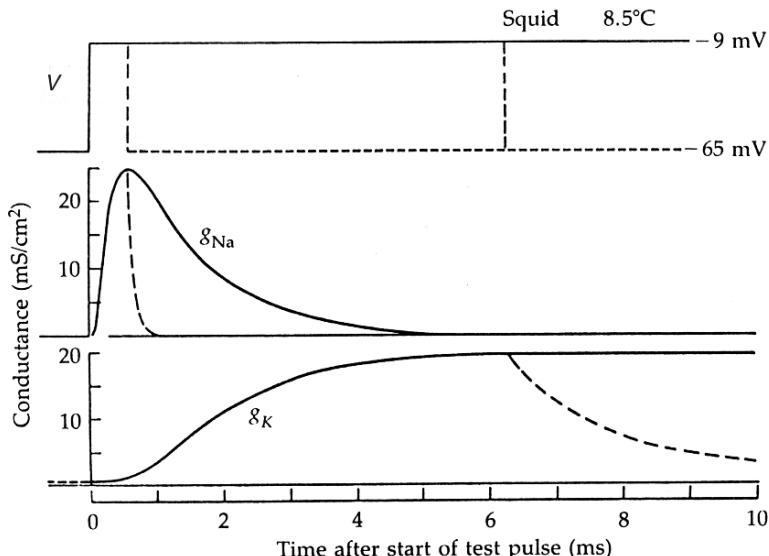
So far in this chapter we have discussed how the current through a single open channel depends on the membrane potential and the ionic concentrations on either side of the membrane. However, it is of equal interest to determine how ionic channels open and close in response to voltage. As described in Chapter 5, the opening and closing of ionic channels in response to changes in the membrane potential is the basis for electrical excitability and is thus of fundamental significance in neurophysiology.

Recall that there is an important difference between the instantaneous and steady-state  $I$ - $V$  curves. In general, the current through a population of channels is the product of three terms,

$$I = Ng(V, t)\phi(V), \quad (3.101)$$

where  $\phi(V)$  is the  $I$ - $V$  curve of a single open channel, and  $g(V, t)$  is the proportion of open channels in the population of  $N$  channels. In the previous sections we discussed electrodiffusion and barrier models of  $\phi(V)$ ; in this section we discuss models of the dependence of  $g$  on voltage and time.

Consider, for example, the curves in Fig. 3.10, which show typical responses of populations of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels. When the voltage is stepped from  $-65$  mV to  $-9$  mV, and held fixed at the new level, the  $\text{K}^+$  conductance ( $g_K$ ) slowly increases to a new level, while the  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance ( $g_{\text{Na}}$ ) first increases and then decreases.



**Figure 3.10**  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  conductances as a function of time after a step change in voltage from  $-65$  mV to  $-9$  mV. The dashed line shows that after repolarization  $g_{\text{Na}}$  recovers quickly, and  $g_K$  recovers more slowly. (Hille, 2001, Fig. 2.11, p. 41.)

From these data we can draw several conclusions. First, as the voltage increases, the proportion of open K<sup>+</sup> channels increases. Second, although the proportion of open Na<sup>+</sup> channels initially increases, a second process is significant at longer times, as the Na<sup>+</sup> channel is inactivated. Thus, Na<sup>+</sup> channels first activate and then inactivate.

### 3.5.1 A Two-State K<sup>+</sup> Channel

The simplest model of the K<sup>+</sup> channel assumes that the channel can exist in either a closed state, C, or an open state, O, and that the rate of conversion from one state to another is dependent on the voltage. Thus,



If  $g$  denotes the proportion of channels in the open state (so  $1 - g$  is the proportion of closed channels), the differential equation for the rate of change of  $g$  is

$$\frac{dg}{dt} = \alpha(V)(1 - g) - \beta(V)g. \quad (3.103)$$

Under voltage-clamp conditions (i.e., where the voltage is piecewise constant, as in Fig. 3.10),  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are constants, and thus one can readily solve for  $g$  as a function of time. Equation (3.103) is often written as

$$\tau_g(V) \frac{dg}{dt} = g_\infty(V) - g, \quad (3.104)$$

where  $g_\infty(V) = \alpha/(\alpha + \beta)$  is the steady-state value of  $g$ , and  $\tau_g(V) = 1/(\alpha + \beta)$  is the time constant of approach to the steady state. From experimental data, such as those shown in Fig. 3.10, one can obtain values for  $g_\infty$  and  $\tau_g$ , and thus  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  can be unambiguously determined.

The form of  $g_\infty(V)$  can be determined from free energy arguments. The reason for voltage dependence must be that the subunit is charged and that to change from one conformation to another charges must move in the potential field. This movement of charge is a current, called the gating current. Now the difference in free energy between the two conformations is of the form

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + aFV, \quad (3.105)$$

where  $\Delta G^0$  is the free energy difference between the two states in the absence of a potential, and  $a$  is a constant related to the number of charges that move and the relative distance they move during a change of conformation. It follows that the equilibrium constant for the subunit must be of the form

$$\frac{\beta}{\alpha} = k_0 \exp\left(\frac{aFV}{RT}\right), \quad (3.106)$$

in which case

$$g_\infty(V) = \frac{\alpha}{\alpha + \beta} = \frac{1}{1 + k_0 \exp(\frac{aFV}{RT})}, \quad (3.107)$$

which can also be expressed in the form

$$g_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \tanh(b(V - V_0)). \quad (3.108)$$

### 3.5.2 Multiple Subunits

An important generalization of the two-state model occurs when the channel is assumed to consist of multiple identical subunits, each of which can be in either the closed or open state. For example, suppose that the channel consists of two identical subunits, each of which can be closed or open. Then, the channel can take any of four possible states,  $S_{00}$ ,  $S_{10}$ ,  $S_{01}$ , or  $S_{11}$ , where the subscripts denote the different subunits, with 1 and 0 denoting open and closed subunits, respectively. A general model of this channel involves three differential equations (although there is a differential equation for each of the four variables, one equation is superfluous because of the conservation equation  $S_{00} + S_{10} + S_{01} + S_{11} = 1$ ), but we can simplify the model by grouping the channel states with the same number of closed and open subunits. Because the subunits are identical, there should be no difference between  $S_{10}$  and  $S_{01}$ , and thus they are amalgamated into a single variable.

So, we let  $S_i$  denote the group of channels with exactly  $i$  open subunits. Then, conversions between channel groups are governed by the reaction scheme



The corresponding differential equations are

$$\frac{dx_0}{dt} = \beta x_1 - 2\alpha x_0, \quad (3.110)$$

$$\frac{dx_2}{dt} = \alpha x_1 - 2\beta x_2, \quad (3.111)$$

where  $x_i$  denotes the proportion of channels in state  $S_i$ , and  $x_0 + x_1 + x_2 = 1$ . We now make the change of variables  $x_2 = n^2$ , where  $n$  satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = \alpha(1 - n) - \beta n. \quad (3.112)$$

A simple substitution shows that (3.110) and (3.111) are satisfied by  $x_0 = (1 - n)^2$  and  $x_1 = 2n(1 - n)$ .

In fact, we can derive a stronger result. We let

$$x_0 = (1 - n)^2 + y_0, \quad (3.113)$$

$$x_2 = n^2 + y_2, \quad (3.114)$$

so that, of necessity,  $x_1 = 2n(1 - n) - y_0 - y_2$ . It follows that

$$\frac{dy_0}{dt} = -2\alpha y_0 - \beta(y_0 + y_2), \quad (3.115)$$

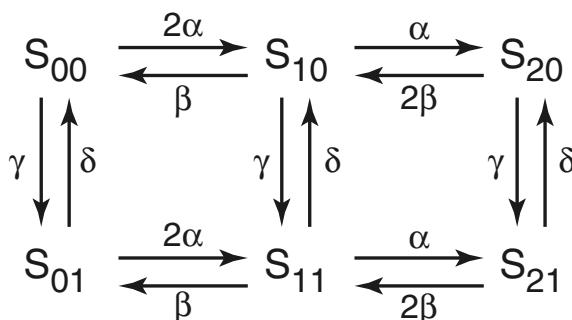
$$\frac{dy_2}{dt} = -\alpha(y_0 + y_2) - 2\beta y_2. \quad (3.116)$$

This is a linear system of equations with eigenvalues  $-(\alpha + \beta)$ ,  $-2(\alpha + \beta)$ , and so  $y_0, y_2$  go exponentially to zero. This means that  $x_0 = (1 - n)^2$ ,  $x_2 = n^2$  is an invariant stable manifold for the original system of equations; the solutions cannot leave this manifold, and with arbitrary initial data, the flow approaches this manifold exponentially. Notice that this is a stable invariant manifold even if  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are functions of time (so they can depend on voltage or other concentrations).

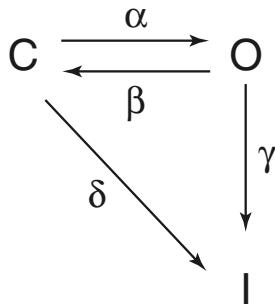
This argument generalizes to the case of  $k$  identical independent binding sites where the invariant manifold for the flow is the binomial distribution with probability  $n$  satisfying (3.112) (see Exercise 14). Thus, the channel conductance is proportional to  $n^k$ , where  $n$  satisfies the simple equation (3.112). This multiple subunit model of channel gating provides the basis for the model of excitability that is examined in Chapter 5.

### 3.5.3 The Sodium Channel

A more complex model is needed to explain the behavior of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel, which both activates and inactivates. The simplest approach is to extend the above analysis to the case of multiple subunits of two different types,  $m$  and  $h$ , say, where each subunit can be either closed or open, and the channel is open, or conducting, only when all subunits are open. To illustrate, we assume that the channel has one  $h$  subunit and two  $m$  subunits. The reaction diagram of such a channel is shown in Fig. 3.11. We let  $S_{ij}$  denote the channel with  $i$  open  $m$  subunits and  $j$  open  $h$  subunits, and we let  $x_{ij}$  denote the fraction of channels in state  $S_{ij}$ . The dynamics of  $x_{ij}$  are described by a system of six differential equations. However, as above, direct substitution shows that this system of equations has an invariant manifold  $x_{00} = (1 - m)^2(1 - h)$ ,  $x_{10} = 2m(1 - m)(1 - h)$ ,



**Figure 3.11** Diagram of the possible states in a model of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel.



**Figure 3.12** A: Schematic diagram of the states of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel. C, O, and I denote the closed, open, and inactivated states, respectively.

$x_{20} = m^2(1 - h)$ ,  $x_{01} = (1 - m)^2h$ ,  $x_{11} = 2m(1 - m)h$ , and  $x_{21} = m^2h$ , provided

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \alpha(1 - m) - \beta m, \quad (3.117)$$

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \gamma(1 - h) - \delta h. \quad (3.118)$$

Furthermore, the invariant manifold is stable. A model of this type was used by Hodgkin and Huxley in their model of the nerve axon, which is discussed in detail in Chapter 5.

In an alternate model of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel (Aldrich et al., 1983; Peskin, 1991), it is assumed that the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel can exist in three states, closed (C), open (O), or inactivated (I), and that once the channel is inactivated, it cannot return to either the closed or the open state (Fig. 3.12). Thus, the state I is absorbing. While this is clearly not true in general, it is a reasonable approximation at high voltages.

As before, we let  $g$  denote the proportion of open channels and let  $c$  denote the proportion of closed channels. Then,

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = -(\alpha + \delta)c + \beta g, \quad (3.119)$$

$$\frac{dg}{dt} = \alpha c - (\beta + \gamma)g, \quad (3.120)$$

where the proportion of channels in the inactivated state is  $i = 1 - c - g$ . Initial conditions are  $c(0) = 1$ ,  $g(0) = 0$ , i.e., all the channels are initially in the closed state. This system of first-order differential equations can be solved directly to give

$$g(t) = a(e^{\lambda_1 t} - e^{\lambda_2 t}), \quad (3.121)$$

where  $\lambda_2 < \lambda_1 < 0$  are the roots of the characteristic polynomial

$$\lambda^2 + (\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta)\lambda + (\alpha + \delta)(\beta + \gamma) - \alpha\beta = 0, \quad (3.122)$$

and where

$$g'(0) = \alpha = a(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2) > 0. \quad (3.123)$$

As in the simple two-state model, the function  $g$  can be fit to data to determine the parameters  $a$ ,  $\lambda_1$ , and  $\lambda_2$ . However, unlike the two-state model, the rate constants

cannot be determined uniquely from these parameters. For, since  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  are the roots of (3.122), it follows that

$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta = -\lambda_1 - \lambda_2, \quad (3.124)$$

$$(\alpha + \delta)(\beta + \gamma) - \alpha\beta = \lambda_1\lambda_2. \quad (3.125)$$

Thus, there are only three equations for the four unknowns,  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$ , and  $\delta$ , so the system is underdetermined (see Exercise 16). This problem cannot be resolved using the macroscopic data that have been discussed so far, but requires data collected from a single channel, as described in Section 3.6.

### 3.5.4 Agonist-Controlled Ion Channels

Many ion channels are controlled by agonists, rather than by voltage. For example, the opening of ion channels in the postsynaptic membrane of the neuromuscular junction (Chapter 8) is controlled by the neurotransmitter acetylcholine, while in the central nervous system a host of neurotransmitters such as glutamate, dopamine,  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA), and serotonin have a similar role. The inositol trisphosphate receptor and ryanodine receptor are other important agonist-controlled ion channels (Chapter 7).

Early theories of agonist-controlled ion channels (Clark, 1933) assumed that the channel was opened simply by the binding of the agonist. Thus,



where the state AT is open. However, this simple theory is unable to account for a number of experimental observations. For example, it can happen that only a fraction of channels are open at any given time, even at high agonist concentrations, a result that cannot be explained by this simple model.

In 1957, del Castillo and Katz proposed a model that explicitly separated the agonist-binding step from the gating step:



Note that the only open state is AR (state 1; the slightly unusual numbering of the states follows Colquhoun and Hawkes, 1981). Thus, in this model, binding of the agonist places the channel into an occupied state that allows, but does not require, opening. The agonist-binding step is controlled by the *affinity* of the channel for the agonist, while the gating is determined by the *efficacy* of the agonist. This separation of affinity and efficacy has proven to be an extremely powerful way of understanding agonist-controlled channels, and is at the heart of practically all modern approaches (Colquhoun, 2006).

The conductance of a population of agonist-controlled channels is determined as the solution of the system of differential equations

$$\frac{d\Phi_1}{dt} = \beta\Phi_2 - \alpha\Phi_1, \quad (3.128)$$

$$\frac{d\Phi_2}{dt} = \alpha\Phi_1 + k_1a(1 - \Phi_2 - \Phi_1) - (\beta + k_{-1})\Phi_2, \quad (3.129)$$

where  $\Phi_1$ ,  $\Phi_2$ , and  $1 - \Phi_1 - \Phi_2$  represent the percentage of channels in states 1, 2, and 3, respectively, and  $a$  is the concentration of agonist A. The solution of this system of differential equations is easy to determine, provided  $a$  is constant. However, the practical usefulness of this exact solution is extremely limited, since in any realistic situation  $a$  is changing in time.

The steady-state solution is also readily found to be

$$\Phi_1 = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{\beta}{\alpha} + \frac{\beta k_{-1}}{\alpha k_1 a}}, \quad (3.130)$$

and this can be fit to data to find the equilibrium constants  $\frac{\beta}{\alpha}$  and  $\frac{k_{-1}}{k_1}$ . However, complete determination of the four kinetic parameters is much more challenging. One could imagine a “concentration clamp” experiment, in which the concentration of  $a$  is suddenly switched from one level to another and the conductance of the channels monitored. From these data one could then determine the two eigenvalues of the system (3.128)–(3.129). However, usually such experiments are very difficult to perform. In Section 3.6 we show that there is more information contained in single-channel recordings and how this additional information can be used to determine the kinetic parameters of channel models.

### 3.5.5 Drugs and Toxins

Many drugs act by blocking a specific ion channel. There are numerous specific channel blockers, such as  $\text{Na}^+$  channel blockers,  $\text{K}^+$  channel blockers,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel blockers, and so on. In fact, the discovery of site-specific and channel-specific blockers has been of tremendous benefit to the experimental study of ion channels. Examples of important channel blockers include verapamil ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -channel blocker), quinidine, sotolol, nicotine, DDT, various barbiturates ( $\text{K}^+$ -channel blockers), tetrodotoxin (TTX, the primary ingredient of puffer fish toxin), and scorpion toxins ( $\text{Na}^+$ -channel blockers).

To include the effects of a drug or toxin like TTX in a model of a  $\text{Na}^+$  channel is a relatively simple matter. We assume that a population  $P$  of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels is available for ionic conduction and that a population  $B$  is blocked because they are bound by the toxin. Thus,



where  $D$  represents the concentration of the drug. Clearly,  $P + B = P_0$ , so that

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = k_-(P_0 - P) - k_+DP, \quad (3.132)$$

and the original channel conductance must be modified by multiplying by the percentage of unbound channels,  $P/P_0$ .

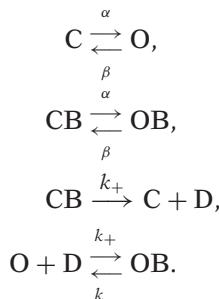
In steady state, we have

$$\frac{P}{P_0} = \frac{K_d}{K_d + D}. \quad (3.133)$$

The remarkable potency of TTX is reflected by its small equilibrium constant  $K_d$ , as  $K_d \approx 1\text{--}5 \text{ nM}$  for  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in nerve cells, and  $K_d \approx 1\text{--}10 \text{ } \mu\text{M}$  for  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in cardiac cells. By contrast, verapamil has  $K_d \approx 140\text{--}940 \text{ } \mu\text{M}$ .

Other important drugs, such as lidocaine, flecainide, and encainide are so-called *use-dependent*  $\text{Na}^+$ -channel blockers, in that they interfere with the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel only when it is open. Thus, the more the channel is used, the more likely that it is blocked. Lidocaine is an important drug used in the treatment of cardiac arrhythmias. The folklore explanation of why it is useful is that because it is use-dependent, it helps prevent high-frequency firing of cardiac cells, which is commonly associated with cardiac arrhythmias. In fact, lidocaine, flecainide, and encainide are officially classified as antiarrhythmic drugs, even though it is now known that flecainide and encainide are proarrhythmic in certain postinfarction (after a heart attack) patients. A full explanation of this behavior is not known.

To keep track of the effect of a use-dependent drug on a two-state channel, we suppose that there are four classes of channels, those that are closed but unbound by the drug (C), those that are open and unbound by the drug (O), those that are closed and bound by the drug (CB), and those that are open and bound by the drug (OB) (but unable to pass a current). For this four-state model a reasonable reaction mechanism is



Notice that we have assumed that the drug does not interfere with the process of opening and closing, only with the flow of ionic current, and that the drug can bind the channel only when it is open. It is now a straightforward matter to find the differential equations governing these four states, and we leave this as an exercise.

This is not the only way that drugs might interfere with a channel. For example, for a channel with multiple subunits, the drug may bind only when certain of the subunits are

in specific states. Indeed, the binding of drugs with channels can occur in many ways, and there are numerous unresolved questions concerning this complicated process.

## 3.6 Single-Channel Analysis

Since the late 1970s, the development of patch-clamp recording techniques has allowed the measurement of ionic current through a small piece of cell membrane, containing only a few, or even a single, ionic channel (Hamill et al., 1981; Sakmann and Neher, 1995; Neher and Sakmann received the 1991 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for their development of the patch-clamp technique).

Much of the mathematical theory of how to analyze single-channel recordings was worked out in a series of papers by Colquhoun and Hawkes (1977, 1981, 1982). As is true of most things written by Colquhoun and Hawkes, these are eminently readable. However, newcomers to the field should first read the two chapters in the *Plymouth Workshop Handbook on Microelectrode Techniques* (Colquhoun, 1994; Colquhoun and Hawkes, 1994), since these are an excellent introduction. The chapter by Colquhoun and Hawkes in the book by Sakmann and Neher (1995) is also a valuable reference.

An example of an experimental record for  $\text{Na}^+$  channels is given in Fig. 3.13. The current through an individual channel is stochastic (panel A) and cannot be described by a deterministic process. Nevertheless, the ensemble average over many experiments (panel B) is deterministic and reproduces the same properties that are seen in the macroscopic measurements of Fig. 3.10. However, the single-channel recordings contain more information than does the ensemble average.

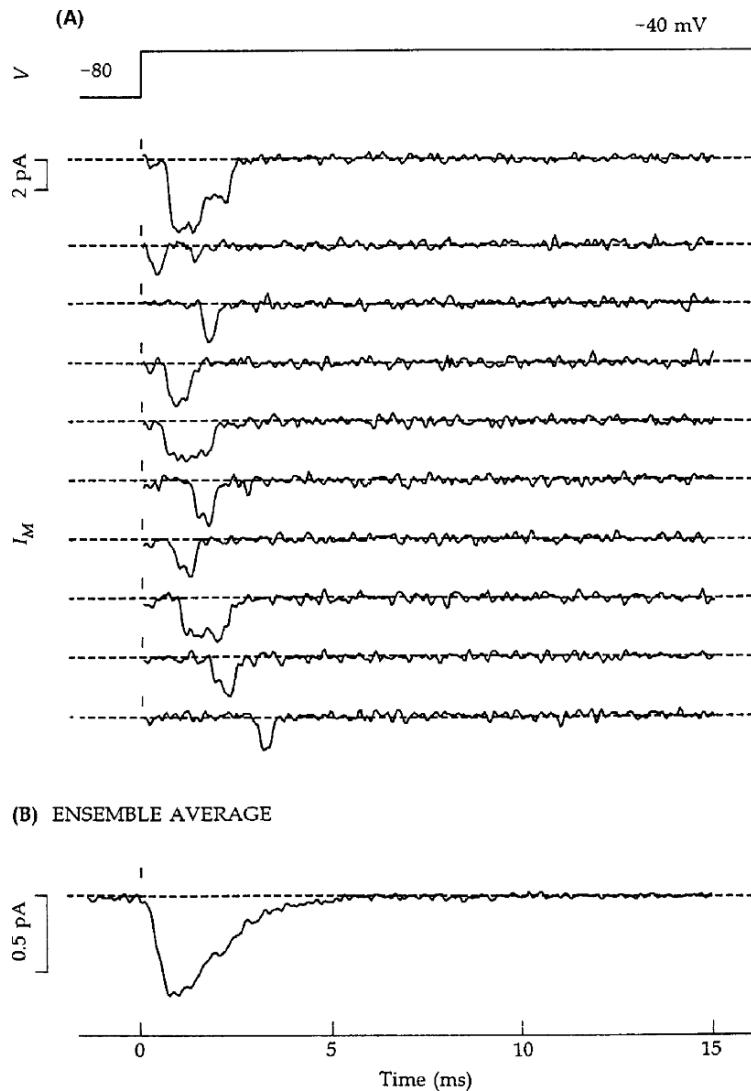
What information is available from single-channel recordings that is not available from ensemble averages? First of all, one can measure how long a channel is open on average, or more generally, the distribution of open times. Similarly, one can measure the distribution of times the channel is in the closed state. If there are additional dynamical processes underlying the opening and closing of channels, as there are with  $\text{Na}^+$  channels, one can measure (for example) how many times a channel opens (and closes) before it is inactivated (permanently closed) or how many channels fail to open even once.

The most common models of ion channels are discrete-space continuous-time Markov processes, the basic theory of which was described in Section 2.9.2. Since it is this theory that lies at the heart of the analysis of single-channel data, the reader is encouraged to review the relevant sections of Chapter 2 before continuing.

### 3.6.1 Single-Channel Analysis of a Sodium Channel

Consider the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel model shown in Fig. 3.12. For this model there are two obvious waiting-time problems. The probability that the amount of time spent in the closed state before opening is less than  $t$  is governed by the differential equation

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = \alpha(1 - P), \quad (3.134)$$



**Figure 3.13** A:  $\text{Na}^+$  currents from a single channel (or possibly two in the first trace) following a voltage step from  $-80\text{ mV}$  to  $-40\text{ mV}$ . B: Average open probability of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel, obtained by averaging over many traces of the type shown in A. (Hille, 2001, Fig. 3.16, p. 90.)

with  $P(0) = 1$ , and therefore is

$$P(t) = 1 - \exp(-\alpha t), \quad (3.135)$$

so that the closed time distribution is  $\alpha \exp(-\alpha t)$ .

Similarly, the probability that the amount of time spent in the open state is less than  $t$  is  $1 - \exp(-(\beta + \gamma)t)$ , so that the open time distribution is  $(\beta + \gamma) \exp(-(\beta + \gamma)t)$ .

According to this model, the channel can inactivate from the closed state at rate  $\delta$  or from the open state at rate  $\gamma$ . At the beginning of the experiment the channel is in the closed state, and from there it can either open or inactivate. The probability that the first transition is to the open state is  $A = \frac{\alpha}{\alpha+\delta}$ , and the probability that the first transition is to the inactivated state is  $1 - A$ . Thus,  $1 - A$  can be estimated by the proportion of experimental records in which no current is observed, even after the depolarizing stimulus was maintained for a long time.

A channel may open and close several times before it finally inactivates. To understand this, we let  $N$  be the number of times the channel opens before it finally inactivates and calculate the probability distribution for  $N$ . Clearly,  $P[N = 0] = 1 - A$ . Furthermore,

$$\begin{aligned} P[N = k] &= P[N = k \text{ and channel enters I from O}] \\ &\quad + P[N = k \text{ and channel enters I from C}] \\ &= A^k B^{k-1} (1 - B) + A^k B^k (1 - A) \\ &= (AB)^k \left( \frac{1 - AB}{B} \right), \end{aligned} \tag{3.136}$$

where  $B = \frac{\beta}{\beta+\gamma}$ .

We now have enough information to estimate the four channel rate constants. Since  $A$  can be determined from the proportion of channels that never open,  $B$  can be determined from a plot of the experimental data for  $P[N = k]$  vs.  $k$ . Then,  $\beta + \gamma$  can be determined from the open time distribution of the channel and  $\alpha$  can be determined from the closed time distribution.

Since the work of Hodgkin and Huxley (described in Chapter 5), the traditional view of a  $\text{Na}^+$  channel has been that it activates quickly and inactivates slowly. According to this view, the decreasing portion of the  $g_{\text{Na}}$  curve in Fig. 3.10 is due entirely to inactivation of the channel. However, single-channel analysis has shown that this interpretation of macroscopic data is not always correct. It turns out that the rate of inactivation of some mammalian  $\text{Na}^+$  channels is faster than the rate of activation. For example, Aldrich et al. (1983) found  $\alpha = 1/\text{ms}$ ,  $\beta = 0.4/\text{ms}$ ,  $\gamma = 1.6/\text{ms}$ , and  $\delta = 1/\text{ms}$  at  $V = 0$  for channels in a neuroblastoma cell line and a pituitary cell line. Although this reversal of activation and inactivation rates is not correct for all  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in all species, the result does overturn some traditional ideas of how  $\text{Na}^+$  channels work.

More modern models of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel are based on a wide range of experimental data, including single-channel recordings and macroscopic ionic and gating currents. It is a very difficult matter to decide, on the basis of these data, which is the best model of the channel. One of the most rigorous attempts is that of Vandenberg and Bezanilla (1991), who concluded that a sequential Markov model with three closed states, one open state, and one inactivated state was the best at reproducing the widest array of data. However, because of the ill-posed nature of this inverse problem, it is impossible to rule out the existence of multiple other states.

### 3.6.2 Single-Channel Analysis of an Agonist-Controlled Ion Channel

The single-channel analysis of the agonist-controlled ion channel (3.127) is more subtle than that of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel. This is because there are states that cannot be directly observed, but can only be inferred from the data. If the state AR is the only open state, then a typical single-channel recording might look (at least, in an ideal situation) like that shown in Fig. 3.14. The openings occur in bursts as the channel flicks between the AR and AT states, with longer interburst periods occurring when the channel escapes from AT into the closed state, T, because of agonist unbinding. However, because the binding and unbinding transitions are not directly observable, this process is called a *hidden Markov process*.

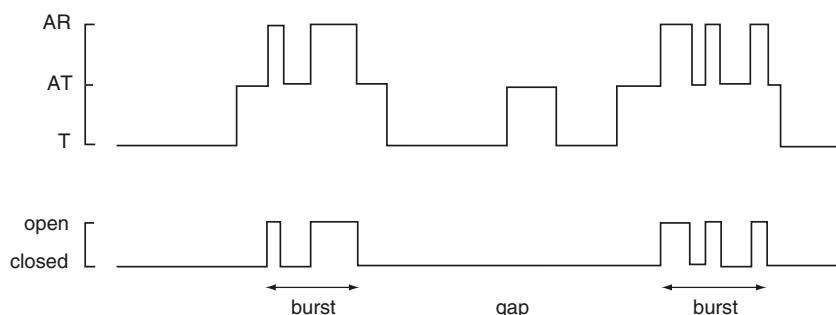
There are two distributions that are readily determined from the data. These are the open time and closed time distributions. Since the open state, AR, can close only by a single pathway to AT, the open time distribution is the exponential distribution  $\alpha e^{-\alpha t}$ , with mean  $1/\alpha$ .

#### The Closed Time Distribution

Every period during which the channel is closed must begin with the channel in state AT and end with the channel in state AR. However, during this time the channel can be in either state AT or state T. Thus, the closed time distribution is the transition time from state AT to state AR (see Section 2.9.2).

To calculate the closed time probability, we set state AR to be an absorbing state (i.e., set  $\alpha = 0$ ), and impose the initial condition that the receptor starts in state AT. Hence,

$$\frac{d\Phi_1}{dt} = \beta\Phi_2, \quad (3.137)$$



**Figure 3.14** Schematic diagram of a possible single-channel recording in the model described by (3.127). The openings occur in bursts as the channel flicks between states AR and AT. However, the transitions between states T and AT cannot be observed. (Adapted from Colquhoun and Hawkes (1981), Fig. 1.)

$$\frac{d\Phi_2}{dt} = -(\beta + k_{-1})\Phi_2 + ak_1\Phi_3, \quad (3.138)$$

$$\frac{d\Phi_3}{dt} = k_{-1}\Phi_2 - ak_1\Phi_3, \quad (3.139)$$

with initial data  $\Phi_1(0) = 0$ ,  $\Phi_2(0) = 1$ ,  $\Phi_3(0) = 0$ .

We can readily solve this system of differential equations to determine that the transition time from state 2 to state 1 has the probability density

$$\phi_{21}(t) = \frac{d\Phi_1}{dt} = \beta x_2 = \frac{\beta}{\lambda_1 - \lambda_2} [(\lambda_1 + ak_1)e^{\lambda_1 t} - (\lambda_2 + ak_1)e^{\lambda_2 t}], \quad (3.140)$$

where the eigenvalues  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  are the roots (both negative) of  $\lambda^2 + \lambda(\beta + k_{-1} + k_1 a) + ak_1\beta = 0$ .

Since the closed time distribution is the sum of two exponentials, the open and closed time distributions along with the steady-state open probability (3.130) theoretically provide enough information to determine uniquely the four kinetic parameters of the model.

## Other Distributions

There are other distributions that can be calculated, but obtaining the data for these is somewhat subjective. These are the distribution of closed times during a burst, the number of openings in a burst, and the distribution of gap closed times.

The distribution of closed times during a burst is the easiest to calculate, being simply  $\beta \exp(-\beta t)$ .

Each time the channel is in state AT a choice is made to go to state AR (with probability  $\beta/(\beta + k_{-1})$ ) or to go to state T (with probability  $k_{-1}/(\beta + k_{-1})$ ). Thus, for there to be  $N$  openings in a burst, the channel must reopen by going from state AT to state AR  $N - 1$  times, and then end the burst by going from state AT to state T. Hence,

$$P(N \text{ openings}) = \left( \frac{\beta}{\beta + k_{-1}} \right)^{N-1} \left( \frac{k_{-1}}{\beta + k_{-1}} \right), \quad (3.141)$$

where  $N \geq 1$ , which has mean  $1 + \beta/k_{-1}$ .

To determine the closed time distribution for gaps, we observe that a gap begins in state AT and then moves back and forth between states T and AT before finally exiting into state AR. The waiting-time distribution for leaving state AT into state T is

$$\phi_{23}(t) = k_{-1}e^{-k_{-1}t}. \quad (3.142)$$

The transition time from state T to state AR is  $\phi_{31} = \frac{d\Phi_1}{dt}$ , determined as the solution of the system (3.137)–(3.139), subject to initial conditions  $\Phi_1(0) = 0$ ,  $\Phi_2(0) = 0$ , and  $\Phi_3(0) = 1$ . One readily determines that

$$\phi_{31} = \beta \frac{(\lambda_2 + ak_1)(\lambda_1 + ak_1)}{k_{-1}(\lambda_2 - \lambda_1)} (e^{\lambda_1 t} - e^{\lambda_2 t}). \quad (3.143)$$

Now, to calculate the gap time distribution, we observe that the time in a gap is the sum of two times, namely the time in state AT before going to state T and the time to go from state T to state AR. Here we invoke a standard result from probability theory regarding the distribution for the sum of two random variables. That is, if  $p_1(t_1)$  and  $p_2(t_2)$  are the probability densities for random variables  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , then the probability density for the sum of these is the convolution

$$p_{\text{sum}}(t) = \int_0^t p_1(s)p_2(t-s) ds. \quad (3.144)$$

Thus, in this problem, the probability density for the gap time is

$$\phi_{\text{gap}}(t) = \int_0^t \phi_{23}(s)\phi_{31}(t-s) ds. \quad (3.145)$$

It is again straightforward to determine (use Laplace transforms and the convolution theorem) that

$$\phi_{\text{gap}}(t) = \beta \frac{(\lambda_2 + ak_1)(\lambda_1 + ak_1)}{(\lambda_2 - \lambda_1)} \left( \frac{e^{\lambda_1 t}}{\lambda_1 + k_{-1}} - \frac{e^{\lambda_2 t}}{\lambda_2 + k_{-1}} + \frac{(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)e^{-k_{-1}t}}{(\lambda_1 + k_{-1})(\lambda_2 + k_{-1})} \right),$$

a sum of three exponentials.

Making use of these distributions is tricky, because it is not clear how to distinguish between a short gap and a long closed interval during a burst. In fact, if  $a$  is large enough and  $k_{-1}$  is not too small, then the mean gap length is shorter than the mean burst closed time, so that errors of classification are likely.

### 3.6.3 Comparing to Experimental Data

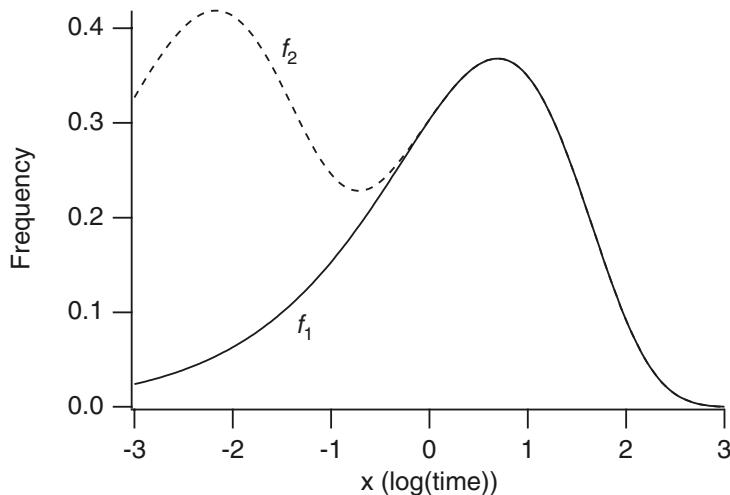
Experimental data typically come in lists of open and closed times. They are then displayed in a histogram, where the area under each histogram bar corresponds to the number of events in that interval.

However, it can be very difficult to determine from a histogram how many exponential components are in the distributions; an exponential distribution with three exponentials can look very similar to one with two exponentials, even when the time constants are widely separated.

This problem is sometimes avoided by first taking the log of the times, and plotting a histogram of the log(time) distributions. Since the log function is monotone increasing, we know that

$$P[t < t_1] = P[\log(t) < \log(t_1)], \quad (3.146)$$

and thus the cumulative distributions are the same, whether functions of the log or the linear times. However, the functions that are of interest to us are the probability density functions, which are the derivatives of the cumulative distribution functions. Suppose  $\Phi(t)$  is a cumulative distribution function with corresponding probability density function  $\phi(t) = \frac{d\Phi}{dt}$ . For any monotone increasing function  $g(x)$ ,  $\Phi(g(x))$  is also a cumulative



**Figure 3.15** Two exponential distributions, transformed according to (3.147), and plotted against  $\log(\text{time})$ . Solid line:  $f_1(t) = 0.5e^{-0.5t}$ . Dotted line:  $f_2(t) = 0.5e^{-0.5t} + 10e^{-10t}$ .

distribution function in  $x$ . However, the corresponding probability density function is

$$\frac{d\Phi(g(x))}{dx} = g'(x)\phi(g(x)). \quad (3.147)$$

Thus, to use a  $\log(\text{time})$  transformation,  $x = \ln(t)$ , for a given probability density function,  $\phi(t)$ , we plot  $e^x\phi(e^x)$  and fit this to the histogram of the  $\log(\text{time})$ .

There are significant advantages to this scaling of time, especially for exponential distributions, illustrated in Fig. 3.15. The solid line in Fig. 3.15 corresponds to the distribution  $\phi_1(t) = 0.5e^{-0.5t}$ , transformed according to (3.147). In other words, this is the plot of the function  $0.5e^x e^{-0.5e^x}$  against  $x$ . Notice that the maximum of the curve occurs at the mean of the distribution,  $t = 2$  ( $x = \log 2 = 0.69$ ) (see Exercise 21). The dotted line is the distribution  $f_2(t) = 0.5e^{-0.5t} + 10e^{-10t}$ , again transformed according to (3.147). (This is not a true probability density function since the area under the curve is 2, rather than 1.) The two peaks occur at the means of the individual component exponential distributions, i.e., at  $t = 2$  and  $t = 0.1$  ( $x = 0.69$  and  $x = -2.3$  respectively).

Modern methods of fitting models to single-channel data are considerably more sophisticated than merely fitting histograms, as described above. Fitting directly to the set of open and closed times using the log likelihood is a common approach, but, more recently, methods to fit the model directly to the single-channel time course raw data (not simply to a list of open and closed times), using Markov chain Monte Carlo and Bayesian inference, have been developed (Fredkin and Rice, 1992; Ball et al., 1999; Hodgson and Green, 1999).

### 3.7 Appendix: Reaction Rates

In Section 3.4 we made extensive use of the formula (3.43), i.e.,

$$k_i = \kappa \exp\left(\frac{-\Delta G_i}{RT}\right), \quad (3.148)$$

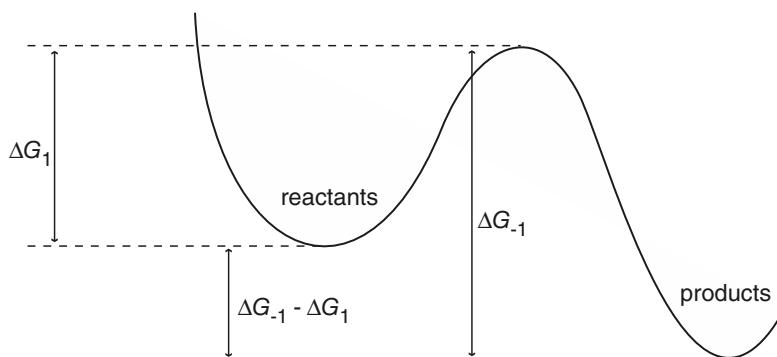
which states that the rate,  $k_i$ , at which a molecule leaves a binding site is proportional to the exponential of the height of the energy barrier  $\Delta G_i$  that must be crossed to exit. This is called the *Arrhenius* equation, after Svante Arrhenius, who first discovered it experimentally in the late 1800s (Arrhenius received the 1903 Nobel Prize in Chemistry). Arrhenius determined, not the dependence of  $k_i$  on  $\Delta G_i$ , but its dependence on temperature  $T$ . He showed experimentally that the rate of reaction is proportional to  $\exp(-B/T)$ , for some positive constant  $B$ . He then used the Boltzmann distribution to argue that  $B = \Delta G_i/R$ , as discussed below.

As was described in Section 1.2, the equilibrium constant,  $K_{\text{eq}}$ , for a reaction is related to the change in free energy,  $\Delta G^0$ , by

$$K_{\text{eq}} = e^{\frac{\Delta G^0}{RT}}. \quad (3.149)$$

Note that if  $\kappa$  is independent of  $\Delta G_i$ , then (3.148) is consistent with (3.149). Given the potential energy profile in Fig. 3.16, it is clear that if  $k_1 = \kappa \exp\left(\frac{-\Delta G_1}{RT}\right)$  and  $k_{-1} = \kappa \exp\left(\frac{-\Delta G_{-1}}{RT}\right)$ , then  $K_{\text{eq}} = k_{-1}/k_1 = \exp\left(\frac{\Delta G_1 - \Delta G_{-1}}{RT}\right) = \exp\left(\frac{\Delta G^0}{RT}\right)$ , where  $\Delta G^0 = \Delta G_1 - \Delta G_{-1}$ .

However, despite this consistency, (3.148) does not follow from (3.149); the equilibrium relationship tells us nothing about how each rate constant might depend on  $T$  or  $\Delta G_i$ . Although the derivation of the equilibrium condition depends only on fundamental thermodynamical principles, derivation of a rate expression is much more difficult, and the exact rate expression depends, in general, on the choice of model. There is still enormous controversy over exactly how to derive rate equations, and which is most



**Figure 3.16** Schematic diagram of a potential energy profile of a hypothetical reaction.

suitable in any given situation. Here we give only a brief discussion of this important problem, enough to give a plausible derivation of the general form of (3.148). The exponential dependence occurs in every rate equation; it is the prefactor,  $\kappa$ , and its possible functional dependences, that is the source of so much discussion.

### 3.7.1 The Boltzmann Distribution

To show that  $B = \Delta G/R$  (or  $\Delta G/k$ , depending on whether  $\Delta G$  has units of per mole or per molecule; we have dropped the subscript  $i$  for this discussion), Arrhenius assumed that the rate of reaction was proportional to the fraction of molecules with energy greater than some minimum amount. Given this assumption, the Arrhenius equation follows from the Boltzmann distribution, which we now derive.

We begin with a brief digression. It is intuitively clear that were we to toss a fair coin  $10^{20}$  times, the chance of obtaining any distribution of heads and tails significantly different from 50:50 is insignificant. We might, of course, get  $\frac{10^{20}}{2} - 100$  heads and  $\frac{10^{20}}{2} + 100$  tails, but the relative deviation from 50:50 is inconsequential.

To express this mathematically, suppose that we toss a fair coin  $n$  times to get a sequence of heads and tails. Of all the possible sequences, the total number that have  $h$  heads and  $n - h$  tails (in any order) is  $\frac{n!}{h!(n-h)!}$ , and thus, since there are  $2^n$  possible sequences, the probability of getting  $h$  heads and  $n - h$  tails is given by

$$\text{Prob}[n \text{ heads}, n - h \text{ tails}] = \frac{n!}{2^n h!(n - h)!}. \quad (3.150)$$

As  $n$  gets very large, the graph of (3.150) becomes sharply peaked, with a maximum of 1 at  $h = n/2$ . (This can be shown easily using Stirling's formula,  $\ln(n!) \approx n \ln(n) - n$  for  $n$  large). In other words, the probability of obtaining any sequence that does not contain an equal number of heads and tails is vanishingly small in the limit of large  $n$ .

An identical argument underlies the Boltzmann distribution. Suppose we have  $n$  particles each of which can be in one of  $k$  states, where state  $i$  has energy  $U_i$ . Let  $n_i$  denote the number of particles in state  $i$ . We assume that the total energy,  $U_{\text{tot}}$ , is fixed, so that

$$\sum_{i=1}^k n_i = n, \quad (3.151)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^k U_i n_i = U_{\text{tot}}. \quad (3.152)$$

The number of ways,  $W$ , that these  $n$  particles can be partitioned into  $k$  states, with  $n_i$  particles in the state  $i$ , is given by the multinomial factor

$$W = \frac{n!}{\prod_{i=1}^k n_i!}. \quad (3.153)$$

Now, like the function for the probability of heads and tails for a coin toss, the function  $W$  is sharply peaked when  $n$  is large, and the distribution corresponding to the peak is the one most likely to occur. Furthermore, the likelihood of distributions other than those near the peak is vanishingly small when  $n$  is large. Thus, to find this overwhelmingly most likely distribution we maximize  $W$  subject to the constraints (3.151) and (3.152). That is, we seek to maximize (using Lagrange multipliers)

$$F = \ln W - \lambda \left( \sum_{i=1}^k n_i - n \right) - \beta \left( \sum_{i=1}^k U_i n_i - U_{\text{tot}} \right). \quad (3.154)$$

(It is equivalent, and much more convenient, to use  $\ln W$  rather than  $W$ .) According to (3.153),

$$\begin{aligned} \ln W &= \ln(n!) - \sum_{i=1}^k \ln(n_i!) \\ &\approx n \ln(n) - n + \sum_{i=1}^k n_i - \sum_{i=1}^k n_i \ln(n_i) \\ &= n \ln(n) - \sum_{i=1}^k n_i \ln(n_i), \end{aligned} \quad (3.155)$$

where we have used Stirling's formula, assuming all the  $n_i$ 's are large. Thus,

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial n_i} = -\ln(n_i) - 1 - \lambda - \beta U_i, \quad (3.156)$$

which is zero when

$$n_i = \alpha e^{-\beta U_i}, \quad (3.157)$$

for positive constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , which are independent of  $i$ . This most likely distribution of  $n_i$  is the *Boltzmann distribution*.

How does this relate to reaction rates? Suppose that we have a population of particles with two energy levels: a ground energy level  $U_0$  and a reactive energy level  $U_r > U_0$ . If the particles are at statistical equilibrium, i.e., the Boltzmann distribution, then the proportion of particles in the reactive state is

$$e^{\beta(U_0 - U_r)} = e^{-\beta \Delta U}. \quad (3.158)$$

Since this is also assumed to be the rate at which the reaction takes place, we have that

$$k \propto e^{\beta(U_0 - U_r)} = e^{-\beta \Delta U}. \quad (3.159)$$

To obtain the Arrhenius rate equation it remains to show that  $\beta = \frac{1}{RT}$ . To do so rigorously is beyond the scope of this text, but a simple dimensional argument can at least demonstrate plausibility. Recall that it is known from experiment that

$$k \propto e^{-B/T}, \quad (3.160)$$

for some constant  $B > 0$ . Thus, from (3.159),  $\beta$  must be proportional to  $1/T$ , and to get the correct units,  $\beta \propto 1/(RT)$  or  $1/(kT)$ , depending on whether the units of  $U$  are per mole or per molecule.

### 3.7.2 A Fokker–Planck Equation Approach

The above derivation relies on the assumption that there is a large number of particles, each of which can be in one of a number of different states. It is less obvious how such a derivation can be applied to the behavior of a small number of molecules, or a single molecule. To do this, we need to use the methods developed in Appendix 2.9, and turn to a Fokker–Planck description of molecular motion.

Suppose that a molecule moves via Brownian motion, but also experiences a force generated by some potential,  $U(x)$ , and is subject to friction. If  $x(t)$  denotes the position of the molecule, the Langevin equation for the molecular motion (Section 2.9.5) is

$$m \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \nu \frac{dx}{dt} + U'(x) = \sqrt{2\nu kT} W(t), \quad (3.161)$$

where  $W$  is a Wiener process. Here,  $\nu$  is the friction coefficient, and is analogous to friction acting on a mass–spring system. If inertial effects can be neglected, which they can in most physiological situations, this simplifies to

$$\nu \frac{dx}{dt} = -U'(x) + \sqrt{2\nu kT} W(t). \quad (3.162)$$

Hence, the probability distribution that the particle is at position  $x$  at time  $t$  is given by  $p(x, t)$ , the solution of the Fokker–Planck equation

$$\nu \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(U'(x)p) + kT \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x^2}. \quad (3.163)$$

At steady state, i.e., when  $\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = 0$ , (3.163) can be readily solved to give

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{A} \exp\left(-\frac{U(x)}{kT}\right), \quad (3.164)$$

where  $A = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{U(x)}{kT}\right) dx$  is chosen so that  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} p(x) dx = 1$ . We have thus regained a continuous version of the Boltzmann distribution; if  $U(x)$  is a quadratic potential well ( $U(x) = Ax^2$ ), then  $p(x)$  is a Gaussian distribution.

If  $U(x)$  is a double well potential with its maximum at  $x = 0$  separating the two wells, then the ratio of the probability of finding the particle on the left to the probability of finding the particle on the right is

$$K_{\text{eq}} = \frac{\int_{-\infty}^0 p(x) dx}{\int_0^{\infty} p(x) dx}. \quad (3.165)$$

Since it is difficult to calculate  $K_{\text{eq}}$  for general functions  $U(x)$ , it is useful to discretize the state space into a finite number of states  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$  with energies  $U_j$ . For

this, we know that the Boltzmann distribution is

$$p_j = \frac{1}{A} \exp\left(-\frac{U_j}{kT}\right), \quad (3.166)$$

where

$$A = \sum_j^n \exp\left(-\frac{U_j}{kT}\right). \quad (3.167)$$

We can make the association between the discrete case and the continuous case precise if we determine  $U_j$  by requiring

$$\exp\left(-\frac{U_j}{kT}\right) = \int_{x_{j-1}}^{x_j} \exp\left(-\frac{U(x)}{kT}\right) dx, \quad (3.168)$$

where  $x_j$  separates the  $j - 1$ st from the  $j$ th potential well. Furthermore, if there are only two energy wells, the ratio of the probability of finding the particle in state one to the probability of finding the particle in state two is

$$K_{eq} = \frac{p_1}{p_2} = \exp\left(\frac{\Delta U}{kT}\right) = \exp\left(\frac{\Delta G^0}{RT}\right), \quad (3.169)$$

where  $\Delta U = U_2 - U_1$  is the change in energy per molecule, so that  $\Delta G^0$  is the change in energy per mole. Here we have recovered (3.149) for the equilibrium distribution of a reaction in terms of the difference of standard free energy. However, one should note that with this identification,  $U_j$  is approximately, but not exactly, the value of  $U$  at the bottom of the  $j$ th potential well.

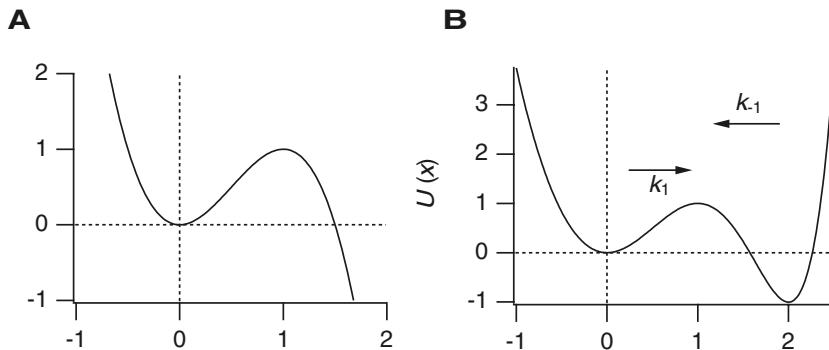
### 3.7.3 Reaction Rates and Kramers' Result

As noted in Chapter 1, equilibrium relationships give information only about the ratio of rate constants, not their individual values. To derive an expression for a rate constant, one must construct a model of how the reaction occurs. The consequent expression for the rate constant is only as good as the assumptions underlying the model.

One common model of a reaction rate is based on the mean first exit time of the time-dependent Fokker–Planck equation (3.163). (Mean first exit times are discussed in Section 2.9.6). This model assumes that a reactant particle can be modeled as a damped oscillator driven by a stochastic force, and that the reaction occurs once the particle reaches the peak of the energy profile between the reactant and product states. Although this model is based on a number of crude assumptions, it gives reasonably good results for a range of potential energy profiles, particularly those for which the energy wells are deep.

The mean first exit time is found from the solution of the ordinary differential equation

$$-U'(x) \frac{d\tau}{dx} + kT \frac{d^2\tau}{dx^2} = -v, \quad (3.170)$$



**Figure 3.17** Potential energy profiles. A: a cubic profile,  $U(x) = \Delta G(2x^2(3/2 - x))$ , plotted for  $\Delta G = 1$ . B: a double well potential,  $U(x) = \Delta G^0(\frac{19}{144}x^6 - \frac{1}{24}x^5 - \frac{77}{144}x^4 - \frac{4}{3}x^3 + \frac{25}{9}x^2)$ , plotted for  $\Delta G^0 = 1$ .

subject to  $\tau(x_0) = 0$  at any boundary point  $x_0$  where escape is allowed, or  $\tau'(x_1) = 0$  at any boundary point  $x_1$  where escape is not allowed, but instead there is reflection. The off-rate, or unbinding rate, is defined as the inverse of the mean first exit time from the bottom of the potential well.

To be specific, consider a potential  $U(x)$  such as shown in Fig. 3.17A. Here  $U(x)$  is a cubic polynomial, with a minimum at  $x = 0$  and a maximum at  $x = 1$ , with  $U(1) = \Delta G$ . We expect the particle to spend most of its time near  $x = 0$ . However, if the particle gets to  $x = 1$  it can escape to  $x = \infty$ , and is assumed to have reacted. Thus, the time to react (the inverse of the reaction rate) is approximated by the mean first passage time from  $x = 0$  to  $x = 1$ .

More generally, suppose  $U(x) = \Delta G u(\frac{x}{L})$ , where  $u'(0) = u'(1) = u(0) = 0$  and  $u(1) = 1$ , so that  $x = 0$  is a local minimum and  $x = L$  is a local maximum, and the height of the energy barrier is  $\Delta G$ . The mean first passage time is the solution of (3.170) together with the boundary conditions  $\tau(-\infty) = 0$  and  $\tau(L) = 0$ .

To find the solution it is useful to nondimensionalize (3.170). We set  $y = \frac{x}{L}$  and  $\sigma = \alpha \tau$  and obtain

$$-au'(y) \frac{d\sigma}{dy} + \frac{d^2\sigma}{dy^2} = -1, \quad (3.171)$$

where  $a = \frac{\Delta G}{kT}$  and  $\alpha = \frac{vL^2}{kT}$ . Using an integrating factor, it is easily shown that

$$\sigma(y) = \int_x^1 e^{au(s')} \left( \int_{-\infty}^{s'} e^{-au(s)} ds \right) ds', \quad (3.172)$$

and thus the time to react is  $\tau(0) = \frac{vL^2}{kT}\sigma(0)$ , where

$$\sigma(0) = \int_0^1 e^{au(s')} \left( \int_{-\infty}^{s'} e^{-au(s)} ds \right) ds'. \quad (3.173)$$

As we demonstrate below, this formula does not agree with the Arrhenius rate law for all parameter values. However, when the potential well at  $x = 0$  is deep (i.e., when  $a = \Delta G/(kT) \gg 1$ ), the two are in agreement. Here we provide a demonstration of this agreement.

Notice first that

$$\sigma(0) = \int_0^1 e^{au(s')} \left( \int_{-\infty}^1 e^{-au(s)} ds - \int_{s'}^1 e^{-au(s)} ds \right) ds'. \quad (3.174)$$

Clearly,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 e^{au(s')} \left( \int_{s'}^1 e^{-au(s)} ds \right) ds' &= \int_0^1 \left( \int_{s'}^1 e^{a(u(s')-u(s))} ds \right) ds' \\ &< \int_0^1 \left( \int_{s'}^1 ds \right) ds' = \frac{1}{2}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.175)$$

In fact, with a bit of work one can show that this integral approaches zero as  $a \rightarrow \infty$ . Thus,

$$\sigma(0) \approx \left( \int_0^1 e^{au(s')} ds' \right) \left( \int_{-\infty}^1 e^{-au(s)} ds \right). \quad (3.176)$$

We now use the fact that  $y = 0$  and  $y = 1$  are extremal values of  $u(y)$  to approximate these integrals. When  $a$  is large, the integrands are well approximated by Gaussians, which decay to zero rapidly. Thus, near  $y = 0$ ,  $u(y) \approx \frac{1}{2}u''(0)y^2$ , so that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^1 e^{-au(s)} ds &\approx \int_{-\infty}^1 e^{-\frac{1}{2}au''(0)s^2} ds \\ &\approx \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{1}{2}au''(0)s^2} ds \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{au''(0)}}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.177)$$

Similarly, near  $y = 1$ ,  $u(y) \approx 1 - \frac{1}{2}|u''(1)|(y-1)^2$ , so that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 e^{au(s)} ds &\approx e^a \int_0^1 e^{-\frac{1}{2}|u''(1)|(s-1)^2} ds \\ &\approx e^a \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-\frac{1}{2}|u''(1)|s^2} ds \\ &= \frac{1}{2}e^a \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{a|u''(1)|}}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.178)$$

Combining (3.176), (3.177), and (3.178) gives

$$\tau(0) \approx \frac{\pi v L^2}{\Delta G \sqrt{u''(0)|u''(1)|}} e^{\frac{\Delta G}{kT}}. \quad (3.179)$$

Since the reaction rate is the inverse of the mean first passage time, this gives the Arrhenius rate expression with

$$\kappa = \frac{\Delta G \sqrt{u''(0)|u''(1)|}}{\pi v L^2}, \quad (3.180)$$

which is independent of  $T$ , but not  $\Delta G$ . This formula was first derived by Kramers (1940).

### A Double Well Potential Profile

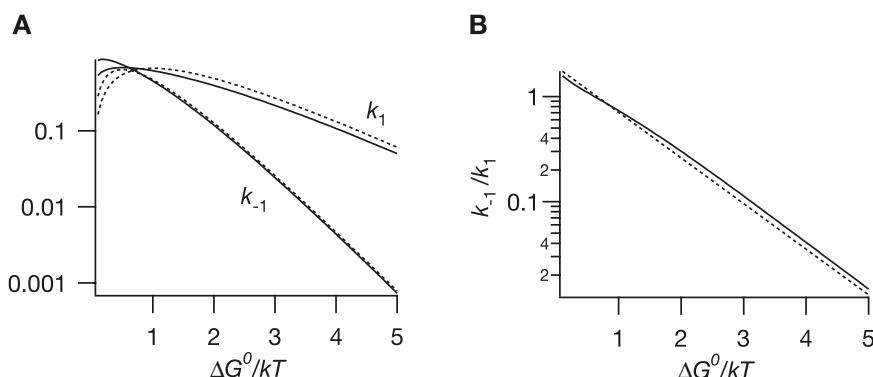
Now suppose that  $U(x)$  is a double well potential, such as that shown in Fig. 3.17B. In particular, suppose that  $U(x) = \Delta G^0 u(\frac{x}{L})$ , where  $u(x)$  has two local minima at  $x = 0$  and  $x = b > 1$ , with a local maximum at  $x = 1$ . For the example in Fig. 3.17B,  $\Delta G^0 = L = 1$  and  $b = 2$ . Note also that the potential profile is such that  $\Delta G_{-1} = 2\Delta G^0$ ,  $\Delta G_1 = \Delta G^0$ .

According to Kramers' rate theory,

$$k_1 \approx \frac{\Delta G_1 \sqrt{u''(0)|u''(1)|}}{\pi v L^2} e^{-\frac{\Delta G_1}{kT}}, \quad (3.181)$$

$$k_{-1} \approx \frac{\Delta G_{-1} \sqrt{u''(b)|u''(1)|}}{\pi v L^2 (b-1)^2} e^{-\frac{\Delta G_{-1}}{kT}}. \quad (3.182)$$

To compare these with the exact solutions, in Fig. 3.18A we plot  $k_{-1}$  and  $k_1$  for the double well potential shown in Fig. 3.17B, calculated by numerical integration of (3.173), and using the approximations (3.181) and (3.182). Note that the reaction rates (both exact and approximate) are not exactly exponential functions of  $\Delta G_i$ , and thus the curves in Fig. 3.18A are not straight lines (on a log scale). For the approximate rate constants this is because the prefactor is proportional to  $\Delta G_i$ . Interestingly, the approximate



**Figure 3.18** Reaction rates for the potential profile shown in Fig. 3.17B. A: exact (solid lines) and approximate (dashed lines) solutions for  $k_1$  and  $k_{-1}$ , plotted as functions of  $\Delta G^0/kT$ . The exact solutions are calculated from (3.173), while the approximations are calculated from (3.179). For simplicity, we set  $vL^2/kT = 1$ . B: exact and approximate calculations of  $k_{-1}/k_1$ . As in A, the exact solution is plotted as a solid line.

solutions agree exactly with the Arrhenius rate law, when viewed as functions of  $T$ , while the exact solutions do not.

Next, we observe that, using Kramers' formula, the equilibrium constant is

$$K_{\text{eq}} = \frac{k_{-1}}{k_1} = \frac{1}{(b-1)^2} \frac{u(1) - u(b)}{u(1) - u(0)} \sqrt{\frac{u''(b)}{u''(0)}} e^{-\frac{\Delta G^0}{kT}}. \quad (3.183)$$

In Fig. 3.18B we plot  $\frac{k_{-1}}{k_1}$  for the double well potential shown in Fig. 3.17B, with the exact ratio shown as a solid curve and the approximate ratio from (3.183) shown as a dashed curve. As before, the exact ratio  $k_{-1}/k_1$  (solid line, Fig. 3.17B) is not an exact exponential function of  $\Delta G^0$ , and thus does not give the correct equilibrium behavior. This results from the fact that, for small  $\Delta G^0$ , the mean first exit time of the Fokker-Planck equation is not a good model of the reaction rate.

However, the ratio of the approximate expressions for the rate constants (3.183) is a true exponential function of  $\Delta G^0$ , since the dependence of  $\Delta G^0$  in the prefactors cancels out in the ratio. Hence, the dashed line in Fig. 3.18B is straight. Thus, paradoxically, the approximate solution gives better agreement to the correct equilibrium behavior than does the exact solution. However, one must be somewhat cautious with this statement, since there is a factor multiplying the exponential that is not equal to one (as it should be for correct equilibrium behavior), but depends on the details of the shape of the energy function. Thus, if the shape of the potential energy function is modified by, for example, an external voltage potential, this factor is modified as well, in a voltage-dependent way.

### 3.8 EXERCISES

1. Show that the GHK equation (3.2) satisfies both the independence principle and the Ussing flux ratio, but that the linear  $I$ - $V$  curve (3.1) satisfies neither.
2. Using concentrations typical of  $\text{Na}^+$ , determine whether the long channel limit or the short channel limit for (3.25) is the most appropriate approximation for  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. (Estimate  $\lambda$  where  $\lambda^2 = L^2 qF N_a \bar{c}/(\epsilon RT)$ , for  $\text{Na}^+$  ions.)
3. In Section 3.3.1 the PNP equations were used to derive  $I$ - $V$  curves when two ions with opposite valence are allowed to move through a channel. Extend this analysis by assuming that two types of ions with positive valence and one type of ion with negative valence are allowed to move through the channel. Show that in the high concentration limit, although the negative ion obeys a linear  $I$ - $V$  curve, the two positive ions do not. Details can be found in Chen, Barcilon, and Eisenberg (1992), equations (43)–(45).
4. (a) Show that (3.66) satisfies the independence principle and the Ussing flux ratio.  
 (b) Show that (3.66) can be made approximately linear by choosing  $g$  such that

$$ng = \ln \left( \frac{c_n}{c_0} \right). \quad (3.184)$$

Although a linear  $I$ - $V$  curve does not satisfy the independence principle, why does this result not contradict part (a)?

5. Show that (3.86) does not satisfy the independence principle, but does obey the Ussing flux ratio.
6. Derive (3.86) by solving the steady-state equations (3.84) and (3.85). First show that

$$J = x \frac{k_0 c_0 - k_{-n} c_n \pi_{n-1}}{\phi_{n-1}}. \quad (3.185)$$

Then show that

$$k_0 c_0 x = k_{n-1} c_{n-1} \phi_{n-1} - x k_{-n} c_n \phi_{n-2}, \quad (3.186)$$

$$k_j c_j = \frac{k_{n-1} c_{n-1}}{\pi_j} (\phi_{n-1} - \phi_{j-1}) - \frac{k_{-n} c_n x}{\pi_j} (\phi_{n-2} - \phi_{j-1}), \quad (3.187)$$

for  $j = 1, \dots, n-1$ . Substitute these expressions into the conservation equation and solve for  $x$ .

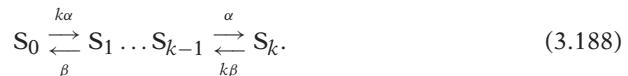
7. Draw the state diagrams showing the channel states and the allowed transitions for a multi-ion model with two binding sites when the membrane is bathed with a solution containing:
  - (a) Only ion S on the left and only ion S' on the right.
  - (b) Ion S on both sides and ion S' only on the right.
  - (c) Ions S and S' on both the left and right.

In each case write the corresponding system of linear equations that determine the steady-state ionic concentrations at the channel binding sites.

8. Using an arbitrary symmetric energy profile with two binding sites, show numerically that the Ussing flux ratio is not obeyed by a multi-ion model with two binding sites. (Note that since unidirectional fluxes must be calculated, it is necessary to treat the ions on each side of the membrane differently. Thus, an eight-state channel diagram must be used.) Hodgkin and Keynes predicted that the flux ratio is the Ussing ratio raised to the  $(n+1)$ st power (cf. (3.16)). How does  $n$  depend on the ionic concentrations on either side of the membrane, and on the energy profile?
9. Choose an arbitrary symmetric energy profile with two binding sites, and compare the  $I$ - $V$  curves of the one-ion and multi-ion models. Assume that the same ionic species is present on both sides of the membrane, so that only a four-state multi-ion model is needed.
10. Suppose the  $\text{Na}^+$  Nernst potential of a cell is 56 mV, its resting potential is  $-70$  mV, and the extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration is 1 mM. At what intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration is the flux of a three-for-one  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger zero? (Use that  $RT/F = 25.8$  mV at  $27^\circ \text{C}$ .)
11. Modify the pump-leak model of Chapter 2 to include a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current and the 3-for-1  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger. What effect does this modification have on the relationship between pump rate and membrane potential?
12. Because there is a net current, the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump current must be voltage-dependent. Determine this dependence by including voltage dependence in the rates of conformational change in expression (2.100). How does voltage dependence affect the pump-leak model of Chapter 2?
13. Intestinal epithelial cells have a glucose- $\text{Na}^+$  symport that transports one  $\text{Na}^+$  ion and one glucose molecule from the intestine into the cell. Model this transport process. Is the transport of glucose aided or hindered by the cell's negative membrane potential?

14. Suppose that a channel consists of  $k$  identical, independent subunits, each of which can be open or closed, and that a current can pass through the channel only if all units are open.

- (a) Let  $S_j$  denote the state in which  $j$  subunits are open. Show that the conversions between states are governed by the reaction scheme



- (b) Derive the differential equation for  $x_j$ , the proportion of channels in state  $j$ .

- (c) By direct substitution, show that  $x_j = \binom{k}{j} n^j (1-n)^{k-j}$ , where  $\binom{k}{j} = \frac{k!}{j!(k-j)!}$  is the *binomial coefficient*, is an invariant manifold for the system of differential equations, provided that

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = \alpha(1-n) - \beta n. \quad (3.189)$$

15. Consider the model of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel shown in Fig. 3.11. Show that if  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are large compared to  $\gamma$  and  $\delta$ , then  $x_{21}$  is given (approximately) by

$$x_{21} = \left( \frac{\alpha}{\alpha + \beta} \right)^2 h, \quad (3.190)$$

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \gamma(1-h) - \delta h, \quad (3.191)$$

while conversely, if  $\gamma$  and  $\delta$  are large compared to  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , then (approximately)

$$x_{21} = m^2 \left( \frac{\gamma}{\gamma + \delta} \right), \quad (3.192)$$

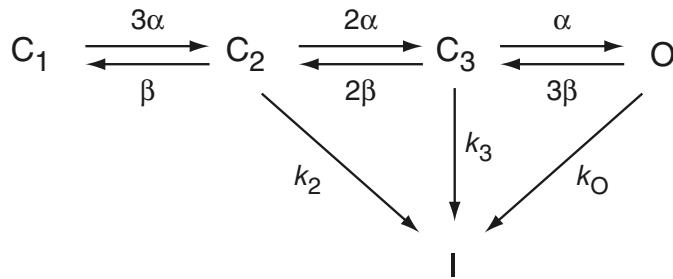
$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \alpha(1-m) - \beta m. \quad (3.193)$$

16. Show that (3.122) has two negative real roots. Show that when  $\beta = 0$  and  $a \leq \frac{-\lambda_1}{\lambda_1 - \lambda_2}$ , then (3.123)–(3.125) have two possible solutions, one with  $\alpha + \delta = -\lambda_1$ ,  $\gamma = -\lambda_2$ , the other with  $\alpha + \delta = -\lambda_2$ ,  $\gamma = -\lambda_1$ . In the first solution inactivation is faster than activation, while the reverse is true for the second solution.

17. Write a computer program to simulate the behavior of the stochastic three-state  $\text{Na}^+$  channel shown in Fig. 3.12, assuming it starts in the closed state. Use  $\alpha = 1/\text{ms}$ ,  $\beta = 0.4/\text{ms}$ ,  $\gamma = 1.6/\text{ms}$  and  $\delta = 1/\text{ms}$ . Take the ensemble average of many runs to reproduce its macroscopic behavior. Using the data from simulations, reconstruct the open time distribution, the latency distribution, and the distribution of  $N$ , the number of times the channel opens. From these distributions estimate the rate constants of the simulation and compare with the known values.

18. Consider the Markov model of a  $\text{Na}^+$  channel (Patlak, 1991) shown in Fig. 3.19. Write a computer program to simulate the behavior of this stochastic channel assuming it starts in state  $C_1$ . Take the ensemble average of many runs to reproduce its macroscopic behavior. Using the data generated by these simulations, determine the open time distribution, the latency distribution, and the distribution of  $N$ , the number of times the channel opens. Compare these with the analytically calculated distributions.

19. Construct a set of differential equations that models the interaction of a two-state channel with a use-dependent blocker.



**Figure 3.19** The  $\text{Na}^+$  channel model of Exercise 18. Parameter values are  $k_2 = 0.24 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ ,  $k_3 = 0.4 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ ,  $k_O = 1.5 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ , and  $\alpha = 1 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ , and  $\beta = 0.4 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ .

20. Write a computer program to simulate the behavior of the stochastic three-state agonist-binding channel of (3.127). Use  $\alpha = 1/\text{ms}$ ,  $\beta = 0.4/\text{ms}$ ,  $k_{-1} = 0.5/\text{ms}$ , and  $ak_1 = 0.2/\text{ms}$ . Using the data from simulations, plot the open time distribution and the closed time distribution and estimate the parameters of the model. Is the closed time distribution obviously a double exponential distribution? Repeat this experiment for several different values of  $ak_1$ .
21. Show that for an exponential distribution  $\phi(t) = \alpha \exp(-\alpha t)$  the plot of the corresponding distribution function on the  $\ln(t)$  scale has a maximum at the expected value of the distribution,  $t = -\frac{1}{\alpha}$ .
22. Find the distribution for the length of a burst in the model of (3.127).  
Hint: The apparent length of the burst is the time taken to get from AR to T, minus the length of one sojourn in AT. Use the Laplace transform and the convolution theorem.
23. Find the mean first exit time from the piecewise-linear potential

$$U(x) = \begin{cases} -\frac{\Delta G_x}{L}, & -L < x < 0, \\ \frac{\Delta G_x}{L}, & 0 < x < L, \end{cases} \quad (3.194)$$

with a reflecting boundary at  $x = -L$  and absorbing boundary at  $x = L$ .

24. Find the most likely event for the binomial distribution

$$P(h) = \frac{n!}{h!(n-h)!} p^h (1-p)^{(n-h)} \quad (3.195)$$

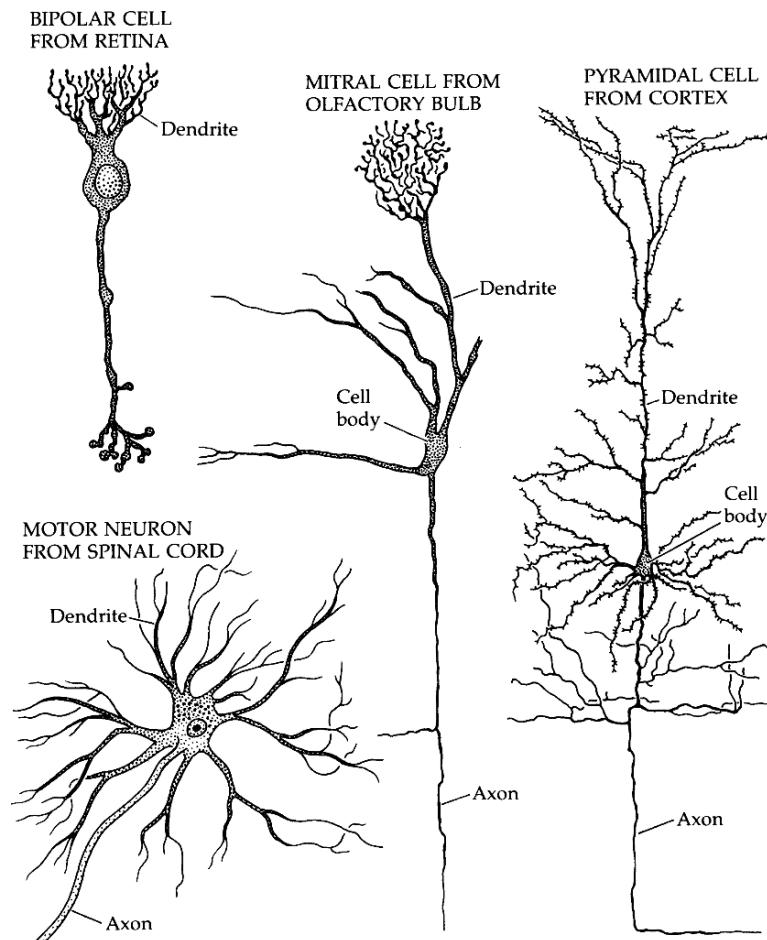
when  $n$  is large. Show that the probability of this event approaches 1 in the limit  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

# Passive Electrical Flow in Neurons

Neurons are among the most important and interesting cells in the body. They are the fundamental building blocks of the central nervous system and hence responsible for motor control, cognition, perception, and memory, among other things. Although our understanding of how networks of neurons interact to form an intelligent system is extremely limited, one prerequisite for an understanding of the nervous system is an understanding of how individual nerve cells behave.

A typical neuron consists of three principal parts: the *dendrites*; the cell body, or *soma*; and the *axon*. The structure of some typical neurons is shown in Fig. 4.1. Dendrites are the input stage of a neuron and receive synaptic input from other neurons. The soma contains the necessary cellular machinery such as a nucleus and mitochondria, and the axon is the output stage. At the end of the axon (which may also be branched, as are the dendrites) are synapses, which are cellular junctions specialized for the transmission of an electrical signal (Chapter 8). Thus, a single neuron may receive input along its dendrites from a large number of other neurons, which is called *convergence*, and may similarly transmit a signal along its axon to many other neurons, called *divergence*.

The behaviors of the dendrites, axon, and synapses are all quite different. The spread of electrical current in a dendritic network is (mostly) a passive process that can be well described by the diffusion of electricity along a leaky cable. The axon, on the other hand, has an excitable membrane of the type described in Chapter 5, and thus can propagate an electrical signal actively. At the synapse (Chapter 8), the membrane is specialized for the release or reception of chemical neurotransmitters.



**Figure 4.1** Structure of typical neurons. The motor neuron is from a mammalian spinal cord and was drawn by Dieters in 1869. The other cells were drawn by Ramón y Cajal. The pyramidal cell is from mouse cortex, and the mitral cell from the olfactory bulb of a cat. (Kuffler et al., 1984, Fig. 1, p. 10.)

In this chapter we discuss how to model the behavior of a cable, and then focus on the passive spread of current in a dendritic network; in the following chapter we show how an excitable membrane can actively propagate an electrical impulse, or action potential.

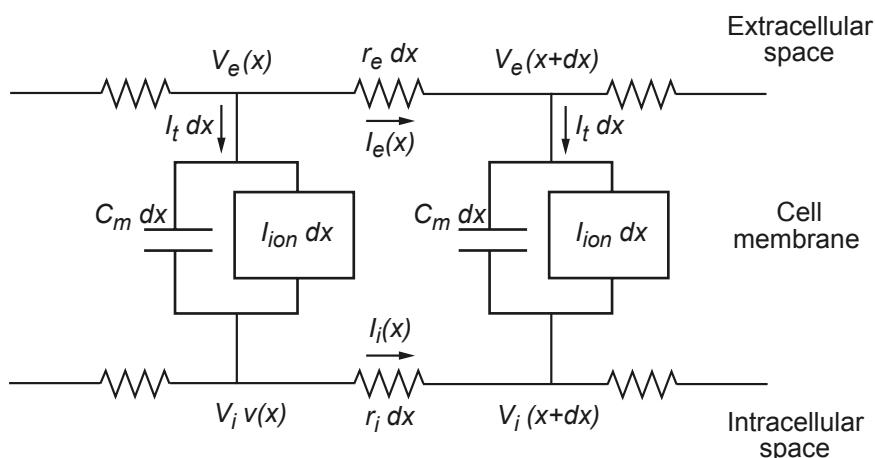
Although we discuss neurons in a number of chapters throughout this book, we cover them only in relatively little depth. For more comprehensive treatments of neurons and theoretical neuroscience the reader is referred to the excellent books by Jack et al. (1975), Koch and Segev (1998), Koch (1999), Dayan and Abbott (2001) and de Schutter (2000).

## 4.1 The Cable Equation

One of the first things to realize from the pictures in Fig. 4.1 is that it is unlikely that the membrane potential is the same at each point. In some cases spatial uniformity can be achieved experimentally (for example, by threading a silver wire along the axon, as did Hodgkin and Huxley), but *in vivo*, the intricate branched structure of the neuron can create spatial gradients in the membrane potential. Although this seems clear to us now, it was not until the pioneering work of Wilfrid Rall in the 1950s and 1960s that the importance of spatial effects gained widespread acceptance.

To understand something of how spatial distribution affects the behavior of a cable, we derive the *cable equation*. The theory of the flow of electricity in a leaky cable dates back to the work of Lord Kelvin in 1855, who derived the equations to study the transatlantic telegraph cable then under construction. However, the application of the cable equation to neuronal behavior is mainly due to Hodgkin and Rushton (1946), and then a series of classic papers by Rall (1957, 1959, 1960, 1969; an excellent summary of much of Rall's work on electrical flow in neurons is given in Segev et al., 1995.)

We view the cell as a long cylindrical piece of membrane surrounding an interior of cytoplasm (called a cable). We suppose that everywhere along its length, the potential depends only on the length variable and not on radial or angular variables, so that the cable can be viewed as one-dimensional. This assumption is called the *core conductor assumption* (Rall, 1977). We now divide the cable into a number of short pieces of isopotential membrane each of length  $dx$ . In any cable section, all currents must balance, and there are only two types of current, namely, transmembrane current and axial current (Fig. 4.2). The axial current has intracellular and extracellular components, both



**Figure 4.2** Schematic diagram of a discretized cable, with isopotential circuit elements of length  $dx$ .

of which are assumed to be ohmic, i.e., linear functions of the voltage. Hence,

$$V_i(x + dx) - V_i(x) = -I_i(x)r_i dx, \quad (4.1)$$

$$V_e(x + dx) - V_e(x) = -I_e(x)r_e dx, \quad (4.2)$$

where  $I_i$  and  $I_e$  are the intracellular and extracellular axial currents respectively. The minus sign on the right-hand side appears because of the convention that positive current is a flow of positive charges from left to right (i.e., in the direction of increasing  $x$ ). If  $V_i(x + dx) > V_i(x)$ , then positive charges flow in the direction of decreasing  $x$ , giving a negative current. In the limit  $dx \rightarrow 0$ ,

$$I_i = -\frac{1}{r_i} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x}, \quad (4.3)$$

$$I_e = -\frac{1}{r_e} \frac{\partial V_e}{\partial x}. \quad (4.4)$$

The numbers  $r_i$  and  $r_e$  are the resistances per unit length of the intracellular and extracellular media, respectively. In general,

$$r_i = \frac{R_c}{A_i}, \quad (4.5)$$

where  $R_c$  is the *cytoplasmic resistivity*, measured in units of Ohms-length, and  $A_i$  is the cross-sectional area of the cylindrical cable. A similar expression holds for the extracellular space, so if the cable is in a bath with large (effectively infinite) cross-sectional area, the extracellular resistance  $r_e$  is nearly zero.

Next, from Kirchhoff's laws, any change in extracellular or intracellular axial current must be due to a transmembrane current, and thus

$$I_i(x) - I_i(x + dx) = I_t dx = I_e(x + dx) - I_e(x), \quad (4.6)$$

where  $I_t$  is the total transmembrane current (positive outward) per unit length of membrane. In the limit as  $dx \rightarrow 0$ , this becomes

$$I_t = -\frac{\partial I_i}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial I_e}{\partial x}. \quad (4.7)$$

In a cable with no additional current sources, the total axial current is  $I_T = I_i + I_e$ , so using that  $V = V_i - V_e$ , we find

$$-I_T = \frac{r_i + r_e}{r_i r_e} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x} - \frac{1}{r_e} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x}, \quad (4.8)$$

from which it follows that

$$\frac{1}{r_i} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{r_i + r_e} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} - \frac{r_e}{r_i + r_e} I_T. \quad (4.9)$$

On substituting (4.9) into (4.7), we obtain

$$I_t = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_i + r_e} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \right), \quad (4.10)$$

where we have used (4.3) and the fact that  $I_T$  is constant. Finally, recall that the transmembrane current  $I_t$  is a sum of the capacitive and ionic currents, and thus

$$I_t = p \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_i + r_e} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \right), \quad (4.11)$$

where  $p$  is the perimeter of the axon. Equation (4.11) is usually referred to as the cable equation. Note that  $C_m$  has units of capacitance per unit area of membrane, and  $I_{\text{ion}}$  has units of current per unit area of membrane. If a current  $I_{\text{applied}}$ , with units of current per unit area, is applied across the membrane (as before, taken positive in the outward direction), then the cable equation becomes

$$I_t = p \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} + I_{\text{applied}} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_i + r_e} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \right). \quad (4.12)$$

It is useful to nondimensionalize the cable equation. To do so we define the *membrane resistivity*  $R_m$  as the resistance of a unit square area of membrane, having units of  $\Omega \text{ cm}^2$ . For any fixed  $V_0$ ,  $R_m$  is determined by measuring the change in membrane current when  $V$  is perturbed slightly from  $V_0$ . In mathematical terms,

$$\frac{1}{R_m} = \frac{dI_{\text{ion}}}{dV} \Big|_{V=V_0}. \quad (4.13)$$

Although the value of  $R_m$  depends on the chosen value of  $V_0$ , it is typical to take  $V_0$  to be the resting membrane potential to define  $R_m$ . Note that if the membrane is an ohmic resistor, then  $I_{\text{ion}} = V/R_m$ , in which case  $R_m$  is independent of  $V_0$ .

Assuming that  $r_i$  and  $r_e$  are constant, the cable equation (4.11) can now be written in the form

$$\tau_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + R_m I_{\text{ion}} = \lambda_m^2 \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2}, \quad (4.14)$$

where

$$\lambda_m = \sqrt{\frac{R_m}{p(r_i + r_e)}} \quad (4.15)$$

has units of distance and is called the cable *space constant*, and where

$$\tau_m = R_m C_m \quad (4.16)$$

has units of time and is called the membrane *time constant*. If we ignore the extracellular resistance, then

$$\lambda_m = \sqrt{\frac{R_m d}{4R_c}}, \quad (4.17)$$

where  $d$  is the diameter of the axon (assuming circular cross-section). Finally, we rescale the ionic current by defining  $I_{\text{ion}} = -f(V, t)/R_m$  for some  $f$ , which, in general, is a function of both voltage and time and has units of voltage, and nondimensionalize

**Table 4.1** Typical parameter values for a variety of excitable cells.

parameter	$d$	$R_c$	$R_m$	$C_m$	$\tau_m$	$\lambda_m$
units	$10^{-4}$ cm	$\Omega \text{ cm}$	$10^3 \Omega \text{ cm}^2$	$\mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$	ms	cm
squid giant axon	500	30	1	1	1	0.65
lobster giant axon	75	60	2	1	2	0.25
crab giant axon	30	90	7	1	7	0.24
earthworm giant axon	105	200	12	0.3	3.6	0.4
marine worm giant axon	560	57	1.2	0.75	0.9	0.54
mammalian cardiac cell	20	150	7	1.2	8.4	0.15
barnacle muscle fiber	400	30	0.23	20	4.6	0.28

space and time by defining new variables  $X = x/\lambda_m$  and  $T = t/\tau_m$ . In the new variables the cable equation is

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial X^2} + f(V, T). \quad (4.18)$$

Although  $f$  is written as a function of voltage and time, in many of the simpler versions of the cable equation,  $f$  is a function of  $V$  only (for example, (4.19) below). Typical parameter values for a variety of cells are shown in Table 4.1.

## 4.2 Dendritic Conduction

To complete the description of a spatially distributed cable, we must specify how the ionic current depends on voltage and time. In the squid giant axon,  $f(V, t)$  is a function of  $m, n, h$ , and  $V$  as described in Chapter 5. This choice for  $f$  allows waves that propagate along the axon at constant speed and with a fixed profile. They require the input of energy from the axon, which must expend energy to maintain the necessary ionic concentrations, and thus they are often called *active waves*.

Any electrical activity for which the approximation  $f = -V$  is valid (i.e., if the membrane is an Ohmic resistor) is said to be *passive* activity. There are some cables, primarily in neuronal dendritic networks, for which this is a good approximation in the range of normal activity. For other cells, activity is passive only if the membrane potential is sufficiently small. For simplicity in a passive cable, we shift  $V$  so that the resting potential is at  $V = 0$ . Thus,

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial X^2} - V, \quad (4.19)$$

which is called the *linear cable equation*. In the linear cable equation, current flows along the cable in a passive manner, leaking to the outside at a linear rate.

There is a vast literature on the application of the linear cable equation to dendritic networks. In particular, the books by Jack et al. (1975) and Tuckwell (1988) are largely devoted to this problem, and provide detailed discussions of the theory. Koch and Segev (1998) and Koch (1999) also provide excellent introductions.

### 4.2.1 Boundary Conditions

To determine the behavior of a single dendrite, we must first specify initial and boundary conditions. Usually, it is assumed that at time  $T = 0$ , the dendritic cable is in its resting state,  $V = 0$ , and so

$$V(X, 0) = 0. \quad (4.20)$$

Boundary conditions can be specified in a number of ways. Suppose that  $X = X_b$  is a boundary point.

1. Voltage-clamp boundary conditions: If the voltage is fixed (i.e., clamped) at  $X = X_b$ , then the boundary condition is of Dirichlet type,

$$V(X_b, T) = V_b, \quad (4.21)$$

where  $V_b$  is the specified voltage level.

2. Short circuit: If the ends of the cable are short-circuited, so that the extracellular and intracellular potentials are the same at  $X = X_b$ , then

$$V(X_b, T) = 0. \quad (4.22)$$

This is a special case of the voltage clamp condition in which  $V_b = 0$ .

3. Current injection: Suppose a current  $I(T)$  is injected at one end of the cable. Since

$$I_i = -\frac{1}{r_i} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x} = -\frac{1}{r_i \lambda_m} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial X}, \quad (4.23)$$

the boundary condition (ignoring extracellular resistance, so that the extracellular potential is uniform) is

$$\frac{\partial V(X_b, T)}{\partial X} = -r_i \lambda_m I(T). \quad (4.24)$$

If  $X_b$  is at the left end, this corresponds to an inward current, while if it is on the right end, this is an outward current, if  $I(T)$  is positive.

4. Sealed ends: If the end at  $X = X_b$  is sealed to ensure that there is no current across the endpoint, then the boundary condition is the homogeneous Neumann condition,

$$\frac{\partial V(X_b, T)}{\partial X} = 0, \quad (4.25)$$

a special case of an injected current for which  $I(T) = 0$ .

## 4.2.2 Input Resistance

One of the most important simple solutions of the cable equation corresponds to the situation in which a steady current is injected at one end of a semi-infinite cable. This is a common experimental protocol (although never with a truly semi-infinite cable) that can be used to determine the cable parameters  $R_m$  and  $R_c$ . Suppose the cable extends from  $X = 0$  to  $X = \infty$  and that a steady current  $I_0$  is injected at  $X = 0$ . Then, the boundary condition at  $X = 0$  is

$$\frac{dV(0)}{dX} = -r_i \lambda_m I_0. \quad (4.26)$$

Setting  $\partial V / \partial T = 0$  and solving (4.19) subject to the boundary condition (4.19) gives

$$V(X) = \lambda_m r_i I_0 e^{-X} = V(0) e^{-X} = V(0) e^{-x/\lambda_m}. \quad (4.27)$$

Clearly, by measuring the rate at which the voltage decays along the cable,  $\lambda_m$  can be determined from experimental data. The *input resistance*  $R_{\text{in}}$  of the cable is defined to be the ratio  $V(0)/I_0 = \lambda_m r_i$ . Recall that when the extracellular resistance is ignored,

$$\lambda_m = \sqrt{\frac{R_m d}{4R_c}}. \quad (4.28)$$

Combining this with (4.5) gives

$$R_{\text{in}} = \lambda_m r_i = \sqrt{\frac{4R_m R_c}{\pi^2}} \frac{1}{d^{\frac{3}{2}}}. \quad (4.29)$$

Hence, the input resistance of the cable varies with the  $-3/2$  power of the cable diameter, a fact that is of importance for the behavior of the cable equation in a branching structure. Since both the input resistance and the space constant of the cable can be measured experimentally,  $R_m$  and  $R_c$  can be calculated from experimental data.

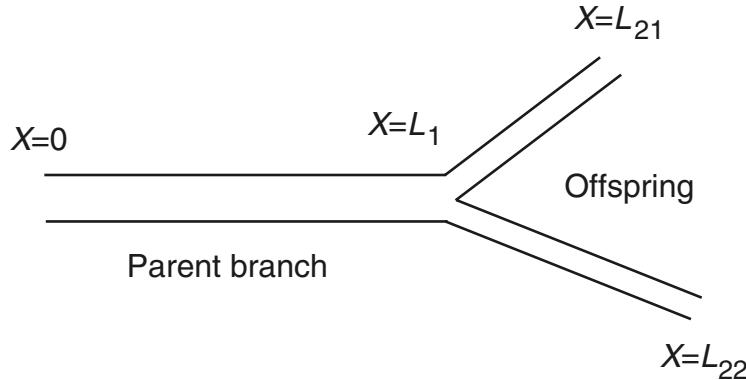
Some solutions to the cable equation for various types of cable and boundary conditions are discussed in the exercises. Tuckwell (1988) gives a detailed discussion of the various types of solutions and how they are obtained.

## 4.2.3 Branching Structures

The property of neurons that is most obvious from Fig. 4.1 is that they are extensively branched. While the procedure to find solutions on a branched cable network is straightforward in concept, it can be quite messy in application. Thus, in what follows, we emphasize the procedure for obtaining the solution on branching structures, without calculating specific formulas.

### The Steady-State Solution

It is useful first to consider the simplest branched cable, depicted in Fig. 4.3. The cable has a single branch point, or *node*, at  $X = L_1$ , and the two offspring branches extend



**Figure 4.3** Diagram of the simplest possible branched cable.

to  $L_{21}$  and  $L_{22}$ , respectively. For convenience we express all lengths in nondimensional form, with the reminder that nondimensional length does not correspond to physical length, as the distance variable  $x$  along each branch of the cable is scaled by the length constant  $\lambda_m$  appropriate for that branch, and each branch may have a different length constant.

We construct the solution in three parts:  $V_1$  on cylinder 1, and  $V_{21}$  and  $V_{22}$  on the two offspring cylinders. At steady state each  $V$  satisfies the differential equation  $V'' = V$ , and so we can immediately write the general solution as

$$V_1 = A_1 e^{-X} + B_1 e^X, \quad (4.30)$$

$$V_{21} = A_{21} e^{-X} + B_{21} e^X, \quad (4.31)$$

$$V_{22} = A_{22} e^{-X} + B_{22} e^X, \quad (4.32)$$

where the  $A$ 's and  $B$ 's are unknown constants. To determine the 6 unknown constants, we need 6 constraints, which come from the boundary and nodal conditions. For boundary conditions, we assume that a current  $I_0$  is injected at  $X = 0$  and that the terminal ends (at  $X = L_{21}$  and  $X = L_{22}$ ) are held fixed at  $V = 0$ . Thus,

$$\frac{dV_1(0)}{dX} = -r_i \lambda_m I_0, \quad (4.33)$$

$$V_{21}(L_{21}) = V_{22}(L_{22}) = 0. \quad (4.34)$$

The remaining three constraints come from conditions at the node. We require that  $V$  be a continuous function and that current be conserved at the node. It follows that

$$V_1(L_1) = V_{21}(L_1) = V_{22}(L_1), \quad (4.35)$$

and

$$d_1^{3/2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi^2}{4R_m R_c}} \frac{dV_1(L_1)}{dX} = d_{21}^{3/2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi^2}{4R_m R_c}} \frac{dV_{21}(L_1)}{dX} + d_{22}^{3/2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi^2}{4R_m R_c}} \frac{dV_{22}(L_1)}{dX}. \quad (4.36)$$

If we make the natural assumption that each branch of the cable has the same physical properties (and thus have the same  $R_m$  and  $R_c$ ), although possibly differing in diameter, the final condition for conservation of current at the node becomes

$$d_1^{3/2} \frac{dV_1(L_1)}{dX} = d_{21}^{3/2} \frac{dV_{21}(L_1)}{dX} + d_{22}^{3/2} \frac{dV_{22}(L_1)}{dX}. \quad (4.37)$$

We thus have six linear equations for the six unknown constants; explicit solution of this linear system is left for Exercise 6.

### More General Branching Structures

For this method to work for more general branching networks, there must be enough constraints to solve for the unknown constants. The following argument shows that this is the case. First, we know that each branch of the tree contributes two unknown constants, and thus, if there are  $N$  nodes, there are  $1 + 2N$  individual cables with a total of  $2 + 4N$  unknown constants. Each node contributes three constraints, and there are  $2 + N$  terminal ends (including that at  $X = 0$ ), each of which contributes one constraint, thus giving a grand total of  $2 + 4N$  constraints. Thus, the resulting linear system is well-posed. Of course, a unique solution is guaranteed only if this system is invertible, which is not known a priori.

### Equivalent Cylinders

One of the most important results in the theory of dendritic trees is due to Rall (1959), who showed that under certain conditions, the equations for passive electrical flow over a branching structure reduce to a single equation for electrical flow in a single cylinder, the so-called *equivalent cylinder*.

To see this reduction in a simple setting, consider again the branching structure of Fig. 4.3. To reduce this to an equivalent cylinder we need some additional assumptions. We assume, first, that the two offspring branches have the same dimensionless lengths,  $L_{21} = L_{22}$ , and that their terminals have the same boundary conditions. Since  $V_{21}$  and  $V_{22}$  obey the same differential equation on the same domain, obey the same boundary conditions at the terminals, and are equal at the node, it follows that they must be equal. That is,

$$\frac{dV_{21}(L_1)}{dX} = \frac{dV_{22}(L_1)}{dX}. \quad (4.38)$$

Substituting (4.38) into (4.37) we then get

$$d_1^{3/2} \frac{dV_1(L_1)}{dX} = (d_{21}^{3/2} + d_{22}^{3/2}) \frac{dV_{21}(L_1)}{dX}. \quad (4.39)$$

Finally (and this is the crucial assumption), if we assume that

$$d_{21}^{3/2} + d_{22}^{3/2} = d_1^{3/2}, \quad (4.40)$$

then

$$\frac{dV_1(L_1)}{dX} = \frac{dV_{21}(L_1)}{dX}. \quad (4.41)$$

Thus  $V_1$  and  $V_{21}$  have the same value and derivative at  $L_1$  and obey the same differential equation. It follows that the composite function

$$V = \begin{cases} V_1(X), & 0 \leq X \leq L_1, \\ V_{21}(X), & L_1 \leq X \leq L_{21}, \end{cases} \quad (4.42)$$

is continuous with a continuous derivative on  $0 < X < L_{21}$  and obeys the cable equation on that same interval. Thus, the simple branching structure is equivalent to a cable of length  $L_{21}$  and diameter  $d_1$ .

More generally, if the branching structure satisfies the following conditions:

1.  $R_m$  and  $R_c$  are the same for each branch of the cable;
2. At every node the cable diameters satisfy an equation analogous to (4.40). That is, if  $d_0$  is the diameter of the parent branch, and  $d_1, d_2, \dots$  are the diameters of the offspring, then

$$d_0^{3/2} = d_1^{3/2} + d_2^{3/2} + \dots; \quad (4.43)$$

3. The boundary conditions at the terminal ends are all the same;
4. Each terminal is the same dimensionless distance  $L$  from the origin of the tree (at  $X = 0$ );

then the entire tree is equivalent to a cylinder of length  $L$  and diameter  $d_1$ , where  $d_1$  is the diameter of the cable at  $X = 0$ . Using an inductive argument, it is not difficult to show that this is so (although a rigorous proof is complicated by the notation). Working from the terminal ends, one can condense the outermost branches into equivalent cylinders, then work progressively inwards, condensing the equivalent cylinders into other equivalent cylinders, and so on, until only a single cylinder remains. It is left as an exercise (Exercise 7) to show that during this process the requirements for condensing branches into an equivalent cylinder are never violated.

#### 4.2.4 A Dendrite with Synaptic Input

Suppose we have a dendrite with a time-dependent synaptic input at some point along the dendrite. Then the potential along the cable satisfies the equation

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial X^2} - V + g(T)\delta(X - X_s)(V_e - V), \quad (4.44)$$

with  $V_x = 0$  at both ends of the cable  $x = 0, L$  (assuming the ends of the cable are sealed). (For a derivation of the form of the synaptic input, see Chapter 8.)

There are two questions one might ask. First, one might want to know the voltage at the end of the cable with a given input function  $g(t)$ . However, it is more likely that

the voltage at the ends of the cable can be measured so it is the input function  $g(t)$  and its location  $X_s$  that one would like to determine. This latter is the question we address here.

We suppose that  $V(0, t) = V_0(t)$  and  $V(L, t) = V_1(t)$  are known. Notice that we can integrate the governing equation with respect to time and find that

$$V_{0XX} - V_0 = 0, \quad (4.45)$$

provided  $X \neq X_s$ , where  $V_0(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} V(X, T) dX$ , and  $V_0$  must satisfy boundary conditions  $V_0(0) = V_0^0$ ,  $V_0(L) = V_0^1$ , where  $V_0^j = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} V_j(T) dT$ ,  $j = 0, 1$ . It follows that

$$V_0(X) = \begin{cases} V_0^0 \cosh(x), & X < X_s, \\ V_0^1 \cosh(L-x), & X > X_s. \end{cases} \quad (4.46)$$

Since  $V_0(X)$  must be continuous at  $X = X_s$ , it must be that

$$\frac{V_0^0}{V_0^1} = \frac{\cosh(L - X_s)}{\cosh(X_s)} = F(X_s). \quad (4.47)$$

The function  $F(X_s)$  is a monotone decreasing function of  $X_s$ , so there is at most one value of  $X_s$  which satisfies (4.47).

Next, notice that integrating (4.44) across  $X = X_s$  gives the jump condition

$$V_X|_{X_s^-}^{X_s^+} = g(T)(V(X_s) - V_e), \quad (4.48)$$

so that  $g(T)$  is determined from

$$g(T) = \frac{V_X(X_s^+) - V_X(X_s^-)}{V(X_s) - V_e}. \quad (4.49)$$

Now, the Fourier transform of  $V$  is

$$\hat{V}(x, \omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} V(X, T) e^{-i\omega T} dT, \quad (4.50)$$

and the Fourier transformed equation is

$$\hat{V}_{XX} - (1 - i\omega)\hat{V} = 0, \quad (4.51)$$

for  $X \neq X_s$ . It follows that

$$\hat{V}(X) = \begin{cases} \hat{V}_0(\omega) \cosh(\mu(\omega)x), & X < X_s, \\ \hat{V}_0(\omega) \cosh(\mu(\omega)(L-x)), & X > X_s, \end{cases} \quad (4.52)$$

where  $\mu^2(\omega) = 1 - i\omega$ . We now calculate  $V(x)$  using the inverse Fourier transform and find

$$V(X_s) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{V}_0(\omega) \cosh(\mu(\omega)X_s) e^{i\omega T} d\omega, \quad (4.53)$$

$$V_X(X_s^-) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{V}_0(\omega) \mu(\omega) \sinh(\mu(\omega)X_s) e^{i\omega T} d\omega, \quad (4.54)$$

and

$$V(X_s^+) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{V}_0(\omega) \mu(\omega) \sinh(\mu(\omega)(X_s - L)) e^{i\omega T} d\omega. \quad (4.55)$$

These combined with (4.49), uniquely determine  $g(T)$ .

This calculation and its extension to multiple synaptic inputs is due to Cox (2004).

## 4.3 The Rall Model of a Neuron

When studying a model of a neuron, the item of greatest interest is often the voltage at the cell body, or soma. This is primarily because the voltage at the cell body can be measured experimentally with greater ease than can the voltage in the dendritic network, and further, it is the voltage at the soma that determines whether or not the neuron fires an action potential. Therefore, it is important to determine the solution of the cable equation on a dendritic network when one end of the network is connected to a soma. The most common approach to incorporating a soma into the model is due to Rall (1960), and is called the *Rall lumped-soma model*.

The three basic assumptions of the Rall model are, first, that the soma is isopotential (i.e., that the soma membrane potential is the same at all points), second, that the soma acts like a resistance ( $R_s$ ) and a capacitance ( $C_s$ ) in parallel, and, third, that the dendritic network can be collapsed into a single equivalent cylinder. This is illustrated in Fig. 4.4.

The potential  $V$  satisfies the cable equation on the equivalent cylinder. The boundary condition must account for current flow within the soma and into the cable. Thus, if  $I_0$  denotes an applied current at  $X = 0$ , then the boundary condition is

$$I_0 = -\frac{1}{r_i} \frac{\partial V(0, t)}{\partial x} + C_s \frac{\partial V(0, t)}{\partial t} + \frac{V(0, t)}{R_s}, \quad (4.56)$$

so that

$$R_s I_0 = -\gamma \frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial X} + \sigma \frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial T} + V(0, T), \quad (4.57)$$

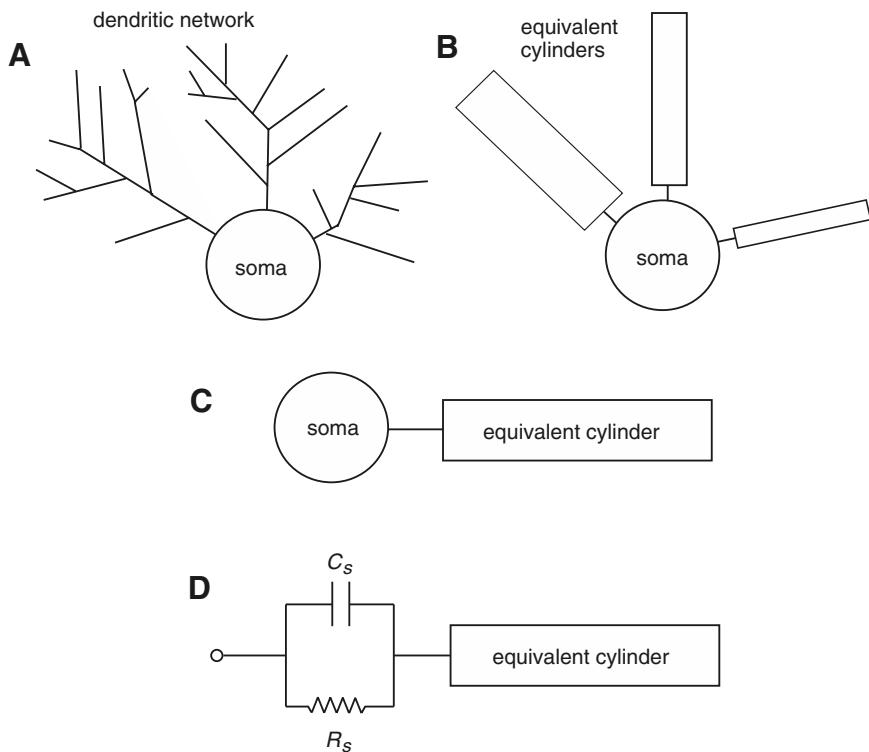
where  $\sigma = C_s R_s / \tau_m = \tau_s / \tau_m$  and  $\gamma = R_s / (r_i \lambda_m)$ . For convenience we assume that the time constant of the soma is the same as the membrane time constant, so that  $\sigma = 1$ .

### 4.3.1 A Semi-Infinite Neuron with a Soma

We first calculate the steady response of a semi-infinite neuron to a current  $I_0$  injected at  $X = 0$ , as in Section 4.2.2. As before, we set the time derivative to zero to get

$$\frac{d^2 V}{dX^2} = V, \quad (4.58)$$

$$V(0) - \gamma \frac{dV(0)}{dX} = R_s I_0, \quad (4.59)$$



**Figure 4.4** Schematic diagram of the Rall lumped-soma model of the neuron. First, it is assumed that the dendritic network pictured in A is equivalent to the equivalent cylinders shown in B, and that these cylinders are themselves equivalent to a single cylinder as in C. The soma is assumed to be isopotential and to behave like a resistance and capacitance in parallel, as in D.

which can easily be solved to give

$$V(X) = \frac{R_s}{r_i\lambda_m + R_s} r_i\lambda_m I_0 e^{-X}. \quad (4.60)$$

This solution is nearly the same as the steady response of the equivalent cylinder without a soma to an injected current, except that  $V$  is decreased by the constant factor  $R_s/(R_s + r_i\lambda_m) < 1$ . As  $R_s \rightarrow \infty$ , in which limit the soma carries no current, the solution to the lumped-soma model approaches the solution to the simple cable.

The input resistance  $R_{in}$  of the lumped-soma model is

$$R_{in} = \frac{V(0)}{I_0} = \frac{r_i\lambda_m R_s}{r_i\lambda_m + R_s}, \quad (4.61)$$

and thus

$$\frac{1}{R_{in}} = \frac{1}{r_i\lambda_m} + \frac{1}{R_s}. \quad (4.62)$$

Since  $r_i \lambda_m$  is the input resistance of the cylinder, the input conductance of the lumped-soma model is the sum of the input conductance of the soma and the input conductance of the cylinder. This is as expected, since the equivalent cylinder and the soma are in parallel.

### 4.3.2 A Finite Neuron and Soma

We now calculate the time-dependent response of a finite cable and lumped soma to a delta function current input at the soma, as this is readily observed experimentally.

We assume that the equivalent cylinder has finite length  $L$ . Then the potential satisfies

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial X^2} - V, \quad 0 < X < L, T > 0, \quad (4.63)$$

$$[6bp]V(X, 0) = 0, \quad (4.64)$$

with boundary conditions

$$\frac{\partial V(L, T)}{\partial X} = 0, \quad (4.65)$$

$$[6bp]\frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial T} + V(0, T) - \gamma \frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial X} = R_s \delta(T). \quad (4.66)$$

Note that the boundary condition (4.66) is equivalent to

$$\frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial T} + V(0, T) - \gamma \frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial X} = 0, \quad T > 0, \quad (4.67)$$

together with the initial condition

$$V(0, 0) = R_s. \quad (4.68)$$

We begin by seeking a generalized Fourier series expansion of the solution. Using separation of variables, we find solutions of the form

$$V(X, T) = \phi(X)e^{-\mu^2 T}, \quad (4.69)$$

where  $\phi$  satisfies the differential equation

$$\phi'' - (1 - \mu^2)\phi = 0, \quad (4.70)$$

with boundary conditions (when  $T > 0$ )

$$\phi'(L) = 0, \quad (4.71)$$

$$\phi'(0) = \phi(0) \frac{1 - \mu^2}{\gamma}. \quad (4.72)$$

The solution of (4.70) is

$$\phi = A \cos(\lambda X) + B \sin(\lambda X), \quad (4.73)$$

for some constants  $A$  and  $B$  and  $\lambda^2 = \mu^2 - 1$ , and applying the boundary conditions, we find

$$B = \frac{-\lambda A}{\gamma} \quad (4.74)$$

and

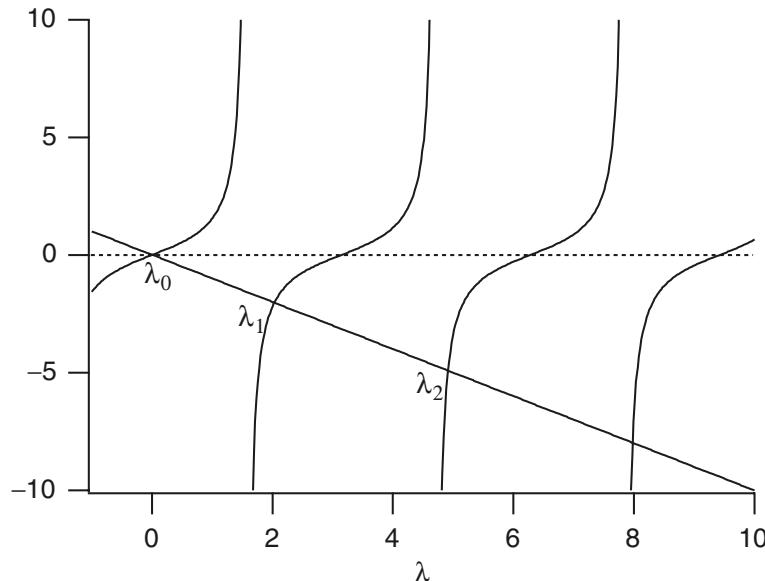
$$\tan(\lambda L) = -\frac{\lambda}{\gamma}. \quad (4.75)$$

The roots of (4.75) determine the eigenvalues. Although the eigenvalues cannot be found analytically, they can be determined numerically. A graph of the left- and right-hand sides of (4.75), showing the location of the eigenvalues as intersections of these curves, is given in Fig. 4.5. There is an infinite number of discrete eigenvalues, labeled  $\lambda_n$ , with  $\lambda_0 = 0$ . Expecting the full solution to be a linear combination of the eigenfunctions, we write

$$V(X, T) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n \phi_n(X) \exp(-(1 + \lambda_n^2)T), \quad (4.76)$$

where

$$\phi_n(X) = \cos(\lambda_n X) - \frac{\lambda_n}{\gamma} \sin(\lambda_n X). \quad (4.77)$$



**Figure 4.5** The eigenvalues of (4.63)–(4.66) are determined by the intersections of the curves  $\tan(\lambda L)$  and  $-\lambda/\gamma$ . In this figure,  $L = \gamma = 1$ .

Note that if  $\lambda_n$  is an eigenvalue, so also is  $-\lambda_n$ , but the eigenfunction  $\phi_n(X) = \cos(\lambda_n X) - \frac{\lambda_n}{\gamma} \sin(\lambda_n X)$  is an even function of  $\lambda_n$ , so it suffices to include only positive eigenvalues in the expansion.

We now strike a problem. The standard procedure is to expand the initial condition in terms of the eigenfunctions and thereby determine the coefficients  $A_n$ . However, the eigenfunctions are not mutually orthogonal in the usual way, so the standard approach fails. One way around this is to construct a nonorthogonal expansion of the initial condition, an approach used by Durand (1984). A different approach (Bluman and Tuckwell, 1987; Tuckwell, 1988) is to calculate the Laplace transform of the solution, and then, by matching the two forms of the solution, obtain expressions for the unknown coefficients.

Here we present a different approach. The standard Fourier series approach can be rescued by introducing a slightly different operator and inner product (Keener, 1998). Suppose we consider a Hilbert space of vectors of the form

$$U = \begin{pmatrix} u(x) \\ \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \quad (4.78)$$

where  $\alpha$  is a real scalar, with the inner product

$$\langle U, V \rangle = \int_0^L u(x)v(x)dx + \gamma\alpha\beta, \quad (4.79)$$

where  $V = \begin{pmatrix} v(x) \\ \beta \end{pmatrix}$ . The differential operator  $L$  on this space is defined by

$$LU = \begin{pmatrix} u''(x) \\ u'(0) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (4.80)$$

with the boundary conditions  $u'(L) = 0$  and  $u(0) = \gamma\alpha$ . Now, the usual calculation shows that the operator  $L$  is a self-adjoint operator with the inner product defined by (4.79). Furthermore, the eigenfunctions of  $L$ ,  $L\Phi = \kappa\Phi$  satisfy the two equations  $\phi''(x) = \kappa\phi(x)$  and  $\gamma\phi'(0) = \kappa\phi(0)$ , which are exactly the equations (4.70) and (4.72) with  $\kappa = 1 - \mu^2$ . It follows immediately that the eigenfunctions of the operator  $L$  are orthogonal and complete on this Hilbert space and are given by

$$\Phi_n(X) = \begin{pmatrix} \phi_n(X) \\ \frac{\phi_n(0)}{\gamma} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.81)$$

Furthermore, the solution of the full problem can be written in this Hilbert space as

$$\begin{pmatrix} V(X, T) \\ \frac{1}{\gamma}V(0, T) \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n \Phi_n(X) \exp(-(1 + \lambda_n^2)T), \quad (4.82)$$

and the coefficients are found by requiring

$$\begin{pmatrix} V(X, 0) \\ \frac{1}{\gamma}V(0, 0) \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n \Phi_n(X) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{R_s}{\gamma} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (4.83)$$

The coefficients  $A_n$  are now found by taking the inner product of (4.83) with  $\Phi_n(X)$  with the result

$$A_n = \frac{R_s}{\gamma \langle \Phi_n, \Phi_n \rangle}, \quad (4.84)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma \langle \Phi_n, \Phi_n \rangle &= \gamma \int_0^L \left( \cos(\lambda_n X) - \frac{\lambda_n}{\gamma} \sin(\lambda_n X) \right)^2 dX + 1 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{L}{2\gamma} (\gamma^2 + \mu_n^2). \end{aligned} \quad (4.85)$$

### 4.3.3 Other Compartmental Models

The methods presented above give some idea of the difficulty of calculating analytical solutions to the cable equation on branching structures, with or without a soma termination. Since modern experimental techniques can determine the detailed structure of a neuron (for example, by staining with horseradish peroxidase), it is clear that more experimental information can be obtained than can be incorporated into an analytical model (as is nearly always the case). Thus, one common approach is to construct a large computational model of a neuron and then determine the solution by a numerical method.

In a numerical approach, a neuron is divided into a large number of small pieces, or compartments, each of which is assumed to be isopotential. Within each compartment the properties of the neuronal membrane are specified, and thus some compartments may have excitable kinetics, while others are purely passive. The compartments are then connected by an axial resistance, resulting in a large system of coupled ordinary differential equations, with the voltage specified at discrete places along the neuron.

Compartmental models, numerical methods for their solution, and software packages used for these kinds of models are discussed in detail in Koch and Segev (1998) and de Schutter (2000), to which the interested reader is referred.

## 4.4 Appendix: Transform Methods

To follow all of the calculations and complete all the exercises in this chapter, you will need to know about Fourier and Laplace transforms, generalized functions and the delta function, Green's functions, as well as some aspects of complex variable theory, including contour integration and the residue theorem. If you have made it this far

into this book, then you are probably familiar with these classic techniques. However, should you need a reference for these techniques, there are many books with the generic title “Advanced Engineering Mathematics,” from which to choose (see, for example, Kreyszig (1994), O’Neill (1983), or Kaplan (1981)). At an intermediate level one might consider Strang (1986) or Boyce and DiPrima (1997). Keener (1998) provides a more advanced coverage of this material.

## 4.5 EXERCISES

---

1. Calculate the input resistance of a cable with a sealed end at  $X = L$ . Determine how the length of the cable, and the boundary condition at  $X = L$ , affects the input resistance, and compare to the result for a semi-infinite cable.
2. (a) Find the fundamental solution  $K$  of the linear cable equation satisfying

$$-\frac{d^2K}{dX^2} + K = \delta(X - \xi), \quad -\infty < X < \infty, \quad (4.86)$$

where  $\delta(X - \xi)$  denotes an *inward* flow of positive current at the point  $X = \xi$ .

- (b) Use the fundamental solution to construct a solution of the cable equation with inhomogeneous current input

$$-\frac{d^2V}{dX^2} + V = I(X). \quad (4.87)$$

3. Solve

$$-\frac{d^2G(X)}{dX^2} + G(X) = \delta(X - \xi), \quad 0 < X, \xi < L, \quad (4.88)$$

subject to (i) sealed end, and (ii) short circuit, boundary conditions.

4. (a) Use Laplace transforms to find the solution of the semi-infinite (time-dependent) cable equation with clamped voltage

$$V(X, 0) = 0 \quad (4.89)$$

and current input

$$\frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial X} = -r_i \lambda_m I_0 H(T), \quad (4.90)$$

where  $H$  is the Heaviside function.

Hint: Use the identity

$$\frac{2}{s\sqrt{s+1}} = \frac{1}{s+1-\sqrt{s+1}} - \frac{1}{s+1+\sqrt{s+1}}, \quad (4.91)$$

and then use

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1} \left\{ \frac{e^{-a\sqrt{s}}}{s+b\sqrt{s}} \right\} = e^{b^2 T + ab} \operatorname{erfc} \left( \frac{a}{2\sqrt{T}} + b\sqrt{T} \right), \quad (4.92)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}^{-1}$  denotes the inverse Laplace transform.

- (b) Show that

$$V(X, T) \rightarrow r_i \lambda_m I_0 e^{-X} \quad (4.93)$$

as  $T \rightarrow \infty$ .

5. Calculate the time-dependent Green's function for a finite cylinder of length  $L$  for (i) sealed end, and (ii) short circuit, boundary conditions. These may be calculated in two different ways, either using Fourier series or by constructing sums of fundamental solutions.
6. By solving for the unknown constants, calculate the solution of the cable equation on the simple branching structure of Fig. 4.3. Show explicitly that this solution is the same as the equivalent cylinder solution, provided the necessary conditions are satisfied.
7. Show that if the conditions in Section 4.2.3 are satisfied, a branching structure can be condensed into a single equivalent cylinder.
8. Show that

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial X^2} - V + \delta(X)\delta(T), \quad T \geq 0, \quad (4.94)$$

with  $V(X, T) = 0$  for  $T < 0$ , is equivalent to

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial X^2} - V, \quad T > 0, \quad (4.95)$$

with initial condition

$$V(X, 0) = \delta(X). \quad (4.96)$$

9. Find the numerical solution of (4.44) with  $g(T) = Te^{-aT}$ . From this determine  $V_0(T)$  and  $V_1(T)$  and use (4.47) to determine  $X_s$ . How does the computed value of  $X_s$  compare with the original value?
10. Show that as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the eigenvalues  $\lambda_n$  of (4.75) are approximately  $(2n - 1)\pi/(2L)$ .
11. Using the method of Section 4.3.2, find the Green's function for the finite cylinder and lumped soma; i.e., solve

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial X^2} - V + \delta(X - \xi)\delta(T), \quad (4.97)$$

$$V(X, 0) = 0, \quad (4.98)$$

with boundary conditions

$$\frac{\partial V(L, T)}{\partial X} = 0, \quad (4.99)$$

$$\frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial T} + V(0, T) - \gamma \frac{\partial V(0, T)}{\partial X} = 0. \quad (4.100)$$

Show that as  $\xi \rightarrow 0$  the solution approaches that found in Section 4.3.2, scaled by the factor  $\gamma/R_s$ .

---

## CHAPTER 5

---

# Excitability

We have seen in previous chapters that the control of cell volume results in a potential difference across the cell membrane, and that this potential difference causes ionic currents to flow through channels in the cell membrane. Regulation of this membrane potential by control of the ionic channels is one of the most important cellular functions. Many cells, such as neurons and muscle cells, use the membrane potential as a signal, and thus the operation of the nervous system and muscle contraction (to name but two examples) are both dependent on the generation and propagation of electrical signals.

To understand electrical signaling in cells, it is helpful (and not too inaccurate) to divide all cells into two groups: excitable cells and nonexcitable cells. Many cells maintain a stable equilibrium potential. For some, if currents are applied to the cell for a short period of time, the potential returns directly to its equilibrium value after the applied current is removed. Such cells are nonexcitable, typical examples of which are the epithelial cells that line the walls of the gut. Photoreceptors (Chapter 19) are also nonexcitable, although in their case, membrane potential plays an extremely important signaling role nonetheless.

However, there are cells for which, if the applied current is sufficiently strong, the membrane potential goes through a large excursion, called an *action potential*, before eventually returning to rest. Such cells are called *excitable*. Excitable cells include cardiac cells, smooth and skeletal muscle cells, some secretory cells, and most neurons. The most obvious advantage of excitability is that an excitable cell either responds in full to a stimulus or not at all, and thus a stimulus of sufficient amplitude may be reliably distinguished from background noise. In this way, noise is filtered out, and a signal is reliably transmitted.

There are many examples of excitability that occur in nature. A simple example of an excitable system is a household match. The chemical components of the match head are stable to small fluctuations in temperature, but a sufficiently large temperature fluctuation, caused, for example, by friction between the head and a rough surface, triggers the abrupt oxidation of these chemicals with a dramatic release of heat and light. The fuse of a stick of dynamite is a one-dimensional continuous version of an excitable medium, and a field of dry grass is its two-dimensional version. Both of these spatially extended systems admit the possibility of wave propagation (Chapter 6). The field of grass has one additional feature that the match and dynamite fuse fail to have, and that is recovery. While it is not very rapid by physiological standards, given a few months of growth, a burned-over field of grass will regrow enough fuel so that another fire may spread across it.

Although the generation and propagation of signals have been extensively studied by physiologists for at least the past 100 years, the most important landmark in these studies is the work of Alan Hodgkin and Andrew Huxley, who developed the first quantitative model of the propagation of an electrical signal along a squid giant axon (deemed “giant” because of the size of the axon, *not* the size of the squid). Their model was originally used to explain the action potential in the long giant axon of a squid nerve cell, but the ideas have since been extended and applied to a wide variety of excitable cells. Hodgkin–Huxley theory is remarkable, not only for its influence on electrophysiology, but also for its influence, after some filtering, on applied mathematics. FitzHugh (in particular) showed how the essentials of the excitable process could be distilled into a simpler model on which mathematical analysis could make some progress. Because this simplified model turned out to be of such great theoretical interest, it contributed enormously to the formation of a new field of applied mathematics, the study of excitable systems, a field that continues to stimulate a vast amount of research.

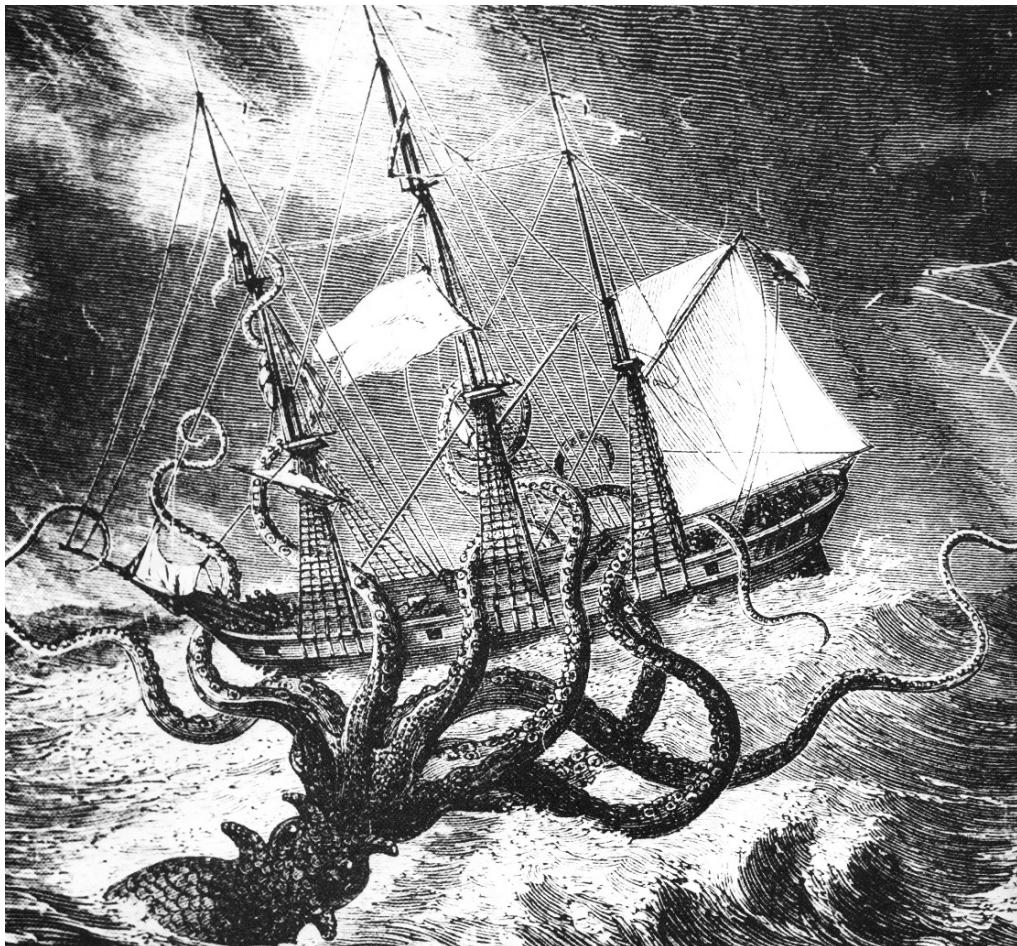
Because of the central importance of cellular electrical activity in physiology, because of the importance of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations in the study of electrical activity, and because it forms the basis for the study of excitability, it is no exaggeration to say that the Hodgkin–Huxley equations are the most important model in all of the physiological literature.

## 5.1 The Hodgkin–Huxley Model

In Chapter 2 we described how the cell membrane can be modeled as a capacitor in parallel with an ionic current, resulting in the equation

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + I_{\text{ion}}(V, t) = 0, \quad (5.1)$$

where  $V$ , as usual, denotes the internal minus the external potential ( $V = V_i - V_e$ ). In the squid giant axon, as in many neural cells, the principal ionic currents are the



**Figure 5.1** The infamous giant squid (or even octopus, if you wish to be pedantic), having nothing to do with the work of Hodgkin and Huxley on squid giant axon. From *Dangerous Sea Creatures*, © 1976, 1977 Time-Life Films, Inc.

$\text{Na}^+$  current and the  $\text{K}^+$  current. Although there are other ionic currents, primarily the  $\text{Cl}^-$  current, in the Hodgkin–Huxley theory they are small and lumped together into one current called the *leakage current*. Since the instantaneous  $I$ - $V$  curves of open  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels in the squid giant axon are approximately linear, (5.1) becomes

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -g_{\text{Na}}(V - V_{\text{Na}}) - g_{\text{K}}(V - V_{\text{K}}) - g_{\text{L}}(V - V_{\text{L}}) + I_{\text{app}}, \quad (5.2)$$

where  $I_{\text{app}}$  is the applied current. During an action potential there is a measured influx of 3.7 pmoles/cm<sup>2</sup> of  $\text{Na}^+$  and a subsequent efflux of 4.3 pmoles/cm<sup>2</sup> of  $\text{K}^+$ . These

amounts are so small that it is realistic to assume that the ionic concentrations, and hence the equilibrium potentials, are constant and unaffected by an action potential. It is important to emphasize that the choice of linear  $I$ - $V$  curves for the three different channel types is dictated largely by experimental data. Axons in other species (such as vertebrates) have ionic channels that are better described by other  $I$ - $V$  curves, such as the GHK current equation (2.123). However, the qualitative nature of the results remains largely unaffected, and so the discussion in this chapter, which is mostly of a qualitative nature, remains correct for models that use more complex  $I$ - $V$  curves to describe the ionic currents.

Equation (5.2) is a first-order ordinary differential equation and can be written in the form

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -g_{\text{eff}}(V - V_{\text{eq}}) + I_{\text{app}}, \quad (5.3)$$

where  $g_{\text{eff}} = g_{\text{Na}} + g_{\text{K}} + g_{\text{L}}$  and  $V_{\text{eq}} = (g_{\text{Na}}V_{\text{Na}} + g_{\text{K}}V_{\text{K}} + g_{\text{L}}V_{\text{L}})/g_{\text{eff}}$ .  $V_{\text{eq}}$  is the membrane resting potential and is a balance between the reversal potentials for the three ionic currents. In fact, at rest, the  $\text{Na}^+$  and leakage conductances are small compared to the  $\text{K}^+$  conductance, so that the resting potential is close to the  $\text{K}^+$  equilibrium potential.

The quantity  $R_m = 1/g_{\text{eff}}$ , the passive membrane resistance, is on the order of 1000  $\Omega \text{ cm}^2$ . The time constant for this equation is

$$\tau_m = C_m R_m, \quad (5.4)$$

on the order of 1 msec. It follows that, with a steady applied current, the membrane potential should equilibrate quickly to

$$V = V_{\text{eq}} + R_m I_{\text{app}}. \quad (5.5)$$

For sufficiently small applied currents this is indeed what happens. However, for larger applied currents the response is quite different. Assuming that the model (5.2) is correct, the only possible explanation for these differences is that the conductances are not constant but depend in some way on the voltage. Historically, the key step to determining the conductances was being able to measure the individual ionic currents and from this to deduce the changes in conductances. This was brilliantly accomplished by Hodgkin and Huxley in 1952.

### 5.1.1 History of the Hodgkin–Huxley Equations

(This section is adapted from Rinzel, 1990.) In a series of five articles that appeared in the *Journal of Physiology* in 1952, Alan Lloyd Hodgkin and Andrew Fielding Huxley, along with Bernard Katz, who was a coauthor of the lead paper and a collaborator in several related studies, unraveled the dynamic ionic conductances that generate the nerve action potential (Hodgkin et al., 1952; Hodgkin and Huxley, 1952a,b,c,d). They were awarded the 1963 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine (shared with John C. Eccles, for his work on potentials and conductances at motorneuron synapses).

Before about 1939, the membrane potential was believed to play an important role in the membrane's state, but there was no way to measure it. It was known that a cell's membrane separated different ionic concentrations inside and outside the cell. Applying the Nernst equation, Bernstein (1902) was led to suggest that the resting membrane was semipermeable to  $K^+$ , implying that, at rest,  $V$  should be around  $-70$  mV. He believed that during activity there was a breakdown in the membrane's resistance to all ionic fluxes, and potential differences would disappear, i.e.,  $V$  would approach zero.

In 1940, Cole and Curtis, using careful electrode placement coupled with biophysical and mathematical analysis, obtained the first convincing evidence for a substantial transient increase in membrane conductivity during passage of the action potential. While they estimated a large conductance increase, it was not infinite, so without a direct measurement of membrane potential it was not possible to confirm or nullify Bernstein's hypothesis. During a postdoctoral year in the U.S. in 1937–1938, Hodgkin established connections with Cole's group at Columbia and worked with them at Woods Hole in the summer. He and Curtis nearly succeeded in measuring  $V$  directly by tunneling along the giant axon with a glass micropipette. When each succeeded later (separately, with other collaborators), they found, surprisingly, that  $V$  rose transiently toward zero, but with a substantial overshoot. This finding brought into serious question the hypothesis of Bernstein and provided much food for thought during World War II, when Hodgkin, Huxley, and many other scientists were involved in the war effort.

By the time postwar experimental work was resuming in England, Cole and Mar-mont had developed the *space-clamp technique*. This method allowed one to measure directly the total transmembrane current, uniform through a known area, rather than spatially nonuniform as generated by a capillary electrode. To achieve current control with space clamping, the axon was threaded with a metallic conductor (like a thin silver wire) to provide low axial resistance and thereby eliminate voltage gradients along the length of the axon. Under these conditions the membrane potential is no longer a function of distance along the axon, only of time. In addition, during the 1947 squid season, Cole and company made substantial progress toward controlling the membrane potential as well.

In 1948, Hodgkin went to visit Cole (then at Chicago) to learn directly of their methods. With some further developments of their own, Hodgkin, Huxley, and Katz applied the techniques with great success to record transient ionic fluxes over the physiological ranges of voltages. Working diligently, they collected most of the data for their papers in the summer of 1949. Next came the step of identifying the individual contributions of the different ion species. Explicit evidence that both  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  were important came from the work of Hodgkin and Katz (1949). This also explained the earlier puzzling observations that  $V$  overshoots zero during an action potential, opposing the suggestion of Bernstein. Instead of supposing that there was a transient increase in permeability identical for all ions, Hodgkin and Katz realized that different changes in permeabilities for different ions could account for the  $V$  time course, as  $V$  would approach the Nernst potential for the ion to which the membrane was predominantly permeable, and

this dominance could change with time. For example, at rest the membrane is most permeable to  $K^+$ , so that  $V$  is close to  $V_K$ . However, if  $g_K$  were to decrease and  $g_{Na}$  were to increase, then  $V$  would be pushed toward  $V_{Na}$ , which is positive, thus depolarizing the cell.

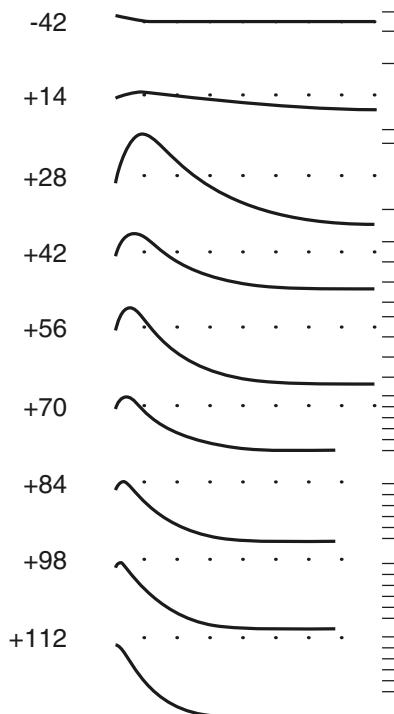
The question of how the changes in permeability were dynamically linked to  $V$  was not completely stated until the papers of 1952. In fact, the substantial delay from data collection in 1949 until final publication in 1952 can be attributed to the considerable time devoted to data analysis, model formulation, and testing. Computer downtime was also a factor, as some of the solutions of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations were computed on a desktop, hand-cranked calculator. As Hodgkin notes, “The propagated action potential took about three weeks to complete and must have been an enormous labour for Andrew [Huxley]” (Hodgkin, 1976, p. 19).

The final paper of the 1952 series is a masterpiece of the scientific art. Therein they present their elegant experimental data, a comprehensive theoretical hypothesis, a fit of the model to the experimental data (obtained for fixed values of the membrane potential), and then, presto, a prediction (from their numerical computations) of the time course of the propagated action potential. In biology, where quantitatively predictive theories are rare, this work stands out as one of the most successful combinations of experiment and theory.

### 5.1.2 Voltage and Time Dependence of Conductances

The key step to sorting out the dynamics of the conductances came from the development of the *voltage clamp*. A voltage clamp fixes the membrane potential, usually by a rapid step from one voltage to another, and then measures the current that must be supplied in order to hold the voltage constant. Since the supplied current must equal the transmembrane current, the voltage clamp provides a way to measure the transient transmembrane current that results. The crucial point is that the voltage can be stepped from one constant level to another, and so the ionic currents can be measured at a constant, known, voltage. Thus, even when the conductances are functions of the voltage (as is actually the case), a voltage clamp eliminates any voltage changes and permits measurement of the conductances as functions of time only.

Hodgkin and Huxley found that when the voltage was stepped up and held fixed at a higher level, the total ionic current was initially inward, but at later times an outward current developed (Fig. 5.2). For a number of reasons, not discussed here, they argued that the initial inward current is carried almost entirely by  $Na^+$ , while the outward current that develops later is carried largely by  $K^+$ . With these assumptions, Hodgkin and Huxley were able to use a clever trick to separate the total ionic current into its constituent ionic parts. They replaced 90% of the extracellular  $Na^+$  in the normal seawater bath with choline (a viscous liquid vitamin B complex found in many animal and vegetable tissues), which rendered the axon nonexcitable but changed the resting potential only slightly. Since it is assumed that immediately after the voltage has been stepped up, the ionic current is all carried by  $Na^+$ , it is possible to measure



**Figure 5.2** Experimental results describing the total membrane current in response to a step depolarization. The numbers on the left give the final value of the membrane potential, in mV. The interval between dots on the horizontal scale is 1 ms, while one division on the vertical scale represents 0.5 mA/cm<sup>2</sup>. (Hodgkin and Huxley, 1952a, Fig. 2a.)

the initial Na<sup>+</sup> currents in response to a voltage step. Note that although the Na<sup>+</sup> currents can be measured directly immediately after the voltage step, they cannot be measured directly over a longer time period, as the total ionic current begins to include a contribution from the K<sup>+</sup> current. If we denote the Na<sup>+</sup> currents for the two cases of normal extracellular Na<sup>+</sup> and zero extracellular Na<sup>+</sup> by  $I_{\text{Na}}^1$  and  $I_{\text{Na}}^2$  respectively, then the ratio of the two currents,

$$I_{\text{Na}}^1/I_{\text{Na}}^2 = K, \quad (5.6)$$

say, can be measured directly from the experimental data.

Next, Hodgkin and Huxley made two further assumptions. First, they assumed that the Na<sup>+</sup> current ratio  $K$  is independent of time and is thus constant over the course of each voltage clamp experiment. In other words, the amplitude and direction of the Na<sup>+</sup> current may be affected by the low extracellular Na<sup>+</sup> solution, but its time course is not. Second, they assumed that the K<sup>+</sup> channels are unaffected by the change in extracellular Na<sup>+</sup> concentration. There is considerable evidence that the Na<sup>+</sup> and K<sup>+</sup> channels are independent. Tetrodotoxin (TTX) is known to block Na<sup>+</sup> currents while leaving the K<sup>+</sup> currents almost unaffected, while tetraethylammonium (TEA) has the opposite effect of blocking the K<sup>+</sup> current but not the Na<sup>+</sup> current. To complete the argument, since  $I_{\text{ion}} = I_{\text{Na}} + I_{\text{K}}$ , and  $I_{\text{K}}^1 = I_{\text{K}}^2$ , it follows that  $I_{\text{ion}}^1 - I_{\text{Na}}^1 = I_{\text{ion}}^2 - I_{\text{Na}}^2$ , and

thus

$$I_{\text{Na}}^1 = \frac{K}{K-1} (I_{\text{ion}}^1 - I_{\text{ion}}^2), \quad (5.7)$$

$$I_K = \frac{I_{\text{ion}}^1 - K I_{\text{ion}}^2}{1-K}. \quad (5.8)$$

Hence, given measurements of the total ionic currents in the two cases, and given the ratio  $K$  of the  $\text{Na}^+$  currents, it is possible to determine the complete time courses of both the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  currents.

Finally, from knowledge of the individual currents, one obtains the conductances as

$$g_{\text{Na}} = \frac{I_{\text{Na}}}{V - V_{\text{Na}}}, \quad g_K = \frac{I_K}{V - V_K}. \quad (5.9)$$

Note that this result relies on the specific (linear) model used to describe the  $I$ - $V$  curve of the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels, but, as stated above, we assume throughout that the instantaneous  $I$ - $V$  curves of the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels are linear.

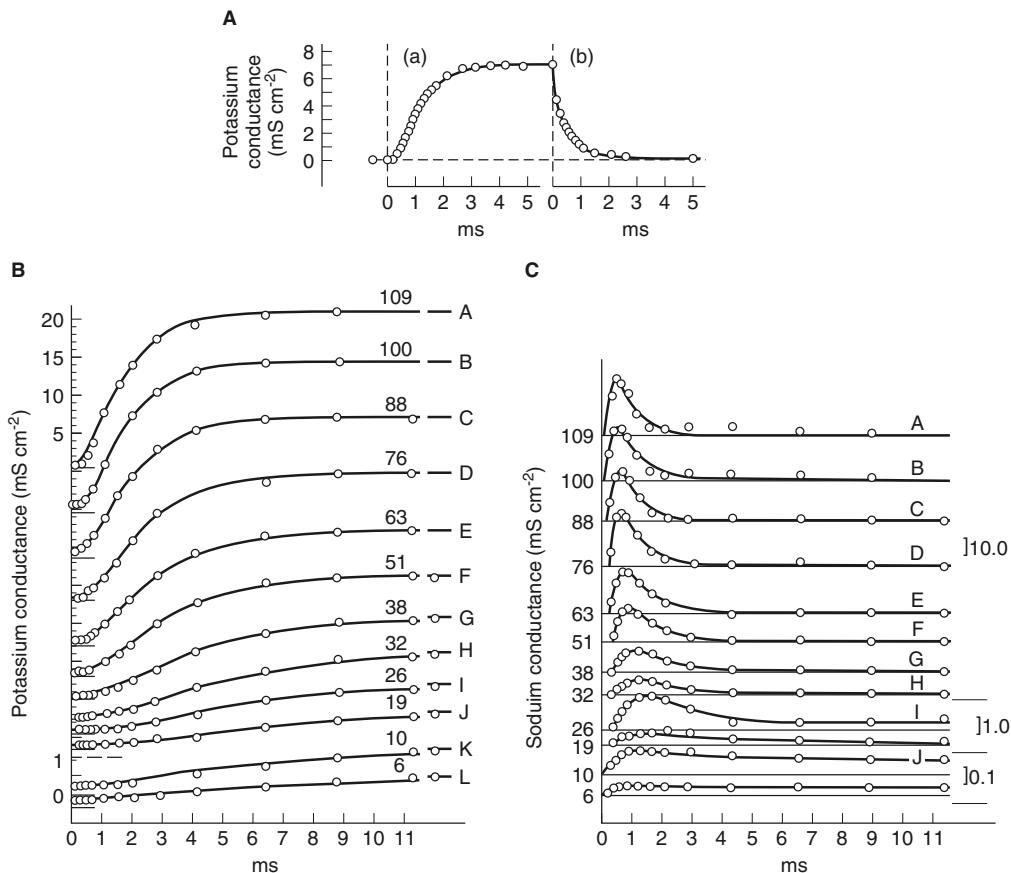
Samples of Hodgkin and Huxley's data are shown in Fig. 5.3. The plots show ionic conductances as functions of time following a step increase or decrease in the membrane potential. The important observation is that with voltages fixed, the conductances are time-dependent. For example, when  $V$  is stepped up and held fixed at a higher level,  $g_K$  does not increase instantaneously, but instead increases over time to a final steady level. Both the time constant of the increase and the final value of  $g_K$  are dependent on the value to which the voltage is stepped. Further,  $g_K$  increases in a sigmoidal fashion, with a slope that first increases and then decreases (Fig. 5.3A and B). Following a step decrease in the voltage,  $g_K$  falls in a simple exponential fashion (Fig. 5.3A). This particular feature of  $g_K$ —a sigmoidal increase coupled with an exponential decrease—is important in what follows when we model  $g_K$ . The behavior of  $g_{\text{Na}}$  is more complex. Following a step increase in voltage,  $g_{\text{Na}}$  first increases, but then decreases again, *all at the same fixed voltage* (Fig. 5.3C). Hence, the time dependence of  $g_{\text{Na}}$  requires a more complex model than for that of  $g_K$ .

### The Potassium Conductance

From the experimental data shown in Fig. 5.3A and B, it is reasonable to expect that  $g_K$  obeys some differential equation,

$$\frac{dg_K}{dt} = f(v, t), \quad (5.10)$$

say, where  $v = V - V_{\text{eq}}$ ; i.e.,  $v$  is the difference between the membrane potential and the resting potential. (Of course, since  $V_{\text{eq}}$  is a constant,  $dv/dt = dV/dt$ .) However, for  $g_K$  to have the required sigmoidal increase and exponential decrease, Hodgkin and Huxley realized that it would be easier to write  $g_K$  as some power of a different variable,  $n$  say,



**Figure 5.3** Conductance changes as a function of time at different voltage clamps. A: The response of  $g_K$  to a step increase in  $V$  and then a step decrease. B: Responses of  $g_K$  to step increases in  $V$  of varying magnitudes. The number on each curve gives the depolarization in mV, and the smooth curves are calculated from solution of (5.11) and (5.12), with the initial condition  $g_K(t = 0) = 0.24 \text{ mS/cm}^2$ . The vertical scale is the same in curves A–J, but is increased by a factor of four in the lower two curves. For clarity, the baseline of each curve has been shifted up. C: Responses of  $g_{\text{Na}}$  to step increases in  $V$  of magnitudes given by the numbers on the left, in mV. The smooth curves are the model solutions. The vertical scales on the right are in units of  $\text{mS/cm}^2$ . (Hodgkin and Huxley, 1952d, Figs. 2, 3, and 6.)

where  $n$  satisfies a first-order differential equation. Thus, they wrote

$$g_K = \bar{g}_K n^4, \quad (5.11)$$

for some constant  $\bar{g}_K$ . The fourth power was chosen not for physiological reasons, but because it was the smallest exponent that gave acceptable agreement with the experimental data. The secondary variable  $n$  obeys the differential equation

$$\tau_n(v) \frac{dn}{dt} = n_\infty(v) - n, \quad (5.12)$$

for some functions  $\tau_n(v)$  and  $n_\infty(v)$  that must be determined from the experimental data in a manner that is described below. Equation (5.12) is often written in the form

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = \alpha_n(v)(1 - n) - \beta_n(v)n, \quad (5.13)$$

where

$$n_\infty(v) = \frac{\alpha_n(v)}{\alpha_n(v) + \beta_n(v)}, \quad (5.14)$$

$$\tau_n(v) = \frac{1}{\alpha_n(v) + \beta_n(v)}. \quad (5.15)$$

At elevated potentials  $n(t)$  increases monotonically and exponentially toward its resting value, thereby turning on, or *activating*, the  $K^+$  current. Since the Nernst potential is below the resting potential, the  $K^+$  current is an outward current at potentials greater than rest. The function  $n(t)$  is called the  $K^+$  *activation*.

It is instructive to consider in detail how such a formulation for  $g_K$  results in the required sigmoidal increase and exponential decrease. Suppose that at time  $t = 0$ ,  $v$  is increased from 0 to  $v_0$  and then held constant, and suppose further that  $n$  is at steady state when  $t = 0$ , i.e.,  $n(0) = n_\infty(0)$ . For simplicity, we assume that  $n_\infty(0) = 0$ , although this assumption is not necessary for the argument. Solving (5.12) then gives

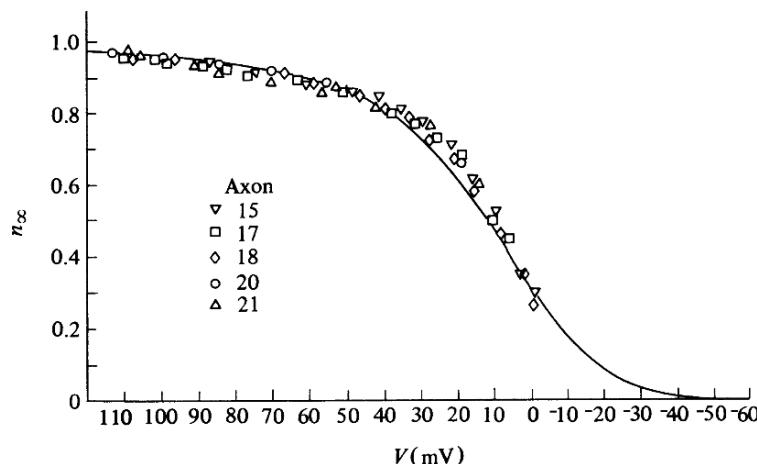
$$n(t) = n_\infty(v_0) \left[ 1 - \exp \left( \frac{-t}{\tau_n(v_0)} \right) \right], \quad (5.16)$$

which is an increasing curve (with monotonically decreasing slope) that approaches its maximum at  $n_\infty(v_0)$ . Raising  $n$  to the fourth power gives a sigmoidally increasing curve as required. Higher powers of  $n$  result in curves with a greater maximum slope at the point of inflection. However, in response to a step decrease in  $v$ , from  $v_0$  to 0 say, the solution for  $n$  is

$$n(t) = n_\infty(v_0) \exp \left( \frac{-t}{\tau_n(0)} \right), \quad (5.17)$$

in which case  $n^4$  is exponentially decreasing, with no inflection point.

It remains to describe how the functions  $n_\infty$  and  $\tau_n$  are determined from the experimental data. For any given voltage step, the time constant  $\tau_n$ , and the final value of  $n$ , namely  $n_\infty$ , can be determined by fitting (5.16) to the experimental data. By this procedure one can determine  $\tau_n$  and  $n_\infty$  at a discrete set of values for  $v$ , i.e., those values used experimentally. Typical data points for  $n_\infty$  are shown in Fig. 5.4 as symbols. To obtain a complete description of  $g_K$ , valid for all voltages and not only those used in the experiments, Hodgkin and Huxley fitted a smooth curve through the data points. The functional form of the smooth curve has no physiological significance, but is a convenient way of providing a continuous description of  $n_\infty$ . A similar procedure is followed for  $\tau_n$ . The continuous descriptions of  $n_\infty$  and  $\tau_n$  (expressed in terms of  $\alpha_n$  and  $\beta_n$ ) are given in (5.28) and (5.29) below.



**Figure 5.4** Data points (symbols) of  $n_\infty$ , determined by fitting (5.16) to the experimental time courses. The smooth curve through the symbols provides a continuous description of  $n_\infty$ , and its functional form has no physiological significance. In the original plot (Hodgkin and Huxley, 1952d, Fig. 5)  $V$  was calculated with a reverse sign, which has here been changed to agree with modern conventions. Thus, the horizontal axis appears reversed.

### The Sodium Conductance

The time dependence for the  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance is more difficult to unravel. From the experimental data it is suggested that there are two processes at work, one that turns on the  $\text{Na}^+$  current and one that turns it off. Hodgkin and Huxley proposed that the  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance is of the form

$$g_{\text{Na}}(v) = \bar{g}_{\text{Na}}m^3h, \quad (5.18)$$

and they fitted the time-dependent behavior of  $m$  and  $h$  to exponentials with dynamics

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = \alpha_w(1 - w) - \beta_w w, \quad (5.19)$$

where  $w = m$  or  $h$ . Because  $m$  is small at rest and first increases, it is called the *sodium activation variable*, and because  $h$  shuts down, or inactivates, the  $\text{Na}^+$  current, it is called the *sodium inactivation variable*. When  $h = 0$ , the  $\text{Na}^+$  current is completely inactivated. The overall procedure is similar to that used in the specification of  $g_K$ . For any fixed voltage step, the unknown functions  $\alpha_w$  and  $\beta_w$  are determined by fitting to the experimental curves (Fig. 5.3C), and then smooth curves, with arbitrary functional forms, are fitted through the data points for  $\alpha_w$  and  $\beta_w$ .

### Summary of the Equations

In summary, the Hodgkin–Huxley equations for the space-clamped axon are

$$C_m \frac{dv}{dt} = -\bar{g}_{\text{K}}n^4(v - v_K) - \bar{g}_{\text{Na}}m^3h(v - v_{\text{Na}}) - \bar{g}_L(v - v_L) + I_{\text{app}}, \quad (5.20)$$

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \alpha_m(1 - m) - \beta_m m, \quad (5.21)$$

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = \alpha_n(1 - n) - \beta_n n, \quad (5.22)$$

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \alpha_h(1 - h) - \beta_h h. \quad (5.23)$$

The specific functions  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  proposed by Hodgkin and Huxley are, in units of  $(\text{ms})^{-1}$ ,

$$\alpha_m = 0.1 \frac{25 - \nu}{\exp\left(\frac{25-\nu}{10}\right) - 1}, \quad (5.24)$$

$$\beta_m = 4 \exp\left(\frac{-\nu}{18}\right), \quad (5.25)$$

$$\alpha_h = 0.07 \exp\left(\frac{-\nu}{20}\right), \quad (5.26)$$

$$\beta_h = \frac{1}{\exp\left(\frac{30-\nu}{10}\right) + 1}, \quad (5.27)$$

$$\alpha_n = 0.01 \frac{10 - \nu}{\exp\left(\frac{10-\nu}{10}\right) - 1}, \quad (5.28)$$

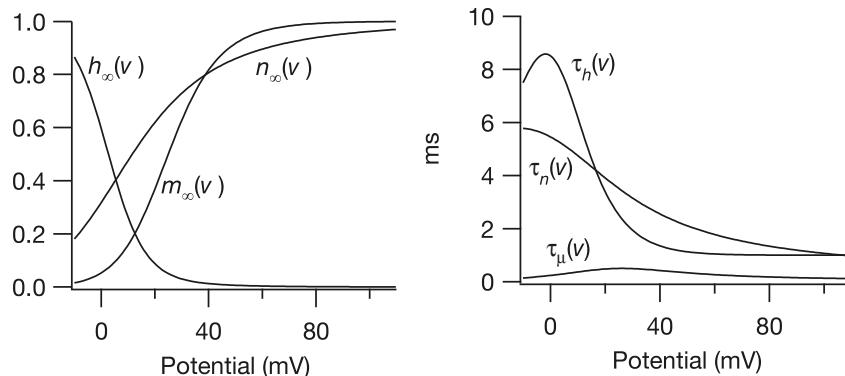
$$\beta_n = 0.125 \exp\left(\frac{-\nu}{80}\right). \quad (5.29)$$

For these expressions, the potential  $\nu$  is the deviation from rest ( $\nu = V - V_{\text{eq}}$ ), measured in units of mV, current density is in units of  $\mu\text{A}/\text{cm}^2$ , conductances are in units of  $\text{mS}/\text{cm}^2$ , and capacitance is in units of  $\mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$ . The remaining parameters are

$$\bar{g}_{\text{Na}} = 120, \quad \bar{g}_{\text{K}} = 36, \quad \bar{g}_{\text{L}} = 0.3, \quad C_m = 1, \quad (5.30)$$

with (shifted) equilibrium potentials  $v_{\text{Na}} = 115$ ,  $v_{\text{K}} = -12$ , and  $v_{\text{L}} = 10.6$ . (The astute reader will notice immediately that these values are not quite consistent with the values given in Table 2.1. Instead, these correspond to  $V_{\text{Na}} = 50$  mV,  $V_{\text{K}} = -77$  mV,  $V_{\text{L}} = -54.4$  mV, with an equilibrium membrane potential of  $V_{\text{eq}} = -65$  mV. These values are close enough to those of Table 2.1 to be of no concern.) In Fig. 5.5 are shown the steady-state functions and the time constants.

In Chapter 3 we discussed simple models of the gating of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels and showed how the rate constants in simple kinetic schemes could be determined from whole-cell or single-channel data. We also showed how models of the form (5.20)–(5.23) can be derived by modeling the ionic channels as consisting of multiple subunits, each of which obeys a simple two-state model. For example, the Hodgkin–Huxley  $\text{Na}^+$  gating equations can be derived from the assumption that the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel consists of three “ $m$ ” gates and one “ $h$ ” gate, each of which can be either closed or open. If the gates operate independently, then the fraction of open  $\text{Na}^+$  channels is  $m^3h$ , where  $m$  and  $h$  obey the equation of the two-state channel model. Similarly, if there are four “ $n$ ” gates



**Figure 5.5** In the left panel are the steady-state functions, and in the right panel are the time constants of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations (5.20)–(5.23).

per  $\text{K}^+$  channel, all of which must be open for  $\text{K}^+$  to flow, then the fraction of open  $\text{K}^+$  channels is  $n^4$ .

Now comes the most interesting challenge facing these equations. Having incorporated the measurements of conductance found from voltage-clamp experiments, one wonders whether these equations reproduce a realistic action potential, and if so, by what mechanism is the action potential produced? We can describe in qualitative terms how the Hodgkin–Huxley equations should work. If small currents are applied to a cell for a short period of time, the potential returns rapidly to its equilibrium  $v = 0$  after the applied current is removed. The equilibrium potential is close to the  $\text{K}^+$  Nernst potential  $v_K = -12$ , because at rest, the  $\text{Na}^+$  and leakage conductances are small. There is always competition among the three ionic currents to drive the potential to the corresponding resting potential. For example, if the  $\text{K}^+$  and leakage currents could be blocked or the  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance dramatically increased, then the term  $g_{\text{Na}}(V - V_{\text{Na}})$  should dominate (5.2), and as long as  $v$  is below  $v_{\text{Na}}$ , an inward  $\text{Na}^+$  current would drive the potential toward  $v_{\text{Na}}$ . Similarly, while  $v$  is above  $v_K$ , the  $\text{K}^+$  current is outward in an attempt to drive  $v$  toward  $v_K$ . Notice that since  $v_K < v_L < v_{\text{Na}}$ ,  $v$  is necessarily restricted to lie in the range  $v_K < v < v_{\text{Na}}$ .

If  $g_{\text{Na}}$  and  $g_K$  were constant, that would be the end of the story. The equilibrium at  $v = 0$  would be a stable equilibrium, and, following any stimulus, the potential would return exponentially to rest. But since  $g_{\text{Na}}$  and  $g_K$  can change, the different currents can exert their respective influences. The actual sequence of events is determined by the dynamics of  $m$ ,  $n$ , and  $h$ . The most important observation for the moment is that  $\tau_m(v)$  is much smaller than either  $\tau_n(v)$  or  $\tau_h(v)$ , so that  $m(t)$  responds much more quickly to changes in  $v$  than either  $n$  or  $h$ . We can now understand why the Hodgkin–Huxley system is an excitable system. As noted above, if the potential  $v$  is raised slightly by a small stimulating current, the system returns to its stable equilibrium. However, during the period of time that the potential  $v$  is elevated, the  $\text{Na}^+$  activation  $m$  tracks  $m_\infty(v)$ . If the stimulating current is large enough to raise the potential and therefore  $m_\infty(v)$  to a

high enough level (above its threshold), then before the system can return to rest,  $m$  will increase sufficiently to change the sign of the net current, resulting in an autocatalytic inward  $\text{Na}^+$  current. Now, as the potential rises,  $m$  continues to rise, and the inward  $\text{Na}^+$  current is increased, further adding to the rise of the potential.

If nothing further were to happen, the potential would be driven to a new equilibrium at  $v_{\text{Na}}$ . However, here is where the difference in time constants plays an important role. When the potential is at rest, the  $\text{Na}^+$  inactivation variable,  $h$ , is positive, about 0.6. As the potential increases,  $h_\infty$  decreases toward zero, and as  $h$  approaches zero, the  $\text{Na}^+$  current is inactivated because  $g_{\text{Na}}$  approaches zero. However, because the time constant  $\tau_h(v)$  is much larger than  $\tau_m(v)$ , there is a considerable delay between turning on the  $\text{Na}^+$  current (as  $m$  increases) and turning off the  $\text{Na}^+$  current (as  $h$  decreases). The net effect of the two different time scales of  $m$  and  $h$  is that the  $\text{Na}^+$  current is at first turned on and later turned off, and this is seen as an initial increase of the potential, followed by a decrease toward rest.

At about the same time that the  $\text{Na}^+$  current is inactivated, the outward  $\text{K}^+$  current is activated. This is because of the similarity of the time constants  $\tau_n(v)$  and  $\tau_h(v)$ . Activation of the  $\text{K}^+$  current drives the potential below rest toward  $v_{\text{K}}$ . When  $v$  is negative,  $n$  declines, and the potential eventually returns to rest, and the whole process can start again. Fig. 5.6A shows a plot of the potential  $v(t)$  during an action potential following a superthreshold stimulus. Fig. 5.6B shows  $m(t)$ ,  $n(t)$ , and  $h(t)$  during the same action potential.

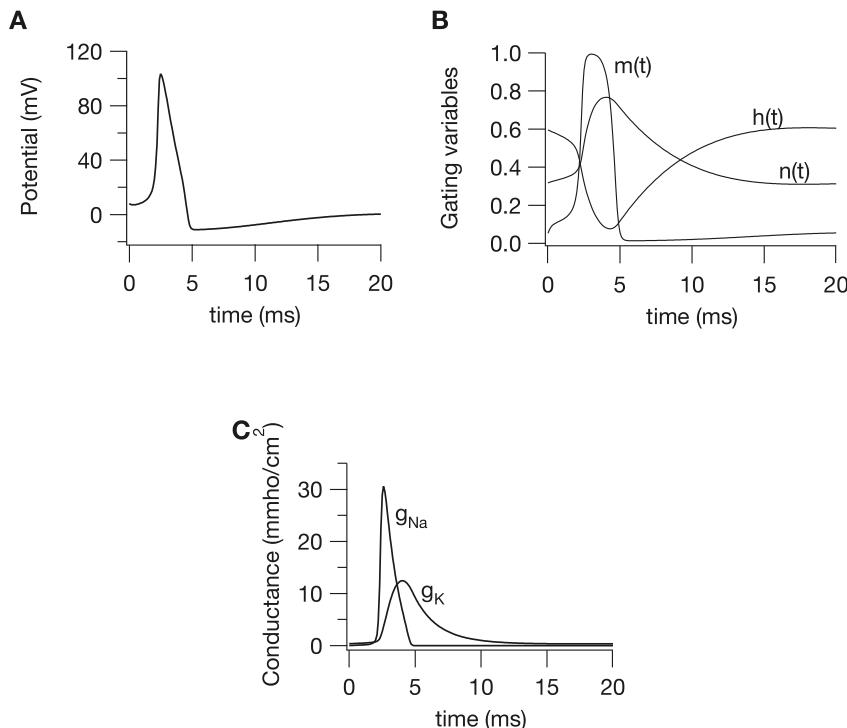
There are four recognizable phases of an action potential: the *upstroke*, *excited*, *refractory*, and *recovery* phases. The refractory period is the period following the excited phase when additional stimuli evoke no substantial response, even though the potential is below or close to its resting value. There can be no response, since the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are inactivated because  $h$  is small. As  $h$  gradually returns to its resting value, further responses once again become possible.

### Oscillations in the Hodgkin–Huxley Equations

There are two ways that the Hodgkin–Huxley system can be made into an autonomous oscillator. The first is to inject a steady current of sufficient strength, i.e., by increasing  $I_{\text{app}}$ . Such a current raises the resting potential above the threshold for an action potential, so that after the axon has recovered from an action potential, the potential rises to a superthreshold level at which another action potential is evoked.

In Fig. 5.7A we plot the steady state  $v$  (i.e.,  $V - V_{\text{eq}}$ ) as a function of the applied current,  $I_{\text{app}}$ . The stable steady state is plotted as a solid line, and an unstable steady state is plotted with a dashed line. As  $I_{\text{app}}$  increases, so does  $v$ , and the steady state is stable for  $I_{\text{app}} < 9.78$ , at which value it loses stability in a subcritical Hopf bifurcation. This bifurcation gives rise to a branch of unstable limit cycle oscillations which bends backwards initially. Unstable limit cycles are drawn with a dashed line, and stable ones with a solid line.

In Fig. 5.7A we also plot the minimum and maximum of the oscillations (i.e.,  $\text{osc min}$  and  $\text{osc max}$ ) as functions of  $I_{\text{app}}$ . The branch of unstable limit cycles terminates at

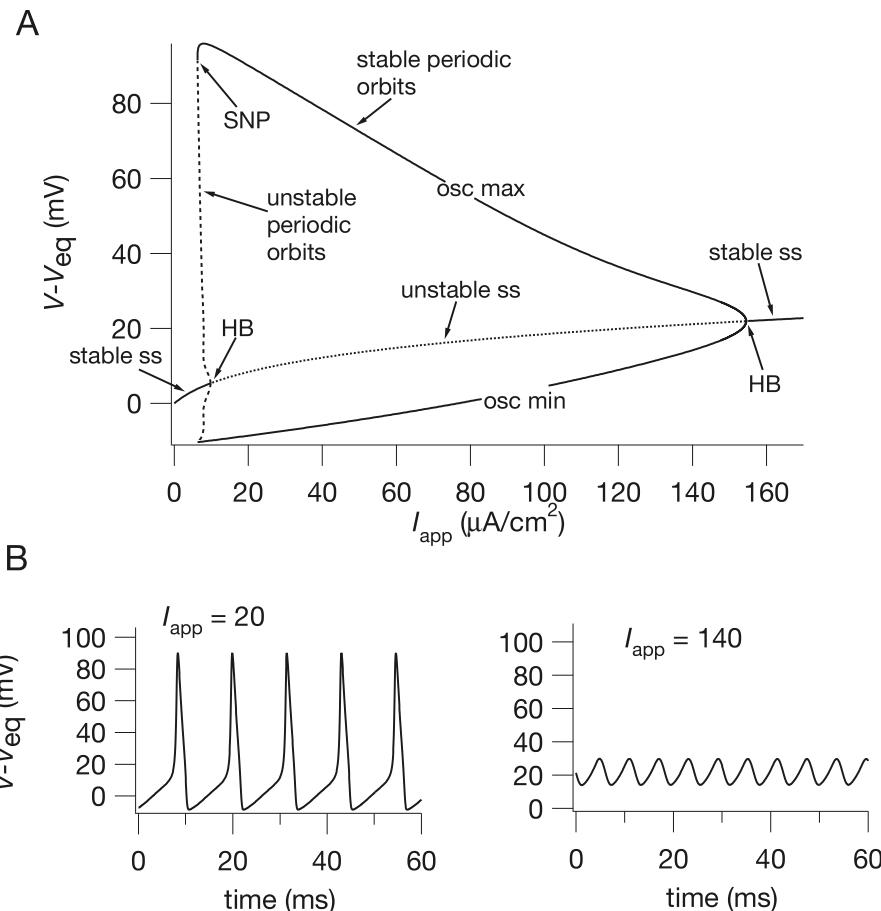


**Figure 5.6** An action potential in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations. A: The action potential; B: the gating variables during an action potential, and C: the conductances during an action potential.

a limit point (a saddle-node of periodics, or SNP, bifurcation) where it coalesces with a branch of stable limit cycles. The stable periodic solutions are observed by direct numerical simulation of the differential equations. At larger values of  $I_{app}$ , the limit cycles disappear in another Hopf bifurcation, this time a supercritical one, leaving only a branch of stable steady-state solutions for higher values of  $I_{app}$ .

Hence, for intermediate values of  $I_{app}$ , stable oscillations exist. Two examples are shown in Fig. 5.7B. When  $I_{app}$  is too high, the model exhibits only a raised steady state. Furthermore, for a narrow range of values of  $I_{app}$ , slightly below the lower Hopf bifurcation, a stable steady state, an unstable periodic orbit, and a stable periodic orbit coexist.

Immersing the axon in a bath of high extracellular  $K^+$  has the same effect through a slightly different mechanism. Increased extracellular  $K^+$  has the effect of increasing the  $K^+$  Nernst potential, raising the resting potential (since the resting potential is close to the  $K^+$  Nernst potential). If this increase of the  $K^+$  Nernst potential is sufficiently large, the resting potential becomes superthreshold, and autonomous oscillations result. This mechanism of creating an autonomous oscillator out of normally excitable but nonoscillatory cells is important for certain cardiac arrhythmias.



**Figure 5.7** A: Bifurcation diagram of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, with the applied current,  $I_{\text{app}}$  as the bifurcation parameter. HB denotes a Hopf bifurcation, SNP denotes a saddle-node of periodics bifurcation, osc max and osc min denote, respectively, the maximum and minimum of an oscillation, and ss denotes a steady state. Solid lines denote stable branches, dashed or dotted lines denote unstable branches. B: Sample oscillations at two different values of  $I_{\text{app}}$ .

### 5.1.3 Qualitative Analysis

FitzHugh (1960, 1961, 1969) provided a particularly elegant qualitative description of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations that allows a better understanding of the model's behavior. More detailed analyses have also been given by Rinzel (1978), Troy (1978), Cole et al. (1955), and Sabah and Spangler (1970). FitzHugh's approach is based on the fact that some of the model variables have fast kinetics, while others are much slower. In particular,  $m$  and  $v$  are fast variables (i.e., the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel activates quickly, and the membrane potential changes quickly), while  $n$  and  $h$  are slow variables (i.e.,

$\text{Na}^+$  channels are inactivated slowly, and the  $\text{K}^+$  channels are activated slowly). Thus, during the initial stages of the action potential,  $n$  and  $h$  remain essentially constant while  $m$  and  $v$  vary. This allows the full four-dimensional phase space to be simplified by fixing the slow variables and considering the behavior of the model as a function only of the two fast variables. Although this description is accurate only for the initial stages of the action potential, it provides a useful way to study the process of excitation.

### The Fast Phase Plane

Thus motivated, we fix the slow variables  $n$  and  $h$  at their respective resting states, which we call  $n_0$  and  $h_0$ , and consider how  $m$  and  $v$  behave in response to stimulation. The differential equations for the fast phase plane are

$$C_m \frac{dv}{dt} = -\bar{g}_{\text{K}} n_0^4 (v - v_{\text{K}}) - \bar{g}_{\text{Na}} m^3 h_0 (v - v_{\text{Na}}) - \bar{g}_{\text{L}} (v - v_{\text{L}}), \quad (5.31)$$

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \alpha_m (1 - m) - \beta_m m, \quad (5.32)$$

or, equivalently,

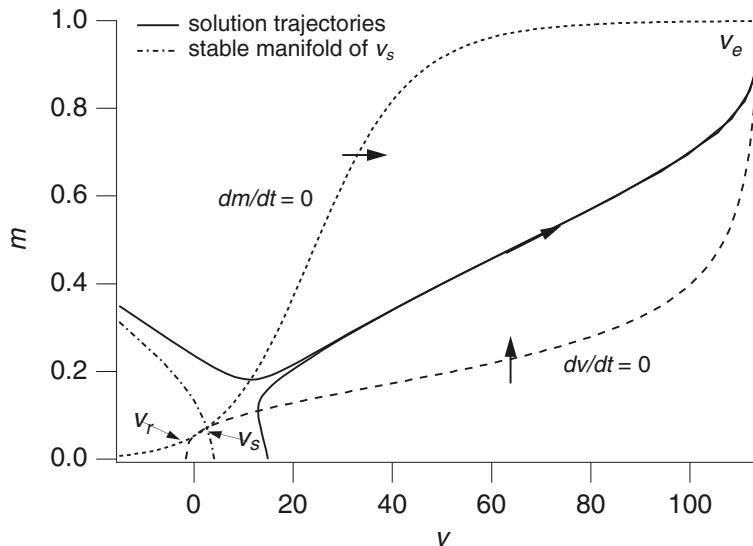
$$\tau_m \frac{dm}{dt} = m_{\infty} - m. \quad (5.33)$$

This is a two-dimensional system and can be studied in the  $(m, v)$  phase plane, a plot of which is given in Fig. 5.8. The curves defined by  $dv/dt = 0$  and  $dm/dt = 0$  are the  $v$  and  $m$  nullclines, respectively. The  $m$  nullcline is the curve  $m = m_{\infty}(v)$ , which we have seen before (in Fig. 5.5), while the  $v$  nullcline is the curve

$$v = \frac{\bar{g}_{\text{Na}} m^3 h_0 v_{\text{Na}} + \bar{g}_{\text{K}} n_0^4 v_{\text{K}} + \bar{g}_{\text{L}} v_{\text{L}}}{\bar{g}_{\text{Na}} m^3 h_0 + \bar{g}_{\text{K}} n_0^4 + \bar{g}_{\text{L}}}. \quad (5.34)$$

For the parameters of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, the  $m$  and  $v$  nullclines intersect in three places, corresponding to three steady states of the fast equations. Note that these three intersections are not steady states of the full model, only of the fast subsystem, and, to be precise, should be called pseudo-steady states. However, in the context of the fast phase plane we continue to call them steady states. We label the three steady states  $v_r$ ,  $v_s$ , and  $v_e$  (for resting, saddle, and excited).

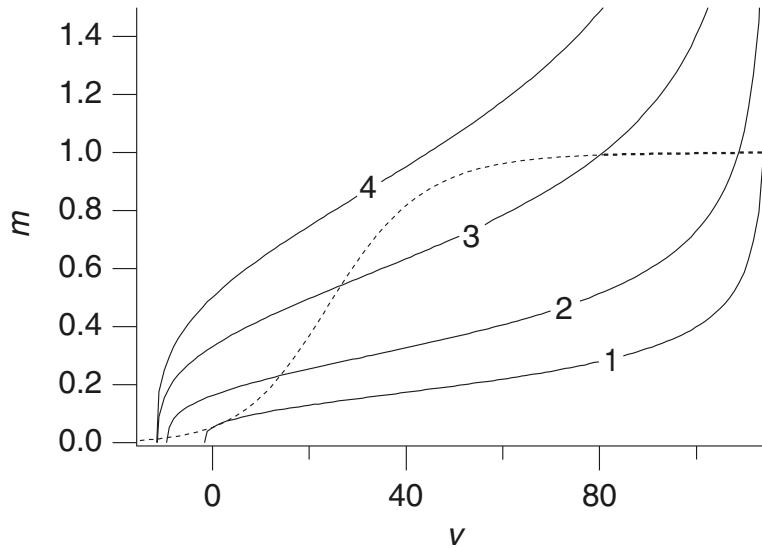
It is left as an exercise to show that  $v_r$  and  $v_e$  are stable steady states of the fast subsystem, while  $v_s$  is a saddle point. Since  $v_s$  is a saddle point, it has a one-dimensional stable manifold, shown as a dot-dash line in Fig. 5.8. This stable manifold divides the  $(m, v)$  plane into two regions: any trajectory starting to the left of the stable manifold is prevented from reaching  $v_e$  and must eventually return to the resting state,  $v_r$ . However, any trajectory starting to the right of the stable manifold is prevented from returning to the resting state and must eventually end up at the excited state,  $v_e$ . Hence, the stable manifold, in combination with the two stable steady states, gives rise to a threshold phenomenon. Any perturbation from the resting state that is not large enough to cross the stable manifold eventually dies away, but a perturbation that crosses the



**Figure 5.8** The Hodgkin–Huxley fast phase plane, showing the nullclines  $dv/dt = 0$  and  $dm/dt = 0$  (with  $h_0 = 0.596$ ,  $n_0 = 0.3176$ ), two sample trajectories and the stable manifold of the saddle point  $v_s$ .

stable manifold results in a large excursion in the voltage to the excited state. Sample trajectories are sketched in Fig. 5.8.

If  $m$  and  $v$  were the only variables in the model, then  $v$  would stay at  $v_e$  indefinitely. However, as pointed out before,  $v_e$  is not a steady state of the full model. Thus, to see what happens on a longer time scale, we must consider how slow variations in  $n$  and  $h$  affect the fast phase plane. First note that since  $v_e > v_r$ , it follows that  $h_\infty(v_e) < h_\infty(v_r)$  and  $n_\infty(v_e) > n_\infty(v_r)$ . Hence, while  $v$  is at the excited state,  $h$  begins to decrease, thus inactivating the  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance, and  $n$  starts to increase thus activating the  $\text{K}^+$  conductance. Next note that although the  $m$  nullcline in the fast phase plane is independent of  $n$  and  $h$ , the  $v$  nullcline is not. In Fig. 5.8 the nullclines were drawn using the steady-state values for  $n$  and  $h$ : different values of  $n$  and  $h$  change the shape of the  $v$  nullcline. As  $n$  increases and  $h$  decreases, the  $v$  nullcline moves to the left and up, as illustrated in Fig. 5.9. As the  $v$  nullcline moves up and to the left,  $v_e$  and  $v_s$  move toward each other, while  $v_r$  moves to the left. During this phase the voltage is at  $v_e$  and thus decreases slowly. Eventually,  $v_e$  and  $v_s$  coalesce and disappear in a saddle-node bifurcation. When this happens  $v_r$  is the only remaining steady state, and so the solution must return to the resting state. Note that since the  $v$  nullcline has moved up and to the left,  $v_r$  is not a steady state of the full system. However, when  $v$  decreases to  $v_r$ ,  $n$  and  $h$  both return to their steady states and as they do so,  $v_r$  slowly increases until the steady state of the full system is reached and the action potential is complete. A schematic diagram of a complete action potential is shown in Fig. 5.10.



**Figure 5.9** The Hodgkin–Huxley fast phase plane as a function of the slow variables, showing the  $m$  nullcline (dashed), the movement of the  $v$  nullcline (solid) and the disappearance of the steady states. For these curves, parameter values are (1)  $h_0 = 0.596$ ,  $n_0 = 0.3176$ ; (2)  $h_0 = 0.4$ ,  $n_0 = 0.5$ ; (3)  $h_0 = 0.2$ ,  $n_0 = 0.7$ ; and (4)  $h_0 = 0.1$ ,  $n_0 = 0.8$ .

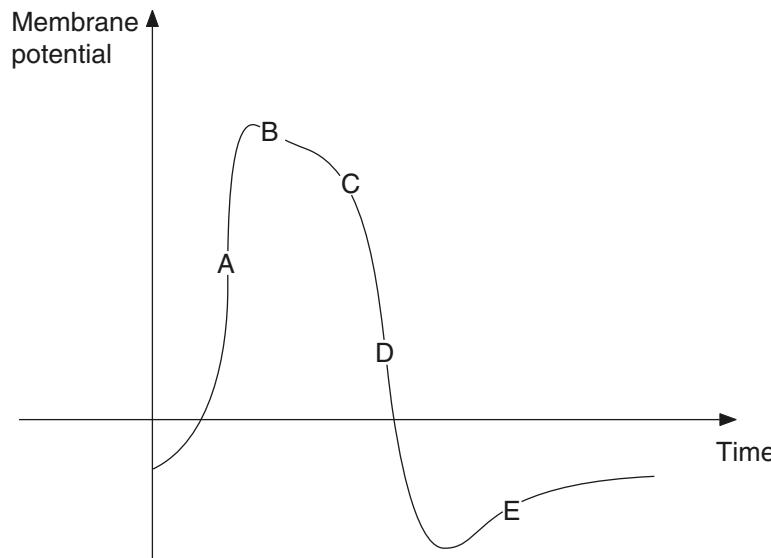
### The Fast–Slow Phase Plane

In the above analysis, the four-dimensional phase space was simplified by taking a series of two-dimensional cross-sections, those with various fixed values of  $n$  and  $h$ . However, by taking a different cross-section other aspects of the action potential can be highlighted. In particular, by taking a cross-section involving one fast variable and one slow variable we obtain a description of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations that has proven to be extraordinarily useful.

We extract a single fast variable by assuming that  $m$  is always in instantaneous equilibrium, and thus  $m = m_\infty(v)$ . This corresponds to assuming that activation of the  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance is on a time scale faster than that of the voltage. Next, FitzHugh noticed that during the course of an action potential,  $h+n \approx 0.8$  (notice the approximate symmetry of  $n(t)$  and  $h(t)$  in Fig. 5.6), and thus  $h$  can be eliminated by setting  $h = 0.8 - n$ . With these simplifications, the Hodgkin–Huxley equations contain one fast variable  $v$  and one slow variable  $n$ , and can be written as

$$-C_m \frac{dv}{dt} = \bar{g}_K n^4 (v - v_K) + \bar{g}_{\text{Na}} m_\infty^3(v) (0.8 - n)(v - v_{\text{Na}}) + \bar{g}_L (v - v_L), \quad (5.35)$$

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = \alpha_n(1 - n) - \beta_n n. \quad (5.36)$$

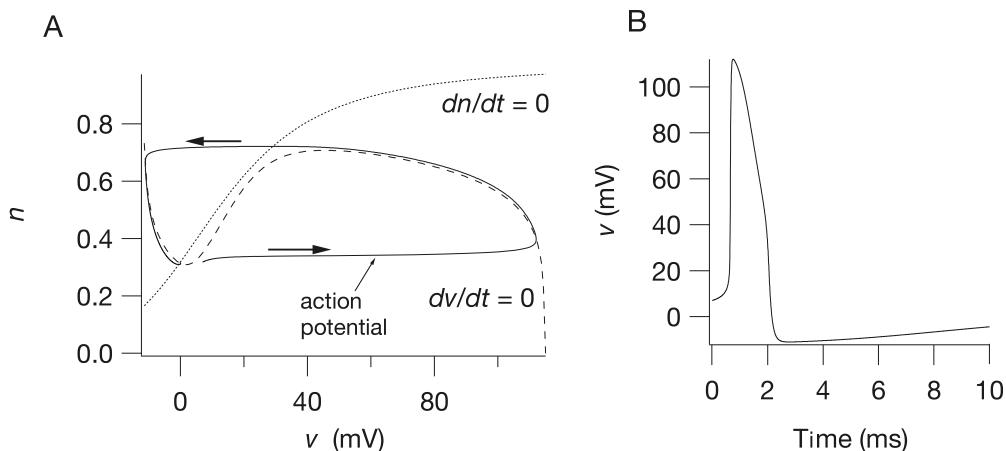


**Figure 5.10** Schematic diagram of a complete action potential. A: Superthreshold stimulus causes a fast increase of  $v$  to the excited state. B:  $v$  is sitting at the excited state,  $v_e$ , decreasing slowly as  $n$  increases and  $h$  decreases, i.e., as  $v_e$  moves toward  $v_s$ . C:  $v_e$  and  $v_s$  disappear at a saddle-node bifurcation, and so, D: The solution must return to the resting state  $v_r$ . E:  $n$  and  $h$  slowly return to their resting states, and as they do so,  $v_r$  slowly increases until the steady state of the full four-dimensional system is reached.

For convenience we let  $f(v, n)$  denote the right-hand side of (5.35), i.e.,

$$-f(v, n) = \bar{g}_K n^4 (v - v_K) + \bar{g}_{Na} m_\infty^3(v) (0.8 - n)(v - v_{Na}) + \bar{g}_L (v - v_L). \quad (5.37)$$

A plot of the nullclines of the fast-slow subsystem is given in Fig. 5.11A. The  $v$  nullcline is defined by  $f(v, n) = 0$  and has a cubic shape, while the  $n$  nullcline is  $n_\infty(v)$  and is monotonically increasing. There is a single intersection (at least for the given parameter values) and thus a single steady state. Because  $v$  is a fast variable and  $n$  is a slow one, the solution trajectories are almost horizontal except where  $f(v, n) \approx 0$ . The curve  $f(v, n) = 0$  is called the *slow manifold*. Along the slow manifold the solution moves slowly in the direction determined by the sign of  $dn/dt$ , but away from the slow manifold the solution moves quickly in a horizontal direction. From the sign of  $dv/dt$  it follows that the solution trajectories move away from the middle branch of the slow manifold and toward the left and right branches. Thus, the middle branch is termed the unstable branch of the slow manifold. This unstable branch acts as a threshold. If a perturbation from the steady state is small enough so that  $v$  does not cross the unstable manifold, then the trajectory moves horizontally toward the left and returns to the steady state. However, if the perturbation is large enough so that  $v$  crosses the unstable manifold, then the trajectory moves to the right until it reaches



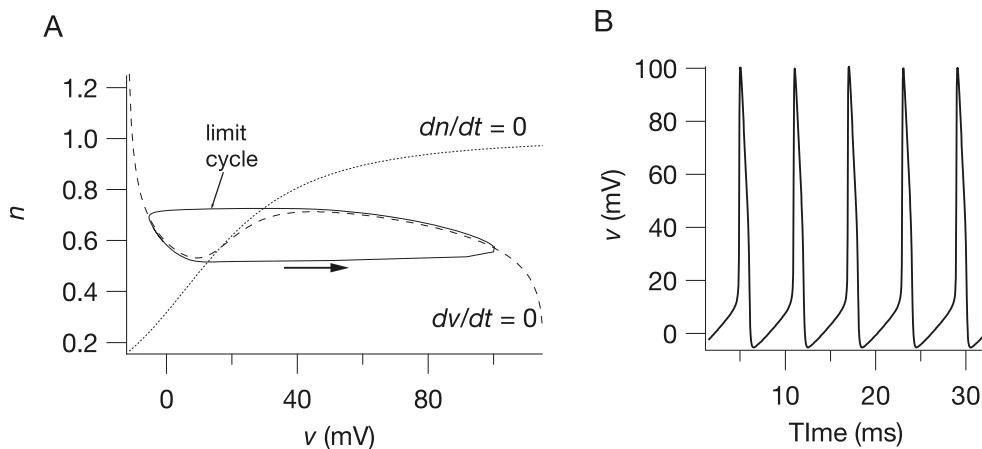
**Figure 5.11** A: Fast–slow phase plane of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations (with  $I_{app} = 0$ ), showing the nullclines and an action potential. B: Action potential of panel A, plotted as a function of time.

the right branch of the slow manifold, which corresponds to the excited state. On this right branch  $dn/dt > 0$ , and so the solution moves slowly up the slow manifold until the turning point is reached. At the turning point,  $n$  cannot increase any further, as the right branch of the slow manifold ceases to exist, and so the solution moves over to the left branch of the slow manifold. On this left branch  $dn/dt < 0$ , and so the solution moves down the left branch until the steady state is reached, completing the action potential (Fig. 5.11A). A plot of the potential as a function of time is shown in Fig. 5.11B.

The variables  $v$  and  $n$  are usually called the excitation and recovery variables, respectively: excitation because  $v$  governs the rise to the excited state, and recovery because  $n$  causes the return to the steady state. In the absence of  $n$  the solution would stay at the excited state indefinitely.

There is a close relationship between the fast phase plane and the fast–slow phase plane. Recall that in the fast phase plane, the  $v$  and  $m$  nullclines have three intersection points when  $n = n_0$  and  $h = h_0$ . These three intersections correspond to the three branches of the curve  $f(v, n_0) = 0$ . In other words, when  $n$  is fixed at  $n_0$ , the equation  $f(v, n_0) = 0$  has three possible solutions, corresponding to  $v_r$ ,  $v_s$  and  $v_e$  in the fast phase plane. However, consideration of Fig. 5.11 shows that, as  $n$  increases, the two rightmost branches of the slow manifold (i.e., the dashed line) coalesce and disappear. This is analogous to the merging and disappearance of  $v_e$  and  $v_s$  seen in the fast phase plane (Fig. 5.9). The fast–slow phase plane is a convenient way of summarizing how  $v_r$ ,  $v_s$ , and  $v_e$  depend on the slow variables.

This representation of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations in terms of two variables, one fast and one slow, is the basis of the FitzHugh–Nagumo model of excitability, and models of this generic type are discussed in some detail throughout this book.



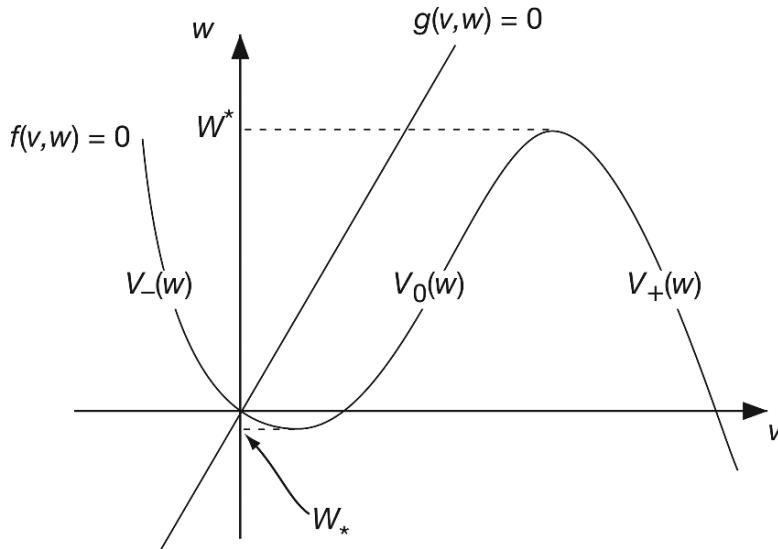
**Figure 5.12** A: Fast–slow phase plane of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, with  $I_{app} = 50$ , showing the nullclines and an oscillation. B: The oscillations of panel A, plotted as a function of time.

### Oscillations in the Fast–Slow Phase Plane

As was true for the full Hodgkin–Huxley equations, the addition of an applied current to the fast–slow phase plane gives rise to oscillations. Why this is so can be seen in Fig. 5.12. As  $I_{app}$  increases, the cubic nullcline moves across and up, until the two nullclines intersect on the middle branch of the cubic. The trajectory can never approach this steady state, always falling off each of the branches of the cubic, and alternating periodically between the two stable branches in what is called a relaxation limit cycle.

## 5.2 The FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations

There is considerable value in studying systems of equations that are simpler than the Hodgkin–Huxley equations but that retain many of their qualitative features. This is the motivation for the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations and their variants. Basically, the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations extract the essential behavior of the Hodgkin–Huxley fast–slow phase plane and presents it in a simplified form. Thus, the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations have two variables, one fast ( $v$ ) and one slow ( $w$ ). The fast variable has a cubic nullcline and is called the excitation variable, while the slow variable is called the recovery variable and has a nullcline that is monotonically increasing. The nullclines have a single intersection point, which, without loss of generality, is assumed to be at the origin. A schematic diagram of the phase plane is given in Fig. 5.13, where we introduce some of the notation used later in this section.



**Figure 5.13** Schematic diagram of the generalized FitzHugh–Nagumo phase plane.

The traditional FitzHugh–Nagumo equations are obtained by assuming a cubic nullcline for  $v$  and a linear nullcline for  $w$ . Thus,

$$\epsilon \frac{dv}{dt} = f(v) - w + I_{\text{app}}, \quad (5.38)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = v - \gamma w, \quad (5.39)$$

where

$$f(v) = v(1 - v)(v - \alpha), \quad \text{for } 0 < \alpha < 1, \epsilon \ll 1. \quad (5.40)$$

$I_{\text{app}}$  is the applied current. Typical values would be  $\alpha = 0.1$ ,  $\gamma = 0.5$  and  $\epsilon = 0.01$ .

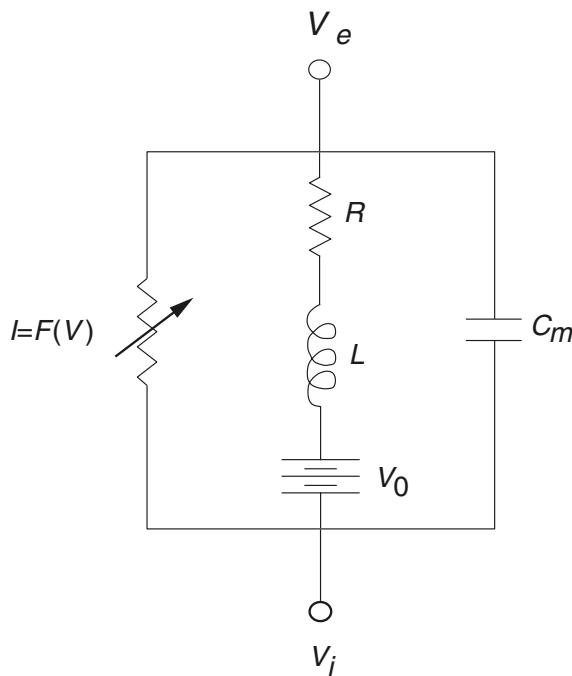
Other choices for  $f(v)$  include the McKean model (McKean, 1970), for which

$$f(v) = H(v - \alpha) - v, \quad (5.41)$$

where  $H$  is the Heaviside function. This choice recommends itself because then the model is piecewise linear, allowing explicit solutions of many interesting problems. Another piecewise-linear model (also proposed by McKean, 1970) has

$$f(v) = \begin{cases} -v, & \text{for } v < \alpha/2, \\ v - \alpha, & \text{for } \frac{\alpha}{2} < v < \frac{1+\alpha}{2}, \\ 1 - v, & \text{for } v > \frac{1+\alpha}{2}. \end{cases} \quad (5.42)$$

A third piecewise-linear model that has found widespread usage is the *Pushchino* model, so named because of its development in Pushchino (about 70 miles south of



**Figure 5.14** Circuit diagram for the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations.

Moscow), by Krinsky, Panfilov, Pertsov, Zykov, and their coworkers. The details of the Pushchino model are described in Exercise 13.

The FitzHugh–Nagumo equations can be derived from a simplified model of the cell membrane (Fig. 5.14). Here the cell (or membrane patch) consists of three components, a capacitor representing the membrane capacitance, a nonlinear current–voltage device for the fast current, and a resistor, inductor, and battery in series for the recovery current. In the 1960s Nagumo, a Japanese electrical engineer, built this circuit using a tunnel diode as the nonlinear element (Nagumo et al., 1964), thereby attaching his name to this system.

Using Kirchhoff's laws, we can write down equations for the behavior of this membrane circuit diagram. We find

$$C_m \frac{dV}{d\tau} + F(V) + i = -I_0, \quad (5.43)$$

$$L \frac{di}{d\tau} + Ri = V - V_0, \quad (5.44)$$

where  $I_0$  is the applied external current,  $i$  is the current through the resistor–inductor,  $V = V_i - V_e$  is the membrane potential, and  $V_0$  is the potential gain across the battery. Here  $\tau$  is used to represent dimensional time because we shortly introduce  $t$  as a dimensionless time variable. The function  $F(V)$  is assumed to be of cubic shape, having three zeros, of which the smallest  $V = 0$  and largest  $V = V_1$  are stable solutions of the differential equation  $dV/d\tau = -F(V)$ . We take  $R_1$  to be the passive resistance of

the nonlinear element,  $R_1 = 1/F'(0)$ . Now we introduce the dimensionless variables  $v = V/V_1, w = R_1 i/V_1, f(v) = -R_1 F(V_1 v)/V_1$ , and  $t = L\tau/R_1$ . Then (5.43) and (5.44) become

$$\epsilon \frac{dv}{dt} = f(v) - w - w_0, \quad (5.45)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = v - \gamma w - v_0, \quad (5.46)$$

where  $\epsilon = R_1^2 C_m / L$ ,  $w_0 = R_1 I_0 / V_1$ ,  $v_0 = V_0 / V_1$ , and  $\gamma = R / R_1$ .

An important variant of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations is the *van der Pol oscillator*. An electrical engineer, van der Pol built the circuit using triodes because it exhibits stable oscillations. As there was little interest in oscillatory circuits at the time, he proposed his circuit as a model of an oscillatory cardiac pacemaker (van der Pol and van der Mark, 1928). Since then it has become a classic example of a system with limit cycle behavior and relaxation oscillations, included in almost every textbook on oscillations (see, for example, Stoker, 1950, or Minorsky, 1962).

If we eliminate the resistor  $R$  from the circuit in Fig. 5.14, differentiate (5.43), and eliminate the current  $i$ , we get the second-order differential equation

$$C_m \frac{d^2V}{d\tau^2} + F'(V) \frac{dV}{d\tau} + \frac{V}{L} = \frac{V_0}{L}. \quad (5.47)$$

Following rescaling, and setting  $F(v) = A(v^3/3 - v)$ , we arrive at the *van der Pol equation*

$$v'' + a(v^2 - 1)v' + v = 0. \quad (5.48)$$

### 5.2.1 The Generalized FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations

From now on, by the *generalized FitzHugh–Nagumo equations* we mean the system of equations

$$\epsilon \frac{dv}{dt} = f(v, w), \quad (5.49)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = g(v, w), \quad (5.50)$$

where the nullcline  $f(v, w) = 0$  is of “cubic” shape. By this we mean that for a finite range of values of  $w$ , there are three solutions  $v = v(w)$  of the equation  $f(v, w) = 0$ . These we denote by  $v = V_-(w)$ ,  $v = V_0(w)$ , and  $v = V_+(w)$ , and, where comparison is possible (since these functions need not all exist for the same range of  $w$ ),

$$V_-(w) \leq V_0(w) \leq V_+(w). \quad (5.51)$$

We denote the minimal value of  $w$  for which  $V_-(w)$  exists by  $W_*$ , and the maximal value of  $w$  for which  $V_+(w)$  exists by  $W^*$ . For values of  $w$  above the nullcline  $f(v, w) = 0, f(v, w) < 0$ , and below the nullcline,  $f(v, w) > 0$  (in other words,  $f_w(v, w) < 0$ ).

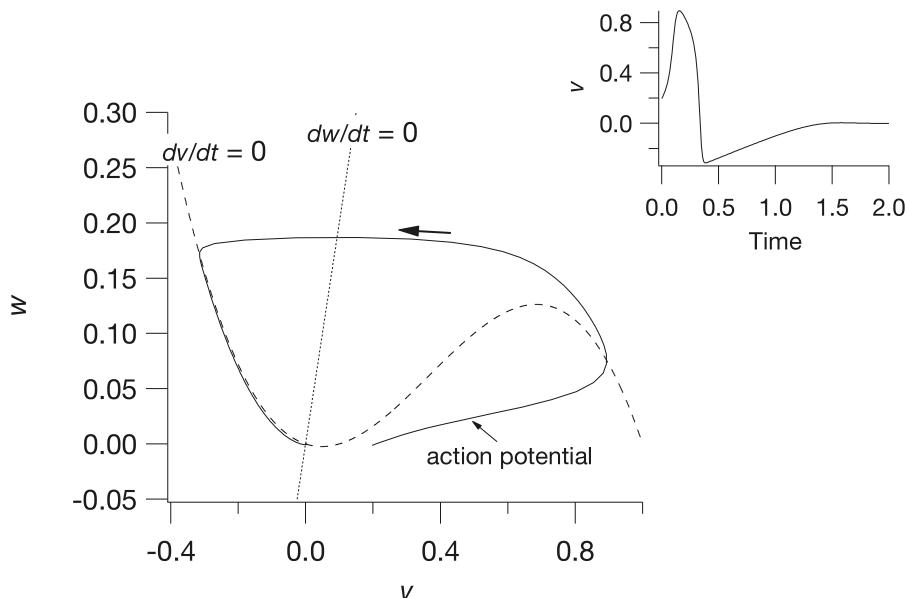
The nullcline  $g(v, w) = 0$  is assumed to have precisely one intersection with the curve  $f(v, w) = 0$ . Increasing  $v$  beyond the curve  $g(v, w) = 0$  makes  $g(v, w)$  positive

(i.e.,  $g_v(v, w) > 0$ ), and decreasing  $w$  below the curve  $g(v, w) = 0$  increases  $g(v, w)$  (hence  $g_w(v, w) < 0$ ). The nullclines  $f$  and  $g$  are illustrated in Fig. 5.13.

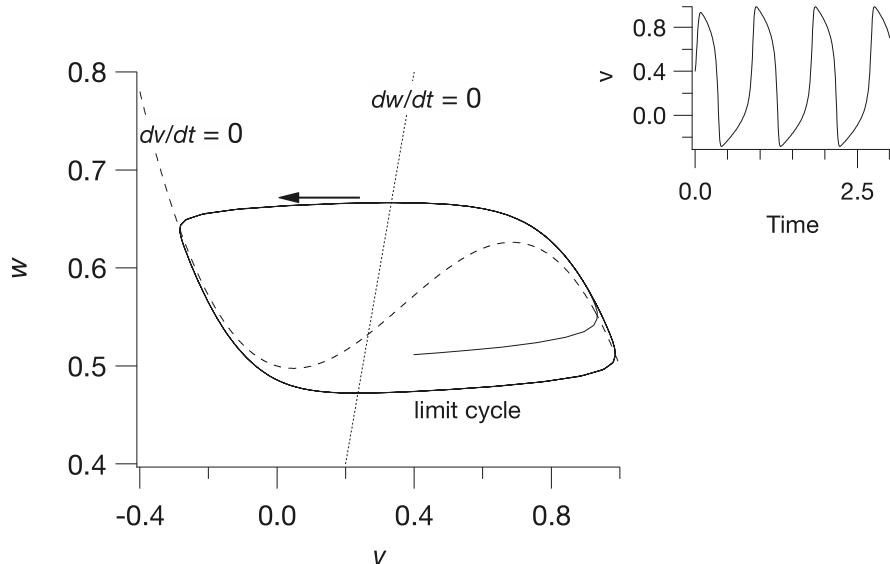
### 5.2.2 Phase-Plane Behavior

One attractive feature of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations is that because they form a two-variable system, they can be studied using phase-plane techniques. (For an example of a different approach, see Troy, 1976.) There are two characteristic phase portraits possible (shown in Figs. 5.15 and 5.16). By assumption, there is only one steady state, at  $v = v^*, w = w^*$ , with  $f(v^*, w^*) = g(v^*, w^*) = 0$ . Without loss of generality, we assume that this steady state occurs at the origin, as this involves only a shift of the variables. Furthermore, it is typical that the parameter  $\epsilon$  is a small number. For small  $\epsilon$ , if the steady state lies on either the left or right solution branch of  $f(v, w) = 0$ , i.e., the curves  $v = V_{\pm}(w)$ , it is linearly stable. Somewhere on the middle solution branch  $v = V_0(w)$ , near the extremal values of the curve  $f(v, w) = 0$ , there is a Hopf bifurcation point. If parameters are varied so that the steady-state solution passes through this point, a periodic orbit arises as a continuous solution branch and bifurcates into a stable limit cycle oscillation.

When the steady state is on the leftmost branch, but close to the minimum (Fig. 5.15), the system is excitable. This is because even though the steady state is



**Figure 5.15** Phase portrait for the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, (5.38)–(5.40), with  $\alpha = 0.1$ ,  $\gamma = 0.5$ ,  $\epsilon = 0.01$  and zero applied current. For these parameter values the system has a unique globally stable rest point, but is excitable. The inset at top right shows the action potential as a function of time.



**Figure 5.16** Phase portrait for the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, (5.38)–(5.40), with  $\alpha = 0.1$ ,  $\gamma = 0.5$ ,  $\epsilon = 0.01$  and  $I_{\text{app}} = 0.5$ . For these parameter values, the unique rest point is unstable and there is a globally stable periodic orbit. The inset at top right shows the periodic orbit plotted against time.

linearly stable, a sufficiently large perturbation from the steady state sends the state variable on a trajectory that runs away from the steady state before eventually returning to rest. Such a trajectory goes rapidly to the rightmost branch, which it hugs as it gradually creeps upward, where upon reaching the maximum, it goes rapidly to the leftmost branch and then gradually returns to rest, staying close to this branch as it does. Plots of the variables  $v$  and  $w$  are shown as functions of time in Fig. 5.15.

The mathematical description of these events follows from singular perturbation theory. With  $\epsilon \ll 1$ , the variable  $v$  is a fast variable and the variable  $w$  is a slow variable. This means that if possible,  $v$  is adjusted rapidly to maintain a pseudo-equilibrium at  $f(v, w) = 0$ . In other words, if possible,  $v$  clings to the stable branches of  $f(v, w) = 0$ , namely  $v = V_{\pm}(w)$ . Along these branches the dynamics of  $w$  are governed by the reduced dynamics

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = g(V_{\pm}(w), w) = G_{\pm}(w). \quad (5.52)$$

When it is not possible for  $v$  to be in quasi-equilibrium, the motion is governed approximately by the differential equations,

$$\frac{dv}{d\tau} = f(v, w), \quad \frac{dw}{d\tau} = 0, \quad (5.53)$$

found by making the change of variables to the fast time scale  $t = \epsilon\tau$ , and then setting  $\epsilon = 0$ . On this time scale,  $w$  is constant, while  $v$  equilibrates to a stable solution of  $f(v, w) = 0$ .

The evolution of  $v$  and  $w$  starting from specified initial conditions  $v_0$  and  $w_0$  can now be described. Suppose  $v_0$  is greater than the rest value  $v^*$ . If  $v_0 < V_0(w)$ , then  $v$  returns directly to the steady state. If  $v_0 > V_0(w)$ , then  $v$  goes rapidly to the upper branch  $V_+(w)$  with  $w$  remaining nearly constant at  $w_0$ . The curve  $v = V_0(w)$  is a *threshold curve*. While  $v$  remains on the upper branch,  $w$  increases according to

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = G_+(w), \quad (5.54)$$

as long as possible. However, in the finite time

$$T_e = \int_{w_0}^{W^*} \frac{dw}{G_+(w)}, \quad (5.55)$$

$w$  reaches the “knee” of the nullcline  $f(v, w) = 0$ . This period of time constitutes the *excited phase* of the action potential.

When  $w$  reaches  $W^*$  it is no longer possible for  $v$  to stay on the excited branch, so it must return to the lower branch  $V_-(w)$ . Once on this branch,  $w$  decreases following the dynamics

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = G_-(w). \quad (5.56)$$

If the rest point lies on the lower branch, then  $G_-(w^*) = 0$ , and  $w$  gradually returns to rest on the lower branch.

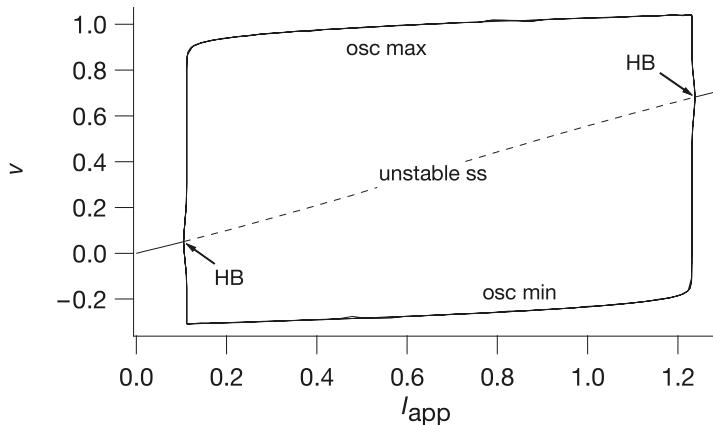
## Applied Current and Oscillations

When a current is applied to the generalized FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, they become

$$\epsilon \frac{dv}{dt} = f(v, w) + I_{\text{app}}, \quad (5.57)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = g(v, w). \quad (5.58)$$

As with the fast–slow phase plane of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, the cubic nullcline moves up as  $I_{\text{app}}$  increases. Thus, when  $I_{\text{app}}$  takes values in some intermediate range, the steady state lies on the middle branch,  $V_0(w)$ , and is unstable. Instead of returning to rest after one excursion on the excited branch, the trajectory alternates periodically between the upper and lower branches, with  $w$  varying between  $W_*$  and  $W^*$  (Fig. 5.16). This limit cycle behavior, where there are fast jumps between regions in which the solution moves more slowly, is called a *relaxation oscillation*. In this figure, the relaxation nature of the oscillations is not very pronounced; however, as  $\epsilon$  decreases, the jumps



**Figure 5.17** Bifurcation diagram of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, (5.38)–(5.40), with  $\alpha = 0.1$ ,  $\gamma = 0.5$ ,  $\epsilon = 0.01$ , with the applied current as the bifurcation parameter. The steady-state solution is labeled ss, while osc max and osc min denote, respectively, the maximum and minimum of  $v$  over an oscillation. HB denotes a Hopf bifurcation point.

become faster. For small  $\epsilon$ , the period of the oscillation is approximately

$$T = \int_{W_*}^{W^*} \left( \frac{1}{G_+(w)} - \frac{1}{G_-(w)} \right) dw. \quad (5.59)$$

This number is finite because  $G_+(w) > 0$ , and  $G_-(w) < 0$  for all appropriate  $w$ .

As with the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, the behavior of the periodic orbits as  $I_{\text{app}}$  varies can be summarized in a bifurcation diagram. For each value of  $I_{\text{app}}$  we plot the value of  $v$  at the steady state, and (where appropriate) the maximum and minimum values of  $v$  over a periodic orbit. As  $I_{\text{app}}$  increases, a branch of periodic orbits appears in a Hopf bifurcation at  $I_{\text{app}} = 0.1$  and disappears again in another Hopf bifurcation at  $I_{\text{app}} = 1.24$ . Between these two points there is a branch of stable periodic orbits. The bifurcation diagram is shown in Fig. 5.17.

### 5.3 EXERCISES

1. Show that, if  $k > 1$ , then  $(1 - e^{-x})^k$  has an inflection point, but  $(e^{-x})^k$  does not.
2. Explain why replacing the extracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  with choline has little effect on the resting potential of an axon. Calculate the new resting potential with 90% of the extracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  removed. Why is the same not true if  $\text{K}^+$  is replaced? (Assume the conductances are constant.)
3. Plot the nullclines of the Hodgkin–Huxley fast subsystem. Show that  $v_r$  and  $v_e$  in the Hodgkin–Huxley fast subsystem are stable steady states, while  $v_s$  is a saddle point. Compute the stable manifold of the saddle point and compute sample trajectories in the fast phase plane, demonstrating the threshold effect.

4. Show how the Hodgkin–Huxley fast subsystem depends on the slow variables; i.e., show how the  $v$  nullcline moves as  $n$  and  $h$  are changed, and demonstrate the saddle-node bifurcation in which  $v_e$  and  $v_s$  disappear.
5. Plot the nullclines of the fast–slow Hodgkin–Huxley phase plane and compute a complete action potential.
6. How does the phase plane of the fast–slow Hodgkin–Huxley equations change with applied current? How much applied current in the fast–slow Hodgkin–Huxley equations is needed to generate oscillations? Plot a typical oscillation in the phase plane. Plot the maximum of the oscillation against the applied current to construct a bifurcation diagram.
7. Suppose that in the Hodgkin–Huxley fast–slow phase plane,  $v$  is slowly decreased to  $v^* < v_0$  (where  $v_0$  is the steady state), held there for a considerable time, and then released. Describe what happens in qualitative terms, i.e., without actually computing the solution. This is called *anode break excitation* (Hodgkin and Huxley, 1952d. Also see Peskin, 1991). What happens if  $v$  is instantaneously decreased to  $v^*$  and then released immediately? Why do these two solutions differ?
8. In the text, the Hodgkin–Huxley equations are written in terms of  $v = V - V_{\text{eq}}$ . Show that in terms of  $V$  the equations are

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -\bar{g}_K n^4 (V - V_K) - \bar{g}_{\text{Na}} m^3 h (V - V_{\text{Na}}) - \bar{g}_L (V - V_L) + I_{\text{app}}, \quad (5.60)$$

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \alpha_m (1 - m) - \beta_m m, \quad (5.61)$$

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = \alpha_n (1 - n) - \beta_n n, \quad (5.62)$$

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \alpha_h (1 - h) - \beta_h h, \quad (5.63)$$

where (in units of  $(\text{ms})^{-1}$ ),

$$\alpha_m = 0.1 \frac{-40 - V}{\exp\left(\frac{-40 - V}{10}\right) - 1}, \quad (5.64)$$

$$\beta_m = 4 \exp\left(\frac{-V - 65}{18}\right), \quad (5.65)$$

$$\alpha_h = 0.07 \exp\left(\frac{-V - 65}{20}\right), \quad (5.66)$$

$$\beta_h = \frac{1}{\exp\left(\frac{-35 - V}{10}\right) + 1}, \quad (5.67)$$

$$\alpha_n = 0.01 \frac{-55 - V}{\exp\left(\frac{-55 - V}{10}\right) - 1}, \quad (5.68)$$

$$\beta_n = 0.125 \exp\left(\frac{-V - 65}{80}\right), \quad (5.69)$$

and

$$\bar{g}_{\text{Na}} = 120, \quad \bar{g}_K = 36, \quad \bar{g}_L = 0.3, \quad (5.70)$$

$$V_{\text{Na}} = 55, \quad V_K = -77, \quad V_L = -54.4, \quad V_{\text{eq}} = -65. \quad (5.71)$$

9. Solve the full Hodgkin–Huxley equations numerically with a variety of constant current inputs. For what range of inputs are there self-sustained oscillations? Construct the bifurcation diagram as in Exercise 6.
10. The Hodgkin–Huxley equations are for the squid axon at 6.3°C. Using that the absolute temperature enters the equations through the Nernst equation, determine how changes in temperature affect the behavior of the equations. In particular, simulate the equations at 0°C and 30°C to determine whether the equations become more or less excitable with an increase in temperature.
11. Show that a Hopf bifurcation occurs in the generalized FitzHugh–Nagumo equations when  $f_v(v^*, w^*) = -\epsilon g_w(v^*, w^*)$ , assuming that

$$f_v(v^*, w^*)g_w(v^*, w^*) - g_v(v^*, w^*)f_w(v^*, w^*) > 0.$$

On which side of the minimum of the  $v$  nullcline can this condition be satisfied?

12. Morris and Lecar (1981) proposed the following two-variable model of membrane potential for a barnacle muscle fiber:

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dT} + I_{\text{ion}}(V, W) = I_{\text{app}}, \quad (5.72)$$

$$\frac{dW}{dT} = \phi \Lambda(V)[W_\infty(V) - W], \quad (5.73)$$

where  $V$  = membrane potential,  $W$  = fraction of open K<sup>+</sup> channels,  $T$  = time,  $C_m$  = membrane capacitance,  $I_{\text{app}}$  = externally applied current,  $\phi$  = maximum rate for closing K<sup>+</sup> channels, and

$$I_{\text{ion}}(V, W) = g_{\text{Ca}}M_\infty(V)(V - V_{\text{Ca}}) + g_K W(V - V_K) + g_L(V - V_L), \quad (5.74)$$

$$M_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \tanh \left( \frac{V - V_1}{V_2} \right) \right), \quad (5.75)$$

$$W_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \tanh \left( \frac{V - V_3}{V_4} \right) \right), \quad (5.76)$$

$$\Lambda(V) = \cosh \left( \frac{V - V_3}{2V_4} \right). \quad (5.77)$$

Typical rate constants in these equations are shown in Table 5.1.

---

**Table 5.1** Typical parameter values for the Morris–Lecar model.

---

$C_m = 20 \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$	$I_{\text{app}} = 0.06 \text{ mA}/\text{cm}^2$
$g_{\text{Ca}} = 4.4 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$	$g_K = 8 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$
$g_L = 2 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$	$\phi = 0.04 (\text{ms})^{-1}$
$V_1 = -1.2 \text{ mV}$	$V_2 = 18 \text{ mV}$
$V_3 = 2$	$V_4 = 30 \text{ mV}$
$V_{\text{Ca}} = 120 \text{ mV}$	$V_K = -84 \text{ mV}$
$V_L = -60 \text{ mV}$	

- (a) Make a phase portrait for the Morris–Lecar equations. Plot the nullclines and show some typical trajectories, demonstrating that the model is excitable.
- (b) Does the Morris–Lecar model exhibit anode break excitation (see Exercise 7)? If not, why not?
13. The Pushchino model is a piecewise-linear model of FitzHugh–Nagumo type proposed as a model of the ventricular action potential. The model has

$$f(v, w) = F(v) - w, \quad (5.78)$$

$$g(v, w) = \frac{1}{\tau(v)}(v - w), \quad (5.79)$$

where

$$F(v) = \begin{cases} -30v, & \text{for } v < v_1, \\ \gamma v - 0.12, & \text{for } v_1 < v < v_2, \\ -30(v - 1), & \text{for } v > v_2, \end{cases} \quad (5.80)$$

$$\tau(v) = \begin{cases} 2, & \text{for } v < v_1, \\ 16.6, & \text{for } v > v_1, \end{cases} \quad (5.81)$$

with  $v_1 = 0.12/(30 + \gamma)$  and  $v_2 = 30.12/(30 + \gamma)$ .

Simulate the action potential for this model. What is the effect on the action potential of changing  $\tau(v)$ ?

14. Perhaps the most important example of a nonphysiological excitable system is the Belousov–Zhabotinsky reaction. This reaction denotes the oxidation of malonic acid by bromate in acidic solution in the presence of a transition metal ion catalyst. Kinetic equations describing this reaction are (Tyson and Fife, 1980)

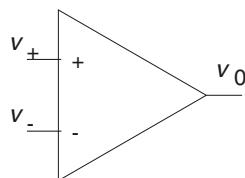
$$\epsilon \frac{du}{dt} = -fv \frac{u - q}{u + q} + u - u^2, \quad (5.82)$$

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = u - v, \quad (5.83)$$

where  $u$  denotes the concentration of bromous acid and  $v$  denotes the concentration of the oxidized catalyst metal. Typical values for parameters are  $\epsilon \approx 0.01, f = 1, q \approx 10^{-4}$ . Describe the phase portrait for this system of equations.

15. It is not particularly difficult to build an electrical analogue of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations with inexpensive and easily obtained electronic components. The parts list for one “cell” (shown in Fig. 5.20) includes two op-amps (operational amplifiers), two power supplies, a few resistors, and two capacitors, all readily available from any consumer electronics store (Keener, 1983).

The key component is an operational amplifier (Fig. 5.18). An op-amp is denoted in a circuit diagram by a triangle with two inputs on the left and a single output from the vertex on the right. Only three circuit connections are shown on a diagram, but two more



**Figure 5.18** Diagram for an operational amplifier (op-amp).

are assumed, being necessary to connect with the power supply to operate the op-amp. Corresponding to the supply voltages  $V_{s-}$  and  $V_{s+}$ , there are voltages  $V_{r-}$  and  $V_{r+}$ , called the *rail voltages*, which determine the operational range for the output of an op-amp. The job of an op-amp is to compare the two input voltages  $v_+$  and  $v_-$ , and if  $v_+ > v_-$ , to set (if possible) the output voltage  $v_0$  to the high rail voltage  $V_{r+}$ , whereas if  $v_+ < v_-$ , then  $v_0$  is set to  $V_{r-}$ . With reliable electronic components it is a good first approximation to assume that the input draws no current, while the output  $v_0$  can supply whatever current is necessary to maintain the required voltage level.

The response of an op-amp to changes in input is not instantaneous, but is described reasonably well by the differential equation

$$\epsilon_s \frac{dv_0}{dt} = g(v_+ - v_-) - v_0. \quad (5.84)$$

The function  $g(v)$  is continuous, but quite close to the piecewise-constant function

$$g(v) = V_{r+}H(v) + V_{r-}H(-v), \quad (5.85)$$

with  $H(v)$  the Heaviside function. The number  $\epsilon_s$  is small, and is the inverse of the *slew-rate*, which is typically on the order of  $10^6$ – $10^7$  V/sec. For all of the following circuit analysis, take  $\epsilon_s \rightarrow 0$ .

- (a) Show that the simple circuit shown in Fig. 5.19 is a linear amplifier, with

$$v_0 = \frac{R_1 + R_2}{R_2} v_+, \quad (5.86)$$

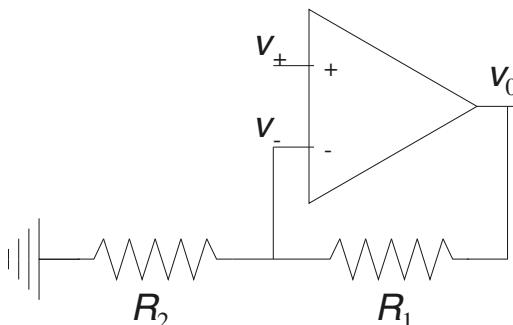
provided that  $v_0$  is within the range of the rail voltages.

- (b) Show that if  $R_1 = 0, R_2 = \infty$ , then the device in Fig. 5.19 becomes a *voltage follower* with  $v_0 = v_+$ .
- (c) Find the governing equations for the circuit in Fig. 5.20, assuming that the rail voltages for op-amp 2 are well within the range of the rail voltages for op-amp 1.

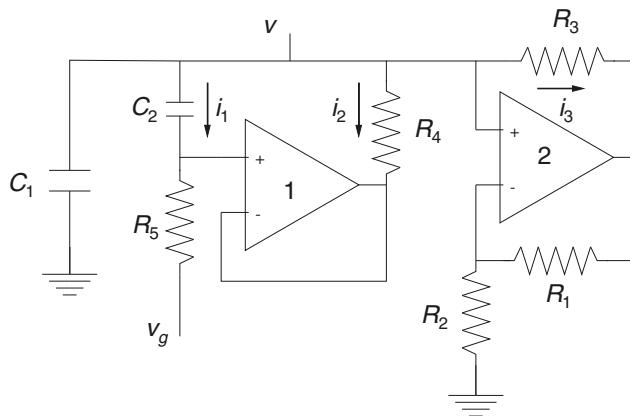
Show that

$$C_1 \frac{dv}{dt} + i_2 \left( 1 - \frac{R_4}{R_5} \right) + \frac{F(v)}{R_3} + \frac{v - v_g}{R_5} = 0, \quad (5.87)$$

$$C_2 R_5 \frac{di_2}{dt} + R_4 i_2 = v - v_g, \quad (5.88)$$



**Figure 5.19** Linear amplifier using an op-amp.



**Figure 5.20** FitzHugh–Nagumo circuit using op-amps.

**Table 5.2** Parts list for the FitzHugh–Nagumo analog circuit.

2 LM 741 op-amps (National Semiconductor)

$$R_1 = R_2 = 100\text{k}\Omega$$

$$R_3 = 2.4\Omega$$

$$R_4 = 1\text{k}\Omega$$

$$R_5 = 10\text{k}\Omega$$

$$C_1 = 0.01\mu\text{F}$$

$$C_2 = 0.5\mu\text{F}$$

Power supplies:

$$\pm 15\text{V} \text{ for op-amp #1}$$

$$\pm 12\text{V} \text{ for op-amp #2}$$

where  $F(v)$  is the piecewise-linear function

$$F(v) = \begin{cases} v - V_{r+}, & \text{for } v > \alpha V_{r+}, \\ -\frac{R_1}{R_2}v, & \text{for } \alpha V_{r-} \leq v \leq \alpha V_{r+}, \\ v - V_{r-}, & \text{for } v < \alpha V_{r-}, \end{cases} \quad (5.89)$$

and  $\alpha = \frac{R_2}{R_1+R_2}$ .

- (d) Sketch the phase portrait for these circuit equations. Show that this is a piecewise-linear FitzHugh–Nagumo system.
- (e) Use the singular perturbation approximation (5.59) to estimate the period of oscillation for the piecewise-linear analog FitzHugh–Nagumo circuit in Fig. 5.20.

# Wave Propagation in Excitable Systems

The problem of current flow in the axon of a nerve is much more complicated than that of flow in dendritic networks (Chapter 4). Recall from Chapter 5 that the voltage dependence of the ionic currents can lead to excitability and action potentials. In this chapter we show that when an excitable membrane is incorporated into a *nonlinear* cable equation, it can give rise to traveling waves of electrical excitation. Indeed, this property is one of the reasons that the Hodgkin–Huxley equations are so important. In addition to producing a realistic description of a space-clamped action potential, Hodgkin and Huxley showed that this action potential propagates along an axon with a fixed speed, which could be calculated.

However, the nerve axon is but one of many examples of a spatially extended excitable system in which there is propagated activity. For example, propagated waves of electrical or chemical activity are known to occur in skeletal and cardiac tissue, in the retina, in the cortex of the brain, and within single cells of a wide variety of types. In this chapter we describe this wave activity, beginning with a discussion of propagated electrical activity along one-dimensional cables, then concluding with a brief discussion of waves in higher-dimensional excitable systems.

## 6.1 Brief Overview of Wave Propagation

There is a vast literature on wave propagation in biological systems. In addition to the books by Murray (2002), Britton (1986), and Grindrod (1991), there are numerous articles in journals and books, many of which are cited in this chapter.

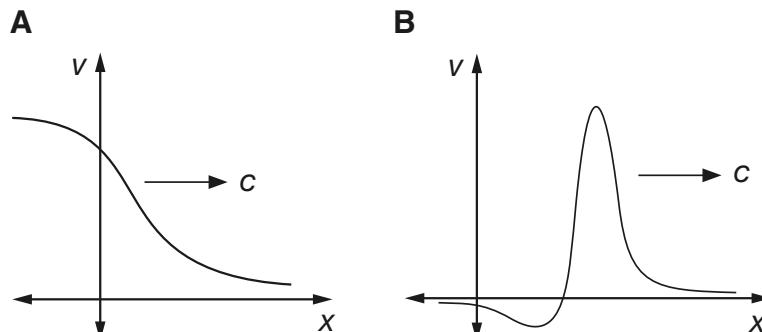
There are many different kinds of waves in biological systems. For example, there are waves in excitable systems that arise from the underlying excitability of the cell.

An excitable wave acts as a model of, among other things, the propagation of an action potential along the axon of a nerve or the propagation of a grass fire on a prairie. However, if the underlying kinetics are oscillatory but not excitable, and a large number of individual oscillatory units are coupled by diffusion, the resulting behavior is oscillatory waves and periodic wave trains. In this chapter we focus our attention on waves in excitable media, and defer consideration of the theory of coupled oscillators to Chapters 12 and 18.

We emphasize at the outset that by a *traveling wave* we mean a solution of a partial differential equation on an infinite domain (a fictional object, of course) that travels at constant velocity with fixed shape. It is also helpful to make a distinction between the two most important types of traveling waves in excitable systems. First, there is the wave that looks like a moving plateau, or transition between different levels. If  $v$  denotes the wave variable, then ahead of the wave,  $v$  is steady at some low value, and behind the wave,  $v$  is steady at a higher value (Fig. 6.1A). Such waves are called *traveling fronts*. The second type of wave begins and ends at the same value of  $v$  (Fig. 6.1B) and resembles a moving bump. This type of wave is called a *traveling pulse*.

These two wave types can be interpreted in the terminology of the Hodgkin–Huxley fast–slow phase plane discussed in Chapter 5. When the recovery variable is fixed at the steady state, the fast–slow phase plane has two stable steady states,  $v = v_r$  and  $v = v_e$  (i.e., it is bistable). Under appropriate conditions there exists a traveling front with  $v = v_r$  ahead of the wave and  $v = v_e$  behind the wave. Thus, the traveling front acts like a zipper, switching the domain from the resting to the excited state. However, if the recovery variable  $n$  is allowed to vary, the solution is eventually forced to return to the resting state and the traveling solution becomes a traveling pulse. The primary difference between the traveling front and the traveling pulse is that in the former case there is no recovery (or recovery is static), while in the latter case recovery plays an important dynamic role.

One of the simplest models of biological wave propagation is Fisher's equation. Although this equation is used extensively in population biology and ecology, it is much



**Figure 6.1** Schematic diagram of A: Traveling front, B: Traveling pulse.

less relevant in a physiological context, and so is not discussed here (see Exercise 14 and Fife, 1979).

The next level of complexity is the *bistable equation*. The bistable equation is so named because it has two stable rest points, and it is related to the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations without recovery. For the bistable equation, one expects to find traveling fronts but not traveling pulses. Inclusion of the recovery variable leads to a more complex model, the spatially distributed FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, for which one expects to find traveling pulses (among other types of waves). Wave propagation in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations is still not completely understood, especially in higher-dimensional domains. At the highest level of complexity are the spatially distributed models of Hodgkin–Huxley type, systems of equations that are resistant to analytical approaches.

## 6.2 Traveling Fronts

### 6.2.1 The Bistable Equation

The bistable equation is a specific version of the cable equation (4.18), namely

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial x^2} + f(V), \quad (6.1)$$

where  $f(V)$  has three zeros at  $0, \alpha$ , and  $1$ , where  $0 < \alpha < 1$ . The values  $V = 0$  and  $V = 1$  are stable steady solutions of the ordinary differential equation  $dV/dt = f(V)$ . Notice that the variable  $V$  has been scaled so that  $0$  and  $1$  are zeros of  $f(V)$ . In the standard nondimensional form,  $f'(0) = -1$ . (Recall from (4.13) that the passive cable resistance was defined so that the ionic current has slope 1 at rest.) However, this restriction on  $f(V)$  is often ignored.

An example of such a function can be found in the Hodgkin–Huxley fast–slow phase plane. When the recovery variable  $n$  is held fixed at its steady state, the Hodgkin–Huxley fast–slow model is bistable. Two other examples of functions that are often used in this context are the cubic polynomial

$$f(V) = aV(V - 1)(\alpha - V), \quad 0 < \alpha < 1, \quad (6.2)$$

and the piecewise-linear function

$$f(V) = -V + H(V - \alpha), \quad 0 < \alpha < 1. \quad (6.3)$$

where  $H(V)$  is the Heaviside function (McKean, 1970). This piecewise-linear function is not continuous, nor does it have three zeros, yet it is useful in the study of traveling wave solutions of the bistable equation because it is an analytically tractable model that retains many important qualitative features.

By a traveling wave solution, we mean a translation-invariant solution of (6.1) that provides a transition between the two stable rest states (zeros of the nonlinear function

$f(V)$ ) and travels with constant speed. That is, we seek a solution of (6.1) of the form

$$V(x, t) = U(x + ct) = U(\xi) \quad (6.4)$$

for some (yet to be determined) value of  $c$ . The new variable  $\xi$ , called the traveling wave coordinate, has the property that fixed values move with fixed speed  $c$ . When written as a function of  $\xi$ , the wave appears stationary. Note that, because we use  $\xi = x + ct$  as the traveling wave coordinate, a solution with  $c$  positive corresponds to a wave moving from right to left. We could equally well have used  $x - ct$  as the traveling wave coordinate, to obtain waves moving from left to right (for positive  $c$ ).

By substituting (6.4) into (6.1) it can be seen that any traveling wave solution must satisfy

$$U_{\xi\xi} - cU_\xi + f(U) = 0, \quad (6.5)$$

and this, being an ordinary differential equation, should be easier to analyze than the original partial differential equation. For  $U(\xi)$  to provide a transition between rest points, it must be that  $f(U(\xi)) \rightarrow 0$  as  $\xi \rightarrow \pm\infty$ .

It is convenient to write (6.5) as two first-order equations,

$$U_\xi = W, \quad (6.6)$$

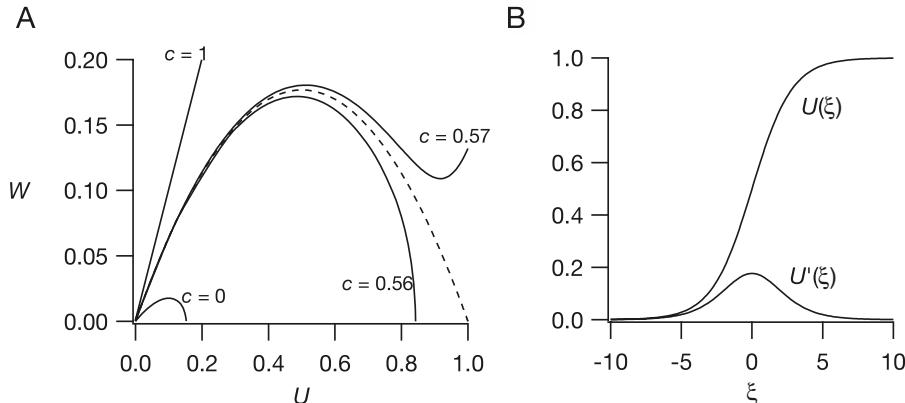
$$W_\xi = cW - f(U). \quad (6.7)$$

To find traveling front solutions for the bistable equation, we look for a solution of (6.6) and (6.7) that connects the rest points  $(U, W) = (0, 0)$  and  $(U, W) = (1, 0)$  in the  $(U, W)$  phase plane. Such a trajectory, connecting two different steady states, is called a heteroclinic trajectory, and in this case is parameterized by  $\xi$ ; the trajectory approaches  $(0, 0)$  as  $\xi \rightarrow -\infty$  and approaches  $(1, 0)$  as  $\xi \rightarrow +\infty$  (see the dashed line in Fig. 6.2A). The steady states at  $U = 0$  and  $U = 1$  are both saddle points, while for the steady state  $U = \alpha$ , the real part of both eigenvalues have the same sign, negative if  $c$  is positive and positive if  $c$  is negative, so that this is a node or a spiral point. Since the points at  $U = 0$  and  $U = 1$  are saddle points, the goal is to determine whether the parameter  $c$  can be chosen so that the trajectory that leaves  $U = 0$  at  $\xi = -\infty$  connects with the saddle point  $U = 1$  at  $\xi = +\infty$ . This mathematical procedure is called *shooting*, and some sample trajectories are shown in Fig. 6.2A.

First, we can determine the sign of  $c$ . Supposing a monotone increasing ( $U_\xi > 0$ ) connecting trajectory exists, we multiply (6.5) by  $U_\xi$  and integrate from  $\xi = -\infty$  to  $\xi = \infty$  with the result that

$$c \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} W^2 d\xi = \int_0^1 f(u) du. \quad (6.8)$$

In other words, if a traveling wave solution exists, then the sign of  $c$  is the same as the sign of the area under the curve  $f(u)$  between  $u = 0$  and  $u = 1$ . If this area is positive, then the traveling solutions move the state variable  $U$  from  $U = 0$  to  $U = 1$ , and the state at  $U = 1$  is said to be *dominant*. In both of the special cases (6.2) and (6.3), the state  $U = 1$  is dominant if  $\alpha < 1/2$ .



**Figure 6.2** A: Trajectories in the  $(U, W)$  phase plane leaving the rest point  $U = 0, W = 0$  for the equation  $U_{\xi\xi} - cU_{\xi} + U(U - 0.1)(1 - U) = 0$ , with  $c = 0.0, 0.56, 0.57$ , and  $1.0$ . Dashed curve shows the connecting heteroclinic trajectory. B: Profile of the traveling wave solution of panel A. In the original coordinates, this front moves to the left with speed  $c$ .

Suppose  $\int_0^1 f(u) du > 0$ . We want to determine what happens to the unstable trajectory that leaves the saddle point  $U = 0, U_{\xi} = 0$  for different values of  $c$ . With  $c = 0$ , an explicit expression for this trajectory is found by multiplying (6.5) by  $U_{\xi}$  and integrating to get

$$\frac{W^2}{2} + \int_0^U f(u) du = 0. \quad (6.9)$$

If this trajectory were to reach  $U = 1$  for some value of  $W$ , then

$$\frac{W^2}{2} + \int_0^1 f(u) du = 0, \quad (6.10)$$

which can occur only if  $\int_0^1 f(u) du \leq 0$ . Since this contradicts our assumption that  $\int_0^1 f(u) du \geq 0$ , we conclude that this trajectory cannot reach  $U = 1$ . Neither can this trajectory remain in the first quadrant, as  $W > 0$  implies that  $U$  is increasing. Thus, this trajectory must intersect the  $W = 0$  axis at some value of  $U < 1$  (Fig. 6.2A). It cannot be the connecting trajectory.

Next, suppose  $c$  is large. In the  $(U, W)$  phase plane, the slope of the unstable trajectory leaving the rest point at  $U = 0$  is the positive root of  $\lambda^2 - c\lambda + f'(0) = 0$ , which is always larger than  $c$  (Exercise 1). Let  $K$  be the smallest positive number for which  $f(u)/u \leq K$  for all  $u$  on the interval  $0 < u \leq 1$  (Exercise: How do we know  $K$  exists?), and let  $\sigma$  be any fixed positive number. On the line  $W = \sigma U$  the slope of trajectories satisfies

$$\frac{dW}{dU} = c - \frac{f(U)}{W} = c - \frac{f(U)}{\sigma U} \geq c - \frac{K}{\sigma}. \quad (6.11)$$

By picking  $c$  large enough, we are assured that  $c - K/\sigma > \sigma$ , so that once trajectories are above the line  $W = \sigma U$ , they stay above it. We know that for large enough  $c$ , the trajectory leaving the saddle point  $U = 0$  starts out above this curve. Thus, this trajectory always stays above the line  $W = \sigma U$ , and therefore passes above the rest point at  $(U, W) = (1, 0)$ .

Now we have two trajectories, one with  $c = 0$ , which misses the rest point at  $U = 1$  by crossing the  $W = 0$  axis at some point  $U < 1$ , and one with  $c$  large, which misses this rest point by staying above it at  $U = 1$ . Since trajectories depend continuously on the parameters of the problem, there is a continuous family of trajectories depending on the parameter  $c$  between these two special trajectories, and therefore there is at least one trajectory that hits the point  $U = 1, W = 0$  exactly.

The value of  $c$  for which this heteroclinic connection occurs is unique. To verify this, notice from (6.11) that the slope  $dW/dU$  of trajectories in the  $(U, W)$  plane is a monotone increasing function of the parameter  $c$ . Suppose at some value of  $c = c_0$  there is known to be a connecting trajectory. For any value of  $c$  that is larger than  $c_0$ , the trajectory leaving the saddle point at  $U = 0$  must lie above the connecting curve for  $c_0$ . For the same reason, with  $c > c_0$ , the trajectory approaching the saddle point at  $U = 1$  as  $\xi \rightarrow \infty$  must lie below the connecting curve with  $c = c_0$ . A single curve cannot simultaneously lie above and below another curve, so there cannot be a connecting trajectory for  $c > c_0$ . By a similar argument, there cannot be a connecting trajectory for a smaller value of  $c$ , so the value  $c_0$ , and hence the connecting trajectory, is unique.

For most functions  $f(V)$ , it is necessary to calculate the speed of propagation of the traveling front solution numerically. However, in the two special cases (6.2) and (6.3) the speed of propagation can be calculated explicitly. In the piecewise linear case (6.3) one calculates directly that

$$c = \frac{1 - 2\alpha}{\sqrt{\alpha - \alpha^2}} \quad (6.12)$$

(see Exercise 4).

Suppose  $f(u)$  is the cubic polynomial

$$f(u) = -A^2(u - u_0)(u - u_1)(u - u_2), \quad (6.13)$$

where the zeros of the cubic are ordered  $u_0 < u_1 < u_2$ . We want to find a heteroclinic connection between the smallest zero,  $u_0$ , and the largest zero,  $u_2$ , so we guess that

$$W = -B(U - u_0)(U - u_2). \quad (6.14)$$

We substitute this guess into the governing equation (6.5), and find that we must have

$$B^2(2U - u_0 - u_2) - cB - A^2(U - u_1) = 0. \quad (6.15)$$

This is a linear function of  $U$  that can be made identically zero only if we choose  $B = A/\sqrt{2}$  and

$$c = \frac{A}{\sqrt{2}}(u_2 - 2u_1 + u_0). \quad (6.16)$$

It follows from (6.14) that

$$U(\xi) = \frac{u_0 + u_2}{2} + \frac{u_2 - u_0}{2} \tanh\left(\frac{A}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{u_2 - u_0}{2} \xi\right), \quad (6.17)$$

which is independent of  $u_1$ . In the case that  $u_0 = 0, u_1 = \alpha$ , and  $u_2 = 1$ , the speed reduces to

$$c = \frac{A}{\sqrt{2}}(1 - 2\alpha), \quad (6.18)$$

showing that the speed is a decreasing function of  $\alpha$  and the direction of propagation changes at  $\alpha = 1/2$ . The profile of the traveling wave in this case is

$$U(\xi) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 + \tanh\left(\frac{A}{2\sqrt{2}} \xi\right) \right]. \quad (6.19)$$

A plot of this traveling wave profile is shown in Fig. 6.2B.

Once the solution of the nondimensional cable equation (6.1) is known, it is a simple matter to express the solution in terms of physical parameters as

$$V(x, t) = U\left(\frac{x}{\lambda_m} + c \frac{t}{\tau_m}\right), \quad (6.20)$$

where  $\lambda_m$  and  $\tau_m$  are, respectively, the space and time constants of the cable, as described in Chapter 4. The speed of the traveling wave is

$$s = \frac{c\lambda_m}{\tau_m} = \frac{c}{2C_m} \sqrt{\frac{d}{R_m R_c}}, \quad (6.21)$$

which shows how the wave speed depends on capacitance, membrane resistance, cytoplasmic resistance, and axonal diameter. The dependence of the speed on ionic channel conductances is contained (but hidden) in  $c$ . According to empirical measurements, a good estimate of the speed of an action potential in an axon is

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{d}{10^{-6}m}} \text{ m/sec.} \quad (6.22)$$

Using  $d = 500 \mu\text{m}$  for squid axon, this estimate gives  $s = 22.4 \text{ mm/ms}$ , which compares favorably to the measured value of  $s = 21.2 \text{ mm/ms}$ .

Scaling arguments can also be used to find the dependence of speed on certain other parameters. Suppose, for example, that a drug is applied to the membrane that blocks a percentage of all ion channels, irrespective of type. If  $\rho$  is the fraction of remaining operational channels, then the speed of propagation is reduced by the factor  $\sqrt{\rho}$ . This follows directly by noting that the bistable equation with a reduced number of ion channels,

$$V'' - sV' + \rho f(V) = 0, \quad (6.23)$$

can be related to the original bistable equation (6.5) by taking  $V(\xi) = U(\sqrt{\rho}\xi), s = c\sqrt{\rho}$ .

**Table 6.1** Sodium channel densities in selected excitable tissues.

Tissue	Channel density (channels/ $\mu\text{m}^2$ )
Mammalian	
Vagus nerve (nonmyelinated)	110
Node of Ranvier	2100
Skeletal muscle	205–560
Other animals	
Squid giant axon	166–533
Frog sartorius muscle	280
Electricel electroplax	550
Garfish olfactory nerve	35
Lobster walking leg nerve	90

## Thresholds and Stability

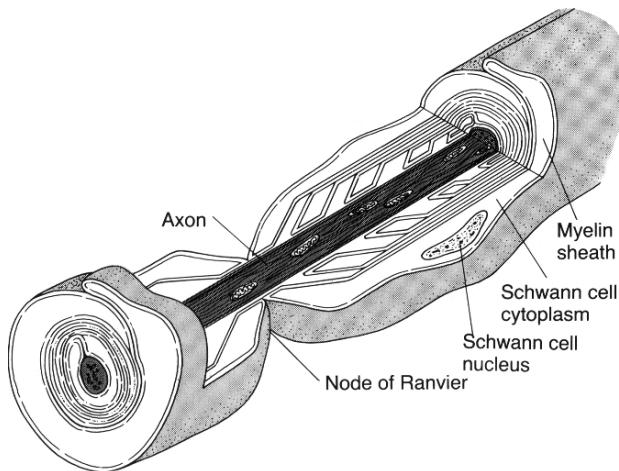
There are many other features of the bistable equation, the details of which are beyond the scope of this book. Perhaps the most important of these features is that solutions of the bistable equation satisfy a comparison property: any two solutions of the bistable equation, say  $u_1(x, t)$  and  $u_2(x, t)$ , that are ordered with  $u_1(x, t_0) \leq u_2(x, t_0)$  at some time  $t = t_0$ , remain ordered for all subsequent times, i.e.,  $u_1(x, t) \leq u_2(x, t)$  for  $t \geq t_0$ .

With comparison arguments it is possible to prove a number of additional facts (Aronson and Weinberger, 1975). For example, the bistable equation exhibits threshold behavior. Specifically, if initial data are sufficiently small, then the solution of the bistable equation approaches zero in the limit  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . However, there are initial functions with compact support lying between 0 and 1 for which the solution approaches 1 in the limit  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . Because of the comparison theorem any larger initial function also initiates a solution that approaches 1 in the limit  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . Such initial data are said to be *superthreshold*.

Furthermore, the traveling wave solution of the bistable equation is stable in a very strong way (Fife, 1979; Fife and McLeod, 1977), as follows. Starting from any initial data that lie between 0 and  $\alpha$  in the limit  $x \rightarrow -\infty$  and between  $\alpha$  and 1 in the limit  $x \rightarrow \infty$ , the solution approaches some phase shift of the traveling wave solution in the limit of large time.

### 6.2.2 Myelination

Most nerve fibers are coated with a lipid material called *myelin* with periodic gaps of exposure called *nodes of Ranvier* (Fig. 6.3). The myelin sheath consists of a single cell, called a *Schwann cell*, which is wrapped many times (roughly 100 times) around the axonal membrane. This wrapping of the axon increases the effective membrane resistance by a factor of about 100 and decreases the membrane capacitance by a factor of about 100. Indeed, rough data are that  $R_m$  is  $10^3 \Omega \text{ cm}^2$  for cell membrane



**Figure 6.3** Schematic diagram of the myelin sheath. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 5-16, p. 69.)

and  $10^5 \Omega \text{ cm}^2$  for myelin sheath, and that  $C_m$  is  $10^{-6} \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$  for cell membrane and  $10^{-8} \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$  for a myelinated fiber. The length of myelin sheath is typically 1 to 2 mm (close to  $100 d$ , where  $d$  is the fiber diameter), and the width of the node of Ranvier is about  $1 \mu\text{m}$ .

Propagation along myelinated fiber is faster than along nonmyelinated fiber. This is presumably caused by the fact that there is little transmembrane ionic current and little capacitive current in the myelinated section, allowing the axon to act as a simple resistor. An action potential does not propagate along the myelinated fiber but rather jumps from node-to-node. This node-to-node propagation is said to be *saltatory* (from the Latin word *saltare*, to leap or dance).

The pathophysiological condition of nerve cells in which damage of the myelin sheath impairs nerve impulse transmission in the central nervous system is called *multiple sclerosis*. Multiple sclerosis is an autoimmune disease that usually affects young adults between the ages of 18 and 40, occurring slightly more often in females than males. With multiple sclerosis, there is an immune response to the white matter of the brain and spinal cord, causing demyelination of nerve fibers at various locations throughout the central nervous system, although the underlying nerve axons and cell bodies are not usually damaged. The loss of myelin slows or stops the transmission of action potentials, with the resultant symptoms of muscle fatigue and weakness or extreme “heaviness.”

To model the electrical activity in a myelinated fiber we assume that the capacitive and transmembrane ionic currents are negligible, so that, along the myelin sheath, the axial currents

$$I_e = -\frac{1}{r_e} \frac{\partial V_e}{\partial x}, \quad I_i = -\frac{1}{r_i} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x} \quad (6.24)$$

are constant (using the same notation as in Chapter 4). We also assume that  $V$  does not vary within each node of Ranvier (i.e., that the nodes are isopotential), and that

$V_n$  is the voltage at the  $n$ th node. Then the axial currents between node  $n$  and node  $n+1$  are

$$I_e = -\frac{1}{Lr_e}(V_{e,n+1} - V_{e,n}), \quad I_i = -\frac{1}{Lr_i}(V_{i,n+1} - V_{i,n}), \quad (6.25)$$

where  $L$  is the length of the myelin sheath between nodes. The total transmembrane current at a node is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mu p \left( C_m \frac{\partial V_n}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) &= I_{i,n} - I_{i,n+1} \\ &= \frac{1}{L(r_i + r_e)}(V_{n+1} - 2V_n + V_{n-1}), \end{aligned} \quad (6.26)$$

where  $\mu$  is the length of the node.

We can introduce dimensionless time  $\tau = \frac{t}{C_m R_m} = t/\tau_m$  (but not dimensionless space), to rewrite (6.26) as

$$\frac{dV_n}{d\tau} = f(V_n) + D(V_{n+1} - 2V_n + V_{n-1}), \quad (6.27)$$

where  $D = \frac{R_m}{\mu L p (r_i + r_e)}$  is the coupling coefficient. We call this equation the *discrete cable equation*.

### 6.2.3 The Discrete Bistable Equation

The discrete bistable equation is the system of equations (6.27) where  $f(V)$  has typical bistable form, as, for example, (6.2) or (6.3). The study of the discrete bistable equation is substantially more difficult than that of the continuous version (6.1). While the discrete bistable equation looks like a finite difference approximation of the continuous bistable equation, solutions of the two have significantly different behavior.

It is a highly nontrivial matter to prove that traveling wave solutions of the discrete system exist (Zinner, 1992). However, a traveling wave solution, if it exists, satisfies the special relationship  $V_{n+1}(\tau) = V_n(\tau - \tau_d)$ . In other words, the  $(n+1)$ st node experiences exactly the same time course as the  $n$ th node, with time delay  $\tau_d$ . Furthermore, if  $V_n(\tau) = V(\tau)$ , it follows from (6.27) that  $V(\tau)$  must satisfy the delay differential equation

$$\frac{dV}{d\tau} = D(V(\tau + \tau_d) - 2V(\tau) + V(\tau - \tau_d)) + f(V(\tau)). \quad (6.28)$$

If the function  $V(\tau)$  is sufficiently smooth and if  $\tau_d$  is sufficiently small, then we can approximate  $V(\tau + \tau_d)$  with its Taylor series  $V(\tau + \tau_d) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} V^{(n)}(\tau) \tau_d^n$ , so that (6.28) is approximated by the differential equation

$$D \left( \tau_d^2 V_{\tau\tau} + \frac{\tau_d^4}{12} V_{\tau\tau\tau\tau} \right) - V_\tau + f(V) = 0, \quad (6.29)$$

ignoring terms of order  $\tau_d^6$  and higher.

Now we suppose that  $\tau_d$  is small. The leading-order equation is

$$D\tau_d^2 V_{\tau\tau} - V_\tau + f(V) = 0, \quad (6.30)$$

which has solution  $V_0(\tau) = U(c\tau)$ , provided that  $D\tau_d^2 = 1/c^2$ , where  $U$  is the traveling front solution of the bistable equation (6.5) and  $c$  is the dimensionless wave speed for the continuous equation. The wave speed  $s$  is the internodal distance  $L + \mu$  divided by the time delay  $\tau_m \tau_d$ , so that

$$s = \frac{L + \mu}{\tau_m \tau_d} = (L + \mu)c \frac{\sqrt{D}}{\tau_m}. \quad (6.31)$$

For myelinated nerve fiber we know that  $D = \frac{R_m}{\mu L p(r_i+r_e)}$ . If we ignore extracellular resistance, we find a leading-order approximation for the velocity of

$$s = \frac{L + \mu}{\sqrt{\mu L}} \frac{c}{2C_m} \sqrt{\frac{d}{R_m R_c}}, \quad (6.32)$$

giving a change in velocity compared to nonmyelinated fiber by the factor  $\frac{L+\mu}{\sqrt{\mu L}}$ . With the estimates  $L = 100 d$  and  $\mu = 1 \mu\text{m}$ , this increase in velocity is by a factor of  $10\sqrt{\frac{d}{10^{-6}\text{m}}}$ , which is substantial. Empirically it is known that the improvement of velocity for myelinated fiber compared to nonmyelinated fiber is by a factor of about  $6\sqrt{\frac{d}{10^{-6}\text{m}}}$ .

### Higher-Order Approximation

We can find a higher-order approximation to the speed of propagation by using a standard regular perturbation argument. We set  $\epsilon = 1/D$  and seek a solution of (6.29) of the form

$$V(\tau) = V_0(\tau) + \epsilon V_1(\tau) + \dots, \quad (6.33)$$

$$\tau_d^2 = \frac{\epsilon}{c^2} + \epsilon^2 \tau_1 + \dots. \quad (6.34)$$

We expand (6.29) into its powers of  $\epsilon$  and set the coefficients of  $\epsilon$  to zero. The first equation we obtain from this procedure is (6.30), and the second equation is

$$L[V_1] = \frac{1}{c^2} V_1'' - V_1' + f'(V_0)V_1 = -\frac{V_0'''}{12c^4} - \tau_1 V_0''. \quad (6.35)$$

Note that here we are using  $L[\cdot]$  to denote a linear differential operator. The goal is to find solutions of (6.35) that are square integrable on the infinite domain, so that the solution is “close” to  $V_0$ . The linear operator  $L[\cdot]$  is not an invertible operator in this space by virtue of the fact that  $L[V_0'(\tau)] = 0$ . (This follows by differentiating (6.30) once with respect to  $\tau$ .) Thus, it follows from the Fredholm alternative theorem (Keener, 1998) that a solution of (6.35) exists if and only if the right-hand side of the equation is orthogonal to the null space of the adjoint operator  $L^*$ . Here the adjoint differential operator is

$$L^*[V] = \frac{1}{c^2} V'' + V' + f'(V_0)V, \quad (6.36)$$

and the one element of the null space (a solution of  $L^*[V] = 0$ ) is

$$V^*(\tau) = \exp(-c^2\tau) V'_0(\tau). \quad (6.37)$$

This leads to the solvability condition

$$\tau_1 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-c^2\tau) V'_0(\tau) V''_0(\tau) d\tau = -\frac{1}{12c^4} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-c^2\tau) V'_0(\tau) V'''_0(\tau) d\tau. \quad (6.38)$$

As a result,  $\tau_1$  can be calculated (either analytically or numerically) by evaluating two integrals, and the speed of propagation is determined as

$$s = (L + \mu) \frac{c}{\tau_m} \sqrt{D} \left( 1 - \frac{\tau_1 c^2}{2D} + O\left(\frac{c^2}{D}\right)^2 \right). \quad (6.39)$$

This exercise is interesting from the point of view of numerical analysis, as it shows the effect of numerical discretization on the speed of propagation. This method can be applied to other numerical schemes for an equation with traveling wave solutions (Exercise 20).

### Propagation Failure

The most significant difference between the discrete and continuous equations is that the discrete system has a coupling threshold for propagation, while the continuous model allows for propagation at all coupling strengths. It is readily seen from (6.21) that for the continuous cable equation, continuous changes in the physical parameters lead to continuous changes in the speed of propagation, and the speed cannot be driven to zero unless the diameter is zero or the resistances or capacitance are infinite. Such is not the case for the discrete system, and propagation may fail if the coupling coefficient is too small. This is easy to understand when we realize that if the coupling strength is very weak, so that the effective internodal resistance is large, the current flow from an excited node to an unexcited node may be so small that the threshold of the unexcited node is not exceeded, and propagation cannot continue.

To study propagation failure, we seek standing (time-independent, i.e.,  $dV_n/d\tau = 0$ ) solutions of the discrete equation (6.27). The motivation for this comes from the maximum principle and comparison arguments. One can show that if two sets of initial data for the discrete bistable equation are initially ordered, the corresponding solutions remain ordered for all time. It follows that if the discrete bistable equation has a monotone increasing stationary front solution, then there cannot be a traveling wave front solution.

A standing front solution of the discrete bistable equation is a sequence  $\{V_n\}$  satisfying the finite difference equation

$$0 = D(V_{n+1} - 2V_n + V_{n-1}) + f(V_n) \quad (6.40)$$

for all integers  $n$ , for which  $V_n \rightarrow 1$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  and  $V_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow -\infty$ .

One can show (Keener, 1987) that for any bistable function  $f$ , there is a number  $D^* > 0$  such that for  $D \leq D^*$ , the discrete bistable equation has a standing solution, that is, propagation fails. To get a simple understanding of the behavior of this coupling threshold, we solve (6.40) in the special case of piecewise-linear dynamics (6.3). Since the discrete equation with dynamics (6.3) is linear, the homogeneous solution can be expressed as a linear combination of powers of some number  $\lambda$  as

$$V_n = A\lambda^n + B\lambda^{-n}, \quad (6.41)$$

where  $\lambda$  is a solution of the characteristic polynomial equation

$$\lambda^2 - \left(2 + \frac{1}{D}\right)\lambda + 1 = 0. \quad (6.42)$$

Note that this implies that

$$D = \frac{\lambda}{(\lambda - 1)^2}. \quad (6.43)$$

The characteristic equation has two positive roots, one larger and one smaller than 1. Let  $\lambda$  be the root that is smaller than one. Then, taking the conditions at  $\pm\infty$  into account, we write the solution as

$$V_n = \begin{cases} 1 + A\lambda^n, & \text{for } n \geq 0, \\ B\lambda^{-n}, & \text{for } n < 0. \end{cases} \quad (6.44)$$

This expression for  $V_n$  must also satisfy the piecewise-linear discrete bistable equation for  $n = -1, 0$ . Thus,

$$D(V_1 - 2V_0 + V_{-1}) = V_0 - 1, \quad (6.45)$$

$$D(V_0 - 2V_{-1} + V_{-2}) = V_{-1}, \quad (6.46)$$

where we have assumed that  $V_n \geq \alpha$  for all  $n \geq 0$ , and  $V_n < \alpha$  for all  $n < 0$ . Substituting in (6.43) for  $D$ , and solving for  $A$  and  $B$ , then gives  $B = A + 1 = \frac{1}{1+\lambda}$ .

Finally, this is a solution for all  $n$ , provided that  $V_0 \geq \alpha$ . Since  $V_0 = B = \frac{1}{1+\lambda}$ , we need  $\frac{1}{1+\lambda} \geq \alpha$ , or  $\lambda \leq \frac{1-\alpha}{\alpha}$ . However, when  $\lambda < 1$ ,  $D$  is an increasing function of  $\lambda$ , and thus  $\lambda \leq \frac{1-\alpha}{\alpha}$  whenever

$$D \leq D \left( \frac{1-\alpha}{\alpha} \right) = \frac{\alpha(1-\alpha)}{(2\alpha-1)^2} = D^*. \quad (6.47)$$

In other words, there is a standing wave, precluding propagation, whenever the coupling is small, with  $D \leq D^*$ . Since  $\alpha$  is a measure of the excitability of this medium, we see that when the medium is weakly excitable ( $\alpha$  is near 1/2), then  $D^*$  is large and very little resistance is needed to halt propagation. On the other hand, when  $\alpha$  is small, so that the medium is highly excitable, the resistance threshold is large, and propagation is relatively difficult to stop.

## 6.3 Traveling Pulses

A traveling pulse (often called a *solitary pulse*) is a traveling wave solution that starts and ends at the same steady state of the governing equations. Recall that a traveling front solution corresponds to a heteroclinic trajectory in the  $(U, W)$  phase plane, i.e., a trajectory, parameterized by  $\xi$ , that connects two different steady states of the system. A traveling pulse solution is similar, corresponding to a trajectory that begins and ends at the *same* steady state in the traveling wave coordinate system. Such trajectories are called *homoclinic orbits*.

There are three main approaches to finding traveling pulses for excitable systems. First, one can approximate the nonlinear functions with piecewise-linear functions, and then find traveling pulse solutions as exact solutions of transcendental equations. Second, one can use perturbation methods exploiting the different time scales to find approximate analytical expressions. Finally, one can use numerical simulations to solve the governing differential equations. We illustrate each of these techniques in turn.

### 6.3.1 The FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations

To understand the structure of a traveling pulse it is helpful first to study traveling pulse solutions in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations

$$\epsilon \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = \epsilon^2 \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + f(v, w), \quad (6.48)$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = g(v, w), \quad (6.49)$$

where  $\epsilon$  is assumed to be a small positive number. Without any loss of generality, space has been scaled so that the diffusion coefficient is  $\epsilon^2$ . It is important to realize that this does not imply anything about the magnitude of the physical diffusion coefficient. This is simply a scaling of the space variable so that in the new coordinate system, the wave front appears steep, a procedure that facilitates the study of the wave as a whole. The variable  $v$  is spatially coupled with diffusion, but the variable  $w$  is not, owing to the fact that  $v$  represents the membrane potential, while  $w$  represents a slow ionic current or gating variable.

To study traveling waves, we place the system of equations (6.48)–(6.49) in a traveling coordinate frame of reference. We define the traveling wave coordinate  $\xi = x - ct$ , where  $c > 0$  is the wave speed, yet to be determined. Note that the traveling wave variable,  $\xi = x - ct$ , is different from the one previously used in this chapter,  $x + ct$ . Hence,  $c > 0$  here corresponds to a wave moving from left to right.

The partial differential equations (6.48)–(6.49) become the ordinary differential equations

$$\epsilon^2 v_{\xi\xi} + c\epsilon v_\xi + f(v, w) = 0, \quad (6.50)$$

$$cw_\xi + g(v, w) = 0. \quad (6.51)$$

### A Piecewise-Linear Model

We begin by examining the simplest case, the piecewise-linear dynamics (Rinzel and Keller, 1973)

$$f(v, w) = H(v - \alpha) - v - w, \quad (6.52)$$

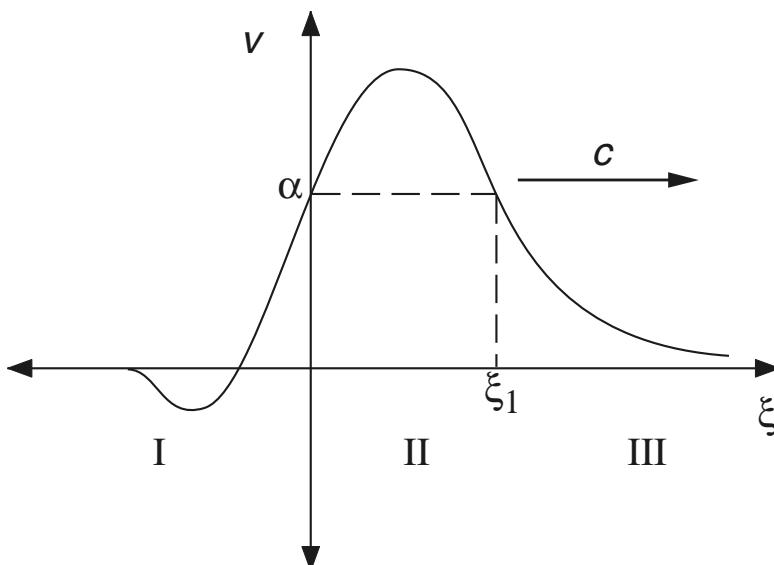
$$g(v, w) = v. \quad (6.53)$$

Because the dynamics are piecewise linear, the exact solution can be constructed in a piecewise manner. We look for solutions of the form sketched in Fig. 6.4. The position of the wave along the  $\xi$  axis is specified by fixing  $v(0) = v(\xi_1) = \alpha$ . As yet,  $\xi_1$  is unknown, and is to be determined as part of the solution process. Note that the places where  $v = \alpha$  are those where the dynamics change (since  $\alpha$  is the point of discontinuity of  $f$ ). Let I, II, and III denote, respectively, the regions  $\xi < 0$ ,  $0 < \xi < \xi_1$ , and  $\xi_1 < \xi$ . In each region, the differential equation is linear and so can be solved exactly. The three regional solutions are then joined at  $\xi = 0$  and  $\xi = \xi_1$  by stipulating that  $v$  and  $w$  be continuous at the boundaries and that  $v$  have a continuous derivative there. These constraints are sufficient to determine the solution unambiguously.

In regions I and III,  $v < \alpha$ , and so the differential equation is

$$\epsilon^2 v_{\xi\xi} + c\epsilon v_\xi - v - w = 0, \quad (6.54)$$

$$cw_\xi + v = 0. \quad (6.55)$$



**Figure 6.4** Schematic diagram of the traveling pulse of the piecewise-linear FitzHugh-Nagumo equations.

Looking for solutions of the form  $v = A \exp(\lambda \xi)$ ,  $w = B \exp(\lambda \xi)$ , we find that  $A$  and  $B$  must satisfy

$$\begin{pmatrix} \lambda^2 \epsilon^2 + c\epsilon\lambda - 1 & -1 \\ 1 & c\lambda \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A \\ B \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (6.56)$$

which has a nontrivial solution if and only if

$$\begin{vmatrix} \lambda^2 \epsilon^2 + c\epsilon\lambda - 1 & -1 \\ 1 & c\lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (6.57)$$

Hence,  $\lambda$  must be a root of the characteristic polynomial

$$\epsilon^2 p(\lambda) = \epsilon^2 \lambda^3 + \epsilon c \lambda^2 - \lambda + 1/c = 0. \quad (6.58)$$

There is exactly one negative root, call it  $\lambda_1$ , and the real parts of the other two roots,  $\lambda_2$  and  $\lambda_3$ , are positive.

In region II, the differential equation is

$$\epsilon^2 v_{\xi\xi} + c\epsilon v_\xi + 1 - v - w = 0, \quad (6.59)$$

$$cw_\xi + v = 0. \quad (6.60)$$

The inhomogeneous solution is  $w = 1, v = 0$ , and the homogeneous solution is a sum of exponentials of the form  $e^{\lambda_i \xi}$ .

Since we want the solution to approach zero in the limit  $\xi \rightarrow \pm\infty$ , the traveling pulse can be represented as the exponential  $e^{\lambda_1 \xi}$  for large positive  $\xi$ , the sum of the two exponentials  $e^{\lambda_2 \xi}$  and  $e^{\lambda_3 \xi}$  for large negative  $\xi$ , and the sum of all three exponentials for the intermediate range of  $\xi$  for which  $v(\xi) > \alpha$ . We take

$$w(\xi) = \begin{cases} Ae^{\lambda_1 \xi}, & \text{for } \xi \geq \xi_1, \\ 1 + \sum_{i=1}^3 B_i e^{\lambda_i \xi}, & \text{for } 0 \leq \xi \leq \xi_1, \\ \sum_{i=2}^3 C_i e^{\lambda_i \xi}, & \text{for } \xi \leq 0, \end{cases} \quad (6.61)$$

with  $v = -cw_\xi$ . We also require  $w(\xi), v(\xi)$ , and  $v_\xi(\xi)$  to be continuous at  $\xi = 0, \xi_1$ , and that  $v(0) = v(\xi_1) = \alpha$ .

There are six unknown constants and two unknown parameters  $c$  and  $\xi_1$  that must be determined from the six continuity conditions and the two constraints. Following some calculation, we eliminate the coefficients  $A, B_i$ , and  $C_i$ , leaving the two constraints

$$e^{\lambda_1 \xi_1} + \epsilon^2 p'(\lambda_1)\alpha - 1 = 0, \quad (6.62)$$

$$\frac{e^{-\lambda_2 \xi_1}}{p'(\lambda_2)} + \frac{e^{-\lambda_3 \xi_1}}{p'(\lambda_3)} + \frac{1}{p'(\lambda_1)} + \epsilon^2 \alpha = 0. \quad (6.63)$$

There are now two unknowns,  $c$  and  $\xi_1$ , and two equations. In general, (6.62) could be solved for  $\xi_1$ , and (6.63) could then be used to determine  $c$  for each fixed  $\alpha$  and  $\epsilon$ .

However, it is more convenient to treat  $c$  as known and  $\alpha$  as unknown, and then find  $\alpha$  as a function of  $c$ . So, we set  $s = e^{\lambda_1 \xi_1}$ , in which case (6.63) becomes

$$h(s) = 2 - s + \frac{p'(\lambda_1)}{p'(\lambda_2)} e^{-\lambda_2 \ln(s)/\lambda_1} + \frac{p'(\lambda_1)}{p'(\lambda_3)} e^{-\lambda_3 \ln(s)/\lambda_1} = 0, \quad (6.64)$$

where  $\alpha$  has been eliminated using (6.62). We seek a solution of  $h(s) = 0$  with  $0 < s < 1$ .

We begin by noting that  $h(0) = 2$ ,  $h(1) = 0$ ,  $h'(1) = 0$ , and  $h''(1) = p'(\lambda_1)/\lambda_1^2 - 2$ . The first of these relationships follows from the fact that the real parts of  $\lambda_2$  and  $\lambda_3$  are of different sign from  $\lambda_1$ , and therefore, in the limit as  $s \rightarrow 0$ , the exponential terms disappear as the real parts of the exponents approach  $-\infty$ . The second relationship,  $h(1) = 0$ , follows from the fact that  $1/p'(\lambda_1) + 1/p'(\lambda_2) + 1/p'(\lambda_3) = 0$  (Exercise 9). The final two relationships are similar and are left as exercises (Exercises 9, 10).

If  $h''(1) < 0$ , then the value  $s = 1$  is a local maximum of  $h(s)$ , so for  $s$  slightly less than 1,  $h(s) < 0$ . Since  $h(0) > 0$ , a root of  $h(s) = 0$  in the interval  $0 < s < 1$  is assured.

When  $\lambda_2$  and  $\lambda_3$  are real,  $h(s)$  can have at most one inflection point in the interval  $0 < s < 1$ . This follows because the equation  $h''(s) = 0$  can be written in the form  $e^{(\lambda_2 - \lambda_3)\xi_1} = c$ , which can have at most one root. Thus, if  $h''(1) < 0$  there is precisely one root, while if  $h''(1) > 0$  there can be no roots. If the roots  $\lambda_2$  and  $\lambda_3$  are complex, uniqueness is not assured, although the condition  $h''(1) < 0$  guarantees that there is at least one root.

Differentiating the defining polynomial (6.58) with respect to  $\lambda$ , we observe that the condition  $h''(1) < 0$  is equivalent to requiring  $\epsilon^2 \lambda_1^2 + 2c\epsilon \lambda_1 - 1 < 0$ . Furthermore, from the defining characteristic polynomial, we know that  $\epsilon^2 \lambda_1^2 - 1 = -c\epsilon \lambda_1 + \epsilon^2/(\lambda_1 c)$ , and thus it follows that  $h''(1) < 0$  if  $\lambda_1 < -\frac{1}{c\sqrt{\epsilon}}$ . Since the polynomial  $p(\lambda)$  is increasing at  $\lambda_1$ , we are assured that  $\lambda_1 < -\frac{1}{c\sqrt{\epsilon}}$  if  $p(-\frac{1}{c\sqrt{\epsilon}}) > 0$ , i.e., if

$$c^2 > \epsilon. \quad (6.65)$$

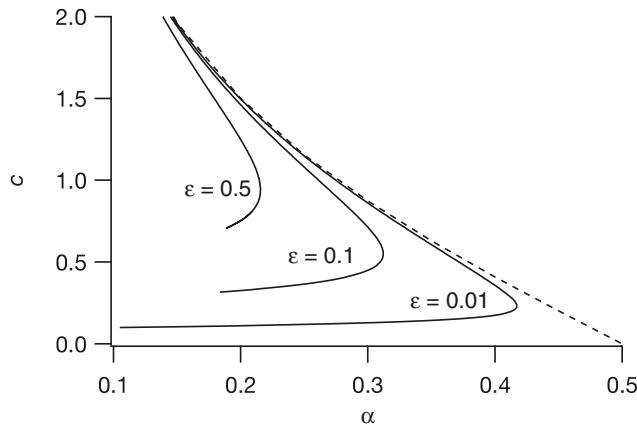
Thus, whenever  $c > \sqrt{\epsilon}$ , a root of  $h(s) = 0$  with  $0 < s < 1$  is guaranteed to exist.

Once  $s$  is known,  $\alpha$  can be found from the relationship (6.62) whereby

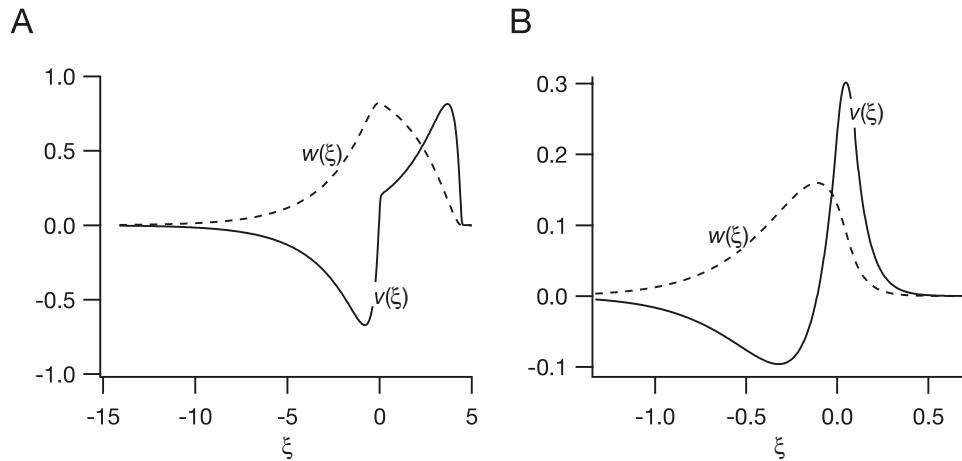
$$\alpha = \frac{1 - s}{\epsilon^2 p'(\lambda_1)}. \quad (6.66)$$

In Fig. 6.5, we show the results of solving (6.64) numerically. Shown plotted is the speed  $c$  against  $\alpha$  for three values of  $\epsilon$ . The dashed curve is the asymptotic limit (6.12) for the curves in the limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ . The important feature to notice is that for each value of  $\alpha$  and  $\epsilon$  small enough there are two traveling pulses, while for large  $\alpha$  there are no traveling pulses. In Fig. 6.6A is shown the fast traveling pulse, and in Fig. 6.6B is shown the slow traveling pulse, both for  $\alpha = 0.1$ ,  $\epsilon = 0.1$ , and with  $v(\xi)$  shown solid and  $w(\xi)$  shown dashed.

Note that the amplitude of the slow pulse in Fig. 6.6B is substantially smaller than that of the fast pulse in Fig. 6.6A. Generally speaking, the fast pulse is stable (Jones, 1984; Yanagida, 1985), and the slow pulse is unstable (Maginu, 1985). Also note that there is nothing in the construction of these wave solutions requiring  $\epsilon$  to be small.



**Figure 6.5** Speed  $c$  as a function of  $\alpha$  for the traveling pulse solution of the piecewise-linear FitzHugh–Nagumo system, shown for  $\epsilon = 0.5, 0.1, 0.01$ . The dashed curve shows the asymptotic limit as  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ , found by singular perturbation arguments.



**Figure 6.6** A: Plots of  $v(\xi)$  and  $w(\xi)$  for the fast traveling pulse ( $c = 2.66$ ) for the piecewise-linear FitzHugh–Nagumo system with  $\alpha = 0.1, \epsilon = 0.1$ . B: Plots of  $v(\xi)$  and  $w(\xi)$  for the slow traveling pulse ( $c = 0.34$ ) for the same piecewise-linear FitzHugh–Nagumo system as in panel A.

### Singular Perturbation Theory

The next way to extract information about the traveling pulse solution of (6.48)–(6.49) is to exploit the smallness of the parameter  $\epsilon$  (Keener, 1980a; for a different approach, see Rauch and Smoller, 1978). One reason we expect this to be fruitful is because of similarities with the phase portrait of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations without

diffusion, shown in Fig. 5.15. By analogy, we expect the solution to stay close to the nullcline  $f(v, w) = 0$  wherever possible, with rapid transitions between the two outer branches.

The details of this behavior follow from singular perturbation analysis. (This analysis was first given for a simplified FitzHugh–Nagumo system by Casten et al., 1975.) The first observation follows simply from setting  $\epsilon$  to zero in (6.48). Doing so, we obtain the *outer equations*

$$w_t = g(v, w), \quad f(v, w) = 0. \quad (6.67)$$

Because the equation  $f(v, w) = 0$  is assumed to have three solutions for  $v$  as a function of  $w$ , and only two of these solutions, the upper and lower solution branches, are stable (cf. Fig. 5.13 and the discussion in Section 5.2), the outer equations (6.67) reduce to

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = G_{\pm}(w). \quad (6.68)$$

A region of space in which  $v = V_+(w)$  is called an *excited region*, and a region in which  $v = V_-(w)$  is called a *recovering region*. The outer equation is valid whenever diffusion is not large. However, we anticipate that there are regions of space (*interfaces*) where diffusion is large and in which (6.68) cannot be correct.

To find out what happens when diffusion is large we rescale space and time. Letting  $y(t)$  denote the position of the wave front, we set  $\tau = t$  and  $\xi = \frac{x-y(t)}{\epsilon}$ , after which the original system of equations (6.48)–(6.49) becomes

$$v_{\xi\xi} + y'(\tau)v_\xi + f(v, w) = \epsilon \frac{\partial v}{\partial \tau}, \quad (6.69)$$

$$-y'(\tau)w_\xi = \epsilon \left( g(v, w) - \frac{\partial w}{\partial \tau} \right). \quad (6.70)$$

Upon setting  $\epsilon = 0$ , we find the reduced *inner equations*

$$v_{\xi\xi} + y'(\tau)v_\xi + f(v, w) = 0, \quad (6.71)$$

$$y'(\tau)w_\xi = 0. \quad (6.72)$$

Even though the inner equations (6.71)–(6.72) are partial differential equations, the variable  $\tau$  occurs only as a parameter, and so (6.71)–(6.72) can be solved as if they were ordinary differential equations. This is because the traveling wave is stationary in the moving coordinate system  $\xi, \tau$ . It follows that  $w$  is independent of  $\xi$  (but not necessarily  $\tau$ ). Finally, since the inner equation is supposed to provide a transition layer between regions where outer dynamics hold, we require the *matching condition* that  $f(v, w) \rightarrow 0$  as  $\xi \rightarrow \pm\infty$ . Note that here we use  $y(t)$  to locate the wave front, rather than  $ct$  as before, and then  $y'(\tau)$  is the instantaneous wave velocity.

We recognize (6.71) as a bistable equation for which there are heteroclinic orbits. That is, for fixed  $w$ , if the equation  $f(v, w) = 0$  has three roots, two of which are stable as solutions of the equation  $dv/dt = f(v, w)$ , then there is a number  $c = c(w)$  for which

the equation

$$v'' + c(w)v' + f(v, w) = 0 \quad (6.73)$$

has a heteroclinic orbit connecting the two stable roots of  $f(v, w) = 0$ . This heteroclinic orbit corresponds to a moving transition layer, traveling with speed  $c$ . It is important to note that since the roots of  $f(v, w) = 0$  are functions of  $w$ ,  $c$  is also a function of  $w$ . To be specific, we define  $c(w)$  to be the unique parameter value for which (6.73) has a solution with  $v \rightarrow V_-(w)$  as  $\xi \rightarrow \infty$ , and  $v \rightarrow V_+(w)$  as  $\xi \rightarrow -\infty$ . In the case that  $c(w) > 0$ , we describe this transition as an “upjump” moving to the right. If  $c(w) < 0$ , then the transition is a “downjump” moving to the left.

We are now able to describe a general picture of wave propagation. In most of space, outer dynamics (6.68) are satisfied. At any transition between the two types of outer dynamics, continuity of  $w$  is maintained by a sharp transition in  $v$  that travels at the speed  $y'(t) = c(w)$  if  $v = V_-(w)$  on the right and  $v = V_+(w)$  on the left, or at speed  $y'(t) = -c(w)$  if  $v = V_+(w)$  on the right and  $v = V_-(w)$  on the left, where  $w$  is the value of the recovery variable in the interior of the transition layer. As a transition layer passes any particular point in space, there is a switch of outer dynamics from one to the other of the possible outer solution branches.

This singular perturbation description of wave propagation allows us to examine in more detail the specific case of a traveling pulse. The phase portrait for a solitary pulse is sketched in Fig. 6.7. A traveling pulse consists of a single excitation front followed by a single recovery back. We suppose that far to the right, the medium is at rest, and that a wave front of excitation has been initiated and is moving from left to right. Of course, for the medium to be at rest there must be a rest point of the dynamics on the lower branch, say  $G_-(w_+) = 0$ . Then, a wave that is moving from left to right has  $v = V_-(w_+)$  on its right and  $v = V_+(w_+)$  on its left, traveling at speed  $y'(t) = c(w_+)$ . Necessarily, it must be that  $c(w_+) > 0$ . Following the same procedure used to derive (6.8), one can show that

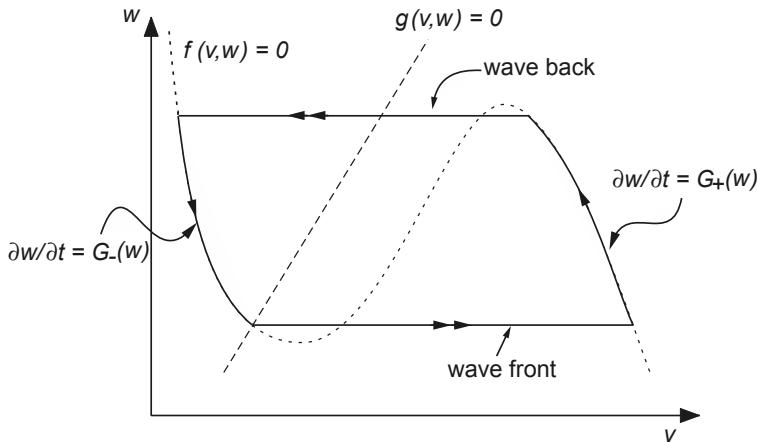
$$c(w) = \frac{\int_{V_-(w)}^{V_+(w)} f(v, w) dv}{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} v_\xi^2 d\xi}, \quad (6.74)$$

and thus  $c(w_+) > 0$  if and only if

$$\int_{V_-(w_+)}^{V_+(w_+)} f(v, w_+) dv > 0. \quad (6.75)$$

If (6.75) fails to hold, then the medium is not sufficiently excitable to sustain a propagating pulse. It is important also to note that if  $f(v, w)$  is of generalized FitzHugh–Nagumo form, then  $c(w)$  has a unique zero in the interval  $(W_*, W^*)$ , where  $W_*$  and  $W^*$  are defined in Section 5.2.

Immediately to the left of the excitation front, the medium is excited and satisfies the outer dynamics on the upper branch  $v = V_+(w)$ . Because (by assumption)  $G_+(w) > 0$ , this can hold for at most a finite amount of time before the outer dynamics force another transition layer to appear. This second transition layer provides a transition



**Figure 6.7** Sketch of the phase portrait of the fast traveling solitary pulse for FitzHugh-Nagumo dynamics in the singular limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ .

between the excited region on the right and a recovering region on the left and travels with speed  $y'(t) = -c(w)$ , where  $w$  is the value of the recovery variable in the transition layer. The minus sign here is because the second transition layer must be a downjump. For this to be a steadily propagating traveling pulse, the speeds of the upjump and downjump must be identical. Thus, the value of  $w$  at the downjump, say  $w_-$ , must be such that  $c(w_-) = -c(w_+)$ .

It may be that the equation  $c(w_-) = -c(w_+)$  has no solution. In this case, the downjump must occur at the knee, and then the wave is called a *phase wave* since the timing of the downjump is determined solely by the timing, or phase, of the outer dynamics, and not by any diffusive processes. That such a wave can travel at any speed greater than some minimal speed can be shown using standard arguments. The dynamics for phase waves are different from those for the bistable equation because the downjump must be a heteroclinic connection between a saddle point and a saddle-node. That is, at the knee, two of the three steady solutions of the bistable equation are merged into one. The demonstration of the existence of traveling waves in this situation is similar to the case of Fisher's equation, where the nonlinearity  $f(v, w)$  in (6.73) has two simple zeros, rather than three as in the bistable case. In the phase wave problem, however, one of the zeros of  $f(v, w)$  is not simple, but quadratic in nature, a canonical example of which is  $f(v, w) = v^2(1 - v)$ . We do not pursue this further except to say that such waves exist (see Exercise 16).

In summary, from singular perturbation theory we learn that the value of  $w$  ahead of the traveling pulse is given by the steady-state value  $w_+$ , and the speed of the rising wave front is then determined from the bistable equation (6.73) with  $w = w_+$ . The wave front switches the value of  $v$  from  $v = V_-(w_+)$  (ahead of the wave) to  $v = V_+(w_+)$  (behind the wave front). A wave back then occurs at  $w = w_-$ , where  $w_-$  is determined

from  $c(w_-) = -c(w_+)$ . The wave back switches the value of  $v$  from  $v = V_+(w_-)$  to  $v = V_-(w_-)$ . The duration of the excited phase of the traveling pulse is

$$T_e = \int_{w_+}^{w_-} \frac{dw}{G^+(w)}. \quad (6.76)$$

The duration of the absolute refractory period is

$$T_{\text{ar}} = \int_{w_-}^{w_0} \frac{dw}{G_-(w)}, \quad (6.77)$$

where  $w_0$  is that value of  $w$  for which  $c(w) = 0$  (Exercise 11). This approximate solution is said to be a singular solution, because derivatives of the solution become infinite (are singular) in the limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ .

### 6.3.2 The Hodgkin–Huxley Equations

The traveling pulse for the Hodgkin–Huxley equations must be computed numerically. The most direct way to do this is to simulate the partial differential equation on a long one-dimensional spatial domain. Alternately, one can use the technique of shooting. In fact, shooting was used by Hodgkin and Huxley in their 1952 paper to demonstrate that the Hodgkin–Huxley equations support a traveling wave solution. Shooting is also the method by which a rigorous proof of the existence of traveling waves has been given (Hastings, 1975; Carpenter, 1977).

The shooting argument is as follows. We write the Hodgkin–Huxley equations in the form

$$\tau_m \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = \lambda_m^2 \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + f(v, m, n, h), \quad (6.78)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = \alpha_w(v)(1-w) - \beta_w(v)w, \text{ for } w = n, m, \text{ and } h. \quad (6.79)$$

Now we look for solutions in  $x, t$  that are functions of the translating variable  $\xi = x/c + t$ , and find the system of ordinary differential equations

$$\frac{\lambda_m^2}{c^2} \frac{d^2 v}{d\xi^2} + f(v, m, n, h) - \tau_m \frac{dv}{d\xi} = 0, \quad (6.80)$$

$$\frac{dw}{d\xi} = \alpha_w(v)(1-w) - \beta_w(v)w, \text{ for } w = n, m, \text{ and } h. \quad (6.81)$$

Linearizing the system (6.80) and (6.81) about the resting solution at  $v = 0$ , one finds that there are four negative eigenvalues and one positive eigenvalue. A reasonable approximation to the unstable manifold is found by neglecting variations in  $g_K$  and  $g_{Na}$ , from which

$$v(t) = v_0 e^{\mu t}, \quad (6.82)$$

where

$$\frac{\lambda_m^2}{c^2} \mu^2 - \tau_m \mu - 1 = 0$$

or

$$\mu = \frac{1}{2} \left( \tau_m \frac{c^2}{\lambda_m^2} + \frac{c}{\lambda_m} \sqrt{\tau_m^2 \frac{c^2}{\lambda_m^2} + 4} \right).$$

To implement shooting, one chooses a value of  $c$ , and initial data close to the rest point but on the unstable manifold (6.82), and then integrates numerically until (in all likelihood) the potential becomes very large. It could be that the potential becomes large positive or large negative. In fact, once values of  $c$  are found that do both, one uses bisection to home in on the homoclinic orbit that returns to the rest point in the limit  $\xi \rightarrow \infty$ .

For the Hodgkin–Huxley equations one finds a traveling pulse for  $c = 3.24 \lambda_m \text{ ms}^{-1}$ . Using typical values for squid axon (from Table 4.1,  $\lambda_m = 0.65 \text{ cm}$ ), we find  $c = 21 \text{ mm/ms}$ , which is close to the value of  $21.2 \text{ mm/ms}$  found experimentally by Hodgkin and Huxley. Hodgkin and Huxley estimated the space constant for squid axon as  $\lambda_m = 0.58 \text{ cm}$ , from which they calculated that  $c = 18.8 \text{ mm/ms}$ . Their calculated speeds agreed very well with experimental data and thus their model, which was based only on measurements of ionic conductance, was used to predict accurately macroscopic behavior of the axon. It is rare that quantitative models can be applied so successfully. Propagation velocities for several types of excitable tissue are listed in Table 6.2.

---

**Table 6.2** Propagation velocities in nerve and muscle.

---

Excitable Tissue	Velocity (m/sec)
Myelinated nerve fibers	
Large diameter ( $16\text{--}20 \mu\text{m}$ )	100–120
Mid-diameter ( $10\text{--}12 \mu\text{m}$ )	60–70
Small diameter ( $4\text{--}6 \mu\text{m}$ )	30–50
Nonmyelinated nerve fibers	
Mid-diameter ( $3\text{--}5 \mu\text{m}$ )	15–20
Skeletal muscle fibers	6
Heart	
Purkinje fibers	1.0
Cardiac muscle	0.5
Smooth muscle	0.05

## 6.4 Periodic Wave Trains

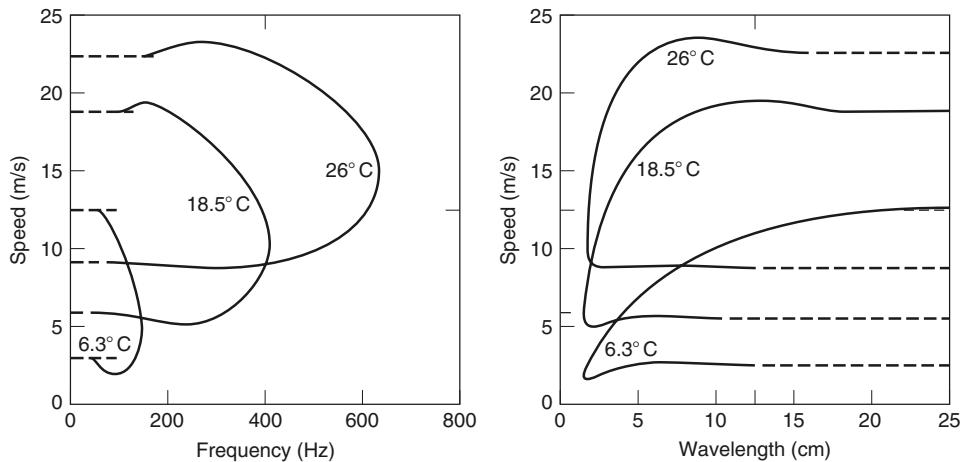
Excitable systems are characterized by both excitability and refractoriness. That is, after the system has responded to a superthreshold stimulus with a large excursion from rest, there is a refractory period during which no subsequent responses can be evoked, followed by a recovery period during which excitability is gradually restored. Once excitability is restored, another wave of excitation can be evoked. However, the speed at which subsequent waves of excitation travel depends strongly on the time allowed for recovery of excitability following the last excitation wave. Generally (but not always), the longer the period of recovery, the faster the new wave of excitation can travel.

One might guess that a nerve axon supports, in addition to a traveling pulse, periodic wave trains of action potentials. With a periodic wave train, if recovery is a monotonic process, one expects propagation to be slower than for a traveling pulse, because subsequent action potentials occur before the medium is fully recovered, so that the  $\text{Na}^+$  upstroke is slower than for a traveling pulse. The relationship between the speed and period is called the *dispersion curve*.

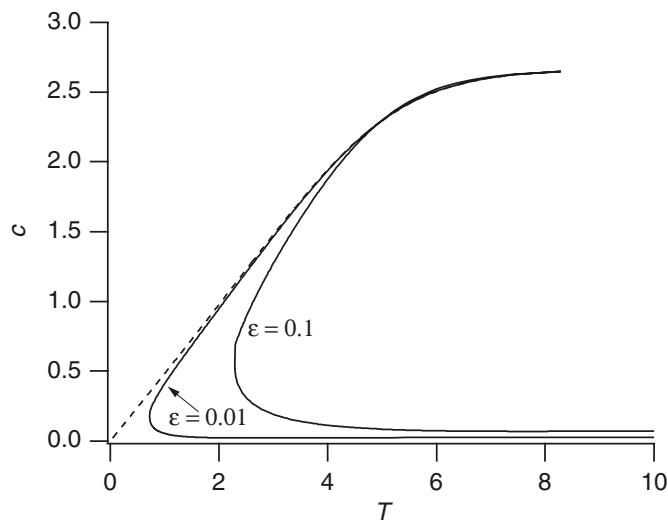
There are at least two ways to numerically calculate the dispersion curve for the Hodgkin–Huxley equations. The most direct method is to construct a ring, that is, a one-dimensional domain with periodic boundary conditions, initiate a pulse that travels in one direction on the ring, and solve the equations numerically until the solution becomes periodic in time. One can then use this waveform as initial data for a ring of slightly different length, and do the calculation again. While this method is relatively easy, its principal disadvantage is that it requires the periodic solution to be stable. Dispersion curves often have regions whose periodic solutions are unstable, and this method cannot find those. Of course, only the stable solutions are physically realizable, so this disadvantage may not be so serious to the realist.

The second method is to look for periodic solutions of the equations in their traveling wave coordinates (6.80)–(6.81), using a numerical continuation method (an automatic continuation program such as AUTO recommends itself here). With this method, periodic solutions are found without reference to their stability, so that the entire dispersion curve can be calculated.

Dispersion curves for excitable systems have a typical shape, depicted in Figs. 6.8 and 6.9. Here we see a dispersion curve having two branches, one denoting fast waves, the other slow. The two branches meet at a knee or corner at the *absolute refractory period*, and for shorter periods no periodic solutions exist. The solutions on the fast branch are typical of action potentials and are usually (but not always) stable. The solutions on the slow branch are small amplitude oscillations and are unstable.



**Figure 6.8** Numerically computed dispersion curve (speed vs. frequency and speed vs. wavelength for various temperatures) for the Hodgkin–Huxley equations. (Miller and Rinzel, 1981, Figs. 1 and 2.)



**Figure 6.9** Dispersion curves for the piecewise-linear FitzHugh–Nagumo equations shown for  $\epsilon = 0.1$  and  $0.01$ . The dashed curve shows the singular perturbation approximation to the dispersion curve.

### 6.4.1 Piecewise-Linear FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations

The dispersion curve in Fig. 6.9 was found for the FitzHugh–Nagumo system (6.48)–(6.49) with piecewise-linear functions (6.52) and (6.53). The calculation is similar to

that for the traveling pulse (Rinzel and Keller, 1973). Since this system is piecewise linear, we can express its solution as the sum of three exponentials,

$$w(\xi) = \sum_{i=1}^3 A_i e^{\lambda_i \xi}, \quad (6.83)$$

on the interval  $0 \leq \xi < \xi_1$ , and as

$$w(\xi) = 1 + \sum_{i=1}^3 B_i e^{\lambda_i \xi} \quad (6.84)$$

on the interval  $\xi_1 \leq \xi \leq \xi_2$ , where  $v = -cw_\xi$ . We also assume that  $v > \alpha$  on the interval  $\xi_1 \leq \xi \leq \xi_2$ . The numbers  $\lambda_i, i = 1, 2, 3$ , are roots of the characteristic polynomial (6.58).

We require that  $w(\xi), v(\xi)$ , and  $v'(\xi)$  be continuous at  $\xi = \xi_1$ , and that  $w(0) = w(\xi_2), v(0) = v(\xi_2)$ , and  $v'(0) = v'(\xi_2)$  for periodicity. Finally, we require that  $v(0) = v(\xi_1) = \alpha$ . This gives a total of eight equations in nine unknowns,  $A_1, \dots, A_3, B_1, \dots, B_3, \xi_1, \xi_2$ , and  $c$ . After some calculation we find two equations for the three unknowns  $\xi_1, \xi_2$ , and  $c$  given by

$$\frac{e^{\lambda_1(P-\xi_1)} - 1}{p'(\lambda_1)(e^{\lambda_1 P} - 1)} + \frac{e^{\lambda_2(P-\xi_1)} - 1}{p'(\lambda_2)(e^{\lambda_2 P} - 1)} + \frac{e^{\lambda_3(P-\xi_1)} - 1}{p'(\lambda_3)(e^{\lambda_3 P} - 1)} + \epsilon^2 \alpha = 0, \quad (6.85)$$

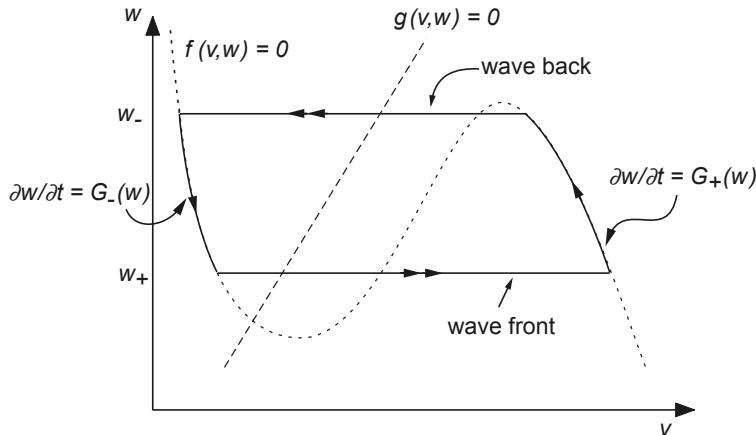
$$\frac{e^{\lambda_1 P} - e^{\lambda_1 \xi_1}}{p'(\lambda_1)(e^{\lambda_1 P} - 1)} + \frac{e^{\lambda_2 P} - e^{\lambda_2 \xi_1}}{p'(\lambda_2)(e^{\lambda_2 P} - 1)} + \frac{e^{\lambda_3 P} - e^{\lambda_3 \xi_1}}{p'(\lambda_3)(e^{\lambda_3 P} - 1)} + \epsilon^2 \alpha = 0, \quad (6.86)$$

where  $P = \xi_2/c$ . It is important to note that since there are only two equations for the three unknowns, (6.85) and (6.86) define a family of periodic waves, parameterized by either the period or the wave speed. The relationship between the period and the speed of this wave family is the dispersion curve. In Fig. 6.9 are shown examples of the dispersion curve for a sampling of values of  $\epsilon$  with  $\alpha = 0.1$ . Changing  $\alpha$  has little qualitative effect on this plot. The dashed curve shows the limiting behavior of the upper branch (the fast waves) in the limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ . Of significance in this plot is the fact that there are fast and slow waves, and in the limit of large wavelength, the periodic waves approach the solitary traveling pulses represented by Fig. 6.5 (Exercise 12). In fact, periodic solutions look much like evenly spaced periodic repeats of (truncated) solitary pulses.

The dispersion curve for the piecewise-linear FitzHugh–Nagumo system is typical of dispersion curves for excitable media, with a fast and slow branch meeting at a corner. In general, the location of the corner depends on the excitability of the medium (in this case, the parameter  $\alpha$ ) and on the ratio of time scales  $\epsilon$ .

## 6.4.2 Singular Perturbation Theory

The fast branch of the dispersion curve can be found for a general FitzHugh–Nagumo system in the limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$  using singular perturbation theory. A periodic wave consists of an alternating series of upjumps and downjumps, separated by regions of outer



**Figure 6.10** Sketch of the phase portrait for the fast traveling periodic wave train for FitzHugh–Nagumo dynamics in the singular limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ .

dynamics. The phase portrait for a periodic wave train is sketched in Fig. 6.10. To be periodic, if  $w_+$  is the value of the recovery variable in the upjump, traveling with speed  $c(w_+)$ , then the value of  $w$  in the downjump must be  $w_-$ , where  $c(w_+) = -c(w_-)$ . The amount of time spent on the excited branch is

$$T_e = \int_{w_+}^{w_-} \frac{dw}{G_+(w)}, \quad (6.87)$$

and the amount of time spent on the recovery branch is

$$T_r = \int_{w_-}^{w_+} \frac{dw}{G_-(w)}. \quad (6.88)$$

The dispersion curve is then the relationship between speed  $c(w_+)$  and period

$$T = T_e + T_r, \quad (6.89)$$

parameterized by  $w_+$ . This approximate dispersion curve (calculated numerically) is shown in Fig. 6.9 as a dashed curve.

The slow branch of the dispersion curve can also be found using perturbation methods, although in this case since the speed is small of order  $\epsilon$ , a regular perturbation expansion is appropriate. The details of this expansion are beyond the scope of this book, although the interested reader is referred to Dockery and Keener (1989). In general, the slow periodic solutions are unstable (Maginu, 1985) and therefore are of less physical interest than the fast solutions. Again, stability theory for the traveling wave solutions is beyond the scope of this book.

### 6.4.3 Kinematics

Not all waves are periodic. There can be wave trains with action potentials that are irregularly spaced and that travel with different velocities. A *kinematic theory* of wave propagation is one that attempts to follow the progress of individual action potentials without tracking the details of the structure of the pulse (Rinzel and Maginu, 1984). The simplest kinematic theory is to interpret the dispersion curve in a local way. That is, suppose we know the speed as a function of period for the stable periodic wave trains,  $c = C(T)$ . We suppose that the wave train consists of action potentials, and that the  $n$ th action potential reaches position  $x$  at time  $t_n(x)$ . To keep track of time of arrival at position  $x$  we note that

$$\frac{dt_n}{dx} = \frac{1}{c}. \quad (6.90)$$

We complete the description by taking  $c = C(t_n(x) - t_{n-1}(x))$ , realizing that  $t_n(x) - t_{n-1}(x)$  is the instantaneous period of the wave train that is felt by the medium at position  $x$ .

A more sophisticated kinematic theory can be derived from the singular solution of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations. For this derivation we assume that recovery is always via a phase wave, occurring with recovery value  $W^*$ . Suppose that the front of the  $n$ th action potential has speed  $c(w_n)$ , corresponding to the recovery value  $w_n$  in the transition layer. Keeping track of the time until the next action potential, we find

$$t_{n+1}(x) - t_n(x) = T_e(x) + T_r(x) \quad (6.91)$$

$$= \int_{w_n}^{W^*} \frac{dw}{G_+(w)} + \int_{W^*}^{w_{n+1}} \frac{dw}{G_-(w)}. \quad (6.92)$$

Differentiating (6.92) with respect to  $x$ , we find the differential equation for  $w_{n+1}(x)$ :

$$\frac{1}{G_-(w_{n+1})} \frac{dw_{n+1}}{dx} = \frac{1}{G_+(w_n)} \frac{dw_n}{dx} + \frac{1}{c(w_{n+1})} - \frac{1}{c(w_n)}. \quad (6.93)$$

With this equation one can track the variable  $w_{n+1}$  as a function of  $x$  given  $w_n(x)$  and from it reconstruct the speed and time of arrival of the  $(n+1)$ st action potential wave front.

While this formulation is useful for the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, it can be given a more general usefulness as follows. Since there is a one-to-one relationship between the speed of a front and the value of the recovery variable  $w$  in that front, we can represent these functions in terms of the speeds of the fronts as

$$t_{n+1}(x) - t_n(x) = A(c_n) + t_r(c_{n+1}), \quad (6.94)$$

where  $A(c_n) = T_e$  is the *action potential duration* (APD) since the  $n$ th upstroke, and  $t_r(c_{n+1}) = T_r$  is the recovery time preceding the  $(n+1)$ st upstroke. When we differentiate this conservation law with respect to  $x$ , we find a differential equation for the speed of

the  $(n + 1)$ st wave front as a function of the speed of the  $n$ th wave front, given by

$$t'_r(c_{n+1}) \frac{dc_{n+1}}{dx} = \frac{1}{c_{n+1}} - \frac{1}{c_n} - A'(c_n) \frac{dc_n}{dx}. \quad (6.95)$$

The advantage of this formulation is that the functions  $A$  and  $t_r$  may be known for other reasons, perhaps from experimental data. It is generally recognized that the action potential duration is functionally related to the speed of the previous action potential, and it is also reasonable that the speed of a subsequent action potential can be related functionally to the time of recovery since the end of the last action potential. Thus, the model (6.95) has applicability that goes beyond the FitzHugh–Nagumo context. For an example of how this idea has been used for the Beeler–Reuter dynamics, see Courtemanche et al. (1996).

## 6.5 Wave Propagation in Higher Dimensions

Not all excitable media can be viewed as one-dimensional cables, neither is all propagated activity one-dimensional. Tissues for which one-dimensional descriptions of cellular communication are inadequate include skeletal and cardiac tissue, the retina, and the cortex of the brain. To understand communication and signaling in these tissues requires more complicated mathematical analysis than for one-dimensional cables.

When beginning a study of two- or three-dimensional wave propagation, it is tempting to extend the cable equation to higher dimensions by replacing first derivatives in space with spatial gradients, and second spatial derivatives with the Laplacian operator. Indeed, all the models discussed here are of this type. However, this replacement is not always appropriate.

Some cells, such as *Xenopus* oocytes (frog eggs), are large enough so that waves of chemical activity can be sustained within a single cell. This is unusual, however, as most waves in normal physiological situations serve the purpose of communication between cells. For chemical waves in single cells, a reasonable first guess is that spatial coupling is by chemical diffusion. In that case, if the local chemical dynamics are described by the differential equation  $\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = kf$ , then with spatial coupling the dynamics are represented by

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D \nabla u) + kf, \quad (6.96)$$

where  $D$  is the (scalar) diffusion coefficient of the chemical species and  $\nabla$  is the three-dimensional gradient operator. Here we have included the time constant  $k$  (with units  $\text{time}^{-1}$ ), so that  $f$  has the same dimensional units as  $u$ .

For many cell types, however, intercellular communication is through gap junctions between immediate neighbors, so that diffusion is not spatially uniform. In this case, the first guess (or hope) is that the length constant of the phenomenon to be described is much larger than the typical cell size, and homogenization can be used to find an effective diffusion coefficient,  $D_e$ , as described in Chapter 8. Then (6.96) with

the effective diffusion coefficient is a reasonable model. Note that there is no a priori reason to believe that cellular coupling is isotropic or that  $D_e$  is a scalar quantity.

If this assumption, that the space constant of the signaling phenomenon is larger than the size of the cell, and hence that homogenization gives a valid approximation, is not justified, then we are stuck with the unpleasant business of studying communication between discretely coupled cells. Descriptions of such studies are included in Chapter 7.

For electrically active cells, such as cardiac or muscle cells, the situation is further complicated by the fact that the signal is the transmembrane potential, and to determine this one needs to know both the intracellular and extracellular potentials. Consequently, spatial coupling cannot be represented by the Laplacian of the transmembrane potential. We address this problem in Chapter 12, where we discuss waves in myocardial tissue.

Even more complicated are neural networks, where axons may extend long distances and cells may be connected to many other cells, far more than their nearest neighbors, so that spatial coupling is nonlocal.

Suffice it to say, while (6.96) is an interesting place to start the study of waves in higher dimensions, it is by no means obvious that all the results of this study are applicable to cellular media.

### 6.5.1 Propagating Fronts

#### Plane Waves

The simplest wave to look for in a higher-dimensional medium is a plane wave. Suppose that the canonical problem

$$U'' + c_0 U' + f(U) = 0 \quad (6.97)$$

(with dimensionless independent variable) is bistable and has a wave front solution  $U(\xi)$  for some unique value of  $c_0$ , the value of which depends on  $f$ .

To find plane wave solutions of (6.96), we suppose that  $u$  is a function of the single variable  $\xi = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} - ct$ , where  $\mathbf{n}$  is a unit vector pointing in the forward direction of wave front propagation. In the traveling wave coordinate  $\xi$ , the time derivative  $\frac{d}{dt}$  is replaced by  $-c \frac{d}{d\xi}$ , and the spatial gradient operator  $\nabla$  is replaced by  $\mathbf{n} \frac{d}{d\xi}$ , so that the governing equation reduces to the ordinary differential equation

$$(\mathbf{n} \cdot D\mathbf{n})u'' + cu' + kf(u) = 0. \quad (6.98)$$

We compare (6.98) with the canonical equation (6.97) and note that the solution of (6.98) can be found by a simple rescaling to be

$$u(\mathbf{x}, t) = U \left( \frac{\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} - ct}{\Lambda(\mathbf{n})} \right), \quad (6.99)$$

where  $c = c_0 k \Lambda(\mathbf{n})$  is the (directionally dependent) speed and  $\Lambda(\mathbf{n}) = \sqrt{\frac{\mathbf{n} \cdot D\mathbf{n}}{k}}$  is the directionally dependent space constant.

## Waves with Curvature

Wave fronts in two- or three-dimensional media are not expected to be plane waves. They are typically initiated at a specific location, and so might be circular in shape. Additionally, the medium may be structurally inhomogeneous or have a complicated geometry, all of which introduce curvature into the wave front.

It is known that curvature plays an important role in the propagation of a wave front in an excitable medium. A physical explanation makes this clear. Suppose that a circular wave front is moving inward, so that the circle is collapsing. Because different parts of the front are working to excite the same points, we expect the region directly in front of the wave front to be excited more quickly than if the wave were planar. Similarly, an expanding circular wave front should move more slowly than a plane wave because the efforts of the wave to excite its neighbors are more spread out, and excitation should be slower than for a plane wave.

While these curvature effects are well known in many contexts, we are interested here in a quantitative description of this effect. In this section we derive an equation for action-potential spread called the *eikonal-curvature equation*, the purpose of which is to show the contribution of curvature to wave-front velocity. Eikonal-curvature equations have been used in a number of biological contexts, including the study of wave-front propagation in the excitable Belousov–Zhabotinsky reagent (Foerster et al., 1989; Keener, 1986; Keener and Tyson, 1986; Tyson and Keener, 1988; Ohta et al., 1989),  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves in *Xenopus* oocytes (Lechleiter et al., 1991b; Sneyd and Atri, 1993; Jafri and Keizer, 1995) and in studies of myocardial tissue (Keener, 1991a; Colli-Franzone et al., 1990, 1993; also see Chapter 12). Eikonal-curvature equations have a long history in other scientific fields as well, including crystal growth (Burton et al., 1951) and flame front propagation (Frankel and Sivashinsky, 1987, 1988).

The derivation of the eikonal-curvature equation uses standard mathematical arguments of singular perturbation theory, which we summarize here. The key observation is that hidden inside (6.96) is the bistable equation (6.97), and the idea to be explored is that in some moving coordinate system that is yet to be determined, (6.96) is well approximated by the bistable equation (6.97).

Our goal is to rewrite (6.96) in terms of a moving coordinate system chosen so that it takes the form of (6.97). In three dimensions, we must have three spatial coordinates, one of which is locally orthogonal to the wave front, while the other two are coordinates describing the wave-front surface. By assumption, the function  $u$  is approximately independent of the wave-front coordinates. We introduce a scaling of the variables such that the derivatives with respect to the first variable are of most importance, and all other derivatives are less so. From this computation, we learn how the coordinate system must move in order to maintain itself as a wave-front coordinate system, and this law of coordinate system motion is the eikonal-curvature equation.

To begin, we introduce a general (as yet unknown) moving coordinate system

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{X}(\xi, \tau), \quad t = \tau. \quad (6.100)$$

According to the chain rule,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_i} = \frac{\partial X_j}{\partial \xi_i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial X_j}{\partial \tau} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j}. \quad (6.101)$$

Here and in what follows, the summation convention is followed (i.e., unless otherwise noted, repeated indices are summed from 1 to 3). It follows that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} = \alpha_{ij} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_j}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} - \frac{\partial X_j}{\partial \tau} \alpha_{jk} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_k}, \quad (6.102)$$

where the matrix with entries  $\alpha_{ij}$  is the inverse of the matrix with entries  $\frac{\partial X_j}{\partial \xi_i}$  (the Jacobian of the coordinate transformation (6.100)).

We identify the variable  $\xi_1$  as the coordinate normal to level surfaces of  $u$ , so  $\xi_2$  and  $\xi_3$  are the coordinates of the moving level surfaces. Then, we define the tangent vectors  $\mathbf{r}_i = \frac{\partial \mathbf{X}_j}{\partial \xi_i}$ ,  $i = 1, 2, 3$ , and the normal vectors  $\mathbf{n}_i = \mathbf{r}_j \times \mathbf{r}_k$ , where  $i \neq j, k$ , and  $j < k$ . Without loss of generality we take  $\mathbf{r}_1 = \sigma(\mathbf{r}_2 \times \mathbf{r}_3)$ , so that  $\mathbf{r}_1$  is always normal to the level surfaces of  $u$ . Here  $\sigma$  is an arbitrary (unspecified) scale factor. The vectors  $\mathbf{r}_2$  and  $\mathbf{r}_3$  are tangent to the moving level surface, although they are not necessarily orthogonal. While one can force the vectors  $\mathbf{r}_2$  and  $\mathbf{r}_3$  to be orthogonal, the actual construction of such a coordinate description on a moving surface is generally quite difficult. Furthermore, it is preferred to have an equation of motion that does not have additional restrictions, since the motion should be independent of the coordinate system by which the surface is described.

We can calculate the entries  $\alpha_{ij}$  explicitly. It follows from Cramer's rule (Exercise 23) that

$$\alpha_{ij} = \frac{(\mathbf{n}_j)_i}{\mathbf{r}_j \cdot \mathbf{n}_j} \text{(no summation)}, \quad (6.103)$$

where by  $(\mathbf{n}_j)_i$  we mean the  $i$ th component of the  $j$ th normal vector  $\mathbf{n}_j$ .

Now we can write out the full change of variables. We calculate that (treating the coefficients  $\alpha_{ij}$  as functions of  $\mathbf{x}$ )

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial \tau} - \frac{\partial X_j}{\partial \tau} \alpha_{jk} \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi_k}, \quad (6.104)$$

$$[6bp] \nabla^2 u = \alpha_{ip} \alpha_{ik} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \xi_p \partial \xi_k} + \frac{\partial \alpha_{ip}}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi_p}, \quad (6.105)$$

and rewrite (6.96) in terms of these new variables, finding (in the case that  $D$  is a constant scalar) that

$$0 = D \alpha_{ip} \alpha_{iq} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \xi_p \partial \xi_q} + D \frac{\partial \alpha_{ip}}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi_p} - \left( u_\tau - \frac{\partial X_j}{\partial \tau} \alpha_{jk} \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi_k} \right) + kf(u). \quad (6.106)$$

There are two important assumptions that are now invoked, namely that the spatial scale of variation in  $\xi_1$  is much shorter than the spatial scale for variations in the variables  $\xi_2$  and  $\xi_3$ . We quantify this by supposing that there is a small parameter  $\epsilon$

and that  $\alpha_{j1} = O(1)$ , while  $\alpha_{jk} = O(\epsilon)$  for all  $j$  and  $k \neq 1$ . In addition, we assume that to leading order in  $\epsilon$ ,  $u$  is independent of  $\xi_2$ ,  $\xi_3$ , and  $\tau$ . Consequently, not all of the terms in (6.106) are of equal importance. If we take into account the  $\epsilon$  dependence of  $\alpha_{ij}$ , then (6.106) simplifies to

$$D|\alpha|^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \xi_1^2} + \left( D\nabla \cdot \alpha + \frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial \tau} \cdot \alpha \right) \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi_1} + kf(u) = O(\epsilon), \quad (6.107)$$

where  $\alpha$  is the vector with components  $\alpha_{j1}$ , and hence, from (6.103), proportional to the normal vector  $\mathbf{n}_1$ . All of the terms on the left-hand side of (6.107) are large compared to  $\epsilon$ .

Here we see an equation that resembles the bistable equation (6.97). If the coefficients of (6.107) are constant, we can identify (6.107) with (6.97) by setting

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial \tau} \cdot \alpha + D\nabla \cdot \alpha = kc_0, \quad (6.108)$$

while requiring  $D|\alpha|^2 = k$ .

Equation (6.108) tells us how the coordinate system should move, and since  $\alpha$  is proportional to  $\mathbf{n}_1$ , setting  $D|\alpha|^2 = k$  determines the scale of the coordinate normal to the wave front, i.e., the thickness of the wave front. In reality, the coefficients of (6.107) are not constants, and these two requirements overdetermine the full coordinate transformation  $\mathbf{X}(\xi, \tau)$ . To overcome this difficulty, we assume that since the wave front and the coordinate system are slowly varying in space, we interpret (6.108) as determining the motion of only the midline of the coordinate system, at the location of the largest gradient of the front, rather than the entire coordinate system.

Equation (6.108) is the equation we seek that describes the motion of an action potential front, called the *eikonal-curvature equation*. However, for numerical simulations it is essentially useless. Numerical algorithms to simulate this equation reliably are extremely hard to construct. Instead, it is useful to introduce a function  $S(x, t)$  that acts as an indicator function for the fronts (think of  $S$  as determining the “shock” location). That is, if  $S(x, t) > 0$ , the medium is activated, while if  $S(x, t) < 0$ , the medium is in the resting state. Taking  $\alpha$  to be in the direction of forward wave-front motion means that  $\alpha = -\sqrt{\frac{k}{D}} \frac{\nabla S}{|\nabla S|}$ , where we have used the fact that  $|\alpha| = \sqrt{k/D}$ . Since the zero level surface of  $S(x, t)$  denotes the wave-front location, and thus  $S$  is constant along the wave front, it follows that  $0 = \nabla S \cdot X_t + S_t$ , so that  $X_t \cdot \alpha = \sqrt{\frac{k}{D}} \frac{S_t}{|\nabla S|}$ . Hence,

$$S_t = |\nabla S| c_0 \sqrt{Dk} + D|\nabla S| \nabla \cdot \left( \frac{\nabla S}{|\nabla S|} \right). \quad (6.109)$$

The use of an indicator function  $S(x, t)$  to determine the motion of an interface is called the *level set method* (Osher and Sethian, 1988), and is both powerful and easy to implement.

Equation (6.109) is called the eikonal-curvature equation because of the physical interpretation of each of its terms. If we ignore the diffusive term, then we have the

eikonal equation

$$\frac{\partial S}{\partial t} = |\nabla S| c_0 \sqrt{Dk}. \quad (6.110)$$

If  $\mathbf{R}$  is a level surface of the function  $S(x, t)$  and if  $\mathbf{n}$  is the unit normal vector to that surface at some point, then (6.110) implies that the normal velocity of the surface  $\mathbf{R}$ , denoted by  $\mathbf{R}_t \cdot \mathbf{n}$ , satisfies

$$\mathbf{R}_t \cdot \mathbf{n} = c_0 \sqrt{Dk}. \quad (6.111)$$

In other words, the front moves in the normal direction  $\mathbf{n}$  with speed  $c = c_0 \sqrt{Dk}$ .

Equation (6.111) is the basis of a geometrical “Huygens” construction for front propagation, but the numerical integration of either (6.110) or (6.111) is fraught with difficulties. In particular, cusp singularities develop, and the indicator function  $S(x, t)$  becomes ill-defined in finite time (usually very quickly). The second term of the right-hand side of (6.109) is a curvature correction, appropriately named because the term  $\nabla \cdot \left( \frac{\nabla S}{|\nabla S|} \right)$  is twice the mean curvature (in three-dimensional space) or the curvature (in two-dimensional space) of the level surfaces of  $S$  (see Exercise 24). In fact, the eikonal-curvature equation can be written as

$$\mathbf{R}_t \cdot \mathbf{n} = c_0 \sqrt{Dk} - D\kappa, \quad (6.112)$$

or

$$\tau \mathbf{R}_t \cdot \mathbf{n} = c_0 \Lambda - \Lambda^2 \kappa, \quad (6.113)$$

where  $\kappa$  is the curvature (in two dimensions) or twice the mean curvature (in three dimensions) of the front,  $\Lambda = \sqrt{D/k}$  is the space constant, and  $\tau = 1/k$  is the time constant. Even though it usually represents only a small correction to the normal velocity of fronts, the curvature correction is important for physical and stability reasons, to prevent singularity formation. The sign of the curvature correction is such that a front with ripples is gradually smoothed into a plane wave.

Experiments on the Belousov–Zhabotinsky reagent have verified this relationship between speed and curvature of propagating fronts. For example, Foerster et al. (1988) measured the speed and curvature at different positions of a rotating spiral wave and at intersections of two spiral waves (thus obtaining curvatures of different signs) and found that the relationship between normal velocity and curvature was well approximated by a straight line with slope that was the diffusion coefficient of the rapidly reacting species.

## 6.5.2 Spatial Patterns and Spiral Waves

Now that we have some idea of how wave fronts propagate in an excitable medium, we next wish to determine the spatial patterns that may result. The most common pattern is created by, and spreads outward from, a single source. If the medium is sufficiently large so that more than one wave front can exist at the same time, then these are

referred to as *target patterns*. Target patterns require a periodic source and so cannot exist in a homogeneous nonoscillatory medium.

A second type of spatial pattern is a spiral wave. Spiral waves do not require a periodic source for their existence, as they are typically self-sustained. Because they are self-sustained, spirals usually occur only in pathophysiological situations. That is, it is usually not a good thing for a system that relies on faithful propagation of a signal to be taken over by a self-sustained pattern. Thus, spirals on the heart are fatal, spirals in the cortex may lead to epileptic seizures, and spirals on the retina or visual cortex may cause hallucinations. One particularly famous example of spiral waves in an excitable medium is in the Belousov–Zhabotinsky reaction (Winfree, 1972, 1974), which we do not discuss here.

The mathematical discussion of spiral waves centers on the nature of periodic solutions of a system of differential equations with excitable dynamics spatially coupled by diffusion. A specific example is the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations with diffusive coupling in two spatial dimensions,

$$\epsilon \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = \epsilon^2 \nabla^2 v + f(v, w), \quad (6.114)$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = g(v, w). \quad (6.115)$$

The leading-order singular perturbation analysis (i.e., with  $\epsilon = 0$ ) suggests that the domain be separated into two, in which outer dynamics

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = G_{\pm}(w) \quad (6.116)$$

hold (using the notation of Section 6.3.1). The region in which  $\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = G_+(w)$  is identified as the excited region, and the region in which  $\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = G_-(w)$  is called the recovering region. Separating these are moving interfaces in which  $v$  changes rapidly (with space and time constant  $\epsilon$ ), so that diffusion is important, while  $w$  remains essentially constant. At any point in space the solution should be periodic in time, so at large radii, where the wave fronts are nearly planar, the solution should lie on the dispersion curve.

The first guess as to how the interface should move is to assume that the interface is nearly planar and therefore has the same velocity as a plane wave, namely

$$\mathbf{R}_t = c(w)\mathbf{n}, \quad (6.117)$$

where  $\mathbf{R}$  is the position vector for the interface,  $\mathbf{n}$  is the unit normal vector of  $\mathbf{R}$ , and  $c(w)$  is the plane-wave velocity as a function of  $w$ .

To see the implications of the eikonal equation, we suppose that the spiral interface is a curve  $\mathbf{R}$  given by

$$X(r, t) = r \cos(\theta(r) - \omega t), \quad Y(r, t) = r \sin(\theta(r) - \omega t). \quad (6.118)$$

Notice that the interface is a curve parameterized by  $r$ , and so the tangent is  $(X_r, Y_r)$ . We then calculate that

$$\mathbf{R}_t = \begin{pmatrix} -\omega r \sin(\theta - \omega t) \\ \omega r \cos(\theta - \omega t) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (6.119)$$

and

$$\sqrt{1 + r^2 \theta'^2} \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\theta - \omega t) - r\theta' \cos(\theta - \omega t) \\ \cos(\theta - \omega t) - r\theta' \sin(\theta - \omega t) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (6.120)$$

so that the eikonal equation becomes

$$c(w)\sqrt{1 + r^2 \theta'^2} = \omega r. \quad (6.121)$$

An integration then gives

$$\theta(r) = \rho(r) - \tan(\rho(r)), \quad \rho(r) = \sqrt{\frac{r^2}{r_0^2} - 1}, \quad (6.122)$$

where  $r_0 = c/\omega$ , so that the interface is given by

$$X = r_0 \cos(s) + r_0 \rho(r) \sin(s), \quad Y = r_0 \sin(s) - r_0 \rho(r) \cos(s), \quad (6.123)$$

where  $s = \rho(r) - \omega t$ . This interface is the involute of a circle of radius  $r_0$ . (The involute of a circle is the locus of points at the end of a string that is unwrapped from a circle.)

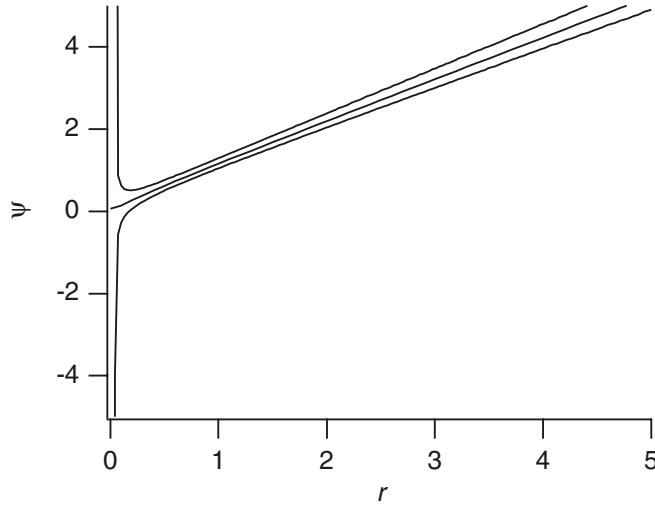
There are significant difficulties with this as a spiral solution, the most significant of which is that it exists only for  $r \geq r_0$ . The parameter  $r_0$  is arbitrary, but positive, so that this spiral is rotating about some hole of finite size. The frequency of rotation is determined by requiring consistency with the dispersion curve. Note that the spiral has wavelength  $2\pi r_0$ , and period  $\frac{2\pi}{\omega}$ , and so  $c = r_0\omega$ . However, since the dispersion curve generally has a knee, and thus periodic waves do not exist for small enough wavelength, there is a lower bound on the radii for which this can be satisfied. Numerical studies of spirals suggest no such lower bound on the inner core radius and also suggest that there is a unique spiral frequency for a medium without a hole at the center. Unfortunately, the use of the eikonal equation gives no hint of the way a unique frequency is selected, so a different approach, using the eikonal-curvature equation, is required.

To apply the eikonal-curvature equation to find rotating spiral waves, we assume that the wave front is expressed in the form (6.118), so that the curvature is

$$\kappa = \frac{X'Y'' - Y'X''}{(X'^2 + Y'^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{\psi'}{(1 + \psi^2)^{3/2}} + \frac{\psi}{r(1 + \psi^2)^{1/2}}, \quad (6.124)$$

where  $\psi = r\theta'(r)$  is called the shape function. Thus the eikonal-curvature equation (6.113) becomes

$$r \frac{d\psi}{dr} = (1 + \psi^2) \left[ \frac{rc(w)}{\epsilon} (1 + \psi^2)^{1/2} - \frac{\omega r^2}{\epsilon} - \psi \right]. \quad (6.125)$$



**Figure 6.11** Trajectories of (6.125) with  $\omega/\epsilon = 2.8, 9m^*$ , and 3.2, and  $c/\epsilon = 3.0$ .

If we suppose that  $w$  is constant along the spiral front, then (6.125) can be solved numerically by “shooting” from  $r = \infty$ . A portrait of sample trajectories in the  $(r, \psi)$  plane is shown in Fig. 6.11. The trajectories of (6.125) are stiff, meaning that, for large  $r$ , the trajectory  $c(1 + \psi^2)^{1/2} - \omega r = 0$  is a strong attractor. This stiffness can be readily observed when (6.125) is written in terms of the variable  $\phi = \frac{r\psi}{\sqrt{1+\psi^2}}$  as

$$\frac{\epsilon}{r} \frac{d\phi}{dr} = c - \omega \sqrt{r^2 - \phi^2}, \quad (6.126)$$

since  $\epsilon$  multiplies the derivative term in (6.126).

Integrating from  $r = \infty$ , trajectories of (6.125) approach the origin by either blowing up or down near the origin  $r = 0$ . Since the origin is a saddle point, if parameters are chosen exactly right, the trajectory approaches  $\psi = 0$ . Thus, there is a unique relationship between  $\omega$  and  $c$  of the form  $\omega/\epsilon = F(c/\epsilon)$  that yields trajectories that go all the way to the origin  $r = 0, \psi = 0$ .

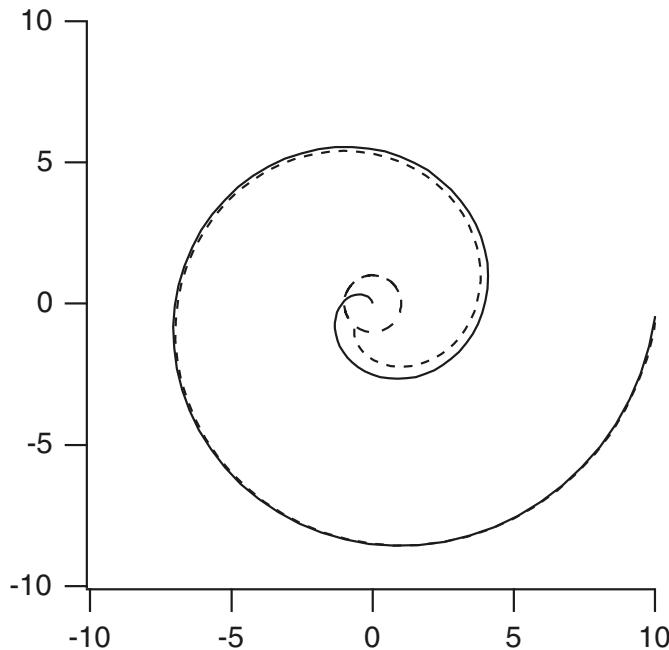
Notice that the rescaling of variables  $r \rightarrow \alpha r, c \rightarrow c/\alpha, \omega \rightarrow \omega/\alpha^2$  leaves (6.125) invariant, so that the relationship between  $\omega$  and  $c$  for which a trajectory approaches the saddle point at the origin must be of the form

$$\frac{\omega}{\epsilon\alpha^2} = F\left(\frac{c}{\epsilon\alpha}\right). \quad (6.127)$$

It follows that  $F(c/\alpha) = \frac{1}{\alpha^2}F(c)$  and thus  $F(x) = m^*x^2$ , for some constant  $m^*$ , so that

$$\omega = \frac{c^2 m^*}{\epsilon}. \quad (6.128)$$

Numerically, one determines that  $m^* = 0.330958$ .



**Figure 6.12** Spiral arm corresponding to the trajectory of (6.125) that approaches the origin (shown solid), compared with the involute spiral (shown dashed) with the same parameter values. For this plot,  $c/\epsilon = 3.0$ .

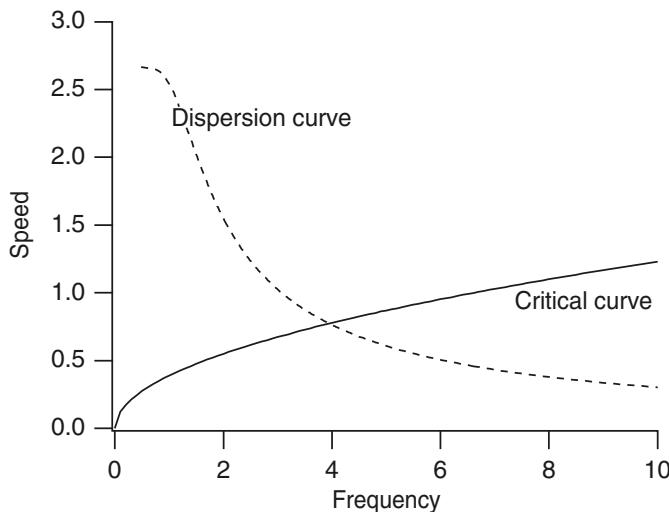
An example of this spiral front is shown in Fig. 6.12, compared with the comparable involute spiral (6.123), shown dashed. For this figure  $c/\epsilon = 3.0$ .

At this point we have a family of possible spiral trajectories that have correct asymptotic (large  $r$ ) behavior and approach  $\psi = 0$  as  $r \rightarrow 0$ . This family is parameterized by the speed  $c$ . To determine which particular member of this family is the correct spiral front, we also require that the spirals be periodic waves; that is, they must satisfy the dispersion relationship. These two requirements uniquely determine the spiral properties. To see that this is so, in Fig. 6.13 are plotted the critical curve (6.128) and the approximate dispersion curve (6.89). For this plot we used piecewise-linear dynamics,  $f(v, w) = H(v - \alpha) - v - w$ ,  $g(v, w) = v - \gamma w$  with  $\alpha = 0.1$ ,  $\gamma = 0$ ,  $\epsilon = 0.05$ .

### More About Spirals

This discussion of higher-dimensional waves is merely the tip of the iceberg (or tip of the spiral), and there are many interesting unresolved questions.

While the spirals that are observed in physiological systems share certain qualitative similarities, their details are certainly different. The FitzHugh–Nagumo equations discussed here show only the qualitative behavior for generic excitable systems and so have little quantitative relevance. Other physiological systems are likely governed by other dynamics. For example, a model of spreading cortical depression in the cortex has



**Figure 6.13** Critical curve (6.128) and the approximate dispersion curve (6.89) using piecewise-linear dynamics  $f(v, w) = H(v - \alpha) - v - w$ ,  $g(v, w) = v - \gamma w$  with  $\alpha = 0.1$ ,  $\gamma = 0$ ,  $\epsilon = 0.05$ .

been proposed by Tuckwell and Miura (1978; Miura, 1981), and numerical simulations have shown rotating spirals. However, a detailed mathematical study of these equations has not been given. Similarly, spiral waves of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  have been studied numerically in some detail (Chapter 7) but are not well understood analytically.

This analytical calculation for the FitzHugh–Nagumo system is based on singular perturbation theory and therefore is not mathematically rigorous. In fact, as yet there is not a rigorous proof of the existence of spiral waves in an excitable medium. While the approximate solution presented here is known to be asymptotically valid, the structure of the core of the spiral is not correct. This problem has been addressed by Pelce and Sun (1991) and Keener (1992) for FitzHugh–Nagumo models with a single diffusing variable, and by Keener (1994) and Kessler and Kupferman (1996) for FitzHugh–Nagumo models with two diffusing variables, relevant for chemical reaction systems.

A second issue of concern is the stability of spirals. This also is a large topic, which is not addressed here. The interested reader should consult the work of Winfree (1991), Jahnke and Winfree (1991), Barkley (1994), Karma (1993, 1994), Panfilov and Hogeweg (1995), Kessler and Kupferman (1996).

Because the analytical study of excitable media is so difficult, simpler models have been sought, with the result that finite-state automata are quite popular. A finite-state automaton divides the state space into a few discrete values (for example  $v = 0$  or  $1$ ), divides the spatial domain into discrete cells, and discretizes time into discrete steps. Then, rules are devised for how the states of the cells change in time. Finite-state automata are extremely easy to program and visualize. They give some useful insight into the behavior of excitable media, but they are also beguiling and can give “wrong”

answers that are not easily detected. The literature on finite-state automata is vast (see, for instance, Moe et al., 1964; Smith and Cohen, 1984; and Gerhardt et al., 1990).

The obvious generalization of a spiral wave in a two-dimensional region to three dimensions is called a *scroll wave* (Winfree, 1973, 1991; Keener and Tyson, 1992). Scroll waves have been observed numerically (Jahnke et al., 1988; Lugosi and Winfree, 1988), in three-dimensional BZ reagent (Gomatam and Grindrod, 1987), and in cardiac tissue (Chen et al., 1988), although in experimental settings they are extremely difficult to visualize. In numerical simulations it is possible to initiate scroll waves with interesting topology, including closed scroll rings, knotted scrolls, or linked pairs of scroll rings.

The mathematical theory of scroll waves is also in its infancy. Attributes of the topology of closed scrolls were worked out by Winfree and Strogatz (1983a,b,c; 1984), and a general asymptotic theory for their evolution has been suggested (Keener, 1988) and tested against numerical experiments on circular scroll rings and helical scrolls. There is not sufficient space here to discuss the theory of scroll waves. However, scroll waves are mentioned again briefly in later chapters on cardiac waves and rhythmicity.

## 6.6 EXERCISES

---

1. Show that the  $(U, W)$  phase plane of the bistable equation, (6.6) and (6.7), has three steady states, two of which are saddle points. What is the nature of the third steady state? Show that the slope of the unstable manifold at the origin is given by the positive root of  $\lambda^2 - c\lambda + f'(0) = 0$  and is always larger than  $c$ . What is the slope of the stable manifold at  $(U, W) = (1, 0)$ ? Show that the slopes of both these manifolds are increasing functions of  $c$ .
2. Use cable theory to find the speed of propagation for each of the axons listed in Table 4.1, assuming that the ionic currents are identical and the speed of propagation for the squid giant axon is 21 mm/ms.
3. Find the space constant for a myelinated fiber.
4. Construct a traveling wave solution to the piecewise-linear bistable equation, (6.1) and (6.3). Show that the wave travels with speed  $\frac{1-2\alpha}{\sqrt{\alpha-\alpha^2}}$ .
5. Find the shape of the traveling wave profile for (6.1) in the case that the function  $f(v)$  is

$$f(v) = \begin{cases} -v, & \text{for } v < \alpha/2, \\ v - \alpha, & \text{for } \alpha/2 < v < \frac{1+\alpha}{2}, \\ 1 - v, & \text{for } v > \frac{1+\alpha}{2}. \end{cases} \quad (6.129)$$

6. (a) Solve the bistable equation

$$v_t = v_{xx} + v(0.1 - v)(v - 1) \quad (6.130)$$

numerically and plot a traveling wave.

- (b) Solve the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations

$$v_t = v_{xx} + v(0.1 - v)(v - 1) - w, \quad (6.131)$$

$$w_t = 0.1(v - w) \quad (6.132)$$

numerically and plot a traveling wave.

7. Find the speed of traveling fronts for barnacle muscle fiber using the Morris–Lecar model (Chapter 5, (5.72)–(5.73)).

*Answer:* About 6 cm/s.

8. Write a program to numerically calculate the speed of propagation for the bistable equation. Use the program to determine the effect of  $\text{Na}^+$  channel density (Table 6.1) on the speed of propagation in various axons, assuming that all other currents are the same as for the Hodgkin–Huxley equations.

9. Show that  $1/p'(\lambda_1) + 1/p'(\lambda_2) + 1/p'(\lambda_3) = 0$ , where  $p$  is defined by (6.58). Hence, show that  $h(1) = 0$ , where  $h$  is defined by (6.64). Show also that  $\lambda_1/p'(\lambda_1) + \lambda_2/p'(\lambda_2) + \lambda_3/p'(\lambda_3) = 0$  and thus  $h'(1) = 0$ . Finally, show that  $h''(1) = p'(\lambda_1)/\lambda_1^2 - 2$ .

10. The results of Exercise 9 can be generalized. Use contour integration in the complex plane to show that for an  $n$ th order polynomial  $p(z) = z^n + \dots$  with simple roots  $z_k, k = 1, \dots, n$ ,

$$\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{z_k^j}{p'(z_k)} = 0, \quad (6.133)$$

provided that  $n > j + 1$ . In addition, show that

$$\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{z_k^{n-1}}{p'(z_k)} = 1. \quad (6.134)$$

11. Show that the duration of the absolute refractory period of the traveling pulse for the generalized FitzHugh–Nagumo equations is (approximately)

$$T_{\text{ar}} = \int_{w_-}^{w_0} \frac{dw}{G_-(w)}, \quad (6.135)$$

where  $w_0$  is that value of  $w$  for which  $c(w) = 0$ .

12. Show that in the limit as the period approaches infinity, (6.85) and (6.86) reduce to the equations for a solitary pulse (6.62) and (6.63).
13. Suppose a nearly singular ( $\epsilon$  small) FitzHugh–Nagumo system has a stable periodic oscillatory solution when there is no diffusive coupling. How do the phase portraits for the spatially independent solutions and the periodic traveling waves differ? How are these differences reflected in the temporal behavior of the solutions?
14. (Fisher’s equation.) The goal of this exercise is to find traveling wave solutions of the equation

$$u_t = u_{xx} + f(u), \quad (6.136)$$

where  $f(u) = u(1 - u)$ . This equation, sometimes known as Fisher’s equation, is commonly used in mathematical ecology and population biology to model traveling waves. In this context  $u$  corresponds to a population density or a gene density.

- (a) Convert to the traveling wave coordinate  $\xi = x + ct$ , where  $c \geq 0$  is the wave speed, and show that the PDE converts to the system of ODEs

$$u' = w, \quad (6.137)$$

$$w' = cw - u(1 - u). \quad (6.138)$$

- (b) What are the steady states of the ODE system? Determine the stability of the steady states and sketch the phase plane, including the directions of the eigenvectors at the saddle point.

- (c) Show that a biologically relevant traveling wave cannot exist when  $c < 2$ .
- (d) Starting at the saddle point  $(1, 0)$ , follow the stable manifold backwards in time. Show that this stable manifold cannot leave the first quadrant across the  $u$  axis.
- (e) Show that if  $c \geq 2$  there exists a line,  $u = mw$ , such that the stable manifold of the saddle point cannot be above this line.
- (f) Use this to draw a conclusion about the existence of traveling wave solutions to Fisher's equation.
15. Here we examine Fisher's equation (6.136) again in a more general form. Suppose  $f(0) = f(1) = 0, f'(0) > 0, f'(1) < 0$ , and  $f(u) > 0$  for  $0 < u < 1$ .
- Show that when  $c = 0$  there are no trajectories with  $u \geq 0$  connecting the two rest points  $u = 0$  and  $u = 1$ .
  - Show that if there is a value of  $c$  for which there is no heteroclinic connection with  $u \geq 0$ , then there is no such connecting trajectory for any smaller value of  $c$ .
  - Show that if there is a value of  $c$  for which there is a connecting trajectory with  $u \geq 0$ , then there is a connecting trajectory for every larger value of  $c$ .
  - Let  $\mu$  be the smallest positive number for which  $f(u) \leq \mu u$  for  $0 \leq u \leq 1$ . Show that a heteroclinic connection exists for all  $c \geq 2\sqrt{\mu}$ .
16. (Phase waves.) Suppose  $f(0) = f(1) = f'(0) = 0, f'(1) < 0$  and  $f(v) > 0$  for  $0 < v < 1$ . Show that all the statements of Exercise 14 hold.
- Show that there are values of  $c$  for which there are no trajectories connecting critical points for the equation  $V'' + cV' + f(V) = 0$ , with  $f(0) = f'(0) = f(1) = 0$ , and  $f(v) > 0$  for  $0 < v < 1$ . Hint: What is the behavior of trajectories for  $c = 0$ ?
  - Show that if a connecting trajectory exists for one value of  $c < 0$ , then it exists for all smaller (larger in absolute value) values of  $c$ . Hint: What happens to trajectories when  $c$  is decreased (increased in absolute value) slightly? How do trajectories for different values of  $c$  compare?
  - Suppose  $f(v) = v^2(1-v)$ . Show that there is a connecting trajectory for  $c \leq -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ . Hint: Find an exact solution of the form  $v' = Av(1-v)$ .
17. Construct a traveling wave solution for the equation  $v_t = v_{xx} + f(v)$  with  $v(-\infty, t) = 0$  and  $v(+\infty, t) = 1$  where  $f(v) = 0$  for  $0 < v < q$ ,  $f(v) = 1 - v$  for  $q < v < 1$ . What is the speed of propagation? For what values of  $q$  does the wave exist? Plot the traveling waveform on the same graph as the traveling waveform for the piecewise-linear bistable equation for values of  $q$  and  $\alpha$  for which the speeds are the same.
18. Show that the equation  $v_t = v_{xx} + f(v)$ , where  $f(0) = f(1) = 0$ , has a monotone traveling wave solution connecting  $v = 0$  to  $v = 1$  only if  $\int_0^1 f(v) dv > 0$ . Interpret the results of Exercises 4 and 17 in light of this result.
19. Given a dispersion curve  $c = C(T)$ , use the simple kinetic theory,
- $$\frac{dt_n(x)}{dx} = \frac{1}{C(t_n(x) - t_{n-1}(x))}, \quad (6.139)$$
- to determine the stability of periodic waves on a ring of length  $L$ .

*Hint:* On a ring of length  $L$ ,  $t_n(x) = t_{n-1}(x - L)$ . Suppose that  $T^*C(T^*) = L$ . Perform linear stability analysis for the solution  $t_n(x) = \frac{x}{C(T^*)}$ .

20. Use perturbation arguments to estimate the error in the calculated speed of propagation when Euler's method (forward differencing in time) with second-order centered differencing in space is used to approximate the solution of the bistable equation.
21. Generalize the kinematic theory (6.93)–(6.95) to the case in which wave backs are not phase waves, by tracking both fronts and backs and the corresponding recovery value (Cytrynbaum and Keener, 2002).
22. What is the eikonal-curvature equation for (6.96) when the medium is anisotropic and  $D$  is a symmetric matrix, slowly varying in space?  
Answer:  $S_t = \sqrt{\nabla S \cdot D \nabla S} \left( c_0 \sqrt{k} + \nabla \cdot \left( \frac{D \nabla S}{\sqrt{\nabla S \cdot D \nabla S}} \right) \right)$ .
23. Verify (6.103).
24. Verify that in two spatial dimensions,  $\nabla \cdot \left( \frac{\nabla S}{|\nabla S|} \right)$  is the curvature of the level surface of the function  $S$ .
25. The following are the rules for a simple finite automaton on a rectangular grid of points:
  - (a) The state space consists of three states, 0, 1, and 2, 0 meaning at rest, 1 meaning excited, and 2 meaning refractory.
  - (b) A point in state 1 goes to state 2 on the next time step. A point in state 2 goes to 0 on the next step.
  - (c) A point in state 0 remains in state 0 unless at least one of its nearest neighbors is in state 1, in which case it goes to state 1 on the next step.

Write a computer program that implements these rules. What initial data must be supplied to initiate a spiral? Can you initiate a double spiral by supplying two stimuli at different times and different points?

26. (a) Numerically simulate spiral waves for the Pushchino model of Chapter 5, Exercise 13.
- (b) Numerically simulate spiral waves for the Pushchino model with

$$f(V) = \begin{cases} C_1 V, & \text{when } V < V_1, \\ -C_2 V + a, & \text{when } V_1 < V < V_2, \\ C_3(V - 1), & \text{when } V > V_2, \end{cases} \quad (6.140)$$

and

$$\tau(V, w) = \begin{cases} \tau_1, & \text{when } V_1 < V < V_2, \\ \tau_1, & \text{when } V < V_1, w > w_1, \\ \tau_2, & \text{when } V > V_2, \\ \tau_3, & \text{when } V < V_1, w < w_1. \end{cases}$$

Use the parameters  $V_1 = 0.0026$ ,  $V_2 = 0.837$ ,  $w_1 = 1.8$ ,  $C_1 = 20$ ,  $C_2 = 3$ ,  $C_3 = 15$ ,  $a = 0.06$ ,  $\tau_1 = 75$ ,  $\tau_2 = 1.0$ ,  $\tau_3 = 2.75$ , and  $k = 3$ . What is the difference between these spirals and those for the previous model?

Answer: There are no stable spirals for this model, but spirals continually form and break apart, giving a chaotic appearance.

## CHAPTER 7

---

# Calcium Dynamics

Calcium is critically important for a vast array of cellular functions, as can be seen by a quick look through any physiology book. For example, in this book we discuss the role that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  plays in muscle mechanics, cardiac electrophysiology, bursting oscillations and secretion, hair cells, and adaptation in photoreceptors, among other things. Clearly, the mechanisms by which a cell controls its  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration are of central interest in cell physiology.

There are a number of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  control mechanisms operating on different levels, all designed to ensure that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is present in sufficient quantity to perform its necessary functions, but not in too great a quantity in the wrong places. Prolonged high cytoplasmic concentrations of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  are toxic. For example, cellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  overload can trigger apoptotic cell death, a process in which the cell kills itself. In muscle cells, high intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is responsible for prolonged muscle tension and rigor mortis.

There are many reviews of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  physiology in the literature: in 2003 an entire issue of *Nature Reviews* was devoted to the subject and contains reviews of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  homeostasis (Berridge et al., 2003), extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sensing (Hofer and Brown, 2003),  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signaling during embryogenesis (Webb and Miller, 2003), the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -apoptosis link (Orrenius et al., 2003), and the regulation of cardiac contractility by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (MacLennan and Kranias, 2003). Other useful reviews are Berridge (1997) and Carafoli (2002).

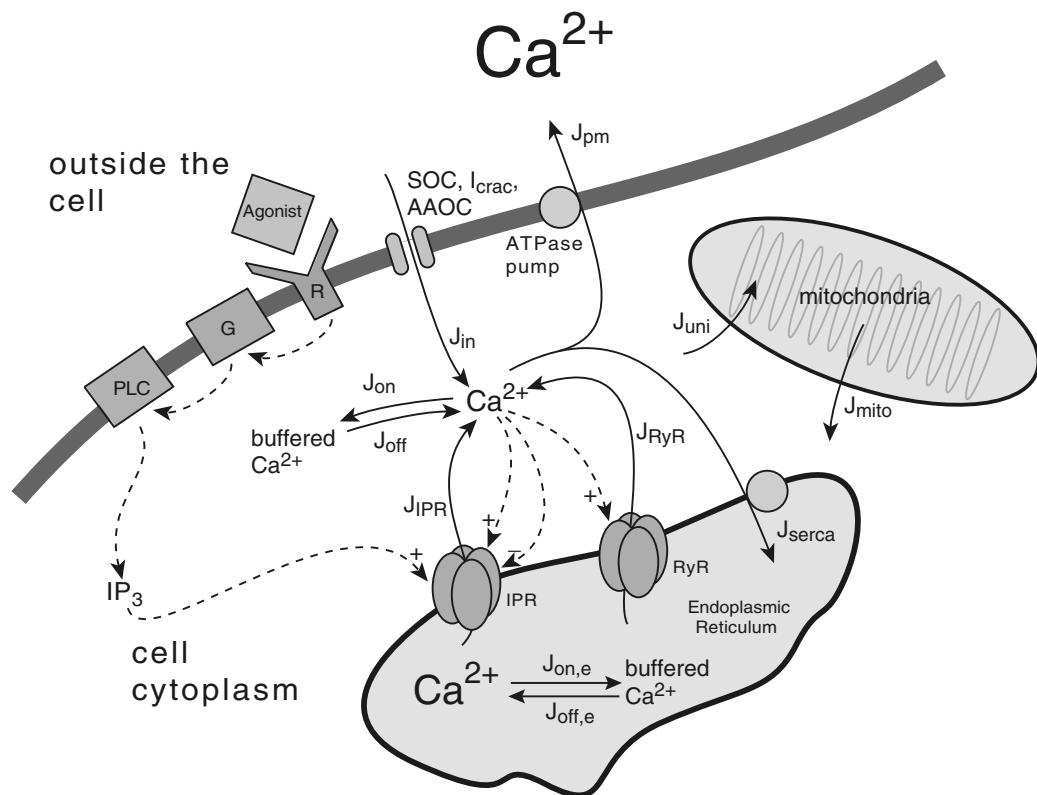
In vertebrates, the majority of body  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is stored in the bones, from where it can be released by hormonal stimulation to maintain an extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration of around 1 mM, while active pumps and exchangers keep the cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration at around 0.1  $\mu\text{M}$ . Since the cytoplasmic concentration is low, there is a steep concentration gradient from the outside of a cell to the inside. This disparity has the advantage that cells are able to raise their  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration quickly, by opening  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels and relying on passive flow down a steep concentration gradient, but

it has the disadvantage that energy must be expended to keep the cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration low. Thus, cells have finely tuned mechanisms to control how  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is allowed into, or removed from, the cytoplasm.

Calcium is removed from the cytoplasm in two principal ways: it is pumped out of the cell across the plasma membrane, and it is sequestered into internal membrane-bound compartments such as the mitochondria, the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) or sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR), and secretory granules. Since the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration in the cytoplasm is much lower than either the extracellular concentration or the concentration inside the internal compartments, both methods of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  removal require expenditure of energy. Some of this is by a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase, similar to the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  ATPase discussed in Chapter 2, that uses energy stored in ATP to pump  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  out of the cell or into an internal compartment. There is also a  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger (NCX) in the cell membrane that uses the energy of the  $\text{Na}^+$  electrochemical gradient to remove  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the cell at the expense of  $\text{Na}^+$  entry (also discussed in Chapters 2 and 3).

Calcium influx also occurs via two principal pathways: inflow from the extracellular medium through  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels in the plasma membrane and release from internal stores. The plasma membrane  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels are of several different types. For example, voltage-controlled channels open in response to depolarization of the cell membrane, receptor-operated channels open in response to the binding of an external ligand, second-messenger-operated channels open in response to the binding of a cellular second messenger, and mechanically operated channels open in response to mechanical stimulation. Voltage-controlled  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels are of great importance in other chapters of this book (in particular, for bursting oscillations in Chapter 9 or cardiac cells in Chapter 12), but are not discussed here. We also omit consideration of the other plasma membrane channels, concentrating instead on the properties of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from internal stores.

Calcium release from internal stores such as the ER is the second major way in which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  enters the cytoplasm, and this is mediated principally by two types of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels that are also receptors: the ryanodine receptor and the inositol (1,4,5)-trisphosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ) receptor. The ryanodine receptor, so called because of its sensitivity to the plant alkaloid ryanodine, plays an integral role in excitation–contraction coupling in skeletal and cardiac muscle cells, and is believed to underlie  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, whereby a small amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entering the cardiac or skeletal muscle cell through voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels initiates an explosive release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Excitation–contraction coupling is discussed in detail in Chapter 15. Ryanodine receptors are also found in a variety of nonmuscle cells such as neurons, pituitary cells, and sea urchin eggs. The  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor, although similar in structure to the ryanodine receptor, is found predominantly in nonmuscle cells, and is sensitive to the second messenger  $\text{IP}_3$ . The binding of an extracellular agonist such as a hormone or a neurotransmitter to a receptor in the plasma membrane can cause, via a G-protein link to phospholipase C (PLC), the cleavage of phosphatidylinositol (4,5)-bisphosphate ( $\text{PIP}_2$ ) into diacylglycerol (DAG) and  $\text{IP}_3$  (Fig. 7.1). The water-soluble  $\text{IP}_3$  is free to diffuse through the cell cytoplasm and bind to  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors situated on the ER



**Figure 7.1** Diagram of the major fluxes involved in the control of cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. Binding of agonist to a cell membrane receptor (R) leads to the activation of a G-protein (G), and subsequent activation of phospholipase C (PLC). This cleaves phosphatidylinositol bisphosphate into diacylglycerol and inositol trisphosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ), which is free to diffuse through the cell cytoplasm. When  $\text{IP}_3$  binds to an IPR receptor (IPR) on the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) membrane it causes the release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ER, and this  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in turn modulates the open probability of the IPR and ryanodine receptors (RyR). Calcium fluxes are denoted by solid arrows. Calcium can be released from the ER through IPR ( $J_{\text{IPR}}$ ) or RyR ( $J_{\text{RyR}}$ ), can be pumped from the cytoplasm into the ER ( $J_{\text{serca}}$ ) or to the outside ( $J_{\text{pm}}$ ), can be taken up into ( $J_{\text{uni}}$ ), or released from ( $J_{\text{mito}}$ ), the mitochondria, and can be bound to ( $J_{\text{on}}$ ), or released from ( $J_{\text{off}}$ ).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers. Entry from the outside ( $J_{\text{in}}$ ) is controlled by a variety of possible channels, including store-operated channels (SOC),  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -release-activated channels ( $I_{\text{crac}}$ ), and arachidonic-acid-operated channels (AAOC).

membrane, leading to the opening of these receptors and subsequent release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ER. Similar to ryanodine receptors,  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors are modulated by the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  both activating and inactivating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, but at different rates. Thus,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release occurs through  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors also.

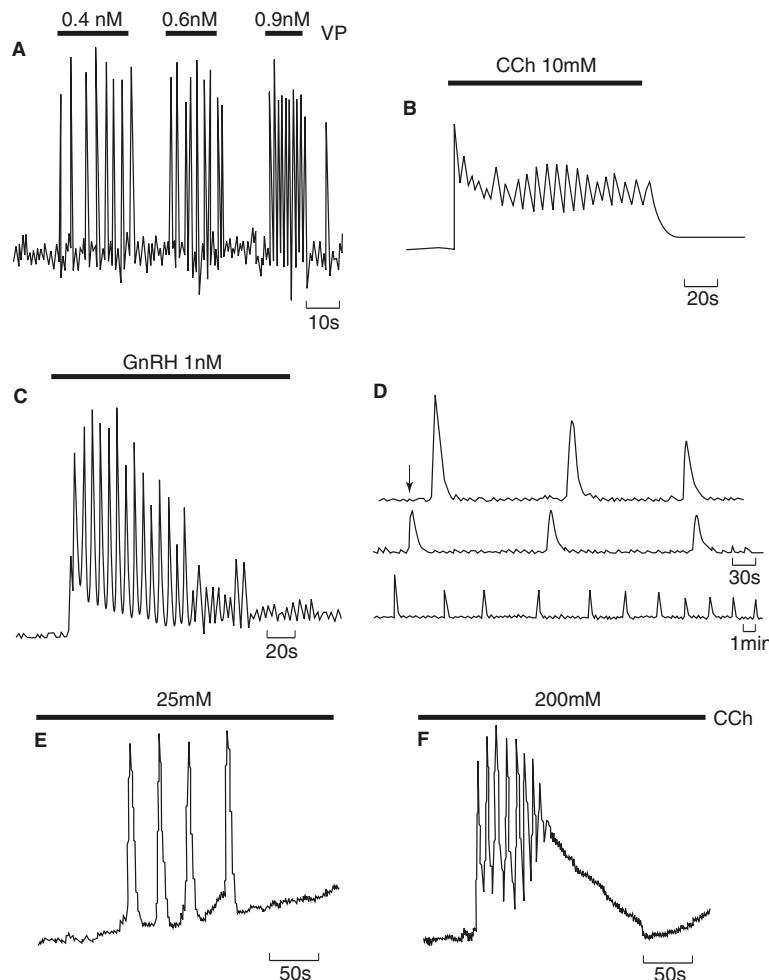
As an additional control for the cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is heavily buffered (i.e., bound) by large proteins, with estimates that at least 99% of the total cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is bound to buffers. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the ER and mitochondria is also heavily buffered.

## 7.1 Calcium Oscillations and Waves

One of the principal reasons that modelers have become interested in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics is that the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  shows highly complex spatiotemporal behavior (Fig. 7.2). Many cell types respond to agonist stimulation with oscillations in the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . These oscillations can be grouped into two major types: those that are dependent on periodic fluctuations of the cell membrane potential and the associated periodic entry of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  through voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels (for example in cardiac cells), and those that occur in the presence of a voltage clamp. The focus in this chapter is on the latter type, within which group further distinctions can be made by whether the oscillatory  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flux is through ryanodine or  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors. We consider models of both types here, beginning with models of  $\text{IP}_3$ -dependent  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations. In many cell types one important feature of  $\text{IP}_3$ -dependent  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations is that they persist for some time in the absence of extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (although often with a changed shape and period), and must thus necessarily involve  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport to and from the internal stores.

Calcium oscillations have been implicated in a vast array of cellular control processes. The review by Berridge et al. (2003) mentions, among other things, oocyte activation at fertilization, axonal growth, cell migration, gene expression, formation of nodules in plant root hairs, development of muscle, and release of cytokines from epithelial cells. In many cases, the oscillations are a frequency-encoded signal that allows a cell to use  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  as a second messenger while avoiding the toxic effects of prolonged high  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. For example, exocytosis in gonadotropes is known to be dependent on the frequency of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations (Tse et al., 1993), and gene expression can also be modulated by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spike frequency (Dolmetsch et al., 1998; Li et al., 1998). However, there are still many examples for which the signal carried by a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillation has not been unambiguously decoded.

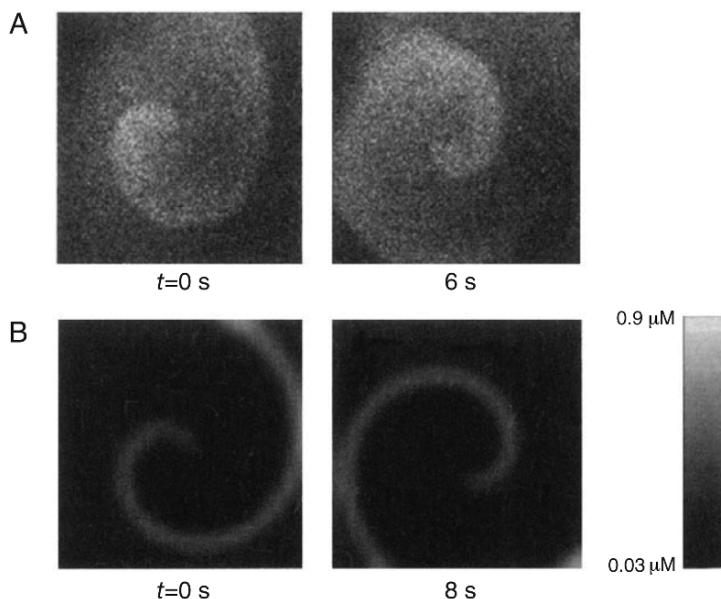
The period of  $\text{IP}_3$ -dependent oscillations ranges from a few seconds to a few minutes. In some cell types these oscillations appear to occur at a constant concentration of  $\text{IP}_3$ , while in other cell types they appear to be driven by oscillations in  $[\text{IP}_3]$ . Modulation of the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor by other factors such as phosphatases and kinases also plays an important role in setting the oscillation period, while  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx from outside the cell is another important regulatory mechanism. Thus, there is a tremendous variety of mechanisms that control  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, and it is not realistic to expect that a single model can capture the important behaviors in all cell types. Nevertheless, most of the models have much in common, and a great deal can be learned about the overall approach by the study of a small number of models. The concept of a cellular



**Figure 7.2** Typical  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations from a variety of cell types. A: Hepatocytes stimulated with vasopressin (VP). B: Rat parotid gland stimulated with carbachol (CCh). C: Gonadotropes stimulated with gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH). D: Hamster eggs after fertilization. The time of fertilization is denoted by the arrow. E and F: Insulinoma cells stimulated with two different concentrations of carbachol. (Berridge and Galione, 1988, Fig. 2.)

$\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -signaling “toolkit” has been introduced by Berridge et al. (2003). There is a large number of components in the toolkit (receptors, G proteins, channels, buffers, pumps, exchangers, and so on); by expressing those components that are needed, each cell can fine-tune the spatiotemporal properties of its intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics follow a similar modular approach. Each member of the cellular toolkit has a corresponding module in the modeling toolkit (or if one doesn’t exist it can be constructed). To construct whole-cell models one then combines appropriate components from the modeling toolkit.

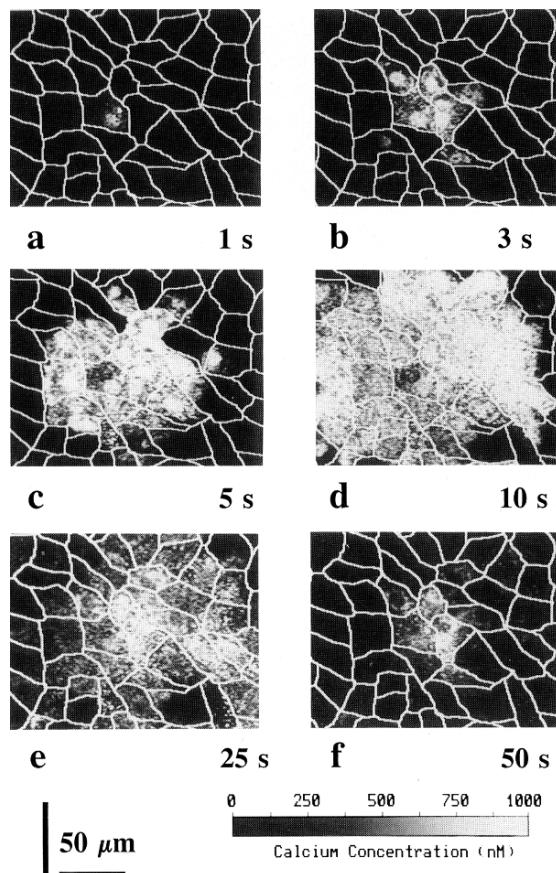
Often,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations do not occur uniformly throughout the cell, but are organized into repetitive intracellular waves (Rooney and Thomas, 1993; Thomas et al., 1996; Røttingen and Iversen, 2000; Falcke, 2004). One of the most visually impressive examples of this occurs in *Xenopus* oocytes. In 1991, Lechleiter and Clapham and their coworkers discovered that intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves in immature *Xenopus* oocytes showed remarkable spatiotemporal organization. By loading the oocytes with a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive dye, releasing  $\text{IP}_3$ , and observing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release patterns with a confocal microscope, Lechleiter and Clapham (1992; Lechleiter et al., 1991b) observed that the intracellular waves develop a high degree of spatial organization, forming concentric circles, plane waves, and multiple spirals. Typical experimental results are shown in Fig. 7.3A. The feature of *Xenopus* oocytes that makes these observations possible is their large size. *Xenopus* oocytes can have a diameter larger than 600  $\mu\text{m}$ , an order of magnitude greater than most other cells. In a small cell, a typical  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave (often with a width of close to 100  $\mu\text{m}$ ) cannot be observed in its entirety, and there is not enough room for a spiral to form. However, in a large cell it may be possible to observe both the wave front and the wave back, as well as spiral waves, and this has made the *Xenopus* oocyte an important system for the study of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves. Of course, what is true for *Xenopus* oocytes is not necessarily true for other cells, and so one must be cautious about extrapolating to other cell types. The physiological significance of these spatiotemporal patterns is also not apparent.



**Figure 7.3** A: Spiral  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave in the *Xenopus* oocyte. The image size is  $420 \times 420 \mu\text{m}$ . The spiral has a wavelength of about 150  $\mu\text{m}$  and a period of about 8 seconds. B: A model spiral wave simulated on a domain of size  $250 \times 250 \mu\text{m}$ , with  $[\text{IP}_3] = 95 \text{ nM}$ . See Section 7.3.1. (Atri et al., 1993, Fig. 11.)

Another well-known example of an intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave occurs across the cortex of an egg directly after fertilization (Ridgway et al., 1977; Nuccitelli et al., 1993). In fact, this wave motivated the first models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave propagation, which appeared as early as 1978 (Gilkey et al., 1978; Cheer et al., 1987; Lane et al., 1987). However, because they do not account for the underlying physiology, these early models have since been superseded (Wagner et al., 1998; Bugrim et al., 2003).

In addition to traveling across single cells,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves can be transmitted between cells, forming intercellular waves that can travel over distances of many cell lengths. Such intercellular waves have been observed in intact livers, slices of hippocampal brain tissue, epithelial and glial cell cultures (see Fig. 7.4), and many other preparations



**Figure 7.4** Mechanically stimulated intercellular wave in airway epithelial cells. The solid white lines denote the cell borders, and the white dot in the approximate center of frame **a** denotes the place of mechanical stimulation. After mechanical stimulation a wave of increased  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  can be seen spreading from the stimulated cell through other cells in the culture. The time after mechanical stimulation is given in seconds in the lower right corner of each panel (Sneyd et al., 1995b, Fig. 4A). A model of this wave is discussed in Section 7.7.

(Sanderson et al., 1990, 1994; Charles et al., 1991, 1992; Cornell-Bell et al., 1990; Kim et al., 1994; Robb-Gaspers and Thomas, 1995). Not all intercellular coordination is of such long range; synchronized oscillations are often observed in small groups of cells such as pancreatic or parotid acinar cells (Yule et al., 1996) or multiplets of hepatocytes (Tordjmann et al., 1997, 1998).

Although there is controversy about the exact mechanisms by which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves propagate (and it is true that the mechanisms differ from cell type to cell type), it is widely believed that in many cell types, intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves are driven by the diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  between  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release sites. According to this hypothesis, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  released from one group of release sites (usually either IPR or RyR) diffuses to neighboring release sites and initiates further  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from them. Repetition of this process can generate an advancing wave front of high  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, i.e., a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave. Since they rely on the active release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  via a positive feedback mechanism, such waves are actively propagated. The theory of such waves was presented in Chapter 6. However, when the underlying  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  kinetics are oscillatory (i.e., there is a stable limit cycle), waves can propagate by a kinematic, or phase wave, mechanism, in which the wave results from the spatially ordered firing of local oscillators. These waves do not depend on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion for their existence, but merely on the fact that one end of the cell is oscillating with a different phase from that of the other end. In this case,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion serves to synchronize the local oscillators, but the phase wave persists in the absence of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusive coupling.

The most common approach to the study of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations and waves is to assume that the underlying mechanisms are deterministic. However, even the most cursory examination of experimental data shows that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics are inherently stochastic in nature. The most prominent of the stochastic events underlying  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations and waves are small localized release events called *puffs*, or *sparks*, and these elementary events, caused by the opening of single, or a small number of,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release channels, are the building blocks from which global events are built. Calcium puffs, caused by localized release through IPR, have been extensively studied in *Xenopus* oocytes and HeLa cells (Marchant et al., 1999; Sun et al., 1998; Callamaras et al., 1998; Marchant and Parker, 2001; Thomas et al., 2000; Bootman et al., 1997a,b), while  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sparks, caused by localized release through RyR and occurring principally in muscle cells, were discovered by Cheng et al. (1993) and studied by a multitude of authors since (Smith et al., 1998; Izu et al., 2001; Sobie et al., 2002; Soeller and Cannell, 1997, 2002). To study the stochastic properties of puffs and sparks, stochastic models are necessary. In general, such models are based on stochastic simulations of Markov models for the IPR and RyR. We discuss such models briefly in Section 7.6.

Many different models have been constructed to study  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations and waves in different cell types, and there is not space enough here to discuss them all. Thus, after discussing particular models of each of the most important  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  fluxes, we discuss in detail only a few simple models of oscillations and waves. The most comprehensive review of the field is Falcke (2004); this review is almost 200 pages long and is the best yet written of models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics.

## 7.2 Well-Mixed Cell Models: Calcium Oscillations

If we assume the cell is well-mixed, then the concentration of each species is homogeneous throughout. We write  $c$  for the concentration of free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions in the cytoplasm and note that  $c = c(t)$ , i.e.,  $c$  has no spatial dependence. Similarly, we let  $c_e$  denote the homogeneous concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the ER.

The differential equations for  $c$  and  $c_e$  follow from conservation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . In words,

Rate of change of total calcium = net flux of calcium into the compartment,

or in mathematical notation,

$$\frac{d(vc)}{dt} = \tilde{J}_{\text{net}}, \quad (7.1)$$

where  $v$  is the volume of the compartment, and  $\tilde{J}_{\text{net}}$  is the net  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flux into the compartment, in units of number of moles per second. Usually it is assumed that the volumes of the cell and its internal compartments are constant, in which case the conservation equation is written as

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = J_{\text{net}} = \tilde{J}_{\text{net}}/v. \quad (7.2)$$

Here,  $J_{\text{net}}$  is the net flux into the cytoplasm per cytosolic volume, and has units of concentration per second.

In applications in which the volume is changing (as, for example, in models of cell volume control, or models of the control of fluid secretion by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations), it is necessary to use  $\tilde{J}_{\text{net}}$  instead of  $J_{\text{net}}$ .

More specifically, in view of the fluxes shown in Fig. 7.1, we have

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = J_{\text{IPR}} + J_{\text{RyR}} + J_{\text{in}} - J_{\text{pm}} - J_{\text{serca}} - J_{\text{on}} + J_{\text{off}} + J_{\text{uni}} - J_{\text{mito}}. \quad (7.3)$$

For the equation for ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , the fact that the cytosolic volume is different from the ER volume must be taken into account. Again, in view of the fluxes shown in Fig. 7.1, we have

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = \gamma(J_{\text{serca}} - J_{\text{IPR}} - J_{\text{RyR}}) + J_{\text{off,e}} - J_{\text{on,e}}, \quad (7.4)$$

where  $\gamma = \frac{v_{\text{cyt}}}{v_{\text{ER}}}$  is the ratio of the cytosolic volume to the ER volume.

Each of the fluxes in these equations corresponds to a component of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -signaling toolkit, of which there are many possibilities; here, we discuss only those that appear most often in models. In general, these equations are coupled to additional differential equations that describe the gating of the IPR or RyR, or the dynamics of the pumps and exchangers. An example of such a model is discussed in Section 7.2.6. However, before we see what happens when it is all put together, we first discuss how each toolkit component is modeled.

### 7.2.1 Influx

In general, the influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into a cell from outside is voltage-dependent. However, when  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations occur at a constant voltage (as is typical in nonexcitable cells), the voltage dependence is unimportant. This influx is certainly dependent on a host of other factors, including  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{IP}_3$ , arachidonic acid, and the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration in the ER. For example, there is evidence that, in some cell types, depletion of the ER causes an increase in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx through store-operated channels, or SOCs (Clapham, 1995). There is also evidence that SOCs play a role only at high agonist concentration (when the ER is highly depleted), but that at lower agonist concentrations  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx is controlled by arachidonic acid (Shuttleworth, 1999). However, the exact mechanism by which this occurs is unknown. What is known is that  $J_{\text{in}}$  increases as agonist concentration increases; if this were not so, the steady-state level of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  would be independent of  $\text{IP}_3$  (see Exercise 1), which it is not. One common approach is to assume that  $J_{\text{leak}}$  is a linear increasing function of  $p$ , the  $\text{IP}_3$  concentration, with

$$J_{\text{in}} = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 p, \quad (7.5)$$

for some constants  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ . Although this extremely simple model does not take into account any dependence of influx on the loading of the ER, it is probably acceptable for lower agonist concentrations. Our current state of knowledge of what controls  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx is not sufficient to allow the construction of much more detailed models.

### 7.2.2 Mitochondria

Mitochondrial  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  handling is a highly complex process, and a number of detailed models have been constructed. For the sake of brevity we do not discuss these models at all; the interested reader is referred to Colegrave et al. (2000), Friel (2000), Falcke et al. (2000), Grubelnik et al. (2001), Marhl et al. (2000), Schuster et al. (2002) and Selivanov et al. (1998). It seems that one function of the mitochondria is to take up and release large amounts of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , but relatively slowly. Thus, the mitochondria tend to modulate the trailing edges of the waves, reduce wave amplitude, and change the long-term oscillatory behavior. However, this is certainly an oversimplification.

### 7.2.3 Calcium Buffers

At least 99% of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the cytoplasm is bound to large proteins, called  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers. Typical buffers are calsequestrin, calbindin, fluorescent dyes, and the plasma membrane itself. A detailed discussion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering, and its effect on oscillations and waves, is given in Section 7.4.

### 7.2.4 Calcium Pumps and Exchangers

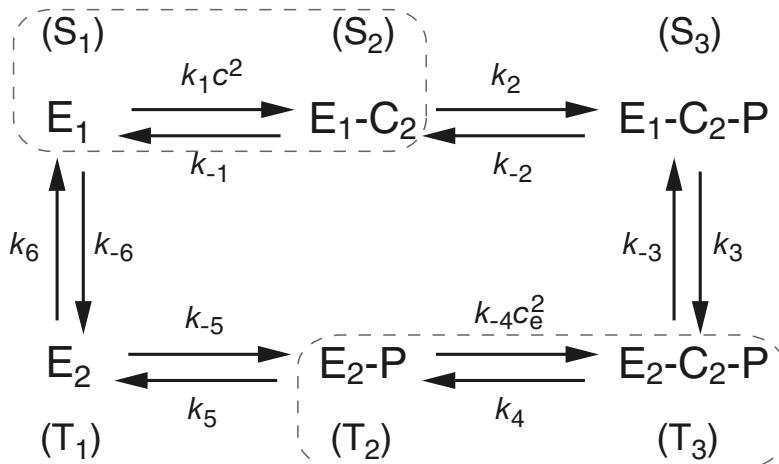
#### Calcium ATPases

Early models of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase pump were of the Hill equation type (Section 1.4.4). For example, data from Lytton et al. (1992) showed that the flux through the ATPase was approximately a sigmoidal function of  $c$ , with Hill coefficient of about 2. Thus, a common model is

$$J_{\text{serca}} = \frac{V_p c^2}{K_p^2 + c^2}. \quad (7.6)$$

Such simple models are known to have a number of serious flaws. For example, this flux has no dependence on ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration and is always of one sign. However, it is known that with high enough ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, it is possible for the pump to reverse, generating ATP in the process.

MacLennan et al. (1997) constructed a more detailed model, shown schematically in Fig. 7.5. The pump can be in one of two basic conformations:  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ . In the  $E_1$  conformation the pump binds two  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions from the cytoplasm, whereupon it exposes a phosphorylation site. Once phosphorylated, the pump switches to the  $E_2$  conformation in which the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding sites are exposed to the ER lumen and have a much lower affinity for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Thus,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released into the ER, the pump is dephosphorylated, and



**Figure 7.5** Schematic diagram of the SERCA model of MacLennan et al. (1997).  $E_1$  is the conformation in which the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding sites are exposed to the cytoplasm, and  $E_2$  is the conformation in which they are exposed to the lumen and have a much lower affinity for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . The P denotes that the pump has been phosphorylated; for simplicity ATP and ADP have been omitted from the diagram. The cotransport of  $\text{H}^+$  has also been omitted. By assuming fast equilibrium between the pairs of states in the dashed boxes, a simplified model, shown in Fig. 7.6, can be derived.

and completes the cycle by switching back to the E<sub>1</sub> conformation. For each Ca<sup>2+</sup> ion transported from the cytoplasm to the ER, one proton is cotransported from the ER to the cytoplasm. This makes the similarity with the Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> ATPase more apparent. The rate-limiting step of the transport cycle is the transition from E<sub>1</sub>-P-C<sub>2</sub> to E<sub>2</sub>-P-C<sub>2</sub>.

To calculate the flux in this model is relatively straightforward, and is similar to examples that were amply discussed in Chapter 2, so we leave this calculation as an exercise for the interested reader. It turns out that

$$J_{\text{serca}} = \frac{c^2 - K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 K_5 K_6 c_e^2}{\alpha_1 c^2 + \alpha_2 c_e^2 + \alpha_3 c^2 c_e^2 + \alpha_4}, \quad (7.7)$$

where the  $\alpha$ 's are functions of the rate constants, too long and of too little interest to include in full detail. As always,  $K_i = k_{-i}/k_i$ . If the affinity of the Ca<sup>2+</sup> binding sites is high when the pump is in conformation E<sub>1</sub>, and low when the pump is in conformation E<sub>2</sub>, then  $\frac{k_{-4}}{k_4} \ll \frac{k_1}{k_{-1}}$ , so that  $K_1 K_4$  is much less than one. However, it is also reasonable to assume that  $\frac{k_6}{k_{-6}} = \frac{k_{-3}}{k_3}$  and that  $\frac{k_2}{k_{-2}} = \frac{k_5}{k_{-5}}$ , in which case  $K_2 K_3 K_5 K_6 = 1$ . It follows that  $K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 K_5 K_6 \ll 1$ , so that the pump can support a positive flux even when  $c_e$  is much greater than  $c$ .

Notice that if this were a model of a closed system, the law of detailed balance would require that  $K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 K_5 K_6 = 1$ . This is not the case here since the cycle is driven by phosphorylation of the pump, so the reaction rates depend on the concentrations of ATP, ADP, and P, and energy is continually consumed (if  $J_{\text{serca}} > 0$ ) or generated (if  $J_{\text{serca}} < 0$ ). For a more detailed discussion, see Section 2.5.1.

In the original description of the model, MacLennan et al. assumed that the binding and release of Ca<sup>2+</sup> occurs quickly. This results in a simpler model with a similar expression for the steady-state flux. The process of reducing a model in this way using a fast-equilibrium assumption is important and useful, and is explored in considerable detail in Chapter 2, and in Exercise 7. However, for convenience, we briefly sketch the derivation here.

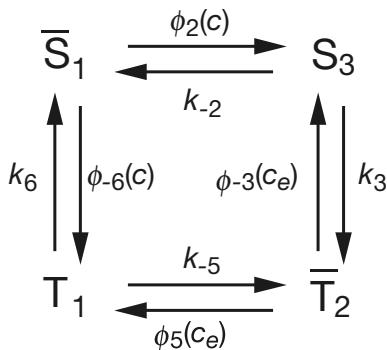
In Fig. 7.5, states S<sub>1</sub> and S<sub>2</sub> have been grouped together by a box with a dotted outline, as have states T<sub>2</sub> and T<sub>3</sub>. The assumption of fast equilibrium gives

$$s_1 = \frac{K_1}{c^2} s_2, \quad (7.8)$$

with a similar expression for t<sub>2</sub> and t<sub>3</sub>. Here, we denote the fraction of pumps in state S<sub>1</sub> by s<sub>1</sub>, and similarly for the other states. We now define two new variables;  $\bar{s}_1 = s_1 + s_2$  and  $\bar{t}_2 = t_2 + t_3$ . From (7.8) it follows that

$$\bar{s}_1 = s_1 \left( 1 + \frac{c^2}{K_1} \right) = s_2 \left( 1 + \frac{K_1}{c^2} \right). \quad (7.9)$$

Hence, the rate at which  $\bar{S}_1$  is converted to S<sub>3</sub> is  $k_2 s_2 = \frac{c^2 k_2 \bar{s}_1}{c^2 + K_1}$ . Similarly, the rate at which  $\bar{S}_1$  is converted to T<sub>1</sub> is  $k_{-6} s_1 = \frac{K_1 k_{-6} \bar{s}_1}{K_1 + c^2}$ .



**Figure 7.6** Schematic diagram of the simplified version of the SERCA model of MacLennan et al. (1997). By assuming fast equilibrium between the pairs of states shown grouped in Fig. 7.5 by the dashed boxes, this diagram, in which there are fewer states, but with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent transitions, can be derived. The functions in the transition rates are  $\phi_2 = c^2 k_2 / (c^2 + K_1)$ ,  $\phi_3 = k_3 K_4 c_e^2 / (1 + K_4 c_e^2)$ ,  $\phi_5 = k_5 / (1 + K_4 c_e^2)$  and  $\phi_6 = K_1 k_6 / (K_1 + c^2)$ .

Repetition of this process for each of the transitions results in the simplified model shown in Fig. 7.6. The form of the functions  $\phi$  can be understood intuitively. For example, as  $c$  increases, the equilibrium between  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  is shifted further toward  $S_2$ . This increases the rate at which  $S_3$  is formed, but decreases the rate at which  $S_1$  is converted to  $T_1$ . Thus, the transition from  $\bar{S}_1$  to  $S_3$  is an increasing function of  $c$ , while the transition from  $\bar{S}_1$  to  $T_1$  is a decreasing function of  $c$ .

From this diagram, the steady-state flux can be calculated in the same way as before. Not surprisingly, the final result looks much the same, giving

$$J_{\text{serca}} = \frac{c^2 - K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 K_5 K_6 c_e^2}{\beta_1 c^2 + \beta_2 c_e^2 + \beta_3 c^2 c_e^2 + \beta_4}, \quad (7.10)$$

for constants  $\beta_i$  that are limiting values of the constants  $\alpha_i$  that appeared in (7.7).

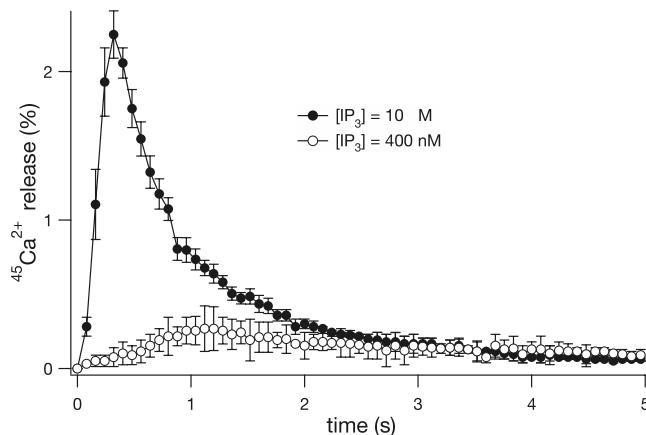
The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPases on the plasma membrane are similar to the SERCA ATPases, and are modeled in a similar way.

### Calcium Exchangers

Another important way in which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is removed from the cytoplasm is via the action of  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchangers, which remove one  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion from the cytoplasm at the expense of the entry of three  $\text{Na}^+$  ions. They are particularly important for the control of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in cardiac cells and are discussed further in Chapter 12 in the context of models of excitation–contraction coupling.

### 7.2.5 IP<sub>3</sub> Receptors

A basic property of IP<sub>3</sub> receptors is that they respond in a time-dependent manner to step changes of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or IP<sub>3</sub>. Thus, in response to a step increase of IP<sub>3</sub> or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  the receptor open probability first opens to a peak and then declines to a lower plateau (see Fig. 7.7). This decline is called *adaptation* of the receptor, since it adapts to a maintained  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or IP<sub>3</sub> concentration. If a further step is applied on top of the first, the receptor responds with another peak, followed by a decline to a plateau. In this way the IPR responds to *changes* in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  or  $[\text{IP}_3]$ , rather than to absolute concentrations.



**Figure 7.7** Experimental data from Marchant and Taylor (1998; Fig. 1a). In response to a maintained elevation of  $\text{IP}_3$ , the flux through a hepatocyte IPR (measured here as release of radioactive  $^{45}\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) first increases to a peak and then declines to a lower level.

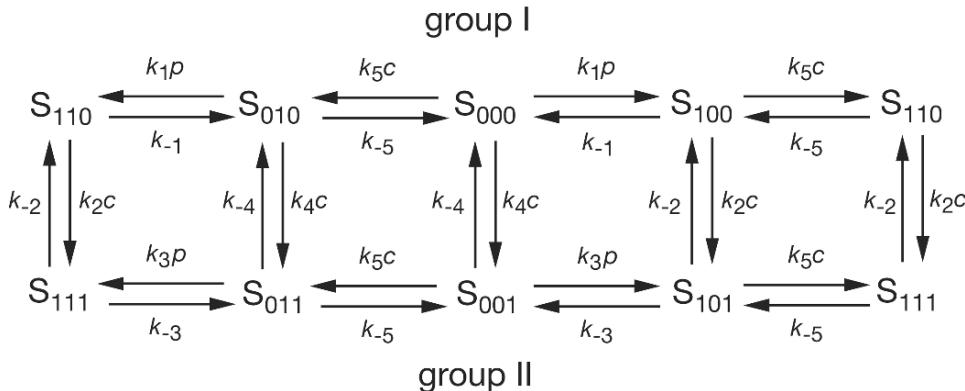
Adaptation is a well-known feature of many physiological systems (see, for example, Chapters 16 and 19), and is often characterized by a fast activation followed by a slower inactivation, as seen in the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations (Chapter 5).

Adaptation of the IPR is now believed to result, at least in part, from the fact that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  not only stimulates its own release, but also inhibits it on a slower time scale. It is hypothesized that this sequential activation and inactivation of the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is one mechanism underlying  $\text{IP}_3$ -dependent  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations and waves, and a number of models incorporating this hypothesis have appeared (reviewed by Sneyd et al., 1995b; Tang et al., 1996; Schuster et al., 2002; Falcke, 2004). However, as is described below, there are almost certainly other important mechanisms in operation; some of the most recent models have suggested that the IPR kinetics are of less importance than previously thought, while depletion of the ER might also play an important role. A detailed review of IPR models is given by Sneyd and Falcke (2005), while Sneyd et al. (2004a) compare a number of models to experimental data.

### An Eight-State $\text{IP}_3$ Receptor Model

One of the earliest models of the IPR to incorporate sequential activation and inactivation by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  was that of De Young and Keizer (1992).

For this model, it is assumed that the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor consists of three equivalent and independent subunits, all of which must be in a conducting state for there to be  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flux. Each subunit has an  $\text{IP}_3$  binding site, an activating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding site, and an inactivating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding site, each of which can be either occupied or unoccupied, and thus each subunit can be in one of eight states. Each state of the subunit is labeled



**Figure 7.8** The binding diagram for the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor model. Here,  $c$  denotes  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ , and  $p$  denotes  $[\text{IP}_3]$ .

$S_{ijk}$ , where  $i, j$ , and  $k$  are equal to 0 or 1, with 0 indicating that the binding site is unoccupied and 1 indicating that it is occupied. The first index refers to the  $\text{IP}_3$  binding site, the second to the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  activation site, and the third to the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  inactivation site. This is illustrated in Fig. 7.8. While the model has 24 rate constants, because of the requirement for detailed balance, these are not all independent. In addition, two simplifying assumptions are made to reduce the number of independent constants. First, the rate constants are assumed to be independent of whether activating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is bound or not. Second, the kinetics of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  activation are assumed to be independent of  $\text{IP}_3$  binding and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  inactivation. This leaves only 10 rate constants,  $k_1, \dots, k_5$  and  $k_{-1}, \dots, k_{-5}$ . Notice that with these simplifying assumptions, detailed balance is satisfied.

The fraction of subunits in the state  $S_{ijk}$  is denoted by  $x_{ijk}$ . The differential equations for these are based on mass-action kinetics, and thus, for example,

$$\frac{dx_{000}}{dt} = -(V_1 + V_2 + V_3), \quad (7.11)$$

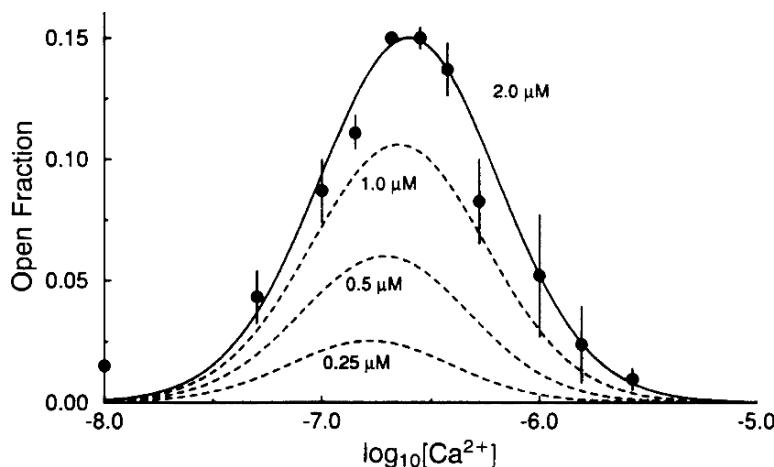
where

$$V_1 = k_1 p x_{000} - k_{-1} x_{100}, \quad (7.12)$$

$$V_2 = k_4 c x_{000} - k_{-4} x_{001}, \quad (7.13)$$

$$V_3 = k_5 c x_{000} - k_{-5} x_{010}, \quad (7.14)$$

where  $p$  denotes  $[\text{IP}_3]$  and  $c$  denotes  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ .  $V_1$  describes the rate at which  $\text{IP}_3$  binds to and leaves the  $\text{IP}_3$  binding site,  $V_2$  describes the rate at which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binds to and leaves the inactivating site, and similarly for  $V_3$ . Since experimental data indicate that the receptor subunits act in a cooperative fashion, the model assumes that the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor passes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current only when three subunits are in the state  $S_{110}$  (i.e., with



**Figure 7.9** The steady-state open probability of the IP<sub>3</sub> receptor, as a function of [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]. The symbols are the experimental data of Bezprozvanny et al. (1991), and the smooth curves are from the receptor model (calculated at four different IP<sub>3</sub> concentrations). (De Young and Keizer, 1992, Fig. 2A.)

one IP<sub>3</sub> and one activating Ca<sup>2+</sup> bound), and thus the open probability of the receptor is  $x_{110}^3$ .

In Fig. 7.9 we show the open probability of the IP<sub>3</sub> receptor as a function of [Ca<sup>2+</sup>], which is some of the experimental data on which the model is based. Bezprozvanny et al. (1991) showed that this open probability is a bell-shaped function of [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]. Thus, at low [Ca<sup>2+</sup>], an increase in [Ca<sup>2+</sup>] increases the open probability of the receptor, while at high [Ca<sup>2+</sup>] an increase in [Ca<sup>2+</sup>] decreases the open probability. Parameters in the model were chosen to obtain agreement with these steady-state data. The kinetic properties of the IP<sub>3</sub> receptor are equally important: the receptor is activated quickly by Ca<sup>2+</sup>, but inactivated by Ca<sup>2+</sup> on a slower time scale. In the model, this is incorporated in the magnitude of the rate constants ( $k_5 > k_2$  and  $k_5 > k_4$ ).

### Reduction of the Eight-State IP<sub>3</sub> Receptor Model

The complexity of the eight-state receptor model (seven differential equations and numerous parameters) provides ample motivation to seek a simpler model that retains its essential properties. Since IP<sub>3</sub> binds quickly to its binding site and Ca<sup>2+</sup> binds quickly to the activating site, we can dispense with the transient details of these binding processes and assume instead that the receptor is in quasi-steady state with respect to IP<sub>3</sub> binding and Ca<sup>2+</sup> activation (De Young and Keizer, 1992; Keizer and De Young, 1994; Li and Rinzel, 1994; Tang et al., 1996). Notice that this is implied by the parameter values for the detailed receptor model shown in Table 7.1, where  $k_1, k_3$ , and  $k_5$  are substantially larger than  $k_2$  and  $k_4$ , and  $k_{-1}, k_{-3}$ , and  $k_{-5}$  are also larger than  $k_{-2}$  and  $k_{-4}$ .

**Table 7.1** Parameters of the eight-state IPR model (De Young and Keizer, 1992).

$k_1 = 400 \mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$	$k_{-1} = 52 \text{s}^{-1}$
$k_2 = 0.2 \mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$	$k_{-2} = 0.21 \text{s}^{-1}$
$k_3 = 400 \mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$	$k_{-3} = 377.2 \text{s}^{-1}$
$k_4 = 0.2 \mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$	$k_{-4} = 0.029 \text{s}^{-1}$
$k_5 = 20 \mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$	$k_{-5} = 1.64 \text{s}^{-1}$

As shown in Fig. 7.8, we arrange the receptor states into two groups: those without  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound to the inactivating site ( $S_{000}, S_{010}, S_{100}$ , and  $S_{110}$ , shown in the upper line of Fig. 7.8; called group I states), and those with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound to the inactivating site ( $S_{001}, S_{011}, S_{101}$ , and  $S_{111}$ , shown in the lower line of Fig. 7.8; called group II states). Because the binding of  $\text{IP}_3$  and the binding of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to the activating site are assumed to be fast processes, within each group the receptor states are assumed to be at quasi-steady state. However, the transitions between group I and group II (between top and bottom in Fig. 7.8), due to binding or unbinding of the inactivating site, are slow, and so the group I states are not in equilibrium with the group II states.

Following what by now is a standard procedure (see, for instance, Section 2.4.1, or Section 7.2.4), we set

$$y = x_{001} + x_{011} + x_{101} + x_{111} \quad (7.15)$$

and find that

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \left[ \frac{(k_{-4}K_1K_2 + k_{-2}pK_4)c}{K_4K_2(p + K_1)} \right] (1 - y) - \left( \frac{k_{-2}p + k_{-4}K_3}{p + K_3} \right) y. \quad (7.16)$$

The details are left as an exercise (Exercise 4). Equation (7.16) can be written in the form

$$\tau_y(c, p) \frac{dy}{dt} = y_\infty(c, p) - y, \quad (7.17)$$

which is useful for comparison with other models such as the Hodgkin–Huxley equations. The open probability is obtained from the equation

$$x_{110} = \frac{pc(1 - y)}{(p + K_1)(c + K_5)}. \quad (7.18)$$

Note that  $1 - y$ , which is the proportion of receptors that are not inactivated by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , plays the role of an inactivation variable, similar in spirit to the variable  $h$  in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations (Chapter 5). To emphasize this similarity, the reduced

model can be written in the form

$$x_{110} = \frac{pc}{(p + K_1)(c + K_5)} h, \quad (7.19)$$

$$\tau_h(c, p) \frac{dh}{dt} = h_\infty(c, p) - h, \quad (7.20)$$

where  $h = 1 - y$ , and  $\tau_h$  and  $h_\infty$  are readily calculated from the corresponding differential equation for  $y$ .

### A Model with Saturating Binding Rates

Recently it has become clear that the eight-state model has some serious flaws. Most importantly, it has been shown experimentally that the rate of opening of the IPR varies only over a single order of magnitude, while the concentrations of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or  $\text{IP}_3$  vary over several orders of magnitude. It follows that opening of the IPR cannot be governed by simple mass action kinetics of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or  $\text{IP}_3$  binding, but must follow some kinetic scheme that allows for saturation of the binding rate.

Given what we have learned in Section 3.5.4, there is one obvious way to do this. If, instead of assuming a single-step reaction of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or  $\text{IP}_3$  binding, we separate the binding step from the opening step, thus using the concepts of affinity and efficacy we saw in models of agonist-controlled channels, we obtain a reaction that has a saturating rate as the concentration of the agonist gets high. This approach is also essentially identical to models of enzyme kinetics, as discussed in Section 1.4. Because of the saturation of the reaction rate, simple mass action kinetics are not appropriate to model enzyme reactions, leading to the development of the Michaelis–Menten-type models.

To illustrate the idea, consider the reaction scheme



If the transitions between  $\tilde{A}$  and  $\bar{A}$  are faster than other reactions, so that these are in instantaneous equilibrium, then

$$c\tilde{A} = K_1\bar{A}, \quad (7.22)$$

where, as usual,  $K_1 = k_{-1}/k_1$ . Following what by now should be the routine method to find slow dynamics, we find that

$$\frac{dA}{dt} = k_{-2}I - \phi(c)A, \quad (7.23)$$

where  $A = \bar{A} + \tilde{A}$ , and

$$\phi(c) = \frac{k_2 c}{c + K_1}, \quad (7.24)$$

a rate that is saturating in  $c$ . In other words, the assumption of fast equilibrium lets us simplify (7.21) to



Thus, in this simple way, saturating binding kinetics can be incorporated into a model.

Using saturating binding schemes of this type, Sneyd and Dufour (2002) constructed a model of the IPR that was based on the qualitative models of Taylor and his colleagues, and is consistent with the scheme of Hajnóczky and Thomas (1997). In addition to the saturating binding rates, the main features of the model are

1. The IPR can be opened by  $IP_3$  in the absence of  $Ca^{2+}$ , but with a lower conductance.
2. The IPR can be inactivated by  $Ca^{2+}$  in the absence of  $IP_3$ .
3. Once  $IP_3$  is bound, the IPR can spontaneously inactivate (to the shut state,  $S$ ), independently of  $Ca^{2+}$ .
4. Once  $IP_3$  is bound, the IPR can also bind  $Ca^{2+}$  to activate the receptor. Thus, there is an intrinsic competition between  $Ca^{2+}$ -mediated receptor activation and spontaneous inactivation.
5. Once the IPR is activated by  $Ca^{2+}$  binding, it can be inactivated by binding of additional  $Ca^{2+}$ . (This feature of the model is the principal point of disagreement with the qualitative models of Taylor, 1998.)
6. Binding of  $IP_3$  and  $Ca^{2+}$  is sequential.

Following these assumptions, the model takes the form shown in Fig. 7.10, with corresponding equations

$$\frac{dR}{dt} = \phi_{-2}O - \phi_2pR + k_{-1}I_1 - \phi_1R, \quad (7.26)$$

$$\frac{dO}{dt} = \phi_2pR - (\phi_{-2} + \phi_4 + \phi_3)O + \phi_{-4}A + k_{-3}S, \quad (7.27)$$

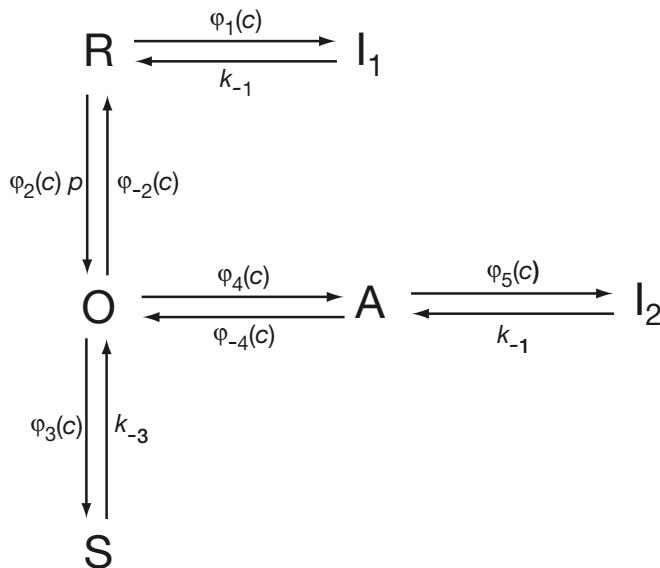
$$\frac{dA}{dt} = \phi_4O - \phi_{-4}A - \phi_5A + k_{-1}I_2, \quad (7.28)$$

$$\frac{dI_1}{dt} = \phi_1R - k_{-1}I_1, \quad (7.29)$$

$$\frac{dI_2}{dt} = \phi_5A - k_{-1}I_2, \quad (7.30)$$

where  $R + O + A + S + I_1 + I_2 = 1$ , and where

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_1(c) &= \frac{\alpha_1c}{\beta_1 + c}, & \phi_3(c) &= \frac{\alpha_3}{\beta_3 + c}, & \phi_5(c) &= \frac{\alpha_5c}{\beta_5 + c}, \\ \phi_2(c) &= \frac{\alpha_2 + \beta_2c}{\beta_1 + c}, & \phi_{-2}(c) &= \frac{\alpha_{-2} + \beta_{-2}c}{\beta_3 + c}, \\ \phi_4(c) &= \frac{\alpha_4c}{\beta_3 + c}, & \phi_{-4}(c) &= \frac{\alpha_{-4}}{\beta_5 + c}. \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 7.10** Sequential model of the IP<sub>3</sub> receptor with saturating binding rates. R — receptor; O — open; S — shut; A — activated; I<sub>1</sub> and I<sub>2</sub> — inactivated.

**Table 7.2** Parameters of the IPR model with saturating binding rates.

$\alpha_1 = 0.3 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\beta_1 = 0.02 \mu\text{M}$
$\alpha_2 = 0.77 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\beta_2 = 1.38 \mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$
$\alpha_{-2} = 76.6 \mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$\beta_{-2} = 137 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$\alpha_3 = 6 \mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$\beta_3 = 54.7 \mu\text{M}$
$\alpha_4 = 4926 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\alpha_{-4} = 1.43 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$\alpha_5 = 1.78 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\beta_5 = 0.12 \mu\text{M}$
$k_{-1} = 0.84 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$k_{-3} = 29.8 \text{ s}^{-1}$

The parameters were determined by fitting to experimental data and are shown in Table 7.2. We assume that the IPR consists of four identical and independent subunits, and that it allows Ca<sup>2+</sup> current when all four subunits are in either the O or the A state. We also assume that the more subunits in the A state, the greater the conductance. One simple way to express this is to write the open probability,  $P_o$ , as

$$P_o = (a_1 O + a_2 A)^4, \quad (7.31)$$

for some constants  $a_1$  and  $a_2$ . In the original model  $a_1 = 0.1$  and  $a_2 = 0.9$ , but these values can be changed without appreciably changing the fit or the model's behavior.

As a side issue, but an important one, note that the simple phrase “the parameters were determined by fitting to experimental data” covers a multitude of thorny problems. First, it is usually the case that not all the parameters in a model can be unambiguously determined from the available experimental data. This is certainly the case in the IPR model described above, for which, in fact, only a few of the parameters can be pinned down with any confidence. There is no way of getting around this unpleasant fact except either to simplify the model or to collect more experimental data of the appropriate type. Of course, determining which additional experimental data are needed is not a trivial problem.

Second, the process of determining the parameters from the data is itself complicated. Simple methods such as least-squares fits suffer from serious disadvantages, while more sophisticated methods such as Bayesian inference and Markov chain Monte Carlo can be more difficult to implement. A discussion of these issues is far beyond the scope of this text, and the interested reader is referred to Ball et al. (1999).

### 7.2.6 Simple Models of Calcium Dynamics

We now have constructed models of most of the fluxes that are important for the control of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . To put them together into a model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics is straightforward; simply choose your favorite model of the IPR (or RyR if appropriate), your favorite models of the ATPases and the influx, and put them all into (7.3) and (7.4).

To illustrate with a simple model, suppose there are only two fluxes, the IPR and SERCA fluxes, so that

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = (k_f P_O + J_{\text{er}})(c_e - c) - J_{\text{serca}}. \quad (7.32)$$

Since the only fluxes are between the ER and the cytoplasm, it follows that

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = -\gamma \frac{dc}{dt}, \quad (7.33)$$

so that  $c + \frac{c_e}{\gamma} = c_t$  is unchanging. Such a model is called a *closed-cell* model (Section 7.2.7). Next, we use a Hill function (Chapter 1) to model the SERCA pump, giving

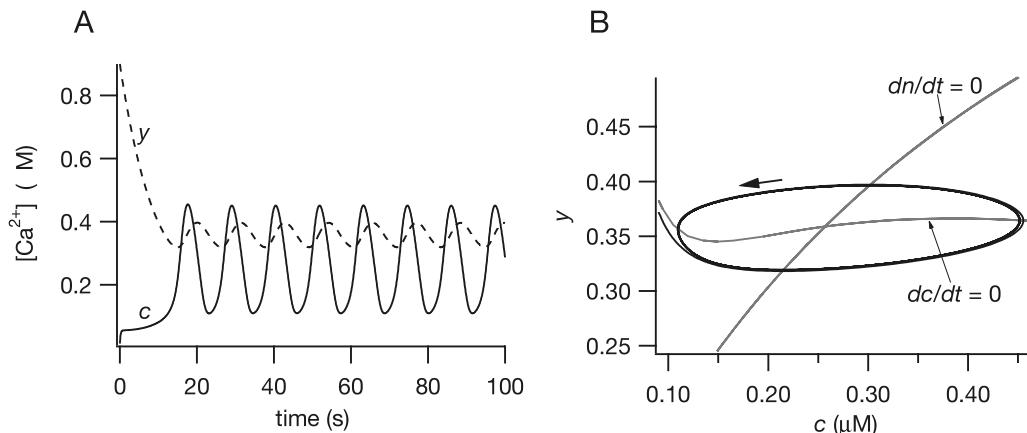
$$J_{\text{serca}} = \frac{V_p c^2}{K_p^2 + c^2}, \quad (7.34)$$

and to model the IPR we use the simplified version of the DeYoung–Keizer model (7.18),

$$P_O = \left( \frac{pc(1-y)}{(p+K_1)(c+K_5)} \right)^3, \quad (7.35)$$

where  $y$  satisfies (7.16).

Note that the flux through the IPR is assumed to be proportional to the concentration difference between the ER and the cytoplasm. This is appropriate only if there is



**Figure 7.11** Calcium oscillations in the simple model of  $Ca^{2+}$  dynamics described by (7.32)–(7.35) and (7.16). The parameters are given in Tables 7.3 and 7.1. A: a typical oscillation (for  $p = 0.5$ ). B: the phase portrait.

**Table 7.3** Parameter values of the simple model of  $Ca^{2+}$  dynamics described by (7.32)–(7.35) and (7.16). The parameter values for the IPR model are given in Table 7.1. The value of  $\gamma$  is based on experimental estimates of the relative volumes of the cytoplasm and the ER, while  $k_f$  is a scaling factor that controls the total amount of  $Ca^{2+}$  efflux through the IPR;  $k_f$  can be loosely interpreted as the product of the IPR density and the single channel current. Although  $J_{er}$  is based on estimations of the rate of  $Ca^{2+}$  leak from the ER at steady state, there are no reliable data for this parameter.

$V_p = 0.9 \mu M s^{-1}$	$K_p = 0.1 s$
$k_f = 1.11 s^{-1}$	$\gamma = 5.5$
$J_{er} = 0.02 s^{-1}$	$c_t = 2 \mu M$

no potential difference across the ER membrane. Even though  $Ca^{2+}$  carries a charge, the flow of  $Ca^{2+}$  does not induce a potential difference because there are counterions that flow freely, so that the electrical balance is not upset.

Because  $c_t$  is fixed, this simple model can be reduced to a two-variable model for which a phase portrait can be constructed. The numerical solution of this model with  $p = 0.5$  is shown in Fig. 7.11. The phase portrait is identical in structure to those of several two-variable excitable media models, such as the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations or the reduced Hodgkin–Huxley equations (Chapter 5). The nullcline for the inactivation variable  $y$  is a monotone increasing function of  $c$ , and the nullcline for  $c$  is an N-shaped function of  $c$  (although on this scale the N appears very shallow). There is a single intersection of the two nullclines. The stability of this fixed point is determined (roughly, but not precisely) by the branch of the  $c$ -nullcline on which it lies. On the leftmost branch, the fixed point is stable; on the middle branch it is unstable.

If the fixed point is unstable, there is a stable periodic limit cycle, corresponding to spontaneous  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations.

### A More Complex Example

A slightly more realistic model is as follows: If we

1. ignore RyR and mitochondrial fluxes,
2. use the saturating binding model of the IPR,
3. use a four-state Markov model for the SERCA pump, with the transport of a single  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion for each pump cycle,
4. use a Hill function for the plasma membrane pump, and
5. assume that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering is fast and linear (see Section 7.4),

then we get

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = (k_f P_O + J_{er}) (c_e - c) - J_{serca} + J_{in} - J_{pm}, \quad (7.36)$$

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = \gamma [J_{serca} - (k_f P_O + J_{er}) (c_e - c)], \quad (7.37)$$

where

$$J_{serca} = \frac{c - \alpha_1 c_e}{\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 c + \alpha_4 c_e + \alpha_5 c c_e}, \quad (7.38)$$

$$P_O = (0.1O + 0.9A)^4, \quad (7.39)$$

$$J_{pm} = \frac{V_p c^2}{K_p^2 + c^2}, \quad (7.40)$$

$$J_{er} = \text{constant}, \quad (7.41)$$

$$J_{in} = a_1 + a_2 p. \quad (7.42)$$

The constant  $J_{er}$  represents a constant leak from the ER that is necessary to balance the ATPase flux at steady state. Equations (7.36) and (7.37) are coupled to (7.26)–(7.30) which describe the IPR. We have used two different pump models here to emphasize the fact that it is possible to mix and match the individual models of the various fluxes. Since there are five parameters describing the SERCA ATPase, and only two parameters describing the plasma membrane ATPase, it is likely that the SERCA pump is overparameterized. If we were fitting the pump models to data this would be a concern, since the data may not contain sufficient information to determine all the parameters unambiguously. Here, however, we are content to use some function that can be justified by a mechanistic model and for which the parameters can be adjusted to give reasonable agreement with experimental data. The parameter values are given in Table 7.4.

Since  $p$  corresponds to the concentration of  $\text{IP}_3$ , and thus, indirectly, the agonist concentration, we describe the behavior of this model as  $p$  varies. The bifurcation diagram for this model is shown in Fig. 7.12A. As  $p$  increases, the steady-state  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration increases also (because  $J_{in}$  increases with  $p$ ), and oscillations occur for

**Table 7.4** Parameter values of the model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics (7.36)–(7.42).

$\alpha_1 = 10^{-4}$	$\alpha_2 = 0.007 \text{ s}$
$\alpha_3 = 0.06 \mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}$	$\alpha_4 = 0.0014 \mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}$
$\alpha_5 = 0.007 \mu\text{M}^{-2}\text{s}$	$J_{\text{er}} = 0.002 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$V_p = 2.8 \mu\text{Ms}^{-1}$	$K_p = 0.425 \mu\text{M}$
$a_1 = 0.003 \mu\text{Ms}^{-1}$	$a_2 = 0.02 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$k_f = 0.96 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\gamma = 5.4$

a range of intermediate values of  $p$ . Typical oscillations for two different values of  $p$  are shown in Fig. 7.12B and C. As  $p$  increases, the oscillation frequency increases.

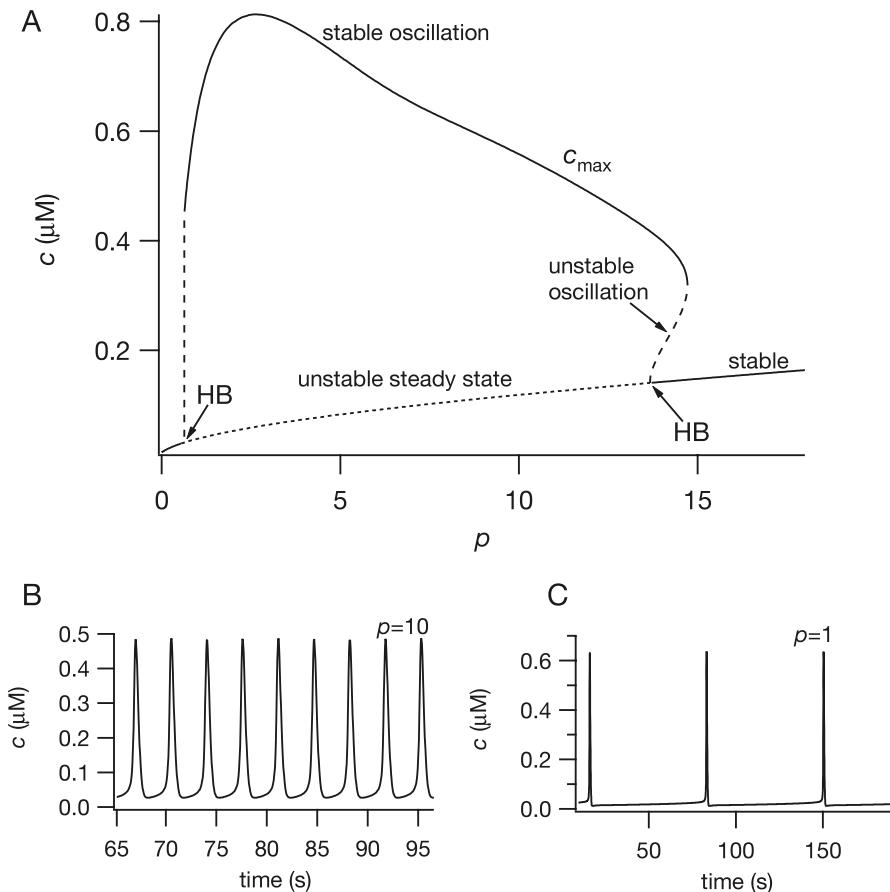
Given the variety of models of the IPR, the RyR, the ATPases, and the other fluxes involved in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, it is important to think about what a model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics can tell us. For example, by appropriate choice of IPR and ATPase models one can construct a whole-cell model that exhibits  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations of an enormous variety of shapes and sizes. The oscillations in Fig. 7.12 give a reasonably accurate description of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in pancreatic acinar cells (the cell type for which this model was originally designed); however, the parameters and the flux models could be adjusted, practically indefinitely, to obtain oscillations that mimic the behavior seen in other cell types. Hence, the simple fact that the model exhibits  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations with reasonable properties tells us very little about the underlying mechanisms. A great deal more work is needed before we can conclude anything about specific mechanisms in actual cells. This extra work is beyond the scope of this book; the interested reader is referred to the extensive literature on modeling  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, which can most easily be accessed through Falcke's 2004 review.

### 7.2.7 Open- and Closed-Cell Models

The period of a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillation is determined by a number of factors, including the dynamics of the IPR and RyR, the rate of formation and degradation of  $\text{IP}_3$  (see Section 7.2.8), the rate at which the ER refills after a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spike, and the rate of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport across the cell membrane. One good way to study these latter two effects is to rewrite the model in a slightly different form, one in which membrane  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  fluxes can readily be separated from ER fluxes. To do this, we introduce a new variable

$$c_t = c + \frac{c_e}{\gamma}. \quad (7.43)$$

This new variable  $c_t$  is the total number of moles of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the cell (including both the cytoplasm and the ER) divided by the cytosolic volume, and is thus a measure



**Figure 7.12** A: Simplified bifurcation diagram of the model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics (7.36)–(7.42). A solid line denotes stability, and a dashed line, instability. HB denotes a Hopf bifurcation. Although the branch of oscillations shown here appears to begin at the lower Hopf bifurcation point, such is not the case. The bifurcation diagram is much more complicated in that region and is not shown in full detail here. B and C: typical oscillations in the model for two different values of  $p$ .

of the total  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  content of the cell. Rewriting (7.36) and (7.37) in terms of  $c_t$  gives

$$\frac{dc_t}{dt} = \delta(J_{\text{in}} - J_{\text{pm}}), \quad (7.44)$$

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = \gamma[J_{\text{serca}} - (k_f P_O + J_{\text{er}})(c_e - (c_t - \gamma c_e))], \quad (7.45)$$

where, for convenience, we have introduced the scale factor  $\delta$  into the  $c_t$  equation. This scale factor makes it easier to modify the ratio of membrane transport to ER transport

without affecting anything else in the model. We could, of course, equally well have written the model in terms of  $c_t$  and  $c$ , rather than  $c_t$  and  $c_e$ .

If membrane fluxes are much smaller than ER fluxes,  $\delta$  is small. This is the case for a number of cell types. When  $\delta = 0$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  neither enters nor leaves the cell, and  $c_t$  remains constant. Such a model is called a *closed-cell* model, a simple example of which was discussed in Section 7.2.6. When  $\delta \neq 0$  we have an *open-cell* model, in which the total amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the cell can change over time.

In some cell types,  $c_t$  varies slowly enough that we can gain a reasonable understanding of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics by first understanding the behavior of the closed-cell model. If  $\delta$  is small enough, the behavior of the open-cell model is similar to that of the closed-cell model (since  $c_t$  remains almost constant over short time scales) but is slowly modulated as  $c_t$  slowly drifts toward its steady state. Such an analysis relies on the existence of two time scales; fast changes in  $c$  and  $c_e$  that are modulated by slow changes in  $c_t$ . This approach was first introduced by Rinzel (1985) to study a model of bursting oscillations in pancreatic  $\beta$ -cells, and is discussed in more detail in Chapter 9.

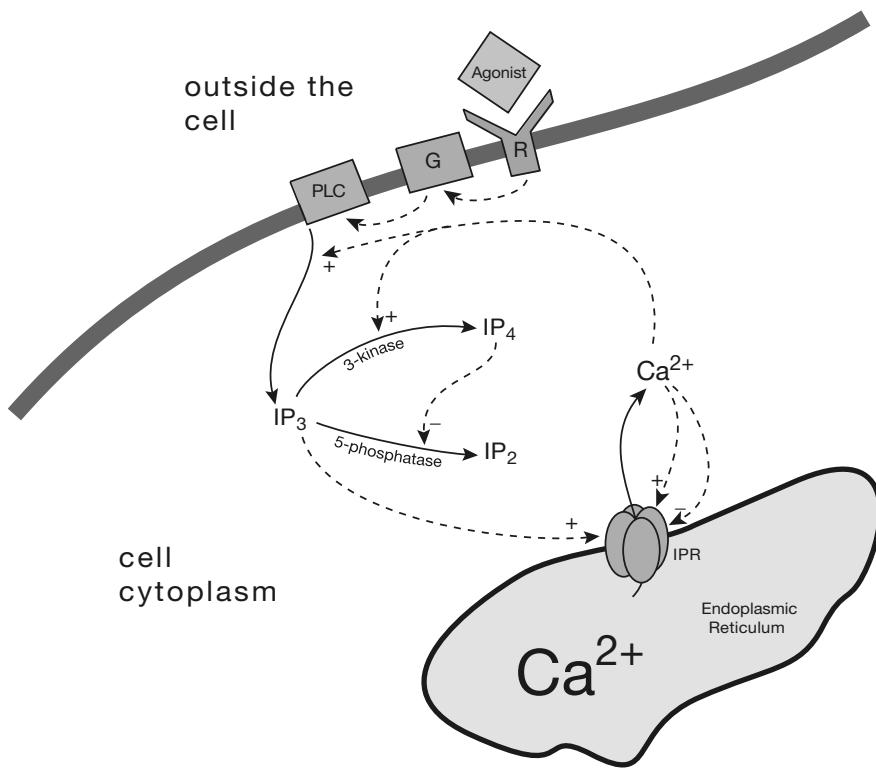
A particularly interesting use of this formulation arises from the ability to control both  $\delta$  and  $c_t$  experimentally (Sneyd et al., 2004b). Application of high concentrations of  $\text{La}^{3+}$  to the outside of a cell blocks both  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx and the plasma membrane ATPase, thus reducing  $\delta$  effectively to zero. Furthermore, preloading of cells with photoreleasable  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  allows the manipulation of  $c_t$  by flashing light. Thus, once  $\text{La}^{3+}$  has been applied,  $c_t$  can be viewed as a control parameter and increased at will (although, unfortunately, not so easily decreased) and the resultant cellular behavior observed. This allows for the detailed testing of model predictions.

## 7.2.8 $\text{IP}_3$ Dynamics

In the above models,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations occur at a constant concentration of  $\text{IP}_3$ . Thus, the role of  $\text{IP}_3$  is to activate the IPR; once the receptor is activated,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feedback takes over, and the period of oscillations is controlled by the kinetics of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feedback on the IPR as well as the interaction of the membrane and ER fluxes.

This is certainly an oversimplification. It is known that the rate of production of  $\text{IP}_3$  is dependent on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and that, in some cell types, oscillations in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  are accompanied by oscillations in  $[\text{IP}_3]$  (Hirose et al., 1999; Nash et al., 2001; Young et al., 2003). It is not yet clear whether oscillations in  $[\text{IP}_3]$  are *necessary* for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, since the former could merely be a passive follower of the latter. Experimental evidence is neither consistent nor conclusive.

There are a number of models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics that incorporate the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dependence of  $\text{IP}_3$  production and degradation. Early models were those of Meyer and Stryer (1988, 1991), Swillens and Mercan (1990), De Young and Keizer (1992), and Cuthbertson and Chay (1991); more recent models have been constructed by Shen and Larter (1995), Borghans et al. (1997), Dupont and Erneux (1997), Houart et al. (1999), and Politi et al. (2006).



**Figure 7.13** Schematic diagram of some of the interactions between  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{IP}_3$ . Calcium can activate PLC, leading to an increase in the rate of production of  $\text{IP}_3$ , and it can also increase the rate at which  $\text{IP}_3$  is phosphorylated by the 3-kinase. The end product of phosphorylation by the 3-kinase,  $\text{IP}_4$ , acts as a competitive inhibitor of dephosphorylation of  $\text{IP}_3$  by the 5-phosphatase. Not all of these feedbacks are significant in every cell type.

There are two principal ways in which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can influence the concentration of  $\text{IP}_3$ , and these are sketched in Fig. 7.13. First, activation of PLC by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is known to occur in many cell types; this forms the basis of the models of Meyer and Stryer (1988) and De Young and Keizer (1992). Second,  $\text{IP}_3$  is degraded in two principal ways, each of which is subject to feedback regulation; it is dephosphorylated by  $\text{IP}_3$  5-phosphatase to inositol 1,4-bisphosphate ( $\text{IP}_2$ ), or phosphorylated by  $\text{IP}_3$  3-kinase to inositol 1,3,4,5-tetrakisphosphate ( $\text{IP}_4$ ). However, since  $\text{IP}_4$  is also a substrate for the 5-phosphatase,  $\text{IP}_4$  acts as a competitive inhibitor of  $\text{IP}_3$  dephosphorylation. In addition,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (in the form of a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -calmodulin complex) can enhance the activity of the 3-kinase.

Intuitively, it seems clear that an intricate array of feedbacks such as this could easily give rise to interdependent oscillations in  $[\text{IP}_3]$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and the models mentioned above have confirmed that this intuitive expectation is correct. However, few of those models have been used to make predictions that were tested experimentally. Two notable exceptions are the models of Dupont et al. (2003) and of Politi et al. (2006).

In hepatocytes, oscillations of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{IP}_3$  occur together. Each  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spike causes an increase in the rate of phosphorylation of  $\text{IP}_3$ , and thus a decline in  $[\text{IP}_3]$ , with a consequent decline in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ . However, although both species oscillate, it is not clear that oscillations in  $[\text{IP}_3]$  are *necessary*. Dupont et al. first used a model (Dupont and Erneux, 1997) in which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influences the rate of the 3-kinase. This model predicted that, if the rate of the 5-phosphatase is increased by a factor of 25, and the rate of  $\text{IP}_3$  production also increased, oscillations with the same qualitative properties persist, with only a slight decrease in frequency. Under these conditions, little  $\text{IP}_3$  is degraded by the 3-kinase, and thus  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feedback on the 3-kinase cannot play a major role. In other words, these oscillations arise because of the feedback of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on the IPR.

Dupont et al. then devised an experimental test of this model prediction. They increased both the rate of the 5-phosphatase (by direct microinjection of the 5-phosphatase), and the rate of production of  $\text{IP}_3$  (by increasing the concentration of agonist), and observed that the oscillations remained essentially unchanged, with the predicted decrease in frequency. Thus, under conditions whereby the degradation of  $\text{IP}_3$  is principally through the 5-phosphatase pathway (in which case it is not directly affected by  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ ), there is little change in the properties of the oscillations. The conclusion is that, in hepatocytes, the oscillations are not a result of the interplay between  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  and the  $\text{IP}_3$  dynamics, but rather a result of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feedback on the IPR. This work illustrates an excellent interplay between modeling and experimentation.

Similar studies have been also been performed in CHO cells (Chinese hamster ovary cells, which are a cell line). Politi et al. constructed a model incorporating both positive and negative feedback of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on  $\text{IP}_3$ , and then tested the consequences of the addition of exogenous  $\text{IP}_3$  buffer. Their analysis is involved and subtle, too much so to be discussed here in detail. However, their conclusion was that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in CHO cells are a result of positive feedback of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on  $\text{IP}_3$  production.

It is possible that the response to an exogenous pulse of  $\text{IP}_3$  can be used to determine whether  $\text{IP}_3$  oscillations are a necessary accompaniment to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in any given cell type (Sneyd et al., 2006). If both  $\text{IP}_3$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  are dynamic variables, necessarily oscillating together, then a pulse in  $\text{IP}_3$  should perturb the solution off the stable limit cycle, leading to a delay before the oscillations resume. In other words, the phase response curve should exhibit a phase lag. (A phase advance, although theoretically possible, is rarely observed.) If the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations occur at a constant  $[\text{IP}_3]$ , then the pulse of  $\text{IP}_3$  temporarily increases the frequency of the oscillations. These predictions have been tested in two cells types; in pancreatic acinar cells, the  $\text{IP}_3$  pulse causes a delay before the next oscillation peak, while in airway smooth muscle cells, the  $\text{IP}_3$  pulse causes a temporary increase in oscillation frequency. The model thus predicts that in pancreatic acinar cells the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations are necessarily accompanied by  $\text{IP}_3$  oscillations, while in airway smooth muscle cells they occur for constant  $[\text{IP}_3]$ . However, since this approach yields inconclusive results in hepatocytes (Harootunian et al., 1988) and has not been applied widely to other cell types, it is not yet clear how useful it will prove to be.

### 7.2.9 Ryanodine Receptors

The second principal way in which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can be released from intracellular stores is through ryanodine receptors, which are found in a variety of cells, including cardiac cells, smooth muscle, skeletal muscle, chromaffin cells, pituitary cells, neurons, and sea urchin eggs. Ryanodine receptors share many structural and functional similarities with  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors, particularly in their sensitivity to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Just as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can activate  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors and increase the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flux, so too can  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  trigger  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release (CICR) from the sarcoplasmic or endoplasmic reticulum through ryanodine receptors (Endo et al., 1970; Fabiato, 1983). Calcium can also inactivate ryanodine receptors *in vitro*, although it is unknown whether such inactivation plays any important physiological role, or even occurs to any significant extent *in vivo*.

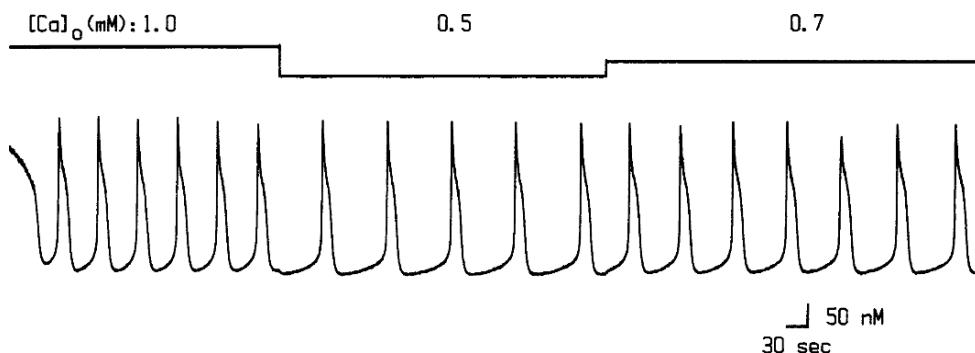
Ryanodine receptors are so named because of their sensitivity to ryanodine, which decreases the open probability of the channel. On the other hand, caffeine increases the open probability of ryanodine receptors.

There are many models of the ryanodine receptor but since they are mostly adapted for use in models of excitation–contraction coupling, we discuss them in Section 12.2.4. Here we discuss one of the few models that has been developed for use in other cell types.

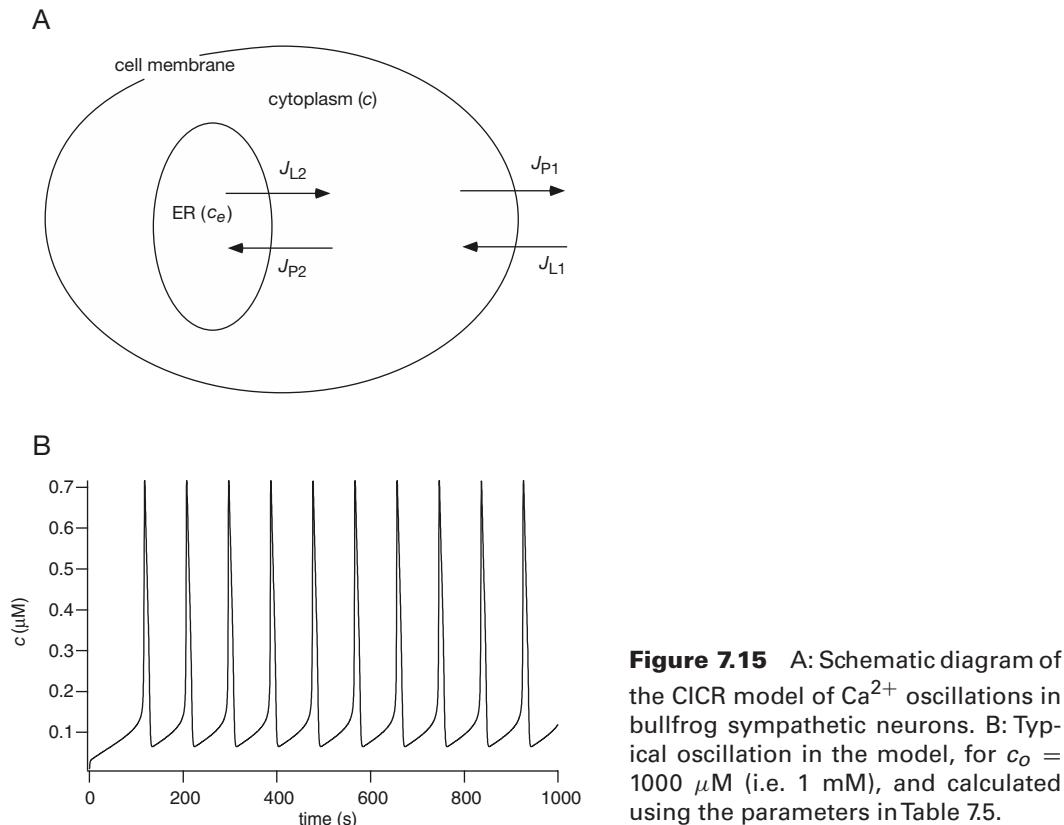
#### Calcium Oscillations in Bullfrog Sympathetic Neurons

Sympathetic neurons respond to caffeine, or mild depolarization, with robust and reproducible  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations. Although these oscillations are dependent on external  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , they occur at a fixed membrane potential and involve the release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ER via ryanodine receptors, as is indicated by the fact that they are abolished by ryanodine. Typical oscillations are shown in Fig. 7.14.

A simple model of CICR (Friel, 1995) provides an excellent quantitative description of the behavior of these oscillations in the bullfrog sympathetic neuron. Despite the



**Figure 7.14** Caffeine-induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in sympathetic neurons, and their dependence on the extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration.  $[\text{Ca}]_o$  stands for  $c_o$ . (Friel, 1995, Fig. 5a.)



**Figure 7.15** A: Schematic diagram of the CICR model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in bullfrog sympathetic neurons. B: Typical oscillation in the model, for  $c_o = 1000 \mu\text{M}$  (i.e. 1 mM), and calculated using the parameters in Table 7.5.

model's simplicity (or perhaps because of it), it is a superb example of how theory can supplement experiment, providing an interpretation of experimental results as well as quantitative predictions that can subsequently be tested.

A schematic diagram of the model is given in Fig. 7.15A. A single intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  store exchanges  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  with the cytoplasm (with fluxes  $J_{L2}$  and  $J_{P2}$ ), which in turn exchanges  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  with the external medium ( $J_{L1}$  and  $J_{P1}$ ). Thus,

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = J_{L1} - J_{P1} + J_{L2} - J_{P2}, \quad (7.46)$$

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = \gamma(-J_{L2} + J_{P2}), \quad (7.47)$$

where  $c$  denotes  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  in the cytoplasm and  $c_e$  denotes  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  in the intracellular store as before. As before,  $\gamma$  is the ratio of the cytosolic volume to the ER volume. The fluxes are chosen in a simple way, as linear functions of the concentrations:

$$J_{L1} = k_1(c_o - c), \quad \text{Ca}^{2+}\text{entry}, \quad (7.48)$$

$$J_{P1} = k_2c, \quad \text{Ca}^{2+}\text{extrusion}, \quad (7.49)$$

**Table 7.5** Typical parameters of the model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in sympathetic neurons.

$k_1 = 2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\kappa_2 = 0.58 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$k_2 = 0.13 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$K_d = 0.5 \mu\text{M}$
$k_4 = 0.9 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$n = 3$
$\kappa_1 = 0.013 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\gamma = 4.17$

$$J_{L2} = k_3(c_e - c), \quad \text{Ca}^{2+}\text{release}, \quad (7.50)$$

$$J_{P2} = k_4c, \quad \text{Ca}^{2+}\text{uptake}, \quad (7.51)$$

where  $c_o$  denotes the external  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ , which is assumed to be fixed. (In the experiment shown in Fig. 7.14,  $c_o$  was fixed at 1, 0.5, and 0.7 mM.) Depolarization induced by the application of high external  $\text{K}^+$  is modeled as an increase in  $k_1$ , the rate of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry from the outside, while the application of caffeine (which increases the rate of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the internal store) is modeled by an increase in  $k_3$ .

We model CICR in a simple way by making  $k_3$  an increasing sigmoidal function of  $c$ , i.e.,

$$k_3 = \kappa_1 + \frac{\kappa_2 c^n}{K_d^n + c^n}, \quad (7.52)$$

and then determine the parameters of the nonlinear model by fitting to the time course of an oscillation (Table 7.5). A typical result is shown in Fig. 7.15.

Not only does this model provide an excellent quantitative description of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillation (with a different parameter set from that shown in Table 7.5), it also predicts the fluxes that should be observed over the oscillatory cycle. Subsequent measurement of these fluxes confirmed the model predictions. It therefore appears that CICR (at least in bullfrog sympathetic neurons) can be well described by a relatively simple model. It is necessary only for the ryanodine receptors to be activated by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to generate physiological oscillations; inactivation by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is not necessary.

## 7.3 Calcium Waves

In some cell types,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations occur practically uniformly across the cell. In such a situation, measurement of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration at any point of the cell gives the same time course, and a well-mixed model is appropriate. More often, however, each oscillation takes the form of a wave moving across the cell; these intracellular “oscillations” are actually periodic intracellular waves. To model and understand such spatially distributed behavior, inclusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion is necessary. Furthermore, to study objects such as spiral waves of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (Fig. 7.3), partial differential equation models are again necessary.

When attempting to model spatially distributed  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, it is tempting to generalize the whole-cell model by simply adding a diffusion term to (7.3). However, with a little reflection, one realizes that this cannot be correct for several reasons. First, most of the flux terms represent movement of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  across a boundary, whether the plasma membrane, the ER, or mitochondria; the only exceptions are the fluxes on and off the buffers. Second, since the cytoplasmic space is highly inhomogeneous, it is not clear that movement of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in this space is governed by a standard diffusive process.

A more proper formulation of the model would be to assume that the cell is a three-dimensional structure comprised of two interconnected domains, the cytoplasm  $\Omega_c$ , and the ER  $\Omega_e$  (ignoring all other subdomains, such as mitochondria, Golgi apparatus, etc, to make the problem simpler). In the cytoplasm and the ER,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is assumed to move by normal diffusion and to react with buffers. Thus,

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D_c \nabla c) - J_{\text{on}} + J_{\text{off}}, \quad \text{in } \Omega_c, \quad (7.53)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial c_e}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D_e \nabla c_e) - J_{\text{on},e} + J_{\text{off},e}, \quad \text{in } \Omega_e. \quad (7.54)$$

Fluxes across the plasma membrane into the cytoplasm lead to the boundary condition

$$D_c \nabla c \cdot \mathbf{n} = J_{\text{in}} - J_{\text{pm}}, \quad \text{on } \partial \Omega_{c,m}, \quad (7.55)$$

while fluxes across the ER into the cytoplasm yield

$$D_c \nabla c \cdot \mathbf{n} = -D_e \nabla c_e \cdot \mathbf{n} = J_{\text{IPR}} + J_{\text{RyR}} - J_{\text{serca}}, \quad \text{on } \partial \Omega_e, \quad (7.56)$$

where  $\partial \Omega_{c,m}$  is the cell membrane,  $\partial \Omega_e$  is the boundary of the ER, and  $\mathbf{n}$  is the unit outward normal vector to the domain in question. Notice that here we have assumed that there is no direct communication between the ER and extracellular space (although this assumption, as with almost everything in biology, is not without controversy).

Because of the intricate geometry of the ER, it is immediately obvious that these models are far too complicated to make any progress at all, so some simplifying assumptions are needed. This is where homogenization comes to the rescue. The fundamental idea is that since diffusion is rapid over short distances, local variations are smoothed out quickly and it is only necessary to know the average, or mean field, behavior. Thus, one derives mean field equations that describe the behavior over larger space scales. In these descriptions, concentrations  $c$  and  $c_e$  are assumed to coexist at every point in space, and one finds (see Appendix 7.8)

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D_c^{\text{eff}} \nabla c) + \chi_c (J_{\text{IPR}} + J_{\text{RyR}} - J_{\text{serca}}) - J_{\text{on}} + J_{\text{off}}, \quad (7.57)$$

$$\frac{\partial c_e}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D_e^{\text{eff}} \nabla c_e) - \chi_e (J_{\text{IPR}} + J_{\text{RyR}} - J_{\text{serca}}) - J_{\text{on},e} + J_{\text{off},e}, \quad (7.58)$$

where  $D_c^{\text{eff}}$  and  $D_e^{\text{eff}}$  are effective diffusion coefficients for the cytoplasmic space and the ER, respectively, and  $\chi_c$  and  $\chi_e$  are the surface-to-volume ratios of these two comingled spaces. It is usually assumed that the cellular cytoplasm is isotropic and homogeneous. Exceptions to the assumption of homogeneity are not uncommon, but exceptions to the isotropic assumption are rare. It is not known, however, how  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffuses in the ER, or the extent to which the tortuosity of the ER plays a role in determining the effective diffusion coefficient of ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . It is typical to assume either that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  does not diffuse in the ER, or that it does so with a restricted diffusion coefficient,  $D_e^{\text{eff}} \ll D_c^{\text{eff}}$ . Henceforth we delete the superscript eff.

The surface-to-volume ratios are necessary to get the units correct. In fact, one should notice that a flux term, for example  $J_{\text{IPR}}$ , in a whole-cell model is not the same as in a spatially distributed model; in a whole-cell model the flux must be in units of concentration per unit time, while in a spatially distributed model the flux must be in units of moles per unit time per surface area. Multiplication by a surface-to-volume ratio changes the units to number of moles per volume per unit time. However, it is typical to scale all fluxes to be in units of moles per unit time per cytoplasmic volume, in which case (7.57) and (7.57) become (after rescaling)

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D_c \nabla c) + J_{\text{IPR}} + J_{\text{RyR}} - J_{\text{serca}} - J_{\text{on}} + J_{\text{off}} \quad (7.59)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial c_e}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D_e \nabla c_e) - \gamma (J_{\text{IPR}} + J_{\text{RyR}} - J_{\text{serca}}) - J_{\text{on},e} + J_{\text{off},e}, \quad (7.60)$$

where  $\gamma$  is the ratio of cytoplasmic to ER volumes.

Additional approximations can be made when one dimension of the cell is very much smaller than the diffusion length scale of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . For instance, many cultured cells are relatively thin, in which case spatial variation in the direction of the cell thickness can be ignored. However, to derive the correct model equations requires a little care, as is discussed in detail in Appendix 7.8.

Consider, for example, a long, thin cylindrical cell, with boundary fluxes (on the cylindrical wall)  $J_{\text{in}}$  and  $J_{\text{pm}}$ , in units of moles per surface area per time. If the cell radius is small compared to the diffusion length scale of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , then  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is homogeneously distributed in each cross-section, with the fluxes across the (cylindrical) wall included as source terms in the governing partial differential equation. In this case, we can model the cell as a one-dimensional object. For example, for a “one-dimensional” cell of length  $L$  with no  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flux at the ends, the boundary conditions are  $\frac{\partial c}{\partial x} = 0$  at  $x = L$  and  $x = 0$ , while at each internal point we have

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} + J_{\text{IPR}} + \frac{\rho}{A} (J_{\text{in}} - J_{\text{pm}}) + J_{\text{RyR}} - J_{\text{serca}} - J_{\text{on}} + J_{\text{off}}, \quad (7.61)$$

where  $\rho$  is the cell circumference and  $A$  is the cell cross-sectional area. Note that the original boundary fluxes, with units of moles per surface area per time, have been

converted to fluxes with units of moles per length per time, which are appropriate for a one-dimensional model.

There are a number of ways to study reaction-diffusion models of this type, but the two most common (at least in the study of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves) are numerical simulation or bifurcation analysis of the traveling wave equations.

### 7.3.1 Simulation of Spiral Waves in *Xenopus*

One common experimental procedure for initiating waves in *Xenopus* oocytes is to photorelease a bolus of  $\text{IP}_3$  inside the cell and observe the subsequent  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  activity (Lechleiter and Clapham, 1992). After sufficient time,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave activity disappears as  $\text{IP}_3$  is degraded, but in the short term, the observed  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  activity is the result of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion and  $\text{IP}_3$  diffusion. Another technique is to release  $\text{IP}_3\text{S}_3$ , a nonhydrolyzable analogue of  $\text{IP}_3$ , which has a similar effect on  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors but is not degraded by the cell. In this case, after sufficient time has passed, the  $\text{IP}_3\text{S}_3$  is at a constant concentration in all parts of the cell.

When a bolus of  $\text{IP}_3\text{S}_3$  is released in the middle of the domain, it causes the release of a large amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  at the site of the bolus. The  $\text{IP}_3\text{S}_3$  then diffuses across the cell, releasing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the process. Activation of  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors by the released  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can lead to periodic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the stores, and the diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  between  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors serves to stabilize the waves, giving regular periodic traveling waves. These periodic waves are the spatial analogues of the oscillations seen in the temporal model, and arise from the underlying oscillatory kinetics. If the steady  $[\text{IP}_3\text{S}_3]$  is in the appropriate range (see, for example, Fig. 7.12, which shows that limit cycles exist for  $[\text{IP}_3]$  in some intermediate range) over the entire cell, every part of the cell cytoplasm is in an oscillatory state. It follows from the standard theory of reaction-diffusion systems with oscillatory kinetics (see, for example, Kopell and Howard, 1973; Duffy et al., 1980; Neu, 1979; Murray, 2002) that periodic and spiral waves can exist for these values of  $[\text{IP}_3\text{S}_3]$ . When  $\text{IP}_3$ , rather than  $\text{IP}_3\text{S}_3$ , is released, the wave activity lasts for only a short time, which is consistent with the theoretical results. When the wave front is broken, a spiral wave of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  often forms (Fig. 7.3A). These results have all been reproduced by numerical simulation; although Atri et al. (1993) were the first to do so, most models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves behave in the same qualitative fashion. Depending on the initial conditions, these spiral waves can be stable or unstable. In the unstable case, the branches of the spiral can intersect themselves and cause breakup of the spiral, in which case a region of complex patterning emerges in which there is no clear spatial structure (McKenzie and Sneyd, 1998).

A more detailed understanding of the stability of spiral  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves has been developed by Falcke et al. (1999, 2000), who showed that an increased rate of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the mitochondria can dramatically change the kinds of waves observed, and that, in extreme cases, the cytoplasm can be made bistable, with an additional steady state with a high resting  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ . When this happens, the spiral waves become unstable, resulting in the emergence of more complex spatiotemporal patterns.

### 7.3.2 Traveling Wave Equations and Bifurcation Analysis

The second principal way in which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves are studied is via the traveling wave equations. This is most useful for the study of waves in one spatial dimension. If we introduce the traveling wave variable  $\xi = x + st$ , where  $s$  is the wave speed (see Chapter 6, Section 6.2), we can write (7.61) as the pair of equations

$$c' = d, \quad (7.62)$$

$$D_c d' = sd - \sum J, \quad (7.63)$$

where  $\sum J$  denotes all the fluxes on the right-hand side of (7.61), and where a prime denotes differentiation with respect to  $\xi$ . Thus, a single reaction–diffusion equation is converted to two ordinary differential equations. In general, these two equations are coupled to the other equations for  $c_e$ ,  $p$ , and the states of the various receptors.

Traveling pulses, traveling fronts, and periodic waves correspond to, respectively, homoclinic orbits, heteroclinic orbits, and limit cycles of the traveling wave equations. Thus, by studying the bifurcations of the traveling wave equations we can gain considerable insight into what kinds of waves exist in the model, and for which parameter values. However, such an approach does not give information about the *stability* of the wave solutions of the original reaction–diffusion equations. Stability is much more difficult to determine. Numerical simulation of the reaction–diffusion equations can begin to address the question of stability.

Here we briefly illustrate the method using the model of Section 7.2.6. Adding diffusion of  $c$  (but not of  $c_e$ ) to that model gives

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} + (k_f P_O + J_{er}) (c_e - c) - J_{serca} + J_{in} - J_{pm}, \quad (7.64)$$

$$\frac{\partial c_e}{\partial t} = \gamma [J_{serca} - (k_f P_O + J_{er}) (c_e - c)], \quad (7.65)$$

and these two equations are coupled, as before, to the five equations of the six-state IPR model (Section 7.2.5). (Here,  $J_{in}$  and  $J_{pm}$  are scaled to be in units of flux per unit cellular length.) Rewriting these equations in the traveling wave variable gives

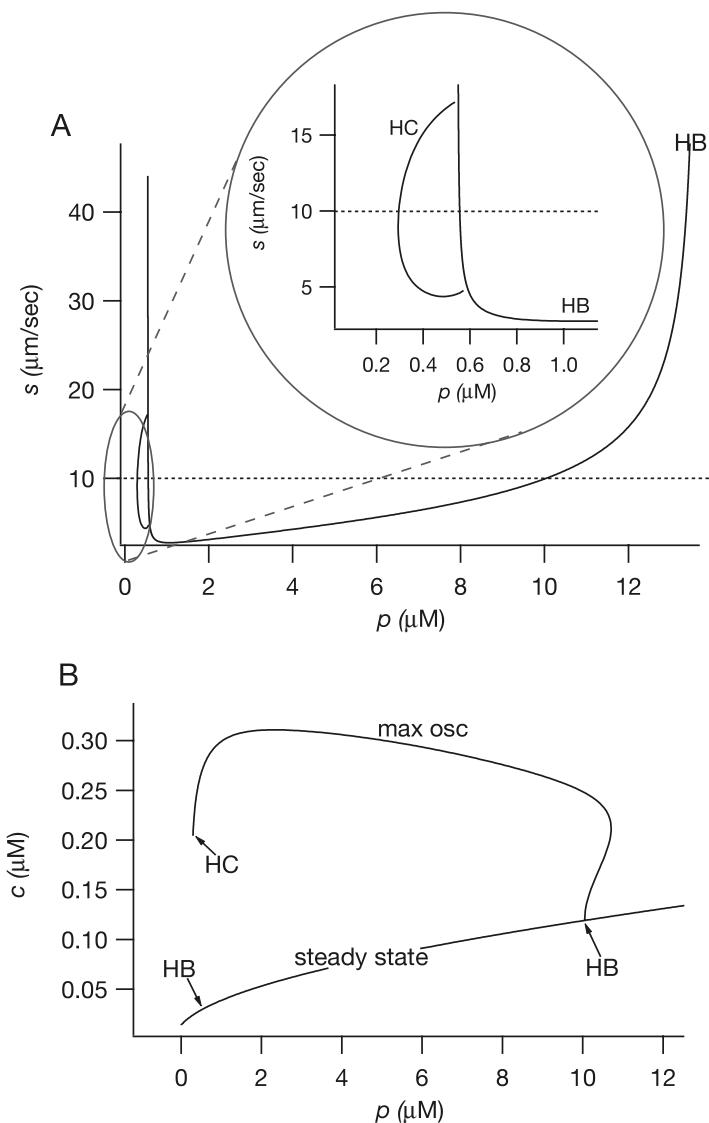
$$c' = d, \quad (7.66)$$

$$D_c d' = sd - (k_f P_O + J_{er}) (c_e - c) + J_{serca} - J_{in} + J_{pm}, \quad (7.67)$$

$$sc'_e = \gamma [J_{serca} - (k_f P_O + J_{er}) (c_e - c)], \quad (7.68)$$

coupled to the five receptor equations. Note that, given the units of the parameters in Table 7.4, the natural units for the speed  $s$  are  $\mu\text{m s}^{-1}$ .

The result of a two-parameter numerical bifurcation analysis of these equations (using AUTO), with  $s$  and  $p$  as the bifurcation parameters, is shown in Fig. 7.16. The behavior as  $s \rightarrow \infty$  is that of the model in the absence of diffusion, as expected from the general theory (Maginu, 1985). Thus, for large values of  $s$ , the behavior mirrors that seen in Fig. 7.12; there are two Hopf bifurcations, with a branch of periodic solutions for



**Figure 7.16** A: Two-parameter bifurcation diagram of the traveling wave equations of the model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave propagation. HC — homoclinic bifurcation; HB — Hopf bifurcation. The inset shows a blowup of the branch of homoclinic bifurcations. B: bifurcation diagram obtained by taking a cross-section at  $s = 10 \mu\text{ms}^{-1}$ , as shown by the dotted line in panel A. Both panels were computed using the parameter values in Table 7.4, and using  $D_c = 25 \mu\text{m}^2\text{s}^{-1}$ .

intermediate values of  $p$ . If we track these Hopf bifurcations in the  $s, p$  plane they form a U-shaped curve (Fig. 7.16A). To find homoclinic bifurcations corresponding to traveling waves, we take a cross-section of this diagram for a constant value of  $s = 10 \mu\text{m s}^{-1}$ , i.e., for that value of  $s$  we plot the bifurcation diagram of  $c$  against  $p$  (as in Fig. 7.12).

The result is shown in Fig. 7.16B. The two Hopf bifurcation points correspond to where the U-shaped curve in panel A intersects the dotted line at  $s = 10 \mu\text{m s}^{-1}$ . Tracking the branch of periodic orbits that emerges from the rightmost Hopf bifurcation gives a branch that ends in a homoclinic orbit. Tracking this homoclinic orbit in the  $s, p$  plane gives the C-shaped curve of homoclinics shown in the inset to panel A. More precisely, only branches of large period (10,000 seconds in this case) can be tracked, so the curve labeled HC in panel A is actually a branch of large-period orbits. However, tracking the branch of orbits of period 1,000 seconds or of period 30,000 seconds gives a nearly identical numerical result, so we can be relatively confident that we are tracking a homoclinic orbit.

This branch of homoclinic orbits is the one that gives stable traveling wave solutions of the original reaction-diffusion equation (i.e., of the partial differential equation). This is easily checked numerically by direct simulation; with  $p = 0.5$  fixed, and following a large  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stimulus at one end of the (one-dimensional) domain, the wave that results travels at approximately speed  $15 \mu\text{m s}^{-1}$  (consistent with Fig. 7.16A), and has the same shape as the homoclinic orbit on that C-shaped branch.

The branch of homoclinic orbits predicts traveling waves with speeds of around  $10\text{--}17 \mu\text{m s}^{-1}$ , within the physiological range. Furthermore, as  $p$  increases, so does the wave speed, consistent with what has been observed experimentally. The ends of the C-shaped homoclinic branch are physiologically important, since the upper branch corresponds to the waves that would be observed as  $p$  is slowly increased. At some point there is a transition from single traveling pulses to periodic waves, but exactly how that transition occurs is not completely understood (Champneys et al., 2007).

The basic structure of the bifurcation diagram shown in Fig. 7.16, with a C-shaped branch of homoclinic orbits and a U-shaped branch of Hopf bifurcations, seems to be generic to models of excitable systems. The FitzHugh–Nagumo equations have the same basic structure, as do the Hodgkin–Huxley equations. All models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave propagation (at least all the ones for which this question has been studied) also have the same basic C-U structure in the  $s, p$  plane.

## 7.4 Calcium Buffering

Calcium is heavily buffered in all cells, with at least 99% (and often more) of the available  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound to large  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -binding proteins, of which there are about 200 encoded by the human genome (Carafoli et al., 2001). For example, calsequestrin and calreticulin are major  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers in the endoplasmic and sarcoplasmic reticula, while in the cytoplasm  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is bound to calbindin, calretinin, and parvalbumin, among many others. Calcium pumps and exchangers and the plasma membrane itself are also major  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers. In essence, a free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion in solution in the cytoplasm cannot do much, or go far, before it is bound to something.

The basic chemical reaction for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering can be represented by the reaction



where  $\text{P}$  is the buffering protein and  $\text{B}$  is buffered  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Letting  $b$  denote the concentration of buffer with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound, and  $c$  the concentration of free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , a simple model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering is

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \nabla^2 c + f(c) + k_- b - k_+ c(b_t - b), \quad (7.70)$$

$$\frac{\partial b}{\partial t} = D_b \nabla^2 b - k_- b + k_+ c(b_t - b), \quad (7.71)$$

where  $k_-$  is the rate of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the buffer,  $k_+$  is the rate of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  uptake by the buffer,  $b_t$  is the total buffer concentration, and  $f(c)$  denotes all the other reactions involving free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (release from the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors, reuptake by pumps, etc.).

### 7.4.1 Fast Buffers or Excess Buffers

If the buffer has fast kinetics, its effect on the intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics can be analyzed simply (Section 2.2.5). If  $k_-$  and  $k_+$  are large compared to the time constant of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reaction, we take  $b$  to be in the quasi-steady state

$$k_- b - k_+ c(b_t - b) = 0, \quad (7.72)$$

and so

$$b = \frac{b_t c}{K + c}, \quad (7.73)$$

where  $K = k_-/k_+$ . Adding (7.70) and (7.71), we find the “slow” equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(c + b) = D_c \nabla^2 c + D_b \nabla^2 b + f(c), \quad (7.74)$$

which, after using (7.73) to eliminate  $b$ , becomes

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{1 + \theta(c)} \left( \nabla^2 \left( D_c c + D_b b_t \frac{c}{K + c} \right) + f(c) \right) \quad (7.75)$$

$$= \frac{D_c + D_b \theta(c)}{1 + \theta(c)} \nabla^2 c - \frac{2D_b \theta(c)}{(K + c)(1 + \theta(c))} |\nabla c|^2 + \frac{f(c)}{1 + \theta(c)}, \quad (7.76)$$

where

$$\theta(c) = \frac{b_t K}{(K + c)^2}. \quad (7.77)$$

Note that we assume that  $b_t$  is a constant, and does not vary in either space or time.

Nonlinear buffering changes the model significantly. In particular,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  obeys a nonlinear diffusion–advection equation, where the advection is the result of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$

transport by a mobile buffer (Wagner and Keizer, 1994). The effective diffusion coefficient

$$D_{\text{eff}} = \frac{D_c + D_b\theta(c)}{1 + \theta(c)} \quad (7.78)$$

is a convex linear combination of the two diffusion coefficients  $D_c$  and  $D_b$ , so lies somewhere between the two. Since buffers are large molecules,  $D_{\text{eff}} < D_c$ . If the buffer is not mobile, i.e.,  $D_b = 0$ , then (7.76) reverts to a reaction-diffusion equation. Also, when  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  gradients are small, the nonlinear advective term can be ignored (Irving et al., 1990). Finally, the buffering also affects the qualitative nature of the nonlinear reaction term,  $f(c)$ , which is divided by  $1 + \theta(c)$ . This may change many properties of the model, including oscillatory behavior and the nature of wave propagation.

If the buffer is not only fast, but also of low affinity, so that  $K \gg c$ , it follows that

$$b = \frac{b_t c}{K}, \quad (7.79)$$

in which case

$$\theta = \frac{b_t}{K}, \quad (7.80)$$

a constant. Thus,  $D_{\text{eff}}$  is constant also.

It is commonly assumed that the buffer has fast kinetics, is immobile, and has a low affinity. With these assumptions we get the simplest possible model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers (short of not including them at all), in which

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = \frac{K}{K + b_t} (D_c \nabla^2 c + f(c)), \quad (7.81)$$

wherein both the diffusion coefficient and the fluxes are scaled by the constant factor  $K/(K + b_t)$ ; each flux in the model can then be interpreted as an *effective* flux, i.e., that fraction of the flux that contributes to a change in free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration.

In 1986, Neher observed that if the buffer is present in large excess then  $b_t - b \approx b_t$ , in which case the buffering reaction becomes linear, the so-called *excess buffering approximation*:

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \nabla^2 c + f(c) + k_- b - k_+ c b_t, \quad (7.82)$$

$$\frac{\partial b}{\partial t} = D_b \nabla^2 b - k_- b + k_+ c b_t. \quad (7.83)$$

If we now assume the buffers are fast we recover (7.79) and thus (7.81). In other words, the simple approach to buffering given in (7.81) can be obtained in two ways; either by assuming a low affinity buffer or by assuming that the buffer is present in excess. It is intuitively clear why these two approximations lead to the same result—in either case the binding of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  does little to change the fraction of unbound buffer.

Typical parameter values for three different buffers are given in Table 7.6. BAPTA is a fast high-affinity buffer, and EGTA is a slow high-affinity buffer, both of which

**Table 7.6** Typical parameter values for three different buffers, taken from Smith et al., (2001). BAPTA and EGTA are commonly used as exogenous buffers in experimental work, while Endog refers to a typical endogenous buffer. Typically  $b_t = 100 \mu\text{M}$  for an endogenous buffer.

Buffer	$D_b$ $\mu\text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$	$k_+$ $\mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$	$k_-$ $\text{s}^{-1}$	$K$ $\mu\text{M}$
BAPTA	95	600	100	0.17
EGTA	113	1.5	0.3	0.2
Endog	15	50	500	10

are used as exogenous  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers in experimental work. Parameters for a typical endogenous buffer are also included.

Many studies of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering have addressed the problem of the steady-state  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  distribution that arises from the flux of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  through a single open channel (Naraghi and Neher, 1997; Stern, 1992; Smith, 1996; Smith et al., 1996, 2001; Falcke, 2003b). Such studies are motivated by the fact that, when a channel opens, the steady-state  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  distribution close to the opening of the channel is reached within microseconds. In that context, Smith et al. (2001) derived both the rapid buffering approximation and the excess buffering approximation as asymptotic solutions of the original equations.

Despite the complexity of (7.76), it retains the advantage of being a single equation. However, if the buffer kinetics are not fast relative to the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  kinetics, the only way to proceed is with numerical simulations of the complete system, a procedure followed by a number of groups (Backx et al., 1989; Sala and Hernández-Cruz, 1990; Nowycky and Pinter, 1993; Falcke, 2003a).

Of particular current interest are recent observations that buffers with different kinetics have remarkably different effects on the observed  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  responses. For example, Dargan and Parker (2003) have shown that in oocytes, the addition of EGTA, a slow buffer with high affinity, “balkanizes” the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  response so that local regions tend to respond independently of their neighbors. However, the addition of BAPTA, a fast buffer, has quite different effects, giving slower  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  responses that occur globally rather than locally. These results are possibly the result of the different effects that these two buffers have on the diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  between individual release sites (see Section 7.6). Similar studies in pancreatic acinar cells (Kidd et al., 1999) have shown that the addition of EGTA increases the frequency, but decreases the amplitude, of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spikes, while addition of BAPTA has the opposite effect, decreasing the frequency but maintaining a larger spike amplitude. Furthermore, EGTA broke the response into a number of independent spatially separate release events, as in oocytes. Kidd et al. concluded that EGTA disrupts long-range  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion between release sites, thus decreasing the global coordination of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, while BAPTA is fast enough to disrupt  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  inactivation of the IPR, thus leading to large  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spikes with a lower frequency. However, no detailed modeling studies have yet confirmed these qualitative explanations.

## 7.4.2 The Existence of Buffered Waves

Since the presence of fast  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers changes the nature of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport equation, it is of considerable interest to determine how  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering affects the properties of waves. For example, can the addition of a buffer eliminate wave activity? How much do buffers affect the speed of traveling waves? Does the addition of exogenous buffer, such as a fluorescent  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dye, affect the existence or the speed of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves?

Tsai and his colleagues (Tsai and Sneyd, 2005, 2007a,b; Guo and Tsai, 2006) have done a great deal of work on these questions, and their results can be summarized simply: immobile buffers have no effect on the existence, stability, or uniqueness of traveling waves in the buffered bistable equation, while mobile buffers can eliminate traveling waves when present in sufficient quantity. However, when waves exist in the presence of mobile buffers, they remain unique and stable.

The proofs of these results are too technical to present here. Instead, we discuss some of the simpler results from earlier work (Sneyd et al., 1998). First, we address the question of whether buffers can eliminate wave activity.

The form of (7.75) suggests the change of variables

$$w = D_c c + D_b b_t \frac{c}{K + c}, \quad (7.84)$$

so that  $w$  is a monotone increasing function of  $c$ , since

$$\frac{dw}{dc} = D_c + D_b \theta(c) \quad (7.85)$$

is positive. The unique inverse of this function is denoted by

$$c = \phi(w). \quad (7.86)$$

In terms of  $w$ , (7.75) becomes

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = \frac{D_c + D_b \Theta}{1 + \Theta} \left( \nabla^2 w + f(\phi(w)) \right), \quad (7.87)$$

where  $\Theta = \frac{b_t K}{(K + \phi(w))^2}$ .

Now we assume that  $f(c)$  is of bistable form, with three zeros,  $C_1 < C_2 < C_3$ , of which  $C_1$  and  $C_3$  are stable. It immediately follows that  $f(\phi(w))$  has three zeros  $W_1 < W_2 < W_3$ , with  $W_1$  and  $W_3$  stable. The proof of existence of a one-dimensional traveling wave solution for (7.87) uses exactly the same arguments as those for the bistable equation presented in Chapter 6 (Sneyd et al., 1998). It follows that a traveling wave solution that provides a transition from  $W_1$  to  $W_3$  exists if and only if

$$\int_{W_1}^{W_3} f(\phi(w)) dw > 0. \quad (7.88)$$

(If this inequality is reversed, a traveling wave solution still exists, but it moves “backward”, providing a transition from  $W_3$  to  $W_1$ .) Using (7.85), we write this condition in

terms of  $c$  as

$$\int_{C_1}^{C_3} f(c)(D_c + D_b\theta(c)) dc > 0. \quad (7.89)$$

In general, this integral cannot be evaluated explicitly. However, for the simple case of cubic bistable kinetics  $f(c) = c(1 - c)(c - a)$ ,  $0 < a < 1/2$ , explicit evaluation of the integral (7.89) shows that traveling waves exist if and only if

$$a < a_c = \frac{1}{2} \frac{D_c - 12D_b b_t K [(3K^2 + 2K) \ln(\frac{K+1}{K}) - (3K + \frac{1}{2})]}{D_c + 12D_b b_t K [(K + \frac{1}{2}) \ln(\frac{K+1}{K}) - 1]}. \quad (7.90)$$

One conclusion that can be drawn immediately from (7.89) is that a stationary buffer (i.e., one with  $D_b = 0$ ) has no effect on the existence of traveling waves in the bistable equation. For when  $D_b = 0$ , the condition (7.89) for the existence of the traveling wave reduces to

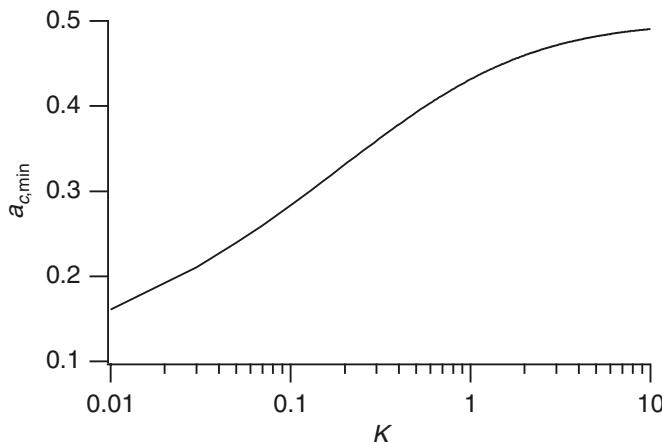
$$\int_0^1 f(c) dc > 0, \quad (7.91)$$

which is exactly the condition for the existence of a wave in the absence of a buffer.

Note that  $a_c$  is a monotonically decreasing function of  $D_b b_t / D_c$ , and

$$a_c \rightarrow a_{c,\min}(K) = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{[(3K^2 + 2K) \ln(\frac{K+1}{K}) - (3K + \frac{1}{2})]}{[(K + \frac{1}{2}) \ln(\frac{K+1}{K}) - 1]} \quad \text{as } D_b \rightarrow \infty. \quad (7.92)$$

In Fig. 7.17 we give a plot of  $a_{c,\min}(K)$  against  $K$ . When  $K$  is large, the minimum value of  $a_c$  is close to 0.5, and thus wave existence is insensitive to  $D_b$ . However, when  $K$  is small,  $a_c$  also becomes small as  $D_b$  increases, and so in this case, a mobile buffer can easily stop a wave.



**Figure 7.17** Plot of  $a_{c,\min}$  against  $K$ .

## 7.5 Discrete Calcium Sources

In all of the models presented so far,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the ER was assumed to be homogeneous in space. In fact, this is not the case. In *Xenopus* oocytes, for example, IPR are arranged in clusters with a density of about 1 per  $30 \mu\text{m}^2$ , with each cluster containing about 25 IPR. Furthermore, the propagation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves is saltatory, with release jumping from one cluster of release sites to another.

To explore the properties of such saltatory waves, and to see the effect of this discrete structure, we assume that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released from discrete release sites but is removed continuously. Thus

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - k_s c + L \sum_n \delta(x - nL) f(c), \quad (7.93)$$

where the function  $f$  is your favorite description of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, and  $L$  is the spatial separation between release sites. Two examples of the release function  $f(c)$  that are useful are

$$f(c) = Ac^2(c_e - c) \quad (7.94)$$

and

$$f(c) = AH(c - c^*)(c_e - c), \quad (7.95)$$

where  $H$  is the usual Heaviside function. Both of these release functions have  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent release, representing CICR.

The corresponding continuous space model can be found by homogenization (Exercise 16). It is not difficult to show (and it makes intuitive sense) that in the limit that  $\frac{L^2 k_s}{D_c} \ll 1$ , the spatially inhomogeneous problem

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - k_s c + g(x) f(c), \quad (7.96)$$

where  $g(x)$  is periodic with period  $L$ , can be replaced by its average

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - k_s c + G f(c), \quad (7.97)$$

where  $G = \frac{1}{L} \int_0^L g(x) dx$ .

Since the effective release function  $F(c) = G f(c) - k_s c$  is of bistable type, with three zeros  $0 < c_1 < c_2$ , one would expect there to be traveling waves of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, provided the medium is sufficiently excitable, i.e., provided

$$\int_0^{c_2} F(c) dc > 0. \quad (7.98)$$

However, this condition fails to be correct if  $\frac{L^2 k_s}{D_c} \neq 0$ .

Waves fail to propagate if there is a standing wave solution. Standing waves are stationary solutions of (7.93), i.e., solutions of

$$0 = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - k_s c + L \sum_n \delta(x - nL) f(c). \quad (7.99)$$

On the intervals  $nL < x < (n+1)L$ , this becomes

$$0 = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - k_s c. \quad (7.100)$$

We find jump conditions at  $x = nL$  by integrating from  $nL^-$  to  $nL^+$  to obtain

$$D_c c_x|_{nL^-}^{nL^+} + L f(c_n) = 0, \quad (7.101)$$

where  $c_n = c(nL)$ .

Now we solve (7.100) to obtain

$$c(x) = (c_{n+1} - c_n \cosh \beta) \frac{\sinh(\frac{\beta}{L}(x - nL))}{\sinh \beta} + c_n \cosh \left( \frac{\beta}{L}(x - nL) \right), \quad (7.102)$$

for  $nL < x < (n+1)L$ , where  $c_n = c(nL)$ ,  $\beta^2 = \frac{k_s L^2}{D_c}$ , so that

$$c_x(nL^+) = (c_{n+1} - c_n \cosh \beta) \frac{\beta}{L \sinh \beta}. \quad (7.103)$$

Similarly,

$$c_x(nL^-) = -(c_{n-1} - c_n \cosh \beta) \frac{\beta}{L \sinh \beta}. \quad (7.104)$$

It follows that (7.101) is the difference equation

$$\frac{k_s}{\beta \sinh \beta} (c_{n+1} - 2c_n \cosh \beta + c_{n-1}) + f(c_n) = 0, \quad (7.105)$$

which is a difference equation for  $c_n$ .

Finding solutions of nonlinear difference equations is nontrivial in general. However, if  $f(c)$  is piecewise linear, as it is with release function (7.95), analytical solutions can be found. We seek solutions of (7.105) of the form

$$c_n = \begin{cases} a \mu_0^{-n}, & n \leq 0, \\ C - b \mu_f^n, & n > 0, \end{cases} \quad (7.106)$$

where the steady solution  $C$  satisfies

$$\frac{k_s}{\beta \sinh \beta} (C - 2C \cosh \beta + C) + A(c_e - C) = 0, \quad (7.107)$$

so that

$$C = c_e \frac{A_f}{2 \cosh \beta - 2 + A_f}, \quad A_f = A \frac{\beta \sinh \beta}{k_s}. \quad (7.108)$$

The numbers  $\mu_0$  and  $\mu_f$  are both less than one and satisfy the quadratic equations

$$\mu_j - 2\lambda_j + \frac{1}{\mu_j} = 0, \quad j = 0, f, \quad (7.109)$$

where

$$\lambda_0 = \cosh \beta, \quad \lambda_f = \cosh \beta + \frac{A_f}{2}, \quad (7.110)$$

so that

$$\mu_j = \lambda_j - \sqrt{\lambda_j^2 - 1}. \quad (7.111)$$

It is easy to determine that  $\mu_0 = \exp(-\beta)$ ; the expression for  $\mu_f$  is more complicated.

We determine the scalars  $a$  and  $b$  by examining the difference equation for  $n = 0$ ,

$$\frac{k_s}{\beta \sinh \beta} (c_1 - 2c_0 \cosh \beta + c_{-1}) + f(c_0) = 0, \quad (7.112)$$

and for  $n = 1$ ,

$$\frac{k_s}{\beta \sinh \beta} (c_2 - 2c_1 \cosh \beta + c_0) + f(c_1) = 0. \quad (7.113)$$

Since  $c_0 < c^*$  and  $c_1 > c^*$  by assumption,  $f(c_0) = 0$  and  $f(c_1) = A(c_e - C + b\mu_f)$ . After some algebraic manipulation we find that

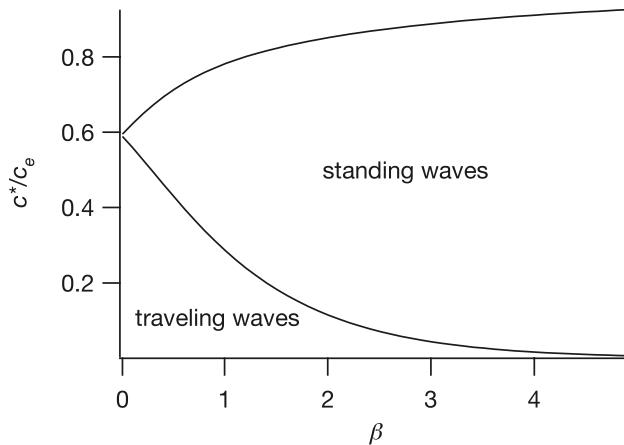
$$a = C \left( \frac{\mu_f - 1}{\mu_f - \frac{1}{\mu_0}} \right), \quad b = C \left( \frac{1 - \frac{1}{\mu_0}}{\mu_f - \frac{1}{\mu_0}} \right). \quad (7.114)$$

The condition for the existence of these standing waves is that

$$a \leq c^*, \quad C - b\mu_f \geq c^*, \quad (7.115)$$

so a plot of  $a$  and  $C - b\mu_f$  is revealing. In Fig. 7.18 are shown the two curves  $\frac{a}{c_e}$  (lower curve) and  $\frac{C}{c_e} - \frac{b}{c_e}\mu_f$  (upper curve) plotted as functions of  $\beta = \sqrt{\frac{k_s L^2}{D_c}}$  for  $\frac{A}{k} = 5$ . The interpretation of this plot is that for a fixed value of  $\beta$ , if  $\frac{c^*}{c_e}$  lies in the region below the curve  $\frac{a}{c_e}$ , then there is a traveling wave, whereas if  $\frac{c^*}{c_e}$  and  $\beta$  lies between the two curves, there is a standing wave, which precludes the possibility of propagation. Thus, in general, the larger is  $\beta$ , the more excitable the release sites must be ( $\frac{c^*}{c_e}$  must be smaller) for propagation to occur. Said another way, discrete release from clumped receptors makes propagation less likely than if the same amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  were released in a spatially continuous and homogeneous fashion. Notice also that for fixed  $\frac{c^*}{c_e}$ , increasing  $\beta$  sufficiently always leads to propagation failure. Increasing  $\beta$  corresponds to increasing the distance between release sites  $L$  or the rate of uptake  $k_s$ , or decreasing the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion coefficient  $D_c$ .

A similar approach to this problem was explored by Sneyd and Sherratt (1997).



**Figure 7.18** Plot of  $\frac{a}{c_e}$  (lower curve) and  $\frac{C}{c_e} - \frac{b}{c_e}\mu_f$  (upper curve) plotted as functions of  $\beta = \sqrt{\frac{k_s L^2}{D}}$  for  $\frac{A}{k_s} = 5$ .

### 7.5.1 The Fire–Diffuse–Fire Model

It is difficult to determine when propagation failure occurs, and it is even more difficult to find the speed of propagation in a discrete release model. One approach, which uses techniques that are beyond the scope of this text, was used in Keener (2000b). Another approach is to use a different model. One model that has attracted a lot of attention is the *fire–diffuse–fire* model (Pearson and Ponce-Dawson, 1998; Keizer et al., 1998; Ponce-Dawson et al., 1999; Coombes, 2001; Coombes and Bressloff, 2003; Coombes and Timofeeva, 2003; Coombes et al., 2004).

In this model, once  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  reaches a threshold value,  $c^*$ , at a release site, that site fires, instantaneously releasing a fixed amount,  $\sigma$ , of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Thus, a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave is propagated by the sequential firing of release sites, each responding to the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusing from neighboring release sites. Hence the name fire–diffuse–fire.

We assume that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  obeys the reaction–diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} + \sigma \sum_n \delta(x - nL) \delta(t - t_n), \quad (7.116)$$

where, as before,  $L$  is the spacing between release sites. Although this equation looks linear, appearances are deceptive. Here,  $t_n$  is the time at which  $c$  first reaches the threshold value  $c^*$  at the  $n$ th release site. When this happens, the  $n$ th release site releases the amount  $\sigma$ . Thus,  $t_n$  depends in a complicated way on  $c$ .

The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  profile resulting from the firing of a single site, site  $i$ , say, is

$$c_i(x, t) = \sigma \frac{H(t - t_i)}{\sqrt{4\pi D_c(t - t_i)}} \exp\left(-\frac{(x - iL)^2}{4D_c(t - t_i)}\right), \quad (7.117)$$

where  $H$  is the Heaviside function. This is the fundamental solution of the diffusion equation with a delta function input at  $x = i$ ,  $t = t_i$ , and can be found in any standard book on analytical solutions to partial differential equations (see, for example,

Keener, 1998, or Kevorkian, 2000). If we superimpose the solutions from each site, we get

$$c(x, t) = \sum_i c_i(x, t) = \sigma \sum_i \frac{H(t - t_i)}{\sqrt{4\pi D_c(t - t_i)}} \exp\left(-\frac{(x - iL)^2}{4D_c(t - t_i)}\right). \quad (7.118)$$

Notice that because of the instantaneous release,  $c(x, t)$  is not a continuous function of time at any release site.

Now suppose that sites  $i = N, N-1, \dots$  have fired at known times  $t_N > t_{N-1} > \dots$ . The next firing time  $t_{N+1}$  is determined by when  $c$  at  $x_{N+1}$  first reaches the threshold,  $c^*$ , that is,

$$c((N+1)L, t_{N+1}^-) = c^*, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t} c((N+1)L, t_{N+1}^-) > 0. \quad (7.119)$$

Thus,  $t_{N+1}$  must satisfy

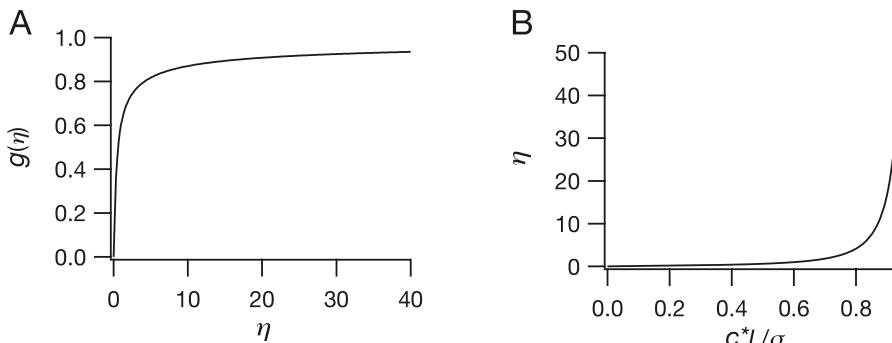
$$c^* = \sigma \sum_{i \leq N} \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi D_c(t_{N+1} - t_i)}} \exp\left(-\frac{L^2(N+1-i)^2}{4D_c(t_{N+1} - t_i)}\right). \quad (7.120)$$

A steadily propagating wave corresponds to having  $t_i - t_{i-1} = \text{constant} = \tau$  for all  $i$ , i.e., each site fires a fixed time after its leftward neighbor fires. Note that the resulting wave does not propagate with a constant profile, but has a well-defined wave speed  $L/\tau$ . If such a  $\tau$  exists, then  $t_{N+1} - t_i = \tau(N+1-i)$  and  $\tau$  is a solution of the equation

$$\frac{c^* L}{\sigma} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi n \eta}} \exp\left(-\frac{n}{4\eta}\right) \equiv g(\eta), \quad (7.121)$$

where  $\eta = \frac{D_c \tau}{L^2}$  is the dimensionless delay.

To find  $\eta$  we need to invert this equation. A plot of  $g(\eta)$  is shown in Fig. 7.19. It can be shown that  $0 \leq g(\eta) \leq 1$  and that  $g$  is monotonic with  $g \rightarrow 0$  as  $\eta \rightarrow 0$ , and  $g \rightarrow 1$  as  $\eta \rightarrow \infty$ . It follows that a solution to (7.121) exists only if  $\frac{c^* L}{\sigma} < 1$ . Thus, when the intercluster distance or the threshold is too large, or the amount of release is too



**Figure 7.19** A: Plot of  $g(\eta)$ , where  $g(\eta)$  is defined by (7.121). B: Plot of the delay  $\eta$  using (7.121).

small, there is no propagation. However, when  $\frac{c^*L}{\sigma} < 1$ , a unique solution of (7.121) is guaranteed, and thus there is a propagating wave.

It is an easy matter to plot the delay as a function of  $\frac{c^*L}{\sigma}$  by appropriately reversing the axes of Fig. 7.19A. Thus, in Fig. 7.19B is plotted the dimensionless delay  $\eta$  as a function of  $\frac{c^*L}{\sigma}$ . It is equally easy to plot the dimensionless velocity  $\frac{1}{\eta}$  as a function of  $\frac{c^*L}{\sigma}$  (not shown). The result is that the velocity is infinitely large as  $\frac{c^*L}{\sigma} \rightarrow 0$  and is zero for  $\frac{c^*L}{\sigma} \geq 1$ .

If a solution of (7.121) exists, then the speed of the wave is proportional to  $D_c$ . This is because the velocity is  $\frac{L}{\tau} = \frac{D}{\eta L}$ . This result is disconcerting for two reasons. First, the speed of propagation of waves in spatially homogeneous reaction-diffusion systems usually scales with the square root of  $D$ . It follows from simple scaling arguments that since the units of the diffusion coefficient,  $D_c$ , are (length)<sup>2</sup> per time, the distance variable can be scaled by  $\sqrt{D_c k}$ , where  $k$  is a typical time constant, to remove all distance units, so that the wave speed scales with  $\sqrt{D_c k}$ . Second, this disagrees with the result of the previous section showing that if  $D_c$  is sufficiently small, there is propagation failure. For the fire-diffuse-fire model, propagation success or failure is independent of  $D_c$ .

This mismatch is explained by the fact that the fire-diffuse-fire model allows only for release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , but no uptake, and thus the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transient is unrealistically monotone increasing.

This deficiency of the fire-diffuse-fire model is easily remedied by adding a linear uptake term that is homogeneous in space (Coombes, 2001), so that the model becomes

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - k_s c + \sigma \sum_n \delta(x - nL) \delta(t - t_n). \quad (7.122)$$

The analysis of this modified model is almost identical to the case with  $k_s = 0$ . The fundamental solution is modified slightly by  $k_s$ , with the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  profile resulting from the firing at site  $i$  given by

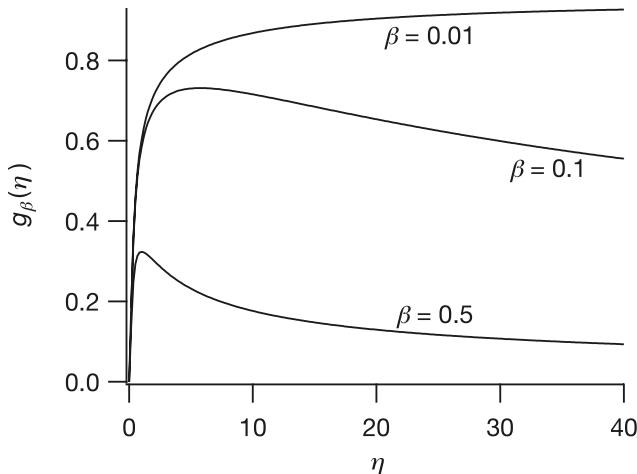
$$c_i(x, t) = \sigma \frac{H(t - t_i)}{\sqrt{4\pi D_c(t - t_i)}} \exp\left(-\frac{(x - iL)^2}{4D_c(t - t_i)} - k_s(t - t_i)\right). \quad (7.123)$$

Following the previous arguments, we learn that a propagating solution exists if there is a solution of the equation

$$\frac{c^*L}{\sigma} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi n\eta}} \exp\left(-\frac{n}{4\eta} - \beta^2 n\right) \equiv g_{\beta}(\eta), \quad (7.124)$$

where  $\eta = \frac{D_c\tau}{L^2}$  is the dimensionless delay, and  $\beta^2 = \frac{k_s L^2}{D_c}$ .

Estimates of the size of  $\beta^2$  can vary substantially. For example, using  $k_s = 143/\text{s}$  ( $= 1/\alpha_2$  from Table 7.4),  $L^2 = 30 \mu\text{m}^2$ , and  $D_c = 20 \mu\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ , we find  $\beta^2 = 172$ , whereas with  $k_s = 3.78/\text{s}$  ( $= k_4$  from the Friel model, see Table 7.5),  $L^2 = 4 \mu\text{m}^2$  (appropriate



**Figure 7.20** Plots of  $g_\beta(\eta)$  for three different values of  $\beta$ . Note that  $g_\beta$  is a decreasing function of  $\beta$  for all positive values of  $\eta$ .

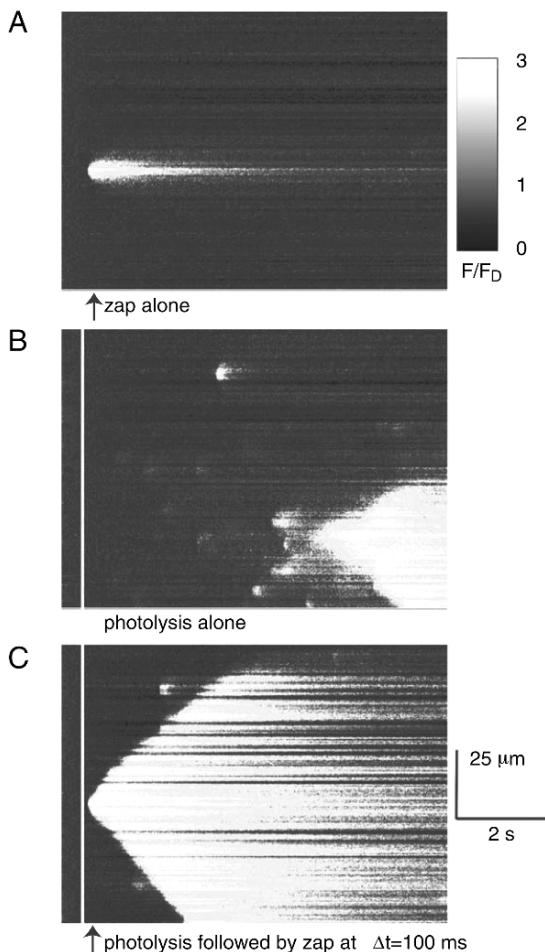
for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release in cardiac cells), and  $D_c = 25 \mu\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ , we find  $\beta^2 = 0.6$ . Regardless, the effect of  $\beta$  is significant. Plots of  $g_\beta(\eta)$  are shown for several values of  $\beta$  in Fig. 7.20. In particular, if  $\beta \neq 0$ , the function  $g_\beta(\eta)$  is not monotone increasing, but has a maximal value, say  $g_{\max}(\beta)$ , which is a decreasing function of  $\beta$ . Furthermore,  $g_\beta(\eta) \rightarrow 0$  as  $\eta \rightarrow 0$  and as  $\eta \rightarrow \infty$ . If  $\frac{c^* L}{\sigma} > g_{\max}(\beta)$ , then no solution of (7.124) exists; there is propagation failure. On the other hand, if  $\frac{c^* L}{\sigma} < g_{\max}(\beta)$ , then there are two solutions of (7.124); the physically meaningful solution is the smaller of the two, corresponding to the first time that  $c(x, t)$  reaches  $c^*$ .

For larger values of  $\beta$ , the curve  $g_{\max}(\beta)$  agrees very well with the exponential function  $\exp(-\beta)$ . This provides us with an approximate criterion for propagation failure, namely, if  $\frac{c^* L}{\sigma} > \exp(-\beta)$ , propagation fails. Recall that  $\beta = \sqrt{\frac{k_s L^2}{D_c}}$  to see the  $\sqrt{D_c}$  dependence in this criterion.

By reversing the axes in Fig. 7.20, one obtains a plot of the dimensionless delay as a function of  $\frac{c^* L}{\sigma}$ . Notice the significant qualitative difference when  $\beta \neq 0$  compared to  $\beta = 0$ . With  $\beta \neq 0$ , propagation ceases at a finite, not infinite, delay. This implies that propagation fails at a positive, not zero, velocity.

## 7.6 Calcium Puffs and Stochastic Modeling

In all the models discussed above, the release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  was modeled as deterministic. However, it is now well known that this is not always appropriate. In fact, each  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillation or wave is built up from a number of stochastic elementary release events, called *puffs*, each of which corresponds to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from a single, or a small group of, IPR. At low concentrations of  $\text{IP}_3$ , punctate release from single clusters occurs, while at high  $[\text{IP}_3]$  these local release events are coordinated into global intracellular waves (Yao et al., 1995; Parker et al., 1996a,b; Parker and Yao, 1996). Detailed studies



**Figure 7.21** Calcium waves and puffs caused by release of Ca<sup>2+</sup> and IP<sub>3</sub>. Lighter colors correspond to higher Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentrations. A: release of Ca<sup>2+</sup> by a UV laser zap results in a single localized Ca<sup>2+</sup> response. B: photolysis of IP<sub>3</sub> across the entire region causes several Ca<sup>2+</sup> puffs (see, for example, the puff at top center), followed by an abortive wave about 5 seconds after the release of IP<sub>3</sub>. C: photolysis of IP<sub>3</sub> followed by release of Ca<sup>2+</sup> by a UV laser zap. A global wave is initiated immediately by the additional Ca<sup>2+</sup> release. (Adapted from Marchant et al., 1999, Fig. 3. We thank Ian Parker for providing the original figure of this experimental data.)

of puffs have been done principally in *Xenopus* oocytes (Marchant et al., 1999; Sun et al., 1998; Callamaras et al., 1998; Marchant and Parker, 2001) and HeLa cells (Thomas et al., 2000; Bootman et al., 1997a,b).

Some typical experimental results are shown in Fig. 7.21. In the top panel is shown the release of Ca<sup>2+</sup> in response to a single laser pulse. (The cell was first loaded with a photoreleasable form of Ca<sup>2+</sup>.) The Ca<sup>2+</sup> pulse is localized, and does not spread to form a global wave. This is because the background IP<sub>3</sub> concentration is too low to support a wave. However, when the background IP<sub>3</sub> concentration is raised by the photorelease of IP<sub>3</sub> (panel B), the cytoplasm becomes more excitable, and spontaneous Ca<sup>2+</sup> puffs occur (for instance, the white dot at the top and center of the panel). If, by chance, the spontaneous release is large enough, a traveling wave will form, spreading from release site to release site, as shown in the bottom right of the panel. Panel C

shows the response when the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pulse is applied on top of a higher background  $\text{IP}_3$  concentration. In this case the medium is excitable enough for the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pulse to initiate a global traveling wave.

These experimental results raise several important modeling questions. First, when is it appropriate to use deterministic models and when must stochastic behavior be incorporated? Second, how should one best model stochastic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release through a small number of IPR, and, finally, how can one model the coordination of such local release into global events such as intracellular waves? Although such questions are most obvious from the experimental work in oocytes and HeLa cells, they are also important for the study of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in other cell types. As Falcke (2004) has pointed out, stochastic effects appear to be so fundamental and widespread that they raise questions about the applicability of deterministic approaches in general.

## 7.6.1 Stochastic IPR Models

The basic assumption behind the modeling of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  puffs is that each IPR release event can be modeled as a stochastic Markov process, while the diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and the action of the other pumps and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  fluxes can be modeled deterministically. Given a Markov state model of the IPR (for example, as shown in Fig. 7.8 or Fig. 7.10), we can simulate the model by choosing a random number at each time step and using that random number to determine the change of state for that time step. This is done most efficiently using the Gillespie method, as described in Section 2.9.3.

In general, each transition rate is a function of  $c$  and  $p$ , and thus the transition probabilities are continually changing as the concentrations change. It follows that  $c$  and  $p$  must be updated at each time step. Such updates are done deterministically, by solving the reaction-diffusion equations for  $c$  and  $p$ . When the simulated IPR model is in the open state, the reaction-diffusion equation for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  has an additional flux through the IPR. When the simulated IPR model is in some other state, this flux is absent. Thus, we obtain a reaction-diffusion equation for  $c$  that is driven by a stochastically varying input.

The first stochastic model of an IPR was due to Swillens et al. (1998). Their model is an 18-state model in which the IPR can have 0 or 1  $\text{IP}_3$  bound, 0, 1, or 2 activating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound, and 0, 1, or 2 inactivating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound. The receptor is open only when it has one  $\text{IP}_3$  bound, two  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound to activating sites, and no  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound to inactivating sites. The steady-state open probability of the model is constrained to fit the experimental data of Bezprozvanny et al. (1991), and it is assumed that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffuses radially away from the mouth of the channel. Calcium can build up to high concentrations at the mouth of the channel, and these local concentrations are used in the stochastic simulation of the IPR model.

Simulations of this model show two things in particular. First, channel openings occur in bursts, as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffuses away from the mouth of the channel slowly enough to allow rebinding to an activating site. Second, by comparing to experimentally observed

distributions of puff amplitudes, Swillens et al. (1999) showed that a typical cluster contains approximately 25 receptors, and that within the cluster the IPR are probably separated by no more than 12 nm.

Because of the intensive computations involved in direct stochastic simulation of gating schemes for the IPR, Shuai and Jung approximated a stochastic version of the eight-state model (Section 7.2.5) by a Langevin equation (Shuai and Jung, 2002a,b, 2003), an approach that had already been used to study the Hodgkin–Huxley equations by Fox and Lu (1994). Although 25 receptors in each cluster makes a Langevin equation approach less accurate than direct stochastic simulation, the qualitative behavior agrees well with direct simulation.

### Local Concentrations

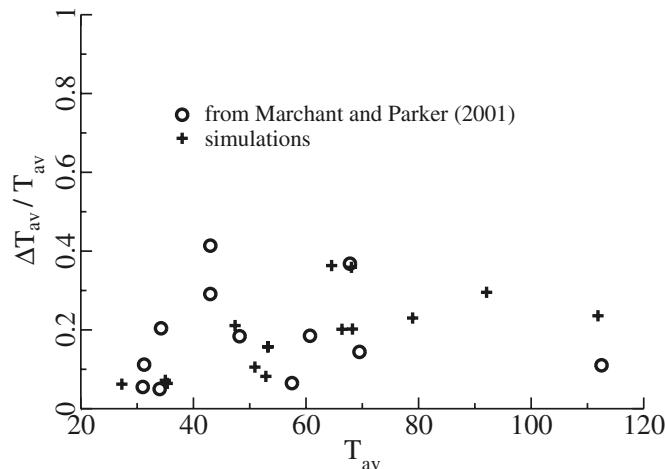
In any stochastic model of the IPR it is impossible to ignore the local high concentrations that occur at the mouth of the channel. Neglect of this factor results in either an IPR model that bears no relation to reality, or a model that does not exhibit realistic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations. Thus, for a stochastic model of the IPR to be incorporated into a whole-cell model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, it is necessary to somehow relate the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration in the microdomain at the channel mouth to the bulk  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration in the cytoplasm of the cell. Two approaches to this problem are those of Huertas and Smith (2007) and Bentele and Falcke (2007).

This problem is similar to the problem of how best to model  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release in cardiac cells (Section 12.2.4). There, the ryanodine receptors release  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into a very restricted domain, the diadic cleft, and experience  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentrations much higher than those in the remainder of the cytoplasm. Thus, many recent models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics in cardiac cells do not use a single cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  domain, but incorporate various  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  microdomains, with greater or lesser complexity.

### 7.6.2 Stochastic Models of Calcium Waves

Of all the results from stochastic modeling, the most intriguing are those of Falcke (2003a,b), who studied the transition from puffs to waves in *Xenopus* oocytes as  $[\text{IP}_3]$  is increased. At low  $[\text{IP}_3]$  only puffs are observed; there is not enough  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  released from each cluster to stimulate  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from neighboring clusters, and thus the responses are purely local. However, as  $[\text{IP}_3]$  increases, both the sensitivity of, and the amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  released from, each IPR increases. This allows for the development of global waves that emerge from a *nucleation* site. However, until  $[\text{IP}_3]$  gets considerably larger, these global events are rare, and in many cases form only abortive waves that progress a short distance before dying out. Both the interwave time interval,  $T_{\text{av}}$ , and its standard deviation  $\Delta T_{\text{av}}$ , decrease as  $[\text{IP}_3]$  increases. Finally, at high  $[\text{IP}_3]$  global waves occur regularly with a well-defined period.

Falcke (2003a,b) showed that all these behaviors can be reproduced by a stochastic version of the eight-state model of Section 7.2.5. The long time interval between



**Figure 7.22** Plot of the relative standard deviation  $\Delta T_{av}/T_{av}$ . The experimental data (open circles) are from Marchant and Parker (2001), while the simulations are from Falcke (2003a).

successive waves when  $[IP_3]$  is low is a result almost entirely of the stochastic dynamics. In each time interval there is a chance that one IPR fires, stimulating the firing of the entire cluster, and thus initiating a global wave, but because of the intercluster separation and the low sensitivity of each IPR, such events are rare. Hence in this regime both  $T_{av}$  and  $\Delta T_{av}$  are large. Conversely, when  $[IP_3]$  is large, each IPR is much more sensitive to  $Ca^{2+}$ , and the flux through each receptor is larger. Thus, firing of a single IPR is nearly always sufficient to stimulate a global wave. In this case, the interwave period is set, not by stochastic effects, but by the intrinsic dynamics of the IPR, i.e., the time required for the receptor to reactivate and be ready to propagate another wave. These results are most easily seen in Fig. 7.22, which shows experimental data from Marchant and Parker (2001) and the corresponding simulations of Falcke (2003a). The ratio of  $\Delta T_{av}/T_{av}$  remains approximately constant over a wide range of  $T_{av}$ .

What is particularly interesting about these results is that in the simulations the periodic global waves occur for concentrations of  $IP_3$  for which the deterministic version of the model is nonoscillatory. In other words, oscillatory waves are not necessarily the result of oscillatory kinetics. They can result from a stochastic process that, every so often, causes a cluster to fire sufficiently strongly that it initiates a global wave. If the standard deviation of the average time between firings is sufficiently small the resulting almost-periodic responses can appear to be the result of an underlying limit cycle, even when no such limit cycle exists. Such results call into serious question the relevance of deterministic approaches to  $Ca^{2+}$  waves and oscillations that are caused by small numbers of stochastic IPR. However, the implications have yet to be fully digested (Keener, 2006).

## 7.7 Intercellular Calcium Waves

Not only do  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves travel across individual cells, they also travel from cell to cell to form intercellular waves that can travel across many cells. One of the earliest examples of such an intercellular wave was discovered by Sanderson et al. (1990, 1994), who discovered that in epithelial cell cultures, a mechanical stimulus (for example, poking a single cell with a micropipette) can initiate a wave of increased intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  that spreads from cell to cell to form an intercellular wave. Typical experimental results from airway epithelial cells are shown in Fig. 7.4. The epithelial cell culture forms a thin layer of cells, connected by gap junctions. When a cell in the middle of the culture is mechanically stimulated, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the stimulated cell increases quickly. After a time delay of a second or so, the neighbors of the stimulated cell also show an increase in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and this increase spreads sequentially through the culture. An intracellular wave moves across each cell, is delayed at the cell boundary, and then initiates an intracellular wave in the neighboring cell. The intercellular wave moves via the sequential propagation of intracellular waves. Of particular interest here is the fact that in the absence of extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , the stimulated cell shows no response, but an intercellular wave still spreads to other cells in the culture. It thus appears that a rise in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the stimulated cell is not necessary for wave propagation. Neither is a rise in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sufficient to initiate an intercellular wave. For example, epithelial cells in culture sometimes exhibit spontaneous intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, and these oscillations do not spread from cell to cell. Nevertheless, a mechanically stimulated intercellular wave does spread through cells that are spontaneously oscillating.

Intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves in glial cultures were also studied by Charles et al. (1991) as well as by Cornell-Bell et al. (1990). Over the past few years there has accumulated an increasing body of evidence to show that such intercellular communication between glia, or between glia and neurons, plays an important role in information processing in the brain (Nedergaard, 1994; Charles, 1998; Vesce et al., 1999; Fields and Stevens-Graham, 2002; Lin and Bergles, 2004).

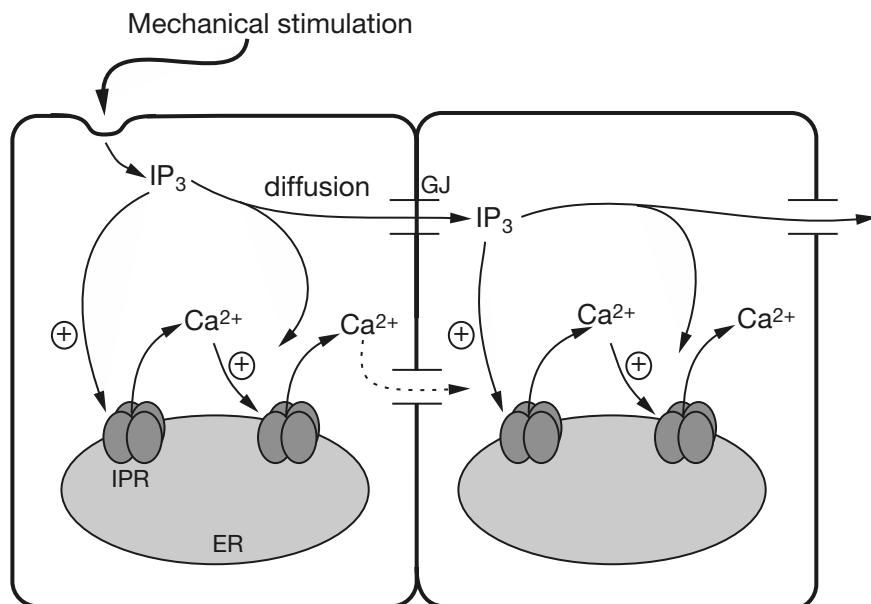
Just as there is a wide variety of intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves in different cell types, so is there a corresponding variety in their mechanism of propagation. Nevertheless, two basic mechanisms are predominant: propagation by the diffusion of an extracellular messenger, and propagation by the diffusion of an intracellular messenger through gap junctions. Sometimes both mechanisms operate in combination to drive an intercellular wave (see, for example, Young and Hession, 1997). Most commonly the intracellular messenger is  $\text{IP}_3$  or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (or both), but a much larger array of extracellular messengers, including ATP, ADP, and nitric oxide, has been implicated.

There have been few models of intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves. The earliest were due to Sneyd et al. (1994, 1995a, 1998) who studied the mechanisms underlying mechanically induced waves, while another early model was that of Young (1997). More recent versions of this basic model have been used to study intercellular coupling in hepatocytes (Höfer, 1999; Höfer et al., 2001, 2002; Dupont et al., 2000) and pancreatic acinar cells

(Tsaneva-Atanasova et al., 2005), while a different approach was taken by Jung et al. (1998) and Ullah et al. (2006). There have been even fewer studies of the interactions between intracellular and extracellular messengers (two recent examples are Bennett et al., 2005, and Iacobas et al., 2006), and much remains to be discovered about how such models behave.

### 7.7.1 Mechanically Stimulated Intercellular $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ Waves

Sanderson and his colleagues (Boitano et al., 1992; Sanderson et al., 1994; Sneyd et al., 1994, 1995a,b) proposed a model of mechanically stimulated intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves in epithelial cells (Fig. 7.23). They proposed that mechanical stimulation causes the production of large amounts of  $\text{IP}_3$  in the stimulated cell, and this  $\text{IP}_3$  moves through the culture by passive diffusion, moving from cell to cell through gap junctions. Since  $\text{IP}_3$  releases  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ER, the diffusion of  $\text{IP}_3$  from cell to cell results in a corresponding intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave. Experimental results indicate that the movement of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  between cells does not play a major role in wave propagation, and thus the model assumes that intercellular movement of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is negligible. Relaxation of this assumption makes little difference to the model behavior, as it is the movement of  $\text{IP}_3$  through gap junctions that determines the intercellular wave properties.



**Figure 7.23** Schematic diagram of the model of intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves. GJ: gap junction; ER: endoplasmic reticulum; IPR:  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor.

In the model, the epithelial cell culture is modeled as a grid of square cells. It is assumed that IP<sub>3</sub> moves by passive diffusion and is degraded with saturable kinetics. Thus, if  $p$  denotes [IP<sub>3</sub>], then

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = D_p \nabla^2 p - \frac{V_p p k_p}{k_p + p}. \quad (7.125)$$

When  $p \ll k_p$ ,  $p$  decays with time constant  $1/V_p$ . Ca<sup>2+</sup> is also assumed to move by passive diffusion, but it is released from the ER by IP<sub>3</sub> and pumped back into the ER by Ca<sup>2+</sup> ATPases. The equations are

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \nabla^2 c + J_{\text{IPR}} - J_{\text{serca}} + J_{\text{in}}, \quad (7.126)$$

$$\tau_h \frac{dh}{dt} = \frac{k_2^2}{k_2^2 + c^2} - h, \quad (7.127)$$

$$J_{\text{IPR}} = k_f \mu(p) h \left[ b + \frac{(1-b)c}{k_1 + c} \right], \quad (7.128)$$

$$J_{\text{serca}} = \frac{\gamma c^2}{k_\gamma^2 + c^2}, \quad (7.129)$$

$$J_{\text{in}} = \beta, \quad (7.130)$$

$$\mu(p) = \frac{p^3}{k_\mu^3 + p^3}. \quad (7.131)$$

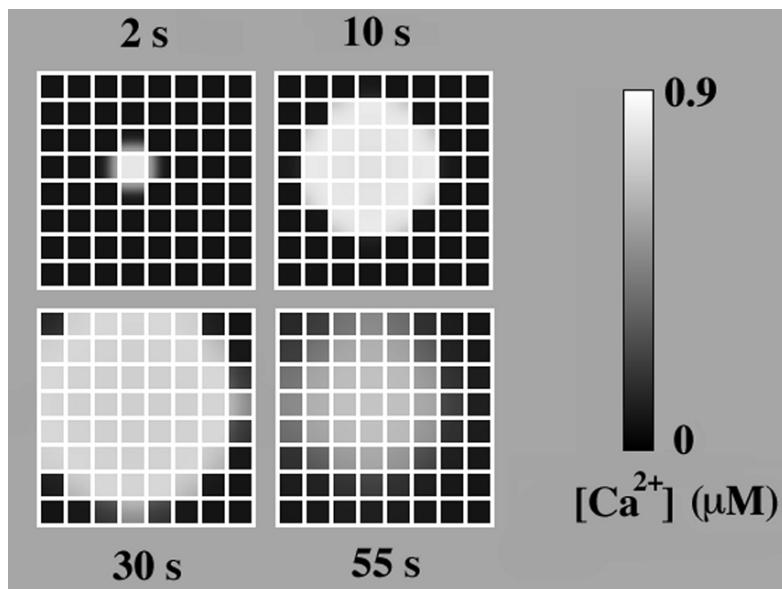
This was an early model of Ca<sup>2+</sup> dynamics, which is reflected in its relative simplicity. The model of the IPR was based on the model of Atri et al. (1993);  $J_{\text{IPR}}$  is a function of  $p$ ,  $c$ , and a slow variable  $h$ , which denotes the proportion of IP<sub>3</sub> receptors that have not been inactivated by Ca<sup>2+</sup>. Opening by IP<sub>3</sub> is assumed to be instantaneous, as is activation by Ca<sup>2+</sup>; hence the term  $\mu(p) \left[ b + \frac{(1-b)c}{k_1 + c} \right]$ , that is an increasing function of both  $p$  and  $c$ . The inactivation variable,  $h$ , has a steady state which is a decreasing function of Ca<sup>2+</sup>, and it reaches this steady state with time constant  $\tau_h$ . Thus, the property of fast activation by Ca<sup>2+</sup> followed by slower inactivation is built into the model equations.

As usual,  $J_{\text{serca}}$  denotes the removal of Ca<sup>2+</sup> from the cytoplasm by Ca<sup>2+</sup> ATPases in the ER membrane, and is modeled as a Hill equation with coefficient 2 (based on the data of Lytton et al., 1992);  $J_{\text{in}}$  is an unspecified leak of Ca<sup>2+</sup> into the cytoplasm, either from outside the cell or from the ER. Values of the model parameters are given in Table 7.7.

There is one important difference between this model and others discussed earlier in this chapter; here there is no variable describing the Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration in the ER, i.e., no  $c_e$  variable. This is equivalent to assuming that depletion of the ER is negligible, so that  $c_e$  is constant.

**Table 7.7** Parameters of the model of intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves. One important point to note is the difference between  $D_p$  and  $D_c$ . The value of  $D_c$  used here is the effective diffusion coefficient of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Although  $\text{IP}_3$  is a much larger molecule than  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , it diffuses faster through the cell because it is not buffered (Allbritton et al., 1992).

$k_f = 3 \mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$b = 0.11$
$k_1 = 0.7 \mu\text{M}$	$k_2 = 0.7 \mu\text{M}$
$\tau_h = 0.2 \text{ s}$	$k_\gamma = 0.27 \mu\text{M}$
$\gamma = 1 \mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$\beta = 0.15 \mu\text{M s}^{-1}$
$k_\mu = 0.01 \mu\text{M}$	$V_p = 0.08 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$k_p = 1 \mu\text{M}$	$F = 2 \mu\text{m s}^{-1}$
$D_c = 20 \mu\text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$	$D_p = 300 \mu\text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$



**Figure 7.24** Density plot of a two-dimensional intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave, computed numerically from the intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave model. (Sneyd et al., 1995b, Fig. 4.)

Finally, the internal boundary conditions are given in terms of the flux of  $\text{IP}_3$  from cell to cell. If cell  $n$  has  $[\text{IP}_3] = p_n$ , it is assumed that the flux of  $\text{IP}_3$  from cell  $n$  to cell  $n + 1$  is given by  $F(p_n - p_{n+1})$  for some constant  $F$ , called the permeability.

Initially, a single cell was injected with  $\text{IP}_3$ , which was then allowed to diffuse from cell to cell, thereby generating an intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave. Figure 7.24 shows a density

plot of a numerical solution of the model equations in two dimensions. An intercellular wave can be seen expanding across the grid of cells and then retreating as the IP<sub>3</sub> degrades. As expected for a process based on passive diffusion, the intracellular wave speed (i.e., the speed at which the intercellular wave moves across an individual cell) decreases with distance from the stimulated cell, and the arrival time and the intercellular delay increase exponentially with distance from the stimulated cell. For the values chosen for  $F$ , ranging from 1 to 8  $\mu\text{m s}^{-1}$ , the model agrees well with experimental data from epithelial, endothelial, and glial cells (Demer et al., 1993; Charles et al., 1992). However, the most important model prediction is the value of  $F$  needed to obtain such agreement. If  $F$  is lower than about 1  $\mu\text{m s}^{-1}$ , the intercellular wave moves too slowly to agree with experimental data. Since the value of  $F$  is unknown, this prediction provides a way to test the underlying hypothesis of passive diffusion of IP<sub>3</sub>.

### 7.7.2 Partial Regeneration

One of the major questions raised about the previous model was whether an IP<sub>3</sub> molecule is able to diffuse through multiple cells without being degraded. It is unlikely that an IP<sub>3</sub> molecule could survive long enough to cause intercellular waves propagating distances of up to several hundred micrometers. However, if the production of IP<sub>3</sub> is regenerative, for example, by the activation of PLC by increased [Ca<sup>2+</sup>], then the waves could potentially propagate indefinitely, as do action potentials in the axon (Chapter 6). Since in most cell types the waves eventually stop, this would seem, at first sight, to preclude a regenerative mechanism for IP<sub>3</sub> production.

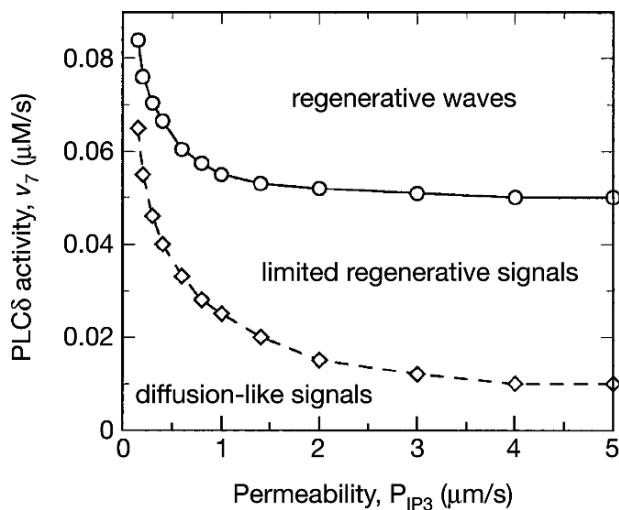
This question was resolved by Höfer et al. (2002), who showed that a partially regenerative mechanism could propagate intercellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> waves much farther than would be possible by simple diffusion, but not indefinitely; the waves still eventually terminate. Their model was used to study long-range intercellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> waves in astrocytes cultured from rat striatum, a preparation in which it is known that the intercellular waves propagate principally through gap-junctional diffusion of an intracellular messenger.

The model equations are similar to those in the previous section, with two major exceptions. First, they include the dynamics of  $c_e$ , and second, they assume that the rate of production of IP<sub>3</sub> by one of the isoforms of PLC, PLC $\delta$ , is an increasing function of [Ca<sup>2+</sup>]. Thus,

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = D_p \nabla^2 p + \frac{\nu_7 c^2}{K_{\text{Ca}}^2 + c^2} - k_9 p, \quad (7.132)$$

where  $K_{\text{Ca}} = 0.3 \mu\text{M}$ ,  $k_9 = 0.08 \text{ s}^{-1}$ , and  $\nu_7$  varies between 0 and 0.08.

Results are shown in Fig. 7.25. When the positive feedback from Ca<sup>2+</sup> to IP<sub>3</sub> production is small (i.e., when the maximal rate of PLC $\delta$  activity,  $\nu_7$ , is small), the intercellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> wave behaves as if it resulted from passive diffusion of IP<sub>3</sub> from the stimulated cell, as in the model of mechanically stimulated intercellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> waves. Conversely,



**Figure 7.25** Types of intercellular waves in the partially regenerative model as a function of the gap junction permeability of  $IP_3$  and the maximal activity of  $PLC\delta$  (Höfer et al., 2002, Fig. 4). The intercellular permeability to  $IP_3$ , here called  $P_{IP_3}$ , was called  $F$  in Table 7.7.

when  $v_7$  is large the waves become fully regenerative, propagating indefinitely. However, numerical computations show an intermediate range of  $v_7$  values that give limited regenerative waves; waves that propagate further than they would have, had they been governed solely by passive diffusion of  $IP_3$ , but that eventually terminate and thus are not fully regenerative.

### 7.7.3 Coordinated Oscillations in Hepatocytes

Periodic intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves propagate across entire lobules of the liver (Nathanson et al., 1995; Robb-Gaspers and Thomas, 1995), and this behavior is mirrored in smaller clusters (doublets and triplets) of coupled hepatocytes. The mechanism for the propagation of these waves appears to be quite different from that proposed for mechanically stimulated waves. First, the waves in hepatocytes propagate only if each cell is stimulated, i.e., only if each cell has increased  $IP_3$ . Second, the waves are time periodic. Despite these differences, it is known that the coordination of the waves depends on gap-junctional diffusion of an intracellular messenger; in the absence of gap-junctional coupling no coordinated wave activity appears, with each cell oscillating independently of its neighbors (Tordjmann et al., 1997). It is also known that there is an increasing gradient of hormone receptor density as one moves from the periportal to the perivenous zone of the liver lobule. This gradient is mirrored in triplets of hepatocytes; when stimulated with noradrenaline, the cells in the triplet respond in order, with the cell with the highest receptor density responding first. Since each cell in the triplet responds in synchrony to intracellular photorelease of  $IP_3$ , it follows that the different latencies are the result of different rates of production of  $IP_3$ .

Based on these observations, it has been proposed (Dupont et al., 2000) that the coordinated waves in hepatocyte clusters are phase waves, in which each cell oscillates

with a phase slightly different from that of its neighbors. In that model, intercellular synchronization is provided by the diffusion of IP<sub>3</sub> through gap junctions. Since each cell produces IP<sub>3</sub> at a slightly different rate, the intercellular diffusion of IP<sub>3</sub> serves to smooth out the intercellular IP<sub>3</sub> gradients, allowing for greater synchronization of the oscillations and the appearance of phase waves. Such synchronization does not persist for a long time, since the cells are essentially uncoupled—in the model there are no oscillations in IP<sub>3</sub> driving the Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillations, and thus, in the absence of intercellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> diffusion, the cells act as uncoupled oscillators over a longer time scale. Nevertheless, synchronization persists for long enough to explain experimental observations. A slightly different model, in which the cells are coupled by the intercellular diffusion of Ca<sup>2+</sup>, was proposed by Höfer (1999) and also tested by Dupont and her colleagues. According to the latter group, a model based on intercellular diffusion of Ca<sup>2+</sup> is insufficient to explain all the experimental data.

Similar studies have been done of intercellular waves in pancreatic acinar cells (Tsaneva-Atanasova et al., 2005), in which it was concluded that the intercellular diffusion of Ca<sup>2+</sup> alone was able to synchronize intercellular phase waves over a long time period, and that the function of intercellular IP<sub>3</sub> diffusion was to minimize the intercellular IP<sub>3</sub> gradients, thus making it easier for Ca<sup>2+</sup> diffusion to synchronize the oscillators.

However, these results are all still attended by considerable controversy. It is not yet clear how important IP<sub>3</sub> oscillations are for driving Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillations in either hepatocytes or pancreatic acinar cells. Much work remains to be done to elucidate the detailed mechanisms underlying these intercellular waves and coupled oscillations.

## 7.8 Appendix: Mean Field Equations

In Section 7.3, we added diffusion to our model equations in order to study Ca<sup>2+</sup> dynamics in a spatially distributed system. However, in doing so, we made use of some very important approximation techniques, which we describe in this appendix.

### 7.8.1 Microdomains

Suppose that a substance  $u$  is diffusing and reacting in a three-dimensional region in which one or two of the dimensions are small compared to the diffusion length scale. (If all dimensions are small compared to a typical diffusion length scale, then it is reasonable to assume that the region is well mixed, and a whole-cell model is appropriate.) Such a region could be, for example, the region between the junctional SR and the plasma membrane in cardiac cells (the diadic cleft), a narrow region of the cytoplasm between two planar sheets of ER, or a narrow region of the cytoplasm between the ER and the mitochondria. Such microdomains are known to be very important in cardiac cells and skeletal muscle, and are believed to be important (although the details remain uncertain) in cells such as the interstitial cells of Cajal, smooth muscle, and neurons.

In this domain,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D\nabla^2 u + f, \quad (7.133)$$

with boundary conditions  $\mathbf{n} \cdot D\nabla u = J$  on the boundary of the domain, where  $\mathbf{n}$  is the unit outward normal. For this discussion, it is most convenient to assume that (7.133) is in units of dimensionless time, so that  $D$  has units of length squared.

Now suppose, for example, that the domain is a long cylindrical tube with cross-sectional area  $A$  that is small compared to  $D$ . Because  $A$  is small compared to  $D$ , we expect that the solution should be nearly uniform in each cross-section, varying only slightly from its average value. Thus, we seek an equation describing the evolution of the average value, also called a mean field equation.

To exploit the difference in length scales, we split the Laplacian operator into two, writing

$$\nabla^2 u = u_{xx} + \nabla_y^2 u, \quad (7.134)$$

where  $x$  is the coordinate along the length of the tube, and  $y$  represents the coordinates of the cross-section of the tube. The boundary conditions along the sides of the tube are also expressed as  $\mathbf{n} \cdot D\nabla_y u = J$ , using the coordinate system of the cross-section. Here we ignore the boundary conditions at the ends of the tube.

The quick and dirty derivation of the mean field equation is to define  $\bar{u}$  as the average cross-sectional value of  $u$ ,

$$\bar{u} = \frac{1}{A} \int_{\Omega} u \, dA, \quad (7.135)$$

where  $\Omega$  is the cross-sectional domain, and then to integrate the governing equation (7.133) over  $\Omega$ , to find

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} = D\bar{u}_{xx} + \frac{D}{A} \int_{\Omega} \nabla_y^2 u \, dA + \frac{1}{A} \int_{\Omega} f \, dA. \quad (7.136)$$

Applying the divergence theorem,

$$\int_{\Omega} \nabla_y^2 u \, dA = \int_{\partial\Omega} \mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla_y u \, dS, \quad (7.137)$$

yields

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} = D\bar{u}_{xx} + \frac{S}{A} \bar{J} + \bar{f}, \quad (7.138)$$

where

$$\bar{J} = \frac{1}{S} \int_{\partial\Omega} J \, dS, \quad (7.139)$$

with  $S$  the circumference of the cross-section. Equation (7.138) is the equation governing the behavior of  $\bar{u}$ .

While (7.138) gives the correct answer, some of us may wish for a more systematic derivation. Furthermore, if either  $J$  or  $f$  depends on  $u$ , then it is not clear how to determine  $\bar{J}$  or  $\bar{f}$ .

To this end we introduce a small parameter  $\epsilon$  where  $\epsilon^2 = \frac{A}{D}$ , and introduce the scaled coordinate  $y = \sqrt{A}\xi$ , in terms of which (7.133) becomes

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = Du_{xx} + \frac{1}{\epsilon^2} \nabla_\xi^2 u + f, \quad (7.140)$$

subject to boundary conditions  $\mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla_\xi u = \epsilon \frac{J}{\sqrt{D}}$ . Now we seek a solution of (7.140) of the form

$$u = \bar{u} + \epsilon w, \quad (7.141)$$

where  $w$  is required to have zero average in each cross-section (i.e.,  $\int_{\Omega_\xi} w dA_\xi = 0$ ), and  $\bar{u}$  is independent of  $\xi$ . It is important to note that  $\bar{u}$  and  $w$  are not independent of  $\epsilon$ , and this is not a power series representation of the solution. Instead, this is a splitting of the solution by a projection operator, say

$$Pu = \int_{\Omega_\xi} u dA_\xi, \quad (7.142)$$

and in this notation  $\bar{u} = Pu$  and  $\epsilon w = u - Pu$ .

Now we find equations for  $\bar{u}$  and  $w$  by substituting (7.141) into (7.140) and then applying the projection operators  $P$  and  $I - P$ . First, applying  $P$  (i.e., integrating over  $\Omega_\xi$ ), we find

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} = D\bar{u}_{xx} + \frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{S_\xi}{\sqrt{D}} \bar{J} + \bar{f}, \quad (7.143)$$

where  $\bar{J} = \frac{1}{S_\xi} \int_{\partial\Omega_\xi} J dS_\xi$ , and  $S_\xi$  is the circumference of the tube measured in units of  $\xi$ . Next, applying the operator  $I - P$  we find

$$\frac{1}{\epsilon} \nabla_\xi^2 w = \frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{S_\xi}{\sqrt{D}} \bar{J} + \bar{f} - f + \epsilon \frac{\partial w}{\partial t} - \epsilon Dw_{xx}. \quad (7.144)$$

The function  $w$  must also satisfy the boundary condition  $\mathbf{n} \cdot \nabla_\xi w = \frac{J}{\sqrt{D}}$  along the sides of the tube.

If both  $J$  and  $f$  are known functions, with no dependence on  $u$ , then we are done, because (7.143) is the exact mean field equation. No further approximation is needed.

However, if either  $J$  or  $f$  depends on  $u$ , as is typical, then it is necessary to know more about  $w$ . In particular, if  $w$  is bounded and of order one, then

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{J} &= \frac{1}{S_\xi} \int_{\partial\Omega_\xi} J(u) dS_\xi \\ &= \frac{1}{S_\xi} \int_{\partial\Omega_\xi} J(\bar{u} + \epsilon w) dS_\xi \\ &= \frac{1}{S_\xi} \int_{\partial\Omega_\xi} \left( J(\bar{u}) + \epsilon J_u(\bar{u})w + O(\epsilon^2) \right) dS_\xi \\ &= J(\bar{u}) + O(\epsilon^2),\end{aligned}\tag{7.145}$$

and similarly,  $\bar{f} = f(\bar{u}) + O(\epsilon^2)$ . Thus, the mean field equation is

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} = D\bar{u}_{xx} + \frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{S_\xi}{\sqrt{D}} J(\bar{u}) + f(\bar{u}) + O(\epsilon),\tag{7.146}$$

or, in terms of the original parameters,

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} = D\bar{u}_{xx} + \frac{S}{A} J(\bar{u}) + f(\bar{u}) + O\left(\sqrt{\frac{A}{D}}\right).\tag{7.147}$$

It remains to establish that  $w$  is bounded and of order one. To this end, we seek a solution  $w$  of (7.144) as a power series in  $\epsilon$ , with  $\bar{u}$  fixed (that is, ignoring the implicit  $\epsilon$  dependence of  $\bar{u}$ ),

$$w = w_1 + \epsilon w_2 + O(\epsilon^2).\tag{7.148}$$

It is immediate that  $w_1$  must satisfy

$$\nabla_\xi^2 w_1 = \frac{S_\xi}{\sqrt{D}} \bar{J},\tag{7.149}$$

subject to the boundary condition  $n \cdot \nabla_\xi w_1 = \frac{J(\bar{u})}{\sqrt{D}}$ . Now we let  $W(\xi)$  be the fundamental solution of the boundary value problem

$$\nabla_\xi^2 W = S_\xi \quad \text{on } \Omega,\tag{7.150}$$

subject to the boundary condition  $n \cdot \nabla_\xi W = 1$  on  $\partial\Omega$ , and the condition  $\int_\Omega W(\xi) dA_\xi = 0$  (which, from the standard theory of Poisson's equation, is known to exist). It follows that

$$w_1 = \frac{J(\bar{u})}{\sqrt{D}} W(\xi).\tag{7.151}$$

This establishes, at least to our satisfaction, that  $w$  is a well-behaved, bounded function of  $\epsilon$ , and we are done.

Suppose that instead of a long thin cylinder, the region of interest lies between two flat two-dimensional membranes separated by the distance  $L$ , where  $L^2 \ll D$ . Suppose also that  $Du_z = -J_0$  and  $Du_z = J_1$  on the lower and upper membranes, respectively,

where  $z$  represents the vertical spatial coordinate. In this case, one can show using the same methodology (Exercise 19) that the mean field equation is

$$\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} = D\nabla^2 \bar{u} + \frac{1}{L}(J_1(\bar{u}) + J_0(\bar{u})) + f(\bar{u}) + O\left(\frac{L}{\sqrt{D}}\right), \quad (7.152)$$

where  $\bar{u} = \frac{1}{L} \int_0^L u dz$ , and  $\nabla^2$  represents the two-dimensional Laplacian operator.

## 7.8.2 Homogenization; Effective Diffusion Coefficients

As noted in Section 7.3, to take the details of the microstructure of the cytoplasmic and ER boundaries into account is both impractical and of little use. Instead, there is a need to find a mean field description of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentrations that uses an effective diffusion coefficient. This need to avoid the details of the microstructure is evident in many other contexts. For example, as is described in Chapter 12, there is a need for equations of action potential propagation in cardiac tissue that do not rely on the details of cellular structure and its interconnectedness.

Homogenization is the very powerful technique by which this is accomplished. In this section we show how homogenization is used to find averaged, or mean field, equations with an effective diffusion coefficient. This same technique is invoked in Chapter 12 to find effective conductances for cardiac tissue. Finally, this technique allows for the derivation of the bidomain equations for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and the bidomain equations for the cardiac action potential.

As a warmup problem, suppose a substance is reacting and diffusing along a one-dimensional region, and that the diffusion coefficient is rapidly varying in space. To be specific, suppose  $u$  is governed by the reaction-diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( D\left(\frac{x}{\epsilon}\right) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right) + f(u). \quad (7.153)$$

Here  $x$  is dimensionless,  $D(x)$  is a periodic function of period one and of order one, and  $\epsilon$  is small. We expect that  $u$  should have some average or mean field behavior with a characteristic length scale of order one, with small variations from this mean field that are of order  $\epsilon$ .

To explore this possibility, we introduce two variables,

$$z = x, \quad \xi = \frac{x}{\epsilon}, \quad (7.154)$$

which we treat as independent variables. From the chain rule,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} + \frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi}, \quad (7.155)$$

and the original partial differential equation (7.153) becomes

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( D(\xi) \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \right) \right) + \frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( D(\xi) \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \right) \right) + f(u). \quad (7.156)$$

While this equation is clearly more intricate than (7.134), its structure is essentially the same. Thus the calculation that follows is the same as that of the previous section. That is, we seek a solution of (7.156) of the form

$$u = \bar{u} + \epsilon w, \quad (7.157)$$

where  $\bar{u}$  is independent of  $\xi$ , and  $w$  is a periodic function of  $\xi$  with zero mean value,  $\int_0^1 w d\xi = 0$ . However, rather than applying the projection operators and then finding power series solutions of these, it is slightly more convenient (and in this case equivalent) to seek power series solutions of (7.156) directly. That is, we set  $\bar{u} = u_0 + \epsilon u_1 + O(\epsilon^2)$ , and  $w = w_1 + \epsilon w_2 + O(\epsilon^2)$ , substitute these into (7.156), collect terms of like powers of  $\epsilon$ , resulting in a hierarchy of equations to be solved,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( D(\xi) \left( \frac{\partial w_1}{\partial \xi} + \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial z} \right) \right) = 0, \quad (7.158)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( D(\xi) \frac{\partial w_2}{\partial \xi} \right) &= \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( D(\xi) \left( \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w_1}{\partial \xi} \right) \right) \\ &\quad - \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \left( D(\xi) \left( \frac{\partial w_1}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial u_1}{\partial z} \right) \right) \\ &\quad - f(u_0). \end{aligned} \quad (7.159)$$

The first of these is readily solved by direct integration. We define  $W(\xi)$  to be the periodic function with zero mean that satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{dW}{d\xi} = \frac{R}{\bar{R}} - 1, \quad (7.160)$$

where  $R = \frac{1}{D}$  and  $\bar{R} = \int_0^1 R d\xi$ . Then

$$w_1 = -W(\xi) \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial z}. \quad (7.161)$$

The function  $W(\xi)$  determines the small-scale structure of the solution.

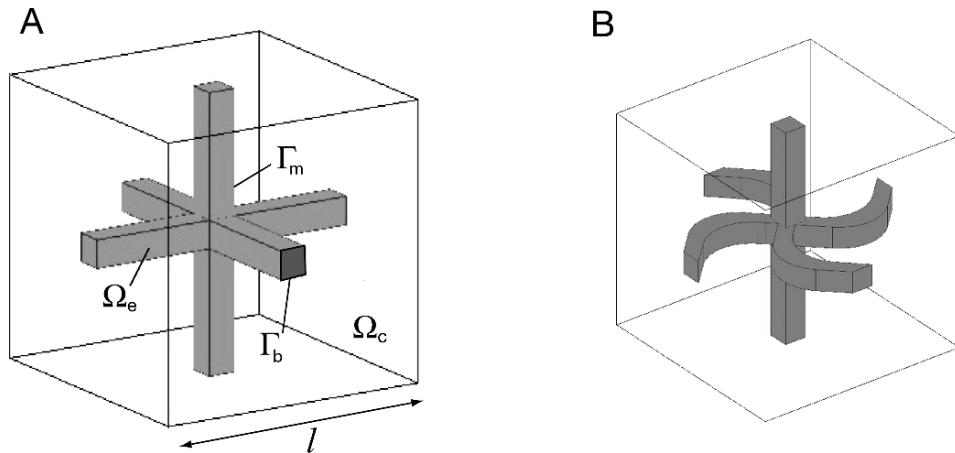
Next, we examine (7.159) and observe that  $w_2$  can be periodic only if the right-hand side of this equation has zero average with respect to  $\xi$ . Thus, it must be that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial t} &= \int_0^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left( D(\xi) \left( \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial w_1}{\partial \xi} \right) \right) d\xi + f(u_0) \\ &= D_{\text{eff}} \frac{\partial^2 u_0}{\partial z^2} + f(u_0), \end{aligned} \quad (7.162)$$

where

$$D_{\text{eff}} = \frac{1}{\bar{R}}. \quad (7.163)$$

Equation (7.162) is the mean field equation we seek, and  $D_{\text{eff}}$  is the effective diffusion coefficient.



**Figure 7.26** Two possible ER microscale structures. The more complicated structure in B results in a nonisotropic effective diffusion tensor.

Homogenization for the full three-dimensional problem follows the same menu. We suppose that a substance is reacting and diffusing in a subregion of three-dimensional space that is subdivided into small periodic subunits  $\Omega$ , called the microstructure, which are each contained in a small rectangular box. The region  $\Omega$  is further subdivided into a cytoplasmic region,  $\Omega_c$ , and an ER region,  $\Omega_e$ , as shown in Fig. 7.26A.  $\Gamma_m$  is the membrane boundary between the ER and the cytoplasm, and  $\Gamma_b$  is the intersection of the ER with the walls of the box. Because we assume that the microdomain is repeated periodically, the ER of one box connects, through  $\Gamma_b$ , to the ER of the neighboring boxes.

We assume that the rectangular box is of length  $l$  (although the box need not be a cube), where  $l$  is much less than the natural length scale of the problem, in this case  $\Lambda = \sqrt{D}$ , the diffusion length. Thus, there are two natural length scales,  $l$  and  $\Lambda$ , and so  $\epsilon = l/\Lambda \ll 1$  is a natural small parameter. Since  $l$  is small compared to the diffusion length scale, it is reasonable to assume that the solution is nearly homogeneous in each microstructural unit, and that the microstructure causes only small perturbations to the background solution.

Now we suppose that the substance  $u$  is diffusing and reacting according to (7.133) in  $\Omega_c$ , and that the flux across  $\Gamma_m$  is  $\mathbf{n} \cdot D\nabla u = J$ . Another variable,  $v$  say, will be reacting and diffusing inside the region  $\Omega_e$ , but it is unnecessary to carry the analysis through for both variables. Again, it is convenient to assume that these equations are in units of dimensionless time, so that  $D$  has units of length<sup>2</sup>. We further assume that  $J$  is proportional to  $l$ . Notice that the total flux across  $\Gamma_m$  is proportional to the surface area, so that the total flux per unit volume is proportional to  $J/l$ . In order that this remain bounded in the limit that  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ , we assume that  $J = lj$ .

The standard procedure is to introduce two variables

$$z = \frac{x}{\Lambda}, \quad \xi = \frac{z}{\epsilon}, \quad (7.164)$$

so that  $\xi$  denotes the space variable on the microscale, and  $z$  denotes the space variable on the original, or long, scale. Treating  $z$  and  $\xi$  as independent variables, we write

$$\nabla_x = \frac{1}{\Lambda} \left( \frac{1}{\epsilon} \nabla_\xi + \nabla_z \right), \quad (7.165)$$

where the subscript denotes the space variable with which the gradient derivatives are taken. In these variables, (7.133) becomes

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \nabla_z^2 u + \frac{2}{\epsilon} \nabla_\xi \nabla_z u + \frac{1}{\epsilon^2} \nabla_\xi^2 u + f, \quad (7.166)$$

subject to the boundary condition

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot \left( \nabla_z u + \frac{1}{\epsilon} \nabla_\xi u \right) = \epsilon j \quad \text{on } \Gamma_m. \quad (7.167)$$

Notice that  $\mathbf{n}$  is a dimensionless quantity, containing only directional information about the normal to the boundary and so does not change with changes in space scale.

Once again we have a partial differential equation with the same structure as (7.134). Thus, as before, we look for a solution of (7.166) in the form

$$u = \bar{u}(z, t, \epsilon) + \epsilon w(\xi, z, t, \epsilon), \quad (7.168)$$

where  $\bar{u}$  is the background, or mean field, solution, varying only on the large space scale and independent of  $\xi$ , while  $\epsilon w$  is a correction term periodic in  $\xi$  and having zero average value in the variable  $\xi$ . Next, we seek power series representations for  $\bar{u}$  and  $w$  of the form

$$\bar{u} = u_0 + \epsilon u_1 + O(\epsilon^2), \quad w = w_1 + \epsilon w_2 + O(\epsilon^2). \quad (7.169)$$

Substituting these into (7.166) and (7.167), and equating coefficients of powers of  $\epsilon$ , gives a hierarchy of equations to be solved sequentially. The leading-order equation is

$$\nabla_\xi^2 w_1 = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega_c, \quad (7.170)$$

subject to boundary conditions

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\nabla_z u_0 + \nabla_\xi w_1) = 0 \quad \text{on } \Gamma_m, \quad (7.171)$$

and the next equation in the hierarchy is

$$\frac{\partial u_0}{\partial t} = \nabla_z^2 u_0 + 2 \nabla_\xi \nabla_z w_1 + \nabla_\xi^2 w_2 + f, \quad \text{in } \Omega_c, \quad (7.172)$$

with boundary conditions

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\nabla_z w_1 + \nabla_\xi w_2) = j \quad \text{on } \Gamma_m. \quad (7.173)$$

The first of these equations can be solved in the way derived by Bensoussan et al. (1978) by letting

$$w_1 = W(\xi) \cdot \nabla_z u_0, \quad (7.174)$$

where  $W(\xi)$  is a fundamental solution satisfying the vector differential equation

$$\nabla_\xi^2 W = 0 \quad \text{in } \Omega_c, \quad (7.175)$$

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\nabla_\xi W + I) = 0 \quad \text{on } \Gamma_m. \quad (7.176)$$

In addition, to specify  $W(\xi)$  uniquely, we require that

$$\int_{\Omega_c} W(\xi) dV_\xi = 0. \quad (7.177)$$

The mean-field equation for  $u_0$  can be found by integrating (7.172) over  $\Omega_c$ , which gives

$$\begin{aligned} V_c \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial t} &= \int_{\Omega_c} \nabla_z \cdot (\nabla_z u_0 + \nabla_\xi w_1) dV_\xi + \int_{\Omega_c} \nabla_\xi \cdot (\nabla_z w_1 + \nabla_\xi w_2) dV_\xi + \int_{\Omega_c} f dV_\xi \\ &= \int_{\Omega_c} \nabla_z \cdot (\nabla_z u_0 + \nabla_\xi W \nabla_z u_0) dV_\xi + \int_{\partial \Omega_c} \mathbf{n} \cdot (\nabla_\xi w_2 + \nabla_z w_1) dS_\xi + \int_{\Omega_c} f dV_\xi \\ &= \nabla_z \cdot \left[ \int_{\Omega_c} (I + \nabla_\xi W) \right] \nabla_z u_0 dV_\xi + \int_{\Gamma_m} j(u_0) dS_\xi + V_{\Omega_c} f(u_0). \end{aligned} \quad (7.178)$$

Note that the integral over  $\partial \Omega_c$  reduces to the integral over  $\Gamma_m$  because we require  $w_1$  and  $w_2$  to be periodic in  $\xi$ .

Equation (7.178) is a consistency condition that is required in order that  $w_2$  exist. In other words, (7.172) is a differential equation for  $w_2$  that, if  $w_2$  is to be periodic, can be solved only if a solvability or consistency condition holds (this is an application of the Fredholm alternative). The required consistency condition is found by integrating (7.172) over  $\Omega_c$  to give (7.178).

It thus follows that

$$\frac{\partial u_0}{\partial t} = \nabla_z \cdot D_{\text{eff}} \nabla_z u_0 + \frac{S_c}{V_c} j(u_0) + f(u_0), \quad (7.179)$$

where  $V_c$  and  $S_c$  denote the (dimensionless) volume and surface area of  $\Omega_c$ , respectively, and  $D_{\text{eff}}$ , the (dimensionless) effective diffusion tensor, is given by

$$D_{\text{eff}} = \frac{1}{V_c} \int_{\Omega_c} (I + \nabla_\xi W) dV_\xi. \quad (7.180)$$

Hence, for any given periodic geometry, the effective diffusion tensor (7.180) can be calculated by solving (7.175) and (7.176). Goel et al. (2006) calculated effective diffusion coefficients for a variety of possible ER microstructures. For the regular structure of Fig. 7.26A, the effective diffusion coefficient of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the cytoplasm decreases by 60% as the volume fraction of the ER increases from 0 to 0.9. The more complicated structure of Fig. 7.26B gives nonisotropic diffusion, with the diffusion coefficient in

the vertical direction about 50% larger than the diffusion coefficient in the other two directions.

### 7.8.3 Bidomain Equations

The homogenization technique described here can be applied to any spatial domain with a periodic microstructure. Thus, for example, it can be applied to intertwined intracellular and extracellular spaces, or to intertwined cytoplasmic and ER spaces. In each case, one finds descriptions of the mean fields that are defined everywhere in space, so that the two spaces are effectively comingled, hence viewed as a bidomain. The only (slight) complication is that fluxes across common boundaries must be equal in amplitude and opposite in direction. Thus, a flux into the intracellular space is a flux out of the extracellular space, or a flux into the cytoplasm is also a flux out of the ER. Furthermore, even though the domains share a common interface, their volumes are complementary so that the surface-to-volume ratios for the two spaces differ.

## 7.9 EXERCISES

---

1. Show that in a general model of intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics in a well-mixed cell, the resting cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration is independent of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange rates with the internal pools.
2. Murray (2002) discusses a simple model of CICR that has been used by a number of modelers (Cheer et al., 1987; Lane et al., 1987). In the model,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the ER is an increasing sigmoidal function of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is removed from the cytoplasm with linear kinetics. Thus,

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = L + \frac{k_1 c^2}{K + c^2} - k_2 c,$$

where  $L$  is a constant leak of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ER into the cytoplasm.

- (a) Nondimensionalize this equation. How many nondimensional parameters are there?
- (b) Show that when  $L = 0$  and  $k_1 > 2k_2$ , there are two positive steady states and determine their stability. For the remainder of this problem assume that  $k_1 > 2k_2$ .
- (c) How does the nullcline  $dc/dt = 0$  vary as the leak from the internal store increases? Show that there is a critical value of  $L$ , say  $L_c$ , such that when  $L > L_c$ , only one positive solution exists.
- (d) Fix  $L < L_c$  and suppose the solution is initially at the lowest steady state. How does  $c$  behave when small perturbations are applied to  $c$ ? How does  $c$  behave when large perturbations are applied? How does  $c$  behave when  $L$  is raised above  $L_c$  and then decreased back to zero? Plot the bifurcation diagram in the  $L, c$  phase plane, indicating the stability or instability of the branches. Is there hysteresis in this model?
3. One of the earliest models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations was the two-pool model of Goldbeter, Dupont, and Berridge (1990). They assumed that  $\text{IP}_3$  causes an influx,  $r$ , of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the cell and that this influx causes additional release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ER via an  $\text{IP}_3$ -independent

**Table 7.8** Typical parameter values for the two-pool model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations (Goldbeter et al., 1990).

$k = 10 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$K_1 = 1 \mu\text{M}$
$K_2 = 2 \mu\text{M}$	$K_3 = 0.9 \mu\text{M}$
$V_1 = 65 \mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$V_2 = 500 \mu\text{M s}^{-1}$
$k_f = 1 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$m = 2$
$n = 2$	$p = 4$

mechanism. Thus,

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = r - kc - f(c, c_e), \quad (7.181)$$

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = f(c, c_e), \quad (7.182)$$

$$f(c, c_e) = J_{\text{uptake}} - J_{\text{release}} - k_f c_e, \quad (7.183)$$

where

$$J_{\text{uptake}} = \frac{V_1 c^n}{K_1^n + c^n}, \quad (7.184)$$

$$J_{\text{release}} = \left( \frac{V_2 c_e^m}{K_2^m + c_e^m} \right) \left( \frac{c^p}{K_3^p + c^p} \right). \quad (7.185)$$

Here,  $k_f c_e$  is a leak from the ER into the cytoplasm. Typical parameter values are given in Table 7.8. (All the concentrations in this model are with respect to the total cell volume, and thus there is no need for the correction factor  $\gamma$  (cf. Equation 7.4) to take into account the difference in the ER and cytoplasmic volumes.)

- (a) Nondimensionalize these equations. How many nondimensional parameters are there?
  - (b) Show that in a closed cell (i.e., one without any interaction with the extracellular environment) the two-pool model cannot exhibit oscillations.
  - (c) How does the steady-state solution depend on influx?
  - (d) Use a bifurcation tracking program such as AUTO to plot the bifurcation diagram of this model, using  $r$  as the bifurcation parameter. Find the Hopf bifurcation points and locate the branch of stable limit cycle solutions. Plot some typical limit cycle solutions for different values of  $r$ .
4. Complete the details of the reduction of the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor model (Section 7.2.5).
  5. Write down the equations for the reduced  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor model (Section 7.2.5) when  $k_4 = k_2$  and  $k_{-4} = k_{-2}$ . Let  $h = 1 - y$ . What is the differential equation for  $h$ ? Write it in the form

$$\tau_h \frac{dh}{dt} = h_\infty - h. \quad (7.186)$$

Derive this simplified model directly from the state diagram in Fig. 7.8.

6. Write down a reaction scheme like that of Fig. 7.8, but assuming that two  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions inactivate the receptor in a cooperative fashion. Assume a simple model of cooperativity,



for  $i, j = 0$  or  $1$ , and assume that the group I and group II states are each in quasi-steady state. Derive the model equations.

7. Starting with a basic scheme like that of Fig. 7.5 one can construct a large number of variants, each of which has a similar steady-state flux. The purpose of this exercise is to investigate two simple variants of the basic model, and show that the flux is similar for each. To distinguish between these models on the basis of experimental data is, in general, quite difficult.
- First, calculate the expressions for  $\alpha_1$  to  $\alpha_4$  in (7.7) and for  $\beta_1$  to  $\beta_4$  in (7.7). (Use of a symbolic manipulation program such as Maple is, as usual, recommended.)
  - Extend the ATPase model of Section 7.2.4 by assuming that the two  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions bind sequentially, not simultaneously, and calculate the flux.
  - Modify the model still further by assuming that the binding of the second  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion is much faster than binding of the first, and calculate the flux.
  - Compare these three different expressions for the steady-state flux. Are experimental data of the steady-state flux sufficient to distinguish between these models?
8. Does the binding diagram in Fig. 7.8 satisfy the principle of detailed balance (Section 1.3)?
9. In 2006 Domijan et al. constructed a model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations that uses a simple model of the IPR (based on an earlier model of Atri et al., 1993):

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = J_{\text{release}} - J_{\text{serca}} + \delta(J_{\text{in}} - J_{\text{pm}}), \quad (7.188)$$

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = \gamma(J_{\text{serca}} - J_{\text{release}}) \quad (7.189)$$

$$\tau_n \frac{dn}{dt} = \frac{k_2^2}{k_2^2 + c^2} - n, \quad (7.190)$$

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = v \left( \frac{c + (1 - \alpha)k_4}{c + k_4} \right) - \beta p, \quad (7.191)$$

where

$$J_{\text{release}} = \left[ k_{\text{flux}} \left( \mu_0 + \frac{\mu_1 p}{k_\mu + p} \right) n \left( b + \frac{V_1 c}{k_1 + c} \right) \right] (c_e - c), \quad (7.192)$$

$$J_{\text{serca}} = \frac{V_e c}{k_e + c}, \quad (7.193)$$

$$J_{\text{pm}} = \frac{V_p c^2}{k_p^2 + c^2}, \quad (7.194)$$

$$J_{\text{in}} = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \frac{v}{\beta}. \quad (7.195)$$

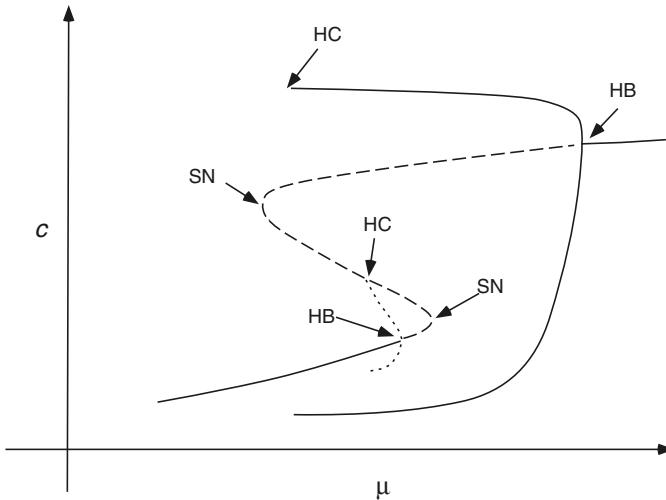
**Table 7.9** Parameters of the model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in Exercise 9.

$\delta$	= 0.01	$k_1$	= 1.1 $\mu\text{M}$
$\gamma$	= 5.405	$k_2$	= 0.7 $\mu\text{M s}^{-1}$
$k_{\text{flux}}$	= 6.0 $\mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$k_\mu$	= 4 $\mu\text{M}$
$V_p$	= 24 $\mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$\mu_0$	= 0.567
$k_p$	= 0.4 $\mu\text{M}$	$\mu_1$	= 0.433
$V_e$	= 20 $\mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$b$	= 0.111
$k_e$	= 0.06 $\mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$V_1$	= 0.889
$\alpha_1$	= 1 $\mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$\alpha_2$	= 0.2 $\text{s}^{-1}$
$\beta$	= 0.08 $\text{s}^{-1}$	$k_4$	= 1.1 $\mu\text{M}$

Typical parameter values are given in Table 7.9.

- (a) Explain the physiological basis of each term in the model.
  - (b) What does the parameter  $v$  represent?
  - (c) The model takes quite different forms when  $\alpha = 0$  or  $\alpha = 1$ . What are the physiological assumptions behind each of these forms?
  - (d) Using AUTO, plot the bifurcation diagram of the model using  $v$  as the bifurcation parameter. How are the bifurcation diagrams different for  $\alpha = 0$  and  $\alpha = 1$ ? (Do not plot every detail of the bifurcation diagrams, but try to find the main branches.)
  - (e) How would you model a pulse of  $\text{IP}_3$  applied by the experimentalist?
  - (f) How does the model respond to an external pulse of  $\text{IP}_3$ ? What is the difference between the responses when  $\alpha = 0$  and  $\alpha = 1$ ?
10. Suppose that a model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations has two variables,  $c$  and  $n$ . Suppose further that the bifurcation diagram of this model has the structure shown in Fig. 7.27, as a function of some parameter,  $\mu$ . (This basic structure is common to many models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics.) Sketch the phase planes for  $\mu$  below, at, and above each bifurcation point.
11. (a) Plot the nullclines of the model of CICR in bullfrog sympathetic neurons (Section 7.2.9) and show that they are both N-shaped curves.
- (b) Rewrite the model in terms of  $c$  and  $c_t = c + \frac{c_e}{\gamma}$  and draw the phase portrait and nullclines of the model in these new variables.
- (c) Plot the bifurcation diagram of the model of CICR in bullfrog sympathetic neurons (Section 7.2.9) using the external  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration  $c_o$  as the bifurcation parameter. Verify the behavior shown in Fig. 7.14, that the period but not the amplitude of the oscillations is sensitive to  $c_o$ .
12. Generalize (7.76) to the case of multiple buffers, both mobile and immobile.
13. Prove that (7.87) has a traveling wave solution that is a transition between  $W_1$  and  $W_3$  if and only if

$$\int_{W_1}^{W_3} f(\phi(w)) dw > 0. \quad (7.196)$$



**Figure 7.27** Typical bifurcation diagram of the model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in Exercise 10 (not drawn to scale). HB denotes a Hopf bifurcation, SN denotes a saddle-node bifurcation, HC denotes a homoclinic bifurcation.

14. By looking for solutions to (7.70) and (7.71) of the form  $c = A \exp(\xi/\lambda)$ ,  $b = B \exp(\xi/\lambda)$ , where  $\lambda$  is the space constant of the wave front and  $\xi = x + st$ , show that the speed of the wave  $s$  is related to the space constant of the wave front by

$$s = \frac{D_c}{\lambda} + \lambda \left[ f'(0) - \frac{k_+ b_t (\lambda s - D_b)}{\lambda^2 k_- + \lambda s - D_b} \right]. \quad (7.197)$$

What is the equation in the limit  $k_+, k_- \rightarrow \infty$ , with  $k_-/k_+ = K$ ? Hence show that for the generalized bistable equation,

$$\lambda s < D_{\text{eff}}. \quad (7.198)$$

15. Repeat the analysis of Section 7.4.1, without assuming that  $b_t$  is constant. Under what conditions may we assume that  $b_t$  is constant?
16. Develop a formal asymptotic expansion (following the method used in the appendix) to homogenize the equation

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - kc + g\left(\frac{x}{L}\right)f(c), \quad (7.199)$$

where  $g(y)$  is periodic with period 1, in the limit that  $\frac{L^2 k}{D_c} \ll 1$ . Show that the averaged equation is

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2} - kc + Gf(c), \quad (7.200)$$

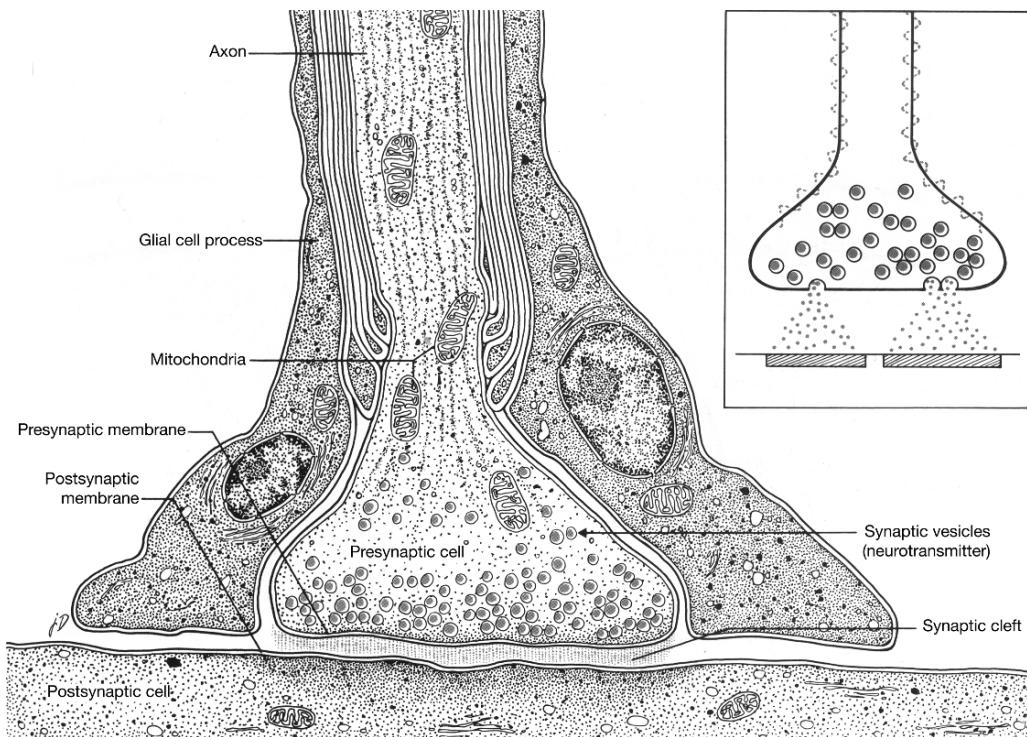
where  $G = \frac{1}{L} \int_0^L g(x) dx$ .

17. (a) Find conditions on  $A$  guaranteeing that there are traveling waves of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release in the spatially homogenized equation (7.97) with the cubic release function (7.94).  
(b) Find conditions on  $A$  guaranteeing that there are traveling waves of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release in the spatially homogenized equation (7.97) with the piecewise-linear release function (7.95).
  18. Find the solution of (7.150) for a circular domain of radius 1. In other words, solve the boundary value problem
$$\nabla^2 W = 2, \quad (7.201)$$
on a circle of radius 1, subject to the boundary condition  $n \cdot \nabla W = 1$ , and requiring  $W$  to have zero average value. (Why is 2 the correct right-hand side for this partial differential equation?)
  19. Suppose that a substance  $u$  reacts and diffuses in a region between two flat two-dimensional membranes separated by the distance  $L$ , where  $L^2 \ll D$  (where  $D$  is in units of length $^2$ ). Suppose also that  $Du_z = -J_0$  and  $Du_z = J_1$  on the lower and upper membranes, respectively, where  $z$  represents the vertical spatial coordinate. Derive the mean field equation for the evolution of  $u$  (7.152), and find the leading-order correction to the mean field.
-

# Intercellular Communication

For multicellular organisms to form and operate, cellular behavior must be vastly more complex than what is seen at the single-cell level. Not only must cells regulate their own growth and behavior, they must also communicate and interact with their neighbors to ensure the correct behavior of the entire organism. Intercellular communication occurs in a variety of ways, ranging from hormonal communication on the level of the entire body to localized interactions between individual cells. The discussion in this chapter is limited to cellular communication processes that occur between cells or over a region of a small number of cells. Other forms of communication and control, such as hormone feedback systems, are described in other chapters.

There are two primary ways that cells communicate with neighbors. Many cells (muscle and cardiac cells for example) are connected to their immediate neighbors by gap junctions in the cell membrane that form a relatively nonselective, low-resistance pore through which electrical current or chemical species can flow. Hence, a gap junction is also called an *electrical synapse*. The second means of communication is through a *chemical synapse*, in which the message is mediated by the release of a chemical from one cell and detected by receptors on its neighbor. Electrically active cells such as neurons typically communicate via chemical synapses, which are thus a crucial feature of the nervous system. Chemical synapses are considerably more complex than electrical synapses, and as a result, most of this chapter is devoted to them.



**Figure 8.1** Schematic diagram of a chemical synapse. The inset shows vesicles of neurotransmitter being released into the synaptic cleft. (Davis et al., 1985, Fig. 8-11, p. 135.)

## 8.1 Chemical Synapses

At a chemical synapse (Fig. 8.1) the nerve axon and the postsynaptic cell are in close apposition, being separated by the *synaptic cleft*, which is about 500 angstroms wide. When an action potential reaches the presynaptic nerve terminal, it opens voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, leading to an influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the nerve terminal. Increased  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  causes the release of a neurotransmitter, which diffuses across the synaptic cleft, binds to receptors on the postsynaptic cell, and initiates changes in its membrane potential. The neurotransmitter is then removed from the synaptic cleft by diffusion and hydrolysis.

There are over 40 different types of synaptic transmitters, with differing effects on the postsynaptic membrane. For example, acetylcholine (ACh) binds to ACh receptors, which in skeletal muscle act as cation channels. Thus, when they open, the flow of the cation causes a change in the membrane potential, either depolarizing or hyperpolarizing the membrane. If the channel is a  $\text{Na}^+$  channel, then the flow is inward and depolarizing, whereas if the channel is a  $\text{K}^+$  channel, then the flow is outward and hyperpolarizing. Other receptors, such as those for  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA), open

anion channels (mainly chloride), thus hyperpolarizing the postsynaptic membrane, rendering it less excitable. Synapses are classified as excitatory or inhibitory according to whether they depolarize or hyperpolarize the postsynaptic membrane. Other important neurotransmitters include adrenaline (often called epinephrine), noradrenaline (often called norepinephrine), dopamine, glycine, glutamate, and serotonin. Of these, dopamine, glycine, and GABA are usually inhibitory, while glutamate and ACh are usually, but not always, excitatory.

Many of these neurotransmitters work by gating an ion channel directly, as described for ACh above. Such channels are called *agonist-controlled* or *ligand-gated* ion channels, and a simple model of an agonist-controlled channel is described in Section 3.5.4. However, not all neurotransmitters work only in this way. For example, receptors for glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter in the brain, come in two types—*ionotropic* receptors, which are agonist-controlled, and *metabotropic* receptors, which are linked to G-proteins, and act via the production of the second messenger inositol trisphosphate and the subsequent release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the endoplasmic reticulum (as described in Chapter 7).

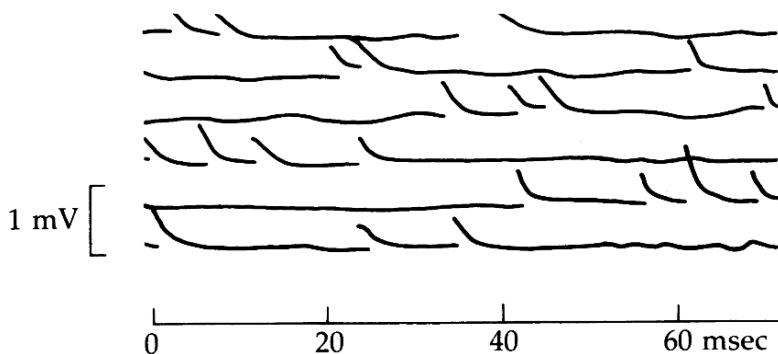
The loss of specific neurotransmitter function corresponds to certain diseases. For example, Huntington's disease, a hereditary disease characterized by flicking movements at individual joints progressing to severe distortional movements of the entire body, is associated with the loss of certain GABA-secreting neurons in the brain. The resulting loss of inhibition is believed to allow spontaneous outbursts of neural activity leading to distorted movements.

Similarly, Parkinson's disease results from widespread destruction of dopamine-secreting neurons in the basal ganglia. The disease is associated with rigidity of much of the musculature of the body, involuntary tremor of involved areas, and a serious difficulty in initiating movement. Although the causes of these abnormal motor effects are uncertain, the loss of dopamine inhibition could lead to overexcitation of many muscles, hence rigidity, or to lack of inhibitory control of feedback circuits with high feedback gain, leading to oscillations, i.e., muscular tremor.

### 8.1.1 Quantal Nature of Synaptic Transmission

Chemical synapses are typically small and inaccessible, crowded together in very large numbers in the brain. However, neurons also make synapses with skeletal muscle cells, and these are usually much easier to isolate and study. For this reason, a great deal of the early experimental and theoretical work on synaptic transmission was performed on the neuromuscular junction, where the axon of a motorneuron forms a chemical synapse with a skeletal muscle fiber. The response of the muscle cell to a neuronal stimulus is called an *end-plate potential*, or epp.

In 1952 Fatt and Katz discovered that when the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the synaptic cleft was very low, an action potential stimulated only a small end-plate potential (Fig. 8.2). Further, these miniature end-plate potentials appeared to consist of multiples of an underlying minimum epp of the same amplitude as an epp arising spontaneously,



**Figure 8.2** Miniature end-plate potentials (epp's) in the frog neuromuscular junction. Each epp has an amplitude of around 1 mV and results from the independent release of a single quantum of ACh. (Kuffler et al., 1984, p. 251, reproducing a figure of Fatt and Katz, 1952.)

i.e., due to random activity other than an action potential. Their findings suggested that an epp is made up of a large number of identical building blocks each of which is of small amplitude.

It is now known that quantal synaptic transmission results from the packaging of ACh into discrete vesicles. Each nerve terminal contains a large number of synaptic vesicles that contain ACh. Upon stimulation, these vesicles fuse with the cell membrane, releasing their contents into the synaptic cleft. Even in the absence of stimulation, background random activity can cause vesicles to fuse with the cell membrane and release their contents. The epp seen in spontaneous activity results from the release of the contents of a single vesicle, while the miniature epp's result from the fusion of a small integer number of vesicles, and thus appear in multiples of the spontaneous epp.

Based on their observations in frog muscle, del Castillo and Katz (1954) proposed a probabilistic model of ACh release. Their model was later applied to mammalian neuromuscular junctions by Boyd and Martin (1956). The model is based on the assumption that the synaptic terminal of the neuron consists of a large number, say  $n$ , of releasing units, each of which releases a fixed amount of ACh with probability  $p$ . If each releasing site operates independently, then the number of quanta of ACh that is released by an action potential is binomially distributed. The probability that  $k$  releasing sites fire (i.e., release a quantum of ACh) is the probability that  $k$  sites fire and the remaining sites do not, and so is given by  $p^k(1-p)^{n-k}$ . Since  $k$  sites can be chosen from  $n$  total sites in  $n!/[k!(n-k)!]$  ways, it follows that

$$\text{Probability } k \text{ sites fire} = P(k) = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} p^k (1-p)^{n-k}. \quad (8.1)$$

Under normal conditions,  $p$  is large (and furthermore, the assumption of independent release sites is probably inaccurate). However, under conditions of low external  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and high  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ,  $p$  is small. This is because  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry into the synapse is required for the release of a quantum of ACh. If only a small amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is able to enter (because

the external  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration is low), the probability of transmitter release is small. If  $n$  is correspondingly large, while  $np = m$  remains fixed, the binomial distribution can be approximated by a Poisson distribution. That is,

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(k) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} \left( \frac{m}{n} \right)^k \left( 1 - \frac{m}{n} \right)^{n-k} \right] \\ &= \frac{m^k}{k!} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{n!}{n^k(n-k)!} \left( 1 - \frac{m}{n} \right)^{n-k} \right] \\ &= \frac{m^k}{k!} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( 1 - \frac{m}{n} \right)^n \\ &= \frac{e^{-m} m^k}{k!},\end{aligned}\tag{8.2}$$

which is the Poisson distribution with mean, or expected value,  $m$ .

There are two ways to estimate  $m$ . First, notice that  $P(0) = e^{-m}$ , so that

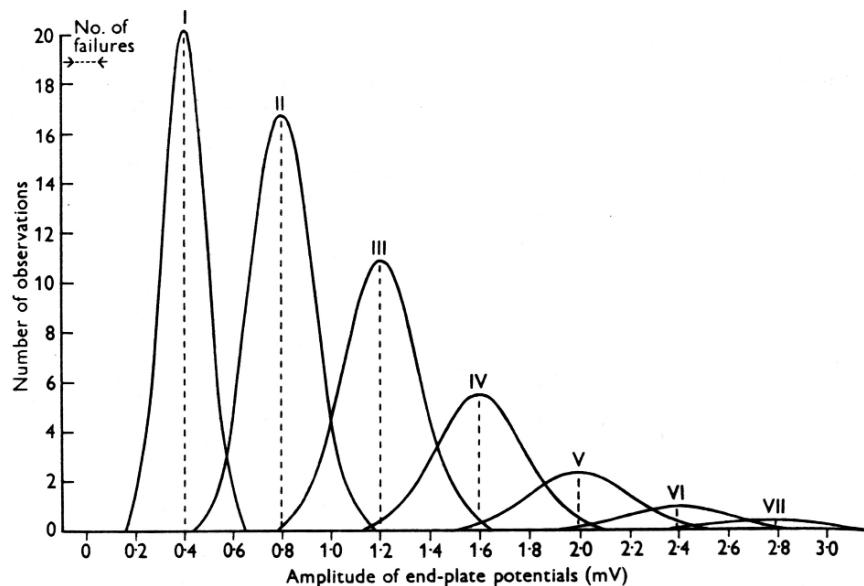
$$e^{-m} = \frac{\text{number of action potentials with no epp's}}{\text{total number of action potentials}}.\tag{8.3}$$

Second, according to the assumptions of the model, a spontaneous epp results from the release of a single quantum of ACh, and a miniature epp is a linear sum of spontaneous epp's. Thus,  $m$  can be calculated by dividing the mean amplitude of a miniature epp response by the mean amplitude of a spontaneous epp, giving the mean number of quanta in a miniature epp, which should be  $m$ . As del Castillo and Katz showed, these two estimates of  $m$  agree well, which confirms the model hypotheses.

The spontaneous epp's are not of constant amplitude, because the amounts of ACh released from each vesicle are not identical. In the inset to Fig. 8.4 is shown the amplitude distribution of spontaneous epp's. To a good approximation, the amplitudes of single-unit release, denoted by  $A_1(x)$ , are normally distributed (i.e., a Gaussian distribution), with mean  $\mu$  and variance  $\sigma^2$ . From this it is possible to calculate the amplitude distribution of the miniature epp's, as follows. If  $k$  vesicles are released, the amplitude distribution, denoted by  $A_k(x)$ , will be normally distributed with mean  $k\mu$  and variance  $k\sigma^2$ , being the sum of  $k$  independent, normal distributions each of mean  $\mu$  and variance  $\sigma^2$  (Fig. 8.3). Summing the distributions for  $k = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ , and noting that the probability of  $A_k(x)$  is  $P(k)$ , gives the amplitude distribution

$$\begin{aligned}A(x) &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} P(k) A_k(x) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-m} m^k}{k! \sqrt{k}} \exp \left[ \frac{-(x - k\mu)^2}{2k\sigma^2} \right],\end{aligned}\tag{8.4}$$

which is graphed in Fig. 8.4. There are clear peaks corresponding to 1, 2, or 3 released quanta, but these peaks are smeared out and flattened by the normal distribution of amplitudes. There is excellent agreement between the theoretical prediction and the



**Figure 8.3** Theoretical distributions for epp's consisting of integer multiples of the spontaneous epp, which is the basic building block, or quantum, of the epp. Summation of these curves for all integral numbers of quanta gives the theoretical prediction for the overall amplitude distribution, (8.4), which is plotted in the next figure. (Boyd and Martin, 1956, Fig. 9.)

experimental observations, lending further support to the quantal model of synaptic transmission (del Castillo and Katz, 1954; Boyd and Martin, 1956).

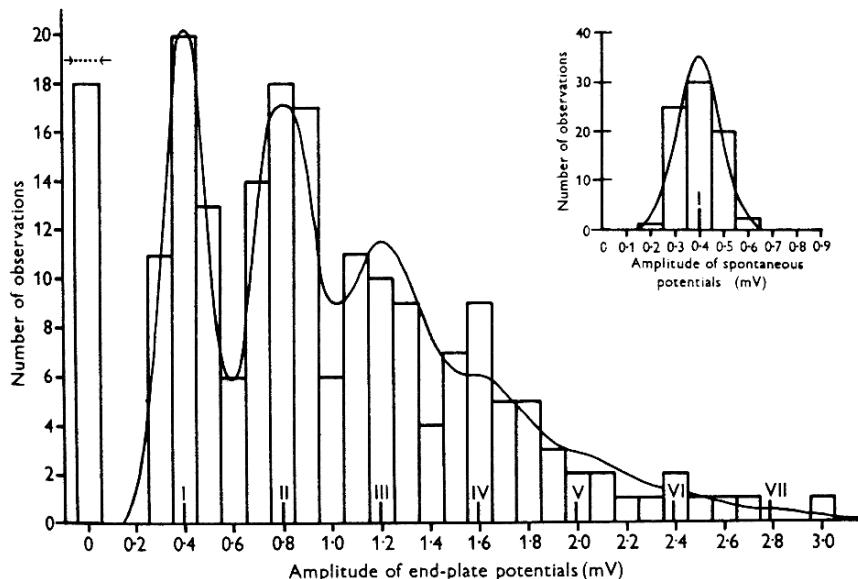
### 8.1.2 Presynaptic Voltage-Gated Calcium Channels

Chemical synaptic transmission begins when an action potential reaches the nerve terminal and opens voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, leading to an influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and consequent neurotransmitter release. Based on voltage-clamp data from the squid giant synapse, Llinás et al. (1976) constructed a model of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current and its relation to synaptic transmission.

When the presynaptic voltage is stepped up and clamped at a constant level, the presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current  $I_{\text{Ca}}$  increases in a sigmoidal fashion. To model these data, we assume that the voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel consists of  $n$  identical, independent subunits, each of which can be in one of two states, S and O. Only when all subunits are in the state O does the channel admit  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current. Hence



and the probability that a channel is open is proportional to  $o^n$  where  $o$  is the probability that a subunit is in the open state. To incorporate the voltage dependence of the channel,



**Figure 8.4** Amplitude distribution of miniature epp's. The histogram gives the frequency of the miniature epp as a function of its amplitude, as measured experimentally. The smooth curve is a fit of the theoretical prediction (8.4). The inset shows the amplitude distribution of spontaneous epp's: the smooth curve is a fit of the normal distribution to the data. (Boyd and Martin, 1956, Fig. 8.)

the opening and closing rate constants  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  are assumed to be functions of voltage of the form

$$k_1 = k_1^0 \exp\left(\frac{qz_1 V}{kT}\right), \quad k_2 = k_2^0 \exp\left(\frac{qz_2 V}{kT}\right), \quad (8.6)$$

where  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant,  $T$  is the absolute temperature,  $V$  is the membrane potential,  $q$  is the positive elementary electric charge,  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are the number of charges that move across the width of the membrane as  $S \rightarrow O$  and  $O \rightarrow S$  respectively, and  $k_1^0$  and  $k_2^0$  are constants. This is the same type of expression as that for the rate constant seen in Chapter 3 (for example, (3.44) and (3.45)). In Chapter 3,  $z$  referred to the number of charges on each ion crossing the membrane by passing through a channel. In this model,  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  denote charges that cross the membrane as a result of a change in the conformation of the channel as it opens or closes. In either case, the result of  $z$  charges crossing the membrane is the same, and we have a simple and plausible way to incorporate voltage dependence into the rate constants.

From (8.5) it follows that

$$\frac{do}{dt} = k_1(V)(1 - o) - k_2(V)o. \quad (8.7)$$

We denote the steady state of  $o$  by  $\hat{o}$ ,

$$\hat{o}(V) = \frac{k_1(V)}{k_1(V) + k_2(V)}, \quad (8.8)$$

and assume that the membrane potential jumps instantaneously from  $V_0$  to  $V_1$  at time  $t = 0$ . We also set  $o(t = 0) = \hat{o}(V_0)$ . Then the solution of (8.7) is

$$o(t) = \frac{k_1}{k_1 + k_2} (1 - \exp[-(k_1 + k_2)t]) + \hat{o}(V_1) \exp[-(k_1 + k_2)t], \quad (8.9)$$

where  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  are evaluated at  $V_0$ . Now we assume that the single-channel current for an open  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel,  $i$ , is given by the Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz current equation (2.123). Then

$$i = P_{\text{Ca}} \cdot \frac{4F^2}{RT} \cdot V \cdot \frac{c_i - c_e \exp(\frac{-2FV}{RT})}{1 - \exp(\frac{-2FV}{RT})}, \quad (8.10)$$

where  $c_i$  and  $c_e$  are the internal and external  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentrations respectively, and  $P_{\text{Ca}}$  is the permeability of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel. Note that an inward flux of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  gives a negative current. Finally,  $I_{\text{Ca}}$  is the product of the number of open channels with the single-channel current, and so

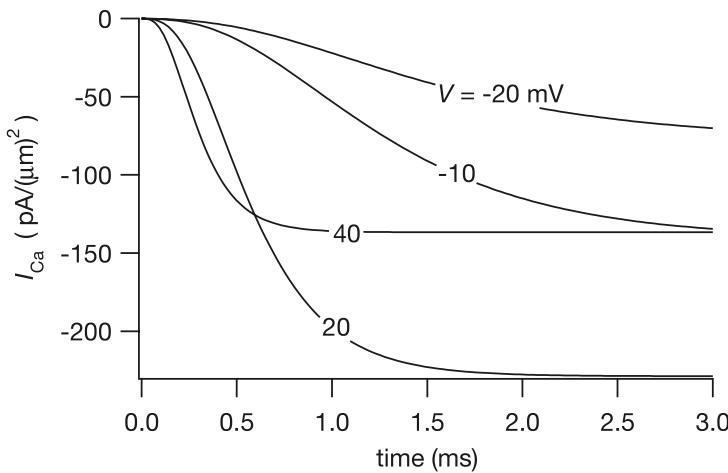
$$I_{\text{Ca}} = s_0 i o^n, \quad (8.11)$$

where  $s_0$  is the total number of channels.

By fitting such curves to experimental data, Llinás et al. determined that the best-fit values for the unknowns are  $n = 5$ ,  $k_1^0 = 2 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ ,  $k_2^0 = 1 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ ,  $z_1 = 1$ , and  $z_2 = 0$ . Hence, the best-fit parameters imply that the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel consists of 5 independent subunits, that the conversion of O to S is independent of voltage ( $z_2 = 0$ ), but that the conversion of S to O involves the movement of a single charge across the membrane ( $z_1 = 1$ ) and is thus dependent on the membrane potential.

Typical responses are shown in Fig. 8.5. To plot the curves shown here we used the fixed parameters  $c_i = 0.1 \mu\text{M}$ ,  $c_e = 40 \text{ mM}$ ,  $s_0 = 20$ ,  $P_{\text{Ca}} = 10 \mu\text{m s}^{-1}$ ,  $V_0 = -70 \text{ mV}$ . (The internal  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration is much smaller than the external concentration, so that the exact number used makes no essential difference to the result. See Exercise 1.) Note that the responses speed up as the voltage step increases, but the plateau level reaches a maximum (in absolute value) and then declines as the size of the voltage step is increased further. This is because of two competing effects that are discussed below.

Because the conversion of a closed subunit to an open subunit involves the movement of a charge across the cell membrane, there must be a current associated with channel opening, i.e., a gating current. This is generally the case when the rate constants for conformational changes of a channel protein are voltage-dependent, and these gating currents have been measured experimentally. We do not discuss gating currents any further; the interested reader is referred to Hille (2001) and Armstrong and Bezanilla (1973, 1974, 1977).



**Figure 8.5** Presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  currents in response to presynaptic voltage steps in a model of squid stellate ganglion.

### Synaptic Suppression

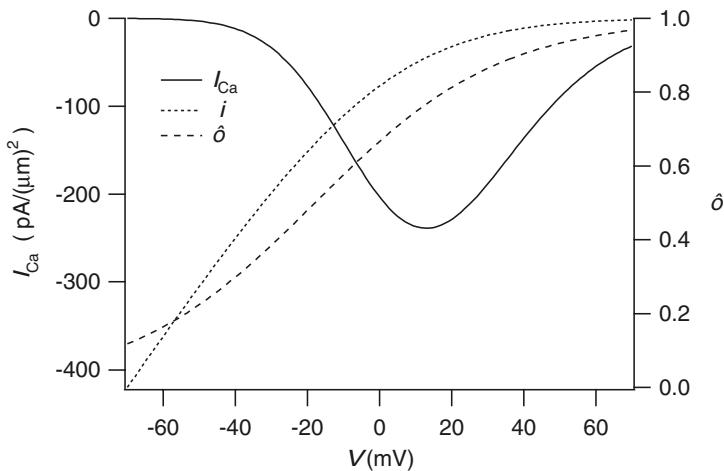
At steady state, the percentage of open channels is

$$(o(t = \infty))^5 = \left( \frac{k_1}{k_1 + k_2} \right)^5, \quad (8.12)$$

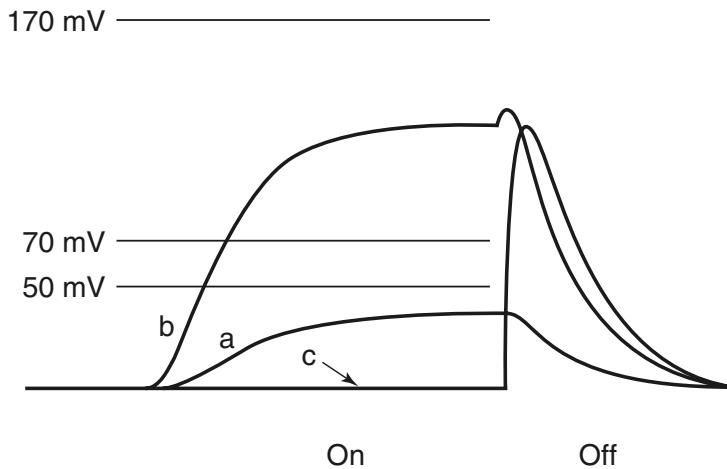
which is an increasing function of  $V$ . However, the single-channel current (8.10) is a decreasing function of  $V$ . Thus, the steady-state  $I_{\text{Ca}}$ , being a product of these two functions, is a bell-shaped function of  $V$ , as illustrated in Fig. 8.6. There are two time scales in the model; the single channel current depends instantaneously on the voltage, while the number of open channels is controlled by the voltage on a slower time scale. When the voltage is stepped up, the single-channel current decreases instantaneously. However, since there are so few channels open, the instantaneous decrease in the single-channel current has little effect on the total current. On a longer time scale, the channels gradually open in response to the increase in voltage, and this results in the slow monotonic responses to a positive step seen in Fig. 8.5. Of course, if the single-channel current is reduced to zero, no increase in the current is seen as the channels begin to open.

In response to a step *decrease* in voltage, the single-channel  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current increases instantaneously, but in contrast to the previous case where there were few channels open before the stimulus, there are now many open channels. Hence, the instantaneous increase in the single-channel current results in a large and fast increase in the total current. Over a longer time scale, the decrease in the voltage leads to a slow decrease in the number of open channels, and thus a slow decrease in the total current.

These responses are illustrated in Fig. 8.7. When a small positive step is turned on and then off, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current  $I_{\text{Ca}}$  responds with a monotonic increase followed by

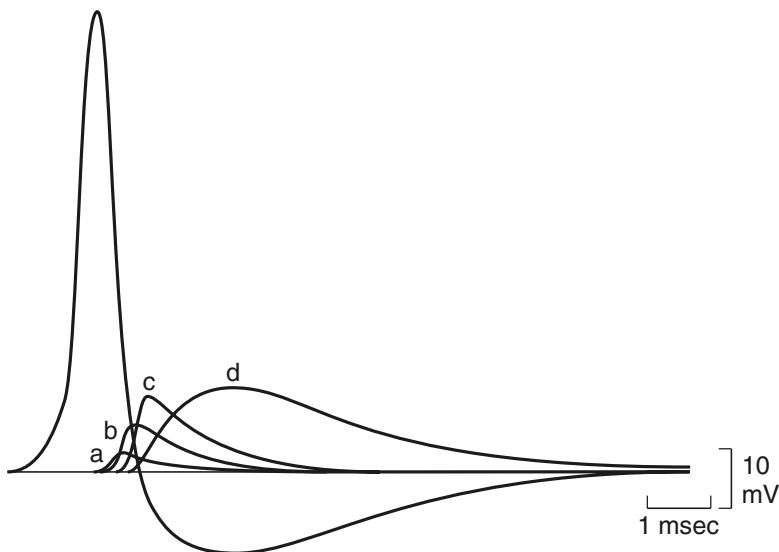


**Figure 8.6** Steady-state  $I_{Ca}$ ,  $i$  and  $\hat{\omega}$  as functions of  $V$ . Note that the scale for  $I_{Ca}$ , and  $i$  are shown on the left while the scale for  $\hat{\omega}$  is shown on the right.  $\hat{\omega}$  increases with  $V$  while the magnitude of  $i$  decreases, their product (the steady-state  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current) is a bell-shaped curve.



**Figure 8.7** Synaptic suppression of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current. These curves are not calculated from the model in the text (they are reproduced from Llinás et al., 1976, Fig. 2D) and are used merely to demonstrate the qualitative behavior. Note that here the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current is plotted as positive, rather than negative as in Fig. 8.5. Numerical solution of the model in the text (8.7) is left for Exercise 2.

a monotonic decrease (curve a). When the step is increased to 70 mV, the increase is still monotonic, but the decrease is preceded by a small bump as the current initially increases slightly (curve b). For a large step of 150 mV, the initial response is suppressed completely as the single-channel current is essentially zero, but when this suppression



**Figure 8.8** Theoretical responses to an action potential. Using the experimentally measured action potential (the leftmost curve in the figure) as input, the model can be used to predict the time courses of (a) the proportion of open channels, (b) the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current, (c) the postsynaptic current, and (d) the postsynaptic potential. Details of how curve d is calculated are given in the text. Curve c is obtained by assuming that it has the same form as curve b, delayed by 200 ms and amplified. (Llinás et al., 1976, Fig. 2C.)

is released, a large voltage response is seen, which finally decreases to the resting state (curve c). This phenomenon is called *synaptic suppression*.

### Response to an Action Potential

So far we have analytically calculated the response of the model to a voltage step. This was possible because under voltage clamp conditions, the voltage is piecewise constant. However, a more realistic stimulus would be a time-varying voltage corresponding to an action potential at the nerve terminal. It is easiest to find the solution of (8.7) numerically, and this is shown in Fig. 8.8. Given an input  $V(t)$  that looks like an action potential, the number of open channels (curve a) and the presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current (curve b) can be calculated. Figure 8.8 also includes theoretical predictions of the postsynaptic current (curve c) and the postsynaptic membrane potential (curve d). The postsynaptic current is obtained by assuming that it has the same form as the presynaptic current, delayed by 200 ms and amplified appropriately, assumptions that are justified by experimental evidence not discussed here. The postsynaptic membrane potential is obtained by using the postsynaptic current as an input into a model electrical circuit that is described later.

Although the Llinás model provides a detailed description of the initial stages of synaptic transmission and the voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, its picture of the postsynaptic response is oversimplified. There are a number of steps between the

presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current and the postsynaptic current that in this model are assumed to be linearly related. Thus, a decrease in the postsynaptic current is the direct result of a decrease in the presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current, leading to a decrease in the concentration of neurotransmitter in the synaptic cleft. However, more detailed models of neurotransmitter kinetics show that, at least at the neuromuscular junction, this is not an accurate description.

### 8.1.3 Presynaptic Calcium Dynamics and Facilitation

One of the fundamental assumptions of the above model (and of the others in this chapter) is that neurotransmitter release is caused by the entry of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  through voltage-sensitive channels into the presynaptic neuron. However, although there is much evidence in favor of this hypothesis, there is also evidence that cannot be easily reconciled with this model. This has led to considerable controversy; some favor the *calcium hypothesis*, in which transmitter release is the direct result of the influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and the only role of voltage is to cause  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx (Fogelson and Zucker, 1985; Zucker and Fogelson, 1986; Zucker and Landò, 1986; Yamada and Zucker, 1992). Others favor the *calcium–voltage hypothesis*, in which transmitter release can be triggered directly by the presynaptic membrane potential, with  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  playing a regulatory role (Parnas and Segel, 1980; Parnas et al., 1989; Aharon et al., 1994).

The calcium/voltage controversy is particularly interesting because of the role mathematical models have played. In 1985, Fogelson and Zucker proposed a model in which the diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from an array of single channels was used to explain the duration of transmitter release and the decay of facilitation. This model was later used as the basis for a large number of other modeling studies, some showing that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion could not by itself explain all the experimental data, others showing how various refinements of the basic model could result in better agreement with experiment. Experimental and theoretical groups alike used the model as a basis for discussion, and thus, irrespective of the final verdict concerning its accuracy, the Fogelson–Zucker model is an excellent example of the value and use of modeling.

The controversy has shown no signs of abating (Parnas et al., 2002; Felmy et al., 2003), and mathematical models are playing an increasingly important role in the study of the presynaptic terminal. Two Nobel Laureates, Erwin Neher and Bert Sakmann, have both been actively involved in the construction and study of mathematical models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry, binding and diffusion in the presynaptic cell (see, for example, Meinrenken et al., 2003, and Neher, 1998a,b), and current models are now both highly detailed and closely based on experimental data.

#### Facilitation

One of the major challenges presented by presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics is the phenomenon of *facilitation*, which occurs when the amount of neurotransmitter release caused by an action potential is increased by an earlier action potential, provided that the time interval between the action potentials is not too great. There is a lot of

evidence that facilitation is primarily a presynaptic mechanism, and thus quantitative explanations have focused on the presynaptic terminal.

One of the earliest hypotheses (Katz and Miledi, 1968) was that facilitation is caused by the buildup of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the presynaptic terminal, since the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  introduced by one action potential is not completely removed before the next one comes along, and this hypothesis, in its general form, is still widely accepted.

However, although there is general agreement that buildup of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is, one way or another, responsible for facilitation, the devil is in the details; there is still no agreement as to where, or in what form, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is building up. The *residual free calcium* hypothesis claims that it is an increase in free presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  that underlies facilitation, and there is considerable evidence in support of this claim (Zucker and Regehr, 2002). For example, Kamiya and Zucker (1994) tested how facilitation responds to a rapid increase of the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffer in the cytoplasm. This rapid increase was accomplished by the photorelease of a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffer, diazo-2. They found that the fast release of diazo-2 into the presynaptic terminal causes a decrease of the synaptic response within milliseconds. Since, on this time scale, the main effect of the added buffers should be to decrease the free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, it implies that it is the resting free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration that is responsible for facilitation.

Mathematical models of the residual free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  hypothesis (Tang et al., 2000; Matveev et al., 2002; Bennett et al., 2004, 2007) have shown that this hypothesis is capable of explaining many experimental results. These models require that the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  facilitation binding site (to the vesicle release machinery) be situated at least 150 nm away from the release binding site, for if this were not so, then every action potential would saturate the facilitation binding site, leading to no increase in neurotransmitter release for subsequent action potentials. In addition, these models require low diffusion coefficients of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  close to the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel, and low diffusion coefficients of the exogenous buffer.

A similar hypothesis is that facilitation is caused by the local saturation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers close to the mouth of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel, leading to the accumulation of cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  during a train of action potentials, and thus facilitation (Klingauf and Neher, 1997). Although a mathematical model of this *buffer saturation* hypothesis (Matveev et al., 2004) can explain many experimental results (at least from the crayfish neuromuscular junction), some questions remain. Thus, although there is strong evidence that buffer saturation plays a major role in some experimental preparations (Blatow et al., 2003), in other situations the evidence is inconclusive.

The third hypothesis discussed here was, historically, the first to be proposed. In 1968, Katz and Miledi proposed that facilitation was the result of residual  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bound to the vesicle release site; i.e., if the action potentials followed upon one another too closely there would be not enough time for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to unbind, making it easier for the subsequent action potential to release neurotransmitter. Although this *residual bound calcium* hypothesis has fallen somewhat out of favor in recent years, due principally to the experiments described briefly above, in which the application of an exogenous buffer was shown to decrease the synaptic response quickly, more recent detailed

models have shown that it is, after all, consistent with this experiment (Matveev et al., 2006). Indeed, the residual bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  hypothesis is superior in some ways, as it does not suffer from the necessity of somewhat artificial requirements, such as the 150 nm separation between the release and the facilitation binding sites, or the small diffusion coefficients around the mouth of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel.

Nevertheless, the question of what causes facilitation is still far from completely resolved. As is often the case, the most likely explanation is a combination of all the above three hypotheses, each acting with different strengths depending on the exact situation.

### A Model of the Residual Bound Calcium Hypothesis

A simple model of the residual bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  hypothesis does not include any spatial information, but is based entirely on the kinetics of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding to the vesicle binding sites (Bertram et al., 1996). This simplification is justified by experimental results showing that the minimum latency between  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx and the onset of transmitter release can be as short as 200  $\mu\text{s}$ . Since the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding site must thus be close to the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel, in a simple model we can neglect  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion and assume that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entering through the channel is immediately available for binding to the vesicle binding site.

It is also assumed that transmitter release is the result of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entering through a single channel, the so-called  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -domain hypothesis. If the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels are far enough apart, or if only few open during each action potential, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  domains of individual channels are independent.

Our principal goal here is to provide a plausible explanation for the intriguing experimental observation that facilitation increases in a steplike fashion as a function of the frequency of the conditioning action potential train.

We assume that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entering through the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel is immediately available to bind to the transmitter release site, which itself consists of four independent, but not identical, gates, denoted by  $S_1$  through  $S_4$ . Gate  $S_j$  can be either closed (with probability  $C_j$ ) or open (with probability  $O_j$ ), and thus



Hence,

$$\frac{dO_j}{dt} = k_j c - \frac{O_j}{\tau_j(c)}, \quad (8.14)$$

where  $\tau_j(c) = 1/(k_j c + k_{-j})$ , and  $c$  is the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. Finally, the probability  $R$  that the release site is activated is

$$R = O_1 O_2 O_3 O_4. \quad (8.15)$$

The rate constants were chosen to give good agreement with experimental data and are shown in Table 8.1. Note that the rates of closure of  $S_3$  and  $S_4$  are much greater than

**Table 8.1** Parameter values for the binding model of synaptic facilitation (Bertram et al., 1996).

$k_1 = 3.75 \times 10^{-3} \text{ ms}^{-1} \mu\text{M}^{-1}$	$k_{-1} = 4 \times 10^{-4} \text{ ms}^{-1}$
$k_2 = 2.5 \times 10^{-3} \text{ ms}^{-1} \mu\text{M}^{-1}$	$k_{-2} = 1 \times 10^{-3} \text{ ms}^{-1}$
$k_3 = 5 \times 10^{-4} \text{ ms}^{-1} \mu\text{M}^{-1}$	$k_{-3} = 0.1 \text{ ms}^{-1}$
$k_4 = 7.5 \times 10^{-3} \text{ ms}^{-1} \mu\text{M}^{-1}$	$k_{-4} = 10 \text{ ms}^{-1}$

for  $S_1$  and  $S_2$ , and thus  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  remains bound to  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  for a relatively long time, providing the possibility of facilitation.

To demonstrate how facilitation works in this model, we suppose that a train of square pulses of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (each of width  $t_p$  and amplitude  $c_p$ ) arrives at the synapse. We want to calculate the level of activation at the end of each pulse and show that this is an increasing function of time. The reason for this increase is clear from the governing differential equation, (8.14). If a population of gates is initially closed, then a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pulse begins to open them, but when  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is absent, the gates close. If the interval between pulses is sufficiently short and the decay time constant sufficiently large, then when the next pulse arrives, some gates are already open, so the new pulse activates a larger fraction of transmitter release sites than the first, and so on.

To quantify this observation we define  $t_n$  to be the time at the end of the  $n$ th pulse,

$$t_n = t_p + (n - 1)T, \quad (8.16)$$

where  $T = t_p + t_I$  is the period and  $t_I$  is the interpulse interval. For any gate (temporarily omitting the subscript  $j$ ) with  $O(0) = 0$ , the open probability at the end of the first pulse is

$$O(t_1) = O_\infty(1 - e^{-t_p/\tau_p}), \quad (8.17)$$

where  $O_\infty = kc_p\tau_p$  is the steady-state probability corresponding to a steady concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $c_p$ , and  $\tau_p = \tau(c_p) = 1/(kc_p + k_-)$ .

Suppose that  $O(t_{n-1})$  is the open probability at the end of the  $(n-1)$ st  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pulse. During the interpulse period,  $O$  decays with rate constant  $\tau(0)$ . Thus, at the start of the  $n$ th pulse,

$$O(t_{n-1} + t_I) = O(t_{n-1})e^{-t_I/\tau(0)}, \quad (8.18)$$

and so at the end of the  $n$ th pulse,

$$\begin{aligned} O(t_n) &= O(t_{n-1})e^{-t_I/\tau(0)}e^{-t_p/\tau_p} + O_\infty(1 - e^{-t_p/\tau_p}) \\ &= \alpha O(t_{n-1}) + O(t_1), \end{aligned} \quad (8.19)$$

where  $\alpha = \exp(-(t_I/\tau(0) + t_p/\tau_p)) = \exp(-k_-(T + t_p \frac{c_p}{K}))$  and  $K = k_-/k_+$ . This is a simple difference equation for  $O(t_n)$ , which can be solved by setting  $O(t_n) = A\alpha^n + B$

and substituting into (8.19), from which we find that

$$\frac{O(t_n)}{O(t_1)} = \frac{1 - \alpha^n}{1 - \alpha}. \quad (8.20)$$

Notice that as the interpulse interval gets large ( $t_I \rightarrow \infty$ ), we have  $\alpha \rightarrow 0$ , so that  $O(t_n)$  is independent of  $n$ . On the other hand,  $\alpha$  increases if the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pulses are shortened ( $t_p$  is decreased).

Now we define facilitation as the ratio

$$F_n = \frac{R(t_n)}{R(t_1)}, \quad (8.21)$$

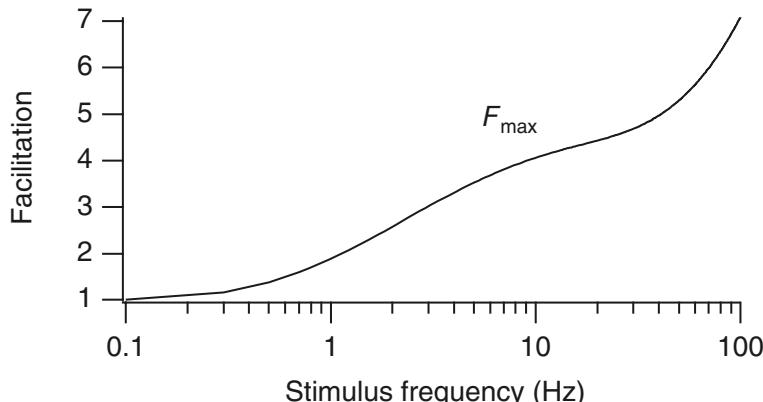
and find that

$$F_n = \left( \frac{1 - \alpha_1^n}{1 - \alpha_1} \right) \left( \frac{1 - \alpha_2^n}{1 - \alpha_2} \right) \left( \frac{1 - \alpha_3^n}{1 - \alpha_3} \right) \left( \frac{1 - \alpha_4^n}{1 - \alpha_4} \right), \quad (8.22)$$

where  $\alpha_j$  is the  $\alpha$  corresponding to gate  $j$ . For the numbers shown in Table 8.1,  $\alpha_4$  is nearly zero in the physiologically relevant range of frequencies, so it can be safely ignored. A plot of  $F_n$  against the pulse train frequency shows a steplike function, as is observed experimentally. In Fig. 8.9 is shown the maximal facilitation,

$$F_{\max} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_n = \left( \frac{1}{1 - \alpha_1} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - \alpha_2} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - \alpha_3} \right), \quad (8.23)$$

which also has a steplike appearance.



**Figure 8.9** Facilitation as a function of stimulus frequency in the binding model of synaptic facilitation, calculated using  $t_p c_p = 200 \mu\text{M ms}$ . Here  $F_{\max} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F_n$  is the maximal facilitation produced by a pulse train.

### A More Complex Version

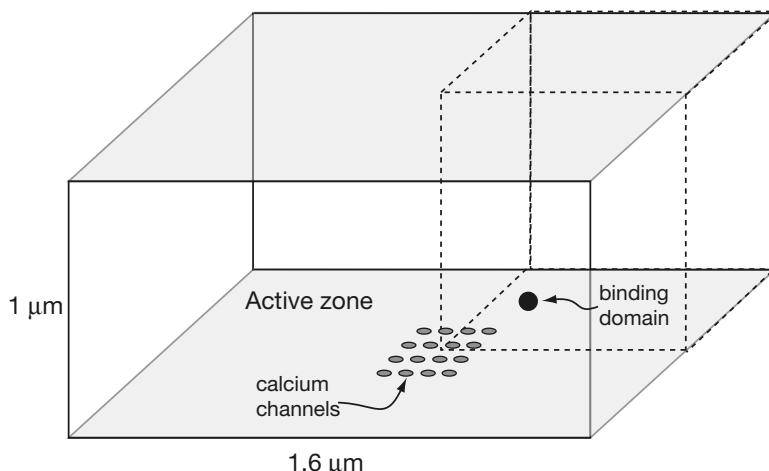
A more complex model of the residual bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  hypothesis takes into account diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the channel to the binding site and the presence of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers (Matveev et al., 2006).

We assume that each of  $n$   $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels is located at a discrete position  $r_j$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, n$ , and that there are two  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers, one with slower kinetics. Thus, following the discussion of buffers and discrete  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release in Chapter 7, we get

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D_c \nabla^2 c + \sum_{i=1}^2 k_{-,i} b_i - k_{+,i} c (b_{t,i} - b_i) + \frac{1}{2F} I_{\text{Ca}} \sum_{j=1}^n \delta(r - r_j), \quad (8.24)$$

$$\frac{\partial b_i}{\partial t} = D_b \nabla^2 b_i + \sum_{i=1}^2 k_{-,i} b_i - k_{+,i} c (b_{t,i} - b_i). \quad (8.25)$$

These equations are solved numerically on the domain illustrated in Fig. 8.10. Calcium channels are clustered into active zones, with 16 channels per zone, and the symmetry of the domain around each active zone is used to reduce the problem to one on the quarter box bordered by the dashed lines. In each quarter box there is a single  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding domain, denoted by the filled circle, which contains multiple  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding sites, all colocalized. Calcium is pumped out only on the top and bottom surfaces (shaded), while the other surfaces have no-flux boundary conditions, which assumes a regular array of active sites. Calcium pumping is assumed to be by a simple saturating mechanism, with Hill coefficient 1, and is balanced by a constant leak into the cell.



**Figure 8.10** Schematic diagram of a presynaptic active zone, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, and the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding site (adapted from Matveev et al., 2006, Fig. 1). The binding domain is situated 130 nm away from the center of the active zone, and about 55 nm from the nearest  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel.

Thus, on the shaded boundaries,

$$\nabla c \cdot \mathbf{n} = J_{\text{leak}} - \frac{V_p c}{K_p + c}, \quad (8.26)$$

where  $\mathbf{n}$  is the normal to the boundary.

The binding domain is assumed to contain two different types of binding sites, one faster (type X), one slower (type Y). The X binding site can bind two  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions, and thus



while binding sites  $Y_1$  and  $Y_2$  can bind one  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion each, and thus



If  $R$  denotes the rate of release neurotransmitter, then the rate of increase of  $R$  is assumed to be proportional to  $[\text{Ca}_2\text{X}][\text{CaY}_1][\text{CaY}_2]$ :

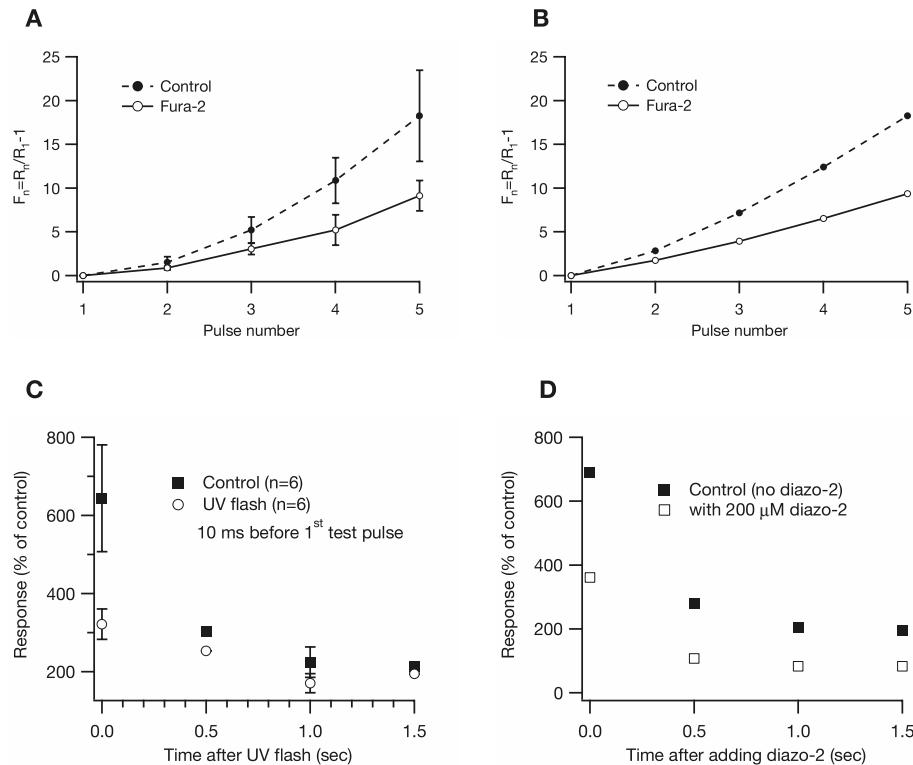
$$\frac{dR}{dt} = k_R [\text{Ca}_2\text{X}][\text{CaY}_1][\text{CaY}_2] - k_I R. \quad (8.30)$$

Typical model simulations are shown in Fig. 8.11. Significantly, these results show that, in the model, the release of an exogenous buffer by a UV flash does indeed decrease the synaptic response within milliseconds (Fig. 8.11, panels C and D). Thus, the experimental results of Kamiya and Zucker (1994), which have often been taken as evidence that the residual bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  hypothesis is incorrect, show no such thing. Although we cannot conclude that the residual bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  hypothesis is correct, neither can it be rejected on the basis of such experiments.

### 8.1.4 Neurotransmitter Kinetics

When the end-plate voltage is clamped and the nerve stimulated (so that the end-plate receives a stimulus of ACh, of undetermined form), the end-plate current first rises to a peak and then decays exponentially, with a decay time constant that is an exponential function of the voltage. Magleby and Stevens (1972) constructed a detailed model of end-plate currents in the frog neuromuscular junction that gives a mechanistic explanation of this observation and shows how a simple model of the receptor kinetics can quantitatively reproduce the observed end-plate currents.

First, Magleby and Stevens showed that the instantaneous end-plate current-voltage relationship is linear, and thus, for a fixed voltage, the end-plate current is proportional to the end-plate conductance. Because of this, it is sufficient to study the



**Figure 8.11** Comparison of the residual bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  model to experimental data. A and B: Facilitation as a function of pulse number, in the presence and absence of exogenous buffer. Panel A shows the experimental results of Tang et al. (2000), while panel B shows model simulations. In both the experimental data and the model, facilitation increases with pulse number, and has an increasing slope. Addition of exogenous buffer decreases facilitation. C and D; time dependence of facilitation after the fast release of exogenous buffer by a UV flash. Panel C is the experimental data of Kamiya and Zucker (1994), while panel D are model simulations. Adapted from Matveev et al., (2006), Figs. 3 and 4.

end-plate conductance rather than the end-plate current. Since the end-plate conductance is a function of the concentration of ACh, we restrict our attention to the kinetics of ACh in the synaptic cleft.

We assume that ACh reacts with its receptor, R, in enzymatic fashion,



and that the ACh-receptor complex passes current only when it is in the open state  $\text{ACh} \cdot \text{R}^*$ . We let  $c = [\text{ACh}]$ ,  $y = [\text{ACh} \cdot \text{R}]$ , and  $x = [\text{ACh} \cdot \text{R}^*]$ , and then it follows from

the law of mass action that

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -\alpha x + \beta y, \quad (8.32)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \alpha x + k_1 c(N - x - y) - (\beta + k_2)y, \quad (8.33)$$

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = f(t) - k_e c - k_1 c(N - x - y) + k_2 y, \quad (8.34)$$

where  $N$  is the total concentration of ACh receptor, which is assumed to be conserved, and ACh decays by a simple first-order process at rate  $k_e$ . The postsynaptic conductance is assumed to be proportional to  $x$ , and the rate of formation of ACh is some given function  $f(t)$ . One option for  $f(t)$  is to use the output of the single-domain/bound-calcium model described in the previous section (Exercise 8).

The model equations, as given, are too complicated to solve analytically, and so we proceed by making some simplifying assumptions. First, we assume that the kinetics of ACh binding to its receptor are much faster than the other reactions in the scheme, so that  $y$  is in instantaneous equilibrium with  $c$ . To formalize this assumption, we introduce dimensionless variables  $X = x/N$ ,  $Y = y/N$ ,  $C = k_1 c/k_2$ , and  $\tau = \alpha t$ , in terms of which (8.33) becomes

$$\epsilon \frac{dY}{d\tau} = \epsilon X + C(1 - X - Y) - \left(\epsilon \frac{\beta}{\alpha} + 1\right) Y, \quad (8.35)$$

where  $\epsilon = \alpha/k_2 \ll 1$ . Upon setting  $\epsilon$  to zero, we find the quasi-steady approximation

$$Y = \frac{C(1 - X)}{1 + C}, \quad (8.36)$$

or in dimensioned variables,

$$y = \frac{c(N - x)}{K + c}, \quad (8.37)$$

where  $K = k_2/k_1$ . Now we can eliminate  $y$  from (8.32) to obtain

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -\alpha x + \beta \frac{c(N - x)}{K + c}. \quad (8.38)$$

Next we observe that

$$\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{dc}{dt} = f(t) - k_e c. \quad (8.39)$$

In dimensionless variables this becomes

$$\frac{N}{K} \left( \frac{dX}{d\tau} + \frac{dY}{d\tau} \right) + \frac{dC}{d\tau} = F(\tau) - K_e C, \quad (8.40)$$

where  $F(\tau) = \frac{f(t)}{\alpha K}$  and  $K_e = k_e/\alpha$  are assumed to be of order one. If we suppose that  $N \ll K$ , then setting  $N/K$  to zero in (8.40), we find (in dimensioned variables)

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = f(t) - k_e c. \quad (8.41)$$

One further simplification is possible if we assume that  $\beta \ll \alpha$ . Notice from (8.38) that

$$\frac{dx}{dt} < -\alpha x + \beta(N - x), \quad (8.42)$$

so that

$$x(t) \leq x(0)e^{-(\alpha+\beta)t} + \frac{\beta N}{\alpha + \beta}(1 - e^{-(\alpha+\beta)t}). \quad (8.43)$$

Once this process has been running for some time, so that effects of initial data can be ignored,  $x$  is of order  $\frac{\beta N}{\alpha + \beta}$ . If  $\beta \ll \alpha$ , then  $x \ll N$ , and (8.38) simplifies to

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -\alpha x + \beta \frac{cN}{K + c}. \quad (8.44)$$

For any given input  $f(t)$ , (8.41) can be solved for  $c(t)$ , and then (8.44) can be solved to give  $x(t)$ , the postsynaptic conductance.

As mentioned above, the decay of the postsynaptic current has a time constant that depends on the voltage. This could happen in two principal ways. First, if the conformational changes of the receptor were much faster than the decay of ACh in the synaptic cleft,  $x$  would be in quasi-equilibrium, and we would have

$$x = \frac{\beta c(t)N}{\alpha[K + c(t)]}. \quad (8.45)$$

Thus, if  $c$  is small,  $x$  would be approximately proportional to  $c$ . In this case an exponential decrease of  $c$  caused by the decay term  $-k_e c$  would cause an exponential decrease in the postsynaptic conductance. An alternative possibility is that ACh degrades quickly in the synaptic cleft, so that  $c$  quickly approaches zero, but that the decay of the end-plate current is due to conformational changes of the ACh receptor. According to this hypothesis, the release of ACh into the cleft would cause an increase in  $x$ , which then would decay according to

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -\alpha x, \quad (8.46)$$

(since  $c$  is nearly zero). In this case, the exponential decrease of end-plate current would be governed by the term  $-\alpha x$ .

Magleby and Stevens argued that the latter hypothesis is preferable. Assuming therefore that the rate-limiting step in the decay of the end-plate current is the decay of  $x$ ,  $\alpha$  can be estimated directly from experimental measurements of end-plate current decay to be

$$\alpha(V) = Be^{AV}, \quad (8.47)$$

where  $A = 0.008 \text{ mV}^{-1}$  and  $B = 1.43 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ .

To calculate the complete time course of the end-plate current from (8.44), it remains to determine  $c(t)$ . In general this is not known, as it is not possible to measure synaptic cleft concentrations of ACh accurately.

A method to determine  $c(t)$  from the experimental data was proposed by Magleby and Stevens. First, suppose that  $\beta$  is also a function of  $V$ , as is expected, since  $\alpha$  is a function of  $V$ . Then (8.44) can be written as

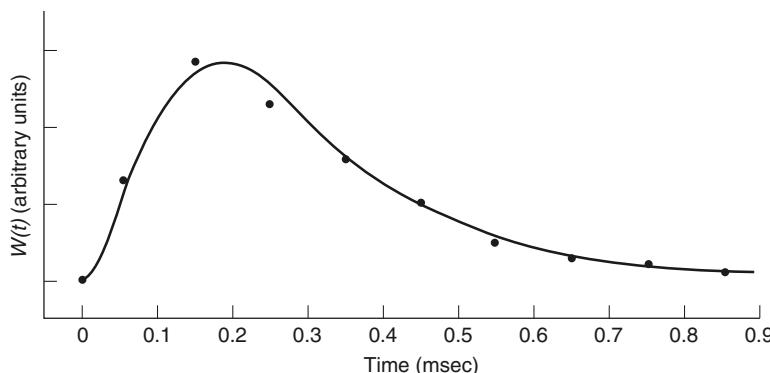
$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -\alpha(V)x + \beta(V)W(t), \quad (8.48)$$

where  $W(t) = Nc(t)/[K + c(t)]$ . Since for any fixed voltage the time course of  $x$  can be measured experimentally (recall that the experiments were done under voltage clamp conditions), it follows that  $\beta(V)W(t)$  can be determined from

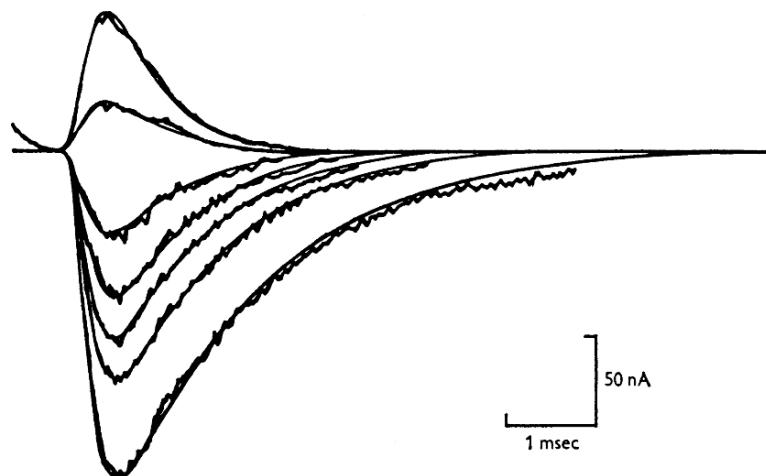
$$\beta(V)W(t) = \frac{dx}{dt} + \alpha(V)x. \quad (8.49)$$

Although this requires numerical differentiation (which is notoriously unstable), the experimental records are smooth enough to permit a reasonable determination of  $W$  from the time course of  $x$ . Since  $W$  is assumed to be independent of  $V$ , it can be determined (up to an arbitrary scale factor) from a time course of  $x$  obtained for any fixed voltage. Further, if the model is valid, then we expect the same result no matter what voltage is used to obtain  $W$ . A typical result for  $W$ , shown in Fig. 8.12, rises and falls in a way reminiscent of the responses calculated from the Llinás model described above (Fig. 8.8).

The final unknown is  $\beta(V)$ , the scale factor in the determination of  $W$ . Relative values of  $\beta$  can be obtained by comparing time courses taken at different voltages. If  $\beta(V_1)W(t)$  and  $\beta(V_2)W(t)$  are time courses obtained from (8.49) at two different voltages, the ratio  $\beta(V_1)/\beta(V_2)$  is obtained from the ratio of the time courses. However, because of experimental variability or invalid model assumptions, this ratio may not be constant as a function of time, in which case the ratio cannot be determined unambiguously. Magleby and Stevens used the ratio of the maximum amplitudes of the time courses, in which case  $\beta(V_1)/\beta(V_2)$  can be obtained uniquely. They determined that  $\beta$ ,



**Figure 8.12**  $W(t)$  calculated from the time course of  $x$  using (8.49). (Magleby and Stevens, 1972, Fig. 4.)



**Figure 8.13** End-plate currents from the Magleby–Stevens model. Equation (8.48) was solved numerically, using as input the function plotted in Fig. 8.12. The functions  $\alpha(V)$  and  $\beta(V)$  are given in the text. The corresponding values for  $V$  are, from top to bottom, 32, 20, -30, -56, -82, -106 and -161 mV. The wavy lines are the experimental data; the smooth curves are the model fit. (Magleby and Stevens, 1972, Fig. 6.)

like  $\alpha$ , is an exponential function of  $V$ ,

$$\beta(V) = be^{aV}, \quad (8.50)$$

where  $a = 0.00315 \text{ mV}^{-1}$  and  $b$  is an arbitrary scaling factor.

Equation (8.48) can now be solved numerically to determine the time course of the end-plate current for various voltages. Typical results are shown in Fig. 8.13. Although the model construction guarantees the correct peak response (because that is how  $\beta$  was determined) and also guarantees the correct time course at one particular voltage (because that is how  $W$  was determined), the model responses agree well with the experimental records over all times and voltages. This confirms the underlying assumption that  $W$  is independent of voltage.

Although the approach of Magleby and Stevens of determining  $W(t)$  directly from the data leads to excellent agreement with the experimental data, it suffers from the disadvantage that no mechanistic rationale is given for the function  $W$ . It would be preferable to have a derivation of the behavior of  $W$  from fundamental assumptions about the kinetics of ACh release and degradation in the synaptic cleft, but such is not presently available.

### Neurotransmitter Diffusion

A different style of model is that of Smart and McCammon (1998) or Tai et al. (2003). These groups constructed highly detailed finite element models of the neuromuscular junction, with the model of Tai et al. based directly on anatomical structural

information (Stiles and Bartol, 2000). In this region they solved a simple diffusion equation for ACh, with degradation of ACh on selected parts of the boundary. These detailed structural models are still somewhat preliminary, as most of the efforts to date have been in the development of the necessary computational techniques; the models have provided, as yet, little additional physiological insight. However, they are ideally placed to provide insight into the comparative behavior of different neuromuscular junctions, and are likely to be a highly important style of model in the future.

### 8.1.5 The Postsynaptic Membrane Potential

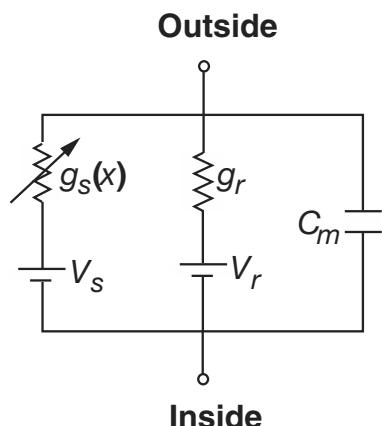
Acetylcholine acts by opening ionic channels in the postsynaptic membrane that are permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  ions. A schematic diagram of the electrical circuit model of the postsynaptic membrane is given in Fig. 8.14. This model is based on the usual assumptions (see, for example, Chapter 2) that the membrane channels can be modeled as ohmic resistors and that the membrane acts like a capacitor, with capacitance  $C_m$ .

The ACh-sensitive channels have a reversal potential  $V_s$  of about  $-15$  mV and a conductance that depends on the concentration of ACh. The effects of all the other ionic channels in the membrane are summarized by a resting conductance,  $g_r$  and a resting potential  $V_r$  of about  $-70$  mV. In the usual way, the equation for the membrane potential  $V$  is

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + g_r(V - V_r) + g_s(V - V_s) = 0. \quad (8.51)$$

In general,  $g_s$  is a function of the number of ACh receptors with ACh bound, i.e., in the notation of the previous section,  $g_s = g_s(x)$ . Since  $x$  is a function of time,  $g_s$  is also a function of time. Hence,

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + [g_r + g_s(t)]V = g_r V_r + g_s(t) V_s. \quad (8.52)$$



**Figure 8.14** Electrical circuit model of the postsynaptic membrane.

This equation can be reduced to quadratures by using the integrating factor  $I = \exp(\frac{1}{C_m} \int (g_r + g_s) dt)$ , so in principle, the response of the postsynaptic membrane can be calculated from knowledge of the time course of  $x$ . However, since  $g_s(t)$  is time-dependent, the quadratures can essentially never be evaluated explicitly, so exact formulas are effectively useless.

Suppose, however, that  $g_s(t)$  is small compared to  $g_r$ . We set  $V_1 = V - V_r$  so that

$$\frac{C_m}{g_r} \frac{dV_1}{dt} + V_1 = -\frac{g_s}{g_r} (V_1 + V_r - V_s). \quad (8.53)$$

Now we expect  $V_1$  to be on the order of  $\frac{g_s}{g_r}$ , so that the term  $\frac{g_s}{g_r} V_1$  can be ignored, and we are left with the equation

$$\frac{C_m}{g_r} \frac{dV_1}{dt} + V_1 = -\frac{g_s}{g_r} (V_r - V_s), \quad (8.54)$$

which can be solved exactly.

For example, a simple solution is obtained when  $g_s$  is taken to be proportional to  $x$  and the input  $f(t)$  to the Magleby and Stevens model is assumed to be  $\gamma \delta(t)$  for  $\frac{\gamma}{K}$  small. In this case,

$$g_s(t) = x(t) = \frac{\gamma \beta N}{K(\alpha - k_e)} (e^{-k_e t} - e^{-\alpha t}), \quad (8.55)$$

as derived in Exercise 5. The solution of (8.54) is now readily found using standard solution techniques (Exercise 7).

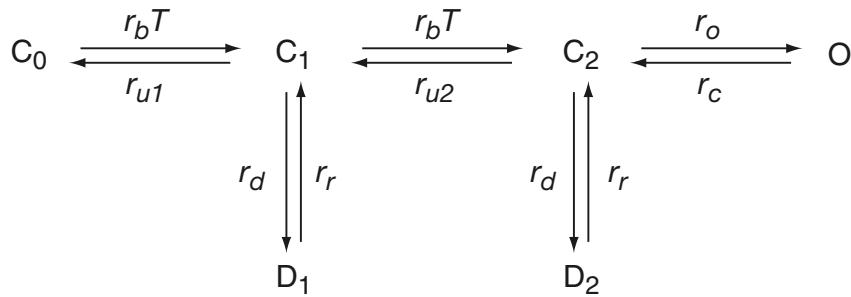
### 8.1.6 Agonist-Controlled Ion Channels

The acetylcholine receptor/channel is an example of an agonist-controlled channel, a simple model for which was discussed in Section 3.5.4. In Section 8.1.5 above, we described an even simpler model of the ACh receptor/channel. There are many other more complex models of the postsynaptic agonist-controlled ion channels. A useful review is that of Destexhe et al. (1998), which briefly discusses a number of the major models of AMPA, NMDA, and GABA receptors.

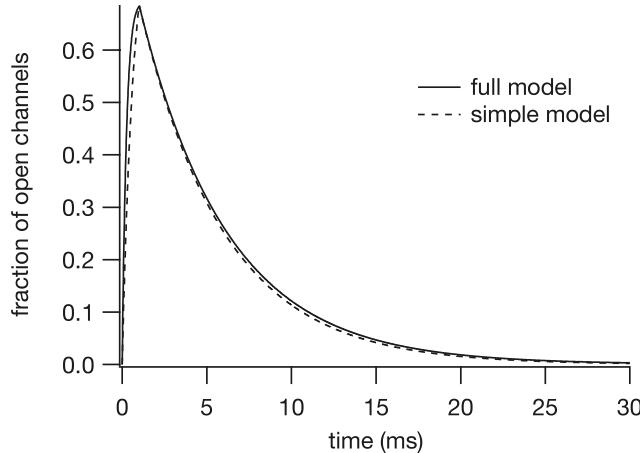
A typical example is the Markov model of the AMPA receptor (Patneau and Mayer, 1991) shown in Fig. 8.15. This model has three closed states, two desensitized states, and one open state. The receptor can open only from the closed state with two transmitter molecules bound, C<sub>2</sub>. The response of this model to a delta function input (i.e., if  $T(t) = \delta(t)$ ) is shown in Fig. 8.16.

This multistate Markov model of the AMPA receptor can be simplified to a two-state model, without changing the qualitative properties of the impulse response. The two-state model





**Figure 8.15** Markov model of the AMPA receptor (Patneau and Mayer, 1991).  $T$  is the concentration of transmitter.



**Figure 8.16** Response of the AMPA receptor model to a delta function input. The solid line is from the model shown in Fig. 8.15, with parameter values  $r_b = 13 \times 10^6 \text{ M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$ ,  $r_{u1} = 5.9 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $r_{u2} = 8.6 \times 10^4 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $r_d = 900 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $r_r = 64 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $r_o = 2.7 \times 10^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $r_c = 200 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . The dotted line is from the simplified version of the model, (8.56), with parameters  $\alpha = 1.35 \text{ M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$ ,  $\beta = 200 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . The initial condition for both simulations is  $c_0 = 1$ .

responds to an impulse in much the same as the full model, as can be seen from the dotted line in Fig. 8.16.

Clearly, the Markov model shown in Fig. 8.15 is not well determined by its impulse response, a fact that, given the discussion in Section 3.6, should come as no surprise. It is, however, a fact that should inspire caution. In order to determine the rate constants unambiguously we would need to use, at the very least, single-channel data; even then, the task, for such a complex model, would not be trivial, and might not even be possible.

### 8.1.7 Drugs and Toxins

The foregoing models are sufficient to piece together a crude model of synaptic transmission. However, many features were ignored, and there are many situations that can change the behavior of this system. Primary among these are drugs and toxins that affect specific events in the neurotransmission process. For example, the influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is reduced by divalent metal ions, such as  $\text{Pb}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Cd}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Hg}^{2+}$ , and  $\text{Co}^{2+}$ . By reducing the influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , these cations depress or abolish the action-potential-evoked transmitter release. Certain toxins, including tetanus and clostridial botulinus, are potent inhibitors of transmitter exocytosis, an action that is essentially irreversible. Botulinus neurotoxin is selective for cholinergic synapses and is one of the most potent neuromodulatory agents known. Tetanus toxin is taken up by spinal motor nerve terminals and transported retrogradely to the spinal cord, where it blocks release of glycine at inhibitory synapses. Spread of the toxin throughout the brain and spinal cord can lead to severe convulsions and death. The venom from black widow spider contains a toxin ( $\alpha$ -latrotoxin) that causes massive transmitter exocytosis and depletion of synaptic vesicles from presynaptic nerve terminals.

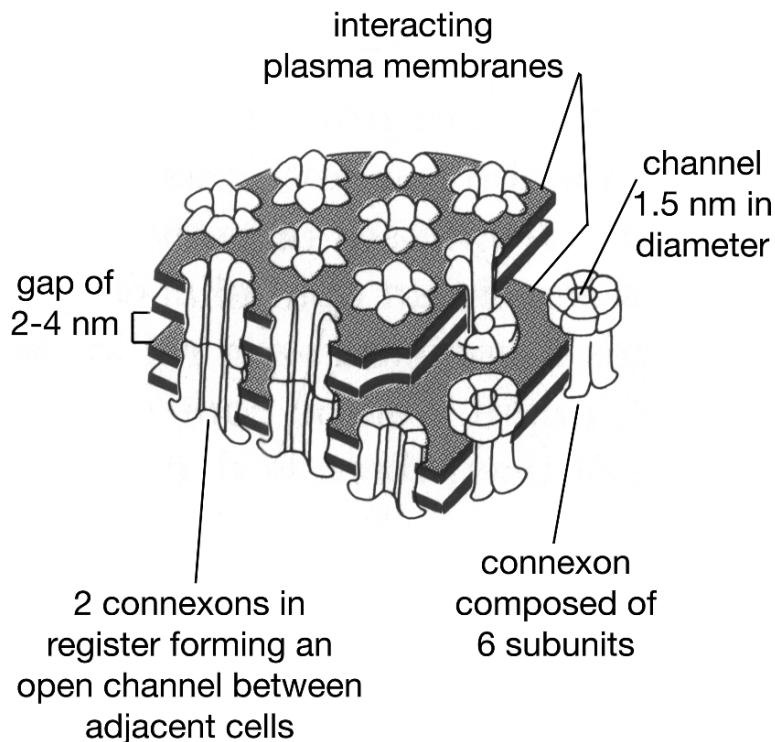
Agents that compete with the transmitter for receptor binding sites, thereby preventing receptor activation, are called receptor antagonists. An example of an antagonist of the ACh receptors of the skeletal neuromuscular junction is curare. By inhibiting ACh binding at receptor sites, curare causes progressive decrease in amplitude and shortening of epp's. In severe curare poisoning, transmission is blocked. Selective antagonists exist for most transmitter receptors. For example, bicuculline is an antagonist of GABA receptors, and is a well-known convulsant.

Agents that mimic the action of natural transmitters are known as receptor agonists. A well-known agonist of ACh receptors in neuromuscular junction is nicotine. Nicotine binds to the ACh receptor and activates it in the same manner as ACh. However, nicotine causes persistent receptor activation because it is not degraded, as is ACh, by ACh-esterase. On the other hand, diisopropylphosphofluoridate (commonly known as nerve gas) is an example of an anticholinesterase, because it inhibits the activity of ACh-esterase, so that ACh persists in the synaptic cleft. Similarly, one effect of cocaine is to prolong the activity of dopamine, by blocking the uptake of dopamine from the synaptic cleft.

Other agents interfere with receptor-gated permeabilities by interfering with the channel itself. Thus, picrotoxin, which blocks GABA-activated  $\text{Cl}^-$  channels, and strychnine, which blocks glycine-activated  $\text{Cl}^-$  channels, are potent blockers of inhibitory synapses and known convulsants.

## 8.2 Gap Junctions

Gap junctions are small nonselective channels (with diameters of about 1.2 nm) that form direct intercellular connections through which ions or other small molecules can flow. They are formed by the joining of two *connexons*, hexagonal arrays of *connexin*



**Figure 8.17** Diagram of a region of membrane containing gap junctions, based on electron microscope images and X-ray diffraction data. Each connexon is composed of six gap-junction proteins, called connexins, arranged hexagonally. Connexons in apposed membranes meet in the intercellular space to form the gap junction. (Alberts et al., 1994, Fig. 19-15.)

protein molecules (Fig. 8.17). Despite being called electrical synapses, in this chapter we concentrate on models in which membrane potential plays no role, focusing instead on the interaction between intracellular diffusion and intercellular permeability. Electrical aspects of gap junctions are important for the function of cardiac cells and are discussed in that context in Chapter 12. An example of how gap junctions are used for intercellular signaling via second messengers is described in Chapter 7, where we discuss a model of intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave propagation.

### 8.2.1 Effective Diffusion Coefficients

We first consider a one-dimensional situation where a species  $u$  diffuses along a line of cells which are connected by gap junctions. Because of their relatively high resistance to flow (compared to cytoplasm), the gap junctions decrease the rate at which  $u$  diffuses along the line. Since this is a one-dimensional problem, we assume that each intercellular membrane acts like a single resistive pore with a given permeability  $F$ .

The effect of gap-junction distribution within the intercellular membrane is discussed later in this chapter.

We assume that Fick's law holds and thus the flux,  $J$ , of  $u$  is proportional to the gradient of  $u$ ; i.e.,

$$J = -D \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \quad (8.57)$$

where  $D$  is the diffusion coefficient for the intracellular space. From the conservation of  $u$  it follows that in the interior of each cell,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}. \quad (8.58)$$

However,  $u$  need not be continuous across the intercellular boundary. In fact, if there is a cell boundary at  $x = x_b$ , the flux through the boundary is assumed to be proportional to the concentration difference across the boundary. Then, conservation of  $u$  across the boundary implies that

$$-D \frac{\partial u(x_b^-, t)}{\partial x} = -D \frac{\partial u(x_b^+, t)}{\partial x} = F[u(x_b^-, t) - u(x_b^+, t)], \quad (8.59)$$

for some constant  $F$ , called the *permeability coefficient*, with units of distance/time. The + and – superscripts indicate that the function values are calculated as limits from the right and left, respectively.

When the cells through which  $u$  diffuses are short compared to the total distance that  $u$  moves, the movement of  $u$  can be described by an effective diffusion coefficient. The effective diffusion coefficient is defined and is measurable experimentally by assuming that the analogue of Ohm's law holds. Thus, in a preparation of  $N$  cells, each of length  $L$ , with  $u = U_0$  at  $x = 0$  and  $u = U_1$  at  $x = NL$ , the effective diffusion coefficient  $D_e$  is defined by

$$J = \frac{D_e}{NL}(U_0 - U_1), \quad (8.60)$$

where  $J$  is the steady-state flux of  $u$ .

To calculate  $D_e$ , we look for a function  $u(x)$  that satisfies  $u_{xx} = 0$  when  $x \neq (j + \frac{1}{2})L$  and satisfies (8.59) at  $x = (j + \frac{1}{2})L$ ,  $j = 0, \dots, N-1$ . Further, we require that  $u(0) = U_0$ , and  $u(NL) = U_1$ . Note that we are assuming that the cell boundaries occur at  $L/2, 3L/2, \dots$ , and thus the boundary conditions at  $x = 0$  and  $x = NL$  occur halfway through a cell.

A typical solution  $u$  that satisfies these conditions must be linear within each cell, and piecewise continuous with jumps at the cell boundaries. Suppose that the slope of  $u$  within each cell is  $-\lambda$ , and that the jump in  $u$  between cells is  $u(x_b^+) - u(x_b^-) = -\Delta$ . Then, since there are  $N-1$  whole cells, two half cells (at the boundaries), and  $N$  interior cell boundaries, we have

$$(N-1)\lambda L + 2\lambda \left(\frac{L}{2}\right) + N\Delta = U_0 - U_1. \quad (8.61)$$

Furthermore, it follows from (8.59) that

$$D\lambda = F\Delta. \quad (8.62)$$

We find from (8.60) and (8.61) that

$$D\lambda = -D \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = J = \frac{D_e}{NL}(U_0 - U_1) \quad (8.63)$$

$$= \frac{D_e}{L}(L\lambda + \Delta) \quad (8.64)$$

$$= \lambda D_e \left( 1 + \frac{D}{FL} \right), \quad (8.65)$$

from which it follows that

$$\frac{1}{D_e} = \frac{1}{D} + \frac{1}{LF}. \quad (8.66)$$

### 8.2.2 Homogenization

The above calculation of the effective diffusion coefficient can be formalized by the process of *homogenization*. Homogenization is an important technique that was described in the Appendix to Chapter 7 and which is seen again in Chapter 12. Homogenization is useful when there are two spatial scales, a microscopic and a macroscopic scale in determining the behavior of the solution on the macroscopic scale while accounting for influences from the microscopic scale, without calculating the full details of the solution on the microscopic scale.

The basic assumption here is that Fick's law holds, but that the diffusion coefficient  $D$  is a periodic, rapidly varying function, so that the flux is

$$J = -D \left( \frac{x}{\epsilon} \right) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}. \quad (8.67)$$

The dimensionless parameter  $\epsilon$  is small, indicating that the variations of  $D$  are rapid compared to other spatial scales of the problem, in particular, the diffusion length. Thus, cells are assumed to be short compared to the diffusion length scale.

In Section 7.8.2 we calculated that the effective diffusion coefficient is the inverse of the average resistance

$$D_e = \frac{1}{\bar{R}}. \quad (8.68)$$

where

$$\bar{R} = \int_0^1 R(s) ds = \int_0^1 \frac{1}{D(s)} ds \quad (8.69)$$

is the average resistance.

To apply this result to the specific problem of gap junctions, we take  $R(x) = r_c + r_g \sum_k \delta(x - kL)$  to reflect the periodic occurrence of gap junctions with resistance  $r_g$  evenly spaced at the ends of cells of length  $L$ . Notice that  $D = 1/r_c$  is the diffusion

coefficient for the intracellular space, while  $F = 1/r_g$  is the intercellular permeability. It follows easily that

$$\bar{R} = r_c + \frac{r_g}{L}, \quad (8.70)$$

which is the same as (8.66).

### 8.2.3 Measurement of Permeabilities

Although an effective diffusion coefficient is useful when the species of interest diffuses through a large number of cells, in some experimental situations one is interested in how a dye molecule (or a second messenger such as  $\text{IP}_3$ ) diffuses through a relatively small number of cells. In this case the effective diffusion coefficient approximation cannot always be used, and it is necessary to solve the equations with internal boundary conditions (Brink and Ramanan, 1985; Ramanan and Brink, 1990). By calculating exact solutions to the linear diffusion equation with internal boundary conditions (using transform methods, for example) and fitting them to experimental measurements on the movement of fluorescent probes, it is possible to obtain estimates of the intracellular diffusion coefficient as well as the permeability of the intercellular membrane.

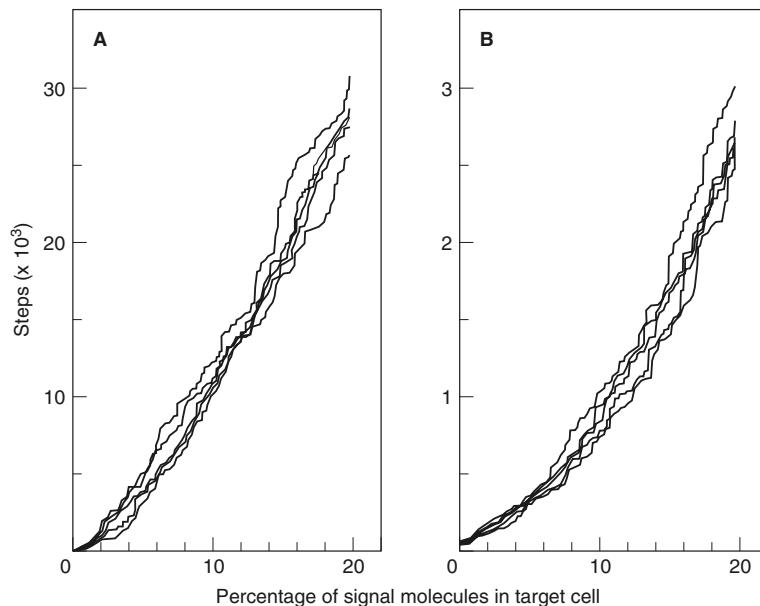
The analytic solutions of Brink and Ramanan are useful only when the underlying equations are linear. In many cases, however, the species of interest are also reacting in a nonlinear way. This results in a system of nonlinear diffusion equations coupled by jump conditions at the gap junctions, a system that can only be solved numerically. Two groups have used numerical methods to study problems of this kind. Christ et al. (1994) studied the problem of diffusion through gap junctions, assuming that the diffusing species  $u$  decreases the permeability of the gap junction in a nonlinear fashion. A similar model was used by Sneyd et al. (1995a) to study the spread of a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave through a layer of cells coupled by gap junctions, and this model is described in Chapter 7.

### 8.2.4 The Role of Gap-Junction Distribution

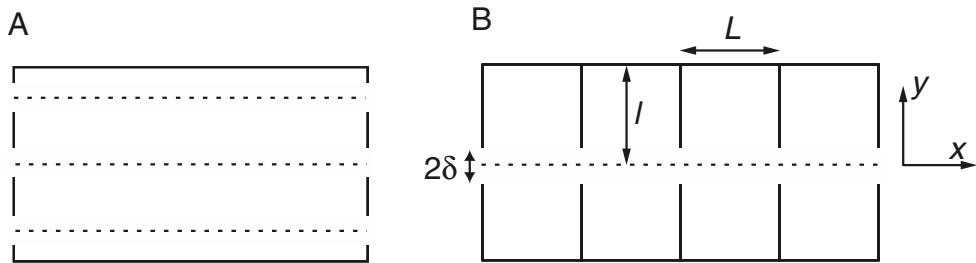
It is not always appreciated that the intercellular permeability is strongly influenced by the distribution of gap junctions in the intercellular membrane, although it is a common observation in introductory biology texts that there is a similar relationship between the distribution of stomata on leaves and the rate of evaporation of water through the leaf surface. Individual gap junctions are usually found in aggregates forming larger junctional plaques, as individual gap-junction particles are not easily distinguished from other nonjunctional particles. However, numerical simulations show that the permeability of the intercellular membrane decreases as the gap junction particles aggregate in larger groupings. This raises the intriguing possibility that intercellular permeability may be lowest when the gap-junctional plaques are easiest to see. This in turn provides a possible explanation for the fact that it has been difficult to establish a direct link between the number of recognizable gap junctions and the intercellular permeability.

Chen and Meng (1995) constructed a cubic lattice model of a two-cell system with a common border. A number of gap-junction particles, with varying degrees of aggregation, were placed on the border lattice points. Marker particles were placed in one of the cubes and followed a random walk over the lattice points of the cube. When they encountered a gap-junction lattice point on the boundary, there was an assigned probability that the marker particle would move across to the other cell. By measuring the time required for a certain percentage of marker particles to cross from one cell to the other, Chen and Meng obtained a quantitative estimate of the efficiency of intercellular transport as a function of gap-junction aggregation. Their results are summarized in Fig. 8.18. When the gap junctions are clumped together into a single junctional plaque, 10,000 time steps were required for the transfer of about 10% of the marker particles. However, when the gap-junction particles were randomly scattered, only 1,000 time steps were required for the same transfer. The magnitude of this discrepancy emphasizes the fact that gap junction distribution can have a huge effect on the rate of intercellular transport.

This result makes intuitive sense. The transfer rate is related to the time it takes for a molecule undergoing a random walk to find an exit. It stands to reason that it is



**Figure 8.18** Simulation results of the cubic-lattice gap-junction model on a  $50 \times 50 \times 50$  lattice with 1000 signal molecules in the source cell at time 0. In A, 100 gap-junction particles are arranged in a compact junctional plaque, while in B they are scattered randomly on the intercellular interface. The random scattering of gap-junction particles results in a greatly increased intercellular transfer rate (note the different scales for the two panels). (Chen and Meng, 1995, Fig. 1.)



**Figure 8.19** A: Sketch of a single rectangular cell with gap-junctional openings in the end faces. B: Sketch of cell array, reduced by symmetry to a single half-channel.

easier to find an exit if there are many of them scattered around as opposed to having all of them clumped together in one place.

To get a more analytical understanding of how the distribution of gap junctions affects the diffusion coefficient, we solve a model problem, similar to the one-dimensional problem solved in Section 8.2.1. We consider cells to be two-dimensional rectangles, with a portion of their ends open for diffusive transport (the gap junctions) and the remainder closed (Fig. 8.19A). The dashed lines in this figure are lines of symmetry across which there is no flux in a steady-state problem, so we can reduce the cell configuration to that shown in Fig. 8.19B.

To study diffusion in the  $x$ -coordinate direction, we assume that the vertical walls are separated by length  $L$  and have regularly spaced openings of width  $2\delta$  with centers separated by length  $2l$ . The fraction of the vertical separator that is open between cells is  $\Delta = \delta/l$ . To study how the distribution of gap junctions affects the diffusion coefficient, we hold  $\Delta$  fixed while varying  $l$ . When  $l$  is small, the gap junctions are small and uniformly distributed, while when  $l$  is large, the gap junctions are clumped together into larger aggregates; in either case the same fraction ( $\Delta$ ) of the intercellular membrane is occupied by gap junctions.

Suppose that there are a large number of cells (say  $N$ ) each of length  $L$  connected end to end. We impose a fixed concentration gradient across the array and use the definition (8.60) to define the effective diffusion coefficient for this array.

To find the flux, we solve Laplace's equation subject to no-flux boundary conditions on the horizontal lines  $y = 0$  and  $y = l$  and on the vertical lines  $\delta < y < l, x = pL, p = 0, \dots, N$ . We further divide this region into two subregions, one for  $y \geq \delta$  and one for  $y \leq \delta$ .

Consider first the solution on the upper region. The solution for a single cell  $0 \leq x \leq L$  can be found by separation of variables to be

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \cosh\left(\frac{n\pi(y - l)}{L}\right). \quad (8.71)$$

This solution satisfies no-flux boundary conditions at  $y = l$  and at  $x = 0, L$ . Notice also that this solution is periodic, so it is a contender for the solution for any cell.

Now recall that in the one-dimensional case, the solution is piecewise linear, with jumps at the cell boundaries, and that the slope of the solution within each cell is the same (Section 8.2.1). This suggests that the derivative of the solution in the two-dimensional case should be the same in each cell, or equivalently, the solution in each cell should be the same up to an additive constant. Thus,

$$u(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \frac{\cosh(n\pi(y - l)/L)}{\cosh(n\pi(\delta - l)/L)} \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}(x - pL)\right) + \alpha_p, \quad (8.72)$$

for  $pL < x < (p+1)L$ ,  $\delta < y < l$ , and  $p = 0, \dots, N-1$ . We have scaled the unknown constants,  $A_n$ , by  $\cosh(n\pi(\delta - l)/L)$  for convenience.

On the lower region, a similar argument gives

$$u(x, t) = (U_1 - U_0) \frac{x}{NL} + U_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cosh(2n\pi y/L)}{\cosh(2n\pi \delta/L)} \left( C_n \sin \frac{2n\pi x}{L} \right), \quad (8.73)$$

for  $0 < x < NL$ ,  $0 < y < \delta$ . Notice that this solution satisfies a no-flux boundary condition at  $y = 0$  and has the correct overall concentration gradient.

Now, to make these into a smooth solution of Laplace's equation we require that  $u(x, y)$  and  $u_y(x, y)$  be continuous at  $y = \delta$ . This gives two conditions,

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}(x - pL)\right) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( C_n \sin \frac{2n\pi x}{L} \right) + (U_1 - U_0) \frac{x}{NL} + U_0 - \alpha_p, \quad (8.74)$$

and

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} nA_n \tanh\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}(\delta - l)\right) \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{L}(x - pL)\right) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2n \tanh \frac{2n\pi\delta}{L} C_n \sin \frac{2n\pi x}{L}, \quad (8.75)$$

on the interval  $pL < x < (p+1)L$ .

We determine  $\alpha_p$  by averaging (8.74) over cell  $p$ . Integrating (8.74) from  $x = (p-1)L$  to  $x = pL$  gives

$$\alpha_p = \frac{1}{L} \int_{(p-1)L}^{pL} (U_1 - U_0) \frac{x}{NL} dx + U_0, \quad (8.76)$$

since all the trigonometric terms integrate to zero. Hence,

$$\alpha_p = U_0 - (U_0 - U_1) \frac{p - 1/2}{N}. \quad (8.77)$$

Finally, for convenience, we choose  $U_0 = N/2$  and  $U_1 = -N/2$ , which gives  $\alpha_p = p + (1+N)/2$ . Since this is a linear problem, the values chosen for  $U_0$  and  $U_1$  have no effect on the effective diffusion coefficient.

To obtain equations for the coefficients, we project each of these onto  $\cos \frac{k\pi x}{L}$  by multiplying by  $\cos \frac{k\pi x}{L}$  and integrating from 0 to  $L$ . We find that

$$A_k \frac{L}{2} = F_k + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n I_{2n,k}, \quad (8.78)$$

and

$$k A_k \tanh \left( \frac{k\pi}{L} (\delta - l) \right) \frac{L}{2} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2n \tanh \frac{2n\pi\delta}{L} (C_n I_{2n,k}), \quad (8.79)$$

where

$$F_k = \int_0^L \left( \frac{x}{L} - \frac{1}{2} \right) \cos \frac{k\pi x}{L} dx = \frac{L}{n^2 \pi^2} ((-1)^k - 1), \quad (8.80)$$

$$I_{n,k} = \int_0^L \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \cos \frac{k\pi x}{L} dx = \frac{Ln}{\pi} \left( \frac{1 - (-1)^{n+k}}{n^2 - k^2} \right). \quad (8.81)$$

There is an immediate simplification possible. Notice that  $I_{2n,k} = 0$  and  $F_k = 0$  when  $k$  is even. Thus,  $A_k = 0$  for all even  $k$ . Now we eliminate the coefficients  $A_k$  from (8.78) and (8.79) to obtain

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \left( \frac{2n}{k} \frac{\tanh \frac{2n\pi l}{L} \Delta}{\tanh \frac{k\pi l}{L} (1 - \Delta)} + 1 \right) \frac{n}{4n^2 - k^2} = \frac{1}{2\pi k^2}, \quad (8.82)$$

for all odd  $k$ , with  $\Delta = \delta/l$ . Since  $k$  can take on any odd positive integer value, (8.82) is an infinite set of equations for the coefficients  $C_n$ . Since the solution of the differential equation converges, we can truncate this system of equations and solve the resulting finite linear system numerically.

In terms of this solution, the average flux is

$$J = \frac{D}{l} \int_0^\delta \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \Big|_{x=0} dy = D \left( \frac{\Delta}{L} + \frac{1}{l} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \tanh \frac{2n\pi l \Delta}{L} \right), \quad (8.83)$$

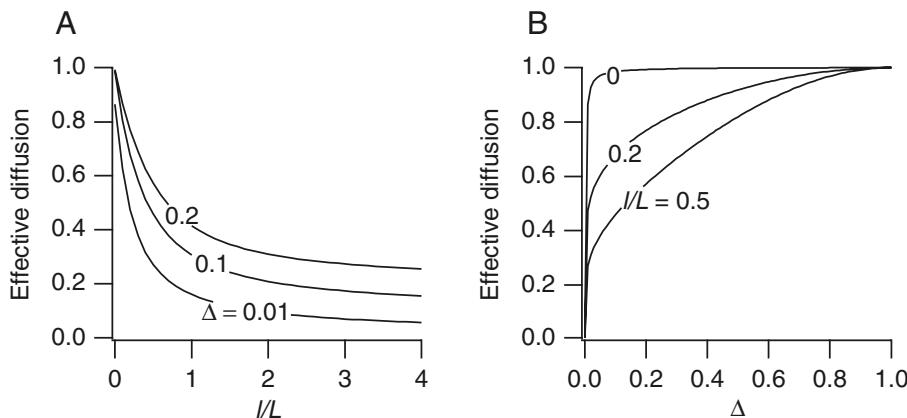
and the effective diffusion coefficient is

$$D_e = D \left( \frac{L}{l} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \tanh \frac{2n\pi l \Delta}{L} + \Delta \right). \quad (8.84)$$

Typical results are shown in Fig. 8.20A, where the ratio  $D_e/D$  is shown plotted as a function of  $l/L$  for different values of fixed  $\Delta = \delta/l$ , and in Fig. 8.20B, where  $D_e/D$  is shown plotted as a function of  $\Delta$  for fixed  $l/L$ .

There are a number of important observations that can be made. First, notice that in the limit  $\Delta \rightarrow 1$ , or  $l/L \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\frac{L}{l} C_n \tanh \frac{2n\pi l \Delta}{L} \rightarrow 0$ . Thus,

$$\lim_{\Delta \rightarrow 1} D_e = D, \quad (8.85)$$



**Figure 8.20** A: Effective diffusion ratio  $D_e/D$  as a function of the distribution ratio  $I/L$  for fixed gap-junction fraction  $\Delta$ . B: Effective diffusion ratio  $D_e/D$  as a function of the gap-junction fraction  $\Delta$  for fixed distribution ratio  $I/L$ .

and

$$\lim_{\frac{l}{L} \rightarrow \infty} D_e = D\Delta. \quad (8.86)$$

Finally, from the numerical solution, it can be seen that  $D_e$  is a decreasing function of  $l/L$ . Thus, clumping of gap junctions lowers the effective diffusion coefficient compared with spreading them out uniformly, in agreement with numerical experiments described above.

From Fig. 8.20B we see that when gap junctions are small but uniformly spread, there is little decrease in the effective diffusion coefficient, unless  $\Delta$  is quite small. Thus, for example, with  $\Delta = 0.01$  (so that gap junctions comprise 1% of the membrane surface area) and  $l = 0$ , the effective diffusion coefficient is about 86% of the cytoplasmic diffusion. On the other hand, with only one large gap junction with  $\Delta = 0.01$  in the end membrane of a square cell ( $l = 0.5$ ), the effective diffusion coefficient is reduced to about 27% of the original.

It is interesting to relate these results to the one-dimensional solution (8.66). This two-dimensional problem becomes effectively one-dimensional in the limit  $\frac{l}{L} \rightarrow 0$ , with a piecewise-linear profile in the interior of the cells and small boundary or corner layers at the end faces. In this limit, the effective diffusion coefficient satisfies

$$\frac{D}{D_e} = 1 + \mu \frac{1 - \Delta}{\Delta}, \quad (8.87)$$

with  $\mu = 0.0016$ . This formula was found by plotting the curve  $\Delta(\frac{D}{D_e} - 1)$  against  $\Delta$ , which, remarkably, is numerically indistinguishable from the straight line  $\mu(1 - \Delta)$ . Comparing this with the one-dimensional result, we find that the end-face permeability,

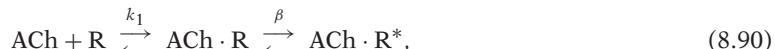
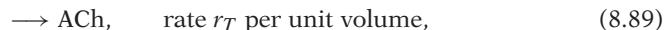
$F$ , can be related to the fraction of gap junctions  $\Delta$  through

$$F = \frac{D}{L} \frac{\Delta}{\mu(1 - \Delta)}. \quad (8.88)$$

### 8.3 EXERCISES

---

1. Use that  $c_i$  is small compared to  $c_e$  to simplify the Llinás model of presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels (Peskin, 1991). Show that this simplification gives little difference to the behavior of the full model shown in Figs. 8.5 and 8.6.
2. (a) The model of the presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current discussed in the text cannot give the curves shown in Fig. 8.7 in response to a voltage jump. Why not?  
 (b) Calculate and plot the solution to (8.7) if  $V = V_0 + (V_1 - V_0)(H(t) - H(t - 4))$ , where  $H$  is the Heaviside function.
3. Calculate the analytic solution to (8.7) when  $V$  is a given function of  $t$ .
4. (a) In Fig. 8.13, why are some of the curves positive and some negative?  
 (b) Construct a simple function  $F(t)$  with the same qualitative shape as the function  $W(t)$  used in the Magleby and Stevens model of end-plate currents (Fig. 8.12).  
 (c) Calculate the analytic solution to (8.48) for this function  $F$ . Compare to the curves shown in Fig. 8.13.
5. In the Magleby and Stevens model of end-plate currents, a simple choice for the release function  $f(t)$  results in end-plate conductances with considerable qualitative similarity with those in Fig. 8.13. Suppose there is an instantaneous release of ACh into the synaptic cleft at time  $t = 0$ . Take  $f(t) = \gamma \delta(t)$ , where  $\delta$  is the Dirac delta function and find the conductance  $x$  which is the solution of (8.44), to leading order in  $\frac{\gamma}{K}$  in the limit that  $\frac{\gamma}{K}$  is small. Show that  $x(t)$  is always positive. Plot  $x(t)$ .
6. Peskin (1991) presented a more complex version of the Magleby and Stevens model. His model is based on the reaction scheme



where E is some enzyme that degrades ACh in the synaptic cleft. (The Peskin model differs from the Magleby and Stevens model in two ways, with the assumption of enzymatic degradation of ACh and the assumption that the amount of ACh bound to its receptor is not negligible.)

- (a) Write down the equations for the 6 dependent variables. Use conservation laws to eliminate two of the equations.
- (b) Assume that the reactions involving ACh with R, and ACh with E (with reaction rates  $k_i, i = 1, 4$ ), are fast to obtain expressions for [R] and [E] in terms of the other variables.

Substitute these expressions into the differential equations for  $[ACh \cdot R^*]$  and  $[ACh] - [R] - [E]$  to find two differential equations for  $[ACh \cdot R^*]$  and  $[ACh]$ .

- (c) Solve these equations when the stimulus is a small sudden release of ACh (i.e., assume that  $r_T = \epsilon\delta(t)$  where  $\epsilon$  is small - small compared to what?). Compare this solution with that of Exercise 5.

Remark: After appropriate rescaling and approximation, the equations are of the form

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = a_1y - \alpha x \quad (8.92)$$

$$\frac{dx}{dt} + a_2 \frac{dy}{dt} = \delta(t) - a_3y, \quad (8.93)$$

for some constants  $a_1, a_2$  and  $a_3$ .

7. Solve (8.54) with  $g_s(t) = x(t)$  as found in Exercise 5 and plot the solution. Compare to  $x(t)$  found in Exercise 5 (i.e., (8.55)).
8. The purpose of this exercise is to link together the models of this chapter to construct a unified model of the synaptic cleft that connects the presynaptic action potential to the postsynaptic voltage via the concentration of ACh in the synaptic cleft.
  - (a) First, use the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations (Section 5.2) to construct an action potential that serves as the input to the overall model. Remark: if we let  $V_1$  denote the presynaptic membrane potential, and let  $v = V_1 - V_r$ , the equations
 
$$\frac{dv}{dt} = 0.01v(70 - v)(v - 7) - 100w, \quad (8.94)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = 0.25(v - 5w), \quad (8.95)$$
 do a reasonable job. What is  $V_r$ ? What value should be chosen for  $V_r$ ? Solve these equations and plot the presynaptic action potential.
  - (b) Link this presynaptic voltage to the presynaptic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration by constructing a differential equation for the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. (Hint: Take the inward  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current given by the Llinás model of Section 8.1.2  $P_{\text{Ca}} = 0.03 \mu\text{ms}^{-1}$  and a linear  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  removal with time constant 1 ms works well. Be careful with the units.) Plot the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transient that results from the presynaptic action potential calculated in part (a) above.
  - (c) Link to the model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -mediated release of neurotransmitter (Section 8.1.3). Plot, as a function of time, the probability that the release site is activated.
  - (d) Next, link to the model of neurotransmitter kinetics in the synaptic cleft (Section 8.1.4). (Hint: The rate of release of neurotransmitter into the cleft should be proportional to the number of activated release sites. Choose this constant of proportionality to be  $3 \times 10^6$ .) Then link this to the model of the postsynaptic membrane potential,  $V_2$ , by letting  $g_s(t) = x(t)$ . Plot the concentration of ACh and the concentration of open ACh-sensitive channels as functions of time.
  - (e) Finally, plot  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  on the same graph to compare the input and output voltages of the model.
9. Incorporate the effects of nicotine into a model of ACh activation of receptors.

# Neuroendocrine Cells

There are many hormones that circulate through the body, controlling a diverse array of functions, from appetite to body temperature to blood pH. These hormones are secreted from specialized cells in various glands, such as the hypothalamus and pituitary, the pancreas, or the thyroid. Models of hormone physiology at the level of the entire body are discussed in Chapter 16. Here, we consider models of the cells that secrete the hormones, the *neuroendocrine* cells. They are called neuroendocrine (or sometimes neurosecretory) as they have many of the hallmarks of neurons, such as membrane excitability, but are specialized, not to secrete neurotransmitter into a synaptic cleft, but to secrete hormones into the blood. However, not only is there a fine line between hormones and neurotransmitters, there is also little qualitative difference between secretion into a synaptic cleft, and secretion into the bloodstream. Thus it does not pay to draw too rigid a distinction between neurons and neuroendocrine cells.

Although, unsurprisingly, there is a great variety of neuroendocrine cells, they have certain characteristics that serve to unify their study. First, they are excitable and therefore have action potentials. Second, the electrical activity usually is not a simple action potential, or periodic train of action potentials (Chapter 5). Instead, the action potentials are characterized by bursts of rapid oscillatory activity interspersed with quiescent periods during which the membrane potential changes only slowly. This behavior is called *bursting*. Third, bursting is often closely regulated by the intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration (Chapter 7). Thus, models of neurosecretory cells typically combine models of membrane electrical excitability and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  excitability, leading to a fascinating array of dynamic behaviors.

Other factors can also influence bursting; for example, as is described later in this chapter, recent models of bursting in the pancreatic  $\beta$  cell include models of the glycolytic pathway, thus leading to models that incorporate, in a single cell, many of the

complexities described in Chapters 1, 5 and 7. Neuroendocrine cells are thus wonderful examples of how multiple oscillatory mechanisms can interact, and provide an enormous range of interesting behaviors to explore.

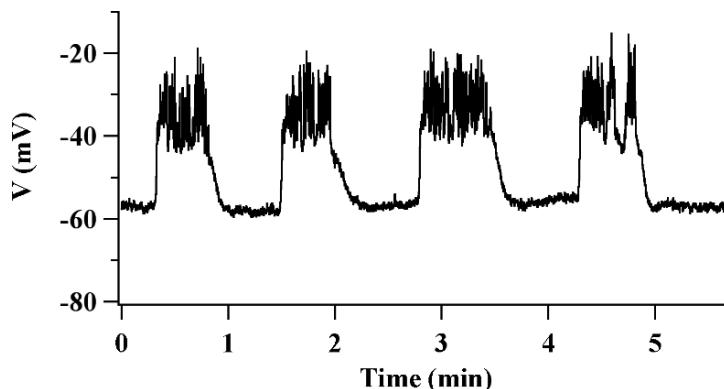
## 9.1 Pancreatic $\beta$ Cells

In response to glucose,  $\beta$  cells of the pancreatic islet secrete insulin, which causes the increased use or uptake of glucose in target tissues such as muscle, liver, and adipose tissue. When blood levels of glucose decline, insulin secretion stops, and the tissues begin to use their energy stores instead. Interruption of this control system results in diabetes, a disease that, if left uncontrolled, can result in kidney failure, heart disease, and death. It is believed that bursting, a typical example of which is shown in Fig. 9.1, plays an important (but not exclusive) role in the release of insulin from  $\beta$  cells.

### 9.1.1 Bursting in the Pancreatic $\beta$ Cell

Bursting in the pancreatic  $\beta$  cell occurs with a wide variety of periods, ranging from a few seconds to a few minutes. Typically, these are divided into three groups; fast bursting, with periods of around 2 to 5 s; medium bursting, with periods of around 10 to 60 s; and slow bursting, with periods of around 2 to 4 minutes.

Although bursting has been studied extensively for many years, most mathematical studies are based on the pioneering work of Rinzel (1985, 1987), which was in turn based on one of the first biophysical models of a pancreatic  $\beta$  cell (Chay and Keizer, 1983). Rinzel's interpretation of bursting in terms of nonlinear dynamics provides an excellent example of how mathematics can be used to understand complex biological dynamical systems.



**Figure 9.1** Bursting oscillations in the pancreatic  $\beta$  cell. Provided by Les Satin, Min Zhang and Richard Bertram.

Models of bursting in pancreatic  $\beta$  cells can be divided into two major groups (well summarized by de Vries, 1995). Earlier models were generally based on the assumption that bursting was caused by an underlying slow oscillation in the intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration (Chay, 1986, 1987; Chay and Cook, 1988; Chay and Kang, 1987; Himmel and Chay, 1987; Keizer and Magnus, 1989). In light of more recent experimental evidence showing that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is not the slow variable underlying bursting, more recent models have modified this assumption, relying on alternative mechanisms to produce the underlying slow oscillation (Keizer and Smolen, 1991; Smolen and Keizer, 1992; Bertram and Sherman, 2004a,b; Nunemaker et al., 2006).

One of the first models of bursting was proposed by Atwater et al. (1980). It was based on extensive experimental data, incorporating the important cellular mechanisms that were thought to underlie bursting, and was later developed into a mathematical model by Chay and Keizer (1983). Although the mathematical model includes only those processes believed to be essential to the bursting process and thus omits many features of the cell, it is able to reproduce many of the basic properties of bursting. The ionic currents in the model are:

1. A  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^+$  channel with conductance an increasing function of  $c = [\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  of the form

$$g_{\text{K,Ca}} = \bar{g}_{\text{K,Ca}} \frac{c}{K_d + c}, \quad (9.1)$$

for some constant  $\bar{g}_{\text{K,Ca}}$ .

2. A voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channel modeled in the same way as in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, with

$$g_{\text{K}} = \bar{g}_{\text{K}} n^4, \quad (9.2)$$

where  $n$  obeys the same differential equation as in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations (Chapter 5), except that the voltage is shifted by  $V^*$ , so that  $V$  in (5.28) and (5.29) is replaced by  $V + V^*$ . For example,  $\beta_n(V) = 0.125 \exp[(-V - V^*)/80]$ .

3. A voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel, with conductance

$$g_{\text{Ca}} = \bar{g}_{\text{Ca}} m^3 h, \quad (9.3)$$

where  $m$  and  $h$  satisfy Hodgkin–Huxley differential equations for  $\text{Na}^+$  gating, shifted along the voltage axis by  $V'$ . That is, the inward  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current is modeled by the  $\text{Na}^+$  current of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations.

Combining these ionic currents and adding a leak current gives

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -(g_{\text{K,Ca}} + g_{\text{K}})(V - V_{\text{K}}) - 2g_{\text{Ca}}(V - V_{\text{Ca}}) - g_{\text{L}}(V - V_{\text{L}}), \quad (9.4)$$

where  $C_m$  is the membrane capacitance.

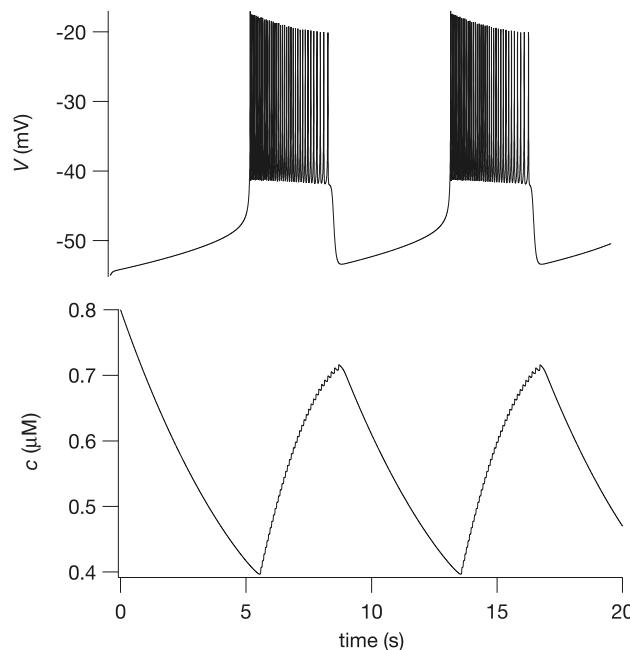
To complete the model, there is an equation for the regulation of intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = f(-k_1 I_{\text{Ca}} - k_c c), \quad (9.5)$$

where the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current is  $I_{\text{Ca}} = \bar{g}_{\text{Ca}} m^3 h(V - V_{\text{Ca}})$  and where  $k_1$  and  $k_c$  are constants. The constant  $f$  is a scale factor relating total changes in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  to the changes in free  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  (as discussed in the section on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering in Chapter 7) and is usually a small number, while  $k_c$  is the rate at which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is removed from the cytoplasm by the membrane ATPase pump.

For this model it is assumed that glucose regulates the rate of removal of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the cytoplasm. Thus,  $k_c$  is assumed to be an (unspecified) increasing function of glucose concentration. However, the concentration of glucose is not a dynamic variable of the model, so that  $k_c$  can be regarded as fixed, and the behavior of the model can be studied for a range of values of  $k_c$ .

A numerically computed solution of this model, shown in Fig. 9.2, exhibits bursts that bear a qualitative resemblance to those seen experimentally. It is also readily seen that there is a slow oscillation in  $c$  underlying the bursts, with bursting occurring during the peak of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillation. The fact that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations occur on a slower time scale is built into the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  equation (9.5) explicitly by means of the parameter  $f$ . As  $f$  becomes smaller, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  equation evolves more slowly, and thus the relative speeds of



**Figure 9.2** Bursting oscillations in the Chay-Keizer  $\beta$  cell model, calculated using the parameter values in Table 9.1.

**Table 9.1** Parameters of the model of electrical bursting in pancreatic  $\beta$  cells.

$C_m = 1 \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$	$\bar{g}_{\text{K,Ca}} = 0.02 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$
$\bar{g}_K = 3 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$	$\bar{g}_{\text{Ca}} = 3.2 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$
$\bar{g}_L = 0.012 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$	$V_K = -75 \text{ mV}$
$V_{\text{Ca}} = 100 \text{ mV}$	$V_L = -40 \text{ mV}$
$V^* = 30 \text{ mV}$	$V' = 50 \text{ mV}$
$K_d = 1 \mu\text{M}$	$f = 0.007$
$k_1 = 0.0275 \mu\text{M cm}^2/\text{nC}$	$k_c = 0.02 \text{ ms}^{-1}$

the voltage and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  equations are directly controlled. It therefore appears that there are two oscillatory processes interacting to give bursting, with a fast oscillation in  $V$  superimposed on a slower oscillation in  $c$ . This is the basis of the phase-plane analysis that we describe next.

### Phase-Plane Analysis

The  $\beta$  cell model can be simplified by ignoring the dynamics of  $m$  and  $h$ , thus removing the time dependence (but not the voltage dependence) of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current (Rinzel and Lee, 1986). The simplified model equations are

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -I_{\text{Ca}}(V) - \left( \bar{g}_K n^4 + \frac{\bar{g}_{\text{K,Ca}} c}{K_d + c} \right) (V - V_K) - \bar{g}_L (V - V_L), \quad (9.6)$$

$$\tau_n(V) \frac{dn}{dt} = n_\infty(V) - n, \quad (9.7)$$

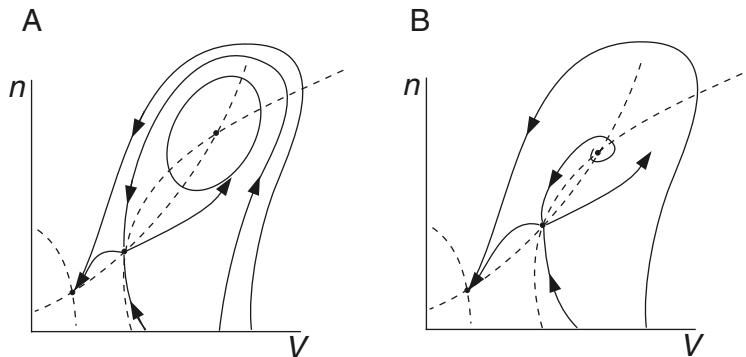
$$\frac{dc}{dt} = f(-k_1 I_{\text{Ca}}(V) - k_c c), \quad (9.8)$$

where  $I_{\text{Ca}} = \bar{g}_{\text{Ca}} m_\infty^3(V) h_\infty(V) (V - V_{\text{Ca}})$ .

Since  $f$  is small, this  $\beta$  cell model separates into a fast subsystem (the  $V$  and  $n$  equations) and a slow equation for  $c$ . The fast subsystem can be studied using phase-plane methods, and then the behavior of the full system can be understood as slow variations of the fast phase plane system.

We first consider the structure of the fast subsystem as a function of  $c$ , treating  $c$  as a fixed parameter.

When  $c$  is low, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^+$  channel is not activated, and the fast subsystem has a unique fixed point with  $V$  high. Conversely, when  $c$  is high, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^+$  channel is fully activated, and the fast subsystem has a unique fixed point with  $V$  low, as the high conductance of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^+$  channels pulls the membrane potential closer to the  $\text{K}^+$  Nernst potential, about  $-75 \text{ mV}$ . However, for intermediate values of  $c$  there are three fixed points, and the phase plane is much more intricate.



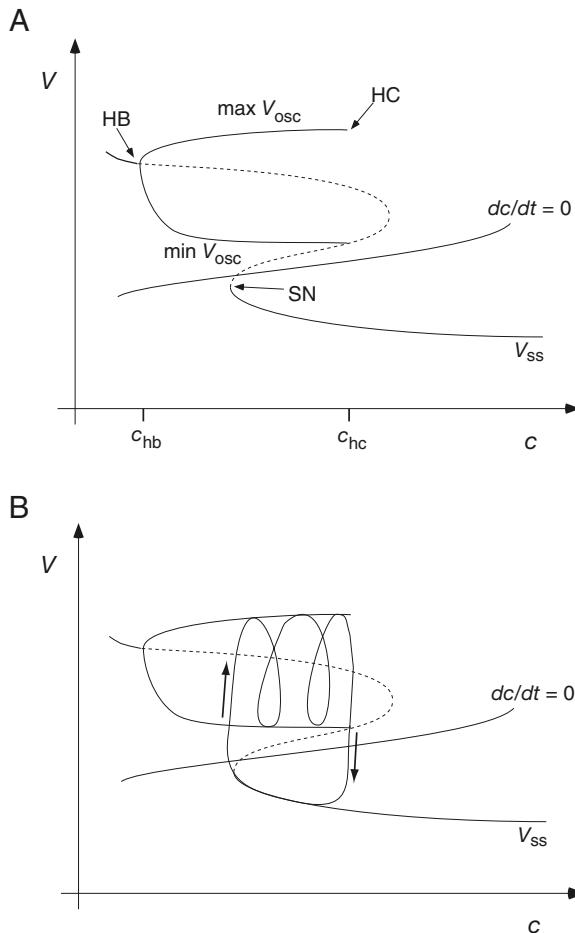
**Figure 9.3** Phase planes of the fast subsystem of the Chay–Keizer  $\beta$  cell model, for two different values of  $c$ , both in the intermediate range. The phase planes are sketched, not drawn to scale. Nullclines are denoted by dashed lines, and the intersections of the nullclines show the positions of the fixed points. For both values of  $c$  there are three fixed points, of which the middle one is a saddle point. However, in A (with  $c_{hb} < c < c_{hc}$ ; see Fig. 9.4) the unstable node is surrounded by a stable limit cycle, while in B (corresponding to  $c > c_{hc}$ ) the limit cycle has disappeared via a homoclinic bifurcation.

Phase planes of the  $V, n$  subsystem for two different intermediate values of  $c$  are shown in Fig. 9.3.

In both cases, the lower fixed point is stable, the middle fixed point is a saddle point, and the upper fixed point is unstable. For some values of  $c$  the upper fixed point is surrounded by a stable limit cycle, which in turn is surrounded by the stable manifold of the saddle point (Fig. 9.3A). However, as  $c$  increases (still in the intermediate range), the limit cycle “hits” the saddle point and forms a homoclinic connection (a homoclinic bifurcation). Increasing  $c$  further breaks the homoclinic connection, and the stable manifold of the saddle point forms a heteroclinic connection with the upper, unstable, critical point (Fig. 9.3B). There is now no limit cycle.

This sequence of bifurcations can be summarized in a bifurcation diagram, with  $V$  plotted against the control parameter  $c$  (Fig. 9.4A). The Z-shaped curve is the curve of fixed points, and as usual, the stable oscillation around the upper steady state is depicted by the maximum and minimum of  $V$  through one cycle. As  $c$  increases, oscillations appear via a Hopf bifurcation ( $c_{hb}$ ) and disappear again via a homoclinic bifurcation ( $c_{hc}$ ). For a range of values of  $c$  the fast subsystem is bistable, with a lower stable fixed point and an upper stable periodic orbit. This bistability is crucial to the appearance of bursting.

We now couple the dynamics of the fast subsystem to the slower dynamics of  $c$ . Included in Fig. 9.4A is the curve defined by  $dc/dt = 0$ , i.e., the  $c$  nullcline. When  $V$  is above the  $c$  nullcline,  $dc/dt > 0$ , and so  $c$  increases, but when  $V$  is below the  $c$  nullcline,  $c$  decreases. Now suppose  $V$  starts on the lower fixed point for a value of  $c$  that is greater than  $c_{hc}$ . Since  $V$  is below the  $c$  nullcline,  $c$  starts to decrease, and



**Figure 9.4** A: Sketch of the bifurcation diagram of the simplified Chay-Keizer  $\beta$  cell model, with  $c$  as the bifurcation parameter.  $V_{ss}$  denotes the curve of steady states of  $V$  as a function of  $c$ . A solid line indicates a stable steady state; a dashed line indicates an unstable steady state. The two branches of  $V_{\text{osc}}$  denote the maximum and minimum of  $V$  over one oscillatory cycle. HB denotes a Hopf bifurcation, HC denotes a homoclinic bifurcation, and SN denotes a saddle-node bifurcation. B: A burst cycle projected on the  $(V, c)$  plane. (Adapted from Rinzel and Lee, 1986, Fig. 3.)

$V$  follows the lower branch of fixed points. However, when  $c$  becomes too small, this lower branch of fixed points disappears in a saddle-node bifurcation (SN), and so  $V$  must switch to the upper branch of the Z-shaped curve. Since this upper branch is unstable and surrounded by a stable limit cycle,  $V$  begins to oscillate. However, since  $V$  now lies entirely above the  $c$  nullcline,  $c$  begins to increase. Eventually,  $c$  increases enough to cross the homoclinic bifurcation at  $c_{hc}$ , the stable limit cycles disappear, and  $V$  switches back to the lower branch, completing the cycle. Repetition of this process causes bursting. The quiescent phase of the bursting cycle is when  $V$  is on the lower branch of the Z-shaped curve, and during this phase  $V$  increases slowly. A burst of oscillations occurs when  $V$  switches to the upper branch, and disappears again after passage through the homoclinic bifurcation. Clearly, in this scenario, bursting relies on the coexistence of both a stable fixed point and a stable limit cycle, and the bursting cycle is a hysteresis loop that switches between branches of the Z-shaped curve. Bursting also relies on the  $c$  nullcline intersecting the Z-shaped curve in the

right location. For example, if the  $c$  nullcline intersects the Z-shaped curve on its lower branch, there is a unique stable fixed point for the whole system, and bursting does not occur. A projection of the bursting cycle on the  $(V, c)$  phase plane is shown in Fig. 9.4B. The periods of the oscillations in the burst increase through the burst, as the limit cycles get closer to the homoclinic trajectory, which has infinite period.

The relationship between bursting patterns and glucose concentration can also be deduced from Fig. 9.4. Notice that the  $\frac{dc}{dt} = 0$  nullcline, given by  $c = -\frac{k_1}{k_c} I_{\text{Ca}}(V)$ , is inversely proportional to  $k_c$ . Increasing  $k_c$  moves the  $\frac{dc}{dt} = 0$  nullcline to the left while decreasing  $k_c$  moves it to the right. Thus, when  $k_c$  is sufficiently small, the nullcline intersects the lower branch of the  $V$  nullcline. On the other hand, if  $k_c$  is extremely large, the  $c$  nullcline intersects the upper branch of the  $V$  nullcline, possibly to the left of  $c_{\text{hb}}$ . At intermediate values of  $c$ , the  $c$  nullclines intersect the middle branch of the  $V$  nullcline.

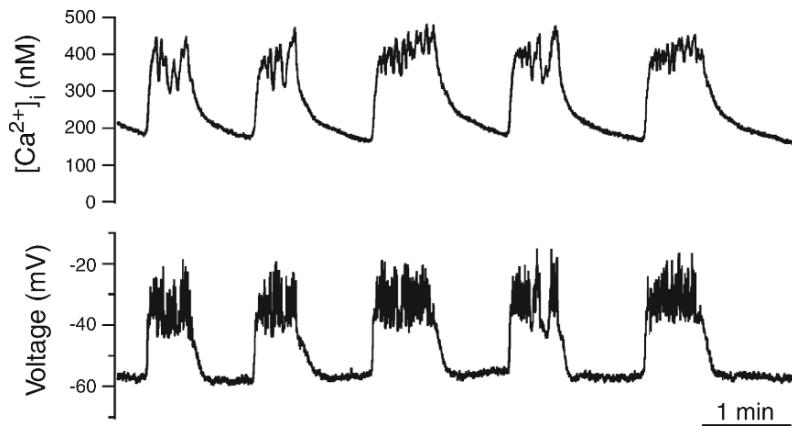
Under the assumption that  $k_c$  is monotonically related to the glucose concentration, when the glucose concentration is low, the system is at a stable rest point on the lower  $V$  nullcline; there is no bursting. If glucose is increased so that the  $c$  nullcline intersects the middle  $V$  nullcline with  $c < c_{\text{hc}}$ , there is bursting. However, the length of the bursting phase increases and the length of the resting phase decreases with increasing glucose, because  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  increases at a slower rate and decreases at a faster rate when  $k_c$  is increased. For large enough  $k_c$  the bursting is sustained with no rest phase, as  $c$  becomes stalled below  $c_{\text{hc}}$ . Finally, at extremely high  $k_c$  values, bursting is replaced by a permanent high membrane potential, with  $c < c_{\text{hb}}$ . This dependence of the bursting phase on glucose is confirmed by experiments.

### 9.1.2 ER Calcium as a Slow Controlling Variable

There are two major problems with the above model. First, it does not reproduce the wide variety of periods and bursting patterns actually seen in bursting pancreatic  $\beta$  cells, being limited to a narrow range of fast bursting frequencies.

Second, more recent experimental evidence has shown that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillates much too fast to be viewed as a slow control variable. This is illustrated in Fig. 9.5, which shows simultaneous  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and voltage measurements. The bursting oscillations in the voltage are mirrored by bursting oscillations in the cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, and the rise in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration is almost as fast as the rise in voltage.

So the question arises of what controls the length of bursting. One possibility is that the ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration varies much more slowly than the cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and could provide the necessary control mechanism. This would be the case if most of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  during active bursting were coming from the extracellular space through transmembrane ion channels, and only a small amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flowed between the cytoplasm and the ER. If this were the case, ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  would act like a low pass filter for cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and therefore could be used to detect and regulate the length of bursting activity. The possible usefulness of a low-pass filter is seen in the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  traces shown in Fig. 9.5, where, during a burst,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration oscillates rapidly around



**Figure 9.5** Simultaneous  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and voltage measurements from a bursting pancreatic  $\beta$  cell. (Adapted from Zhang et al., 2003, Fig. 4.)

a raised baseline. A low-pass filter would measure the length of time that the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  baseline is elevated, but filter out the rapid oscillations.

Thus, it was proposed by Chay (1996a,b, 1997) that slow variations in ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  could be an important control mechanism, and could, in addition, generate a wider range of bursting periods. This proposal was analyzed in detail by Bertram and Sherman (2004a) who showed that the interaction of a (not very slow) cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  variable, with a (much slower) ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  variable, could lead to bursting with a wide range of periods. They named this a *phantom bursting* model, as it can lead to bursting with a period intermediate between that of the slow variables.

### The Membrane Voltage Submodel

The electrical part of the phantom bursting model is similar to the Chay–Keizer model, but with slight differences, so we present it in full here. As before, the current is the sum of a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current, a  $\text{K}^+$  current, and a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  current, with an additional ATP-sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  current, which is important below. The only current not assumed to be at pseudo-steady state is the  $\text{K}^+$  current. Thus,

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -I_{\text{Ca}} - I_K - I_{\text{K,Ca}} - I_{\text{K,ATP}}, \quad (9.9)$$

$$\tau_n \frac{dn}{dt} = n_\infty(V) - n, \quad (9.10)$$

$$I_{\text{Ca}} = g_{\text{Ca}} m_\infty(V)(V - V_{\text{Ca}}), \quad (9.11)$$

$$I_K = g_K n(V - V_K), \quad (9.12)$$

$$I_{\text{K,Ca}} = g_{\text{K,Ca}} \omega(c)(V - V_K), \quad (9.13)$$

$$I_{\text{K,ATP}} = g_{\text{K,ATP}}(V - V_K), \quad (9.14)$$

where  $c$  denotes the free cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. The functions  $m_\infty$  and  $n_\infty$  are given by

$$m_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{(v_m - V)/s_m}}, \quad (9.15)$$

$$n_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{(v_n - V)/s_n}}. \quad (9.16)$$

The variable  $\omega$  is the fraction of open  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channels, and is close to a step function,

$$\omega(c) = \frac{c^5}{c^5 + k_D^5}. \quad (9.17)$$

### The Calcium Submodel

These equations for the electrical properties of the membrane must be coupled to equations that model the cytoplasmic and ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentrations. The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  model is chosen to be relatively simple; more complex models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics are discussed in Chapter 7.

As usual, let  $c$  and  $c_e$  denote the free concentrations of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the cytoplasm and ER respectively. The equations for  $c$  and  $c_e$  are simple balances of fluxes.

1.  $I_{\text{Ca}}$ , the transmembrane  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current as discussed above.
2. Pumping of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  across the plasma and ER membranes, denoted by  $J_{\text{pm}}$  and  $J_{\text{serca}}$  respectively. Both of these fluxes are assumed to be linear functions of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and thus

$$J_{\text{serca}} = k_{\text{serca}}c, \quad (9.18)$$

$$J_{\text{pm}} = k_{\text{pm}}c. \quad (9.19)$$

3.  $J_{\text{leak}}$ , a leak from the ER. This is assumed to be proportional to the difference between the ER and cytoplasmic concentrations, and thus

$$J_{\text{leak}} = k_{\text{leak}}(c_e - c). \quad (9.20)$$

Because of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering, only a small fraction of each flux contributes to a change in the free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. If we assume that buffering is fast and unsaturated, then we need only multiply each flux by a scaling factor to get the change in free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration (Section 7.4).

We put all these fluxes together to get

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = f_{\text{cyt}}(-\alpha I_{\text{Ca}} - J_{\text{pm}} + J_{\text{leak}} - J_{\text{serca}}), \quad (9.21)$$

$$\frac{dc_e}{dt} = -\gamma f_{\text{er}}(J_{\text{leak}} - J_{\text{serca}}). \quad (9.22)$$

Here,  $\gamma$  is the ratio of the cytoplasmic volume to the ER volume, while  $f_{\text{cyt}}$  and  $f_{\text{er}}$  are the buffering scaling factors for the cytoplasm and the ER.

**Table 9.2** Parameters of the phantom bursting model. The values of  $g_{K,Ca}$  and  $g_{K,ATP}$  used for each simulation are given in the figure captions.

$g_{Ca} = 1200 \text{ pS}$	$g_K = 3000 \text{ pS}$
$V_{Ca} = 25 \text{ mV}$	$V_K = -75 \text{ mV}$
$C_m = 5300 \text{ fF}$	$\alpha = 4.5 \times 10^{-6} \mu\text{M} \text{ fA}^{-1} \text{ ms}^{-1}$
$\tau_n = 16 \text{ ms}$	$f_{cyt} = 0.01$
$k_{pm} = 0.2 \text{ ms}^{-1}$	$k_D = 0.3 \mu\text{M}$
$v_n = -16 \text{ mV}$	$s_n = 5 \text{ mV}$
$v_m = -20 \text{ mV}$	$s_m = 12 \text{ mV}$
$k_{serca} = 0.4 \text{ ms}^{-1}$	$f_{er} = 0.01$
$\gamma = 5$	$p_{\text{leak}} = 0.0005 \text{ ms}^{-1}$

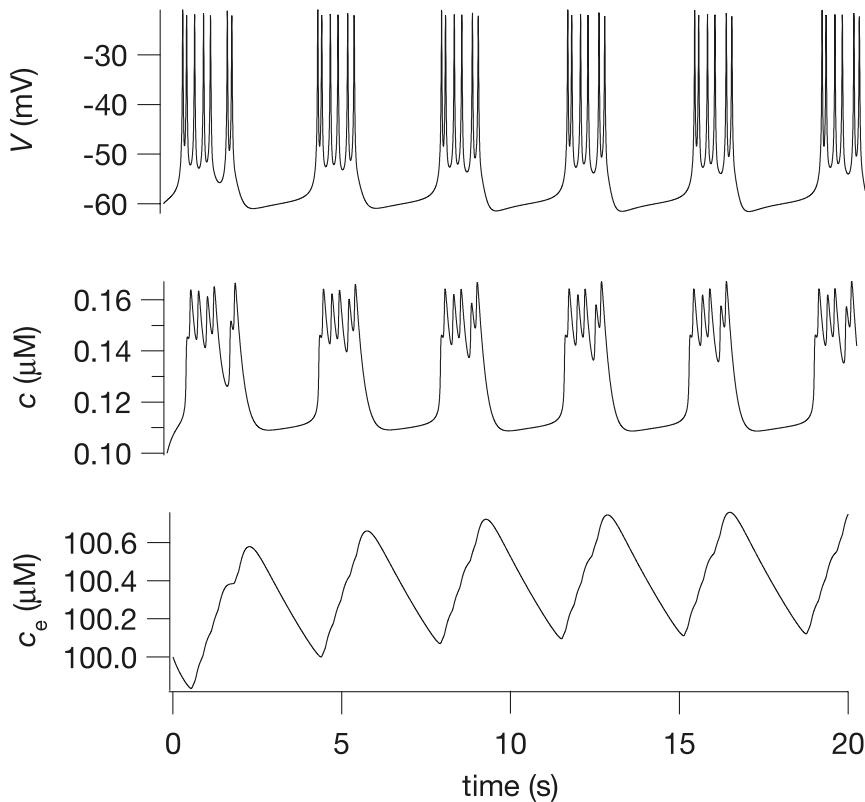
The parameter values for this model are given in Table 9.2.

### Fast Bursting

When the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  conductance is high (900 pS), the model exhibits fast bursting, as shown in Fig. 9.6. The ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration varies little over the course of a burst, and indeed, if  $c_e$  is set to be a constant, the solution is nearly identical. As can be seen from the middle panel of Fig. 9.6, although  $c$  is slightly slower than  $V$ , it changes a lot faster than  $c_e$ , and is not obviously a slow variable.

A full analysis of this model requires examining a three-dimensional phase space, a difficult exercise. However, even though it is only an approximate analysis, it is useful to analyze this model in the same way as Rinzel's analysis of the Chay–Keizer model, as discussed previously. To do so, we pretend that  $c$  is a bifurcation parameter, and draw the bifurcation diagram of  $V$  against  $c$  (Fig. 9.7). This gives a diagram qualitatively similar to that shown in Fig. 9.4. A Z-shaped curve of steady-state solutions becomes unstable at a Hopf bifurcation, and the branch of stable limit cycles intersects the Z-shaped curve of steady states in a homoclinic bifurcation. This gives rise to bistability, where a stable steady state and a stable limit cycle exist simultaneously.

Bursting occurs in the same manner as the Chay–Keizer model. Above the  $dc/dt = 0$  nullcline the solution trajectory moves to the right, and lives (approximately) on the branch of stable limit cycles, giving the active phase of the burst. When it moves far enough to the right, it falls off the branch of limit cycles and heads to the lower branch of stable steady states. Since this branch is below the  $c$  nullcline, the solution then moves to the left, eventually falling off the saddle-node to repeat the cycle. This way of interpreting the solution is only an approximate one, as it can be seen from Fig. 9.7 that the actual solution follows accurately neither the branch of periodic orbits nor

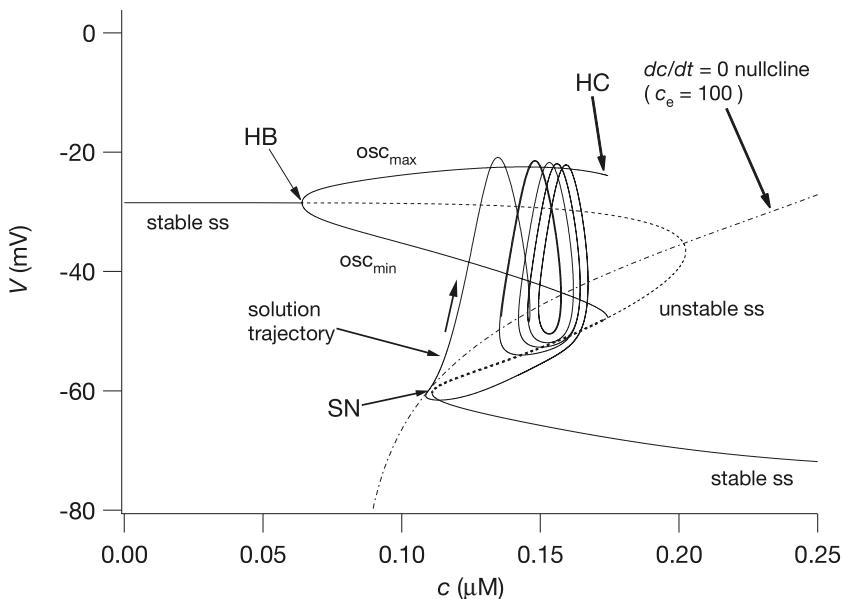


**Figure 9.6** Fast bursting oscillations in the phantom bursting model. These solutions were computed with  $g_{K,Ca} = 900$  pS and  $g_{K,ATP} = 227.5$  pS. Note that the ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  varies only slightly.

the lower branch of steady states. The upper turning point of the burst is close to  $\text{osc}_{\max}$ , but the lower turning point is not close at all to  $\text{osc}_{\min}$ . Similarly, when the solution falls off the branch of periodic orbits, it does so well before the homoclinic bifurcation, and then does not follow the lower branch of steady states closely. This happens because  $c$  is not really a slow parameter after all. In the limit as  $c$  becomes infinitely slow, the solution would track much more closely the bifurcation diagram of the fast subsystem. Despite these quantitative disagreements, the phase plane of the fast subsystem is nonetheless a useful way to interpret and understand the solutions of the full system.

However, there is one important difference between this model and the Chay–Keizer model. In this model there is a second slow variable,  $c_e$ , and thus the  $dc/dt = 0$  nullcline moves as  $c_e$  varies (the Z-shaped curve, however, is independent of  $c_e$ ). From (9.21) we see that the  $dc/dt = 0$  nullcline is given by

$$c = \frac{p_{\text{leak}}c_e - \alpha I_{\text{Ca}}}{k_{\text{pm}} + p_{\text{leak}} + k_{\text{serca}}}, \quad (9.23)$$



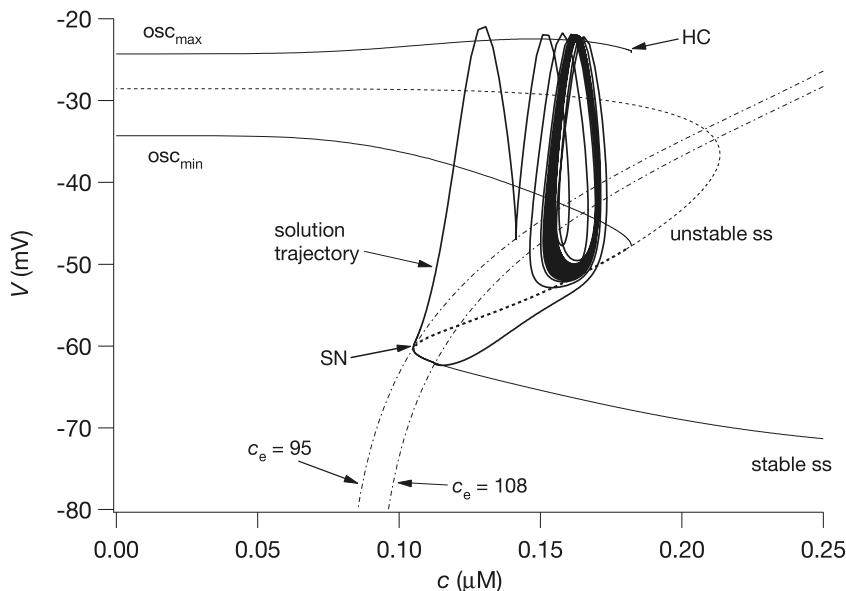
**Figure 9.7** Fast bursting in the phantom bursting model (computed with  $g_{K,\text{Ca}} = 900 \text{ pS}$  and  $g_{K,\text{ATP}} = 227.5 \text{ pS}$ ) superimposed on the bifurcation diagram of the fast subsystem, treating  $c$  as the bifurcation parameter. HB — Hopf bifurcation; HC — homoclinic bifurcation; SN — saddle-node bifurcation.

and thus, as  $c_e$  increases, the nullcline moves to the right. For the fast bursting shown in Fig. 9.6 the changes in  $c_e$  are so small that this movement of the nullcline has no effect on the bursting. However, for different parameter values, more interesting behaviors emerge.

### Medium Bursting

One way to get a longer burst period would be to stretch the Z-shaped curve horizontally, so that the homoclinic bifurcation and the saddle-node are further apart. This can be accomplished by decreasing  $g_{K,\text{Ca}}$ . However, if the  $c$  nullcline remains unchanged, for small enough  $g_{K,\text{Ca}}$  it intersects the Z-shaped curve on its upper branch, inside the branch of stable limit cycles. In this case, the limit cycle is a stable solution of the full system, and the solution remains stuck in the active phase.

Now the slow dynamics of  $c_e$  come into play. During the active phase  $c_e$  increases (see Exercise 4), gradually moving the  $c$  nullcline to the right; the oscillations chase the  $c$  nullcline to the right, as shown in Fig. 9.8. When the  $c$  nullcline is moved far enough to the right, the solution falls off the limit cycles (i.e., leaves the active phase), moves toward the lower branch of steady-state solutions (thus starting the silent phase), and moves to the left toward the saddle-node. However, movement along this lower branch is very slow, as the  $c$  nullcline intersects the Z-shaped curve on its lower branch, giving



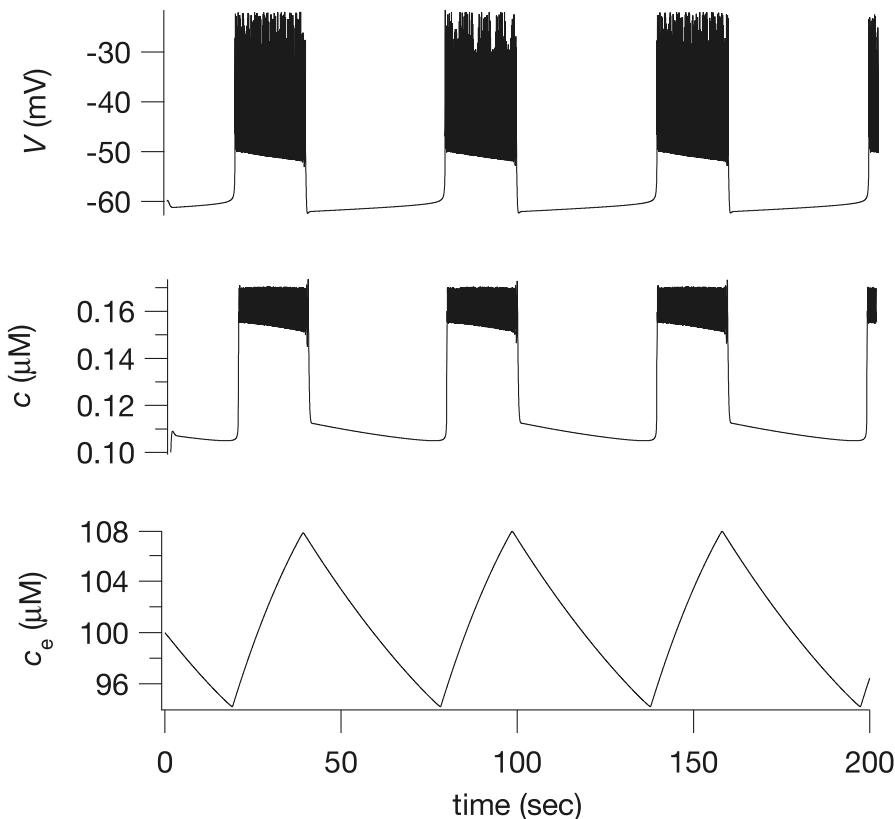
**Figure 9.8** Medium bursting in the phantom bursting model (computed with  $g_{K,Ca} = 700 \text{ pS}$  and  $g_{K,ATP} = 300 \text{ pS}$ ) superimposed on the bifurcation diagram of the fast subsystem, treating  $c$  as the bifurcation parameter. HC — homoclinic bifurcation; SN — saddle-node bifurcation. The Hopf bifurcation occurs at a negative value of  $c$  and so does not appear here. Two  $dc/dt = 0$  nullclines are shown, for the maximum and minimum values of  $c_e$  over a burst.

a stable quasi-steady state. The solution is thus forced to move at the same speed as the slow variable  $c_e$ , tracking the quasi-steady state as it moves to the left. Eventually, the  $c$  nullcline moves sufficiently far to the left that the quasi-steady state disappears, the solution leaves the lower branch of the Z-shaped curve, and the burst cycle repeats.

Thus, in medium bursting the burst cycle relies on the slow movement of the  $c$  nullcline, which is caused by the slow increase of  $c_e$  during the active phase of the burst, and the slow decrease of  $c_e$  during the silent phase. Because the  $c$  nullcline moves slowly, this results in medium bursting with a longer period. Both the active and silent phases are longer than for fast bursting, giving a much longer burst period, and the ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  varies much more over a cycle. Typical solutions are shown in Fig. 9.9.

### The Effect of Agonists

Pancreatic  $\beta$  cells are also regulated by the nervous system. Secretion of acetylcholine from parasympathetic nerves increases the rate of insulin secretion, an effect due partly to changes in the electrical activity and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics of individual  $\beta$  cells. Since the action of acetylcholine is via the production of inositol trisphosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ; see Chapter 7), and consequent release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ER, it can be modeled by including an additional term for a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flux through  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors (Exercise 3). When  $[\text{IP}_3]$  is raised



**Figure 9.9** Medium bursting oscillations in the phantom bursting model. These solutions were computed with  $g_{K,Ca} = 700$  pS and  $g_{K,ATP} = 300$  pS. The active phase is not completely regular due to inadequate numerical resolution of the timestep.

from 0 to  $0.3 \mu\text{M}$  the burst pattern changes from medium to fast, a change which is observed experimentally.

### 9.1.3 Slow Bursting and Glycolysis

Bursting in pancreatic  $\beta$  cells is highly sensitive to the level of glucose; as the concentration of glucose increases, so does the active fraction of the burst cycle. During the active fraction of the burst cycle the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration is raised, and this in turn causes the secretion of insulin. Thus, the rate of insulin secretion is an increasing function of glucose concentration.

This effect of glucose is believed to be mediated by the ATP-sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channel, which is activated by ADP and inhibited by ATP. At low glucose concentrations the ATP/ADP ratio is low, the  $\text{K}^+$  channel is open, hyperpolarizing the cell and thus preventing bursting. As glucose increases, so does the ATP/ADP ratio; this decreases the

conductance of the ATP-sensitive  $K^+$  channels, thus depolarizing the cell and allowing bursting to occur.

There are two important features of bursting and insulin secretion that we have not, as yet, addressed. First, bursting often occurs with a much longer period than that so far reproduced by the models above, and second, such slow bursting can take a more complex form than that shown in Figs. 9.6 and 9.9. In particular, slow bursting can occur as “compound” bursting, or bursts of bursts, in which each active phase itself consists of alternating active and silent subphases.

One hypothesis is that compound bursting and a long burst period arise from a slow oscillation in the glycolytic pathway (Chapter 1), which causes slow oscillations in the ATP/ADP ratio. One of the earliest quantitative models of this hypothesis was that of Wierschem and Bertram (2004), who showed that, by linking the Goldbeter–Lefever model of glycolytic oscillations (Chapter 1) to a simple bursting model, the burst pattern could be modulated on a long time scale, to obtain both compound and slow bursting. This initial model, more a proof of principle than a quantitative model, was quickly followed by much more detailed realizations, first using the Smolen model of glycolytic oscillations (Smolen, 1995; Bertram et al., 2004; Nunemaker et al., 2006), and then linking the Smolen model to the Magnus–Keizer model of mitochondrial metabolism (Magnus and Keizer, 1997, 1998a, 1998b; Bertram et al., 2006a, 2007a,b).

The later models being too complex to present in full here, we instead examine briefly the original model of Wierschem and Bertram (2004), as it contains most of the essentials of the more complex models.

### The Glycolysis, Electrical and Calcium Submodels

To model glycolytic oscillations in a simple way we use the reduced Goldbeter–Lefever model discussed in Section 1.6. Thus,

$$\tau_c \frac{d[\text{ATP}]}{dt} = v_1 - F([\text{ATP}], [\text{ADP}]), \quad (9.24)$$

$$\tau_c \frac{d[\text{ADP}]}{dt} = F([\text{ATP}], [\text{ADP}]) - v_2[\text{ADP}], \quad (9.25)$$

where (as in (1.125))

$$F([\text{ATP}], [\text{ADP}]) = [\text{ATP}](1 + k_{\text{ADP}}[\text{ADP}])^2. \quad (9.26)$$

The only change introduced to this version of the glycolytic model is the time constant,  $\tau_c$ , which is convenient for changing the period of the glycolytic oscillations.

The electrical submodel is almost the same as the models discussed previously in this chapter. The currents are described by (9.9)–(9.14) and (9.15), the only difference being that, instead of (9.17), we take

$$\omega(c) = \frac{c}{c + k_D}. \quad (9.27)$$

**Table 9.3** Parameters of the compound bursting model.

$g_{\text{Ca}}$	= 1200 pS	$g_K$	= 3000 pS
$g_{K,\text{Ca}}$	= 300 pS	$g_{K,\text{ATP}}$	= 350 pS
$V_{\text{Ca}}$	= 25 mV	$V_K$	= -75 mV
$C_m$	= 5300 fF	$\alpha$	= $2.25 \times 10^{-6} \mu\text{M} \text{ fA}^{-1} \text{ ms}^{-1}$
$\tau_n$	= 16 ms	$f$	= 0.001
$k_c$	= 0.1 ms <sup>-1</sup>	$k_D$	= 0.3 $\mu\text{M}$
$v_n$	= -16 mV	$s_n$	= 5.6 mV
$v_m$	= -20 mV	$s_m$	= 12 mV
$\tau_c$	= $1.2 \times 10^{-6}$ ms	$v_1$	= 10 mM
$v_2$	= 185	$k_{\text{ADP}}$	= 20 mM <sup>-1</sup>

Finally, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  submodel is the same as that of the Chay–Keizer model. We thus ignore ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to get a single equation for  $c$  (as in (9.5)),

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = -f(\alpha I_{\text{Ca}} + k_c c). \quad (9.28)$$

All the parameters of the compound bursting model are given in Table 9.3.

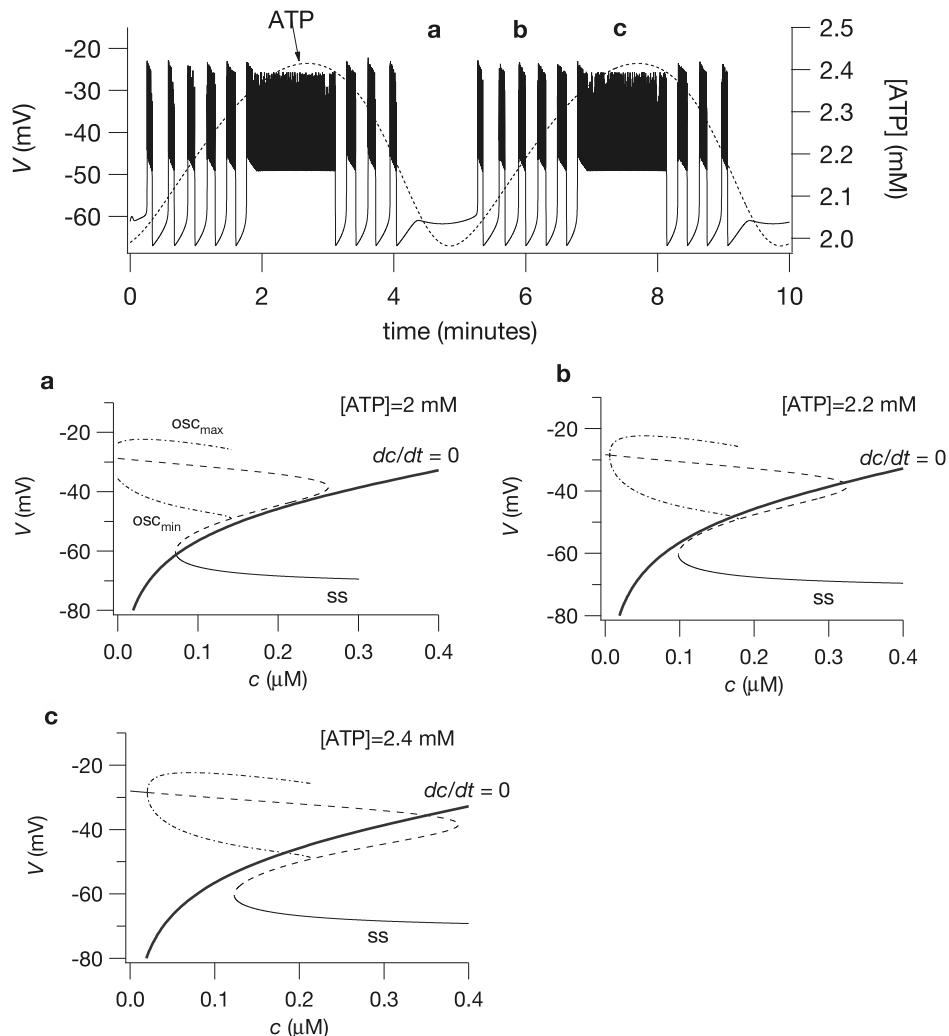
### Compound Bursting

A typical example of compound bursting in this model is shown in Fig. 9.10. The bursting occurs in clusters, with the duration of the active phase increasing and then decreasing through each cluster. As can be seen from the dotted curve, [ATP] is oscillating also; here these oscillations are independent of  $c$  and  $V$ , although this is not necessarily so in more complex models.

The reason for the compound bursting can be seen if we consider the fast–slow bifurcation structure of the electrical submodel, for various fixed values of [ATP]. As for the Chay–Keizer model, we treat  $c$  as a slow variable and construct the bifurcation diagrams using  $c$  as a bifurcation parameter.

At all values of [ATP], the curve of steady states (labeled ss in Fig. 9.10) is Z-shaped. The unstable branches of this Z-shaped curve are shown as a dashed line. For low values of  $c$  the steady state becomes unstable in a Hopf bifurcation, from which emerges a branch of stable periodic solutions (the dot-dash curve, labeled  $\text{osc}_{\max}$  and  $\text{osc}_{\min}$  in Fig. 9.10, panel a).

As [ATP] increases, the Z-shaped curve moves to the right, but the  $dc/dt = 0$  nullcline remains unchanged. Thus, when [ATP] is low, the  $dc/dt = 0$  nullcline intersects the Z-shaped curve on the lower, stable, branch, a situation that gives no bursting at all (panel a). Conversely, when [ATP] is high, the  $dc/dt = 0$  nullcline intersects the branch



**Figure 9.10** Compound bursting in the model with glycolytic oscillations. The upper panel shows a compound bursting pattern, in which the bursts are grouped in clusters that occur in a periodic manner. In panels **a**, **b**, and **c** are shown the bifurcation diagrams corresponding approximately to the regions labeled **a**, **b** and **c** in the top panel. The dashed lines are unstable branches of steady states, and the dot-dash lines are the maximum and minimum of stable periodic solutions.

of periodic orbits, which leads to a continuous active phase (panel **c**). When  $[ATP]$  takes intermediate values, the length of the active phase is either longer or shorter, depending on where the  $dc/dt = 0$  nullcline intersects the Z-shaped curve (panel **b**).

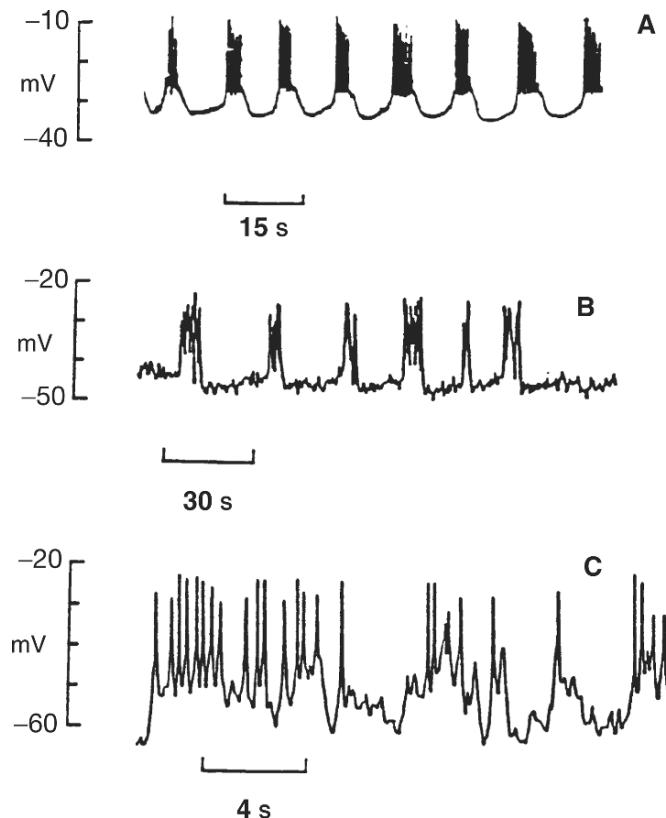
Hence, as  $[ATP]$  varies over the course of an oscillation, so does the length of the active phase, thus giving compound bursting.

### 9.1.4 Bursting in Clusters

In the discussion so far, we have ignored the inconvenient fact that isolated pancreatic  $\beta$  cells usually do not burst in a regular fashion. It is not until several thousand cells are grouped into an islet and electrically coupled by gap junctions that regular spiking is seen in any cell. An isolated  $\beta$  cell behaves in a much more irregular fashion, with no discernible pattern of bursting. Indeed, blockage of gap junctions in an islet greatly reduces insulin secretion, and thus intercellular mechanisms that control bursting are of great physiological importance. Figure 9.11 shows how the behavior of an individual cell changes as a function of the number of other cells to which it is coupled.

#### Channel-Sharing

In 1983, Atwater et al. proposed a qualitative mechanism to account for the difference between the single-cell behavior and the behavior of the cell in a cluster. They



**Figure 9.11** Bursting in clusters of  $\beta$  cells, compared to the electrical activity of an isolated  $\beta$  cell (Sherman et al., 1988, Fig. 1). A: Recording from a  $\beta$  cell in an intact cluster (Atwater and Rinzel, 1986). B: Recording from a cluster of  $\beta$  cells, with a radius of 70  $\mu\text{m}$  (Rorsman and Trube, 1986, Fig. 1a). C: Recording from an isolated  $\beta$  cell (Rorsman and Trube, 1986, Fig. 2c).

proposed that an individual cell contains a small number of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  ( $\text{K}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) channels each of which has a high conductance. At resting  $V$  and  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ , a  $\text{K}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel is open only infrequently, but the opening of a single channel passes enough current to cause a significant perturbation of the cell membrane potential. Thus, stochastic channel opening and closing causes the observed random fluctuations in  $V$ . However, when the cells are electrically coupled in a cluster, each  $\text{K}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel has a much smaller effect on the potential of each individual cell, since the channel current is spread over the network of cells. Each cell integrates the effects of a large number of  $\text{K}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, each of which has only a small influence. The tighter the electrical coupling between cells, the better each cell is able to integrate the effects of all the  $\text{K}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels in the cluster, and the more regular and deterministic is the overall behavior.

We can use this qualitative explanation as the basis for a quantitative model (Sherman et al., 1988; Chay and Kang, 1988). Initially, we assume infinitely tight coupling of the cells in the cluster, calling the cluster a “supercell,” and show how the bursting becomes more regular as the size of the cluster increases.

The equations of the supercell model are similar to those of the  $\beta$  cell model. Recall that in the  $\beta$  cell model the conductance of the  $\text{K}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel,  $g_{\text{K},\text{Ca}}$ , is given by

$$g_{\text{K},\text{Ca}} = \bar{g}_{\text{K},\text{Ca}} \frac{c}{K_d + c}, \quad (9.29)$$

where  $c$ , as usual, denotes  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$ . This can be derived from a simple channel model in which the channel has one closed state and one open state, switching from closed to open upon the binding of a single  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion. Thus



where  $\text{C}$  is a closed channel and  $\text{O}$  is an open one. If the rate constants  $k_+$  and  $k_-$  are both large compared to the other kinetic parameters of the model, then

$$[\text{O}] = \frac{k_+ [\text{Ca}^{2+}]}{k_-} [\text{C}] = \frac{[\text{Ca}^{2+}]}{K_d} (1 - [\text{O}]), \quad (9.31)$$

where  $K_d = k_-/k_+$ . Hence  $[\text{O}] = [\text{Ca}^{2+}]/(K_d + [\text{Ca}^{2+}])$ , from which (9.29) follows.

In the supercell model, (9.30) is interpreted as a Markov rather than a deterministic process, with  $k_+$  denoting the probability per unit time that the closed channel switches to the open state, and similarly for  $k_-$ . Thus, the mean open and closed times are, respectively,  $1/k_-$  and  $1/k_+$ . If we let  $\langle N_o \rangle$  and  $\langle N_c \rangle$  denote the mean number of open channels and closed channels respectively, then at equilibrium we have

$$\frac{\langle N_o \rangle}{\langle N_c \rangle} = \frac{k_+}{k_-}. \quad (9.32)$$

To incorporate the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dependence of the channel we make

$$\frac{k_+}{k_-} = \frac{[\text{Ca}^{2+}]}{K_d}, \quad (9.33)$$

which gives the steady-state mean proportion of open channels as

$$\langle p \rangle = \frac{\langle N_o \rangle}{\langle N_o \rangle + \langle N_c \rangle} = \frac{[\text{Ca}^{2+}]}{K_d + [\text{Ca}^{2+}]} = \frac{c}{K_d + c}. \quad (9.34)$$

The associated stochastic model is similar to (9.6)–(9.8), with the major difference being that the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  current is governed by the above stochastic process. In other words,  $p$  is a random variable denoting the proportion of open channels in a single cell, and is calculated (as a function of time) by numerical simulation of the Markov process described by (9.30). Thus,

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -I_{\text{Ca}} - I_{\text{K}} - \bar{g}_{\text{K,Ca}} p(V - V_{\text{K}}), \quad (9.35)$$

$$\tau_n(V) \frac{dn}{dt} = \lambda(n_\infty(V) - n), \quad (9.36)$$

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = f(-\alpha I_{\text{Ca}} - k_c c), \quad (9.37)$$

where  $I_{\text{Ca}} = \bar{g}_{\text{Ca}} m_\infty(V) h(V)(V - V_{\text{Ca}})$  and  $I_{\text{K}} = \bar{g}_{\text{K}} n(V - V_{\text{K}})$ . The functions appearing in the supercell model are

$$m_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp\left[\frac{4-V}{14}\right]}, \quad (9.38)$$

$$n_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp\left[\frac{-15-V}{5.6}\right]}, \quad (9.39)$$

$$\tau_n(V) = \frac{\bar{\tau}_n}{\exp\left[\frac{V+75}{65}\right] + \exp\left[\frac{-V-75}{20}\right]}, \quad (9.40)$$

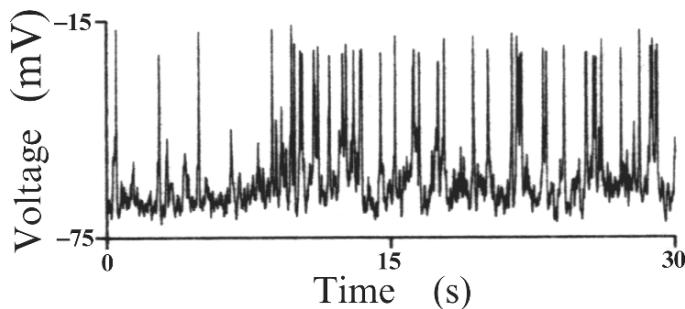
$$h(V) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp\left[\frac{V+10}{10}\right]}. \quad (9.41)$$

The other parameters of the model are summarized in Table 9.4. Note that although the form of the model is similar to that of the  $\beta$  cell model, the details have been changed to agree with more recent experimental data. In particular,  $m_\infty$  appears only to the first power instead of the third, while  $n$  also appears to the first power. Further, the  $I$ – $V$  curve of the open  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel is assumed to be of the form  $h(V)(V - V_{\text{Ca}})$ , and  $h(V)$  is chosen to fit the experimentally observed  $I$ – $V$  curve. This has an effect similar to that of the function  $h_\infty(V)$  that was used in the  $\beta$  cell model.

One of the most important features of the stochastic model is that the conductance of a single  $\text{K}^+$ – $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel is an order of magnitude greater than the conductances of the other two channels (Table 9.4). However, each cell contains only a small number

**Table 9.4** Parameters of the supercell model of electrical bursting in clusters of pancreatic  $\beta$  cells.

$C_m = 5.3 \text{ pF}$	$\bar{g}_{K,Ca} = 30 \text{ nS}$
$\bar{g}_K = 2.5 \text{ nS}$	$\bar{g}_{Ca} = 1.4 \text{ nS}$
$V_{Ca} = 110 \text{ mV}$	$V_K = -75 \text{ mV}$
$k_c = 0.03 \text{ ms}^{-1}$	$f = 0.001$
$\alpha = 4.5 \mu\text{M/C}$	$K_d = 100 \mu\text{M}$
$\bar{\tau}_n = 60 \text{ ms}$	



**Figure 9.12** Behavior of an isolated cell in the supercell stochastic model. Because of the stochastic nature of each high-conductance  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channel, and because there are few channels in a single cell, no organized bursting appears (Sherman et al., 1988, Fig. 6).

of  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channels. Thus, the opening of a single  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channel in an isolated cell has a disproportionately large effect on the membrane potential of the cell; the stochastic nature of each  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channel then causes seemingly random fluctuations in membrane potential (Fig. 9.12).

However, when identical cells are coupled by gap junctions with zero resistance, different behavior emerges. First, since the gap junctions are assumed to have zero resistance, and thus the entire group of cells has the same membrane potential, it is not necessary to treat each cell explicitly. Second, the membrane capacitance and the ionic currents depend on the surface area of the cluster and are therefore proportional to the number of cells in the cluster,  $N_{\text{cell}}$ . Finally, the total number of  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channels is proportional to the total number of cells in the cluster, but the effect of each individual channel on the membrane potential of the cluster is proportional to  $1/N_{\text{cell}}$ . It follows that the cluster of cells behaves in the same way as a very large single cell with many  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channels, each with a smaller conductance. We expect the cluster of cells to behave in the same manner as a deterministic single-cell model in the limit as  $N_{\text{cell}} \rightarrow \infty$ .

To see that this is what happens, we let  $\hat{g}$  denote the conductance of a single  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channel and let  $N_o^i$  denote the number of open  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channels in the  $i$ th cell. Then

$$N_{\text{cell}} C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -N_{\text{cell}}(I_{\text{Ca}} + I_K) - \hat{g} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{\text{cell}}} N_o^i (V - V_K), \quad (9.42)$$

and so

$$\begin{aligned} C_m \frac{dV}{dt} &= -(I_{\text{Ca}} + I_K) - \hat{g} \bar{N} \frac{1}{N_{\text{cell}} \bar{N}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{\text{cell}}} N_o^i (V - V_K) \\ &= -(I_{\text{Ca}} + I_K) - \bar{g}_{K,Ca} p (V - V_K), \end{aligned} \quad (9.43)$$

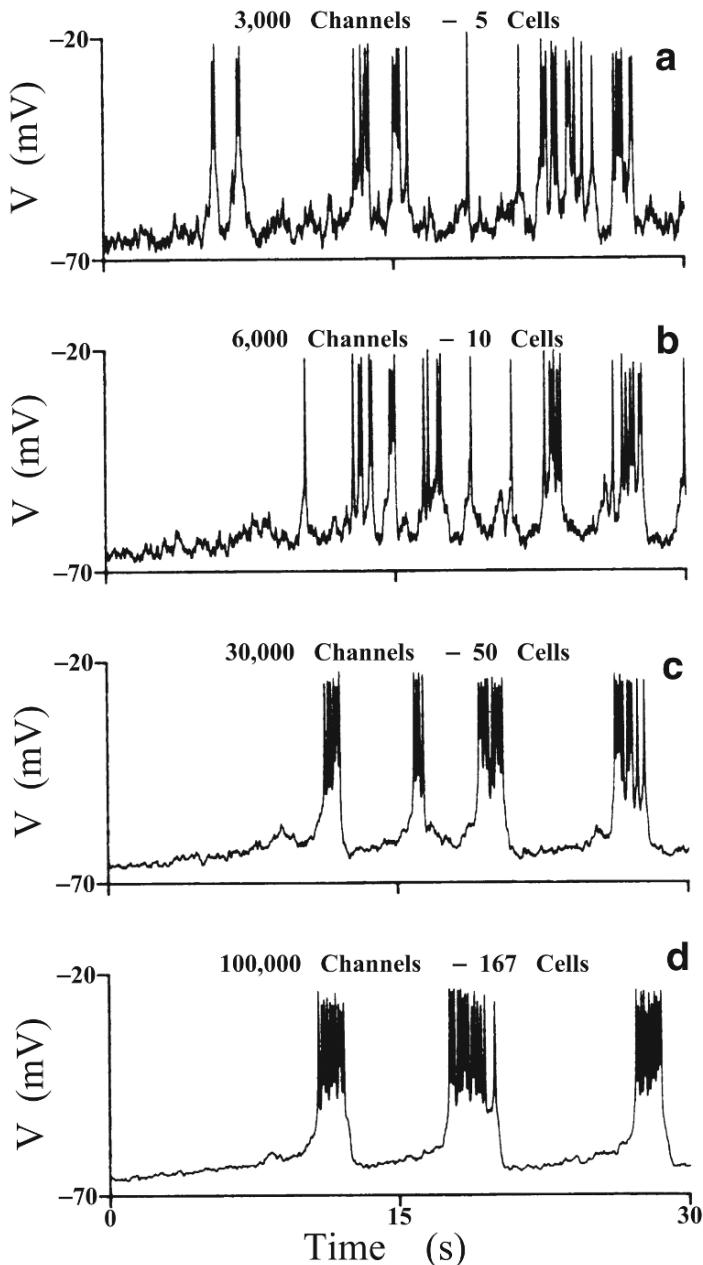
where  $\bar{N}$  is the number of  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  channels per cell, or the channel density, and where, as before,  $\bar{g}_{K,Ca} = \hat{g} \bar{N}$  is the total  $K^+-Ca^{2+}$  conductance per cell. Note that in the supercell model  $p = \frac{1}{N_{\text{cell}} \bar{N}} \sum_{i=1}^{N_{\text{cell}}} N_o^i$  must be interpreted as the fraction of open channels in the cluster, rather than the fraction of open channels in a single cell. The mean of  $p$  is the same in both these cases, but as  $N_{\text{cell}}$  increases, the standard deviation of  $p$  decreases, leading to increasingly regular behavior. As before,  $p$  must be obtained by direct simulation of the Markov process. Simulations for different numbers of cells are shown in Fig. 9.13. Clearly, as the size of the cluster increases, bursting becomes more regular.

One obvious simplification in the supercell model is the assumption that the gap junctions have zero resistance and thus that every cell in the cluster has the same membrane potential. We can relax this assumption by modeling the cluster as individual cells coupled by gap junctions with finite conductance (Sherman and Rinzel, 1991). An individual cell, cell  $i$  say, satisfies a voltage equation of the form

$$C_m \frac{dV_i}{dt} = -I_{\text{Ca}}(V_i) - I_K(V_i, n_i) - \bar{g}_{K,Ca} p_i (V_i - V_K) - g_c \sum_j d_{ij} (V_i - V_j), \quad (9.44)$$

where  $g_c$  is the gap junction conductance and where  $d_{ij}$  are coupling coefficients, with value one if cells  $i$  and  $j$  are coupled, and zero otherwise. As  $g_c \rightarrow \infty$ , the sum  $\sum_j d_{ij} (V_i - V_j)$  must approach zero for every cell in the cluster. If all the cells are connected by some connecting path (so that there are no isolated cells or subclusters), then every cell must have the same voltage (see Exercise 9). Thus, in the limit of infinite conductance,

$$V_i \longrightarrow \bar{V} = \frac{1}{N_{\text{cell}}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{\text{cell}}} V_j. \quad (9.45)$$



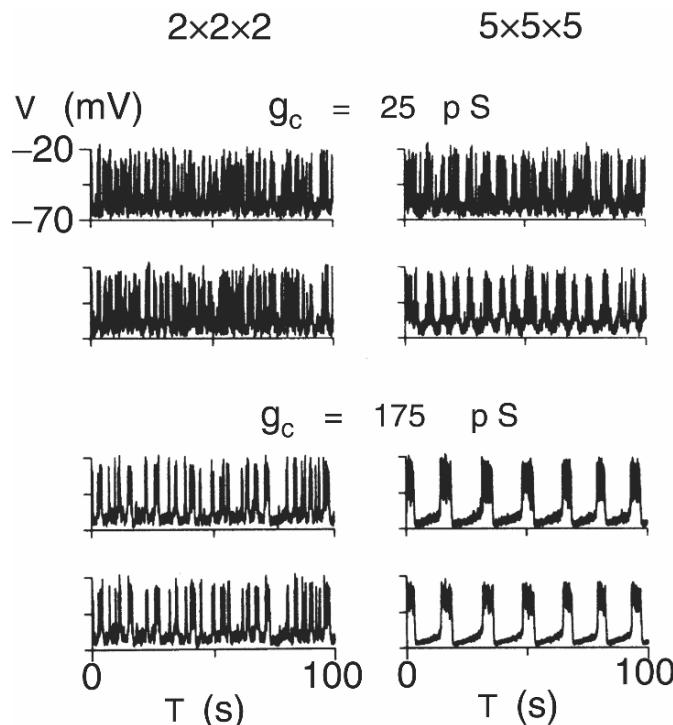
**Figure 9.13** Numerical simulations of the supercell model of a cluster of cells ranging in size from 5 to 167 cells. As the size of the cluster increases, more organized bursting appears. (Sherman et al., 1988, Fig. 8.)

For large but finite coupling,  $V_i = \bar{V} + O(\frac{1}{g_c})$ . If we sum (9.44) over all the cells in the cluster and divide by  $N_{\text{cell}}$ , we find

$$\begin{aligned} C_m \frac{d\bar{V}}{dt} &= -I_{\text{Ca}}(\bar{V}) - I_{\text{K}}(\bar{V}, n) - \bar{g}_{\text{K,Ca}} \frac{1}{N_{\text{cell}}} \sum_{j=1}^{N_{\text{cell}}} p_j (\bar{V} - V_{\text{K}}) + O\left(\frac{1}{N_{\text{cell}}}\right) \\ &= -I_{\text{Ca}}(\bar{V}) - I_{\text{K}}(\bar{V}, n) - \bar{g}_{\text{K,Ca}} \bar{p} (\bar{V} - V_{\text{K}}) + O\left(\frac{1}{N_{\text{cell}}}\right), \end{aligned} \quad (9.46)$$

where  $\bar{p} = \frac{\sum_i p_i}{N_{\text{cell}}} = \frac{\sum_i p_i \bar{N}}{N_{\text{cell}} \bar{N}}$  is the proportion of open  $\text{K}^+$ - $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels in the cluster. Hence, the model with finite gap-junctional conductance (the *multicell* model) turns into the supercell model as the gap-junctional conductance and the number of cells in the cluster approach infinity.

As expected, synchronized bursting appears as the number of cells in the cluster increases and the coupling strength increases. Both strong coupling and a large cluster size are required to achieve regular bursting. This is illustrated in Fig. 9.14, where we



**Figure 9.14** Numerical simulations of the multicell model, in which the cells in the cluster are coupled by gap junctions with finite conductance. Results are shown for two cells (upper and lower traces in each pair) from two different cluster sizes ( $2 \times 2 \times 2$  cells and  $5 \times 5 \times 5$  cells) and two different junctional conductances. (Sherman and Rinzel, 1991, Fig. 3.)

show numerical simulations for two different cluster sizes and two different coupling strengths. However, what is not expected (and is therefore particularly interesting) is that there is a coupling strength at which the length of the burst period is maximized. The reasons for this have been analyzed in depth in a simpler system consisting of two coupled cells (Sherman, 1994).

A different approach was taken by Tsaneva-Atanasova et al. (2006), who studied the effects on bursting of the intercellular diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and metabolites. They concluded that intercellular diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is not important for the synchronized bursting of a cluster, but that intercellular diffusion of metabolites can lead to either synchrony or the abolition of oscillations entirely.

### 9.1.5 A Qualitative Bursting Model

Just as the essential behaviors of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations can be distilled into the simpler FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, giving a great deal of insight into the mechanisms underlying excitability, so too can the Chay–Keizer model of bursting be simplified to a polynomial model, without losing the essential properties (Hindmarsh and Rose, 1982, 1984; Pernarowski, 1994).

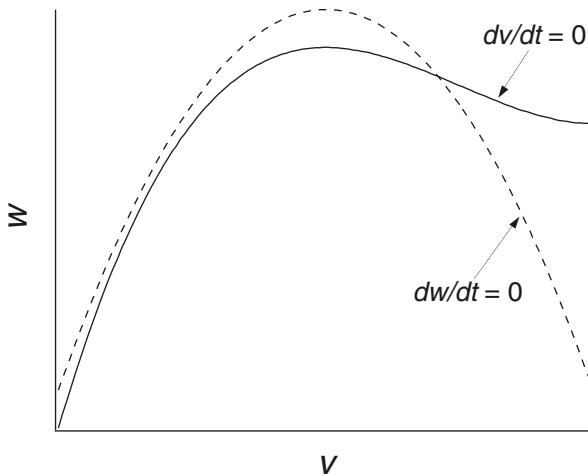
We begin with the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, and modify them slightly to make the period of the oscillations much longer. Suppose we let  $v$  denote the excitatory variable and  $w$  the recovery variable (as in Chapter 5). Then, the model equations are

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = \alpha(\beta w - f(v) + I), \quad (9.47)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = \gamma(g(v) - \delta w), \quad (9.48)$$

where  $I$  is the applied current and  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ , and  $\delta$  are constants. As in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations  $f(v)$  is cubic, but unlike the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations  $g(v)$  is not a linear function. In fact, as can be seen from Fig. 9.15, the  $w$  nullcline curves around to lie close to the  $v$  nullcline to the left of the oscillatory critical point. (Of course, this occurs only for a range of values of the applied current  $I$  for which oscillations occur.) As a result, between the peaks of the oscillation, the limit cycle trajectory lies close to both nullclines, and thus both  $\dot{v}$  and  $\dot{w}$  are small over that portion of the cycle. It follows that the intervals between the spikes are large.

With only a slight change, this modified FitzHugh–Nagumo model can be used as a model of bursting. Following the discussions in this chapter, it should come as no surprise that bursting can arise in this model when bistability is introduced. This can be done by deforming the  $\dot{w} = 0$  nullcline so that it intersects the  $\dot{v} = 0$  nullcline in three places rather than only one. Since the nullclines lie close to one another in the original model, only a slight deformation is required to create two new critical points.



**Figure 9.15** Sketch of typical nullclines in the modified FitzHugh–Nagumo equations.

With this change, the new model equations are

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = \alpha(\beta w - f(v) + I), \quad (9.49)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = \gamma(g(v) + h(v) - \delta w), \quad (9.50)$$

where  $h(v)$  is chosen such that the nullclines intersect in three places. For convenience, we scale and nondimensionalize the model by introducing the variables  $T = \gamma\delta t$ ,  $x = v$ , and  $y = \alpha\beta w/(\gamma\delta)$ , in terms of which variables the model becomes

$$\frac{dx}{dT} = y - \tilde{f}(x), \quad (9.51)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dT} = \tilde{g}(x) - y, \quad (9.52)$$

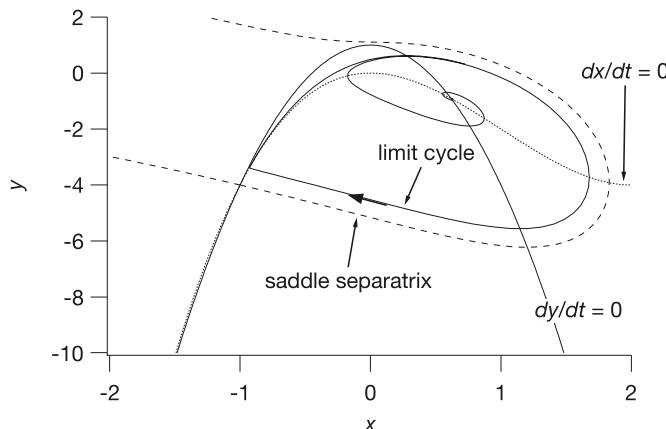
where  $\tilde{f}(x) = \alpha f(x)/(\gamma\delta)$  and  $\tilde{g}(x) = \alpha\beta[g(x) + h(x)]/(\gamma\delta^2)$ . Note that the form of the model is the same as that of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, although the functions appearing in the model are different. With appropriate choices for  $\tilde{f}$  and  $\tilde{g}$  the model exhibits bistability; we use the specific functions

$$\frac{dx}{dT} = y - x^3 + 3x^2 + I, \quad (9.53)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dT} = 1 - 5x^2 - y, \quad (9.54)$$

the phase plane of which is shown in Fig. 9.16 for  $I = 0$ .

There are three critical points: a stable node to the left at  $x = -\frac{1}{2}(1 + \sqrt{5})$  (the resting state), a saddle point in the middle at  $x = -1$ , and an unstable node to the right at  $x = \frac{1}{2}(-1 + \sqrt{5})$ , which is surrounded by a stable limit cycle. As in the models of



**Figure 9.16** Phase plane of the polynomial bursting model.

bursting discussed above, the stable manifold of the saddle point acts as a threshold; if the perturbation from the resting state is large enough that the stable manifold is crossed, the trajectory approaches the stable limit cycle. Smaller perturbations die away to the resting state. This is called *triggered firing*. This bistable phase plane is essentially the same as the phase plane shown in Fig. 9.3A.

To generate bursting in addition to bistability, it is also necessary to have a slow variable so that the voltage can be moved in and out of the bistable regime. This is accomplished in this model by introducing a third variable,  $z$ , that modulates the applied current,  $I$ , on a slower time scale. Thus,

$$\frac{dx}{dT} = y - x^3 + 3x^2 + I - z, \quad (9.55)$$

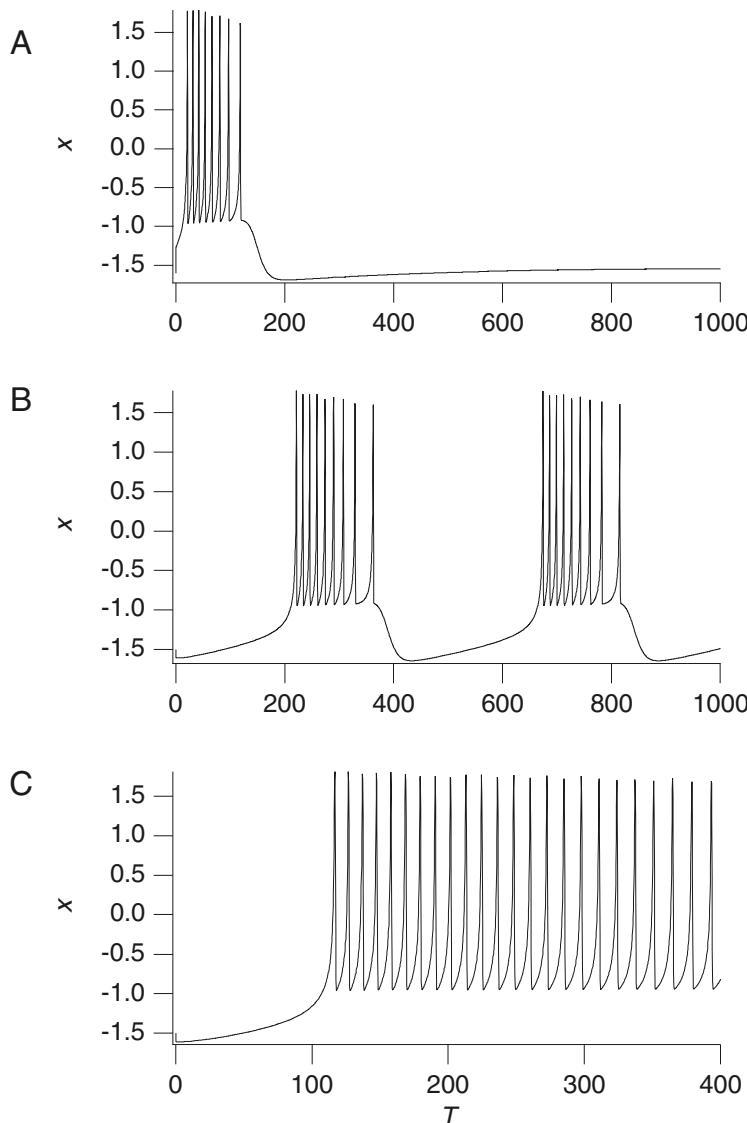
$$\frac{dy}{dT} = 1 - 5x^2 - y, \quad (9.56)$$

$$\frac{dz}{dT} = r[s(x - x_1) - z], \quad (9.57)$$

where  $x_1 = -\frac{1}{2}(1 + \sqrt{5})$  is the  $x$ -coordinate of the resting state in the two-variable model (9.53)–(9.54). When  $r = 0.001$  and  $s = 4$ , (9.55)–(9.57) exhibit bursting (Fig. 9.17), arising via the same mechanism as in the Chay–Keizer model.

### 9.1.6 Bursting Oscillations in Other Cell Types

As can be seen in Fig. 9.18, bursting oscillations occur not only in pancreatic  $\beta$  cells, but also in a wide range of other types of neurons and neuroendocrine cells. The type of bursting that occurs is also widely variable. Because of the enormously complex dynamical behavior exhibited in these bursting patterns, they have been a popular topic

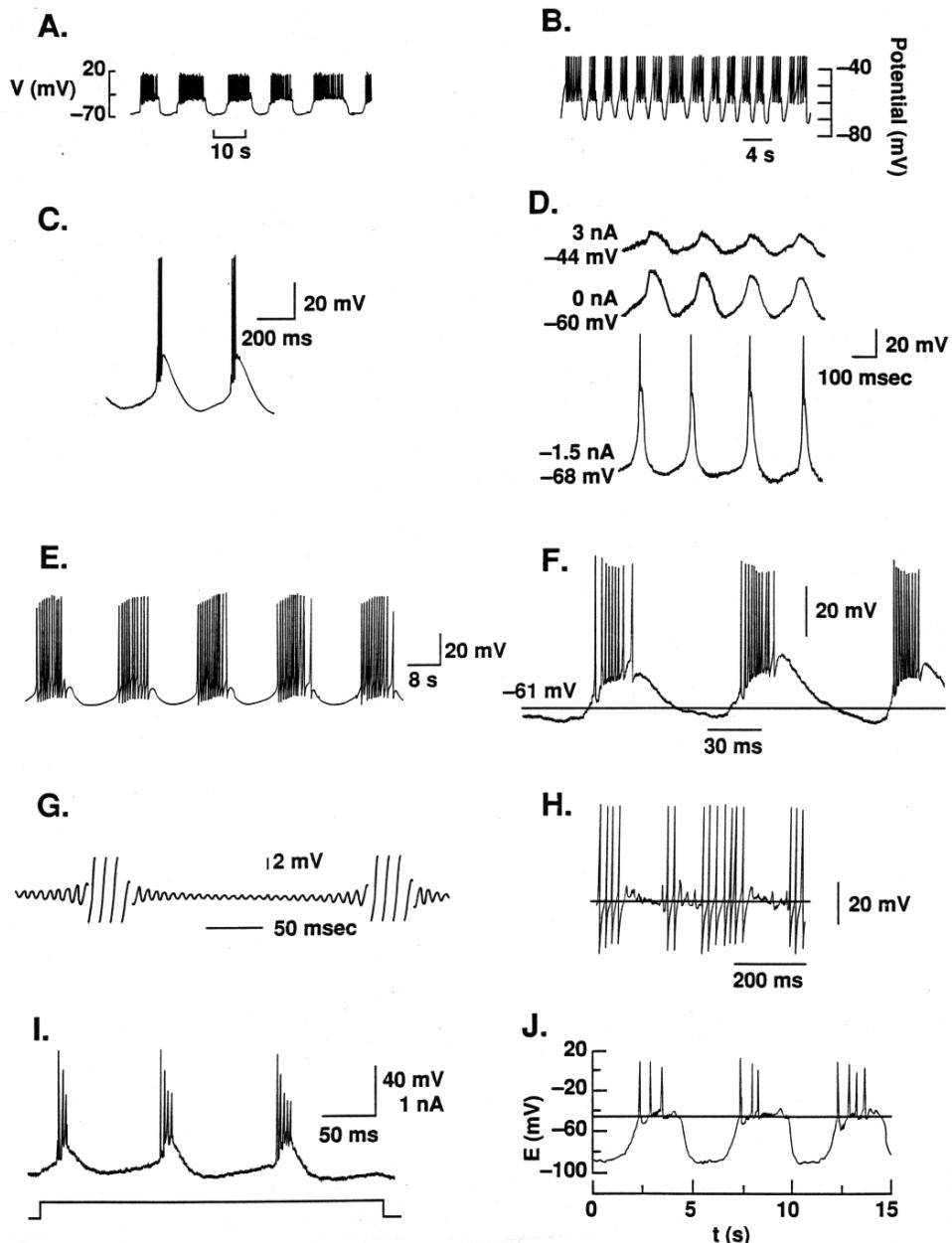


**Figure 9.17** Bursting in the polynomial model, calculated numerically from (9.55)–(9.57) for three values of the applied current. A:  $I = 0.4$ ; B:  $I = 2$ ; C:  $I = 4$ .

of study among mathematicians, and the theoretical study of bursting oscillations has, by now, far outstripped our corresponding physiological knowledge.

### Bursting in the Aplysia Neuron

Another well-studied example of bursting is found in the Aplysia R-15 neuron. Analysis of a detailed model by Plant (1981) shows that the mathematical structure of this



**Figure 9.18** Electrical bursting in a range of different cell types. A: Pancreatic  $\beta$  cell. B: Dopamine-containing neurons in the rat midbrain. C: Cat thalamocortical relay neuron. D: Guinea pig inferior olfactory neuron. E: *Aplysia* R15 neuron. F: Cat thalamic reticular neuron. G: *Sepia* giant axon. H: Rat thalamic reticular neuron. I: Mouse neocortical pyramidal neuron. J: Rat pituitary gonadotropin-releasing cell. (Wang and Rinzel, 1995, Fig. 2.)

bursting oscillator is different from that in the  $\beta$  cell model (Rinzel and Lee, 1987). The  $\beta$  cell model has two fast variables, one slow variable, bistability, and a hysteresis loop. At the end of a burst, a homoclinic bifurcation is crossed, leading to an increasing period through the burst. Plant's model, on the other hand, has no bistability, with bursting arising from the presence of two slow variables with their own oscillation. A homoclinic bifurcation is crossed at the beginning and the end of the burst, and so the instantaneous period of the burst oscillations starts high, decreases, and then increases again. The fact that the period is roughly a parabolic function of time has led to the name *parabolic* bursting.

Plant's parabolic bursting model is similar in some respects to the  $\beta$  cell model, incorporating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^+$  channels and voltage-dependent  $\text{K}^+$  channels. However, it also includes a voltage-dependent  $\text{Na}^+$  channel that activates and inactivates in typical Hodgkin–Huxley fashion and a slowly activating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current. The  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ , and leak currents form the fast subsystem

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -\bar{g}_{\text{Na}} m_\infty^3(V) h(V - V_{\text{Na}}) - \bar{g}_{\text{Ca}} x(V - V_{\text{Ca}}) - \left( \bar{g}_{\text{K}} n^4 + \frac{\bar{g}_{\text{K,Ca}} c}{0.5 + c} \right) (V - V_{\text{K}}) - \bar{g}_{\text{L}} (V - V_{\text{L}}), \quad (9.58)$$

$$\tau_h(V) \frac{dh}{dt} = h_\infty(V) - h, \quad (9.59)$$

$$\tau_n(V) \frac{dn}{dt} = n_\infty(V) - n, \quad (9.60)$$

while the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current and its activation  $x$  form the slow subsystem

$$\tau_x \frac{dx}{dt} = x_\infty(V) - x, \quad (9.61)$$

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = f(k_1 x(V_{\text{Ca}} - V) - c). \quad (9.62)$$

The voltage dependence of the variables  $\alpha_w$  and  $\beta_w$  with  $w = m, n$ , or  $h$  is of the form

$$\frac{C_1 \exp(\frac{V-V_0}{C_2}) + C_3(V - V_0)}{1 + C_4 \exp(\frac{V-V_0}{C_5})}, \quad (9.63)$$

in units of  $\text{ms}^{-1}$ , and the asymptotic values  $w_\infty(V)$  and time constants  $\tau_w(V)$  are of the form

$$w_\infty(V) = \frac{\alpha_w(\tilde{V})}{\alpha_w(\tilde{V}) + \beta_w(\tilde{V})}, \quad (9.64)$$

$$\tau_w(V) = \frac{1}{\lambda (\alpha_w(\tilde{V}) + \beta_w(\tilde{V}))}, \quad (9.65)$$

**Table 9.5** Parameters of the Plant model of parabolic bursting.

$C_m = 1 \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$	$\bar{g}_{K,Ca} = 0.03 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$
$\bar{g}_{Ca} = 0.004 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$	$V_{Ca} = 140 \text{ mV}$
$\bar{g}_{Na} = 4.0 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$	$V_{Na} = 30 \text{ mV}$
$\bar{g}_K = 0.3 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$	$V_K = -75 \text{ mV}$
$\bar{g}_L = 0.003 \text{ mS}/\text{cm}^2$	$V_L = -40 \text{ mV}$
$f = 0.0003 \text{ ms}^{-1}$	$k_1 = 0.0085 \text{ mV}^{-1}$
$\lambda = 1/12.5$	

**Table 9.6** Defining values for the rate constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  in the Plant parabolic bursting model.

	$C_1$	$C_2$	$C_3$	$C_4$	$C_5$	$V_0$
$\alpha_m$	0	—	0.1	-1	-10	50
$\beta_m$	4	-18	0	0	—	25
$\alpha_h$	0.07	-20	0	0	—	25
$\beta_h$	1	10	0	1	10	55
$\alpha_n$	0	—	0.01	-1	-10	55
$\beta_n$	0.125	-80	0	0	—	45

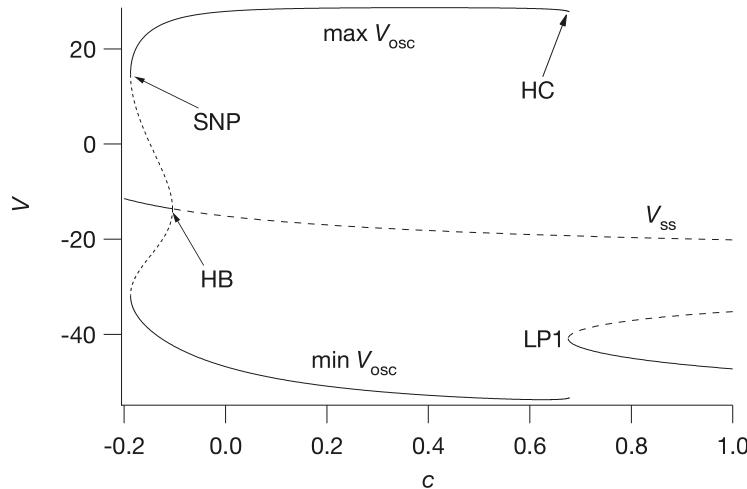
for  $w = m, n$ , or  $h$  (although  $\tau_m(V)$  is not used), with  $\tilde{V} = c_1 V + c_2$ ,  $c_1 = 127/105$ ,  $c_2 = 8265/105$ . The constants  $C_1, \dots, C_5$  and  $V_0$  are displayed in Table 9.6. Finally,

$$x_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{\exp\{-0.15(V + 50)\} + 1}, \quad (9.66)$$

and  $\tau_x = 235 \text{ ms}$ .

The parameter values of the Plant model of parabolic bursting are given in Tables 9.5 and 9.6.

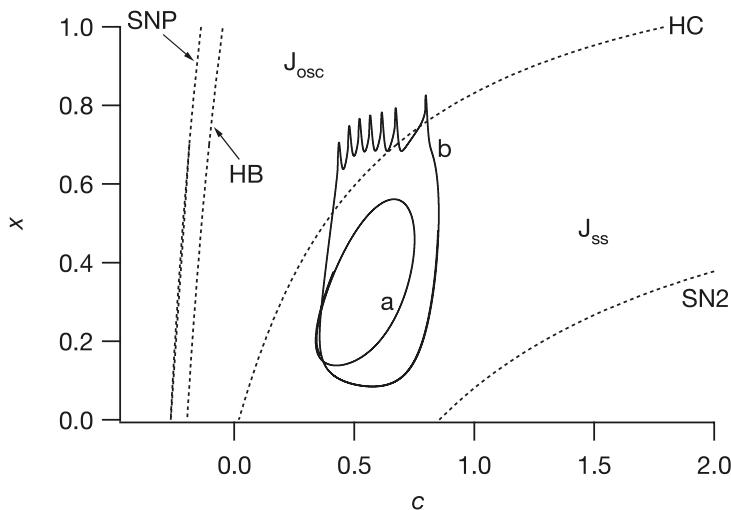
For a fixed  $x = 0.7$ , the bifurcation diagram of the fast subsystem as  $c$  varies is shown in Fig. 9.19. The curve of steady states is labeled  $V_{ss}$ , and is shaped like a Z, with two limit points. The rightmost saddle node (SN2) is not shown, being off to the right at  $c = 8.634$ . Oscillations arise via a subcritical Hopf bifurcation instead of a supercritical one as in the  $\beta$ -cell model. Note that in general,  $V_{ss}$  is a function of both  $c$  and  $x$ , and therefore the fast subsystem is properly described by a bifurcation surface. However, since surfaces are more difficult to draw and understand, we first examine a cross-section of the bifurcation surface for fixed  $x$  and then discuss how the important points behave as  $x$  varies. As usual, HB denotes a Hopf bifurcation, where a branch of periodic orbits appears, and HC a homoclinic bifurcation where the periodic solutions disappear.



**Figure 9.19** The bifurcation diagram of the fast subsystem of the parabolic bursting model, with  $x = 0.7$ . HB — Hopf bifurcation; HC — homoclinic bifurcation; SNP — saddle-node of periodic bifurcation; SN — saddle node. The maximum and minimum of  $V$  over an oscillation are labeled  $\max V_{\text{osc}}$  and  $\min V_{\text{osc}}$  respectively.

The bifurcation diagram is similar to that of the fast subsystem of the  $\beta$ -cell model (Fig. 9.4), except that the branch of periodic solutions around the upper branch of the Z-shaped curve does not extend past the lower “knee” of the Z-shaped curve. In fact, the homoclinic bifurcation coincides with the saddle-node bifurcation SN1. Hence, there is no bistability in the model, and a simple one-variable slow subsystem is insufficient to give bursting, because it is unable to move the fast subsystem in and out of the region where the oscillations occur, as in the  $\beta$ -cell model. However, because the parabolic bursting model has two slow variables,  $x$  and  $c$ , a slow oscillation in these variables moves  $c$  backward and forward across the homoclinic bifurcation, leading to bursts of fast oscillations during one portion of the slow oscillations.

In Fig. 9.20 we plot the positions of the various bifurcations as  $x$  varies. Note that the curves in Fig. 9.19 correspond to taking a cross-section of Fig. 9.20 for  $x = 0.7$ . In region  $J_{\text{ss}}$  there is a single stable fixed point of the fast subsystem, while in region  $J_{\text{osc}}$  (between the SNP and HC curves) the fast subsystem has stable oscillations. Now suppose that the slow subsystem has a periodic solution. In the parabolic bursting model, slow oscillations do not occur independently of the fast subsystem but rely on the interaction between the fast and slow variables, the details of which do not concern us here. Similar results are obtained when the slow variables oscillate independently of the fast variables, acting as a periodic driver of the fast subsystem (Kopell and Ermentrout, 1986). In any case, these oscillations correspond to closed curves in the  $(x, c)$  phase plane, two possible examples of which are shown in Fig. 9.20B. In case a, the dynamics of  $x$  and  $c$  are such that the slow periodic solution lies entirely within the



**Figure 9.20** The Hopf and homoclinic bifurcations in the  $(x, c)$  plane, i.e., a projection of the bifurcation surface on the  $(x, c)$  plane. The SN1 bifurcation coincides with HC and is not shown separately. The rightmost curve, SN2, corresponds to the rightmost saddle node, not shown in Fig. 9.19. Two typical slow oscillations in  $x$  and  $c$  are shown as solid curves; curve a is with the parameters shown in Table 9.5, curve b is with the same parameters, but with  $f$  increased to 0.009.

region  $J_{ss}$ ; i.e., the fast subsystem “lives” entirely on the lower branch of the Z-shaped curve and does not oscillate. In case **b**, the slow oscillation crosses the line of homoclinic bifurcations into the region  $J_{osc}$ , in which the fast subsystem oscillates rapidly, leading to bursting.

Thus, by tuning the parameters of the underlying slow oscillation, different oscillatory patterns can be obtained from one model. We have already mentioned the parabolic nature of the period of the fast oscillations. This is easily understood in terms of the foregoing analysis. For a burst to occur, the slow oscillation must cross the line of homoclinic bifurcations both at the beginning and at the end of the burst. Since the period of the limit cycle tends to infinity at the homoclinic bifurcation, the interspike interval is large at both the beginning and end of the burst. However, as the slow periodic orbit penetrates further into region  $J_{osc}$ , away from the homoclinic bifurcation, the interspike interval decreases.

### Classification of Bursting Oscillations

The earliest classification scheme for the different bursting mechanisms was proposed by Rinzel (1987) and later extended by Bertram et al. (1995). Originally, bursting oscillations were grouped into three classes: type I, with bursts arising from hysteresis and bistability as in the  $\beta$  cell model; type II, with bursts arising from an underlying slow oscillation, as in the Aplysia R-15 neuron; and type III, with bursts arising from

a subcritical Hopf bifurcation. However, more recent studies (Izhikevich, 2000) have presented a huge array of different possible bursting behaviors, depending on the underlying bifurcations in the steady-state and periodic branches. Many of these possible bursters have no known biophysical implementation.

## 9.2 Hypothalamic and Pituitary Cells

In pancreatic  $\beta$  cells, the interaction of membrane-based electrical excitability with ER-based  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics is crucial for the generation of fast bursting oscillations. Similar interactions are also known to be important in many cell types, including many types of hypothalamic neurons and pituitary cells. The close relationship between the hypothalamus and pituitary is discussed in Chapter 16. Briefly, hypothalamic neurons secrete hormones which typically travel a short distance along the inferior hypophyseal artery and the portal vein to the pituitary to act there on specific target cells (see Fig. 16.1). For example, gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) is secreted from GnRH cells in the hypothalamus; after traveling to the pituitary it stimulates the release of gonadotropin from pituitary gonadotrophs.

There are already a number of detailed models of electrical and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  excitability in hypothalamic or pituitary cells, and there are sure to be many more as our experimental understanding advances. For example, the release of corticotropin from pituitary corticotrophs in response to corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) has been studied in detail by LeBeau et al. (1997, 1998), Shorten et al. (2000) and Shorten and Wall (2000), while the interaction of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and membrane potential in vasopressin hypothalamic neurons has been studied by Roper et al. (2003, 2004).

### 9.2.1 The Gonadotroph

One of the best models of this type is an earlier model of the gonadotroph (Li et al., 1994, 1995, 1997) and it is this one that we describe in more detail here. In gonadotrophs,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spiking occurs in two different ways. First, spontaneous action potentials lead to the influx of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  through voltage-gated channels, and thus  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spikes. Second, in response to the agonist GnRH, gonadotrophs produce inositol trisphosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ) (Chapter 7) which releases  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and leads to oscillations in the cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. Both the electrophysiological and agonist-induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signaling pathways are well-characterized experimentally (Stojilković et al., 1994).

Similarly to the model of the pancreatic  $\beta$  cell, the gonadotroph model consists of two pieces; a model of Hodgkin–Huxley type of the membrane electrical potential, and a model of the intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, including  $\text{IP}_3$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the ER. Thus, the gonadotroph model is essentially a combination of the models of Chapters 5 and 7 (see Exercise 3). It is, however, more complicated in application, as Li et al. modeled the cell as a spherically symmetric region, with a gradient of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$

from the plasma membrane to the interior of the cell. Because the components of the model are no different from what has come before, and because a detailed reproduction of the results is complicated by the inclusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion, we do not present the model in complete detail here, but give instead only an overview of its construction and behavior.

### The Membrane Model

The membrane potential is modeled in the usual way:

$$C \frac{dV}{dt} = -I_{\text{Ca,T}} - I_{\text{Ca,L}} - I_K - I_{K,\text{Ca}} - I_L, \quad (9.67)$$

where the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current has been divided into T-type and L-type current,  $I_K$  is the current through  $\text{K}^+$  channels,  $I_{K,\text{Ca}}$  is the current through  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channels, and  $I_L$  is a leak current.

Each of these currents is modeled in Hodgkin–Huxley fashion, in much the same way as in the model of the pancreatic  $\beta$  cell. Most importantly, the conductance of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channel is assumed to be an increasing function of  $c_R$ , the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  at the plasma membrane. Thus,

$$I_{K,\text{Ca}} = g_{K,\text{Ca}} \frac{c_R^4}{c_R^4 + K_c^4} \phi_K(V), \quad (9.68)$$

where  $\phi_K(V)$  denotes the Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz current–voltage relationship (Chapter 3) used here instead of the linear one used in the pancreatic  $\beta$  cell model.

### The Calcium Model

Let  $c$  denote the intracellular free concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and let  $c_e$  denote the free concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the ER. Note that both  $c$  and  $c_e$  are functions of  $r$ , the radial distance from the center of the spherically symmetric cell. In the body of the cell,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can enter the cytoplasm only from the ER (through  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors), and can leave the cytoplasm only via the action of SERCA pumps in the ER membrane. However, on the boundary of the cell,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can enter or leave via  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  currents or plasma membrane  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase pumps. Calcium buffering is assumed to be fast and linear (Section 7.4).

The equations for  $c$  and  $c_e$  are thus (Section 7.3)

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = D \nabla^2 c + J_{\text{IPR}} - J_{\text{serca}}, \quad (9.69)$$

$$\frac{\partial c_e}{\partial t} = D_e \nabla^2 c_e - \gamma (J_{\text{IPR}} - J_{\text{serca}}), \quad (9.70)$$

where, as usual,  $D$  and  $D_e$  are the effective diffusion coefficients of  $c$  and  $c_e$  respectively, and  $\gamma$  is the scale factor relating ER volume to cytoplasmic volume. On the boundary

of the cell, i.e., at  $r = R$ , we have

$$D \frac{\partial c}{\partial r} \Big|_{r=R} = -\alpha(I_{\text{Ca,T}} + I_{\text{Ca,L}}) - J_{\text{pm}}, \quad (9.71)$$

$$\frac{\partial c_e}{\partial r} \Big|_{r=R} = 0, \quad (9.72)$$

where  $J_{\text{pm}}$  denotes the flux out of the cell due to the action of plasma membrane  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase pumps. The scale factor  $\alpha = 1/(2FA_{\text{cell}})$ , where  $A_{\text{cell}}$  is the surface area of the cell, converts the current (in coulombs per second) to a mole flux density (moles per area per second).

The flux through the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor,  $J_{\text{IPR}}$ , is modeled by the Li–Rinzel simplification of the De Young–Keizer model (see Chapter 7 and Exercise 3), while the ATPase pump fluxes,  $J_{\text{serca}}$  and  $J_{\text{pm}}$ , are modeled by Hill functions. The exact form of the model equations and the parameter values can be found in the appendix of Li et al. (1997).

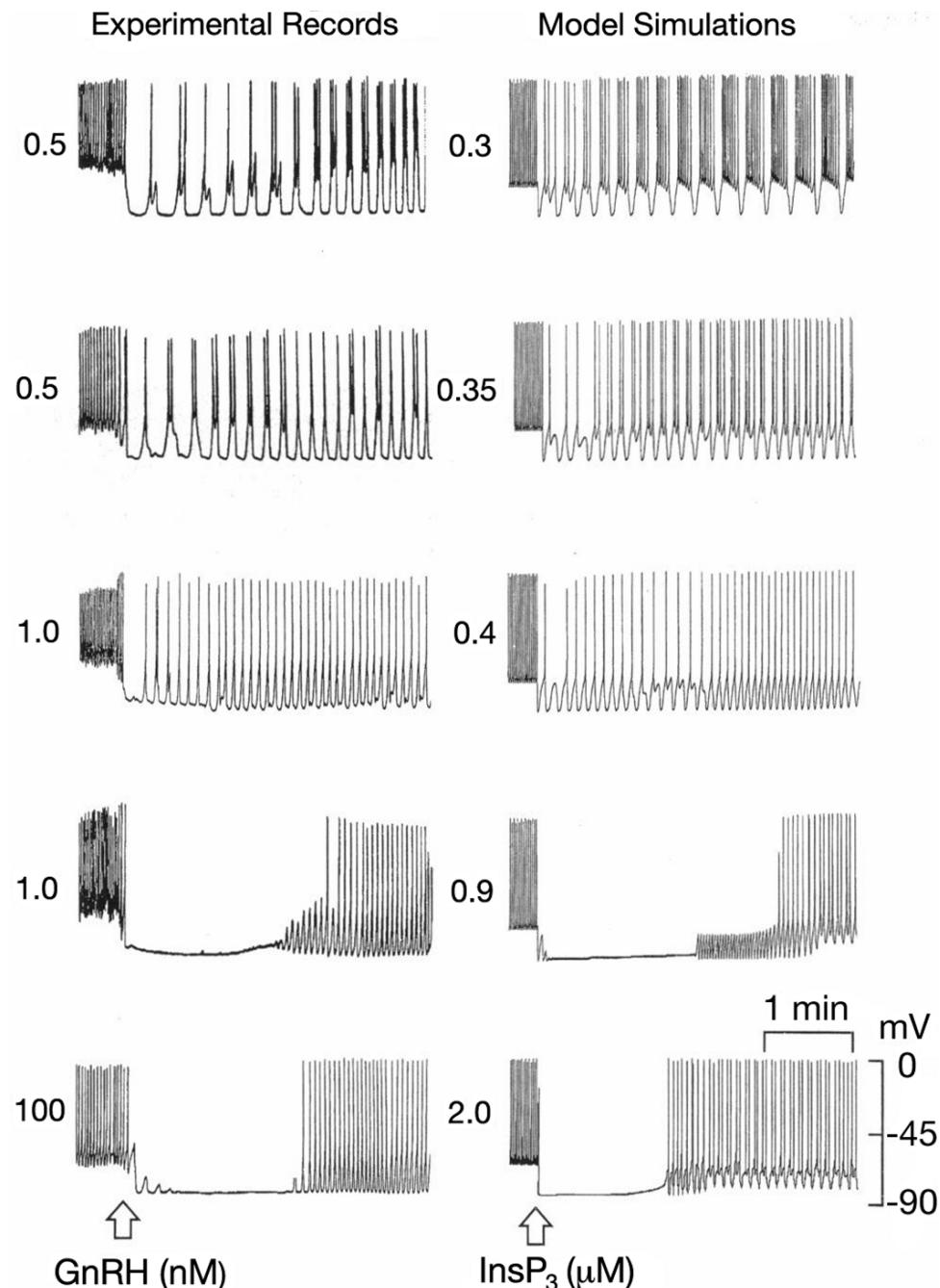
## Results

When this model is solved for a range of  $\text{IP}_3$  concentrations (corresponding to a range of GnRH concentrations), the agreement with experimental data is impressive (Fig. 9.21). Before the addition of agonist the cells exhibit continuous spiking; once agonist is applied the frequency of spiking drops dramatically, changing to a more complex burst pattern. At the highest agonist concentrations, bursting is initially suppressed by the agonist, although spiking eventually reappears.

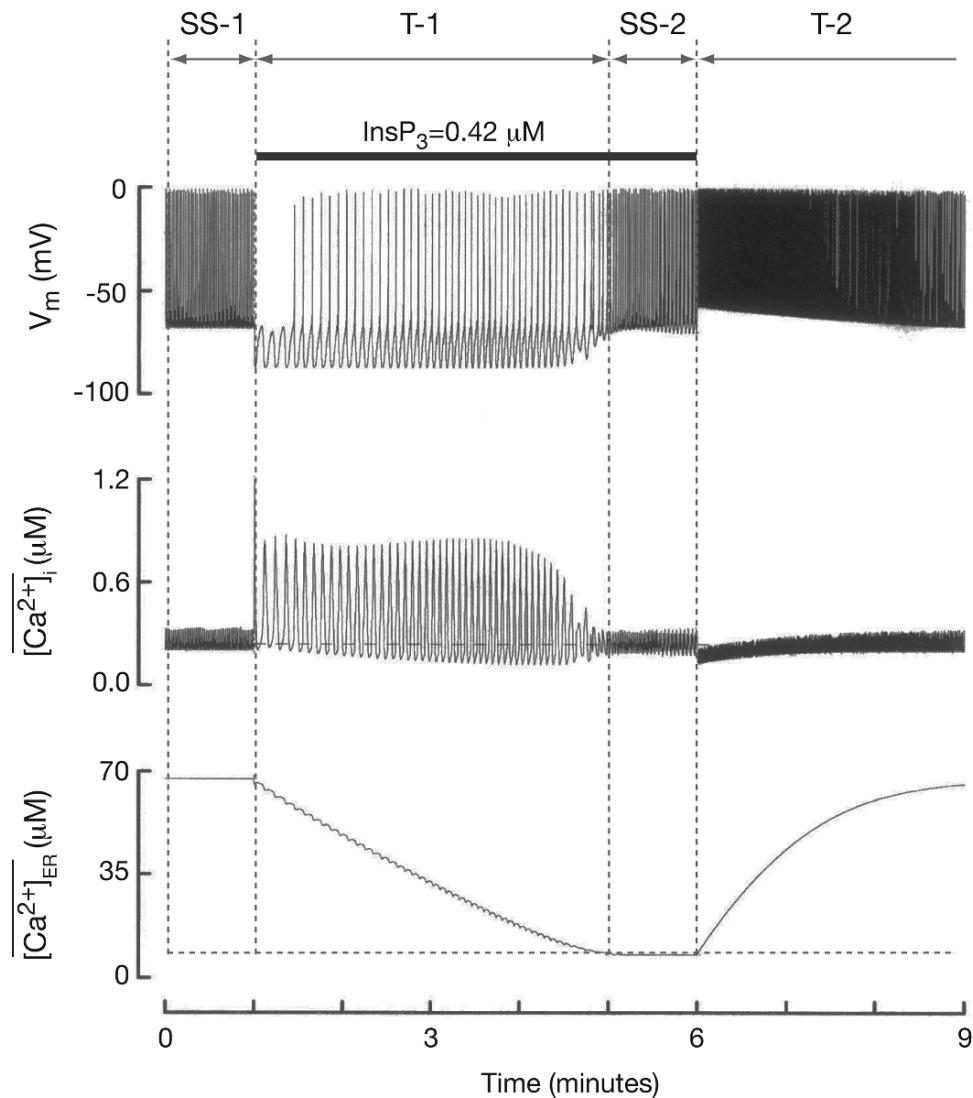
In all cases, the spiking frequency is initially greatly decreased by the agonist, but recovers gradually. This recovery of the spike frequency is an interesting demonstration of the importance of the amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the ER.

In Fig. 9.22 we show  $V$ ,  $c$  and  $c_e$  during the response to agonist stimulation (where  $c$  and  $c_e$  are averaged over the entire cell). During phase SS-1, before the addition of agonist, the cell exhibits tonic spiking. Upon addition of  $0.42 \mu\text{M}$   $\text{IP}_3$ ,  $c$  starts to oscillate and the voltage spikes more slowly (phase T-1). The slowdown of the voltage spiking is caused by the much larger and slower  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spikes, which activate the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  current to a much greater extent, thus making it more difficult for a voltage spike to occur. However, as time goes on,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is lost from the cell by the action of the plasma membrane ATPase (recall that, because of the spatially distributed nature of the model, the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is higher at the membrane than in the interior of the cell, which increases the rate at which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is lost to the outside by the operation of the pump). This overall decline in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  manifests itself in two principal ways; first, the concentration in the ER declines slowly, and secondly, the baseline of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spikes gradually decreases. It is this decrease that causes the slow increase in the frequency of the voltage spikes, as  $I_{\text{K,Ca}}$  is gradually decreased.

Eventually,  $c_e$  decreases to such an extent that the ER can no longer support large  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  spikes, and the oscillations in  $c$  become smaller and faster (SS-2 phase). This itself allows for a much greater frequency of the voltage spikes, which thus bring in more



**Figure 9.21** The response of gonadotrophs, in experiment and theory, to increasing applications of agonist. In the experiments (left panels), the indicated concentration of GnRH was added at the arrow, while this was simulated in the model (right panels) by addition of the indicated concentrations of IP<sub>3</sub>. Li et al. (1997), Fig. 2.



**Figure 9.22** Response of a gonadotroph to agonist stimulation, with the different phases labeled.  $[Ca^{2+}]_i$  and  $[Ca^{2+}]_{ER}$  are, respectively, the average cytoplasmic and ER  $Ca^{2+}$  concentrations over the entire cell. Li et al. (1997), Fig. 3.

$Ca^{2+}$  from the outside, allowing for the stabilization of the ER  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration. Upon removal of the agonist,  $c$  declines transiently, which causes an increase in the frequency of the voltage spikes. Because these voltage spikes bring in more  $Ca^{2+}$ , the ER gradually refills, and the system returns to basal levels (phase T-2).

This model demonstrates the complex interactions between ER  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and membrane voltage spiking. It is clearly not the entire story, but it provides an excellent explanation for a wide variety of complex responses.

### 9.3 EXERCISES

---

1. (a) Numerically simulate the system of differential equations

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = f(v) - w - gs(v - v_\theta), \quad (9.73)$$

$$5\frac{dw}{dt} = w_\infty(v) - w, \quad (9.74)$$

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = f_s(s) + \alpha_s(x - 0.3), \quad (9.75)$$

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \beta_x ((1 - x)H(v) - x), \quad (9.76)$$

where  $f(v) = 1.35v(1 - \frac{1}{3}v^2)$ ,  $f_s(s) = -0.2(s - 0.05)(s - 0.135)(s - 0.21)$ ,  $w_\infty(v) = \tanh(5v)$ , and  $H(v) = \frac{3}{2}(1 + \tanh(5x - 2.5))$ , and  $v_\theta = -2$ ,  $\alpha_s = 0.002$ ,  $\beta_x = 0.00025$ ,  $g = 0.73$ .

- (b) Give a fast–slow analysis of this burster. Hint: The equations for  $v, w$  comprise the fast subsystem, while those for  $s, x$  comprise the slow subsystem.
- (c) Describe the bursting mechanism in this model. For what kind of burster might this be a reasonable model?
2. Compute some numerical solutions of the Rinzel–Lee simplification of the Chay–Keizer  $\beta$  cell model. How does the value of  $k_c$  affect the burst length?
3. To the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  submodel of phantom bursting in Section 9.1.2, add a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flux,  $J_{\text{IPR}}$ , through  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors (see Chapter 7). Assume that the IPR is at steady state, with an open probability given by the Li–Rinzel simplification (Section 7.2.5) of the De Young–Keizer model (Section 7.2.5). Thus

$$J_{\text{IPR}} = P_o(c_e - c), \quad (9.77)$$

where

$$P_o = \left(\frac{c}{d_{\text{act}} + c}\right)^3 \left(\frac{p}{d_{\text{IP}_3} + p}\right)^3 \left(\frac{d_{\text{inact}}}{d_{\text{inact}} + c}\right)^3, \quad (9.78)$$

where  $d_{\text{act}} = 0.35 \mu\text{M}$ ,  $d_{\text{inact}} = 0.4 \mu\text{M}$ , and  $d_{\text{IP}_3} = 0.5 \mu\text{M}$ . Let  $g_{\text{K},\text{Ca}} = 700$  and  $g_{\text{K},\text{ATP}} = 230$ , so that the model exhibits medium bursting. Show that when  $p$  is increased from 0 to  $0.3 \mu\text{M}$  the bursting changes from medium to fast. Explain this in terms of changes to the  $dc/dt = 0$  nullcline.

4. In the phantom bursting model of Section 9.1.2,  $c_e$  increases during the active phase and declines during the silent phase. Why? Explain this without using any mathematical equations. Then give a mathematical explanation.
5. Investigate the behavior of the model of compound bursting (Section 9.1.3) for the three fixed values of [ATP] shown in Fig. 9.10.
  - (a) For each value of [ATP] solve the model equations numerically, and plot them in the  $V, c$  phase plane, as well as against time.

- (b) Compute the bifurcation diagrams (as shown in Fig. 9.10), and superimpose the model solutions (with varying  $c$ ) on the bifurcation diagrams (treating  $c$  as a bifurcation parameter).
- (c) Show that, when [ATP] is small there is no bursting, while when [ATP] is large the active phase is continuous.
- (d) Show that, for intermediate values of [ATP], the duration of the active phase depends on [ATP].
- (e) Explain why these results should be so, using the bifurcation diagrams to illustrate your answers.
6. If the parameters of the model of compound bursting (Section 9.1.3) are changed slightly to  $f = 0.0013$ ,  $v_2 = 188$ ,  $g_{K,ATP} = 357$ , what kind of bursting occurs? (This kind of bursting has been called “accordion” bursting.) Explain this behavior by using a fast–slow analysis of the model, and plotting the bifurcation diagrams. Hint: What values are taken by [ATP] over the course of an oscillation, and how do these differ from the values taken in the top panel of Fig. 9.10?
7. Determine the value of  $I$  in the Hindmarsh–Rose fast subsystem (9.53), (9.54) for which the trajectory from the unstable node is also the saddle point separatrix.
8. (a) An equation of the form  $\frac{d^2x}{dT^2} + F(x)\frac{dx}{dT} + x = 0$  is called an equation in the Liénard form (Minorsky, 1962; Stoker, 1950) and was important in the classical development of the theory of nonlinear oscillators. Show that the polynomial bursting model (9.55)–(9.57) can be written in the *generalized* Liénard form

$$\frac{d^2x}{dT^2} + F(x)\frac{dx}{dT} + G(x, z) = -\epsilon H(x, z), \quad (9.79)$$

$$\frac{dz}{dT} = \epsilon H(x, z), \quad (9.80)$$

where  $\epsilon$  is a small parameter, and where  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$  are the polynomial functions

$$F(u) = a[(u - \hat{u})^2 - \eta^2], \quad (9.81)$$

$$G(u, z) = z + u^3 - \frac{3}{4}u - \frac{11}{27}, \quad (9.82)$$

$$H(u, z) = \beta(u - \bar{u}) - z. \quad (9.83)$$

- (b) Construct the fast subsystem bifurcation diagram for this polynomial model for the following three different cases with  $a = 0.25$ ,  $\beta = 4$ ,  $\hat{u} = -0.954$ , and  $\epsilon = 0.0025$ .
- $\eta = 0.7$ ,  $\hat{u} = 1.6$ . Show that in this case the model exhibits square-wave bursting.
  - $\eta = 0.7$ ,  $\hat{u} = 2.1$ . Show that the model exhibits tapered bursting, resulting from passage through a supercritical Hopf bifurcation.
  - $\eta = 1.2$ ,  $\hat{u} = 1.0$ . Describe the bursting pattern here.

Solve the model equations numerically to confirm the predictions from the bifurcation diagrams. A detailed analysis of this model has been performed by Pernarowski (1994) and de Vries (1995), with a perturbation analysis given by (Pernarowski et al., 1991, 1992).

9. Prove that if  $D$  is an irreducible matrix with nonnegative entries  $d_{ij}$ , then the only nontrivial solution of the system of equations  $\sum_{j=1}^n d_{ij}(V_i - V_j) = 0, i = 1, \dots, N$ , is the constant vector.

Remark: An irreducible nonnegative matrix is one for which some power of the matrix has no zero elements. To understand irreducibility, think of the elements of the matrix  $D$  as providing connections between nodes of a graph, and  $d_{ij}$  is positive if there is a path from node  $i$  to node  $j$ , but zero if not. Such a matrix is irreducible if between any two points there is a connecting path, with possibly multiple intermediate points. The smallest power of the matrix that is strictly positive is the smallest number of connections that is certain to connect any node with any other node.

*Hint:* Represent the system of equations as  $Av = 0$  and show that some shift  $A + \lambda I$  of the matrix  $A$  is irreducible and has only nonnegative entries. Invoke the Perron–Frobenius theorem (a nonnegative irreducible matrix has a unique, positive, simple eigenvector with eigenvalue larger in magnitude than all other eigenvalues) to show that the null space of  $A$  is one-dimensional, spanned by the constant vector.

---

## Regulation of Cell Function

In all cells, the information necessary for the regulation of cell function is contained in strands of deoxyribose nucleic acid, or DNA. The nucleic acids are large polymers of smaller molecular subunits called *nucleotides*, which themselves are composed of three basic molecular groups: a *nitrogenous base*, which is an organic ring containing nitrogen; a 5-carbon (pentose) sugar, either *ribose* or *deoxyribose*; an inorganic phosphate group. Nucleotides may differ in the first two of these components, and consequently there are two specific types of nucleic acids: *deoxyribonucleic acid* (DNA) and *ribonucleic acid* (RNA).

There may be any one of five different nitrogenous bases present in the nucleotides: *adenine* (A), *cytosine* (C), *guanine* (G), *thymine* (T), and *uracil* (U). These are most often denoted by the letters A, C, G, T, and U, rather than by their full names.

The DNA molecule is a long double strand of nucleotide bases, which can be thought of as a twisted, or helical, ladder. The backbone (or sides of the ladder) is composed of alternating sugar and phosphate molecules, the sugar, deoxyribose, having one fewer oxygen atom than ribose. The “rungs” of the ladder are complementary pairs of nitrogenous bases, with G always paired with C, and A always paired with T. The bond between pairs is a weak hydrogen bond that is easily broken and restored during the replication process. In eukaryotic cells (cells that have a nucleus), the DNA is contained within the nucleus of the cell.

The ordering of the base pairs along the DNA molecule is called the genetic code, because it is this ordering of symbols from the four-letter alphabet of A, C, G, and T that controls all cellular biochemical functions. The nucleotide sequence is organized into code triplets, called *codons*, which code for amino acids as well as other signals, such as “start manufacture of a protein molecule” and “stop manufacture of a protein molecule.” Segments of DNA that code for a particular product are called *genes*, of

which there are about 30,000 in human DNA. Typically, a gene contains start and stop codons as well as the code for the gene product, and can include large segments of DNA whose function is unclear. One of the simplest known living organisms, *Mycoplasma genitalian*, has 470 genes and about 500,000 base pairs.

DNA itself, although not its structure, was first discovered in the late nineteenth century, and by 1943 it had been shown (although not widely accepted) that it is also the carrier of genetic information. How (approximately) it accomplishes this, and the structure of the molecule, was not established until the work of Maurice Wilkins and Rosalind Franklin at King's College in London, and James Watson and Francis Crick in Cambridge. Watson, Crick, and Wilkins received the 1962 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine, Franklin having died tragically young some years previously, in 1958.

In recent years, the study of DNA and the genetic code has grown in a way that few would have predicted even 20 years ago. Nowadays, genetics and molecular biology have penetrated deeply into practically all aspects of life, from research and education to business and forensics. Mathematicians and statisticians have not been slow to join these advances. Departments and institutes of bioinformatics are springing up in all sorts of places, and there are few mathematics or statistics departments that do not have connections (some more extensive than others, of course) with molecular biologists. It is well beyond the scope of this book to provide even a cursory overview of this vast field. An excellent introduction to molecular biology is the book by Alberts et al. (1994); any reader who is seriously interested in learning about molecular biology will find this book indispensable. Waterman (1995), Mount (2001) and Krane and Raymer (2003) are good introductory bioinformatics texts, while for those who are more mathematically or statistically oriented there are Deonier et al. (2004), Ewens and Grant (2005), and Durrett (2002).

## 10.1 Regulation of Gene Expression

An RNA molecule is a single strand of nucleotides. It is different from DNA in that the sugar in the backbone is ribose, and the base U is substituted for T. Cells generally contain two to eight times as much RNA as DNA. There are three types of RNA, each of which plays a major role in cell physiology. For our purposes here, *messenger RNA* (mRNA) is the most important, since it carries the code for the manufacture of specific proteins. *Transfer RNA* (tRNA) acts as a carrier of one of the twenty amino acids that are to be incorporated into a protein molecule that is being produced. Finally, *ribosomal RNA* constitutes about 60% of the *ribosome*, a structure in the cellular cytoplasm on which proteins are manufactured.

The two primary functions that take place in the nucleus are the reproduction of DNA and the production of RNA. RNA is formed by a process called *transcription*, as follows. An enzyme called *RNA polymerase* (or, more precisely, a polymerase complex, since many other proteins are also needed) attaches to some starting site on the DNA, breaks the bonds between base pairs in that local region, and then makes

a complementary copy of the nucleotide sequence for one of the DNA strands. As the RNA polymerase moves along the DNA strand, the RNA molecule is formed, and the DNA crossbridges reform. The process stops when the RNA polymerase reaches a transcriptional termination site and disengages from the DNA.

Proteins are manufactured employing all three RNA types. After a strand of mRNA that codes for some protein is formed in the nucleus, it is released to the cytoplasm. There it encounters ribosomes that “read” the mRNA much like a tape recording. As a particular codon is reached, it temporarily binds with the specific tRNA with the complementary codon carrying the corresponding amino acid. The amino acid is released from the tRNA and binds to the forming chain, leading to a protein with the sequence of amino acids coded for by the DNA.

Synthesis of a cellular biochemical product usually requires a series of reactions, each of which is catalyzed by a special enzyme. In prokaryotes, formation of the necessary enzymes is often controlled by a sequence of genes located in series on the DNA strand. This area of the DNA strand is called an *operon*, and the individual genes within the operon are called *structural genes*. At the beginning of the operon is a segment called a *promoter*, which is a series of nucleotides that has a specific affinity for RNA polymerase. The polymerase must bind with this promoter before it can begin to travel along the DNA strand to synthesize RNA. In addition, in the promoter region there is an area called a *repressor operator*, where a regulatory repressor protein can bind, preventing the attachment of RNA polymerase, thereby blocking the transcription of the genes of the operon. Repressor protein generally exists in two allosteric forms, one that can bind with the repressor operator and thereby repress transcription, and one that does not bind. A substance that changes the repressor so that it breaks its bond with the operator is called an *activator*, or *inducer*.

The original concept of the operon was due to Jacob et al. (1960), closely followed by mathematical studies (Goodwin, 1965; Griffith, 1968a,b; Tyson and Othmer, 1978). The interesting challenge is to understand how genes can be regulated by complex networks, and when, or how, gene expression can respond to the need of the organism or changes in the environment.

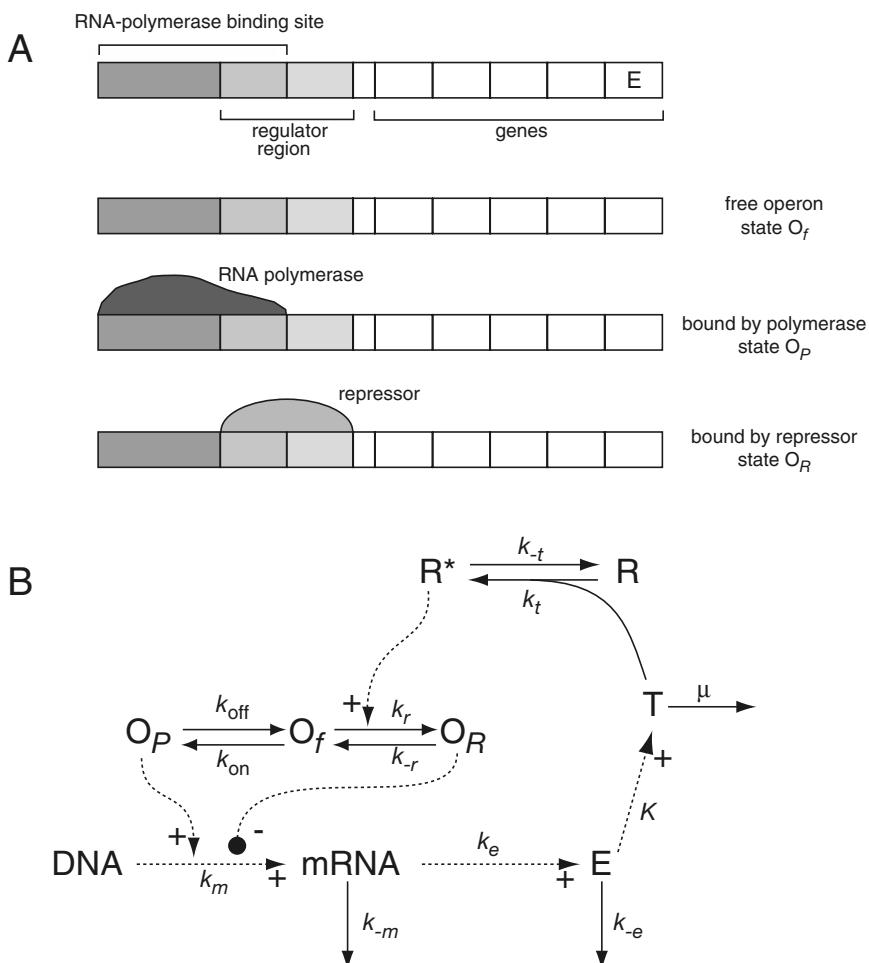
### 10.1.1 The *trp* Repressor

Tryptophan is an essential amino acid that cannot be synthesized by humans and therefore must be part of our diet. Tryptophan is a precursor for serotonin (a neurotransmitter), melatonin (a hormone), and niacin. Improper metabolism of tryptophan has been implicated as a possible cause of schizophrenia, since improper metabolism creates a waste product in the brain that is toxic, causing hallucinations and delusions. Tryptophan can, however, be synthesized by bacteria such as *E. coli*, and the regulation of tryptophan production serves as our first example of transcriptional regulation.

A number of models of the tryptophan (*trp*) repressor have been constructed, of greater or lesser complexity (Bliss et al., 1982; Sinha, 1988; Santillán and Mackey,

2001a,b; Mackey et al., 2004). Here, we present only a highly simplified version of these models, designed to illustrate some of the basic principles.

The *trp* operon comprises a regulatory region and a coding region consisting of five structural genes that code for three enzymes required to convert chorismic acid into tryptophan (Fig. 10.1A). Expression of the *trp* operon is regulated by the Trp repressor protein which is encoded by the *trpR* gene. In contrast to the *lac* operon, which is described in the next section, the *trpR* operon is independent of the *trp* operon, being located some distance on the DNA from the *trp* operon. TrpR protein is able to bind to the operator only when it is activated by the binding of two tryptophan molecules. Thus, we have a negative feedback loop; while tryptophan levels in the cell are low,



**Figure 10.1** A: Control sites and control states of the *trp* operon. B: Feedback control of the *trp* operon. Dashed lines indicate reactions in which the reactants are not consumed.

production of tryptophan remains high. However, once the level of tryptophan builds up, the TrpR protein is activated, and represses further transcription of the operon. As a result, the synthesis of the three enzymes and consequently of tryptophan itself declines.

The ability to regulate production of a substance in response to its need is characteristic of negative feedback systems. Here, the negative feedback occurs because the product of gene activation represses the activity of the gene. Thus, the tryptophan operon is called a *repressor*.

A simple model of this network is sketched in Fig. 10.1B. We suppose that the operon has three states, either free  $O_f$ , bound by repressor  $O_R$ , or bound by polymerase  $O_P$ , and let  $o_j, j = f, R, P$ , be the probability that the operon is in state  $j$ . Messenger RNA (M) is produced only when polymerase is bound, so that

$$\frac{dM}{dt} = k_m o_P - k_{-m} M. \quad (10.1)$$

Note that the dashed lines in Fig. 10.1B correspond to reactions in which the reactants are not consumed. Thus, for example, the production of enzyme (E) does not consume mRNA, so that there is no consumption term  $-k_e M$  in (10.1). The probabilities of being in an operon state are governed by the differential equations

$$\frac{do_P}{dt} = k_{on} o_f - k_{off} o_P, \quad \frac{do_R}{dt} = k_r R^* o_f - k_{-r} o_R, \quad (10.2)$$

where  $o_P + o_f + o_R = 1$ , and  $R^*$  denotes activated repressor. Activation of repressor requires binding with two molecules of tryptophan (T) and so we take

$$\frac{dR^*}{dt} = k_t T^2 (1 - R^*) - k_{-t} R^* \quad (10.3)$$

(scaled so that  $R + R^* = 1$ ).

According to Bliss et al. (1982), the most important of the enzymes is anthranilate synthase (denoted by E), which is the only enzyme concentration we track here. Enzyme (E) is produced from mRNA, and degraded,

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = k_e M - k_{-e} E, \quad (10.4)$$

and tryptophan production is proportional to the amount of enzyme, so that

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = KE - \mu T - 2 \frac{dR^*}{dt}. \quad (10.5)$$

Here  $\mu$  is the rate of tryptophan utilization and degradation. Note that the factor of 2 on the right-hand side comes from the fact that it takes two tryptophan molecules to activate the repressor.

For our purposes here, it is sufficient to examine the steady-state solutions of this system, which must satisfy the algebraic equation

$$F(T) \equiv \frac{k_e}{k_{-e}} \frac{k_m}{k_{-m}} \frac{k_{on}}{k_{off}} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{k_{on}}{k_{off}} + \frac{k_r R^*(T)}{k_{-r}}} = \frac{\mu}{K} T, \quad (10.6)$$

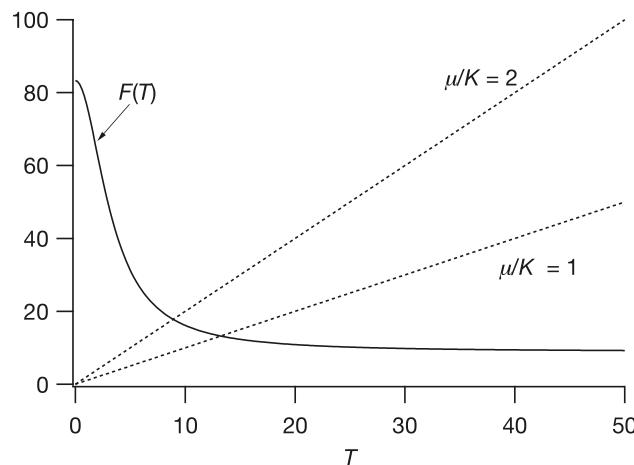
where

$$R^*(T) = \frac{T^2}{\frac{k_{-t}}{k_t} + T^2}. \quad (10.7)$$

The function  $F(T)$  is a positive monotone decreasing function of  $T$ , and represents the steady-state rate of tryptophan production. The right-hand side of this equation is a straight line with slope  $\mu/K$ . Thus, there is a unique positive intersection. Furthermore, as the utilization of tryptophan, quantified by  $\mu/K$ , increases, the steady-state level of  $T$  decreases and the production rate  $F(T)$  necessary to balance utilization increases, characteristic of negative feedback control. This is illustrated in Fig. 10.2, where we plot  $F(T)$  and  $\mu T/K$  for two different values of  $\mu/K$ .

### 10.1.2 The *lac* Operon

When glucose is abundant, *E. coli* uses it exclusively as its food source, even when other sugars are present. However, when glucose is not available, *E. coli* is able to use other sugars such as lactose, a change that requires the expression of different genes by the bacterium. Jacob, Monod, and their colleagues (Jacob et al., 1960; Jacob and Monod, 1961) were the first to propose a mechanism by which this could happen, a mechanism that is now called a *genetic switch*. Forty years ago, the idea of a genetic switch was revolutionary, but the original description of this mechanism has withstood the test of time and is used, practically unchanged, in modern textbooks. Mathematicians were quick to see the dynamic possibilities of genetic switches, with the first model, by Goodwin, appearing in 1965, followed by that of Griffith (1968a,b). More recently, detailed models have been constructed by Wong et al. (1997), Yildirim and Mackey



**Figure 10.2** Plots of  $F(T)$  and  $\mu T/K$  from (10.6), for two different values of  $\mu/K$ . Other parameter values were chosen arbitrarily:  $\frac{k_e}{k_{-e}} \frac{k_m}{k_{-m}} \frac{k_{on}}{k_{off}} = 500$ ,  $\frac{k_{on}}{k_{off}} = 5$ ,  $\frac{k_r}{k_{-r}} = 50$ , and  $\frac{k_{-t}}{k_t} = 100$ .

(2003), Yildirim et al. (2004), and Santillán and Mackey (2004). The structure and function of the *lac* repressor is reviewed by Lewis (2005), while an elegant blend of theoretical and experimental work was presented by Ozbudak et al. (2004). Mackey et al. (2004) review modeling work on both the *lac* operon and the tryptophan operon.

The *lac* operon consists of three structural genes and two principal control sites. The three genes are *lacZ*, *lacY*, and *lacA*, and they code for three proteins involved in lactose metabolism:  $\beta$ -galactosidase, *lac* permease, and  $\beta$ -thiogalactoside acetyl transferase, respectively. The permease allows entry of lactose into the bacterium. The  $\beta$ -galactosidase isomerizes lactose into *allolactose* (an allosteric isomer of lactose) and also breaks lactose down into the simple hexose sugars glucose and galactose, which can be metabolized for energy. The function of the transferase is not known.

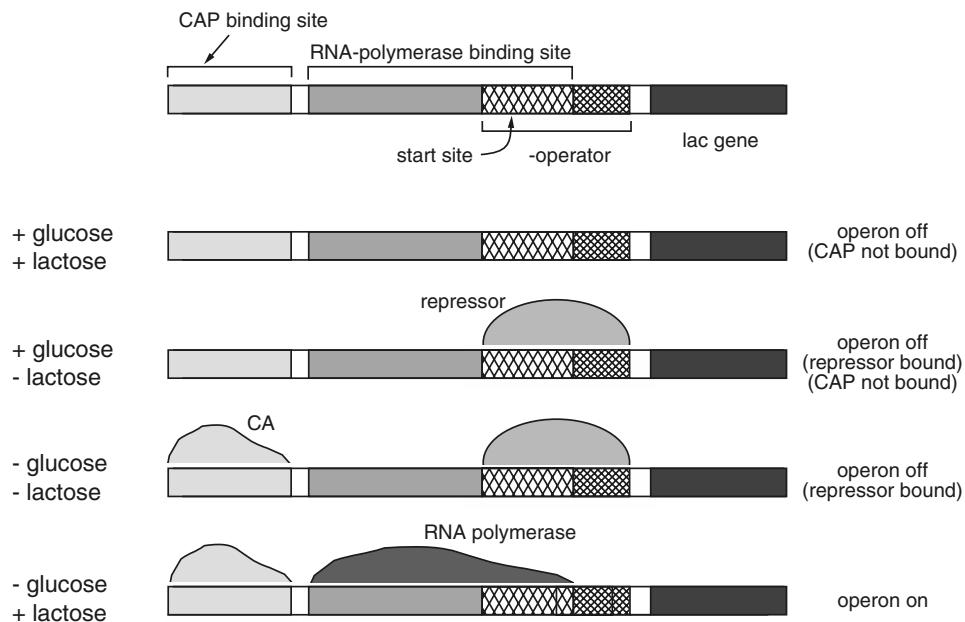
Whether the operon is on or off depends on the two control sites. One of these control sites is a repressor, the other is an activator. If a repressor is bound to the repressor binding site, then RNA polymerase cannot bind to the operon to initiate transcription, and the three proteins cannot be produced. Preceding the promoter region of the *lac* operon, where the RNA polymerase must bind to begin transcription, there is another region, called a CAP site, which can be bound by a dimeric molecule CAP (*catabolic activator protein*). CAP by itself has no influence on transcription unless it is bound to cyclic AMP (cAMP), but when CAP is bound to cAMP the complex can bind to the CAP site, thereby promoting the binding of RNA polymerase to the promoter region, allowing transcription.

So, in summary, the three proteins necessary for lactose metabolism are produced only when CAP is bound and the repressor is not bound. This is illustrated in Fig. 10.3.

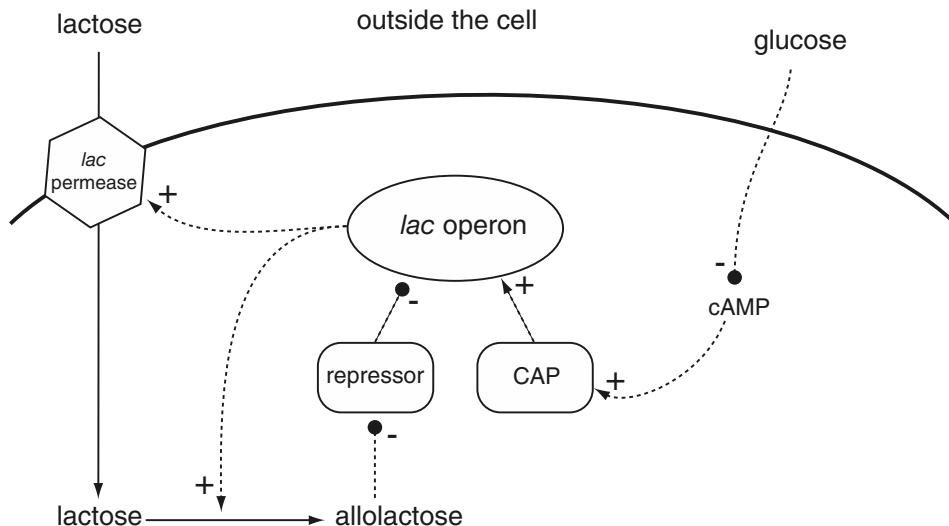
A bacterium is thus able to switch the *lac* operon on and off by regulating the concentrations of the repressor and of CAP, and this is how the requisite positive and negative feedbacks occur. Allolactose plays a central role here. In the absence of allolactose, the repressor is bound to the operon. However, allolactose can bind to the repressor protein, and prevent it binding to the repressor site. This, in turn, allows activation of the operon, the further production of allolactose (via the action of  $\beta$ -galactosidase), and increased entry of lactose (via the *lac* permease). Hence we have a positive feedback loop.

The second feedback loop operates through cAMP. The CAP protein is formed by a combination of cAMP with a cAMP receptor protein. When there is a large amount of cAMP in the cell, the concentration of CAP is high, CAP binds to the CAP binding site of the operon, thus allowing transcription. When cAMP concentration is low in the bacterium, the reverse happens, turning the operon off. A decrease in extracellular glucose leads to an increase in intracellular cAMP concentration (by an unknown mechanism), thus leading to activation of CAP and subsequent activation of the operon. Conversely, an increase in extracellular glucose switches the operon off.

To summarize, the operon is switched on only when lactose is present inside the cell, and glucose is not available outside (Fig. 10.3). Positive feedback is accomplished by allolactose preventing binding of the repressor. Negative feedback is accomplished by the control of CAP levels by extracellular glucose (Fig. 10.4).



**Figure 10.3** Control sites and control states for the *lac* operon.



**Figure 10.4** Feedback control of the *lac* operon. Indirect effects are denoted by dashed lines, with positive and negative effects denoted by different arrowheads and associated + or - signs.

Here we present a mathematical model of this process that is similar to the models of Griffith (1971) (see Exercise 1) and Yildirim and Mackey (2003). Our goal is to show how, when there is no lactose available, the operon is switched off, but that as the external lactose concentration increases, the operon is switched on (i.e., a genetic switch). Because of our limited goal we do not include the dynamics of CAP in our model.

Let A denote allolactose, with concentration  $A$ , and similarly for lactose (L), the permease (P),  $\beta$ -galactosidase (B), mRNA (M), and the repressor (R). We assume that the repressor, normally in its activated state  $R^*$ , reacts with two molecules of allolactose to become inactivated (R), according to



For simplicity, we assume that the operon can be in one of only two states, bound to (activated) repressor and therefore inactive ( $O_R$ ), or bound by polymerase and therefore producing mRNA ( $O_P$ ). Thus, the operon reacts with the repressor according to



The probabilities for the operon to be in these states is governed by the equation

$$\frac{dO_p}{dt} = k_{-r}(1 - o_p) - k_r R^* o_p, \quad (10.10)$$

since  $O_P + O_R = 1$ . Since effectively no repressor is consumed by binding with the operon, the repressor concentration is governed by the differential equation

$$\frac{dR^*}{dt} = k_{-a}R - k_a A^2 R^*, \quad (10.11)$$

where  $R + R^* = R_t$ .

Assuming each of these reactions is in steady state, we find that

$$R = K_a R^* A^2, \quad (10.12)$$

$$O_R = K_r R^* O_P, \quad (10.13)$$

where  $K_i = k_i/k_{-i}$  for  $i = a, r$ . Thus,

$$R_t = R + R^* = R(1 + K_1 A^2) \quad (10.14)$$

and

$$O_P = \frac{1}{1 + K_r R^*} = \frac{1 + K_a A^2}{1 + K_r R_t + K_a A^2} = \frac{1 + K_a A^2}{K + K_a A^2}, \quad (10.15)$$

where  $K = 1 + K_r R_t > 1$ . Hence, the production of mRNA is described by the differential equation

$$\frac{dM}{dt} = \alpha_M O_P - \gamma_M M = \alpha_M \frac{1 + K_a A^2}{K + K_a A^2} - \gamma_M M, \quad (10.16)$$

where  $M$  is the concentration of mRNA that codes for the enzymes. The constant  $\alpha_M$  is a proportionality constant that relates the probability of activated operon to the rate of mRNA production, while  $\gamma_M$  describes the degradation of mRNA. Note that, in the absence of allolactose, there is a residual production of mRNA. This is because the reaction in (10.9) has an equilibrium where  $O_p$  is nonzero, even at maximal concentrations of  $R$ .

We next assume that the enzymes are produced at a rate linearly proportional to available mRNA and are degraded, so that the concentrations of permease (denoted by  $P$ ) and  $\beta$ -galactosidase (denoted by  $B$ ) are determined by

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = \alpha_P M - \gamma_P P, \quad (10.17)$$

$$\frac{dB}{dt} = \alpha_B M - \gamma_B B. \quad (10.18)$$

Although it might appear that, since their codes are part of the same mRNA, the production rates of  $P$  and  $B$  are the same, this is not the case. First, mRNA reads the different genes within the operon ( $lacZ$  and  $lacY$ ) in sequence, making  $\beta$ -galactosidase first and the permease second. Second, the permease must migrate to the cell membrane to be incorporated there. The different times of production, and the different time delays before these two enzymes can become effective, imply that they have different effective rates of production (see Table 10.1).

Lactose that is exterior to the cell, with concentration  $L_e$ , is brought into the cell to become the lactose substrate, with concentration  $L$ , at a Michaelis–Menten rate proportional to the permease  $P$ . Once inside the cell, lactose substrate is converted to allolactose, and then allolactose is converted to glucose and galactose via enzymatic reaction with  $\beta$ -galactosidase, so that

$$\frac{dL}{dt} = \alpha_L P \frac{L_e}{K_{Le} + L_e} - \alpha_A B \frac{L}{K_L + L} - \gamma_L L \quad (10.19)$$

and

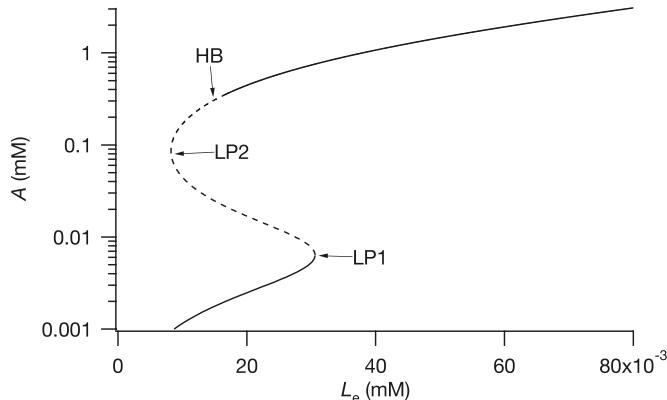
$$\frac{dA}{dt} = \alpha_A B \frac{L}{K_L + L} - \beta_A B \frac{A}{K_A + A} - \gamma_A A. \quad (10.20)$$

Note that all the reactions here are modeled as unidirectional reactions. This is not strictly correct, as all the reactions are bidirectional, particularly a reaction such as the transport of lactose into the cell, which occurs by a passive mechanism. However, unidirectional reaction rates are adequate for our purpose, since they provide a reasonable description over a wide range of substrate concentrations. Ignoring the reverse reactions does not alter the conclusions in a model as simple as that presented here.

To summarize, the model is given by the five equations (10.16)–(10.20). A more complicated mechanism is studied by Wong et al. (1997), while Yildirim and Mackey (2003) include a number of time delays, rendering the model a system of delay-differential

**Table 10.1** Parameters of the *lac* operon model.

$\alpha_A = 1.76 \times 10^4 \text{ min}^{-1}$	$\gamma_A = 0.52 \text{ min}^{-1}$
$\alpha_B = 1.66 \times 10^{-2} \text{ min}^{-1}$	$\gamma_B = 2.26 \times 10^{-2} \text{ min}^{-1}$
$\alpha_P = 10 \text{ min}^{-1}$	$\gamma_P = 0.65 \text{ min}^{-1}$
$\alpha_M = 9.97 \times 10^{-4} \text{ mM/min}$	$\gamma_M = 0.41 \text{ min}^{-1}$
$\alpha_L = 2880 \text{ min}^{-1}$	$\gamma_L = 2.26 \times 10^{-2} \text{ min}^{-1}$
$\beta_A = 2.15 \times 10^4 \text{ min}^{-1}$	$\beta_L = 2.65 \times 10^3 \text{ min}^{-1}$
$K = 6000$	$K_a = 2.52 \times 10^4 (\text{mM})^{-2}$
$K_A = 1.95 \text{ mM}$	$K_L = 9.7 \times 10^{-7} \text{ mM}$
$K_{L1} = 1.81 \text{ mM}$	$K_{Le} = 0.26 \text{ mM}$

**Figure 10.5** Steady states of the *lac* operon model as a function of the external lactose concentration,  $L_e$ . Unstable steady states are denoted by a dashed line; LP denotes a limit point and HB denotes a Hopf bifurcation point.

equations. However, this representation of the reaction mechanism is enough to show how a genetic switch can arise in a simple way.

Yildirim and Mackey (2003) devoted a great deal of effort to determine accurate values for the parameters, and slightly modified versions of these are given in Table 10.1, the modifications being necessary because our model is not exactly the same as theirs. The steady-state solution is shown in Fig. 10.5, plotted as a function of  $L_e$ , the external lactose concentration.

The curve of steady states shown in Fig. 10.5 was computed using AUTO (or, to be more precise, XPPAUT). However, if one does not have access to, or familiarity with, these kinds of sophisticated software packages, then the following do-it-yourself approach is recommended. The easiest method is to plot  $L_e$  as a function of  $A$ . That is, first use (10.16) to determine  $M$  as a function of  $A$  and then use (10.17) and (10.18) to obtain  $P$  and  $B$  as functions of  $A$ . Then use (10.20) to obtain  $L$  as a function of  $A$ , and finally use (10.19) to obtain  $L_e$  as a function of  $A$ .

When  $L_e$  is low there is only a single steady state, with a low concentration of allolactose,  $A$ ; for an intermediate range of values of  $L_e$  there are two stable steady states, one (high  $A$ ) corresponding to lactose usage, the other (low  $A$ ) corresponding

to negligible lactose usage; and for large values of  $L_e$  there is again only one stable steady-state solution, corresponding to lactose usage. Thus, if  $L_e$  increases past a critical value, here around 0.03 mM, the steady state switches from a low-usage state to the high-usage state as  $\beta$ -galactosidase is switched on. This discontinuous response to a gradually increasing  $L_e$  is characteristic of a genetic switch, and results from bistability in the model. This switching on of lactose usage is called *induction*, and this kind of operon is called an *inducer*.

The usage of lactose is switched off at a lower value of  $L_e$  than the value at which it is switched on. This feature of hysteretic switches is important because it prevents rapid cycling. That is, when allolactose usage is high, external lactose is consumed and therefore decreases. If the on switch and off switch were at the same value, then the lac operon would presumably be switched on and off rapidly, a strategy for resource allocation that seems unfavorable. In addition, separation of the on and off switches makes the system less susceptible to noise.

The Hopf bifurcation shown in Fig. 10.5 does not appear in more complicated models. It is thus of dubious relevance and we do not pursue it further.

## 10.2 Circadian Clocks

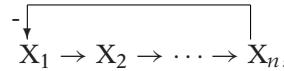
It has been known for a long time that many organisms have oscillators with a period of about 24 hours, hence “circadian” from the Latin *circa* = about and *dies* = a day. That humans have such a clock is apparent twice a year when the switch to or from daylight saving time occurs, or whenever one travels by air to a different time zone, and we experience “jet lag”. Before the molecular basis of circadian clocks was known, the study of these rhythms focused on properties of generic autonomous oscillators, most typically the van der Pol oscillator, and its response to external stimuli either to entrain the oscillator or to reset the oscillator. There is a vast literature describing this endeavor, which we do not even attempt to summarize.

All of this changed in the 1980s when the first genes influencing the 24-hour cycle were discovered. These genes were the *per* (for *period*) gene in *Drosophila* and the *frq* (for *frequency*) gene in the fungus *Neurospora*.

Circadian clocks have been found in many organisms, including cyanobacteria, fungi, plants, invertebrate and vertebrate animals, but as yet, not in the archaeabacteria. Wherever they are found, they employ biochemical loops that are self-contained within a single cell (requiring no cell-to-cell interaction). Further, the mechanism for their oscillation is always the same: there are positive elements that activate clock genes that yield clock proteins that act in some way to block the activity of the positive elements. Thus, the circadian clocks are all composed of a negative feedback loop (the gene product inactivates its own production) with a delay. An excellent review of circadian clocks is found in Dunlap (1999) (see also Dunlap, 1998).

Even before the details of the clocks were known, it was recognized that negative feedback loops with sufficient delay in the feedback could produce oscillatory behavior.

The first model of this type (Goodwin, 1965) was intended to model periodic enzyme synthesis in bacteria, and assumed that there were enzymes  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  such that



i.e.,  $X_n$  has an inhibitory effect on the production of  $X_1$ . The model equations for the Goodwin oscillator are

$$\frac{dX_1}{dt} = \frac{v_0}{1 + (\frac{X_n}{K_m})^p} - k_1 X_1, \quad (10.21)$$

$$\frac{dX_i}{dt} = v_{i-1} X_{i-1} - k_i X_i, \quad i = 2, \dots, n. \quad (10.22)$$

Oscillations occur in this network only if  $n \geq 3$ , and if  $p > 8$  when  $n = 3$  (see Exercise 3).

So the question is not whether negative feedback loops with some source of time delay can produce oscillations. We know they can. Rather, the question is whether enough is known about the details of the biochemistry of circadian clocks to produce reasonably realistic models of their dynamics. There are several intriguing questions. What sets the intrinsic period of the oscillator; that is, what are the mechanisms that give a nearly 24 hour intrinsic cycle? How does phase resetting work?

*Drosophila* has a molecular circadian system whose investigation has been central to our understanding of how clocks work at the molecular level. Beginning in the morning, *per* and *tim* (for timeless) mRNA levels begin to rise, the result of activation of the clock gene promoters by a heterodimer of CLK (for CLOCK) and CYC (for CYCLE). The protein PER is unstable in the absence of TIM, but is stabilized by dimerization with TIM. Furthermore, the PER/TIM dimer is a target for nuclear translocation, and once it enters the nucleus (within three hours of dusk), it interacts with the CLK/CYC heterodimer to inhibit the activity of CLK/CYC, hence shutting down the production of *per* and *tim*. In the night, PER and TIM are increasingly phosphorylated, leading to their degradation. Once they are depleted, the CLK/CYC heterodimer is again activated and the cycle begins again.

Synchronization with the day/night light cycle and phase resetting occurs because the degradation of TIM is enhanced by light. Thus, exposure to light in the late day when TIM levels are rising delays the clock, while exposure to light in late night and early morning when TIM levels are falling advances the clock.

While the details are different in different organisms, this scenario is typical. However, as is also typical in biochemistry, the names of the main players are different in different organisms, even though their primary function is similar. In Table 10.2 we give a list of the main players in different organisms.

There are several mathematical models of circadian rhythms. An early model, due to Goldbeter (1995), is similar in structure to the enzyme oscillator of Goodwin. That is, the PER protein  $P_0$  is (reversibly) phosphorylated into  $P_1$  and then  $P_2$



**Table 10.2** Circadian clock genes

System	Activator	Inhibitor
<i>Synechococcus</i>	<i>kaiA</i> (cycle in Japanese)	<i>kaiC</i>
<i>Neurospora</i>	<i>wc-1/wc-2</i> (WhiteCollar)	<i>frq</i> (Frequency)
<i>Drosophila</i>	<i>Clk/cyc</i> (Clock/Cycle)	<i>per tim</i> (Period/Timeless)
Mouse	<i>Clock/bmal1</i>	<i>per1,2,3</i> and <i>cry1,2</i> (Cryptochrome)

**Table 10.3** Parameter values for the five-variable Goldbeter (1995) circadian clock model.

$v_s = 0.76 \mu\text{M h}^{-1}$	$k_s = 0.38 \text{ h}^{-1}$
$v_m = 0.65 \mu\text{M h}^{-1}$	$k_1 = 1.9 \text{ h}^{-1}$
$v_d = 0.95 \mu\text{M h}^{-1}$	$k_2 = 1.3 \text{ h}^{-1}$
$V_1 = 3.2 \mu\text{M h}^{-1}$	$K_{1,2,3,4} = 2 \mu\text{M}$
$V_2 = 1.58 \mu\text{M h}^{-1}$	$K_I = 1 \mu\text{M}$
$V_3 = 5 \mu\text{M h}^{-1}$	$K_{M1} = 0.5 \mu\text{M}$
$V_4 = 2.5 \mu\text{M h}^{-1}$	$K_d = 0.2 \mu\text{M}$

The phosphorylated protein  $P_2$  is then transported into the nucleus, where it ( $P_N$ ) inhibits the production of *per* mRNA (M), closing the negative feedback loop, with a delay because of the phosphorylation steps and nuclear transport.

The equations for the Goldbeter model are as follows:

$$\frac{dM}{dt} = \frac{v_s}{1 + (\frac{P_n}{K_I})^4} - \frac{v_m M}{K_{m1} + M}, \quad (10.24)$$

$$\frac{dP_0}{dt} = k_s M - \frac{V_1 P_0}{K_1 + P_0} + \frac{V_2 P_1}{K_2 + P_1}, \quad (10.25)$$

$$\frac{dP_1}{dt} = \frac{V_1 P_0}{K_1 + P_0} - \frac{V_2 P_1}{K_2 + P_1} - \frac{V_3 P_1}{K_3 + P_1} + \frac{V_4 P_2}{K_4 + P_2}, \quad (10.26)$$

$$\frac{dP_2}{dt} = \frac{V_3 P_1}{K_3 + P_1} - \frac{V_4 P_2}{K_4 + P_2} - k_1 P_2 + k_2 P_N - \frac{v_d P_2}{K_d + P_2}, \quad (10.27)$$

$$\frac{dP_N}{dt} = k_1 P_2 - k_2 P_N. \quad (10.28)$$

Notice that the phosphorylation and dephosphorylation steps in this model are all at Michaelis–Menten rates, appropriate for enzymatic reactions, rather than linear, as in the original model of Goodwin. It is a straightforward matter to simulate these equations and verify that the solutions are periodic with a period of about 24 hours; we leave this verification to the interested reader.

More recently, Leloup and Goldbeter (1998, 2003, 2004) published a model that includes the two proteins PER and TIM, both of which undergo two phosphorylation steps before they form a dimer and then are transported into the nucleus, where they inhibit their own production. The model retains the basic structure of the Goodwin

model, but it has the advantage that the effects of changes in the degradation rates of TIM can be studied as a model of how light interacts with the clock.

Another model of the circadian clock (Tyson et al., 1999) takes a different view of the post-translational regulation of PER and TIM, and is motivated by the more recent finding that another clock element *dbt* (doubletime) is important to the phosphorylation of PER. In this model, phosphorylation tags the protein for degradation, rather than activating it for nuclear translocation as in the Goldbeter model. In the Tyson et al. model, DBT protein phosphorylates monomers of PER at a faster rate than it does dimers, which means that PER monomers are much more likely to be degraded than its dimers.

As with the Goldbeter model, the Tyson et al. model does not include TIM, but assumes that dimers of PER inhibit the clock gene. The model equations are

$$\frac{dM}{dt} = \frac{\nu_m}{1 + (\frac{P_2}{P_{\text{crit}}})^2} - k_m M, \quad (10.29)$$

$$\frac{dP_1}{dt} = \nu_p M - \frac{k'_{p1} P_1}{J_p + P_1 + rP_2} - k_{p3} P_1 - 2k_a P_1^2 + 2k_d P_2, \quad (10.30)$$

$$\frac{dP_2}{dt} = k_a P_1^2 - k_d P_2 - \frac{k_{p2} P_2}{J_p + P_1 + rP_2} - k_{p3} P_2. \quad (10.31)$$

The most important assumptions entailed in these equations are, first, that both monomer ( $P_1$ ) and dimers ( $P_2$ ) bind to DBT, but  $P_1$  is phosphorylated more rapidly (i.e.,  $k'_{p1} \gg k_{p2}$ ) and, second, that the DBT-catalyzed reaction is a saturating reaction and that the dimer is a competitive inhibitor of monomer phosphorylation. The extent of competitive inhibition is determined by  $r$ , the ratio of enzyme-substrate dissociation constants for the monomer and dimer (see Chapter 1). Here, the parameter  $r$  is chosen to be 2.

Next, we suppose that the dimerization reactions are fast (both  $k_a$  and  $k_d$  are large compared to other rate constants), so that  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are in quasi-equilibrium. We let  $P = P_1 + 2P_2$  be the total amount of PER protein, and observe that since  $k_a^2 P_1^2 - k_d P_2 = 0$  (approximately),

$$P_1 = qP, \quad P_2 = \frac{1}{2}(1 - q)P, \quad q = \frac{2}{1 + \sqrt{1 + 8K_{\text{eq}}P}}. \quad (10.32)$$

**Table 10.4** Parameter values for the two-variable Tyson et al. (1999) circadian clock model. Here  $C_p$  and  $C_m$  are typical concentrations of protein and mRNA, respectively.

$\nu_m = 1 \text{ } C_m \text{ h}^{-1}$	$k_m = 0.1 \text{ h}^{-1}$
$\nu_p = 0.5 \text{ } C_p C_m^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$	$k_{p1} = 10 \text{ } C_p \text{ h}^{-1}$
$k_{p2} = 0.03 \text{ } C_p \text{ h}^{-1}$	$k_{p3} = 0.1 \text{ h}^{-1}$
$K_{\text{eq}} = 200 \text{ } C_p^{-1}$	$P_{\text{crit}} = 0.1 \text{ } C_p$
$J_p = 0.5 \text{ } C_p$	$r = 2$

Now we add (10.30) and (10.31) to obtain a single equation for  $P$ ,

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = v_p M - \frac{k_{p1} P q + k_{p2} P}{J_p + P} - k_{p3} P. \quad (10.33)$$

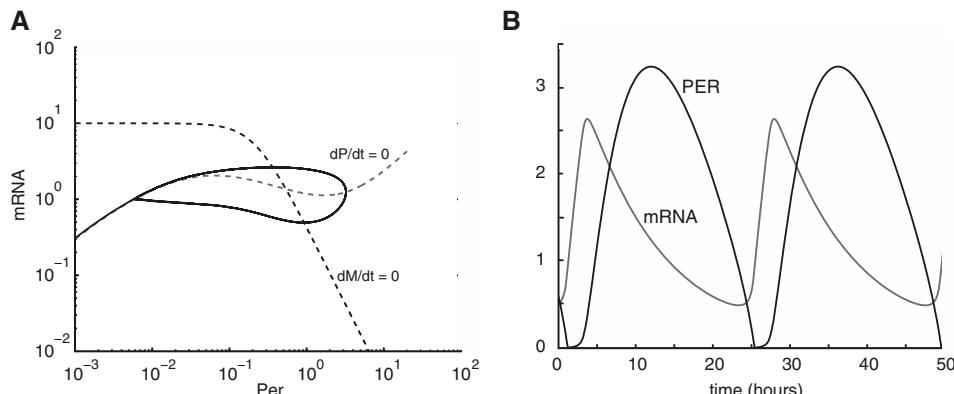
This equation, coupled with (10.29) and the algebraic relationships (10.32), gives a two-variable model of the circadian clock.

A nice feature of two-variable systems is that they can be studied in the phase plane. The phase portrait for this system is shown in Fig. 10.6A, where it can be seen that this system is a canonical excitable system. That is, the  $\frac{dM}{dt} = 0$  nullcline is a monotone decreasing curve having a single intersection with the N-shaped  $\frac{dP}{dt} = 0$  nullcline. A typical solution is shown in Fig. 10.6B.

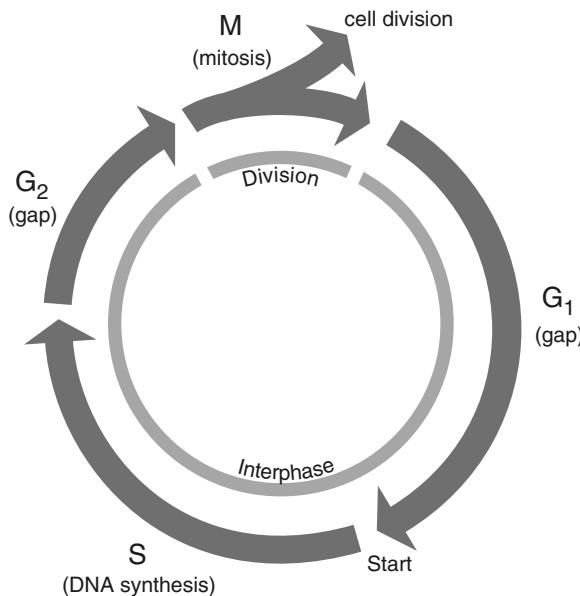
Research in circadian rhythms is quite active. Some recent work that relates to the topics of this text include work on the mammalian circadian clock (Leloup and Goldbeter, 2003; Forger and Peskin, 2003, 2004, 2005) and work describing the role of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in plant circadian clocks (Dodd et al., 2005a,b).

## 10.3 The Cell Cycle

The *cell-division cycle* is the process by which a cell duplicates its contents and then divides in two. The adult human must manufacture many millions of new cells each second simply to maintain the status quo, and if all cell division is halted, the individual will die within a few days. On the other hand, abnormally rapid cell proliferation, i.e., *cancer*, can also be fatal, since rapidly proliferating cells interfere with the function of normal cells and organs. Control of the cell cycle involves, at a minimum, control of cell growth and replication of nuclear DNA in such a way that the size of the individual cells remains, on average, constant.



**Figure 10.6** A: Phase portrait for the Tyson et al. circadian clock model. B: Solutions of the Tyson et al. circadian clock model.



**Figure 10.7** Schematic diagram of the cell cycle.

The cell cycle is traditionally divided into four distinct phases (shown schematically in Fig. 10.7), the most dramatic of which is mitosis, or *M phase*. Mitosis is characterized by separation of previously duplicated nuclear material, nuclear division, and finally the actual cell division, called *cytokinesis*. In most cells the whole of M phase takes only about an hour, a small fraction of the total cycle time. The much longer period of time between one M phase and the next is called *interphase*. In some cells, such as mammalian liver cells, the entire cell cycle can take longer than a year. The portion of interphase following cytokinesis is called *G<sub>1</sub> phase* (G for gap), during which cell growth occurs. When the cell is sufficiently large, DNA replication in the nucleus is initiated and continues during *S phase* (S for synthesis). Following S phase is *G<sub>2</sub> phase*, providing a safety gap during which the cell is presumably preparing for M phase, to ensure that DNA replication is complete before the cell plunges into mitosis.

There are actually two controlled growth processes. One is the chromosomal cycle, in which the genetic material is exactly duplicated and two nuclei are formed from one for every turn of the cycle. Accuracy is essential to this process, since each daughter nucleus must receive an exact replica of each chromosome. The second, less tightly controlled, process, the cytoplasmic cycle, duplicates the cytoplasmic material, including all of the structures (mitochondria, organelles, endoplasmic reticulum, etc.). This growth is continuous during the G<sub>1</sub>, S, and G<sub>2</sub> phases, pausing briefly only during mitosis.

In mature organisms, these two processes operate in coordinated fashion, so that the ratio of cell mass to nuclear mass remains essentially constant. However, it is possible for these two to be uncoupled. For example, during *oogenesis*, a single cell (an *ovum*) grows in size without division. After fertilization, during *embryogenesis*, the egg

undergoes twelve rapid synchronous mitotic divisions to form a ball consisting of 4096 cells, called the *blastula*.

The autonomous cell cycle oscillations seen in early embryos are unusual. Most cells proceed through the division cycle in fits and starts, pausing at “checkpoints” to ensure that all is ready for the next phase of the cycle. There are checkpoints at the end of the G<sub>1</sub>, G<sub>2</sub>, and M phases of the cell cycle, although not all cells use all of these checkpoints. During early embryogenesis, however, the checkpoints are inoperable, and cells divide as rapidly as possible, driven by the underlying limit cycle oscillation. The G<sub>1</sub> checkpoint is often called *Start*, because here the cell determines whether all systems are ready for S phase and the duplication of DNA. Before Start, newly born cells are able to leave the mitotic cycle and differentiate (into nondividing cells with specialized function). However, after Start, they have passed the point of no return and are committed to another round of DNA synthesis and division.

The cell cycle has been studied most extensively for frogs and yeast. Frog eggs are useful because they are large and easily manipulated. Yeast cells are much smaller, but are suitable for cloning and identification of the involved genes and gene products. Since both organisms use fundamentally similar mechanisms to regulate the cell cycle, insights gained from either may usefully be used to build up an overall picture of cell cycle control. The budding yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, used by brewers and bakers, divides by first forming a bud that is initiated and grows steadily during S and G<sub>2</sub> phases, and finally separates from its mother after mitosis. A similar organism, fission yeast *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*, is also used extensively in cell cycle studies. The cell cycle in mammalian cells is considerably more complex than in either frogs or yeast, and we do not consider it in any detail here.

Although there is a great deal of experimental work done on the cell cycle, there are few major modeling groups that specialize in the construction and analysis of cell cycle models. One of the most active is the group led by Bela Novak and John Tyson, who, over the last 15 years, have published a series of classic papers, beginning with relatively simple models of the cell cycle and progressing to their most recent, highly complex models. Despite the elegance of this work, there are substantial difficulties facing the novice to this field. Not the least of these difficulties is the proliferation of names. Although the basic mechanisms are similar, the genes (and proteins) that carry out analogous functions in frog, budding yeast, and fission yeast all have different names; when a simple model already contains seven or eight crucial proteins, and each of these proteins has a different name in different organisms, the potential for confusion is clear.

We begin by presenting a generic model of the eukaryotic cell cycle, and discuss the fundamental mechanism that is preserved in mammalian cells. We then specialize this generic model to the specific case of fission yeast. This requires a multitude of names; to keep track of them, the reader is urged to make frequent use of Table 10.6 where the analogous names for the generic model and for fission yeast are listed. We end with a brief discussion of cell division in frog eggs after fertilization.

### 10.3.1 A Simple Generic Model

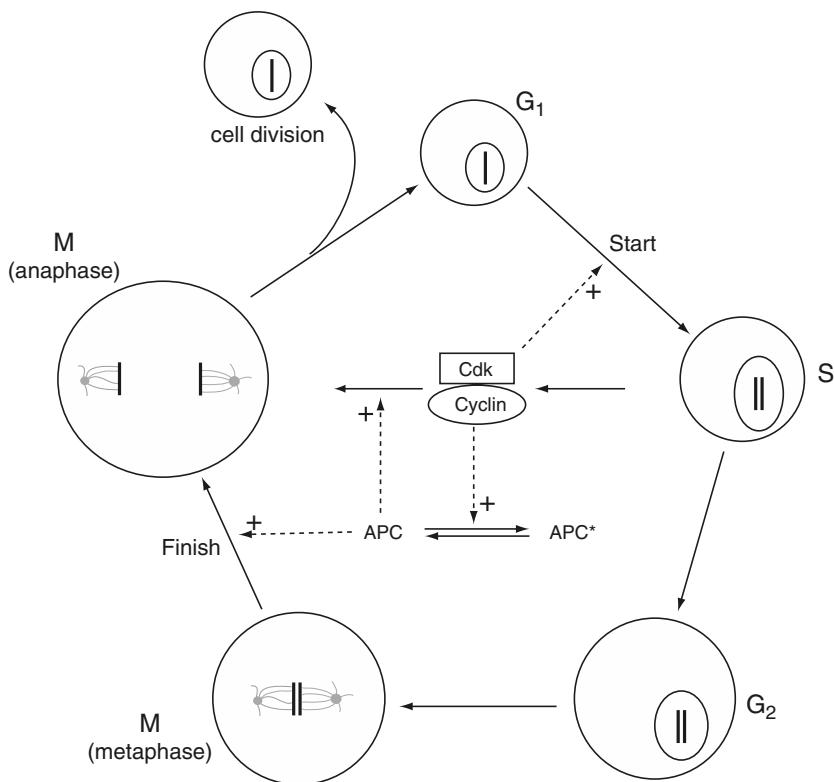
#### The Fundamental Bistability

As with all cellular processes, the cell cycle is regulated by genes and the proteins that they encode. There are two classes of proteins that form the center of the cell cycle control system. The first is the family of *cyclin-dependent kinases* (Cdk), which induce a variety of downstream events by phosphorylating selected proteins. The second family are the *cyclins*, so named because the first members to be identified are cyclically synthesized and degraded in each division cycle of the cell. Cyclin binds to Cdk molecules and controls their ability to phosphorylate target proteins; without cyclin, Cdk is inactive. In budding yeast cells there is only one major Cdk and nine cyclins, leading to a possibility of nine active Cdk–cyclin complexes. In mammals, the story is substantially more complicated, as there are (at last count) six Cdks and more than a dozen cyclins.

Leland Hartwell and Paul Nurse received the 2001 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for their work in the 1970s that showed how the cyclin-dependent kinases Cdc2 (in fission yeast), Cdc28 (in budding yeast) and Cdk1 (in mammalian cells) control the cell cycle. Cyclins were discovered in 1982 by Tim Hunt who shared the Nobel Prize with Hartwell and Nurse.

Although the temptation for a modeler is to view the cycle in Fig. 10.7 as a limit cycle oscillator, it is more appropriate to view it as an alternation between two states, G<sub>1</sub> and S-G<sub>2</sub>-M. This point of view was first proposed by Nasmyth (1995, 1996) and now forms the basis of practically all quantitative models. Transition between these two states is controlled by the concentration of the Cdk–cyclin complex. In the G<sub>1</sub> state, the concentration of Cdk–cyclin is low, due to the low concentration of cyclin. At Start (see Fig. 10.8), cyclin production is increased and cyclin degradation is inhibited. The concentration of Cdk–cyclin therefore rises (because there is always plenty of Cdk around), and the cell enters S state, beginning synthesis of DNA. At the end of S phase, each chromosome consists of a pair of chromatids. At the end of G<sub>2</sub> the nuclear envelope is broken down and the chromatid pairs are aligned along the metaphase spindle, shown as the lighter gray lines in Fig. 10.8. When alignment is complete (metaphase), a group of proteins that make up the anaphase-promoting complex (APC) is activated. The APC functions in combination with an auxiliary component (either Cdc20 or Cdh1) to label cyclin molecules for destruction, thereby decreasing the concentration of the Cdk–cyclin complex. This initiates a second irreversible transition, Finish, and the chromatids are pulled to opposite poles of the spindle (anaphase). Thus, Start is caused by an explosive increase in the concentration of the Cdk–cyclin complex, while Finish is caused by the degradation of cyclin by APC and the resultant fall in Cdk–cyclin levels.

How do these reactions result in switch-like behavior between G<sub>1</sub> and S-G<sub>2</sub>-M, and alternating high and low cyclin concentrations? The switch arises because of the mutually antagonistic interactions between Cdk–cyclin and APC–Cdh1. Not only does APC–Cdh1 inhibit Cdk activity by degrading cyclin, Cdk–cyclin in its turn inhibits APC–Cdh1 activity by phosphorylating Cdh1. Because of this mutual antagonism, the cell



**Figure 10.8** Schematic diagram of the primary chemical reactions of the cell cycle. APC\* denotes the inactive form of APC. Adapted from Tyson and Novak (2001), Fig. 1.

can have either low Cdk–cyclin activity and high APC–Cdh1 activity (i.e., G<sub>1</sub>), or high Cdk–cyclin activity and low APC–Cdh1 activity (S-G<sub>2</sub>-M).

To construct a simple model of this reaction scheme we write down differential equations for the concentrations of cyclin (in this case, Cyclin B, called CycB) and unphosphorylated Cdh1, expressed in arbitrary units. The concentration of Cdk does not appear directly in the model because it is assumed to be present in excess. Because CycB binds tightly to Cdk, the concentration of the Cdk–CycB complex is determined solely by the concentration of CycB. Similarly, the activity of the APC–Cdh1 complex is determined by the concentration of Cdh1.

For each of these reactions we use relatively simple kinetics, either obeying mass action, or following a Michaelis–Menten saturating rate function (Chapter 1); more details on the model construction are given after we present the equations. Thus,

$$\frac{d[\text{CycB}]}{dt} = k_1 m - (k'_2 + k''_2 [\text{Cdh1}])[\text{CycB}], \quad (10.34)$$

$$\frac{d[\text{Cdh1}]}{dt} = \frac{(k'_3 + k''_3 A)(1 - [\text{Cdh1}])}{J_3 + 1 - [\text{Cdh1}]} - \frac{k_4 [\text{CycB}][\text{Cdh1}]}{J_4 + [\text{Cdh1}]}. \quad (10.35)$$

All the various  $k$ 's and  $J$ 's are positive constants, as are  $A$  and  $m$ . There are a number of important things to note about these equations:

1. CycB is degraded at the intrinsic rate  $k'_2$ , but is also degraded by APC–Cdh1, with rate constant  $k''_2$ . Conversely, Cdh1 is phosphorylated by Cdk–CycB following a Michaelis–Menten saturating rate function. Thus there is mutual inhibition between CycB and Cdh1.
2. The rate of production of Cdh1 is dependent on the concentration of the phosphorylated form, which is  $[Cdh1]_{\text{total}} - [Cdh1]$ . Since units are arbitrary, we set  $[Cdh1]_{\text{total}} = 1$ .
3. The rate of production of CycB is dependent on the parameter  $m$ , which represents the cell mass. This is a crucial assumption. How can a rate constant be dependent on the mass of a cell? Although there must be some way in which cell mass controls the kinetics of the cell cycle (because the cell cycle and cell growth are closely coupled, as discussed above) the exact mechanisms by which this occurs are unknown. Of course, it is possible to imagine how it might occur; as the cell mass increases, the ratio of cytoplasmic mass to nuclear mass increases. If a protein is made in the cytoplasm but then moves to the nucleus, the greater the cytoplasmic/nuclear volume ratio, the faster the buildup of this protein in the nucleus. However, such explanations remain speculative. In this simple model we assume that CycB builds up in the nucleus, and thus its rate of production is an increasing function of cell mass, as in (10.34).
4. The constant  $A$  is related to the activity of Cdc20. Recall that Cdc20, like Cdh1, can pair up with APC. One job of the APC–Cdc20 complex is indirectly to activate a phosphatase that activates Cdh1.

Letting  $x_1$  denote  $[\text{CycB}]$  and  $x_2$  denote  $[\text{Cdh1}]$ , the steady states of (10.34)–(10.35) are given by

$$x_1 = \frac{k_1 m}{k'_2 + k''_2 x_2} \quad (10.36)$$

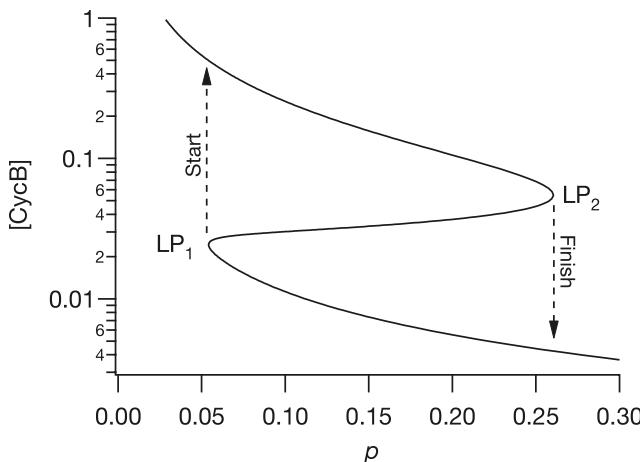
and

$$p = \left( \frac{J_3 + 1 - x_2}{1 - x_2} \right) \left( \frac{x_2}{J_4 + x_2} \right) \left( \frac{k_1}{k'_2 + k''_2 x_2} \right), \quad (10.37)$$

where

$$p = \frac{k'_3 + k''_3 A}{k_4 m}. \quad (10.38)$$

These solutions are shown in Fig. 10.9 with  $x_1$  plotted as a function of  $p$ , using parameter values taken from Table 10.5. However, since  $A$  is not specified, the scale on this plot is arbitrary. The easiest way to plot this curve is to view (10.36) and (10.37) as a parametric curve with underlying parameter  $x_2$ . For some values of  $p$  there are three



**Figure 10.9** Steady states of the two-variable generic model (10.34)–(10.35) plotted against the parameter  $p$ .

**Table 10.5** Parameters for the six-variable generic cell cycle model (10.34), (10.35), (10.39), (10.40), (10.41), and (10.42). Adapted from Tyson and Novak (2001), Table 1.

Component	Rate constants ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )	Dimensionless constants
CycB	$k_1 = 0.04, k'_2 = 0.04, k''_2 = 1, k'''_2 = 1$	$[\text{CycB}]_{\text{threshold}} = 0.05$
Cdh1	$k'_3 = 1, k''_3 = 10, k'_4 = 2, k_4 = 35$	$J_3 = 0.04, J_4 = 0.04$
Cdc20 $T$	$k'_5 = 0.005, k''_5 = 0.2, k_6 = 0.1$	$J_5 = 0.3, n = 4$
Cdc20	$k_7 = 1, k_8 = 0.5$	$J_7 = 10^{-3}, J_8 = 10^{-3}$
IEP	$k_9 = 0.1, k_{10} = 0.02$	
$m$	$\mu = 0.005$	

steady states, for others only one. The two places where the steady states coalesce are limit points labeled  $LP_1$  and  $LP_2$ . (Since this is a two-variable system, it is also quite easy to do a phase-plane analysis and to verify that the intermediate steady-state solution is a saddle point, hence unstable. See Exercise 5.)

We can now trace out an approximate cell cycle loop in Fig. 10.9. Note that here neither  $A$  nor  $m$  has any dynamics; they are both merely increased or decreased as needed. The dynamical system underlying these changes in  $A$  and  $m$  is discussed in more detail in the next section.

Suppose we start at the lower steady state (i.e., the one corresponding to low  $[\text{CycB}]$ ), to the right of  $LP_1$ . As  $m$  increases (as the cell grows),  $p$  decreases and the cell follows the lower steady state. Eventually  $p$  decreases so much that  $LP_1$  is reached, the solution falls off the lower steady state and approaches the high steady state. This corresponds to Start (see Fig. 10.8), at which time the concentration of cyclin B increases explosively. At metaphase the concentration of Cdc20 starts to rise, which corresponds to an increase in the parameter  $A$ , which increases  $p$ . When  $p$  increases too far, the solution can no longer stay on the upper steady state, and falls back down to the lower

steady state (Finish).  $[CycB]$  thus falls,  $A$  decreases again, the cell divides ( $m \rightarrow m/2$ ), and the cell begins the cycle over again.

From this point of view, the cell cycle is a hysteresis loop alternating between two branches of steady states.

### Activation of APC

In the previous model,  $A$  was a parameter that was increased and decreased at will to mimic the activity of APC–Cdc20. Of course, the story is not this simple, since there are several reactions that regulate APC activation, and thus  $A$ , which denotes the concentration of Cdc20, is controlled by its own dynamical system. In budding yeast Cdh1 is activated by a phosphatase, which is activated by Cdc20. Furthermore, Cdc20 production is increased by cyclin B. Hence, the explosive increase in  $[CycB]$  that occurs at Start leads to an increase in Cdc20, and a subsequent increase in Cdh1. However, when Cdc20 is first made it is not active; it is activated by cyclin B only after a time delay, which is the result of a number of intermediate reaction steps between cyclin B and Cdc20 activation. The exact reactions that cause this delay have not yet been identified, so it is modeled by introducing a fictitious enzyme, IE (intermediate enzyme), with activated form IEP (the P standing for phosphorylation). Thus, in summary, CycB activates IEP, which activates Cdc20, which activates Cdh1, which degrades CycB. This reaction scheme is sketched in Fig. 10.10.

To write the corresponding differential equations, we introduce two new variables; activated IE (IEP) and Cdc20. We also let  $[Cdc20_T]$  denote the total concentration of Cdc20, i.e., both the activated and inactivated forms. The rate of production of total Cdc20 is increased by CycB, and thus

$$\frac{d[Cdc20_T]}{dt} = k'_5 + k''_5 \frac{[CycB]^n}{J_5^n + [CycB]^n} - k_6[Cdc20_T]. \quad (10.39)$$

Note that the activation is assumed to follow a simple model of cooperative kinetics, with Hill coefficient  $n$  (Chapter 1).

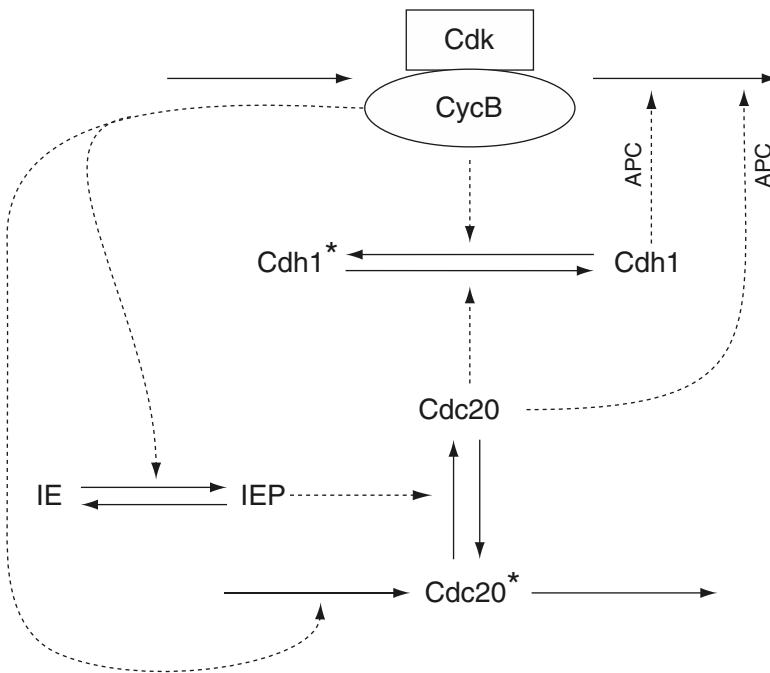
Similarly, Cdc20 is formed from nonactivated Cdc20 (which has concentration  $[Cdc20_T] - [Cdc20]$ ) at a rate that is dependent on  $[IEP]$ , and is removed in two ways; the same intrinsic degradation rate as  $Cdc20_T$ , and an additional removal term corresponding to enzymatic conversion of the active form back to the inactive form. Thus,

$$\frac{d[Cdc20]}{dt} = \frac{k_7[IEP](Cdc20_T - Cdc20)}{J_7 + (Cdc20_T - Cdc20)} - \frac{k_8[Cdc20]}{J_8 + [Cdc20]} - k_6[Cdc20]. \quad (10.40)$$

Finally, we include an equation for  $[IEP]$ :

$$\frac{d[IEP]}{dt} = k_9m[CycB](1 - [IEP]) - k_{10}[IEP]. \quad (10.41)$$

Note that IEP is activated at a rate that is proportional to  $[CycB]$ .



**Figure 10.10** Sketch of the reactions involved in the activation of APC. The superscript \* indicates an inactive form. IEP denotes the phosphorylated (and active) form of IE. Adapted from Tyson and Novak (2001), Fig. 6.

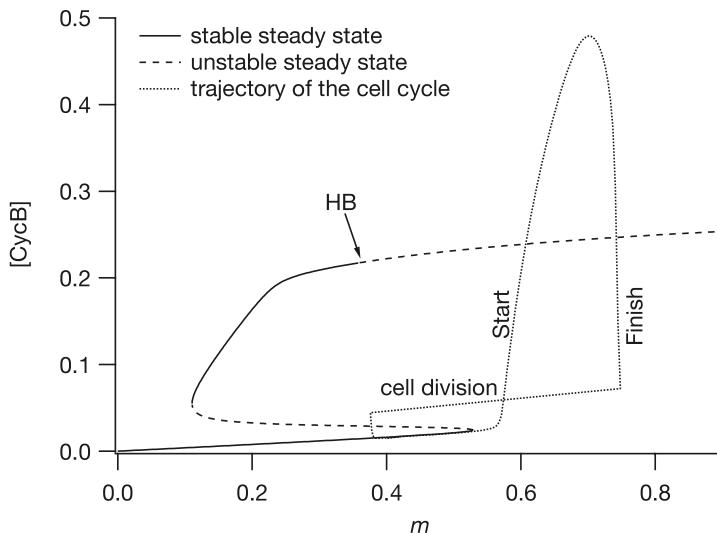
It remains to specify how to model the growth of the cell. For simplicity, we assume that  $m$  grows exponentially, and thus

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \mu m. \quad (10.42)$$

However, this growth law must be modified to take cell division into account. At Start  $[CycB]$  grows explosively, but its subsequent fall is the signal that Finish has occurred and the cell should divide. Thus, we assume that the cell divides in half (i.e.,  $m \rightarrow m/2$ ) whenever  $[CycB]$  falls to some specified low level (in this case 0.05) after Start.

The model now consists of the six differential equations (10.34), (10.35), (10.39), (10.40), (10.41) and (10.42), with  $A = [Cdc20]$  in (10.35). In writing these equations we have made a large number of assumptions. Perhaps the most striking of these is that sometimes the kinetics are assumed to follow a first-order law of mass action kinetics, at other times they are assumed to be of Michaelis–Menten form, while at yet other times they are assumed to be cooperative kinetics. Such choices are, in large part, a judgement call on the part of the original modelers, and depend on the available experimental evidence.

The steady states of this model (i.e., steady states holding  $m$  fixed) are shown in Fig. 10.11. As in the simpler two-variable model (Fig. 10.9) the curve of steady states



**Figure 10.11** Steady states (holding  $m$  fixed) of the six-variable generic model and a superimposed cell cycle trajectory allowing cell growth and division. The parameter values of the model are given in Table 10.5.

has two limit points. However, in this more complicated model the upper steady state becomes unstable via a Hopf bifurcation (which we do not investigate any further, the resultant limit cycles being of no interest at this stage). Thus, when the cell cycle trajectory (shown as the dotted line) falls off the lower branch of steady states (at Start) it cannot end up at the upper steady state, since the upper steady state is unstable. Instead, it loops around the upper steady state, and  $[CycB]$  then falls to a low level (Finish) at which time the mass is divided by 2 (cell division), the solution heads back to the lower steady-state branch, and the cycle repeats.

In this model as it stands, Finish automatically occurs a certain time after Start. Once the trajectory falls off the lower steady-state branch, there is nothing to stop it looping around and initiating Finish when  $[CycB]$  falls. In reality there are controls to prevent this from happening if the chromosomes are not aligned properly. However, we omit these controls from this simple model.

### A Note About Units

All the concentrations in this model (and the one that follows) are treated as dimensionless. This explains why, in Table 10.5, all the constants  $k$  have units of 1/time, and why the  $J$ 's are dimensionless. Experimentally, it is possible to measure relative concentrations, but it is not possible to measure absolute concentrations. Thus, we assume that there is some scale factor that could be used to scale all the concentrations rendering them dimensionless, although we do not know what the scale factor is. The qualitative behavior of the model remains unchanged by this assumption.

### 10.3.2 Fission Yeast

Having seen how the cell cycle works in a generic model, we now turn to a more complicated model of the cell cycle of fission yeast (Novak et al., 2001; Tyson et al., 2002). This is a particularly interesting model since the cell cycles of various mutants can be elegantly explained by consideration of the corresponding bifurcation diagrams. A similarly complicated model of the cell cycle of budding yeast is discussed in Chen et al. (2000, 2004), Ciliberto et al. (2003), and Allen et al. (2006), while a model of the mammalian cell cycle is discussed in Novak and Tyson (2004). However, we now need to introduce new names for the major players in the cell cycle. Since the introduction of a list of new names for familiar players has the potential to cause drastic confusion, we urge the reader to pay careful and repeated attention to Table 10.6, where the different names for analogous species are given.

#### Mitosis-Promoting Factor: MPF

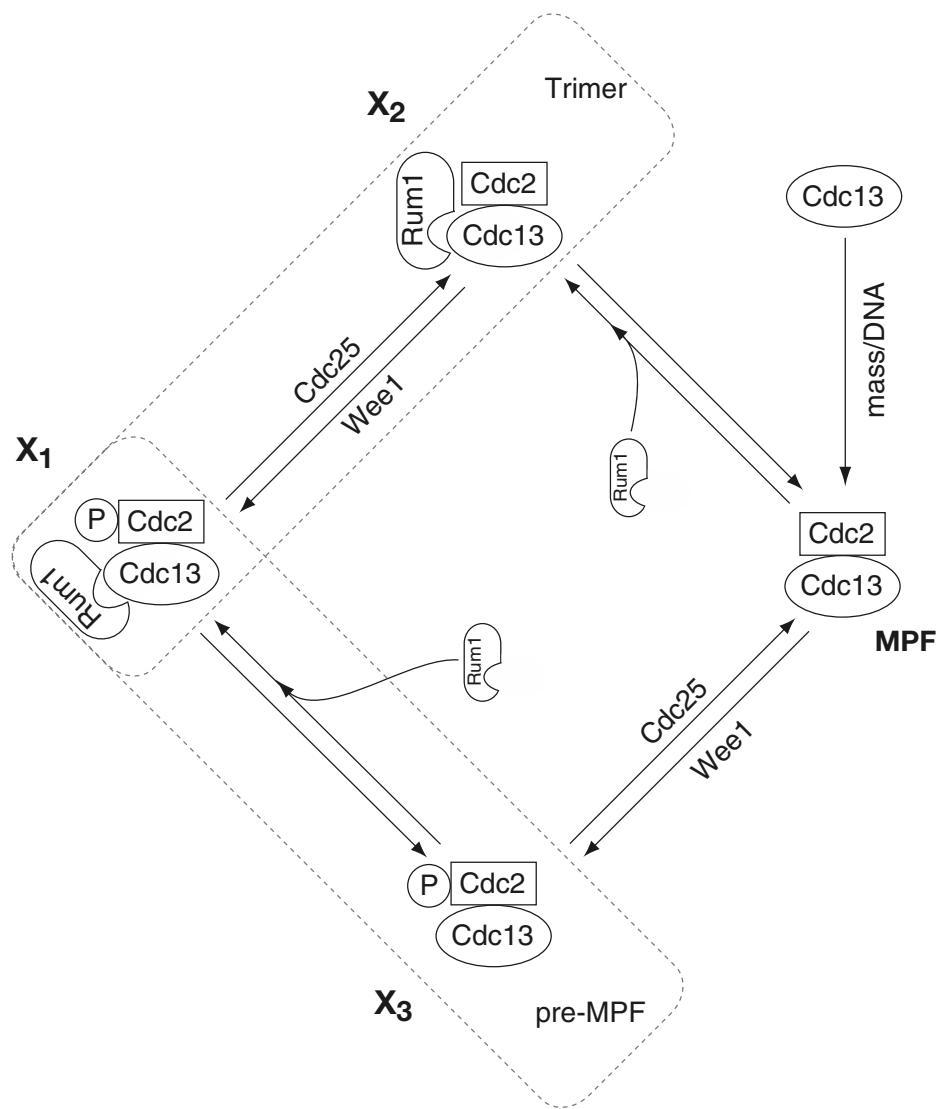
In the generic model, the central player in the cell cycle was the Cdk:cyclin B complex. In fission yeast, the cyclin-dependent kinase is called Cdc2, and the B-type cyclin is called Cdc13 (see Table 10.6. Cdc stands for cell division cycle.). The Cdc2:Cdc13 complex that lies at the heart of the cycle is called *mitosis-promoting factor*, or MPF. As before, Cdc2 is active only when it is bound to the cyclin, Cdc13, and thus MPF is the active species that drives the cell cycle.

To understand the regulation of MPF we need to understand how it is formed, degraded, and inactivated (Figs. 10.12 and 10.13).

- MPF is formed when Cdc13 combines with Cdc2; because Cdc2 is present in excess, the rate of this formation depends only on how much Cdc13 is present. This rate is assumed to depend on the mass of the cell, since Cdc13 can build up inside the nucleus, as discussed previously for CycB.
- The principal degradation pathway is activated by APC, whose auxiliary components in fission yeast are called Ste9 and Slp1 (see Fig. 10.13).

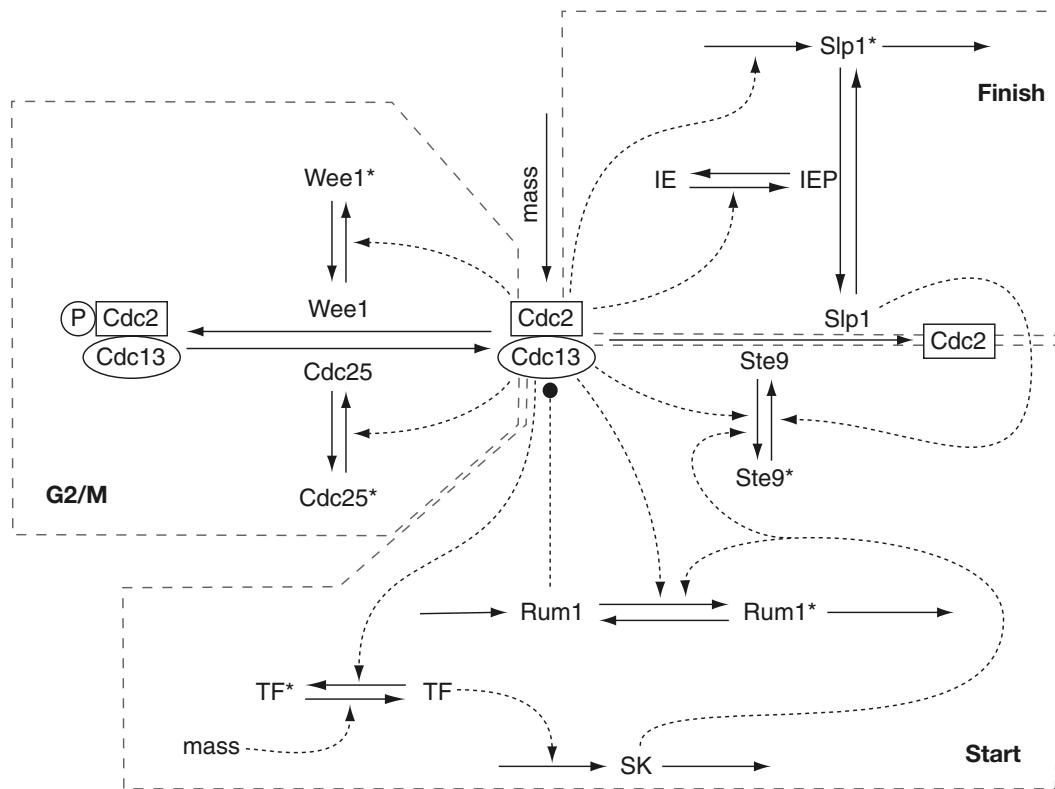
**Table 10.6** Cell cycle regulatory proteins.

Generic model	Fission yeast	Role
Cdk	Cdc2	cyclin-dependent kinase
CycB	Cdc13	cyclin
Cdh1	Ste9	APC auxiliary
Cdc20	Slp1	APC auxiliary
IE	IE	intermediate enzyme
	Rum1	inhibitor
	Wee1	tyrosine kinase
	Cdc25	tyrosine phosphatase
	SK	starter kinase
	TF	transcription factor



**Figure 10.12** Diagram of the states of MPF. In the model of the cell cycle in fission yeast, these states are assumed to be at equilibrium. Each of the states is degraded by a pathway that depends on Slp1 and Ste9, but these are omitted from the diagram for clarity. The circled P denotes a phosphate group.

- MPF can be inactivated in two major ways:
  - It can be phosphorylated by the Wee1 kinase to a protein called preMPF. PreMPF in its turn can be dephosphorylated back to MPF by the phosphatase form of Cdc25, a tyrosine phosphatase.
  - It can be inhibited by the binding of Rum1, to form an inactive trimer.



**Figure 10.13** Schematic diagram of the feedbacks that control the cell cycle in fission yeast. All the dotted arrows denote activation, while the lines with a solid circle on the end denote inhibition. Adapted from Novak et al. (2001), Fig. 2.

These reactions are summarized in Fig. 10.12. Since the activities of Rum1, Cdc25 and Slp1 are all controlled by MPF, this gives a highly complex series of feedback interactions. We revisit these below. For now, we focus only on the equations modeling the MPF trimer, Cdc13, and Rum1. We follow the presentation of Novak et al. (2001), who constructed the model using the total amount of Cdc13, the total amount of Rum1, and preMPF, as three of the dependent variables. A different choice of dependent variables gives a different version of the same model.

First, we define the total amount of Cdc13,  $[Cdc13_T]$ , as

$$[Cdc13_T] = X_1 + X_2 + X_3 + [MPF], \quad (10.43)$$

where  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ , and  $X_3$  refer to the labeled complexes in Fig. 10.12. As usual,  $X_1$  denotes the concentration of  $X_1$ . Similarly, we let

$$[\text{preMPF}] = X_1 + X_3 \quad \text{and} \quad [\text{Trimer}] = X_1 + X_2, \quad (10.44)$$

as indicated by the dashed boxes in Fig. 10.12. We also have a conservation equation for Rum1. If we let  $[Rum1_T]$  denote the total amount of Rum1, then

$$[Rum1_T] = [Rum1] + [Trimer] = [Rum1] + X_1 + X_2. \quad (10.45)$$

We assume that Cdc13, no matter in which state, is degraded at a rate that depends on Slp1 and Ste9, the two components of APC in fission yeast. Thus,

$$\frac{d[Cdc13_T]}{dt} = k_1 m - (k'_2 + k''_2[Ste9] + k'''_2[Slp1])[Cdc13]. \quad (10.46)$$

The equation for preMPF is similar:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d[preMPF]}{dt} &= k_{wee}([Cdc13_T] - [preMPF]) - k_{25}[preMPF] \\ &\quad - (k'_2 + k''_2[Ste9] + k'''_2[Slp1])[preMPF]. \end{aligned} \quad (10.47)$$

Here,  $k_{wee}$  and  $k_{25}$  are, respectively, the rate constants associated with Wee1 and Cdc25. As described below, they depend on [MPF].

Since  $k_{wee}$  and  $k_{25}$  depend on [MPF], we need to derive an expression for [MPF] in terms of our chosen dependent variables,  $[Cdc13_T]$ ,  $[preMPF]$  and  $[Rum1_T]$ . We begin by deriving an expression for [Trimer]. This we do by assuming that  $X_1$  and  $X_3$  are always in equilibrium, as are  $X_2$  and MPF. Thus

$$[Rum1][MPF] = K_d X_2, \quad (10.48)$$

$$[Rum1]X_3 = K_d X_1, \quad (10.49)$$

where  $K_d$  is the equilibrium constant for Rum1 binding. From this, and (10.44), it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} [Trimer] &= X_1 + X_2 \\ &= \frac{[Rum1]}{K_d} (X_3 + [MPF]) \\ &= \frac{1}{K_d} ([Rum1_T] - [Trimer])([Cdc13_T] - [Trimer]). \end{aligned} \quad (10.50)$$

This quadratic equation for [Trimer] can be easily solved to give

$$[Trimer] = \frac{1}{2} (\Sigma - \sqrt{\Sigma^2 - 4[Rum1_T][Cdc13_T]}) \quad (10.51)$$

$$= \frac{2[Rum1_T][Cdc13_T]}{\Sigma + \sqrt{\Sigma^2 - 4[Rum1_T][Cdc13_T]}}, \quad (10.52)$$

where

$$\Sigma = [Cdc13_T] + [Rum1_T] + K_d. \quad (10.53)$$

Note that here we have taken the smaller of the two roots, to ensure that  $[Trimer] \rightarrow 0$  as  $[Cdc13_T] \rightarrow 0$ .

With this expression for [Trimer] we can find an equation for [MPF] in terms of the other variables. First, since  $X_1$  and  $X_3$  are assumed to be in equilibrium, we have

$$[\text{preMPF}] = X_1 + X_3 = X_3 \left( 1 + \frac{[\text{Rum1}]}{K_d} \right). \quad (10.54)$$

Also, from conservation of Cdc13 (i.e., from (10.43)) we have

$$[\text{Trimer}] + X_3 + [\text{MPF}] = [\text{Cdc13}_T], \quad (10.55)$$

from which, using (10.54), it follows that

$$[\text{MPF}] = [\text{Cdc13}_T] - [\text{Trimer}] - \frac{[\text{preMPF}]K_d}{K_d + [\text{Rum1}_T] - [\text{Trimer}]}. \quad (10.56)$$

### The Three Major Sets of Feedbacks

At this point we have differential equations for  $[\text{Cdc13}_T]$  and  $[\text{preMPF}]$ , with associated algebraic equations for [Trimer] and MPF. This completes the most complicated part of the model construction. The remainder of the model equations follow in a straightforward manner from the reaction diagram, which is shown in full detail in Fig. 10.13.

This is a complicated reaction diagram; to make sense of it we divide the reactions into three main groups, corresponding to control of Start, Finish, and the G<sub>2</sub>/M transition, as indicated by the dashed gray boxes in Fig. 10.13. Each is discussed in turn.

**Start** This set of feedbacks causes the increase of MPF (i.e., of Cdc2:Cdc13) at Start.

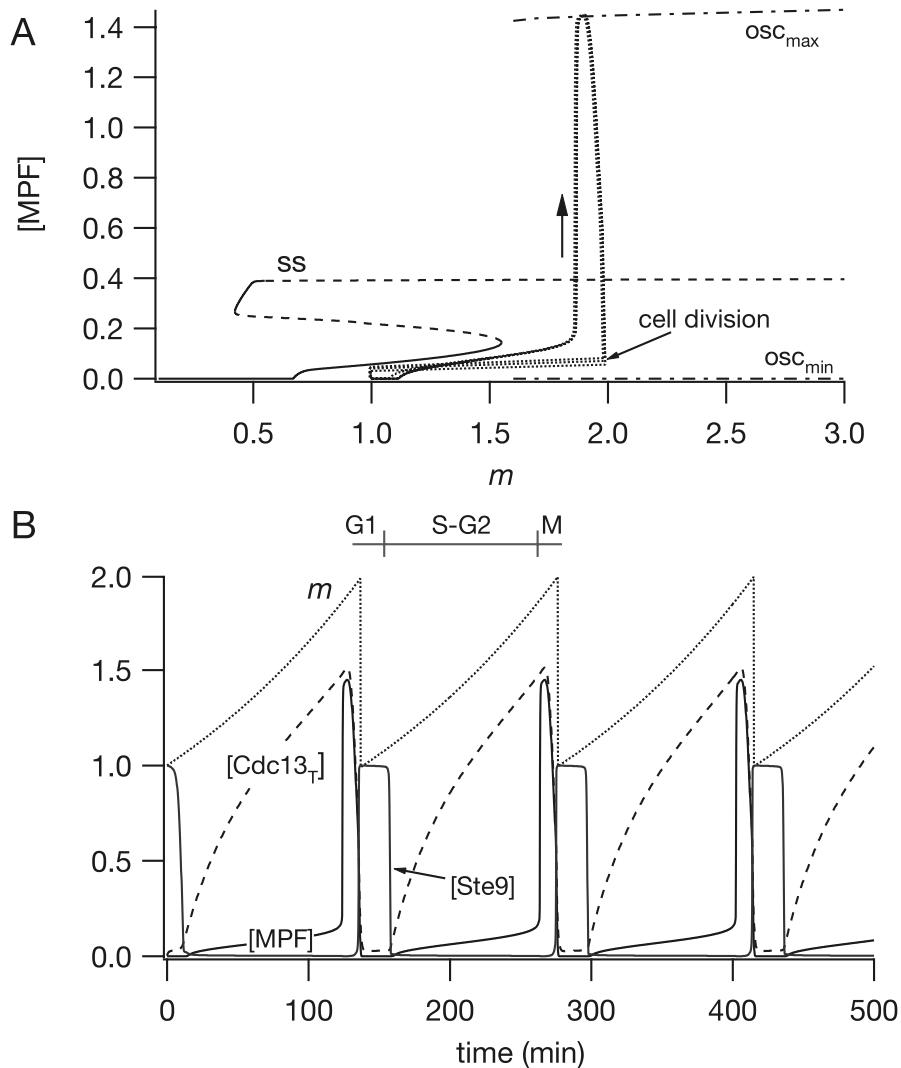
There are two mutual inhibition loops. First, MPF inactivates Ste9, thus decreasing the rate of breakdown of MPF. Second, MPF increases the rate of inactivation of Rum1. Since Rum1 inactivates MPF (see Fig. 10.12), this is the second mutual inhibition loop.

Because of these mutual inhibitions, the cell can have either a high concentration of MPF, or a high concentration of Ste9 and Rum1. It cannot have both.

SK denotes a starter kinase that helps begin Start by phosphorylating Rum1 to its inactive state, thus relieving the inhibition on MPF. However, once Start begins, SK must be removed to allow MPF to decrease at Finish. Thus, MPF phosphorylates SK's transcription factor (TF) to its inactive state. Thus, this negative feedback loop works against the two mutual inhibition loops in Start.

Although this scheme appears to be exactly that of the simple generic model, there are some important differences. One important way in which fission yeast differs from the generic model is that, at Start, the increase of MPF is not explosive. Instead, Start is characterized by a precipitous drop in [Ste9], which then allows [MPF] to start increasing. In fission yeast, MPF is held very low during G<sub>1</sub>, as shown in Fig. 10.14. At Start, Cdc13 begins to accumulate, but MPF activity remains low because Cdc2 is phosphorylated by Wee1.

**S/G<sub>2</sub>/M** The important reactions are sketched in Fig. 10.13, in a more simplified form than in Fig. 10.12, but including the action of MPF on Wee1 and Cdc25. MPF



**Figure 10.14** A: bifurcation diagram of the model of the cell cycle in fission yeast, using the wild type parameters in Table 10.7. The steady states, labeled ss, are plotted as a function of  $m$ , the cell size, with stable branches denoted by solid curves, and unstable branches by dashed curves. A branch of oscillatory solutions exists for larger  $m$ . The maximum and minimum of the oscillations are labeled  $\text{osc}_{\max}$  and  $\text{osc}_{\min}$  respectively. A solution of the model for several cell cycles is superimposed (dotted line). B: the solution plotted against time for the same cycles shown in A.

accumulates in the less active, Cdc2-phosphorylated, form, which is sufficient to drive DNA synthesis, but insufficient for mitosis. MPF decreases Wee1 activity by phosphorylating it (Wee1\* is the phosphorylated, inactive, form of Wee1). MPF also increases the activity of Cdc25 by phosphorylating it (Cdc25 is the phosphorylated,

active, form of Cdc25\*). Note that sometimes the phosphorylated state is the inactive state, while at other times it is the active state. Both of these feedbacks are positive.

The cell spends a long time in G2 phase until it grows large enough for the positive feedback loops on Wee1 and Cdc25 to engage and remove the inhibitory phosphate group from Cdc2. The resulting explosive increase in MPF kicks the cell into mitosis. Hence, fission yeast characteristically has a short G<sub>1</sub> phase and a long S/G<sub>2</sub> phase.

**Finish** This set of feedbacks causes the fast decrease in MPF at Finish (see Fig. 10.11).

MPF increases the rate of production of inactive Slp1, which is then activated via the action of IEP, the phosphorylated intermediate enzyme. As in the generic model, the identity of IE is unknown. However, its existence is inferred from the significant delays that occur between an increase in MPF levels and an increase in Slp1. Slp1 increases the rate of MPF breakdown in two different ways; first, by promoting its degradation directly, and second, by activating Ste9, which also inactivates MPF.

It is interesting to note that the Start and Finish feedbacks are, essentially, a fast positive feedback (Start) followed by a slower negative feedback (Finish). This arrangement is seen in many physiological systems, including the Hodgkin–Huxley model of the action potential (Chapter 5) and models of the inositol trisphosphate receptor (Chapter 7).

Cell size affects the model in two different ways. First, we assume that the rate of production of MPF is a function of cell size, as discussed previously. Second, the rate of activation of the transcription factor, TF, is also assumed to be dependent on the cell size (see (10.70)). Thus, as the cell grows, the activity of MPF is increased in two different size-dependent ways. TF affects MPF activity via the production of a starter kinase, SK. SK initiates Start by downregulating Rum1 and Ste9, which allows [Cdc13]<sub>T</sub> to increase and eventually trigger the G2-M transition.

## The Model Equations

Our job is now to translate the schematic diagrams in Figs. 10.12 and 10.13 into a set of ordinary differential equations. This has been done already for Cdc13<sub>T</sub> and preMPF; it is now necessary to repeat this process for the remaining variables in the model. However, since the equations for the remaining variables are much simpler and easier to derive than those for Cdc13<sub>T</sub> and preMPF they are presented here without detailed explanations. Also, so that all the equations are together in a single place, the equations for Cdc13<sub>T</sub> and preMPF included here as well.

The model equations are

$$\frac{d[\text{Cdc13}_T]}{dt} = k_1 m - (k'_2 + k''_2[\text{Ste9}] + k'''_2[\text{Slp1}])[\text{Cdc13}], \quad (10.57)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d[\text{preMPF}]}{dt} = & k_{\text{wee}}([\text{Cdc13}_T] - [\text{preMPF}]) - k_{25}[\text{preMPF}] \\ & - (k'_2 + k''_2[\text{Ste9}] + k'''_2[\text{Slp1}])[\text{preMPF}], \end{aligned} \quad (10.58)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d[\text{Ste9}]}{dt} &= (k'_3 + k''_3[\text{Slp1}]) \frac{1 - [\text{Ste9}]}{J_3 + 1 - [\text{Ste9}]} \\ &\quad - (k'_4[\text{SK}] + k_4[\text{MPF}]) \frac{[\text{Ste9}]}{J_4 + [\text{Ste9}]},\end{aligned}\quad (10.59)$$

$$\frac{d[\text{Slp1}_T]}{dt} = k'_5 + k''_5 \frac{[\text{MPF}]^4}{J_5^4 + [\text{MPF}]^4} - k_6[\text{Slp1}_T], \quad (10.60)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d[\text{Slp1}]}{dt} &= k_7[\text{IEP}] \frac{[\text{Slp1}_T] - [\text{Slp1}]}{J_7 + [\text{Slp1}_T] - [\text{Slp1}]} \\ &\quad - k_8 \frac{[\text{Slp1}]}{J_8 + [\text{Slp1}]} - k_6[\text{Slp1}],\end{aligned}\quad (10.61)$$

$$\frac{d[\text{IEP}]}{dt} = k_9[\text{MPF}] \frac{1 - [\text{IEP}]}{J_9 + 1 - [\text{IEP}]} - k_{10} \frac{[\text{IEP}]}{J_{10} + [\text{IEP}]}, \quad (10.62)$$

$$\frac{d[\text{Rum1}_T]}{dt} = k_{11} - (k_{12} + k'_{12}[\text{SK}] + k''_{12}[\text{MPF}])[\text{Rum1}_T], \quad (10.63)$$

$$\frac{d[\text{SK}]}{dt} = k_{13}[\text{TF}] - k_{14}[\text{SK}], \quad (10.64)$$

where, as before,

$$[\text{Trimer}] = \frac{2[\text{Rum1}_T][\text{Cdc13}_T]}{\Sigma + \sqrt{\Sigma^2 - 4[\text{Rum1}_T][\text{Cdc13}_T]}}, \quad (10.65)$$

$$\Sigma = [\text{Cdc13}_T] + [\text{Rum1}_T] + K_d, \quad (10.66)$$

$$[\text{MPF}] = [\text{Cdc13}_T] - [\text{Trimer}] - \frac{[\text{preMPF}]K_d}{K_d + [\text{Rum1}_T] - [\text{Trimer}]}.\quad (10.67)$$

We also assume that  $k_{\text{wee}}$  and  $k_{25}$  are, respectively, decreasing and increasing Goldbeter–Koshland functions of [MPF] (Section 1.4.6), and thus

$$k_{\text{wee}} = k'_{\text{wee}} + (k''_{\text{wee}} - k'_{\text{wee}})G(V_{aw}, V_{iw}[\text{MPF}], J_{aw}, J_{iw}), \quad (10.68)$$

$$k_{25} = k'_{25} + (k''_{25} - k'_{25})G(V_{a25}[\text{MPF}], V_{i25}, J_{a25}, J_{i25}). \quad (10.69)$$

Finally, the concentration of transcription factor, [TF], is assumed to be an increasing Goldbeter–Koshland function of the cell mass,  $m$ , but a decreasing function of [MPF], and thus

$$[\text{TF}] = G(k_{15}m, k'_{16} + k''_{16}[\text{MPF}], J_{15}, J_{16}), \quad (10.70)$$

while the mass grows exponentially,

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \mu m. \quad (10.71)$$

This completes the mathematical description of the reaction diagram in Fig. 10.13. All the parameter values are given in Table 10.7.

**Table 10.7** Parameters for the model of the cell cycle in fission yeast (10.34)–(10.42). Adapted from Novak et al. (2001), Table II. After Start occurs, the cell mass is divided by two to mimic cell division when  $[CycB] = [CycB]_{\text{threshold}}$ . All the parameters have units 1/min, except for the  $J$ 's and  $K_d$ , which are dimensionless.

Cdc13		
$k_1 = 0.04, k'_2 = 0.04, k''_2 = 1, k'''_2 = 1$		$[CycB]_{\text{threshold}} = 0.05$
Ste9		
$k'_3 = 1, k''_3 = 10, k'_4 = 2, k_4 = 35$		$J_3 = 0.04, J_4 = 0.04$
Slp1		
$k'_5 = 0.005, k''_5 = 0.2, k_6 = 0.1, k_7 = 1, k_8 = 0.25$		$J_5 = 0.3, J_7 = J_8 = 10^{-3}$
Rum1		
$k_{11} = 0.1, k_{12} = 0.01, k'_{12} = 1, k''_{12} = 3$		$K_d = 0.001$
IEP		
$k_9 = 0.1, k_{10} = 0.02$		
SK		
$k_{13} = 0.1, k_{14} = 0.1$		
TF		
$k_{15} = 1.5, k'_{16} = 1, k''_{16} = 2$		$J_{15} = 0.01, J_{16} = 0.01$
Wee1		
$k'_{\text{wee}} = 0.15, k''_{\text{wee}} = 1.3, V_{aw} = 0.25, V_{iw} = 1$		$J_{aw} = 0.01, J_{iw} = 0.01$
Cdc25		
$k'_{25} = 0.05, k''_{25} = 5, V_{a25} = 1, V_{i25} = 0.25$		$J_{a25} = 0.01, J_{i25} = 0.01$
$m$		
$\mu = 0.005$		

## The Wild Type

The cell cycle in this more complex model has a structure similar to that of the six-variable generic model of Section 10.3.1, and a typical solution is shown in Fig. 10.14. As in the simpler model, the curve of steady states as a function of  $m$  is S-shaped. As the cell mass,  $m$ , increases, the concentration of MPF also increases until the lower bend of the S is reached, at which point the solution “falls off” the curve of steady states and heads toward the stable oscillation (denoted by the dot-dash line in Fig. 10.14A). The resultant sudden increase in [MPF] pushes the cell into M phase.

Because the stable solution is oscillatory, [MPF] naturally increases and then decreases (Finish), at which point the cell divides, the cell mass is divided by two, and the cycle repeats. A succession of cycles is shown in Fig. 10.14B.

Note that the cell cycle trajectory does not lie exactly on the S-shaped curve of steady states. This is because the cell size is continually changing, never allowing enough time for the solution to reach the steady state that corresponds to a fixed value of  $m$ .

The different phases of the cell cycle are shown on the bar in Fig. 10.14B. During G<sub>1</sub>, [MPF] is held very low by Ste9. At the Start transition, [Ste9] falls almost to zero, thus allowing [MPF] to increase. This occurs relatively early during the cell cycle, when the cell mass is small. During S/G<sub>2</sub> phase the cell replicates DNA and slowly increases in size until critical mass is reached, whereupon [MPF] increases explosively and the

cell is pushed into M phase. Thus, the Start transition here does not correspond to an explosive increase of [MPF], a major point of difference from the simple generic model described earlier. This serves to emphasize the fact that different cell types have different ways of controlling the cell cycle, and, although there are many similarities between cell types, no single mechanism serves as a universal explanation.

### Wee1<sup>-</sup> Cells

One particularly interesting feature of this model is that it can be used to explain the behavior of a number of fission yeast mutants. Here, we discuss only one of these mutants, the *wee1<sup>-</sup>* mutant (Sveiczer et al., 2000). Others are discussed in detail in Tyson et al. (2002) and Novak et al. (2001).

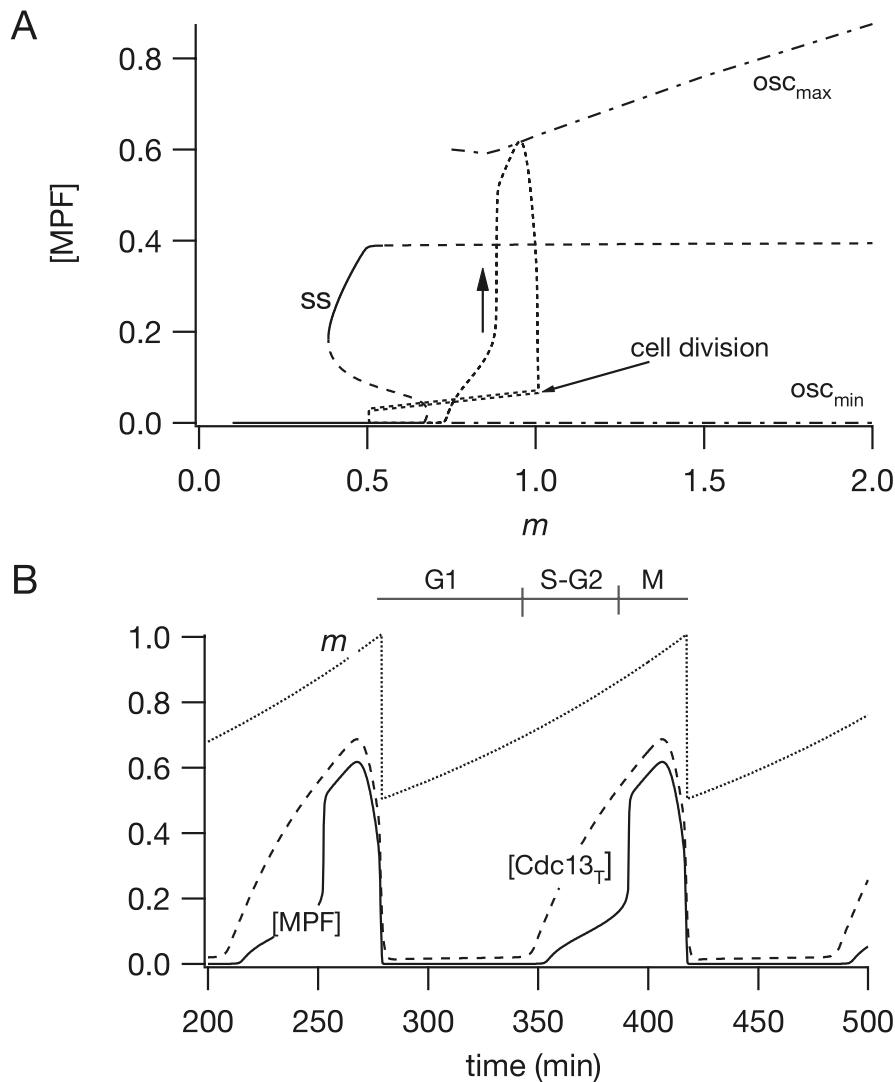
The normal fission yeast cell cycle has a short G<sub>1</sub> phase followed by a much longer S/G<sub>2</sub> phase during which most of the cell growth occurs. In the wild type cell, the long S/G<sub>2</sub> phase is caused by the balance between MPF, Wee1 and Cdc25. Because Wee1 inactivates MPF, it is not until [MPF] has increased past a critical threshold that it can inactivate Wee1 and thus allow the explosive growth of [MPF] at the beginning of M phase.

If Wee1 is knocked out (i.e., as in a *wee1<sup>-</sup>* mutant), the inactivation of MPF by Wee1 is prevented, or at least greatly decreased. This allows the explosive increase in [MPF] to happen at a lower value of  $m$ , and thus the cell enters mitosis when it is much smaller than in the wild type. However, because the cell cycle occurs for smaller cell sizes, and thus lower overall values of [MPF], the G<sub>1</sub> phase is extended, since it takes longer for Ste9 to be overpowered by MPF (which must happen at the end of G<sub>1</sub>; see Fig. 10.14B). Hence, *wee1<sup>-</sup>* cells have an extended G<sub>1</sub> phase, a shortened S/G<sub>2</sub> phase, and at division are approximately half the size of wild type cells. (The word *wee* is Scottish for small. Paul Nurse originally discovered Wee1 in the early 1970s and coined its name after observing that the absence of the gene made cells divide when they were unusually small.)

The phase plane and a cell cycle of the *wee1<sup>-</sup>* mutant are shown in Fig. 10.15. To model the absence of Wee1, the parameter  $k''_{\text{wee}}$  is decreased to 0.3, thus decreasing the value of  $k_{\text{wee}}$ , as shown by (10.68). With this change, the S-shaped curve of steady states is shifted to lower values of  $m$ , and the solution “falls off” the lower limit point at lower values of  $m$ . Thus, mitosis is initiated at lower cell size than in wild type cells. Fig. 10.15B shows that G<sub>1</sub> phase is extended, and that the cell cycle occurs for smaller values of [MPF] than in the wild type.

### 10.3.3 A Limit Cycle Oscillator in the *Xenopus* Oocyte

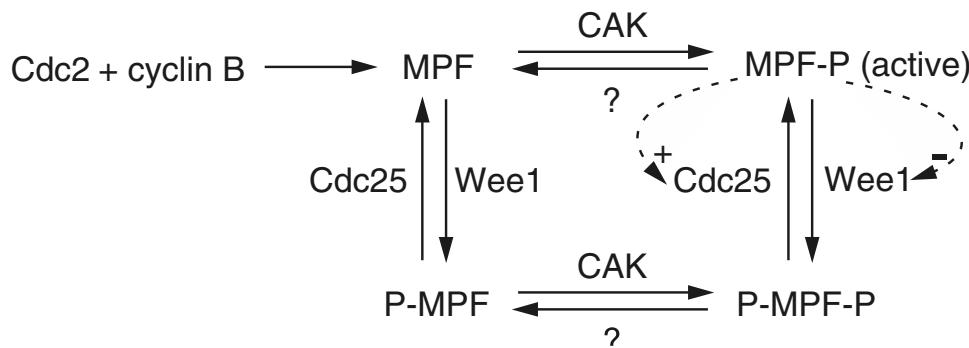
There is strong evidence that early embryonic divisions are controlled by a cytoplasmic biochemical limit cycle oscillator. For example, if fertilized (*Xenopus*) frog eggs are enucleated, they continue to exhibit periodic twitches or contractions, as if the cytoplasm continued to generate a signal in the absence of a nucleus. Enucleated sea urchin eggs go a step further by actually dividing a number of times before they notice that they



**Figure 10.15** A: bifurcation diagram of the *wee1*<sup>-</sup> cell cycle model of fission yeast, using the same parameters in Table 10.7, with  $k''_{\text{Wee}} = 0.3$ . The notation is the same as in Fig. 10.14. B: the solution plotted against time for the same cycles shown in A.

contain no genetic material and consequently die. In *Xenopus* the first post-fertilization cell cycle takes approximately one hour, followed by 11 faster cycles (approximately 30 minutes each) during which the cell mass decreases.

These divisions result from a cell cycle oscillator from which some of the checkpoints and controls have been removed. The most detailed model of this oscillator is that of Novak and Tyson (1993a,b; Borisuk and Tyson, 1998; Sha et al., 2003), and this is the model we describe here. A simpler model due to Goldbeter is discussed in



**Figure 10.16** Schematic diagram of the regulatory pathway of MPF in *Xenopus* oocytes.

Exercise 7, and a simplified version of the Novak–Tyson model is discussed in Chapter 10 of Fall et al. (2002).

Because frogs are not yeast, the details of the cell cycle in *Xenopus* oocytes are not exactly the same as those of the cell cycle in fission yeast, although there are major similarities.

In fertilized *Xenopus* oocytes, cell division takes place without any cell growth, so the G<sub>1</sub> checkpoint is removed (or inoperable). The MPF that is critical for getting through the G<sub>2</sub> checkpoint is a dimer of Cdc2 and a mitotic cyclin.

The *cdc2* gene encodes a cyclin-dependent protein kinase, Cdc2, which, in combination with B-type cyclins, forms MPF, which induces entry into M phase. The activity of the Cdc2-cyclin B dimer (MPF) is also controlled by phosphorylation at two sites, tyrosine-15 and threonine-167. (Tyrosine and threonine are two of the twenty amino acids that are strung together to form a protein molecule. The number 15 or 167 denotes the location on the protein sequence of Cdc2.) These two sites define four different phosphorylation states. MPF is active when it is phosphorylated at threonine-167 only. The other three phosphorylation states are inactive. Active MPF initiates a chain of reactions that controls mitotic events.

Just as in fission yeast, movement between different phosphorylation states is mediated by Wee1 and Cdc25. Wee1 inactivates MPF by adding a phosphate to the tyrosine-15 site. Cdc25 reverses this by dephosphorylating the tyrosine-15 site. A schematic diagram of this regulation is shown in Fig. 10.16. Cyclin B is synthesized from amino acids and binds with free Cdc2 to form an inactive MPF dimer. The dimer is quickly phosphorylated on threonine-167 (by a protein kinase called CAK) and dephosphorylated at the same site by an unknown enzyme. Simultaneously, Wee1 can phosphorylate the dimer at the tyrosine-15 site, rendering it inactive, and Cdc25 can dephosphorylate the same site. Mitosis is initiated when a sufficient quantity of MPF is active.

This regulation of MPF is one point of divergence with the previous model for fission yeast. The other feedbacks are similar to those we have seen before. First, the

active form of MPF regulates the activities of Wee1 and Cdc25 (as in the box labeled G2/M in Fig. 10.13), while the degradation of MPF is controlled by a delayed negative feedback loop through an intermediate enzyme (as in the box labeled Finish in Fig. 10.13). In *Xenopus*, the degradation of MPF is controlled by a ubiquitin-conjugating enzyme (UbE) (which is an outdated name for our friend, APC-Cdc20).

We now have a complete verbal description of a model of the initiation of mitosis. In summary, as cyclin is produced, it combines with Cdc2 to form MPF. MPF is quickly phosphorylated to its active form. Active MPF turns on its own autocatalytic production by activating Cdc25 and inactivating Wee1. By activating UbE, which activates the destruction of cyclin, active MPF also turns on its own destruction, but with a delay, thus completing the cycle.

Of course, this verbal description is incomplete, because there are many other features of M phase control that have not been included. It also does not follow from verbal arguments alone that this model actually controls mitosis in a manner consistent with experimental observations. To check that this model is indeed sufficient to explain some features of the cell cycle, it is necessary to present it in quantitative form (Novak and Tyson, 1993).

The chemical species that must be tracked include the Cdc2 and cyclin monomers, the dimer MPF in its active and inactive states, as well as the four regulatory enzymes Wee1, Cdc25, IE, and UbE in their phosphorylated and unphosphorylated states.

First, cyclin (with concentration  $y$ ) is produced at a steady rate and is degraded or combines with Cdc2 (with concentration  $c$ ) to form the MPF dimer ( $r$ ):

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = k_1[A] - k_2y - k_3Yc. \quad (10.72)$$

The MPF dimer can be in one of four phosphorylation states, with phosphate at tyrosine-15 ( $s$ ), at threonine-167 (concentration  $m$ ), at both sites (concentration  $n$ ), or at none (concentration  $r$ ). The movement among these states is regulated by the enzymes Wee1, Cdc25, CAK, and one unknown enzyme ("?"). Thus,

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = -(k_2 + k_{CAK} + k_{wee})r + k_3yc + k_2n + k_{25}s, \quad (10.73)$$

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = -(k_2 + k_{CAK} + k_{25})s + k_2n + k_{wee}r, \quad (10.74)$$

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = -(k_2 + k_2 + k_{wee})m + k_{CAK}r + k_{25}n, \quad (10.75)$$

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = -(k_2 + k_2 + k_{25})n + k_{wee}m + k_{CAK}s. \quad (10.76)$$

Notice that in the above equations, cyclin degradation at rate  $k_2$  is permitted for free cyclin as well as for cyclin that is dimerized with Cdc2. We assume that, if cyclin degrades directly from a phosphorylated dimer, then the phosphate is also immediately removed thus producing free Cdc2. Thus,

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = k_2(r + s + n + m) - k_3cy. \quad (10.77)$$

These six equations would form a closed system were it not for feedback. Notice that the last equation, (10.77), is redundant, since  $m+r+s+n+c = \text{constant}$ . The feedback shows up in the nonlinear dependence of rate constants on the enzymes Cdc25, Wee1, IE, and UbE. This is expressed as

$$k_{25} = V'_{25}[\text{Cdc25}] + V''_{25}[\text{Cdc25\_P}], \quad (10.78)$$

$$k_{\text{wee}} = V'_{\text{wee}}[\text{Wee1\_P}] + V''_{\text{wee}}[\text{Wee1}], \quad (10.79)$$

$$k_2 = V'_2[\text{UbE}] + V''_2[\text{UbE}^*]. \quad (10.80)$$

In addition, the active states of Cdc25, Wee1, IE, and UbE are governed by Michaelis–Menten rate laws of the form

$$\frac{d[\text{Cdc25\_P}]}{dt} = \frac{k_a m [\text{Cdc25}]}{K_a + [\text{Cdc25}]} - \frac{k_b [\text{PPase}][\text{Cdc25\_P}]}{K_b + [\text{Cdc25\_P}]}, \quad (10.81)$$

$$\frac{d[\text{Wee1\_P}]}{dt} = \frac{k_e m [\text{Wee1}]}{K_e + [\text{Wee1}]} - \frac{k_f [\text{PPase}][\text{Wee1\_P}]}{K_f + [\text{Wee1\_P}]}, \quad (10.82)$$

$$\frac{d[\text{IE\_P}]}{dt} = \frac{k_g m [\text{IE}]}{K_g + [\text{IE}]} - \frac{k_h [\text{PPase}][\text{IE\_P}]}{K_h + [\text{IE\_P}]}, \quad (10.83)$$

$$\frac{d[\text{UbE}^*]}{dt} = \frac{k_c [\text{IE\_P}][\text{UbE}]}{K_c + [\text{UbE}]} - \frac{k_d [\text{IE}_{\text{anti}}][\text{UbE}^*]}{K_d + [\text{UbE}^*]}. \quad (10.84)$$

The quantities with  $\_P$  attached correspond to phosphorylated forms of the enzyme quantity. The total amounts of each of these enzymes are assumed to be constant, so equations for the inactive forms are not necessary. PPase denotes a phosphatase that dephosphorylates  $\text{Cdc25\_P}$ .

This forms a complete model with nine differential equations having eight Michaelis–Menten parameters and eighteen rate constants. There are two ways to gain an understanding of the behavior of this system of differential equations: by numerical simulation using reasonable parameter values, or by approximating by a smaller system of equations and studying the simpler system by analytical means.

The parameter values used by Novak and Tyson to simulate *Xenopus* oocyte extracts are shown in Tables 10.8 and 10.9.

While numerical simulation of these nine differential equations is not difficult, to gain an understanding of the basic behavior of the model it is convenient to make some simplifying assumptions. Suppose  $k_{\text{CAK}}$  is large and  $k_2$  is small, as experiments suggest. Then the phosphorylation of Cdc2 on threonine-167 occurs immediately

**Table 10.8** Michaelis–Menten constants for the cell cycle model of Novak and Tyson (1993).

$K_a/[\text{Cdc25}_{\text{total}}] = 0.1$	$K_b/[\text{Cdc25}_{\text{total}}] = 0.1$
$K_c/[\text{UbE}_{\text{total}}] = 0.01$	$K_d/[\text{UbE}_{\text{total}}] = 0.01$
$K_e/[\text{Wee1}_{\text{total}}] = 0.3$	$K_f/[\text{Wee1}_{\text{total}}] = 0.3$
$K_g/[\text{IE}_{\text{total}}] = 0.01$	$K_h/[\text{IE}_{\text{total}}] = 0.01$

**Table 10.9** Rate constants for the cell cycle model of Novak and Tyson (1993).

$k_1[A]/[Cdc2_{total}]$	= 0.01	$k_3[Cdc2_{total}]$	= 1.0
$V'_2[Ube_{total}]$	= 0.015 (0.03)	$V''_2[Ube_{total}]$	= 1.0
$V'_{25}[Cdc25_{total}]$	= 0.1	$V''_{25}[Cdc25_{total}]$	= 2.0
$V_{wee}[Wee1_{total}]$	= 0.1	$V_{wee}[Wee1_{total}]$	= 1.0
$k_{CAK}$	= 0.25	$k_7$	= 0.25
$k_a[Cdc2_{total}]/[Cdc25_{total}] = 1.0$		$k_b[PPase]/[Cdc25_{total}] = 0.125$	
$k_c[Ie_{total}]/[Ube_{total}] = 0.1$		$k_d[Ie_{anti}]/[Ube_{total}] = 0.095$	
$k_e[Cdc2_{total}]/[Wee1_{total}] = 1.33$		$k_f[PPase]/[Wee1_{total}] = 0.1$	
$k_g[Cdc2_{total}]/[Ie_{total}] = 0.65$		$k_h[PPase]/[Ie_{total}] = 0.087$	

after formation of the MPF dimer. This allows us to ignore the quantities  $r$  and  $s$ . Next we assume that the activities of the regulatory enzymes, (10.78)–(10.80), can be approximated by

$$k_{wee} = \text{constant}, \quad (10.85)$$

$$k_2 = k'_2 + k''_2 m^2, \quad (10.86)$$

$$k_{25} = k'_{25} + k''_{25} m^2. \quad (10.87)$$

This leaves only three equations for the three unknowns  $y$  (free cyclin),  $m$  (active MPF), and Cdc2 monomer ( $q$ ) as follows:

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = k_1 - k_2 y - k_3 y q, \quad (10.88)$$

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = k_3 y q - k_2 m + k_{25} n - k_{wee} m, \quad (10.89)$$

$$\frac{dq}{dt} = -k_3 y q + k_2 (m + n), \quad (10.90)$$

where  $m + n + q = c$  is the total Cdc2. It follows that the total cyclin  $l = y + m + n$  satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{dl}{dt} = k_1 - k_2 l. \quad (10.91)$$

Any three of these four equations describe the behavior of the system. However, in the limit that  $k_3$  is large compared to other rate constants, the system can be further reduced to a two-variable system for which phase-plane analysis is applicable. With  $v = k_3 y$ ,

$$\frac{dv}{dt} + k_2 v = k_3 (k_1 - qv), \quad (10.92)$$

so that  $qv = k_1$  to leading order. If  $k_1$  is small, then  $y$  is small as well, so that (10.89) becomes

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = k_1 - k_2 m + k_{25}(l - m) - k_{\text{wee}} m. \quad (10.93)$$

The two equations (10.91) and (10.93) form a closed system that can be studied using the phase portrait in the  $(l, m)$  plane. In this approximation,  $q = c - l$ . The nullclines are described by the equations

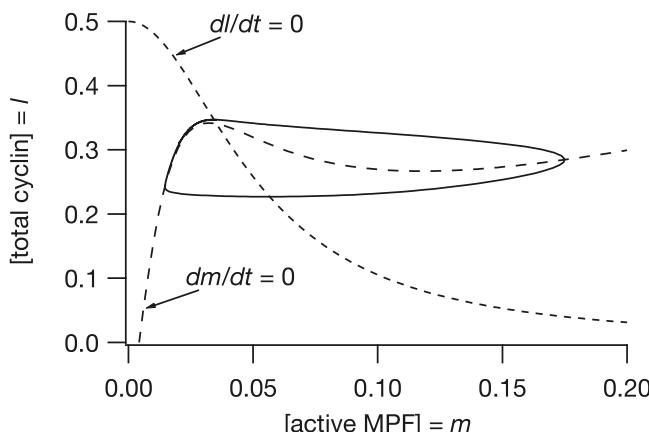
$$\frac{dl}{dt} = 0 : \quad l = \frac{k_1}{k_2(m)}, \quad (10.94)$$

and

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = 0 : \quad l = \frac{k_{\text{wee}} m + k_2(m)m - k_1}{k_{25}(m)} + m, \quad (10.95)$$

which are plotted in Fig. 10.17.

For these parameter values, there is a unique unstable steady-state solution surrounded by a limit cycle oscillation. By adjusting parameters, one can have a stable fixed point on the leftmost branch of the N-shaped curve corresponding to the G<sub>2</sub> checkpoint, or one can have a stable fixed point on the rightmost branch, yielding an M phase checkpoint. Here a possible control parameter is  $k_{\text{wee}}$ , since increasing  $k_{\text{wee}}$  makes the  $m$  nullcline move up. Thus, increasing  $k_{\text{wee}}$  creates a G<sub>2</sub> checkpoint on the leftmost branch of the N-shaped curve.



**Figure 10.17** Solution trajectory and nullclines for the system of equations (10.91), (10.93). Parameter values are  $k_1 = 0.004$ ,  $k_{\text{wee}} = 0.9$ ,  $k_2 = 0.008$ ,  $k'_1 = 3.0$ ,  $k_{25} = 0.03$ ,  $k'_{25} = 50.0$ .

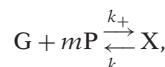
### 10.3.4 Conclusion

We are a long way from a complete understanding of the biochemistry of the cell cycle. Here we have seen a few of the main players, although there are major portions of the cell cycle that are still a mystery. With the modern development of biochemistry, many similar stories relating to regulation of cell function are being unfolded. It is likely that in the coming years, many of the details of this story will change and many new details will be added. However, the basic modeling process of turning a verbal description into a mathematical model and the consequent analysis of the model will certainly remain an important tool to aid our understanding of these complicated and extremely important processes. Furthermore, as the details of the stories become more complicated (as they are certain to do), mathematical analysis will become even more important in helping us understand how these processes work.

---

### 10.4 EXERCISES

- Suppose that the production of an enzyme is turned on by  $m$  molecules of the enzyme according to



where  $G$  is the inactive state of the gene and  $X$  is the active state of the gene. Suppose that mRNA is produced when the gene is in the active state and the enzyme is produced by mRNA and is degraded at some linear rate. Find a system of differential equations governing the behavior of mRNA and enzyme. Give a phase portrait analysis of this system and show that it has a “switch-like” behavior.

- For a simplified lac operon model, assume that external lactose is converted directly into allolactose, and take

$$\frac{dA}{dt} = \alpha_L P \frac{L_e}{K_{Le} + L_e} - \beta_A B \frac{A}{K_A + A} - \gamma_A A, \quad (10.96)$$

eliminating (10.20) from the model.

Give a graphical steady-state analysis of the system of equations by plotting the null-clines  $\frac{dM}{dt} = 0$  and  $\frac{dA}{dt} = 0$  in the  $M, A$  phase plane (this is not a true phase plane, since it is a four-variable system.)

- Find the steady-state solutions of the Goodwin model (10.21)–(10.22) with  $n = 3$ , and with  $k_1 = k_2 = k_3$ . Under what conditions is the steady-state solution unstable, and under what conditions is the instability an oscillatory instability? Find conditions on the parameters for a Hopf bifurcation.

4. A modification of the Goodwin model that does not require such a high level of cooperativity was formulated by Bliss et al. (1982) and is given by

$$\frac{dx_1}{dt} = \frac{a}{1+x_3} - b_1x_1, \quad (10.97)$$

$$\frac{dx_2}{dt} = b_1x_1 - b_2x_2, \quad (10.98)$$

$$\frac{dx_3}{dt} = b_2x_2 - \frac{cx_3}{K+x_3}. \quad (10.99)$$

Determine the stability of the steady-state solution and find any Hopf bifurcation points in the special case that  $K = 1$ ,  $b_1 = b_2 < c$ , and  $a = c(\sqrt{\frac{c}{b_1}} - 1)$ .

5. Sketch the phase portrait for the two-variable generic cell cycle model given by (10.34) and (10.35).  
 6. Instead of using (10.54), the original presentation of the model of Novak et al. (2001) used the expression

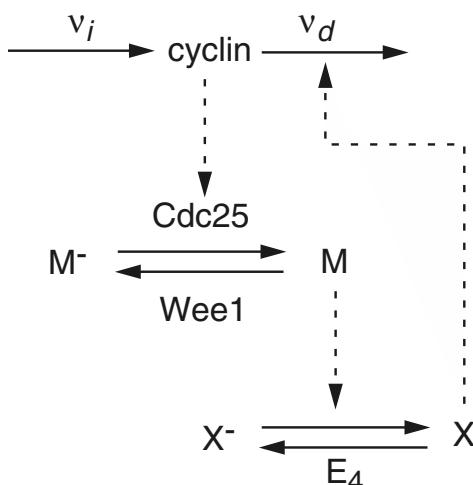
$$[\text{MPF}] = \frac{([\text{Cdc13}_T] - [\text{preMPF})([\text{Cdc13}_T] - [\text{Trimer}])}{[\text{Cdc13}_T]}. \quad (10.100)$$

Show that these two expressions for  $[\text{MPF}]$  are the same. Hint: Make it easier by defining  $c_T = [\text{Cdc13}_T]$ ,  $T = [\text{Trimer}]$ ,  $r = [\text{Rum1}]$ ,  $M = [\text{MPF}]$ , and  $p = [\text{preMPF}]$ . There are a number of ways to show this. One way is to start by

$$c_T = c_T + p - p = (c_T - p) + (X_1 + X_3). \quad (10.101)$$

Then show that  $X_1 + X_3 = (c_T - p)X_3/M$ , and factor out  $c_T - p$  to get the result.

7. Goldbeter (1996) developed and studied a minimal cascade model of the mitotic oscillator. The model assumes that cyclin B is synthesized at a constant rate and activates Cdc25 kinase. The activated Cdc25 kinase in turn activates Cdc2 kinase (M), and the activated Cdc2 kinase is inactivated by the kinase Wee1. There is also a cyclin protease X that is activated by Cdc2 kinase and inactivated by an additional phosphatase. The differential equations for this reaction scheme (shown in Fig. 10.18) are



**Figure 10.18** Diagram for the minimal cascade mitosis model of Goldbeter (1996).

**Table 10.10** Parameter values for the Goldbeter minimal mitotic cycle model.

$K_1 = 0.1$	$V_{M1} = 0.5 \text{ min}^{-1}$
$K_2 = 0.1$	$V_2 = 0.167 \text{ min}^{-1}$
$K_3 = 0.1$	$V_{M3} = 0.2 \text{ min}^{-1}$
$K_4 = 0.1$	$V_4 = 0.1 \text{ min}^{-1}$
$v_i = 0.023 \mu\text{M}/\text{min}$	$v_d = 0.1 \mu\text{M}/\text{min}$
$K_c = 0.3 \mu\text{M}$	$K_d = 0.02 \mu\text{M}$
$k_d = 3.33 \times 10^{-3} \text{ min}^{-1}$	

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = v_i - v_d x \frac{c}{K_d + c} - k_d c, \quad (10.102)$$

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = V_1 \frac{1 - m}{K_1 + 1 - m} - V_2 \frac{m}{K_2 + m}, \quad (10.103)$$

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = V_3 \frac{1 - x}{K_3 + 1 - X} - V_4 \frac{x}{K_4 + X}, \quad (10.104)$$

and

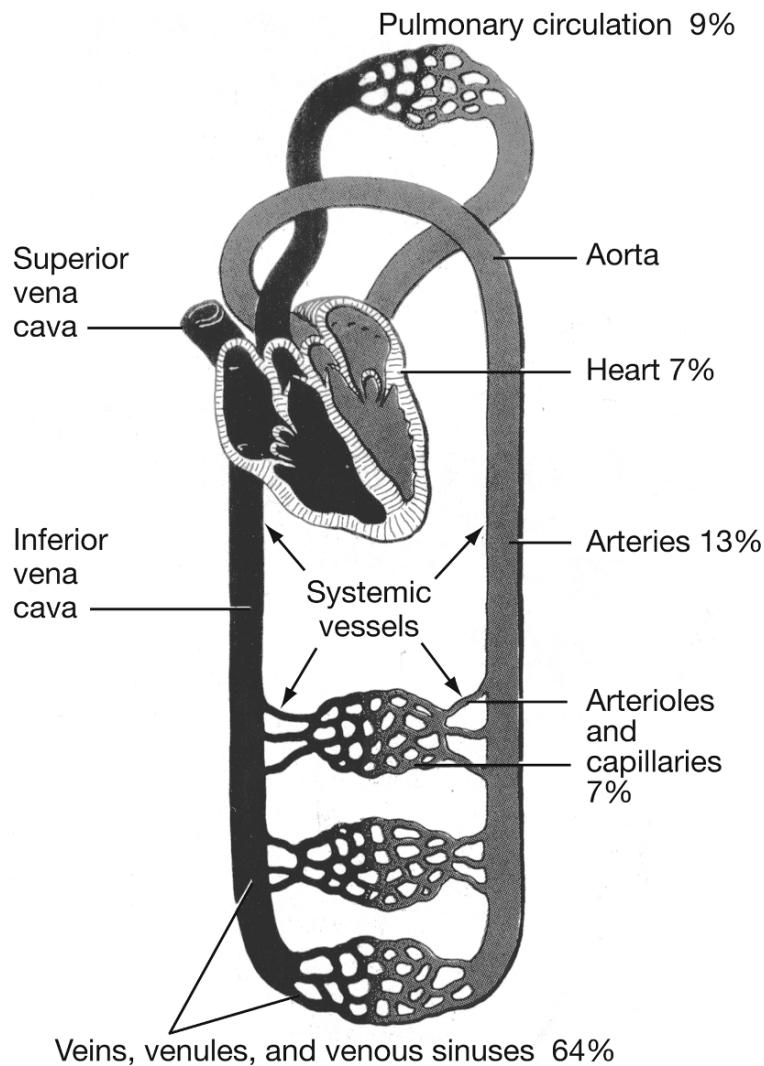
$$V_1 = V_{M1} \frac{c}{K_c + c}, \quad V_3 = V_{M3} m, \quad (10.105)$$

where  $c$  denotes the cyclin B concentration, and  $m$  and  $x$  denote the fractions of active Cdc2 kinase and of active cyclin protease, respectively. The parameters  $v_i$  and  $v_d$  are the constant rate of cyclin synthesis and maximum rate of cyclin degradation by protease X, achieved at  $x = 1$ . The parameters  $K_d$  and  $K_c$  denote Michaelis-Menten constants for cyclin degradation and cyclin activation, while  $k_d$  is the rate of nonspecific degradation of cyclin. The remaining parameters  $V_i$  and  $K_i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, 4$ , are the effective maximum rate and Michaelis-Menten constants for each of the four enzymes Cdc25, Wee1, Cdc2, and the protease phosphatase ( $E_4$ ), respectively. Typical parameter values are shown in Table 10.10. Simulate this system of equations to show that there is a stable limit cycle oscillation for this model. What is the period of oscillation?

# The Circulatory System

The circulatory system forms a closed loop for the flow of blood that carries oxygen from the lungs to the tissues of the body and carries carbon dioxide from the tissues back to the lungs (Figs. 11.1 and 11.2). There are two pumps to overcome the resistance and maintain a constant flow. The left heart receives oxygen-rich blood from the lungs and pumps this blood into the *systemic arteries*. The systemic arteries form a tree of progressively smaller vessels, beginning with the aorta, branching to the small arteries, then to the arterioles, and finally to the capillaries. The exchange of gases takes place in the capillaries. Leaving the systemic capillaries, the blood enters the *systemic veins*, through which it flows in vessels of progressively increasing size toward the right heart. The systemic veins consist of venules, small veins, and the *venae cavae*. The right heart pumps blood into the *pulmonary arteries*, which form a tree that distributes the blood to the lungs. The smallest branches of this tree are the pulmonary capillaries, where carbon dioxide leaves and oxygen enters the blood. Leaving the pulmonary capillaries, the oxygenated blood is collected by the pulmonary veins, through which it flows back to the left heart. It takes about a minute for a red blood cell to complete this circuit.

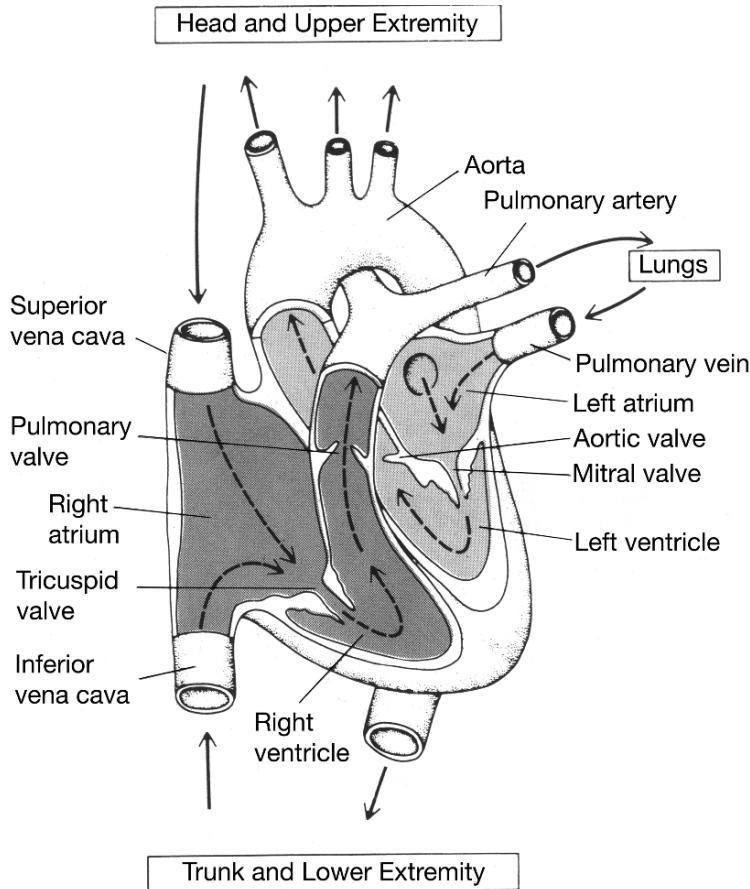
While there is an apparent structural symmetry between the pulmonary and systemic circulations, there are significant quantitative differences in pressure and blood volume. Nevertheless, the output of the right and left sides of the heart must always balance, even though the cardiac output, or total amount of blood pumped by the heart, varies widely in response to the metabolic needs of the body. One of the goals of this chapter is to understand how the cardiac output is determined and regulated in response to the metabolic needs of the body. Questions of this nature have been studied for many years, and many books have been written on the subject (see, for example, Guyton, 1963, or Reeve and Guyton, 1967). A more recent book that discusses several



**Figure 11.1** Schematic diagram of the circulatory system, showing the systemic and pulmonary circulations, the chambers of the heart, and the distribution of blood volume throughout the system. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 14-1, p. 162.)

mathematical models of the blood and circulatory system is Ottesen et al., 2004). Here, we consider only the simplest models of the control of cardiac output.

Each beat of the heart sends a pulse of blood through the arteries, and the form of this arterial pulse changes as it moves away from the heart. An interesting problem is to understand these changes and their clinical significance in terms of the properties of the blood and the arterial walls. Again, this problem has been studied in great detail, and we present here only a brief look at the earliest and simplest models of the arterial pulse.



**Figure 11.2** Schematic diagram of the heart as a pump. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 9-1, p. 108.)

Similarly, we pay almost no attention to the vast body of work on the fluid mechanics of blood flow. For general discussions, the interested reader is referred to Pedley (1980), Lighthill (1975), Jaffrin and Caro (1995), and Ottesen et al. (2004).

## 11.1 Blood Flow

The term *blood pressure* refers to the force per unit area that the blood exerts on the walls of blood vessels. Blood pressure varies both in time and distance along the circulatory system. *Systolic pressure* is the highest surge of pressure in an artery, and results from the ejection of blood by the ventricles during ventricular contraction, or *systole*. *Diastolic pressure* is the lowest pressure reached during ventricular relaxation

and filling, called *diastole*. In the aorta of a normal human, systolic pressure is about 120 mm Hg and diastolic pressure is about 80 mm Hg.

If the effects of gravity are ignored (which they are throughout this book), then one may assume that blood flows solely in response to pressure gradients. The simplest way to characterize a blood vessel is as a *resistance vessel* in which the radius is constant and the flow is linearly proportional to the pressure drop. In a linear resistance vessel, the flow,  $Q$ , is related to pressure by

$$Q = \frac{\Delta P}{R}, \quad (11.1)$$

where  $\Delta P$  is the pressure drop and  $R$  is the resistance.

The relationship between resistance and radius of the vessel is dramatic. To understand this dependence suppose that a viscous fluid moves slowly and steadily through a cylindrical vessel of fixed radius. The velocity of the fluid is described by a vector  $\mathbf{u}$  that has axial, radial, and angular components. Because the fluid is incompressible and fluid is conserved, it must be that

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0. \quad (11.2)$$

Furthermore, because momentum is conserved, the Navier–Stokes equations (Segel, 1977) hold:

$$\rho(\mathbf{u}_t + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}) = -\nabla P + \mu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u}, \quad (11.3)$$

where  $\rho$  is the constant fluid density,  $P$  is the fluid pressure, and  $\mu$  is the fluid viscosity. (A brief derivation of the conservation and momentum equations in the case of zero viscosity is given in Section 20.2.1.) If the flow is steady and the nonlinear terms are small compared to viscosity (in an appropriate nondimensional scaling), then

$$\mu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u} = \nabla P. \quad (11.4)$$

This simplification of the Navier–Stokes equation is called the Stokes equation.

The applicability of the Stokes equation to blood flow is suspect for several reasons. The viscosity contribution (the Laplacian) in the Stokes equation is derived from an assumed constitutive law relating stresses and strains in the fluid (Segel, 1977) that is known not to hold in fluids containing long polymers or other complicated chemical structures, including red blood cells. Furthermore, in the capillaries, the large size of the red blood cells compared to the typical diameter of a capillary suggests that a continuum description is not appropriate. However, we do not concern ourselves with these issues here and accept the Stokes equation description as adequate.

We look for a solution of the Stokes equation whose only nonzero component is the axial component. We define coordinates on the cylinder in the usual fashion, letting  $x$  denote distance along the cylinder in the axial direction and letting  $r$  denote the radial direction. The angular direction, with coordinate  $\theta$ , does not enter into this analysis.

First observe that with only axial flow, the incompressibility condition (11.2) implies that  $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0$ , where  $u$  is the axial component of the velocity vector. Thus,  $u$  is

independent of  $x$ . Then, with a steady flow, (11.4) reduces to the ordinary differential equation

$$\mu \frac{1}{r} \frac{d}{dr} \left( r \frac{d}{dr} u \right) = \frac{dP}{dx} = P_x, \quad (11.5)$$

where  $P_x$  is the axial pressure gradient along the vessel. Note also that  $P_x$  must be constant, independent of  $r$  and  $x$ . Because of viscosity, the velocity must be zero at the wall of the cylindrical vessel,  $r = r_0$ .

Integration of (11.5) from  $r$  to  $r_0$  gives

$$u(r) = -\frac{P_x}{4\mu} (r_0^2 - r^2), \quad (11.6)$$

from which it follows that the total flux through the vessel is (*Poiseuille's law*)

$$Q = 2\pi \int_0^{r_0} u(r)r dr = -\frac{\pi P_x}{8\mu} r_0^4. \quad (11.7)$$

This illustrates that the total flow of blood through a vessel is directly proportional to the fourth power of its radius, so that the radius of the vessel is by far the most important factor in determining the rate of flow through a vessel. In terms of the cross-sectional area  $A_0$  of the vessel, the flux through the cylinder is

$$Q = -\frac{P_x}{8\pi\mu} A_0^2, \quad (11.8)$$

while the average fluid velocity over a cross-section of the cylinder is given by

$$v = \frac{Q}{A_0} = -\frac{P_x}{8\pi\mu} A_0. \quad (11.9)$$

Note that a positive flow is defined to be in the increasing  $x$  direction, and thus a negative pressure gradient  $P_x$  drives a positive flow  $Q$ . Important controls of the circulatory system are vasodilators and vasoconstrictors, which, as their names suggest, dilate or constrict vessels and thereby adjust the vessel resistance by adjusting the radius.

If there are many parallel vessels of the same radius, then the total flux is the sum of the fluxes through the individual vessels. If there are  $N$  vessels, each of cross-sectional area  $A_0$  and with total cross-sectional area  $A = NA_0$ , the total flux through the system is

$$Q = -\frac{P_x}{8\pi\mu} A_0 (NA_0) = -\frac{P_x}{8\pi\mu} A_0 A, \quad (11.10)$$

and the corresponding average velocity is

$$v = \frac{Q}{A}. \quad (11.11)$$

Now, for there to be no stagnation in any portion of the systemic or pulmonary vessels, the total flux  $Q$  must be the same constant everywhere, implying that  $P_x A_0 A$  must be constant. Thus, for a vessel with constant cross-sectional area, the pressure

**Table 11.1** Diameter, total cross-sectional area, mean blood pressure at entrance, and mean fluid velocity of blood vessels.

Vessel	D (cm)	A ( $\text{cm}^2$ )	P(mm Hg)	v (cm/s)
Aorta	2.5	2.5	100	33
Small arteries	0.5	20	100	30
Arterioles	$3 \times 10^{-3}$	40	85	15
Capillaries	$6 \times 10^{-4}$	2500	30	0.03
Venules	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	250	10	0.5
Small veins	0.5	80		2
Venae cavae	3.0	8	2	20

drop must be linear in distance. Furthermore, the pressure drop per unit length must be greatest in that part of the circulatory system for which  $A_0A$  is smallest.

In Table 11.1 are shown the total cross-sectional areas and pressures at entry to different components of the vascular system. The largest pressure drop occurs in the arterioles, and the pressure in the small veins and venae cavae is so low that these are often collapsed. The pressure at the capillaries must be low to keep them from bursting, since they have very thin walls. The numbers in Table 11.1 suggest that the pressure drop per unit length is greatest in the arterioles, about a factor of three times greater than in the capillaries, even though the capillaries are substantially smaller than the arterioles.

When the diameter of a vessel decreases, the velocity must increase if the flux is to remain the same. In the circulatory system, however, a decrease in vessel diameter is accompanied by an increase in total cross-sectional area (i.e., an increase in the total number of vessels), so that the velocity at the capillaries is small, even though the capillaries have very small radius. In fact, according to (11.11), the velocity in a vessel is independent of the radius of the individual vessel but depends solely on the total cross-sectional area of the collection of similar vessels. Once again, from Table 11.1 we see that the velocity drops continuously from aorta to arteries to arterioles to capillaries and then rises from capillaries to venules to veins to venae cavae. The velocity at the vena cava is about half that at the aorta.

## 11.2 Compliance

Because blood vessels are elastic, there is a relationship between pressure and volume. The blood vessel wall is stretched as a result of the pressure difference between the interior and exterior of the vessel. Obviously, the higher the pressure difference, the more tension in the wall. Also, the larger the radius of the vessel, the larger the tension. However, the thicker the wall the less tension there is. These three observations can be

quantified via the relationship, known as Laplace's law,

$$T = \frac{Pr}{M}, \quad (11.12)$$

where  $T$  is the tension in the wall,  $P$  is the transmural pressure,  $r$  is the vessel radius and  $M$  is the wall thickness.

An application of Laplace's law arises in *dilated cardiomyopathy* in which the heart becomes greatly distended and the radius of the ventricle increases. Much larger wall tension is needed to create the same pressure during ejection of the blood, and so the dilated heart requires more energy to pump the same amount of blood compared to a heart of normal size. A new surgical procedure based on Laplace's law, called ventricular remodeling, removes portions of the ventricular wall in order to improve the function of dilated, failing hearts.

Laplace's law is the motivation for an understanding of compliance. Suppose we have an elastic vessel of volume  $V$ , with a uniform internal pressure  $P$ . The simplest assumption one can make is that  $V$  is linearly related to  $P$ , and thus

$$V = V_0 + CP, \quad (11.13)$$

for some constant  $C$ , called the *compliance* of the vessel, where  $V_0$  is the volume of the vessel at zero pressure. Although this linear relationship is not always accurate, it is good enough for the simple models that are used here.

The compliance of the venous compartment is about 24 times as great as the compliance of the arterial system, because the veins are both larger and weaker than the arteries. It follows that large amounts of blood can be stored in the veins with only slight changes in venous pressure, so that the veins are often called storage areas. The blood vessels in the lungs are also much more compliant than the systemic arteries.

It is possible for veins and arteries to collapse and for blood flow through the vessel to cease; i.e., the radius becomes zero if the pressure is sufficiently negative. Negative pressures are possible if one takes into account that there is a fluid pressure in the body exterior to the vessels, and  $P$  actually refers to the drop in pressure across the vessel wall. The flow of whole blood is stopped at a nonzero radius, primarily because of the nonzero diameter of red blood cells. Thus, when the arterial pressure falls below about 20 mm Hg, the flow of whole blood is blocked, whereas blockage of plasma in arterioles occurs between 5 and 10 mm Hg.

Equation (11.13) is applicable when the vessel has the same internal pressure throughout. When  $P$  is not uniform, the compliance of the vessel is modeled by relating the cross-sectional area to the pressure. Again, the simplest assumption to make is that the relationship is linear (see Exercise 2), and thus

$$A = A_0 + cP, \quad (11.14)$$

for some constant  $c$ . Note that  $c$  is the compliance per unit length, since in a cylindrical vessel of length  $L$  and uniform internal pressure,  $V = AL$ , so that  $C = cL$ . However, here we refer to both  $C$  and  $c$  as compliance.

For a given flow, the pressure drop in a compliance vessel is different from the pressure drop in a resistance vessel. Further, in a compliance vessel, the flow is not a linear function of the pressure drop. From (11.8) the flux through a vessel is proportional to the product of the pressure gradient and the square of the area. Thus, for a compliance vessel,

$$8\pi\mu Q = -P_x A^2(P), \quad (11.15)$$

where  $A(P)$  is the relationship between cross-sectional area and pressure for the chosen vessel. In steady state, the flux must be the same everywhere, so that

$$x = -\frac{1}{8\pi\mu Q} \int_{P_0}^{P(x)} A^2(P) dP \quad (11.16)$$

determines the pressure as a function of distance  $x$ . If the cross-sectional area of the vessel is given by (11.14), then the flux through a vessel of length  $L$  is related to the input pressure  $P_0$  and output pressure  $P_1$  by

$$RQ = \frac{1}{3\gamma} (1 + \gamma P)^3|_{P_1}^{P_0} \quad (11.17)$$

$$= (P_0 - P_1) \left( 1 + \gamma(P_0 + P_1) + \frac{\gamma^2}{3}(P_0^2 + P_0 P_1 + P_1^2) \right), \quad (11.18)$$

where  $R = 8\pi\mu L/A_0^2$  and  $\gamma = c/A_0$ . In the limit of zero compliance, this reduces to the linear ohmic law (11.1). Note that  $1/\gamma$  has units of pressure, while  $R$  has units of pressure/flow. Thus,  $R$  can be interpreted as the flow resistance, as in (11.1).

Since  $Q$  is an increasing function of  $\gamma$ , it follows that a given flow can be driven by a smaller pressure drop in a compliance vessel than in a noncompliance vessel. This relationship is viewed graphically in Fig. 11.3, where we plot the scaled flux  $RQ$  as a function of pressure drop  $\Delta P = P_0 - P_1$  for fixed  $\gamma$  and  $P_0$ . Clearly, the higher the compliance, the smaller the pressure drop required to drive a given fluid flux. This explains, for example, why the pressure drop in the veins can be much less than in the arteries, since the compliance of the veins is much greater than the compliance of the arteries.

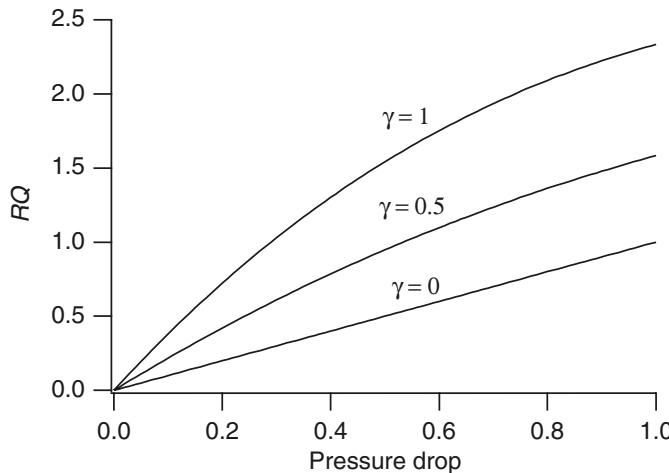
We also calculate the volume of blood contained in a vessel with input pressure  $P_0$  and output pressure  $P_1$  to be

$$V = \int_0^L A(x) dx = \int_{P_0}^{P_1} A(P) x'(P) dP = -\frac{1}{8\pi\mu Q} \int_{P_0}^{P_1} A^3(P) dP. \quad (11.19)$$

For a linear compliance vessel (11.14) this is

$$\frac{V}{V_0} = \frac{3}{4} \left( \frac{(1 + \gamma P)^4|_{P_1}^{P_0}}{(1 + \gamma P)^3|_{P_1}^{P_0}} \right) \quad (11.20)$$

$$= 1 + \frac{\gamma}{2}(P_0 + P_1) + \frac{\gamma^2}{6}(P_0 - P_1)^2 + O(\gamma^3), \quad (11.21)$$



**Figure 11.3** Scaled flow  $RQ$  (with units of pressure) as a function of pressure drop  $\Delta P = P_0 - P_1$  for different values of compliance  $\gamma$ . For all curves  $P_0 = 1.0$ .

where  $V_0$  is the volume of the vessel at zero pressure. It is left as an exercise (Exercise 3) to show that when there is no pressure drop across the vessel, so that  $P_0 = P_1$ ,

$$V = V_0 + V_0\gamma P_0 = V_0 + \frac{V_0}{A_0}cP, \quad (11.22)$$

which is the same as (11.13).

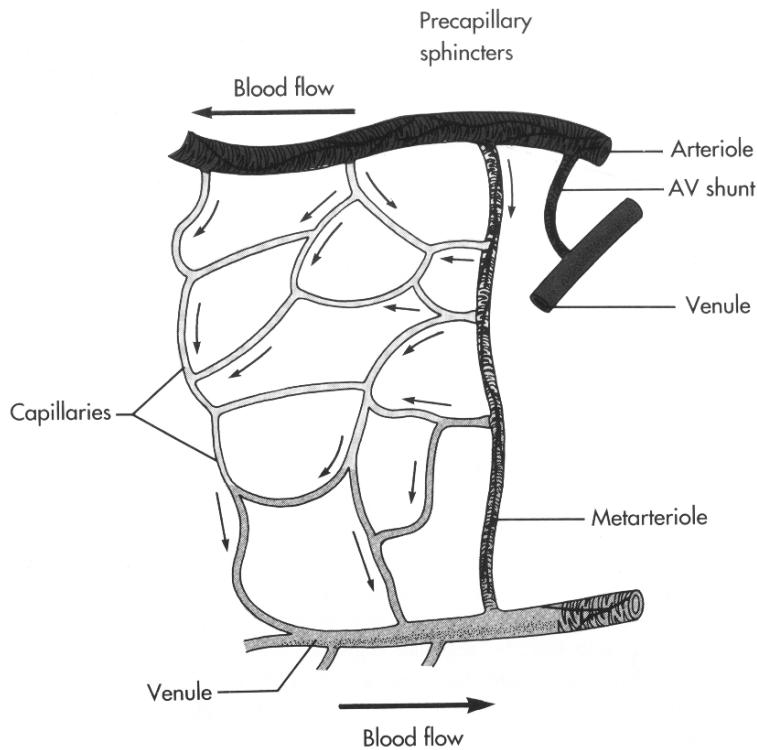
## 11.3 The Microcirculation and Filtration

The purpose of the circulatory system is to provide nutrients to and remove waste products from the cellular interstitium. To do so requires continuous filtration of the interstitium. This filtration is accomplished primarily at the level of capillaries, as fluid moves out of the capillaries at the arteriole end and back into the capillaries at the venous end.

The efflux or influx of fluid from or into the capillaries is determined by the local pressure differences across the capillary wall. In normal situations, the pressure drop through the capillaries is substantial, about 25 mm Hg.

A schematic diagram of the capillary network is shown in Fig. 11.4. To get some understanding of how filtration works and why a capillary pressure drop is necessary, we use a simple one-dimensional model of a capillary. We suppose that there is an influx  $Q_i$  at  $x = 0$  that must be the same as the efflux at  $x = L$ , where  $L$  is the length of the capillary. At each point  $x$  along the capillary, there is blood flow  $q$ . The (hydrostatic) pressure  $P_c$  at each point along the capillary is determined by

$$\frac{dP_c}{dx} = -\rho q, \quad (11.23)$$



**Figure 11.4** Diagram of the capillary microcirculation. (Berne and Levy, 1993, Fig. 28-1, p. 466.)

where  $\rho$  is the coefficient of capillary resistance. Flow into or out of the capillary (through the porous capillary wall) is determined by the difference between total internal pressure and total external (interstitial) pressure. The interstitial hydrostatic pressure  $P_i$  is typically about  $-3$  mm Hg, and the interstitial fluid colloidal osmotic pressure  $\pi_i$  is about  $8$  mm Hg, while the plasma colloidal osmotic pressure  $\pi_c$  averages about  $28$  mm Hg (although it necessarily varies along the length of the capillary; see Exercise 4). Thus, the flow into the capillary is determined by

$$\frac{dq}{dx} = K_f(-P_c + P_i + \pi_c - \pi_i), \quad (11.24)$$

where  $K_f$  is the capillary filtration rate.

We assume that only  $P_c$  varies along the length of the capillary. Clearly, when  $P_c$  is high, fluid is forced out of the capillary, and when  $P_c$  drops sufficiently low, fluid is reabsorbed into the capillary.

Equations (11.23) and (11.24) form a linear system of equations, which is readily solved. We use the boundary conditions

$$q(0) = q(L) = Q_i, \quad (11.25)$$

thus giving two boundary conditions for the two linear equations. It is easiest to solve first for  $q$ . From (11.24) we see that

$$\frac{d^2q}{dx^2} = -K_f \frac{dP_c}{dx} = K_f \rho q. \quad (11.26)$$

Noting that  $q$  is the same at  $x = 0$  and  $x = L$ , it must be symmetric about  $x = \frac{L}{2}$ , so that

$$q = B \cosh\left(\beta\left(x - \frac{L}{2}\right)\right), \quad (11.27)$$

where  $\beta^2 = K_f \rho$ . It follows easily from the boundary conditions that  $B = \frac{Q_i}{\cosh(\frac{\beta L}{2})}$  and from (11.24) that

$$P_c = P_i + \pi_c - \pi_i - \frac{1}{K_f} \frac{dq}{dx} = P_i + \pi_c - \pi_i - \frac{Q_i \beta}{K_f} \frac{\sinh \beta(x - L/2)}{\cosh \frac{\beta L}{2}}. \quad (11.28)$$

In Exercise 4, this problem is studied in the phase plane, and generalized slightly to include variable osmolarity.

We can also calculate the relationship between the flux and total pressure drop along the length of the capillary. From the solution for  $P_c$  it follows that

$$\Delta P_c = P_c(0) - P_c(L) = \frac{2Q_i \beta}{K_f} \tanh \frac{\beta L}{2}, \quad (11.29)$$

and thus

$$Q_i = \frac{\Delta P_c}{R} \frac{\beta L / 2}{\tanh \frac{\beta L}{2}}, \quad (11.30)$$

where  $R = \rho L$  is the total resistance of the capillary. Notice the similarity of this formula to (11.1), describing the relationship between flow and pressure drop in a nonleaky vessel. Apparently, leakiness in the vessel ( $\beta \neq 0$ ) has the effect of decreasing the overall resistance of the capillary flow.

Notice that  $q(x)$  is minimal, and therefore the interstitial flow is maximal, at  $x = L/2$ . We define the filtration rate  $Q_f$  to be the maximal flux through the interstitium, in this case,

$$Q_f = Q_i - q(L/2). \quad (11.31)$$

It follows that

$$\frac{Q_f}{Q_i} = 1 - \operatorname{sech} \frac{\beta L}{2}. \quad (11.32)$$

The filtration rate depends on the single dimensionless parameter  $\beta L = \sqrt{\rho K_f} L$ . Thus filtration is enhanced in vessels that are “leaky” (large  $K_f$ ) and of small radius, since vessel resistance  $\rho$  is inversely proportional to  $r^4$ .

More detailed studies of the microcirculation can be found in the work of Pries and Secomb (2000, 2005; Pries et al., 1996).

## 11.4 Cardiac Output

During a heartbeat cycle, the pressure and volume of the heart change in a highly specific way, most easily seen as a trajectory plotted in the pressure–volume phase plane, shown in Fig. 11.5. Notice that the pressure–volume trajectories, or “loops”, are of rectangular shape, and thus the pressure and volume change at different places in the cycle. For example, on the right ascending side of the loop, the pressure increases while volume is constant, which corresponds to the ventricle contracting while the outflow valve is closed. At the top right-hand corner the outflow valve opens, and the volume decreases as the blood is pumped out at a constant pressure. The constant pressure at the top of the loop corresponds to the arterial pressure, while the constant pressure along the bottom of the loop corresponds to the venous pressure. Notice also that the top left corners of the loops lie on the same straight line. Thus, the ventricular volume at the end of a contraction (the end-systolic volume  $V_{ES}$ ) is a linear function of the arterial blood pressure. Further, in panel B of the same figure, the top left corner of the loop (the end-systolic pressure and volume) is constant, independent of the total volume of blood pumped by the ventricle, suggesting that it depends solely on the arterial pressure.

This suggests that

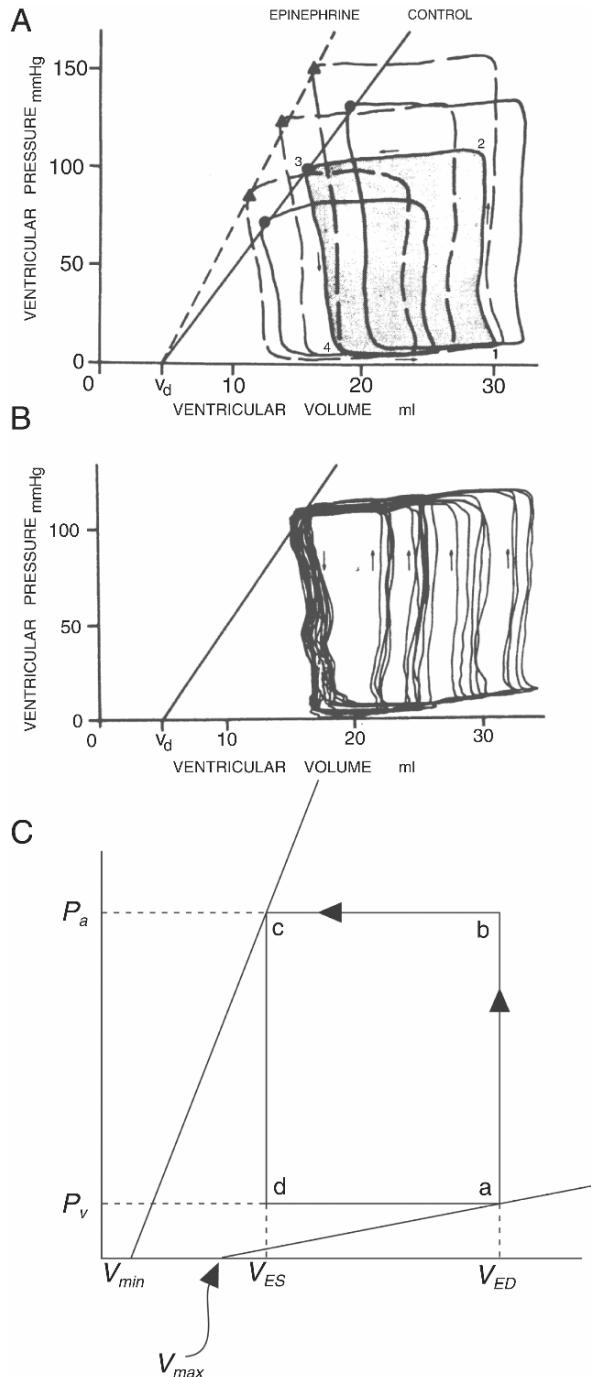
$$V_{ES} = V_{\min} + C_s P_a, \quad (11.33)$$

where  $V_{\min}$  is the intercept on the  $V$  axis, and  $C_s$  is the slope of the line connecting the three labeled points in Fig. 11.5A. The key observation is that  $C_s$  and  $V_{\min}$  are independent of the arterial pressure and the end-diastolic volume, and are thus intrinsic properties of the ventricle.  $C_s$  is, in fact, the compliance of the ventricle at the end of systole. By connecting the lower right corners of the pressure–volume loops, as shown in Fig. 11.5C, we reach a similar conclusion for the end-diastolic volume.

These observations can be summarized in a simple model, in which we determine the total amount of blood pumped by the ventricle, i.e., the *cardiac output*, but ignore the time-dependent changes in volume and pressure over the beat cycle. We view the heart as a compliance vessel whose basal volume and compliance change with time. Thus,

$$V = V_0(t) + C(t)P. \quad (11.34)$$

During diastole, when the heart is filling, the heart is relaxed and compliant, so that  $V_0$  and  $C$  are large. During this time, the aortic valve is closed, preventing backflow, so that the pressure is essentially the same as the venous pressure. During systole, the heart is contracting and much less compliant, so that  $C$  and  $V_0$  are decreased compared to diastolic values. At this time, the mitral valve is closed, preventing backflow into the veins, so that the pressure in the heart is the same as the arterial pressure. Accordingly, the minimal volume (end systolic) is given by (11.33), and the maximal volume  $V_{ED}$



**Figure 11.5** Experimental data of the pressure–volume relationship during the heartbeat cycle in the denervated left ventricle of the dog. (Sagawa et al., 1978, Fig. 11.4.) A: Three beats from different end-diastolic volumes and against different arterial pressures are shown in solid lines, with the broken lines representing the same beat cycles in the presence of adrenaline, which enhances the contraction. B: Pressure–volume loops of the same ventricle for four different end-diastolic volumes, but against the same arterial pressure. C: Schematic diagram of the pressure–volume loop (adapted from Hoppensteadt and Pessin, 2001, Fig. 1.5). a: inflow valve closes, b: outflow valve opens, c: outflow valve closes, d: inflow valve opens.

(end diastolic) is

$$V_{ED} = V_{\max} + C_d P_v, \quad (11.35)$$

where  $P_a$  and  $P_v$  are the arterial and venous pressures, respectively, and  $C_s$  and  $C_d$  are the compliances of the heart during systole and diastole, respectively. This implies that the *stroke volume* is

$$V_{\text{stroke}} = V_{\max} - V_{\min} + C_d P_v - C_s P_a, \quad (11.36)$$

and the total cardiac output is

$$Q = FV_{\text{stroke}}, \quad (11.37)$$

where  $F$  is the heart rate in beats per unit time.

This expression of cardiac output has some features that agree with reality. For example, if  $C_s$  is small compared to  $C_d$ , then the cardiac output depends primarily on the venous pressure, or on the rate of venous return. This phenomenon, that cardiac output increases with increasing filling, is commonly referred to as *Starling's law*. While there is some decrease in output due to arterial loading, this effect is not nearly as significant as the increase in output resulting from an increase in venous pressure.

According to this formula, cardiac output is a linear function of venous pressure. This is not a terrible approximation in normal physiological ranges, although a more accurate formula would show saturation as a function of venous pressure. That is, cardiac output approaches a constant as a function of venous pressure for venous pressure above 10 mm Hg. Cardiac output also saturates at high frequencies because of inadequate fluid filling.

## 11.5 Circulation

### 11.5.1 A Simple Circulatory System

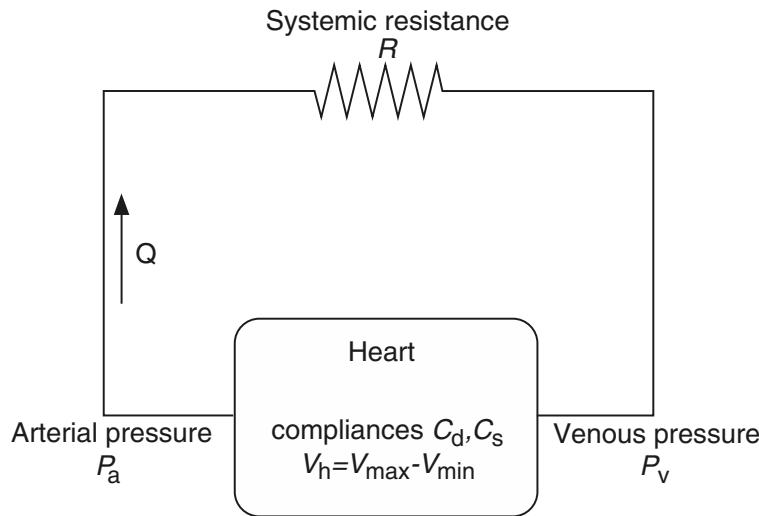
To illustrate how all the above pieces fit together to give a model of the circulatory system, consider a simple circulatory system with a single-chambered heart and a resistive closed loop (Fig. 11.6). For the resistive closed loop, we suppose that the total flux is related to the pressure drop through

$$Q = (P_a - P_v)/R, \quad (11.38)$$

so that in steady state the flux through the loop must match the cardiac output, yielding

$$Q = F(V_h + C_d P_v - C_s P_a) = (P_a - P_v)/R, \quad (11.39)$$

where  $V_h = V_{\max} - V_{\min}$ . Equation (11.39) gives a relationship between arterial and venous pressure that must be maintained in a steady-state condition. Unfortunately, these are not uniquely determined by this equation, so that this model does not have a unique solution.



**Figure 11.6** Schematic diagram of the simplest circulation model, with a single-chambered heart and a single loop.

To avoid this problem, we model the loop as a compliance vessel rather than as a simple resistance, which gives an additional relationship between pressure and total volume, thus uniquely specifying the system. Suppose that the closed circulatory loop is a compliance vessel with cross-sectional area given by (11.14). It follows from (11.17) that

$$Q = \frac{1}{3R\gamma} \left( (1 + \gamma P_a)^3 - (1 + \gamma P_v)^3 \right), \quad (11.40)$$

and the total volume of the vessel is given by

$$\frac{V}{V_0} = \frac{3}{4} \left( \frac{(1 + \gamma P_a)^4 - (1 + \gamma P_v)^4}{(1 + \gamma P_a)^3 - (1 + \gamma P_v)^3} \right). \quad (11.41)$$

Equation (11.40) is, of course, just the nonlinear version of (11.38), while (11.41) is the new equation that allows for a unique solution of the model. These two equations, together with

$$Q = F(V_h + C_d P_v - C_s P_a), \quad (11.42)$$

give a system of three equations in terms of the four unknowns  $Q$ ,  $P_a$ ,  $P_v$ , and  $V$ . The final equation comes from conservation of blood. Because blood is assumed to be incompressible, and because the heart chambers are assumed to have a fixed volume (as cardiac output is expressed in terms of the average output), it follows that  $V$  must be constant. The system is then completely determined. However, because it is nonlinear, a closed-form solution is not apparent, and the easiest way to obtain a solution is to solve the equations numerically.

Notice that it is also possible to use these equations to solve an inverse problem. That is, if  $V$ ,  $Q$ ,  $P_v$ , and  $P_a$  are known from measurements, then one could solve for the resistance  $R$  and compliances  $\gamma$ ,  $C_d$ , and  $C_s$ .

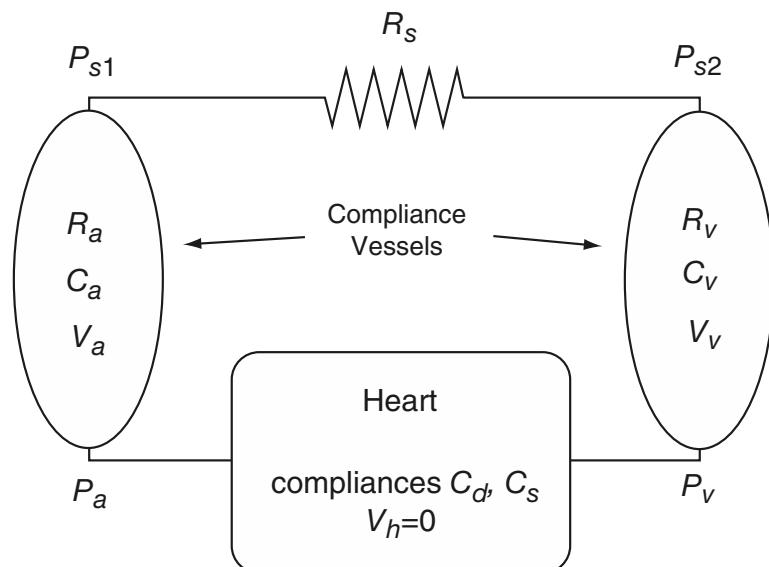
### 11.5.2 A Linear Circulatory System

It is difficult to extend the analysis of the previous section to more realistic models because of the complexity of the resulting nonlinear equations. However, much can be learned using linear approximations to the governing equations. The simplest linear model is due to Guyton (1963), in which the circulatory system is represented as a closed loop with two compliance vessels and one pure resistance vessel (Fig. 11.7). The large arteries and veins are each treated as compliance vessels with linearized flow equations, and the systemic capillaries are treated as a resistance vessel with no compliance.

The equations describing this model can be conveniently divided into two groups: those describing the arterial system and those describing the venous system.

**Arterial system:** Cardiac output is described in terms of the compliance of the ventricle, and so

$$Q = F(C_d P_v - C_s P_a), \quad (11.43)$$



**Figure 11.7** Schematic diagram of the two-compartment model of the circulation. The heart and pulmonary system are combined into a single vessel, and the systemic capillaries are modeled as a resistance vessel. The larger arteries and veins are modeled as compliance vessels.

where, for simplicity, we have assumed that  $V_h = 0$ , i.e., that  $V_{\max} = V_{\min}$ . The larger arteries are modeled as a compliance vessel, and thus, from (11.18),

$$Q = \frac{P_a - P_{s1}}{R_a}, \quad (11.44)$$

where the nonlinear terms are ignored. This approximation is reasonable if the compliance is small. The parameters are defined in Fig. 11.7. For example,  $P_a$  is the arterial pressure, while  $P_{s1}$  is the blood pressure at the (somewhat arbitrary) border between the larger arteries and the arterial capillaries, and  $R_a$  is the resistance of the larger arteries. Note that although this expression for the flux looks as though the arteries are treated as resistance vessels, this is only because the nonlinear terms are omitted. The compliance of the arteries appears in the relationship between the pressure and the volume of the arteries,

$$V_a = \frac{\gamma V_0}{2}(P_a + P_{s1}) = \frac{C_a}{2}(P_a + P_{s1}), \quad (11.45)$$

where  $C_a = c_a V_0 / A_0$  is the compliance of the systemic arteries. Note that the volume of the systemic arteries is taken to be zero at zero pressure.

**Venous system:** We have three similar equations for the venous system, except that the equation for the cardiac output (11.43) is replaced by an equation describing the flow through the capillaries,

$$Q = \frac{P_{s1} - P_{s2}}{R_s}. \quad (11.46)$$

The remaining two equations describe the flow through the veins,

$$Q = \frac{P_{s2} - P_v}{R_v}, \quad (11.47)$$

and the volume of blood in the veins,

$$V_v = \frac{C_v}{2}(P_v + P_{s2}). \quad (11.48)$$

At this point, we have a system of six equations in seven unknowns (four pressures, two volumes, and  $Q$ ). The final equation comes from conservation of volume, according to which

$$V_a + V_v = V_t, \quad (11.49)$$

where  $V_t$  is a given constant.

These seven equations, being linear, can be solved for the unknowns. However, before doing so, we make two further simplifications. First, we assume that the systolic compliance,  $C_s$ , is nearly zero, and second, that the pressure drops across the larger vessels are small, so that  $R_a$  and  $R_v$  are quite small, with the result that  $P_a = P_{s1}$  and  $P_v = P_{s2}$ , to a good approximation. This removes two of the variables, leaving the

system of five equations:

$$Q = FC_d P_v, \quad (11.50)$$

$$Q = \frac{P_a - P_v}{R_s}, \quad (11.51)$$

$$V_a = C_a P_a, \quad (11.52)$$

$$V_v = C_v P_v, \quad (11.53)$$

$$V_a + V_v = V_t. \quad (11.54)$$

The solution of this system is readily found (provided one uses symbolic manipulation software) to be

$$P_a = \frac{(1 + FC_d R_s) V_t}{C_v + (1 + FC_d R_s) C_a}, \quad (11.55)$$

$$P_v = \frac{V_t}{C_v + (1 + FC_d R_s) C_a}, \quad (11.56)$$

$$Q = \frac{FC_d V_t}{C_v + (1 + FC_d R_s) C_a}. \quad (11.57)$$

A number of qualitative features of the circulation can be seen from this solution.

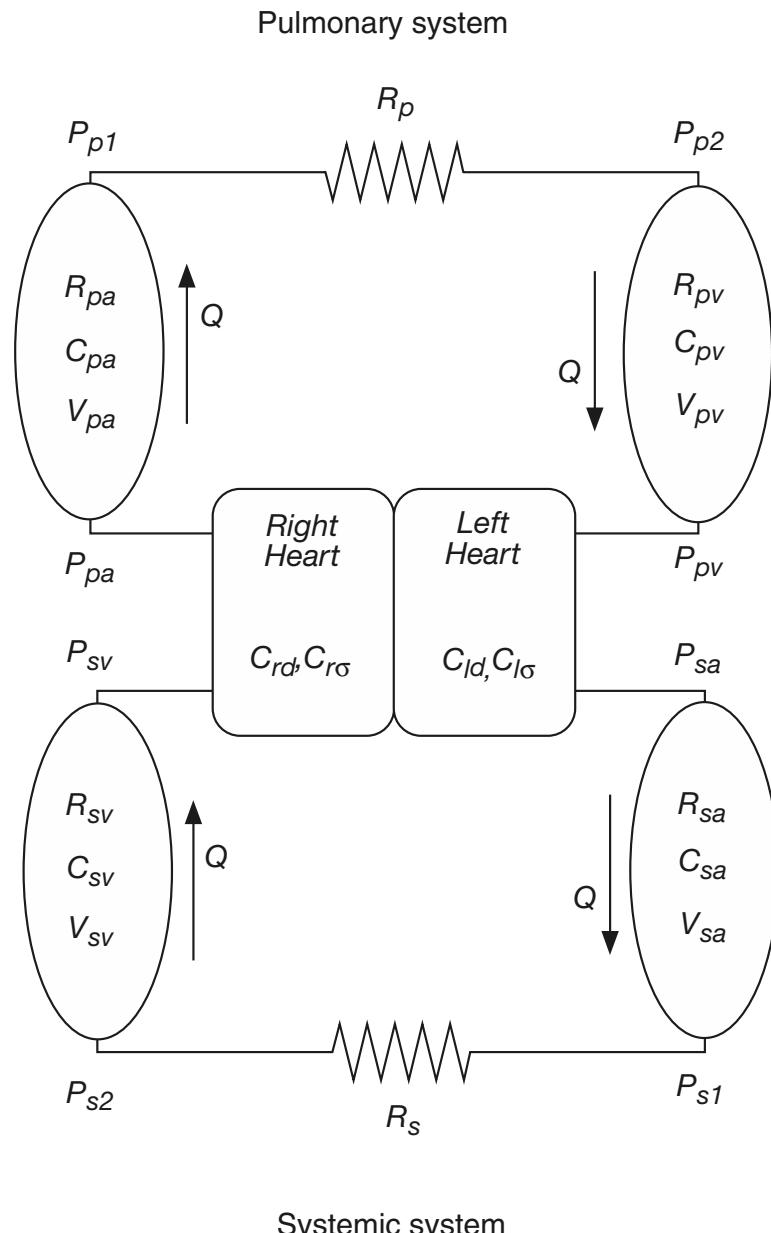
- As the heart rate increases, the arterial pressure  $P_a$  increases to a maximum of  $V_t/C_a$ , but as the heart rate falls, the arterial pressure decreases to a minimum of  $V_t/(C_v + C_a)$ .
- Conversely, as the heart rate falls, the venous pressure  $P_v$  increases to a maximum of  $V_t/(C_v + C_a)$ . Hence, in heart failure, the arterial pressure falls and the venous pressure rises, until they are equal. With no pressure drop, there is no flow.
- An increase in the systemic resistance,  $R_s$ , leads to a decrease in the cardiac output, an increase in the arterial pressure, and a decrease in the venous pressure.
- Since  $V_a = C_a P_a$  and  $V_v = C_v P_v$ , an increase in systemic resistance is accompanied by a shift in the blood volume from the venous system to the arterial system, i.e.,  $V_v$  decreases, and  $V_a$  increases.

In reality, systemic resistance varies widely (decreasing, for example, during exercise), but the cardiac output compensates for this variation, keeping the arterial pressure relatively constant. Thus, the above model, which includes no control of cardiac output, needs to be modified to agree with experimental data. Later in this chapter we describe some simple models of regulation of the circulation. Before doing so, however, we consider a more complex model of the circulation, incorporating more compartments.

### 11.5.3 A Multicompartment Circulatory System

To construct a more detailed linear model of the circulatory system, we assume that the systemic and pulmonary loops each consist of two compliance vessels, the arterial and

venous systems, connected by the capillaries, a pure resistance. Further, we assume that the heart has two chambers, the left and right hearts. A schematic diagram of the model is given in Fig. 11.8. We must write equations for the flow through each of these compartments and keep track of the total volume of blood contained in the



**Figure 11.8** Schematic diagram of the multicompartment model of the circulation.

system. Unfortunately, the notation can be difficult to follow. We let subscripts  $a$ ,  $v$ ,  $s$ , and  $p$  denote, respectively, arterial, venous, systemic, and pulmonary. So, for example,  $P_{sa}$  is the pressure at the entrance to the systemic arteries, and  $C_{sa}$  is the compliance of the systemic arteries. Also, subscripts  $r$ ,  $l$ ,  $d$ , and  $\sigma$  denote, respectively, right, left, diastolic and systolic. Thus,  $C_{ld}$  denotes the diastolic compliance of the left heart. Finally,  $P_{s1}$  denotes the pressure at the ill-defined border between the systemic arteries and the systemic capillaries, with similar definitions for  $P_{s2}$ ,  $P_{p1}$ , and  $P_{p2}$  as indicated in Fig. 11.8.

As before, we write the governing equations in groups.

### Systemic arteries:

$$Q = \frac{P_{sa} - P_{s1}}{R_{sa}}, \quad (11.58)$$

$$Q = F(C_{ld}P_{pv} - C_{l\sigma}P_{sa}), \quad (11.59)$$

$$V_{sa} = V_0^s + \frac{C_{sa}}{2}(P_{sa} + P_{s1}). \quad (11.60)$$

Note that here it is assumed that the volume of the systemic arteries at zero pressure is  $V_0^s$ , not zero, as was assumed in the previous model.

### Systemic veins:

$$Q = \frac{P_{s2} - P_{sv}}{R_{sv}}, \quad (11.61)$$

$$Q = \frac{P_{s1} - P_{s2}}{R_s}, \quad (11.62)$$

$$V_{sv} = \frac{C_{sv}}{2}(P_{sv} + P_{s2}). \quad (11.63)$$

For the venous system, it is reasonable to take the basal volume as zero, because if the blood pressure falls to zero, these vessels collapse. In the arterial system, however, such an approximation is not realistic.

### Pulmonary arteries:

$$Q = \frac{P_{pa} - P_{p1}}{R_{pa}}, \quad (11.64)$$

$$Q = F(C_{rd}P_{sv} - C_{r\sigma}P_{pa}), \quad (11.65)$$

$$V_{pa} = V_0^p + \frac{C_{pa}}{2}(P_{pa} + P_{p1}). \quad (11.66)$$

### Pulmonary veins:

$$Q = \frac{P_{p2} - P_{pv}}{R_{pv}}, \quad (11.67)$$

$$Q = \frac{P_{p1} - P_{p2}}{R_p}, \quad (11.68)$$

$$V_{pv} = \frac{C_{pv}}{2}(P_{pv} + P_{p2}). \quad (11.69)$$

At this stage there are 12 equations for 13 unknowns (8 pressures, 4 volumes, and  $Q$ ). The final equation, as before, comes from the conservation of blood volume, whereby

$$V_{sa} + V_{sv} + V_{pa} + V_{pv} = V_t. \quad (11.70)$$

The capillary and heart volumes need not be included in this equation because they are assumed to be fixed.

This system of equations can be treated in a number of ways. First (using symbolic manipulation software), it is not difficult to find the solution directly. A second approach is to make a number of simplifying assumptions, as was done in the simpler model discussed above. For example, if it is assumed that there is no pressure drop over the arteries or veins (both pulmonary and systemic), then  $P_{sa} = P_{s1}$ ,  $P_{sv} = P_{s2}$ , and similarly for the pulmonary equations. This removes four variables and four equations, giving a system of nine equations for the remaining nine unknowns. This variation of the model has been discussed by Hoppensteadt and Peskin (2001), and its further study is left as an exercise (Exercise 5).

A second approximation of the full system is to omit the systemic resistance and combine all the pulmonary vessels into a single compliance vessel. This results in a model consisting of only three compliance vessels (Fig. 11.9). It is left as an exercise (Exercise 6) to show that this approximation results from setting  $R_s$  and  $R_p$  approach zero and by setting  $C_{pa} = C_{pv}$  and  $R_{pa} = R_{pv}$ . For convenience, we write  $C_p = 2C_{pa}$ , and  $R_p = 2R_{pa}$ . We also assume that the systolic compliances are negligible.

The equations governing this simplified three compartment model are as follows.

### **Systemic arteries:**

$$Q = \frac{P_{sa} - P_s}{R_{sa}}, \quad (11.71)$$

$$Q = FC_{ld}P_{pv}, \quad (11.72)$$

$$V_{sa} = V_0^s + \frac{C_{sa}}{2}(P_{sa} + P_s). \quad (11.73)$$

### **Systemic veins:**

$$Q = \frac{P_s - P_{sv}}{R_{sv}}, \quad (11.74)$$

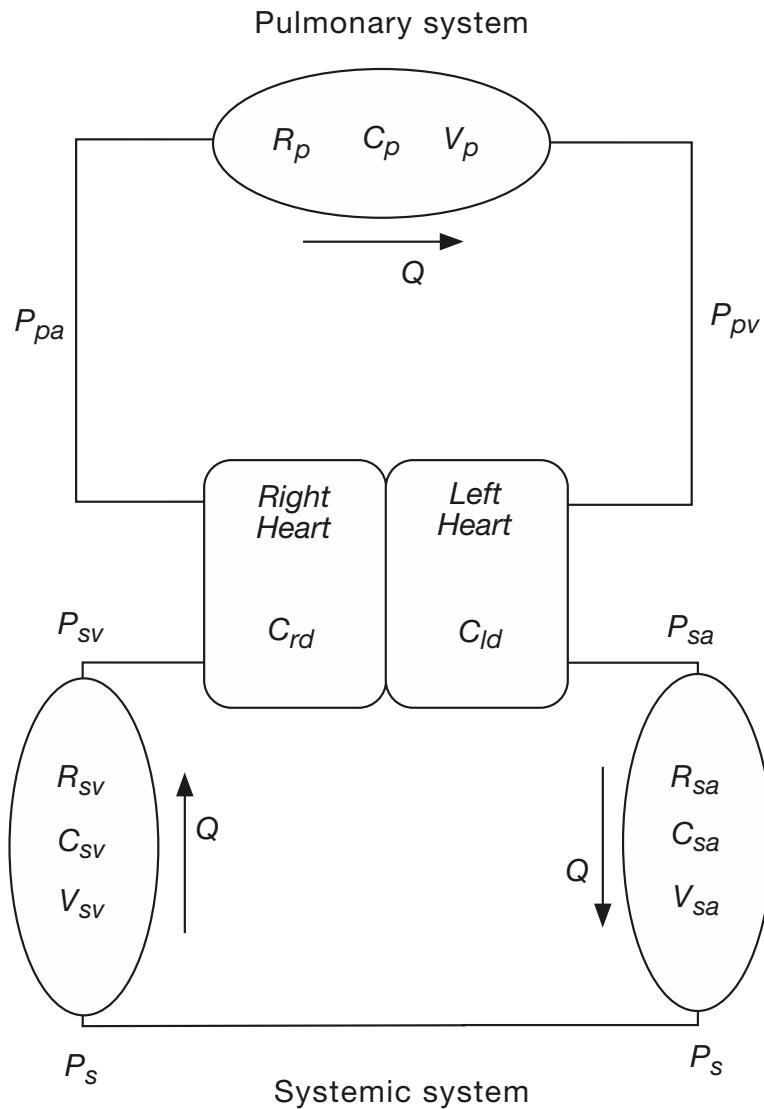
$$V_{sv} = \frac{C_{sv}}{2}(P_{sv} + P_s). \quad (11.75)$$

### **Pulmonary system:**

$$Q = \frac{P_{pa} - P_{pv}}{R_p}, \quad (11.76)$$

$$Q = FC_{rd}P_{sv}, \quad (11.77)$$

$$V_p = V_0^p + \frac{C_p}{2}(P_{pa} + P_{pv}). \quad (11.78)$$



**Figure 11.9** Schematic diagram of the simplified three-compartment model, obtained from the one in Fig. 11.8 by letting  $R_s$  and  $R_p$  go to zero and combining all the pulmonary vessels into one.

**Conservation of volume:**

$$V_{sa} + V_{sv} + V_p = V_t. \quad (11.79)$$

One can solve this linear system to obtain

$$P_{sa} = Q \left( \frac{1}{FC_{rd}} + R_{sa} + R_{sv} \right), \quad (11.80)$$

$$P_s = Q \left( \frac{1}{FC_{rd}} + R_{sv} \right), \quad (11.81)$$

$$P_{sv} = \frac{Q}{FC_{rd}}, \quad (11.82)$$

$$P_{pa} = Q \left( \frac{1}{FC_{ld}} + R_p \right), \quad (11.83)$$

$$P_{pv} = \frac{Q}{FC_{ld}}, \quad (11.84)$$

$$Q = \frac{V_e}{\alpha + \frac{C_p}{FC_{ld}} + \frac{C_{sv}+C_{sa}}{FC_{rd}}}, \quad (11.85)$$

where  $\alpha = R_{sv}(C_{sa} + C_{sv}/2) + R_{sa}C_{sa}/2 + C_pR_p/2$ , and  $V_e = V_t - V_0^s - V_0^p$  is the excess volume beyond that which is necessary to fill the system at zero pressure. Clearly, the cardiac output saturates for large  $F$ , and

$$\lim_{F \rightarrow \infty} Q = Q_\infty = \frac{V_e}{\alpha} = \frac{2V_e}{R_{sv}(2C_{sa} + C_{sv}) + R_{sa}C_{sa} + C_pR_p}. \quad (11.86)$$

We can also see that, as in the simpler model, systemic arterial pressure  $P_{sa}$  is an increasing function of heart rate, and systemic venous pressure  $P_{sv}$  is a decreasing function of heart rate.

Cardiac output depends linearly on excess blood volume  $V_t - V_0^s - V_0^p$ . In trauma, if there is substantial blood loss, the cardiac output drops rapidly. If there is no compensatory control (increased heart rate or change of resistance and compliance), loss of 15–20% of blood volume over a period of half an hour is fatal. If reflexes are intact, loss of 30–40% in half an hour is fatal. Notice that in this model (taking  $V_t = 5$  liters,  $V_0^p + V_0^s = 1.2$  liters) a 20% loss of blood with no compensatory control leads to a 26% loss of cardiac output.

There are ten physical parameters in this system of nine equations, giving nine relationships between parameters if the solution is known from data. We take as typical volumes  $V_{sa} = 1$ ,  $V_{sv} = 3.5$ ,  $V_p = 0.5$  (liters), and typical pressures  $P_{sa} = 100$ ,  $P_s = 30$ ,  $P_{sv} = 2$ ,  $P_{pa} = 15$ ,  $P_{pv} = 5$  (mm Hg). Total cardiac output is about 5.6 liters/min, with a heart rate of 80 beats per minute and a stroke volume of 0.07 liter. Using these, we find estimates for parameters of  $C_{sv} = 0.22$ ,  $R_{sa} = 12.5$ ,  $R_{sv} = 5.0$ ,  $R_p = 1.78$  mm Hg/(liters/min), and  $C_{ld} = 0.014$ ,  $C_{rd} = 0.035$  (liters/mm Hg)/stroke.

As yet,  $C_{sa}$  or  $C_p$  cannot be determined because  $V_0^s$  and  $V_0^p$  are unknown. However, these quantities can be estimated using some additional information. To estimate  $V_0^s$  and  $C_{sa}$ , note that at the heart the arterial pressure varies on a beat-to-beat basis, as does the volume of blood in the arteries. During one beat, the blood ejected from the heart must be accommodated by the compliance of the arteries. Thus,

$$\Delta V = C_{sa} \Delta P, \quad (11.87)$$

where  $\Delta V$  is the stroke volume, about 0.07 liter, and  $\Delta P$  is the difference between systolic and diastolic pressure, about 40 mm Hg. Once  $C_{sa}$  is known ( $C_{sa} = 0.0018$

liter/mm Hg), the resting volume  $V_0^s$  can be determined using the given values of volume and pressure in (11.73) as  $V_0^s = 0.88$  liters. Assuming that  $V_0^s + V_0^p = 1.2$  liters gives  $V_0^p = 0.32$  liters. Finally, we substitute this value of  $V_0^p$  into (11.78) and solve for  $C_p$  to get  $C_p = 0.018$  liters/mm Hg.

These numbers correlate with some known features of the adult circulatory system. For example, the venous system is about 24 times more compliant than the arterial system. The ratio found here is  $C_{sv}/C_{sa} = 122$ , which is too high, but this does not create significant errors in interpretation. Total resistance of the systemic circulation is larger than the pulmonary resistance, and the compliance of the left heart is less than that of the right heart, simply because the left ventricular wall is much thicker than the right.

To gain some understanding of the dependence of the solution on parameters, we calculate the sensitivity  $\sigma_{yx}$ , which is the sensitivity of dependence of the dependent variable  $y$  upon changes in the independent variable  $x$ . Thus,  $\sigma$  is the proportional change in  $y$  for a given proportional change in  $x$ , and so

$$\sigma_{yx} = \frac{\Delta y/y}{\Delta x/x} = \frac{x}{y} \frac{\partial y}{\partial x}, \quad (11.88)$$

in the limit as  $\Delta x$  goes to zero. In Table 11.2 are shown the sensitivities, expressed as percentages, for the three-compartment loop using normal parameter values, as shown in the table. For example, the first number in the first column,  $-2.8$ , is the sensitivity of the systemic arterial pressure  $P_{sa}$  to changes in the systemic arterial compliance  $C_{sa}$ .

From this table we infer some interesting features of the human circulatory system. First, the system is relatively insensitive to changes in the arterial compliance  $C_{sa}$ . In fact, compliance of the arterial system is insignificant compared to compliance of the other compartments and to a first approximation can be ignored. On the other hand, the system is strongly sensitive to changes in  $C_{sv}$ , the venous compliance. Similarly, the solution is relatively insensitive to changes in arterial resistance,  $R_{sa}$ , but is relatively sensitive to changes in venous resistance,  $R_{sv}$ . Much of the regulation of the cardiac

**Table 11.2** Sensitivities for the three compartment circulatory system (expressed as percentages).

	Normal	$C_{sa}$ 0.0018	$C_{sv}$ 0.22	$C_p$ 0.018	$R_{sa}$ 12.5	$R_{sv}$ 5	$R_p$ 1.78	$C_{ld}$ 0.014	$C_{rd}$ 0.035	$F$ 80
$P_{sa}$	100	-2.8	-85	-12	68	-48	-6	6	8.7	15
$P_s$	30	-2.8	-85	-12	-1.5	18	-6	6	4.0	10
$P_{sv}$	2	-2.8	-85	-12	-1.5	-76	-6	6	-89	-83
$P_{pa}$	15	-2.8	-85	-12	-1.5	-76	60	-27	11	-17
$P_{pv}$	5	-2.8	-85	-12	-1.5	-76	-6	-94	11	-83
$V_{sa}$	1	11	-9.2	-1.3	5.7	-3.5	-0.6	0.6	0.8	1.5
$V_{sv}$	3.5	-2.8	15	-12	-1.5	12	-6	6	-1.8	4.3
$V_p$	0.5	-1.7	-50	52	-0.9	-45	26	-26	6.3	-20
$Q$	5.6	-2.8	-85	-12	-1.5	-76	-6	6	11	17

systems occurs through changes in the compliance and resistance of the venous system, and this result demonstrates the efficacy of that choice.

According to the American Heart Association, cardiovascular disease, including high blood pressure, coronary heart disease, stroke and heart failure, accounted for over 36% of all deaths in the USA in 2005; coronary heart disease, caused by atherosclerosis, was the single leading cause of death. *Atherosclerosis* is a chronic inflammatory response in the walls of arteries, often called “hardening” of the arteries, and is caused by the deposition of excess cholesterol and fats in the arteries. These deposits are invaded by fibrous tissue and frequently become calcified, resulting in atherosclerotic plaques and stiffened arterial walls that can be neither constricted nor dilated. While systemic compliance is not extremely important in this model, systemic resistance is significant, and increases in systemic resistance produce increases in arterial pressure.

A person with higher than normal mean arterial pressure is said to have *hypertension*, or high blood pressure. Life expectancy is shortened substantially when mean arterial pressure is 50 percent or more above normal. The lethal effects of hypertension are

1. Increased cardiac workload, leading to congestive heart disease or coronary heart disease, often leading to a fatal heart attack;
2. Rupture of a major blood vessel in the brain (a *stroke*), resulting in paralysis, dementia, blindness, or multiple other brain disorders;
3. Multiple hemorrhages in the kidneys, leading to renal destruction and eventual kidney failure and death.

One other parameter that has an important effect is the diastolic compliance of the left heart,  $C_{ld}$ . As expected, if this compliance decreases, there is a reduction in systemic arterial pressure and a reduction in cardiac output. There is also a noticeable increase in pulmonary blood volume,  $V_p$ . Thus, left heart failure, which corresponds to a weakening of the left ventricular muscles and hence decreased cardiac efficiency and decreased compliance, results in excess fluid and fluid congestion in the lungs, known as *pulmonary edema*. Notice that in this model, failure of the left or right heart does not influence the maximal cardiac output  $Q_\infty$ , although it certainly requires a higher heart rate to effect the same output. Notice, also, that with left or right heart failure, systemic volume changes little, so that one does not expect peripheral edema.

## 11.6 Cardiovascular Regulation

The circulatory system is equipped with a complex system for the control of arterial pressure and cardiac output. Over the short term (seconds to hours) this control occurs partly at the level of the arterioles and partly at the heart itself. Smooth muscle around the arterioles can constrict or relax, thus changing the resistance, while innervation of the heart can control the cardiac output in response to conditions in the periphery.

These short-term mechanisms dampen out the considerable variation that arises in a normal day's activity, from lying down to standing up to running one hundred meters.

There are three major types of peripheral control mechanisms:

1. Local (intrinsic) control of blood flow in the individual tissue, determined mainly by the tissue's need for blood perfusion. Local control is often called *autoregulation*.
2. Neural (extrinsic) control, by which the overall vesicular resistance and cardiac activity are controlled. The baroreceptor reflex is the most widely studied of these extrinsic mechanisms.
3. Humoral control, in which substances dissolved in the blood, such as hormones, ions, or other chemicals, cause changes in flow properties. These feedbacks are mediated by chemoreceptors.

Over the long term (days and months), blood pressure is regulated by renal mechanisms, whereby an increase in arterial pressure causes the kidneys to excrete more fluid, thus decreasing the blood volume and the arterial pressure.

Because of the intricacy of these control mechanisms, it comes as no surprise that feedback instabilities can arise, leading to periodicity in the heart beat rate and the mean arterial pressure. There are a number of different observed oscillations (although the oscillatory behavior is often highly irregular) and none is well understood. One of the most widely studied oscillations is that of heart rate, which varies periodically with respiration, such oscillations being called *respiratory sinus arrhythmia*, or RSA. The reverse is true also, with the heart rate affecting the rate of breathing. Such *cardiorespiratory coupling*, or *cardioventilatory coupling*, can result in phase locking of heart rate and breathing. Other oscillations in respiration rate, such as *Cheyne–Stokes* breathing, can also occur, and are discussed in Chapter 14.

The first observations of sinus arrhythmia were made by Ludwig. He invented the kymograph in 1846, a stylus connected to a mercury manometer connected to a rotating smoke drum, with which he could record accurately, for the first time, variables such as blood pressure, pulse rate, and respiratory frequency (Fye, 1986). Ludwig sent his original tracing of sinus arrhythmia to one of his pupils, with an inscription on the back (dated December 12, 1846) calling his observations "this first stammering of the heart and of the chest" (Lombard, 1916). Some years later, Mayer (1877) discovered arterial pressure oscillations with a frequency of about 0.1 Hz, and these were named *Mayer waves*. Oscillations in arterial pressure with a frequency around that of respiration were discovered by Traube (1865) and Hering (1869) and are called *Traube–Hering waves*. These names are not entirely consistent from author to author; some books such as Guyton and Hall (1996) describe Mayer waves and Traube–Hering waves as the same phenomenon, with the generic name *vasomotor* waves, but other authors such as Cohen and Taylor (2002) and Berne and Levy (1998) make a distinction between the frequencies of Mayer and Traube–Hering waves.

In summary, there is a confusing plethora of oscillations in heart rate, arterial pressure, and respiration, and these oscillations are almost certainly closely connected in

ways we do not yet understand. Although many quantitative models of these oscillations have been constructed (Cohen and Taylor, 2002; Julien, 2005), there is no unified model that explains all of these behaviors in terms of feedback instabilities of known control mechanisms.

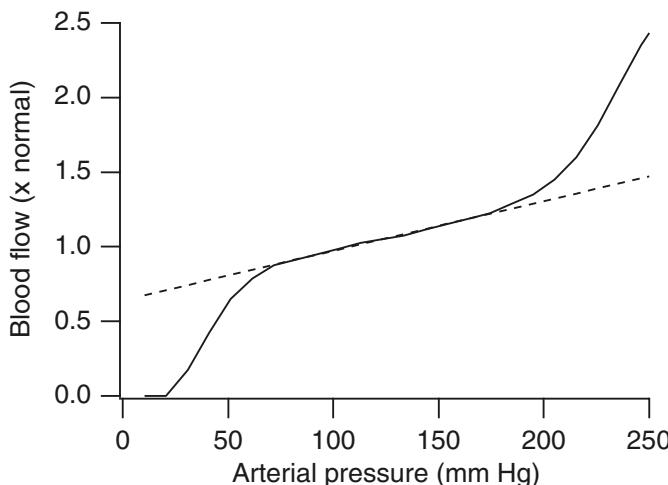
### 11.6.1 Autoregulation

*Autoregulation* is a local mechanism that makes flow through a tissue responsive to local oxygen demand but relatively insensitive to arterial pressure. In tissue for which the delivery of oxygen is of central importance (for example, the brain or the heart) the local blood flow is controlled to be slightly higher than required, but no higher.

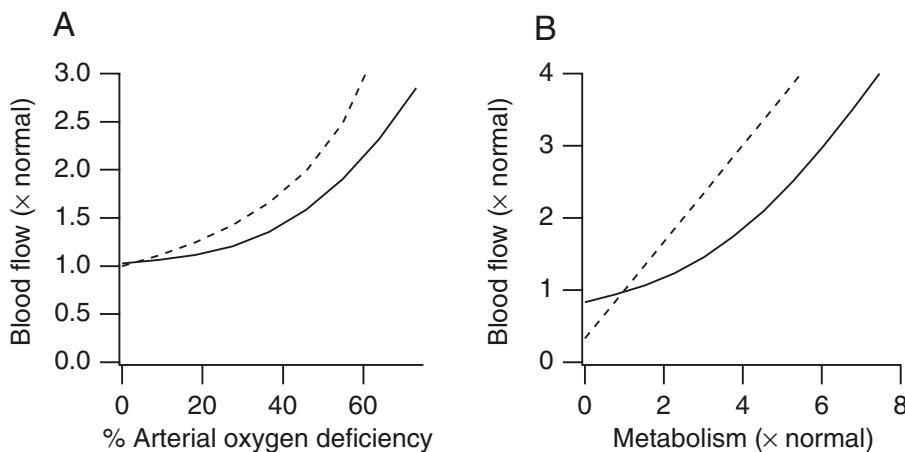
In dead organs, an increase in arterial pressure produces a linear increase in blood flow, suggestive of a linear-resistance vessel. However, in normally functioning tissue, the arterial pressure can be changed over a large range with little effect on the blood flow (Fig. 11.10). For example, in muscle, with an arterial pressure between 75 mm Hg and 175 mm Hg the blood flow remains within  $\pm 10\%-15\%$  of normal.

The flow through an artery is known to be responsive to the need for oxygen. For example, an eightfold increase in metabolism produces a fourfold increase in blood flow (as shown in Fig. 11.11B). Similarly, if oxygen content falls because of anemia, high altitude, or carbon monoxide poisoning, the blood flow increases to compensate. For example, a reduction to 25% of normal oxygen saturation produces a threefold increase in blood flow, not quite enough to compensate fully for the loss (see Fig. 11.11A).

Although the mechanism for autoregulation is not completely understood, it is most likely that resistance of tissue is responsive to biochemical measures of how hard



**Figure 11.10** Blood flow as a function of arterial pressure if pressure is raised over a period of a few minutes. (Data (solid curve) from Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 17-4, p. 203.) Dashed curve shows the result from the model (11.92).



**Figure 11.11** A: Blood flow as a function of the percentage of arterial oxygen deficiency, keeping arterial pressure and metabolic rate fixed. (Data (solid curve) from Guyton and Hall (1996), Fig. 17-2, p 200.) Dashed curve shows the result from the model. B: Blood flow as a function of metabolism, keeping arterial pressure and arterial oxygen content fixed at normal levels. (Data (solid curve) from Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 17-1, p. 200.) Dashed curve shows the result from the model.

it is working, such as concentrations of  $H^+$ ,  $CO_2$ ,  $O_2$ , and lactic acid. The arterioles are highly muscular, and their diameters can change manyfold. The metarterioles (terminal arterioles) are encircled by smooth muscle fibers at intermittent points and are also used to regulate flow. However, the arterial blood has the same composition for all tissues of the body so cannot be used as a local control mechanism. This is problematic because it is the arterioles whose resistance is regulated. Here we assume that the resistance of arterioles is a function of the concentration of oxygen in the venous blood. This is possible, since arteries and veins tend to run side by side, and venous concentrations may regulate arterial resistance by release and diffusion of regulatory substances, called *vasodilators*.

An example of how this may work is as follows. If cardiac activity increases and the utilization of oxygen exceeds the supply, ATP is degraded, increasing the concentration of *adenosine*. Adenosine is a vasodilator, which leaks out of the cells into the venous flow to cause local dilation of coronary arteries. Thus, as the oxygen supply decreases, so does the arterial resistance.

A simple model of autoregulation is as follows (Huntsman et al., 1978; Hoppensteadt and Peskin, 2001). We keep track of oxygen consumption and blood flow via

$$([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v)Q = M, \quad (11.89)$$

$$P_a - P_v = RQ, \quad (11.90)$$

where  $[O_2]_a$  and  $[O_2]_v$  are the arterial and venous oxygen concentrations, respectively,  $M$  is the metabolic rate (oxygen consumption per unit time),  $P_a$  and  $P_v$  are the arterial and venous pressures driving the flow  $Q$  through tissue with total resistance  $R$ . In this model  $[O_2]_a$  is treated as a given constant and  $[O_2]_v$  as variable. Now we assume that there is some linear relationship between arterial resistance and venous oxygen content, say

$$R = R_0 (1 + A[O_2]_v), \quad (11.91)$$

where  $A > 0$ . The assumption of linearity is reasonable in restricted ranges of oxygen content. Here, the parameter  $A$  denotes the sensitivity of resistance to oxygen; if  $A = 0$ , the resistance is unregulated.

These equations can be solved for the flow rate  $Q$  to get

$$Q = \frac{1}{1 + A[O_2]_a} \left( MA + \frac{P_a}{R_0} \right), \quad (11.92)$$

where it is assumed that  $P_v = 0$ . This is a linear relationship between flow rate and arterial pressure, which, when  $A = 0$ , reproduces the unregulated situation. However, with  $A > 0$ , the sensitivity of the flow to changes in arterial pressure varies with arterial oxygen content. Furthermore, this expression shows linear dependence of blood flow on metabolism.

We can estimate the parameters  $A$  and  $R_0$  using the data from Fig. 11.10. In the range of pressures between 75 and 175 mm Hg, the curve is well represented by the straight line

$$\frac{Q}{Q^*} = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{3} \frac{P_a}{P^*}, \quad (11.93)$$

where  $Q^*$  and  $P^*$  are the normal values of flow and pressure ( $Q^* = 5.6$  liters/min,  $P^* = 100$  mm Hg). Comparing this to the regulated curve (11.92) at normal values,

$$Q = \frac{1}{1 + A[O_2]_a^*} \left( M^*A + \frac{P_a}{R_0} \right), \quad (11.94)$$

where  $[O_2]_a^*$  and  $M^*$  are normal values of arterial oxygen and metabolism, respectively ( $M^* = Q^*([O_2]_a^* - [O_2]_v^*)$ ,  $[O_2]_a^* = 104$  mm Hg,  $[O_2]_v^* = 40$  mm Hg), we find that

$$A = \frac{Q^*}{3M^* - Q^*[O_2]_a^*}, \quad (11.95)$$

$$R_0 = \frac{P^*(3M^* - Q^*[O_2]_a^*)}{2Q^*M^*}, \quad (11.96)$$

so that

$$\frac{Q}{Q^*} = \frac{\frac{3M^*}{M^*}}{\left( 1 + 2\frac{P_a}{P_a^*} \right) \left( 3 + \frac{13}{8} \left( \frac{[O_2]_a}{[O_2]_a^*} - 1 \right) \right)}, \quad (11.97)$$

using typical values for  $\frac{Q^*[O_2]_a^*}{M^*} = \frac{13}{8}$ .

In Fig. 11.10 are shown the data for blood flow as a function of arterial pressure, compared with the model (11.97). The good agreement over the linear range is the result of fitting.

The relationship (11.92) reproduces two other features of autoregulation that are qualitatively correct. It predicts that the flow rate increases as the arterial oxygen content decreases, and increases linearly with metabolic rate. In Fig. 11.11A is shown the blood flow plotted as a function of arterial oxygen deficiency. Here, the solid curve is taken from data, and the dashed curve is from (11.97). Similarly, in Fig. 11.11B is shown the blood flow plotted as a function of metabolic rate. As before, the solid curve is from data, and the dashed curve is from (11.97). Clearly, the model gives reasonable qualitative agreement for blood flow as a function of arterial oxygen content, and for blood flow as a function of metabolism.

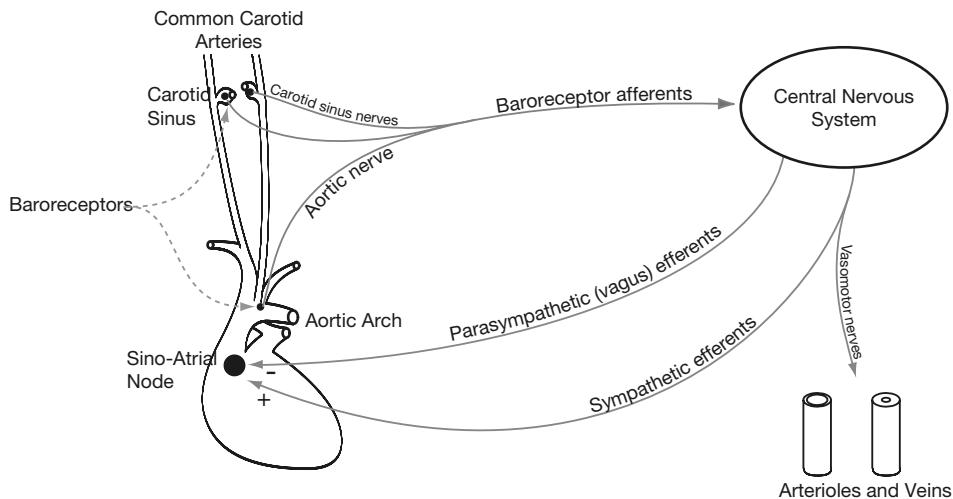
## 11.6.2 The Baroreceptor Loop

The *baroreceptor loop* is a global feedback control mechanism using the nervous system to adjust the heart rate, the venous resistance, and thereby the venous pressure in order to maintain the arterial pressure at a given level, with the ultimate goal of regulating the cardiac output.

The need to regulate cardiac output is apparent. During exercise, when the demand for oxygen goes up, cardiac output normally rises at a linear rate, with slope about 5 (since 5 liters of blood are required to supply 1 liter of oxygen). In normal situations, the cardiac output and heart rate are roughly proportional, indicating that the stroke volume remains essentially constant. However, if heart rate is artificially driven up with a pacemaker, with no increase in oxygen consumption, then the cardiac output remains virtually the same, indicating a decrease in stroke volume. Similarly, in exercise with a fixed heart rate (set by a pacemaker), total cardiac output increases to meet the demand.

The primary nervous mechanism for the control of cardiac output is the *baroreceptor reflex* (Fig. 11.12). This reflex is initiated by stretch receptors, called *baroreceptors* or *pressoreceptors*, located in the walls of the *carotid sinus* and *aortic arch*, large arteries of the systemic circulation. A rise in arterial pressure is detected and causes a signal to be sent to the central nervous system from which feedback signals are sent through the autonomic nervous system to the circulatory system, thereby enabling the regulation of arterial pressure. For example, the baroreceptor reflex occurs when a person stands up after having been lying down. Immediately upon standing, the arterial pressure in the head and upper body falls, with dizziness or loss of consciousness a distinct possibility. The falling pressure at the baroreceptors elicits an immediate reflex, resulting in a strong sympathetic discharge throughout the entire body, thereby minimizing the decrease in blood pressure in the head. This observation suggests that the larger dinosaurs required a well-tuned baroreceptor reflex in order not to faint every time they raised their heads.

The most important part of the autonomic nervous system for regulation of the circulation is the *sympathetic nervous system*, which innervates almost all the blood



**Figure 11.12** Schematic diagram of the baroreceptor reflex pathway. Adapted from Ottesen (1997), Fig. 2.

vessels, with the exception of the capillaries. The primary effects of sympathetic nervous stimulation are

1. contraction of small arteries and arterioles (by stimulation of the surrounding smooth muscle) to increase blood flow resistance and thereby decrease blood flow in the tissues;
2. constriction of the veins, thereby decreasing the amount of blood in the peripheral circulation;
3. stimulation of the heart muscle, thereby increasing both the heart rate and stroke volume.

The *parasympathetic* or *vagus* nerves have the opposite effect on the heart, decreasing the heart rate and strength of contractility. Strong sympathetic stimulation can increase the heart rate in adult humans to 180–200 beats per minute, and even as high as 220 beats per minute in young adults. Strong parasympathetic stimulation can lower the heart rate to 20–40 beats per minute and can decrease the strength of contraction by 20 to 30 percent.

The effect of the baroreceptors is to increase sympathetic stimulation and decrease parasympathetic stimulation when there is a drop in arterial pressure. This increase in sympathetic activity, in turn, increases the heart rate, the systemic resistance, and the cardiac compliances, and decreases the venous compliance. Notice from Table 11.2 that in the unregulated circulation these changes effect an increase of arterial pressure. Thus, the overall effect of the baroreceptor loop is to maintain the arterial pressure at a desired level.

The sympathetic nervous system is also stimulated by the brain vasomotor center, where an increase in carbon dioxide in the brain acts to cause a widespread vasoconstriction throughout the body. A sympathetic response is also stimulated by fright or anger, and is called the *alarm reaction*.

The sympathetic nervous system acts by three mechanisms. First, it stimulates the contraction of vessels by the release of vasoconstrictors, primarily *noradrenaline* (norepinephrine). Simultaneously, the adrenal medullae are stimulated to release adrenaline (epinephrine) and noradrenaline into the circulating blood. These two hormones are carried in the bloodstream to all parts of the body, where they act directly on blood vessels, usually to cause contraction. (Some tissues respond to adrenaline by dilation rather than constriction.) The action of secreted noradrenaline lasts about 30 minutes. Finally, sympathetic nervous activity acts to increase heart rate and heart contractility.

To include the baroreceptor loop and the sympathetic nervous system in our circulation model, we suppose that the level of sympathetic stimulation is given by  $S$ , and that  $S$  is related to the deviation of the arterial pressure  $P_{sa}$  through a simple linear relationship

$$S = S^* + \beta(P_{sa}^* - P_{sa}), \quad (11.98)$$

so that as arterial pressure decreases, sympathetic stimulation increases. Here,  $S^*$  and  $P_{sa}^*$  are “normal” values. In animal experiments, blocking all sympathetic activity leads to a drop of arterial pressure from 100 to 50 mm Hg, indicating a continuous basal level of sympathetic firing at normal pressure ( $S^* \neq 0$ ), called *sympathetic tone*, known to be about one impulse per second.

Next, we assume that heart rate  $F$ , arterial resistance  $R_{sa}$ , and cardiac compliances  $C_{ld}$  and  $C_{rd}$  are (unspecified) increasing functions of  $S$ , while the venous compliance  $C_{sv}$  is a decreasing function of  $S$ . We account for the metabolic need of the tissue through

$$([O_2]_a - [O_2]_v)Q = M, \quad (11.99)$$

and suppose that the metabolic need is communicated to the tissue through autoregulation via

$$R_{sa} = R(S) + A[O_2]_{sv}. \quad (11.100)$$

This representation is slightly different from that in (11.91), but it has the same interpretation.

Combined with the balance equations (11.71)–(11.79), we have a closed system of equations, which can be solved to find the cardiac output  $Q$  as a function of metabolic need  $M$ . The solution is complicated, and so we leave the details to the interested reader.

However, it is useful to view the solution of these equations in a slightly different way. We suppose that the effect of baroreceptor feedback is to hold the arterial pressure fixed at some target level and to adjust other parameters such as arterial resistance, venous compliance, and heart rate so that this target pressure is maintained. Then we can view  $P_{sa}$  as a parameter of the model and let the heart rate, say, be an unknown. Thus we solve the governing equations, not for the pressures and cardiac output as

functions of the heart rate, as with the unregulated flow, but for heart rate and cardiac output as functions of arterial pressure and metabolism. We then obtain

$$F = \frac{\left(\frac{1}{C_{rd}}(2C_{sv} + C_{sa}) + \frac{2}{C_{ld}}C_p\right)(AM + P_{sa}) + \frac{1}{C_{rd}}(P_{sa}C_{sa} - 2V_e)}{(2V_e - P_{sa}C_{sa})(R_{sa} + R_{sv}) - (AM + P_{sa})(C_{sv}R_{sv} + C_pR_p + C_{sa}R_{sv})}, \quad (11.101)$$

$$Q = \frac{(C_{ld}(2C_{sv} + C_{sa}) + 2C_{rd}C_p)(AM + P_{sa}) + C_{ld}(P_{sa}C_{sa} - 2V_e)}{C_{ld}(R_{sa}(2C_{sv} + C_{sa}) + R_{sv}C_{sv} - C_pR_p) + 2C_pC_{rd}(R_{sa} + R_{sv})}. \quad (11.102)$$

Although these formulas are somewhat complicated and obscure, here we see a number of features for the controlled circulation that are markedly different from those for the uncontrolled circulation. Most obvious is that heart rate and cardiac output respond to changes in metabolic need  $M$ . In fact, the cardiac output can be increased by increasing the arterial pressure or decreasing the systemic resistances.

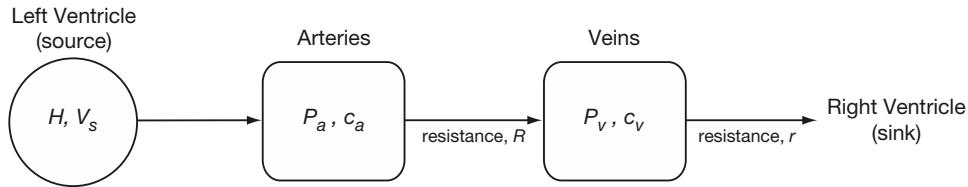
These formulas also show some difficulties that the control system faces. Notice that there are parameter ranges for which either the numerator or denominator is negative. These are parameter values for which the solution is not valid, or, said another way, that are outside the range of physical possibility. Thus, for example, certain target pressures  $P_{sa}$  cannot be maintained if  $V_e$  is either too large or too small. Similarly (and not surprisingly), there are some large values of metabolism and pressure ( $AM + P_{sa}$ ) that are impossible to maintain.

If the heart rate cannot be controlled by the baroreceptor loop, as for example when there is an implanted pacemaker, then  $F$  must be viewed as a tunable parameter of the model rather than an unknown. Instead, some other variables, such as cardiac compliance, are the unknowns. If we suppose that the cardiac compliances are always in the same ratio, then it is easy to see that an increase in heart rate leads to an exactly compensating decrease in compliance and stroke volume, so that the same total output is maintained.

### Oscillations in the Baroreceptor Loop

One of the motivations for studying the baroreceptor loop is to try to understand the occurrence of oscillations in arterial pressure, such as the Mayer and Traube–Hering waves discussed above. This is not possible with a steady-state model like that presented in the previous section. There have been a number of mathematical models of the baroreceptor reflex that concentrate on oscillatory instabilities, the principal ones being that of de Boer et al. (1987), and that of Ottesen (1997) (later studied in a modified form by Fowler and McGuinness, 2005). Vielle (2005) has also published a model of Mayer waves, based on an earlier model of Ursino (1998, 1999). Here we present a simplified version of the Ottesen model.

We model the circulatory system as a simple lumped system, in which all the arteries are modeled by a single compliance vessel, as are all the veins, as sketched in Fig. 11.13. This is essentially a *Windkessel* model, a type of model that is discussed in more detail in Section 11.8.2.



**Figure 11.13** The lumped model of the circulatory system used in the model of the baroreceptor loop.

The volume of the arterial compartment is  $P_a c_a$ , and thus

$$\frac{d}{dt}(P_a c_a) = \frac{1}{R}(P_v - P_a) + V_s F, \quad (11.103)$$

where  $F$  is the heart rate and  $V_s$  is the stroke volume. If we assume that the arterial compliance is constant (i.e., we model only the effects of the baroreceptor loop on heart rate), then

$$c_a \frac{dP_a}{dt} = \frac{1}{R}(P_v - P_a) + V_s F. \quad (11.104)$$

Similarly,

$$c_v \frac{dP_v}{dt} = \frac{1}{R}(P_v - P_a) - \frac{1}{r} P_v. \quad (11.105)$$

We model the changes in heart rate with a sigmoidally increasing function of the arterial pressure (the action of the sympathetic efferents in Fig. 11.12) and a sigmoidally decreasing function of the arterial pressure (the parasympathetic efferents in Fig. 11.12). However, the parasympathetic system is assumed to act with a delay of  $\tau$  seconds. Thus,

$$\frac{dF}{dt} = \alpha g(P_a(t - \tau)) - \beta(1 - g(P_a)), \quad (11.106)$$

where  $g_s$  is the sigmoidally decreasing function

$$g(P_a) = \frac{\mu^7}{\mu^7 + P_a^7}, \quad (11.107)$$

for some constant  $\mu$ . This choice of function for the sympathetic and parasympathetic controls, although highly simplified in this version of the model, is based on experimental data and is discussed in more detail by Danielsen and Ottesen (2004).

Because  $P_v$  is so much smaller than  $P_a$  it can be neglected in the model, leaving us with the system of delay differential equations

$$c_a \frac{dP_a}{dt} = \frac{-P_a}{R} + V_s F, \quad (11.108)$$

$$\frac{dF}{dt} = \alpha g(P_a(t - \tau)) - \beta(1 - g(P_a)). \quad (11.109)$$

The (unique) steady-state solution of this system of equations is

$$\bar{P} = \mu \left( \frac{\alpha}{\beta} \right)^{\frac{1}{7}}, \quad (11.110)$$

$$\bar{F} = \frac{1}{V_s R} \bar{P}. \quad (11.111)$$

The first step to find oscillatory solutions is to determine where in parameter space this steady-state solution becomes unstable. If it becomes unstable via a change of sign of the real part of a complex eigenvalue, then we have a Hopf bifurcation and the existence of a branch of periodic solutions (although, of course, they might not be stable). To investigate stability of the steady solution we follow the usual procedure of linearizing around the steady-state solution and calculating the eigenvalues of the resultant linear system. Linearizing (11.110) and (11.111) around the steady-state solution gives

$$c_a \frac{dp}{dt} = \frac{-p}{R} + V_s f, \quad (11.112)$$

$$\frac{df}{dt} = \alpha g'(\bar{P})p(t - \tau) + \beta g'(\bar{P})p, \quad (11.113)$$

where  $P_a = \bar{P} + p$  and  $F = \bar{F} + f$ , i.e.,  $p$  and  $f$  are deviations from the steady state.

We now look for solutions of the form  $p = p_0 e^{\lambda t}$ ,  $f = f_0 e^{\lambda t}$ . Substituting into the linearized equations gives

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1/R - c_a \lambda & V_s \\ \alpha g'(\bar{P})e^{-\lambda t} + \beta g'(\bar{P}) & -\lambda \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p_0 \\ f_0 \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (11.114)$$

This system has a nontrivial solution only if the determinant of the matrix is zero, and thus  $\lambda$  must be a root of the characteristic equation

$$c_a \lambda^2 + \frac{1}{R} \lambda - V_s g'(\bar{P})(\alpha e^{-\lambda t} + \beta) = 0. \quad (11.115)$$

Since  $g'(\bar{P}) < 0$ , all the real roots of (11.115) have negative real part. Thus, the only way the solution can become unstable is for the real part of a complex root to change sign. Thus, we look for changes of stability by setting  $\lambda = iz$  and solving for  $z$ . After separating real and imaginary parts, we find

$$c_a z^2 - b^2 = a^2 \cos z\tau, \quad (11.116)$$

$$\frac{z}{R} = a^2 \sin z\tau, \quad (11.117)$$

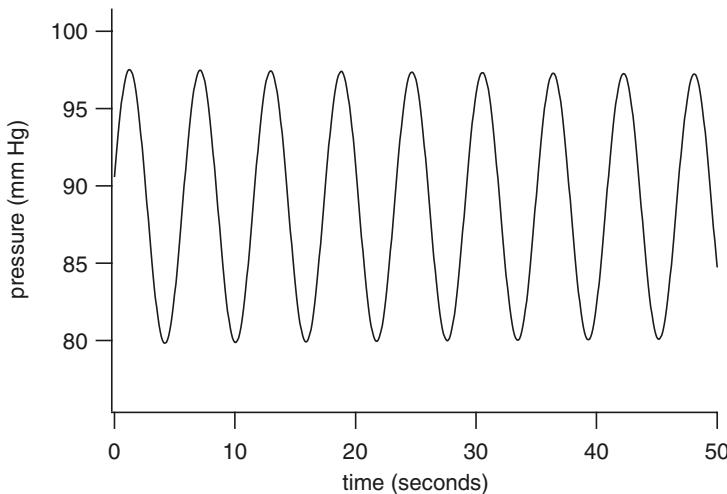
where  $a^2 = -\alpha V_s g'(\bar{P})$  and  $b^2 = -\beta V_s g'(\bar{P})$ . Squaring both equations and adding gives

$$c_a^2 \xi^2 + \xi \left( \frac{1}{R^2} - 2c_a b^2 \right) + b^4 - a^4, \quad (11.118)$$

where  $\xi = z^2$ .

**Table 11.3** Parameter values of the model of oscillations in the baroreceptor loop. Taken from Ottesen (1997).

$c_a = 1.55 \text{ ml/mm Hg}$	$R = 1.05 \text{ mm Hg sec/ml}$
$V_s = 67.9 \text{ ml}$	$\mu = 93 \text{ mm Hg}$
$\alpha = 0.84 \text{ sec}^{-2}$	$\beta = 1.17 \text{ sec}^{-2}$



**Figure 11.14** Numerical solution of the model of the baroreceptor loop for  $\tau = 1.15$ . The parameter values are given in Table 11.3.

As long as care is taken to select the correct root of (11.118), it is a simple matter to solve for  $\xi$ , and thus for  $z$  and  $\tau$ . For the parameter values used by Ottesen (shown here in Table 11.3),  $z = 1.09$  and  $\tau = 1.15$ . Thus, the period of the oscillation that occurs when stability is lost is  $2\pi/1.09 \approx 5.8$  seconds.

Numerical solution of the differential-delay equations shows that, when  $z = 1.09$  and  $\tau = 1.15$ , the amplitude of the periodic solution is approximately 20 mm Hg (Fig. 11.14). Although these oscillations have approximately the correct period (of around 10 seconds) and have an amplitude that is certainly consistent with Mayer waves seen experimentally (there is, in any case, enormous variability in the amplitude of Mayer waves), one should be extremely cautious in drawing any definite conclusions about the underlying mechanisms. It is clear that Mayer waves have a complex, and not well understood, genesis; feedback delays may well be one part of the story, but are certainly not the only part. Interested readers are referred to Julien (2006) and Cohen and Taylor (2005) for detailed discussions of other possibilities, and other models, including statistical approaches.

## 11.7 Fetal Circulation

Because the fetus receives all of its oxygen through the umbilical cord and the placenta, the lungs of the fetus are not used for gas exchange. Instead, the lungs are collapsed and have high resistance to blood flow: only 12% of the blood flow is through the lungs. This situation is reversed at birth when the newborn takes its first breath, expanding the lungs, and when the umbilical cord constricts.

Necessitated by the high resistance of the pulmonary circulation, the fetal circulatory system has a connection between the pulmonary artery and the aorta, called the *ductus arteriosus*, that shunts blood from the outflow of the right heart directly into the systemic arteries. After birth, the ductus gradually closes.

The ventricular chambers of the developing fetal heart are nearly equal in size. It is only after birth that the load on the left ventricle increases, necessitating additional growth of the left ventricular wall to accommodate an increased demand. To equalize the output of the two hearts, there is a small opening in the interatrial septum, called the *foramen ovale*. On the left side of the septum there is a small flap of tissue that allows flow from the right atrium to the left but prevents the reverse from occurring. In the fetus, this flap is open, but at birth it closes for reasons that become clear below.

To model the fetal circulatory system (Hoppensteadt and Peskin, 2001), we use the same three-compartment model as above with additional connections allowed by the ductus arteriosus and the foramen ovale (Fig. 11.15). Since there is no longer a single loop, we must keep track of the flows in each compartment. These flows are governed by the following equations:

**Systemic arteries:**

$$Q_s = \frac{P_{sa} - P_s}{R_{sa}}. \quad (11.119)$$

**Systemic veins:**

$$Q_s = \frac{P_s - P_{sv}}{R_{sv}}. \quad (11.120)$$

**Pulmonary system:**

$$Q_p = \frac{P_{pa} - P_{pv}}{R_p}. \quad (11.121)$$

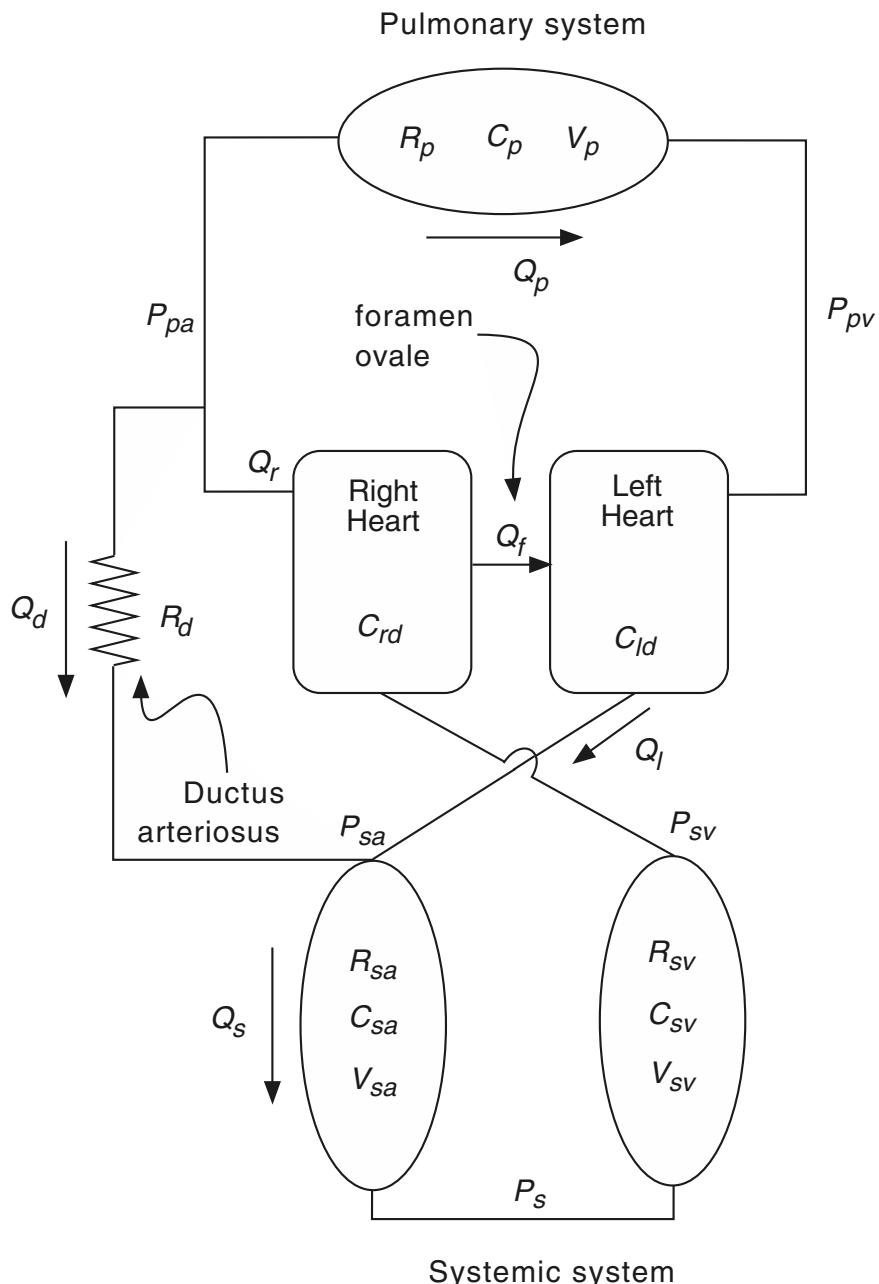
**Left heart:**

$$Q_l = F(C_{ld}P_{pv} - C_{l\sigma}P_{sa}). \quad (11.122)$$

**Right heart:**

$$Q_r = F(C_{rd}P_{sv} - C_{r\sigma}P_{pa}). \quad (11.123)$$

The equations for the volumes are unchanged from before.



**Figure 11.15** Schematic diagram of the fetal circulation. The model is based on the three-compartment model in Fig. 11.9, with additional connections to model the ductus arteriosus and the foramen ovale.

Since fluid is conserved, flow into any junction must equal the flow out. There are four junctions, and thus there are four conservation laws

$$Q_l + Q_d = Q_s, \quad (11.124)$$

$$Q_r = Q_d + Q_p, \quad (11.125)$$

$$Q_s = Q_r + Q_f, \quad (11.126)$$

$$Q_p + Q_f = Q_l, \quad (11.127)$$

where  $l$  = left heart,  $r$  = right heart,  $s$  = systemic,  $p$  = pulmonary,  $f$  = foramen ovale,  $d$  = ductus arteriosus. Notice that there are only three independent relationships here, as the first three imply the fourth, for the simple reason that total fluid is conserved. As a result, any three flows can be determined as functions of the remaining three.

A quick count shows that there are 14 variables (5 pressures, 3 volumes, and 6 flows), but only 12 equations, including the three equations for the volumes and the equation for the conservation of volume, which are not shown explicitly here. Thus, to characterize the system completely, two additional equations are needed. These are the equation for the ductus,

$$Q_d = \frac{P_{pa} - P_{sa}}{R_d}, \quad (11.128)$$

and the equation for the foramen, modeled as an ideal valve,

$$P_{sv} = P_{pv}, \quad \text{if } Q_f > 0, \quad (11.129)$$

$$Q_f = 0, \quad \text{if } P_{sv} < P_{pv}. \quad (11.130)$$

Here, there is no resistance to flow in the forward direction if the valve is open, and if the valve is closed, there is no flow in the backward direction.

There are two possible solutions. First, for the “foramen open” solution, we set  $P_{sv} = P_{pv}$  and solve the governing system of equations. This yields a valid solution for all parameter values for which  $Q_f > 0$ . On the other hand, if we take  $Q_f = 0$  (the “foramen closed” solution) and determine all the pressures, we have a valid solution for all parameter values for which  $P_{sv} < P_{pv}$ . For any set of parameter values there should be one, but only one, solution set.

We begin by looking for the “foramen open” solution. For simplicity, we again suppose that the systolic compliances are negligible, i.e., that  $C_{r\sigma} = C_{l\sigma} = 0$ . We find

$$Q_f = Q_r \frac{R_d(C_{ld} - C_{rd}) + R_p C_{ld} - C_{rd}(R_{sa} + R_{sv})}{C_{rd}(R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_p + R_d)}, \quad (11.131)$$

$$Q_d = Q_r \frac{C_{ld}(R_{sv} + R_{sa}) - R_p C_{rd}}{C_{rd}(R_{sv} + R_{sa} + R_d + R_p)}, \quad (11.132)$$

$$Q_s = Q_r \frac{R_p(C_{rd} + C_{ld}) + R_d C_{ld}}{C_{rd}(R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_p + R_d)}, \quad (11.133)$$

$$Q_p = Q_r \frac{(R_{sa} + R_{sv})(C_{rd} + C_{ld}) + R_d C_{rd}}{C_{rd}(R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_p + R_d)}, \quad (11.134)$$

$$Q_l = Q_r \frac{C_{ld}}{C_{rd}}. \quad (11.135)$$

In the developing fetus, the left and right hearts are nearly the same. If  $C_{rd} = C_{ld} = C_d$ , the outputs from the left and right hearts are the same, and  $Q_l = Q_r = Q$ . With this simplification we find that

$$Q_f = Q_d = Q \frac{R_p - R_{sa} - R_{sv}}{R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_p + R_d}, \quad (11.136)$$

$$Q_s = Q \frac{2R_p + R_d}{R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_p + R_d}, \quad (11.137)$$

$$Q_p = Q \frac{2R_{sa} + 2R_{sv} + R_d}{R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_p + R_d}. \quad (11.138)$$

As long as the pulmonary resistance is larger than the total systemic resistance, the flow  $Q_f$  is positive, as required by our initial assumption. Thus, by adjusting the pulmonary resistance  $R_p$ , the foramen and the ductus allow blood to be shunted from the lungs to the systemic circulation. Notice that in the extreme case of  $R_p = \infty$ , we have  $Q_f = Q_d = Q$ ,  $Q_p = 0$ ,  $Q_s = 2Q$ . In other words, if  $R_p = \infty$ , there is no pulmonary flow, the flow returning from the systemic circulation is equally divided between the left and right hearts for pumping, and the blood pumped by the right heart is shunted from the lungs to the systemic arteries.

At birth, the lungs fill with air and expand, dramatically decreasing the resistance of blood flow in the lungs. Simultaneously, the umbilical cord constricts, dramatically increasing the total systemic resistance  $R_{sa} + R_{sv}$ . When this happens, the flow through the foramen reverses, and closes the foramen. To find the flow solution in this “foramen closed” situation, we take  $Q_f = 0$  and drop the restriction that  $P_{sv} = P_{pv}$ . It follows immediately from (11.126) and (11.127) that  $Q_p = Q_l$ ,  $Q_s = Q_r$ , and  $Q_d = Q_r - Q_l$ . Thus, the flow through the ductus is used to balance the outputs of the left and right sides of the heart.

Furthermore,

$$P_{pv} = \frac{Q_r}{FC_{ld}}, \quad (11.139)$$

$$P_{sv} = \frac{Q_l}{FC_{rd}}, \quad (11.140)$$

$$\frac{P_{sa}}{P_{pa}} = \left( \frac{\frac{1}{FC_{rd}} + R_{sv} + R_{sa}}{\frac{1}{FC_{rd}} + R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_d} \right) \left( \frac{\frac{1}{FC_{ld}} + R_p + R_d}{\frac{1}{FC_{ld}} + R_p} \right), \quad (11.141)$$

and

$$\frac{P_{pv}}{P_{sv}} = \frac{FC_{rd}(R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_d) + 1}{FC_{ld}(R_p + R_d) + 1}, \quad (11.142)$$

which is greater than one (as required) as long as  $R_p < R_{sa} + R_{sv}$ . Thus, remarkably, as soon as the first breath is drawn and the pulmonary resistance drops, the pulmonary venous pressure exceeds the systemic venous pressure, keeping the foramen closed, allowing the skin flap to gradually grow over and seal tightly. In addition,

$$Q_d = Q_r \frac{\left(\frac{1}{FC_{ld}} + R_p\right) - \left(\frac{1}{FC_{ld}} + R_{sa} + R_{sv}\right)}{\frac{1}{FC_{ld}} + R_d + R_p}. \quad (11.143)$$

Thus, immediately after birth, when the left and right heart compliances are the same, the flow through the ductus reverses direction, so that the left heart output exceeds the right heart output, with

$$\frac{Q_l}{Q_r} = \frac{\frac{1}{FC_{rd}} + R_{sa} + R_{sv} + R_d}{\frac{1}{FC_{ld}} + R_p + R_d}. \quad (11.144)$$

For reasons that are not completely understood (probably because of the increased concentration of oxygen in the blood), the ductus gradually closes, so that  $R_d$  grows, eventually to  $\infty$ . As it does so, the arterial pressure  $P_{sa}$  increases, causing the left ventricle to thicken gradually, decreasing its compliance. The end result (taking  $R_d \rightarrow \infty$ ) is the solution of the single-loop system found in the previous section, although with parameter values that are not yet the adult values.

### 11.7.1 Pathophysiology of the Circulatory System

Occasionally, the heart or its associated blood vessels are malformed during fetal life, leaving the newborn infant with a defect called a *congenital anomaly*. There are three major types of congenital abnormalities:

1. A blockage, or *stenosis*, of the blood flow at some part of the heart or a major vessel.
2. An abnormality that allows blood to flow directly from the left heart or aorta to the right heart or pulmonary artery, bypassing the systemic circulation.
3. An abnormality that allows blood to flow from the right heart or pulmonary artery to the left heart or aorta, thereby bypassing the lungs.

#### Patent Ductus Arteriosus (PDA)

While the ductus arteriosus constricts to a small size shortly after birth, it is several months before flow is completely occluded. In about 1 out of 5500 babies, the ductus never closes, a condition known as *patent ductus arteriosus*. In a child with a patent ductus, there is a substantial backflow from the left heart into the lungs, so that the blood is well oxygenated, but there is decreased cardiac reserve and respiratory reserve, because insufficient blood is supplied to the systemic arteries. As the child grows and systemic pressure increases, the backflow through the ductus also increases, sometimes causing the diameter of the ductus to increase, thereby worsening the condition. Symptoms of patent ductus include fainting or dizziness during exercise, and there is usually hypertrophy of the left heart.

It can happen that the lungs respond to the excess pulmonary flow by increasing pulmonary resistance, thereby, according to (11.143), reversing the flow in the ductus, shunting blood from the right heart to the aorta, carrying deoxygenated blood directly into the systemic arteries.

### Closed Foramen Ovale in Utero

In this situation the circulation is like the circulation after birth, except that the pulmonary resistance exceeds the systemic resistance,  $R_p > R_{sa} + R_{sv}$ . According to (11.144), the output of the left heart is low compared to the output of the right heart, so that development of the left heart is impaired and the right heart is overdeveloped at birth.

### Atrial Septal Defect (ASD)

If the foramen does not close properly at birth, there remains a hole in the septum between the left and right atria, allowing oxygenated blood to leak from the left heart to the right heart. Assuming that the ductus closes successfully, so that  $Q_d = 0$ , it follows that

$$Q_p = Q_r = FC_{rd}P_{sv}, \quad (11.145)$$

$$Q_s = Q_l = FC_{ld}P_{pv}, \quad (11.146)$$

$$Q_f = Q_s - Q_r = Q_l - Q_p, \quad (11.147)$$

so that

$$\frac{Q_p}{Q_s} = \frac{Q_r}{Q_l} = \frac{C_{rd}}{C_{ld}}. \quad (11.148)$$

If the left heart has smaller compliance than the right heart, as would be true in an adult, the pulmonary flow exceeds the systemic flow.

### ASD and PDA

The configuration here is the same as with the fetal circulation, except that there is no valve to prohibit flow from the left to right atrium. The solution is the “foramen open” solution, for which

$$Q_s - Q_p = Q_f + Q_d = Q_s \left( 1 - \frac{R_d C_{rd} + (R_{sa} + R_{sv})(C_{ld} + C_{rd})}{R_d C_{ld} + R_p(C_{ld} + C_{rd})} \right), \quad (11.149)$$

which is negative for typical parameter values. This shows that it is possible to reduce the shunted flow and equalize the pulmonary and systemic flows by *banding* or surgically constricting the pulmonary artery, thus increasing  $R_p$ . The banding procedure works, however, only if  $R_d \neq \infty$ , that is, only if there is flow through the ductus. Banding has no effect in ASD when the ductus is closed, because in the limit  $R_d \rightarrow \infty$ , the flow through the foramen is

$$Q_f = Q_s \left( 1 - \frac{C_{rd}}{C_{ld}} \right), \quad (11.150)$$

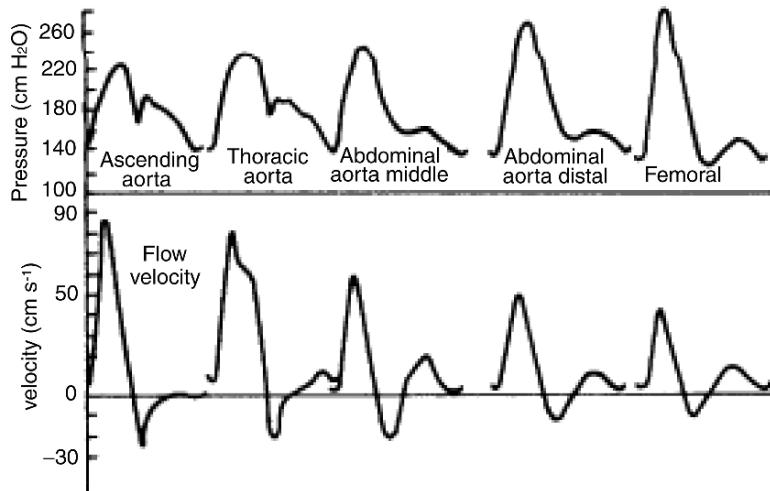
independent of  $R_p$ .

## 11.8 The Arterial Pulse

The above analysis treats the circulation as if the various pressures in the blood vessels are constant over time. Of course, since the heart pumps blood in a pulsatile manner, this is not the case. Each beat of the heart forms a pressure wave that travels along the arteries, changing shape as it moves away from the heart. Typical experimental data, taken from a dog artery, are shown in Fig. 11.16. It is evident that closer to the heart the pressure pulse is wider and does not have a distinct second wave, and the velocity and pressure waves have different forms. However, as the pulse moves away from the heart, the pressure wave becomes steeper, a second wave develops following the first, and the velocity profile becomes similar to the pressure profile. Since variations in the form of the arterial pulse are often used as clinical indicators (for example, the second wave is usually absent in patients with diabetes or atherosclerosis), it is important to gain an understanding of the physical mechanisms underlying the shape of the pulse in normal physiology. Models to explain the shape of the arterial pulse range from simple linear ones to complex models incorporating the tapering of the arterial walls and its branching structure (Pedley, 1980; Lighthill, 1975; Peskin, 1976), and the modern literature on models of the arterial pulse is vast. Here, we restrict our attention to only the simplest models.

### 11.8.1 The Conservation Laws

Consider flow in a blood vessel with cross-sectional area  $A(x, t)$ . For simplicity we assume that the flow is a *plug flow*, with velocity that is a scalar quantity  $u$  and is a



**Figure 11.16** The form of the arterial pulse measured in the arteries of a dog. The top panel shows the pressure waveform, and the bottom panel shows the velocity. (Pedley, 1980, Fig. 1.14, taken from McDonald, 1974.)

function of axial distance along the vessel only. Poiseuille flow becomes plug flow in the limit of zero viscosity, and so in the following analysis we omit consideration of viscous forces. The volume of the vessel of length  $L$  is  $\int_0^L A(x, t) dx$ , and thus conservation of mass requires that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( \int_0^L A(x, t) dx \right) = u(0)A(0, t) - u(L)A(L, t). \quad (11.151)$$

Taking the partial derivative of (11.151) with respect to  $L$  and replacing  $L$  by  $x$  gives

$$A_t + (Au)_x = 0. \quad (11.152)$$

According to Newton's law, the rate of change of momentum of a fluid in some domain is equal to the net force exerted on the boundary of the domain plus the flux of momentum across the boundary. Thus, conservation of momentum requires that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left( \rho \int_0^L A(x, t)u(x, t) dx \right) = \rho A(x, t)u^2(x, t)|_{x=L}^0 + P(x, t)A(x, t)|_{x=L}^0. \quad (11.153)$$

Note that  $\rho A(0, t)u(0, t)$  is the rate at which mass enters the vessel across the surface  $x = 0$ , so that  $\rho A(0, t)u^2(0, t)$  is the rate at which momentum enters the vessel across this surface. Differentiating (11.153) with respect to  $L$  and replacing  $L$  by  $x$ , we find that

$$\rho \left( (Au)_t + (Au^2)_x \right) = -(PA)_x. \quad (11.154)$$

This second equation can be simplified by expanding the derivatives and using (11.152) to get

$$\rho (u_t + uu_x) = -P_x \quad (11.155)$$

as the equation for the conservation of momentum.

For simplicity we assume that the vessel is a linear compliance vessel with

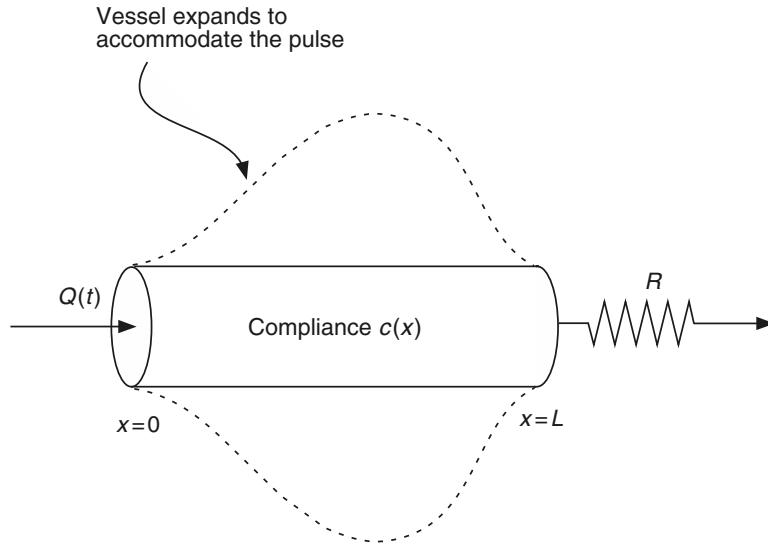
$$A(P) = A_0 + cP. \quad (11.156)$$

One can use a more general relationship between area and pressure, but the basic conclusions of the following analysis remain unchanged. With this expression for the cross-sectional area, the equation for conservation of mass becomes

$$c(P_t + uP_x) + A(P)u_x = 0. \quad (11.157)$$

## 11.8.2 The Windkessel Model

One of the earliest models of the heart, dating back to the past century (Frank, 1899; translated by Sagawa et al., 1990), is the *windkessel* model, from the German word meaning an air chamber, or bellows. (The name originally arose because of the similarities between the mechanical conditions in the arterial system and the operation of the *windkessel*, or bellows, of a nineteenth-century fire engine.)



**Figure 11.17** Schematic diagram of the *windkessel* model.

The *windkessel* model is obtained from (11.155) and (11.157) by letting  $\rho \rightarrow 0$ , in which case  $P_x = 0$ , so that the pressure is a function only of time. Thus, we model the greater arteries as a compliance vessel, extending from  $x = 0$  to  $x = L$ , with time-varying pressure and volume; inflow at  $x = 0$  is from the heart, and outflow at  $x = L$  is into the peripheral arterial system (Fig. 11.17). However, although the pressure is uniform inside the vessel, the compliance is not, so that the cross-sectional area of the vessel varies with  $x$ , the distance along the vessel. In fact, we assume that  $c(0) = c(L) = 0$ , but that the compliance  $c(x)$  is nonzero inside the vessel. Finally, we assume that the outflow from the vessel is into the peripheral system which is modeled as a simple resistance vessel with resistance  $R$ .

From (11.157) it follows that

$$u_x(x, t) = \frac{-c(x)P_t}{A_0 + c(x)P}, \quad (11.158)$$

and, integrating from  $x = 0$  to  $x = L$ , we get

$$A_0 u(0, t) = \theta(P)P_t + A_0 u(L, t), \quad (11.159)$$

where

$$\theta(P) = \int_0^L \frac{A_0 c(x)}{A_0 + c(x)P} dx. \quad (11.160)$$

We denote  $A_0 u(0, t)$  as  $Q(t)$ , since it is the flow into the vessel from the heart. Further, the outflow from the vessel,  $A_0 u(L, t)$ , must match the flow through the peripheral system, which we write as  $P/R$  (assuming the pressure drop across the peripheral

system is also  $P$ ). Hence, we have the differential equation for  $P$ ,

$$Q(t) = \theta(P)P_t + \frac{P}{R}. \quad (11.161)$$

From this differential equation we learn that when the heart ejects blood, in which case  $Q(t)$  increases quickly, there is a corresponding increase in  $P$  (i.e., the vessel fills up and expands). When the flow stops,  $Q$  is zero, and the pressure decreases to zero according to  $P_t = -P/(\theta(P)R)$ . This demonstrates that the major arteries act as a bellows, initially inflating to accommodate the blood from the heart and then contracting to pump the blood through the periphery.

### 11.8.3 A Small-Amplitude Pressure Wave

If  $p$  and  $u$  are small, so that all nonlinear terms in (11.155) and (11.157) can be ignored, we then obtain the linear system

$$\rho u_t + P_x = 0, \quad (11.162)$$

$$cP_t + A_0 u_x = 0. \quad (11.163)$$

By cross-differentiation, we can eliminate  $u$  and find a single equation for  $P$ , namely

$$P_{tt} = \frac{A_0}{c\rho} P_{xx}, \quad (11.164)$$

which is well known as the *wave equation*.

Solutions of the wave equation include traveling wave solutions, which are functions whose shape is invariant but that move at the velocity  $s = \sqrt{\frac{A_0}{c\rho}}$ . For arteries, this velocity is on the order of 4 m/s, as can be verified by comparing the arrival times of the pressure pulse at the carotid artery in the neck and at the posterior tibial artery at the ankle.

The general solution of the wave equation (11.164) can be written in the form

$$P(x, t) = f(t - x/s) + g(t + x/s), \quad (11.165)$$

where  $f$  and  $g$  are arbitrary functions. Note that  $f(t - x/s)$  denotes a wave with profile  $f(x)$  traveling from left to right, while  $g(t + x/s)$  denotes a wave traveling in the opposite direction. It follows that the general solution for  $u$  is

$$u = \frac{1}{\rho s} [f(t - x/s) - g(t + x/s)]. \quad (11.166)$$

### 11.8.4 Shock Waves in the Aorta

Although the linear wave equation can be used to gain an understanding of many features of the arterial pulse, such as reflected waves and waves in an arterial network (Lighthill, 1975), there are experimental indications that nonlinear effects are also important (Anliker et al., 1971a,b). One particular nonlinear effect that we investigate

here is the steepening of the wave front as it moves away from the heart. If the wave front becomes too steep, the top of the front overtakes the bottom, and a shock, or discontinuity, forms, a solution typical of hyperbolic equations. Of course, a true shock is not possible, as blood viscosity and the elastic properties of the arterial wall preclude the formation of a discontinuous solution. Nevertheless, it might be possible to generate very steep pressure gradients within the aorta.

Under normal conditions, no such shocks develop. However, in conditions where the aorta does not function properly, allowing considerable backflow into the heart, the heart compensates by an increase in the ejection volume, thus generating pressure waves that are steeper and stronger than those observed normally. Furthermore, the *pistol-shot* phenomenon, a loud cracking sound heard through a stethoscope placed at the radial or femoral artery, often occurs in patients with aortic insufficiency. It has been postulated that the pistol-shot is the result of the formation of a shock wave within the artery, a shock wave that is possible because of the increased amplitude of the pressure pulse.

To model this phenomenon, recall that the governing equations are

$$c(P_t + uP_x) + A(P)u_x = 0, \quad (11.167)$$

$$\rho(u_t + uu_x) + P_x = 0, \quad (11.168)$$

which can be written in the form

$$w_t + Bw_x = 0, \quad (11.169)$$

where

$$w = \begin{pmatrix} u \\ P \end{pmatrix} \quad (11.170)$$

and

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} u & \frac{1}{\rho} \\ \frac{A(P)}{c} & u \end{pmatrix}. \quad (11.171)$$

Using the method of characteristics (Whitham 1974; Pedley, 1980; Peskin, 1976), we can determine some qualitative features of the solution. Roughly speaking, a characteristic is a curve  $C$  in the  $(x, t)$  plane along which information about the solution propagates. For example, the equation  $u_t + cu_x = 0$  has solutions of the form  $u(x, t) = U(x - ct)$ , so that information about the solution propagates along curves  $x - ct = \text{constant}$  in the  $(x, t)$  plane. Similarly, characteristics for the wave equation (11.164) are curves of the form  $t \pm x/s = \text{constant}$ , because it is along these curves that information about the solution travels.

To find characteristic curves, we look for curves in  $x, t$  along which the original partial differential equation behaves like an ordinary differential equation. Suppose a characteristic curve  $C$  is defined by

$$x = x(\lambda), \quad t = \lambda. \quad (11.172)$$

Derivatives of functions  $w(x, t)$  along this curve are given by

$$\frac{dw}{d\lambda} = w_t + w_x \frac{dx}{d\lambda}. \quad (11.173)$$

Notice that with  $dx/d\lambda = c$ , the partial differential equation  $u_t + cu_x = 0$  reduces to the simple ordinary differential equation  $u_\lambda = 0$ . Thus, curves with  $dx/dt = c$  are characteristic curves for this simple equation.

To reduce the system (11.169) to characteristic form, we try to find appropriate linear combinations of the equations that transform the system to an ordinary differential equation. Thus, suppose the matrix  $B$  has a left eigenvector  $\xi^T$  with corresponding eigenvalue  $s$ , so that  $\xi^T B = s\xi^T$ . We multiply (11.169) by  $\xi^T$ , and find that with the identification  $dx/d\lambda = s$ ,

$$0 = \xi^T (w_t + Bw_x) = \xi^T (w_t + sw_x) = \xi^T w_\lambda. \quad (11.174)$$

In other words, along the curve  $dx/dt = s$ , the original system of equations reduces to the simple ordinary differential equation  $\xi^T w_\lambda = 0$ .

It is an easy matter to determine that the eigenvalues of  $B$  are

$$s = u \pm K(P), \quad (11.175)$$

where

$$K(P) = \sqrt{\frac{A(P)}{\rho c}}, \quad (11.176)$$

with corresponding left eigenvector

$$\xi^T = (\xi_1, \xi_2) = (\rho K(P), \pm 1). \quad (11.177)$$

It follows from  $\xi^T w_\lambda = 0$  that

$$u_\lambda \pm \frac{1}{\rho K(P)} P_\lambda = 0 \quad (11.178)$$

along the characteristic curve  $dx/d\lambda = u \pm K(P)$ , which we denote by  $C_\pm$ . Now, notice that, since  $A(P)$  is linear in  $P$ ,

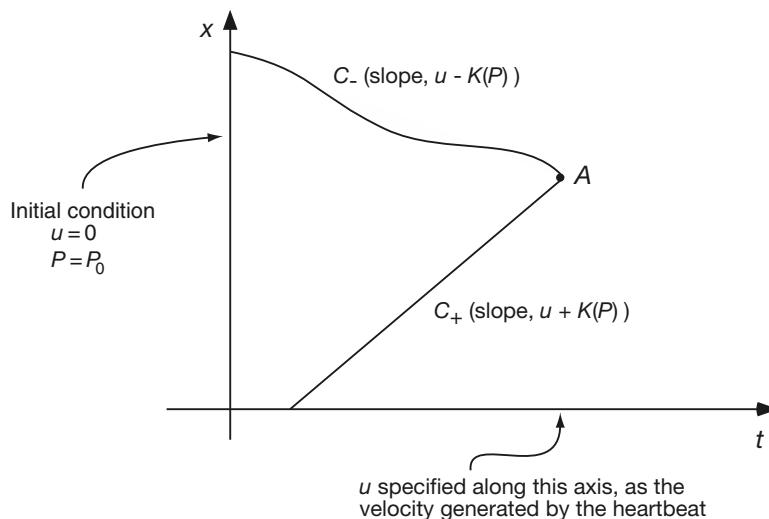
$$\frac{1}{\rho K(P)} = 2 \frac{d}{dP} K(P), \quad (11.179)$$

so that

$$\frac{d}{d\lambda} (u \pm 2K(P)) = 0. \quad (11.180)$$

In other words,  $u + 2K(P)$  is conserved (remains constant) along  $C_+$ , the characteristic curve with slope  $dx/dt = u + K(P)$ , and  $u - 2K(P)$  is conserved along  $C_-$ , the characteristic curve with slope  $dx/dt = u - K(P)$ .

Now, to see how this reduction allows us to solve a specific problem, consider the region  $x \geq 0, t \geq 0$  with  $u(0, t) > 0$  specified. For example,  $u(0, t)$  could be the velocity



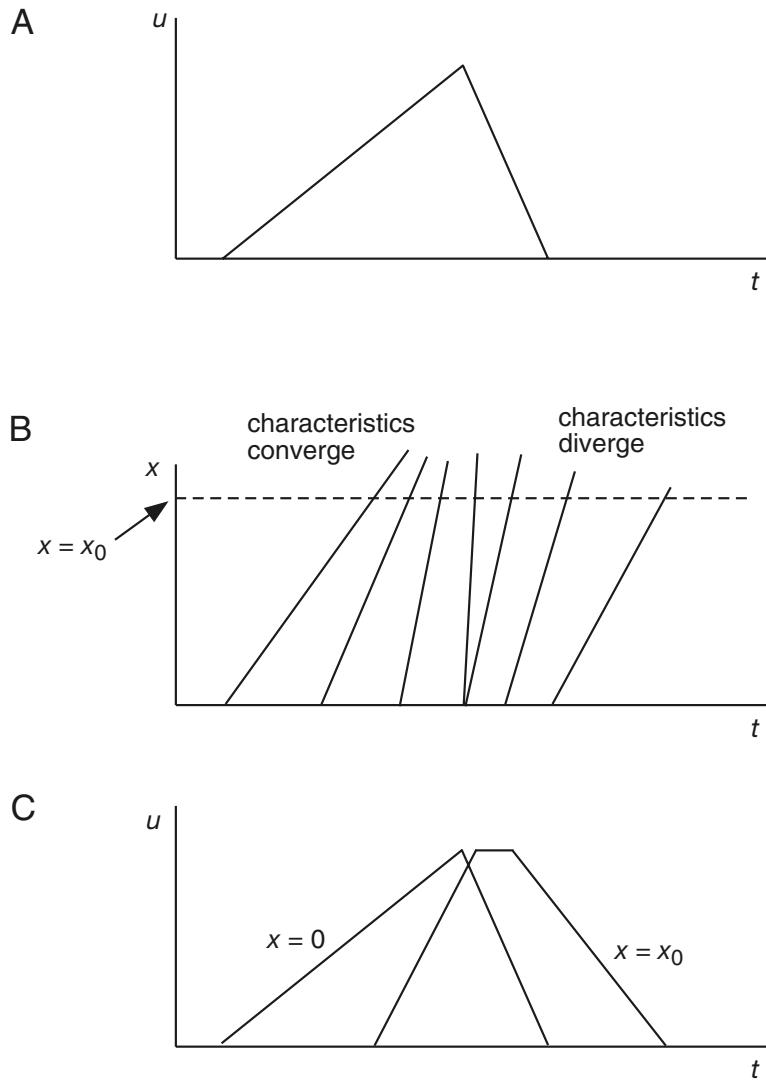
**Figure 11.18** Diagram of the characteristics of the arterial pulse equations in the  $(t, x)$  plane.

pulse generated by a single heartbeat. We suppose that initially,  $u(x, 0) = 0, P(x, 0) = P_0$  for all  $x \geq 0$ , where  $P_0$  is the diastolic pressure.

Pick any point  $A$  in the region  $x \geq 0, t \geq 0$  (Fig. 11.18). There are two characteristics passing through  $A$ , one,  $C_+$ , with positive slope  $u + K(P)$  and one,  $C_-$ , with negative slope  $u - K(P)$ . (Here and in the following we assume that  $u$  is small enough so that  $C_-$  always has negative slope.) Following  $C_-$  up and to the left, we see that it intersects the vertical axis, where  $u = 0$  and  $P = P_0$  (because of the specified initial data). Since the quantity  $u - 2K(P)$  is conserved on  $C_-$ , it must be that  $u - 2K(P) = -2K(P_0)$  at the point  $A$ . Since  $A$  is arbitrary, it follows that  $u = 2K(P) - 2K(P_0)$  everywhere in the first quadrant. Thus,  $u + 2K(P) = 4K(P) - 2K(P_0)$  is constant along  $C_+$ . Hence,  $K(P)$  is constant along  $C_+$ , as are both  $P$  and  $u$ , so that  $C_+$  is a straight line. The slope of  $C_+$  is the value of  $u + K(P)$  at the intersection of  $C_+$  with the horizontal axis.

To be specific, suppose  $u(0, t)$  first increases and then decreases as a function of  $t$ , as shown in Fig. 11.19A. (In this figure  $u(0, t)$  is shown as piecewise linear, but this is simply for ease of illustration.) To be consistent, since  $u = 2K(P) - 2K(P_0)$  everywhere in the first quadrant,  $K(P(0, t)) = K(P_0) + \frac{1}{2}u(0, t)$ , so that the slope of the  $C_+$  characteristics is  $s(t) = \frac{3}{2}u(0, t) + K(P_0)$ , which also increases and then decreases as a function of  $t$ . With increasing slopes, the characteristics converge, resulting in a steepening of the wave front. If characteristics meet, the solution is not uniquely defined by this method, and shocks develop.

The place a shock first develops can be found by determining the points of intersection of the characteristics. Suppose we have two  $C_+$  characteristics, one emanating from the  $t$ -axis at  $t = t_1$ , described by  $x = s(t_1)(t - t_1)$ , and the other emanating at  $t = t_2$ ,



**Figure 11.19** A: Sketch of  $u(0, t)$ . B: Characteristics generated by  $u(0, t)$  in the previous figure. C: Plots of  $u(x, t)$  for  $x = 0$  and  $x = x_0$ , obtained by taking cross-sections for a fixed  $x$  (as indicated by the dotted line in B).

described by  $x = s(t_2)(t - t_2)$ . They intersect at any point  $(t_i, x_i)$ , where

$$t_i = \frac{s(t_2)t_2 - s(t_1)t_1}{s(t_2) - s(t_1)}, \quad (11.181)$$

$$x_i = \frac{s(t_2)s(t_1)(t_2 - t_1)}{s(t_2) - s(t_1)}. \quad (11.182)$$

In the limit  $t_2 \rightarrow t_1$ ,

$$t_i = \frac{s(t)}{s'(t)} + t, \quad (11.183)$$

$$x_i = \frac{s^2(t)}{s'(t)}, \quad (11.184)$$

which defines parametrically the envelope of intersection points as a function of  $t$ , the time of origin of one of the characteristics.

The important point to note is that the first point of shock formation occurs where  $x_i$  is smallest. In other words, for data with  $s'(t)$  large, the shock develops quickly, and close to  $x = 0$ . Thus, generally speaking, the steeper the pulse generated by the heart, the sooner and closer a shock forms. This may explain why the pistol-shot occurs in patients with aortic insufficiency but not in other individuals. Using numerical simulations of the model equations, Anliker et al. (1971a,b) have shown that under conditions of aortic insufficiency, a steep pressure gradient can develop within 40 cm of the heart, well within the physiological range.

It is also noteworthy that the slope  $s$  depends on diastolic pressure  $P_0$  through  $s = \frac{3}{2}u + K(P_0)$ . Thus, a decrease in  $K(P_0)$ , caused either by a decrease of  $P_0$  or a decrease of the function  $A(P)$ , leads to a decrease of the first location of shock formation  $x_i$ .

Notice also that if  $s'(t) < 0$ , so that  $u(0, t)$  is decreasing, no shock can form for positive  $x$ . This can also be seen from Fig. 11.19, since, if  $u(0, t)$  is a decreasing function of  $t$ , the characteristics fan out and do not intersect for positive  $x$ .

## 11.9 EXERCISES

---

1. Equation (11.7) was derived assuming that the radius of the vessel and pressure drop along the vessel were constant, but then it was used in (11.15) as if the radius was variable. Under what conditions is this a reasonable approximation?
2. Suppose the circumference of a circular vessel at zero pressure is  $L_0$  and is linearly related to the wall tension  $T$  via  $L = L_0 + \kappa T$ . Use Laplace's law to show that the compliance of the vessel is  $c = A_0 \frac{\kappa}{\pi M}$  where  $M$  is the vessel wall thickness.
3. By taking the limit of (11.20) as  $P_1 \rightarrow P_0$ , derive (11.22).
4. (a) Choose some parameter values and plot the solution to the filtration equations, (11.27) and (11.28), in the  $q, P_c$  phase plane. What is the relationship between the nullcline  $q' = 0$  and the solution?  
 (b) Modify the model of capillary filtration by allowing the plasma osmotic pressure to vary along the capillary distance. Show that  $\pi_c = RTc_c \frac{Q_i}{q}$ , where  $c_c$  is the concentration of osmolites at  $x = 0$ , i.e., in the influx.  
 (c) For the same parameter values as in the first part of this question, calculate and plot the solution numerically.  
 (d) If incoming pressure is unchanged from the first model, what is the effect of osmotic pressure on the filtration rate?

- (e) What changes must be made to the incoming pressure and the length of the capillary to maintain the same filtration rate? Hint: Study the phase portrait for this system of equations.
5. Simplify the six-compartment model of the circulation by assuming that there are no pressure drops over the arterial and venous systems (either systemic or pulmonary), and thus, for example,  $P_{sa} = P_{s1}$ . Assume also that the systolic compliances are negligible (why?). Solve the resultant equations and compare with the behavior of the three-compartment model presented in the text. How do the parameter values change? Are the sensitivities altered? (Calculate the sensitivities using a symbolic manipulation program.)
6. Show that (11.71)–(11.79) can be derived from (11.58)–(11.70) by letting  $R_s$  and  $R_p$  approach zero and by letting  $C_{pa} = C_{pv}$  and  $R_{pa} = R_{pv}$ .
7. In the three-compartment circulatory model the base volume of the pulmonary circulation  $V_0^p$  was calculated using the constraint  $V_0^s + V_0^p = 1.2$  liters. Using the fact that the systolic pressure in the pulmonary artery is about 22 mm Hg and the diastolic pressure is about 7 mm Hg, calculate a new value for the volume of the pulmonary circulation. How does this change to the model affect the results?
8. Find the pressures as a function of cardiac output assuming  $V_l \neq 0, V_r \neq 0$ , where  $V_l$  is the basal volume of the left heart, and similarly for  $V_r$  (cf. equation (11.39)). Show that
- $$Q_\infty = \frac{2C_p V_l / C_{ld} + 2(C_{sv} + C_{sa})V_r / C_{rd} + 2(V_t - V_0^p - V_0^s)}{C_p R_p + C_{sv} R_{sv} + C_{sa} (R_{sa} + 2R_{sv})}. \quad (11.185)$$
9. Explore the behavior of the autoregulation model with  $R = R_0 (1 + a[\text{O}_2]_v) / (1 + b[\text{O}_2]_v)$ .
10. What symptoms in the circulation would you predict from anemia?  
Hint: Anemia refers simply to an insufficient quantity of red blood cells, which results in decreased resistance and oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood.
11. In the fetal circulation, a portion of the systemic flow is diverted to the placenta at the placental arteries for oxygen exchange. Suppose that blood entering the systemic veins from the systemic organs and tissues is completely deoxygenated, as is blood leaving the lungs to enter the left heart. Suppose also that blood leaving the placenta entering the systemic veins is fully oxygenated. What percentage of the total cardiac output should be sent through the placenta in order to maximize the total oxygen exchange?
12. In the model of autoregulation  $P_a$  and  $P_v$  are given. More realistically, they would be determined, in part at least, by  $R_s$ . Construct a more detailed model of autoregulation, including the effects of  $R_s$  on the pressures, and show how the arterial and venous pressures, and the cardiac output, depend on  $M$  and  $A$ .
13. Derive a simplified *windkessel* model by starting with a single vessel with volume  $V(t) = V_0 + CP(t)$ . Assume that the flow leaves through a resistance  $R$  and that there is an inflow (from the heart) of  $Q(t)$ . Derive the differential equation for  $P$  and compare it to (11.161).
14. Frank (1899) described a method whereby the flux of blood out of the heart could be estimated from a knowledge of the pressure pulse, even when the arterial resistance is unknown. Starting with (11.161), assume that during the second part of the arterial pulse,  $Q(t) \equiv 0$ . Write down equations for the first and second parts of the pulse, eliminate  $R$ , and find an expression for  $Q$ . Give a graphical interpretation of the expression for  $Q$ .
15. In the model of the arterial pulse, set  $u(0, t) = at$  for some constant  $a$ , and determine the curve in the  $(t, x)$  plane along which characteristics form an envelope. Determine the first value of  $x$  at which a shock forms.

# The Heart

Of all of the human organs, the heart is in some sense the simplest. All it has to do is pump blood by contracting and expanding about 2.5 billion times during the lifetime of its owner. The heart is also one of the most studied organs of the body, probably because heart failure, either mechanical or electrical, remains the number one cause of death in the Western world.

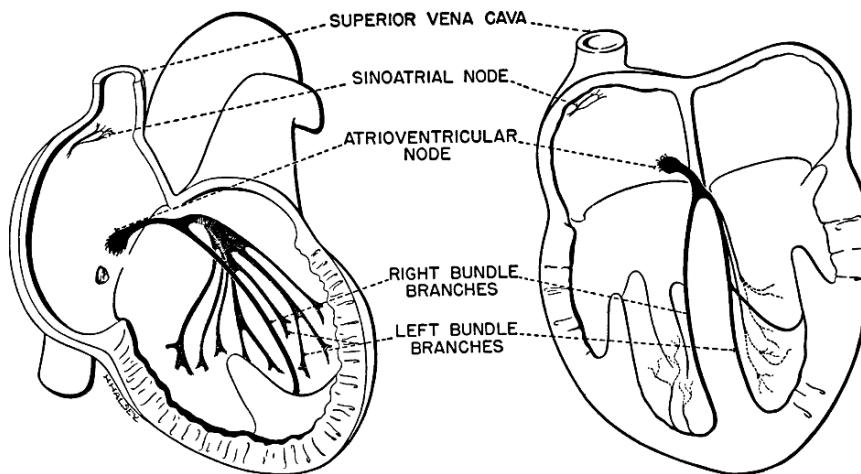
The heart is a four-chambered pump, consisting of two pumps arranged in series. As is described in Chapter 11, one pump (the right heart) drives blood through the lungs (the pulmonary circulation) and then back to the heart, while the other pump (the left heart) drives the oxygenated blood around the body (the systemic circulation). Coordination of the mechanical activity of the heart is provided by an electrical signal, which is the topic of study in this chapter.

Cardiac tissue is a syncytium of cardiac muscle cells, each of which is contractile in much the same way as is skeletal muscle (Chapter 15), although there are important differences between the two types of striated muscle. Cardiac cells perform two functions in that they are both excitable and contractile. They are excitable, enabling action potentials to propagate, and the action potential causes the cells to contract, thereby enabling the pumping of blood. The electrical activity of the heart is initiated in a collection of cells known as the *sinoatrial node* (SA node) located just below the superior vena cava on the right atrium. The cells in the SA node are autonomous oscillators. The action potential that is generated by the SA node is then propagated through the atria by the atrial cells.

The atria and ventricles are separated by a septum composed of nonexcitable cells, which normally acts as a barrier to conduction of action potentials. There is one pathway for the action potential to continue propagation and that is through another collection of cells, known as the *atrioventricular node* (AV node), located at the base of the atria.

Conduction through the AV node is quite slow, but when the action potential exits the AV node, it propagates through a specialized collection of fibers called the *bundle of HIS*, which is composed of Purkinje fibers. The Purkinje fiber network spreads via tree-like branching into the left and right *bundle branches* throughout the interior of the ventricles, ending on the *endocardial surface* of the ventricles. As action potentials emerge from the Purkinje fiber–muscle junctions, they activate the ventricular muscle and propagate through the ventricular wall outward to the epicardial surface. A schematic diagram of the cardiac conduction system is shown in Fig. 12.1.

It should be apparent from this introduction that there are a multitude of features of the heart to study. First of all, there is the excitable and contractile function of individual cells, there is the collective oscillatory and pacemaker activity of SA nodal cells, there is one-dimensional action potential propagation along Purkinje fibers, there is higher-dimensional propagation in the atrial and ventricular muscle, and, finally, there is the collective behavior of all of these as a unit. In what follows, we describe models of all of these different features of the cardiac system. However, we start with a description of cardiac electrical activity at the organ level that uses the simplest mathematical models and ideas.



**Figure 12.1** Schematic diagram of the cardiac conduction system. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 3-9, p. 87).

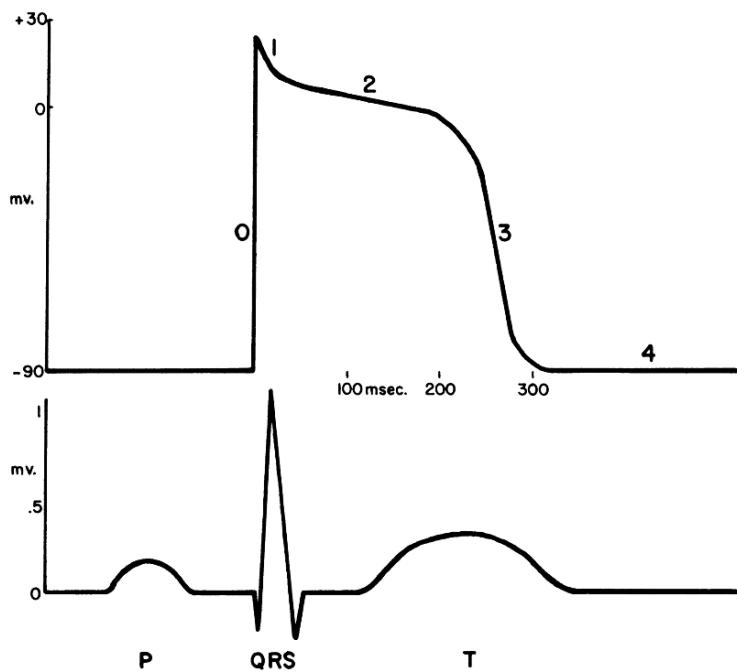
## 12.1 The Electrocardiogram

### 12.1.1 The Scalar ECG

One of the oldest and most important tools for evaluating the status of the heart and the cardiac conduction system is the *electrocardiogram* (ECG). It has been known since 1877, when the first ECG recording was made, that the action potential of the heart generates an electrical potential field that can be measured on the body surface. When an action potential is spreading through cardiac tissue, there is a wave front surface across which the membrane potential experiences a sharp increase. Along the same wave front, the extracellular potential experiences a sharp decrease. From a distance, this sharp decrease in potential looks like a Heaviside jump in potential. This rapid change in extracellular potential results from a current source (or sink) because ions are moving into or out of the extracellular space as transmembrane currents.

The body is a *volume conductor*, so when there is a current source somewhere in the body, such as during action potential spread, currents spread throughout the body. Although the corresponding voltage potential is quite weak, no larger than 4 mV, potential differences can be measured between any two points on the body using a sufficiently sensitive voltmeter. Potential differences are observed whenever the current sources are sufficiently strong. There are three such events. When the action potential is spreading across the atria, there is a measurable signal, called the *P wave*. When the action potential is propagating through the wall of the ventricles, there is the largest of all deflections, called the *QRS complex*. Finally, the recovery of ventricular tissue is seen on the ECG as the *T wave*. (The action potential typical of myocardial cells is shown in the upper panel of Fig. 12.2. In these cells the action potential has a rapid upstroke and a relatively rapid recovery separated by a plateau phase of about 300 ms. The physiological basis of the plateau phase, which does not exist in neural cells, is described later in this chapter.) The recovery of the atria is too weak to be detected on the ECG. Similarly, SA nodal firing, AV nodal conduction, and Purkinje network propagation are not detected on the normal body surface ECG because they do not involve sufficient tissue mass or generate enough extracellular current. In Fig. 12.2 is shown a sketch of a typical single electrical ECG event, and a continuous recording is shown in Fig. 12.3a. In hospitals, ECG recordings are made routinely using oscilloscopes, or, if a permanent record is required, on a continuous roll of paper. The paper speed is standardized at 25 mm per second, with a vertical scale of 1 mV per cm, and the paper is marked with a lined grid of 1 mm and darkened lines with 0.5 cm spacing.

The most important use of the single-lead ECG is to detect abnormalities of rhythm. For example, a continuous oscillatory P wave pattern suggests *atrial flutter* (Fig. 12.3b) or *atrial fibrillation* (Fig. 12.3c). A rapid repetition of QRS complexes is *ventricular tachycardia* (Fig. 12.3d), and a highly irregular pattern of ventricular activation is called *ventricular fibrillation* (Fig. 12.3e). The normal appearance of P waves with a few



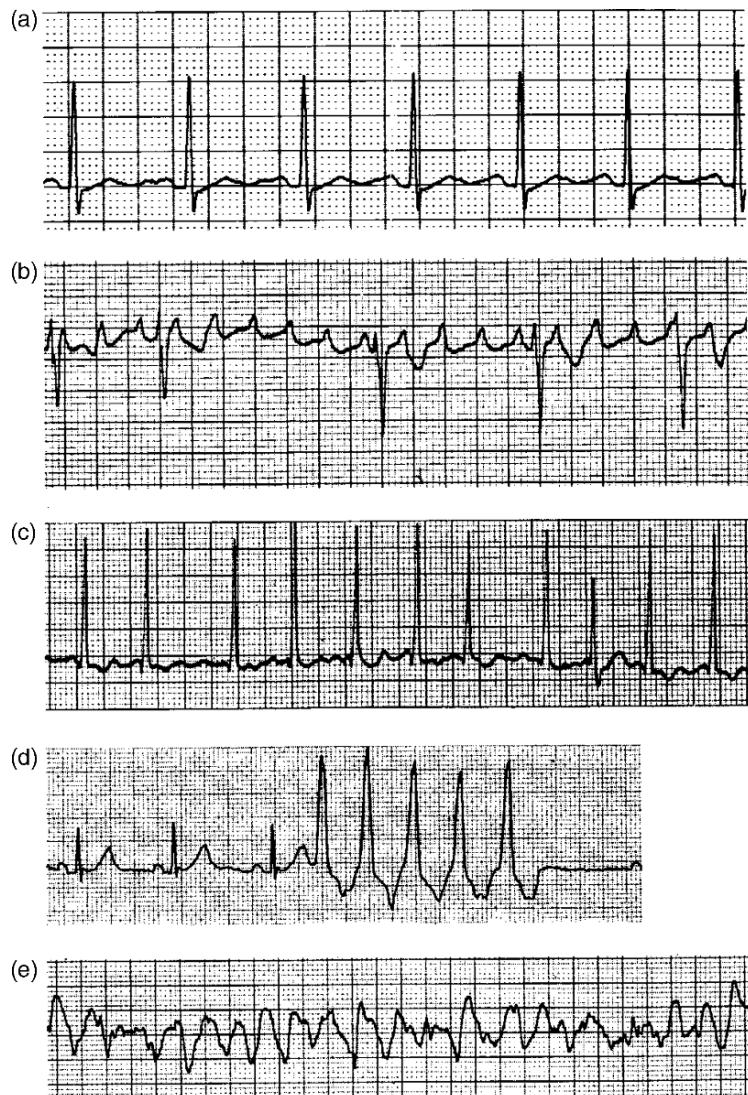
**Figure 12.2** Cellular transmembrane potential and electrocardiogram. The upper tracing represents the transmembrane potential of a single ventricular myocyte and the lower tracing shows the body surface potential during the same electrical event. The numbers on the upper tracing designate phases in the action potential cycle: 0: the upstroke, 1: the brief spike, 2: the plateau, 3: the rapid recovery, 4: resting potential. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-4, p. 286.)

skipped QRS complexes implies a conduction failure in the vicinity of the AV node. Broadening of the QRS complex suggests that propagation is slower than normal, possibly because of conduction failure in the Purkinje network (Fig. 12.4). Spontaneously appearing extra deflections correspond to *extrasystoles*, arising from sources other than the SA or AV nodes.

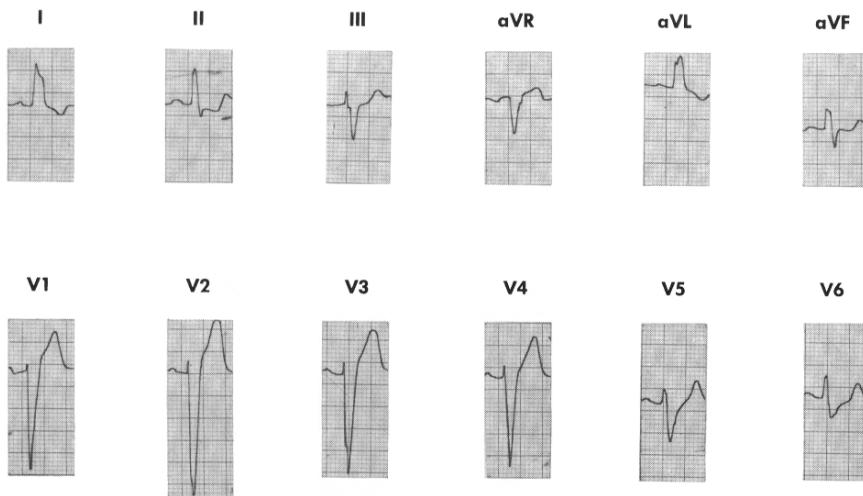
### 12.1.2 The Vector ECG

There is much more information contained in the ECG than is available from a single lead. Some of this information can be extracted from the *vector electrocardiogram*. The mathematical basis for the vector ECG comes from an understanding of the nature of a volume conductor. The human body is an inhomogeneous volume conductor, meaning that it is composed of electrically conductive material. If we assume that biological tissue is ohmic, there is a linear relationship between current and potential

$$I = -\sigma \nabla \phi. \quad (12.1)$$



**Figure 12.3** A collection of ECG recordings, including (a) Normal ECG recording (lead II) from a sedated 18-year-old male (JPK's son). (b) Atrial flutter showing rapid, periodic P waves, only some of which lead to QRS complexes. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-29, p. 316.) (c) Atrial fibrillation showing rapid, nonperiodic atrial activity and irregular QRS complexes. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-28, p. 315.) (d) (Monomorphic) ventricular tachycardia in which ventricular activity is rapid and regular (nearly periodic). (Davis et al., 1985, Fig. 17-24, p. 346.) (e) Ventricular fibrillation in which ventricular activity is rapid and irregular. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-30, p. 317.)



**Figure 12.4** ECG from the twelve standard leads, showing left bundle branch block (LBBB), diagnosed as such because of the lengthened QRS complex (0.12 ms), a splitting of the QRS complex in leads  $V_1$  through  $V_4$  into two signals, and a leftward deflection of the heart vector, indicated, for example, by the amplitude shift in lead  $V_6$ . (Rushmer, 1976, Fig 8-46, p. 338.)

The conductivity tensor  $\sigma$  is inhomogeneous, because it is different for bone, lung, blood, etc., and it is anisotropic, because of muscle fiber striation, for example. Obviously, current is conserved, so that

$$\nabla \cdot I = -\nabla \cdot (\sigma \nabla \phi) = S, \quad (12.2)$$

where  $S$  represents all current sources.

The most significant current source in the human body is the spreading action potential wave front in the heart. The spreading cardiac action potential is well approximated as a surface of current dipoles. The rapid increase in membrane potential (of about 100 mV) translates into an extracellular decrease of about 40 mV that extends spatially over a distance (the wave front thickness) of about 0.5 mm. If the exact location and strength of this dipole surface and the conductivity tensor for the entire body were known, then we could (in principle) solve the Poisson equation (12.2) to find the body surface potential at all times during the cardiac cycle. This problem is unsolved, and is known as the *forward problem of electrocardiography*.

What we would really like to know is the operator, say  $T$ , called a *transfer function*, that solves (12.2) and yields the *body surface potential*  $\phi_B$ , denoted by

$$\phi_B(t) = T \cdot S(t). \quad (12.3)$$

Even more useful, if the transfer function  $T$  were known, one could determine the sources by inverting the forward problem

$$S(t) = T^{-1} \cdot \phi_B(t). \quad (12.4)$$

This problem, known as the *inverse problem of electrocardiography*, is even harder to solve than the forward problem, because it is a numerically unstable mathematical problem.

Since these problems are yet unsolved, we do well to make some simplifications. Our first simplification is to view the action potential upstroke surface as a single current dipole, known as the *heart dipole vector*. We define the heart dipole vector as

$$\mathbf{H}(t) = \int_V \mathbf{J} dV, \quad (12.5)$$

where  $\mathbf{J}$  represents the dipole density at each point of the heart, and  $V$  is the heart volume. The heart dipole vector is assumed to be located at a fixed point in space, changing only in orientation and strength as a function of time.

Next we assume that the volume conductor is homogeneous and infinite with unit conductance. Then, from standard potential theory (see Exercise 1), at any point  $x$  in space,

$$\phi(x, t) = \frac{\mathbf{H}(t) \cdot x}{4\pi|x|^3}, \quad (12.6)$$

where the dipole is assumed to be located at the origin. Thus, at each point on the body surface,

$$\phi_B(x, t) = l_x \cdot \mathbf{H}(t), \quad (12.7)$$

where  $l_x$  is a vector, called the *lead vector*, associated with the electrode lead at position  $x$ . Of course, for a real person, the lead vector is not exactly  $\frac{x}{4\pi|x|^3}$ , and some other method must be used to determine  $l_x$ . However, (12.7) suggests that we can think of the body surface potential as the dot product of some vector  $l_x$  with the heart vector  $\mathbf{H}(t)$ , and that  $l_x$  has more or less the same orientation as a vector from the heart to the point on the body where the recording is made.

Since  $\mathbf{H}$  is a three-dimensional vector, if we have three leads with linearly independent lead vectors, then three copies of (12.7) yields a matrix equation that can be inverted to find  $\mathbf{H}(t)$  uniquely. In other words, if our goal is to determine  $\mathbf{H}(t)$ , then knowledge of the full transfer function is not necessary. In fact, additional measurements from other leads should give redundant information.

Of course, the information from additional leads is not redundant, but it is nearly so. Estimates are that a good three-lead system can account for 85% of the information concerning the nature of the dipole sources. Discrepancies occur because the sources are not exactly consolidated into a single dipole, or because the lead vectors are not known with great accuracy, and so on. However, for clinical purposes, the information gleaned from this simple approximation is remarkably useful and accurate.

The next simplification is to standardize the position of the body-surface recordings and to determine the associated lead vectors. Then, with experience, a clinician can recognize features of the heart vector by looking at recordings of the potential at the leads. Or sophisticated (and expensive) equipment can be built that inverts the lead vector matrix and displays the heart vector on a CRT display device.

Cardiologists have settled on 12 standard leads. The first three were established by Einthoven, the “father of electrocardiography” (1860–1927, inventor of the string galvanometer in 1905, 1924 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine) and are still used today. These are the left arm (LA), the right arm (RA), and the left leg (LL). One cannot measure absolute potentials, but only potential differences. There are three ways to measure potential differences with these three leads, namely,

$$V_I = \phi_{LA} - \phi_{RA}, \quad (12.8)$$

$$V_{II} = \phi_{LL} - \phi_{RA}, \quad (12.9)$$

$$V_{III} = \phi_{LL} - \phi_{LA}, \quad (12.10)$$

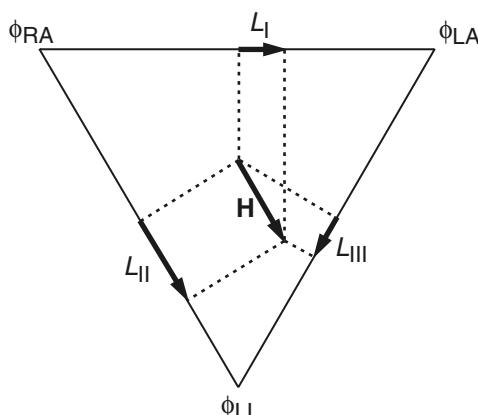
and of course, since the potential drop around any closed loop is zero,

$$V_I + V_{III} = V_{II}. \quad (12.11)$$

With these three differences, there are three lead vectors associated with the orientation of the leads, and the potential difference is the amplitude of the projection of the heart vector  $\mathbf{H}$  onto the corresponding lead vector. Thus,  $L_j = l_j \cdot \mathbf{H}$ , and  $V_j = |L_j|$  for  $j = I, II, III$ .

Einthoven hypothesized that the lead vectors associated with readings  $V_I, V_{II}, V_{III}$  form an equilateral triangle in the vertical, frontal plane of the body, given by the unit vectors (ignoring an amplitude scale factor)  $l_I = (1, 0, 0)$ , and  $l_{II} = (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}, 0)$ . The Einthoven triangle is shown in Fig. 12.5. Here the unit coordinate vector  $(1, 0, 0)$  is horizontal from right arm to left arm,  $(0, 1, 0)$  is vertical pointing downward, and the vector  $(0, 0, 1)$  is the third coordinate in a right-handed system, pointing in the posterior direction, from the front to back of the chest. Associated with the frontal plane is a polar coordinate system, centered at the heart, with angle  $\theta = 0$  along the  $x$  axis, and  $\theta = 90^\circ$  vertically downward along the positive  $y$  axis.

Of course, the lead vectors of Einthoven are not very accurate. Experiments to measure the lead vectors in a model of the human torso filled with electrolytes produced



**Figure 12.5** The Einthoven triangle showing a typical heart vector  $\mathbf{H}$  and associated lead vectors  $L_I, L_{II}$  and  $L_{III}$ . Because the body is approximately planar, the lead vectors are assumed to be in the frontal plane.

measured lead vectors  $l_I = (0.923, -0.298, 0.241)$ , and  $l_{II} = (0.202, 0.972, -0.121)$  (Burger and van Milaan, 1946, 1947, 1948), which are not in the frontal plane. These lead vectors are known as the *Burger triangle*.

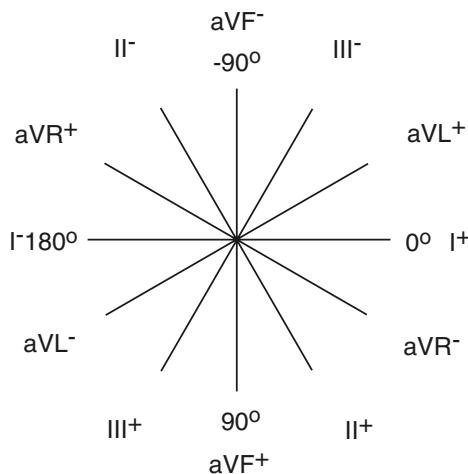
It is fairly easy to glean information about the direction of the heart vector by recognizing the information that is contained in (12.7). The vector ECG is actually a time-varying vector loop (shown in front, top, and side views in Fig. 12.7), and deducing time-dependent information is best done with an oscilloscope. However, one can estimate the mean direction of the vector by estimating the mean amplitude of a wave and then using (12.7) to estimate the mean heart vector. The mean (or time average) of the QRS complex is approximately proportional to the sum of the (positive) maximum and the (negative) minimum.

Since the lead voltage is a dot product of two vectors, a change in mean amplitude of a particular wave suggests either a change in amplitude of the heart vector or a change in direction of the heart vector. For example, the normal QRS and T wave mean dipoles are oriented about  $45^\circ$  below horizontal to the left (see Exercise 5). This is close to orthogonal to the lead vector  $l_{III}$ , and more or less aligned with lead vector  $l_{II}$ . Thus, on a normal ECG, we expect the mean amplitude of a QRS to be small in lead III, large in lead II, and intermediate to these two in lead I. Shifts in these relative amplitudes suggest a shift in the orientation of the heart dipole. For example, an increase in the relative amplitude of the potential difference at lead III and a decrease in amplitude at lead II suggests a shift of the heart vector to the right, away from the left, suggesting a malfunction of the conduction in the left heart.

Although two orthogonal lead vectors suffice to determine the orientation of the heart vector in the vertical plane, for ease of interpretation it is helpful to have more leads. For this reason, there are three additional leads on the frontal plane that are used clinically. To create these leads one connects two of the three Einthoven leads to a central point with  $5000\ \Omega$  resistors to create a single terminal that is relatively indifferent to changes in potential and then takes the difference between this central potential and the remaining electrode of the Einthoven triangle. These measurements are denoted by aVR, aVL, or aVF, when the third unipolar lead is the right arm, the left arm, or the left foot, respectively. The initial “a” is used to denote an *augmented* unipolar limb lead.

For standard cardiographic interpretation the lead vectors for leads I, aVR<sup>-</sup>, II, aVF, III, and aVL<sup>-</sup> are assumed to divide the frontal plane into equal  $30^\circ$  sectors. For example,  $l_I$  is horizontal,  $l_{aVR^-}$  is declined at  $30^\circ$ , while  $l_{aVF}$  is vertical, etc. The superscript for aVR<sup>-</sup> denotes the negative direction of the lead vector  $l_{aVR}$  (Fig. 12.6).

With these six leads, vector interpretation of the frontal plane orientation of the heart dipole is fast. One looks for the leads with the largest and smallest deflections, and surmises that the lead vector with largest mean amplitude is most parallel to the heart dipole, and the lead vector with the smallest mean deflection is nearly orthogonal to the heart dipole. Thus, in the normal heart situations, readings at leads II and aVR should be the largest in mean amplitude, with positive deflection at lead II, and negative deflection at lead aVR, while the mean deflections from leads III and aVL should be



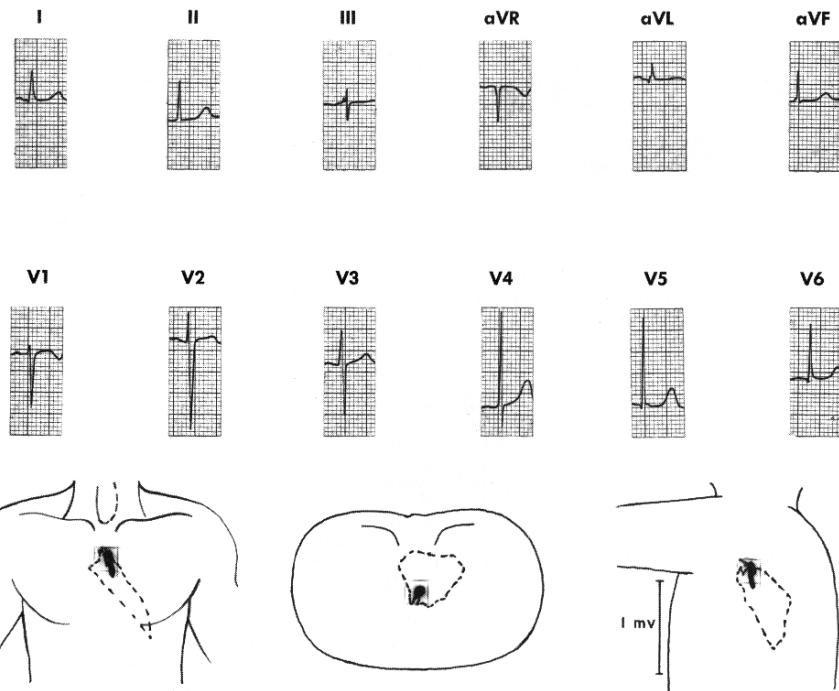
**Figure 12.6** The standard six leads for the electrocardiogram (and their negatives).

the smallest, being the closest to orthogonal to the normal heart dipole (Fig. 12.7). Deviations from this suggest conduction abnormalities.

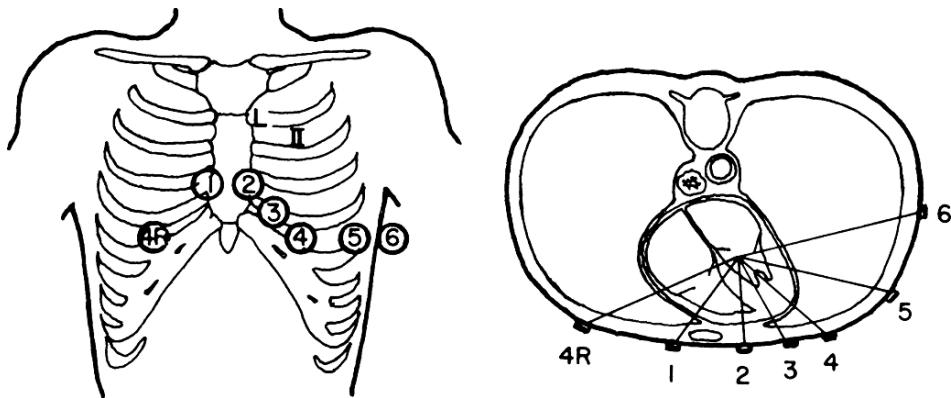
Six additional leads have been established to obtain the orientation of the heart dipole vector in a horizontal plane. For these leads, the three leads of Einthoven are connected with three 5000  $\Omega$  resistors to form a “zero reference,” called the *central terminal of Wilson*. This is compared to a unipolar electrode reading taken from six different locations on the chest. These are denoted by  $V_1, V_2, \dots, V_6$  and are located on the right side of the sternum ( $V_1$ ), the left side of the sternum ( $V_2$ ) between the third and fourth ribs, and proceeding around the left chest following just below the fourth rib, ending on the side of the chest directly under the armpit ( $V_6$ ) (Fig. 12.8).

While a detailed discussion of interpretation of a vector ECG is beyond the scope of this text, there are several features of cardiac conduction that are easy to recognize. Notice from Fig. 12.7 that the normal T wave and the normal QRS complex deflect in the same direction on leads I, II, and aVR (up on I and II, down on aVR). However, the QRS complex corresponds to the upstroke and the T wave to the downstroke of the action potential, so it must be that the activation (upstroke) and recovery (downstroke) wave fronts propagate in opposite directions. Said another way, the most recently activated tissue is the first to recover. The reason for the retrograde propagation of the wave of recovery is not fully understood. Second, an inverted wave (i.e., inverted from what is normal) implies that either the wave is propagating in the retrograde direction, or more typically with novice medical technicians, that the leads have been inadvertently reversed (see Exercise 4).

The amplitude of the QRS complex reflects the amount of muscle mass involved in propagation. Thus, if the QRS amplitude is extraordinarily large, it suggests *ventricular hypertrophy*. If the ECG vector is leftward from normal, it suggests left ventricular hypertrophy (Fig. 12.9), while a rightward orientation suggests right ventricular hypertrophy (Fig. 12.10). On the other hand if an amplitude decrease is accompanied

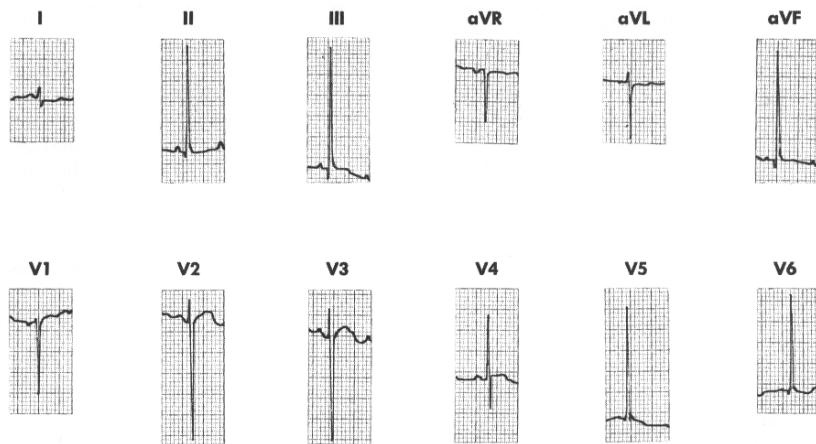


**Figure 12.7** Normal ECG and VCG recording from the standard twelve leads in a nine-year old girl. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-33, p. 320, originally from Guneroth, 1965.)

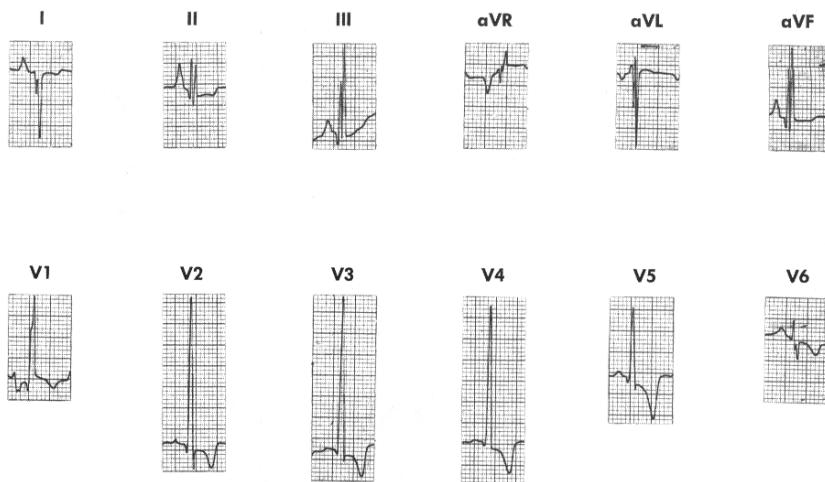


**Figure 12.8** Frontal and horizontal cross-sectional views of the thorax in relation to the V-lead positions of Wilson. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-10, p. 294.)

by a rightward change in orientation, a diagnosis of *myocardial infarction* in the left ventricle is suggested, while a leftward orientation with decreased amplitude suggests a myocardial infarction of the right ventricle, as the heart vector is deflected away from the location of the infarction (see Exercises 6 and 7).



**Figure 12.9** Twelve-lead ECG recording for severe left ventricular hypertrophy, particularly noticeable in leads III and aVL. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-24, p. 331, originally from Gunereth, 1965.)



**Figure 12.10** Twelve-lead ECG recording for severe right ventricular hypertrophy, particularly noticeable in leads III, V2, and V3. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-23, p. 330, originally from Gunereth, 1965.)

## 12.2 Cardiac Cells

We now turn our attention to developing a more detailed understanding of the physiological basis for the ECG and its abnormalities. We begin with a discussion of individual cardiac cells, and then proceed to describe spatially coupled systems of cells.

The primary cell types of cardiac cells are nodal cells (the sinoatrial (SA) and atrioventricular (AV) nodes), Purkinje fiber cells, and atrial and myocardial cells, each with a slightly different function.

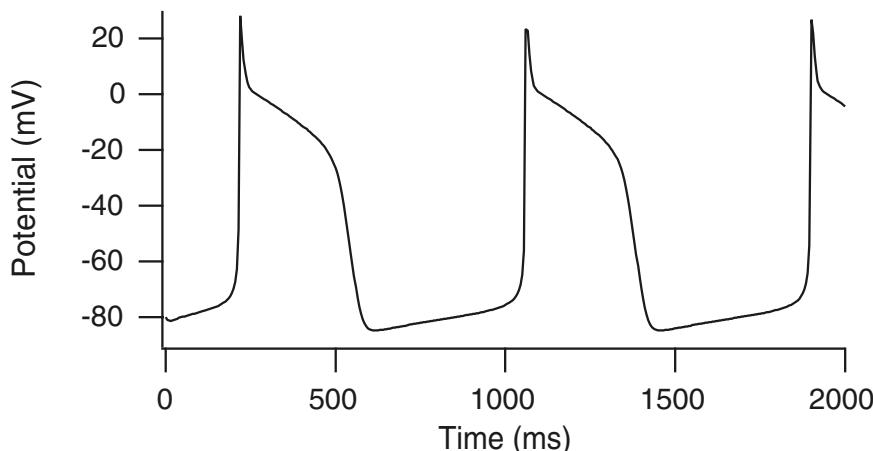
The primary function of SA nodal cells is to provide a pacemaker signal for the rest of the heart. AV nodal cells transmit the electrical signal from atria to ventricles with a delay. Purkinje fiber cells are primarily for fast conduction, to activate the myocardium, and myocardial cells, both atrial and ventricular, are muscle cells and so are contractile as well as excitable.

Because of these different functions, these cell types have different action potential shapes, and all are noticeably different than the Hodgkin–Huxley action potential. The action potential for SA nodal cells is the shortest, while both Purkinje fiber cells and myocardial cells have substantially prolonged action potentials (300–400 ms compared to 3 ms for the squid axon), facilitating and controlling muscular contraction. Even within a single cell type, there can be substantial variation. For example, in the ventricles, epicardial, midmyocardial, and endocardial cells have noticeable differences in action potential duration. AV nodal cells vary substantially, to the extent that they are sometimes classified into several different subtypes. Typical action potentials for several cell types are shown in Figs. 12.11, 12.12, and 12.14, and typical ionic concentrations are given in Table 12.1.

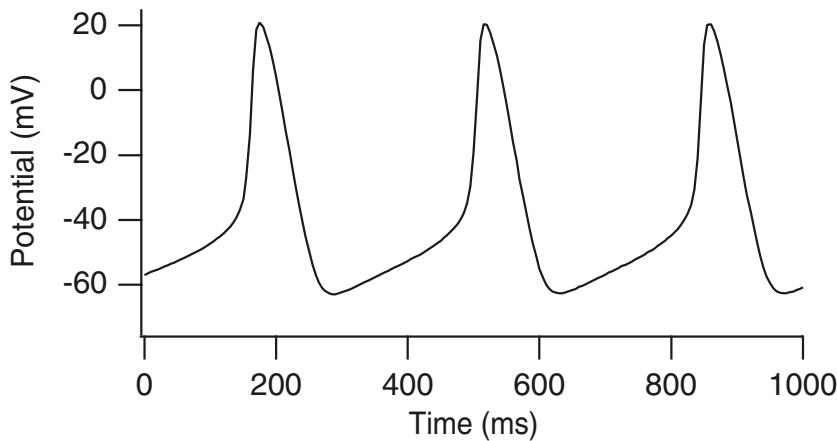
## 12.2.1 Purkinje Fibers

### A Phenomenological Approach

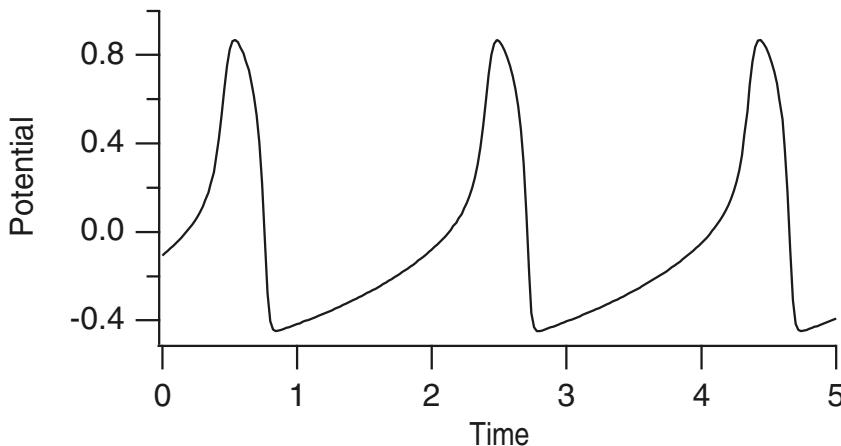
Subsequent to the work of Hodgkin and Huxley, there was substantial work done to apply their modeling approach to many different cell types, including cardiac cells. The first such model describing the action potential of a cardiac cell was proposed



**Figure 12.11** Action potential for the Noble model.



**Figure 12.12** Membrane potential for the YNI model of SA nodal behavior.

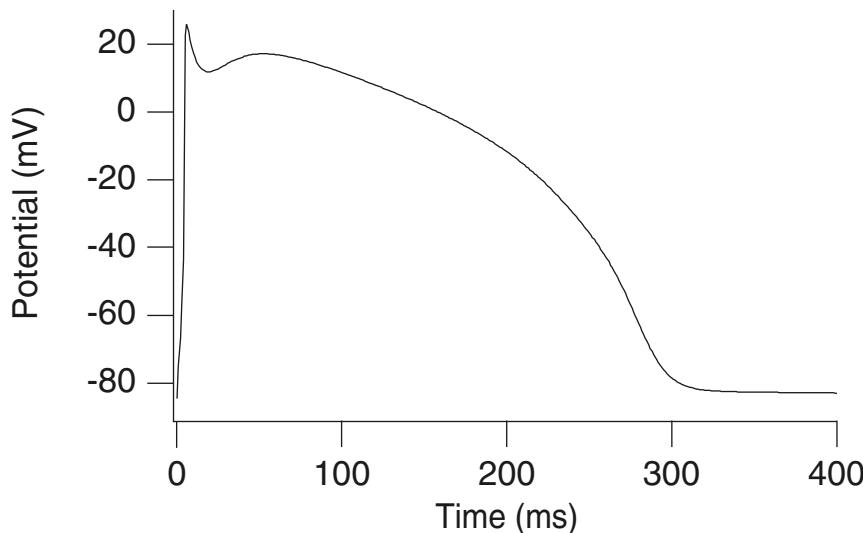


**Figure 12.13** The potential  $v(t)$  of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations with  $f(v, w) = v(1 - v)(v - \alpha) - w$ ,  $g(v, w) = w - \gamma v$ , with  $\epsilon = 0.02$ ,  $\alpha = -0.05$ ,  $\gamma = -0.6$ .

by Noble (1962) for Purkinje fiber cells. The primary purpose of the model was to show that the action potential of a Purkinje fiber cell could be captured by a model of Hodgkin–Huxley type. The Noble model is of Hodgkin–Huxley type, expressed in terms of ionic currents and conductances. In this model there are three currents, identified as an inward  $\text{Na}^+$  current, an outward  $\text{K}^+$  current, and a  $\text{Cl}^-$  leak current, all of which are assumed to satisfy a linear instantaneous  $I$ – $V$  relation,

$$I = g(V - V_{\text{eq}}). \quad (12.12)$$

For the Noble model, all changes in conductances that were measured in  $\text{Na}^+$ -deficient solutions were assumed to be for currents carried by  $\text{K}^+$  ions and are therefore



**Figure 12.14** Action potential for the Beeler–Reuter equations.

**Table 12.1** Ion concentrations in most cardiac cells.

Ion	Extracellular (mM)	Intracellular (mM)	Nernst Potential (mV)
Na <sup>+</sup>	145	15	60
Cl <sup>-</sup>	100	5	-80
K <sup>+</sup>	4.5	160	-95
Ca <sup>2+</sup>	1.8	0.0001	130
H <sup>+</sup>	0.0001	0.0002	-18

called K<sup>+</sup> currents (thus, the Cl<sup>-</sup> current is taken to be zero). While it is now known that not all these currents are carried by K<sup>+</sup> ions, here we follow Noble's original nomenclature.

Following the usual Hodgkin–Huxley formulation, the balance of transmembrane currents is expressed by the conservation law

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + g_{\text{Na}}(V - V_{\text{Na}}) + (g_{K_1} + g_{K_2})(V - V_K) + g_{\text{an}}(V - V_{\text{an}}) = I_{\text{app}}, \quad (12.13)$$

where  $g_{\text{an}} = 0$  and  $V_{\text{an}} = -60$  are the conductance and equilibrium potential, respectively, for the anion Cl<sup>-</sup> current (which therefore is not needed). In addition,  $V_{\text{Na}} = 40$  and  $V_K = -100$ .

The Noble model assumes two different types of K<sup>+</sup> channels: an instantaneous, voltage-dependent, channel, and a time-dependent channel. The time-dependent K<sup>+</sup> channel has a similar form to the Hodgkin–Huxley K<sup>+</sup> channel, except that it is about

100 times slower in its response, in order to prolong the action potential plateau. This current is sometimes called the *delayed rectifier current*, because it is delayed and because it is primarily an outward (rectified) current. The conductance for this channel,  $g_{K_2}$ , depends on a time-dependent  $K^+$  activation variable  $n$  through

$$g_{K_2} = 1.2n^4. \quad (12.14)$$

The conductance for the instantaneous channel is described empirically by

$$g_{K_1} = 1.2 \exp\left(-\frac{V + 90}{50}\right) + 0.015 \exp\left(\frac{V + 90}{60}\right). \quad (12.15)$$

The  $Na^+$  conductance for the Noble model is of a form similar to that in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, being

$$g_{Na} = 400m^3h + g_i, \quad (12.16)$$

where  $g_i = 0.14$ , with the fixed inward bias from  $g_i$  enabling a prolonged action potential without necessitating major reworking of the dynamics of  $h$  and  $m$ .

The time dependence of the variables  $m$ ,  $n$ , and  $h$  is of the form

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = \alpha_w(1 - w) - \beta_w w, \quad (12.17)$$

with  $w = m, n$ , or  $h$ , where  $\alpha_w$  and  $\beta_w$  are all of the form

$$\frac{C_1 \exp(\frac{V - V_0}{C_2}) + C_3(V - V_0)}{1 + C_4 \exp(\frac{V - V_0}{C_5})}. \quad (12.18)$$

The constants  $C_1, \dots, C_5$  and  $V_0$  are displayed in Table 12.2.

In the Noble model,  $C_m = 12$ , which is unrealistically large. This value was used because it gives a correct time scale for the length of the action potential. The choice was justified by arguing that the effective capacitance for a small bundle of cylindrical cells, for which the data were obtained, should be larger than for a single cylindrical cell, the surface area of which is only a small fraction of the total cell membrane area.

Numerical simulations show that the Noble model produces an action potential that has correct features, seen in Fig. 12.11. The sharp upstroke comes from a large, fast, inward  $Na^+$  current, and the plateau is maintained by a continued inward  $Na^+$  current

**Table 12.2** Defining values for rate constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  for the Noble model.

	$C_1$	$C_2$	$C_3$	$C_4$	$C_5$	$V_0$
$\alpha_m$	0	—	0.1	-1	-15	-48
$\beta_m$	0	—	-0.12	-1	5	-8
$\alpha_h$	0.17	-20	0	0	—	-90
$\beta_h$	1	$\infty$	0	1	-10	-42
$\alpha_n$	0	—	0.0001	-1	-10	-50
$\beta_n$	0.002	-80	0	0	—	-90

(with conductance  $g_i$ ), which nearly counterbalances the instantaneous outward  $K^+$  current. Gradually, the slow outward  $K^+$  current is activated, causing repolarization. A small inward  $Na^+$  leak, called the *pacemaker current*, also allows the potential to creep upward, eventually initiating another action potential.

Because of the sharp spike at the beginning of the action potential, it is not possible to reproduce the Purkinje fiber action potential with a two-variable FitzHugh–Nagumo-type model. However, by setting  $m = m_\infty(V)$ , the Noble model can be reduced to a three-variable model that retains the primary qualitative features of the original model.

### A Physiological Approach

While the Noble model succeeds in reproducing the Purkinje fiber action potential with a model of Hodgkin–Huxley type, the underlying physiology is incorrect, primarily because the model was constructed before data on the ionic currents were available. This lack of data was mostly because the voltage-clamp technique was not successfully applied to cardiac membrane until 1964.

The weakness of the physiology in the Noble model is exemplified by the fact that there is no current identified with  $Ca^{2+}$  ions, and the inward  $Na^+$  current was given the dual role of generating the upstroke and maintaining the plateau.

In 1975, McAllister, Noble, and Tsien (MNT) presented an improved model for the action potential of Purkinje fibers. This model is based on a “mosaic of experimental results,” because unlike the data used for the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, the required information was not obtained from a single experimental preparation. Furthermore, the model is known to have an inadequate description of the  $Na^+$  current, so that the upstroke velocity is not accurate.

The MNT model is similar to the Noble model in that it is based on a description of transmembrane ionic currents. It is substantially more complicated than most models of its time, having nine ionic currents and nine gating variables. There are two inward currents,  $I_{Na}$  and  $I_{si}$  (called the “slow inward” current). The current  $I_{Na}$  resembles the Hodgkin–Huxley  $Na^+$  current and is represented as

$$I_{Na} = \bar{g}_{Na} m^3 h (V - V_{Na}), \quad (12.19)$$

where  $m$  and  $h$  are activation and inactivation gating variables, respectively, and  $V_{Na} = 40$  mV. The inward current  $I_{si}$  has slower kinetics than  $I_{Na}$  and is carried, at least partly, by  $Ca^{2+}$  ions. This current  $I_{si}$  has two components and is given by

$$I_{si} = (0.8df + 0.04d')(V - V_{si}), \quad (12.20)$$

where  $V_{si} = 70$  mV. The variables  $d$  and  $f$  are time-dependent activation and inactivation variables, respectively, while  $d'$  is only voltage-dependent, being

$$d' = \frac{1}{1 + \exp(-0.15(V + 40))}. \quad (12.21)$$

In the MNT model, there are three time-dependent outward K<sup>+</sup> currents, denoted by  $I_{K_2}$ ,  $I_{x_1}$ , and  $I_{x_2}$ . None of these resemble the squid K<sup>+</sup> current from a quantitative point of view, although all are described using an activation variable and no inactivation variable. The current  $I_{K_2}$  is called the *pacemaker current* because it is responsible for periodically initiating an action potential, and it is given by

$$I_{K_2} = 2.8\bar{I}_{K_2}s, \quad (12.22)$$

where

$$\bar{I}_{K_2} = \frac{\exp(0.04(V + 110)) - 1}{\exp(0.08(V + 60)) + \exp(0.04(V + 60))}. \quad (12.23)$$

The currents  $I_{x_1}$  and  $I_{x_2}$  are called *plateau currents* and are governed by

$$I_{x_1} = 1.2x_1 \frac{\exp(0.04(V + 95)) - 1}{\exp(0.04(V + 45))}, \quad (12.24)$$

$$I_{x_2} = x_2(25 + 0.385V). \quad (12.25)$$

There is also a time-dependent outward current  $I_{Cl}$  carried by Cl<sup>-</sup> ions, which is described by

$$I_{Cl} = 2.5qr(V - V_{Cl}), \quad (12.26)$$

where  $q$  and  $r$  are activation and inactivation variables, and  $V_{Cl} = -70$  mV.

Finally, there are several background (leak) currents that are time-independent. There is an outward background current of K<sup>+</sup> ions, described by

$$I_{K_1} = \bar{I}_{K_2} + 0.2 \frac{V + 30}{1 - \exp(-0.04(V + 30))}, \quad (12.27)$$

where  $\bar{I}_{K_2}$  is given by (12.23). There is an inward background Na<sup>+</sup> current described by

$$I_{Na,b} = 0.105(V - 40), \quad (12.28)$$

and, finally, a background Cl<sup>-</sup> current, given by

$$I_{Cl,b} = 0.01(V + 70). \quad (12.29)$$

All of the conductances are specified in units of mS/cm<sup>2</sup>, and voltage is in mV. The nine gating variables  $m, d, s, x_1, x_2, q, h, f$ , and  $r$  all satisfy first-order differential equations of the form (12.17), where  $\alpha_w$  and  $\beta_w$  are of the form (12.18). The constants  $C_1, \dots, C_5$  and  $V_0$  are listed in Table 12.3.

The action potential for the MNT model is essentially the same as that for the Noble model, so the advantage of the MNT model is that it better isolates and depicts the activity of different channels during an action potential. Of course, because it is more complicated than the Noble model, it is also much harder to understand the model from a qualitative perspective. It therefore illustrates nicely the modeler's dilemma, the constant struggle to balance the demand for quantitative detail and qualitative understanding.

**Table 12.3** Defining values for  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  for the MNT model.

	$C_1$	$C_2$	$C_3$	$C_4$	$C_5$	$V_0$
$\alpha_m$	0	—	1	-1	-10	-47
$\beta_m$	40	-17.86	0	0	—	-72
$\alpha_h$	0.0085	-5.43	0	0	—	-71
$\beta_h$	2.5	$\infty$	0	1	-12.2	-10
$\alpha_d$	0	—	0.002	-1	-10	-40
$\beta_d$	0.02	-11.26	0	0	—	-40
$\alpha_f$	0.000987	-25	0	0	—	-60
$\beta_f$	1	$\infty$	0	1	-11.49	-26
$\alpha_q$	0	—	0.008	-1	-10	0
$\beta_q$	0.08	-11.26	0	0	—	0
$\alpha_r$	0.00018	-25	0	0	—	-80
$\beta_r$	0.02	$\infty$	0	1	-11.49	-26
$\alpha_s$	0	—	0.001	-1	-5	-52
$\beta_s$	$5.0 \times 10^{-5}$	-14.93	0	0	—	-52
$\alpha_{x_1}$	0.0005	12.1	0	1	17.5	-50
$\beta_{x_1}$	0.0013	-16.67	0	1	-25	-20
$\alpha_{x_2}$	$1.27 \times 10^{-4}$	$\infty$	0	1	-5	-19
$\beta_{x_2}$	0.0003	-16.67	0	1	-25	-20

## 12.2.2 Sinoatrial Node

Cells within the sinoatrial (SA) node are the primary pacemaker site within the heart. These cells are characterized as having no true resting potential, but instead generate regular, spontaneous action potentials. Unlike most other cells that elicit action potentials (e.g., nerve cells, muscle cells), the depolarizing current is carried primarily by a relatively slow, inward  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current instead of by fast  $\text{Na}^+$  currents. There are, in fact, no fast  $\text{Na}^+$  currents in SA nodal cells. Phase 0 depolarization (recall Fig. 12.2) is due primarily to increased  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conductance. Because the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels open more slowly than  $\text{Na}^+$  channels (hence, the term “slow inward  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current”), the rate of depolarization (slope of Phase 0) is much slower than found in other cardiac cells (e.g., Purkinje cells, ventricular cells). Repolarization occurs (Phase 3) as  $\text{K}^+$  conductance increases and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conductance decreases. Spontaneous depolarization (Phase 4) is due to a fall in  $\text{K}^+$  conductance and to a small increase in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conductance. A slow inward  $\text{Na}^+$  current also contributes to Phase 4, and is thought to be responsible for the pacemaker current. Once this spontaneous depolarization reaches threshold (about -40 mV), a new action potential is triggered.

One of the earliest models of action potential behavior for SA nodal cells is due to Yanagihara et al. (1980). As with all cardiac cell models, the YNI model is of Hodgkin-Huxley type. The YNI model includes four time-dependent currents. These are a fast inward current (incorrectly identified as a  $\text{Na}^+$  current)  $I_{\text{Na}}$ , and the  $\text{K}^+$  current  $I_K$ , both of which are modeled similar to the Hodgkin-Huxley currents, as well as a slow

inward current  $I_s$ , and a delayed inward current activated by hyperpolarization  $I_h$ . Finally, there is a time-independent leak current  $I_l$ .

The conservation of transmembrane current takes the form

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + I_{\text{Na}} + I_K + I_l + I_s + I_h = I_{\text{app}}, \quad (12.30)$$

where

$$I_{\text{Na}} = 0.5m^3h(V - 30), \quad (12.31)$$

$$I_K = 0.7p \frac{\exp(0.0277(V + 90)) - 1}{\exp(0.0277(V + 40))}, \quad (12.32)$$

$$I_l = 0.8 \left( 1 - \exp \left( -\frac{V + 60}{20} \right) \right), \quad (12.33)$$

$$I_s = 12.5(0.95d + 0.05)(0.95f + 0.05) \left( \exp \left( \frac{V - 10}{15} \right) - 1 \right), \quad (12.34)$$

$$I_h = 0.4q(V + 45). \quad (12.35)$$

As usual, the six gating variables  $m, h, p, d, f$ , and  $q$  satisfy first-order differential equations of the form (12.17). Some of the constants  $\alpha_w$  and  $\beta_w$  can be written in the form (12.18) with constant values as shown in Table 12.4. Those that do not fit this form are

$$\alpha_p = 9 \times 10^{-3} \frac{1}{1 + \exp \left( -\frac{V+3.8}{9.71} \right)} + 6 \times 10^{-4}, \quad (12.36)$$

$$\alpha_q = 3.4 \times 10^{-4} \frac{(V + 100)}{\exp \left( \frac{V+100}{4.4} \right) - 1} + 4.95 \times 10^{-5}, \quad (12.37)$$

$$\beta_q = 5 \times 10^{-4} \frac{(V + 40)}{1 - \exp \left( -\frac{V+40}{6} \right)} + 8.45 \times 10^{-5}, \quad (12.38)$$

$$\alpha_d = 1.045 \times 10^{-2} \frac{(V + 35)}{1 - \exp \left( -\frac{V+35}{2.5} \right)} + 3.125 \times 10^{-2} \frac{V}{1 - \exp \left( -\frac{V}{4.8} \right)}, \quad (12.39)$$

$$\beta_f = 9.44 \times 10^{-4} \frac{(V + 60)}{1 + \exp \left( -\frac{V+29.5}{4.16} \right)}. \quad (12.40)$$

The behavior of the YNI equations is depicted in Fig. 12.12. The action potential is shaped similarly to the Hodgkin–Huxley action potential but is periodic in time and slower. The  $\text{Na}^+$  current is a fast current, and there is little loss in accuracy in replacing  $m(t)$  with  $m_\infty(V)$ . The most significant current in the YNI model is the slow inward current  $I_s$ . Not only does this current provide for most of the upstroke, it is also responsible for the oscillation, in that after repolarization by the  $\text{K}^+$  current, the slow inward current gradually depolarizes the node until threshold is reached and an action potential is initiated.

**Table 12.4** Defining values for  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  for the YNI model.

	$C_1$	$C_2$	$C_3$	$C_4$	$C_5$	$V_0$
$\alpha_m$	0	—	1	-1	-10	-37
$\beta_m$	40	-17.8	0	0	—	-62
$\alpha_h$	$1.209 \times 10^{-3}$	-6.534	0	0	—	-20
$\beta_h$	1	$\infty$	0	1	-10	-30
$\beta_p$	0	—	$-2.25 \times 10^{-4}$	-1	13.3	-40
$\beta_d$	0	—	$-4.21 \times 10^{-3}$	-1	2.5	5
$\alpha_f$	0	—	$-3.55 \times 10^{-4}$	-1	5.633	-20

Because the action potential of the SA node has no initial spike, it is relatively easy to replicate it using the two-variable FitzHugh–Nagumo equations. In Fig. 12.13 is shown the periodic activity of a cubic FitzHugh–Nagumo model with action potential spikes similar to those of the YNI model.

### 12.2.3 Ventricular Cells

The first model of the electrical behavior of ventricular myocardial cells (Beeler and Reuter, 1977) appeared shortly after the MNT equations. Like the models previously described, this model is based on data obtained from voltage-clamp experiments. The Beeler–Reuter equations are less complicated than the MNT equations, since there are only four transmembrane currents that are described, two inward currents, one fast and one slow, and two outward currents, one time-independent and one time-dependent.

As usual, there is the inward  $\text{Na}^+$  current

$$I_{\text{Na}} = (4m^3hj + 0.003)(V - 50), \quad (12.41)$$

which is gated by the variables  $m$ ,  $h$ , and  $j$ . Here, Beeler and Reuter found it necessary to include the reactivation variable  $j$ , because the reactivation process is much slower than inactivation and cannot be accurately modeled with the single variable  $h$ . Thus, the  $\text{Na}^+$  current is activated by  $m$ , inactivated by  $h$ , and reactivated by  $j$ , the slowest of the three variables. The functions  $h_\infty$  and  $j_\infty$  are identical; it is their time constants that differ. Notice also the inclusion of a  $\text{Na}^+$  leak current; a similar  $\text{Na}^+$  leak was included in the Noble and MNT models.

The  $\text{K}^+$  current has two components: a time-independent current

$$I_{\text{K}} = 1.4 \frac{\exp(0.04(V + 85)) - 1}{\exp(0.08(V + 53)) + \exp(0.04(V + 53))} + 0.07 \frac{v + 23.0}{1.0 - \exp(-0.04(V + 23.0))} \quad (12.42)$$

and a time-activated outward current

$$I_x = 0.8x \frac{\exp(0.04(V + 77)) - 1}{\exp(0.04(V + 35))}. \quad (12.43)$$

The pacemaker K<sup>+</sup> current used in the MNT model is not active in myocardial tissue, which is not spontaneously oscillatory.

The primary difference between a ventricular cell and a Purkinje cell is the presence of Ca<sup>2+</sup>, which is needed to activate the contractile machinery. Later in this chapter, we provide a more modern, detailed account of Ca<sup>2+</sup> handling in ventricular cells. For the Beeler–Reuter equations, however, the Ca<sup>2+</sup> influx is modeled by the slow inward current

$$I_s = 0.09fd(V + 82.3 + 13.0287 \ln[\text{Ca}]_i), \quad (12.44)$$

activated by  $d$  and inactivated by  $f$ . Since the reversal potential for  $I_s$  is Ca<sup>2+</sup>-dependent, the internal Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration must be tracked, via

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = 0.07(1 - c) - I_s, \quad (12.45)$$

where  $c = 10^7[\text{Ca}]_i$ . Since currents are taken as positive outward, the intracellular source of Ca<sup>2+</sup> is  $-I_s$ .

The gating variables follow (12.17), where  $\alpha_w$  and  $\beta_w$  are of the form (12.18) with constants as displayed in Table 12.5. For these equations, units of  $V$  are in mV, conductances are in units of mS/cm<sup>2</sup>, and time is measured in milliseconds (ms). A plot of the Beeler–Reuter action potential is shown in Fig. 12.14. The long plateau is maintained by the slow inward (Ca<sup>2+</sup>) current, and the return to the resting potential is mediated by the slow outward K<sup>+</sup> current  $I_{x_1}$ .

It is a fact of modeling that most models have a relatively short lifetime. They are initially proposed because they address a particular problem or feature, but then as weaknesses become apparent, they are supplanted by a new, improved version, whose fate is ultimately similar to the model it replaces. Examples of improved ionic models

---

**Table 12.5** Defining values for  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  for the Beeler–Reuter model.

---

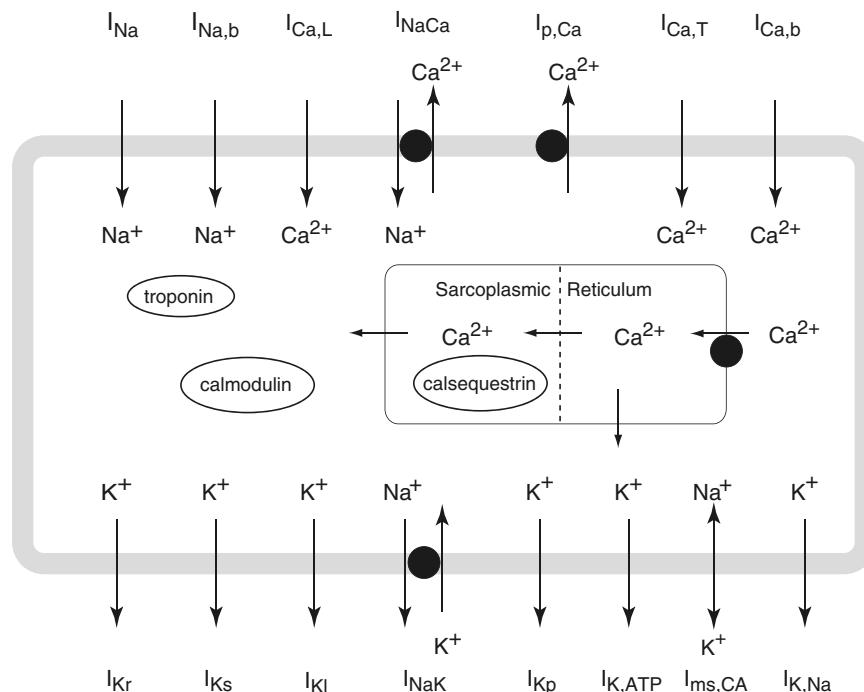
	$C_1$	$C_2$	$C_3$	$C_4$	$C_5$	$V_0$
$\alpha_m$	0	—	1	-1	-10	-47
$\beta_m$	40	-17.86	0	0	—	-72
$\alpha_h$	0.126	-4	0	0	—	-77
$\beta_h$	1.7	$\infty$	0	1	-12.2	-22.5
$\alpha_j$	0.055	-4	0	1	-5	-78
$\beta_j$	0.3	$\infty$	0	1	-10	-32
$\alpha_d$	0.095	-100	0	1	-13.9	5
$\beta_d$	0.07	-58.5	0	1	20	-44
$\alpha_f$	0.012	-125	0	1	6.67	-28
$\beta_f$	0.0065	-50	0	1	-5	-30
$\alpha_x$	0.0005	12	0	1	17.5	-50
$\beta_x$	0.0013	-16.67	0	1	-25	-20

are those by DiFrancesco and Noble (1985) for Purkinje fiber cells and by Noble and Noble (1984) for the SA node.

Although the Beeler–Reuter model has had a fairly long and robust run of popularity, it too is gradually being replaced by updated models. One of the first modifications to the Beeler–Reuter model was of its  $\text{Na}^+$  current. At the time the Beeler–Reuter equations were published, it was not possible to measure accurately the fast  $\text{Na}^+$  inward current, because it activates so rapidly. As a result, all the early models (Noble, MNT, BR) used the Hodgkin–Huxley formulation of the  $\text{Na}^+$  current. However, it is known that this does not give a sufficiently rapid upstroke for the action potential. This has little effect on the space-clamped action potential, but it has an important effect on the propagation speed for propagated action potentials.

Once appropriate data became available, it was possible to suggest an improved description of the  $\text{Na}^+$  current. Thus, a modification of the  $\text{Na}^+$  current was proposed by Ebihara and Johnson (1980) (EJ), which has since become the standard for most myocardial simulations.

As of this writing, the most popular detailed model of the electrical activity of ventricular myocytes is the Luo–Rudy (LR-II) model (Luo and Rudy, 1994a,b). An earlier model (LR-I, Luo and Rudy, 1991) was a direct generalization of the Beeler–Reuter model. In Fig. 12.15 is shown a diagram of all the currents included in the LR-II model.



**Figure 12.15** Diagram of currents included in the LR-II model.

Improvements and modifications to the LR-II model are continually being made. For example, many of the currents in the model are being given Markovian formulations, and with these it is feasible to study the effect of mutations to the channel proteins on action potential dynamics (Clancy and Rudy, 1999, 2001).

Other modifications to these models include specialization to human ventricular myocytes, as in ten Tusscher et al. (2004), or to human atrial myocytes as in Courtemanche et al. (1998). The computer codes for many models of cardiac electrical behavior can be found as part of CellML, at <http://www.cellml.org>.

### 12.2.4 Cardiac Excitation–Contraction Coupling

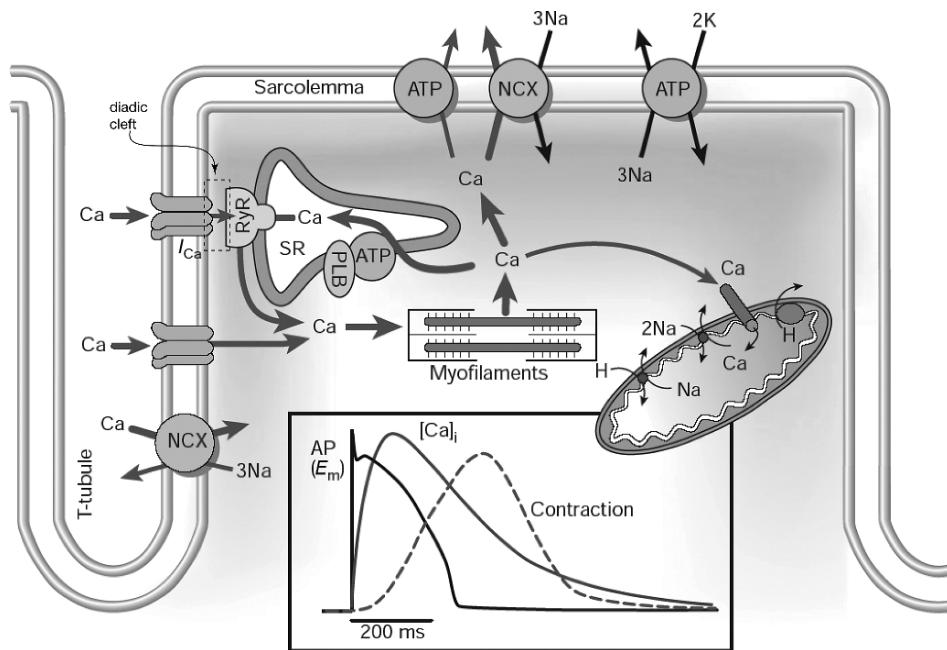
The final form for a myocardial ionic model has not yet been determined, since there are continual suggestions for improvements and modifications. A major difficulty with the above-mentioned models is with the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current and the internal  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. In recent years, however, there has been a virtual explosion of information regarding  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  handling in cardiac cells, the topic to which we now turn our attention.

Excitation–contraction (EC) coupling is the process whereby an electrical stimulus is converted into muscle contraction. The basic steps of EC coupling in ventricular myocytes are shown in Fig. 12.16. Depolarization of the T-tubule by the action potential causes the opening of L-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels (also called dihydropyridine receptors, or DHPRs) and resultant inward flow of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current ( $I_{\text{Ca}}$ ). The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  that enters the cell stimulates the release of additional  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the SR via ryanodine receptors (RyR) by the process of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, or CICR (Chapter 7). This  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffuses through the myoplasm and binds to the myofilaments, causing contraction, before being eventually removed from the myoplasm by ATPases, which pump the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the SR or out of the cell, or by the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger (NCX), which transfers  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to the outside of the cell.

In skeletal muscle the process is slightly different, in that the L-type channels are directly linked to the RyR; a change in conformation of the channel as a result of depolarization causes an immediate change in conformation of the RyR and consequent  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release. Another important difference is that, in skeletal muscle, the T-tubules penetrate into the cell in two places per sarcomere, near the junction of the A and I bands (as shown in Fig. 15.1), while in cardiac cells the T-tubules penetrate only once per sarcomere, at the Z-lines. Here we only discuss EC coupling in cardiac cells.

There is an extensive literature, both experimental and theoretical, on EC coupling. The most comprehensive review of the experimental literature is that of Bers (2001), while the modeling literature is most easily accessed through the reviews of Soeller and Cannell (2004) and Winslow et al. (2005). The shorter review by Bers (2002) is a useful introduction to the field.

Although  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  fluxes are relatively well understood in many cell types (Chapter 7), the study of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics in cardiac cells is made much more difficult by the spatial aspects of the problem. Both the L-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels and the RyR release  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into



**Figure 12.16** The major  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  fluxes underlying excitation–contraction coupling in cardiac ventricular myocytes. NCX is the  $\text{Na}^{+}\text{-}\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger; PLB is phospholamban; SR is the sarcoplasmic reticulum. The inset shows the time courses of the action potential (AP), the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transient, and the contraction. Note that the AP happens first, followed by the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transient and then by contraction. (Bers, 2002, Fig. 1: reprinted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd.)

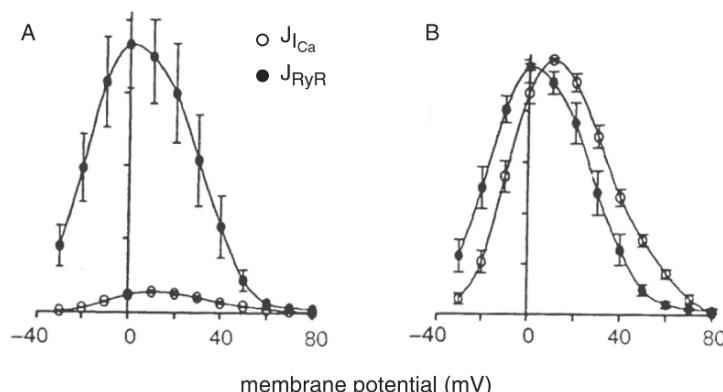
a small volume, the region between the SR and the sarcolemma. This region, called the *diadic cleft*, is only about 15 nm wide with a radius of about 200 nm (although it is not a circular region, it can be reasonably approximated as such), and so has a volume of only about  $2 \times 10^{-18}$  L. Calcium fluxes into such a small volume cause large spatial and temporal gradients that are impossible to measure experimentally and difficult to simulate numerically. Modeling is made even more difficult by the fact that a resting  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration of 200 nM (as is typical for the myoplasm of a ventricular myocyte) corresponds to only about 0.2  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions in the diadic cleft. In this situation, traditional deterministic and continuous models may not even be applicable. In cardiac cells the diadic clefts are separated longitudinally by approximately 2  $\mu\text{m}$ , the length of a sarcomere.

During a single heartbeat, a total of about 70  $\mu\text{moles}$  of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  per liter cytoplasm enters the cell, with about 1% ending up as unbuffered free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the myoplasm, giving a myoplasmic concentration of around 600 nM (nmoles per liter cytoplasm). Since all this influx comes through the diadic cleft, there are clearly large and rapid changes in concentration there. Nevertheless, to understand how the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transient

is controlled it is vital to understand what happens inside the diadic cleft, because it is there that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feeds back on the L-type channels and on the RyR to control the time course of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx and release. Thus, we have the situation in which a full understanding of the macroscopic properties of the cardiac cell (i.e., the myoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration and its effect on the sliding filaments), and thus, ultimately, of the whole heart, requires the study of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics on a much smaller spatial scale. Such problems of how to merge widely differing spatial scales are at the heart of many problems in physiology, particularly those in which one tries to understand the behavior of whole organs by understanding the properties and interactions of single cells.

### 12.2.5 Common-Pool and Local-Control Models

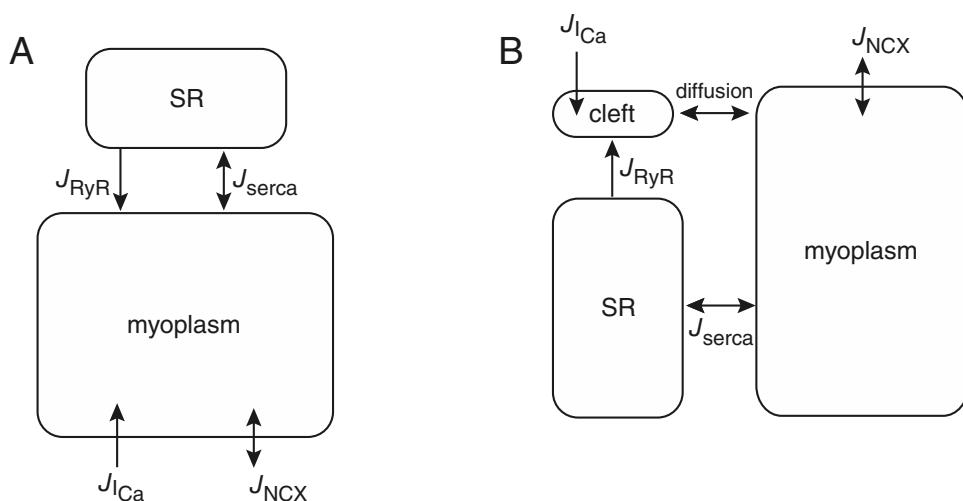
Two of the most important defining characteristics of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release in cardiac myocytes are high gain and graded release. High gain means that, in response to a small  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx ( $J_{I_{\text{Ca}}}$ ), a much larger amount is released through the RyR ( $J_{\text{RyR}}$ ). In fact,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx is about an order of magnitude smaller than  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the SR. Graded release means that, if  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx is smaller, less  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released from the ER; release is a smooth and continuous function of influx. This is illustrated in Fig. 12.17. Part A of that figure shows the total L-type channel flux and the consequent RyR flux as functions of the membrane potential. The first thing to notice is that  $J_{I_{\text{Ca}}}$  is a bell-shaped curve of the potential; at low  $V$ , the current through each open channel is large, but the probability of opening is small. As  $V$  increases, thus increasing the open probability of the channel, the flux increases also. However, as  $V$  gets closer to the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reversal potential of the channel, the current through each open channel begins to fall, leading to a decrease in the total channel flux even though many of the channels are open.



**Figure 12.17** Graded release from the rat ventricular myocytes. A: the lower curve is the flux through the L-type channels ( $J_{I_{\text{Ca}}}$ ), the upper curve is the consequent flux through the RyR ( $J_{\text{RyR}}$ ). B: the same two curves plotted on a normalized scale. Adapted from Wier et al. (1994), Fig. 3, with permission from Blackwell Publishing.

As the L-type channel flux increases smoothly, so does the RyR flux, as can be seen from the upper curve in Fig. 12.17A. Interestingly, comparison of the normalized curves (Fig. 12.17B) shows that the RyR flux decreases at lower voltages than does the L-type channel flux. An explanation for this is that even while the total L-type channel current is an increasing function of voltage (due to the increased number of open channels), the flux through each individual channel decreases, leading to less effective coupling with the RyR and a resultant decrease in RyR flux.

The two requirements of high gain and graded release appear at first to be contradictory, and so require further explanation. An excitable system (Chapter 5), with a response that is approximately all-or-none, can exhibit high gain without difficulty, but in doing so cannot exhibit a graded release. Conversely, a model that exhibits graded release does not usually exhibit high gain in a stable manner. Many models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics in muscle (including those used in Beeler–Reuter and LR-II models) are so-called *common-pool* models, in which it is assumed that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx and release both occur into the same well-mixed compartment. This well-mixed compartment could be the myoplasm, as in Fig. 12.18A, or a subcompartment such as the diadic cleft, as in Fig. 12.18B. Stern (1992) has shown that such common-pool models, at least in the linear regime, cannot exhibit both high gain and graded release; he introduced, instead, the concept of a *local-control* model, in which the close juxtaposition of the L-type channel



**Figure 12.18** Schematic diagrams of two common-pool models. Each model consists of a number of compartments, each of which is assumed to be well mixed. A: a two-compartment model with only the SR and the myoplasm. The L-type channel current is assumed to flow directly into the myoplasm, whence it stimulates the release of further  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the SR. B: a three-compartment model in which the diadic cleft (with small volume) is included.  $J_{\text{NCX}}$  is the  $\text{Na}^{+}-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchange flux. Such common-pool models do not exhibit both a high gain and a graded response.

and the RyR leads to the formation of a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  synapse in which the opening of an RyR is controlled by the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  coming through a nearby L-type channel. Although each diadic cleft responds in an all-or-none manner (yielding high gain), the stochastic properties of the population of clefs can give a graded response. Since each diadic cleft is separated from its neighbors by approximately  $2 \mu\text{m}$  in a longitudinal direction (the length of the sarcomere) and by about  $0.8 \mu\text{m}$  in a transverse direction (Parker et al., 1996c), it can respond in a semi-independent fashion. Statistical recruitment from this large pool of locally controlled semi-independent release sites can result in graded whole-cell release, even though each individual release site is all-or-none.

Detailed models of local control, incorporating (to greater or lesser extents) the spatial geometry of a single diadic cleft and the stochastic properties of the population of clefs, have been constructed by a number of authors (Stern, 1992; Soeller and Cannell, 1997, 2002a,b; Peskoff et al., 1992; Langer and Peskoff, 1996; Stern et al., 1997; Peskoff and Langer, 1998; Smith et al., 1998; Izu et al., 2001; Greenstein and Winslow, 2002; Tameyasu, 2002; Greenstein et al., 2006). In general, these models are complex and rely on detailed numerical simulations, so we do not discuss them here. We merely comment that there are many unresolved questions in the field, which is an area of intense current research.

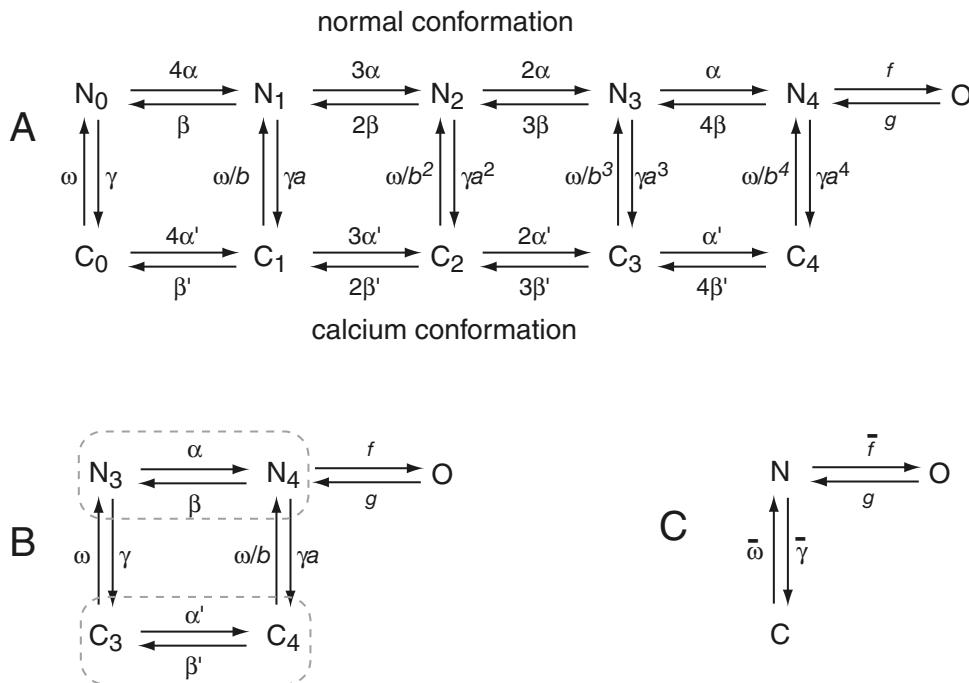
As we saw for models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics in Chapter 7, models of EC coupling are constructed by combining individual models of each of the various  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  fluxes, the most important of which are the L-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel, the RyR, the SERCA pump, and the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger. Here we briefly examine models of each of these fluxes except the SERCA pumps, which are discussed in detail in Chapter 7.

## 12.2.6 The L-type $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ Channel

L-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels are activated and inactivated by voltage, and inactivated by high  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  (Bers and Perez-Reyes, 1999). During an action potential, voltage-dependent inactivation is much less important than  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent inactivation, and thus we ignore the former.

The most detailed model of the L-type channel is that of Jafri et al. (1998), based on an earlier model of Imredy and Yue (1994). It is a model of Monod–Wyman–Changeux type (Chapter 1), a schematic diagram of which is shown in Fig. 12.19. There are two basic conformations of the channel, called, respectively, the normal (top row) and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (bottom row) conformations. State O is the only open state. Depolarization increases the rate at which the channel moves from left to right along either the normal or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conformation. However, it is only from the normal conformation that the channel can change to the open state (transition N<sub>4</sub> to O). Binding of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  causes the channel to move from the normal conformation to the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conformation (i.e., into a conformation from which it cannot access the open state) thus inactivating the receptor.

Good agreement with experimental data can be obtained by simpler versions of this model (Winslow et al., 2005). First, six channel states are omitted, to get the simpler

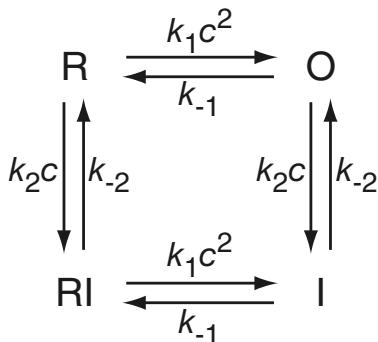


**Figure 12.19** A: The full model of the L-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel due to Jafri et al. (1998). Activation by voltage occurs because  $\alpha = 2e^{0.012(V_m - 35)}$  and  $\beta = 0.0882e^{-0.05(V_m - 35)}$ . Inactivation by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  occurs because  $\gamma = 0.44[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_{\text{cleft}}$ . To satisfy detailed balance,  $\alpha' = a\alpha$  and  $\beta' = \beta/b$ . Other parameter values are  $a = 2$ ,  $b = 1.9$ ,  $f = 0.85 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ ,  $g = 2 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ , and  $\omega = 0.02 \text{ ms}^{-1}$ . B: A simplified model obtained by truncating the leftmost three columns. C: The simplest version of the model, obtained by assuming a fast equilibrium between  $N_3$  and  $N_4$ , and between  $C_3$  and  $C_4$ , as shown by the dashed boxes in part B. It is left as an exercise (Exercise 8) to show that  $\bar{\omega} = \omega \left( \frac{\beta' + \alpha'/b}{\alpha' + \beta'} \right)$ ,  $\bar{\gamma} = \gamma \left( \frac{\beta + a\alpha}{\alpha + \beta} \right)$ , and  $\bar{f} = \frac{\alpha f}{\alpha + \beta}$ .

diagram shown in Fig. 12.19B, and then the two remaining states in the normal conformation are amalgamated by assuming fast equilibrium, as are the remaining two states in the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conformation (Fig. 12.19C). The details of this model simplification are left as an exercise (Exercise 8).

## 12.2.7 The Ryanodine Receptor

One model of the RyR due to Friel has already been described in Section 7.2.9. For this model it was assumed that activation of the RyR by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is instantaneous, and that inactivation by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is unimportant. However, the RyR was assumed to be activated by the cytoplasmic  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  and thus the spatial aspects peculiar to myocytes were not considered. Controversy surrounds the exact properties of RyR in cardiac and skeletal muscle (an excellent review is by Fill and Copello, 2002). There is widespread



**Figure 12.20** Model of the RyR due to Stern et al. (1999). R and RI are closed states, O is the open state, and I is the inactivated state. The rate constants depend on  $c$ , the  $[Ca^{2+}]$  in the diadic cleft. Stern et al. used the parameters  $k_1 = 35 \mu M^{-2} (ms)^{-1}$ ,  $k_{-1} = 0.06 (ms)^{-1}$ ,  $k_2 = 0.5 \mu M^{-1} (ms)^{-1}$ ,  $k_{-2} = 0.005 (ms)^{-1}$ .

agreement, first, that (in cardiac myocytes)  $Ca^{2+}$  is released through the RyR by a process of  $Ca^{2+}$ -induced  $Ca^{2+}$  release, giving explosive positive feedback that is crucial for EC coupling, and, second, that the RyR must respond to localized  $Ca^{2+}$  concentrations in the diadic cleft and thus have “privileged access” to the  $Ca^{2+}$  entering through the L-type channel. However, there must also be some mechanism to terminate flux through the RyR, and it is here that agreement ends. A number of mechanisms have been proposed: inactivation by diadic cleft  $Ca^{2+}$ , depletion of the SR  $Ca^{2+}$ , stochastic fluctuations resulting in RyR closure, and adaptation of the receptor. There is not enough space here to discuss in detail all the hypothetical models and the arguments for and against them. A typical model (Stern et al., 1999) is shown in Fig. 12.20. This model is based on the generic model of an adapting receptor discussed in Section 16.4. Binding of  $Ca^{2+}$  can first open the receptor (state O), but then subsequent, slower, binding of  $Ca^{2+}$  can inactivate the receptor (state I). The application of this class of models to both ryanodine and inositol trisphosphate receptors is discussed by Cheng et al. (1995) and Sachs et al. (1995).

Shannon et al. (2004) modified this basic model by assuming that the SR  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration modifies the rate constants, while a number of other groups have developed RyR models of greater or lesser complexity (Schiefer et al., 1995; Keizer and Levine, 1996; Zahradníková and Zahradník, 1996; Keizer and Smith, 1998; Fill et al., 2000; Sobie et al., 2002). However, there is still no consensus as to which of this multitude of models best describes RyR behavior *in vivo*.

### 12.2.8 The $Na^+-Ca^{2+}$ Exchanger

All the  $Ca^{2+}$  that enters the myocyte through the L-type  $Ca^{2+}$  channel must be removed before the next heartbeat, otherwise the cell could not attain a steady state. Most of this removal is effected by the NCX, which, in rabbit, removes more than ten times the amount removed by the sarcolemmal  $Ca^{2+}$  ATPase. However, it appears that the NCX also allows for  $Ca^{2+}$  entry during the beginning of the  $Ca^{2+}$  transient.  $Na^+-Ca^{2+}$  exchange is reversible, with three  $Na^+$  ions exchanged for one  $Ca^{2+}$  ion. Thus, the exchanger is electrogenic; its rate and direction depend on the membrane potential and

the intracellular and extracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Na}^+$  concentrations. A positive membrane potential increases the exchanger's outward current, thus increasing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx, while an increase in intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  leads to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  extrusion, and thus inward exchanger current.

These features can be seen in the model of the exchanger that was discussed in Section 2.4.3. In that model, the outward  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flux,  $J$ , through the exchanger is given by

$$J = \frac{k_1 k_2 k_3 k_4 (c_i n_e^3 - e^{\frac{FV_m}{RT}} c_e n_i^3)}{16 \text{ other terms}}, \quad (12.46)$$

where  $V_m$  is the membrane potential,  $n$  is  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration,  $c$  is  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, and subscripts  $i$  and  $e$  denote, respectively, internal and external concentrations. Notice that the flux of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is outward whenever

$$\frac{c_i}{c_e} > e^{\frac{FV_m}{RT}} \frac{n_i^3}{n_e^3}. \quad (12.47)$$

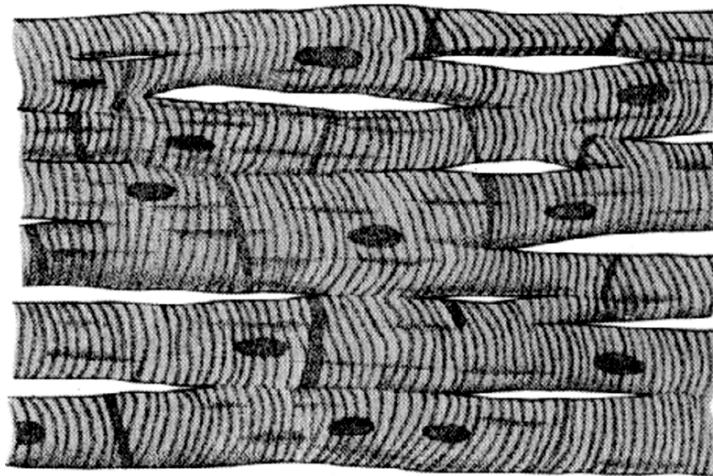
Thus, as the membrane depolarizes, the outward flux decreases and reverses for high enough  $V_m$ , resulting in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx. This is what happens during the beginning of the action potential following depolarization. However,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx through the L-type channel and release from the RyR causes a rise in  $c_i$  that counterbalances the effects of depolarization, resulting in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  efflux through the exchanger.

## 12.3 Cellular Coupling

A single cell model, no matter how detailed or precise, can never capture the range of dynamic behaviors of cardiac tissue. This is because many of the behaviors are inherently spatio-temporal, that is, they can occur only in spatially distributed systems of cells, never in single cells.

As we will see, spatial coupling of cells has two opposite, but important features. First, coupling between cells tends to synchronize or homogenize their behavior, and second, coupling allows one excited cell to excite its neighbors, so that action potentials can propagate.

Myocardial cells are cable-like, roughly cylindrical, typically  $100 \mu\text{m}$  long and  $15 \mu\text{m}$  in diameter. They are packed together in a three-dimensional irregular brick-like packing, surrounded by extracellular medium (Fig. 12.21). Each cell has specialized contacts with its neighboring cells, mainly in end-to-end fashion, facilitated by a step-like surface that locks into neighboring cells. The opposing cell membranes form the *intercalated disk* structure. While the end-to-end cell membranes are typically separated by about 250 angstroms, there are places, called *junctions*, where the pre- and postjunctional membranes are fused together. The mechanical adhesion of cells is provided by adhering junctions in the intercalated disk, known as *desmosomes* or *tight junctions*. The electrical coupling of cells is provided by gap junctions (Chapter 8).



**Figure 12.21** Cardiac cell structure. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 9-2, p. 108.)

The intercellular channels provided by the gap junctions are around 20 angstroms in diameter and are characterized as “low-resistance” because the effective resistance is considerably less than what would result from two cell membranes butted together. However, compared to the intracellular cytoplasm, the gap junctions are of high resistance, simply because the cross-sectional area for electrical conduction through gap junctions is greatly reduced (about two percent of the total cross-sectional area).

### 12.3.1 One-Dimensional Fibers

To model a cardiac fiber, we consider a simple one-dimensional collection of cylindrical cells (with perimeter  $p$ ) coupled in end-to-end fashion via gap junctions. From Chapter 8, we know that in each cell we have the cable equation,

$$p \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_c} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x} \right) = - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_e} \frac{\partial V_e}{\partial x} \right), \quad (12.48)$$

with  $r_c = \frac{R_c}{A_i}$  and  $r_e = \frac{R_e}{A_e}$ , where  $R_c$  and  $R_e$  are the resistivities of intracellular and extracellular space, respectively,  $A_i$  and  $A_e$  are the average cellular intracellular and extracellular cross-sectional areas, and  $p$  is the perimeter of the cell. At the ends of cells (each of length  $L$ ), there is a jump in intracellular potential, but the intracellular current  $-\frac{1}{r_c} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x}$  must be continuous. Assuming that gap junctions behave like ohmic resistors, the drop in the potential across the junction is proportional to the current through the junction,

$$\frac{[V_i]}{r_g} = \frac{1}{r_c} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x}, \quad (12.49)$$

where  $[V_i]$  is the jump in intracellular potential across the gap junctions and  $r_g$  is the effective gap-junctional resistance. Here we are also making the assumption that there are no transmembrane currents across the ends of the cell into the small extracellular gap that separates the cells. (Recent evidence suggests that  $\text{Na}^+$  channels may have a higher density at the ends of cells than along the cell wall (Kucera et al., 2002) so this assumption may not be valid.) The extracellular potential and current are continuous, unaffected by the gap junctions.

The time constant for this fiber is the same as (4.16). The space constant, however, is affected by the gap-junctional resistance. To find the space constant, we take  $I_{\text{ion}} = V/R_m = (V_i - V_e)/R_m$  (linearized around the resting potential) and look for a geometrically decaying solution, with  $V_i(x + L) = \mu V_i(x)$ ,  $V_e(x + L) = \mu V_e(x)$  for some constant  $\mu < 1$ . The constant  $\mu$  relates to the space constant  $\lambda_g$  through  $\mu = e^{-L/\lambda_g}$ .

The steady-state solution of this problem can be found analytically. We suppose that for the  $n$ th cell, the solution is proportional to

$$\begin{pmatrix} V_i \\ V_e \end{pmatrix}_n = \mu^n \Phi(\mu, x) = \mu^n \begin{pmatrix} \phi_i \\ \phi_e \end{pmatrix}. \quad (12.50)$$

We also assume that the total current is zero, so that

$$\frac{1}{r_c} \frac{\partial \phi_i}{\partial x} + \frac{1}{r_e} \frac{\partial \phi_e}{\partial x} = 0, \quad (12.51)$$

and thus

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_c + r_e} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} \right) - \frac{p\phi}{R_m} = 0, \quad \phi = \phi_i - \phi_e. \quad (12.52)$$

It follows that

$$\phi = \alpha_1 \exp(\lambda x) + \alpha_2 \exp(-\lambda x), \quad (12.53)$$

where  $\lambda^2 = \frac{p}{R_m}(r_c + r_e)$ , and

$$\phi_i = \frac{r_c}{r_c + r_e} \phi(x) + \beta, \quad \phi_e = -\frac{r_e}{r_c + r_e} \phi(x) + \beta. \quad (12.54)$$

Now there are four boundary conditions that need to be applied to determine the four unknown constants  $\alpha_1$ ,  $\alpha_2$ ,  $\beta$  and  $\mu$ . These boundary conditions are

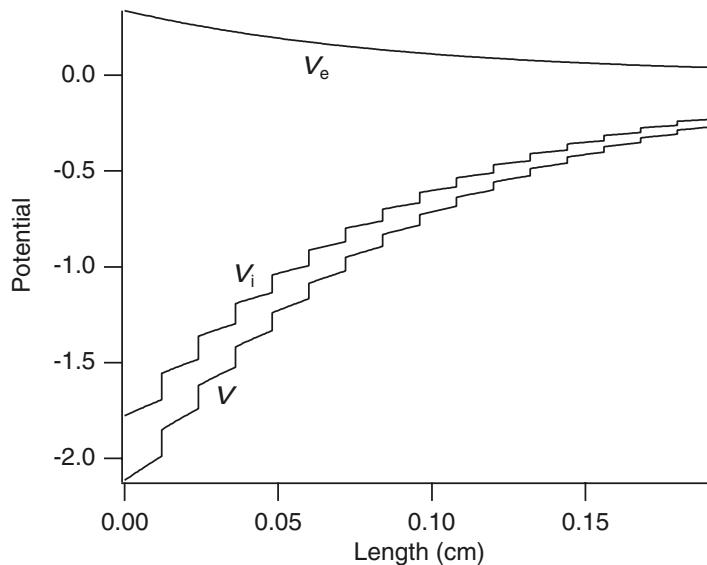
$$\phi'_e(L) = \mu \phi'_e(0), \quad \phi'_i(L) = \mu \phi'_i(0), \quad (12.55)$$

requiring the current to be continuous, and

$$\phi_e(L) = \mu \phi_e(0), \quad \mu \phi_i(0) - \phi_i(L) = \frac{r_g}{r_c} \phi'_i(L), \quad (12.56)$$

requiring continuity of the extracellular potential, and the jump condition (12.49) for the intracellular potential, respectively. It is a somewhat tedious calculation (but Maple makes it easy) to determine that (up to an arbitrary scale factor)

$$\alpha_1 = \mu - \frac{1}{E}, \quad \alpha_2 = \mu - E, \quad \beta = 2r_e \frac{(\mu - E)(\mu - \frac{1}{E})}{\mu - 1}, \quad E = e^{\lambda L}, \quad (12.57)$$



**Figure 12.22** Plot of intracellular, extracellular and transmembrane potentials as functions of space, with a constant subthreshold potential maintained at a single point. For this plot cells had  $L = 0.012 \text{ cm}$ ,  $A_i = 4.0 \times 10^{-6} \text{ cm}^2$ , and a space constant  $\lambda_g = 0.09 \text{ cm}$ .  $R_m = 7000 \Omega\text{cm}^2$ ,  $R_c = 150 \Omega\text{cm}$ ,  $q_e = 0.5q_i$ ,  $q_i = 5.47 \times 10^{-3}$ , where  $q_j = \frac{L^2 p}{R_m} r_j$ ,  $j = i, e$ . The vertical scale on this plot is arbitrary.

and, most importantly,  $\mu < 1$  is a root of the (quadratic) characteristic equation

$$\frac{r_g \lambda}{r_c + r_e} = \frac{R_g}{\lambda L} = 2 \frac{(\mu - \frac{1}{E})(\mu - E)}{\mu(E - \frac{1}{E})}, \quad (12.58)$$

where  $R_g = \frac{L p r_g}{R_m}$  is the effective nondimensional gap-junctional resistance.

The behavior of the extracellular, intracellular and transmembrane potentials for this solution is depicted in Fig. 12.22. As can be seen from this plot, the extracellular potential decays smoothly, but the intracellular potential decays with discrete jumps across the gap junctions. Perhaps the most important quantity here is the decay of  $V$  intracellularly relative to the decay of  $V$  due to gap junctions. If gap-junctional resistance is small then the decay of  $V$  is essentially exponential throughout the cell, whereas if gap-junctional resistance is relatively large, then the cell is nearly isopotential and most of the decay occurs across the gap junctions.

It is not possible to measure the intracellular potential with the detail shown in Fig. 12.22, because cells are usually too small to invade with multiple intracellular electrodes without irreversibly damaging the cell membrane. If the gap-junctional resistance is small compared with the cytoplasmic resistance, then (12.58) has a simplified solution. In particular, if  $L/\lambda_g$  is small (i.e., the length constant is much larger than the

length of a single cell), then it must also be that  $\lambda L$  is small, so that  $E \approx 1 + \lambda L$  and  $\mu \approx 1 - \frac{L}{\lambda_g}$ . Substituting these into (12.58) gives

$$R_g \approx \left( \left( \frac{L}{\lambda_g} \right)^2 - (\lambda L)^2 \right) (1 + O(\lambda L)), \quad (12.59)$$

which implies that

$$\frac{L^2}{\lambda_g^2} \approx R_g + (\lambda L)^2 = R_g + \frac{L^2 p}{R_m} (r_c + r_e). \quad (12.60)$$

The formula (12.60) is used routinely in bioengineering and in linear circuit theory; it implies that resistance along the cable is additive. This is exactly the same answer that one finds for the space constant of a uniform continuous cable if the gap-junctional resistance were uniformly distributed throughout the cytoplasm (see below). For most normal cells, the approximation (12.60) is valid. It is only when the gap-junctional resistance is excessively large, such as if there is *ischemia* or if the cells are treated with certain alcohols that block gap junctions, that this formula is substantially wrong.

However, it is also commonly asserted that gap junctions are low resistance and the bulk of the resistance is cytoplasmic in origin. To test this assertion, the effective gap-junctional resistance  $R_g$  can be calculated from (12.60). For example, using frog myocardial cells (which are longer than mammalian cells,  $L = 131 \mu\text{m}$ , radius =  $7.5 \mu\text{m}$ ), Chapman and Fry (1978) measured a space constant  $\lambda_g = 0.328 \text{ cm}$  yielding  $(\frac{L}{\lambda_g})^2 = 0.159$ . From this they inferred (using  $R_m = 1690 \Omega\text{cm}^2$  and  $q_e = 0$ ) that the effective cytoplasmic resistivity was  $R_c = 588 \Omega\text{cm}$ . They were also able to measure the cytoplasmic resistivity directly, and they found  $R_c = 282 \Omega\text{cm}$  so that  $q_i = 0.076$ . Thus, using (12.60), only 48% of the total resistivity of the cell was attributable to cytoplasmic resistance. The remaining 52% must be from gap-junctional resistance. With these numbers it is difficult to assert that gap junctions are low resistance.

The above space constant calculation represents a situation that is difficult to replicate experimentally. To do so (to enforce the no net current assumption) would require use of a bipolar electrode, with one of the poles placed intracellularly and the other placed extracellularly at a single point along the fiber, thereby holding the transmembrane potential fixed. A more realistic experiment would be to pass a current through the fiber with two extracellular electrodes at different points along the fiber. The associated mathematical problem is to solve the steady version of the cable equation (12.48) with the jump conditions (12.49) subject to the boundary conditions

$$-\frac{1}{r_e} \frac{dV_e}{dx} = I, \quad \frac{1}{r_c} \frac{dV_i}{dx} = 0, \quad (12.61)$$

at the ends of the fiber at  $x = 0, l$ . These boundary conditions reflect the fact that current is injected into the extracellular space, but there is no direct current flow into the intracellular space.

The solution of this problem can also be found analytically, although it is more complicated than the previous length constant calculation. Here we state the answer,

and relegate the details of the calculation to the Appendix. On the interior of cells the solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} V_i \\ V_e \end{pmatrix}_j = \frac{1}{r_e + r_c} \begin{pmatrix} r_c \\ -r_e \end{pmatrix} V_j + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} (-\beta Ix + \gamma_j), \quad (12.62)$$

and  $V_j = (A_j + \frac{r_e}{\lambda} I) \sinh \lambda x + B_j \cosh \lambda x$ , for  $j = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ , where

$$A_j = \frac{-S}{1 - \mu} (\mu c_1 - c_2) f_j, \quad (12.63)$$

$$B_j = \frac{\mu c_1 - c_2}{1 - \mu} \left( C f_j + \frac{1 - \mu^N}{1 - \mu^{2N}} (\mu^{j+1} + \mu^{N-j-1}) \right) - \frac{c_1 - \mu c_2}{1 - \mu}, \quad (12.64)$$

$$f_j = \frac{1 - \mu^{N-j} - \mu^j + \mu^{N+j} + \mu^{2N-j} - \mu^{2N}}{1 - \mu^{2N}}, \quad (12.65)$$

$$\gamma_{j+1} = \gamma_n - L\beta I + \frac{\beta}{r_c} K_g \left( \frac{r_e}{\lambda} I(C - 1) + A_j C + B_j S \right), \quad (12.66)$$

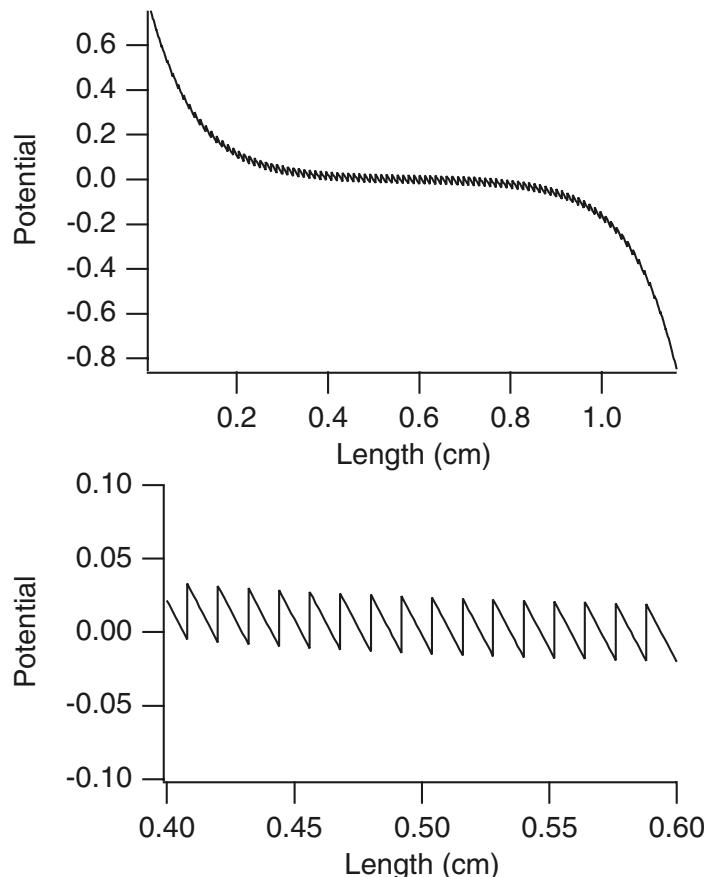
$$C = \cosh \lambda L, \quad S = \sinh \lambda L, \quad c_i = \frac{S(1 - \eta_i) + \eta_i K_g (1 - C)}{S(2 + K_g \eta_i + K_g C)}, \quad (12.67)$$

with  $\eta_1 = \frac{1}{\mu}$ ,  $\eta_2 = \mu$ , where  $\mu < 1$  is the root of the characteristic equation (12.58), and  $K_g = \frac{r_g \lambda}{r_c + r_e} = \frac{R_g}{\lambda L}$ ,  $\beta = \frac{r_c r_e}{r_c + r_e}$ .

In Fig. 12.23 is shown the transmembrane potential in response to a constant, but small (subthreshold), current stimulus. The current is from right to left, and at the right end the tissue is hyperpolarized, while on the left the tissue is depolarized. If this current stimulus were superthreshold, one would expect an action potential to arise on the left, and (perhaps) propagate to the right.

One can understand this profile as follows. A current that is injected into the extracellular space seeks the path of least resistance. Since there are two possible paths, extracellular space and intracellular space, total current is divided between these two spaces in such a way as to minimize the total resistance. However, to achieve this current-divided profile, current must flow into intracellular space at one end and it must exit the intracellular space at the opposite end, creating the electrode effects of hyperpolarization and depolarization, respectively. In the interior of the fiber, several space constants away from the electrodes, the current in each of the subspaces is essentially constant. However, gap-junctional resistance (or any other inhomogeneity of resistance) creates “speed bumps” that the current, while seeking the path of least resistance, circumvents by leaving or entering intracellular space, thereby creating transmembrane currents. At steady state, the membrane potential is depolarized if the transmembrane current is outward and hyperpolarized if it is inward.

The profile of transmembrane current shown in the bottom panel of Fig. 12.23 is called a sawtooth potential (Krassowska et al., 1987) and has been observed in single



**Figure 12.23** Plot of transmembrane potential as a function of space, with a constant applied current. For this plot cells had  $L = 0.012 \text{ cm}$ ,  $A_i = 4.0 \times 10^{-6} \text{ cm}^2$ , and a space constant  $\lambda_g = 0.09 \text{ cm}$ .  $R_m = 7000 \Omega\text{cm}^2$ ,  $R_c = 150 \Omega\text{cm}$ ,  $q_e = 0.5q_i$ ,  $q_i = 5.47 \times 10^{-3}$ , where  $q_j = \frac{L^2 p}{R_m} r_j$ ,  $j = i, e$ . The vertical scale on this plot is arbitrary.

cells (Knisely et al., 1993) as well as in whole tissue (Zhou et al., 1998), although its physiological significance is debated. In other contexts, regions of localized depolarization and hyperpolarization that are spatially removed from electrodes are referred to as virtual electrodes. These are discussed further in later sections of this chapter. Regardless of the outcome of this debate, it is clear that cardiac tissue is not resistively homogeneous, and the implications of this can be profound.

Because it is impossible to make much headway studying large tissues using a spatially detailed model, some further approximations are helpful. There are two that have proven useful. The first is appropriate when the space constant is large compared to the length of a single cell.

To derive this approximation it is useful to notice that the cable equation with jump condition (12.49) is equivalent to the equation

$$p \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_c + \sum \delta(x - nL)r_g} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x} \right) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_e} \frac{\partial V_e}{\partial x} \right) \quad (12.68)$$

with a spatially inhomogeneous resistance. The assumption that the space constant is large compared to the length of a cell implies that the resistance  $r_c + \sum \delta(x - nL)r_g$  is a rapidly varying function of space. Thus, one can use homogenization theory (Exercise 19; also see Section 7.8.2, or Keener, 1998) to replace the spatially varying resistance with a spatially averaged, effective resistance. The resulting averaged equation is

$$p \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_c + \frac{r_g}{L}} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x} \right) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_e} \frac{\partial V_e}{\partial x} \right). \quad (12.69)$$

Furthermore, because this is one dimensional in space, we can use that the total current is constant

$$\left( \frac{1}{r_c + \frac{r_g}{L}} \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial x} \right) + \left( \frac{1}{r_e} \frac{\partial V_e}{\partial x} \right) = I_{\text{tot}}, \quad (12.70)$$

to write a single equation involving only the transmembrane potential

$$p \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{r_e + r_c + \frac{r_g}{L}} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \right). \quad (12.71)$$

This is the effective cable equation for cardiac fibers.

A different approximation applies when the cytoplasmic resistance  $r_c$  and extracellular resistance  $r_e$  are small compared to the gap-junctional resistance. For simplicity, we set  $r_e = 0$ , in which case the extracellular potential is constant (so take it to be zero), and  $V_i = V$ . Set  $x = Ly$  and rewrite the cable equation as

$$\frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial y^2} = \epsilon F(V, t), \quad (12.72)$$

subject to the jump conditions

$$\frac{\epsilon}{R_g} [V_i] = \frac{\partial V_i}{\partial y}, \quad (12.73)$$

at the integers  $i = n$ , where  $\epsilon = \frac{pr_c L^2}{R_m}$ ,  $R_g = \frac{r_g p L}{R_m}$  and  $F(V, t) = R_m C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + R_m I_{\text{ion}}$  has units of voltage.

Now we seek a power series solution of (12.72) in  $\epsilon$  and find that on the interval  $n < y < n + 1$ ,

$$V(y) = V_n + a_n z_n + \frac{1}{2} \epsilon F(V_n) z_n^2, \quad (12.74)$$

where  $z_n = y - n$ , and  $V_n$  and  $a_n$  are constants that have yet to be determined. Of course, this implies that

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial y} = a_n + \epsilon F(V_n)z_n. \quad (12.75)$$

Since  $\frac{\partial V}{\partial y}$  must be continuous at  $y = n$ , it must be that

$$a_{n-1} + \epsilon F(V_{n-1}) = a_n. \quad (12.76)$$

Now substitute this solution into the jump conditions (12.73) to find that

$$\frac{1}{R_g}(V_{n+1} - 2V_n + V_{n-1}) = F(V_n, t) + \frac{\epsilon}{2R_g}(F(V_{n-1}, t) + F(V_n, t)), \quad (12.77)$$

which, to leading order in  $\epsilon$ , is the discrete cable equation,

$$\frac{1}{r_g}(V_{n+1} - 2V_n + V_{n-1}) = Lp \left( C_m \frac{\partial V_n}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}}(V_n, t) \right), \quad (12.78)$$

where  $V_n$  is the membrane potential of the  $n$ th (isopotential) cell.

Which of these approximations is most correct?

Because it is translationally invariant, the effective cable equation implies that propagation, if it occurs, is continuous, and the propagation velocity scales with the inverse square root of the resistance

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{k}{r_c + r_e + \frac{r_g}{L}}}, \quad (12.79)$$

for some constant  $k$ . On the other hand, the discrete cable equation implies that propagation is saltatory, with individual cells becoming excited one at a time, and this excitation jumps from cell to cell in discrete fashion.

Propagation is known to be saltatory (Spach et al., 1981). Data collected on a single strand of rat myocytes (Fast and Kleber, 1993) found that an action potential required about  $38 \mu\text{s}$  to travel  $30 \mu\text{m}$  within a single cell, but it required  $118 \mu\text{s}$  to travel  $30 \mu\text{m}$  if propagation was across the ends of two cells. Hence, propagation through gap junctions led to a delay of about  $80 \mu\text{s}$ . For cells of length  $100 \mu\text{m}$ , this translates into a velocity of  $0.8 \mu\text{m}/\mu\text{s}$  in the cell and  $0.48 \mu\text{m}/\mu\text{s}$  along the fiber. If velocity within cells scales like the inverse square root of resistance, then

$$\left( \frac{0.8}{0.48} \right)^2 = \frac{r_c + r_e + \frac{r_g}{L}}{r_e + r_c}, \quad (12.80)$$

so that  $\frac{r_g}{L} = 1.78(r_e + r_c)$ . In other words, according to this estimate, gap-junctional resistance represents a substantial portion (here, roughly 65%) of the total resistance.

### 12.3.2 Propagation Failure

One-dimensional propagation in cardiac fibers is expected to occur, since the cable equation is similar to those described in Chapter 6 with excitable dynamics. It

is perhaps more interesting and of greater clinical significance to understand the causes of propagation failure. The primary lesson of the discussion that follows is that inhomogeneities of resistance can cause propagation failure.

## Branching

On leaving the AV node of the heart, the action potential enters the bundle of HIS. The bundle divides near the upper ventricular septum into right and left branches. The right bundle continues with little arborization toward the apex of the heart. The left bundle branch divides almost immediately into two major divisions: one anterior and superior, and the second posterior and inferior.

A bundle branch block occurs when the action potential fails to propagate through the entire branch. To understand something about the cause of bundle branch block, we consider a model of propagation in a one-dimensional fiber with a junction at which the cable properties suddenly change. Wave fronts are governed by the cable equation

$$C_m R_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} = \frac{R_m}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{A}{R_c} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \right) + f(V), \quad (12.81)$$

where  $f(V)$  represents the fast currents, but dynamics due to slower variables are suppressed. We can also modify this equation for propagation in a bundle of fibers by letting  $p$  and  $A$  be the total membrane perimeter and cross-sectional area, respectively, for the bundle.

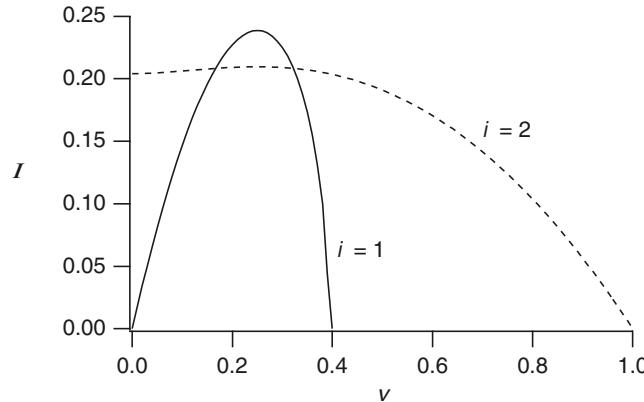
Suppose there is a point at which there is a sudden jump in cable properties. This could be due to a sudden change in the size of the cable, or, since this is a one-dimensional model, a splitting of the cable into two for which the total perimeter and cross-sectional area are changed. Thus, on both sides of this discontinuity, the cable equation (12.81) holds, but with different parameters  $p$  and  $A$ , say  $p_1, A_1$  for  $x < 0$ , and  $p_2, A_2$  for  $x > 0$ . At the junction the potential  $V$  and the axial current  $\frac{A}{R_c} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x}$  must be continuous.

Using upper and lower solution techniques (Fife, 1979), one can demonstrate an important *comparison property* for the cable equation (12.81): If  $V_1(x)$  and  $V_2(x)$  are two functions that are ordered, with  $V_1(x) \leq V_2(x)$ , then the solutions of (12.81) with initial data  $V_1(x)$  and  $V_2(x)$ , say  $V_1(x, t)$  and  $V_2(x, t)$  with  $V_1(x, 0) = V_1(x)$  and  $V_2(x, 0) = V_2(x)$ , then  $V_1(x, t) \leq V_2(x, t)$  for all time  $t \geq 0$ .

The importance of this theorem is that if we can establish the existence of a standing transitional profile, then traveling profiles of similar type are precluded. The standing wave is an upper bound for solutions and thereby prevents propagation (Pauwelussen, 1981).

Suppose the function  $f(V)$  has three zeros, at  $V = 0 < \alpha < \beta$ . We look for a standing profile that connects  $V = 0$  at  $x = -\infty$  with  $V = \beta$  at  $x = \infty$ . The standing profile must satisfy the ordinary differential equation

$$\frac{R_m}{p_i} \left( \frac{A_i}{R_c} V_x \right)_x + f(V) = 0, \quad (12.82)$$



**Figure 12.24** The curves (12.84) with  $i = 1$  and  $\frac{R_m R_c}{2A_i p_i} = 0.04$  and with  $i = 2$  and  $\frac{R_m R_c}{2A_i p_i} = 1.0$ , for  $f(v) = v(v - 1)(\alpha - v)$ ,  $\alpha = 0.25$ . An intersection of the solid curve with the dashed curve guarantees propagation failure.

with  $i = 1$  for  $x < 0$  and with  $i = 2$  for  $x > 0$ . Multiplying these equations by  $V_x$  and integrating, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{R_m A_i}{R_c p_i} V_x^2 + F(V) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } i = 1, \\ F(\beta), & \text{if } i = 2, \end{cases} \quad (12.83)$$

where  $F(V) = \int_0^V f(u) du$ . Sketches of these two curves are depicted in Fig. 12.24 in the case  $F(\beta) > 0$ . A connecting trajectory exists if these two curves intersect at the same level of current. We express the profiles (12.83) in terms of the axial current  $I = -\frac{A}{R_c} V_x$  and obtain

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{R_m R_c}{A_i p_i} I^2 + F(V) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } i = 1, \\ F(\beta), & \text{if } i = 2. \end{cases} \quad (12.84)$$

Intersections of these two curves occur if there is a solution of

$$F(V) \left( \frac{A_1 p_1}{A_2 p_2} - 1 \right) = -F(\beta), \quad (12.85)$$

with  $F(V) < 0$  in the range  $0 < V < \beta$ . Since the minimum for  $F(V)$  is at  $V = \alpha$ , there is a solution whenever

$$\frac{A_1 p_1}{A_2 p_2} \geq 1 - \frac{F(\beta)}{F(\alpha)}. \quad (12.86)$$

In the special case that  $f(V)$  is the cubic polynomial  $f(V) = AV(V - 1)(\alpha - V)$ , this condition becomes

$$\frac{A_1 p_1}{A_2 p_2} \geq 1 + \frac{1 - 2\alpha}{\alpha^3(2 - \alpha)}. \quad (12.87)$$

The interpretation is clear. If at a junction along a fiber the product  $pA$  increases by a sufficient amount, as specified by (12.86), then propagation through the junction in the direction of increasing  $pA$  is not possible. Of course, this criterion for propagation block depends importantly on the excitability of the fiber as expressed through the ratio  $\frac{F(\beta)}{F(\alpha)}$ , and propagation failure is more likely when the fiber is less excitable. Hence propagation block is time-dependent in that if inadequate recovery time from a previous excitation is allowed, or if recovery is slowed, the likelihood of block at a junction is increased. Further analysis of problems of this type can be found in Lewis and Keener (2000a).

### Gap-Junctional Coupling

We expect that gap-junctional resistance can have the similar effect of precluding propagation. To see how gap-junctional resistance affects the success or failure of propagation, we consider the idealized situation of cells of length  $L$  coupled at their ends by gap junctions, as described by (12.49) and the cable equation (12.48) with piecewise-linear ionic current

$$I_{\text{ion}}(V) = \frac{1}{R_m} (H(V - \alpha) - V). \quad (12.88)$$

This model recommends itself because it can be solved explicitly, even though it lacks quantitative reliability or a direct physiological interpretation.

As before, we look for a standing solution on the assumption that the existence of a standing solution precludes the possibility of propagation.

The method to solve this standing wave problem is similar to the method used to find the space constant in Section 12.3.1, with two important differences, namely that the solution must be bounded in both directions ( $n \rightarrow \pm\infty$ ) rather than only one, and the transmembrane current is piecewise linear, not linear. We use solutions of the linear problem found before to construct solutions of the nonlinear problem. That is, for  $n \geq 0$  we take

$$\begin{pmatrix} V_i \\ V_e \end{pmatrix}_n = A\mu^n \Phi(\mu, x), \quad (12.89)$$

and for  $n < 0$  we take

$$\begin{pmatrix} V_i \\ V_e \end{pmatrix}_n = B\mu^{-n} \Phi\left(\frac{1}{\mu}, x\right) + \begin{pmatrix} 1+C \\ C \end{pmatrix}, \quad (12.90)$$

where  $\mu < 1$  is a root of (12.58), and  $\Phi(\mu, x)$  is specified by (12.50) and (12.54). Here  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  are as yet undetermined. However, this proposed solution has the feature that  $V = V_i - V_e$  approaches 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , it approaches 1 as  $n \rightarrow -\infty$ , and satisfies all junctional boundary conditions except at the junction between cell  $n = -1$  and cell  $n = 0$ . Furthermore, this proposed solution satisfies the cable equation (12.48) with ionic current  $I_{\text{ion}}(V) = -\frac{V}{R_m}$  when  $n \geq 0$  and with ionic current  $I_{\text{ion}}(V) = \frac{1}{R_m}(1 - V)$  when  $n < 0$ .

Now, to determine the coefficients  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ , we require that  $V_e$ ,  $\frac{dV_e}{dx}$  and  $\frac{dV_i}{dx}$  be continuous at the junction between cell  $n = -1$  (at  $x = L$ ) and cell  $n = 0$  (at  $x = 0$ ) and that the junctional condition (12.49) be satisfied there as well. A tedious calculation (unless it is done with Maple) yields expressions for  $A = B$ , and  $C$  that are too complicated to be enlightening. However, one also finds that

$$V_0(0) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{E^2 - 2\mu E + 1}{E^2 - 2\mu E + 1 + \frac{1}{2} \frac{r_g \lambda}{r_c + r_e} (E^2 - 1)}, \quad (12.91)$$

and

$$V_1(L) = 1 - V_0(0). \quad (12.92)$$

It follows that  $V < \frac{1}{2}$  for cell  $n = 0$  at  $x = 0$  and  $V > \frac{1}{2}$  for cell  $n = -1$  at  $x = L$  whenever  $r_g$  is positive. A plot of this solution is shown in Fig. 12.25.

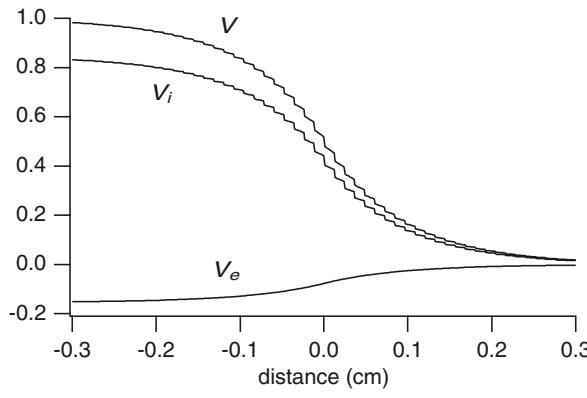
Finally, to be a valid solution for the piecewise-linear ionic current (12.88), it must be that  $V_0(0) < \alpha$ . This leads to the condition

$$\frac{r_g \lambda}{r_c + r_e} \equiv \frac{R_g}{\lambda L} \geq \frac{1 - 2\alpha}{\alpha} \left( \frac{E - 2\mu + \frac{1}{E}}{E - \frac{1}{E}} \right). \quad (12.93)$$

where  $R_g = \frac{L p r_g}{R_m}$ .

The interpretation of this formula is complicated by the fact that according to (12.58),  $\mu$  is a function of  $R_g$ . However, the implication of this is that propagation failure occurs if  $R_g$  is greater than some critical gap-junctional resistance, say  $R_g^*$ , and  $R_g^*$  is that value of  $R_g$  for which (12.93) is an equality. An equivalent relationship is that

$$\frac{R_g^*}{\lambda L} = 2 \frac{(\mu^* - \frac{1}{E})(\mu^* - E)}{\mu^*(E - \frac{1}{E})}, \quad (12.94)$$



**Figure 12.25** Plot of the standing wave solution for cells of length  $L$  coupled at their ends by resistive gap junctions. For this plot, cells have  $L = 0.012$  cm,  $A_i = 4.0 \times 10^{-6}$  cm $^2$ , and a space constant  $\lambda_g = 0.09$  cm.  $R_m = 7000 \Omega\text{cm}^2$ ,  $R_i = 150 \Omega\text{cm}$ ,  $q_e = 0.5q_i$ , where  $q_j = \frac{L^2 p}{R_m} r_j$ ,  $j = i, e$ .

where  $\mu^*$  is the unique root less than  $\frac{1}{E}$  of

$$\frac{1 - 2\alpha}{2\alpha} = \frac{(\mu^* - \frac{1}{E})(\mu^* - E)}{\mu^*(E - 2\mu^* + \frac{1}{E})}. \quad (12.95)$$

One can eliminate  $\mu$  from these two equations to find the single quadratic equation for  $R_g^*$ ,

$$\frac{\alpha(1 - \alpha)}{(1 - 2\alpha)^2} \left( \frac{R_g^*}{\lambda L} \right)^2 - \left( \frac{E^2 + 1}{E^2 - 1} \right) \frac{R_g^*}{\lambda L} - 1 = 0. \quad (12.96)$$

This equation has only one positive root.

Now, with a little graphical analysis, one can show that  $R_g^*$  is a decreasing function of  $\alpha$  for  $0 < \alpha < \frac{1}{2}$ . This makes good sense, since it implies that propagation is less likely to fail in a more excitable medium (with smaller  $\alpha$ ) and more likely to fail in a less excitable medium. Further, in the limit of small  $\lambda L$ , the positive root of this quadratic equation is

$$R_g^* = \frac{(1 - 2\alpha)^2}{\alpha(1 - \alpha)} + (\lambda L)^2 \left( \frac{1 - 2\alpha + 2\alpha^2}{2\alpha(1 - \alpha)} \right) + O(\lambda L)^3. \quad (12.97)$$

On the other hand, for large  $\lambda L$ ,  $R_g^*$  is asymptotically linear, with

$$R_g^* = \lambda L \left( \frac{1 - 2\alpha}{1 - \alpha} \right) + O(\lambda L e^{-2\lambda L}). \quad (12.98)$$

In general, one can show that for  $0 < \alpha < \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $R_g^*$  is an increasing function of  $\lambda L$ . The interpretation of this is that longer cells are less likely to experience propagation failure than shorter cells with the same excitability.

Additional discussion of this problem can be found in Keener (1991b) and Keener (2000b).

### 12.3.3 Myocardial Tissue: The Bidomain Model

Coupling in cardiac tissue is complicated by the fact that the signal is the transmembrane potential, and this necessitates that the intracellular and extracellular spaces be continuously connected and intertwined, so that one can move continuously between any two points within one space without traversing through the opposite space. This is possible only in a three-dimensional domain.

It is impossible to write and solve equations that take into account the fine-structure details of the geometry of these two interleaving spaces. However, the microstructure can be averaged (homogenized) to yield equations that describe the potentials in an averaged, or smoothed, sense, and these are adequate for many situations (although the concerns about inhomogeneities raised by the above discussion still pertain).

In this averaged sense, we view the tissue as a two-phase medium, as if every point in space is composed of a certain fraction of intracellular space and a fraction of

extracellular space. Accordingly, at each point in space there are two electrical potentials  $V_i$  and  $V_e$ , as well as two currents  $i_i$  and  $i_e$ , with subscripts  $i$  and  $e$  denoting intracellular and extracellular space, respectively.

The relationship between current and potential is ohmic,

$$i_i = -\sigma_i \nabla V_i, \quad i_e = -\sigma_e \nabla V_e, \quad (12.99)$$

where  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_e$  are conductivity tensors. The principal axes of the conductivity tensors are the same, owing to the cylindrical nature of the cells, but the conductivities in these directions are possibly different. At any point in space the total current is  $i_t = i_i + i_e$ , and unless there are extraneous current sources, the total current is conserved, so that  $\nabla \cdot i_t = 0$ , or

$$\nabla \cdot (\sigma_i \nabla V_i + \sigma_e \nabla V_e) = 0. \quad (12.100)$$

At every point in space there is a membrane potential

$$V = V_i - V_e. \quad (12.101)$$

The transmembrane current  $i_T$  is the current that leaves the intracellular space to enter the extracellular space,

$$i_T = \nabla \cdot (\sigma_i \nabla V_i) = -\nabla \cdot (\sigma_e \nabla V_e). \quad (12.102)$$

For a biological membrane, the total transmembrane current is the sum of ionic and capacitive currents,

$$i_T = \chi \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) = \nabla \cdot (\sigma_i \nabla V_i). \quad (12.103)$$

Here  $\chi$  is the membrane surface-to-volume ratio, needed to convert transmembrane current per unit area into transmembrane current per unit volume. In the typical scaling,  $I_{\text{ion}} = -\frac{f(V)}{R_m}$ .

Equation (12.103) shows how cardiac tissue is coupled, and it, together with (12.100), is called the *bidomain model*. The bidomain model was first proposed in the late 1970s by Tung and Geselowitz (Tung, 1978) and is now the generally accepted model of electrical behavior of cardiac tissue (Henriquez, 1993). However, it is not actually used that often because it is computationally expensive and there are not many situations where it matters.

Boundary conditions for the bidomain model usually assume that there is no current across the boundary that enters directly into the intracellular space, whereas if there is an injected current, it enters the tissue through the extracellular domain.

## Monodomain Reduction

Equation (12.103) can be reduced to a monodomain equation for the membrane potential in one special case. Notice that (combining (12.101) and (12.99))

$$\nabla V_i = (\sigma_i + \sigma_e)^{-1} (\sigma_e \nabla V - i_t), \quad (12.104)$$

so that the balance of transmembrane currents becomes

$$\chi \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) = \nabla \cdot \left( \sigma_i (\sigma_i + \sigma_e)^{-1} \sigma_e \nabla V \right) - \nabla \cdot \sigma_i (\sigma_i + \sigma_e)^{-1} i_t. \quad (12.105)$$

Here we see that there is possibly a contribution to the transmembrane current from the divergence of the total current. We know that  $\nabla \cdot i_t = 0$ , so this source term is zero if the matrix  $\sigma_i (\sigma_i + \sigma_e)^{-1}$  is proportional to a constant multiple of the identity matrix. In other words, if the two conductivity matrices  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_e$  are proportional,  $\sigma_i = \alpha \sigma_e$ , with  $\alpha$  a constant, then the source term disappears, and the bidomain model reduces to the monodomain model.

$$\chi \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + I_{\text{ion}} \right) = \nabla \cdot (\sigma \nabla V), \quad (12.106)$$

where  $\sigma = \sigma_i (\sigma_i + \sigma_e)^{-1} \sigma_e$ . When  $\sigma_i = \alpha \sigma_e$ , the tissue is said to have equal anisotropy ratios. A one-dimensional model with constant conductivities can always be reduced to a monodomain problem.

## Plane Waves

Cardiac tissue is strongly anisotropic, with wave speeds that differ substantially depending on their direction. For example, in human myocardium, propagation is about 0.5 m/s along fibers and about 0.17 m/s transverse to fibers. To see the relationship between the wave speed and the conductivity tensor we look for plane-wave solutions of the bidomain equations. Plane waves are functions of the single variable  $\xi = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} - ct$ , where  $\mathbf{n}$  is a unit vector pointing in the direction of wave-front propagation. We assume that the ionic current is such that the canonical problem

$$u'' + c_0 u' + f(u) = 0 \quad (12.107)$$

has a wave-front solution  $U(x)$  for some unique value of  $c_0$ , the value of which depends on  $f$ . The behavior of this solution was discussed in Chapter 6.

In terms of the traveling wave coordinate  $\xi$ , the bidomain equations reduce to the two ordinary differential equations

$$\frac{R_m}{\chi} \mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_i \mathbf{n} V_i' + c C_m R_m V' + f(V) = 0, \quad (12.108)$$

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_i \mathbf{n} V_i'' + \mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_e \mathbf{n} V_e'' = 0. \quad (12.109)$$

Using that  $V = V_i - V_e$ , we find that

$$V_i' = \frac{\mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_e \mathbf{n}}{\mathbf{n} \cdot (\sigma_i + \sigma_e) \mathbf{n}} V', \quad (12.110)$$

$$V_e' = -\frac{\mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_i \mathbf{n}}{\mathbf{n} \cdot (\sigma_i + \sigma_e) \mathbf{n}} V', \quad (12.111)$$

and

$$\frac{R_m}{\chi} \frac{(\mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_i \mathbf{n})(\mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_e \mathbf{n})}{\mathbf{n} \cdot (\sigma_i + \sigma_e) \mathbf{n}} V_i'' + c C_m R_m V' + f(V) = 0. \quad (12.112)$$

Now we compare (12.112) with (12.107) and find that the solutions are related through

$$V(\xi) = U\left(\frac{\xi}{\Lambda}\right), \quad (12.113)$$

where  $\Lambda(\mathbf{n})^2 = \frac{R_m}{\chi} \frac{(\mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_i \mathbf{n})(\mathbf{n} \cdot \sigma_e \mathbf{n})}{\mathbf{n} \cdot (\sigma_i + \sigma_e) \mathbf{n}}$  ( $\Lambda(\mathbf{n})$  is the directionally dependent space constant), and the plane-wave velocity is

$$c = \frac{\Lambda(\mathbf{n})}{C_m R_m} c_0. \quad (12.114)$$

From this we learn that the speed of propagation depends importantly on direction  $\mathbf{n}$ , but the membrane potential profile is independent of direction except in its spatial scale  $\Lambda$ . This observation allows us to estimate the coefficients of the conductivity tensors  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_e$ . This we do by observing from (12.111) that the total deflection of extracellular potential is dependent on direction. If we denote the total deflection of potentials during the upstroke by  $\Delta V$  and  $\Delta V_e$ , then

$$r_d = \frac{\Delta V_{ed}}{\Delta V} = \left( \frac{\sigma_{id}}{\sigma_{id} + \sigma_{ed}} \right), \quad d = L, T \quad (12.115)$$

where the subscript  $d$  denotes the longitudinal ( $L$ ) or the transverse ( $T$ ) fiber direction and  $\sigma_{id} = \mathbf{n}_d \cdot \sigma_i \mathbf{n}_d$  with  $\mathbf{n}_L$  a unit vector along the fiber axis and  $\mathbf{n}_T$  a unit vector transverse to the fiber axis, and similarly for  $\sigma_{ed}$ . It follows that

$$\frac{\sigma_{ed}}{\sigma_{id}} = \frac{1 - r_d}{r_d}. \quad (12.116)$$

Measurements on dog myocardium (Roberts and Scher, 1982) find that  $\Delta V_{eL} = 74 \pm 7$  mV,  $\Delta V_{eT} = 43 \pm 6$  mV. With a typical membrane potential upstroke deflection of  $\Delta V = 100$  mV, it follows that

$$\frac{\sigma_{eL}}{\sigma_{iL}} = 0.35, \quad \frac{\sigma_{eT}}{\sigma_{iT}} = 1.33, \quad (12.117)$$

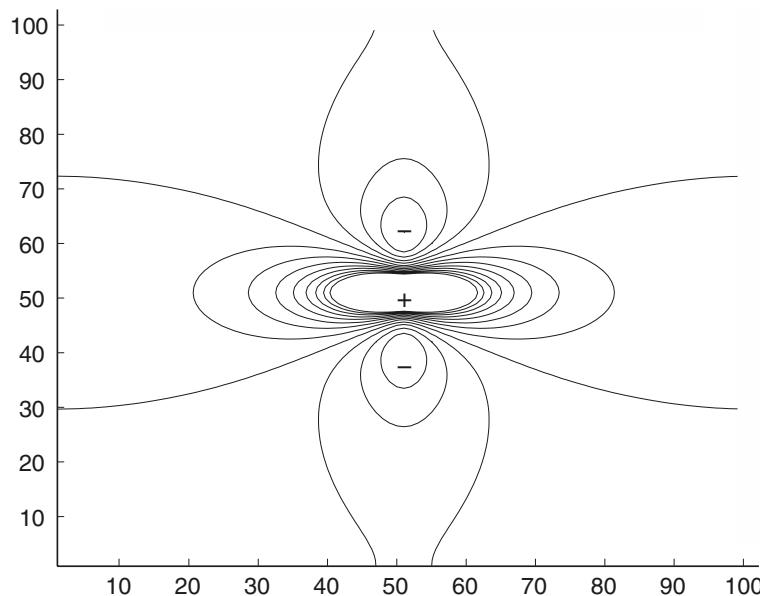
implying that myocardial tissue has unequal anisotropy ratios. Combining this with the fact that the propagation speed is about three times faster in the longitudinal direction than the transverse direction leads to the conclusion that

$$\frac{\sigma_{iT}}{\sigma_{iL}} = 0.05, \quad \frac{\sigma_{eT}}{\sigma_{iL}} = 0.07. \quad (12.118)$$

It should be pointed out that one can find a variety of estimates of the anisotropy ratios in the literature.

### Virtual Electrodes

It is well accepted that cardiac tissue has unequal anisotropy ratios. Perhaps the most important consequence of unequal anisotropy is seen in the response of the membrane to a current stimulus. Recall from Fig. 12.23 that in a one-dimensional cable, the transmembrane response to a current stimulus is local depolarization or hyperpolarization with exponential decay away from the electrode site. In tissue with equal anisotropy



**Figure 12.26** Contour plot of dogbone potential and virtual electrodes resulting from current stimulus to an anisotropic bidomain with anisotropy ratios as in (12.117) and (12.118).

ratios, the transmembrane response is roughly the same, except that the isopotential contours are elliptical, with aspect ratio given by the square root of the ratio of the principal eigenvalues of the matrix  $\sigma_i(\sigma_i + \sigma_e)^{-1}\sigma_e$ .

However, in tissue with unequal anisotropy ratios, the isopotential contours can be much more complicated. An example of these contours is shown in Fig. 12.26. For this plot, the passive bidomain equations (take  $I_{\text{ion}} = -V/R_m$ ) with a constant current point source at the center of the spatial domain were solved using straightforward finite differences. The anisotropy ratios were as in (12.117) and (12.118).

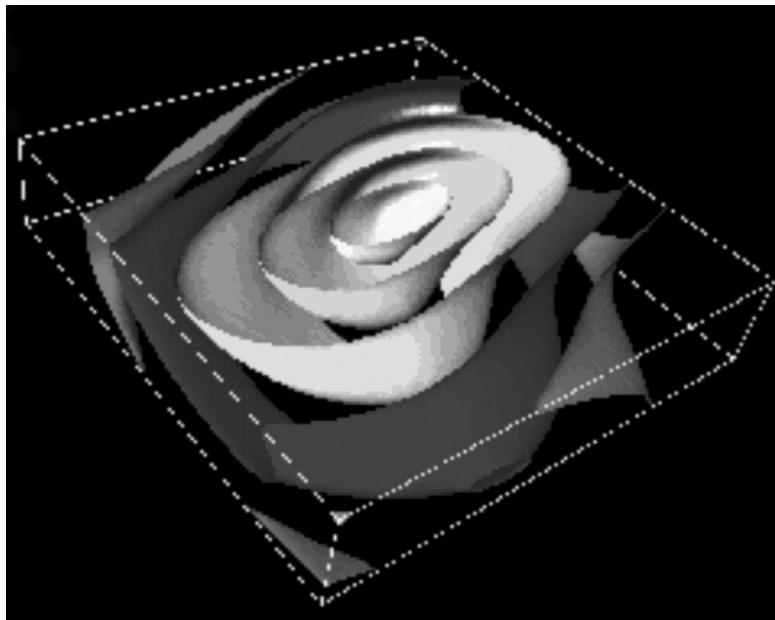
These contours show two striking features. In the central region (shown with a “+”), there is a strong polarizing response, but the isopotential contours are not elliptical, but rather they are “dogbone” shaped, oriented along the axis with largest coupling. For this reason, this is referred to as the dogbone potential. Oriented orthogonal to this dogbone, there are two roughly circular regions of opposite polarity (denoted with a “-”). These are called virtual electrodes, because there is depolarization or hyperpolarization even though there is no actual electrode (Roth, 1992; Wikswo et al., 1995).

Virtual electrodes can result not only from unequal anisotropy ratios but from many other inhomogeneities of resistance, such as fiber curvature, or tissue injury (Henriquez et al. 1996, White et al. 1998). Of course, virtual electrodes were also seen above to result from inhomogeneities of resistance along cables. It is believed that virtual electrodes are important determinants of the success or failure of defibrillation, and this interesting topic is discussed below.

### The Activation Sequence

Propagation in myocardial tissue is not planar and neither is it along fibers. In fact, because the initial activation of myocardial tissue occurs at the endocardial surface, myocardial propagation is primarily transverse to fibers. The fiber orientation in myocardial tissue varies through the thickness of the tissue, rotating approximately 120 degrees from epicardium to endocardium (Streeter, 1979). Additionally, the geometry of the ventricles is complicated, and the initiation of action potentials occurs at numerous places on the endocardial surface at the termini of the Purkinje fiber network.

The activation sequence is the spatial and temporal sequence in which the medium is activated by a wave initiated by the SA node. Without belaboring the details, an example of a computed action potential activation sequence for an anisotropic medium is shown in Fig. 12.27. Here is shown a sequence of wave-front surfaces at 20 ms intervals following stimulation on the top surface of a slab of tissue measuring 6 cm × 6 cm × 1 cm. The fiber orientation rotates continuously through 120 deg from top to bottom, and the velocity of propagation along fibers was taken to be three times faster than transverse to fibers. The most noticeable feature of these wave-front surfaces is the distortion from elliptical that occurs because of the rotational fiber orientation. Furthermore, there is a rotation of the elliptical axes, following the rotation of the fiber axes. However, the fastest propagation is not in the longitudinal fiber direction, as the ellipses rotate by only about 60 degrees. One can also determine (from the simulations)



**Figure 12.27** Action potential wave fronts at 20 ms intervals in a slab of tissue with rotational anisotropy.

that normal wave-front velocity is always slower than the maximal plane-wave velocity, because of curvature slowing and fiber rotation.

Simulations of this type have also been done for whole heart with realistic geometry and fiber orientation incorporated into the conductivity tensors (see for example, Keener and Panfilov (1996)). Data for the geometry and fiber orientation from Hunter's group (Nielsen et al., 1991) were incorporated into the conductivity tensors. What is noticeable in all of these simulations is that wavefronts are not elliptical, and the direction of fastest propagation is not along fibers, even though the planar velocity is fastest in the direction of fibers. In fact, significant distortions from ellipticity occur because of the variable fiber orientation.

Many of these features of propagation in three-dimensional myocardial tissue have been observed experimentally (see, for example, Taccardi et al., 1992).

### 12.3.4 Pacemakers

In the previous sections, the emphasis was on how gap-junctional coupling enables propagation of action potentials through cardiac tissue. In this section, we describe two other effects of gap-junctional coupling, namely synchronization and electrotonic loading.

#### Pacemaker Synchrony

The sinoatrial (SA) node is a clump of self-oscillatory cells located on the atrium near the superior vena cava. These cells fire regularly, initiating an action potential that propagates throughout the atrium, eventually terminating at the atrioventricular septum, or conducting into the AV node. SA nodal cells are not identical, but nevertheless fire at the same frequency. They are not synchronous in their firing (i.e., firing all at once), but they are *phase locked*, meaning that during each cycle, each cell fires once and there is a regular pattern to the firing of the cells. The variation of cellular properties in the SA node has two dominant features. There are gradual spatial gradients of the period of the oscillators and random deviations of individual cells from this average gradient.

Three questions concerning the SA pacemaker are of interest. First, since the individual cells all have different natural frequencies, what determines the frequency of the collective SA node? Second, what determines the details of the firing sequence, specifically, the location of the cell that fires earliest in the cycle and the subsequent firing order of the cells in the node? One might anticipate that the leader of the pack is the cell with the highest intrinsic frequency, but as we will see, this is not the case. Third, under what conditions does the SA node lose its ability to initiate the heartbeat (called *sinus node dysfunction*), and is it possible for other regions of (abnormal) oscillatory cells to initiate action potentials? Furthermore, since sinus node dysfunction is a potentially fatal condition, it is of clinical interest to understand how to treat this condition.

To address these questions, we suppose that the SA node is composed of self-oscillatory cells coupled together in a network, and that the action potential of the

$i$ th cell can be described by a vector of state variables  $u_i$ , which, in the absence of coupling, has dynamics

$$\frac{du_i}{dt} = F(u_i) + \epsilon G_i(u_i). \quad (12.119)$$

Here, the term  $F(u)$  represents typical dynamics applicable for every cell, and  $\epsilon G_i(u)$  represents the deviation of the dynamics for the  $i$ th cell from the average. The parameter  $\epsilon$  is assumed to be a small positive number, indicating that the variation among cells is small. To specify  $F$ , one might use the YNI model or the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations (as in Section 12.2), adjusted to allow for autonomous oscillations.

Next we assume that the cells are isopotential and connected discretely through resistive gap-junction coupling and that the extracellular medium is isopotential. Then, when the cells are coupled, we obtain the system of equations

$$\frac{du_i}{dt} = F(u_i) + \epsilon G_i(u_i) + \epsilon D \sum_j d_{ij}(u_j - u_i). \quad (12.120)$$

Here  $D$  is a diagonal matrix with entries of zero or one to indicate which of the state variables participate in the coupling. In neuromuscular media, only the intracellular and extracellular potentials participate in the coupling. However, because we have assumed that the extracellular potential is spatially uniform,  $D$  has only one nonzero entry, namely that one corresponding to the intracellular potential. Furthermore, since we have assumed that the extracellular potential is spatially homogeneous, the difference of intracellular potentials between two cells is the same as the difference of their transmembrane potentials.

The coefficients  $d_{ij}$  are the coupling coefficients for the network of cells, where  $d_{ij}$  is equal to the (positive) coupling strength (inversely proportional to the resistance) between cells  $i$  and  $j$ . Of course,  $d_{ij} = 0$  if cells  $i$  and  $j$  are not directly coupled, and coupling is symmetric, so that  $d_{ij} = d_{ji}$ . Without loss of generality,  $d_{ii} = 0$ .

A simple example for the coupling matrix comes from considering a one-dimensional chain of cells coupled by nearest-neighbor coupling, for which  $d_{i,i+1} = d_{i,i-1} = d$ , the coupling strength between cells, and all other coupling coefficients are zero. The general formulation (12.120) of the problem allows us to consider a wide variety of coupling networks, including anisotropically coupled rectangular grids and hexagonal grids. The parameter  $\epsilon$  scales the coupling term to indicate that the coupling is weak, so that currents through gap junctions are small compared to transmembrane currents. The evidence for weak coupling is that the wave speed in the SA node is very slow, on the order of 2–5 cm/s, compared with 50 cm/s in myocardial tissue and 100 cm/s in Purkinje fiber. (See Exercise 18 for a possible explanation of why weak coupling might be advantageous.)

Suppose the stable periodic solution of the equation  $\frac{du}{dt} = F(u)$  is given by  $U(t)$ . Then, because  $\epsilon$  is assumed to be small, one can use multiscale methods (see Section 12.7) to find that  $u_i(t) = U(\omega(\epsilon)t + \delta\theta_i(t)) + O(\epsilon)$ , where  $\omega(\epsilon) = 1 + \epsilon\Omega_1 + O(\epsilon^2)$  and the

phase shift  $\delta\theta_i$  of each oscillator satisfies the equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}\delta\theta_i = \epsilon \left( \xi_i - \Omega_1 + \sum_{j \neq i} d_{ij}[h(\delta\theta_j - \delta\theta_i) - h(0)] \right). \quad (12.121)$$

The periodic coupling function  $h$  and the numbers  $\xi_i$  are specified in Section 12.7 and the scalar  $\Omega_1$  is as yet undetermined. Notice that each oscillator has frequency  $\omega(\epsilon)$  and that the phase is slowly varying by comparison with the underlying oscillation and represents only the variation from the typical oscillation.

While there are many interesting questions that could be addressed at this point, of greatest interest here is to determine the *firing sequence* in a collection of phase-locked oscillators. By firing sequence, we mean the order of firing of the individual cells. If the firing sequence of cells is spatially ordered, then the firing of cells appears as a spreading wave, although it is not a propagated wave, but a *phase wave*. (It is not propagated because it would remain for some time even if coupling were set to zero. The role of coupling is merely to coordinate, not to initiate, the wavelike behavior.)

To determine the approximate firing sequence, we suppose that the cells are phase-locked and that the steady-state phase differences are not too large. This is the case for normal SA nodal cells, since all of the SA nodal cells fire within a few milliseconds of each other during an oscillatory cycle of about one second duration. If the steady-state phase differences are small enough, we can replace  $h(\delta\theta_j - \delta\theta_i) - h(0)$  in (12.121) by its local linearization  $h'(0)(\delta\theta_j - \delta\theta_i)$ . Then the steady states of (12.121) are determined as solutions of the linear system of equations

$$\sum_j d_{ij}h'(0)(\delta\theta_j - \delta\theta_i) = \Omega_1 - \xi_i. \quad (12.122)$$

We rewrite (12.122) in matrix notation by defining a matrix  $A$  with entries  $a_{ij} = d_{ij}$  if  $i \neq j$  and  $a_{ii} = -\sum_{j \neq i} d_{ij}$ , and then (12.122) becomes

$$A\Phi = \frac{1}{h'(0)}(\vec{\Omega}_1 - \vec{\xi}), \quad (12.123)$$

where  $\Phi$  is the vector with entries  $\delta\theta_i$ ,  $\vec{\Omega}_1$  is a vector with all entries  $\Omega_1$ , and the entries of  $\vec{\xi}$  are the numbers  $\xi_i$ .

A few observations about the matrix  $A$  are important. Notice that  $A$  is symmetric and has a nontrivial null space, since  $\sum_j a_{ij} = 0$ . For consistency, we must choose  $\Omega_1$  such that the sum of all rows of (12.123) is zero, so that

$$\Omega_1 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_i \xi_i. \quad (12.124)$$

Thus, the bulk frequency of the SA node is determined as the average of the frequencies of the individual oscillators. This is a purely democratic process in which one cell equals one vote, regardless of coupling strength.

Next, since all the nonzero elements of  $d_{ij}$  (and hence the off-diagonal elements of  $A$ ) are positive and  $A$  has zero row sums, all the nonzero eigenvalues of  $A$  have negative

real part. Furthermore, since  $A$  is real, symmetric, and nonpositive definite, it has a complete set of  $N$  mutually orthogonal, real eigenvectors, say  $\{y_k\}$ , with corresponding real eigenvalues  $\lambda_k$ . All of the eigenvalues  $\lambda_k$  are negative or zero. If the matrix of coupling coefficients  $d_{ij}$  is irreducible, then the constant eigenvector  $y_1$  is the unique null vector of  $A$ , and  $\lambda_k < 0$  for  $k > 1$  (see Chapter 9, Exercise 9). The matrix of coupling coefficients is *irreducible* if all the cells are connected by some electrical path, so that there are no electrically isolated clumps of cells. Suppose also that the eigenvectors are ordered by increasing amplitude of the eigenvalue. The solution of (12.123) is readily expressed in terms of the eigenvectors and eigenvalues of  $A$  as

$$\Phi = -\frac{1}{h'(0)} \sum_{k \neq 1} \langle \vec{\xi}, y_k \rangle \frac{y_k}{\lambda_k}. \quad (12.125)$$

The scalar  $\Omega_1$  drops out of this expression because the eigenvector  $y_1$  is the constant vector and  $\langle y_k, y_1 \rangle = 0$  for all  $k \neq 1$ .

The firing sequence is now determined from  $\Phi$ . That is, if  $\delta\theta_k$  is the largest element of  $\Phi$ , then the phase of the  $k$ th cell is the most advanced and therefore the first to fire, and so on, in decreasing order. It remains to gain some understanding of the relationship between the natural frequencies  $\vec{\xi}$  and the firing sequence  $\Phi$ .

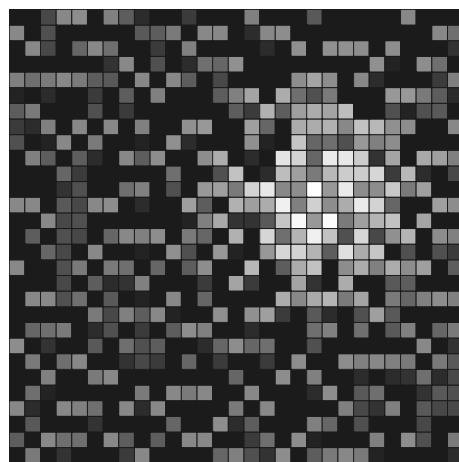
The general principle of how the firing sequence is determined from the natural frequencies  $\vec{\xi}$  is apparent from (12.125). The firing sequence is a superposition of the eigenvectors  $\{y_k\}$  with amplitudes  $\lambda_k^{-1} \langle \vec{\xi}, y_k \rangle$ . Thus, eigenvector components of  $\vec{\xi}$  that are most influential on the firing sequence are those components for which  $\lambda_k^{-1} \langle \vec{\xi}, y_k \rangle$  is largest in amplitude. The expression (12.125) is a filter that suppresses, or filters out, certain components of  $\vec{\xi}$ . It follows that a single cell with high natural frequency compared to its coupled neighbors is not necessarily able to lead the firing sequence.

Equation (12.125) for the firing sequence does not give much geometrical insight. Furthermore, it is usually not a good idea to solve matrix problems such as (12.123) using eigenfunction expansions, since direct numerical methods are much faster and easier. To illustrate how (12.125) works, we consider, as an example, a two-dimensional grid of cells coupled by nearest-neighbor coupling. The natural frequencies of the cells are randomly distributed, with the fastest cells concentrated near the center of the grid. The distribution of natural frequencies is depicted in Fig. 12.28A, with darker locations representing the slowest intrinsic frequencies. The firing sequence for this collection of cells is shown in Fig. 12.28B, where cells with advanced (or largest) phase fire earliest in the firing sequence. The initiation of the firing sequence is at the site of a group of fast, but not necessarily the fastest, oscillators. Notice that the phase is smoothed, giving the appearance of wave-like motion moving from the location of largest phase to smallest phase, even though these are phase waves rather than propagated waves. In this figure, the scale of the phase variable is arbitrary.

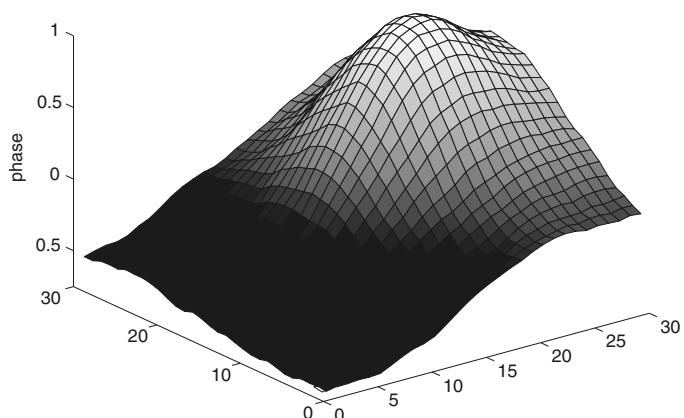
### Critical Size of a Pacemaker

The SA node is a small clump of self-oscillatory cells in a sea of excitable (but nonoscillatory) cells whose function is to initiate the cardiac action potential. SA nodal cells have

A



B



**Figure 12.28** A: Natural frequencies  $\xi_i$  for a collection of oscillatory cells, lighter being faster, and darker being slower. B: Phase for oscillators in a collection of coupled cells with nearest-neighbor coupling and the natural frequencies depicted in panel A.

no contractile function and therefore no contractile machinery. Thus, when viewed in terms of contractile efficiency, SA nodal cells are a detriment to contraction and a waste of important cardiac wall space. On the other hand, the SA node cannot be too small because presumably it would not be able to generate the current necessary to

entrain the rest of the heart successfully. Further it could be that surrounding resting cells drain enough current from the oscillatory cells to quench the pacemaking activity. This drain is called the electrotonic load. Clearly, it is important to have some measure of the critical size of the SA node.

An *ectopic focus* is a collection of cells other than the SA node or AV node that are normally not oscillatory but that for some reason (for example, increased extracellular  $K^+$ ) become self-oscillatory and manage to entrain the surrounding tissue into a rapid beat. In some situations, particularly in people with scar tissue resulting from a previous heart attack, the appearance of an ectopic focus may be life-threatening.

To understand something about the behavior of a clump of oscillatory cells in an otherwise nonoscillatory medium, we use a simple model with FitzHugh–Nagumo dynamics,

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = \nabla^2 v + f(v) - w, \quad (12.126)$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = \epsilon(v - \gamma w - \alpha(r/\sigma)), \quad (12.127)$$

where  $v$  represents the membrane potential and  $w$  the recovery variable for the excitable medium. The function  $f(v)$  is of typical “cubic” shape (cf. Chapter 5). The function  $\alpha(r)$  is chosen to specify the intrinsic cell behavior as a function of the radial variable  $r$ . The number  $\sigma$  is a scale factor that measures the size of the oscillatory region. We take  $\epsilon$  to be a small positive number and require  $\gamma > 0, f'(v)\gamma < 1$  for all  $v$ . This requirement on  $\gamma$  guarantees that the steady-state solution of (12.126)–(12.127) is unique. If the domain is bounded, typical boundary conditions are Neumann (no-flux) conditions. Notice that space has been scaled to have unit space constant. We assume radial symmetry for the SA node as well as for the entire spatial domain.

When there is no spatial coupling, there are two possible types of behavior, exemplified by the phase portraits in Figs. 5.15 and 5.16. In these examples, the system has a unique steady-state solution that is globally stable (Fig. 5.15) or has an unstable steady-state solution surrounded by a stable periodic orbit (Fig. 5.16), depending on the location of the intercept of the two nullclines.

The transition from a stable to an unstable steady state is via a subcritical Hopf bifurcation. The Hopf bifurcation is readily found from standard linear analysis. Suppose  $v^*$  is the equilibrium value for  $v$  ( $v^*$  is a function of  $\alpha$ ). Then the characteristic equation for (12.126)–(12.127) (with no diffusion) is

$$f'(v^*) = \lambda + \frac{\epsilon}{\lambda + \epsilon\gamma}, \quad (12.128)$$

where  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of the linearized system. There is a Hopf bifurcation (i.e.,  $\lambda$  is purely imaginary) when

$$f'(v^*) = \epsilon\gamma, \quad (12.129)$$

provided that  $\epsilon\gamma^2 < 1$ . If  $f'(v^*) > \epsilon\gamma$ , the steady-state solution is an unstable spiral point, whereas if  $f'(v^*) < \epsilon\gamma$ , the steady-state solution is linearly stable. If  $\epsilon$  is small, most of the intermediate (increasing) branch of the curve  $f(v)$  is unstable, with the Hopf bifurcation occurring close to the minimal and maximal points. Thus, there is a range of values of  $\alpha$ , which we denote by  $\alpha_* < \alpha < \alpha^*$ , for which the steady solution is unstable.

We wish to model the physical situation in which a small collection of cells (like the SA node or an ectopic focus) is intrinsically oscillatory, while all other surrounding cells are excitable, but not oscillatory. To model this, we assume that  $\alpha(r)$  is such that the steady solution is unstable for small  $r$ , but stable and excitable for large  $r$ , so that  $\lim_{r \rightarrow \infty} \alpha(r) = a < \alpha_*$  and  $\lim_{r \rightarrow \infty} f'(v^*(r)) < \epsilon\gamma$ . As an example, we might have the bell-shaped curve

$$\alpha(r) = a + (b - a)\exp\left(-\frac{r^2}{R^2}\right), \quad (12.130)$$

$$R^2 = \log\left(\frac{b - a}{\alpha_* - a}\right), \quad (12.131)$$

with  $a < \alpha_* < b < \alpha^*$ . The scale factor  $R$  was chosen such that  $\alpha(1) = \alpha_*$ , so that cells with  $r < 1$  are self-oscillatory and the cells outside unit radius are nonoscillatory.

Another way to specify  $\alpha(r)$  is simply as the piecewise-constant function

$$\alpha(r) = \begin{cases} b, & \text{for } 0 < r < 1, \\ a, & \text{for } r > 1, \end{cases} \quad (12.132)$$

with  $a < \alpha_* < b < \alpha^*$ . The specification (12.132) is particularly useful when used in combination with the piecewise-linear function

$$f(v) = \begin{cases} -v, & \text{for } v < \frac{1}{4}, \\ v - \frac{1}{2}, & \text{for } \frac{1}{4} < v < \frac{3}{4}, \\ 1 - v, & \text{for } v > \frac{3}{4}, \end{cases} \quad (12.133)$$

since then all the calculations that follow can be done explicitly (see Exercises 17 and 18).

There are two parameters whose influence we wish to understand and that we expect to be most significant, namely,  $a$ , the asymptotic value of  $\alpha(r)$  as  $r \rightarrow \infty$ , and  $\sigma$ , which determines the size of the oscillatory region. Note that as  $a$  decreases, the cells become less excitable and the wavespeed of fronts decreases. We expect the behavior to be relatively insensitive to variations in  $b$ , although this should be verified as well.

With a nonuniform  $\alpha(r)$ , the uncoupled medium has a region of cells with unstable steady states and a region with stable steady states. With diffusive coupling, the

steady-state solution is smoothed and satisfies the elliptic equation

$$\nabla^2 v + F(v, r) = 0, \quad (12.134)$$

$$F(v, r) = f(v) - w, \quad (12.135)$$

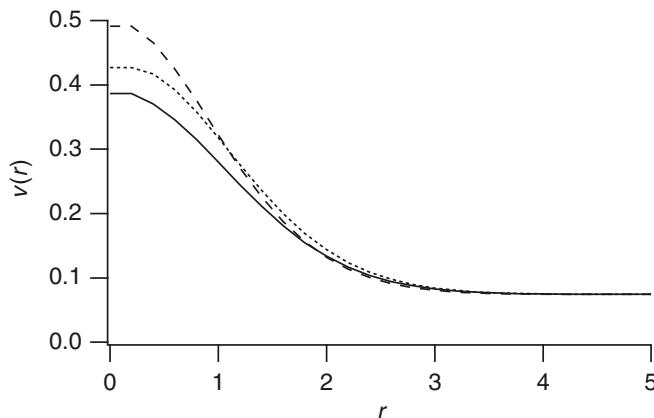
$$w = \frac{1}{\gamma} \left( v - \alpha \left( \frac{r}{\sigma} \right) \right). \quad (12.136)$$

For each  $r$ , since  $f'(v)\gamma < 1$ , the function  $F(v, r)$  is a monotone decreasing function of  $v$  having a unique zero, say  $v = v^*(r), F(v^*(r), r) = 0$ . It follows that there is a unique, stable solution of (12.136), denoted by  $v_0(r), w_0(r)$ . In fact, this unique solution is readily found numerically as the unique steady solution of the nonlinear parabolic equation

$$\frac{\partial y}{\partial t} = \nabla^2 y + F(y, r). \quad (12.137)$$

This steady-state solution is shown in Fig. 12.29. Here are shown three different steady-state solutions of (12.126)–(12.127); the uncoupled solution (the steady states for the uncoupled medium, i.e., with no diffusive coupling), the solution for a symmetric one-dimensional medium, and the solution for a spherically symmetric three-dimensional medium. The three-dimensional solution with spherical symmetry is not much harder to find than the one-dimensional solution, because the change of variables  $y = Y/r$  transforms (12.137) in three spatial dimensions into the one-dimensional problem

$$\frac{\partial Y}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial r^2} + rF\left(\frac{Y}{r}, r\right). \quad (12.138)$$



**Figure 12.29** Three steady-state solutions with  $f(v) = 10.0v(v - 1)(0.5 - v)$ ,  $\gamma = 0.1$ , and  $\alpha(r)$  given by (12.130), with  $a = 0.104$ ,  $b = 0.5$ ,  $\sigma = 2.25$ . The short dashed curve shows the uncoupled solution, the long dashed curve shows the solution for a symmetric one-dimensional medium, and the solid curve shows the solution for a spherically symmetric three-dimensional medium.

Solutions of this partial differential equation are regular at the origin if we require  $Y = 0$  at  $r = 0$ . Diffusion (i.e., electrotonic coupling) obviously smooths the steady-state solution in the oscillatory region.

The issue of collective oscillation is determined by the stability of the diffusively smoothed steady state as a solution of the partial differential equation system (12.126)–(12.127). To study the stability of the steady state, we look for a solution of (12.126)–(12.127) of the form  $v(r) = v_0(r) + V(r)e^{\lambda t}$ ,  $w = w_0(r) + W(r)e^{\lambda t}$  and linearize. We obtain the linear system

$$\lambda V = \nabla^2 V + f'(v_0(r))V - W, \quad (12.139)$$

$$\lambda W = \epsilon(V - \gamma W). \quad (12.140)$$

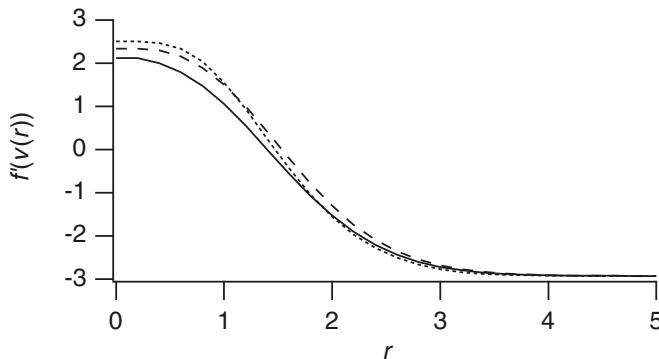
Because of the special form of this linearized system, it can be simplified to a single equation, namely,

$$\nabla^2 V + f'(v_0(r))V = \mu V, \quad (12.141)$$

where  $\mu = \lambda + \frac{\epsilon}{\lambda + \epsilon\gamma}$ . Equation (12.141) has a particularly nice form, being a *Schrödinger equation*. In quantum physics, the function  $-f'(v_0(r))$  is the potential energy function, and the eigenvalues  $\mu$  are the energy levels of bound states. In the present context, we are interested in determining the sign of the real part of  $\lambda$  through  $\mu = \lambda + \frac{\epsilon}{\lambda + \epsilon\gamma}$ . Notice that the relationship between  $\mu$  and  $\lambda$  here is of exactly the same form as the characteristic equation for individual cells (12.128). This leads to a nice interpretation for the Schrödinger equation (12.141). Because it is a self-adjoint equation, the eigenvalues  $\mu$  of (12.141) are real. Therefore, there is a Hopf bifurcation for the medium whenever  $\mu = \epsilon\gamma$ . The entire collection of coupled cells is stable when the largest eigenvalue satisfies  $\mu < \epsilon\gamma$  and unstable if the largest eigenvalue has  $\mu > \epsilon\gamma$ .

In Fig. 12.30 is shown the potential function  $f'(v(r))$  for the three steady profiles of Fig. 12.29. The largest eigenvalue of (12.141) represents an average over space of the influence of  $f'(v_0(r))$  on the stability of the steady state. When this value is larger than  $\epsilon\gamma$  (the critical slope of  $f(v)$  at which Hopf bifurcations of the uncoupled system occur), then the entire medium loses stability to a Hopf bifurcation and gives rise to an oscillatory solution. The condition  $\mu > \epsilon\gamma$  is therefore the condition that determines whether a region of oscillatory cells is a source of oscillation. If  $\mu < \epsilon\gamma$ , the oscillatory cells are held quiescent by the rest of the medium.

Some observations about the size of the eigenvalues  $\mu$  are immediate. Because  $\lim_{r \rightarrow \infty} v_0(r) = \lim_{r \rightarrow \infty} v^*(r)$ , it follows that  $f'(v_0(r)) < \epsilon\gamma$  for large  $r$ . For there to be a bounded solution of (12.141) that is exponentially decaying at  $\pm\infty$ , there must be a region of sinusoidal behavior in which  $\mu < f'(v_0(r))$ . Thus, the largest eigenvalue of (12.141) is guaranteed to be smaller than the maximum of  $f'(v_0(r))$ . Therefore, if  $v_0(r) < \alpha_*$  (so that  $f'(v_0(r)) < \epsilon\gamma$  for all  $r$ ), there are no oscillatory cells, and the steady solution is stable. Furthermore, since the largest eigenvalue is strictly smaller than the maximum of  $f'(v_0(r))$  and it varies continuously with changes in  $v_0(r)$ , there are profiles  $\alpha(r)$  having a nontrivial collection of oscillatory cells that is too small to render the medium unstable. That is, there is a critical mass of oscillatory cells necessary to



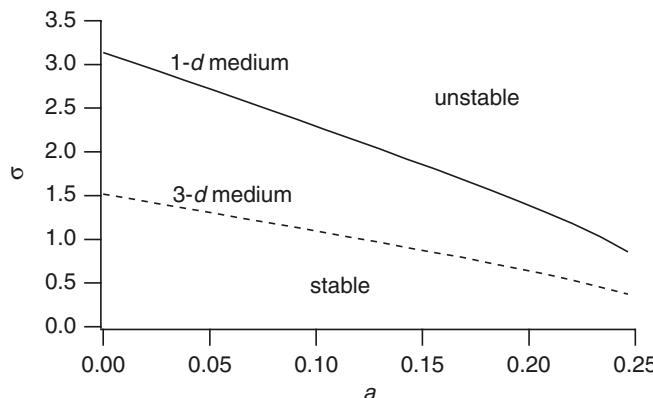
**Figure 12.30** The potential function  $f'(v(r))$  for three steady profiles  $v(r)$ . The short dashed curve corresponds to the uncoupled solution, the long dashed curve to the symmetric one-dimensional medium, and the solid curve to a spherically symmetric three-dimensional medium.

cause the medium to oscillate. Below this critical mass, the steady state is stable, and the oscillation of the oscillatory cells is quenched.

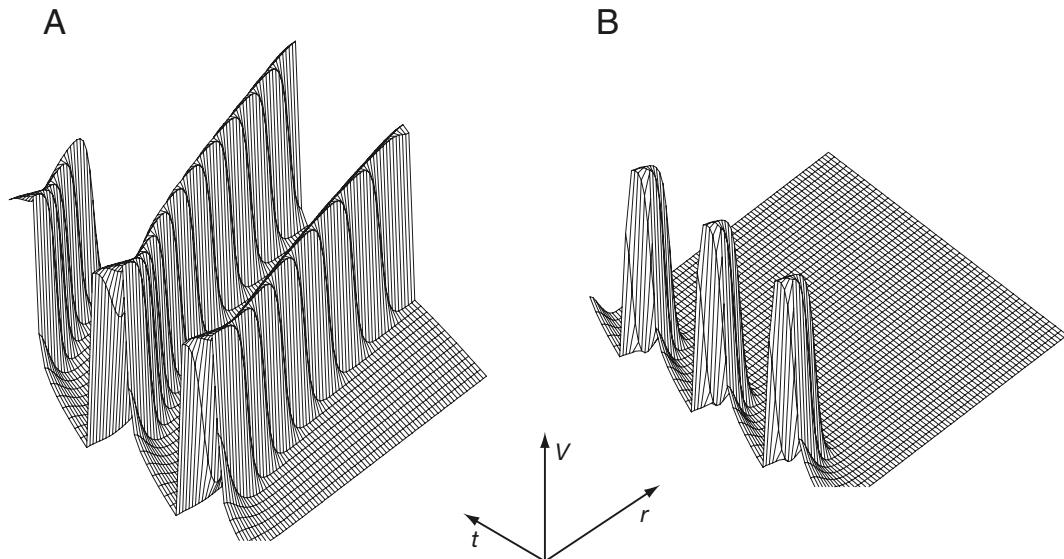
Suppose  $f'(v)$  is a monotone increasing function of  $v$  in some range  $v < v^+$ , and suppose that  $\alpha(r)$  is restricted so that  $v_0(r) < v^+$  for all  $r$ . Suppose further that  $\alpha(r)$  is a monotone increasing function of its asymptotic value  $a$  and a monotone decreasing function of  $r$ . Then the steady-state solution  $v_0(r)$  is an increasing function (for each point  $r$ ) of both  $a$  and  $\sigma$ . Therefore, the function  $f'(v_0(r))$  is an increasing function of  $a$  and  $\sigma$  for all values of  $r$ , from which it follows—using standard comparison arguments for eigenfunctions (Keener, 1998, or Courant and Hilbert, 1953)—that  $\mu(a, \sigma)$ , the largest eigenvalue of (12.141), is an increasing function of both  $a$  and  $\sigma$ . As a result, if  $\alpha(r)$  is restricted so that  $v_0(r) < v^+$  for all  $r$ , there is a monotone decreasing function of  $\sigma$ , denoted by  $\sigma = \Sigma(a)$ , along which the largest eigenvalue  $\mu(a, \sigma)$  of (12.141) is precisely  $\epsilon\gamma$ .

This summary statement shows that to build the SA node, one must have a sufficiently large region of oscillatory tissue, and that the critical mass requirement increases if the tissue becomes less excitable or if the coupling becomes stronger. Strong coupling inhibits oscillations, because increasing coupling increases the space constant, and  $\sigma$  was measured in space constant units. Therefore, an increase of the space constant increases the critical size requirement of the oscillatory region. In Fig. 12.31 is shown the critical Hopf curve  $\sigma = \Sigma(a)$  for a one-dimensional domain and for a three-dimensional domain (taking  $\epsilon = 0$ ), both found numerically.

Having established that there is a critical size for a self-oscillatory region above which oscillations occur and below which oscillations are prevented, we would like to examine the behavior of the oscillations. Two types of oscillatory behavior are possible. If the far field  $r \rightarrow \infty$  is sufficiently excitable, then the oscillations of the oscillatory region excite periodic waves that propagate throughout the medium, as depicted in



**Figure 12.31** The critical curve  $\sigma = \Sigma(a)$  along which there is a Hopf bifurcation for the system (12.126)–(12.127), shown solid for a one-dimensional and dashed for a three-dimensional medium.



**Figure 12.32** A: Waves generated by an oscillatory core that propagate into the nonoscillatory region. The nonlinearity here is the same as in Fig. 12.29 with  $\epsilon = 0.1$ ,  $\gamma = 0.1$ ,  $a = 0.2$ ,  $b = 0.5$ , and  $\sigma = 3.0$ . B: Waves generated by an oscillatory core that fail to propagate into the nonoscillatory region. Same parameters as in A, but with  $a = 0$ .

Fig. 12.32A. On the other hand, it may be that there are oscillations that fail to propagate throughout the entire medium, as depicted in Fig. 12.32B. In Fig. 12.32A, the oscillatory region successfully drives oscillatory waves that propagate throughout the entire medium. Here,  $a = 0.2$ ,  $\sigma = 3.0$ . In Fig. 12.32B, the oscillatory region is incapable of driving periodic waves into the nonoscillatory region, as the medium at infinity does not support front propagation.

The issue of whether or not the entire medium is entrained to the central oscillator is decided by the relationship between the period of the oscillator and the dispersion curve for the far medium. Roughly speaking, if the period of the central oscillator is large enough compared to the absolute refractory period of the far medium (the knee of the dispersion curve), then waves can be expected to propagate into the far field in one-to-one entrainment. On the other hand, if the frequency of the oscillation is below the knee of the dispersion curve, we expect partial or total block of propagation. Block of propagation occurs as the excitability of the far field, parameterized by  $a$ , decreases.

We can summarize how the oscillations of the medium depend on coupling strength. For a medium with fixed asymptotic excitability, if the size of the oscillatory region is large enough, there is oscillatory behavior. However, this critical mass is an increasing function of coupling strength. With sufficiently large coupling, the oscillations of any finite clump of oscillatory cells (in an infinite domain of nonoscillatory cells) are quenched. If coupling is decreased, the critical mass for oscillation decreases. Thus, any clump of oscillatory cells oscillates if coupling is weak enough. However, if coupling is too weak, then effects of discrete coupling may become important, and the oscillatory clump of cells may lose its ability to entrain the entire medium. It follows that if the medium is sufficiently excitable, there is a range of coupling strengths, bounded above and below, in which a mass of oscillatory cells entrains the medium. If the coupling is too large, the oscillations are suppressed, while if the coupling is too weak, the oscillations are localized and cannot drive oscillations in the medium far away from the oscillatory source. On the other hand, if the far region is not sufficiently excitable, then one of these two mechanisms suppresses entrainment for all coupling strengths.

## 12.4 Cardiac Arrhythmias

Cardiac arrhythmias are disruptions of the normal cardiac electrical cycle. They are generally of two types. There are temporal disruptions, which occur when cells act out of sequence, either by firing autonomously or by refusing to respond to a stimulus from other cells, as in AV nodal block or a bundle branch block. A collection of cells that fires autonomously is called an ectopic focus. Generally speaking, these arrhythmias cause little disruption to the ability of the heart muscle to pump blood, and so if they do not initiate some other kind of arrhythmia, are generally not life-threatening.

The second class of arrhythmias are those that are reentrant in nature and can occur only because of the spatial distribution of cardiac tissue. If they occur in the ventricles, reentrant arrhythmias are of serious concern and life-threatening, as the ability of the heart to pump blood is greatly diminished. Reentrant arrhythmias on the atria are less dangerous, since the pumping activity of the atrial muscle is not necessary to normal function with minimal physical activity, although long-lived atrial reentrant arrhythmias are known to increase the chance of strokes.

## 12.4.1 Cellular Arrhythmias

By a cellular arrhythmia we mean an action potential response to a stimulus protocol that is not one-to-one. Such arrhythmias are relatively easy to observe in models. Simply apply a periodic stimulus to your favorite model of cellular activity, vary the period and watch what happens. Of course, it would be nice to obtain some deeper understanding of the cause of these arrhythmias than can be provided by numerical simulation. To that end ideas of dynamical systems theory and discrete maps have been extensively used. Here we present two such examples, APD alternans and Wenckebach patterns in the AV node.

### APD Alternans

Yehia et al. (1999) give a comprehensive discussion of the types of rhythms that an isolated cardiac cell can demonstrate under regular pacing. A cell isolated from rabbit ventricular muscle was stimulated periodically and the resulting sequence of action potential durations (APDs) was measured. It was found that for sufficiently large basic cycle length (BCL), after the disappearance of initial transients, each stimulus evoked the same APD. This pattern is referred to as a 1:1 rhythm - one stimulus, one response. For appropriately small BCL, the APD alternated between that of a full action potential and that of a sub-threshold response with APD essentially zero. This pattern is referred to as a 2:1 rhythm since every two stimuli evoked one super-threshold response. This 2:1 rhythm is relatively easy to understand. For large BCL, the cell has sufficient time to recover from the previous action potential before the next stimulus, but for short BCL, there is not sufficient time to recover, and the stimulus delivered during this unrecovered stage elicits a subthreshold response.

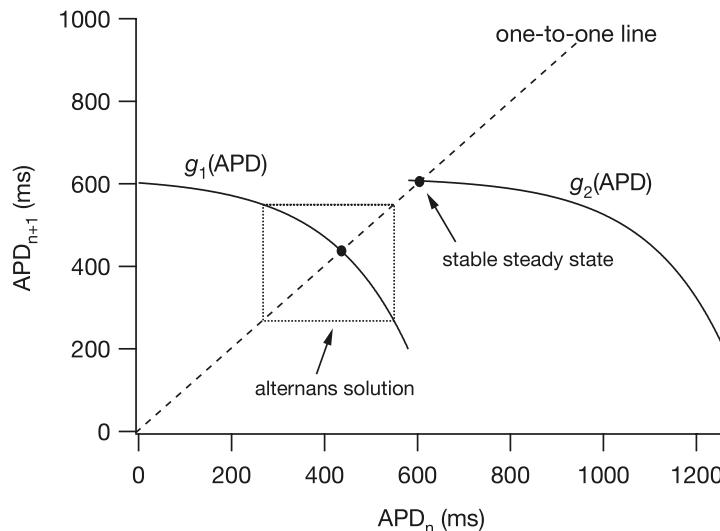
More interesting behavior occurs between these two extremes of BCL. For large stimulus amplitude, as BCL is decreased, the 1:1 rhythm is replaced by a rhythm in which there are superthreshold responses with alternating APDs. This 2:2 rhythm is referred to as APD alternans. (2:2 refers to the fact that there are 2 superthreshold responses to 2 stimuli, but the responses are not the same.)

Models of APD alternans trace back to the work of Nolasco and Dahlen (1968). The basic assumption is that APD is a function of the preceding recovery period or diastolic interval (DI). If the cell is assumed to be either excited or recovering, then  $BCL = APD + DI$  where

$$APD_{n+1} = G(DI) = G(BCL - APD_n). \quad (12.142)$$

In the case of subthreshold responses, where the DI is smaller than some minimum necessary to reestablish excitability, it is assumed that the sub-threshold stimulus has no effect on the cell, but there is an extra BCL during which the cell can recover. Thus, if there are  $N - 1$  unsuccessful stimuli,  $DI = N \cdot BCL - APD$ , so that

$$APD_{n+1} = G(DI) = G(N \cdot BCL - APD_n). \quad (12.143)$$



**Figure 12.33** A sample APD map exhibiting alternans and bistability. Parameter values are  $APD_{\max} = 616$ ,  $A = 750$ ,  $\mu = 170$ ,  $DI_{\min} = 100$  and  $BCL = 680$ , all with units of ms.

A typical choice for  $G$  is an exponential of the form

$$G(DI) = APD_{\max} - A \exp\left(-\frac{DI}{\mu}\right), \quad DI > DI_{\min}, \quad (12.144)$$

where  $APD_{\max}$ ,  $A$ ,  $\mu$ , and  $DI_{\min}$  are fit to data.

A plot of this map for typical parameter values is shown in Fig. 12.33, where  $g_k(APD) = G(k \cdot BCL - APD)$ . Because this is a one-dimensional map, it is quite easy to study its dynamic behavior. First note that the argument of  $G$  must always be greater than  $DI_{\min}$ . Thus,  $g_k$  is defined only if  $APD > k \cdot BCL - DI_{\min}$ . Specifically, the map  $g_1$  is defined only on the interval  $(0, BCL - DI_{\min})$  which, in Fig. 12.33 is the interval  $(0, 580)$ . Similarly, the map  $g_2$  is defined only on the interval  $(BCL - DI_{\min}, 2BCL - DI_{\min})$ .

Fixed points of these maps are at the intersections of the one-to-one line with the functions  $g_k(APD)$ . Stability of the fixed points is determined by the slope of  $g_k(APD)$  at the fixed point, with stability if  $|g'_k(APD^*)| < 1$ , and instability otherwise. Instability of the fixed point gives rise to a period two bifurcation, corresponding to alternans.

Increasing  $BCL$  shifts the curves to the right, so apparently for sufficiently large  $BCL$  there is a unique fixed point of the  $g_1$  map, which corresponds to a 1:1 rhythm. As  $BCL$  is decreased, however, the slope of  $g_1$  at the fixed point becomes more negative, leading, if the slope becomes less than  $-1$ , to a period two bifurcation. For the parameter values used in Fig. 12.33, there is also a region of bistability, in which stable alternans coexist with a stable 2:1 rhythm. The stable 2:1 rhythm is the steady state of the  $g_2$  map, i.e., the point where the  $g_2$  graph crosses the one-to-one line. This bistability has been observed experimentally (Hall et al., 1999; Yehia et al., 1999).

The observation that alternans occur in single cells when the slope of the APD curve exceeds one has lead many investigators to speculate that a steep APD restitution curve is responsible for a variety of arrhythmias in cardiac tissue as well, not only single cells. This is now known as the APD restitution hypothesis, and there is an extensive literature describing it, along with the suggestion that flattening the APD restitution curve (with drugs, for example) might prevent certain kinds of arrhythmias. However, this hypothesis remains highly conjectural. See, for example, Courtemanche et al. (1993), Cytrynbaum and Keener (2002), Qu et al. (2000), Garfinkel et al. (2000), Watanabe et al. (2001).

Discrete maps have been used with great success to study a variety of cellular arrhythmias, see for example Otani and Gilmour (1997), Hall et al. (1999), Glass et al. (1987) and Watanabe et al. (1995).

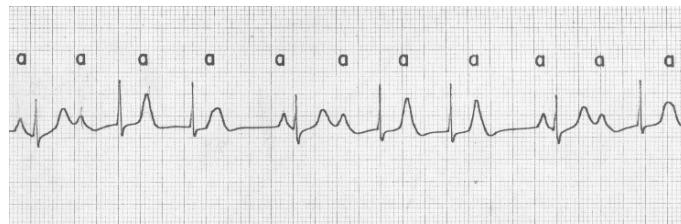
### 12.4.2 Atrioventricular Node—Wenckebach Rhythms

In the normal heart, the only pathway for an action potential to travel to the ventricles is through the AV node. As noted above, propagation through the AV node is quite slow compared to propagation in other cardiac cells. This slowed conduction is primarily due to a decreased density of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels, which yields a decreased upstroke velocity, as well as a significantly decreased density of gap-junctional coupling (Pollack, 1976). With a decrease of  $\text{Na}^+$  channel density there is also an increased likelihood of conduction failure.

Propagation failure in the AV node leads to skipped QRS complexes on the ECG, or, more prosaically, skipped heartbeats. A skipped heartbeat once in a while is not particularly dangerous, but it is certainly noticeable. During *diastole* (the period of ventricular relaxation during the heartbeat cycle), the ventricles fill with blood. Following an abnormally long diastolic period, the heart becomes enlarged, and when the next compression (*systole*) occurs, *Starling's law* (i.e., that compression is stronger when the heart is more distended initially, cf. Chapter 11) takes control, and compression is noticeably more vigorous, giving the subject a solid thump in the chest.

AV nodal conduction abnormalities are sorted into three classes. They are all readily visible from ECG recordings by looking at the time interval between the P wave and the QRS complex, i.e., the *P–R interval*. Type I AV nodal block shows itself as an increase in the P–R interval as the SA pacing rate increases. Type III AV nodal block corresponds to no AV nodal conduction whatever and total absence of a QRS complex.

Type II AV nodal block is phenomenologically the most interesting. In the simplest type, there is one QRS complex for every two P waves, a 2:1 pattern. A more complicated pattern is as follows: on the ECG (Fig. 12.34), P waves remain periodic, although the P–R interval is observed to increase gradually until one QRS complex is skipped. Following the skipped beat, the next P–R interval is quite short, but then the P–R lengthening begins again, leading to another skipped beat, and so on. A pattern with  $n$  P waves to  $n - 1$  QRS complexes is called an *n-to-(n – 1)* *Wenckebach pattern*, after the German cardiologist Wenckebach (1904).



**Figure 12.34** ECG recording of a Wenckebach pattern in which every fourth or fifth atrial beat is not conducted. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-24, p. 313.)

A simple mathematical description of AV nodal signal processing can be given as follows: we view the AV node as a collection of cells that fire when they are excited, which happens if their potential reaches a threshold,  $\theta(t)$ . Immediately after firing, the cells become refractory but then gradually recover. Effectively, at firing, the threshold increases dramatically but then decreases exponentially back to its steady-state value as recovery proceeds. This model ignores the fact that the AV node is self-oscillatory and fires without stimulus with a low frequency of 30–40 per minute. The self-oscillatory nature of the AV node becomes evident only in cases of SA nodal failure or at very low SA nodal firing rates. Thus, the model discussed here is valid at high stimulus rates (appropriate for AV nodal block) but not at low stimulus rates.

Input to the AV node comes from the action potential propagating through the atria from the SA node. The AV node experiences a periodic, time-varying potential, say  $\phi(t)$ . Firing occurs if the input signal reaches the threshold. Therefore, at the  $n$ th firing time, denoted by  $t_n$ ,

$$\phi(t_n) = \theta(t_n). \quad (12.145)$$

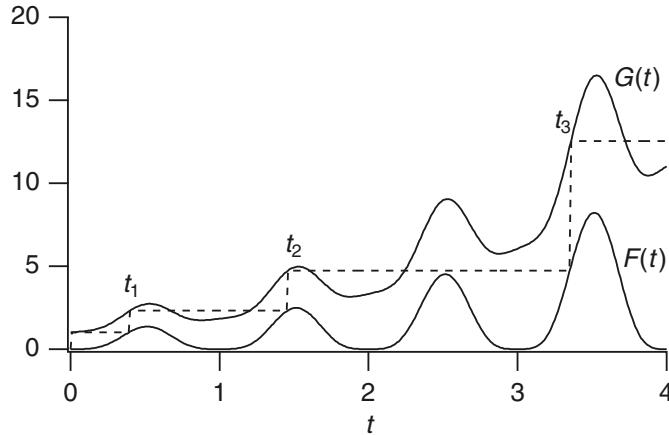
Subsequent to firing, the threshold evolves according to

$$\theta(t) = \theta_0 + [\theta(t_n^+) - \theta_0]e^{-\gamma(t-t_n)}, \quad t > t_n. \quad (12.146)$$

Note that  $\theta \rightarrow \theta_0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , and thus  $\theta_0$  denotes the base value of the threshold. Further,  $\theta = \theta(t_n^+)$  at  $t = t_n$ , and thus  $\theta(t_n^+) - \theta(t_n^-)$  denotes the jump in the threshold caused by the firing of an action potential. To complete the model we must specify  $\theta(t_n^+)$ . The important feature of  $\theta(t_n^+)$  is that it must have some memory, that is, depend in some way on  $\theta(t_n^-)$ . Therefore, we take

$$\theta(t_n^+) = \theta(t_n^-) + \Delta\theta. \quad (12.147)$$

The simple choice used here is to take  $\Delta\theta$  a constant. However, consideration of the threshold in FitzHugh–Nagumo models suggests that (in a more general model)  $\Delta\theta$  could also be some decreasing function of  $\theta(t_n^-)$ , i.e.,  $\Delta\theta = \Delta\theta(\theta(t_n^-)) = \Delta\theta(\phi(t_n))$ , since  $\phi(t_n) = \theta(t_n^-)$ .



**Figure 12.35** Plot of the functions  $F(t)$  and  $G(t)$  with  $\Delta\theta = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma = 0.6$ .

Now we can find the next firing time as the smallest solution of the transcendental equation

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) = \theta_0 + [\theta(t_n^+) - \theta_0] e^{-\gamma(t_{n+1} - t_n)}. \quad (12.148)$$

Equation (12.148) can be rearranged into an equation of the form

$$F(t_{n+1}) = F(t_n) + \Delta\theta e^{\gamma t_n} = G(t_n), \quad (12.149)$$

where

$$F(t) = (\phi(t) - \theta_0)e^{\gamma t}. \quad (12.150)$$

Plots of typical functions  $F(t)$  and  $G(t)$  are shown in Fig. 12.35. Here we have taken  $\phi(t) - \theta_0 = \sin^4(\pi t)$ . The dashed lines in this figure follow a few iterates of the map.

The key observation is that the map  $t_n \mapsto t_{n+1}$  as defined by (12.149) is the lift of a circle map. Before proceeding with this example, we give a brief introduction to the theory of circle maps.

The first application of circle maps to the behavior of neurons was given by Knight (1972). More detailed discussions of maps and chaos and the like with application to a wide array of biological problems can be found in Glass and Mackey (1988), Glass and Kaplan (1995), and Strogatz (1994).

### Circle Maps

A circle map is a map of the circle to itself,  $f : S^1 \rightarrow S^1$ , but it is often easier to describe a circle map in terms of its *lift*  $F : R \rightarrow R$ , where  $F$  is a monotone increasing function and  $F(x + 1) = F(x) + 1$ . The two functions  $f$  and  $F$  are related by

$$f(x) \equiv F(x \bmod 1) \bmod 1. \quad (12.151)$$

(For convenience we normalize the circumference of the circle to be of length 1, rather than  $2\pi$ .)

The primary challenge from a circle map is to determine when the behavior is periodic and to understand the possible nonperiodic behaviors. The simplest periodic behavior is a period 1 solution, say a point  $x_0$  for which  $F(x_0) = x_0 + 1$ . This orbit is also said to have *rotation number* one because it rotates around the circle once on each iterate. This is also described as 1:1 phase locking between input and output. A more complicated periodic orbit would be a point  $x_0$  and its iterates  $x_j$  with the property that  $x_n = x_0 + m$ . In other words, the iterates rotate around the circle  $m$  times in  $n$  iterates. The rotation number is  $m/n$ , and there is  $m : n$  phase locking, with  $m$  output cycles for every  $n$  input cycles.

The key fact to understand is that the asymptotic behavior of a circle map is characterized by its *rotation number*,  $\rho$ , defined by

$$\rho = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{F^n(x)}{n}. \quad (12.152)$$

$F^n(x)$  is the  $n$ th iterate of the point  $x$ ,

$$F^n(x) = F(F^{n-1}(x)), \quad (12.153)$$

where  $F^0(x) = x$  and  $F^1(x) = F(x)$ .

If  $F$  is a continuous function, the rotation number has the following properties:

1.  $\rho$  exists and is independent of  $x$ .
2.  $\rho$  is rational if and only if there are periodic points.
3. If  $\rho$  is irrational, then the map  $F$  is equivalent to a rigid rotation by the amount  $\rho$ .
4. If there is a continuous family of maps  $F_\lambda$ , then  $\rho(\lambda)$  is a continuous function of  $\lambda$ . Furthermore, if  $F_\lambda$  is a monotone increasing function of  $\lambda$ , then  $\rho$  is a nondecreasing function of  $\lambda$ .
5. Generically, if  $\rho(\lambda)$  is rational at some value of  $\lambda_0$ , it is constant on an open interval containing  $\lambda_0$ .

Here is what this means in practical terms. Since  $\rho$  exists, independent of  $x$ , all orbits have the same asymptotic behavior, orbiting the circle at the same rate, independent of initial position. If  $\rho$  is rational, the asymptotic behavior is periodic, whereas if  $\rho$  is irrational, the motion is equivalent to a rigid rotation. In this case, the behavior is aperiodic, but not complicated, or “chaotic.” There are no other types of behavior for a continuous circle map.

The last two features of  $\rho$  make the behavior of the orbits so unusual, being a function that is continuous, monotone nondecreasing (if  $F_\lambda$  is an increasing function of  $\lambda$ ), yet locally constant at all the rational levels. Such a function is called the *Devil's staircase*. Notice that if  $\rho$  is rational on an open interval of parameter space, then phase locking is robust.

The reason for this robustness is that a periodic point with  $\rho = p/q$  corresponds to a root of the equation  $F^q(x) - x = p$ , and roots of equations are generally, but not

always, robust, or transversal (i.e., the derivative of  $F^q(x) - x$  at a root is nonzero). If a root is transversal, then arbitrarily small perturbations to the equation do not destroy the root, and it persists for a range of parameter values. However, the existence of a periodic point is no guarantee that it is robust. For example, the simple shift  $F(x) = x + \lambda$  has periodic points whenever  $\lambda$  is rational, but these periodic points are never isolated or robust.

A detailed exposition on continuous circle maps and proofs of the above statements can be found in Coddington and Levinson (1984, chapter 17).

Now we attempt to apply this theory of circle maps to (12.149). Notice that this is indeed the lift of a circle map, since if  $t_n$  and  $t_{n+1}$  satisfy (12.149), then so do  $t_n + T$  and  $t_{n+1} + T$ . To find a circle map, we let  $k_n$  be the largest integer less than  $t_n/T$  and define  $\psi_n = (t_n - k_n T)/T$ . In these variables the map (12.149) can be written as

$$f(\psi_{n+1}) = (f(\psi_n) + \Delta\theta e^{\gamma T \psi_n}) e^{\gamma T \Delta k_n}, \quad (12.154)$$

where

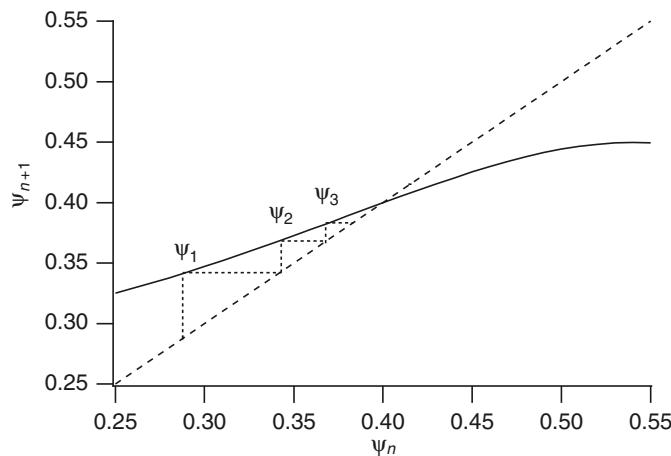
$$f(\psi) = (\Phi(\psi) - \theta_0) e^{\gamma T \psi}, \quad \Phi(\psi) = \phi(T\psi), \quad (12.155)$$

and  $\Delta k_n = k_{n+1} - k_n$ .

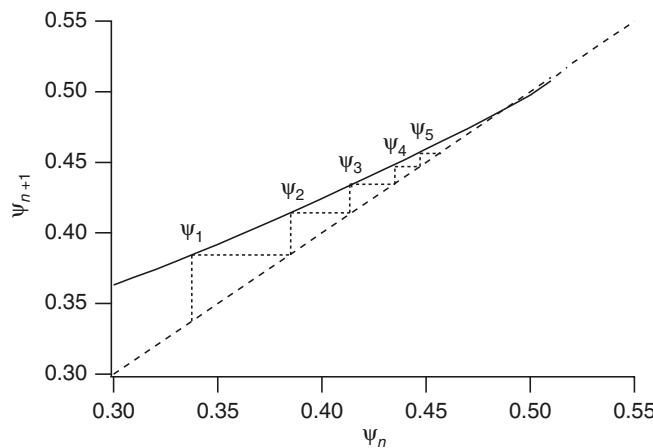
We can make a few observations about the map  $\psi_n \mapsto \psi_{n+1}$ . First, and most disconcerting, the map is not continuous. In fact, it is apparent that there are values of  $t$  on the unit interval that can never be firing times. For  $t$  to be permitted as a firing time it must be the first point at which  $F(t)$  reaches the level  $G(t_n)$ , i.e., the first time that the threshold is reached. At such a point,  $F'(t) \geq 0$ . Since there are regions for which  $F'(t) < 0$ , which can therefore never be firing times, this is a map of the unit interval *into*, but not onto, itself. However, the map  $t_n \mapsto t_{n+1}$  is order preserving, since  $G(t)$  is increasing whenever  $F(t)$  is increasing.

Since the entire unit interval is not covered by the map, it is only necessary to examine the map on its range. Examples of the map  $\psi_n \mapsto \psi_{n+1}$  are shown in Figs. 12.36–12.39. Here we have plotted the map only on the attracting range of the unit interval. These show important and typical features, namely that the map consists of either one or two continuous, monotone increasing branches. The first branch, with values above the one-to-one curve, corresponds to firing in response to the subsequent input (with  $k_{n+1} = k_n + 1$ ), and the second, with values below the one-to-one curve, corresponds to firing after skipping one beat (with  $k_{n+1} = k_n + 2$ ). The skipped beat occurs because when the stimulating pulse arrives, it is subthreshold and so does not evoke a response.

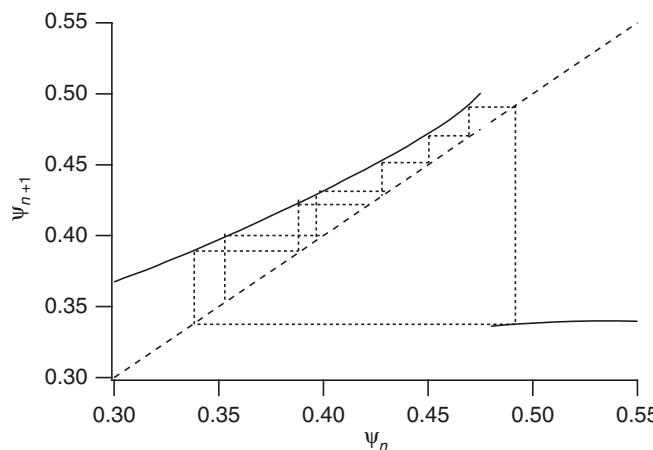
The sequence of figures in Figs. 12.36–12.39 is arranged according to decreasing values of  $\gamma T$ . Note that as  $\gamma$  decreases, the rate of recovery from inhibition decreases. For  $\gamma T$  sufficiently large, there is a unique fixed point, corresponding to firing in 1:1 response to the input signal. This makes intuitive sense, for when  $\gamma$  is large, the recovery from inhibition is fast, and thus the AV node can be driven at the frequency of the SA node. For large  $\gamma T$  the map is relatively insensitive to changes in parameters. As  $\gamma T$  decreases, the first branch of the map increases and the value of the fixed point



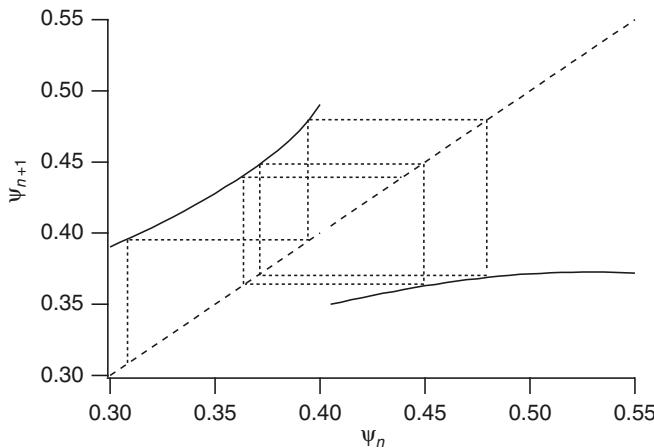
**Figure 12.36** Plot of the map  $\psi_n \mapsto \psi_{n+1}$  with  $\Delta\theta = 1.0, \gamma T = 0.8$ .



**Figure 12.37** Plot of the map  $\psi_n \mapsto \psi_{n+1}$  with  $\Delta\theta = 1.0, \gamma T = 0.695$ .



**Figure 12.38** Plot of the map  $\psi_n \mapsto \psi_{n+1}$  with  $\Delta\theta = 1.0, \gamma T = 0.67$ .



**Figure 12.39** Plot of the map  $\psi_n \mapsto \psi_{n+1}$  with  $\Delta\theta = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma T = 0.55$ .

increases, corresponding to a somewhat delayed firing. Furthermore, because the slope of the map in the vicinity of the fixed point is close to 1, the fixed point is sensitive to changes in parameter values (depicted in Fig. 12.37), corresponding to type I AV block.

As the parameter  $\gamma T$  is decreased further, the fixed point is lost and a second branch to the map appears (as in Fig. 12.38). Iterations show that subsequent firings become later and later in the input cycle until one beat is skipped, followed by a firing that is relatively early in the input cycle. For this region of parameter space, the map replicates the Wenckebach pattern.

Finally, as  $\gamma T$  decreases further, the second branch “slides over” to the left and eventually intersects the one-to-one line, yielding a fixed point. This fixed point corresponds to a periodic pattern of one skipped beat for each successful firing, a two-to-one pattern, and replicates type II AV block.

The behavior of the map in the region with no fixed point can be described by the rotation number. For maps of the type (12.149) the rotation number can be defined, analogously to our earlier definition, by

$$\rho = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{t_n}{nT}. \quad (12.156)$$

The following features of the rotation number  $\rho$  can be verified (Keener, 1980a, 1981):

1.  $\rho$  exists and is independent of initial data.
2.  $\rho$  is a monotone decreasing function of  $\gamma T$ .
3.  $\rho$  attains every rational level between 0 and 1 on an open interval of parameter space.

For continuous circle maps, it is not certain that every rational level is attained on an open interval of parameter space.

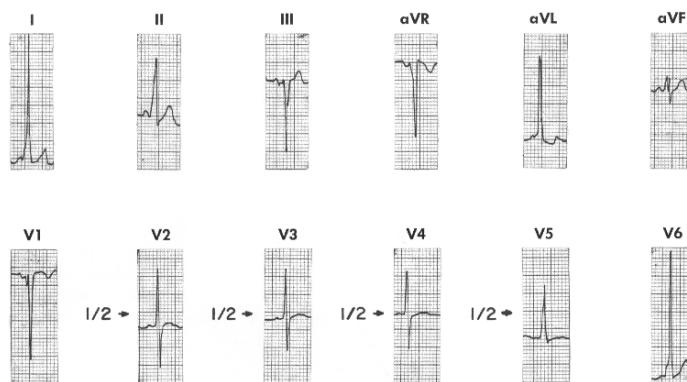
The main consequence of this result is that between 1:1 phase locking and 2:1 AV block, for every rational number there is an open interval of  $\gamma T$  on which the rotation with that rational number is attained.

### 12.4.3 Reentrant Arrhythmias

A reentrant arrhythmia is a self-sustained pattern of action potential propagation that circulates around a closed path, reentering and reexiting tissue as it goes.

The simplest reentrant pattern is one for which the path of travel is one dimensional. These were first studied by Mines (1914) when he intentionally cut a ring of tissue from around the superior vena cava and managed to initiate waves that traveled in only one direction.

A classic example of a one-dimensional reentrant rhythm of clinical relevance is one in which an action potential circulates continuously between the atria and the ventricles through a loop, exiting the atria through the AV node and reentering the atria through an *accessory pathway* (or vice versa). Since conduction through the AV node is quite slow compared to other propagation, an accessory pathway that circumvents the AV node usually reveals itself on the ECG by an early, broad deflection of the QRS complex (Fig. 12.40). This deflection is broadened because it depicts propagation through myocardial tissue, which is slow compared to normal propagation through the Purkinje network. This is known clinically as Wolff–Parkinson–White (WPW) syndrome, and is life-threatening if not detected and treated. However, because the associated reentrant rhythm travels essentially along a one-dimensional pathway (at least at two points), WPW syndrome is usually curable, as cardiac surgeons can use localized radio frequency waves to burn and permanently obliterate the accessory pathway, restoring a



**Figure 12.40** Twelve-lead ECG recording of Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome, identifiable by the shortened P–Q interval (because the AV delay is circumvented) and the slowed QRS upstroke, particularly noticeable in leads II, aVR, and V6. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-47, p. 339; originally from Guneroth, 1965).

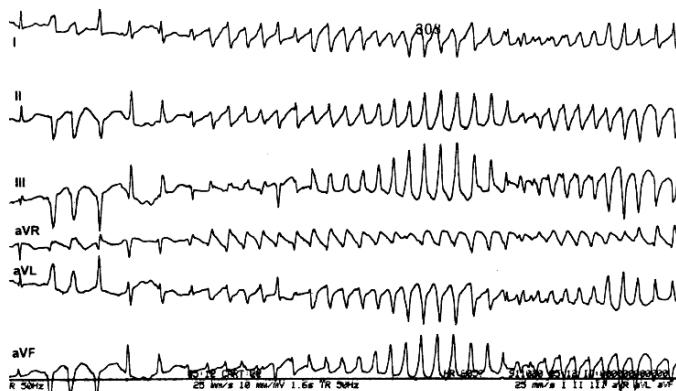
normal single pathway conduction and a normal ECG, and preventing the formation of a closed loop.

Reentrant patterns which are not constrained to a one-dimensional pathway are much more problematic. The two primary reentrant arrhythmias of this type are *tachycardia* and *fibrillation*. Both of these can occur on the atria (*atrial tachycardia* and *atrial fibrillation*) or in the ventricles (*ventricular tachycardia* and *ventricular fibrillation*). When they occur on the atria, they are not immediately life-threatening because the disruption of blood flow is not catastrophic (although over a long term they can cause strokes). However, when they occur on the ventricles, they are life-threatening. Ventricular fibrillation is fatal if it is not terminated quickly. Symptoms of ventricular tachycardia include dizziness or fainting, and sometimes rapid “palpitations.”

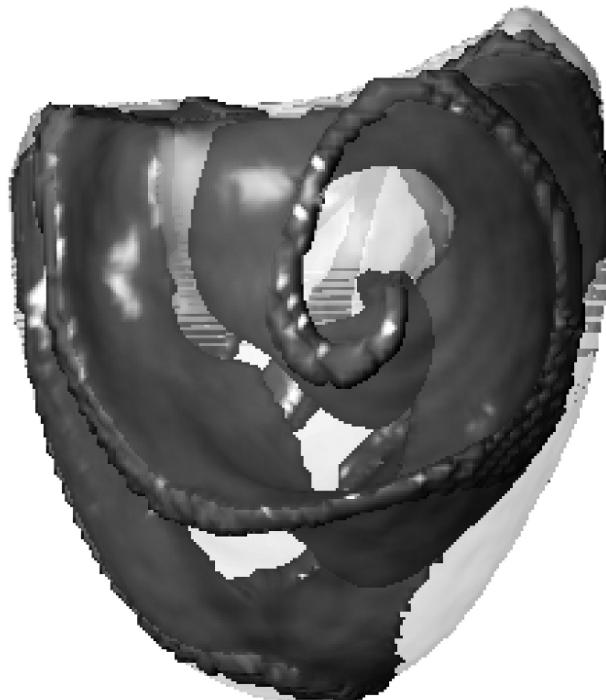
Tachycardia is often classified as being either *monomorphic* or *polymorphic*, depending on the assumed morphology of the activation pattern. Monomorphic tachycardia is identified as having a simple periodic ECG, while polymorphic tachycardia is usually quasiperiodic, apparently the superposition of more than one periodic oscillation. A typical example of a polymorphic tachycardia is called *torsades de pointes*, and appears on the ECG as a rapid oscillation with slowly varying amplitude (Fig. 12.41). A vectorgram interpretation suggests a periodically rotating mean heart vector.

It is currently believed that the spatiotemporal wave pattern associated with *atrial flutter* is a spiral wave. Because the ventricles are three dimensional, a pattern that appears on the ventricular surface to be spiral-like must, in fact, correspond to a three-dimensional reentrant wave, a scroll wave. A three-dimensional view of a (numerically computed) scroll wave, corresponding to monomorphic V-tach is shown in Fig. 12.42.

Stable monomorphic ventricular tachycardia is rare, as most reentrant tachycardias degenerate into fibrillation. The likely reason for this is that there are a number of potential instabilities, although the mechanism of these instabilities has not been



**Figure 12.41** A six-lead ECG recording of *torsades de pointes*. (Zipes and Jalife, 1995, Fig. 79-1, p. 886.)



**Figure 12.42** Numerically computed scroll wave in ventricular muscle. (Panfilov and Keener, 1995, p. 685, Fig. 3a.)

decisively determined. Some possibilities (including the APD alternans instability) are discussed by a number of authors (Courtemanche and Winfree, 1991; Karma, 1993, 1994; Panfilov and Holden, 1990; Panfilov and Hogeweg, 1995; Bar and Eiswirth, 1993; Courtemanche et al., 1993). It is currently believed that stable monomorphic V-tach can be maintained only by special physical structures in the cardiac tissue, such as a small conducting pathway through otherwise damaged tissue.

Fibrillation is believed to correspond to the presence of many reentrant patterns moving throughout the ventricles in continuous, perhaps erratic, fashion, leading to an uncoordinated pattern of ventricular contraction and relaxation. A surface view of a (numerically computed) fibrillatory pattern is shown in Fig. 12.43.

There is an extensive literature devoted to the mathematical study of reentrant patterns. The first such theory was due to Wiener and Rosenblueth (1946) who studied a wave circulating around an inexcitable obstacle using a simple automaton model of excitable media. More recent studies have focussed on the behavior of waves in two and three-dimensional media using systems of reaction-diffusion equations. An interesting consequence of these studies is that it has been shown that a reentrant pattern need not have a physical obstacle around which to circulate, but that there can be a spiral core that is maintained by the dynamics of the surrounding pattern, or with scroll waves, a central filament around which to circulate. This was an important observation because before this, it was generally assumed that reentrant patterns could only rotate around



**Figure 12.43** Surface view of fibrillatory reentrant activity in the ventricles (computed by A. Panfilov).

some physical or anatomical obstacle. Now there is ample experimental confirmation that anatomical obstacles are not necessary to maintain reentrant patterns.

Perhaps the most important mathematical observation about reentrant rhythms was made by Art Winfree (1987) who recognized that reentrant patterns could be characterized by their phase singularities. For any oscillatory dynamical system, one can define a phase as follows. Identify two oscillatory state variables that are not synchronous, i.e., whose extremal values occur at different times, and a phase plot of one against the other will be a closed loop, topologically equivalent to a circle. In fact, one can map the closed loop continuously to a circle, and define the phase of a point on the loop with the angle of the circle to which the point is mapped. Now this map can be continuously extended to the entire plane with the exception of a single point, the phaseless point, or phase singularity. This phaseless point is not unique because it depends on how one chooses the phase map, however, it is certain to exist. One natural way to define the phase  $\phi$  is to take

$$\phi = \arctan \left( \frac{y - y^*}{x - x^*} \right), \quad (12.157)$$

where  $(x, y)$  is a point in the phase space, and  $(x^*, y^*)$  is a point centrally located within the closed loop.

For a spatially extended system, one can use the phase map to identify a phase for each point in space. However, if the oscillatory pattern is reentrant, that is, if it is maintained by its spatial connectivity, and is not the result of autonomous cellular oscillation, there must be phaseless points. The reason for this is as follows. A feature of an oscillatory pattern is that the variables go through one complete rotation of the phase per oscillation. For a reentrant pattern, all phases are attained somewhere in space at all times, and there is a continuous closed path in space along which the variables cycle through all the phases. However, just as there is a phaseless point at the center of all clocks, so there must be a phaseless point somewhere inside this continuous closed path that cycles through all phases. These phaseless points correspond to the center of spirals in two dimensions and the filaments of scrolls in three dimensions. Of course, there is no requirement that phaseless points be fixed in space and time, but there are precise rules regulating their creation and destruction. Phaseless points in space can be located by noticing that the closed line integral of the gradient of phase is a nonzero integer multiple of  $2\pi$  if the path  $P$  encloses a phase singularity,

$$\oint_P \nabla\phi \cdot d\vec{r} = \begin{cases} 2\pi n, & n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots, \text{if } P \text{ encloses a phase singularity,} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (12.158)$$

Phaseless points are now well-established experimentally. There are currently two ways that experimentalists observe phaseless points in cardiac tissue. The first uses the potential  $V(x, t)$  and its delay  $V(x, t - \tau)$  for some fixed delay  $\tau$  (Iyer and Gray, 2001). More recently, with the advent of the ability to simultaneously measure potential and intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration with fluorescent dyes, experimentalists are able to use these two variables to create a phase map.

### How to Initiate a Reentrant Arrhythmia

While there is a lot of experimental and theoretical work to understand the dynamics of reentrant tachycardias and fibrillation, from a clinical point of view this is somewhat less important. It is of much greater clinical importance to understand how reentrant arrhythmias are formed, how to prevent their formation, or how to terminate them after they have formed.

The problem of how to initiate a reentrant pattern is easily understood by considering two analogies. “The Wave” (often called a “Mexican Wave” due to it first gaining a large international audience at the 1986 World Cup in Mexico City) is a peculiar behavior of football crowds around the world, in which individuals suddenly rise from their seats, wave their arms in the air and then sit down (Farkas et al., 2002). Viewed from an individual perspective there is nothing striking about this behavior (odd, yes, but striking, no). However, the collective behavior is coordinated in such a way that there appears to be a wave propagating around the stadium several times before the participants get weary or the novelty wears off.

If this behavior is viewed as analogous to an excitable system, one sees the resting phase (seated and of sound mind), or excited (standing and waving frantically). If one further assumes that no individual fan goes into the excited phase without stimulus from an excited neighbor, then one has a model of an excitable medium. Of course, in the USA the cheerleaders play the role of an autonomous oscillator that can become excited without provocation (and in some cases, with little cause).

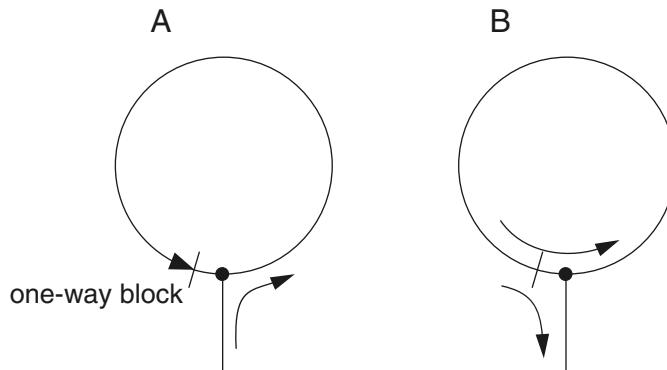
Now, imagine what happens when the cheerleaders wish to initiate a wave. They wave their arms and cheer and in response everyone nearby does the same, initiating a wave that spreads radially outward from its source. But this does not initiate a self-maintained reentrant wave. Some additional ingredient is necessary, namely something to break the symmetry of spread, so that propagation is in one direction but not the other.

To consider a second analogy, suppose there was a large lake surrounded by very fast growing grass, and one wanted to start a grass fire that circulated around the lake continuously. Normally, if one starts a grass fire, the fire will spread, going around the lake in both directions and burning out when the flames meet on the opposite side of the lake. However, to initiate a fire that circulates continuously, two additional conditions must be met. First, there must be a breaking of the symmetry so that the fire initially spreads in only one direction, and second, the lake must be large enough so that by the time the fire has gone around the lake, the grass that was first burned has regrown sufficiently so that it is ready to burn again.

These analogies are actually quite good at describing the problem of initiation of a reentrant pattern in cardiac tissue: there must be some kind of initial stimulus, it must occur at a time and place so that propagation is not symmetric, and there must be some geometrical property that allows the wave to return to reinitiate itself. In a region with no anatomical obstacle around which to circulate, the geometrical problem (actually a topological problem) is how to create a phase singularity.

A simple mathematical model to show how this scenario might work is as follows. Suppose there is a one-dimensional closed loop conducting pathway of length  $L$ , that is stimulated by an external pacemaker (Fig. 12.44). Suppose also that somewhere in the vicinity of the stimulus site, there is a region of one way block. We know that such regions can exist, for example, at points of fiber arborization (Section 12.3.2).

Suppose that the external pacemaker fires with period  $T$ . We define the instantaneous frequency of stimulus as  $\Delta T_{n+1} = t_{n+1} - t_n$ , where  $t_n$  is the  $n$ th firing time of the stimulus site. Now we take a simple kinematic description of propagation along the one-way path and suppose that the speed of propagation on the path is a function of the instantaneous period,  $c = c(\Delta T)$ . (Typically,  $c$  is an increasing function of  $\Delta T$ , since the longer the recovery time, the faster the speed of propagation.) Then the travel time around the one-way loop is  $\frac{L}{c(\Delta T)}$ . In cardiac tissue, the speed of an action potential is on the order of 0.5 m/s, so that travel time around the loop (perhaps a few centimeters in length) is much shorter than the period of external stimulus. Thus, the wave going around the loop typically returns to the stimulus site long before the next external stimulus arrives (i.e., we assume that  $L/c < T$ ). If the travel time is smaller than the



**Figure 12.44** Diagram of a conducting path with one-way block, preventing conduction from right to left. A: Conduction of a stimulus around the loop until it encounters refractoriness and fails to propagate further. B: Conduction of a reentrant pattern circulating continuously around the loop and exiting via the entry pathway on every circuit.

absolute refractory period  $T_r$  of the cells, the stimulus has no effect, and the cells must await the next external stimulus before they fire, so that

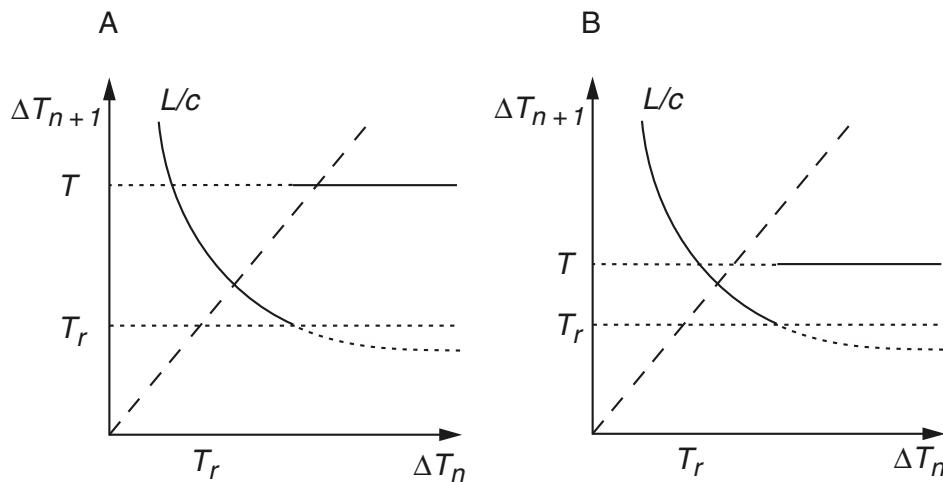
$$\Delta T_{n+1} = t_{n+1} - t_n = T \quad (12.159)$$

if  $\frac{L}{c(\Delta T_n)} < T_r$ . On the other hand, if the travel time is larger than the  $T_r$  but smaller than  $T$ , then it stimulates the cells at the stimulus site and initiates another wave around the loop. Thus, the instantaneous period at the stimulus site is

$$\Delta T_{n+1} = t_{n+1} - t_n = \frac{L}{c(\Delta T_n)}, \quad (12.160)$$

provided that  $T > \frac{L}{c(\Delta T_n)} > T_r$ .

With this information, we can construct the one-dimensional map  $\Delta T_n \mapsto \Delta T_{n+1}$  (shown in Fig. 12.45). There are obviously two branches for this map (shown as solid curves). Of interest are the fixed points of this map, corresponding to a periodic pattern of stimulus. The fixed point on the upper branch corresponds to the normal stimulus pattern from the external source, whereas the fixed point on the lower branch corresponds to a high-frequency reentrant pattern. The key feature of this map is that there is hysteresis between the two fixed points. In a “normal” situation (Fig. 12.45A), with  $L$  small and  $T$  large, the period is fixed at the external stimulus period  $T$ . However, as  $L$  increases or as  $T$  decreases, rendering  $L > T_r c(\delta T_n)$ , there is a “snap” onto the smaller-period fixed point, corresponding to initiation of a reentrant pattern (Fig. 12.45B). The pernicious nature of the reentrant pattern is demonstrated by the fact that increasing the period of the external stimulus back to previous levels does not restore the low-frequency pattern—the iterates of the map stay fixed at the lower fixed point, even though there are two possible fixed points. This is because the circulating pattern



**Figure 12.45** Next-interval map for a one-way conducting loop in two cases. A: With  $T$  large, so that two stable steady solutions exist. B: With  $T$  small, so that the only steady solution corresponds to reentry.

acts as a retrograde source of high-frequency stimulus on the original stimulus site, thereby masking its periodic activity.

Note that there are a number of ways that this reentrant pattern might be initiated. First, there might be a growing diseased or infarcted central region which leads to a gradual increase in  $L$ , initiating the reentrant pattern while keeping  $T$  fixed. On the other hand, a diseased central region may exist but remain static ( $L$  fixed), and the reentrant pattern is initiated following a decrease in  $T$ , for example, during strenuous exercise. Thus, a static one-way loop acts like a “period bomb” (rather than a time bomb), ready to go off whenever the period is sufficiently low.

While this simple model of reentry illustrates the basic problem, it probably has little to do with most real reentrant patterns. For example, since reentrant patterns do not require central anatomical obstacles, there must be some way that these patterns can arise in two and three-dimensional tissue without a preexisting central anatomical obstacle, or fixed region of one-way conduction block.

One of the earliest mathematical models of initiation of reentrant patterns and fibrillation to address this issue was due to Moe et al. (1964). Theirs was a finite state automaton model in which individual cells had three possible states, resting, excited and refractory, rules for how cells moved through these states in discrete time steps, and rules for how the excited state was propagated from cell to cell. The important feature of their model was that return to rest from the refractory state was spatially and randomly variable. As the spatial variability of the return from refractoriness increased, it was observed that there was an increased propensity for propagated action potentials to break up into multiple reentrant patterns reminiscent of fibrillation.

Finite state automaton models of excitable media have a rich history. They are easy to describe and understand and they are easy to simulate. However, it is important to recognize that these models are analogies to cardiac tissue, and do not have a physiological basis; it is possible (in fact, likely) that some phenomena observed in finite state automata do not occur in realistic ionic based models, and vice versa. In fact, the Moe et al. model is beset with significant difficulties and is probably not an explanation with clinical relevance. One of the difficulties of the model is that it does not employ electrotonic coupling of cells, and it is known that the crucial feature of the model, namely dispersion of refractoriness, is greatly affected by electrotonic coupling. As we saw with SA nodal cells, the effect of electrotonic coupling is to synchronize behavior, and this tends to mask cell-to-cell differences of recovery properties as well.

Nonetheless, the dispersion-of-refractoriness hypothesis, substantially modified, remains one of the best known folklore explanations for fibrillation onset in the cardiology community. Indeed, some form of dispersion of refractoriness, but not necessarily structural, is required for initiation of reentry (Weiss et al., 2006).

One of the challenges in this business is that it is difficult to design experiments in which reentrant arrhythmias are initiated in a way that is clinically relevant. It is known, however, that reentrant arrhythmias can be initiated intentionally by the correct application of point stimuli. This procedure has been described beautifully by Winfree (1987), with many gorgeous color plates, so here we content ourselves with a shorter, less colorful, verbal description of the process.

When a current is injected at some point to resting cardiac tissue, cells in the vicinity of the stimulus are depolarized (recall Fig. 12.23). If the stimulus is of sufficient amplitude and duration, the cells closest to the stimulating electrode may receive a superthreshold stimulus and become excited. Cells further away from the stimulus site receive a subthreshold stimulus, so they return to rest when the stimulus ends. At the border between subthreshold and superthreshold stimulus, a wave front is formed.

Once a transition front is formed, the local conditions of the tissue determine whether the wave moves forward or backward. That is, if the undisturbed medium is sufficiently excitable, and the initially excited domain is sufficiently large, the wave front moves outward into the unexcited region. If, however, the unaffected medium is not excitable, but partially refractory, or the excited domain is too small, the wave front recedes and collapses.

If the stimulated medium is initially uniform, these two are the only possible responses to a stimulus. However, if the state of the medium in the vicinity of the stimulating electrode is not uniform, then there is a third possible response. Suppose, for example, that there is a gradual gradient of recovery so that a portion of the stimulated region is excitable, capable of supporting wave fronts (with positive wave speed) and the remaining portion of the stimulated region cannot support wave fronts, but only wave backs (i.e., fronts with negative speed). Then, the result of the stimulus is to produce both wave fronts and wave backs.

With a mixture of wave fronts and wave backs, a portion of the wave surface expands, and a portion retracts. Allowed to continue in this way, a circular

(two-dimensional) domain evolves into a linked pair of spirals, and a spherical (three-dimensional) domain evolves into a scroll. If the domain is sufficiently large, these become self-sustained reentrant patterns.

In resting tissue with no pacemaker activity, two stimuli are required to initiate a reentrant pattern. The first is required to set up a spatial gradient of recovery (dispersion of refractoriness). Then, if the timing and location of the second is within the appropriate range, a single action potential that propagates in the backward, but not forward, direction can be initiated. This window of time and space is called the *vulnerable window* or *vulnerable period*. If the tissue mass is large enough or if there is a sufficiently long closed one-dimensional path, the retrograde propagation initiates a self-sustained reentrant pattern of activation.

The mechanism of this method of initiation of reentry is well-documented experimentally (Chen et al., 1988; Frazier et al., 1988; Frazier et al., 1989).

While the Winfree scenario reliably initiates reentry, it too lacks clinical relevance because of its reliance on external stimuli. In fact, the cause of the trigger event remains a total enigma. Currently, the most popular hypothesis is that the trigger event is ectopic activity known as Early After Depolarizations (EADs) or Delayed After Depolarizations (DADs). Space does not permit us to give a full description of these events. Suffice it to say that EADs and DADs are thought to be electrical events that are triggered by spontaneous  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release.

While EADs and DADs are universally viewed as proarrhythmic, it has proved difficult to demonstrate a true connection between these events and initiation of reentry. For example, a common level of ventricular ectopy in patients is 2 ectopic beats per minute, or  $\approx 1$  million ectopic beats per year. Yet sudden cardiac death episodes in these patients occur over months to years, not minutes. In fact, medication to reduce the rate of ectopic activity has actually proven to increase mortality.

In summary, it is known what must happen in order to initiate a reentrant arrhythmia. However, why or how this happens is, for all practical purposes, unknown.

## Antiarrhythmic Drugs

We close this section on arrhythmias with a brief description of antiarrhythmic drugs. Antiarrhythmic drugs are agents that have some effect on the cardiac action potential at the cellular level. The most widely used classification scheme for antiarrhythmic drugs, known as the Vaughan Williams scheme, classifies a drug based on the primary cellular mechanism of its antiarrhythmic effect. There are five main classes in the Vaughan Williams classification of antiarrhythmic agents:

The class I antiarrhythmic agents interfere with  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. Class I agents are further grouped by the specific effect they have on  $\text{Na}^+$  channels, and the effect they have on cardiac action potentials.

Class Ia agents block the fast  $\text{Na}^+$  channel. Blocking this channel depresses the phase 0 depolarization (thereby reducing the maximal upstroke velocity,  $V_{\max}$ ), which slows action potential conduction velocity. Agents in this class also cause

decreased conductivity and increased refractoriness. Class Ia agents include quinidine, procainamide, and disopyramide.

Class Ib antiarrhythmic agents are  $\text{Na}^+$  channel blockers with fast onset and offset kinetics, so that they have little or no effect at slower heart rates, and more effects at faster heart rates. These agents decrease  $V_{\max}$  in partially depolarized cells with fast response action potentials, decreasing automaticity. They either do not change the action potential duration, or they may decrease the action potential duration. Class Ib agents include lidocaine, mexiletine, tocainide, and phenytoin.

Class Ic antiarrhythmic agents markedly depress the phase 0 depolarization (decreasing  $V_{\max}$ ). They decrease conductivity, but have a minimal effect on the action potential duration. Of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel blocking antiarrhythmic agents (the class I antiarrhythmic agents), the class Ic agents have the most potent  $\text{Na}^+$  channel blocking effects. Class Ic agents include encainide, flecainide, moricizine, and propafenone.

Class II agents are beta blockers. They act by selectively blocking the effects of catecholamines at the  $\beta_1$ -adrenergic receptors, thereby decreasing sympathetic activity on the heart. Class II agents include esmolol, propranolol, and metoprolol.

Class III agents predominantly block  $\text{K}^+$  channels, thereby prolonging repolarization. Since these agents do not affect the  $\text{Na}^+$  channel, conduction velocity is not decreased. The prolongation of the action potential duration and refractory period, combined with the maintenance of normal conduction velocity, is proposed to prevent re-entrant arrhythmias. Class III agents include amiodarone, azimilide, bretylium, clofium, dofetilide, and sotalol.

Class IV agents are slow  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel blockers. They decrease conduction through the AV node. Class IV agents include verapamil and diltiazem.

Class V agents are those with other mechanisms, possibly unknown, and include digoxin and adenosine.

The history of antiarrhythmic drugs is interesting and yet tragic. One of the most interesting episodes in this saga was the CAST study (Cardiac Arrhythmia Suppression Test) which was supposed to be an 18 month study of certain type Ic antiarrhythmic drugs. Unfortunately, the test was suspended after only three months when it was realized that the patients receiving the drugs were dying from sudden cardiac death at a rate significantly higher than those receiving placebo. In other words, the antiarrhythmic drugs were actually pro-arrhythmic. A similar result was found with d-sotalol, a class III antiarrhythmic drug (Waldo et al., 1996). It is now widely recognized that all but class II antiarrhythmic drugs have pro-arrhythmic potential.

This illustrates the important difference between understanding dynamics at the cellular level and understanding the mechanisms for onset and maintenance of spatiotemporal patterns. For example, type I antiarrhythmic drugs all block  $\text{Na}^+$  channels thereby slowing depolarization. It might seem that this would make a tachy-arrhythmia less likely because the cells are less excitable. However, it is also the case that  $\text{Na}^+$  channel block increases the chances of propagation failure at regions of resistive inhomogeneity, perhaps increasing the possibility of formation of reentrant patterns.

Another proposal is that  $\text{Na}^+$  channel blockers increase the size of the vulnerable window (Starmer et al., 1991, 1992).

Similarly, type III antiarrhythmic drugs block  $\text{K}^+$  channels, lengthening the action potential. One might think that this would also increase the required size of the tissue necessary to sustain a reentrant pattern. A lengthened action potential is identified clinically as Long QT (LQT) syndrome. Seven different genetic causes of LQT syndrome have been identified, while if it is induced by nongenetic factors, it is called acquired LQT syndrome. People with LQT syndrome, whether genetic or acquired, are now known to be at risk of sudden cardiac death. And while the mechanism by which LQT increases the risk of sudden cardiac death is completely unknown, it is clear that the simple cellular-based reasoning mentioned above has no explanatory power concerning how reentrant arrhythmias are affected by these drugs.

## 12.5 Defibrillation

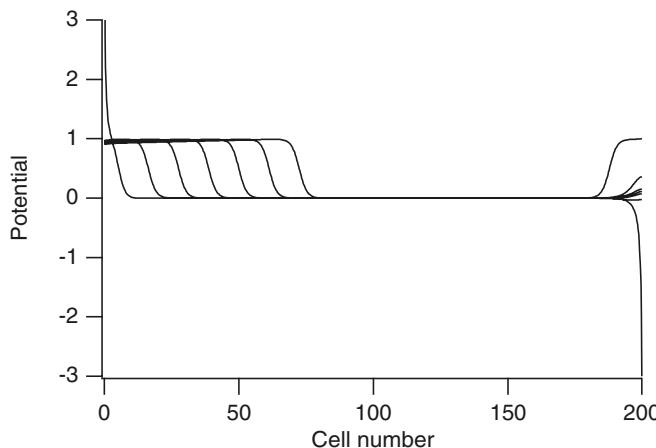
Nearly everyone who has ever watched television knows something about defibrillation. They have probably seen medical dramas where the paramedic places paddles on the chest of a man who has unexpectedly collapsed, yells “Clear!” and then a jolt of electricity shakes the body of the victim. Mysteriously, the victim revives. Since they were first made in 1947, defibrillators have saved many lives, and the recent development of implantable defibrillators will no doubt extend the lives of many people who in a previous era would have died from their first heart attack. Implanted defibrillators have become the most often used and most successful treatment for people at high risk of reentrant arrhythmias. However, implantable defibrillators also have significant drawbacks. For example, when they discharge, it is extremely painful, with the consequence that up to 40% of implantees have high levels of anxiety leading to depression.

The goal of a defibrillator is clear. Since during fibrillation different regions of tissue are in different phases of electrical activity, some excited, some refractory, some partially recovered, the purpose of defibrillation is to give an electrical impulse that stimulates the entire heart, so that the electrical activity is once again coordinated and returns to rest as a whole to await the next normal SA nodal stimulus. Said another way, the purpose is to reset the phase of each cardiac cell so that all cells are in phase, and so that there are no remaining phase singularities.

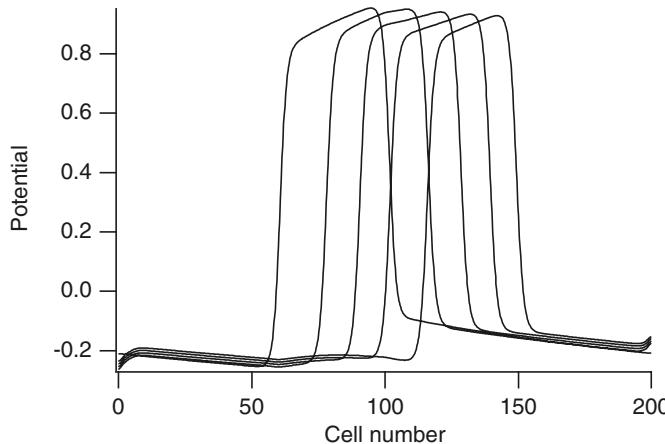
So the questions that need to be addressed are first, how does defibrillation work, and second, are there ways to improve the efficiency of defibrillators?

While it is known that defibrillation works (and is accomplished thousands of times daily around the world), the dilemma is that simple mathematical models fail to explain how this can happen, and indeed, seem to suggest that defibrillation shocks cannot achieve their goal.

To understand the dilemma, consider the numerical calculation shown in Fig. 12.46. Here is shown the result of applying a stimulus to the ends of a bidomain cable. The stimulus on the left is depolarizing and on the right is hyperpolarizing. On the left, a



**Figure 12.46** Response of a uniform cable to a stimulus of duration  $t = 0.2$  applied at the ends of the cable. Traces shown start at time  $t = 0.1$  and with equal time steps  $\Delta t = 0.2$ .



**Figure 12.47** A traveling wave in a uniform cable following application of a stimulus at the ends of the cable at a time between the first and second traces.

right-moving wave is initiated almost immediately, and on the right a left-moving wave is initiated via anode break excitation (see Chapter 5, Exercise 7). The dilemma is that local stimuli can only have local effects.

A similar conclusion is drawn from Fig. 12.47. Here is shown a periodic traveling wave on a one-dimensional bidomain cable, traveling from left to right. (If the left and right ends were connected, this wave would circulate around the ring indefinitely.) What cannot be seen in this figure is that a large stimulus was applied at the ends of the cable between the first and second traces, simulating defibrillation. What can be seen from this figure is that the stimulus has essentially no effect on the traveling wave. This stimulus has no chance of defibrillating the cable, since the effects of the stimulus are localized in space.

The question, then, is how can defibrillation work, if only those regions close to the stimulating source are excited by the stimulus. The likely answer is that the medium

into which the stimulus is applied has resistive inhomogeneities that are not accounted for in a uniform cable model.

To see the effect that resistive inhomogeneities might have, consider the effect of a current that is applied to a resistively inhomogeneous one-dimensional strand of cardiac tissue of length  $L$ . We take the bidomain model equations (12.48), but now assume that the conductivities  $\sigma_i = A_i/R_i$  and  $\sigma_e = A_e/R_e$  are continuous but nonconstant to reflect the occurrence of resistive inhomogeneities. Then, the monodomain reduction for a one-dimensional cable gives from (12.105)

$$p \left( C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} - \frac{f(V)}{R_m} \right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\sigma_i \sigma_e}{\sigma_i + \sigma_e} \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{\sigma_i}{\sigma_i + \sigma_e} \right) I(t), \quad (12.161)$$

where  $I(t)$  is the applied current. The important observation is that if  $\sigma_i$  or  $\sigma_e$  are non-constant, the new term in (12.161) acts as a source term everywhere throughout the medium, even though the current  $I(t)$  is applied locally. The effect of resistive inhomogeneity was already evident in Fig. 12.23. Similarly, in higher dimensions, if  $\sigma_i(\sigma_i + \sigma_e)^{-1}$  is inhomogeneous in space, then when the total current  $i_t$  is nonzero, there are sources and sinks of transmembrane current in the interior of the domain.

It is useful to introduce dimensionless variables  $\tau = t/\tau_m, y = x/\lambda_m$ , where  $\tau_m = C_m R_m, \lambda_m^2 = \sigma_e D R_m/p$ , and we then obtain

$$V_\tau - f(V) = \left( \frac{d}{D} V_y \right)_y - J(\tau) \left( \frac{\Sigma_e d}{\sigma_e D} \right)_y, \quad (12.162)$$

where  $d = \sigma_e \sigma_i / (\sigma_i + \sigma_e)$ ,  $D^{-1}$  is the average value of  $d^{-1}$ ,  $\Sigma_e^{-1}$  is the average value of  $\sigma_e^{-1}$ , and  $J(\tau) = R_m \frac{D}{\Sigma_e} I(\tau) / (p \lambda_m)$ . In addition, we have boundary conditions  $V_y = -J(\tau)$  at  $y = 0$  and at  $y = Y = L/\lambda_m$ .

There are potentially many different spatial scales for resistive inhomogeneities. At the cellular level, cells are connected by gap junctions and surrounded by extracellular space containing capillaries, collagen fiber, connective tissue, etc. In addition, myocytes are assembled into layers, with extensive interlaminal clefts between these layers (Caulfield and Borg, 1979; Robinson et al., 1983; Hooks et al., 2002). At larger spatial scales, cells are organized into fibers, there is fiber branching and tapering, and the fiber orientation changes both in the longitudinal and in the transverse directions.

All of these resistive inhomogeneities produce virtual electrodes that affect the outcome of the defibrillation shock. However, here we focus on the effect of resistive inhomogeneities on the spatial scale of individual cells, and so, we suppose that  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_e$  are periodic functions of  $y$ , with period  $\epsilon = l/\lambda_m$ , where  $l$  is the cell length. Specifically, we take

$$\sigma_j = \sigma_j \left( \frac{y}{\epsilon} \right), \quad j = i, e, \quad (12.163)$$

with  $\sigma_j(y)$  a function of period 1. Typically,  $\epsilon$  is a small number, on the order of 0.1.

Now we are able to use homogenization arguments to find the effects of small scale inhomogeneities on the larger scale behavior. The result of a standard multiscale

calculation gives (see Exercise 19).

$$V(z, \tau, \eta) = u_0(z, \tau, \epsilon) + \epsilon J(\tau) H(\eta) - \epsilon W(\eta) \frac{\partial u_0(z, \tau)}{\partial z}, \quad (12.164)$$

where  $\eta = y/\epsilon$ ,  $W(\eta)$  and  $H(\eta)$  are periodic functions with

$$\frac{dW}{d\eta} = 1 - \frac{D}{d}, \quad \frac{dH}{d\eta} = \frac{\Sigma_e}{\sigma_e} - \frac{D}{d}. \quad (12.165)$$

Furthermore the mean field  $u_0(z, t)$  is governed by the equation

$$\frac{\partial u_0}{\partial \tau} - \overline{f(V(z, \tau, \eta))} = \frac{\partial^2 u_0}{\partial z^2}, \quad (12.166)$$

where

$$\overline{f(V(z, \tau, \eta))} = \int_0^1 f(V(z, \tau, \eta)) d\eta. \quad (12.167)$$

The interpretation of (12.166) is significant. While a current stimulus is being applied, the response at the cellular level has an effect that is communicated to the tissue on a macroscopic scale through the nonlinearity of the ionic currents. If the current amplitude is sufficiently large (say of order  $\frac{1}{\epsilon}$ ), the effect can be quite significant. (If the ionic current  $f(V)$  were linear, the applied stimulus would have no global effect, since then  $\overline{f(V(z, \tau, \eta))} = f(u_0)$ .)

To get some insight into the dynamics while the stimulus is applied, we take the simple model of gap-junctional resistance

$$r_i = r_c + \frac{r_g}{l} \delta(\eta) \quad (12.168)$$

on the interval  $0 \leq \eta < 1$ , and periodically extended from there. Here,  $r_c$  is the intracellular cytoplasmic resistance per unit length, and  $r_g$  is the gap-junctional resistance per cell. The function  $\delta(\eta)$  is any positive function with small support and area one unit that represents the spatial distribution of the gap-junctional resistance, for example, the Dirac delta function.

In the specific case that  $\delta(\eta)$  is the Dirac delta function, we calculate that

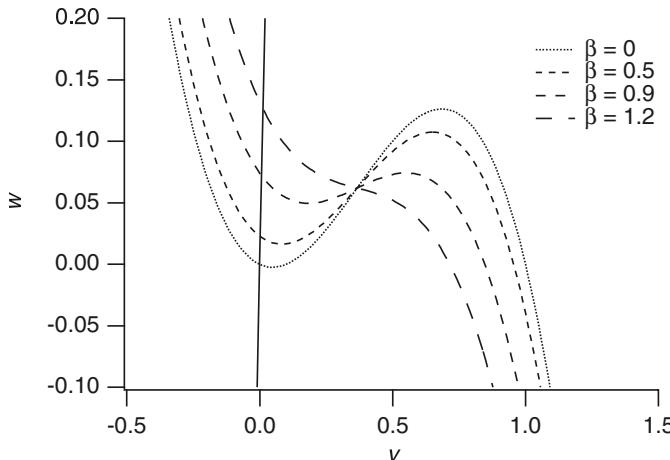
$$W'(\eta) = R_g(1 - \delta(\eta)), \quad (12.169)$$

where  $R_g = \frac{r_g}{r_g + l(r_c + r_e)}$  is the fraction of the total resistance per unit length that is concentrated into the gap junctions. Here we used the fact that  $r_i = 1/\sigma_i$ . Then,  $W(\eta)$  is given by

$$W(\eta) = R_g \left( \eta - \frac{1}{2} \right), \quad 0 \leq \eta < 1, \quad (12.170)$$

$W(\eta + 1) = W(\eta)$ , and  $H(\eta) = W(\eta)$ .

The function  $W(\eta)$  is a *sawtooth function*, and according to (12.164), when a stimulus is applied, the membrane potential is the sum of two components, the sawtooth function  $W(\eta)$  on the spatial scale of cells and  $u(y, \tau)$  on the macroscopic scale of the



**Figure 12.48** Nullclines for FitzHugh–Nagumo dynamics,  $w = v(1-v)(\alpha-v) + \frac{\beta^2}{12}(1+\alpha-3v)$ ,  $w = v/\gamma$ , modified to include the effects of a current stimulus, for several values of  $\beta$ .

tissue. The effect of the small-scale oscillatory behavior on the larger scale problem is found by averaging, whereby

$$\bar{F}(u, \beta) = \overline{f(V(z, \tau, \eta))} = \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} f(u + \beta\eta) d\eta, \quad (12.171)$$

and  $\beta = R_g\epsilon(J(t) - \frac{\partial u}{\partial z})$ . In other words, the effect of the current stimulus is to modify the ionic current through local averaging over the cell. The details of the structure of  $W(\eta)$  are not important because they are felt only in an average sense. For the cubic model  $f(V) = V(V - 1)(\alpha - V)$ ,  $\bar{F}$  can be calculated explicitly to be

$$\bar{F}(V, \beta) = f(V) + \frac{\beta^2}{12}(1 + \alpha - 3V). \quad (12.172)$$

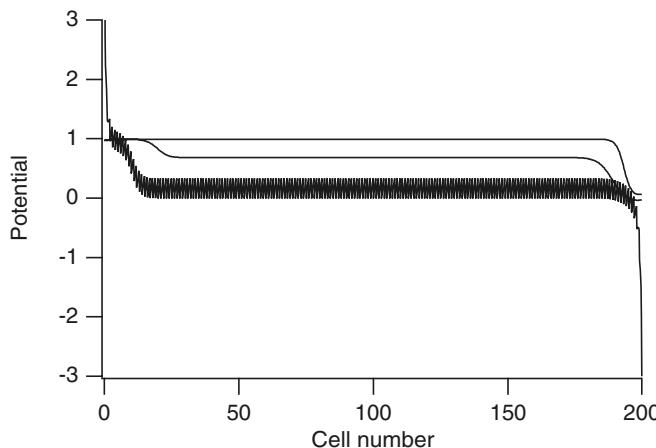
A plot of this function for different values of  $\beta$  is shown in Fig. 12.48.

Before examining this model for its ability to explain defibrillation, we discuss the simpler problem of direct activation of resting tissue.

### 12.5.1 The Direct Stimulus Threshold

Direct activation (or field stimulation) occurs if all or essentially all of the tissue is activated simultaneously without the aid of a propagated wave front. According to the model (12.166), it should be possible to stimulate cardiac tissue directly with brief stimuli of sufficiently large amplitude.

A numerical simulation demonstrating how direct stimulation can be accomplished for the bistable equation is shown in Fig. 12.49. In this simulation a one-dimensional array of 200 cells was discretized with five grid points per cell, and a brief, large current was injected at the left end and removed at the right end of the cable. In Fig. 12.46 is shown the response to the stimulus when the cable is uniform. Shown here is the membrane potential, beginning at time  $t = 0.1$ , and at later times with equal time steps



**Figure 12.49** Response of a nonuniform cable with regularly spaced high-resistance nodes to a stimulus of duration  $t = 0.2$  applied at the ends of the cable. The traces show the response at time  $t = 0.15$ , during the stimulus, and at times  $t = 0.25, 0.35$  after the stimulus has terminated.

$\Delta t = 0.2$ . The stimulus duration was  $t = 0.2$ , so its effects are seen as a depolarization on the left and hyperpolarization on the right in the first trace. As noted above, a wave is initiated from the left from superthreshold depolarization, and a wave from the right is initiated by anode break excitation.

The same stimulus protocol produces a substantially different result if the cable has nonuniform resistance. In Fig. 12.49 is shown the response of the discretized cable with high resistance at every fifth node, at times  $t = 0.15, 0.25$ , and  $0.35$ , with a stimulus duration of  $0.2$ . The first curve, at time  $t = 0.15$ , is blurred because the details of the membrane potential cannot be resolved on this scale. However, the overall effect of the rapid spatial oscillation is to stimulate the cable directly, as seen from the subsequent traces.

To analyze this situation, note that since direct activation occurs without the benefit of propagation, it is sufficient to ignore diffusion and the boundary conditions and simply examine the behavior of the averaged ordinary differential equation

$$\frac{dV}{d\tau} = \bar{F}(V, \beta). \quad (12.173)$$

For any resting excitable system, it is reasonable to assume that  $f(V) < 0$  for  $0 < V < \theta$ , where  $\theta$  is the threshold that must be exceeded to stimulate an action potential. To directly stimulate a medium that is initially at rest with a constant stimulus, one must apply the stimulus until  $V > \theta$ . The minimal time to accomplish this is given by the strength-duration relationship,

$$T = \int_0^\theta \frac{dV}{\bar{F}(V, \beta)}. \quad (12.174)$$

Clearly, this expression is meaningful only if  $\beta$  is sufficiently large that  $\bar{F}(V, \beta) > 0$  on the interval  $0 < V < \theta$ . In other words, there is a minimal stimulus level (a threshold) below which the medium cannot be directly stimulated.

## 12.5.2 The Defibrillation Threshold

While its threshold cannot be calculated in the same way as for direct stimulus, the mechanism of defibrillation can be understood from simple phase-plane arguments. To study defibrillation, we must include the dynamics of recovery in our model equations. Thus, for purposes of illustration, we take FitzHugh–Nagumo dynamics

$$I_{\text{ion}}(v, w) = -f(v) + w, \quad (12.175)$$

$$w_\tau = g(v, w), \quad (12.176)$$

with  $f(v) = v(v - 1)(\alpha - v)$ , with parameters chosen so that reentrant waves are persistent. This could mean that there is a stable spiral solution, or it could mean that the spiral solution is unstable but some nonperiodic reentrant motion is persistent. Either way, our goal is to demonstrate that there is a threshold for the stimulating current above which reentrant waves are terminated.

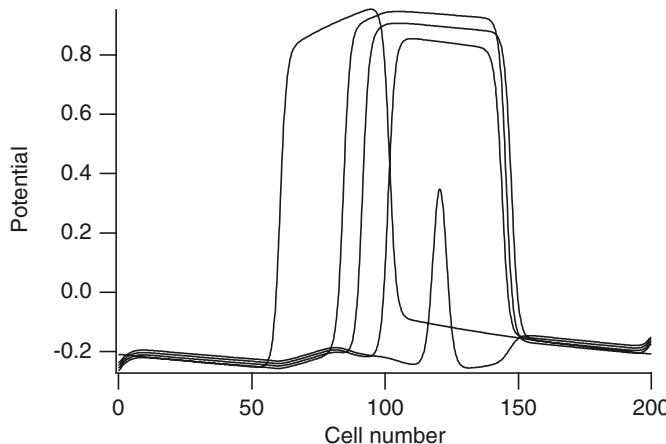
The mechanism of defibrillation is easiest to understand for a periodic wave on a one-dimensional ring, but the idea is similar for higher-dimensional reentrant patterns. For a one-dimensional ring, the phase-portrait projection of a rotating periodic wave is a closed loop. From singular perturbation theory, we know that this loop clings to the leftmost and rightmost branches of the nullcline  $w = f(v)$  and has two rapid transitions connecting these branches, and these correspond to wave fronts and wave backs.

According to this model, the effect of a stimulus is to temporarily change the  $v$  nullclines and thereby to change the shape of the closed loop. After the stimulus has ended, the distorted closed loop will either go back to a closed loop, or it will collapse to a single point on the phase portrait and return to the rest point. If the latter occurs, the medium has been “defibrillated.”

Clearly, if  $\beta$  is small and the periodic oscillation is robust, then the slight perturbation is insufficient to destroy it. On the other hand, if  $\beta$  is large enough, then the change is substantial and collapse may result.

There are two ways that this collapse can occur. First, and easiest to understand, if the nullcline for nonzero  $\beta$  is a monotone curve (as in Fig. 12.48 with  $\beta = 1.2$ ), then the open loop collapses rapidly to a double cover of the single curve  $w = \bar{F}(v, \beta)$ , from where it further collapses to a single point in phase space. For the specific cubic model, this occurs if  $\beta^2 > \frac{4}{3}(1 - \alpha + \alpha^2)$ .

The  $v$  nullcline need not be monotone to effect a collapse of the periodic loop. In fact, as  $\beta$  increases, the negative-resistance region of the nullcline becomes smaller, and the periodic loop changes shape into a loop with small “thickness” (i.e., with little separation between the front and the back) and with fronts and backs that move with nearly zero speed. Indeed, if the distorted front is at a large enough  $w$  “level” (in the sense of singular perturbation theory), it cannot propagate at all and stalls, leading to a collapse of the wave. Another way to explain this is to say that with large enough  $\beta$ , the “excitable gap” between the refractory tail and the excitation front is excited, pushing the wave front forward (in space) as far as possible into the refractory region ahead of it, thereby causing it to stall, and eventually to collapse.



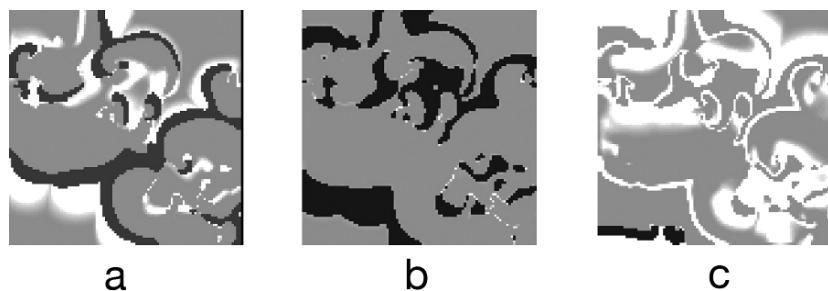
**Figure 12.50** A traveling wave in a nonuniform cable following application of a stimulus at the boundary.

This scenario can be seen in Fig. 12.50, where the results of numerical simulations for a one-dimensional nonuniform cable are shown. Earlier, in Fig. 12.47, we showed a wave, propagating to the right, at equal time steps of  $\Delta t = 0.55$ . To simulate a reentrant arrhythmia, this wave was chosen so that were this cable a closed loop, the wave would circulate around the loop indefinitely without change of shape. It is not apparent from this previous figure that a stimulus of duration  $t = 0.3$  was applied at the ends of the cable between the first and second traces, because in a uniform cable a stimulus at the boundary has little effect on the interior of the medium.

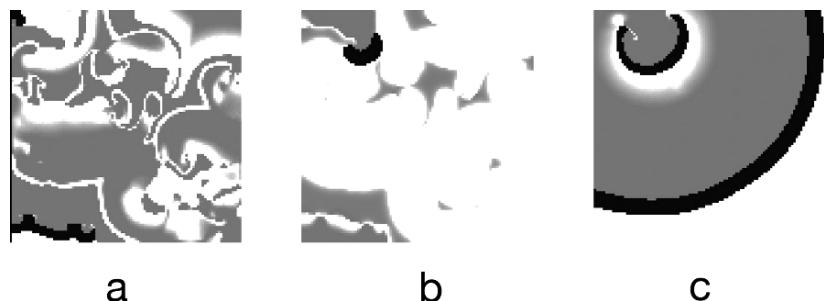
In Fig. 12.50 is shown exactly the same sequence of events for a nonuniform cable. This time, however, the applied stimulus (between the first and second traces) induces a rapidly oscillating membrane potential on the spatial scale of cells (not shown), which has the average effect (because of nonlinearity) of “pushing” the action potential forward as far as possible. This new front cannot propagate forward because it has been pushed into its refractory tail and has stalled. In fact, the direction of propagation reverses, and the action potential collapses as the front and back move toward each other.

To illustrate further this mechanism of defibrillation in a two-dimensional domain, numerical simulations were performed using a standard two-variable model of an excitable medium and using the full bidomain model derived in Section 12.8 (Keener and Panfilov, 1996). Parameters for the excitable dynamics were chosen such that spirals are not stable, but exhibit breakup and develop into “chaotic” reentrant patterns (Panfilov and Hogeweg, 1995), thereby giving a reasonable model of cardiac fibrillation (see Chapter 6, Exercise 26).

Some time after initiating a reentrant wave pattern, a constant stimulus (of duration about 2.5 times the duration of the action potential upstroke) was applied uniformly to the sides of the rectangular domain. Because the stimulus was applied uniformly along the sides of the domain, the stimulus parameter  $\beta$  was constant throughout the medium.



**Figure 12.51** Successful defibrillation of a two-dimensional region.



**Figure 12.52** Unsuccessful defibrillation of a two-dimensional region.

In Fig. 12.51a is shown an irregular reentrant pattern just before the stimulus is applied. In this picture, the darkest regions are excited tissue, white denotes recovered and excitable tissue, and gray is refractory tissue. Following a stimulus (with  $\beta = 0.86$ ), the excited region expanded to include essentially all of the recovered tissue, as the excitable gap was eliminated by a polarizing stimulus. Shortly thereafter (Fig. 12.51c,  $t = 12$ ) the activation collapsed, leaving behind only recovered or refractory tissue, which shortly thereafter returned to uniform rest. The extensive patterning seen in this last figure shows a mixture of refractory and recovered tissue, but since it contains no excited tissue (except a small patch at the lower left corner that is propagating out of the domain), it cannot become re-excited, but must return to rest. (The similar fates of recovered and refractory regions can be seen in Fig. 12.52b, where the patterning has nearly disappeared.)

Defibrillation is unsuccessful with a smaller stimulus  $\beta = 0.84$ . The pattern at time  $t = 12$  is shown in Fig. 12.52a and is similar to Fig. 12.51c, which was successful. Here, however, after the stimulus and subsequent collapse of much of the excitation, one small excited spot remains at the upper left-hand corner of the medium, which eventually evolves into a double spiral pattern (Fig. 12.52b,c), reestablishing a reentrant arrhythmia.

The primary mechanism of defibrillation still remains uncertain and debated. In this discussion we have focussed on the role of small scale resistive inhomogeneities in defibrillation, and we have ignored the effect of larger scale inhomogeneities. However, there is also a significant body of numerical work exploring the role of large scale virtual electrodes in defibrillation (Efimov et al., 1998, 2000a,b; Anderson et al., 2000; Eason and Trayanova, 2002). For a theoretical discussion of defibrillation from the viewpoint of phase singularity elimination, see Keener and Cytrynbaum (2003), and Keener (2004).

## 12.6 Appendix: The Sawtooth Potential

In this appendix, we provide some of the details needed for the calculation of the sawtooth potential solution (12.62)–(12.67). This is a differential-difference boundary value problem that we solve in two steps. First, on the interior of cells the solution must satisfy the cable equation (12.48) with total current  $-\frac{1}{r_e} \frac{dV_e}{dx} - \frac{1}{r_c} \frac{dV_i}{dx} = -I$ . This solution is

$$\begin{pmatrix} V_i \\ V_e \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{r_e + r_c} \begin{pmatrix} r_c \\ -r_e \end{pmatrix} (A \sinh \lambda x + B \cosh \lambda x) + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} (-\beta Ix + \gamma), \quad (12.177)$$

and  $V = A \sinh \lambda x + B \cosh \lambda x$ , for  $0 < x < L$ , with  $A$  and  $B$  yet to be determined,  $\beta = \frac{r_e r_c}{r_e + r_c}$ . It is convenient to set  $\psi = \frac{1}{r_c} \frac{dV_i(0)}{dx}$  so that  $A = a\psi + J$ , where  $a = \frac{r_e + r_c}{\lambda}$ , and  $J = \frac{r_e}{\lambda} I$ . Now, we suppose that there are a total of  $N$  cells, and we denote  $\psi_j$ ,  $B_j$ , and  $\gamma_j$  as the values of  $\psi$ ,  $B$ , and  $\gamma$  for the  $j$ th cell,  $j = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . The requirement that there be no intracellular current at the ends of the cable is equivalent to the requirement that  $\psi_0 = \psi_N = 0$ . We impose the conditions that the current and extracellular potentials be continuous and that the jump condition is satisfied at the ends of the cells, and find that

$$\begin{pmatrix} a\psi_{n+1} \\ B_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} C & S \\ S + K_g C & C + K_g S \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a\psi_n \\ B_n \end{pmatrix} - J \begin{pmatrix} 1 - C \\ K_g(1 - C) - S \end{pmatrix}, \quad (12.178)$$

and

$$\gamma_{n+1} = \gamma_n - \lambda L \frac{\beta}{r_e} J + \frac{\beta}{r_c} K_g (J(C - 1) + a\psi_n C + B_n S), \quad (12.179)$$

where  $K_g = \frac{r_g \lambda}{r_e + r_c}$ ,  $C = \cosh \lambda L$ , and  $S = \sinh \lambda L$ .

This is a system of difference equations that we wish to solve subject to the boundary conditions  $\psi_0 = \psi_N = 0$ . To solve these equations, observe that the matrix has eigenvalues,  $\eta_1 = \frac{1}{\mu} > 1$ ,  $\eta_2 = \mu$ , where  $\mu$  is the root of (12.58) with  $\mu < 1$ . Further, the corresponding right and left eigenvectors are

$$x_i = \begin{pmatrix} S \\ \eta_i - C \end{pmatrix}, \quad y_i = \begin{pmatrix} S + K_g C \\ \eta_i - C \end{pmatrix}. \quad (12.180)$$

We express the solution of the difference equation (12.178) as a linear combination of the eigenvectors

$$\begin{pmatrix} a\psi_n \\ B_n \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^2 \alpha_{i,n} x_i, \quad (12.181)$$

and write

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 - C \\ K_g(1 - C) - S \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^2 c_i x_i. \quad (12.182)$$

This decomposes the problem (12.178) into two scalar problems

$$\alpha_{i,n+1} = \eta_i \alpha_{i,n} - J c_i, \quad i = 1, 2, \quad (12.183)$$

with boundary conditions  $\alpha_{1,0} + \alpha_{2,0} = 0$  and  $\alpha_{1,N} + \alpha_{2,N} = 0$ . The solution of this scalar problem is

$$\alpha_{i,n} = (-1)^i \alpha_0 \eta_i^n - J c_i \frac{\eta_i^n - 1}{\eta_i - 1}, \quad (12.184)$$

which automatically satisfies the boundary condition at  $n = 0$ . To satisfy the boundary condition at  $n = N$ , we must have

$$\alpha_0 = -J \frac{\mu}{1 - \mu} \frac{(\mu^N - 1)}{(\mu^{2N} - 1)} (c_1 + c_2 \mu^{N-1}). \quad (12.185)$$

As a result,

$$a\psi_j = \frac{-S}{1 - \mu} (c_1 \mu - c_2) f(j), \quad (12.186)$$

where

$$f(j) = \frac{1 - \mu^{N-j} - \mu^j + \mu^{j+N} + \mu^{2N-j} - \mu^{2N}}{1 - \mu^{2N}} \quad (12.187)$$

and

$$B_j = \frac{c_1 \mu - c_2}{1 - \eta} \left( C f(j) + \frac{1 - \mu^N}{1 - \mu^{2N}} (\mu^{j+1} + \mu^{N-j-1}) \right) - \frac{c_1 - c_2 \mu}{1 - \mu}. \quad (12.188)$$

## 12.7 Appendix: The Phase Equations

Because coupled oscillators arise so frequently in mathematical biology and physiology, there is an extensive literature devoted to their study. In this book, coupled oscillators play a role in the sinoatrial node and in the digestive system. An important model for the study of coupled oscillators has been the *phase equation*, an equation describing the evolution of the phases of a loosely coupled collection of similar oscillators.

In this appendix we give a derivation of the phase equation. This derivation is similar to that of Neu (1979), using perturbation techniques and a multiscale analysis. A more technical derivation is given by Ermentrout and Kopell (1984). The attempt to describe populations of oscillators in terms of phases was first made by Winfree (1967), and in the context of reaction-diffusion systems, by Ortoleva and Ross (1973, 1974). This was improved by Kuramoto (Kuramoto and Tsuzuki, 1976; Kuramoto and Yamada, 1976). Neu's derivation is also discussed by Murray (2002).

To set the stage, consider the system of equations

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \Lambda(r)x - \omega(r)y, \quad (12.189)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \omega(r)x + \Lambda(r)y, \quad (12.190)$$

where  $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$ . Systems of this form are called *lambda-omega* ( $\Lambda-\omega$ ) systems, and are special because by changing to polar coordinates,  $x = r \cos \theta$ ,  $y = r \sin \theta$ , (12.189) and (12.190) can be written as

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = r\Lambda(r), \quad (12.191)$$

$$\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \omega(r). \quad (12.192)$$

This system has a stable limit cycle at any radius  $r > 0$  for which  $\Lambda(r) = 0$ ,  $\Lambda'(r) < 0$ . The periodic solution travels around this circle with angular velocity  $\omega(r)$ . Starting from any given initial conditions, the solution of (12.189) and (12.190) eventually settles onto a regular oscillation with fixed amplitude and period  $\frac{\omega(r)}{2\pi}$ . Hence, in the limit as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , the system is described completely by its angular velocity around a circle.

Now suppose that we have two similar systems, one with a limit cycle of amplitude  $R_1$  and angular velocity  $\omega_1$ , and the other with a limit cycle of amplitude  $R_2$  and angular velocity  $\omega_2$ . If there is no coupling between the systems, each oscillates at its own frequency, unaffected by the other, and in the four-dimensional phase space the solutions approaches the torus  $r_1 = R_1$ ,  $r_2 = R_2$ , moving around the torus with angular velocities  $\theta'_1 = \omega_1$ ,  $\theta'_2 = \omega_2$ . Since all solutions eventually end up winding around the torus, and since any solution that starts on the torus cannot leave it, the torus is called an *attracting invariant torus*. The flow on the torus can be described entirely in terms of the rates of change of  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$ . In this case  $(\theta_1 - \theta_2)' = \omega_1 - \omega_2$ , and so the phase difference increases at a constant rate. Thus, analogously to the one-dimensional system discussed above, in the limit as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , the original system of four-differential equations can be reduced to a two-dimensional system describing the flow on a two-dimensional torus.

If our two similar systems are now loosely coupled, so that each oscillator has only a small effect on the other, it is reasonable to expect (and indeed it can be proved; see Rand and Holmes (1980) for a nice discussion of this, and Hirsch et al. (1977) for a proof) that the invariant torus persists, changing its shape and position by only a small amount. In this case, the longtime solutions for  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  remain essentially

unchanged, with  $r_1 = R_1 + O(\epsilon)$  and  $r_2 = R_2 + O(\epsilon)$ , where  $\epsilon \ll 1$  is the strength of the coupling. However, the flow *on* the torus could have a drastically different nature, as the phase difference need no longer simply increase at a constant rate. Hence, although the structure of the torus is preserved, the properties of the flow on the torus are not.

In general, the flow on the torus is described by

$$\frac{d\theta_i}{dt} = \omega_i + f_i(r_1, r_2, \theta_1, \theta_2, \epsilon), \quad i = 1, 2, \quad (12.193)$$

but since  $r_1 = R_1 + O(\epsilon)$  and  $r_2 = R_2 + O(\epsilon)$ , to lowest order in  $\epsilon$  this simplifies to

$$\frac{d\theta_i}{dt} = \omega_i + h_i(\theta_1, \theta_2, \epsilon), \quad i = 1, 2. \quad (12.194)$$

In general,  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  appear in (12.194), the so-called *phase equation*, but the independent variables  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  do not. It follows that the full four-dimensional system that describes the two coupled oscillators can be understood in terms of a simpler system describing the flow on a two-dimensional invariant torus.

To derive the equations describing this flow on a torus, we assume that we have a coupled oscillator system that can be written in the form

$$\frac{du_i}{dt} = F(u_i) + \epsilon G_i(u_i) + \epsilon \sum_{j=1}^N a_{ij} H(u_j). \quad (12.195)$$

Here,  $u_i$  is the vector of state variables for the  $i$ th oscillator, the coefficients  $a_{ij}$  represent the coupling strength, and the function  $H(u)$  determines the effect of coupling. For simplicity, we assume that  $H$  is independent of  $i$  and  $j$ .

To get the special case of SA nodal coupling in (12.120), we take  $a_{ij} = d_{ij}$  for  $i \neq j$ ,  $a_{ii} = -\sum_{j \neq i} d_{ij}$ , and  $H(u) = Du$ . We take this general form of  $H$  to allow for synaptic as well as diffusive coupling.

Next, we assume that when  $\epsilon = 0$  we have a periodic solution, i.e., that the equation

$$\frac{du}{dt} = F(u) \quad (12.196)$$

has a stable periodic solution,  $U(t)$ , scaled to have period one. Note that because of the functions  $G_i$ , we are not assuming that each oscillator is identical. Thus, the natural frequency of each oscillator is close to, but not exactly, one.

The model system (12.195) is a classic problem to which the *method of averaging* or the *multiscale method* can be applied. Specifically, since  $\epsilon$  is small, we expect the behavior of (12.195) to be dominated by the periodic solution  $U(t)$  of the unperturbed problem and that deviations from this behavior occur on a much slower time scale. To accommodate two different time scales, we introduce two timelike variables,  $\sigma = \omega(\epsilon)t$  and  $\tau = \epsilon t$ , as fast and slow times, respectively. Here,  $\omega$  is a function, as yet unknown, of order 1. Treating  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  as independent variables, we find from the chain rule that

$$\frac{d}{dt} = \omega(\epsilon) \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} + \epsilon \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau}, \quad (12.197)$$

and accordingly, (12.195) becomes

$$\omega(\epsilon) \frac{\partial u_i}{\partial \sigma} + \epsilon \frac{\partial u_i}{\partial \tau} = F(u_i) + \epsilon G_i(u_i) + \epsilon \sum_{j=1}^N a_{ij} H(u_j). \quad (12.198)$$

Next we suppose that  $u_i$  and  $\omega(\epsilon)$  have power series expansions in  $\epsilon$ , given by

$$u_i = u_i^0 + \epsilon u_i^1 + \dots, \quad \omega(\epsilon) = 1 + \epsilon \Omega_1 + \dots. \quad (12.199)$$

Note that the first term in the expansion for  $\omega$  is the frequency of the unperturbed solution,  $U$ . Expanding (12.198) in powers of  $\epsilon$  and gathering terms of like order, we find a hierarchy of equations, beginning with

$$\frac{\partial u_i^0}{\partial \sigma} = F(u_i^0), \quad (12.200)$$

$$\frac{\partial u_i^1}{\partial \sigma} - F_u(u_i^0)u_i^1 = G_i(u_i^0) + \sum_{j=1}^N a_{ij} H(u_j^0) - \Omega_1 \frac{\partial u_i^0}{\partial \sigma} - \frac{\partial u_i^0}{\partial \tau}. \quad (12.201)$$

Equation (12.200) is easy to solve by taking

$$u_i^0 = U(\sigma + \delta\theta_i(\tau)). \quad (12.202)$$

The phase shift  $\delta\theta_i(\tau)$  allows each cell to have different phase shift behavior, and it is yet to be determined.

Next, observe that  $\frac{d}{d\sigma} \left( \frac{dU}{d\sigma} - F(U) \right) = \frac{\partial U'}{\partial \sigma} - F_u(u_i^0)U' = 0$ , so that the operator  $LU = \frac{\partial U}{\partial \sigma} - F_u(u_i^0)U$  has a null space spanned by  $U'(\sigma + \delta\theta_i(\tau))$ . The null space is one dimensional because the periodic solution is assumed to be stable. It follows that the adjoint operator  $L^*y = -\frac{\partial y}{\partial \sigma} - F_u(u_i^0)^T y$  has a one-dimensional null space spanned by some periodic function  $y = Y(\sigma + \delta\theta_i(\tau))$ . (It is a consequence of Floquet theory that the Floquet multipliers of the operator  $L$ , say  $\mu_i$ , and the Floquet multipliers of  $L^*$ , say  $\mu_i^*$ , are multiplicative inverses,  $\mu_i \mu_i^* = 1$  for all  $i$ . Since a periodic solution has Floquet multiplier 1 and there is only one periodic solution for  $L$ , there is also precisely one periodic solution for the adjoint operator  $L^*$ . See Exercise 23.) Without loss of generality we scale  $Y$  so that  $\int_0^1 U'(\sigma) \cdot Y(\sigma) d\sigma = 1$ . Therefore, for there to be a periodic solution of (12.201), the right-hand side of (12.201) must be orthogonal to the null space of the adjoint operator  $L^*$ . This requirement translates into the system of differential equations for the phase shifts

$$\frac{d}{d\tau} \delta\theta_i = \xi_i - \Omega_1 + \sum_j a_{ij} h(\delta\theta_j - \delta\theta_i), \quad (12.203)$$

where

$$\xi_i = \int_0^1 Y(\sigma) \cdot G_i(U(\sigma)) d\sigma, \quad (12.204)$$

$$h(\phi) = \int_0^1 Y(\sigma) \cdot H(U(\sigma + \phi)) d\sigma. \quad (12.205)$$

The numbers  $\xi_i$  are important because they determine the approximate natural (i.e., uncoupled) frequency of the  $i$ th cell. This follows from the fact that when  $a_{ij} = 0$ , a simple integration gives  $\delta\theta_i = \epsilon t(\xi_i - \Omega_1)$ , and thus

$$u_i^0 = U(\omega(\epsilon)t + \delta\theta_i) = U((1 + \epsilon\xi_i)t). \quad (12.206)$$

Hence, the uncoupled frequency of the  $i$ th cell is  $2\pi(1 + \epsilon\xi_i)$ . Therefore,  $\xi_i$  can (presumably) be measured or estimated without knowing the function  $G_i(u)$ . The function  $h(\phi)$  can be determined analytically for  $\Lambda - \omega$  systems (see Exercise 24) or numerically otherwise (see, for example, Exercise 22.)

The function  $h(\phi)$  has an important physical interpretation, being a *phase resetting function*. That is,  $h(\phi)$  shows the effect of one oscillator on another when the two have phases that differ by  $\phi$ . For example, in the case of two identical oscillators, the two phase shifts are governed by

$$\frac{d}{d\tau}\delta\theta_1 = -\Omega_1 + a_{12}h(\delta\theta_2 - \delta\theta_1) + a_{11}h(0), \quad (12.207)$$

$$\frac{d}{d\tau}\delta\theta_2 = -\Omega_1 + a_{21}h(\delta\theta_1 - \delta\theta_2) + a_{22}h(0). \quad (12.208)$$

Thus, when  $a_{12}h(\delta\theta_2 - \delta\theta_1) > 0$ , the phase of oscillator 1 is advanced, while if  $a_{12}h(\delta\theta_2 - \delta\theta_1) < 0$ , the phase of oscillator 1 is retarded. Furthermore, it is not necessarily the case that  $h(0) = 0$ , so that identical oscillators with identical phases may nonetheless exert a nontrivial influence on each other.

The system of equations (12.203) can be written in terms of phase differences by defining  $\Phi$  as the vector of consecutive phase differences and defining  $\bar{\delta\theta}$  as the average of the phase shifts,  $\bar{\delta\theta} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \delta\theta_i$ . In terms of these variables the system (12.203) can be written in the form

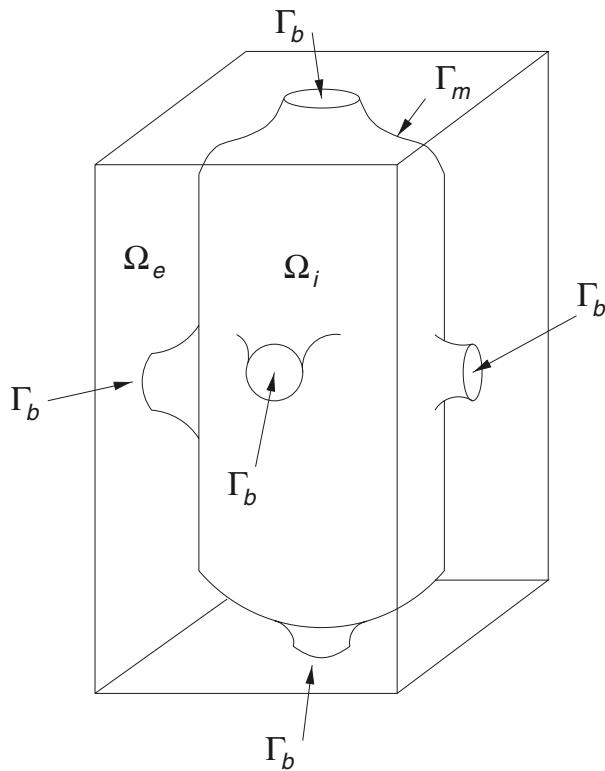
$$\frac{d\Phi}{d\tau} = \Delta + C(\Phi), \quad (12.209)$$

where  $\Delta$  is the vector of consecutive differences of  $\xi_i$ . This is a closed system of  $N - 1$  equations. *Phase locking* is defined as the situation in which there is a stable steady solution of (12.209), a state in which the phase differences of the oscillators do not change (see Chapter 18).

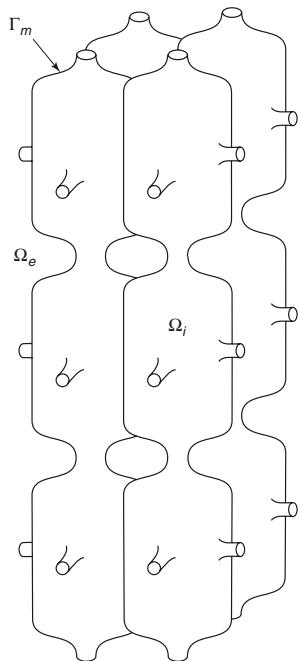
## 12.8 Appendix: The Cardiac Bidomain Equations

The homogenization technique that was used in Section 7.8.2 to find effective diffusion coefficients for diffusing and reacting chemical species can also be used to find effective electrical properties of three-dimensional cardiac tissue.

We assume that an individual cardiac cell is some small periodic subunit  $\Omega$  contained in a small rectangular box (Fig. 12.53). The rectangular box is divided into intracellular space  $\Omega_i$  and extracellular space  $\Omega_e$ , separated by cell membrane  $\Gamma_m$ . As illustrated in Fig. 12.54 the cells are connected to each other at the sides of the boxes



**Figure 12.53** Sketch of an idealized single cell.



**Figure 12.54** Periodic cell structure.

through gap junctions, which are simply parts of the box wall that are contiguous with intracellular space. Thus the boundary of the cellular subunit,  $\partial\Gamma$ , is composed of two components, cell membrane  $\Gamma_m$  and sides of the box  $\Gamma_b$ .

In either of the intracellular or extracellular spaces, currents are driven by a potential and satisfy Ohm's law  $r_c i = -\nabla\phi$ , where  $r_c$  is the cytoplasmic resistance (a scalar). On the interior of the region, current is conserved, so that

$$\nabla^2\phi = 0. \quad (12.210)$$

Current enters the domain only across boundaries, as a transmembrane current, according to

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot \frac{1}{r_c} \nabla\phi = I_m \quad (12.211)$$

applied in the cell membrane, denoted by  $\Gamma_m$ , and where  $\mathbf{n}$  is the outward unit normal to the membrane boundary.

Suppose that  $x$  is the original Cartesian coordinate space. To allow for a variable fiber structure we assume that the orientation of the rectangular boxes is slowly varying (so that they are not exactly rectangular, but close enough), and that the axes of the rectangular cellular boxes form a natural "fiber" coordinate system. At each point in space the orientation of the rectangular box is determined by three orthogonal tangent vectors, forming the rows of a matrix  $T(x)$ . Then the fiber coordinate system is related to the original Cartesian coordinate system through

$$y = Y(x) = \int T(x) dx \quad (12.212)$$

and in the  $y$ -coordinate system the Laplacian operator is

$$\nabla^2\phi = \nabla_y^2\phi + \kappa \cdot \nabla_y\phi. \quad (12.213)$$

The vector  $\kappa$  is the curvature vector, whose components are the mean curvatures of the coordinate level surfaces. If the components of the matrix  $T$  are given by  $t_{ij}$ , then the coordinates of  $\kappa$  are  $\kappa_j = t_{ik} \frac{\partial t_{ij}}{\partial x_k}$ .

To take into account that the boundary of the cells is varying rapidly on the scale of the fiber coordinate system, we introduce the "fast" variable  $\xi = \frac{y}{\epsilon}$ , where  $\epsilon$  is the small dimensionless parameter  $\epsilon = \frac{l}{\Lambda}$ ,  $l$  is the length of the cell, and  $\Lambda$  is the natural length scale along fibers. We let  $z = y$  be the slow variable and assume that  $\kappa$  is a function solely of  $z$ , since variations of fiber direction are not noticeable at the cellular level.

Now we apply the homogenization technique described in Chapter 7. For this particular problem, this was first done by Neu and Krassowska (1993; see also Keener and Panfilov, 1997). As the calculation here is nearly identical to that given in Section 7.8.2, we skip directly to the answer. The potential  $\phi$  is given by

$$\phi = \Phi(z) + \epsilon W\left(\frac{z}{\epsilon}\right) \cdot T^{-1} \nabla_z \Phi(z) + O(\epsilon^2 \Phi), \quad (12.214)$$

where the mean field potential  $\Phi$  satisfies the averaged Poisson equation

$$\nabla \cdot (\sigma_{\text{eff}} \nabla \Phi) = -\chi \frac{1}{S_\xi} \int_{\Gamma_m} I_m(z, \xi) dS_\xi. \quad (12.215)$$

where  $\chi = \frac{S_m}{v}$  is the cell surface area per unit volume, a quantity having units of length, and  $S_\xi$  is the surface area of  $\Gamma_m$  in units of  $\xi$ .  $W(\xi)$  is the fundamental solution vector, periodic in  $\xi$  with zero surface average value,  $\int_{\Gamma_m} W(\xi) d\xi = 0$ , and it satisfies the vector partial differential equation

$$\nabla_\xi^2 W(\xi) = 0, \quad (12.216)$$

subject to the boundary condition

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\nabla_\xi W(\xi) + I) = 0, \quad (12.217)$$

on  $\Gamma_m$  the membrane wall. Here  $I$  is the identity matrix. Finally the effective conductivity tensor is

$$\Sigma = \frac{1}{r_c v} \int_{\Gamma_m} (\nabla_\xi W(\xi) + I) dV_\xi, \quad (12.218)$$

where  $\sigma_{\text{eff}}(x) = T \Sigma T^{-1}$ , and  $v$  is the volume of the rectangular box containing the cell.

The derivation of the bidomain model follows quickly from this. We define the potentials in the intracellular and extracellular domains as  $\phi_i$  and  $\phi_e$ , respectively. Then the membrane potential is the difference between the two potentials across the membrane boundary  $\Gamma_m$  between the two domains:

$$\phi = (\phi_i - \phi_e)|_{\Gamma_m}. \quad (12.219)$$

At each point of the cell membrane the outward transmembrane current is given by

$$I_m = C_m \frac{d\phi}{dt} + \frac{1}{R_m} f_m(\phi), \quad (12.220)$$

where  $C_m$  is the membrane capacitance and  $f_m/R_m$  represents the transmembrane ionic current. The parameter  $R_m$  is the membrane resistance.

It follows from homogenization (12.214), (12.215) that

$$\phi_i = V_i(x) + \epsilon W_i \left( \frac{x}{\epsilon} \right) \cdot T^{-1} \nabla V_i(x) + O(\epsilon^2 V_i), \quad (12.221)$$

$$\phi_e = V_e(x) + \epsilon W_e \left( \frac{x}{\epsilon} \right) \cdot T^{-1} \nabla V_e(x) + O(\epsilon^2 V_e), \quad (12.222)$$

and that  $V_i(x)$  and  $V_e(x)$  satisfy the averaged equations

$$\nabla \cdot (\sigma_i \nabla V_i) = -\nabla \cdot (\sigma_e \nabla V_e) = \chi \frac{1}{S_\xi} \int_{\Gamma_m} I_m(x, \xi) dS_\xi, \quad (12.223)$$

where  $I_m$  is the transmembrane current (positive outward). We calculate (using that  $\int_{\Gamma_m} W_i dS_\xi = \int_{\Gamma_m} W_e dS_\xi = 0$ ) that

$$\frac{1}{S_\xi} \int_{\Gamma_m} I_m(x, \xi) dS_\xi = C_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{S_\xi} \int_{\Gamma_m} \frac{1}{R_m} f_m(V + \epsilon H(\xi, x)) dS_\xi, \quad (12.224)$$

where

$$H(\xi, x) = W_i(\xi) \cdot T^{-1} \nabla V_i(x) - W_e(\xi) \cdot T^{-1} \nabla V_e(x), \quad (12.225)$$

$$V = V_i - V_e. \quad (12.226)$$

It follows that

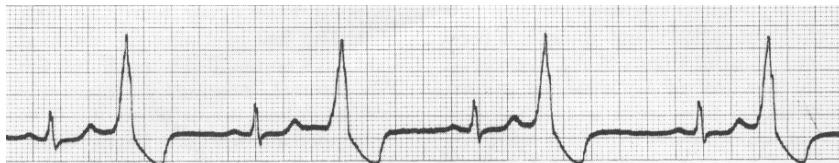
$$\frac{R_m}{\chi} \nabla \cdot (\sigma_i \nabla V_i) = -\frac{R_m}{\chi} \nabla \cdot (\sigma_e \nabla V_e) = C_m R_m \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{S_m} \int_{\Gamma_m} f_m (V + \epsilon H(\xi, x)) dS_\xi. \quad (12.227)$$

In the limit  $\epsilon = 0$ , the equations (12.227) reduce to the standard bidomain model. With  $\epsilon \neq 0$ , this model can be used to study the effects of large defibrillating currents.

## 12.9 EXERCISES

---

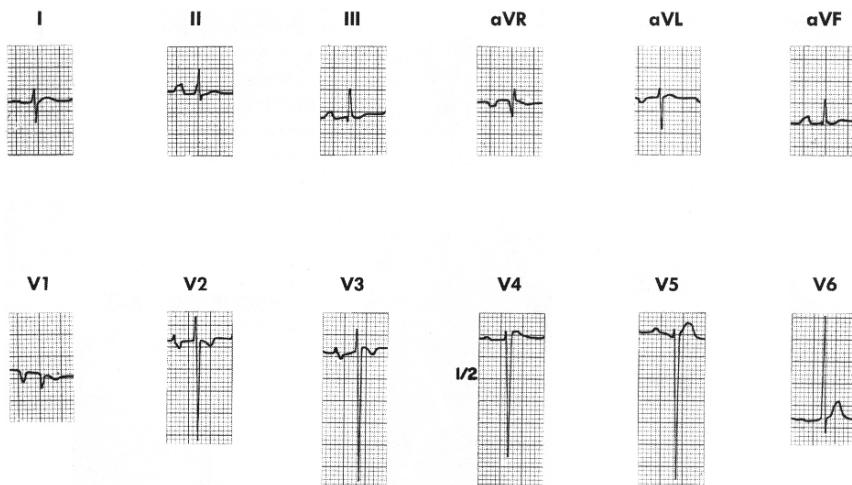
1. (a) The fundamental solution of Poisson's equation in free space with a unit source at the origin ( $\nabla^2 \phi = -\delta(x)$ ) is  $\phi(x) = \frac{1}{4\pi|x|}$ .  
Find the solution of Poisson's equation with a source at the origin and a sink of equal strength at  $x = x_1$ , and let  $|x_1| \rightarrow 0$ . What must be assumed about the strength of the source and the sink in order to obtain a nonzero limiting potential?  
(b) Find the solution of Poisson's equation with a dipole source by solving the problem  $\nabla^2 \phi = \frac{1}{\epsilon}(\delta(x - \epsilon v) - \delta(x))$  with  $|v| = 1$ , and then taking the limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ .
2. Determine the heart rate for the ECG recording in Fig. 12.3a. The subject was sedated at the time this recording was made. What are the effects of the sedation?
3. Identify the different deflections in the ECG recording shown in Fig. 12.55. What can you surmise about the nature of propagation for the extra QRS complex (called an *extrasystole*). Because of the apparent periodic coupling between the normal QRS and the extrasystole, this rhythm is called a *ventricular bigeminy*.
4. (a) Suggest a diagnosis for the ECG recording in Fig. 12.56.  
*Hint:* What does the inverted P-wave suggest? What is the heart rate?  
(b) What possible mechanisms can account for the failure of the SA node to generate the heartbeat?
5. Estimate the mean deflection of the QRS complex in each of the six standard leads (I, II, III, aVR, aVL, aVF) in Fig. 12.7 and then estimate the mean heart vector for the normal heartbeat.



**Figure 12.55** ECG recording of a ventricular extrasystole for exercise 3. (Rushmer, 1976, Fig 8-25, p. 314, originally from Gunereth, 1965.)



**Figure 12.56** ECG for Exercise 4 (Goldberger and Goldberger, 1994, p. 45).



**Figure 12.57** ECG for Exercise 7. Can you determine the nature of this abnormality? (Rushmer, 1976, Fig. 8-51, p. 343.)

6. Improve your skill at reading ECGs by finding the mean heart vector for the QRS complexes in Figs. 12.4, 12.9, and 12.10. Why is hypertrophy the diagnosis for Figs. 12.9 and 12.10? In what direction are the heart vectors deflected in these figures?
7. Find the mean heart vector for the ECG recording shown in Fig. 12.57. What mechanism can you suggest that accounts for this vector?
8. By assuming a fast equilibrium between states  $N_3$  and  $N_4$ , and between states  $C_3$  and  $C_4$ , derive the simplified reaction diagram of Fig. 12.19C for the L-type channel model.
9. Compare the solution of (12.58) with the approximation (12.60). In particular, plot  $\frac{\lambda_g^2}{L^2}(Q+r)$  as a function of  $Q$  for different values of  $\frac{L}{\lambda_g}$ .
10. Use cable theory to estimate the effective coupling resistance for cardiac cells in the longitudinal and transverse directions. Assume that cells are 0.01 cm long, 0.00167 cm wide,  $\chi = S/v = 2400 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ ,  $R_m = 7000 \Omega\text{-cm}^2$ ,  $R_c = 150 \Omega\text{-cm}$ ,  $R_e = 0$ , with a longitudinal space constant of 0.09 cm and transverse space constant 0.03 cm (appropriate for canine

crista terminalis). What difference do you observe with a transverse space constant of 0.016 cm (appropriate for sheep epicardium)?

11. How should the coupling coefficient  $r_g$  be chosen so that the decay rate for the discrete linear model (12.78) with  $I_{\text{ion}} = -V/R_m$  matches the space constant of the medium?
12. Using that the longitudinal and transverse cardiac action potential deflections are  $\Delta V_{eL} = 74$  mV,  $\Delta V_{eT} = 43$  mV, that the membrane potential has  $\Delta V = 100$  mV (independent of direction), and that the axial speed of propagation in humans is 0.5 m/s in the longitudinal fiber direction and 0.17 m/s in the transverse direction, determine the ratio of coefficients of the conductivity tensors  $\frac{\sigma_{eL}}{\sigma_{iL}}$ ,  $\frac{\sigma_{eT}}{\sigma_{iT}}$ , and  $\frac{\sigma_{iT}}{\sigma_{iL}}$ . What are these ratios in dog if the ratio of longitudinal to transverse speeds is 2:1?
13. Determine the conditions under which there is propagation failure at a junction when the ionic current model is

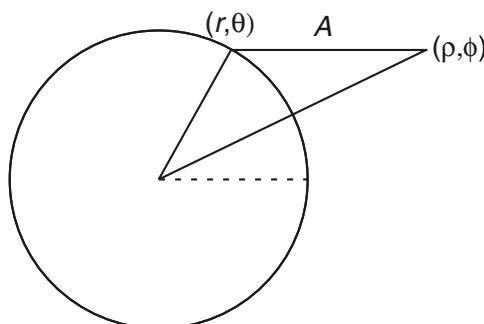
$$I_{\text{ion}} = g_{\text{Na}} h m^2(V)(V_{\text{Na}} - V) + g_{\text{K}}(V_{\text{K}} - V), \quad (12.228)$$

where

$$m(V) = \begin{cases} 0, & V < V_{\text{K}}, \\ \frac{V - V_{\text{K}}}{V_{\text{Na}} - V_{\text{K}}}, & V_{\text{K}} < V < V_{\text{Na}}, \\ 0, & V > V_{\text{Na}} \end{cases} \quad (12.229)$$

Reasonable values for the parameters are  $V_{\text{K}} = -84$  mV,  $V_{\text{Na}} = 66$  mV,  $g_{\text{Na}} = 3.33$  mS/cm<sup>2</sup>, and  $g_{\text{K}} = 0.66$  mS/cm<sup>2</sup>, although these numbers are not needed to solve this problem.

14. Consider the following simple model of a forced periodic oscillator, called the *Poincaré oscillator* (also called a *radial isochron clock* or a *snap-back oscillator*; Guevara and Glass, 1982; Hoppensteadt and Keener, 1982; Keener and Glass, 1984; Glass and Kaplan, 1995). A point is moving counterclockwise around a circle of radius 1. At some point of its phase, the point is moved horizontally by an amount  $A$  and then allowed to instantly “snap back” to radius 1 moving along a radial line toward the origin (see Fig. 12.58).
  - (a) Determine the *phase resetting curve* for this process. That is, given the phase  $\theta$  before resetting, find the phase  $\phi$  after resetting the clock. Plot  $\phi$  as a function of  $\theta$  for several values of  $A$ .
  - (b) Show that for  $A < 1$  the phase resetting function is a *type 1* map, satisfying  $\phi(\theta + 2\pi) = \phi(\theta) + 2\pi$ .
  - (c) Show that for  $A > 1$ , the phase resetting function is a *type 0* map, for which  $\phi(\theta + 2\pi) = \phi(\theta)$ .



**Figure 12.58** Diagram of phase resetting for the Poincaré oscillator (Exercise 14).

- (d) Show that there is a *phase singularity*, that is, values of  $A$  and  $\theta$  for which a new phase is not defined (Winfree, 1980).
- (e) Construct a map  $\theta_n \mapsto \theta_{n+1}$  by resetting the clock every  $T$  units of phase, so that

$$\theta_{n+1} = \phi(\theta_n) + T. \quad (12.230)$$

Show that for  $A < 1$ , this is a circle map. Determine the values of  $A$  and  $T$  for which there is one-to-one phase locking.

15. A simple model of the response of an excitable cell to a periodic stimulus is provided by the *integrate-and-fire* model (Knight, 1972; Keener, Hoppensteadt and Rinzel, 1981). In this model the membrane is assumed to be passive unless the threshold is reached, whereupon the membrane “fires” and is immediately reset to zero. The equations describing the evolution of the membrane potential are

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = -\gamma v + S(t), \quad (12.231)$$

and  $v(t^+) = 0$  if  $v(t) = v_T$ , the threshold. We take the periodic stimulus to be a simple sinusoidal function,  $S(t) = S_0 + S_m \sin(\omega t)$ .

Let  $T_n$  be the time of the  $n$ th firing. Formulate the problem of determining  $T_{n+1}$  from  $T_n$  as a circle map. For what parameter values is this a continuous circle map and for what parameter values is it a discontinuous circle map? (Guevara and Glass, 1982.)

16. Suppose the membrane potential rises at a constant rate  $\lambda$  until it reaches a threshold  $\theta(t)$ , at which time the potential is reset to zero. Suppose that the threshold is the simple sinusoidal function  $\theta(t) = \theta_0 + \theta_m \sin(\omega t)$ . Let  $T_n$  be the time of the  $n$ th firing. Formulate the problem of determining  $T_{n+1}$  from  $T_n$  as a circle map. For what parameter values is this a continuous circle map and for what parameter values is it a discontinuous circle map? (Glass and Mackey, 1979.)

17. Suppose a constant-current stimulus  $I$  is added to a cable with FitzHugh–Nagumo dynamics and piecewise-linear function  $f$  as in (12.133).

- (a) Find the steady-state solution as a function of input current  $I$ .
- (b) Examine the stability of this steady-state solution. Show that the eigenvalues are eigenvalues of a Schrödinger equation with a square well potential. Find the critical Hopf bifurcation curve. Show that for  $\epsilon$  sufficiently small, the solution is stable if  $I$  is small or large, but there is an intermediate range of  $I$  for which the solution is unstable (Rinzel and Keener, 1983).

*Hint:* Because the function  $f(v)$  is piecewise linear, the potential for the Schrödinger equation is a square well potential. Solve the resulting transcendental equations numerically.

18. (a) Carry out the calculations of Section 12.3.4 for a one-dimensional piecewise-linear model (12.133) with  $\alpha(r)$  specified by (12.132),  $b = \frac{1}{2}$ . Determine the critical stability curve.
- (b) Generalize this calculation by supposing that the oscillatory cells have coupling coefficient  $D$ . What is the effect of the coupling coefficient of the oscillatory cells on the critical stability curve? Show that oscillatory behavior is more likely with weak coupling.
19. (a) Use homogenization theory to show that the averaged approximation of (12.68) is (12.69).

- (b) Use homogenization to separate (12.162) into two equations on different spatial scales. Show that  $V \approx u_0(z, \tau) + \epsilon J(\tau)H(\eta) - \epsilon W(\eta) \frac{\partial u_0(z, \tau)}{\partial z}$ , where  $W'(\eta) = 1 - \frac{D}{d(\eta)}$ ,  $H'(\eta) = \frac{\Sigma_e}{\sigma_e} - \frac{D}{d}$ , and  $u_0$  satisfies the averaged equation (12.166). Show that this answer is valid even if  $J(\tau) = O\left(\frac{1}{\epsilon}\right)$ . (Hint: Use the projection method rather than a standard power series expansion.)

20. Suppose that the nonlinear function  $f(V)$  for an excitable medium is well represented by

$$f(V) = V \left( \frac{V}{\theta} - 1 \right), \quad (12.232)$$

at least in the vicinity of the rest point and the threshold. Find the relationship between minimal time and stimulus strength to directly stimulate the medium.

*Hint:* Evaluate 12.174.

21. Find the relationship between minimal time and stimulus strength to directly stimulate the medium (as in the previous problem) for the Beeler–Reuter model of myocardial tissue (Section 12.2). To do this, set  $m = m_\infty(V)$  and set all other dynamic variables to their steady-state values and then evaluate (12.174).

22. Suppose a collection of FitzHugh–Nagumo oscillators described by

$$\delta \frac{dv}{dt} = f(v) - w, \quad (12.233)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = v - \alpha, \quad (12.234)$$

with  $f(v) = v(v - 1)(\alpha - v)$  with parameter values  $\delta = 0.05$ ,  $\alpha = 0.4$ , is coupled through the variable  $v$ . Calculate (numerically) the coupling function

$$h(\phi) = \int_0^P y_1(\sigma)v(\sigma + \phi) d\sigma, \quad (12.235)$$

where  $y_1$  is the first component of the periodic adjoint solution.

23. (a) Consider a linear system of differential equations  $\frac{dy}{dt} = A(t)y$  and the corresponding adjoint system  $\frac{dv}{dt} = -A^T(t)v$ , where  $A(t)$  is periodic with period  $P$ . Let  $Y(t)$  and  $V(t)$  be matrix solutions of these equations and suppose that  $V^T(0)Y(0) = I$ . Show that  $V^T(P)Y(P) = I$ .
- (b) The eigenvalues of the matrix  $Y(P)Y^{-1}(0)$  are called the Floquet multipliers for the system  $\frac{dy}{dt} = A(t)y$ . What does the fact that  $V^T(0)Y(0) = V^T(P)Y(P)$  imply about the Floquet multipliers for  $\frac{dy}{dt} = A(t)y$  and its adjoint system?
24. Suppose two identical lambda–omega oscillators of the form (12.189)–(12.190) are coupled through their first variables  $x$ , with, in the notation of (12.195),

$$H = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (12.236)$$

and  $a_{12} = a_{21} = \alpha$ , and  $a_{11} = a_{22} = 0$ . Calculate the phase resetting function  $h(\phi)$  and determine the stability of in-phase and out-of-phase, phase locked solutions, when  $\alpha = \pm 1$ .

# Blood

Blood is composed of two major ingredients: the liquid *blood plasma* and several types of cells suspended within the plasma. The cells constitute approximately 40% of the total blood volume and are grouped into three major categories: *erythrocytes* (red blood cells), *leukocytes* (white blood cells), and *thrombocytes* (platelets). The red blood cells remain within the blood vessels, and their function is to transport oxygen and carbon dioxide. The white blood cells fight infection, and thus are able to migrate out of the blood vessels and into the tissues. Platelets are not complete cells, but are small detached fragments of much larger cells called megakaryocytes. Their principal function is to aid in blood clotting.

Leukocytes themselves are subdivided into a number of categories: *granulocytes* (approximately 65%), *lymphocytes* (30%), *monocytes* (5%), and *natural killer* cells. Granulocytes are further subdivided into *neutrophils* (95%), *eosinophils*, (4%) and *basophils* (1%). Neutrophils phagocytose (i.e., ingest) and destroy small foreign bodies such as bacteria, basophils help mediate inflammatory reactions by secreting histamine, while eosinophils help to destroy parasites and modulate allergic responses.

Monocytes mature into macrophages, which help the neutrophils with the phagocytosis of foreign bodies. Macrophages are much larger than neutrophils and can phagocytose larger microorganisms. They are also responsible for removing dead or damaged cells.

Lymphocytes come in two main types, T and B, whose main functions are the production of antibodies and the removal of virus-infected cells.

The types and functions of blood cells are summarized in Table 13.1.

In this chapter we consider only a small number of mathematical questions associated with these cell types. A more general study of lymphocytes and the immune system would require an entire volume all to itself. A good basic introduction to immunology

**Table 13.1** Types and functions of blood cells. The right-hand column shows typical concentrations in human blood. Adapted from Alberts et al. (1994), Table 22-1.

Type of cell	Main functions	cells/liter
<b>Red blood cells (erythrocytes)</b>	transport oxygen and carbon dioxide	$5 \times 10^{12}$
<b>White blood cells (leukocytes)</b>		
<i>Granulocytes</i>		
Neutrophils	ingest and destroy bacteria	$5 \times 10^9$
Eosinophils	destroy larger parasites and modulate allergic responses	$2 \times 10^8$
Basophils	release histamine in certain immune reactions	$4 \times 10^7$
<i>Monocytes</i>	become macrophages that ingest invading bacteria and foreign bodies, and remove dead or damaged cells	
<i>Lymphocytes</i>		
B Lymphocytes	make antibodies	$2 \times 10^9$
T Lymphocytes	kill cells infected by virus, and regulate activities of other leukocytes	$1 \times 10^9$
<i>Natural killer cells (NK)</i>	kill some tumor cells, and cells infected by virus	
<b>Platelets</b>	cell fragments arising from megakaryocytes in bone marrow; initiate blood clotting.	$3 \times 10^{11}$

is Janeway et al. (2001), while a more detailed discussion of mathematical models and the immune system is given by Nowak and May (2000) and Perelson (2002).

## 13.1 Blood Plasma

The blood plasma is 89–95% water, with a variety of dissolved substances. The dissolved substances with small molecular weight include bicarbonate,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , phosphorus,  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ , magnesium, urea, and glucose. There are also large protein molecules including *albumin* and  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -, and  $\gamma$ -*globulins*. Of these proteins, albumin has the highest molar concentration in plasma and this makes the greatest contribution to the plasma osmotic pressure.

In addition, gases such as carbon dioxide and oxygen are dissolved in the blood plasma. For an ideal gas, the pressure, volume, and temperature are related by the ideal gas law,

$$PV = nkT, \quad (13.1)$$

where  $P$  is the pressure,  $V$  is the volume,  $n$  is the number of gas molecules,  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant, and  $T$  is temperature in Kelvin. Since concentration is  $c = n/V$ , for

an ideal gas

$$P = ckT. \quad (13.2)$$

This representation of concentration is in units of molecules per volume, and while this seems natural, it is not the usual way that concentrations are represented. To express concentration in terms of moles per unit volume, we multiply and divide (13.2) by Avogadro's number  $N_A$  to obtain

$$P = CRT, \quad (13.3)$$

where  $C = c/N_A$  and  $R = kN_A$  is the universal gas constant.

Air is a mixture of different gases, with 78% nitrogen and 21% oxygen. Each of these gases contributes to the total pressure of the mixture via its *partial pressure*. The partial pressure of gas  $i$ ,  $P_i$ , is defined by

$$P_i = x_i P, \quad (13.4)$$

where  $x_i$  is the mole fraction of gas  $i$ , and  $P$  is the total pressure of the gas mixture. Thus, by definition, the total pressure of a gas mixture is the sum of the partial pressures of each individual gas in the mixture. In an ideal mixture the partial pressure of gas  $i$  is equal to the pressure that gas  $i$  would exert if it alone were present.

When a gas with partial pressure  $P_i$  comes into contact with a liquid, some of the gas dissolves in the liquid. When a steady state is reached, the amount of gas dissolved in the liquid is a function of the partial pressure of the gas above the liquid. If the concentration of the dissolved gas is low enough, thus forming an ideally dilute solution, then  $P_i$  is related to the concentration of gas  $i$  by

$$c_i = \sigma_i P_i, \quad (13.5)$$

where  $c_i$  is the concentration of gas  $i$ , and  $\sigma_i$  is called the *solubility*. In general  $\sigma_i$  is a function of the temperature and the total pressure above the liquid. In Table 13.2 are shown the solubilities of important respiratory gases in blood, where it can be seen, for example, that the solubility of carbon dioxide in blood is about 20 times larger than that of oxygen.

**Table 13.2** Solubility of respiratory gases in blood plasma.

Substance	$\sigma$ (Molar/mm Hg)
O <sub>2</sub>	$1.4 \times 10^{-6}$
CO <sub>2</sub>	$3.3 \times 10^{-5}$
CO	$1.2 \times 10^{-6}$
N <sub>2</sub>	$7 \times 10^{-7}$
He	$4.8 \times 10^{-7}$

## 13.2 Blood Cell Production

Blood cells are produced by the bone marrow and must be continually produced over a human's lifetime. For example, one cubic millimeter of blood contains around 5 million erythrocytes. These cells have an average lifetime of 120 days and are estimated to travel through about 700 miles of blood vessels during their life span. Because of aging and rupturing, red blood cells must be constantly replaced. On average, the body must produce  $3 \times 10^9$  new erythrocytes for each kilogram of body weight every day.

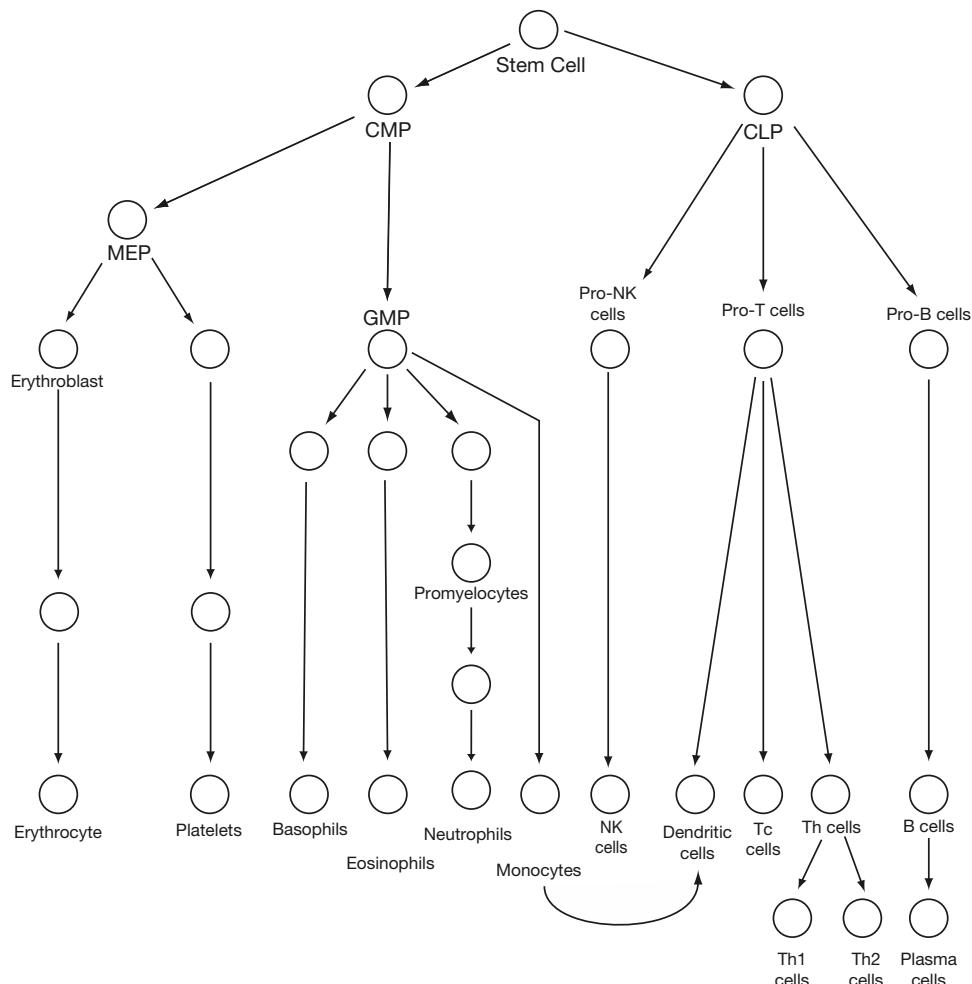
In a child before the age of 5, blood cells are produced in the marrow of essentially all the bones. However, with age, the marrow of the long bones becomes quite fatty and so produces no more blood cells after about age 20. In the adult, most blood cells are produced in the marrow of membranous bones, such as the vertebrae, sternum, ribs, and ilia.

In the bone marrow there are cells, called *pluripotential hematopoietic stem cells*, from which all of the cells in the circulating blood are derived. Remarkably, if endogenous hematopoiesis (blood cell production) is halted in an animal by irradiation, it can be completely restored by the addition of exogenous stem cells. As stem cells grow and reproduce, a portion of them remains exactly like the original pluripotential cells, maintaining a more or less constant supply of these cells. The larger portion of the reproduced stem cells differentiates to form other cells, called *committed stem cells*, or committed progenitors. The *in vitro* analogue of the committed stem cells are called colony-forming units (CFU). The committed stem cells produce colonies of specific types of blood cells, including erythrocytes, lymphocytes, granulocytes, monocytes, and megakaryocytes.

Although the basic outline of the process is known, the details, both of the mechanisms that control blood cell production, and the exact lineage of each cell type, remain elusive. It seems that hematopoietic stem cells pass through a series of divisions and maturational steps, at each stage of which they progressively lose their potential to change their differentiation pathway (i.e., the choice of what the cell can differentiate to becomes more limited), ending with a fully differentiated cell type such as an erythrocyte. However, it has proven difficult to separate the precursors of one cell type from those of another, leading to considerable uncertainty in the exact cell lineages. A tentative cell lineage diagram is given in Fig. 13.1.

Growth and differentiation of blood cells are controlled by an intricate array of soluble factors, or cytokines, that include hematopoietic growth and differentiation factors. However, most cytokines are known to have multiple effects and interactions, and there is no clear distinction between those that control growth and those that control differentiation. Formation of cytokines is itself controlled by factors outside the bone marrow such as, in the case of red blood cells, low oxygen concentration for an extended period of time.

The feedback system that controls red blood cell production is relatively well understood. The principal factor stimulating red blood cell production is the hormone



**Figure 13.1** Schematic diagram of cell lineage in hematopoiesis. Stem cells differentiate into common myeloid precursors (CMP) and common lymphoid precursors (CLP). CMP then differentiate into megakaryocytic/erythroid progenitors (MEP), which differentiate further into erythrocytes and platelets. CMP also give rise to granulocyte-monocyte-megakaryocytic-erythroid common progenitors (GMP), whence come granulocytes and monocytes. CLP differentiate into T lymphocytes, B lymphocytes, and natural killer cells. Th cells are helper lymphocytes, while Tc cells are cytotoxic T lymphocytes. Adapted from Kluger et al. (2004), Fig. 1.

erythropoietin. About 90% of the erythropoietin is secreted by renal tubular epithelial cells when blood is unable to deliver sufficient oxygen. The remainder is produced by other tissues (mostly the liver). When both kidneys are removed or destroyed by renal disease, the person invariably becomes anemic because of insufficient production of erythropoietin.

The role of erythropoietin in bone marrow is twofold. First, it stimulates the production of pre-erythrocytes, called *proerythroblasts*, and it also controls the speed at which the developing cells pass through the different stages. Normal production of red blood cells from stem cells takes 5–7 days, with no appearance of new cells before 5 days, even at high levels of erythropoietin. At high erythropoietin levels the rate of red blood cell production (number per unit time) can be as much as ten times normal, even though the maturation rate of an individual red blood cell varies much less.

Thus, in response to a drop of oxygen pressure in the tissues, an increased production of erythropoietin causes an increase in the rate of production of red blood cells, thus tending to restore oxygen levels. The control mechanisms that operate when the red blood cell count is too high (a condition called polycythemia or erythrocytosis) are less clear. Details of the regulatory system governing red blood cells can be found in Williams (1990), while an excellent review of much of the material discussed in this section can be found in Haurie et al. (1998).

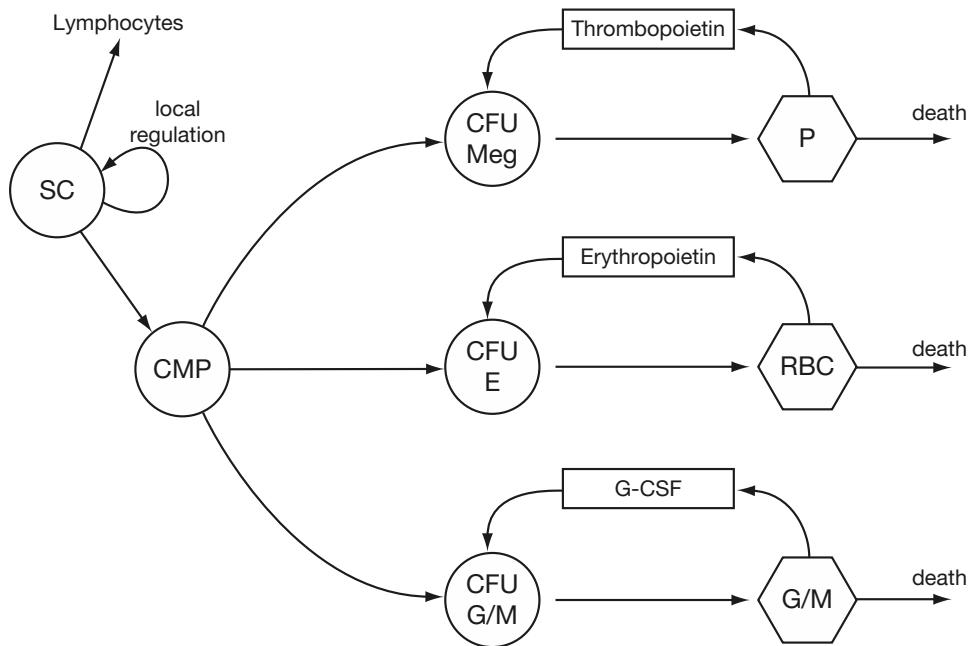
Feedback control of the other types of blood cells is even less well understood. Production of granulocytes is controlled by granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF), which is produced by a number of tissues, including fibroblasts, and endothelial and epithelial tissue, while megakaryocyte production is controlled, at least in part, by thrombopoietin. These feedback controls are sketched in Fig. 13.2.

### 13.2.1 Periodic Hematological Diseases

In most people, the production of blood cells is relatively constant. However, there are a number of pathological conditions that exhibit oscillatory behavior. The most widely studied is *cyclical neutropenia*, a condition in which the number of neutrophils periodically drops to a very low level, typically every 19 to 21 days. As it happens, the gray collie suffers from a similar disease, with a period that ranges from 11 to 15 days, and this has greatly helped the study of the disease in humans. In both humans and collies, the periodic variation in neutrophil numbers is accompanied by oscillations in the number of platelets, often the monocytes and eosinophils, and occasionally the lymphocytes. The oscillation period in these other cell types is, however, not always the same as that of the neutrophils. Some typical experimental data from nine dogs are shown in Fig. 13.3.

Another periodic blood disease is periodic chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML). Being a leukemia, this disease is characterized by the uncontrolled growth of white blood cells. However, this growth can sometimes occur in an oscillatory manner. Data showing oscillations of white blood cell count in a twelve-year-old girl with periodic CML are shown in Fig. 13.4A, and blood cell counts in cyclical neutropenia and CML are compared in Fig. 13.4B. The oscillations in CML occur with a much larger period, and generate much greater numbers of neutrophils, as expected for a leukemia.

Over the last 25 years, there has been a large number of mathematical investigations of these periodic behaviors. Early studies were those of Mackey (1978, 1979),



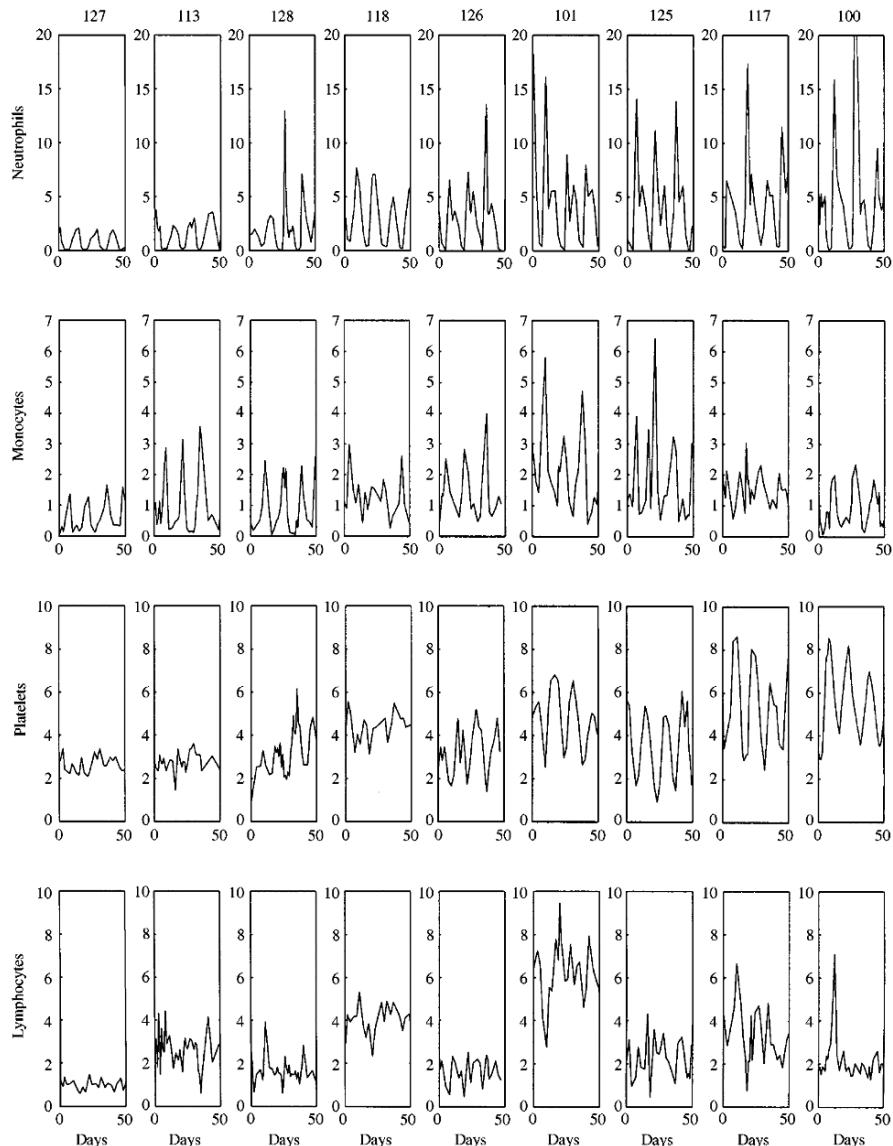
**Figure 13.2** Schematic diagram of the control of blood cell production. SC: stem cells. CMP: common myeloid precursors (see Fig. 13.1). CFU: colony-forming units. E: erythrocytes. Meg: megakaryocytes. G/M: granulocytes/monocytes. P: platelets. RBC: red blood cells. The feedback loops in the diagrams are not well understood, but are certainly far more complex than shown here.

Mackey and Glass (1977), Mackey and Milton (1987), Milton and Mackey (1989), and Bélair et al. (1995), while the recent work of Mackey, Haurie, and their colleagues (Haurie et al., 1998; Hearn et al., 1998; Haurie et al., 1999; Haurie et al., 2000; Mackey et al., 2003; Colijn and Mackey, 2005a, b) have extended the earlier models into much more elaborate versions, with detailed fits to experimental data. Another of the major modeling groups studying periodic hematopoiesis is that of Wichmann, Schmitz, and their colleagues (Wichmann et al., 1988; Schmitz et al., 1990, 1993).

One of the principal goals of the recent modeling work has been to discover the site of action of the feedback that controls blood cell growth and that can lead to oscillatory behavior. Here, we first illustrate the basic modeling concepts by working through a relatively simple delay differential equation model, and then, using a more recent model, study the question of where the feedback occurs.

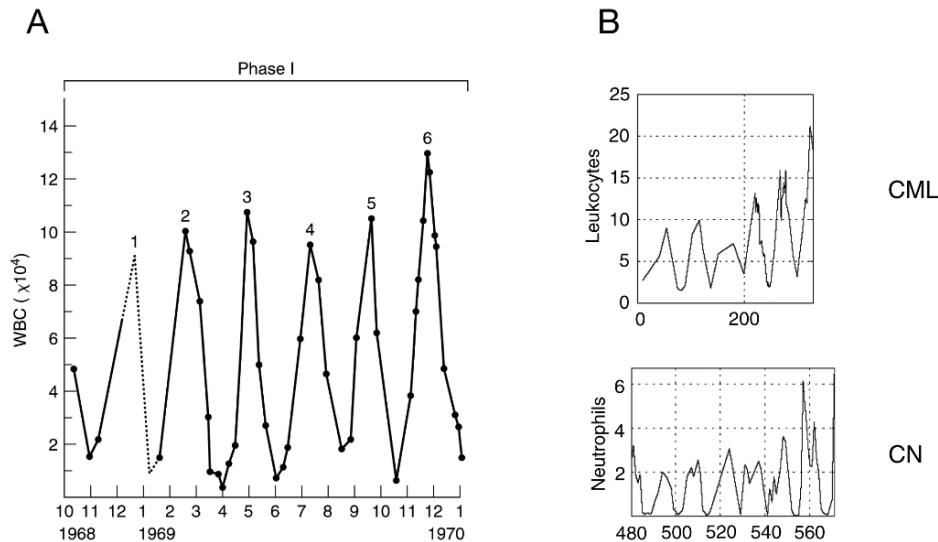
### 13.2.2 A Simple Model of Blood Cell Growth

We model the blood production cycle as follows (Belair et al., 1995). We let  $n(x, t)$  be the density of blood cells at time  $t$  that are  $x$  units old, i.e., that were released into the



**Figure 13.3** Blood counts against time (in days) for nine gray collies with cyclical neutropenia. Units: cells  $\times 10^{-5}\text{mm}^{-3}$  for the platelets and cells  $\times 10^{-3}\text{mm}^{-3}$  for the other cell types (Haurie et al. 2000, Fig. 1).

bloodstream at time  $t - x$ . We suppose that as they age, a fixed percentage of them die, but at some age  $X$  all cells die. Consider the rate of change of the total number of cells with age in the interval between  $x = a$  and  $x = b$ . Since  $n(b, t)$  is the rate at which cells leave the interval  $[a, b]$  due to aging, and  $n(a, t)$  is the rate at which they enter that



**Figure 13.4** A: White blood cell count (per liter) as a function of time for a twelve-year-old girl with periodic CML. (This research was originally published in Gatti et al., 1973, Fig. 1, © the American Society of Hematology) B: Comparison of blood cell counts in CML and cyclical neutropenia (CN). The CN data are from dog 113 (Fig. 13.3, as reproduced in Colijn and Mackey, 2005b, Fig. 2), while the CML data are from Vodopick et al. (1972), as reproduced in Colijn and Mackey (2005a), Fig. 2. For both sets of data in B, the units of cell number are  $10^8$  per kilogram, and the time scale is days.

interval, the rate of change of total cell number is given by

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_a^b n(x, t) dx = \int_a^b -\beta n(x, t) dx - n(b, t) + n(a, t), \quad (13.6)$$

where  $\beta$  is the death rate of the cells. Differentiating (13.6) with respect to  $b$  and replacing  $b$  by  $x$  gives the conservation equation

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} = -\beta n. \quad (13.7)$$

In general, the death rate is expected to be a function of age, so that  $\beta = \beta(x)$ . However, for this model we take the death rate to be independent of age. At any given time the total number of blood cells in circulation is

$$N(t) = \int_0^X n(x, t) dx. \quad (13.8)$$

Now we suppose that the production of blood cells is controlled by  $N$ , and that once a cohort of cells is formed in the bone marrow, it emerges into the bloodstream as mature cells some fixed time  $d$  later, about 5 days. Here we ignore the fact that at high levels of feedback (for example, at high levels of erythropoietin, which occurs when

oxygen levels are low), cells mature more rapidly. Thus,

$$n(0, t) = F(N(t - d)), \quad (13.9)$$

where  $F$  is some nonlinear production function that is monotone decreasing in its argument. The function  $F$  is related to the rate of secretion of growth inducer (erythropoietin, for example) in response to the blood cell population size.

The steady-state solution for this model is easy to determine. We set  $\partial n / \partial t = 0$  and find that

$$n(x) = \begin{cases} n(0)e^{-\beta x}, & x < X, \\ 0, & x > X, \end{cases} \quad (13.10)$$

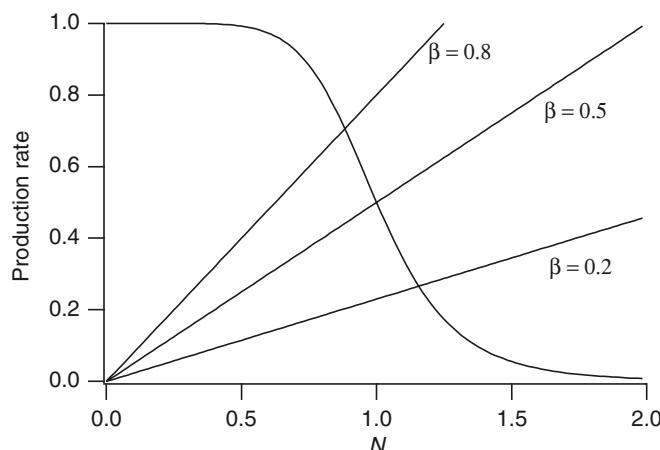
where  $n(0)$  is yet to be determined. If  $N_0 = \int_0^X n(x) dx$  is the total number of cells in steady state, it follows that

$$N_0 = \int_0^X n(0)e^{-\beta x} dx = \frac{n(0)}{\beta} (1 - e^{-\beta X}). \quad (13.11)$$

At steady state,  $F(N_0) = n(0)$ , and thus it follows that

$$F(N_0) = \frac{\beta N_0}{1 - e^{-\beta X}}. \quad (13.12)$$

Since  $F(N_0)$  is a monotone decreasing function of  $N_0$ , (13.12) is guaranteed to have a unique solution. In fact, the solution is a monotone decreasing function of the parameter  $\beta$ , indicating that at higher death rates, the cell population drops while the production of cells increases. An illustration of these facts is provided by the graph in Fig. 13.5, where the two curves  $F(N)$  and  $\frac{\beta N}{1 - e^{-\beta X}}$  are plotted as functions



**Figure 13.5** Plot of left- and right-hand sides of (13.12) for three different values of  $\beta$  and for  $F(N) = \frac{1}{1+N^7}$  and  $X = 10$ .

of  $N$ . Here the function  $F(N)$  is taken to be  $F(N) = \frac{A}{1+N^7}$ , as suggested by data from autoimmune-induced hemolytic anemia in rabbits (Belair et al., 1995).

The next interesting question to ask is whether this steady solution is stable or unstable. It is convenient to integrate the partial differential equation (13.7) to get an ordinary differential equation. Integrating (13.7) from  $x = 0$  to  $x = X$  gives

$$\frac{dN}{dt} + n(X, t) - n(0, t) = -\beta N. \quad (13.13)$$

Since  $n(0, t) = F(N(t - d))$  and  $n(X, t) = F(N(t - d - X))e^{-\beta X}$ , it follows that  $N(t)$  is governed by the delay differential equation

$$\frac{dN}{dt} + F(N(t - d - X))e^{-\beta X} - F(N(t - d)) = -\beta N. \quad (13.14)$$

Note that the steady state of (13.14) is (13.12), as expected.

We now linearize around the steady state,  $N_0$ , by looking for solutions of the form  $N(t) = N_0(1 + \epsilon e^{\lambda t})$ , where  $\epsilon \ll 1$ . Substituting this form into (13.14) and ignoring all terms of  $O(\epsilon^2)$  gives

$$\lambda + F'(N_0)e^{-\lambda(d+X)}e^{-\beta X} - F'(N_0)e^{-\lambda d} = -\beta, \quad (13.15)$$

from which it follows that

$$F'(N_0)e^{-\lambda d} \frac{1 - e^{-(\lambda+\beta)X}}{\lambda + \beta} = 1. \quad (13.16)$$

The roots  $\lambda$  of this equation determine the stability of the linearized solution. If all the roots have negative real part, then the solution is stable, whereas if there are roots with positive real part, the steady solution is unstable. For the remainder of this discussion, we take  $\beta = 0$ . This implies that all cells die at exactly age  $X$ . A different simplification, taking  $X \rightarrow \infty$ , leads to a delay differential equation that is discussed in Chapter 14 (see also Exercise 4).

In the limit  $\beta \rightarrow 0$ , the characteristic equation (13.16) is

$$F'(N_0)(e^{-\lambda d} - e^{-\lambda(d+X)}) = \lambda. \quad (13.17)$$

Since  $F'(N_0) < 0$ , there are no positive real roots. (The root at  $\lambda = 0$  is spurious.)

There is possibly one negative real root; all other roots are complex. It follows that even if the steady solution is stable, the return to steady state is oscillatory rather than monotone. Thus, following rapid disruptions of blood cell population, such as traumatic blood loss or transfusion, or a vacation at a high-altitude ski resort, the blood cell population will oscillate about its steady state.

The only possible way to have a root with positive real part is if it is complex. Furthermore, a transition from stable to unstable can occur only if a complex root changes the sign of its real part, leading to a Hopf bifurcation. If a Hopf bifurcation occurs, it does so with  $\lambda = i\omega$ . We substitute  $\lambda = i\omega$  into (13.17) and separate this into

its real and imaginary parts to obtain

$$F'(N_0)(\cos(\omega d) - \cos(\omega(d+X))) = 0, \quad (13.18)$$

$$F'(N_0)(\sin(\omega d) - \sin(\omega(d+X))) = -\omega. \quad (13.19)$$

There are two ways to solve (13.18). Because cosine is symmetric about any multiple of  $\pi$ , we can take  $n\pi - \omega d = n\pi + \omega(d+X)$ , or  $\omega(2d+X) = 2n\pi$ , for any positive integer  $n$ . Because cosine is  $2\pi$ -periodic, we could also take  $\omega X = 2n\pi$ ; however, since sine is also  $2\pi$ -periodic, this fails to give a solution of (13.19). With  $\omega(2d+X) = 2n\pi$ , (13.19) becomes

$$2dF'(N_0)\sin(\omega d) = -\omega d, \quad (13.20)$$

or

$$2dF'(N_0) = -\frac{2n\pi}{2 + \frac{X}{d}} \frac{1}{\sin\left(\frac{2n\pi}{2 + \frac{X}{d}}\right)}. \quad (13.21)$$

Finally, we use that  $F(N_0) = N_0/X$  to write

$$\frac{N_0 F'(N_0)}{F(N_0)} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{X}{d} \frac{2n\pi}{2 + \frac{X}{d}} \frac{1}{\sin\left(\frac{2n\pi}{2 + \frac{X}{d}}\right)}. \quad (13.22)$$

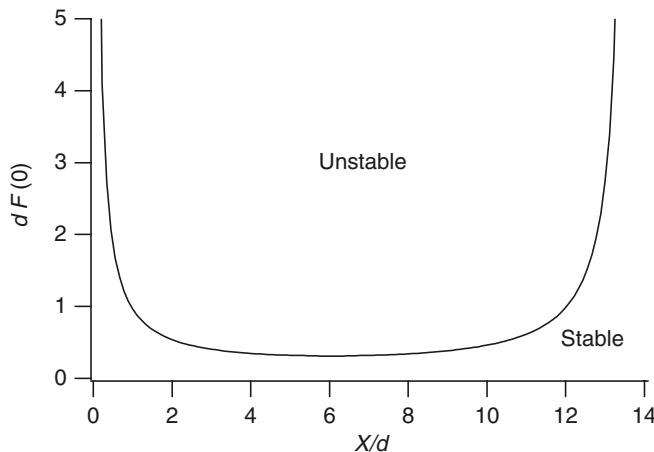
For each integer  $n$ , this equation defines a relationship between  $N_0$  and  $X/d$  at which there is a change of stability and thus a Hopf bifurcation. If we take  $F$  to be of the special form

$$F(x) = \frac{A}{1+x^p}, \quad (13.23)$$

we can use (13.12) (in the limit  $\beta \rightarrow 0$ ) and (13.22) to find an analytic relationship between  $dA (= dF(0))$  and  $X/d$  at which Hopf bifurcations occur (see Exercise 2). Shown in Fig. 13.6 is this curve for  $n = 1$  and  $p = 7$ . The case  $n = 1$  is the only curve of interest, since it is the first instability. That is, the steady-state solution is unstable for all the critical stability curves with  $n > 1$ , and so these curves do not lead to physically relevant bifurcations.

The implications of this calculation are interesting. If the nondimensional parameters  $X/d$  and  $dF(0)$  are such that they lie above the curve in Fig. 13.6, then the steady solution is unstable, and a periodic or oscillatory solution is likely (but since we do not know the direction of bifurcation, this is not guaranteed). On the other hand, if these parameters lie below or to the far right of this curve, the steady solution is stable.

From this we learn that there are three mechanisms by which cell production can be destabilized, and these are by changing the maximal production rate  $F(0)$ , the expected lifetime  $X$ , or the production delay  $d$ . If  $X/d$  is sufficiently large (greater than approximately 14 for these parameter values), the system cannot be destabilized. However, if  $X/d$  is small enough, increasing  $F(0)$  is destabilizing. Increasing  $d$  is also destabilizing. If  $F(0)$  and  $X$  are held fixed, then changing  $d$  moves  $y = dF(0)$  and  $x = X/d$  along



**Figure 13.6** Critical stability curve (Hopf bifurcation curve) for cell growth.

the hyperbola  $yx = \text{constant}$ . Thus, decreasing  $d$  is stabilizing, since it increases  $X/d$ , moving it out of and away from the unstable region.

For normal humans, with  $d = 5$  days and  $X = 120$  days, there is no instability, since  $X/d = 24$ . However, any mechanism that substantially shortens  $X$  can have a destabilizing effect and can result in oscillatory production of blood cells (Exercise 3). Near the bifurcation, the period of oscillation is  $T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}$ , where  $\omega(2d + X) = 2\pi$ , so that

$$T = 2d + X. \quad (13.24)$$

Thus, for example, a disorder that halves the normal lifetime of blood cells to  $X = 60$  days should result in oscillatory blood cell production with a period on the order of 70 days.

### 13.2.3 Peripheral or Local Control?

Models of periodic hematopoietic disorders typically fall into one of two classes. Models in the first class rely on the observation that in certain disorders, many of the blood cell types show oscillatory behavior, and thus the disease is modeled as generated by local regulation of the stem cell dynamics (Fig. 13.2). In this scenario, the progenitors of each of the cell types have periodic input from the stem cells, and thus the numbers of terminally differentiated cells have the potential to oscillate (although they are not required to). Mackey (1978) and Milton and Mackey (1989) are models of this type.

The other type of model (Morley, 1979; Wichmann et al., 1988; Schmitz et al., 1990) explains the oscillations as the result of instability in the peripheral control feedback (governed by, for example, erythropoietin, or G-CSF, via the cell population; see Fig. 13.2). The model presented in the previous section is of this type.

However, a detailed analysis of peripheral control models suggests that such models, irrespective of the specific mechanisms assumed, are less likely to be an explanation for the observed oscillations (Hearn et al., 1998; Mackey et al., 2003).

To illustrate a peripheral control model, we let  $x$  be the density of neutrophils (in number of cells per microliter), let  $\alpha$  be their death rate, and let  $\mathcal{M}$  denote their rate of production. We do not specify the exact form of  $\mathcal{M}$  but use only its qualitative properties. We assume that  $\mathcal{M}$  depends on a weighted average of  $x$ , delayed by  $\tau_m$ . Thus,

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -\alpha x + \mathcal{M}(\tilde{x}(t - \tau_m)), \quad (13.25)$$

where  $\tau_m$  is the minimal maturation delay, and

$$\tilde{x}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(s)g(t-s)ds \quad (13.26)$$

is the convolution of  $x$  with weighting function  $g$ . A typical choice of  $g$  is the gamma distribution,

$$g(\tau) = \begin{cases} 0, & \tau \leq 0, \\ \frac{a^{k+1}}{\Gamma(k+1)} \tau^k e^{-a\tau}, & \tau > 0. \end{cases} \quad (13.27)$$

This gives a good fit to experimental data on the distribution of maturation times, and can be further motivated by the fact that, if  $k$  is an integer,  $g$  is the solution of a  $k$ th order linear filter (see Exercise 7). For example, if  $k = 0$ , then  $\tilde{x}$  satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{d\tilde{x}}{dt} = x(t) - a\tilde{x}, \quad (13.28)$$

so that  $\tilde{x}$  can be thought of as a substance that is produced at a rate proportional to  $x$  with a natural decay rate  $a$ .

The only additional assumption is that  $\mathcal{M}$  is a monotonically nonincreasing function of  $\tilde{x}$ , so that there is negative feedback.

Letting  $x^*$  denote the steady-state solution, we see that

$$\alpha x^* = \mathcal{M}(x^*), \quad (13.29)$$

which, since  $\mathcal{M}$  is monotonically decreasing, has a unique solution. We are interested in the stability of this solution, to determine whether it can be unstable, giving rise to oscillatory solutions.

For convenience, let  $\mu = \mathcal{M}'(x^*) < 0$  and let  $u = x - x^*$ . Then, the linearization of (13.25) is

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -\alpha u + \mu \int_{-\infty}^{t-\tau_m} u(s)g(t-s-\tau_m)ds. \quad (13.30)$$

Looking for solutions of the form  $u = e^{\lambda t}$  gives

$$\lambda + \alpha = \mu \left( \frac{a}{\lambda + a} \right)^{k+1} e^{-\lambda \tau_m}. \quad (13.31)$$

Solutions of this equation with the real part of  $\lambda$  greater than zero correspond to unstable steady states. It is left to Exercise 9 to show that, if (13.31) has a real solution, it must be negative and lie between  $-a$  and  $-\alpha$ .

Since the only possibility for instability is when  $\lambda$  is complex, we set  $\lambda = i\omega$  to find a possible boundary between stability and instability. This gives

$$i\omega + \alpha = \mu \left( \frac{a}{i\omega + a} \right)^{k+1} e^{-i\omega\tau_m}. \quad (13.32)$$

Our goal is to find a curve in the  $\alpha, \mu$  plane that is a possible stability boundary. We do this by separating (13.32) into real and imaginary parts and finding parametric expressions for  $\alpha(\omega)$  and  $\mu(\omega)$ .

We begin by setting

$$e^{i\theta} = \frac{a + i\omega}{\sqrt{a^2 + \omega^2}}, \quad (13.33)$$

in which case (13.32) becomes

$$(\alpha + i\omega)(\cos[(k+1)\theta] + i \sin[(k+1)\theta]) = \mu \cos^{k+1} \theta e^{-i\omega\tau_m}. \quad (13.34)$$

Next, equate the real and imaginary parts to get the two equations

$$\alpha - \mu R \cos \omega \tau_m = \omega \tan[(k+1)\theta], \quad (13.35)$$

$$\alpha \tan[(k+1)\theta] = -\mu R \sin \omega \tau_m - \omega, \quad (13.36)$$

where

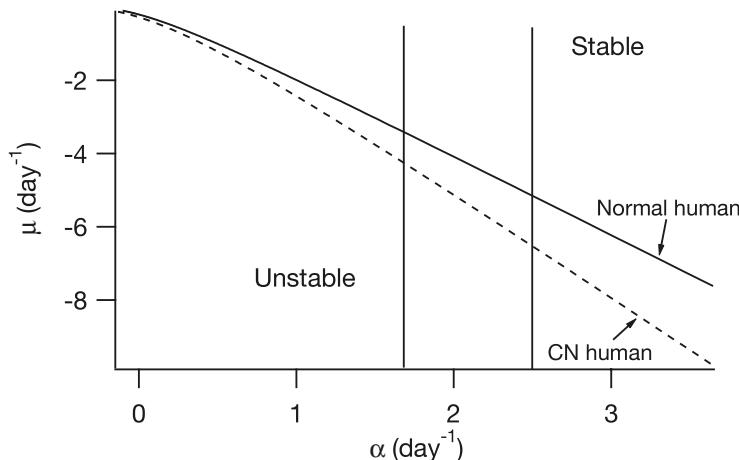
$$R = \frac{\cos^{k+1} \theta}{\cos[(k+1)\theta]}. \quad (13.37)$$

Finally, solving (13.35) and (13.36) to get  $\alpha$  and  $\mu$  as functions of  $\omega$  gives

$$\alpha(\omega) = \frac{-\omega}{\tan[\omega\tau_m + (k+1)\tan^{-1}(\omega/a)]}, \quad (13.38)$$

$$\mu(\omega) = \frac{-\omega}{\cos^{k+1}[\tan^{-1}(\omega/a)] \sin[\omega\tau_m + (k+1)\tan^{-1}(\omega/a)]}. \quad (13.39)$$

Plots of  $\mu$  against  $\alpha$  are shown in Fig. 13.7, the solid curve using the parameters for normal humans, and the dashed curve using the parameters for humans with cyclical neutropenia, i.e., CN humans. Typical values for  $\alpha$  are between the two vertical lines. The parameter values for the two different cases were estimated from experimental data on cellular maturation times (Hearn et al., 1998). In CN humans, the average maturation delay decreases from around 9.7 days to around 7.6 days, while the minimal maturation delay,  $\tau_m$ , decreases also, from around 3.8 days to 1.2 days. The variance of the maturation delay also decreases, from around 16 day<sup>2</sup> to around 12 day<sup>2</sup>. These changes in the maturation delay can be described (after some work) by the two sets of parameters given in the caption to Fig. 13.7.



**Figure 13.7** Curves that divide the  $\mu$ - $\alpha$  plane into regions of stability and instability. Parameter values below the curves give an unstable steady state, while parameter values above the curves give a stable steady state. The two vertical lines delineate the region of reasonable values for  $\alpha$ . Parameter values are  $\tau_m = 3.8$ ,  $a = 0.36$ ,  $k + 1 = 3.15$  (for normal humans) and  $\tau_m = 1.2$ ,  $a = 0.53$ ,  $k + 1 = 4.38$  (for CN humans).

The stability diagram in Fig. 13.7 has two interesting consequences. First, if the steady state is stable for a normal human, it is also stable for a human with cyclical neutropenia with the same values of  $\mu$  and  $\alpha$ . Thus, changes to the parameters  $\tau$ ,  $a$ , and  $m$  appropriate for cyclical neutropenia are not sufficient to generate instability. Furthermore, it is known experimentally that  $\alpha$  is the same in both normal and CN humans. Hence, the only way by which the stable state can become unstable in CN humans is by a decrease in  $\mu$ , i.e., a decrease in the steady-state slope of the production function.

Second, consider the period of the oscillations that arise at the Hopf bifurcations. Recall that, on the curves in Fig. 13.7, the solution has the form  $e^{i\omega t}$ , and thus has period  $2\pi/\omega$ . To get reasonable values of  $\alpha$  (i.e., between the two vertical lines in Fig. 13.7),  $\omega$  must be between approximately 0.44 and 0.46. Thus, there is only a narrow window of values for  $\omega$  that give acceptable behavior, and consequently the period of the resulting oscillations is restricted to be between approximately 14.3 and 13.7 days. Since this range is considerably lower than the period of the observed oscillations, which ranges from 19 to 30 days, it suggests that this model does not capture the correct oscillatory mechanism, and thus that CN oscillations are not caused by instabilities in the peripheral control system.

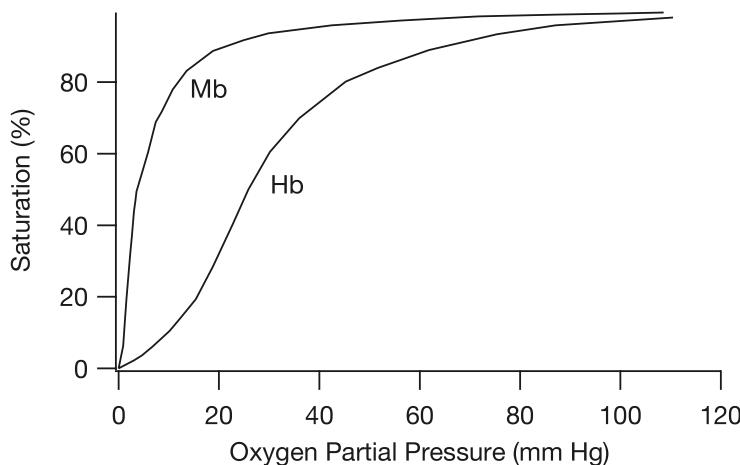
This conclusion from the linear stability analysis is supported by numerical solution of the model in the nonlinear regime (Hearn et al., 1998), which shows that the period of the oscillation can be made larger only with difficulty, and at the price of having solutions which look quite different from those observed experimentally.

## 13.3 Erythrocytes

Erythrocytes (red blood cells) are small biconcave disks measuring about  $8 \mu\text{m}$  in diameter. They are flexible, allowing them to change shape and to pass without breaking through blood vessels with diameters as small as  $3 \mu\text{m}$ . Their function is the transport of oxygen from the lungs to the rest of the body, and they accomplish this with the help of a large protein molecule called *hemoglobin*, which binds oxygen in the lungs, later releasing it in tissue. Hemoglobin is the principal protein constituent of mature erythrocytes. A similar protein, *myoglobin*, is used to store and transport oxygen within muscle; mammals that dive deeply, such as whales and seals, have skeletal muscle that is especially rich in myoglobin.

### 13.3.1 Myoglobin and Hemoglobin

The binding of oxygen with myoglobin and hemoglobin serves as an excellent example of relatively simple chemical reactions that are of fundamental importance in blood physiology. We get some understanding of this process by examining the experimentally determined saturation function for hemoglobin and myoglobin as a function of the partial pressure of oxygen. For myoglobin the saturation curve is much like a standard Michaelis–Menten saturation function, while for hemoglobin it is sigmoidal-shaped (Fig. 13.8). From these curves we see that when the partial pressure of oxygen is at 100 mm Hg (about what it is in the lungs), hemoglobin is 97% saturated. This amount is affected only slightly by small changes in oxygen partial pressure, because at this level the saturation curve is relatively flat. In veins or tissue, however, where the partial pressure

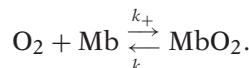


**Figure 13.8** Uptake of oxygen by myoglobin and hemoglobin. (Rubinow, 1975, Fig. 2.13, p. 82, taken from Changeux, 1965.)

of oxygen is about 40 mm Hg, the saturation is about 75%. Furthermore, because this is on a steep portion of the saturation curve, if the metabolic demand for oxygen should decrease the oxygen pressure to, say, 20 mm Hg, then hemoglobin gives up its oxygen readily, reducing its saturation to about 35%. At this value of oxygen partial pressure the saturation of myoglobin is at 90%. Thus, if the tissue is muscle, oxygen is readily transferred from hemoglobin to myoglobin, since the affinity of myoglobin for oxygen is greater than that of hemoglobin.

These saturation curves are of fundamental importance to blood chemistry, so it is of interest to understand why the saturation curves of the two are as they are. We can derive models of these saturation curves from the underlying chemistry (see Section 1.4.4 on cooperativity). Myoglobin consists of a polypeptide chain and a disc-shaped molecular ring called a *heme group*, which is the active center of myoglobin. At the center of the heme group is an iron atom, which can bind with oxygen, forming oxymyoglobin. Hemoglobin consists of four such polypeptide chains (called *globin*) and four heme groups, allowing the binding of four oxygen molecules. When bound with oxygen, the iron atoms in hemoglobin and myoglobin give them their red color. Myoglobin content accounts for the difference in color between red meat such as beef, and white meat such as chicken.

A simple reaction scheme describing the binding of oxygen with myoglobin is



At equilibrium  $k_+[\text{Mb}][\text{O}_2] = k_-[\text{MbO}_2]$ , so that the percentage of occupied sites is

$$Y = \frac{[\text{MbO}_2]}{[\text{Mb}] + [\text{MbO}_2]} = \frac{[\text{O}_2]}{K + [\text{O}_2]}, \quad (13.40)$$

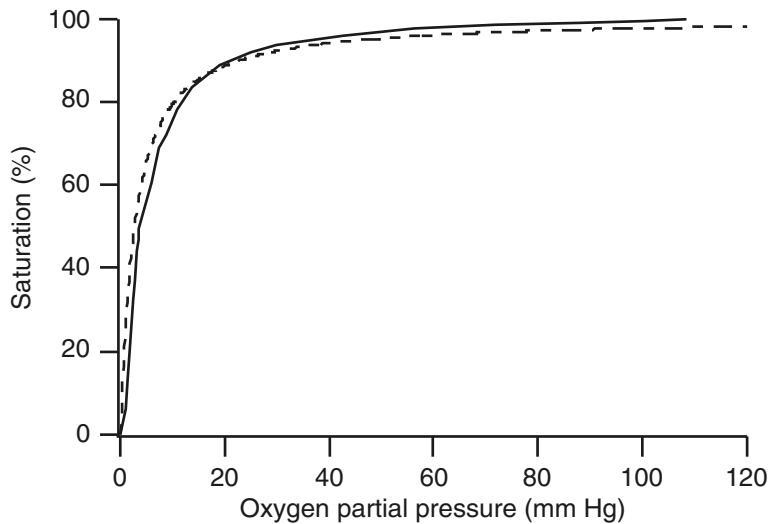
where  $K = k_-/k_+$ .

To compare the function (13.40) with the saturation curve for myoglobin in Fig. 13.8, we must relate the oxygen concentration to the oxygen partial pressure via  $[\text{O}_2] = \sigma P_{\text{O}_2}$ . Then, (13.40) becomes

$$Y = \frac{P_{\text{O}_2}}{K/\sigma + P_{\text{O}_2}} = \frac{P_{\text{O}_2}}{K_p + P_{\text{O}_2}}, \quad (13.41)$$

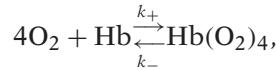
and we get a good fit of the myoglobin uptake curve in Fig. 13.8 with  $K_p = 2.6$  mm Hg. Notice that the equilibrium constant  $K_p$  is in units of pressure rather than concentration, as is more typical. The equilibrium constant  $K$  is related to  $K_p$  through  $K = \sigma K_p$ . For the myoglobin saturation curve  $K = 3.7 \mu\text{M}$ ; however, because it is typical to describe concentrations of dissolved gases in units of pressure, it is also typical to write the equilibrium constant  $K$  in these units as  $K = 2.6\sigma$  mm Hg. A comparison of the curve (13.41) with the data is shown in Fig. 13.9.

The primary reason that the saturation curve for hemoglobin is significantly different from that for myoglobin is that it has four oxygen binding sites instead of one.



**Figure 13.9** Comparison of myoglobin saturation curve (solid) with the curve (13.41) (dashed) with  $K_P = 2.6 \text{ mm Hg}$ .

A simple kinetic scheme for the formation of oxyhemoglobin is



with the corresponding differential equation

$$\frac{d[\text{Hb}]}{dt} = k_-[\text{Hb}(\text{O}_2)_4] - k_+[\text{Hb}][\text{O}_2]^4. \quad (13.42)$$

At steady state, the percentage of available hemoglobin sites that are bound to oxygen is

$$Y = \frac{[\text{Hb}(\text{O}_2)_4]}{[\text{Hb}(\text{O}_2)_4] + [\text{Hb}]} = \frac{[\text{O}_2]^4}{[\text{O}_2]^4 + K^4}, \quad (13.43)$$

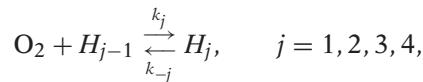
where  $K^4 = k_-/k_+$ . We use the half-saturation level from the hemoglobin uptake curve in Fig. 13.8 to estimate  $K$  as  $K = 26\sigma \text{ mm Hg}$ .

While (13.43) (shown as a short dashed curve in Fig. 13.10) reproduces some features of the uptake curve that are qualitatively correct, it is not quantitatively accurate. In fact, one can achieve a much better fit of the data with the Hill equation

$$Y = \frac{[\text{O}_2]^n}{[\text{O}_2]^n + K^n}, \quad (13.44)$$

with  $n = 2.5$  and  $K = 26\sigma \text{ mm Hg}$ . However, there is no adequate theoretical basis for such a model.

A better model keeps track of the elementary reactions involved in the binding process, and is given by



where  $H_j = \text{Hb(O}_2\text{)}_j$ . The steady state for this reaction is attained at

$$[H_j] = \frac{k_{+j}}{k_{-j}} [H_{j-1}] [\text{O}_2] = \frac{[H_{j-1}] [\text{O}_2]}{K_j}, \quad (13.45)$$

and the saturation function is

$$Y = \frac{\sum_{j=0}^4 j H_j}{4 \sum_{j=0}^4 H_j}. \quad (13.46)$$

Substituting (13.45) into (13.46) we obtain the saturation function

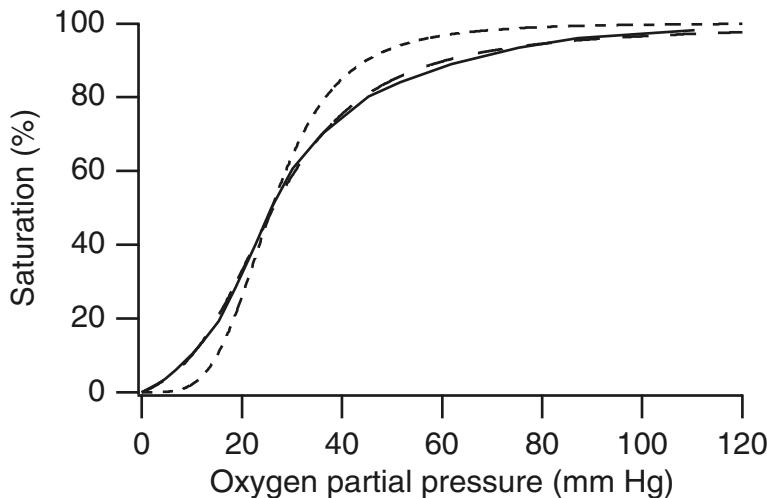
$$Y = \frac{\sum_{j=0}^4 j \alpha_j [\text{O}_2]^j}{4 \sum_{j=0}^4 \alpha_j [\text{O}_2]^j}, \quad (13.47)$$

where  $\alpha_j = \prod_{i=1}^j K_i^{-1}$ ,  $K_j = k_{-j}/k_{+j}$ ,  $\alpha_0 = 1$ .

One can fit the saturation function (13.47) to the hemoglobin uptake curve shown in Fig. 13.8, with the result  $K_1 = 45.9$ ,  $K_2 = 23.9$ ,  $K_3 = 243.1$ ,  $K_4 = 1.52\sigma$  mm Hg (Roughton et al., 1972). The striking feature of these numbers is that  $K_4$  is much smaller than  $K_1$ ,  $K_2$ , or  $K_3$ , indicating that there is apparently a greatly enhanced affinity of oxygen for hemoglobin if three oxygen molecules are already bound to it. Hemoglobin prefers to be “filled up” with oxygen. The mechanism for this positive cooperativity is not completely understood. (If the binding sites were independent, then  $K_1$  would be the smallest and  $K_4$  would be the largest equilibrium constant; see Exercise 10 and Section 1.4.4.)

Notice that the affinity of oxygen for myoglobin is greater than for any of the binding sites of hemoglobin. In Fig. 13.10 is shown a comparison between the data and the approximate curves (13.43) and (13.47). The Hill equation fit (13.44) is not shown because it is nearly identical to (13.47).

The structure and function of hemoglobin has been intensively studied for over 100 years, and has motivated some of the most important biophysical models of cooperativity (Eaton et al., 1999). Some of the earliest studies were those of Christian Bohr (father of the physicist Niels Bohr) who measured the sigmoidal binding curve of hemoglobin (Bohr et al., 1904), and who also discovered that carbon dioxide lowers the oxygen binding affinity (the Bohr effect). Some years later, the physiologist Adair (Adair, 1925) discovered that hemoglobin contains four binding sites. However, the connection between the sigmoidal binding curve and the number of binding sites was not made explicit until the work of Linus Pauling (1935), who suggested that the binding of oxygen to one binding site, or subunit, could increase the binding affinity to the neighboring subunits, thus leading to a sigmoidal binding curve. The Pauling model



**Figure 13.10** Comparison of hemoglobin saturation curve (solid) with the curves (13.43) (short dashed) and (13.47) (long dashed).

was later extended by Koshland, Nemethy and Filmer (1966; Koshland and Hamadani, 2002), giving the so-called KNF, or *sequential*, model.

However, a different model of cooperativity was proposed by Monod, Wyman, and Changeux (1965). The experimental work of Perutz et al. (1964) showed that binding of oxygen resulted in a conformational change in the hemoglobin  $\beta$  subunits, which moved closer together. In the Monod–Wyman–Changeux (MWC) model, hemoglobin is assumed to exist in two structural states, R (relaxed) and T (tense). The R structure has a high affinity for oxygen, while the T structure has a low affinity. As oxygen pressure increases, a greater proportion of hemoglobin exists in the R state, and thus the overall affinity for oxygen increases as oxygen is bound. The major difference from the KNF model is that, in the MWC model, all the subunits switch between the R and T states simultaneously, and are thus always in the same state. However, in the KNF model, the binding of oxygen to one subunit causes a change in the binding affinity of the neighboring subunits, rather than a change in the state of every subunit. The construction of MWC models is discussed in detail in Chapter 1 (also see Exercise 12).

Perutz (1970) proposed a specific physical mechanism that could explain the assumptions used in the MWC model. He proposed that the subunits are connected by salt bridges when hemoglobin is in the T structure. Binding of an oxygen to one subunit could break a salt bridge and destabilize the structure, thus biasing hemoglobin to the R state. The energy required to break the salt bridge upon oxygen binding serves to decrease the affinity of the T structure for oxygen.

Although many refinements of the basic MWC mechanism have been constructed, our understanding of the basic mechanism remains relatively unchanged today.

However, there is also experimental evidence for a sequential binding model of KNF type (Koshland and Hamadani, 2002), and the actual mechanism probably lies somewhere between these two extremes.

### 13.3.2 Hemoglobin Saturation Shifts

There are a number of factors that affect the binding of oxygen to hemoglobin, the most important of which is the hydrogen ion, which is an allosteric inhibitor of oxygen binding (Chapter 1). As is discussed in Chapter 14, the interactions between oxygen concentration and carbon dioxide concentration (which indirectly changes the hydrogen ion concentration) are important for transport of both oxygen and carbon dioxide.

Carbon monoxide combines with hemoglobin at the same binding site as oxygen (and is a competitive inhibitor), but with an affinity more than 200 times greater. Therefore the carbon monoxide saturation curve is almost identical to the oxygen saturation curve, except that the abscissa is scaled by a factor of about 200. At a carbon monoxide partial pressure of 0.5 mm Hg, and in the absence of oxygen, hemoglobin is 97% saturated with carbon monoxide. If oxygen is present at atmospheric concentrations, then it takes a carbon monoxide partial pressure of only 0.7 mm Hg (about 0.1 percent) to cause oxygen starvation in the tissues (Chapter 14).

*Fetal hemoglobin*, a different type of hemoglobin found in the fetus, has a considerable leftward shift for its oxygen saturation curve. This allows fetal blood to carry as much as 30% more oxygen at low oxygen partial pressures than can adult hemoglobin. This is important since the oxygen partial pressure in the fetus is always low. The left-shift of the fetal hemoglobin saturation curve is also important for the transfer of oxygen from mother to fetus.

Because it is important in the next section, here we construct a simple model of the allosteric inhibition by hydrogen ions of oxygen binding to hemoglobin. As illustrated in Fig. 13.11, we assume that the hemoglobin molecule can exist in four different states: with  $H^+$  bound (concentration  $Z$ ), with  $O_2$  bound (concentration  $Y$ ), with neither bound (concentration  $X$ ), or with both bound (concentration  $W$ ). This is, of course, an extreme simplification, as it ignores the cooperative nature of oxygen binding discussed in the previous section and in Chapter 1, but nevertheless the results are qualitatively correct.

Assuming that each reaction is at equilibrium, we find

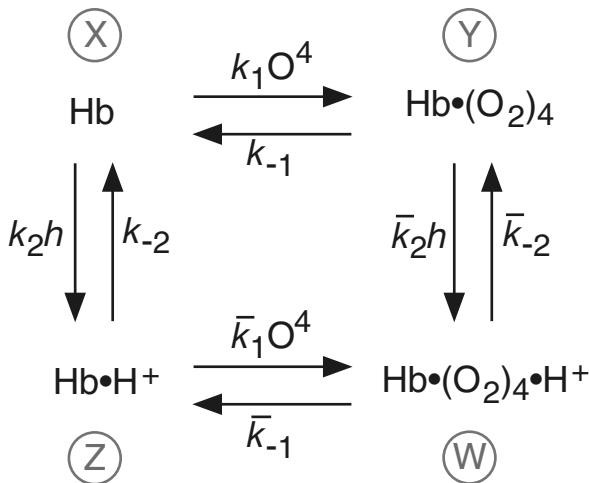
$$O^4X = K_1Y, \quad (13.48)$$

$$hX = K_2Z, \quad (13.49)$$

$$O^4Z = \bar{K}_1W, \quad (13.50)$$

$$X + Y + Z + W = T_{\text{Hb}}, \quad (13.51)$$

where  $h$  denotes  $[H^+]$ ,  $O$  denotes  $[O_2]$ ,  $T_{\text{Hb}}$  denotes the total concentration of hemoglobin,  $K_1 = k_{-1}/k_1$  and similarly for  $K_2$ ,  $\bar{K}_1$  and  $\bar{K}_2$  (which is needed below).



**Figure 13.11** Binding diagram for the allosteric binding of hydrogen ions and oxygen to hemoglobin. We assume a single hydrogen ion binding site, and a simplified mechanism for oxygen binding. Hb denotes hemoglobin.

Solving these four equations we find

$$Y + W = \frac{\text{O}^4 T_{\text{Hb}}}{\phi(h) + \text{O}^4}, \quad (13.52)$$

where

$$\phi(h) = \frac{K_1 \bar{K}_1 (K_2 + h)}{K_2 \bar{K}_1 + h K_1}. \quad (13.53)$$

We are interested in determining  $Y + W$  as a function of  $O$ , since  $Y + W$  is the total concentration of hemoglobin with oxygen bound, and thus plotting  $Y + W$  as a function of  $O$  gives the oxygen saturation curve.

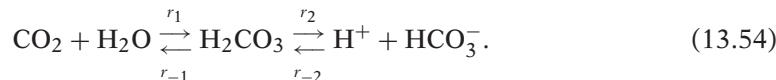
It is easily seen from (13.52) that  $h$  does not change the maximal saturation, although it shifts the mid-point of the curve. Since hydrogen ions are an allosteric inhibitor of oxygen binding, we assume that  $\bar{K}_1 > K_1$ . Note that, in this case,  $\phi(h)$  is an increasing function of  $h$ , and thus increasing  $h$  shifts the saturation curve to the right, as expected.

Before we can discuss the importance of the allosteric effect of hydrogen ions on oxygen binding it is necessary to discuss the mechanism of carbon dioxide transport.

### 13.3.3 Carbon Dioxide Transport

While oxygen is taken up in the lungs and transported to the tissues, carbon dioxide must be transported in the reverse direction from the tissues to the lungs for removal from the body. In the blood,  $\text{CO}_2$  is transported in three main forms. In venous blood a significant amount (about 6%) is present as dissolved  $\text{CO}_2$ . A slightly greater amount (about 7%) is bound to the globin part of hemoglobin as carbamino compounds, but most  $\text{CO}_2$  (87%) is present in the form of bicarbonate ions.

In the tissues  $\text{CO}_2$  diffuses down its concentration gradient into the plasma and into the red blood cells. In both plasma and red blood cells it combines with water to form carbonic acid ( $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ ), which then dissociates quickly into hydrogen ions and bicarbonate ions. Thus,



This reaction proceeds slowly in the plasma but much more rapidly in the red blood cells because of the presence there of the enzyme *carbonic anhydrase*, which increases the speed of  $\text{CO}_2$  hydration by more than a thousand times. The  $\text{H}^+$  formed by the dissociation of carbonic acid binds to the globin part of hemoglobin, and the bicarbonate ion diffuses into the plasma in exchange for  $\text{Cl}^-$ .

In the lungs the reaction is reversed, as  $\text{CO}_2$  diffuses down its concentration gradient to be excreted in the alveolar air and then the expired air. It is important to emphasize that the direction of the carbonic anhydrase reaction (13.54) is determined by the local concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$ . In the tissues,  $[\text{CO}_2]$  is high, which drives reaction (13.54) from left to right, thus storing  $\text{CO}_2$  in the blood. In the lungs,  $[\text{CO}_2]$  is low, driving the reaction from right to left, thus removing  $\text{CO}_2$  from the blood. Of course, carbonic anhydrase speeds up the reaction in both directions; without this increase in speed not enough  $\text{CO}_2$  can be stored in the blood to remove it from the body fast enough.

The importance of the allosteric effect of  $\text{H}^+$  on oxygen binding to hemoglobin is now apparent. In the tissues, because of the high local  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration, the hydration of  $\text{CO}_2$  causes an increase in the local concentration of  $\text{H}^+$  (i.e., the blood pH falls slightly, from about 7.4 to about 7.35), which in turn results in a decreased affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen, thus increasing oxygen release to the tissues. In the lungs, the reverse occurs; the low local  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration causes a decrease in  $\text{H}^+$  concentration which results in an increase in hemoglobin oxygen affinity, and thus increased oxygen uptake. This effect of  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration on oxygen transport (mediated by the carbonic anhydrase reaction and hydrogen ions), is known as the *Bohr effect*.

It is interesting to note that, from the principle of detailed balance applied to the reaction scheme shown in Fig. 13.11 (i.e., from consistency of the four equilibrium equations) it must be that

$$\frac{K_1}{\bar{K}_1} = \frac{K_2}{\bar{K}_2}. \quad (13.55)$$

It follows that, if  $\bar{K}_1 > K_1$  it must also be that  $\bar{K}_2 > K_2$ . In other words, if  $\text{H}^+$  is an allosteric inhibitor of oxygen binding, then oxygen must also be an allosteric inhibitor of  $\text{H}^+$  binding. Hence, as  $\text{CO}_2$  influences oxygen transport, so too oxygen affects  $\text{CO}_2$  transport. In the tissues, where  $[\text{O}_2]$  is low, binding of  $\text{H}^+$  to hemoglobin is enhanced. This lowers the local  $\text{H}^+$  concentration, thus driving the carbonic anhydrase reaction from left to right, and increasing  $\text{CO}_2$  storage. The reverse occurs at the lungs. The enhancement of  $\text{CO}_2$  transport by low levels of oxygen is called the *Haldane effect*. Note

that, according to the principle of detailed balance (at least in this simple model) the Bohr effect implies the Haldane effect, and vice versa.

To construct a mathematical model of  $\text{CO}_2$  transport, we assume that the bicarbonate-carbon dioxide reaction is in steady state so that

$$[\text{CO}_2] = R_1 R_2 [\text{H}^+] [\text{HCO}_3^-], \quad (13.56)$$

where  $R_1 = r_{-1}/r_1$  and  $R_2 = r_{-2}/r_2$ .

Carbon dioxide enters this system from the tissues and leaves at the lungs. When it does so, bicarbonate is produced or removed. However, since the carbonic anhydrase reaction produces exactly one hydrogen ion for each bicarbonate ion it produces, and since these hydrogen ions must either be free, or bound to hemoglobin, it follows that

$$\Delta[\text{HCO}_3^-] = \Delta h + \Delta Z + \Delta W, \quad (13.57)$$

where  $\Delta$  denotes the change in concentration. Hence,

$$[\text{HCO}_3^-] = h + Z + W - T_0, \quad (13.58)$$

where  $T_0 = h_0 + Z_0 + W_0 - [\text{HCO}_3^-]_0$  is some reference level. In reality each hemoglobin molecule can bind many hydrogen ions, and so the conservation equation should be

$$[\text{HCO}_3^-] = h + n(Z + W) - T_0, \quad (13.59)$$

where  $n$  can be as large as 10 or 20, and  $T_0 = h_0 + n(Z_0 + W_0) - [\text{HCO}_3^-]_0$ . The number  $n$  is important, because without it (if  $n = 0$ ), the pH fluctuates widely with changes in bicarbonate (Exercise 13a), whereas in normal blood, practically all the  $\text{H}^+$  produced by the carbonic anhydrase reaction is absorbed by hemoglobin. This demonstrates the importance of hemoglobin as a hydrogen ion buffer. Note that, to be consistent, the factor  $n$  should also be included in the model of hemoglobin. However, as this would greatly increase the complexity of the binding model without adding anything fundamentally new, we include  $n$  in the bicarbonate conservation equation, but not in the binding diagram. A more accurate model gives the same qualitative result.

In addition, the oxygen and carbon dioxide concentrations in arterial and venous blood are unknowns. Their precise values are set by the rate of gas exchange in the lungs and the tissues, the rate of metabolism, and depend to some extent on the properties of the carbonic anhydrase reaction, among other things. Thus, to be strictly correct, we should not treat them as constants, but solve for them as part of a more complicated model. We omit these complications here and treat  $O$  and  $[\text{CO}_2]$  as known constants, since our primary goal here is to find the other unknowns ( $X, Y, Z, W$  and  $h$ ) as functions of the gas concentrations.

We now have five equations

$$O^4 X = K_1 Y, \quad (13.60)$$

$$hX = K_2 Z, \quad (13.61)$$

$$O^4 Z = \bar{K}_1 W, \quad (13.62)$$

$$X + Y + Z + W = T_{\text{Hb}}, \quad (13.63)$$

$$[\text{CO}_2] = R_1 R_2 h [h + n(Z + W) - T_0], \quad (13.64)$$

to solve for the five unknowns. It is an easy matter to solve (13.60)–(13.63) for  $X, Y, Z$ , and  $W$  in terms of  $O^4, h$  and the other parameters, and substitute these into (13.64). This yields a single equation for  $[\text{CO}_2]$  as a function of  $O^4$  and  $h$ . This equation can be readily solved numerically for  $h$  as a function of  $[\text{CO}_2]$  and  $O^4$ , from which one can determine the total amounts of carbon dioxide and oxygen in all their forms. Solution of this equation is left for the exercises (Exercise 13).

The result of this calculation shows that the Bohr effect changes the arterial concentrations of carbon dioxide and oxygen only slightly, but it increases the venous  $\text{CO}_2$  and decreases the venous  $\text{O}_2$  substantially, giving an increase in the total amount of these that is transported.

As a final note, the most important system for controlling the extracellular acid-base balance is the bicarbonate buffer system. Extracellular fluid contains large amounts of bicarbonate ions, mostly as  $\text{Na}^+ \text{HCO}_3^-$ . Addition of excess  $\text{H}^+$  ions drives the carbonic anhydrase reaction to produce carbon dioxide; the additional  $\text{CO}_2$  produced can be removed at the lungs. Conversely, addition of a strong base and the consequent removal of  $\text{H}^+$  results in a lowering of  $[\text{CO}_2]$  and the production of additional  $\text{H}^+$ . Since the overall levels of bicarbonate and carbon dioxide are controlled by the kidneys and the lungs, respectively, this allows effective and precise control of the pH of extracellular fluid.

## 13.4 Leukocytes

The *leukocytes* (white blood cells) are the mobile units of the body's immune system. There are six types of white blood cells normally found in the blood. These are the *neutrophils*, *eosinophils*, *basophils*, *monocytes*, *lymphocytes*, and *natural killer cells* (see Table 13.1 and Fig. 13.1). The neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils are called *granulocytes*, or in clinical terminology, *polymorphonuclear* (PMN) cells, because they have a granular appearance and have nuclei with a wide variety of shapes (often shaped like a bent sausage). The normal adult human has about 7000 white blood cells per microliter of blood, approximately 62% of which are neutrophils and 30% of which are lymphocytes. The granulocytes and monocytes protect the body against invading organisms mainly by ingesting them, a process called *phagocytosis*.

### 13.4.1 Leukocyte Chemotaxis

Leukocytes crawl about in tissue by putting out pseudopodal extensions by which they adhere to the fibrous matrix of the tissue. In uniform chemical concentrations of chemical stimulus, their motion is that of a persistent random walk. At random times they undergo random changes in direction. The *persistence time*, the average time between changes of direction, is on the order of a few minutes, and the speed of migration is on the order of 2–20  $\mu\text{m}/\text{min}$ .

One important question is how leukocytes are able to find their bacterial targets. The answer is that they move preferentially in the direction of increasing chemoattractant gradients. Exactly how this is accomplished, how this should be modeled, and how well the model represents this behavior is the topic of this section.

Here we derive a simple model of directed motion in a one-dimensional medium (Tranquillo and Lauffenberger, 1987). We assume that the population of cells,  $c$ , can be subdivided into two subpopulations,  $c = n^+ + n^-$ , where superscripts + and – denote right-moving and left-moving cells, respectively. If  $v^+$  is the velocity of right-moving cells, and  $v^-$  is the velocity of left-moving cells, then the flux of cells is given by

$$J_c = v^+n^+ - v^-n^-. \quad (13.65)$$

We expect that the cell velocity should be a function only of local conditions, so that  $v^+ = v^- = v$ . In general,  $v$  is a function of  $x$  and  $t$ . Now we write conservation equations for the directional cell species,

$$\frac{\partial n^+}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial(vn^+)}{\partial x} + p^-n^- - p^+n^+, \quad (13.66)$$

$$\frac{\partial n^-}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial(vn^-)}{\partial x} + p^+n^+ - p^-n^-, \quad (13.67)$$

where  $p^+$  is the probability per unit time that a right-moving cell changes direction to become a left-moving cell, and  $p^-$  is the probability that a left-moving cell becomes a right-moving cell. These probabilities are also known as *turning rates*.

An equation governing the cell flux  $J_c$  is found by differentiating (13.65) and using (13.66) and (13.67), yielding

$$\frac{\partial J_c}{\partial t} - \frac{J_c}{v} \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = -J_c(p^+ + p^-) - v \frac{\partial(vc)}{\partial x} - vc(p^+ - p^-). \quad (13.68)$$

The steady-state flux is found by setting all time derivatives equal to zero, from which we find that

$$J_c = -v^2 T_p \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} + v(p^- - p^+) T_p c - T_p v \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} c, \quad (13.69)$$

where  $T_p^{-1} = p^+ + p^-$ .

Now we define phenomenological population migration parameters  $\mu = T_p v^2$  as the *random motility coefficient* and  $V_c = T_p v(p^- - p^+)$  as the *chemotactic velocity*. Then

the equilibrium flux is

$$J_c = -\mu \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} + V_c c - T_p v \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} c. \quad (13.70)$$

Finally, the total cell density is governed by the equation

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial J_c}{\partial x}. \quad (13.71)$$

The movement of cells is governed by three terms in (13.70). The first term,  $-\mu \frac{\partial c}{\partial x}$ , represents purely random movement of cells, since it gives a diffusive term in (13.71). The second and third terms allow for directed cell movement, since they are proportional to  $c$ . The directed motion from the second term is due to a difference in the directional change probabilities, while the directed motion in the third term is due to variation in cell speed with spatial position. The second term is called *chemotaxis*, and the third term is *chemokinesis*.

The next problem is to determine the coefficients of these movement terms and in so doing to understand more about the sensory capabilities of the cells. It is known that cell speed can vary with stimulus concentration, yielding a chemokinetic effect, and changes in the direction of movements can be biased toward attractant concentration gradients, a chemotactic response. These responses are mediated by cell surface receptors for attractant molecules that can measure the attractant concentration and its spatial gradient.

There is no a priori theory for the dependence of cell speed on attractant concentration, so it must be measured experimentally. For example, with the tripeptide attractant formyl-norleucyl-leucyl-phenylalanine (FNLLP), the data show that leukocyte velocity is a linearly increasing function of the logarithm of concentration over the range of concentrations  $10^{-9}$  M to  $10^{-6}$  M, with velocity about 2–5  $\mu\text{m}/\text{min}$  (Zigmond et al., 1981).

Leukocytes determine the presence of an attractant when it binds to receptors on the leukocyte cell surface. When there is a spatial gradient of the attractant, there is also a spatial gradient in the concentration of bound receptors. The side of the cell that experiences a higher concentration of attractant will have a higher concentration of occupied receptors. It has been found experimentally that the fraction of leukocytes that move toward higher attractant concentrations is dependent on this gradient in receptor occupancy. The simplest reasonable expression (Zigmond, 1977) is

$$f = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{\chi_0 \frac{\partial N_b}{\partial x}}{1 + \chi_0 \frac{\partial N_b}{\partial x}} \right), \quad (13.72)$$

where  $f$  is the fraction of cells moving toward higher concentrations,  $\chi_0$  is the chemotactic sensitivity, and  $N_b$  is the number of bound cell receptors. Notice that  $N_b$  is a function of  $a$ , the concentration of chemoattractant, and  $a$  is a function of  $x$ , so the

spatial gradient of  $N_b$  is given by  $\frac{\partial N_b(a)}{\partial x} = \frac{dN_b}{da} \frac{\partial a}{\partial x}$ . For small gradients,

$$f \approx \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \chi_0 \frac{dN_b}{da} \frac{\partial a}{\partial x} \right), \quad (13.73)$$

while for large gradients,  $f \approx 1$ . Thus in small gradients, the fraction of cells moving toward higher concentrations is linearly proportional to the gradient, and this fraction approaches 1 as the gradient increases. From data for rabbit leukocytes responding to the peptide attractant formyl-methionyl-methionyl-methionine (FMMM) it is estimated that  $\chi_0 = 2 \times 10^{-5}$  cm/receptor.

In a uniform steady state (for which  $\frac{\partial n}{\partial x} = 0$ ),  $n^+ p^+ = n^- p^-$ , so that

$$f = \frac{n^+}{n^+ + n^-} = \left( 1 + \frac{p^+}{p^-} \right)^{-1}. \quad (13.74)$$

Since  $T_p = (p^- + p^+)^{-1}$ , we find the chemotactic velocity to be

$$V_c = (2f - 1)v = v \frac{\chi_0 \frac{dN_b}{da} \frac{\partial a}{\partial x}}{1 + \chi_0 \frac{dN_b}{da} \frac{\partial a}{\partial x}}. \quad (13.75)$$

For a single homogeneous population of cell receptors, the number of bound receptors is related to the concentration of attractant through a Michaelis–Menten relationship

$$N_b = \frac{N_T a}{K_d + a}, \quad (13.76)$$

where  $K_d$  is the receptor dissociation constant and  $N_T$  is the total number of cell receptors.

If the function  $v = v(a)$  is known, we have a complete model of the flux of cells due to an attractant concentration. In the special case that cell velocity is independent of attractant concentration, and the attractant concentration and gradient are small, this reduces to a well-known model of chemotaxis (Keller and Segel, 1971),

$$J_c = -\mu \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} + \chi c \frac{\partial a}{\partial x}, \quad (13.77)$$

where  $\chi = v \chi_0 N'_b(a)$ .

### 13.4.2 The Inflammatory Response

Leukocytes respond to a bacterial invasion by moving up a gradient of some chemical attractant produced by the bacteria and then ingesting the bacterium when it is encountered. Here we present a one-dimensional model (Alt and Lauffenberger, 1987) to determine if and when the leukocytes successfully defend against a bacterial invasion.

There are three concentrations that must be determined. These are the bacterial, attractant, and leukocyte concentrations, denoted by  $b, a$ , and  $c$ , respectively. The

governing equations for these concentrations follow from the following assumptions concerning their behavior:

1. Bacteria diffuse, reproduce, and are destroyed when they come in contact with leukocytes:

$$\frac{\partial b}{\partial t} = \mu_b \frac{\partial^2 b}{\partial y^2} + (k_g - k_d c)b. \quad (13.78)$$

2. The chemoattractant is produced by bacterial metabolism and diffuses:

$$\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 a}{\partial y^2} + k_p b. \quad (13.79)$$

3. The leukocytes are chemotactically attracted to the attractant, and they die as they digest the bacteria, so that

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial J_c}{\partial y} - (g_0 + g_1 b)c. \quad (13.80)$$

For this model we assume that the leukocyte flux is given by (13.77), although more general descriptions are readily incorporated.

To specify boundary conditions we assume that  $y = 0$  is the skin surface and that a blood-transporting capillary or venule lies at distance  $y = L$  from the skin surface. We assume that the bacteria cannot leave the tissue domain, although the attractant may diffuse into the bloodstream. Leukocytes enter the tissue from the bloodstream at a rate proportional to the circulating leukocyte density  $c_b$ . When chemotactic attractant is present, the emigration rate increases, because leukocytes that would normally flow in the bloodstream tend to adhere to the vessel wall (*margination*) and then migrate into the interstitium. These considerations lead to the boundary conditions

$$\frac{\partial b}{\partial y} = 0 \text{ at } y = 0 \text{ and } y = L, \quad (13.81)$$

$$\frac{\partial a}{\partial y} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{at } y = 0, \\ -h_a a, & \text{at } y = L, \end{cases} \quad (13.82)$$

$$J_c = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{at } y = 0, \\ -(h_0 + h_1 a)(c_b - c), & \text{at } y = L. \end{cases} \quad (13.83)$$

The governing equations are made dimensionless by setting  $x = y/L$ ,  $\tau = k_g t$ ,  $u = c/c_b$ ,  $v = b/b_0$ , and  $w = a/a_0$ . We find that

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial \tau} = \rho_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + (1 - \xi u)v, \quad (13.84)$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial \tau} = \rho_w \left( \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x^2} + v \right), \quad (13.85)$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial \tau} = \rho_u \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( u \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) \right) - \gamma_0(1 + v)u, \quad (13.86)$$

where  $a_0 = L^2 k_p b_0 / D$ ,  $b_0 = g_0 / g_1$ ,  $\alpha = \chi a_0 / \mu$ ,  $\rho_v = \frac{\mu_b}{k_g L^2}$ ,  $\rho_u = \frac{\mu}{k_g L^2}$ ,  $\rho_w = \frac{D}{k_g L^2}$ ,  $\xi = k_d c_b / k_g$ ,  $\gamma_0 = g_0 / k_g$ .

In nondimensional form the boundary conditions become

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} = 0, \text{ at } x = 0 \text{ and } x = 1, \quad (13.87)$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{at } x = 0, \\ -\sigma w, & \text{at } x = 1, \end{cases} \quad (13.88)$$

$$\rho_u \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} - \alpha u \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{at } x = 0, \\ \gamma_0 (\beta_0 + \beta_1 w)(1 - u), & \text{at } x = 1, \end{cases} \quad (13.89)$$

where  $\sigma = h_a L / D$ ,  $\beta_0 = \frac{h_0}{g_0 L}$ ,  $\beta_1 = \frac{h_1 a_0}{g_0 L}$ .

There is at least one steady-state solution for this system of equations. It is the *elimination state*, in which  $v = w = 0$  and

$$u(x) = \frac{1}{A} \cosh \left( \sqrt{\frac{\gamma_0}{\rho_u}} x \right), \quad (13.90)$$

where  $A = \cosh \left( \sqrt{\frac{\gamma_0}{\rho_u}} \right) + \frac{\rho_u}{\gamma_0 \beta_0} \sqrt{\frac{\gamma_0}{\rho_u}} \sinh \left( \sqrt{\frac{\gamma_0}{\rho_u}} \right)$ . In this state, all bacteria are eliminated, and the leukocyte density is independent of any bacterial properties. This should represent the normal state for healthy tissue. If  $\gamma_0 / \rho_u$  is small, then this steady distribution of leukocytes is nearly constant, at level  $(1 + \frac{1}{\beta_0})^{-1}$ .

Bacterial diffusion is generally much smaller than the diffusion of leukocytes or of chemoattractant. Typical numbers are  $D = 10^{-6} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ ,  $\mu = 10^{-7} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ ,  $\mu_b < 10^{-8} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ ,  $k_g = 0.5 \text{ h}^{-1}$ , and  $L = 100 \mu\text{m}$ . With these numbers,  $\rho_u$  and  $\rho_w$  are relatively large, while  $\rho_v$  is small. This leads us to consider an approximation in which bacterial diffusion is ignored, while attractant and leukocyte diffusion are viewed as fast. In this approximation, airborne bacteria can attach to the surface, but they do not move much on the time scale of leukocyte and chemoattractant motion.

Our first approximation is to ignore bacterial diffusion (take  $\rho_v = 0$ ) and then to assume that a bacterial invasion occurs at the skin surface  $x = 0$ . This is a reasonable assumption for periodontal, peritoneal, and epidermal infections, which are highly localized, slowly moving infections. Then, since we neglect bacterial diffusion, we specify the bacterial distribution by

$$v(x, \tau) = V(\tau) \delta(x), \quad (13.91)$$

where  $\delta(x)$  is the Dirac delta function. The governing equation for  $V(\tau)$  is

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial \tau} = (1 - \xi u(0, \tau))V. \quad (13.92)$$

Since  $v = 0$  for  $x > 0$ , the equations for  $w$  and  $u$  simplify slightly to

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial \tau} = \rho_w \frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x^2}, \quad (13.93)$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial \tau} = \rho_u \left( \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( u \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) \right) - \gamma_0 u, \quad (13.94)$$

while the effect of the bacterial concentration at the origin is reflected in the boundary conditions at  $x = 0$  (found by integrating (13.85) and (13.86) “across” the origin),

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} = -V, \quad (13.95)$$

$$\rho_u \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} - \alpha u \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} \right) = \gamma_0 V u. \quad (13.96)$$

An identity that is important below is found by integrating (13.94) with respect to  $x$  to obtain

$$\gamma_0^{-1} \frac{dU}{dt} = -U - Vu(0, \tau) + (\beta_0 + \beta_1 w(1, \tau))(1 - u(1, \tau)), \quad (13.97)$$

where  $U(\tau) = \int_0^1 u(x, \tau) dx$  is the total leukocyte population within the tissue.

Our second approximation is to assume that the chemoattractant diffusion is sufficiently large, so that the chemoattractant is in quasi-steady state,

$$\frac{\partial^2 w}{\partial x^2} = 0. \quad (13.98)$$

This implies that  $w(x)$  is a linear function of  $x$  with gradient

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} = -V. \quad (13.99)$$

Finally, we assume that  $\rho_u$  is large (taking  $\rho_u \rightarrow \infty$ ), so that the leukocyte density is also in quasi-steady state with  $J_c = 0$ , that is,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \alpha Vu = 0. \quad (13.100)$$

We can solve this equation and find the leukocyte spatial distribution to be

$$u(x, \tau) = U(\tau)F(\alpha V)e^{-\alpha Vx}, \quad (13.101)$$

where  $F(z) = \frac{z}{1-e^{-z}}$  is determined by requiring  $U(\tau) = \int_0^1 u(x, \tau) dx$ .

Now we are able to determine  $u(0, \tau), u(1, \tau)$  from (13.101) and  $w(1, \tau)$  from (13.88) and (13.99), which we substitute into the equation for total leukocyte mass (13.97) to obtain

$$\gamma_0^{-1} \frac{dU}{d\tau} = (\beta_0 + \beta V) \left( 1 - UF(\alpha V)e^{-\alpha V} \right) - (VF(\alpha V) + 1)U, \quad (13.102)$$

where  $\beta = \beta_1/\sigma$ . Similarly, from (13.92) and (13.101), we find the equation governing  $V$  to be

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial \tau} = V(1 - \xi UF(\alpha V)). \quad (13.103)$$

### Phase-Plane Analysis

The system of equations (13.102)–(13.103) is a two-variable system of ordinary differential equations that can be studied using standard phase-plane methods. In this analysis we focus on the influence of two parameters:  $\beta$ , which characterizes the enhanced leukocyte emigration from the bloodstream, and  $\alpha$ , which measures the chemotactic response of the leukocytes to the attractant.

One steady-state solution that always exists is  $U = (1 + \frac{1}{\beta_0})^{-1}$ ,  $V = 0$ . This represents the elimination state in which there are no bacteria present. Any other steady solutions that exist with  $V > 0$  are compromised states in which the bacteria are allowed to persist in the tissue.

We assume that the system is at steady state at time  $\tau = 0$  with  $U(0) = U_0 = (1 + \frac{1}{\beta_0})^{-1}$  when a bacterial challenge with  $V(0) = V_0 > 0$  is presented. We begin the analysis with simple cases for which  $\alpha = 0$ .

#### Case I: $\alpha = 0, \beta = 0$ .

In this case the system reduces to

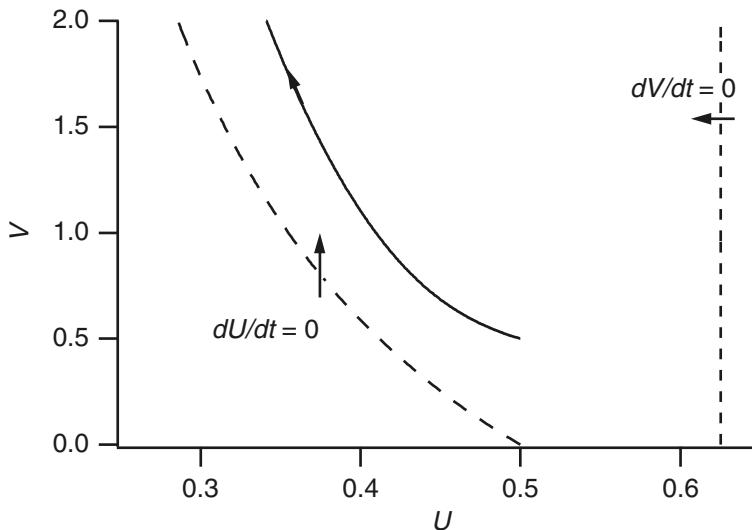
$$\gamma_0^{-1} \frac{dU}{d\tau} = \beta_0 - (\beta_0 + 1)U - VU, \quad (13.104)$$

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial \tau} = V(1 - \xi U). \quad (13.105)$$

There are three nullclines:  $\frac{dV}{d\tau} = 0$  on the vertical line  $U = \frac{1}{\xi}$  and on the horizontal line  $V = 0$ , and  $\frac{dU}{d\tau} = 0$  on the hyperbola  $V = \frac{\beta_0 - (\beta_0 + 1)U}{U}$ .

Two types of behavior are possible. If  $\xi U_0 < 1$ , there are no steady states in the positive first quadrant. The only steady state is at  $U = U_0, V = 0$ . For  $U \leq U_0$ ,  $\frac{dV}{d\tau} > 0$ , so that  $U$  decreases and  $V$  increases without bound. The bacterial challenge cannot be met. This situation is depicted in Fig. 13.12. In this and all the following phase portraits, the nullcline for  $\frac{dV}{d\tau} = 0$  is shown as a short dashed curve, and the nullcline for  $\frac{dU}{d\tau} = 0$  is shown as a long dashed curve. The solid curve shows a typical trajectory starting from initial data  $U = U_0, V = V_0$ .

If  $\xi U_0 > 1$ , there is a nontrivial steady state in the first quadrant, which is a saddle point. This means that there is a value  $V^*$  for which a trajectory starting at  $U = U_0, V = V^*$  is on the stable manifold of this steady state and divides the line  $U = U_0$  into two types of behavior. If  $V < V^*$  initially, the trajectory evolves toward the elimination state, while if  $V > V^*$  initially, the trajectory is unbounded. Thus, for large enough  $\xi$  and small enough initial bacterial population, the challenge can be withheld, but for a larger initial bacterial challenge, the bacterial population wins the competition. The number  $V^*$  is a monotone increasing function of  $\xi$ , and  $\lim_{\xi \rightarrow \infty} V^* = \infty$ . This follows



**Figure 13.12** Phase portrait for the system (13.102)–(13.103) with “small”  $\xi = 1.6$ , “small”  $\beta = 0.1$ ,  $\alpha = 0$ . Other parameters are  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ , so that  $U_0 = 0.5$ .

because to the right of  $U = \frac{1}{\xi}$  the stable manifold is an increasing curve as a function of  $U$ , so that  $V^*$  lies above the value of  $V$  at the saddle point. However, as a function of  $\xi$ , the steady-state value of  $V$  is monotone increasing as  $\xi$  increases, approaching  $\infty$  in the limit  $\xi \rightarrow \infty$ , so  $V^* \rightarrow \infty$  as well.

The phase portrait for this situation is depicted in Fig. 13.13. In this situation the bacterial challenge is met only if  $\xi$  is large enough and  $V_0$  is small enough, so that the leukocytes are effective killers, although with  $\alpha = \beta = 0$  they are not good hunters. Note that  $\xi = k_d c_b / k_g$ , where  $k_d$  is the rate at which leukocytes kill bacteria,  $k_g$  is the growth rate of the bacteria, and  $c_b$  is the leukocyte density in the blood. Hence, large  $\xi$  means that leukocytes are effective killers, since they kill bacteria at a rate exceeding the growth rate of the bacteria.

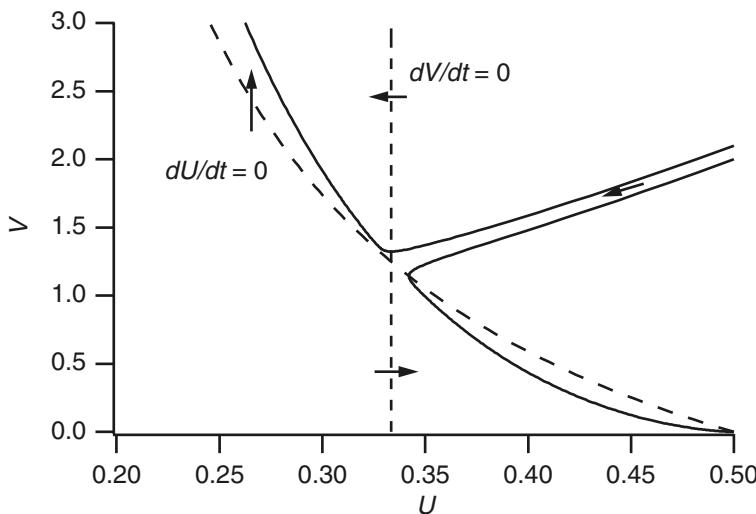
### Case II: $\alpha = 0, \beta > 0$ .

Here, the leukocytes can respond to the bacterial challenge by enhanced emigration from the bloodstream, but they cannot localize preferentially within the tissue. The system of equations becomes

$$\gamma_0^{-1} \frac{dU}{d\tau} = (\beta_0 + \beta V)(1 - U) - (V + 1)U, \quad (13.106)$$

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial \tau} = V(1 - \xi U). \quad (13.107)$$

The nullclines for  $\frac{dV}{d\tau}$  are unchanged from above. The nullcline  $\frac{dU}{d\tau} = 0$  is the hyperbola  $V = \frac{\beta_0 - (\beta_0 + 1)U}{(\beta + 1)U - \beta}$ . For small  $\beta$ , with  $\frac{\beta}{\beta + 1} < U_0$ , the behavior of the system changes only slightly from Case I. These phase portraits are as depicted in Figs. 13.12 and 13.13.



**Figure 13.13** Phase portrait for the system (13.102)–(13.103) with “large”  $\xi = 3.0$ , “small”  $\beta = 0.1$ ,  $\alpha = 0$ . Other parameters are  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ , so that  $U_0 = 0.5$ .

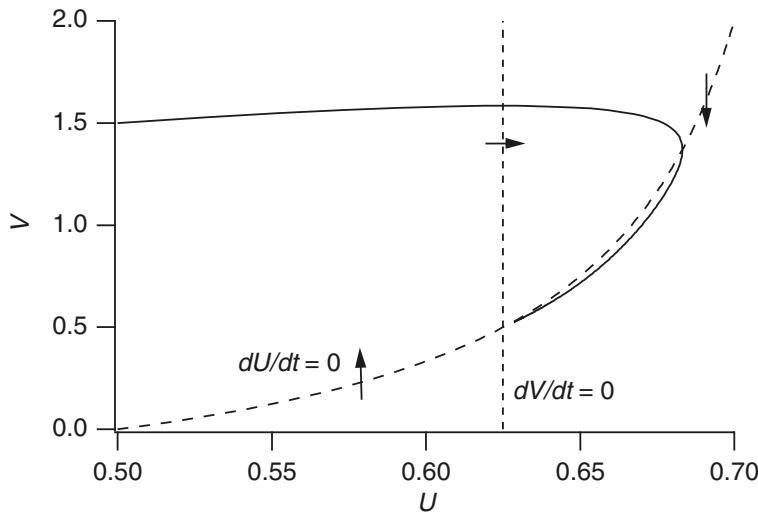
If  $\xi U_0 < 1$ , the bacterial population grows without bound, whereas if  $\xi U_0 > 1$ , the bacterial population can be eliminated if  $V < V^*$  initially. The value  $V^*$  is a monotone increasing function of  $\beta$ . Thus, with  $\beta$  small, the leukocytes have an enhanced ability to eliminate a bacterial population. In fact, if  $\xi\beta > \beta + 1$  (phase portrait not shown), then  $V^* = \infty$ , so that a bacterial invasion of any size can be eliminated. Notice that in this case, the bacterial invasion is controlled because the leukocytes are effective killers and they effectively deploy troops to withstand the invasion. There is no mechanism making them more effective hunters.

In all of the above cases, the leukocyte population decreases initially, and if the bacterial population is controllable, the leukocyte population eventually rebounds back to normal. If  $\beta$  is large enough, with  $\frac{\beta}{\beta+1} > U_0$ , then the response to a bacterial invasion is with an initial increase in leukocyte population. If  $\xi\beta < \beta + 1$ , then the bacterial population is unbounded; the invasion cannot be withstood.

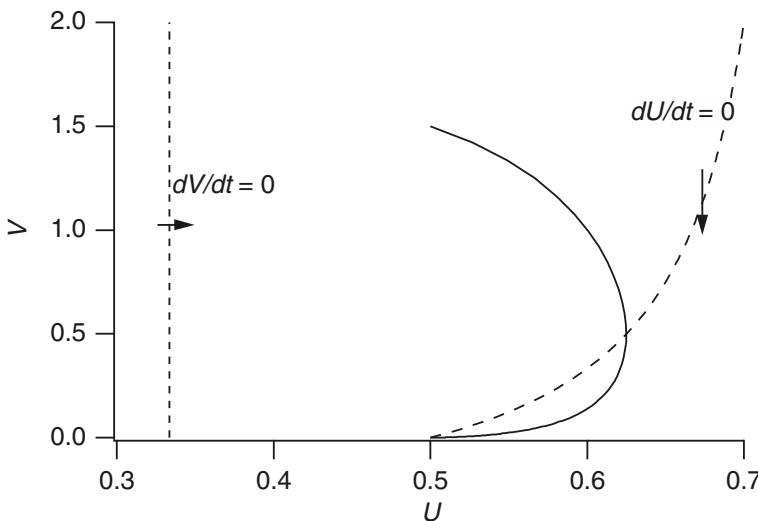
If  $\xi\beta > \beta + 1$  and  $\xi U_0 < 1$ , there is a nontrivial steady state in the positive first quadrant that is a stable attractor. All trajectories starting at  $U = U_0$  approach this stable steady-state solution with  $U > U_0$ . Since  $V > 0$  for this steady solution, the bacterial population is controlled but not eliminated. This situation is depicted in Fig. 13.14.

Finally, if  $\xi U_0 > 1$ , the leukocyte population initially increases and then decreases back to normal as the bacterial population is eliminated. This situation is depicted in Fig. 13.15.

The above information is summarized in Fig. 13.16, where four regions with differing behaviors are shown, plotted in the  $(1/\beta, \xi)$  parameter space. The four regions are bounded by the curves  $\xi = 1/U_0$  and  $\xi = 1 + 1/\beta$  and are identified by the asymptotic

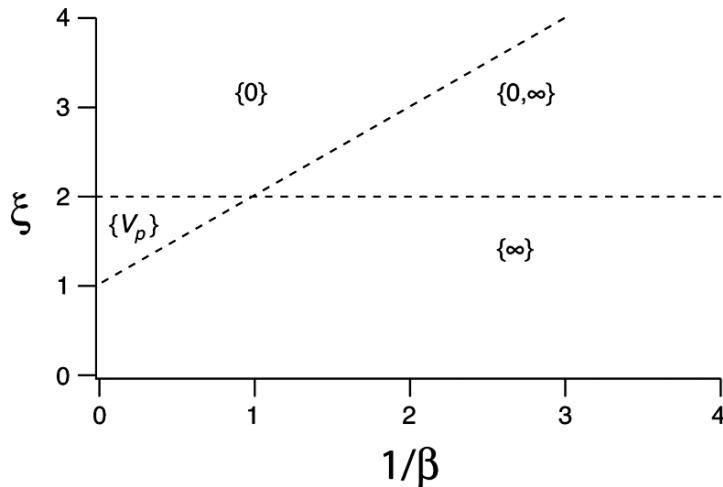


**Figure 13.14** Phase portrait for the system (13.102)–(13.103) with “small”  $\xi = 1.6$ , “large”  $\beta = 3.0$ ,  $\alpha = 0$ . Other parameters are  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ , so that  $U_0 = 0.5$ .



**Figure 13.15** Phase portrait for the system (13.102)–(13.103) with “large”  $\xi = 3.0$ , “large”  $\beta = 3.0$ ,  $\alpha = 0$ . Other parameters are  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ , so that  $U_0 = 0.5$ .

state for  $V, \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} V(\tau)$ . For  $\xi > 1/U_0$  and  $\xi > 1 + 1/\beta$ , the bacteria are always eliminated. For  $\xi > 1/U_0$  and  $\xi < 1 + 1/\beta$ , there are two possibilities, either elimination or unbounded bacterial growth, depending on the initial size of the bacterial population. For  $\xi < 1/U_0$  and  $\xi > 1 + 1/\beta$ , the bacteria survive but are controlled at population



**Figure 13.16** Parameter space for the system (13.102)–(13.103) with  $\alpha = 0$ .

size  $V_p$ , and finally, for  $\xi < 1/U_0$  and  $\xi < 1 + 1/\beta$ , the bacterial population cannot be controlled but becomes infinite.

### Case III: $\alpha > 0, \beta > 0$ .

The primary goal of this model is to determine the effect of the chemotaxis coefficient on the performance of the leukocytes in warding off a bacterial invasion. We have seen so far that with  $\alpha = 0$  there are three possible responses to an invasion. The bacteria may become unbounded, they may be controlled at a nonzero steady state, or they may be eliminated, depending on the sizes of the parameters  $\xi$  and  $\beta$ . With  $\alpha \neq 0$ , we expect control and elimination to be enhanced, if only because the bacterial growth rate is a decreasing function of  $\alpha$ .

The effect of  $\alpha \neq 0$  is seen first of all in the nullclines. The nullclines are the curves

$$\frac{dV}{d\tau} = 0 : \quad U = \frac{1}{\xi F(\alpha V)}, \quad (13.108)$$

and

$$\frac{dU}{d\tau} = 0 : \quad U = \frac{\beta_0 + \beta V}{(\beta_0 + \beta V)F(\alpha V)e^{-\alpha V} + VF(\alpha V) + 1}. \quad (13.109)$$

Both of these are decreasing functions of  $\alpha$ , and both asymptote to  $U = 0$  as  $V \rightarrow \infty$ . A steady state occurs whenever there is an intersection of these two curves. This condition we write as

$$\frac{1}{\xi} = \frac{\alpha V(\beta_0 + \beta V)}{(1 - e^{-\alpha V}) + \alpha V^2 + \alpha V e^{-\alpha V}(\beta_0 + \beta V)} = G(V). \quad (13.110)$$

One can easily see that  $G(0) = U_0$  and that  $\lim_{V \rightarrow \infty} G(V) = \beta$ . This implies that there is an even number of roots if

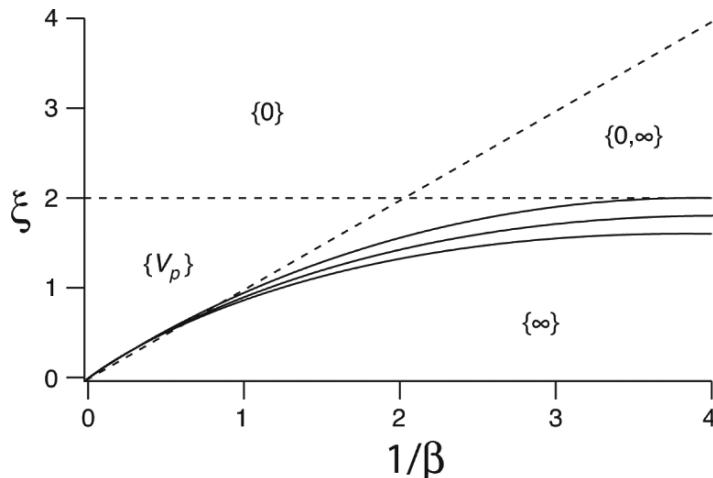
$$\left(\frac{1}{\xi} - U_0\right)\left(\frac{1}{\xi} - \beta\right) > 0, \quad (13.111)$$

and an odd number of roots otherwise. An odd number of roots implies that there is at least one steady-state solution in the first quadrant; with an even number there could be no steady states. This leads to four different possible outcomes separated by the curves  $\xi = \frac{1}{U_0}$  and  $\xi = \frac{1}{\beta}$ . These are

1.  $\xi < \frac{1}{U_0}, \xi < \frac{1}{\beta}$ . There can be zero or two steady states. If there are no steady states, then  $V$  becomes infinite. If there are two steady states, one of them is stable and the trajectories for sufficiently small initial bacterial populations approach the stable steady state, where they persist. We can find the boundary between these two cases by looking for a double root of (13.110). We do this by solving (13.110) and the equation  $G'(V) = 0$  simultaneously. This gives a curve in the  $(\beta, \xi)$  parameter plane parameterized by  $V$ , as follows: For each  $V$ ,  $\beta$  is a root of the quadratic equation

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha^2 V^4 \beta^2 - V(-2\alpha^2 V^2 \beta_0 + \alpha V - 2e^{\alpha V} + 2)\beta \\ + \beta_0(\alpha^2 V^2 \beta_0 - \alpha V - 1 + e^{\alpha V}(1 - V^2 \alpha)) = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (13.112)$$

and then  $\xi$  is given by (13.110) for each  $V, \beta$ . It is an easy matter to determine this curve numerically. The curve is plotted in Fig. 13.17 as a solid curve, shown for the three values of  $\alpha = 0.5, 0.75$ , and  $1.0$ .



**Figure 13.17** Parameter space for the system (13.102)–(13.103) with  $\beta_0 = 1.0, \alpha > 0$ .

Below this curve in the  $(\frac{1}{\beta}, \xi)$  parameter space, there are no steady-state solutions. The phase portrait for this case is similar to that of Fig. 13.12 and is left as an exercise (see Exercise 15). For all trajectories starting at  $U = U_0, V(\tau) \rightarrow \infty$ .

Above the “double root” curve there are two steady solutions, one of which is stable. In this situation, some trajectories lead to persistent bacterial populations, while others (with larger initial values) become infinite. This phase portrait has similarities with Fig. 13.13 and is left as an exercise (see Exercise 15).

2.  $\xi < \frac{1}{U_0}, \xi > \frac{1}{\beta}$ . Here there is one stable steady state, which is a global attractor. All trajectories approach this steady state, so that the bacterial population is controlled, but it is not eliminated. The phase portrait for this case is quite similar to the previous case, except that there is only one nontrivial steady state, and no saddle point, so there is no separatrix, and all trajectories approach the persistent state.

It should be noted that with  $\xi < \frac{1}{U_0}$ , the bacterial population can never be eliminated. However, with  $\alpha > 0$ , the population is more readily controlled than with  $\alpha = 0$ .

3.  $\xi > \frac{1}{U_0}, \xi < \frac{1}{\beta}$ . There is a single steady state in the first quadrant, which is a saddle point and which therefore divides the initial data into two types, those that are eliminated and those that become unbounded. The phase portrait for this case is similar to Fig. 13.13 and is left as an exercise (see Exercise 15).
4.  $\xi > \frac{1}{U_0}, \xi > \frac{1}{\beta}$ . Here there are no steady-state solutions in the positive quadrant, in which case the bacterial population is always eliminated. Here the effect of chemotaxis can be seen in the transient behavior of the leukocyte population. If the initial bacterial population is small, the leukocyte population initially increases before it decreases back to its equilibrium. If the initial bacterial population is large, then the leukocyte population initially decreases, then increases, and then finally decreases back to steady state, having eliminated the bacterial population. The phase portrait for this case has similarities with Fig. 13.15 and is left as an exercise (see Exercise 15).

In summary, to control a bacterial invasion, the leukocytes must be sufficiently lethal to the bacteria ( $\xi$  sufficiently large). They must also be able to recruit new troops, and it is advantageous that they move chemotactically, since they are more effective if  $\alpha > 0$ . This result is not surprising. However, the significance of this approximate analysis is that the model behaves as we had hoped, suggesting that it is a reasonable model, worthy of more detailed study and development.

## 13.5 Control of Lymphocyte Differentiation

The human body can develop considerable specific immunity to various kinds of invading organisms. This so-called *acquired immunity* comes in two different basic versions, both mediated by lymphocytes. First, B lymphocytes make antibodies, soluble proteins

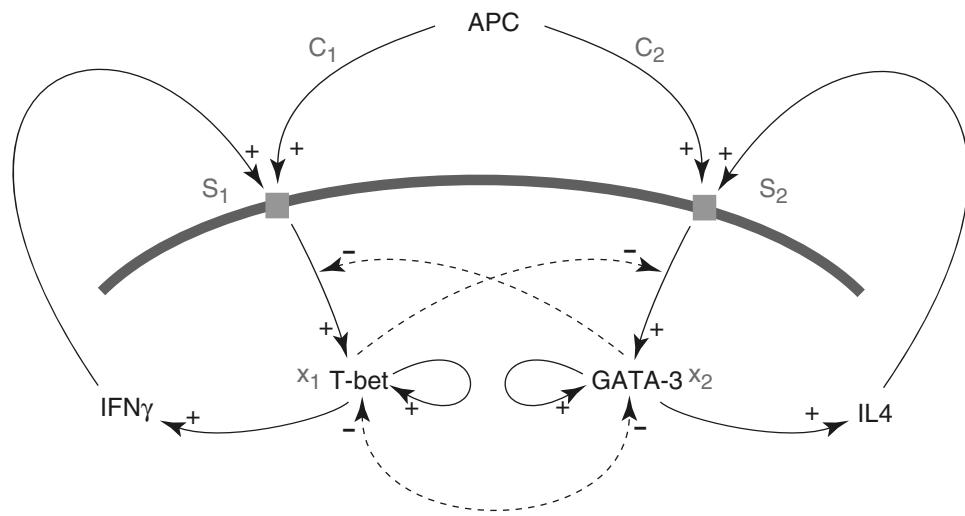
that circulate in the blood and help destroy invading organisms (humoral immunity). Second, large numbers of T lymphocytes can be activated to attack and destroy the invaders and cells infected by the invaders (cell-mediated immunity). Both types of lymphocytes are derived from common lymphoid precursors (Fig. 13.1); T lymphocytes develop from their precursors in the thymus gland (hence the nomenclature T lymphocyte), while B lymphocytes develop in the bone marrow. B lymphocytes were first discovered in birds, where they develop in an organ spectacularly named the *bursa of Fabricius*, which is not found in mammals.

One remarkable feature of acquired immunity is the combination of extreme specificity with extreme diversity. As T lymphocytes mature in the thymus they develop reactivity for specific antigens; a population of T lymphocytes contains different cells specifically targeted to each of millions of different possible antigens. B lymphocytes exhibit similar diversity and specificity, with many millions of different types of antibodies secreted by B lymphocytes that react to specific antigens. How exactly this occurs is a fascinating physiological and mathematical question, but not one that we consider further here.

T lymphocytes come in different flavors, with the major types being T helper cells, cytotoxic T cells, and regulatory T cells. As the name implies, cytotoxic T cells are designed to kill other cells, particularly those infected by invading organisms, while regulatory T cells seem to suppress the actions of both cytotoxic and helper T cells, and play a role in preventing autoimmune disease. The majority of T lymphocytes are T helper cells, which secrete a broad range of soluble mediating factors (*cytokines*) that regulate virtually all aspects of the immune response. Typical cytokines are interleukin-2 (IL2), IL3, IL4, and interferon- $\gamma$  (IFN $\gamma$ ). Acquired immune deficiency syndrome, or AIDS, attacks the T helper cells in particular, leaving the body highly susceptible to infection.

As can be seen in Fig. 13.1, T helper (Th) cells themselves can differentiate into either Th1 or Th2 subtypes. These two subtypes mediate different responses. Th1 cells secrete IL2 and IFN $\gamma$  and activate macrophages and cytotoxic T cells to destroy invading organisms; Th2 cells make IL4, IL5, and IL13, which activate mast cells, eosinophils, and B lymphocytes, leading to a humoral immune response. Clearly, making the right choice between the Th1 and Th2 pathways can be vital, and there is a complex system of controls that ensures that the appropriate response is generated.

Antigen is presented to the Th cells by an antigen presenting cell, or APC. In response to certain types of antigen, APCs secrete IL12, which promotes Th1 differentiation, via the activation of the transcription factor T-bet. T-bet itself also promotes the production of IFN $\gamma$  which stimulates the APCs to make more IL12, and also stimulates the production of more T-bet. This gives an autocatalytic feedback loop, pushing more cells down the Th1 pathway. IL4, on the other hand, promotes the differentiation of Th2 cells, and, via the activation of the transcription factor GATA-3, leads to the production of further IL4 and an autocatalytic pathway pushing cells down the Th2 pathway. Crosstalk between the two pathways occurs because GATA-3



**Figure 13.18** Schematic diagram of the pathways involved in the differentiation of Th1 and Th2 cells. Solid lines denote activation, while dashed lines denote inhibition. This diagram includes only a small number of the interactions in the system and is a highly simplified representation.

inhibits the expression of IL12 receptors, while T-bet inhibits GATA-3 activation by IL4. This scheme is sketched in Fig. 13.18. Of course, the actual situation is far more complicated. For example, the exact way in which T-bet and GATA-3 stimulate their own production is not clear, and neither is it known exactly how GATA-3 inhibits T-bet. Such interactions are likely to be more indirect than is shown in Fig. 13.18.

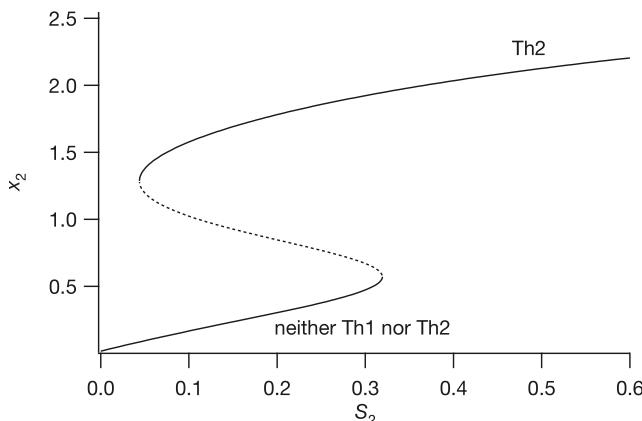
A number of groups have constructed models of Th1 and Th2 cell differentiation. One of the earliest was that of Fishman and Perelson (1993, 1994), while more recently Höfer et al. (2004) and Mariani et al. (2004) have constructed detailed models of the gene regulation networks in these cells. Here we follow the model of Yates et al. (2004).

Let  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  denote the concentrations (or expression levels) of T-bet and GATA-3 respectively, and let  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  denote the concentrations of cytokines that activate T-bet and GATA-3 respectively. We suppose that the rate of T-bet production is a saturating function of  $S_1$ ,  $\sigma_1 \frac{S_1}{\rho_1 + S_1}$ , while the rate at which it catalyzes its own production is  $\alpha_1 \frac{x_1^n}{\kappa_1^n + x_1^n}$ . The inhibitory effect of GATA-3 on T-bet is included by assuming that both the  $S_1$ -dependent and autocatalytic productions of T-bet are inhibited by GATA-3, via the decreasing function  $\frac{\gamma_2}{\gamma_2 + x_2}$ . Finally, adding a background degradation term ( $-\mu x_1$ ) and a background production term ( $\beta_1$ ), we get

$$\frac{dx_1}{dt} = \beta_1 - \mu x_1 + \left( \frac{\gamma_2}{\gamma_2 + x_2} \right) \left( \alpha_1 \frac{x_1^n}{\kappa_1^n + x_1^n} + \sigma_1 \frac{S_1}{\rho_1 + S_1} \right). \quad (13.113)$$

**Table 13.3** Parameters of the model of lymphocyte differentiation. These parameters, although reasonable, are not known from experimental data, but are chosen to illustrate the basic behavior of the model.

$\sigma_1, \sigma_2 = 5 \text{ day}^{-1}$	$\alpha_1, \alpha_2 = 5 \text{ day}^{-1}$
$\gamma_1 = 1$	$\gamma_2 = 0.5$
$\kappa_1, \kappa_2 = 1$	$\mu = 3 \text{ day}^{-1}$
$\rho_1, \rho_2 = 1$	$g = 2 \text{ day}^{-1}$
$\beta_1, \beta_2 = 0.05 \text{ day}^{-1}$	$n = 4$



**Figure 13.19** Steady-state GATA-3 concentration as a function of  $S_2$ , the level of stimulation of the GATA-3 pathway, calculated at  $S_1 = 0$ . Stable steady states are denoted by solid lines, unstable ones by dashed lines.

The equation for  $x_2$  is constructed in the same way, and is essentially a mirror image of the  $x_1$  equation:

$$\frac{dx_2}{dt} = \beta_2 - \mu x_2 + \left( \frac{\gamma_1}{\gamma_1 + x_1} \right) \left( \alpha_2 \frac{x_2^n}{\kappa_2^n + x_2^n} + \sigma_2 \frac{S_2}{\rho_2 + S_2} \right). \quad (13.114)$$

The parameters of the model are given in Table 13.3. Most of the parameters are the same for both T-bet and GATA-3 with the exception of  $\gamma_1$  and  $\gamma_2$ . Thus, asymmetry appears only in the crosstalk terms, for which the inhibition of T-bet by GATA-3 is more sensitive (i.e., has a lower  $K_d$ ) than that of GATA-3 by T-bet.

A plot of the steady-state GATA-3 concentration as a function of  $S_2$  is shown in Fig. 13.19. As the level of stimulation of the GATA-3 pathway increases, the GATA-3 concentration undergoes a sharp increase, while a subsequent decrease in  $S_2$  does not immediately lead to a decrease in GATA-3. This sudden jump corresponds to a change to a Th2 cell from a cell that is neither Th1 nor Th2 (i.e., one with both  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  low). Because of symmetry, a similar curve occurs when the steady-state is plotted against  $S_1$ , for fixed  $S_2 = 0$ . Such switch-like behavior and hysteresis are commonly seen in models of gene transduction pathways (see, for example, Fig. 10.5).

## 13.6 Clotting

### 13.6.1 The Clotting Cascade

The need for a clotting system is obvious. In any organism with a circulatory system, the loss of the transporters of vital metabolites and waste products has disastrous, perhaps fatal, consequences. However, the occurrence of clots in an otherwise normal circulatory system is also potentially disastrous, since it prevents a flow that is equally important to survival.

The clotting system must be fast reacting, and yet localized. Since all the ingredients for clotting are carried in the blood, there must be some control that prevents propagation. As we know from earlier chapters, a highly excitable system of diffusing species has the possibility, indeed the strong likelihood, of exhibiting traveling waves. For the clotting system, a propagating front would be as disastrous as failure of a clot to form. Thus, the challenge is to understand how a highly excitable system of reacting and diffusing chemicals is built so as not to allow uncontrolled wave propagation.

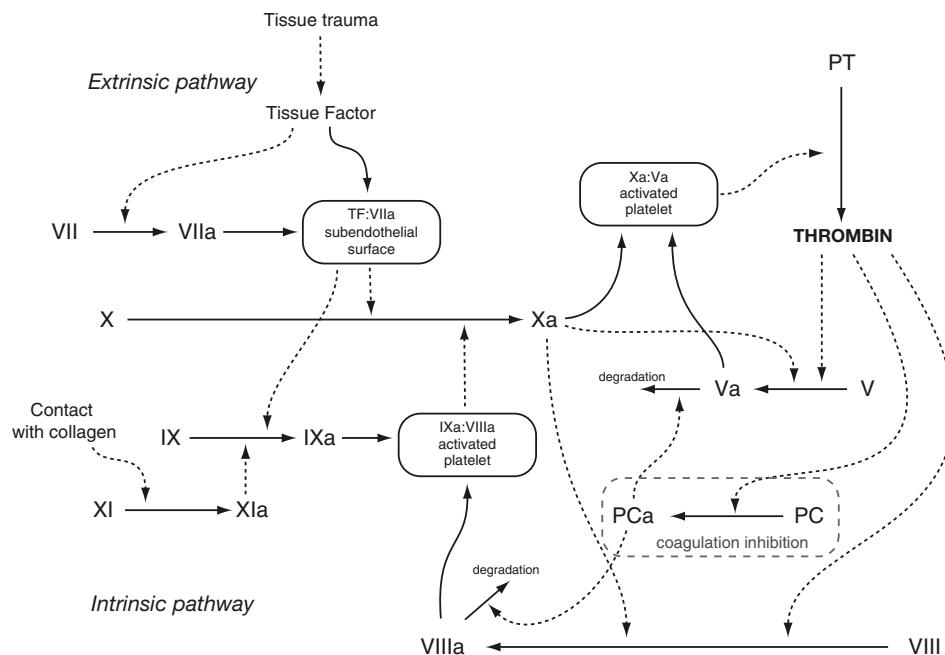
In fact, there are more than 50 substances in blood and tissue that play a role in the clotting process. Crucial to the process is the enzyme *thrombin*. Thrombin acts enzymatically on *fibrinogen*, converting it to *fibrin*, which then forms the mesh of the clot. However, this is not all, since thrombin is an extremely active enzyme, with many other regulatory roles.

Thrombin is formed when prothrombin, which is carried in the blood, is converted by an enzyme called *prothrombin activator*. Prothrombin activator is formed as the end result of two different enzymatic cascades, which are, however, closely linked. The fastest, called the *extrinsic pathway*, is initiated following tissue trauma. The second pathway, called the *intrinsic pathway*, is initiated following trauma to blood or contact of blood with collagen, or any negatively charged surface, and is not dependent on tissue trauma. However, this second pathway is much slower than the extrinsic pathway. Classic *hemophilia*, a tendency to bleed that occurs in 1 in every 10,000 males in the United States, results from a deficiency of one of the important enzymes in the intrinsic pathway.

A schematic diagram of some of the reactions involved in clotting is shown in Fig. 13.20. Although there is general agreement over the basic pathways, the exact details of the different feedbacks, and their relative importance, remains unknown, and any two papers by different groups are more than likely to contain slightly different clotting schemes. Thus, the details of Fig. 13.20 should not be taken as definitive.

Two important things may be seen immediately from Fig. 13.20. First, the intrinsic and extrinsic pathways are closely linked, and activation of one activates the other. Second, there are multiple positive feedback pathways, leading to an explosive production of fibrin once the system is triggered.

Thirteen of the important factors in the clotting cascade are denoted using Roman numerals as factors I through XIII, although for historical reasons, they also have other names. Here we retain the Roman numeral notation. Of those that have active



**Figure 13.20** Schematic diagram of the extrinsic and intrinsic pathways for blood clotting. PT is prothrombin; PC is protein C; the factors are denoted by Roman numerals (such as VIII, IX, or X) with the activated forms denoted by a (for example, VIIIa, IXa, or Xa). Solid arrows denote conversion, while dashed arrows indicate catalysis. All the reactions, except those involving PC, activate clotting, and form a system of strong positive feedbacks. Activation of PC is the only reaction that inhibits clotting, and is thus enclosed in a dashed box. The boxes with solid lines denote complexes of activated factors that form only on the surface of the exposed subendothelium or of an activated platelet.

and inactive states, the active state is denoted by appending the letter “a” to its name. Thus, for example, Xa is the active form of factor X.

The extrinsic pathway is activated when tissue trauma causes the release of a combination of agents called, collectively, *tissue factor* (or tissue thromboplastin). Tissue factor consists primarily of certain phospholipids from the membranes of the damaged tissues, and acts enzymatically to activate factor VII, converting it to factor VIIa. Factor VIIa then acts enzymatically to activate factor X to Xa, which then combines with factor Va on the surface of an activated platelet to form prothrombin activator. As mentioned above, prothrombin activator converts prothrombin to thrombin, from which the clot eventually forms.

The speed of the extrinsic pathway is increased by various positive feedback mechanisms. First, thrombin activates factor V, thus increasing the rate of formation of prothrombin activator. Second, thrombin is one of the substances that activates platelets (described below) to make them sticky and highly reactive (although this particular feedback is not shown in Fig. 13.20). In their reactive form, platelets are a

source of the phospholipids with which factor X combines to produce prothrombin activator.

The intrinsic pathway operates in a similar way. Activation of factor XI by collagen leads to the activation of factor IX, which then forms a complex with factor VIIIa on the surface of an activated platelet. This complex can then activate factor X. Again, positive feedback occurs when both Xa and thrombin activate factor VIII.

Thrombin is degraded, so that its activity is not permanent. One of the ways that thrombin is degraded is by binding to the fibrin network, so that thrombin is eventually degraded by the result of its own activity, a negative feedback loop. There are also anticoagulants, such as antithrombin III, that inactivate thrombin. Inhibition of clotting is caused by the activated form of Protein C, PCa, which increases the rate of degradation of both Va and VIIIa, thus decreasing the rate of thrombin production. Since thrombin itself catalyzes the activation of Protein C, inhibition is controlled, at least partially, by a negative feedback loop (Fig. 13.20).

Heparin is another important anticoagulant. Heparin by itself has little or no anticoagulant effect, but in complex with antithrombin III, the effectiveness of antithrombin III is increased a hundred- to a thousandfold. The concentration of heparin is normally quite slight, although it is produced in large quantities by *mast cells*, located in the connective tissue surrounding capillaries. They are especially abundant in tissue surrounding the capillaries of the lung and of the liver. This is important, because these organs receive many clots that form in the slowly moving venous blood and must be removed. Heparin is widely used in medical practice to prevent intravascular clotting.

### 13.6.2 Clotting Models

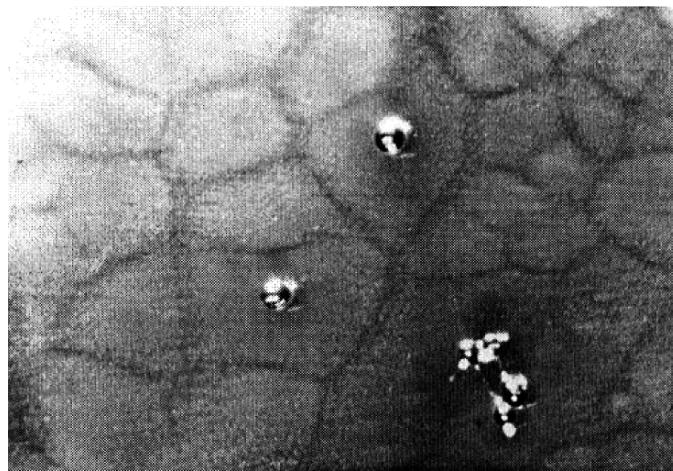
Early models of blood clotting focused on the initial enzyme cascades, showing how the sequence of activations could lead to enormous amplification (Hearon, 1948; Levine, 1966). In a similar style, simplified models that attempt to capture the excitability of the system include those of Jesty et al. (1993) and Beltrami and Jesty (1995).

A more complicated approach, involving large systems of differential equations, has been taken by a number of other groups (for example, Nesheim et al., 1984, 1992; Willems et al., 1991; Jones and Mann, 1994; Bungay et al., 2003). Typically, these large models are solved numerically and compared to such experimental data as the rate of rise of thrombin concentration.

Even more complex models, including the effects of blood flow on clot formation, are those of Anand et al. (2003, 2005), and those from Fogelson's group (Fogelson, 1992; Fogelson and Kuharsky, 1998; Fogelson and Tania, 2005; Fogelson and Guy, 2004). Such models are too detailed to present in full here.

### 13.6.3 *In Vitro* Clotting and the Spread of Inhibition

One particularly interesting model, simple enough to discuss here, is that of Ataullakhanov et al. (2002a, b), based on the earlier model of Zarnitsina et al. (1996a, b).



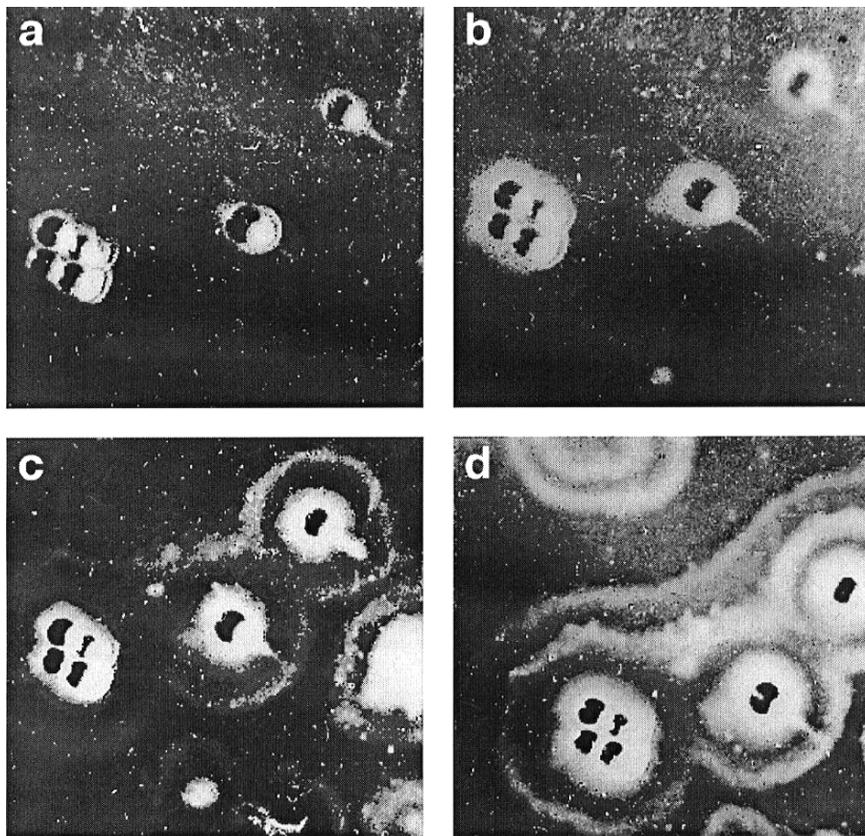
**Figure 13.21** Clotting of platelet-poor plasma in a Petri dish, showing the checkerboard of clots that has formed 120 minutes after addition of the glass beads. The clots do not merge to form one large superclot, but are separated by darker channels where the plasma remains liquid for many hours. Thus, each clot appears to be surrounded by an inhibition zone. (Ataullakhanov et al., 2002a, Fig. 11b. Reproduced with permission of World Scientific.)

Using either blood, or plasma from which most of the platelets had been removed, they studied the formation of clots in Petri dishes to which small glass beads (or sometimes collagen fibers) had been added to act as clotting foci. One of their more striking observations was that the clot around each bead grows to a certain size and then stops, leaving the clot surrounded by an inhibition zone. The presence of many clotting foci can then result in a checkerboard of clots across the dish, rather than a single merged superclot. In this case, each clot is surrounded by a thin channel of blood in which clotting is inhibited, so that the blood stays liquid for many hours (Fig. 13.21). Blood clots also sometimes form in a banded structure, of similar appearance to a target pattern, but with stationary bands (Fig. 13.22).

To explain these observations, Ataullakhanov et al. proposed a nine-state model of the clotting cascade, where the nine variables are the concentrations of XIa, IXa, Xa, tissue factor, prothrombin, thrombin, VIIIa, Va, and PCa. They then simplified the model by assuming some of the reactions to be in instantaneous equilibrium, in the same manner as has appeared often throughout this book (in Chapters 1 and 2 in particular). Nondimensionalization of the equations and the omission of small terms resulted in the equations

$$\frac{\partial u_1}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 u_1}{\partial x^2} + K_1 u_1 u_2 (1 - u_1) \frac{(1 + K_2 u_1)}{(1 + K_3 u_3)} - u_1, \quad (13.115)$$

$$\frac{\partial u_2}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 u_2}{\partial x^2} + u_1 - K_4 u_2, \quad (13.116)$$

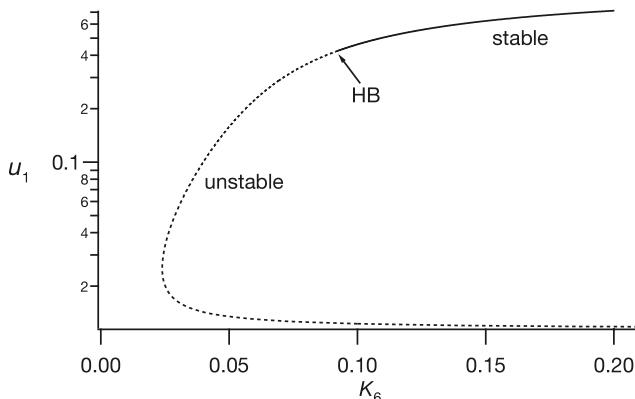


**Figure 13.22** Banded clots in platelet-poor plasma *in vitro* (a) 0 minutes, (b) 12 minutes, (c) 30 minutes, and (d) 60 minutes after addition of the glass beads. (Ataullakhanov et al., 2002a, Fig. 11b. Reproduced with permission of World Scientific.)

$$\frac{\partial u_3}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 u_3}{\partial x^2} + K_5 u_1^2 - K_6 u_3. \quad (13.117)$$

Here,  $u_1$ ,  $u_2$ , and  $u_3$  are, respectively, the nondimensionalized concentrations of thrombin, factor XIa and PCa. There are a number of things to note about the structure of these equations:

- Production of  $u_1$  is stimulated by  $u_1$  and  $u_2$ , but inhibited by  $u_3$ .
- Production of  $u_2$  is stimulated by  $u_1$ , and thus  $u_1$  and  $u_2$  together form a positive feedback loop.
- Production of  $u_3$  is stimulated by  $u_1$ , and thus  $u_1$  and  $u_3$  together form a negative feedback loop.
- The concentration of  $u_1$  is bounded by 1, but the concentrations of  $u_2$  and  $u_3$  are not.



**Figure 13.23** Bifurcation diagram of the clotting model (13.115)–(13.117), in the absence of diffusion. The line  $u_1 = 0$  is a stable steady state for all values of  $K_6$ . Parameter values are  $D = 0$ ,  $K_1 = 6.85$ ,  $K_2 = 11$ ,  $K_3 = 2.36$ ,  $K_4 = 0.087$ ,  $K_5 = 17$ .

- Each variable is degraded with first-order kinetics.
- For simplicity, each variable is assumed to have the same diffusion coefficient.

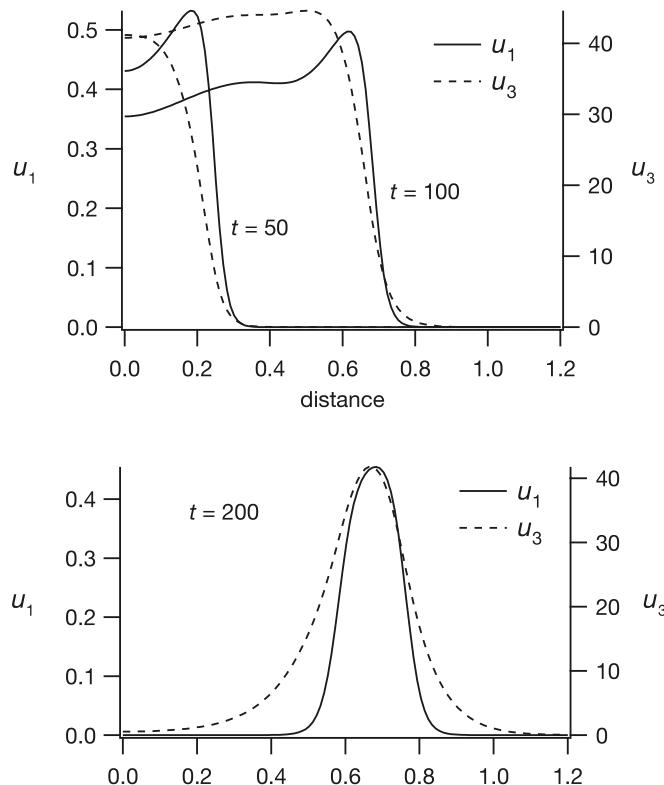
The steady states of (13.115)–(13.117) are plotted in Fig. 13.23 as functions of  $K_6$ . Since the line  $u_1 = 0$  is always a stable steady state, the model has two stable steady states when  $K_6$  is large enough. The Hopf bifurcation on the upper branch of steady states leads to a branch of periodic orbits over a narrow range of values of  $K_6$ , but since this is of little interest to the present discussion we ignore it from now on.

The model is highly excitable. Small perturbations away from the steady state  $u_1 = 0$  decay back to zero, but larger perturbations cause a large and fast increase in the thrombin concentration (Exercise 16). When  $K_6$  is less than the value at the Hopf bifurcation, this perturbation eventually dies away to zero, behaving much like an action potential (Chapter 5). When  $K_6$  is larger than the value at the Hopf bifurcation, a superthreshold perturbation causes a transition to the higher steady state.

When diffusion is included, the model can behave much like a typical excitable system, as discussed in Chapter 6. A sufficiently large perturbation away from the steady state  $u_1 = 0$  can cause a traveling wave that moves across the domain with a constant speed and shape. Because this is not at all surprising (given the excitable nature of the model) we do not show a picture of this wave.

However, for certain parameter values, something much more interesting happens, as illustrated in Fig. 13.24. Although a traveling wave appears to form in response to the superthreshold perturbation, the wave travels only a short distance before stopping. When the wave stops, it does not die away, but forms a stationary wave that is persistent and stable. This stationary solution corresponds to the experimental observation that the clot spreads only a certain distance before stopping.

Close examination of the solution shows why this happens. Immediately after the perturbation, at  $t = 50$ , the leading edge of the  $u_1$  wave front (the excitation wave) is in front of the leading edge of the  $u_3$  wave front (i.e., the inhibition wave; Fig. 13.24, upper panel). Thus, the excitation wave is able to propagate into the excitable medium. However, although the inhibition wave starts slower than the excitation wave, it eventually



**Figure 13.24** A wave of clotting in (13.115)–(13.117) (upper panel) that gradually slows down and turns into a stationary pattern (lower panel). The parameters are  $K_6 = 0.066$ ,  $D = 2.6 \times 10^{-4}$ , and the times of each plot are given in the figure. The pattern in the lower panel is stable, stationary, and persistent.

catches up. By  $t = 100$ , the leading edge of the inhibition wave has overtaken the leading edge of the excitation wave. This slows down the excitation wave, and eventually stops it. By  $t = 200$ , the inhibition and excitation waves are both stationary, with the inhibition wave forming an inhibition zone around the clot (Fig. 13.24, lower panel).

Thus, this model shows how the interaction of waves of excitation and inhibition can lead to a clot that initially propagates explosively into the blood, but is eventually halted, preventing the uncontrolled spread of clotting.

### 13.6.4 Platelets

The experiments and model discussed in the previous section omit two important features of clotting *in vivo*: the presence of platelets and the fact that blood is often flowing past a clot. When these factors are introduced into a clotting model, the question of how clotting is inhibited and controlled becomes considerably more complicated.

As can be seen from Fig. 13.20, activation of the extrinsic pathway depends on the exposure of the subendothelial surface. However, maintenance of the clotting cascade depends on the presence of activated platelets. Thus, a better understanding of clotting *in vivo* depends on more detailed consideration of platelet dynamics, and the effects of fluid flow.

Platelets are minute round or oval disks 2 to 4 micrometers in diameter. They are formed in the bone marrow from *megakaryocytes*, which are large cells in the bone marrow that fragment into platelets. There are normally between 150,000 and 300,000 platelets per microliter of blood, constituting only a small percentage of the volume ( $\approx 0.3$  percent by volume).

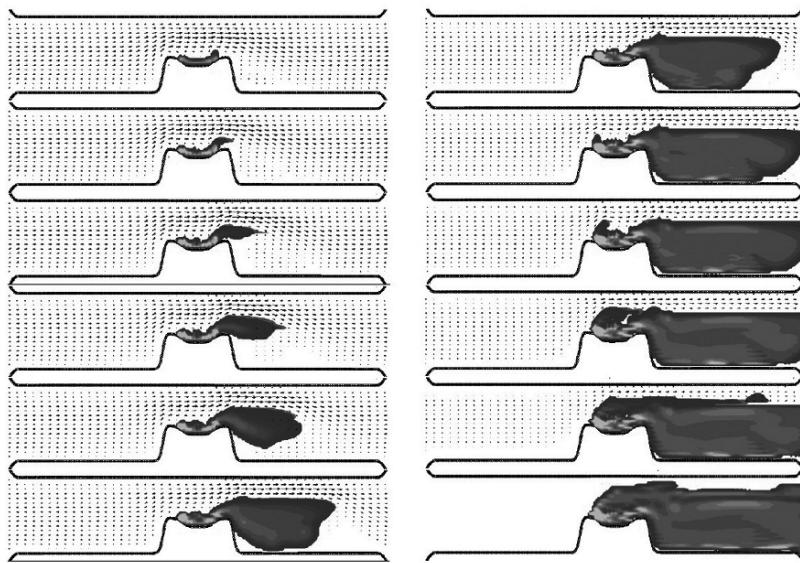
A platelet is an active structure with a half-life of 8 to 12 days. Since platelets are cell fragments with no nucleus, they do not reproduce. A platelet normally circulates with the blood in a dormant, or inactivated, state, in which it does not adhere to other platelets or to the blood vessel wall. However, when platelets come in contact with a damaged vascular surface or sufficient chemical triggers, they become activated and change their characteristics drastically, as follows:

1. The platelet's surface membrane is altered so that the platelet becomes sticky, capable of adhering to other activated platelets or the subendothelial layer.
2. The platelet secretes chemicals, including large amounts of ADP and thrombaxane A<sub>2</sub>, which are capable of activating other platelets.
3. The platelets change from rigid discoidal to highly deformable, extending long, thin appendages called *pseudopodia*.

An important requirement for controlled clotting is that the circulating blood must be able to build a catalytic bed in the vicinity of the injury, even though there is fluid flow. The aggregation of platelets is the means by which a catalytic reactor bed is built, and so is an important part of the process by which the flow of blood from a damaged vessel is halted.

A mathematical model of the aggregation of platelets and the formation of platelet plugs has been formulated and studied by Fogelson (1992) and Fogelson and Guy (2004). The model is a continuum model that assumes that there are concentrations of activated and nonactivated platelets. Platelets are immersed in blood and are neutrally buoyant, moving with the local fluid velocity. There is some chemical, possibly ADP, that is released by platelets when they are activated and that has the effect of stimulating nonactivated cells. Activated cells are sticky and form aggregates when they come into contact with each other.

One can write conservation equations for the density of inactivated and activated platelets. However, because this is an exercise in fluid and continuum mechanics, which is beyond the scope of this text, we do not reproduce these here. Numerical simulation of these equations then demonstrates how platelet aggregates can form in the vicinity of tissue trauma.



**Figure 13.25** Growth of a platelet aggregate in a fluid flow. Fluid is flowing from left to right with velocity vectors shown (the velocity vectors are very small, and difficult to recognize as vectors at this resolution, appearing more like dots). Time is increasing from top left to bottom right, with the panels on the left corresponding to earlier times than the panels on the right. (Fogelson and Guy (2004), Figs. 9 and 10.)

In Fig. 13.25 is shown a series of snapshots of a (two-dimensional) fluid flow past an obstacle, the top of which is exposed subendothelial layer, and thus capable of activating platelets. The figure shows an aggregate of activated platelets growing from the obstacle, which gradually causes the occlusion of the flow (bottom right panel of Fig. 13.25).

The question remains (and is not addressed by these simulations) why the platelet system does not exhibit traveling fronts of aggregation. The putative answer is that smooth (undamaged) vascular walls are nonsticky and that they contain inhibitors of ADP, the primary factor in the activation of platelets, and inhibitors of thrombin, and these prevent the uncontrolled spread of activated platelets.

Another interesting study of clotting inhibition is that of Fogelson and Tania (2005), who propose that purely physical mechanisms can play a larger role than previously realized. In their model, there is competition between the tendency of platelets to stick to, and thus cover up, the subendothelial layer (thus inhibiting formation of the TF:VIIa complex), and the ability of thrombin to activate the platelets. It is essentially a race; if platelets cover the subendothelial layer fast enough, not enough of the IXa:VIIIa or Xa:Va complexes can be formed to maintain the clotting reaction once the TF:VIIa complex is prevented from forming. A clot is thus prevented from forming, since not

enough thrombin can be produced. Formation of the IXa:VIIIa and Xa:Va complexes is also inhibited by the flow, which carries away the reactants by diffusion and convection.

However, if the blood flow is slow enough, or the formation of IXa and VIIIa fast enough, by the time the subendothelial surface is covered up by platelets, enough of the activating complexes have been formed to continue the clotting process.

In this model, purely physical factors such as occlusion of the subendothelial layer, or the transport of reactants by blood flow, are much more significant sources of inhibition than the biochemical mechanisms of inactivation by PCa or antithrombin III.

### 13.7 EXERCISES

---

- What is the volume (per mole) of an ideal gas at room temperature ( $27^\circ\text{C}$ ) and 1 atm pressure? What is its volume at body temperature ( $98^\circ\text{F}$ )?
- Find an analytic relationship for the critical stability curve (Section 13.2.2) relating  $dF(0)$  to  $X/d$  as follows: use that  $F(N) = \frac{F(0)}{1+N^7}$  to solve (13.22) for  $N_0$  as a function of  $X/d$  and then determine  $dF(0)$  using that  $F(N_0) = N_0/X$ .
- A deficiency of vitamin  $\text{B}_{12}$ , or folic acid, is known to cause the production of immature red blood cells with a shortened lifetime of one-half to one-third of normal. What effect does this deficiency have on the population of red blood cells?
- Suppose  $X \rightarrow \infty$  in the red blood cell production model. Show that

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = F(N(t-d)) - \beta N, \quad (13.118)$$

where  $N(t) = \int_0^\infty n(x, t) dx$ .

- Find the stability characteristics for the steady-state solution of this equation.
- Show that the period of oscillation  $T = 2\pi/\omega$  at a Hopf bifurcation point is bounded between  $2d$  and  $4d$ .
- Suppose  $X$  is finite and  $\beta = 0$  in the red blood cell production model. Show that the evolution of  $N$  is described by the delay differential equation

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = F(N(t-d)) - F(N(t-d-X)). \quad (13.119)$$

- The maturation rate of red blood cells in bone marrow varies as a function of erythropoietin levels. Suppose that  $x$  denotes the maturity (rather than chronological age) of a red blood cell. Suppose further that cells are initially formed at maturity  $x = -d$ , are released into the bloodstream at maturity  $x = 0$ , age at the normal chronological rate, and die at age  $x = X$ . Suppose further that the rate of maturation  $G$  is a decreasing function of the total circulating red blood cell count  $N$  and that the rate of cell production at maturity  $x = -d$  is  $F(N)$ .
  - Replace the condition (13.9) with an evolution equation of the form (13.7) to account for maturities  $x$  in the range  $-d < x < 0$ . Specify the boundary condition at  $x = -d$  and require that the flux be continuous at  $x = 0$ . Show that the steady-state solution is independent of the maturation function  $G(N)$ .

- (b) Provide a linear stability analysis for this modified model. Show that
- $$\frac{dn}{dt} = \left( F'(N_0) - \frac{G'(N_0)N_0}{G(N_0)X} \right) \left( n\left(t - \frac{d}{G(N_0)}\right) - n\left(t - \frac{d}{G(N_0)} - X\right) \right), \quad (13.120)$$
- where  $N = N_0(1 + \delta n)$  and  $\delta \ll 1$ .
- (c) How does the variability of  $G$  affect the stability of the steady-state solution? Does this variability make the solution more or less likely to become unstable via a Hopf bifurcation?
7. Show that the solution of the  $k$ th order linear filter
- $$\frac{du_0}{dt} = -\alpha(u_0 - u_1), \quad (13.121)$$
- $$\frac{du_1}{dt} = -\alpha(u_1 - u_2), \quad (13.122)$$
- $$\vdots$$
- $$\frac{du_k}{dt} = -\alpha(u_k - f(t)), \quad (13.123)$$
- is given by the convolution
- $$u_0(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t f(s)g(t-s)ds, \quad (13.124)$$
- where  $g(t)$  is the gamma distribution of order  $k$ ,
- $$g(t) = \frac{\alpha^{k+1}}{\Gamma(k+1)} t^k \exp(-\alpha t). \quad (13.125)$$
8. Numerically simulate (13.7) with boundary data (13.9) with parameters chosen from the stable region and from the unstable region.
9. Show that if (13.31) has a real solution, it must be negative and lie between  $-a$  and  $-\alpha$ .
10. Suppose that a carrier (such as hemoglobin) of a molecule (such as oxygen) has  $n$  independent binding sites, with individual binding and unbinding rates  $k_+$  and  $k_-$ . Let  $c_j$  denote the concentrations of the state with  $j$  molecules bound. Assume that concentrations are in steady state.
- (a) Show that  $c_j = \binom{n}{j} x^j c_0$ , where  $\binom{n}{j} = \frac{n!}{j!(n-j)!}$  is the *binomial coefficient*,  $x = s_0/K$ ,  $K = k_-/k_+$ , and  $s_0$  is the concentration of the carrier molecule.  
Hint: Keep track of the total number of binding sites.
- (b) Find the saturation function in the case that  $n = 4$ .
- (c) Show that the four equilibrium constants  $K_1, K_2, K_3, K_4$  defined in (13.45) are given by  $(K_1, K_2, K_3, K_4) = K(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{3}{2}, 4)$ .
- (d) Estimate  $K$  to give a good fit of this model to the hemoglobin saturation curve. How does this curve compare with the curve (13.47)?
- (e) Determine whether the hemoglobin binding sites are independent. How close are the equilibrium constants here to those found in the text?
11. Approximate numerical data for the hemoglobin saturation curve are found in Table 13.4. Fit these data to a curve of the form (13.47).

**Table 13.4** Approximate numerical data for the hemoglobin saturation curve.

$P_{O_2}$ (mm Hg)	Percent saturation
3.08	2.21
4.61	3.59
6.77	6.08
10.15	10.50
12.31	14.09
15.38	19.34
18.77	28.45
22.77	40.33
25.85	50.0
30.15	60.50
36.00	69.89
45.23	80.11
51.69	83.98
61.85	88.95
75.38	93.37
87.08	95.86
110.5	98.07

Hint: Suppose we have data points  $\{x_i, y_i\}, i = 1, \dots, n$ , that we wish to fit to some function  $y = f(x)$ , and that the function  $f$  depends on parameters  $\{\alpha_i\}, i = 1, \dots, m$ . A fit of the data is achieved when the parameters are picked such that the function

$$F = \sum_{j=1}^n (f(x_j) - y_j)^2 \quad (13.126)$$

is minimized. To find this fit, start with reasonable estimates for the parameters and then allow them to change dynamically (as a function of a timelike variable  $t$ ) according to

$$\frac{d\alpha_k}{dt} = - \sum_{j=1}^n f(x_j) \frac{\partial f(x_j)}{\partial \alpha_k}. \quad (13.127)$$

With this choice,

$$\frac{dF}{dt} = \sum_{k=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n f(x_j) \frac{\partial f(x_j)}{\partial \alpha_k} \frac{d\alpha_k}{dt} \leq 0, \quad (13.128)$$

so that  $F$  is a decreasing function of  $t$ . A fit is found when numerical integration reaches a steady-state solution of (13.127).

12. Construct a Monod–Wyman–Changeux model (Section 1.4.4) for oxygen binding to hemoglobin and determine the saturation function. Fit to the experimental data given in Table 13.4 and compare to the fit of (13.47).
13. (a) If a 25 mM solution of sodium bicarbonate is equilibrated with carbon dioxide at 40 mm Hg partial pressure, the pH is found to be 7.4. What is the equilibrium constant for the bicarbonate–carbon dioxide reaction?  
(b) If the partial pressure of carbon dioxide is increased until the pH is 6.0, what is the bicarbonate concentration? What is the carbon dioxide partial pressure at this pH?

What difference would you expect if this experiment is carried out in whole blood instead of aqueous solution?

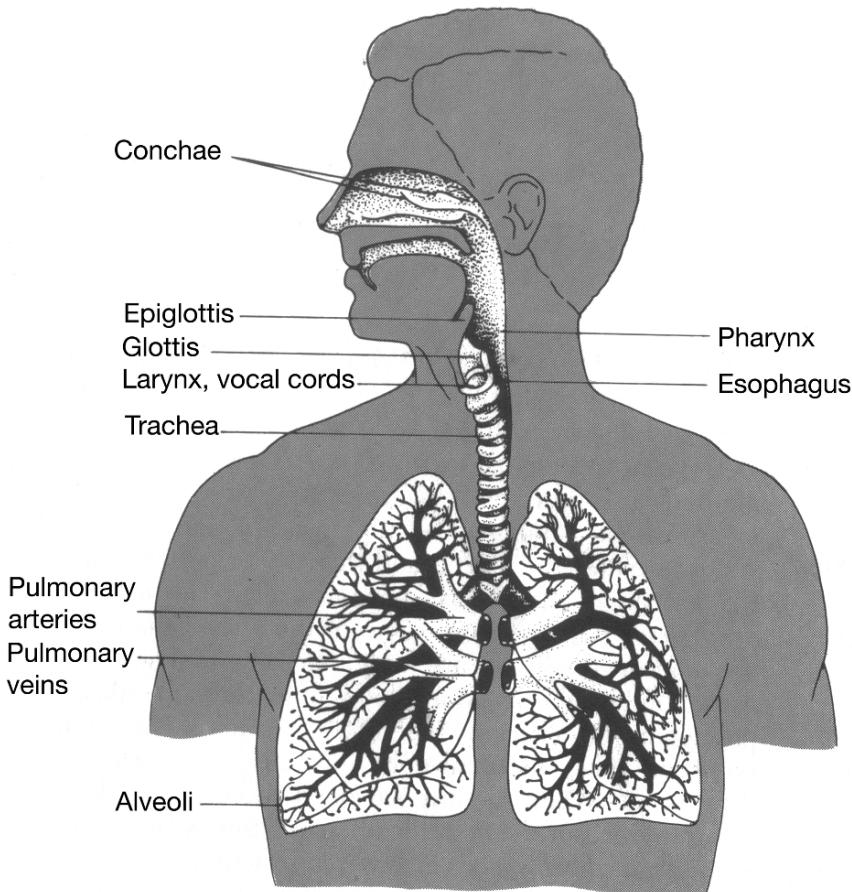
- (c) Pick reasonable values for  $K_1$ ,  $K_2$ , and  $\bar{K}_1$  and find the oxygen saturation curve as a function of  $h$ . (Hint: The parameters must be chosen so that hemoglobin acts as a hydrogen ion buffer at physiological concentrations. So, for example, pick  $K_1$ ,  $K_2$ , and  $\bar{K}_1$  so that  $(\phi(h))^{1/4} = 26 \sigma$  mm Hg at pH = 7.4. You also have to ensure that  $\bar{K}_1 > K_1$  and that  $K_2$  is not too large. Why?)
  - (d) Use this model to estimate the total amount of CO<sub>2</sub> that is transported from the tissues to the lungs and the total amount of O<sub>2</sub> that is transported from the lungs to the tissues. (Determine this by solving (13.60)–(13.64) numerically to find  $h$ ,  $X$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Z$ , and  $W$  at a given [O<sub>2</sub>] and [CO<sub>2</sub>] and finding the difference between arterial and venous quantities.) Remove the Bohr and Haldane effects by setting  $K_1 = \bar{K}_1$ . How does this change the amount of oxygen and carbon dioxide transported? Typical parameter values are  $P_{CO_2}$  in arterial blood, 39 mm Hg;  $P_{CO_2}$  in venous blood, 46 mm Hg;  $P_{O_2}$  in arterial blood, 100 mm Hg;  $P_{O_2}$  in venous blood, 40 mm Hg;  $R_1R_2 = 10^{6.1} M^{-1}$ ;  $T_{Hb} = 3$  mM;  $n = 10$ ; [HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>] = 25 mM, and pH = 7.4 in arterial blood.
14. Develop a detailed model of oxygen and carbon monoxide binding with hemoglobin. How can the fact that CO has 210 times the affinity for binding be used to estimate the equilibrium coefficients?
15. Sketch the phase portraits for (13.102)–(13.103) in Case III ( $\alpha > 0$ ,  $\beta > 0$ ) as follows:
- (a)  $\xi < \frac{1}{U_0}$ ,  $\xi < \frac{1}{\beta}$ . (For example,
    - i.  $\xi = 1.0$ ,  $\beta = 0.5$ ,  $\alpha = 0.5$ ,  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ , and
    - ii.  $\xi = 1.5$ ,  $\beta = 0.5$ ,  $\alpha = 1.3$ ,  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ .)
  - (b)  $\xi < \frac{1}{U_0}$ ,  $\xi > \frac{1}{\beta}$ . (For example,  $\xi = 1.8$ ,  $\beta = 0.6$ ,  $\alpha = 0.5$ ,  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ .)
  - (c)  $\xi > \frac{1}{U_0}$ ,  $\xi < \frac{1}{\beta}$ . (For example,  $\xi = 2.2$ ,  $\beta = 0.3$ ,  $\alpha = 0.5$ ,  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ .)
  - (d)  $\xi > \frac{1}{U_0}$ ,  $\xi > \frac{1}{\beta}$ . (For example,  $\xi = 2.2$ ,  $\beta = 2.0$ ,  $\alpha = 0.5$ ,  $\beta_0 = 1.0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0.2$ .)
- Locate each of these cases in Fig. 13.17.
16. Show that the clotting model of (13.115)–(13.117) is excitable. Investigate the response to perturbations away from the  $u_1 = 0$  steady state. Do this for two different cases: when  $K_6$  is less than the value at the Hopf bifurcation, and when  $K_6$  is larger than the value at the Hopf bifurcation.
-

# Respiration

The respiratory system is responsible for gas transfer between the tissues and the outside air. Carbon dioxide that is produced by metabolism in the tissues must be moved by the blood to the lungs, where it is lost to the outside air, and oxygen that is supplied to the tissues must be extracted from the outside air by the lungs.

The nose, mouth, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchial trees, lung air sacs and respiratory muscles are the structures that make up the respiratory system (Fig. 14.1). The nasal cavities are specialized for warming and moistening inspired air and for filtering the air to remove large particles. The larynx, or “voice box,” contains the vocal folds that vibrate as air passes between them to produce sounds. Below the larynx the respiratory system divides into *airways* and *alveoli*. The airways consist of a series of branching tubes that become smaller in diameter and shorter in length as they extend deeper into the lung tissue. They terminate after about 23 levels of branches in blind sacs, the alveoli. The *terminal bronchioles* represent the deepest point of the bronchial tree to which inspired air can penetrate by flowing along a pressure gradient. Beyond the terminal bronchioles, simple diffusion along concentration gradients is primarily responsible for the movement of gases.

Alveoli are thin-walled air sacs that provide the surface across which gases are exchanged (Fig. 14.2). Each lung contains about 300 million alveoli that are surrounded by respiratory membranes that serve to bring air and blood into close contact over a large surface area. In the human lung, from 70 to 140 ml of blood is spread over approximately  $70 \text{ m}^2$ .



**Figure 14.1** Diagram of the respiratory passages. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 37-9, p. 486.)

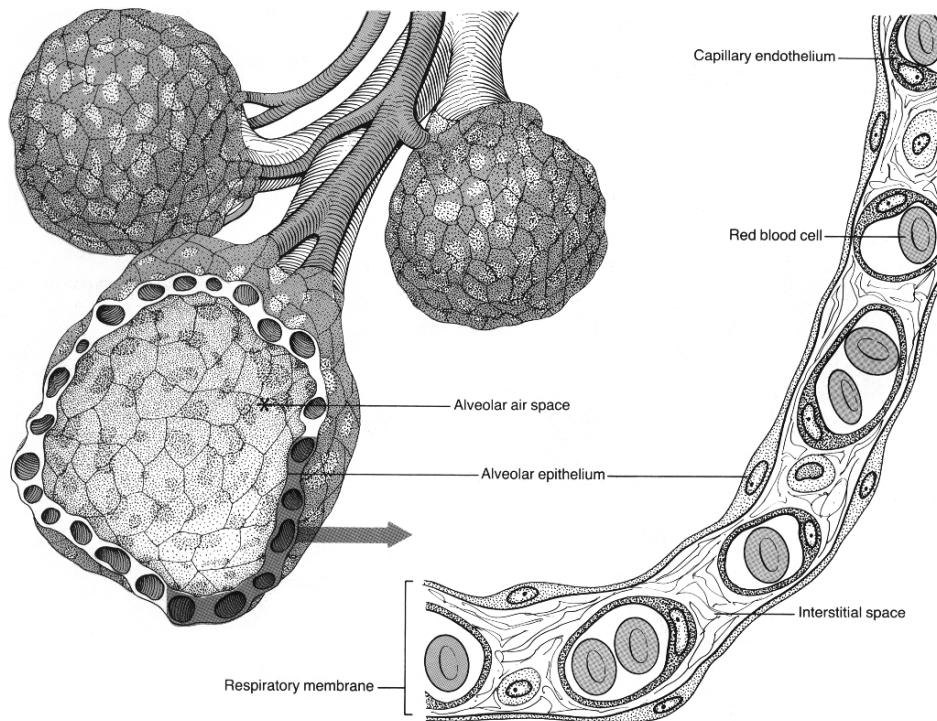
## 14.1 Capillary–Alveoli Gas Exchange

### 14.1.1 Diffusion Across an Interface

Recall from Chapter 13 that the partial pressure of a gas is defined as the mole fraction of the gas multiplied by the total pressure. If a gas with partial pressure  $P_s$  is in contact with a liquid, the steady-state concentration  $U$  of gas in the liquid is given by

$$U = \sigma P_s, \quad (14.1)$$

where  $\sigma$  is the solubility of the gas in the liquid. Because of this, we define the partial pressure of a dissolved gas with concentration  $U$  to be  $U/\sigma$ .



**Figure 14.2** The alveoli, or air sacs, of the lung are covered by an extensive network of capillaries that form a thin layer of blood for the exchange of gases. (Davis, Holtz, and Davis, 1985, Fig. 19-4, p. 391.)

Now suppose that a gas with partial pressure  $P_g$  is brought into contact with a liquid within which that same gas is dissolved with concentration  $U$ , and thus partial pressure  $U/\sigma$ . If  $U/\sigma$  is not equal to  $P_g$ , one expects a net flow of gas across the interface. The simplest model (but not necessarily the most accurate) assumes that the flow is linearly proportional to the difference in partial pressures across the interface, and thus

$$q = D_s \left( P_g - \frac{U}{\sigma} \right), \quad (14.2)$$

where  $q$  is the net flux per unit area of the gas (positive when gas is flowing from the gaseous phase to the dissolved phase), and  $D_s$  is the *surface diffusion constant*.

### 14.1.2 Capillary-Alveolar Transport

To understand something about the transport of a gas across the capillary wall into the alveolar space, we begin with the simplest possible model. We suppose that a

gas such as oxygen or carbon dioxide is dissolved in blood at some concentration  $U$  uniformly across the cross-section of the capillary. The blood flows along a capillary that is bounded by alveolar air space. The partial pressure of the gas in the alveolar space,  $P_g$ , is taken to be constant.

Consider a segment of the capillary, of length  $L$ , with constant cross-sectional area  $A$  and perimeter  $p$ . The total amount of the dissolved gas contained in the capillary at any time is  $A \int_0^L U(x, t) dx$ . Since mass is conserved, we have

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( A \int_0^L U(x, t) dx \right) = v(0)AU(0, t) - v(L)AU(L, t) + p \int_0^L q(x, t) dt, \quad (14.3)$$

where  $v(x)$  is the velocity of the fluid in the capillary, and  $q$  is the flux (positive inward, with units of moles per time per unit area) of gas along the boundary of the capillary. This assumes that diffusion along the length of the capillary is negligible compared to diffusion across the capillary wall. Differentiating (14.3) with respect to  $L$  and replacing  $L$  by  $x$  gives the conservation law

$$U_t + (vU)_x = \frac{pq}{A}. \quad (14.4)$$

Finally, if we assume that the flow velocity  $v$  is constant along the capillary, then using (14.2) we obtain

$$U_t + vU_x = \frac{pD_s}{A} \left( P_g - \frac{U}{\sigma} \right) = D_m(\sigma P_g - U), \quad (14.5)$$

where  $D_m = \chi D_s / \sigma$ , and  $\chi = p/A$  is the surface-to-volume ratio. Notice that  $D_m$  has units of  $(\text{time})^{-1}$ , so it is the inverse of a time constant, the *membrane exchange rate*.

At steady state the conservation law (14.5) reduces to the first-order, linear ordinary differential equation

$$v \frac{dU}{dx} = D_m(\sigma P_g - U). \quad (14.6)$$

Note that, as one would expect intuitively, the rate of change of  $U$  at the steady state is inversely proportional to the fluid velocity. Now we suppose that the concentration  $U$  at the inflow  $x = 0$  is fixed at  $U_0$  (at partial pressure  $P_0 = U_0/\sigma$ ). At steady state, the concentration at each position  $x$  is given by the exponentially decaying function

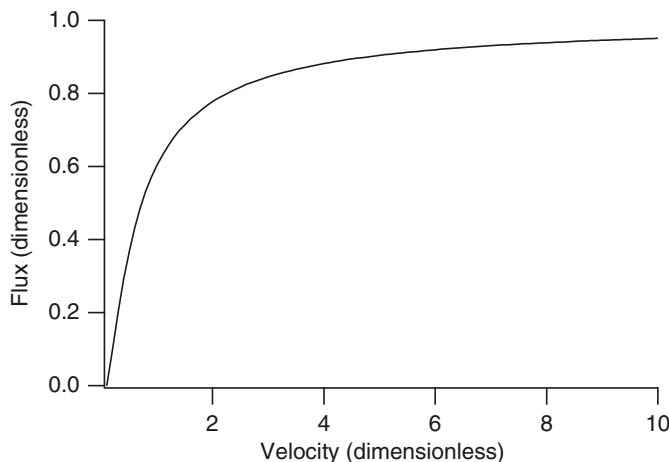
$$U(x) = \sigma P_g + (U_0 - \sigma P_g)e^{-D_m x/v}. \quad (14.7)$$

If the exposed section of the capillary has length  $L$ , the total flux of gas across the wall is  $Q = p \int_0^L q dx = vA[U(L) - U_0]$ , which is

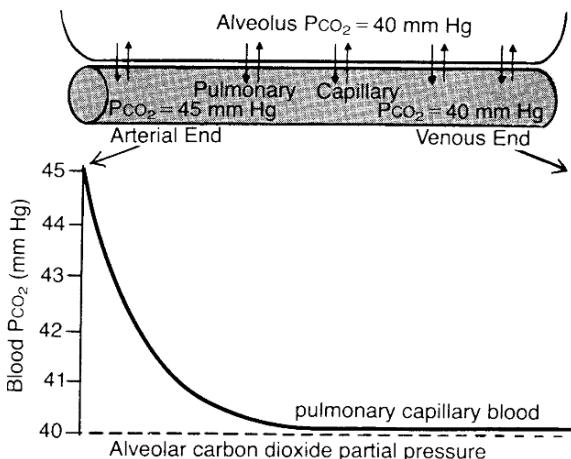
$$Q = vA\sigma(P_g - P_0)(1 - e^{-D_m L/v}). \quad (14.8)$$

Plotted in Fig. 14.3 is the nondimensional flux

$$\bar{Q} = \frac{Q}{D_m L A \sigma (P_0 - P_g)} = \frac{v}{D_m L} \left( 1 - e^{-\frac{D_m L}{v}} \right). \quad (14.9)$$



**Figure 14.3** Dimensionless transmural flux  $\bar{Q}$  as a function of dimensionless flow velocity  $\frac{v}{D_m L}$  from (14.9).



**Figure 14.4** Loss of carbon dioxide from the pulmonary capillary blood into the alveolus. (The curve in this figure was constructed from data in Milhorn and Pulley, 1968). Figure from Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 40-6, p. 515.)

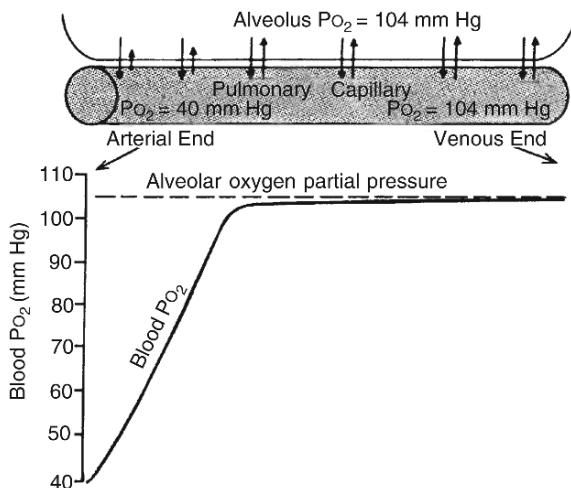
Note that

$$Q \rightarrow vA\sigma(P_g - P_0) \quad (14.10)$$

in the limit  $D_m L/v \rightarrow \infty$ . Thus, an infinitely long capillary has only a finite total flux, as the dissolved gas concentration approaches the alveolar concentration along the length of the capillary.

Data on the diffusion of carbon dioxide from the pulmonary blood into the alveolus (Fig. 14.4) suggest that carbon dioxide is lost into the alveolus at an exponential rate, consistent with (14.7). Furthermore, because the solubility of carbon dioxide in water is quite high, the difference between the partial pressure for the entering blood and the alveolar air is small, about 5 mm Hg.

In contrast, the solubility of oxygen in blood is small (about 20 times smaller than carbon dioxide, see Table 13.2), and although the difference in partial pressures is



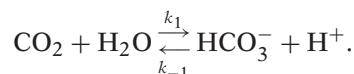
**Figure 14.5** Uptake of oxygen by the pulmonary capillary blood. (The curve in this figure was constructed from data in Milhorn and Pulley, *Biophys. J.* 8:337, 1968. Figure from Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 40-1, p. 514.)

larger, this is not adequate to account for the balance of oxygen inflow and carbon dioxide outflow. That is, if (14.10) is relevant, then, in order to maintain a similar transport, a decrease in  $\sigma$  by a factor of 20 requires a corresponding increase by a factor of 20 for the difference in partial pressures. Thus, if this is the correct mechanism for carbon dioxide and oxygen transport, the difference  $P_0 - P_g$  for oxygen should be about twenty times larger than for carbon dioxide. Since  $104 - 40 \neq 20(45 - 40)$  (using typical numbers from Figs. 14.4 and 14.5), there is reason to doubt this model.

Secondly, the data in Fig. 14.5 suggest that the uptake of oxygen by the capillary blood is not exponential with distance, but nearly linear for the first third of the distance, where it becomes fully saturated. We consider a model of this below. First, however, we discuss the effects of blood chemistry on gas exchange, which was ignored in the above model.

### 14.1.3 Carbon Dioxide Removal

Blood chemistry plays a significant role in facilitating the transport of gases between blood and alveoli. To understand something of this facilitation, we first consider a simple model of carbon dioxide transport that takes the carbon dioxide–bicarbonate chemistry into account. We assume that carbon dioxide is converted to bicarbonate via the reaction



This is the carbonic anhydrase reaction discussed in Section 13.3.3. Because it has little effect, we ignore the intermediary  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ .

Now we write conservation equations for the two chemical species  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (in steady state, and ignoring diffusion within the capillary) as

$$v \frac{dU}{dx} = D_{\text{CO}_2}(\sigma_{\text{CO}_2} P_{\text{CO}_2} - U) + k_{-1}[\text{H}^+]V - k_1 U, \quad (14.11)$$

$$v \frac{dV}{dx} = k_1 U - k_{-1}[\text{H}^+]V, \quad (14.12)$$

where  $U = [\text{CO}_2]$ ,  $V = [\text{HCO}_3^-]$ . Notice that  $D_{\text{CO}_2}$  is a rate constant, similar to  $D_m$  above.

Although this is a linear problem and it can be solved exactly, it is illustrative to use an approximate, singular perturbation technique, as this technique is useful in the next section. First, notice that we can add (14.11) and (14.12) to obtain

$$v \frac{d}{dx}(U + V) = D_{\text{CO}_2}(\sigma_{\text{CO}_2} P_{\text{CO}_2} - U). \quad (14.13)$$

Now we assume that  $V$  equilibrates rapidly, so that it can be taken to be in quasi-steady state. Accordingly, we set  $V = K_c U$ , where  $K_c = \frac{k_1}{k_{-1}[\text{H}^+]}$ . It follows that, assuming that  $[\text{H}^+]$  is constant,

$$v(1 + K_c) \frac{dU}{dx} = D_{\text{CO}_2}(\sigma_{\text{CO}_2} P_{\text{CO}_2} - U). \quad (14.14)$$

This equation is identical in form to (14.6). If we take the inlet conditions to be  $U = U_0 = \sigma_{\text{CO}_2} P_0$  and  $V = V_0 = K_c U_0$ , then the total flux  $Q$  is

$$Q = vA(1 + K_c)\sigma_{\text{CO}_2} (P_0 - P_{\text{CO}_2}) (1 - e^{-D_{\text{CO}_2}L/(v(1 + K_c))}), \quad (14.15)$$

and in the limit as  $D_{\text{CO}_2}L/v \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$Q \rightarrow vA(1 + K_c)\sigma_{\text{CO}_2} (P_0 - P_{\text{CO}_2}), \quad (14.16)$$

which is a factor of  $1 + K_c$  larger than in (14.10). The only difference between this flux (14.15) and the original (14.8) is that the velocity  $v$  has been multiplied by the factor  $1 + K_c$ . In other words, the conversion of carbon dioxide to bicarbonate via the carbonic anhydrase reaction effectively increases the flow rate by the factor  $1 + K_c$ .

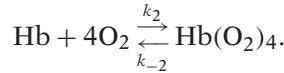
The equilibrium constant for the bicarbonate–carbon dioxide reaction is known to be  $\log_{10}(\frac{k_1}{k_{-1}}) = -6.1$  (see also Chapter 13, Exercise 13a). Thus (since  $\text{pH} = -\log_{10}[\text{H}^+]$  with  $[\text{H}^+]$  in moles per liter), at  $\text{pH} = 7.4$ , we have  $K_c = 20$ , and the improvement in carbon dioxide transport because of the carbonic anhydrase reaction is substantial.

The improvement in total flux arises because the conversion of bicarbonate to carbon dioxide continually replenishes the carbon dioxide that is lost to the alveolar air. Thus, the carbon dioxide concentration in the capillary does not fall so quickly, leading to an increase in the total flux.

#### 14.1.4 Oxygen Uptake

The chemistry for the absorption of oxygen by hemoglobin has a similar, but nonlinear, effect. We take a simple model of the chemistry of hemoglobin (discussed in Section

13.3.1), namely



Of course, there are more detailed models of hemoglobin chemistry, but the qualitative behavior is affected little by these details. We write the conservation equations as

$$v \frac{dW}{dx} = D_{\text{O}_2}(\sigma_{\text{O}_2} P_{\text{O}_2} - W) + 4k_{-2}Y - 4k_2ZW^4, \quad (14.17)$$

$$v \frac{dY}{dx} = k_2ZW^4 - k_{-2}Y, \quad (14.18)$$

$$v \frac{dZ}{dx} = k_{-2}Y - k_2ZW^4, \quad (14.19)$$

where  $W = [\text{O}_2]$ ,  $Y = [\text{Hb}(\text{O}_2)_4]$ ,  $Z = [\text{Hb}]$ , and  $D_{\text{O}_2}$  is the oxygen exchange rate constant. The last of these equations is superfluous, since total hemoglobin is conserved, and so we take  $Z + Y = Z_0$ . Notice further that (14.17) and (14.18) can be added to obtain

$$v \frac{d}{dx}(W + 4Y) = D_{\text{O}_2}(\sigma_{\text{O}_2} P_{\text{O}_2} - W). \quad (14.20)$$

We expect oxygen uptake by hemoglobin to be fast compared to the transmural exchange, so take  $Y$  to be in quasi-steady state, setting

$$Y = Z_0 \frac{W^4}{K_{\text{O}_2}^4 + W^4}, \quad (14.21)$$

where  $K_{\text{O}_2}^4 = k_{-2}/k_2$ . On substitution into (14.20) we find

$$v \frac{d}{dx} \left( W + 4Z_0 \frac{W^4}{K_{\text{O}_2}^4 + W^4} \right) = D_{\text{O}_2}(\sigma_{\text{O}_2} P_{\text{O}_2} - W). \quad (14.22)$$

More generally, if  $f(W)$  is the oxygen saturation curve for hemoglobin, then

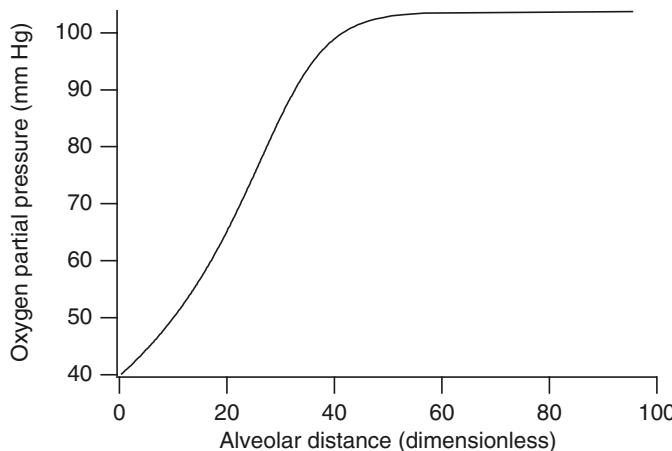
$$v \frac{d}{dx}(W + 4Z_0f(W)) = D_{\text{O}_2}(\sigma_{\text{O}_2} P_{\text{O}_2} - W). \quad (14.23)$$

This equation is a nonlinear first-order ordinary differential equation, which, being separable, can be solved exactly. The solution is given implicitly by

$$\int_{W_1}^{W_2} \frac{1 + 4Z_0f'(W)}{\sigma_{\text{O}_2} P_{\text{O}_2} - W} dW = \frac{D_{\text{O}_2}L}{v}, \quad (14.24)$$

and the total flux of oxygen is given by

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= A \int_0^L D_{\text{O}_2}(\sigma_{\text{O}_2} P_{\text{O}_2} - W) dx \\ &= Av \int_0^L \frac{d}{dx}(W + 4Z_0f(W)) dx \\ &= Av(W + 4Z_0f(W))|_{W_0}^{W_1}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.25)$$



**Figure 14.6** Oxygen partial pressure as a function of non-dimensional distance  $\frac{D_{O_2}x}{v}$ .

Finally, using (14.24) we can find the rate of oxygen uptake as a function of length along the capillary. In Fig. 14.6 is shown the partial pressure of oxygen, plotted as a function of the dimensionless distance  $D_{O_2}x/v$  along the capillary. The significant observation is that oxygen partial pressure rises steeply and nearly linearly, until it saturates, comparing well with the experimental data shown in Fig. 14.5.

The exact solution (14.24) does not provide much insight. It is more useful to compare (14.23) with (14.14), in which the flux of carbon dioxide is facilitated by the factor  $K_c$ . If we rewrite (14.23) as

$$v(1 + 4Z_0f'(W)) \frac{dW}{dx} = D_{O_2}(\sigma_{O_2}P_{O_2} - W), \quad (14.26)$$

we see that there is facilitation of oxygen flux by the factor  $1 + 4Z_0f'(W)$ . Clearly, the two ways to exploit this facilitation are to have a high concentration of hemoglobin and to use a saturation curve  $f(W)$  with a steep slope in the range of operating values.

The maximal flux enhancement can be substantial. Letting  $f(W) = W^4/(K_{O_2}^4 + W^4)$ , we find that  $f$  has a maximal derivative of  $1/K_{O_2}$ , which occurs when  $W = K_{O_2}$ . Choosing  $K_{O_2} = 30\sigma_{O_2}$  mm Hg (see Section 13.3.1, and Fig. 14.8), we get  $K_{O_2} = 4.2 \times 10^{-2}$  mM, where the value of oxygen solubility is taken from Table 13.2.

Since the total concentration of hemoglobin in blood is around 2 mM (it varies from males to females, and from children to adults, but this is a typical concentration), we find the maximal enhancement of oxygen flux by a factor of  $1 + 8/(4.2 \times 10^{-2}) \approx 200$ .

Under normal conditions the actual enhancement is, of course, less than this, as the system does not operate exclusively at the point of maximum slope of  $f$ . A more realistic estimate of the enhancement due to hemoglobin can be obtained by comparing how much oxygen is carried by the hemoglobin, and how much is carried in solution. When hemoglobin is completely saturated with oxygen, 100 mls of blood carries about 20 mls of oxygen, the so-called *20 volumes per cent*. However, assuming an alveolar oxygen partial pressure of 150 mm Hg, and an oxygen solubility of  $1.4 \times 10^{-6}$  moles

per liter per mm Hg, it follows that, in the absence of hemoglobin, 100 mls of blood could contain only about 0.5 mls of dissolved oxygen (equivalent to a concentration of about  $2.1 \times 10^{-4}$  moles of oxygen per liter of blood). Thus, a more realistic estimate of the maximal enhancement due to hemoglobin is a factor of around 40.

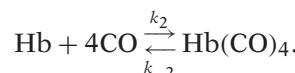
In reality, about 97% of oxygen is transported by hemoglobin, with the other 3% transported as dissolved oxygen, giving an enhancement factor of around 32.

There are a number of much more complicated models of gas transport and exchange in the literature. Ben-Tal (2006) reviews a range of models of gas exchange in the lungs, ranging from the simplest to the more complex, while Whiteley et al. (2001, 2002, 2003b) study a model in the same spirit as the simple model we present here, but with more accurate spatial properties, including the shape of the red blood cells. The most complex models, at least from the point of view of spatial structure, are those of Tawhai and her colleagues (Tawhai et al., 2004, 2006; Tawhai and Burrowes, 2003) who construct computational models of the entire pulmonary branching structure and study ventilation-perfusion at the level of the entire lung.

### 14.1.5 Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

Carbon monoxide poisoning occurs because carbon monoxide competes with oxygen for hemoglobin binding sites. The goal of this section is to see how this competition for hemoglobin affects oxygen exchange and how carbon monoxide can be eliminated from the blood.

To model this problem we assume that the chemistry for carbon monoxide binding with hemoglobin is the same as for oxygen, except that the affinity of carbon monoxide for hemoglobin is much larger (about 200 times) than the affinity of oxygen for hemoglobin. Thus,



The conservation equations for carbon monoxide gaseous exchange in the alveolus are similar in form to those for oxygen, being (ignoring diffusion of the dissolved gases)

$$\nu \frac{dU}{dx} = D_{\text{CO}}(\sigma_{\text{CO}} P_{\text{CO}} - U) + 4k_{-3}S - 4k_3 Z U^4, \quad (14.27)$$

$$\nu \frac{dS}{dx} = k_3 Z U^4 - k_{-3}S, \quad (14.28)$$

where  $U = [\text{CO}]$ ,  $S = [\text{Hb}(\text{CO})_4]$ ,  $Z = [\text{Hb}]$ , and  $D_{\text{CO}}$  is the carbon monoxide exchange rate constant. The balance of oxygen is governed by (14.17) and (14.18). Conservation of hemoglobin implies that  $Z + Y + S = Z_0$ .

As before, (14.20) holds, as does

$$\nu \frac{d}{dx}(U + 4S) = D_{\text{CO}}(\sigma_{\text{CO}} P_{\text{CO}} - U). \quad (14.29)$$

Now we assume that both carbon monoxide and oxygen are in quasi-steady state, so that

$$K_{\text{CO}}^4 S = ZU^4, \quad K_{\text{O}_2}^4 Y = ZW^4, \quad (14.30)$$

where  $K_{\text{CO}}^4 = k_{-3}/k_3$ ,  $K_{\text{O}_2}^4 = k_{-2}/k_2$ . It is convenient to introduce scaled variables  $w$  and  $u$  with  $w = K_{\text{O}_2}^{-1}W$ ,  $u = K_{\text{CO}}^{-1}U$ . It follows from  $Z + Y + S = Z_0$  that

$$S = Z_0 \frac{u^4}{1 + w^4 + u^4}, \quad (14.31)$$

$$Y = Z_0 \frac{w^4}{1 + w^4 + u^4}, \quad (14.32)$$

so that

$$\nu \frac{d}{dx} \left( w + 4z_0 \frac{w^4}{1 + w^4 + u^4} \right) = D_{\text{O}_2}(w^* - w), \quad (14.33)$$

$$\nu \frac{d}{dx} \left( u + 4\beta z_0 \frac{u^4}{1 + w^4 + u^4} \right) = D_{\text{CO}}(u^* - u), \quad (14.34)$$

where  $z_0 = Z_0/K_{\text{O}_2}$ ,  $\beta = K_{\text{O}_2}/K_{\text{CO}}$ ,  $w^* = K_{\text{O}_2}^{-1}\sigma_{\text{O}_2}P_{\text{O}_2}$ ,  $u^* = K_{\text{CO}}^{-1}\sigma_{\text{CO}}P_{\text{CO}}$ .

While we cannot solve this system of differential equations explicitly, the difficulty can be readily seen. Because  $\beta$  is large (on the order of 200), the total carbon monoxide concentration changes as a function of  $x$  slowly, much more slowly than does the total oxygen concentration. Thus,  $w$  increases quickly to  $w^*$ , releasing some carbon monoxide as it does so, while  $u + 4\beta z_0 \frac{u^4}{1 + w^4 + u^4}$  remains essentially fixed. As a result, in the length of the alveolus, oxygen is recharged, but very little carbon monoxide is eliminated.

The lethality of carbon monoxide can be seen from a simple steady-state analysis. Suppose that  $u = u^*$  is at steady state with the environment, so that no carbon monoxide is gained or lost in the alveoli. The concentration of oxygen in the blood is proportional to  $w + 4z_0 \frac{w^4}{1 + w^4 + u^4}$ , so that the rate of oxygen transport is proportional to

$$M = w^* + 4z_0 \frac{(w^*)^4}{1 + (w^*)^4 + u^4} - w_0 - 4z_0 \frac{w_0^4}{1 + w_0^4 + u^4}, \quad (14.35)$$

where  $w_0$  is the alveolar input level and  $w^*$  is the output level from the alveolus. When there is no carbon monoxide present (i.e., when  $u = 0$ ), the input and output levels are 40 and 104 mm Hg, respectively, so that (with  $K_{\text{O}_2} = 30\sigma$  mm Hg)  $w_0 = 40/30 = 1.333$ ,  $w^* = 104/30 = 3.47$ . Thus, with normal metabolism, the required flow rate has  $M = 53$ , where we have set  $z_0 = 52$ . When carbon monoxide is present, this same flow rate must be maintained (as the need of the tissues for oxygen remains unchanged), but now the presence of  $u$  in the denominator changes things. Keeping  $M$  fixed, we calculate that if  $u$  is greater than 4.64, then the incoming blood has  $w_0 < 0$ , so that the tissue is in oxygen debt. With  $\beta = 200$ ,  $u = 4.64$  is equivalent to a carbon monoxide partial pressure

of 0.7 mm Hg, a mere 0.1% by volume. In other words, an ambient concentration of 0.1% carbon monoxide leads to certain death because of oxygen depletion.

Since  $\beta z_0$  is so large (on the order of  $10^4$ ), we can approximate the dynamics of carbon monoxide by

$$4\beta z_0 v \frac{d}{dx} \left( \frac{u^4}{1 + (w^*)^4 + u^4} \right) = D_{CO}(u^* - u). \quad (14.36)$$

If we set

$$F = \frac{u^4}{1 + (w^*)^4 + u^4}, \quad (14.37)$$

we find that

$$\frac{dF}{dx} = -\frac{D_{CO}}{4\beta z_0 v} (1 + (w^*)^4)^{1/4} \left( \frac{F}{1 - F} \right)^{1/4}, \quad (14.38)$$

where we have taken  $u^* = 0$ , assuming that the victim is placed in a carbon-monoxide-free environment. Clearly, the rate of carbon monoxide elimination is proportional to  $(1 + (w^*)^4)^{1/4}$ , which for large  $w^*$  is linear in  $w^*$ . Thus, (and not surprising) the rate of carbon monoxide elimination can be increased by placing the victim in an environment of high oxygen.

In hospitals it is typical to place a carbon monoxide poisoning victim in an environment of oxygen at 2–2.5 atm. At 2 atmospheres (1 atm = 760 mm Hg),  $w^* = (2 \times 760/30) = 50.7$ , compared to  $w^* = 3.5$  at normal oxygen levels, giving an increase in the rate of carbon monoxide elimination of about 14.

## 14.2 Ventilation and Perfusion

Gas exchange is mediated by the combination of ventilation of the alveoli with inspired air and the perfusion of the capillaries with blood. It is the balance of these two that determines the gas content of the lungs and of the recharged blood.

The most important early studies of ventilation and perfusion were those of Fenn et al. (1946), Rahn (1949), and Riley and Cournand (1949, 1950). A clear nonmathematical discussion is given by West (1985), who also gives a brief summary of the history of such investigations in West (2004).

To see how this balance is maintained, suppose that  $\dot{V}$  is the volume flow rate of air that participates in the exchange of the alveolar content. Not all inspired air participates in this exchange, because some inspired air never reaches the terminal bronchioles. The parts of the lung that are ventilated but do not participate in gaseous exchange are called the *anatomical dead space*. In normal breathing, the total amount of inspired air is about 500 ml per breath (men 630 ml; women 390 ml). Of this, 150 ml is anatomical dead space, so only 350 ml participates in alveolar gaseous exchange. With 15 breaths per minute,  $\dot{V}$  is about 5250 ml/min.

Now suppose that  $Q$  is the volume flow rate of blood into and out of the alveolar capillaries. Cardiac output is about 70 ml per beat, so at 72 beats per minute,  $Q$  is about 5000 ml/min. The ratio  $\dot{V}/Q$  is called the *ventilation-perfusion ratio*, and it is the most important determinant of lung–blood gas content.

If  $P_i$  and  $P_a$  are the pressures of a gas in the inspired air and in the alveolar air, respectively (see Fig. 14.7), then the rate at which the gas is taken out of the alveolus by ventilation (in moles/sec) is

$$\dot{V} \left( \frac{P_a - P_i}{RT} \right). \quad (14.39)$$

Note that the factor  $RT$  is needed to convert pressures to concentrations. Similarly, the rate at which the gas is brought into the alveolus by the blood (again in moles/second) is given by

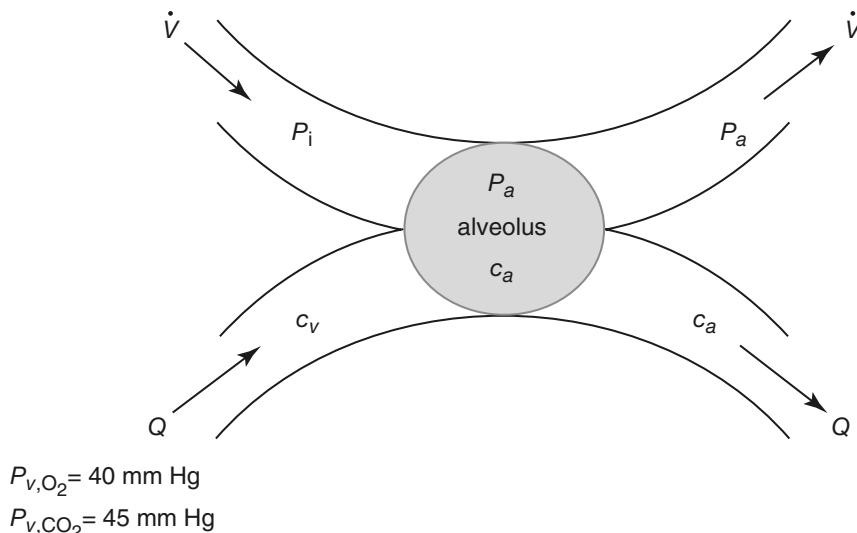
$$Q(c_v - c_a), \quad (14.40)$$

where  $c_v$  and  $c_a$  are the venous and alveolar gas concentrations in the blood. Since the rate at which the gas is removed by ventilation must be in balance with the rate at which it is brought in by the blood, it must be that

$$\frac{\dot{V}}{Q} = \frac{(c_v - c_a)RT}{(P_a - P_i)}. \quad (14.41)$$

$$P_{i,O_2} = 150 \text{ mm Hg}$$

$$P_{i,CO_2} = 0 \text{ mm Hg}$$



**Figure 14.7** Schematic diagram of gas exchange in an alveolus.

Textbooks on respiratory physiology typically use different units from those used here, and this can be confusing for those new to the field. Since the gas in the alveolus is always saturated with water vapor and is at body temperature, the partial pressures of alveolar gas are measured at body temperature and pressure, saturated (BTPS). However, blood gas concentrations are measured in the usual way, at standard temperature and pressure, dry (STPD). To understand the difference between these units, suppose we have one mole of gas at standard temperature (273 K) and standard pressure (1 atmosphere or 760 mm Hg). Since  $PV = nRT$ , the STPD volume of the mole of gas,  $V_{\text{STPD}}$  is

$$V_{\text{STPD}} = \frac{273R}{760}. \quad (14.42)$$

Similarly, for one mole of gas at BTPS, suppose that the total pressure, including the pressure due to water vapor, is  $P$  (in mm Hg). At body temperature (310 K), the partial pressure of water vapor is 47 mm Hg, and thus the partial pressure of the mole of gas is  $P - 47$  mm Hg. Hence, the BTPS volume of the mole of gas is

$$V_{\text{BTPS}} = \frac{310R}{P - 47}. \quad (14.43)$$

It follows that

$$V_{\text{STPD}} = V_{\text{BTPS}} \frac{273 \times (P - 47)}{310 \times 760} = \frac{P - 47}{863} V_{\text{BTPS}}, \quad (14.44)$$

where the ambient pressure,  $P$ , is measured in mm Hg.

To return to gas exchange, if we were considering an inert gas that merely dissolves in blood, (14.41) would be relatively simple. The alveolar concentration  $c_a$  would be linearly related to the alveolar pressure  $P_a$  by the solubility of the gas. However, in the case of oxygen and carbon dioxide, this relationship is complicated by the blood chemistry.

It is reasonable to assume that the two most important respiratory gases, carbon dioxide and oxygen, are equilibrated when they leave the alveolus in the capillaries. In other words, the partial pressures of carbon dioxide and oxygen in the alveolus and in the blood leaving the pulmonary capillary are the same. Of course, this is not true at high perfusion rates, but it is a satisfactory assumption at normal physiological flow rates.

Because carbon dioxide is quickly converted to bicarbonate, the total blood carbon dioxide (i.e., both free and converted) is given by

$$[\text{CO}_2] = \sigma_{\text{CO}_2}(1 + K_c)P_{\text{CO}_2}, \quad (14.45)$$

as discussed in Section 14.1.3. In other words, in the notation of Fig. 14.7,  $c_a = \sigma_{\text{CO}_2}(1 + K_c)P_a$  for carbon dioxide. A similar expression holds for  $c_v$  and  $P_v$ , where  $P_v$  is the pressure of carbon dioxide in the venous blood. In addition, the concentration of carbon dioxide in inspired air is very close to zero ( $P_i = 0$ ). Thus, for carbon dioxide, the

ventilation–perfusion ratio must satisfy

$$\frac{\dot{V}}{Q} = \sigma_{CO_2} RT (1 + K_c) \frac{(P_{v,CO_2} - P_{a,CO_2})}{P_{a,CO_2}}, \quad (14.46)$$

where the additional subscript CO<sub>2</sub> is to distinguish these pressures from those of oxygen.

Since  $P_{v,CO_2} = 45$  mm Hg, we can use (14.46) to plot alveolar CO<sub>2</sub> pressure as a function of the ventilation–perfusion ratio (Fig. 14.8). As  $\frac{\dot{V}}{Q}$  increases, the CO<sub>2</sub> partial pressure decreases, since removal of CO<sub>2</sub> from the blood becomes more efficient. When  $\frac{\dot{V}}{Q} = 0$ ,  $P_{a,CO_2} = P_{v,CO_2}$  as expected, as no CO<sub>2</sub> is removed from the blood when there is no ventilation.

Similarly, as described in Section 14.1.4, the total amount of oxygen in the blood, [O<sub>2</sub>]<sub>t</sub>, is given by

$$[O_2]_t = W + 4Z_0 f(W), \quad (14.47)$$

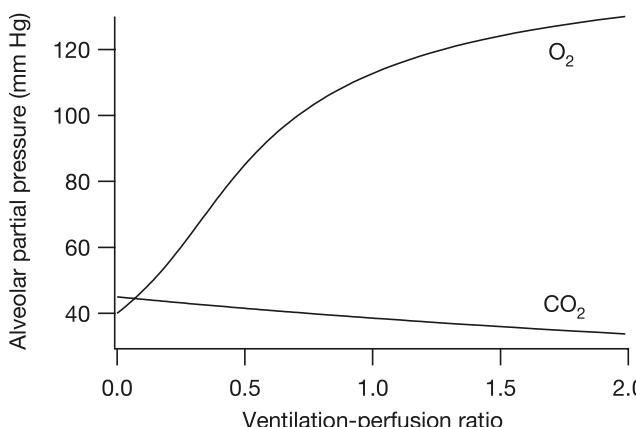
where  $Z_0$  is the total hemoglobin concentration, and  $W$  is the concentration of unbound oxygen in the blood. In these terms, the ventilation–perfusion ratio must be

$$\frac{\dot{V}}{Q} = \left( \frac{RT}{(P_{i,O_2} - P_{a,O_2})} \right) (W_a - W_v + 4Z_0 [f(W_a) - f(W_v)]), \quad (14.48)$$

where the subscripts  $a$ ,  $i$ , and  $v$  have the same interpretations as above. Note that, since we assume that the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveolar air is the same as the partial pressure in the blood leaving the alveolus, we have  $W_a = \sigma_{O_2} P_{a,O_2}$ . Similarly,  $W_v = \sigma_{O_2} P_{v,O_2}$ , where  $P_{v,O_2} = 40$  mm Hg is a known parameter.

A plot of the alveolar partial pressures of carbon dioxide and oxygen as a function of ventilation–perfusion ratio is shown in Fig. 14.8.

From this figure we see that the alveolar oxygen partial pressure is an increasing function of  $\dot{V}/Q$ , while the alveolar carbon dioxide partial pressure is a decreasing function thereof. This makes intuitive sense; the more ventilation there is compared



**Figure 14.8** Alveolar partial pressure as a function of ventilation–perfusion ratio. Calculated using the parameters  $W_v = 40\sigma_{O_2}$  mm Hg (i.e.,  $P_{v,O_2} = 40$  mm Hg),  $K_{O_2} = 30\sigma_{O_2}$  mm Hg,  $Z_0 = 2.2$  mM,  $RT = 1.7 \times 10^4$  mm Hg/M,  $P_{v,CO_2} = 45$  mm Hg,  $K_c = 12$  and  $P_{i,O_2} = 150$  mm Hg, and the function  $f(W) = W^4 / (K_{O_2}^4 + W^4)$ .

to blood flow, the greater the opportunity for blood to pick up oxygen and lose carbon dioxide. In normal situations, the ventilation–perfusion ratio is about 1. An increase in this ratio is called *hyperventilation*, and a decrease is called *hypoventilation*. During hyperventilation, there is rapid removal of carbon dioxide, and the partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the arterial blood drops below the normal level of 40 mm Hg. This results in less carbon dioxide available for carbonic acid formation, and consequently blood pH rises above the normal level, resulting in *respiratory alkalosis*. In hyperventilation there is no substantial change in oxygen concentration because the hemoglobin is fully saturated.

The opposite situation, in which the ventilation–perfusion ratio drops, increases carbon dioxide content and decreases oxygen content of the arterial blood. The increase of carbon dioxide increases carbonic acid formation and decreases blood pH, a condition referred to as *respiratory acidosis*. To compensate for these changes, the blood gas concentration stimulates the carotid and aortic chemoreceptors to increase the rate of ventilation.

### 14.2.1 The Oxygen–Carbon Dioxide Diagram

Most commonly (partially for historical reasons, since this was the way it was first presented), the ventilation–perfusion ratio is discussed using the *oxygen–carbon dioxide diagram* shown in Fig. 14.9. By combining (14.46) and (14.48), we see that

$$\sigma_{\text{CO}_2}(1 + K_c) \frac{(P_{v,\text{CO}_2} - P_{a,\text{CO}_2})}{P_{a,\text{CO}_2}} = \frac{W_a - W_v + 4Z_0[f(W_a) - f(W_v)]}{P_{i,\text{O}_2} - P_{a,\text{O}_2}}, \quad (14.49)$$

from which one easily determines  $P_{a,\text{CO}_2}$  as a function of  $P_{a,\text{O}_2}$ . The resultant curve is plotted in Fig. 14.9. All possible simultaneous alveolar pressures of oxygen and carbon dioxide must lie somewhere on this curve, which is parameterized by  $\dot{V}/Q$ . As  $\dot{V}/Q$  increases we move to the right along the curve, and in the limit as  $\dot{V}/Q \rightarrow \infty$  we move to the right endpoint, where  $P_{a,\text{O}_2} = 150$  mm Hg, the oxygen pressure in inspired air. Similarly, as  $\dot{V}/Q$  decreases we move along the curve to the left endpoint, at which point there is no ventilation and  $P_{a,\text{O}_2}$  is the venous oxygen pressure, 40 mm Hg.

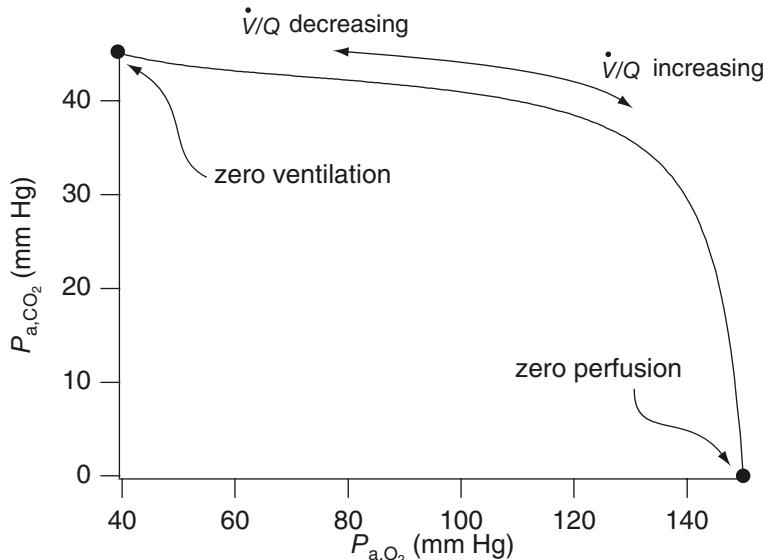
### 14.2.2 Respiratory Exchange Ratio

Different regions of the lung lie on different points of the oxygen–carbon dioxide diagram, the actual point being determined by the local *respiratory exchange ratio*,  $\mathcal{R}$ , where

$$\mathcal{R} = \frac{\text{volume of carbon dioxide removed}}{\text{volume of oxygen taken up}}. \quad (14.50)$$

This ratio differs throughout the lung.

There is a close relationship between  $\mathcal{R}$  and the oxygen–carbon dioxide diagram shown in Fig. 14.9. To see this, we consider curves of constant  $\mathcal{R}$  for both the alveolar



**Figure 14.9** Oxygen–carbon dioxide diagram showing how the alveolar partial pressures of oxygen and carbon dioxide are related. Parameter values are the same as used for Fig. 14.8.

gas and the alveolar blood. For the alveolar gas,

$$\mathcal{R}_{\text{gas}} = \frac{P_{a,\text{CO}_2} - P_{i,\text{CO}_2}}{P_{i,\text{O}_2} - P_{a,\text{O}_2}} = \frac{P_{a,\text{CO}_2}}{P_{i,\text{O}_2} - P_{a,\text{O}_2}}. \quad (14.51)$$

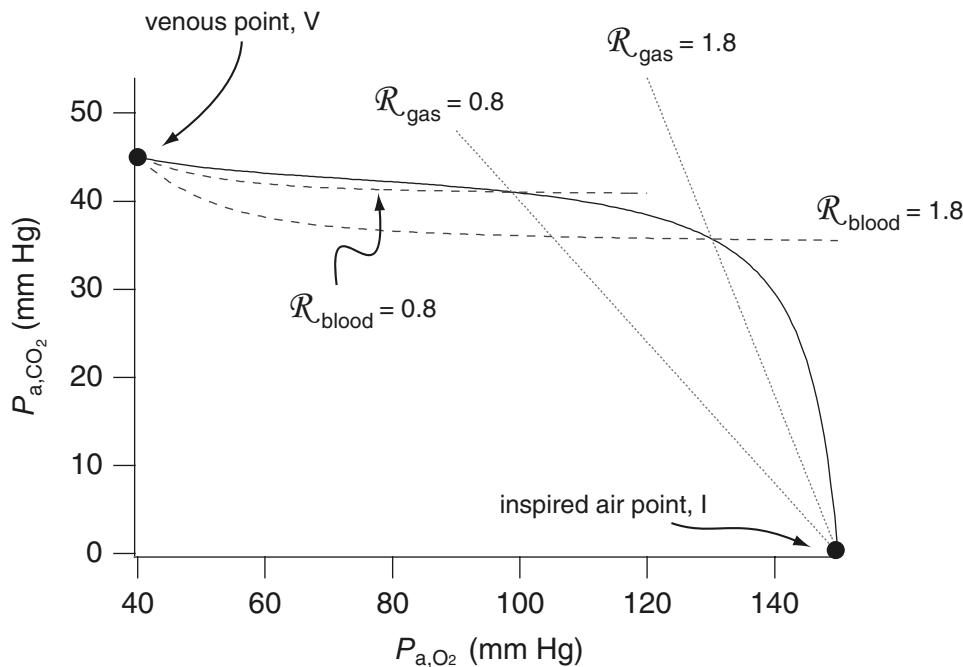
Thus, in the oxygen–carbon dioxide diagram, curves of constant  $\mathcal{R}$  are straight lines that emanate from the inspired air point, I (Fig. 14.10).

The total amount of oxygen taken up by the blood is  $W_a + 4Z_0f(W_a) - [W_v + 4Z_0f(W_v)]$ , while the total amount of carbon dioxide lost is  $\sigma_{\text{CO}_2}(1+K_c)(P_{v,\text{CO}_2} - P_{a,\text{CO}_2})$ . Thus

$$\mathcal{R}_{\text{blood}} = \frac{\sigma_{\text{CO}_2}(1+K_c)(P_{v,\text{CO}_2} - P_{a,\text{CO}_2})}{W_a + 4Z_0f(W_a) - [W_v + 4Z_0f(W_v)]}, \quad (14.52)$$

where, as usual,  $W_a = \sigma_{\text{O}_2}P_{a,\text{O}_2}$  and  $W_v = \sigma_{\text{O}_2}P_{v,\text{O}_2}$ . Curves of constant  $\mathcal{R}$  are shown in Fig. 14.10. They emanate from the venous point, V, but because of the blood chemistry are nonlinear curves, not straight lines.

Since  $\mathcal{R}_{\text{gas}}$  must equal  $\mathcal{R}_{\text{blood}}$ , it follows that the alveolar gas concentrations must lie on the intersection of the two curves  $\mathcal{R}_{\text{blood}}$  and  $\mathcal{R}_{\text{gas}}$ . However, this intersection must lie on the oxygen–carbon dioxide curve shown in Fig. 14.9, since the equation  $\mathcal{R}_{\text{gas}} = \mathcal{R}_{\text{blood}}$  is exactly the same as (14.49). Thus, the oxygen–carbon dioxide curve can be thought of as parameterized by either  $\dot{V}/Q$  or  $\mathcal{R}$ .



**Figure 14.10** Curves of constant respiratory exchange ratio,  $\mathcal{R}$ , for alveolar gas and blood, superimposed on the oxygen–carbon dioxide diagram.

One way of showing the relationship between  $\dot{V}/Q$  and  $\mathcal{R}$  is to combine (14.48) and (14.51) to get

$$\frac{\dot{V}}{Q} = \frac{\mathcal{R}}{P_{a,\text{CO}_2}} RT \left( W_a - W_v + 4Z_0[f(W_a) - f(W_v)] \right) \quad (14.53)$$

$$= \frac{\mathcal{R}}{P_{a,\text{CO}_2}} RT(c_a - c_v), \quad (14.54)$$

where  $c_a = W_a + 4Z_0f(W_a)$  and  $c_v = W_v + 4Z_0f(W_v)$  are the total concentrations of oxygen in the alveolar blood and venous blood, respectively.

In the upper regions of the lung,  $\mathcal{R}$  can be almost as large as 3, while in the lower regions,  $\mathcal{R}$  can be as low as 0.6. On the level of the entire body, the ratio of total carbon dioxide produced to total oxygen used is called the *respiratory quotient*, or RQ. The oxygen that is taken in by the blood is consumed by metabolic processes to produce carbon dioxide. However, the amount of carbon dioxide produced is generally less than the amount of oxygen consumed, and thus RQ is rarely more than one. When a person uses carbohydrates for body metabolism RQ is 1.0, because one molecule of carbon dioxide is formed for every molecule of oxygen consumed. On the other hand, when oxygen reacts with fats a large share of the oxygen combines with hydrogen to form

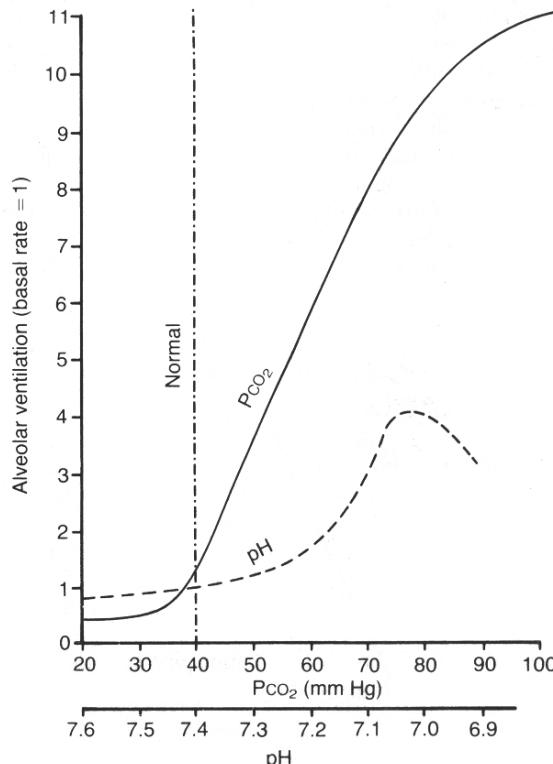
water instead of carbon dioxide. In this mode, RQ falls to as low as 0.7. For a normal person with a normal diet,  $RQ = 0.825$  is considered normal.

## 14.3 Regulation of Ventilation

While the exchange of gases takes place in the lungs, the control of the rate of ventilation is accomplished in the brain. There, in the respiratory center, is located a chemosensitive area that is sensitive to the concentrations of chemicals in the blood, primarily carbon dioxide. Changes in blood  $P_{CO_2}$  are detected, and this leads to changes in the rate of breathing by activating or inhibiting the inspiratory neurons (described in Section 14.4). In Fig. 14.11 is shown the effect of carbon dioxide on ventilation rate.

To construct a model of this control, we let  $x$  denote the partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the blood. Carbon dioxide is produced at rate  $\lambda$  by metabolism and eliminated by ventilation at the lungs. Thus,

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \lambda - \alpha x \dot{V}, \quad (14.55)$$



**Figure 14.11** Effects of increased arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  and decreased arterial pH on the alveolar ventilation rate. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 41-3, p. 528.)

where  $\dot{V}$  is the ventilation rate, and we assume that the transport of carbon dioxide through the lungs is linearly proportional to the concentration of carbon dioxide and the ventilation rate.

Now we take the ventilation rate to be the Hill equation

$$\dot{V}(x) = V_m \frac{x^n}{\theta^n + x^n}, \quad (14.56)$$

in order to replicate the curve shown in Fig. 14.11. Furthermore, there is a substantial delay between ventilation of the blood and the measurement of  $P_{CO_2}$  at the respiratory center in the brain because the transport of blood from the lungs back to the heart and then to the brain takes time. Thus, the complete model is (Glass and Mackey, 1988)

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \lambda - \alpha x \dot{V}(x(t - \tau)). \quad (14.57)$$

Typical parameter values for the model are given in Table 14.1.

Before proceeding further with the analysis of this equation, it is worthwhile to introduce dimensionless variables and parameters. We set  $x = \theta y$ ,  $t = \frac{s}{\alpha V_m}$ ,  $\tau = \frac{\sigma}{\alpha V_m}$ , and  $\lambda = \theta \alpha V_m \beta$  and obtain

$$\frac{dy}{ds} = \beta - y F(y(s - \sigma)), \quad (14.58)$$

where  $F$  is a sigmoidal function, monotone increasing with a maximum of 1 as  $y \rightarrow \infty$ .

Because the function  $yF(y)$  is monotone increasing in  $y$ , there is a unique steady-state solution for (14.58). Furthermore, the steady-state solution is a monotone increasing function of the parameter  $\beta$ , indicating that blood  $P_{CO_2}$  and ventilation increase as a function of steady metabolism. However, the dynamic situation may be quite different.

To understand more about the dynamic behavior of this equation we perform a linear stability analysis. We suppose that the steady state is  $y = y^*$ , and set  $y = y^* + Y$ , substitute into (14.58), and assume that  $Y$  is small enough so that only linear terms of the local Taylor series are necessary. The resulting linearized equation for  $Y$  is

$$\frac{dY(s)}{ds} = -F(y^*)Y(s) - y^*F'(y^*)Y(s - \sigma). \quad (14.59)$$

Solutions of exponential form  $Y = Y_0 e^{\mu s}$  exist, provided that  $\mu$  satisfies the characteristic equation

$$\mu + F(y^*) + y^*F'(y^*)e^{-\mu\sigma} = 0. \quad (14.60)$$

**Table 14.1** Physical parameters for the Mackey–Glass model of respiratory control.

$\lambda$	= 6 mm Hg/min
$V_m$	= 80 liter/min
$\tau$	= 0.25 min

Since there is a monotone relationship between  $y^*$  and  $\beta$ , it is convenient to view  $y^*$  as an independent parameter.

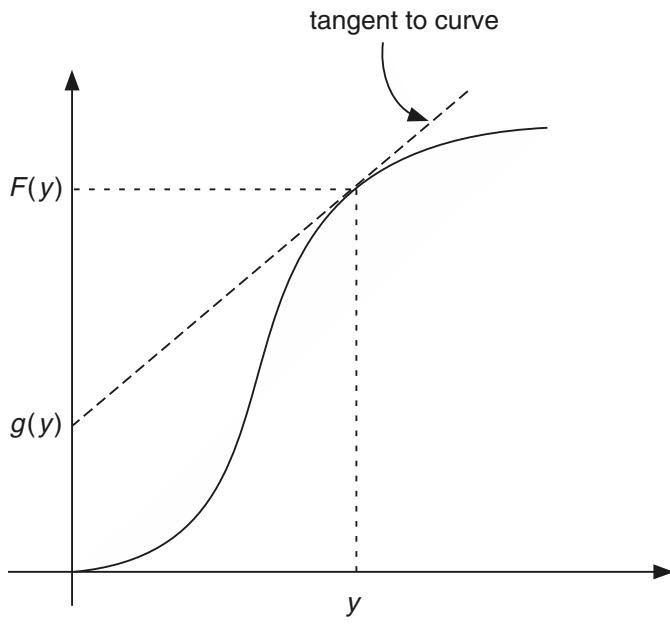
The function

$$g(y) = F(y) - yF'(y) \quad (14.61)$$

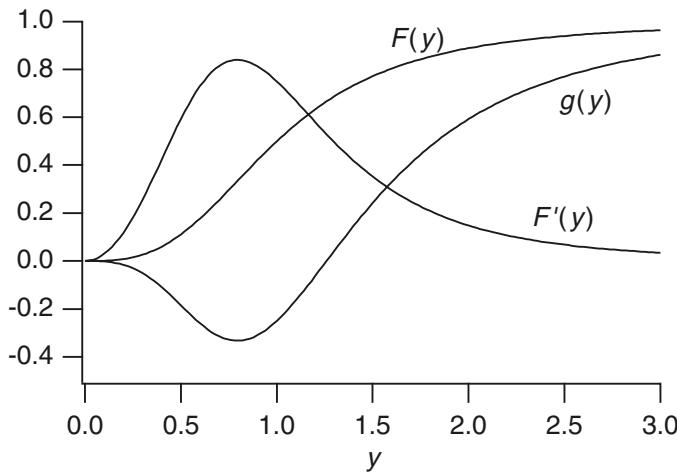
is important to the analysis that follows and has a nice geometrical interpretation. This function is constructed by drawing a straight line from the point  $(y, F(y))$  to  $y = 0$  with slope  $F'(y)$ , as illustrated in Fig. 14.12. The three functions  $F(y)$ ,  $F'(y)$ , and  $g(y)$  are shown in Fig. 14.13, in the case  $F(y) = \frac{y^3}{1+y^3}$ .

We wish to understand the behavior of the roots of the characteristic equation (14.60). First, observe that if  $g(y^*)$  is positive, then all roots of (14.60) have negative real part, so that the steady solution is stable. This follows, because if the real part of  $\mu$  is positive, then  $|\mu + F(y^*)| > |\mu + y^*F'(y^*)| > |y^*F'(y^*)e^{-\mu\sigma}|$ . Note that  $F$ ,  $F'$ , and  $y$  are all assumed to be positive.

The only real roots of (14.60) are negative. Thus, the only way the real part of a root can change sign is if it is complex, i.e., a Hopf bifurcation. To see whether Hopf bifurcations occur, we set  $\mu = i\omega$ . If this is a root of (14.60), then of necessity,  $|i\omega + F(y^*)| = |y^*F'(y^*)|$ , and thus  $|F(y^*) + i\omega|^2 = [F(y^*)]^2 + \omega^2 = [y^*F'(y^*)]^2$ . In this case, it must be that  $y^*F'(y^*) > F(y^*)$ , which implies that  $g(y^*) < 0$ . Now we split (14.60) into



**Figure 14.12** Sketch of the construction of the function  $g(y) = F(y) - yF'(y)$ .



**Figure 14.13** Plots of  $F(y) = \frac{y^n}{1+y^n}$ ,  $F'(y)$ , and  $g(y)$ , with  $n = 3$ .

real and imaginary parts, obtaining

$$F(y^*) + y^*F'(y^*) \cos \omega\sigma = 0, \quad (14.62)$$

$$\omega - y^*F'(y^*) \sin \omega\sigma = 0. \quad (14.63)$$

It follows that  $\omega = \sqrt{(y^*F'(y^*))^2 - (F(y^*))^2}$  (provided that  $g(y^*) < 0$ ) and that

$$\tan \omega\sigma = -\frac{\omega}{F(y^*)}. \quad (14.64)$$

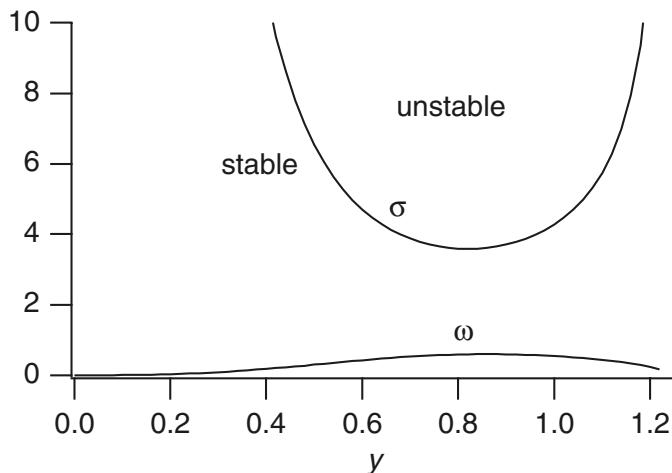
The smallest root of this equation lies in the interval  $\frac{\pi}{2} < \omega\sigma < \pi$ , and for this root,

$$\sigma = \frac{1}{\omega} \left[ \pi + \tan^{-1} \left( -\frac{\omega}{F(y^*)} \right) \right]. \quad (14.65)$$

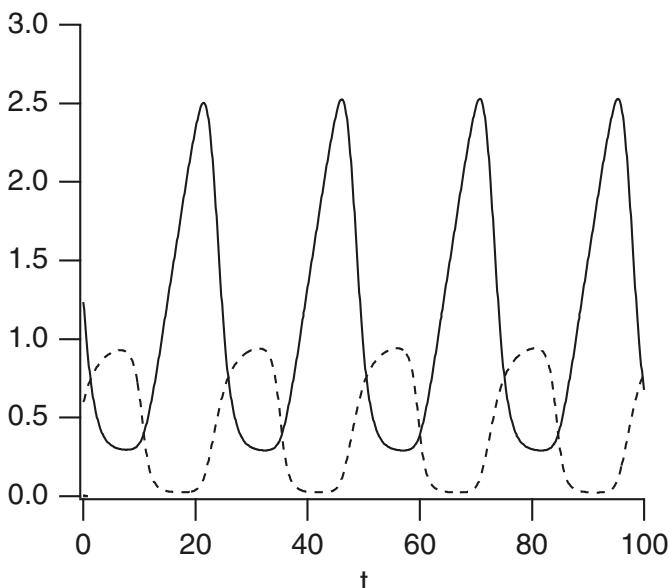
We can view this information as follows. For a given  $y^*$ , we have the frequency  $\omega$  and the critical delay  $\sigma$  at which a Hopf bifurcation occurs. If the delay is smaller than this critical delay, then the steady solution is stable, while if the delay is larger, then the steady solution is unstable and an oscillatory solution is likely.

Plots of  $\omega$  and  $\sigma$  are shown in Fig. 14.14. Steady solutions having  $\sigma$  greater than the critical value of delay (14.65) are unstable. In this case, numerical simulations show that there is a stable periodic solution of the governing equations, shown in Fig. 14.15. Here is shown the dimensionless concentration  $y$  (shown solid) and the dimensionless ventilation rate  $F(y_\sigma)$  (shown dashed) as a function of time, with parameter values  $\beta = 0.8$ ,  $\sigma = 10.0$ .

An episode of periodic fluctuation of ventilation, depicted by the periodic solution of Fig. 14.15, is called *Cheyne–Stokes breathing*. It was first described by Cheyne in 1818, but was more widely noticed after being discussed by Stokes (1854). In this condition a person breathes deeply for a short interval and then breathes slightly or not at all for an



**Figure 14.14** Plots of  $\omega$  and  $\sigma$  at Hopf bifurcation points.



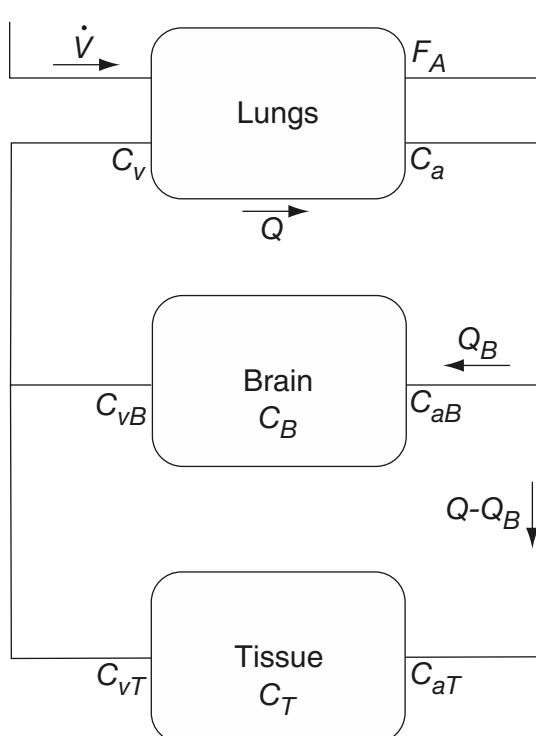
**Figure 14.15** Oscillatory solution of the Mackey–Glass equation (14.58) with parameters  $y^* = 0.8, \sigma = 10.0$ . Carbon dioxide content is shown as a solid curve, and ventilation rate is shown as a dashed curve.

additional interval, repeating the cycle with a period of 40 to 60 seconds. Notice that, in the model above, Cheyne–Stokes breathing can be caused by an increased delay in the transport of blood to the brain or an increase in the negative feedback gain (the slope of  $F$ ). The first type (delayed transport) is likely to occur in patients with chronic heart failure, and the second type (increased gain) occurs mainly in patients with brain damage, and is often a signal of impending death. Clinical observations from nine patients are discussed in Lange and Hecht (1962); all the patients in that study suffered from heart disease and seven of them had died within two years of the end of the study.

### 14.3.1 A More Detailed Model of Respiratory Regulation

The model discussed above, due to Mackey and Glass, is one of the simplest models of Cheyne–Stokes breathing. The most widely known model, and possibly the most physiologically realistic, is that of Grodins et al. (1967). The Grodins model describes oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nitrogen concentrations in a number of body compartments, including the lungs, the brain, and tissues, and has been widely studied (see, for example, Khoo et al., 1982; Fowler et al., 1993; Fowler and Kalamangalam, 2000, 2002; Batzel and Tran, 2000a,b,c; Whiteley et al., 2003a; Topor et al., 2004; Batzel et al., 2007). Here we present a simplified version of the full model; not only does this simplified model demonstrate reasonable oscillations, it also illustrates the principles behind the construction of the full model.

A schematic diagram of the compartments in the model is given in Fig. 14.16. For simplicity we consider only the carbon dioxide concentrations in each of these compartments. The blood flow through the lungs is  $Q$ , while the blood flow through the brain compartment is  $Q_B$ . The subscripts  $B$  and  $T$  denote, respectively, quantities in the brain and the tissues. The  $C$ 's denote concentrations of carbon dioxide at the entry and exit points to the compartments, with a subscript  $a$  denoting the arterial side, and a subscript  $v$  the venous side. Let  $M_i$  denote the rate of metabolism in compartment  $i$ ,



**Figure 14.16** Schematic diagram of the Grodins et al. model of ventilation control. The  $C$ 's denote concentrations at the entry and exit points of the compartments, while  $F_A$  is the fraction of carbon dioxide in expired alveolar air.

and let  $V_i$  denote the volume of compartment  $i$ . Then, conservation of carbon dioxide gives

$$V_B \frac{dC_B}{dt} = M_B + Q_B(C_{aB} - C_{vB}), \quad (14.66)$$

$$V_T \frac{dC_T}{dt} = M_T + (Q - Q_B)(C_{aT} - C_{vT}). \quad (14.67)$$

Similarly, if we let  $F$  denote the volume fraction of carbon dioxide, conservation of carbon dioxide at the lungs gives

$$V_L \frac{dF_A}{dt} = -\dot{V}F_A + \beta Q(C_v - C_a). \quad (14.68)$$

Since  $V_L$  and  $\dot{V}$  are measured in BTPS, while the blood concentrations are measured in STPD (see (14.44)), we include the conversion factor  $\beta = 863/(760 - 47)$ .

First, we simplify the model by assuming that  $C_{vB} = C_B$  and  $C_{vT} = C_T$ . In other words, the concentration that exits the brain, say, is the same as the concentration in the brain. We also assume that the concentrations  $C_{aB}$  and  $C_{aT}$  are delayed versions of  $C_a$ , and thus

$$C_{aB} = C_a(t - \tau_{aB}), \quad (14.69)$$

$$C_{aT} = C_a(t - \tau_{aT}). \quad (14.70)$$

Similarly,  $C_v$  is a delayed version of  $C_B$  and  $C_T$ , and thus

$$QC_v = Q_B C_B(t - \tau_{vB}) + (Q - Q_B) C_T(t - \tau_{vT}). \quad (14.71)$$

In a more complex version of this model, the time delays depend on the blood flow,  $Q$ , which itself is time-dependent, leading to far greater complexity. However, for simplicity, we assume both the time delays and the blood flows are constant.

We now convert the variables to partial pressures rather than concentrations. First, each carbon dioxide concentration can be converted to a partial pressure by using (14.45). To simplify the notation we write

$$C_a = K_{CO_2} P_a, \quad C_v = K_{CO_2} P_v, \quad \dots, \quad (14.72)$$

where  $K_{CO_2} = \sigma_{CO_2}(1 + K_c)$ .

Second, the fractional volume of carbon dioxide in the alveolus,  $F_A$ , is related to the alveolar partial pressure of carbon dioxide,  $P_A$ , by the relationship

$$F_A = \frac{P_A}{760 - 47}, \quad (14.73)$$

where we assume that the ambient pressure is 760 mm Hg (see (14.44)). This is because the air in the alveolus is saturated with water vapor, which (at body temperature) has a partial pressure of 47 mm Hg, as discussed in Section 14.2. Since it is reasonable to assume that the alveolar air is in equilibrium with the arterial blood, we let  $P_A = P_a$ .

**Table 14.2** Parameters for the simplified Grodins model of respiratory control. The bracketed value for  $G_C$  is the one that was used to generate instability and oscillations (Fig. 14.17).

$Q_B$	= 0.75 liters/min	$Q$	= 6 liters/min
$V_L$	= 3 liters	$V_B$	= 1 liter
$V_T$	= 39 liters	$K_{CO_2}$	= 0.005/mm Hg
$M_B$	= 0.05 liters/min	$M_T$	= 0.182 liters/min
$\tau_{aB}$	= 0.18 min	$\tau_{aT}$	= 0.32 min
$\tau_{vT}$	= 0.59 min	$\tau_{vB}$	= 0.11 min
$G_C$	= 1.8 (9) liters min <sup>-1</sup> (mm Hg) <sup>-1</sup>	$I_C$	= 49.3 mm Hg
$\dot{V}_{base}$	= 2 liters/min		

Combining all these assumptions, (14.66)–(14.68) become

$$V_B K_{CO_2} \frac{dP_B}{dt} = M_B + Q_B K_{CO_2} (P_a(t - \tau_{aB}) - P_B), \quad (14.74)$$

$$V_T K_{CO_2} \frac{dP_T}{dt} = M_T + (Q - Q_B) K_{CO_2} (P_a(t - \tau_{aT}) - P_T), \quad (14.75)$$

$$V_L \frac{dP_a}{dt} = -\dot{V} P_a + 863 K_{CO_2} Q (P_v - P_a), \quad (14.76)$$

which we supplement with (14.71), which, in terms of partial pressures, is

$$QP_v = Q_B P_B (t - \tau_{vB}) + (Q - Q_B) P_T (t - \tau_{vT}). \quad (14.77)$$

The model parameters are given in Table 14.2.

When  $\dot{V}$  is held fixed, the steady-state solution of this model is stable, and no oscillatory breathing pattern emerges. However, ventilation is dependent on the carbon dioxide concentration in the blood, and thus  $\dot{V}$  is dependent on the blood pressures in the model. A number of different authors have chosen different expressions for  $\dot{V}$ . Here we follow Khoo et al. (1982) and assume that

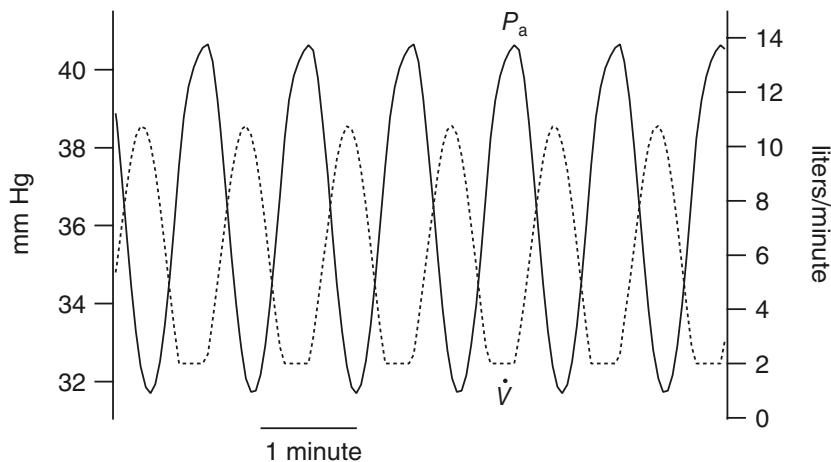
$$\dot{V} = \dot{V}_{base} + G_C \max(P_B - I_C, 0), \quad (14.78)$$

where  $\dot{V}_{base}$  is the base ventilation rate. If the brain carbon dioxide concentration increases above the threshold  $I_C$ , the ventilation rate increases (with slope  $G_C$ ), in order to remove the excess carbon dioxide more effectively.

Typical numerical solutions are shown in Fig. 14.17. When  $G_C = 1.8$ , the steady state is stable and no oscillations appear. However, when  $G_C = 9$  the steady state is unstable and the ventilation rate oscillates with a period close to 60 seconds.

## 14.4 The Respiratory Center

It is clear that control of breathing is crucial for survival. Although the rate of breathing at rest remains relatively unchanged through the lifetime of a healthy adult, the rate must respond to the differing requirements such as during exercise and sleep.



**Figure 14.17** Numerical solution of the simplified Grodins model. Arterial carbon dioxide pressure,  $P_a$ , is plotted against the left axis, while ventilation ( $\dot{V}$ ) is plotted against the right axis. This solution was calculated with  $G_C = 9$ . As  $G_C$  decreases, the oscillations disappear.

Furthermore, since a 70 kg adult male uses approximately 250 ml of oxygen per minute, and the body has a reservoir of only about one liter, it follows that any interruption in breathing will have catastrophic consequences, particularly for the brain, which is peculiarly susceptible to oxygen deprivation (Feldman and Del Negro, 2006).

Breathing is controlled by a neural central pattern generator that consists of multiple groups of neurons in the pons and medulla (Richter, 1996; Ramirez and Richter, 1996). The medullary network consists of three major regions; the Bötzinger complex, the pre-Bötzinger complex, and the rostral ventral respiratory group (rVRG), with each of these regions containing multiple kinds of neurons. The pontine respiratory region also contains a number of subregions, such as the Kölliker-Fuse nucleus or the parabrachial complex, but these regions play no further role in the discussion here.

The respiratory cycle is traditionally divided into three phases, inspiration, post-inspiration, and expiration, and the respiratory neurons are classified according to their behavior in different parts of the cycle (Richter, 1996; Rybak et al., 1997). So, for example, early-inspiration neurons have a burst of firing at the beginning of inspiration phase, while expiration-2 neurons have a burst of firing during the expiration phase. Ramp-inspiration neurons, located primarily in the rVRG, fire during the inspiration phase; their firing pattern is superimposed upon a rising baseline, or ramp, with a frequency that increases during the inspiration phase.

In 1991 it was discovered by Smith et al. that the primary rhythm-generating portion of the brain is located in the pre-Bötzinger complex. However, although this region is both necessary and sufficient for generating rhythmic inspiration, it is not, by itself, sufficient to explain the myriad complexities of respiration control. There seems little doubt that such control is exerted by multiple feedbacks between the various regions

of the respiratory central pattern generator. Expiration, for example, results primarily from elastic recoil of the lungs and thoracic cage, but appears also to be controlled by the Bötzinger complex.

In addition to neural mechanisms operating entirely within the brain, reflex signals from the periphery also help control respiration. Located in the walls of the bronchi and bronchioles throughout the lungs are stretch receptors that transmit signals to the dorsal respiratory group. Thus, when the lungs become overly inflated, the stretch receptors activate a feedback response that switches off the inspiratory ramp and stops further inspiration. This reflex is called the *Hering–Breuer inflation reflex*.

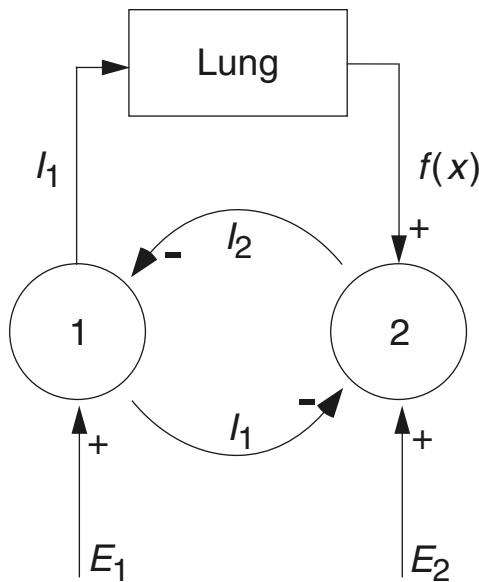
Models of the respiratory central pattern generator tend to focus on two major questions. First, how can one best describe the behavior of individual respiratory neurons? In the most recent models (Butera et al., 1999a; Rybak et al., 1997a), individual neurons are described by models of Hodgkin–Huxley style (Chapter 5), and thus involve considerable complexity. However, to capture the different complex bursting behaviors of respiratory neurons, such complexity is unavoidable. Second, what happens when populations of such neurons are coupled in excitatory and inhibitory networks (Butera et al., 1999b; Rybak et al., 1997b; Rybak et al., 2004)? Does rhythmicity arise from the feedback interactions in such a network, or is the oscillation driven by intrinsically oscillating neurons, or pacemakers, in the pre-Bötzinger complex?

One recent proposal (Feldman and Del Negro, 2006) is that the central pattern generator consists of two coupled oscillators, one based in the pre-Bötzinger complex, the other based in the retrotrapezoid nucleus, or RTN, another region of the medulla that contains respiratory neurons. Inside each oscillator, the rhythm emerges as a result of the network connections between neurons, not from an intrinsic pacemaker, and each oscillator both inhibits and activates the other, depending on the phase of the respiratory cycle.

Another model (Smith et al., 2007) proposes that the respiratory cycle results from the interactions of neuronal populations in all the major regions, and that the pontine-medullary network has a specific spatial organization extending from the pons to the rVPN. In this model, a three-phase respiratory cycle can be obtained by a model which includes mutual inhibitory interactions between the pontine and medullary regions, a two-phase cycle can be obtained by removal of the pons, while a one-phase cycle is generated by the pre-Bötzinger complex alone. In this model there are thus three distinct oscillatory mechanisms, each of which can be uncovered by removal of portions of the network.

#### 14.4.1 A Simple Mutual Inhibition Model

In both of the models discussed above, mutual inhibition between populations of neurons plays a major role in the generation of the respiratory cycle. It is thus important to understand, in a simpler context, how mutual inhibition can lead to oscillations. A simple qualitative model of mutual inhibition is due to von Euler (1980) and Wyman (1977), and is illustrated in Fig. 14.18. (An alternate model is suggested in Exercise 9.)



**Figure 14.18** A mutual inhibition network for the control of respiration.

We suppose that there are two neurons with time-dependent outputs (their firing rates)  $I_1$  and  $I_2$  governed by

$$\tau_1 \frac{dI_1}{dt} + I_1 = F_1, \quad (14.79)$$

$$\tau_2 \frac{dI_2}{dt} + I_2 = F_2, \quad (14.80)$$

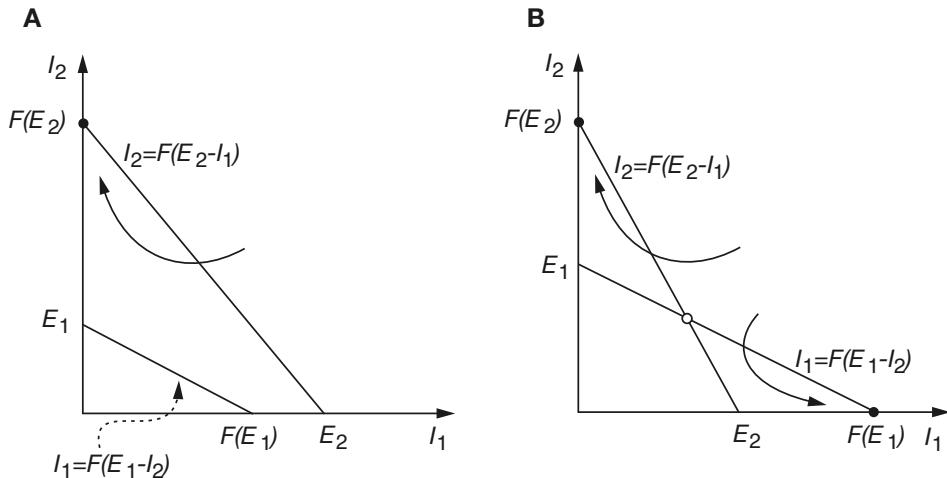
where  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  are related to the firing rates of inhibitory and excitatory inputs. For simplicity we assume that the arrangement is symmetric, so that the time constants of the neuronal output are the same,  $\tau_1 = \tau_2 = \tau$ . We further assume that the neurons have steady excitatory inputs,  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ , respectively, and that they are cross-inhibited, so that the output from neuron 1 inhibits neuron 2, and vice versa. Thus we take  $F_1 = F(E_1 - I_2)$  and  $F_2 = F(E_2 - I_1)$ . The function  $F(x)$  is zero for  $x < 0$  (so that the input and output are never negative), and a positive, increasing function of  $x$  for  $x > 0$ . Thus, we have the system of differential equations

$$\tau \frac{dI_1}{dt} + I_1 = F(E_1 - I_2), \quad (14.81)$$

$$\tau \frac{dI_2}{dt} + I_2 = F(E_2 - I_1). \quad (14.82)$$

At this point there is no feedback from the lungs.

Equations (14.81) and 14.82) are easily studied using phase-plane analysis. There are three different possible phase portraits depending on the relative sizes of  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ , two of which are shown in Figs. 14.19. In what follows we assume that  $F' > 1$  for all positive arguments, although this restriction can be weakened somewhat. If



**Figure 14.19** A: Phase portrait for mutual inhibition network with  $E_1 < F(E_2)$  and  $E_2 > F(E_1)$ . B: Phase portrait for mutual inhibition network with  $E_1 < F(E_2)$  and  $E_2 < F(E_1)$ .

$E_2$  is much larger than  $E_1$ , so that  $E_1 < F(E_2)$  and  $E_2 > F(E_1)$ , then, as shown in Fig. 14.19A, there is a unique stable fixed point at  $I_2 = F(E_1), I_1 = 0$ , in which neuron 2 is firing and neuron 1 is quiescent. If  $E_1$  is much larger than  $E_2$ , then the reverse is true, namely, there is a unique stable fixed point at  $I_1 = F(E_2), I_2 = 0$ , with neuron 1 firing and neuron 2 quiescent. There is an intermediate range of parameter values when  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  are similar in size,  $E_1 < F(E_2)$  and  $E_2 < F(E_1)$ , shown in Fig. 14.19B, for which there are three steady states, the two on the axes, and one in the interior of the positive quadrant. The third (interior) steady state is a saddle point, and is therefore unstable.

This neural network exhibits hysteresis. Suppose we slowly modulate the parameter  $E_1$ . If it is initially small (compared to  $E_2$ , which is fixed at some positive level), then neuron 2 fires steadily and inhibits neuron 1. As  $E_1$  is increased, this situation remains unchanged, even when  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  are of similar size, when two stable steady solutions exist. However, when  $E_1$  becomes sufficiently large, the steady-state solution at  $I_1 = F(E_2), I_2 = 0$  suddenly disappears, and the variables  $I_1, I_2$  move to the opposite steady state at  $I_2 = F(E_1), I_1 = 0$ . Now if  $E_1$  is decreased, when  $E_1$  is small enough there is a reverse transition back to the steady state at  $I_1 = F(E_2), I_2 = 0$ , completing the hysteresis loop.

To use this hysteresis to control breathing, we model the diaphragm as a damped mass–spring system driven by  $I_1$ , the (firing rate) output from neuron 1, the inspiratory neuron:

$$m \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \mu \frac{dx}{dt} + kx = I_1. \quad (14.83)$$

We model the effect of the stretch receptors by a function  $f(x)$  that is a monotone increasing function of diaphragm displacement  $x$ . The stretch receptors are assumed to excite only neuron 2, so that the output variables are governed by

$$\tau \frac{dI_1}{dt} + I_1 = F(E_1 - I_2), \quad (14.84)$$

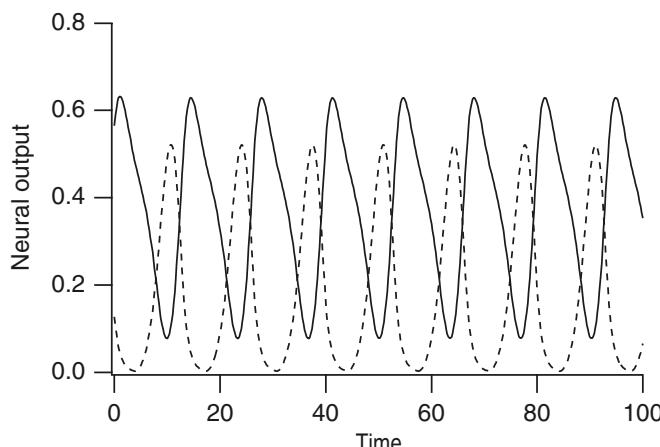
$$\tau \frac{dI_2}{dt} + I_2 = F(E_2 - I_1 + f(x)). \quad (14.85)$$

We could allow stretch receptors to inhibit neuron 1 as well.

With this model, oscillation of the diaphragm is assured if the time constant  $\tau$  is sufficiently small. The stretch receptors act to modulate the excitatory inputs, so that as the lung expands, they excite neuron 2. With  $E_2 + f(x)$  sufficiently large, neuron 1, the inspiratory neuron, is switched off. With no inspiratory input, the lung relaxes, returning  $f(x)$  toward zero and decreasing the excitation to neuron 2. This removes the inhibition to neuron 1 and allows it to fire once again. Thus, if parameters are adjusted properly, the hysteresis loop is exploited, and the inspiration-expiration cycle is established. The oscillations are robust and easily established.

This oscillation can be externally controlled. For example, by increasing  $E_2$ , the cycle can be stopped after expiration, whereas by increasing  $E_1$  the inhibition of the stretch receptors can be overridden and inspiration lengthened (as in, take a deep breath, please). Decreasing  $E_1$  shortens the inspiration time and can stop breathing altogether.

In Fig. 14.20 is shown a plot of the two inhibitory variables  $I_1$  and  $I_2$  (shown dashed) plotted as functions of time. Parameter values for this simulation were  $\tau = 1.0, m = 0.5, \mu = 5.0, k = 1.0, E_1 = 0.5, E_2 = 0.3$ . The function  $F$  was specified as  $F(x) = \frac{2x^2}{0.2+x}$  for positive  $x$  and zero otherwise, and the stretch response curve was taken to be  $f(x) = x^3/(1+x^3)$ .



**Figure 14.20** Neural output variables  $I_1$  and  $I_2$  (dashed) shown as functions of time.

## 14.5 EXERCISES

---

- Give a “proper” mathematical derivation of (14.14) by introducing appropriate dimensionless parameters. What dimensionless parameter must be small for this approximation to be valid?  
Answer:  $\epsilon = \frac{D_{CO_2}}{k_{-1}[H^+]}.$
- (a) Develop a model of carbon dioxide and oxygen transport that includes the oxyhemoglobin buffering reaction and the effect of free hydrogen ions on the concentration of bicarbonate. Does the inclusion of proton exchange improve or hinder the rate at which oxygen and carbon dioxide are transported into or out of the blood?  
(b) Estimate the overall effect of this exchange by assuming that the pH of pulmonary venous blood is about 0.04 lower than that of arterial blood.
- Construct a simple model of the total oxygen and total carbon monoxide in the blood. Assume that the circulatory system is a well-mixed container and that oxygen is removed by metabolism, while oxygen is added and carbon monoxide eliminated during transport through the lungs. Use the models of Section 14.1.5 to determine reasonable transfer rate functions. Estimate the parameters of the model and use numerical computations to determine the half-clearance times for elimination of carbon monoxide at different oxygen levels. How well does your model fit the experimental data shown in Table 14.3?
- Suppose the respiratory exchange ratio is fixed. Show that there is a linear relationship between the alveolar carbon dioxide and oxygen partial pressures.
- (a) Assume that regulatory mechanisms maintain the venous oxygen partial pressure at 40 mm Hg and the ventilation–perfusion ratio at 1. Find the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and the oxygen saturation leaving the alveolus as a function of atmospheric  $P_{O_2}$ .  
(b) Data are shown in Table 14.4 for breathing normal air or breathing pure oxygen. What assumption from part 5a is apparently wrong? From the data, determine the venous oxygen partial pressure.
- (a) Devise a different model of oxygen concentration in which metabolism and the ventilation–perfusion ratio are held fixed. How do the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and  $O_2$  saturation vary as a function of atmospheric pressure?  
(b) Using data from Table 14.4, estimate the altitude at which incoming alveolar blood has zero  $P_{O_2}$ , at normal metabolism.  
(c) Determine the red blood cell count (concentration of hemoglobin) that is necessary to maintain constant venous oxygen partial pressure as a function of altitude at fixed metabolism.

**Table 14.3** Experimental half-clearance times for elimination of carbon monoxide from the blood (Pace et al., 1950; also see Exercise 3).

---

$O_2$ in atm	Half-clearance time (min)
0.21	249
1.0	47
2.5	22

**Table 14.4** Alveolar gas concentration and oxygen saturation at different altitudes. The last column shows the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  when breathing pure oxygen at atmospheric pressure. At this pressure,  $O_2$  saturation is 100%. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Table 43-1, p. 550.)

Altitude (ft)	Barometric Pressure (mm Hg)	$P_{O_2}$ in air (mm Hg)	Alveolar $P_{O_2}$ (in air) (mm Hg)	$O_2$ Saturation (in air) (%)	Alveolar $P_{O_2}$ (in oxygen) (mm Hg)
0	760	159	104	97	673
10,000	523	110	67	90	436
20,000	349	73	40	73	262
30,000	226	47	18	24	139

7. Find the rate of carbon monoxide clearance as a function of external  $P_{O_2}$ , with fixed metabolism and ventilation.
8. (a) Determine the structure of stable steady solutions of (14.81)–(14.82) in the  $(E_1, E_2)$  parameter plane using  $F(x) = \frac{2x^2}{0.2+x}$  for positive  $x$  and zero otherwise.  
(b) Numerically simulate the system of equations (14.83)–(14.85) using the parameters in the text. Plot  $E_2 + f(x)$  as a function of time in the above parameter plane to see how hysteresis is exploited by this system.
9. Consider the following as a possible model of the respiratory center. Two neural FitzHugh–Nagumo oscillators have inhibitory synaptic inputs, so that

$$\frac{dv_i}{dt} = f(v_i, w_i) - s_i g_s(v_i - v_\theta), \quad (14.86)$$

$$\tau_v \frac{dw_i}{dt} = w_\infty(v) - w_i, \quad (14.87)$$

for  $i = 1, 2$ . The synaptic input  $s_i$  is some neurotransmitter that is released when the opposite neuron fires:

$$\frac{ds_i}{dt} = \alpha_s(1 - s_i)x_j F(v_j) - \beta_s s_i, \quad j \neq i, \quad (14.88)$$

and the amplitude of the release  $x_j$  decreases gradually when the neuron is firing, via

$$\frac{dx_i}{dt} = \alpha_x(1 - x_i) - \beta_x F(v_i)x_i. \quad (14.89)$$

- (a) Simulate this neural network with  $f(v, w) = 1.35v(1 - \frac{1}{3}v^2) - w$ ,  $w_\infty(v) = \tanh(5v)$ ,  $F(v) = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \tanh 10v)$ , and with parameters  $\tau_v = 5$ ,  $v_\theta = -2$ ,  $\alpha_s = 0.025$ ,  $\beta_s = 0.002$ ,  $\alpha_x = 0.001$ ,  $\beta_x = 0.01$ ,  $g_s = 0.19$ .
- (b) Give an approximate analysis of the fast and slow phase portraits for these equations to explain how the network works.
- (c) How does this bursting oscillator compare with those discussed in Chapter 9?
- (d) What features of this model make it a good model of the control of the respiratory system and what features are not so good?

**Table 14.5** Parameter values for the bursting pacemaker neuron of Exercise 10.

$\bar{g}_{Na}$	= 28 nS	$E_{Na}$	= 50 mV
$\bar{g}_K$	= 11.2 nS	$E_K$	= -85 mV
$\bar{g}_{NaP}$	= 2.8 nS	$C_m$	= 21 pF
$\bar{g}_L$	= 2.8 nS	$E_L$	= -65 mV
$\theta_m$	= -34 mV	$\sigma_m$	= -5 mV
$\theta_n$	= -29 mV	$\sigma_n$	= -4 mV
$\theta_h$	= -48 mV	$\sigma_h$	= 6 mV
$\theta_p$	= -40 mV	$\sigma_p$	= -6 mV
$\bar{\tau}_h$	= 10,000 ms	$\bar{\tau}_n$	= 10 ms

10. A simple physiological model of bursting pacemaker neurons has been proposed by Butera et al. (1999a). The model is of standard Hodgkin–Huxley type, of the form

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -I_{NaP} - I_{Na} - I_K - I_L, \quad (14.90)$$

with ionic currents

$$I_{Na} = \bar{g}_{Na} m_\infty^3(V)(1-n)(V - E_{Na}), \quad (14.91)$$

$$I_K = \bar{g}_K n^4(V - E_K), \quad (14.92)$$

$$I_{NaP} = \bar{g}_{NaP} p_\infty(V) h(V - E_{Na}) \quad (14.93)$$

$$I_L = \bar{g}_L (V - E_L), \quad (14.94)$$

with gating variables  $n$  and  $h$  governed by differential equations of the form

$$\tau_x(V) \frac{dx}{dt} = x_\infty(V) - x, \quad x = n, h, \quad (14.95)$$

where

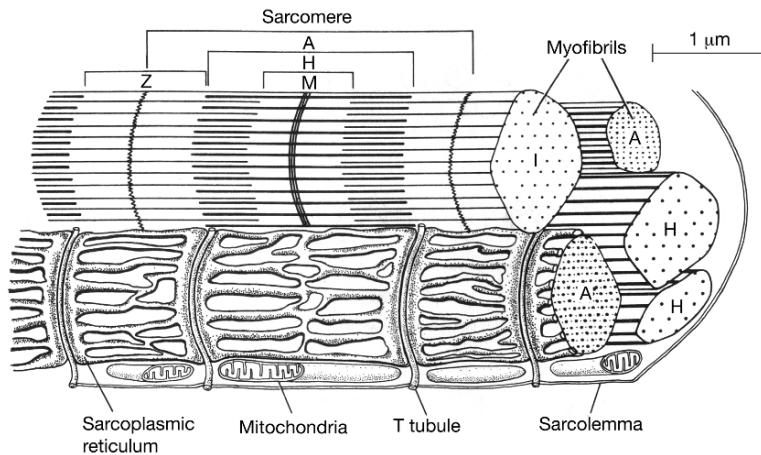
$$x_\infty(V) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp(\frac{V - \theta_x}{\sigma_x})}, \quad \tau_x = \frac{\bar{\tau}_x}{\cosh(\frac{V - \theta_x}{2\sigma_x})}. \quad (14.96)$$

- (a) Simulate this model using  $E_L$  as a control parameter ( $E_L$  in the range -65 to -54 mV). How do the burst patterns vary as a function of  $E_L$ ?
- (b) How does this bursting oscillator compare with those discussed in Chapter 9?

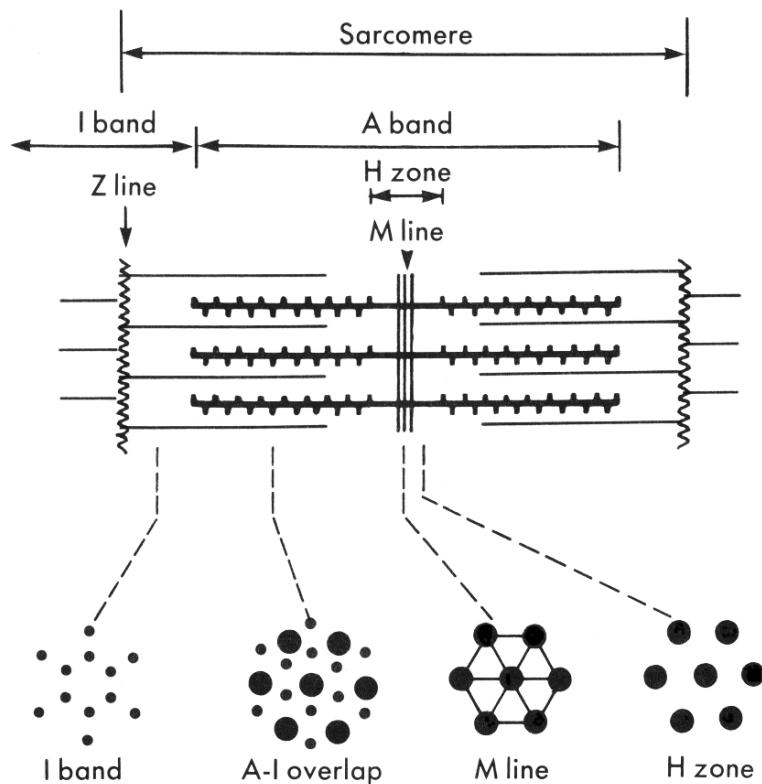
# Muscle

Muscle cells resemble nerve cells in their ability to conduct action potentials along their membrane surfaces. In addition, however, muscle cells have the ability to translate the electrical signal into a mechanical contraction, which enables the muscle cell to perform work. There are three types of muscle cells; skeletal muscle, which moves the bones of the skeleton at the joints, cardiac muscle, whose contraction enables the heart to pump blood, and smooth muscle, which is located in the walls of blood vessels and contractile visceral organs. Skeletal and cardiac muscle cells have a banded appearance under a microscope, with alternating light and dark bands, and thus they are called *striated muscle*. They have similar (though not identical) contractile mechanisms. Smooth muscle, on the other hand, is not striated, and its physiology is considerably different from the other two types of muscle.

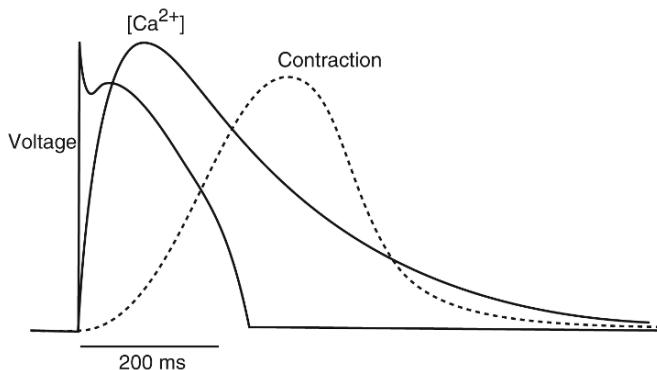
Single skeletal muscle cells are elongated cylindrical cells with several nuclei. Each cell contains numerous cylindrical structures, called *myofibrils*, surrounded by the membranous channels of the sarcoplasmic reticulum (Fig. 15.1). Myofibrils are the functional units of skeletal muscle, containing protein filaments that make up the contractile unit. Each myofibril is segmented into numerous individual contractile units called *sarcomeres*, each about  $2.5\ \mu\text{m}$  long. The sarcomere, illustrated schematically in Fig. 15.2, is made up primarily of two types of parallel filaments, designated as thin and thick filaments. Viewed end on, six thin filaments are positioned around each central thick filament in a hexagonal arrangement. Viewed along its length, there are regions where thin or thick filaments are overlapping or nonoverlapping. At the end of the sarcomere is a region, called the *Z-line*, where the line filaments are anchored. Thin filaments extend from the Z-lines at each end toward the center, where they overlap with thick filaments. The regions where there is no overlap, containing only thin filaments, are called *I-bands*, and the regions containing myosin (thick) filaments



**Figure 15.1** Schematic diagram of a skeletal muscle cell. (Berne and Levy, 1993, p. 283, Fig. 17-2.)



**Figure 15.2** Longitudinal section (top panel) and cross-section (lower panels) of a sarcomere showing its organization into bands. (Berne and Levy, 1993, p. 283, Fig. 17-3.)



**Figure 15.3** The three components of the response of a muscle. The action potential shown here is typical of those seen in cardiac ventricular myocytes (Chapter 12). Adapted from Bers (2002), Fig. 1. Adapted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd.

(with some overlap with thin filaments) are called *A-bands*. The central region of the sarcomere, containing only thick filaments, is called the *H-zone*. During contraction, both the H-zone and the I-bands shorten as the overlap between thin and thick filaments increases.

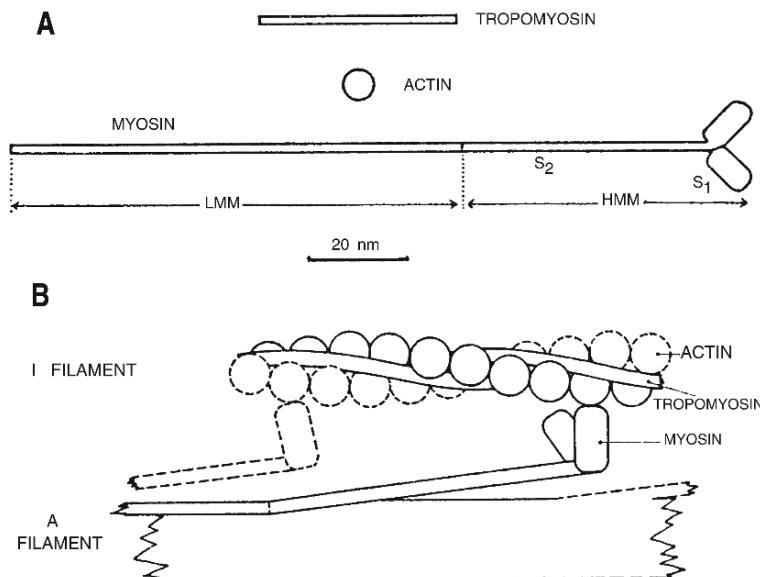
In striated muscle, contraction is initiated by an action potential transmitted across a synapse from a neuron. This action potential spreads rapidly across the muscle membrane, spreading into the interior of the cell along invaginations of the cell membrane called *T-tubules*. T-tubules form a network in the cell interior, near the junction of the A- and I-bands, and increase the surface area over which the action potential can spread. They enable the action potential to reach quickly into the cell interior. (In cardiac myocytes the T-tubules penetrate into the cell at the level of the Z-lines). In cardiac muscle, voltage-gated Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels are opened by the action potential, and Ca<sup>2+</sup> enters the cell, initiating the release of additional Ca<sup>2+</sup> from the sarcoplasmic reticulum through ryanodine receptors, or RyR (Chapters 7 and 12). In skeletal muscle there is a direct physical connection between the T-tubule and the RyR, and the action potential opens the RyR directly. In either case, the resulting high intracellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration causes a change in the myofilament structure that allows the thick filaments to bind and pull on the thin filaments, resulting in muscle contraction. There are thus three major components of the response of a muscle, which follow each other in sequence; the action potential, the Ca<sup>2+</sup> transient, and the contraction (Fig. 15.3). The Ca<sup>2+</sup>-mediated conversion of an electrical stimulus to a mechanical force is called *excitation–contraction coupling*.

## 15.1 Crossbridge Theory

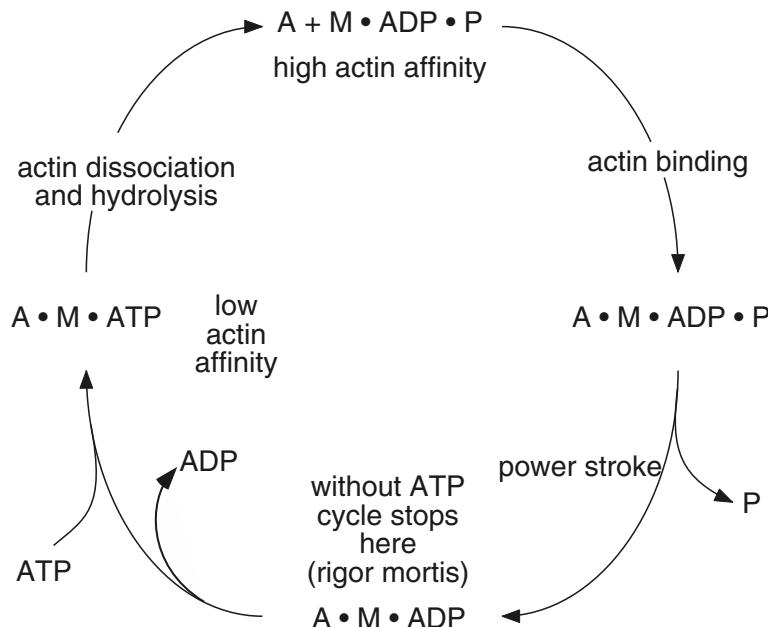
Thick filaments contain the protein myosin, which is made up of a polypeptide chain with a globular head. These heads constitute the *crossbridges* that interact with the thin filaments to form bonds that act in ratchet-like fashion to pull on the thin filaments. In addition, the myosin heads have the ability to dephosphorylate ATP as an energy source.

Thin filaments contain the three proteins actin, tropomyosin, and troponin. Each actin monomer is approximately spherical, with a radius of about 5.5 nm, and they aggregate into a double-stranded helix, with a complete twist about every 14 monomers. Because the coil is double-stranded, this structure repeats every 7 monomers, or about every 38 nm. Tropomyosin, a rod-shaped protein, forms the backbone of the double-stranded coil. The troponin consists of a number of smaller polypeptides, which include a binding site for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  as well as a portion that blocks the crossbridge binding sites on the actin helix. When  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is bound, the confirmation of the troponin–tropomyosin complex is altered just enough to expose the crossbridge binding sites. In Fig. 15.4 we show a scale drawing of the probable way in which the actin, tropomyosin, and myosin proteins fit together.

Contraction takes place when the crossbridges bind and generate a force causing the thin filaments to slide along the thick filaments. A schematic diagram of the crossbridge reaction cycle is given in Fig. 15.5, with the accompanying physical arrangement shown in Fig. 15.6. Before binding and contraction, ATP is bound to the crossbridge heads of the myosin (M), and the concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is low. When the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration increases,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions bind to the troponin–tropomyosin complex, exposing the crossbridge binding sites on the actin filament (A). Where possible, a weak bond be-



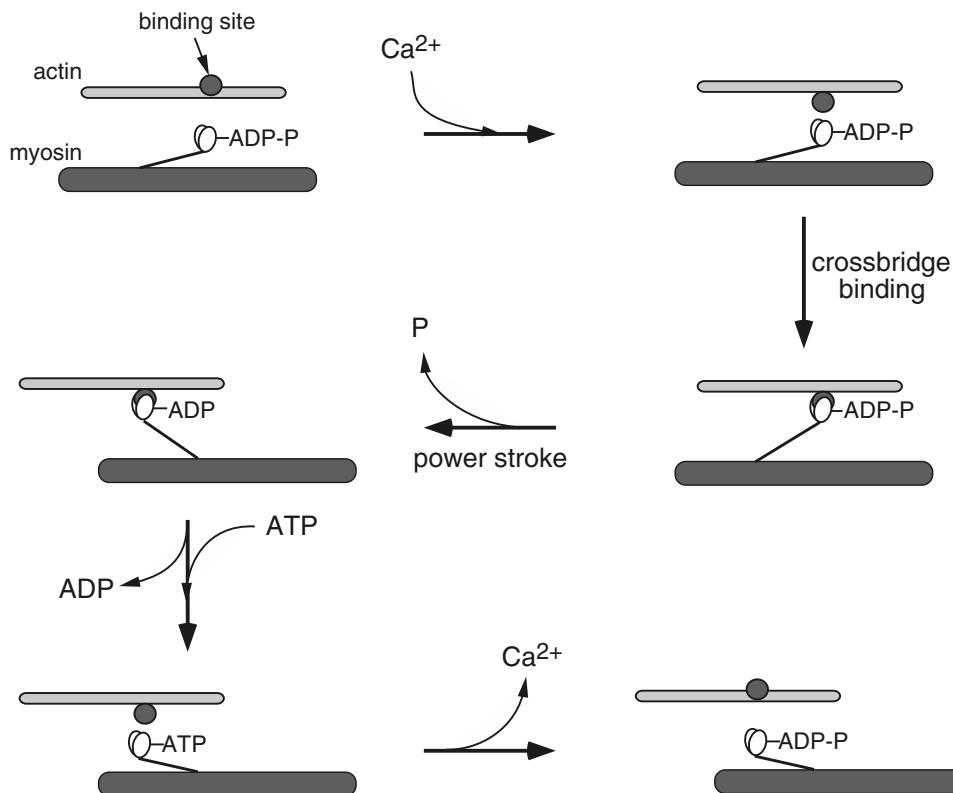
**Figure 15.4** A: Scale drawing of actin, myosin, and tropomyosin proteins. B: Scale drawing of the thick and thin filaments (labeled the A and I filaments here), showing the probable way in which the actin, myosin, and tropomyosin proteins fit together. Troponin, which is bound to tropomyosin, is not included in the diagram. (White and Thorson, 1975, Fig. 9, parts A and B (i).)



**Figure 15.5** Major reaction steps in the crossbridge cycle. M denotes myosin, and A denotes actin.

tween actin and myosin is formed. Release of the phosphate changes the weak bond to a strong bond and changes the preferred configuration of the crossbridge from nearly perpendicular to a bent (foreshortened) position. While the crossbridge is in anything but this energetically preferred, bent state, there is an applied force that acts to pull the thin filament along the thick filament. The movement of the crossbridge to its newly preferred configuration is called the *power stroke*. Almost immediately upon reaching the preferred bent configuration, the crossbridge releases its ADP and binds another ATP molecule, causing dissociation from the actin binding site and return to its initial perpendicular and unbound position. ATP is then dephosphorylated, yielding ADP, phosphate, and the stored mechanical energy for the next cycle. Thus, during muscle contraction, each crossbridge cycles through sequential binding and unbinding to the actin filament.

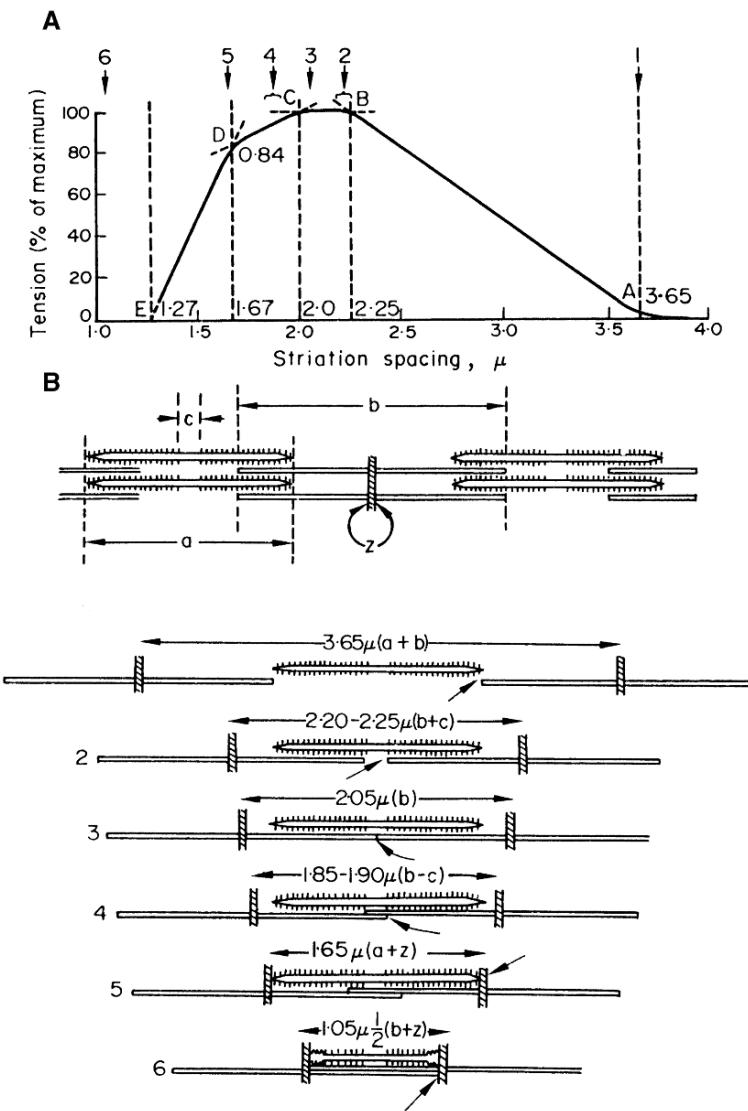
To construct quantitative models of crossbridge binding it is necessary to know how many actin binding sites are available to a single crossbridge. One possibility is that the crossbridge must be precisely oriented to the actin binding site, and thus, in each turn of the helix, only one binding site is available to each crossbridge. In other words, from the point of view of the crossbridge, the binding sites have an effective separation of about 38 nm. Because of the physical constraints on each crossbridge, this means that at any time, there is only a single binding site available to each crossbridge. This is the assumption behind the Huxley model, described in detail below.



**Figure 15.6** Position of crossbridge components during the major steps in the crossbridge cycle.

However, from the distribution of actin binding sites and crossbridges shown in Fig. 15.4, it is plausible that this assumption is not correct. Perhaps, depending on the flexibility of the actin filament, each crossbridge has a number of potential binding sites. In our discussion we concentrate on models of the two extreme cases: first, where each crossbridge has only a single available binding site, and second, where each crossbridge has a continuous array of available binding sites. Intermediate models, in which the crossbridge has a small number of discrete binding sites available, are considerably more complex and are mentioned only briefly.

Because of the sarcomere structure, the tension a muscle develops depends on the muscle length. In Fig. 15.7 we show a curve of isometric tension as a function of sarcomere length. By isometric tension, we mean the tension developed by a muscle when it is held at a fixed length and repeatedly stimulated (i.e., with a high-frequency periodic stimulus). Under these conditions the muscle goes into *tetanus*, a state, caused by saturating concentrations of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the sarcoplasm, in which the muscle is continually attempting to contract. Note that the muscle cannot actually contract, because it is



**Figure 15.7** A: Isometric tension as a function of the length of the sarcomere. B: schematic diagrams of the arrangement of the thick and thin filaments for the six different places indicated in panel A. (Gordon et al., 1966, reproduced in White and Thorson, 1975, Fig. 14.)

held at constant length, although it must go through the chemistry cycle of the power stroke, since the development of tension requires that energy be consumed.

At short lengths, overlap of the thin filaments causes a drop in tension, but as this overlap decreases (as the length increases) the tension rises. However, when the length is large, there is less overlap between the thick and thin filaments, so fewer crossbridges

bind, and less tension develops. When there is no overlap between the thick and thin filaments, the muscle is unable to develop any tension.

Skeletal muscle tends to operate at lengths that correspond to the peak of the isometric length-tension curve, and thus in many experimental setups the tension the muscle develops does not depend significantly on the muscle length. However, the same is not true for cardiac muscle, which considerably complicates theoretical studies of this muscle type. For these reasons we restrict our attention to models based on data from skeletal muscle. Peskin (1975) presents a detailed description of some theoretical models of cardiac muscle.

## 15.2 The Force–Velocity Relationship: The Hill Model

One of the earliest models of a muscle is due to A.V. Hill (1938) and was constructed before the details of the sarcomere anatomy were known. Hill observed that when a muscle contracts against a constant load (an *isotonic* contraction), the relationship between the constant rate of shortening  $v$  and the load  $p$  is well described by the *force–velocity* equation

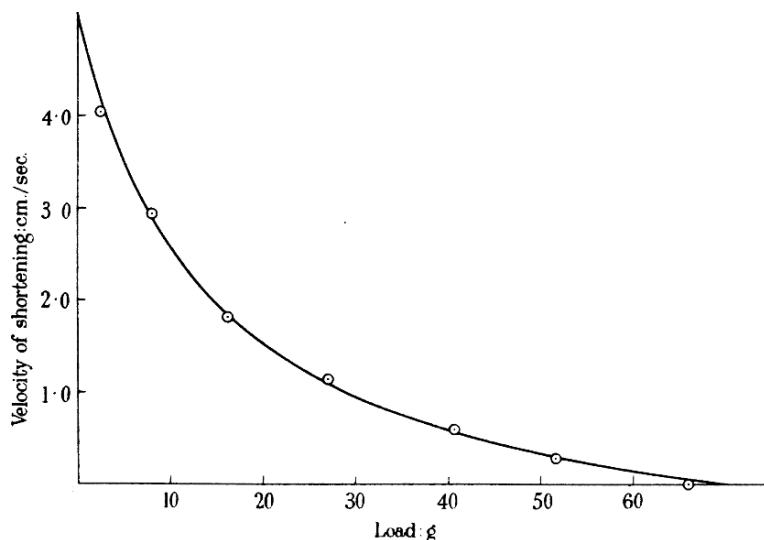
$$(p + a)v = b(p_0 - p), \quad (15.1)$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are constants that are determined by fitting to experimental data in a way that we discuss presently. A typical force–velocity curve is plotted in Fig. 15.8. When  $v = 0$ , then  $p = p_0$ , and thus  $p_0$  represents the force generated by the muscle when the length is held fixed; i.e.,  $p_0$  is the *isometric* force. As discussed above, the tension generated by a skeletal muscle in isometric tetanus is approximately independent of length, and thus  $p_0$  is also approximately independent of length. When  $p = 0$ ,  $v = bp_0/a$ , which is the maximum speed at which a muscle is able to shorten.

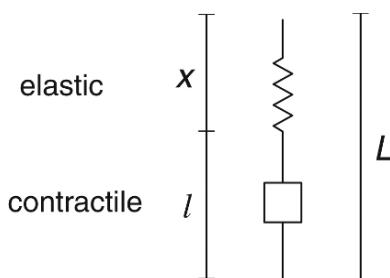
In an attempt to explain these observations, we model a muscle fiber as a contractile element with the given force–velocity relationship, in series with an elastic element (Fig. 15.9). In some versions of the model a parallel elastic element is included (see Exercise 1), but as it plays no essential role in the following discussion, it is omitted here. As shown in Fig. 15.9, we let  $l$  denote the length of the contractile element, we let  $x$  denote the length of the elastic element, so that  $L = l + x$  is the total length of the fiber. Then, letting  $v$  denote the velocity of contraction of the contractile element, we have

$$v = -\frac{dl}{dt}, \quad (15.2)$$

where, by assumption,  $v$  is related to the load on the muscle by the force–velocity equation (15.1). To derive a differential equation for the time dependence of  $p$ , we note that because the elastic element is in series with the contractile element, the two experience the same force. We assume that the force generated by the elastic element is a function of its length  $p = P(x)$  and then use the chain rule and the force–velocity



**Figure 15.8** The relationship between the load on a muscle and the velocity of contraction (Hill, 1938; Fig. 12). The symbols are the data points, while the smooth curve is calculated from (15.1) using the parameter values  $a = 14.35$  grams,  $a/p_0 = 0.22$ ,  $b = 1.03$  cm/s. The value of  $a$  is equivalent (in Hill's original preparation) to 357 grams (of weight) per square centimeter of muscle fiber ( $\text{g-wt}/\text{cm}^2$ ). Note that if  $p$  is expressed in grams weight, so also must  $a$  be. Since Hill used a muscle of length 38 mm, the value of  $b$  is equivalent to 0.27 muscle lengths per second.



**Figure 15.9** Schematic diagram of Hill's two-element model of skeletal muscle. The muscle is assumed to consist of an elastic element in series with a contractile element with a given force-velocity relationship.

equation to obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dp}{dt} &= \frac{dP}{dx} \frac{dx}{dt} \\ &= \frac{dP}{dx} \left[ \frac{dL}{dt} - \frac{dl}{dt} \right] \\ &= \frac{dP}{dx} \left[ \frac{dL}{dt} + v \right]\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{dP}{dx} \left[ \frac{dL}{dt} + \frac{b(p_0 - p)}{p + a} \right]. \quad (15.3)$$

It remains to determine  $dP/dx$ .

Hill made the simplest possible assumption, that the elastic element is linear, and thus

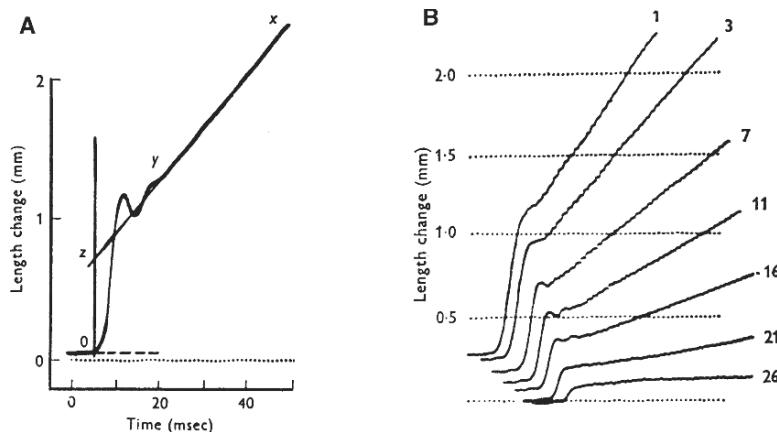
$$P = \alpha(x - x_0), \quad (15.4)$$

where  $x_0$  is its resting length. Thus,  $dP/dx = \alpha$ , and the differential equation for  $p$  is

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \alpha \left[ \frac{dL}{dt} + \frac{b(p_0 - p)}{p + a} \right]. \quad (15.5)$$

### 15.2.1 Fitting Data

Suppose a muscle in tetanus is held at a fixed tension until it reaches its isometric length, and then the tension is suddenly decreased and held fixed at a lower value. A typical result is shown in Fig. 15.10A, where the muscle length is plotted against time. As soon as the tension is reduced, the muscle length decreases (plotted in the vertical direction) as the elastic element contracts. After a transition period during which the length exhibits small oscillations (which are not explained by this model), the muscle decreases in length at a constant rate. Plotting the rate of decrease against the constant



**Figure 15.10** A: Plot of length change against time after a step decrease in tension. The length decreases in a sudden jump, and then, after an initial oscillatory phase, decreases at constant velocity. (Jewell and Wilkie, 1958; reproduced in White and Thorson, 1975, Fig. 5.) B: Length change as a function of time from a series of tension step experiments. The baseline of each trace has been shifted for clarity, and each dot on the horizontal axis denotes 1 ms. For each step, the value to the right of the curve denotes the final value of the tension in grams of weight (g-wt). (Jewell and Wilkie, 1958; reproduced in White and Thorson, 1975, Fig. 6.)

applied tension gives one point on the force-velocity curve. More specifically, if the tension is stepped from  $p_0$  to  $p_1$ , the muscle contracts at the constant rate  $v$ , where

$$(p_1 + a)v = b(p_0 - p_1). \quad (15.6)$$

Repeating the experiment for tension steps of different magnitudes (shown in Fig. 15.10B) one finds a series of points on the force-velocity curve, through which one can fit the force-velocity equation to obtain values for  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $p_0$ . Note that this procedure is valid only if  $p_0$  does not change during the course of the experiment. In other words, as the muscle shortens with constant velocity, it must be that  $p_0$  remains unchanged. As discussed above, this is an acceptable assumption for skeletal muscle operating near the peak of the length-tension curve.

Similarly, the characteristics of the elastic element can be determined from the initial step in length. By extrapolating the line of constant speed back to the time of the tension step (the line  $xyz$  in Fig. 15.10A), one finds the distance  $0z$  which is the change in length of the elastic element. This relies on the assumption that the force-velocity properties of the muscle change instantaneously with the change in tension. Knowing the change in length of the elastic element and the change in tension that produced it allows one to determine  $\alpha$ .

## 15.2.2 Some Solutions of the Hill Model

### Isometric Tetanus Solution

If a muscle at rest is put into tetanus by repeated stimulation, the isometric tension builds up over a period of time. Because the tension is measured isometrically, the length of the muscle does not change, and thus  $dL/dt = 0$ . Hence, the differential equation for the tension is

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \alpha \left[ \frac{b(p_0 - p)}{p + a} \right]. \quad (15.7)$$

Since this is a first-order differential equations, its qualitative behavior is readily understood. The right-hand side of the equation has a unique zero at  $p = p_0$ , and this zero is stable. Thus, all solutions of this equation must approach  $p_0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .

The solution of this equation can be found explicitly, since this is a separable equation. After separation, we integrate from 0 to  $t$  and use the initial condition  $p(0) = 0$  to obtain

$$-p - (p_0 + a) \log \left( \frac{p_0 - p}{p_0} \right) = \alpha bt, \quad (15.8)$$

which describes the time course of the change in tension implicitly. Notice that  $p \rightarrow p_0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , as expected.

### Release at Constant Velocity

Suppose a muscle, held originally at its isometric tension  $p_0$ , is allowed to contract with constant velocity  $u$ . It seems reasonable that the muscle tension should decrease

until it reaches the value  $p_u$  determined from the force–velocity curve for a velocity  $u$ . The differential equation for  $p$  is

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \alpha \left[ -u + \frac{b(p_0 - p)}{p + a} \right], \quad (15.9)$$

with initial condition  $p(0) = p_0$ . As before, we assume that  $p_0$  does not change during the course of the contraction.

Again, this is a first order differential equation whose right-hand side has a unique, stable, root at  $p = p_u$ , where  $p_u$  is defined by  $(p_u + a)u = b(p_0 - p_u)$ . The solution is found by separation to be

$$p_0 - p + (p_u + a) \log \left( \frac{p_0 - p_u}{p - p_u} \right) = \alpha t(b + u). \quad (15.10)$$

Notice that  $p \rightarrow p_u$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , as it must.

### Response to a Jump in Length

Possibly the most interesting solution is the response to a step decrease in length, as this solution has been used to show that the Hill model does not provide an accurate description of all aspects of muscle behavior (Jewell and Wilkie, 1958).

First, Jewell and Wilkie determined the parameters of the Hill model by the series of experiments described above (Fig. 15.10). They then used the Hill model to predict the response of the muscle to a step decrease in muscle length. Suppose that a muscle, originally held at its isometric tension  $p_0$ , is suddenly decreased in length. One expects the muscle tension to suddenly decrease, but then slowly increase back to  $p_0$ . This is because the isometric tension is independent of length but should take some time to develop at the new length. A typical solution is sketched schematically in Fig. 15.11A.

More precisely, suppose that the length of the muscle as a function of time is given by

$$L(t) = L_1 + L_0 - L_0 H(t), \quad (15.11)$$

where  $H(t)$  is the usual Heaviside function, and where  $L_1$  and  $L_0$  are constants,  $L_0$  being the magnitude of the length step. Thus

$$\frac{dL}{dt} = -L_0 \delta(t), \quad (15.12)$$

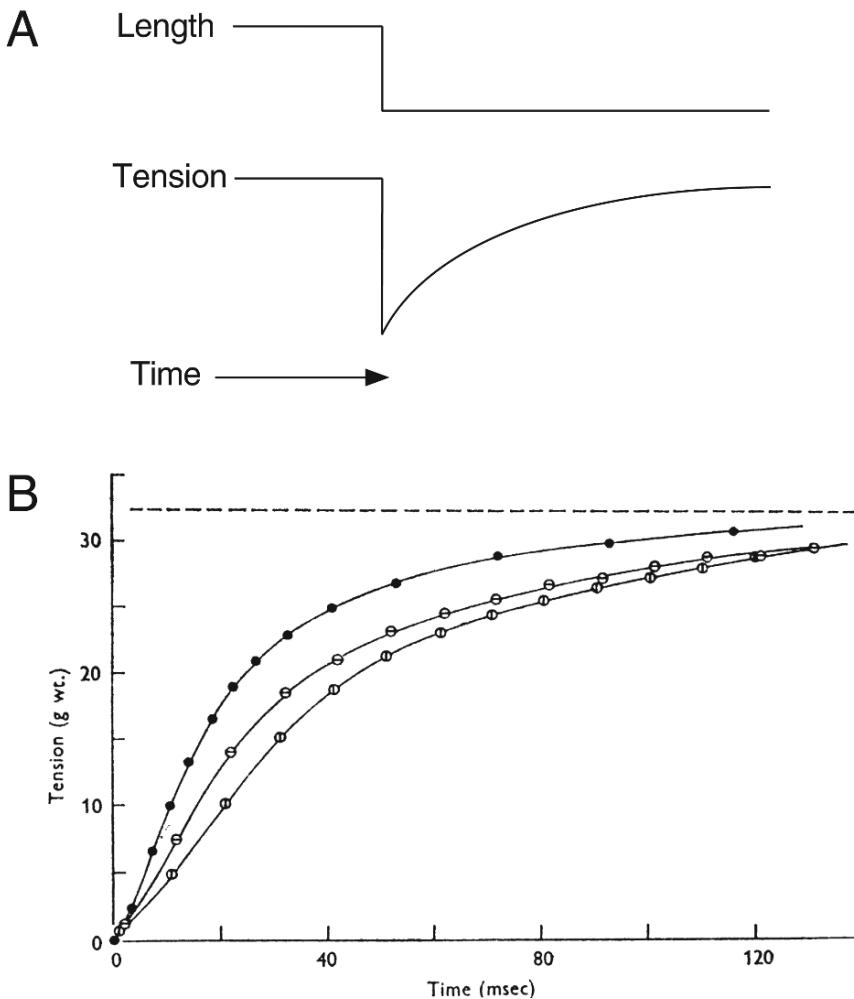
where  $\delta(t)$  denotes the Dirac delta function. Substituting this expression into the differential equation for  $p$  gives

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \alpha \left[ -L_0 \delta(t) + \frac{b(p_0 - p)}{p + a} \right], \quad (15.13)$$

$$p(0^-) = p_0. \quad (15.14)$$

Integrating (15.13) (formally) from  $t = -\epsilon$  to  $t = \epsilon$  and then letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ , we get

$$p(0^+) - p(0^-) = -\alpha L_0, \quad (15.15)$$



**Figure 15.11** A: Schematic diagram of the response to a step decrease in length. B: Comparison of the Hill model to the data of Jewell and Wilkie (1958). The closed circles are computed from the Hill model, while the open circles are data points from two slightly different experimental procedures. (Jewell and Wilkie, 1958; reproduced in White and Thorson, 1975, Fig. 7.)

so that the delta function causes a jump of  $-\alpha L_0$  in  $p$  at the origin. Thus, (15.13) and (15.14) can be rewritten as the initial value problem

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \alpha \left[ \frac{b(p_0 - p)}{p + a} \right], \quad t > 0, \quad (15.16)$$

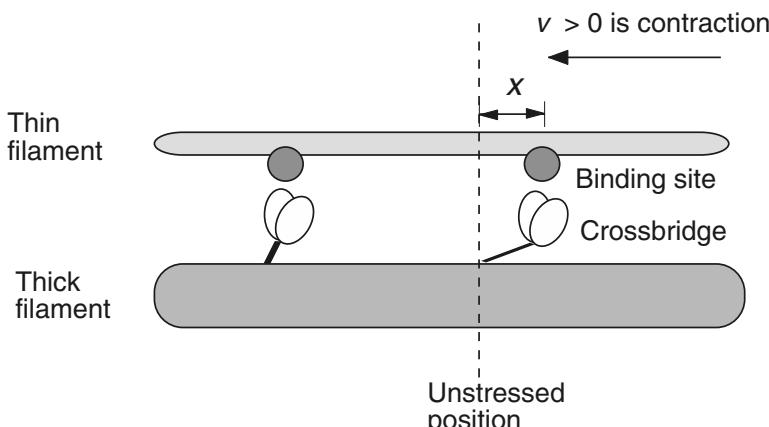
$$p(0) = p_0 - \alpha L_0. \quad (15.17)$$

Since we have reduced the problem to the isometric tetanus problem studied earlier (although with a different initial condition), the solution is easily calculated.

The solution calculated from the Hill model in this way does not agree with experimental observations on the tension recovery following a step decrease in length. In fact, the tension recovers less quickly than is predicted by the model, as illustrated in Fig. 15.11B. Here, the model computations (shown as closed circles), consistently lie above the data points (shown as open circles). These observations, made possible by the improvements in experimental technique in the 20 years after Hill's model was first proposed, forced the conclusion that the Hill model has serious defects. In particular, the assumption that the force–velocity relationship (15.1) is satisfied immediately after a change in tension is a probable major source of error. At the same time that Hill's model was shown to have problems, much more was being discovered about the structure of the sarcomere. This motivated the construction of a completely different type of model, based on the kinetics of the crossbridges rather than on heuristic elastic and contractile elements. The first model of this new type was due to Huxley (1957), and is the basis for the majority of subsequent models of muscle behavior.

## 15.3 A Simple Crossbridge Model: The Huxley Model

To formulate a mathematical model describing crossbridge interactions in a sarcomere, we suppose that a crossbridge can bind to an actin binding site at position  $x$ , where  $x$  measures the distance along the thin filament to a binding site from the crossbridge, and  $x = 0$  corresponds to the position in which the bound crossbridge exerts no force during the power stroke on the thin filament (Fig. 15.12). Crossbridges can be bound to a binding site with  $x > 0$ , in which case they exert a contractile force, or they can be



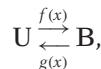
**Figure 15.12** Schematic diagram of the Huxley crossbridge model.

bound to a site with  $x < 0$ , in which case they exert a force that opposes contraction. A crossbridge bound to a binding site at  $x$  is said to have displacement  $x$ . In his original model Huxley assumed that the actin binding sites were sufficiently far apart that each crossbridge could be bound with one and only one binding site. With this assumption, each crossbridge, whether bound or not, can be associated with a unique value of  $x$ .

Let  $\rho$  denote the number of crossbridges (either bound or unbound) with displacement  $x$ . We assume that binding is restricted to occur in some bounded interval,  $-x_0 < x < x_0$ , and that  $\rho$  is a constant independent of  $x$  on that interval. In other words, for each displacement  $x$ , the number of crossbridges with that displacement is conserved, and we exclude the possibility that all the crossbridges could end up, say, with the same displacement. This assumption was originally designed for the isometric case, in which the muscle has a fixed length, and is not necessarily valid under conditions where the muscle is quickly extended by an external force. For example, in response to a very fast imposed load of sufficient magnitude, each crossbridge could be quickly extended to have a large value of  $x > x_0$ , thus violating this conservation law, at least for a short time. However, we ignore this complication for now (but see Section 15.8.1).

Finally, we define  $n(x, t)$  to be the fraction of crossbridges with displacement  $x$  that are bound.

Next, we drastically simplify the reaction mechanism, and assume that a crossbridge can be in one of two states, namely either unbound ( $U$ ), or strongly bound ( $B$ ) and thereby generating a force. We suppose further that the binding and unbinding of crossbridges is described by the simple reaction scheme



where the rate constants are functions of the displacement  $x$ .

The conservation law for the fraction of bound crossbridges can be derived as follows. Consider all the crossbridges that are bound with displacements  $x$  between  $a$  and  $b$ . This total number is given by

$$\rho \int_a^b n(x, t) dx. \quad (15.18)$$

The rate of change of this total number is given by the reactions of the crossbridges as well as the fluxes across the boundaries of the interval  $[a, b]$ . At  $x = a$ , the flux of crossbridges out of the domain is  $\rho v(t)n(a, t)$ , while at  $x = b$ , the flux of crossbridges into the domain is  $\rho v(t)n(b, t)$ . Here  $v(t)$  is the velocity of the actin filament relative to the myosin filament. For notational consistency, we assume that  $v > 0$  denotes muscle contraction. Thus, conservation of crossbridges gives

$$\rho \frac{d}{dt} \int_a^b n(x, t) dx = \rho v(t)n(b, t) - \rho v(t)n(a, t) - \rho \int_a^b [f(x)(1 - n(x, t)) - g(x)n(x, t)] dx, \quad (15.19)$$

and so

$$\int_a^b \frac{\partial}{\partial t} n(x, t) dx = v(t) \int_a^b \frac{\partial}{\partial x} n(x, t) dx - \int_a^b [f(x)(1 - n(x, t)) - g(x)n(x, t)] dx. \quad (15.20)$$

Of course, since  $a$  and  $b$  are arbitrary, the integral can be dropped, yielding the partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} - v(t) \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} = (1 - n)f(x) - ng(x). \quad (15.21)$$

This conservation law and its derivation occur many times in applications, including a number of other places in this book (see for example (2.1), (11.151), (14.3) or (17.31)).

Every time a crossbridge is bound, one ATP molecule is dephosphorylated, so the rate of energy release,  $\phi$ , for this process is given by

$$\phi = \rho \epsilon \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (1 - n(x, t)) f(x) dx, \quad (15.22)$$

where  $\epsilon$  is the chemical energy released by one crossbridge cycle. Since  $n$  is, in general, a function of the contraction velocity, so also is  $\phi$ . We also suppose that a bound crossbridge is like a spring, generating a restoring force  $r(x)$  related to its displacement. Hence, the total force exerted by the muscle is

$$p = \rho \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} r(x)n(x, t) dx. \quad (15.23)$$

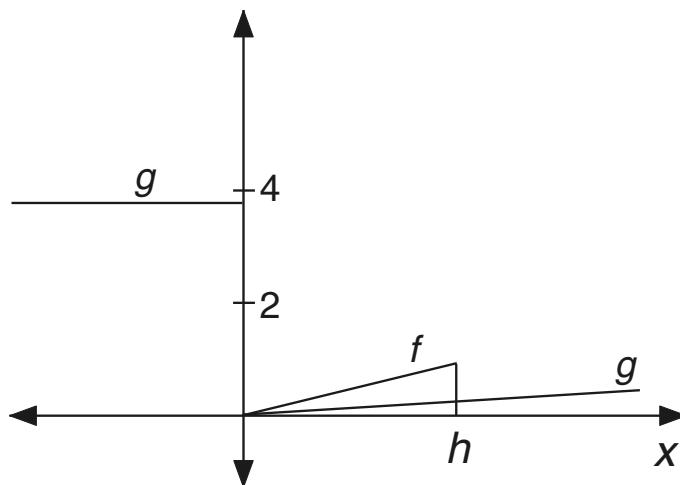
To find the force–velocity relationship for muscle, we assume that the fiber moves with constant velocity, and that  $n(x, t)$  is equilibrated so that  $\partial n / \partial t = 0$ . Then, the steady distribution  $n(x)$  is the solution of the first-order differential equation

$$-v \frac{dn}{dx} = (1 - n)f(x) - ng(x). \quad (15.24)$$

The solution of this differential equation is easily understood. The function  $n(x)$  “tracks” the quasi-steady-state solution  $\frac{f(x)}{f(x) + g(x)}$  at a rate that is inversely proportional to  $v$ . Thus, if  $v$  is small,  $n(x)$  is well approximated by the quasi-steady-state solution, whereas if  $v$  is large,  $n(x)$  changes slowly as a function of  $x$ . From this we make two observations. First, the force is largest at small velocities. In fact, at zero velocity, the isometric force is

$$p_0 = \rho \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} r(x) \frac{f(x)}{f(x) + g(x)} dx. \quad (15.25)$$

Second, at large velocities, the distribution  $n(x)$  has small amplitude, and so the force is small. The force decreases because the amount of time during which a crossbridge is close to a binding site is small, and so binding is less likely, with the result that a smaller fraction of crossbridges exerts a contractile force. Another factor is that at higher velocities a greater number of crossbridges are carried into the  $x < 0$  region before they can dissociate, hence generating a force opposing contraction. It is intuitively reasonable that at some maximum velocity, the force generated by the crossbridges with  $x < 0$



**Figure 15.13** The attachment and detachment functions,  $f$  and  $g$ , in the Huxley model.

exactly balances the force generated by those with  $x > 0$ , at which point no tension is generated by the muscle, and the maximum velocity of shortening is attained. We have already seen that this occurs in the Hill force–velocity curve. Crossbridge theory provides an elegant explanation of this phenomenon.

To obtain quantitative formulas, one must make some reasonable guesses for the functions  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$ , and then calculate  $n(x)$  and  $p$  numerically or analytically. Although numerical solutions can always be obtained, there are several choices of  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  for which analytical solutions are possible. The functions that Huxley chose are illustrated in Fig. 15.13 and have the form

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 0, \\ f_1x/h, & 0 \leq x \leq h, \\ 0, & x > h, \end{cases} \quad (15.26)$$

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} g_2, & x \leq 0, \\ g_1x/h, & x > 0. \end{cases} \quad (15.27)$$

In this model, the rate of crossbridge dissociation,  $g$ , is low when the crossbridge exerts a contractile force, but when  $x$  is negative, the crossbridge opposes contraction, and  $g$  increases. Similarly, crossbridges do not attach at a negative  $x$  ( $f = 0$  when  $x < 0$ ), and as  $x$  increases, the rate of crossbridge attachment increases as well. This ensures that crossbridge attachment contributes an overall contractile force. At some value  $h$ , the rate of crossbridge attachment falls to zero, as it is assumed that crossbridges cannot bind to a binding site that is too far away.

The steady-state solution for  $n(x)$  is easily obtained by direct piecewise solution of the differential equation. Let  $n_I$ ,  $n_{II}$  and  $n_{III}$  denote, respectively, the steady-state

solutions in the regions  $x \leq 0$ ,  $0 < x \leq h$  and  $h < x$ . Then  $n_I$  is the solution of the equation

$$-\nu \frac{dn_I}{dx} = -g_2 n_I, \quad (15.28)$$

and thus

$$n_I = A e^{g_2 x / \nu}, \quad (15.29)$$

for some constant  $A$  yet to be determined. Note that this solution is bounded as  $x \rightarrow -\infty$  as it should be.

Next we solve for  $n_{II}$ , which satisfies the equation

$$-\nu \frac{dn_{II}}{dx} + n_{II} \left( \frac{f_1 x}{h} + \frac{g_1 x}{h} \right) = \frac{f_1 x}{h}, \quad (15.30)$$

which has solution

$$n_{II} = \frac{f_1}{f_1 + g_1} + B \exp \left( \frac{x^2 (f_1 + g_1)}{2\nu h} \right), \quad (15.31)$$

for some constant  $B$ , also to be determined.

The only bounded solution of the equation for  $n_{III}$ ,

$$-\nu \frac{dn_{III}}{dt} = g_1 \frac{x}{h} n_{III}, \quad (15.32)$$

is identically zero. This makes physical sense as well, since crossbridges can never be attached for  $x > h$ , if  $\nu > 0$ . Now, to find the unknown constants  $A$  and  $B$  we require that the solution be continuous at  $x = 0$  and  $x = h$ , and thus

$$n_I(0) = n_{II}(0), \quad n_{II}(h) = 0. \quad (15.33)$$

It follows that

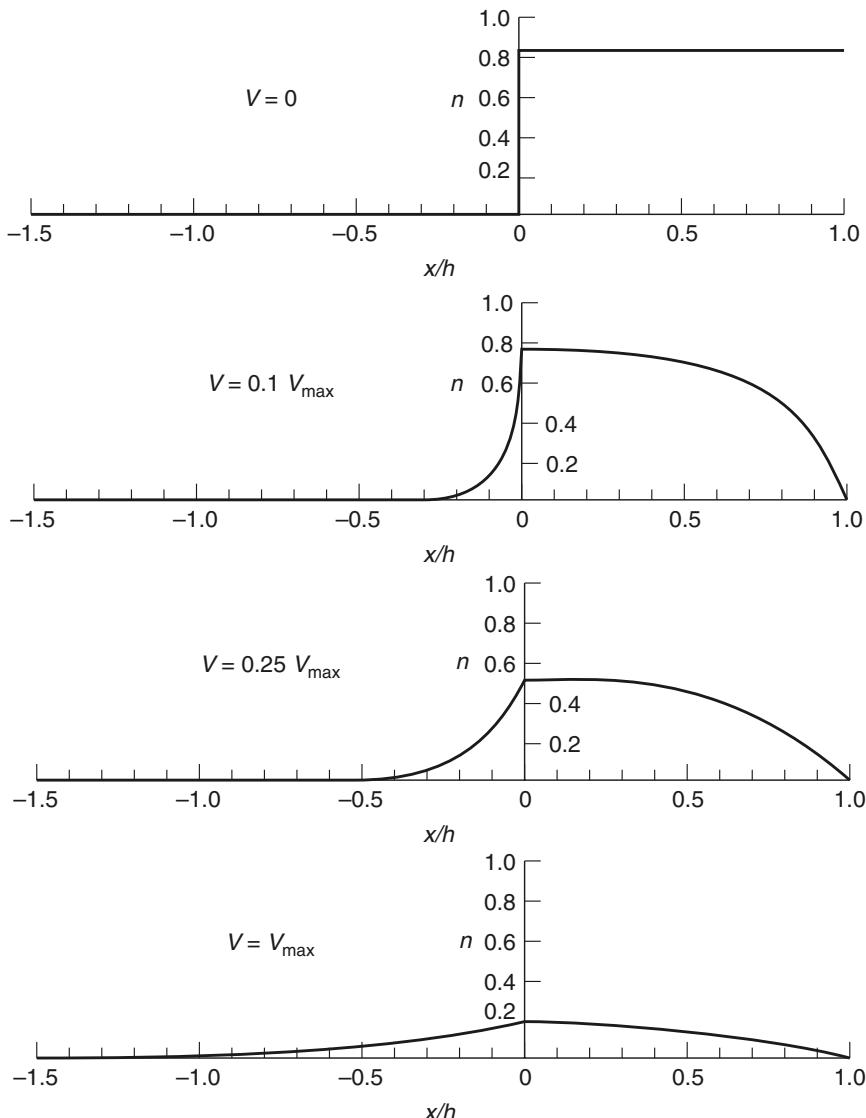
$$B = -\frac{f_1}{f_1 + g_1} e^{-\phi/\nu}, \quad (15.34)$$

$$A = \frac{f_1}{f_1 + g_1} + B = \frac{f_1}{f_1 + g_1} (1 - e^{-\phi/\nu}), \quad (15.35)$$

and thus

$$n(x) = \begin{cases} F_1 \left[ 1 - e^{-\phi/\nu} \right] e^{\frac{x}{2h} G_2 \frac{\phi}{\nu}}, & x < 0, \\ F_1 \left\{ 1 - \exp \left[ \left( \frac{x^2}{h^2} - 1 \right) \frac{\phi}{\nu} \right] \right\}, & 0 < x < h, \\ 0, & x > h, \end{cases} \quad (15.36)$$

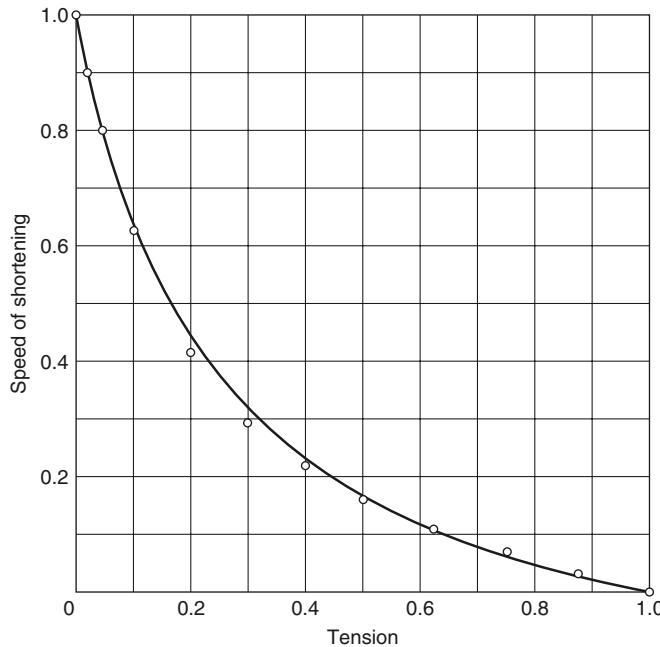
where  $\phi = (f_1 + g_1)h/2$  has units of velocity, and  $F_1 = \frac{f_1}{f_1 + g_1}$ , and  $G_2 = \frac{g_2}{f_1 + g_1}$  are dimensionless. This steady solution is plotted in Fig. 15.14 for four values of  $\nu$ . Notice the unphysiological implication of this solution, that  $n > 0$  for all  $x < 0$ . However, only



**Figure 15.14** Steady-state distributions of  $n$  in the Huxley model, for different values of  $V$ , plotted as a function of dimensionless space  $\frac{x}{h}$ . (Huxley, 1957, Fig. 7.) The parameter values for this figure and the next were chosen by Huxley by trial and error to obtain a good fit with experimental data. The values are  $F_1 = f_1/(g_1 + f_1) = 13/16$ ,  $G_2 = g_2/(f_1 + g_1) = 3.919$ .

a negligible number of crossbridges are bound at unphysiological displacements, so these have little effect on the behavior of the model.

Assuming that the crossbridge acts like a linear spring, so that  $r(x) = kx$  for some constant  $k$ , the force generated by the muscle (defined by (15.23)) can be calculated



**Figure 15.15** The force–velocity curve of the Huxley model (solid curve) compared to Hill’s data (open circles). (Huxley, 1957, Fig. 8.) Here,  $p$  has been scaled so that  $p(0) = 1$ . This determines the value used for  $\rho k$ . Further, the parameters have been scaled so that  $v_{\max} = 1$ .

as a function of the velocity of contraction, and the result compared to the Hill force–velocity equation (15.1). The force–velocity equation calculated from the Huxley model is

$$p = \frac{\rho k f_1}{f_1 + g_1} \frac{h^2}{2} \left\{ 1 - \frac{v}{\phi} (1 - e^{-\phi/v}) \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2G_2^2} \frac{v}{\phi} \right) \right\}, \quad (15.37)$$

which for appropriate choice of parameters gives an excellent fit to the force–velocity curve, as illustrated in Fig. 15.15.

Huxley chose the model parameters by a process of trial and error so that the rate of energy production agreed with experimental data. A good fit is obtained by choosing  $F_1 = \frac{f_1}{f_1 + g_1} = 13/16$  and  $G_2 = \frac{g_2}{f_1 + g_1} = 3.919$ . One can show that for these parameter values,  $4\phi \approx v_{\max}$  (Exercise 5). Since in the Hill model  $v_{\max} = bp_0/a$ , it follows that  $\phi \approx \frac{bp_0}{4a}$ . The parameter values that Hill obtained by fitting to data have  $p_0/a \approx 4$ . Hence, it follows that  $\phi \approx b$ . This is an elegant way of relating parameter values in the Huxley model to the parameters of the Hill model.

It is useful to see what  $f_1$ ,  $g_1$  and  $g_2$  are in dimensional units. Brokaw (1976) used  $f_1 = 65 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $g_1 = 15 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $g_2 = 313.5 \text{ s}^{-1}$  and  $h = 10 \text{ nm}$ , to give  $f_1 + g_1 = 80 \text{ s}^{-1}$  which gives  $\phi = 400 \text{ nm s}^{-1}$  and thus a maximum shortening velocity of  $1600 \text{ nm s}^{-1}$  per

half sarcomere, and a maximum shortening velocity of  $3200 \text{ nm s}^{-1}$  per sarcomere. Assuming that a sarcomere is  $2.5 \mu\text{m}$  long, each centimeter of muscle contains 4000 sarcomeres. If each sarcomere shortens at  $800 \text{ nm s}^{-1}$ , a 1 cm length of muscle shortens at  $3200 \times 4000 \text{ nm/s}$ , which is 1.28 cm/s. From the caption of Fig. 15.8 we see that Hill used a piece of muscle 38 mm long, which corresponds to a maximum shortening velocity of 4.8 cm/s, in good agreement with the measured value shown in Fig. 15.8.

### 15.3.1 Isotonic Responses

Thus far we have shown how the Huxley model can explain the Hill force–velocity curve using crossbridge dynamics. However, for the model to give an acceptable explanation of muscle dynamics, there is a great deal of additional experimental data with which it should agree. In particular, the model should explain the response of a muscle, first, to a step change in tension (isotonic response) and second, to a step change in length (isometric response). After all, the Hill model was rejected as a satisfactory explanation because of its inability to explain all such data.

It is instructive to consider how one calculates the response of the Huxley model to a step change in tension, as the procedure is not obvious. Suppose a muscle exerts its isometric tension,  $p_0$ , at some length  $L$ . Then the steady-state crossbridge distribution is

$$n_s(x) = \frac{f(x)}{f(x) + g(x)}. \quad (15.38)$$

Now suppose the tension on the muscle is reduced to  $p_1 < p_0$  so suddenly that no crossbridges are able to associate or dissociate during the reduction. In a typical experiment of Civan and Podolsky (1966), a muscle fiber of length 15,000  $\mu\text{m}$  was subjected to a change in tension that changed the fiber length by less than 50  $\mu\text{m}$ , a relative length change of 1/300. Hence, a typical sarcomere of length 2.5  $\mu\text{m}$  changed in length by less than 10 nm, and so the length of each crossbridge was changed by less than 10 nm. A crossbridge is able to absorb such length changes without dissociating from the binding site.

Suppose the extension of each crossbridge decreases by an unknown amount  $\Delta L$ , and so the crossbridge distribution suddenly changes to  $n_s(x + \Delta L)$  and is no longer at steady state. The change in length is found by constraining the new tension to be  $p_1$ , and hence  $\Delta L$  satisfies

$$p_1 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(x)n_s(x + \Delta L) dx. \quad (15.39)$$

Although (15.39) cannot in general be solved analytically,  $\Delta L$  can be determined numerically, since it is easy to determine  $p_1$  as a function of  $\Delta L$ .

Following the sudden change in tension, the crossbridge population is not at steady state, so it must change according to the differential equation (15.21) with initial condition  $n(x, 0) = n_s(x + \Delta L)$  and subject to the constraint that the tension is constant at  $p = p_1$ . However, during this evolution,  $v$  is not constant, as there is some transient behavior before the muscle reaches its steady contraction velocity (cf. Fig. 15.10).

However, we can determine an expression for  $v(t)$  in terms of  $n(x, t)$  that guarantees that the tension remains constant at  $p_1$ .

Since  $p_1$  is constant, it must be that  $\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial t} = 0$ , or

$$0 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(x) n_t(x, t) dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(x) \left( v(t) \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} + (1 - n) f(x) - ng(x) \right) dx. \quad (15.40)$$

We solve this for  $v(t)$  to get

$$-v(t) = \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(x) ((1 - n)f(x) - ng(x)) dx}{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(x) \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} dx}. \quad (15.41)$$

Thus, for the tension to remain constant, the partial differential equation (15.21) must have the contraction velocity specified by (15.41).

Using a slightly different approach, Podolsky et al. (1969; Civan and Podolsky, 1966) showed that the Huxley model does not agree with experimental data in its response to a step change in tension. We saw in Fig. 15.10 that immediately after the tension reduction the muscle length changes also, and after an initial oscillatory period, the muscle contracts with a constant velocity. However, the Huxley model does not show any oscillatory behavior, the approach to constant velocity being monotonic.

Motivated by this discrepancy, Podolsky and Nolan (1972, 1973) and Podolsky et al. (1969) altered the form of the functions  $f$  and  $g$  to obtain the required oscillatory responses in the Huxley model. Of course, in Huxley's original model no physiological justification was given for the functions  $f$  and  $g$ , and modification of these functions is therefore an obvious place to start fiddling with the model to fit the data. Julian (1969) also showed that the Huxley model can be adjusted to give the correct responses to a step change in length. The details of these analyses do not concern us greatly; the main point is that Huxley's crossbridge model has enough flexibility to explain a wide array of experimental data.

### 15.3.2 Other Choices for Rate Functions

The simple choices for rate functions made by Huxley yield interesting analytical results. However, there are numerous other ways that the rate functions might be chosen. Suppose, for simplicity, that the rate functions  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  have nonoverlapping compact support. Where it is nonzero, we take  $f(x)$  to be a constant,  $f(x) = \alpha/\epsilon$ , on a small interval near the maximum displacement  $h$ , say  $h - \epsilon \leq x \leq h$ , so that actin and myosin bind rapidly in a small interval near  $h$ . We expect that  $\alpha$  depends on the local  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. On the support of  $f(x)$ ,  $n(x) = 1 - \exp[\alpha(x - h)/(\epsilon v)]$ .

The role of  $g(x)$  is to break crossbridge bonds. A simple way to accomplish this is to assume that all bonds break at exactly  $x = \delta < 0$ , in which case

$$n(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{\alpha(x-h)/\epsilon v}, & h - \epsilon \leq x \leq h, \\ (1 - e^{-\alpha/\epsilon v}), & \delta \leq x \leq h - \epsilon, \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere.} \end{cases} \quad (15.42)$$

It is left as an exercise (Exercise 6) to show that in the limit as  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$  and  $\delta \rightarrow 0$  the force–velocity curve for this model with a linear restoring force does not produce zero force at some positive velocity, a feature that appears in the Hill force–velocity curve.

A second option is to suppose that bonds break when  $x < 0$ , and to take  $g(x) = \kappa/(\delta - x)$  on  $\delta < x < 0$ . Note that the rate of bond breakage is infinite at  $x = \delta$ , and thus all crossbridges are dissociated for  $x < \delta$ . Then

$$n(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{\alpha(x-h)/\epsilon v}, & h - \epsilon \leq x \leq h, \\ 1 - e^{-\alpha/v}, & 0 \leq x \leq h - \epsilon, \\ (1 - e^{-\alpha/v})(1 - \frac{x}{\delta})^{-\kappa/v}, & \delta \leq x < 0, \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere,} \end{cases} \quad (15.43)$$

in which case  $n(x)$  is a continuous function of  $x$  with compact support. Notice that this works only if  $v > 0$ . The model must be modified if  $v < 0$  (See Exercise 9).

Another way to determine the functions  $f$  and  $g$  is to estimate the energy of the bond as a function of position, and then from Eyring rate theory to determine the rates of reaction of binding and unbinding. This is the approach followed, for example, by Pate (1997). In fact, now that the biochemistry of the crossbridge reactions is known, fairly sophisticated models of this type are possible (Marland, 1998). Other versions of the basic scheme have been constructed by Pate and Cook (1989, 1991), while the models of T.L. Hill and his colleagues (Hill 1974, 1975; Eisenberg and Hill, 1978; Eisenberg and Greene, 1980) have combined crossbridge models with detailed studies of the biochemical thermodynamics of the crossbridge cycle.

## 15.4 Determination of the Rate Functions

So far we have seen that an ad hoc approach to the determination of the functions  $f$ ,  $g$ , and  $r$  can generate models that agree in varying degrees with experimental data. Obviously, it is desirable to find some way in which these functions can be determined more systematically, for example, to guarantee the correct form of the force–velocity curve. One way that this can be accomplished is by using a slightly different model of the crossbridge dynamics (Lacker and Peskin, 1986; Peskin, 1975, 1976).

### 15.4.1 A Continuous Binding Site Model

Recall that the Huxley model was based on the assumption that the actin binding sites are sufficiently separated so that each crossbridge can be associated with a unique binding site. Thus, even when a crossbridge is unbound, the distance of the crossbridge to the nearest binding site is defined. We now make the opposite assumption, that the actin binding sites are continuously distributed, so that myosin can bind anywhere along a thin filament. By analogy, one can think of the thin filament as flypaper, to which the myosin heads stick wherever they touch down. In this case, the variable  $x$  denotes the distance between the crossbridge anchor and the binding position, and the

crossbridge distribution is described by a function  $n(x, t)$  such that  $\int_a^b n(x, t) dx$  is the fraction of crossbridges (at time  $t$ ) that are attached with distance to the binding site  $x$  in the range  $[a, b]$ . Note that in this formulation, an unbound crossbridge cannot be associated with a value of  $x$ , as  $x$  is meaningful only for a bound crossbridge. The total fraction of bound crossbridges is

$$N = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} n(x, t) dx < 1, \quad (15.44)$$

and the total fraction of unbound crossbridges is  $1 - N$ .

To derive the differential equation for  $n$ , we consider the conservation of crossbridges with  $x$  in the interval  $[a, b]$ . Let  $P$  denote the pool of crossbridges that are bound with  $x \in [a, b]$ . If the muscle is contracting at velocity  $v > 0$ , crossbridges move out of  $P$  at the rate  $vn(a, t)$  and move into  $P$  at the rate  $vn(b, t)$ . Further, if  $f$  is defined such that  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$  is the rate at which new crossbridges are formed with  $x \in [a, b]$ , and if  $g(x)$  denotes the rate at which crossbridges with displacement  $x$  detach, then the rate of change of crossbridges is

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_a^b n(s, t) ds = v[n(b, t) - n(a, t)] + (1 - N) \int_a^b f(s) ds - \int_a^b g(s)n(s, t) ds. \quad (15.45)$$

Writing  $v[n(b, t) - n(a, t)]$  as the integral  $v \int_a^b \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} dx$ , and noting that since  $a$  and  $b$  are arbitrary, the integrals can be dropped, we obtain

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} - v(t) \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} = (1 - N)f(x) - ng(x). \quad (15.46)$$

Note that in this derivation we assume that the rate of crossbridge attachment is proportional to the fraction of unattached crossbridges,  $1 - N$ .

The equations for the continuous binding site model are similar to those of the Huxley model, the differences being, first, that the rate of crossbridge attachment is given by  $(1 - N)f$  in the continuous binding site model and  $(1 - n)f$  in the Huxley model, and, second, that  $n$  and  $f$  have different units in the two models. In the Huxley model  $n$  is dimensionless, while in the continuous binding site model  $n$  has dimension of length $^{-1}$ . Similarly,  $f$  has dimension of time $^{-1}$  in the Huxley model and dimension of length $^{-1}$  time $^{-1}$  in the continuous binding site model.

In the following discussion we restrict our attention to a simplified version of the continuous binding site model in which all crossbridges attach at some preferred displacement, say,  $x = h$ . In this case  $f(x) = F\delta(x - h)$ , where  $F$  is the rate of crossbridge attachment. For this choice of  $f$  it is most convenient to rewrite the differential equation to incorporate crossbridge attachment as a boundary condition. We do this by integrating (15.46) from  $h - \epsilon$  to  $h + \epsilon$  and letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ . The jump in  $n$  at  $x = h$  is then

given by  $F(1 - N)/v$ , and so (15.46) can be written as

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} - v(t) \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} = -ng(x), \quad x < h, \quad (15.47)$$

$$n(h, t) = \frac{F(1 - N)}{v}. \quad (15.48)$$

Although in general,  $N$  and  $v$  are functions of  $t$ , we consider only those cases in which they are constant. However,  $N$  and  $n$  are also functions of  $v$ , and we sometimes write  $N(v)$  and  $n(x, t; v)$  to emphasize this dependence.

### 15.4.2 A General Binding Site Model

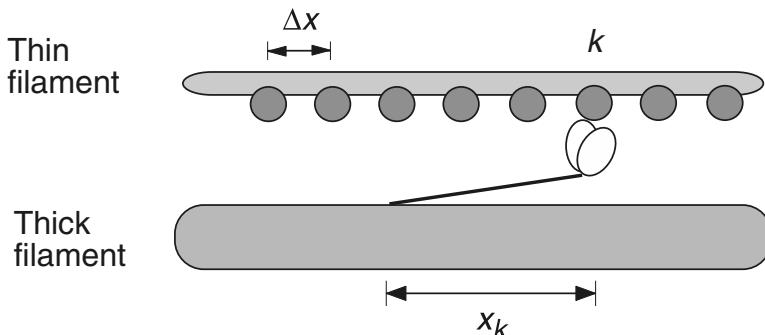
Both the continuous binding site model and the Huxley model can be derived as limiting cases of a more general model (Peskin, 1975). Suppose that on the thin filament there are a discrete number of actin binding sites, with regular spacing  $\Delta x$  (as illustrated in Fig. 15.16). We denote the horizontal distance from the crossbridge (on the thick filament) to the  $k$ th binding site by  $x_k$ . Finally, let  $n_k(t)$  denote the probability that the crossbridge is attached to site  $k$  at time  $t$ . Then, if  $f(x_k)$  and  $g(x_k)$  are the rates at which a crossbridge attaches and detaches respectively from the  $k$ th site, we have

$$\frac{dn_k(t)}{dt} = f(x_k) \left[ 1 - \sum_i n_i(t) \right] - g(x_k) n_k(t). \quad (15.49)$$

Note that the rate of crossbridge attachment is proportional to the probability that the crossbridge is not attached,  $1 - \sum_i n_i(t)$ .

If we now assume that the  $n_k(t)$  are samples of a smooth function, so that

$$n_k(t) = n(x_k(t), t), \quad (15.50)$$



**Figure 15.16** Schematic diagram of a crossbridge model with discrete binding sites. The actin binding sites are separated by a distance  $\Delta x$ , and  $x_k$  denotes the distance of the  $k$ th binding site from the unstressed position of the crossbridge.

it follows that

$$\frac{dn_k}{dt} = -v \frac{\partial n}{\partial x_k} + \frac{\partial n}{\partial t}, \quad (15.51)$$

where, for consistency with our assumption that  $v$  is positive for a contracting muscle, we have defined  $v = -dx_k/dt$ . Substituting (15.51) into (15.49) gives

$$-v \frac{\partial n}{\partial x_k} + \frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = f(x_k) \left[ 1 - \sum_{i=-\infty}^{\infty} n(x_k + i\Delta x, t) \right] - g(x_k)n(x_k, t). \quad (15.52)$$

Since this holds for any binding site, the subscript  $k$  may be omitted, and thus

$$-v \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = f(x) \left[ 1 - \sum_{i=-\infty}^{\infty} n(x + i\Delta x, t) \right] - g(x)n. \quad (15.53)$$

By taking two different limits of (15.53) we obtain the continuous binding site and Huxley models. Suppose first that the binding sites are so widely spaced that at any given time only one is within reach of any crossbridge. This is modeled by assuming that  $n(x, t) = 0$  if  $|x| > \Delta x/2$ . In this case, (15.53) is applicable only on the interval  $|x| \leq \Delta x/2$ , and with  $x$  in this interval, the only nonzero term in the sum in (15.53) is the term corresponding to  $i = 0$ . Thus (15.53) becomes

$$-v \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = f(x)[1 - n(x, t)] - g(x)n(x, t), \quad (15.54)$$

which is the Huxley model.

If, however, we assume that  $\Delta x$  is small and if we let  $n = \hat{n}\Delta x$ ,  $f = \hat{f}\Delta x$ , we get

$$-v \frac{\partial \hat{n}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \hat{n}}{\partial t} = \hat{f}(x) \left[ 1 - \sum_{i=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{n}(x + i\Delta x, t)\Delta x \right] - g(x)\hat{n}. \quad (15.55)$$

In the limit as  $\Delta x \rightarrow 0$  the sum becomes a Riemann integral, so that

$$-v \frac{\partial \hat{n}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \hat{n}}{\partial t} = \hat{f}(x) \left[ 1 - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{n}(s, t) ds \right] - g(x)\hat{n}, \quad (15.56)$$

which is the continuous binding site model.

### 15.4.3 The Inverse Problem

The continuous binding site model (15.47) and (15.48) can be used to determine  $F$ ,  $g(x)$ , and  $r(x)$  directly from experimental data. (Recall that  $r(x)$  is the restoring force generated by a crossbridge with extension  $x$ .) The steady-state solution of (15.47) and (15.48) can be written as

$$n(x; v) = \begin{cases} \frac{F[1 - N(v)]}{v} \exp \left( \int_x^h \frac{-g(s)}{v} ds \right), & x < h, \\ 0, & x > h. \end{cases} \quad (15.57)$$

Integrating (15.57) from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ , we obtain

$$N(v) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} n(x; v) dx = \frac{F[1 - N(v)]}{v} I(v), \quad (15.58)$$

where

$$I(v) = \int_{-\infty}^h \exp\left(\int_x^h \frac{-g(s)}{v} ds\right) dx. \quad (15.59)$$

Thus, we can solve for  $N(v)$  as

$$N(v) = \frac{FI(v)}{FI(v) + v}. \quad (15.60)$$

Substituting (15.60) into (15.57) we obtain an explicit solution for  $n$ ,

$$n(x; v) = \frac{F}{FI(v) + v} \exp\left(\int_x^h \frac{-g(s)}{v} ds\right). \quad (15.61)$$

Since the average force produced by a crossbridge is

$$p(v) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} r(x)n(x; v) dx, \quad (15.62)$$

it follows that if  $F$ ,  $g$ , and  $r$  are known, then (15.61) can be used to find an explicit expression for the force–velocity curve. This is the direct problem that we considered in the context of the Huxley model. Here we want to solve the inverse problem of determining  $F$ ,  $g$ , and  $r$  from knowledge of  $p$ . However, additional information is needed to do this.

The energy flux during constant contraction can be measured experimentally; in general it is a function of  $v$ . If we assume that the energy flux  $\phi(v)$  is proportional to the rate at which crossbridges go through the cycle of binding and unbinding to the actin filament, then  $\phi$  is proportional to the crossbridge turnover rate,

$$\phi(v) = \rho\epsilon F(1 - N(v)), \quad (15.63)$$

where  $\rho$  is the total number of crossbridges and  $\epsilon$  is the energy released during each crossbridge cycle. If the fraction of attached crossbridges during isometric tetanus is known, then  $F$  can be calculated from

$$\phi_0 = \rho\epsilon F(1 - N_0), \quad (15.64)$$

where  $\phi_0 = \phi(0)$  and  $N_0 = N(0)$ . Next,  $I(v)$  can be calculated from  $\phi(v)$  by substituting (15.63) into (15.60), which gives

$$I(v) = v \left( \frac{F\rho\epsilon - \phi(v)}{F\phi(v)} \right) = \frac{\rho\epsilon v[\phi_0 - (1 - N_0)\phi]}{\phi\phi_0}. \quad (15.65)$$

Hence, from experimental knowledge of  $N_0$  and  $\phi(v)$  we can calculate explicit expressions for  $F$  and  $I(v)$ .

To find  $g$  from  $I(v)$ , we define the transformation

$$y(x) = \int_x^h g(s) ds. \quad (15.66)$$

Since  $g$  is positive,  $y$  is a monotonic function of  $x$  and has an inverse that can be calculated explicitly. Differentiating (15.66) with respect to  $x$ , we obtain

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -g(x), \quad (15.67)$$

from which it follows that

$$x(y) = h - \int_0^y \frac{ds}{\bar{g}(s)}, \quad (15.68)$$

where  $\bar{g}$  is defined by  $g(x) = g(x(y)) = \bar{g}(y)$ , and where we have used the condition  $y(h) = 0$ , so that  $x(0) = h$ .

Using these definitions, and also defining  $\sigma = 1/v$ , we get

$$I(1/\sigma) = \int_{-\infty}^h e^{-\sigma y} dx \quad (15.69)$$

$$= \int_{\infty}^0 -e^{-\sigma y} \frac{dy}{g(x)} \quad (15.70)$$

$$= \int_0^{\infty} \frac{1}{\bar{g}(y)} e^{-\sigma y} dy. \quad (15.71)$$

The function  $I(1/\sigma)$  is the Laplace transform of  $1/\bar{g}(y)$ , and so  $1/\bar{g}(y)$  is obtained as the inverse Laplace transform of  $I(1/\sigma)$ . Furthermore,  $g$  can be obtained as a function of  $x$ , since  $x$  is defined as a function of  $y$  by (15.68). Thus, for given  $y$  we can calculate both  $\bar{g}(y)$  and  $x(y)$ . Since  $\bar{g}(y) = g(x(y))$ , we thus have a parametric representation for  $g(x)$ .

An explicit formula for  $\bar{g}(y)$  can be obtained by using the inversion formula for Laplace transforms. Thus,

$$\frac{1}{\bar{g}(y)} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} I(1/\sigma) e^{\sigma y} d\sigma, \quad (15.72)$$

where  $c > 0$  is arbitrary.

In a similar way,  $r(x)$  can be obtained from the force–velocity curve  $p(v)$ . It is left as an exercise to show that

$$\frac{\epsilon p(1/\sigma)}{\sigma \phi(1/\sigma)} = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\bar{r}(y)}{\bar{g}(y)} e^{-\sigma y} dy, \quad (15.73)$$

where  $\bar{r}(y) = r(x(y))$ . Hence

$$\bar{r}(y) = \frac{\epsilon \bar{g}(y)}{2\pi i} \int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \frac{p(1/\sigma)}{\sigma \phi(1/\sigma)} e^{\sigma y} d\sigma. \quad (15.74)$$

### A Specific Example

The above analysis can be used to calculate  $F$ ,  $g$ , and  $r$  to fit the Hill force–velocity curve and energy flux data (also observed by Hill). First, note that the force–velocity equation (15.1) can be written in the form

$$p(v) = \frac{bp_0 - av}{v + b}. \quad (15.75)$$

Second, Hill (1938) observed that at constant rate of contraction, the heat flux  $\dot{q}$  generated by a contracting muscle is linear, given by

$$\dot{q} = av + \phi_0, \quad (15.76)$$

where the constant  $a$  is the same as in the force–velocity equation, and where  $\phi_0$  is the energy flux at zero velocity. The energy flux is the sum of two terms: the heat flux and the power used by the muscle. The power of a muscle contracting at speed  $v$  is  $pv$  (force times velocity), and thus the energy flux,  $\phi(v)$ , is given by

$$\phi(v) = \dot{q} + pv = \phi_0 + \frac{bv(a + p_0)}{v + b}. \quad (15.77)$$

Substituting the expression for  $\phi$  into (15.65) and using (15.72), we find that

$$\frac{1}{\bar{g}(y)} = \frac{\rho\epsilon}{\phi_0} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \left[ \frac{\sigma_+ + N_0(\sigma - \sigma_*)}{\sigma(\sigma - \sigma_*)} \right] e^{\sigma y} d\sigma, \quad (15.78)$$

and

$$\bar{r}(y) = \frac{\epsilon\bar{g}(y)}{2\pi i} \int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty} \left[ \frac{p_0\sigma - a/b}{\sigma(\sigma - \sigma_*)} \right] e^{\sigma y} d\sigma, \quad (15.79)$$

where  $\sigma_+ = -(a + p_0)/\phi_0$  and  $\sigma_* = -1/b + \sigma_+$ . These integrals can be evaluated using the contour  $\Gamma$  shown in Fig. 15.17.

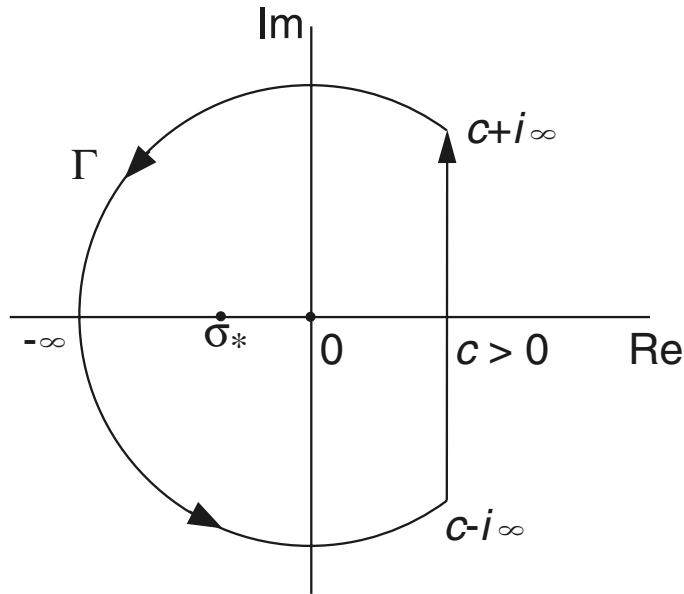
From the residue theorem, we know that the integral around  $\Gamma$  is the sum of the residues inside the contour. Further, it is not difficult to see that the integral over the semicircular part of the contour goes to zero as the radius of the semicircle becomes infinite. Hence

$$2\pi i \sum \text{residues} = \int_{\Gamma} = \int_{c-i\infty}^{c+i\infty}. \quad (15.80)$$

Both of the integrals (15.78) and (15.79) have two simple poles inside  $\Gamma$ , one at  $\sigma = 0$ , the other at  $\sigma = \sigma_*$ . For the integral (15.78),

$$\text{the pole at } \sigma = 0 \text{ has residue } N_0 - \sigma_+/\sigma_*; \quad (15.81)$$

$$\text{the pole at } \sigma = \sigma_* \text{ has residue } \sigma_+ e^{\sigma_* y}/\sigma_*; \quad (15.82)$$



**Figure 15.17** Contour for the evaluation of the path integral in the continuous binding site model. (Adapted from Lacker and Peskin, 1986, Fig. 6.)

while for the integral (15.79),

$$\text{the pole at } \sigma = 0 \text{ has residue } \frac{a}{b\sigma_*}; \quad (15.83)$$

$$\text{the pole at } \sigma = \sigma_* \text{ has residue } \left( p_0 - \frac{a}{b\sigma_*} \right) e^{\sigma_* y}. \quad (15.84)$$

Adding these residues for each integral gives, finally,

$$\frac{1}{\bar{g}(y)} = \frac{\rho\epsilon}{\phi_0} \left[ N_0 + \frac{\sigma_+}{\sigma_*} (e^{\sigma_* y} - 1) \right], \quad (15.85)$$

$$\bar{r}(y) = \frac{\epsilon \bar{g}(y)}{\phi_0} \left[ \frac{a}{b\sigma_*} + \left( p_0 - \frac{a}{b\sigma_*} \right) e^{\sigma_* y} \right]. \quad (15.86)$$

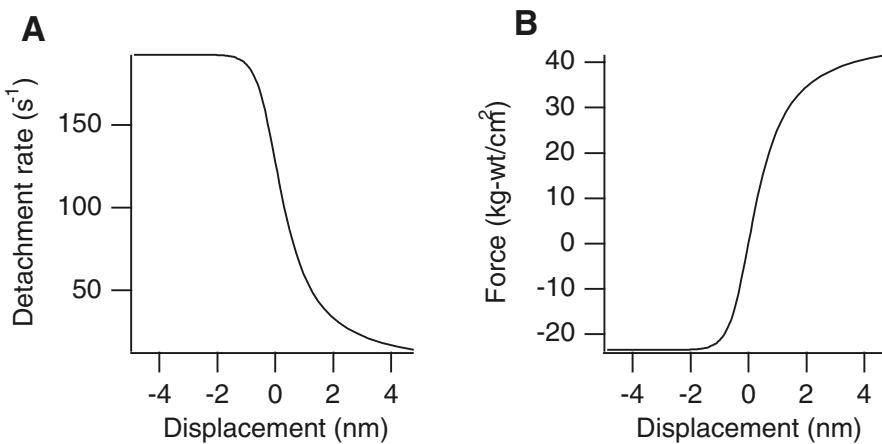
To calculate  $x(y)$ , use (15.68) from which it follows that

$$x(y) = h - \frac{\rho\epsilon}{\phi_0} \left[ \left( N_0 - \frac{\sigma_+}{\sigma_*} \right) y + \frac{\sigma_+}{\sigma_*^2} (e^{\sigma_* y} - 1) \right]. \quad (15.87)$$

This gives a parametric definition of  $g(x)$  and  $r(x)$ .

Finally, we note one important feature of this model. Each crossbridge exerts zero force at some value of  $y = y_0$  such that  $\bar{r}(y_0) = 0$ . Solving for  $y_0$  gives

$$y_0 = \frac{1}{\sigma_*} \ln \left( \frac{a}{a - p_0 b \sigma_*} \right). \quad (15.88)$$



**Figure 15.18** Crossbridge detachment rate (A) and force (B) in the continuous binding site model, calculated from (15.85), (15.86), and (15.87), using parameter values  $p_0 = 3 \text{ kg-wt/cm}^2$ ,  $a/p_0 = 0.25$ ,  $b = 0.325$  muscle lengths per second,  $\phi_0 = ab$ ,  $F = 125 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $N_0 = 0.9$ ,  $\phi_0/\rho\epsilon = F(1 - N_0) = 12.5 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . If we require that the crossbridge exerts no force at  $x = 0$ , then all crossbridges attach at  $h = 4.78 \text{ nm}$ , assuming that the length of a half-sarcomere is  $1.1 \mu\text{m}$ .

Hence, if we wish  $x = 0$  to correspond to the equilibrium state of the crossbridge (i.e., when it exerts no force) as it was in the Huxley model,  $h$  must be chosen so that  $x(y_0) = 0$ , and thus

$$h = \frac{\rho\epsilon}{\phi_0} \left[ \left( N_0 - \frac{\sigma_+}{\sigma_*} \right) y_0 + \frac{\sigma_+}{\sigma_*^2} (e^{\sigma_* y_0} - 1) \right]. \quad (15.89)$$

Plots of  $g$  and  $r$  are shown in Fig. 15.18. From these curves we note that as the displacement of the crossbridge becomes more negative, its probability of detachment increases, but the force it exerts decreases. This allows a high isometric force without a corresponding reduction in the maximum contraction velocity; crossbridges initially exert a large force, but tend not to be carried into the region where they oppose contraction.

## 15.5 The Discrete Distribution of Binding Sites

The Huxley model assumes that at any one time, each crossbridge has only a single actin binding site available for binding, while the continuous binding site model assumes the opposite, that crossbridges can bind anywhere. However, the real situation is probably something in between these two extremes. Depending on the flexibility of the actin filament, it is probable that each crossbridge has a selection of more than one binding site, but it is unlikely that the binding sites are effectively continuous (cf. Fig. 15.4). T.L. Hill (1974, 1975) has constructed a detailed series of models that treat, with varying degrees of accuracy, the intermediate case when the actin binding sites are distributed

discretely but more than one is within reach of a crossbridge at any time. Detailed consideration of models of this type is left for the exercises (Exercises 7 and 8).

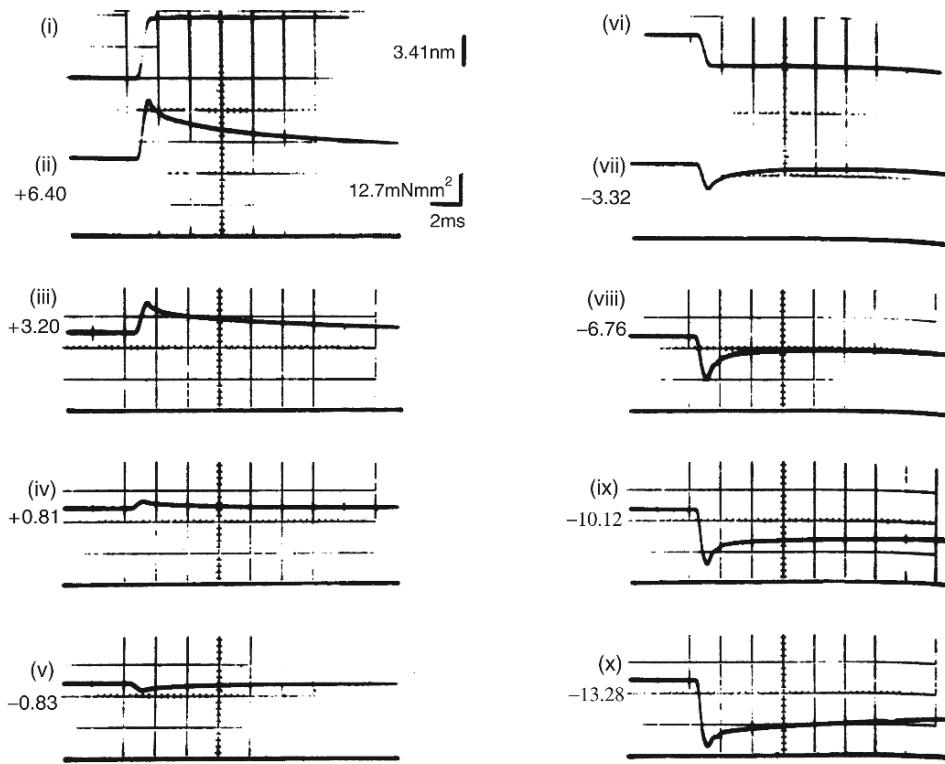
## 15.6 High Time-Resolution Data

All the models discussed so far treat crossbridge binding as a relatively simple phenomenon; either crossbridges are bound or they are not, and there is no consideration of the possibility that each crossbridge might have a number of different bound states. As we have seen, such assumptions do a good job of explaining muscle behavior on the time scale of tens of milliseconds. However, as the development of new experimental techniques allowed the measurement of muscle length and tension on much shorter time scales, the initial models were improved to take this high time-resolution data into account. One of the first models to do so was that of Huxley and Simmons (1971). The Huxley–Simmons model is quite different from models discussed above, giving a detailed description of how the force exerted by an *attached* crossbridge can vary with time over a short period, but it does not take into account the kinetics of crossbridge binding and unbinding to the thin filament.

### 15.6.1 High Time-Resolution Experiments

As we have already seen (Fig. 15.11B), when muscle length is decreased, the tension immediately decreases, and then, over a time period of 100 milliseconds or so, recovers to its original level. When this tension recovery is measured at a higher time resolution, it becomes apparent that there are two components of the recovery (Fig. 15.19). The initial drop in tension (which occurs simultaneously with the change in length) is followed by a rapid, partial recovery, followed in turn by a much slower complete recovery to the original tension. The slower recovery process is the one described by the other models discussed in this chapter. Typical experimental results are shown in Fig. 15.20. In this figure,  $T_1$  denotes the value of the tension after the initial drop, and  $T_2$  denotes the value of the tension after the initial rapid recovery. For length increases ( $y > 0$ )  $T_1$  is a linear function of the change in length, while for length decreases ( $y < 0$ ), the decrease in tension is less than might be expected from the linear relation. It is likely that because the length step is not instantaneous but takes about a millisecond to complete, when a larger length decrease is applied, the rapid recovery process has already begun to take effect by the time the length decrease has been completed. If this is true (and it appears plausible from the curves shown in Fig. 15.19),  $T_1$  would be consistently overestimated for larger, negative,  $y$ . From the linearity of the curve for  $y > 0$ , it is reasonable to suppose that the relationship between  $T_1$  and  $y$  is linear over the entire range of  $y$ , as denoted by the dashed line in the figure.

In contrast,  $T_2$  is clearly a nonlinear function of  $y$ . For small length changes, the rapid process restores the tension to its original level, but for steps of larger length, the rapid process results in only partial recovery. The time course of the rapid recovery has



**Figure 15.19** Changes in tension after a sudden stretch (ii–iv) or a sudden shortening (v, vii–x). Traces (i) and (vi) show the time course of the length change for traces (ii) and (vii), respectively. The number to the left of each record denotes the amount of the length change (in nm) per half-sarcomere. Note the high time-resolution of the measurements. (Huxley and Simmons, 1971, Fig. 2.)

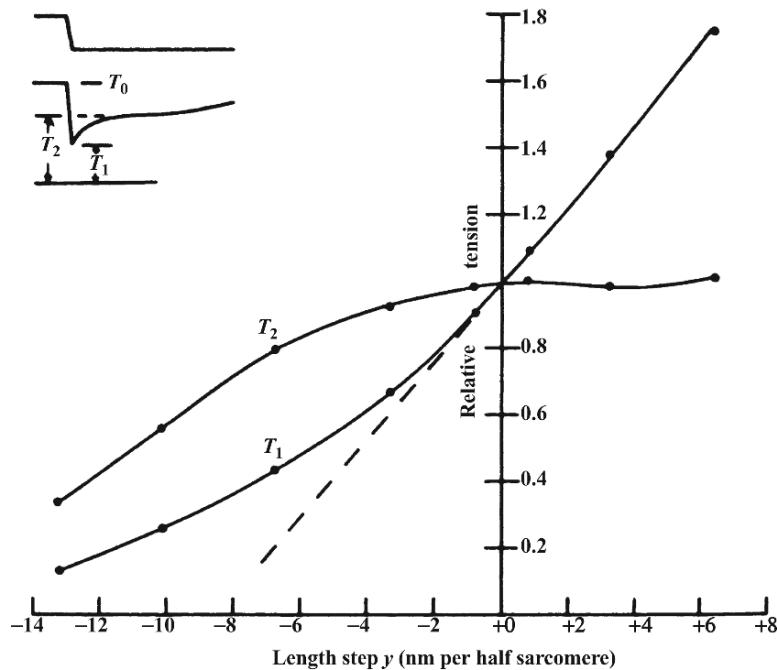
a dominant rate constant,  $r$ , which is well fit by the function

$$r = \frac{r_0}{2} (1 + e^{-\alpha y}), \quad (15.90)$$

with  $r_0 = 0.4$  and  $\alpha = 0.5$ .

## 15.6.2 The Model Equations

To model and give a possible explanation of the above results, we assume that a cross-bridge consists of two parts: an elastic arm connected to a rotating head that can bind to the actin filament in two different configurations. Recall that in the Huxley model, tension was generated by the crossbridge length, measured as the distance from the base of the crossbridge to the binding site. Here because there are two different possible binding configurations, the tension generated by the crossbridge depends not only on the distance from the base to the binding site, but also on the binding configuration,

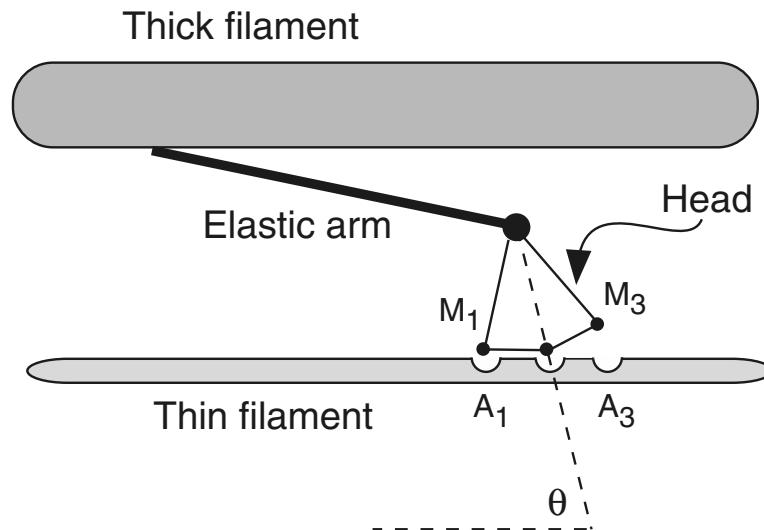


**Figure 15.20** Curves of  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  as functions of the length step. As depicted in the inset,  $T_1$  is the minimal tension reached during the step, while  $T_2$  is the value of the tension reached after the quick recovery phase. The upper trace of the inset depicts the time course of the length change. (Huxley and Simmons, 1971, Fig. 3.)

with different configurations resulting in different total crossbridge lengths. The idea behind this model is that the rapid process to restore tension can be accomplished by a change of the binding configuration, without changing the overall distribution of bound and unbound crossbridges.

As illustrated in Fig. 15.21, the head of the crossbridge is assumed to contain three combining sites,  $M_1, M_2, M_3$ , each of which has the ability to bind to a corresponding site,  $A_1, A_2, A_3$ , on the actin filament. (To avoid confusion with previous terminology, the Ms and As are called combining sites, rather than binding sites.) The affinity between the combining sites is greatest for  $M_3A_3$ , and smallest for  $M_1A_1$ . As the head of the crossbridge rotates in the direction of increasing  $\theta$ , it moves through the sequence of binding configurations,  $M_1A_1$  only,  $M_1A_1$  and  $M_2A_2$ ,  $M_2A_2$  only,  $M_2A_2$  and  $M_3A_3$ ,  $M_3A_3$  only. During this progression the crossbridge arm is extended, and thus tension is increased. The two stable configurations of the crossbridge are those in which two consecutive combining sites are attached simultaneously. Because the binding affinity is greater for  $M_3A_3$ , the energetically most favorable position for the crossbridge head is for  $M_2$  and  $M_3$  to be bound to  $A_2$  and  $A_3$  simultaneously.

An intuitive explanation of the behavior of this model is as follows. At steady state there is a balance between the tension on the crossbridge arm and the force exerted



**Figure 15.21** Schematic diagram of the Huxley-Simmons crossbridge model. (Adapted from Huxley and Simmons, 1971, Fig. 5).

by the head of the crossbridge. The crossbridge head, in trying to rotate to a position of lower energy, places the elastic crossbridge arm under tension, and so the crossbridge arm, in turn, exerts a contractile force on the muscle. When the muscle is held at a constant length, the sum of all the crossbridge contributions gives the isometric force. If the length of the muscle is suddenly reduced, the tension on the crossbridge arm is suddenly reduced also, and this causes the instantaneous drop in tension seen experimentally. However, over the next few milliseconds, the reduced tension on the arm allows the crossbridge head to rotate to an energetically more favorable position, thus restoring the tension on the arm, and consequently restoring the muscle tension. Hence, the instantaneous drop in tension results from the fact that the elastic crossbridge arm responds instantaneously to a change in length, while the time course of the tension recovery is governed by how fast the crossbridge head rotates, which is, in turn, governed by the kinetics of attachment and detachment of the combining sites.

It is important to note that this description relies on the assumption that during isometric tetanus, all crossbridges have a positive displacement, i.e.,  $x > 0$ . Otherwise, if some crossbridges had  $x < 0$ , a shortening of the muscle fiber would *increase* the force exerted by these crossbridges, in conflict with the above interpretation. However, in the models discussed so far, this is the case. For example, in the Huxley model the isometric tetanus solution is

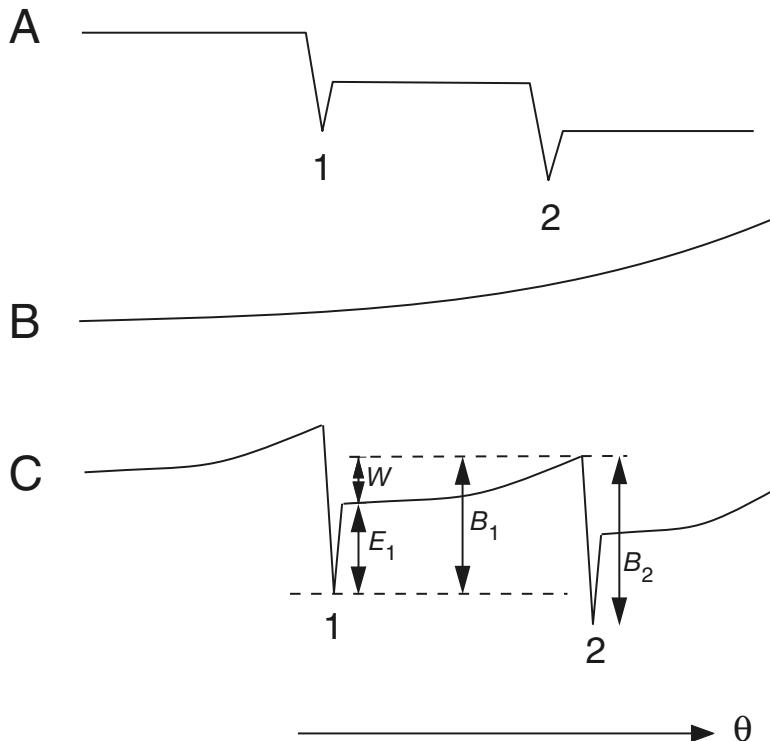
$$n(x) = \frac{f(x)}{f(x) + g(x)}, \quad (15.91)$$

which is zero when  $f(x) = 0$ . Since  $f$  is nonzero only when  $x > 0$ , it follows that all crossbridges have a positive displacement during isometric tetanus. Although this is

the case for the Huxley model, this is not necessarily true in experimental situations or in all models.

The model also neglects the effects of those few crossbridges that have such small displacements that a small decrease in length serves to shift them to negative displacements. However, the quantitative effects of this neglect are likely to be small.

To express the model mathematically, we construct a potential-energy diagram for the crossbridge. Recall that the crossbridge head has two stable configurations, one when  $M_1A_1$  and  $M_2A_2$  bonds exist simultaneously, which we denote as position one, and the other when  $M_2A_2$  and  $M_3A_3$  bonds exist simultaneously which we denote as position two. Because these configurations are stable, the potential energy of the crossbridge head reaches a local minimum at positions one and two, and since position two is energetically favored over position one, it has a lower potential energy (see Fig. 15.22A).



**Figure 15.22** A: Potential energy of the crossbridge head. As the head rotates, with increasing  $\theta$  the combining sites bind consecutively. The potential energy decreases overall from left to right, as it is assumed that  $M_3$  and  $A_3$  have the highest affinity. The two local minima correspond to stable configurations when two consecutive combining sites are bound simultaneously; these are called position one and position two. B: Potential energy due to the elastic energy of the crossbridge arm. C: Total potential energy of the crossbridge, showing the notation used in the model.

However, as the head rotates from position one to position two, the crossbridge arm is extended, which increases the total potential energy of the crossbridge. Thus, adding the potential energy of the crossbridge arm (Fig. 15.22B) to the potential energy of the crossbridge head, we get the total potential energy of the crossbridge (Fig. 15.22C).

Now let  $n_1$  and  $n_2 = 1 - n_1$  denote the fraction of crossbridges in positions one and two, respectively, and let  $y$  denote the displacement (i.e., length change) of the thick filament relative to the thin filament to be applied. Thus,  $y = 0$  corresponds to the steady state before any length change is applied (i.e., the isometric case). Also, let  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  denote the lengths of the crossbridge arm when the head is at positions one and two respectively, before the length change is applied. Let  $y_0 = (y_1 + y_2)/2$  (the midway position), and let  $h = y_2 - y_1$ . Finally, let  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  denote the tension in the crossbridge arm when the head is in positions one and two, respectively. Then, after the length change is applied,

$$F_1 = K(y + y_1) = K(y + y_0 - h/2), \quad F_2 = K(y + y_2) = K(y + y_0 + h/2), \quad (15.92)$$

where  $K$  is the stiffness of the crossbridge arm, assumed to follow Hooke's law. Hence, the average tension,  $\phi$ , on a crossbridge arm is given by

$$\phi = n_1 F_1 + n_2 F_2 = K(y + y_0 - h/2 + hn_2). \quad (15.93)$$

As the crossbridge head moves from position one to position two, the extending crossbridge arm does work, exerting an average force of approximately  $(F_1 + F_2)/2$  over a distance  $h$ . Thus the work,  $W$ , is given by

$$W = h \frac{F_1 + F_2}{2} = Kh(y + y_0). \quad (15.94)$$

Now, suppose that a crossbridge moves from position one to position two at kinetic rate  $k_+$  and moves in the opposite direction at kinetic rate  $k_-$ . As with barrier models of the ionic current through a membrane channel (Chapter 3), we assume that each of these rates is an exponential function of the height of the potential-energy barrier that the crossbridge must cross in order to jump from one combining configuration to the other. With this assumption,  $k_+ = \exp(\frac{-B_1}{kT})$  and  $k_- = \exp(\frac{-B_2}{kT})$ , where  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  are the barrier heights to move from configuration 1 to 2, and 2 to 1, respectively,  $T$  is the absolute temperature and  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{k_+}{k_-} &= \exp\left(\frac{B_2 - B_1}{kT}\right) \\ &= \exp\left(\frac{B_2 - E_1 - W}{kT}\right) \\ &= \exp\left(\frac{B_2 - E_1 - Kh(y + y_0)}{kT}\right) \\ &= A^0 \exp\left(\frac{-Khy}{kT}\right), \end{aligned} \quad (15.95)$$

where  $A^0 = \exp\left(\frac{B_2 - E_1 - Kh y_0}{kT}\right)$ .

When the length of the muscle is changed, the crossbridges redistribute themselves among the two configurations according to the differential equation

$$\frac{dn_2}{dt} = k_+ n_1 - k_- n_2 = k_+ - rn_2, \quad (15.96)$$

where

$$r = k_+ + k_- = k_- \left[ 1 + A^0 \exp\left(\frac{-yKh}{kT}\right) \right]. \quad (15.97)$$

Since  $r$  is the time constant for the redistribution of crossbridges, it follows that  $r$  is also the time constant for the development of the tension  $T_2$  at the end of the quick recovery. Equation (15.97) is the same as (15.90) if  $Kh = \alpha kT$ , and  $A^0 = 1$ , and thus the model shows the correct time course for tension development. At steady state,

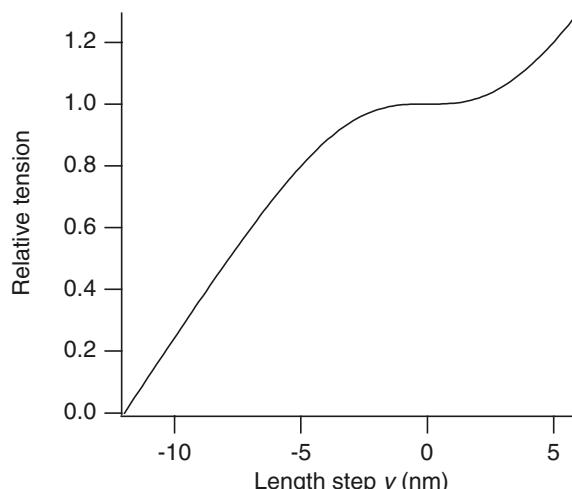
$$n_2 = \frac{k_+}{k_+ + k_-} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 + \tanh\left(\frac{\alpha y}{2}\right) \right], \quad (15.98)$$

where we have used that  $k_+/k_- = \exp(-\alpha y)$ . Hence, the steady-state tension (which corresponds to  $T_2$ ) is given by

$$\phi = K(y + y_0 - h/2 + hn_2) = \frac{\alpha kT}{h} \left[ y_0 + y - \frac{h}{2} \tanh\left(\frac{\alpha y}{2}\right) \right]. \quad (15.99)$$

A plot of  $\phi$  is given in Fig. 15.23, from which it is seen that the model gives an excellent qualitative description of the experimental data shown in Fig. 15.20.

In summary, although the Huxley–Simmons model does not take later events, such as crossbridge binding and unbinding, into account and is not intended to describe the full tension recovery in the manner of the Huxley model, it nevertheless provides an excellent qualitative description of the initial phase of tension recovery following a step change in length.



**Figure 15.23** Plot of relative steady tension  $\phi$  (15.99) in the Huxley–Simmons model. Parameter values:  $\alpha = 0.5 \text{ nm}$ ,  $y_0 = 8 \text{ nm}$ ,  $h = 8 \text{ nm}$ . Because we plot relative tension, the numerical value of  $kT$  has no effect on the shape of the curve.

## 15.7 In Vitro Assays

Using reconstituted systems of actin and myosin (so-called *in vitro* assays), it is possible to observe single myosin molecules working their way along an actin strand (Sheetz and Spudich, 1983; Spudich et al., 1985; Uyeda et al., 1990), or single kinesin molecules moving along a microtubule (Howard et al., 1989). If a solution of myosin fragments, each containing the motor domain, is put on a nitrocellulose-coated glass surface, some of the individual myosin molecules attach to the surface. Upon addition of a solution of ATP and polymerized actin filaments, the individual actin filaments are grabbed by the myosin motor domains, which then try to move along the filament. Since the myosins are fixed but the actin filament is not, there is a resulting movement of the actin filament. Individual filaments can then be observed gliding over the field of myosin molecules. By careful regulation of the concentration of the myosin fragments, the average number of myosin molecules moving each actin strand can be controlled. Experimental results show that the speed of gliding increases with the number of myosin molecules that are moving the actin filament, and Pate and Cook (1991) have presented a simple analysis to show why this should be so.

Consider the case that the actin filament is moved by a single myosin molecule. For simplicity, assume that the spacing between actin binding sites is exactly the length of the power stroke, i.e., 10 nm, and let  $h$  denote the length of the power stroke. The speed of movement is then  $h \times$  the mean cycle rate. After the myosin binds and executes a power stroke it can rebind to the actin filament only at a displacement of  $x = h$  nm. Following the notation of the Huxley model (Section 15.3), the rate of rebinding is thus  $f(h)$  and the rate of detachment is  $g(0)$ . Thus the mean time to rebind is  $1/f(h)$ , the mean time to detach is  $1/g(0)$ , and the mean cycle time is  $1/f(h) + 1/g(0)$ . It follows that the speed of the actin filament,  $v$ , is given by

$$v = \frac{h}{\frac{1}{f(h)} + \frac{1}{g(0)}}, \quad (15.100)$$

which, using the parameter values of Brokaw (1976),  $f(h) = 65 \text{ s}^{-1} \ll g(0) = 313 \text{ s}^{-1}$ , is approximated by  $v \approx f(h)h$ . Thus, the rate-limiting step is the attachment of the myosin to the actin filament.

It is left as an exercise (Exercise 10) to show that, in the limit as the number of bound crossbridges goes to infinity, the gliding rate is given by

$$v \approx \frac{g_2 h}{2}, \quad (15.101)$$

where  $g_2$  is defined by (15.27). Since, for the Huxley parameters,  $f(h) < g_2/2$ , it follows that the gliding rate increases as the number of bound crossbridges increases, as is observed experimentally.

## 15.8 Smooth Muscle

Smooth muscle is quite different, both in biochemistry and function, from skeletal or cardiac muscle. Furthermore, there is an enormous diversity of smooth muscle to match its diversity of function. Smooth muscle is found around blood vessels and airways, and is a major component of the hollow internal organs such as the gastrointestinal system (Chapter 18), the bladder, and the uterus. Unlike skeletal and cardiac muscle, smooth muscle is nonstriated, for although it contains both the actin and myosin necessary for contractile function, these proteins are not arranged in regular arrays.

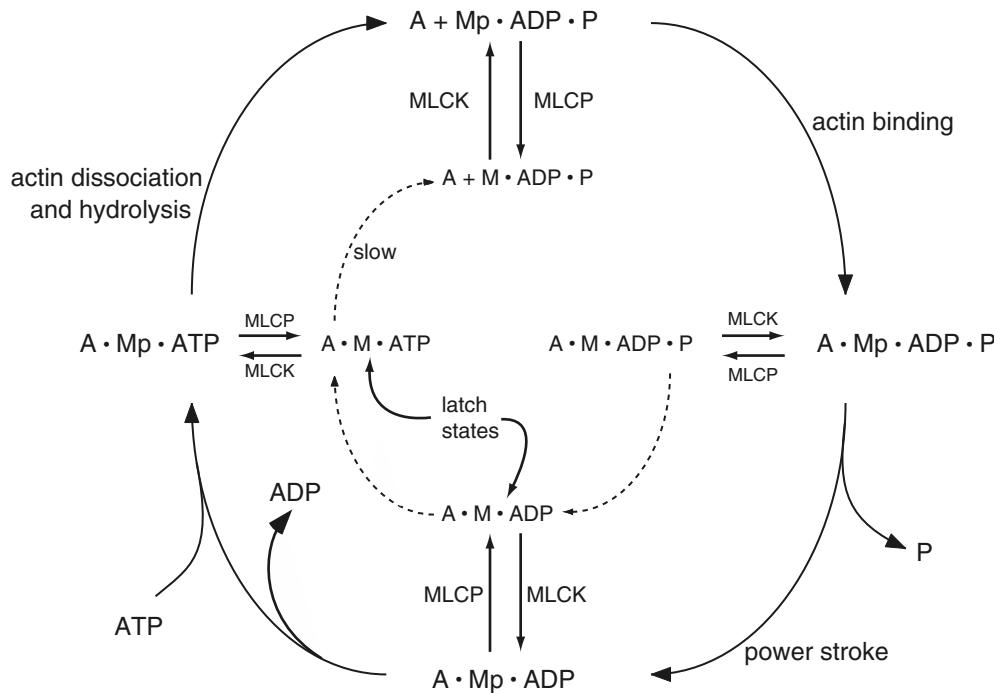
Like striated muscle, smooth muscle is electrically active, with a variety of ion pumps, channels, and exchangers in the plasma membrane, that can generate action potentials. Furthermore, contraction requires a rise in the cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. However, in contrast to striated muscle, this rise in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration often occurs via the production of  $\text{IP}_3$ , and subsequent release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the sarcoplasmic reticulum, as described in Chapter 7.

The most important difference between smooth and striated muscle is the different way in which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  regulates contraction. Recall from earlier in this chapter that in striated muscle the binding of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to troponin exposes the myosin binding site on the actin filament and allows the crossbridge cycle to generate force. However, smooth muscle contains no troponin. Instead, the crossbridge cycle can occur only when myosin is phosphorylated at a specific site. This phosphorylation is carried out by *myosin light chain kinase* (MLCK), which is activated by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -calmodulin. Hence, a rise in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  leads to a rise in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -calmodulin, as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binds to the calmodulin, leading to increased activation of MLCK, phosphorylation of the myosin, and thus contraction.

Dephosphorylation of the myosin by *myosin light chain phosphatase* (MLCP) prevents the crossbridge cycle from occurring. However, this does not necessarily lead to relaxation of the muscle. If dephosphorylation occurs while the myosin is bound to the actin, the crossbridge enters the so-called *latch state*. While in this state, the myosin can unbind from the actin only very slowly; thus, no active force can be generated (since the crossbridge cycle cannot occur) but neither can the crossbridge relax, as the myosin remains bound. Thus, if all the crossbridges were in the latch state, the muscle would be rigid and unable to relax, but would require little energy to stay in this state. Thus, smooth muscle is able to sustain a load while using little ATP, which allows for the maintenance of organ shape and dimension without undue use of energy. The smooth muscle crossbridge cycle is illustrated in Fig. 15.24.

### 15.8.1 The Hai–Murphy Model

Most quantitative studies of smooth muscle are based on the work of Hai and Murphy (1989a,b; Murphy, 1994), who assumed that a crossbridge could exist in one of four forms: myosin either unattached or attached, either phosphorylated or not (Fig. 15.25).



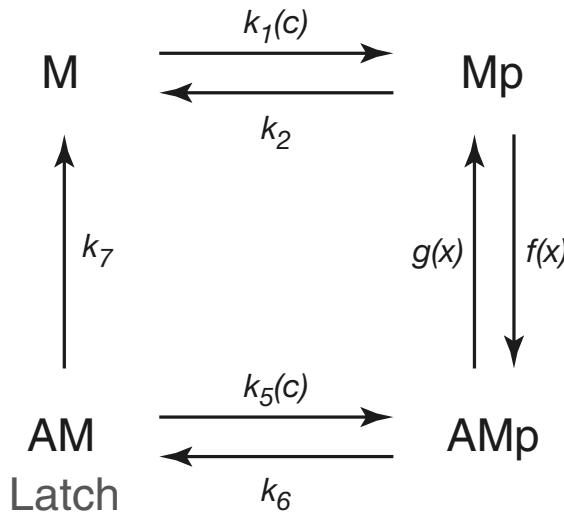
**Figure 15.24** Schematic diagram of the eight-state binding model of smooth muscle. The outer ring of solid lines corresponds to the usual crossbridge cycle, but, to enter this cycle, myosin (M) must be in the phosphorylated state ( $M_p$ ). The inner ring of dotted lines is incomplete, since unphosphorylated myosin cannot bind to actin. MLCK is myosin light chain kinase, MLCP is myosin light chain phosphatase. When the crossbridge is in the latch state it can neither relax quickly nor generate active force.

The rate of crossbridge phosphorylation by MLCK is denoted by  $k_1$ , and is a function of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration,  $c$ . The rate of dephosphorylation was assumed by Hai and Murphy to be constant, although it now seems possible that it also depends on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration as well as the level of agonist stimulation (Wang et al., 2008). In general, unattached and attached myosin (M and AM respectively) could be phosphorylated at different rates ( $k_1(c)$  and  $k_5(c)$  respectively), although it is often assumed that these two rates are the same.

Mijailovich et al. (2000) extended the original Hai–Murphy model by including dependence on the crossbridge extension, in the same way as in the Huxley model (Section 15.3). Thus, the rates of attachment and detachment of phosphorylated myosin are  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  respectively, where  $f$  and  $g$  have the same shape as shown in Fig. 15.13.

However, unphosphorylated myosin cannot attach to actin, and detaches only slowly. Hence,  $k_7$  is smaller than  $g(x)$ , and there is no reverse reaction.

Because  $k_7$  is small, it is possible that some bound crossbridges experience large negative displacements. This introduces some subtleties into the model equations.



**Figure 15.25** Schematic diagram of the Hai–Murphy model of smooth muscle (Hai and Murphy, 1989a,b). M – myosin; Mp – phosphorylated myosin; AMP – attached phosphorylated myosin; AM – attached myosin. The rate  $k_1$  denotes the rate of activated myosin light chain kinase (MLCK), and is a function of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration (denoted by  $c$ ), via  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -calmodulin. As in the Huxley model,  $x$  is crossbridge displacement.

Following the Huxley model, we let  $x$  be the crossbridge displacement. Then, using standard arguments, the evolution of the density of bound crossbridges is given by

$$\frac{\partial N_{\text{AMP}}}{\partial t} - \nu(t) \frac{\partial N_{\text{AMP}}}{\partial x} = k_5(c)N_{\text{AM}} + f(x)N_{\text{Mp}} - (k_6 + g(x))N_{\text{AMP}}, \quad (15.102)$$

$$\frac{\partial N_{\text{AM}}}{\partial t} - \nu(t) \frac{\partial N_{\text{AM}}}{\partial x} = k_6N_{\text{AMP}} - (k_5(c) + k_7)N_{\text{AM}}. \quad (15.103)$$

For an unbound crossbridge, the displacement is the distance to the binding site with which it could bind. Without loss of generality, we assume that  $f(x)$  is nonzero only on the interval  $0 < x < h$  and that  $\Delta x$ , the distance between binding sites, is greater than  $h$ . Thus,  $N_M$  and  $N_{Mp}$ , the density of crossbridges in states M and Mp, respectively, which are unbound, are defined only for  $0 < x < \Delta x$ . However, with  $\nu > 0$ , it is possible for a bound crossbridge to have displacement anywhere in the interval  $-\infty < x < h$ . Furthermore, when a bound crossbridge with negative displacement becomes unbound, it becomes an unbound crossbridge with displacement  $x + i\Delta x$ , where  $i$  is the smallest integer for which  $x + i\Delta x > 0$ . A similar argument holds for  $\nu < 0$  but with positive displacements greater than  $\Delta x$ . Thus, the evolution of  $N_M$  is governed by the partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial N_M}{\partial t} - \nu(t) \frac{\partial N_M}{\partial x} = k_2N_{Mp} - k_1(c)N_M + k_7 \sum_{i=-\infty}^{\infty} N_{AM}(x - i\Delta x, t), \quad (15.104)$$

and similarly for  $N_{Mp}$ ,

$$\frac{\partial N_{Mp}}{\partial t} - \nu(t) \frac{\partial N_{Mp}}{\partial x} = k_1(c)N_M - (k_2 + f(x))N_{Mp} + \sum_{i=-\infty}^{\infty} g(x - i\Delta x)N_{AMP}(x - i\Delta x, t). \quad (15.105)$$

In addition, the flux of unbound sites with  $x = 0$  must match the flux of unbound sites with  $x = \Delta x$ , so that

$$\frac{\partial N_M(0, t)}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial N_M(\Delta x, t)}{\partial x}, \quad \frac{\partial N_{Mp}(0, t)}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial N_{Mp}(\Delta x, t)}{\partial x}. \quad (15.106)$$

If we now evaluate (15.102)–(15.103) at the points  $x + i\Delta x$ , sum them over all  $i$ , and add the result to (15.104)–(15.105) we get the conservation law

$$N_M(x, t) + N_{Mp}(x, t) + \sum_{i=-\infty}^{\infty} [N_{AMP}(x + i\Delta x, t) + N_{AM}(x + i\Delta x, t)] = 1, \quad (15.107)$$

for  $0 < x < \Delta x$ . Under isometric conditions this reduces to  $N_M + N_{Mp} + N_{AMP} + N_{AM} = 1$ , since with  $v = 0$  it is not possible to have bonds outside the range for which  $f$  is nonzero.

The Hai–Murphy crossbridge model is connected to models of intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics via  $k_1(c)$  and  $k_5(c)$  (Koenigsberger et al., 2004, 2005, 2006; Fajmut et al., 2005; Payne and Stephens, 2005; Bursztyn et al., 2007, Wang et al., 2008).

## 15.9 Large-Scale Muscle Models

Ultimately, to model the function and properties of muscle *in situ* it is necessary to consider highly complex models that include the action potential, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transient, crossbridge and thin filament kinetics, the constitutive properties of muscle, and the consequent force and contraction that results from a train of action potentials. Furthermore, these models should use realistic geometries. Although computing facilities are not yet advanced enough to enable simulation of such detailed models in a realistic time frame, much has already been accomplished. Probably the most detailed such investigations (complementing the highly detailed electrical models of Noble's group, summarized in Noble, 2002a,b) are those from the groups of Peter Hunter and Andrew McCulloch (Guccione and McCulloch, 1993; Guccione et al., 1993; McCulloch, 1995; Hunter, 1995; Costa et al., 1996a,b; Hunter et al., 1998, 2003; Niederer et al., 2006). There is far too little space here to discuss these elaborate finite-element models in detail, so the interested reader is referred to the original works. A different approach, using the immersed boundary method rather than finite elements, is taken by Peskin and McQueen (1989, 1992; Peskin, 2002), but again there is insufficient space here to discuss this method.

## 15.10 Molecular Motors

In all the models described so far, the properties of the muscle result from the collective behavior of a large population of myosin molecules. However, there are many situations in which movement is achieved by many individual molecules working independently. For example, since cellular components are synthesized at sites (the Golgi apparatus,

the endoplasmic reticulum, and the nucleus, for example) that are far removed from the place where those components are used (the cell membrane, the synapse, etc.) every cell relies on active transport mechanisms to distribute various cellular components.

In recent years, a lot of attention has been paid to understanding how chemical energy can be transformed into work. Of course, myosin is but one example of these molecular machines, or motors. Examples that we have seen already in this text are the ATPase ion pumps and exchangers, such as the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase and the SERCA pumps. These motors reside in the cell membrane and use the chemical energy of ATP to pump ions against their gradient, thereby producing work. In the opposite direction, the best-known example is the ATP synthase molecule, which manufactures ATP from ADP and phosphate by using the energy in a transmembrane proton gradient (Wang and Oster, 1998; Elston et al., 1998; Mogilner et al., 2002).

A different mechanism (described below) is used to transport large macromolecules across a membrane, but because ATP is used, this also can be viewed as the action of a molecular motor.

Other motors are used to transport loads over larger space scales. There are three types of molecular transporters (Mallik and Gross, 2004): the myosin, kinesin and dynein motors. Each of them transports its cargo by binding the cargo to its “tail”, while simultaneously stepping along a rail system (actin in the case of the myosin motor, microfilaments in the case of kinesin and dynein), in much the same way that a child swings along monkey bars. The kinesin and dynein motor proteins have two heads that cyclically bind and unbind to the rail track, but out of phase, resulting in directed motion along the track. The necessary energy comes from the hydrolysis of ATP. Movement is directed, with most kinesin-family motors transporting their cargo from the nucleus toward the cell periphery, and most dynein-family motors transporting their cargo in the opposite direction along the same microtubule system. Deterministic models of transport along axons can be found in Blum and Reed (1985, 1989), Blum et al. (1992) and Reed and Blum (1986). Here we consider only stochastic models of such transport.

In what follows we give a brief introduction to how pushing and pulling is accomplished by molecular motors. For consistency with the topics in this chapter, it would seem most reasonable to begin with a description of a myosin motor. However, from the perspective of model building and developing the appropriate mathematical framework, we begin with a description of Brownian ratchets. More detailed introductions are given by Mogilner et al. (2002) and Reimann (2002), while the mathematical theory is developed in detail by Qian (2000).

### 15.10.1 Brownian Ratchets

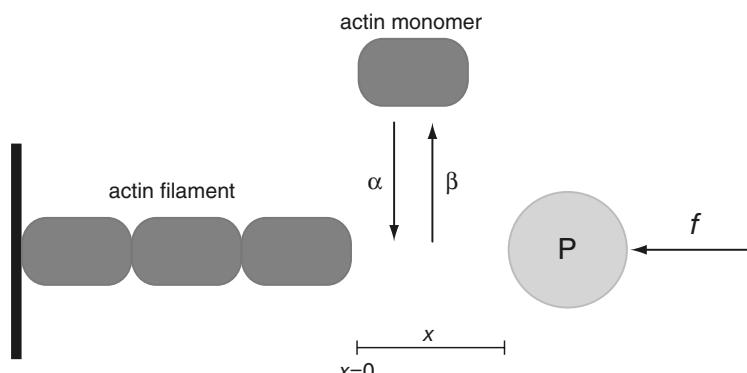
Proteins live in a world that is being continually shaken by random movements. If these random motions could be rectified, or biased, then they could be used to perform work. For example, if a particle performs an unbiased random walk on a line, then if there are no outside influences, its mean displacement is zero. However, if every time the

particle moves a certain distance in one direction it is prevented by some mechanism from moving back in the opposite direction (i.e., a ratchet), then the original random motion of the particle is rectified, and the particle experiences a net drift.

This concept can be simply illustrated by the way in which a glucose transporter operates (see Chapter 2). In the absence of hexokinase, the transporter is merely an exchanger that reaches steady state when the glucose concentrations are the same on either side of the membrane. However, ATP hydrolysis and phosphorylation of glucose by hexokinase is able rectify the diffusional flux of glucose, eliminating the backflow, thus maintaining a net flux of glucose into the cytoplasm.

Another example is provided by the translocation of macromolecules through a membrane. For example, the chaperone molecule HSP-70 (heat shock protein, molecular weight 70 kilodaltons) is required for translocation of proteins into the ER and mitochondria. In the absence of HSP-70, macromolecules move through pores in the membrane by simple diffusion, moving forward or backward via a random walk. It is not certain how HSP-70 works, but one proposal (Elston, 2000) is that HSP-70, which is located inside the organelle, binds to the diffusing protein as it enters the organelle, preventing it from sliding back through the pore, thus creating a ratchet.

Another important example of a Brownian ratchet is the polymerization ratchet, a diagram of which is shown in Fig. 15.26. An actin filament that is capable of polymerizing is in contact, from time to time, with a particle, P (which may also have an applied load  $f$ ). Although P is diffusing it cannot move far to the left, since the actin polymer is in the way. However, every so often, the Brownian motion of P takes it far enough to the right, providing the opportunity for another actin monomer to polymerize and extend the actin filament. The net effect is that the motion of P is biased to the right. Clearly, for this to happen a number of conditions must be satisfied: P must move randomly far enough to the right to make space for an actin monomer to join the filament, and it must stay there long enough to give actin time to bind; also, the polymerizing actin must remain strongly bound to the filament so that the process is not reversed, i.e., so



**Figure 15.26** Diagram of a polymerization ratchet.

that the collision of P with the actin polymer does not cause the actin at the end to unbind.

We wish to calculate the load–velocity relationship for this system (Peskin et al., 1993). To do so, we let  $x$  denote the positive distance between the end of the actin filament and P, and let  $p(x, t)$  be the probability density function for the location of the particle P. That is,  $\int_a^b p(x, t) dx$  is the probability that the particle P lies in the interval  $x \in [a, b]$ .

There are only two ways that the distance between the end of the polymer and the particle can change: the particle can move to a different position or the length of the actin polymer can change. Correspondingly,  $p(x, t)$  can change either because of movement of the particle or because of changes to the length of the polymer. The flux of  $p$  due to particle movement is given by

$$J = -D \left( \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{f}{kT} p \right), \quad (15.108)$$

where  $k$  is Boltzmann's constant,  $T$  is absolute temperature, and  $D$  is the diffusion coefficient of P. This is the same as the Nernst–Planck relationship for movement of ions in an electric field, where  $f$  replaces  $qz \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x}$ . Notice that the sign of  $f$  is such that it is positive to the left.

Now suppose that monomers bind at rate  $\alpha$  and unbind at rate  $\beta$ . Presumably, unbinding can occur independent of  $x$ , but when it does so, the distance  $x$  is suddenly increased by the amount  $\delta$ . Similarly, if binding occurs, the distance  $x$  is suddenly decreased by the amount  $\delta$ . However, binding can occur only if there is enough room, i.e., only if  $x > \delta$ .

The rate of change of  $p$  depends on these reactions. If  $x < \delta$ , the rate of change of  $p$  is (in words)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rate of change of } p = & \text{ transport rate} \\ & + \text{ binding rate at position } x + \delta \\ & - \text{ unbinding rate at position } x, \end{aligned} \quad (15.109)$$

whereas, if  $x > \delta$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rate of change of } p = & \text{ transport rate} \\ & + \text{ binding rate at position } x + \delta \\ & - \text{ unbinding rate at position } x \\ & - \text{ binding rate at position } x \\ & + \text{ unbinding rate at position } x - \delta. \end{aligned} \quad (15.110)$$

In mathematical terms,

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x^2} + \frac{Df}{kT} \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \alpha p(x + \delta, t) - \beta p(x, t), \quad x < \delta, \quad (15.111)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x^2} + \frac{Df}{kT} \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \alpha[p(x + \delta, t) - p(x, t)] + \beta[p(x - \delta, t) - p(x, t)], \quad x > \delta. \quad (15.112)$$

Since the particle cannot move across the boundary at  $x = 0$ , we impose the no-flux condition

$$D \frac{\partial p(0, t)}{\partial x} + \frac{Df}{kT} p(0, t) = 0. \quad (15.113)$$

Finally, we require that  $p$  be continuously differentiable at  $x = \delta$ .

Although this is a fairly simple example of a Brownian ratchet, its full solution is highly nontrivial. This is because the steady-state equation is a delay differential equation that must be solved on the infinite half-line, subject to boundary conditions at  $x = 0$  and  $x = \infty$ . However, it is possible to gain an understanding of how this Brownian ratchet works in several limiting cases.

In the limit that  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are small compared to  $\frac{D}{\delta^2}$  (see Exercise 11) we can calculate the steady-state solution for  $p$  explicitly. In this case we have

$$\frac{d^2 p}{dx^2} + \frac{\omega}{\delta} \frac{dp}{dx} = 0, \quad x < \delta \text{ and } x > \delta, \quad (15.114)$$

$$\frac{dp(0)}{dx} + \frac{\omega}{\delta} p(0) = 0, \quad (15.115)$$

$$p \text{ continuous at } x = \delta, \quad (15.116)$$

where  $\omega = \frac{f\delta}{kT}$ . Furthermore, we require that  $p \rightarrow 0$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ . This boundary value problem has solution

$$p = \frac{\omega}{\delta} e^{-\omega x/\delta}, \quad (15.117)$$

so that  $\int_0^\infty p(x) dx = 1$ .

We now can find the mean ratchet velocity,  $v$ . The proportion of positions at which a monomer can bind is  $\int_\delta^\infty p(x) dx$ , and thus the mean rate at which the length of the filament increases due to monomer binding is  $\delta\alpha \int_\delta^\infty p(x) dx$ . Similarly, all filaments can decrease in length due to unbinding of a monomer, and thus the mean rate at which the length of the filament decreases due to monomer unbinding is  $\beta\delta$ . Taking the difference between these two rates gives the net mean ratchet velocity

$$v = \delta \left( \alpha \int_\delta^\infty p(x) dx - \beta \right). \quad (15.118)$$

Substituting for  $p$  from (15.117) gives the remarkably simple expression

$$v = \delta \left[ \alpha \exp \left( -\frac{f\delta}{kT} \right) - \beta \right] \quad (15.119)$$

for the force-velocity relation. The stall force,  $f_0$ , i.e., the force at which the ratchet velocity is zero, is given by

$$f_0 = -\frac{kT}{\delta} \ln \left( \frac{\beta}{\alpha} \right). \quad (15.120)$$

Note the similarity of this with the Nernst equation (2.104). Notice also that  $\frac{\beta}{\alpha}$  is the equilibrium constant for binding of monomer,  $\frac{\beta}{\alpha} = \exp(\frac{\Delta G^0}{RT})$ , so that

$$f_0 = -\frac{\Delta G^0}{\delta N_A}. \quad (15.121)$$

Thus, the energy used to move the particle against the load is the same as the free energy of binding of the monomer. Clearly, a necessary condition for this polymerization ratchet to push a load is that the binding rate be larger than the unbinding rate.

We can also easily examine this Brownian ratchet in another limit, the fast reaction limit. We suppose that we have an ideal ratchet for which binding of monomer takes place instantly and irreversibly whenever there is sufficient space to bind, i.e., whenever  $x$  reaches  $\delta$ . Thus, the mean velocity of the ratchet is  $\delta$  divided by the time it takes to diffuse to the right a distance  $\delta$  starting from position  $x = 0$ . This time is the mean first exit time  $T(0)$ , where  $T(x)$  satisfies the differential equation

$$D \left( \frac{d^2 T}{dx^2} - \frac{f}{kT} \frac{dT}{dx} \right) = -1 \quad (15.122)$$

(see Section 2.9.6), subject to boundary conditions  $T'(0) = 0$  (since the boundary at  $x = 0$  is a reflecting boundary) and  $T(\delta) = 0$ . The solution is (see Exercise 29)

$$T(0) = \frac{\delta^2}{D} \left( \frac{kT}{f\delta} \right)^2 \left[ \exp \left( \frac{f\delta}{kT} \right) - \frac{f\delta}{kT} - 1 \right], \quad (15.123)$$

so that

$$v = \frac{D}{\delta} \frac{\left( \frac{f\delta}{kT} \right)^2}{\exp \left( \frac{f\delta}{kT} \right) - 1 - \frac{f\delta}{kT}}. \quad (15.124)$$

This load-velocity curve is a monotone decreasing function of load  $f$ . Notice, however, that for this model there is no stall velocity, because, since the bound monomer is assumed to bind irreversibly, there is the implicit assumption that the binding energy is infinite, which, of course, cannot be correct.

Peskin et al. (1993) applied this model to the study of filopod protrusion, as well as to propulsion of the bacteria *Listeria monocytogenes*, while a number of elaborations of the basic scheme have been constructed (Mogilner and Oster, 1996, 1999; Simon et al., 1992).

### 15.10.2 The Tilted Potential

There is another approximate model of the Brownian ratchet that has proven to be useful. Rather than thinking of binding and unbinding of a monomer, we suppose that at the fixed positions  $x = x_k = k\delta$ , the particle P is given a “kick” of energy  $\Delta G$ , but that it diffuses freely elsewhere, against a load  $f$ . Now the probability distribution function  $p(x, t)$  for the location of the particle is the solution of the Fokker–Planck equation

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(V'(x)p) + D\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x^2}, \quad (15.125)$$

where  $V(x)$  is the potential energy function with

$$V'(x) = \frac{Df}{kT} - D\frac{\Delta G}{kT} \sum_n \delta(x - n\delta). \quad (15.126)$$

The potential  $V(x)$  shown plotted in Fig. 15.27 is a piecewise-linear staircase, often called a *tilted ratchet* potential.

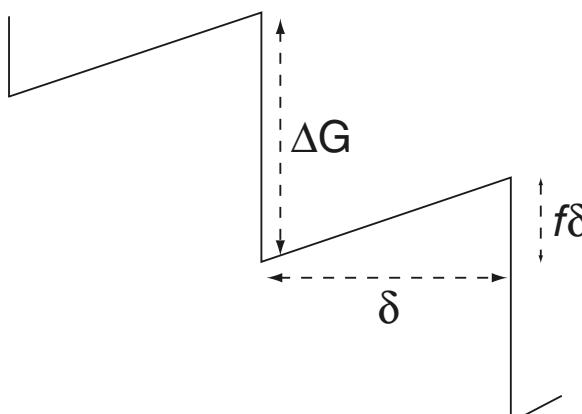
One feature of this that is immediately obvious is that the stall load is  $f = \Delta G$ , because it is the load at which the potential  $V(x)$  is periodic. This also makes sense intuitively because at this value the load is exactly balanced by the energy expended.

The second feature of this model is that the load–velocity relationship can be calculated explicitly. To do so we look for a steady periodic solution of the Fokker–Planck equation (15.125). For  $x \neq n\delta$ ,  $p(x)$  must satisfy the differential equation

$$\frac{Df}{kT}p + D\frac{dp}{dx} = -J, \quad (15.127)$$

while at the points  $x = n\delta$ , the solution experiences a jump,

$$\ln p_{x_n^-}^{x_n^+} = \frac{\Delta G}{kT}, \quad (15.128)$$



**Figure 15.27** Diagram of a tilted ratchet potential (15.126).

so that

$$p(n\delta^+) = p(n\delta^-) \exp\left(\frac{\Delta G}{kT}\right). \quad (15.129)$$

For periodicity, it must be that

$$p(0) = p(\delta) \exp\left(\frac{\Delta G}{kT}\right). \quad (15.130)$$

In addition, we require  $\int_0^\delta p(x) dx = 1$ . The solution has

$$J = \frac{D}{\delta^2 \omega_l^2} \frac{1 - \exp(\omega_0 - \omega_l)}{(\exp(\omega_0) - 1)(\exp(-\omega_l) - 1) + \omega_l(\exp(\omega_0 - \omega_l) - 1)}, \quad (15.131)$$

where

$$\omega_0 = \frac{\Delta G}{kT}, \quad \omega_l = \frac{f\delta}{kT}. \quad (15.132)$$

Furthermore,

$$\lim_{f \rightarrow 0} J = 2 \frac{D}{\delta^2} \frac{\exp(\omega_0) - 1}{\exp(\omega_0) + 1}. \quad (15.133)$$

The mean velocity of the ratchet is given by

$$\left\langle \frac{dx}{dt} \right\rangle = \int_0^\delta J dx = \delta J. \quad (15.134)$$

## A Motor Pulling Cargo

The tilted potential Brownian ratchet was motivated as a model of a polymerization ratchet that is pushing a loaded particle. However, another interpretation is that it describes the movement of a molecular motor moving along a track, pulling a load. Elston and Peskin (2000) extended this idea by assuming that the molecular motor moves in a tilted potential, but that the load is attached to the motor by a spring. They then addressed the question of how the velocity of the motor with its load was affected by the flexibility of the spring.

To study this problem, suppose that the molecular motor is a molecule with diffusion coefficient  $D_1$ , the cargo molecule has diffusion coefficient  $D_2$ , and the two are connected by a spring with spring constant  $\kappa$ . Thus, the load on the molecular motor is not fixed but is determined by the distance between motor and cargo times the spring constant. One can readily write down the Fokker–Planck equation for the location of this motor–cargo complex. Elston and Peskin used asymptotic analysis for large and small  $\kappa$  to determine the velocity of the motor, but their results can also be explained using intuitive physical reasoning.

Suppose the spring is very stiff,  $\kappa \rightarrow \infty$ . With no flexibility, the motor–cargo complex is expected to move as a single molecule with an effective diffusion coefficient. Since (recall from Chapter 2) friction is inversely proportional to the diffusion coefficient

$f = \frac{kT}{D}$ , and we expect friction to be additive, it follows that the diffusion coefficient of the complex should be

$$D_c = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{D_1} + \frac{1}{D_2}} = \frac{D_1 D_2}{D_1 + D_2}. \quad (15.135)$$

The velocity of the complex should be that for a molecule with diffusion coefficient  $D_c$ , that is,

$$v = 2 \frac{D_c}{\delta} \frac{\exp(\omega_0) - 1}{\exp(\omega_0) + 1}. \quad (15.136)$$

In the opposite limit of a soft spring,  $\kappa \rightarrow 0$ , one expects the load to be essentially constant. This is because small fluctuations in the separation between cargo and motor change the load very little. Since the load on the cargo must match the velocity times friction coefficient, it must be that

$$F_l = \frac{kT}{D_2} v, \quad (15.137)$$

so that

$$\omega_l = \frac{\delta}{D_2} v. \quad (15.138)$$

This same load is experienced by the motor. Since the motor and cargo must have the same average velocity, it follows that

$$v = \frac{D_1}{\delta} \omega_l^2 \frac{1 - \exp(\omega_0 - \omega_l)}{(\exp(\omega_0) - 1)(\exp(-\omega_l) - 1) + \omega_l(\exp(\omega_0 - \omega_l) - 1)} \quad (15.139)$$

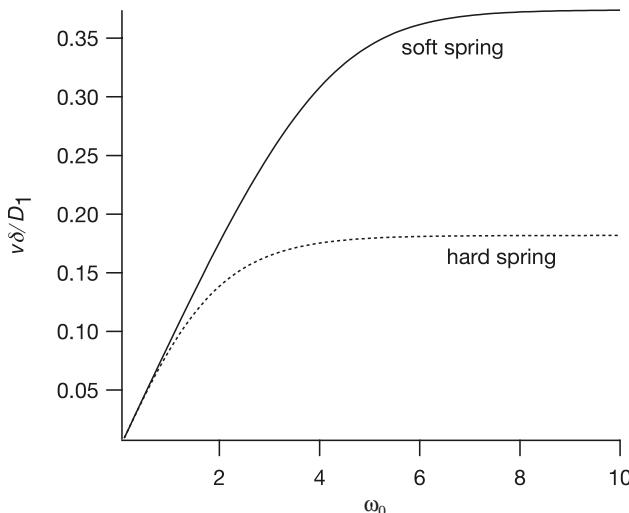
as well. Here we have two relationships between load and velocity that must both be satisfied. Since (15.138) is a monotone increasing relationship between load and velocity and (15.139) is a monotone decreasing relationship between load and velocity, there is a unique intersection of these two curves, hence a unique velocity.

Plots of the velocities in the hard-spring limit and in the soft-spring limit as a function of the parameter  $\omega_0$  are shown in Fig. 15.28. The important observation is that the velocity in the soft-spring limit is always larger than in the hard-spring limit. Thus, a flexible spring allows a motor to transport its cargo much more efficiently than does an inflexible spring.

### 15.10.3 Flashing Ratchets

Although the Brownian ratchet model presented above is a reasonable qualitative model of a molecular motor, it does not provide any insight into the actual physical mechanisms by which a molecular motor works.

To build a more mechanistic model of molecular motors, reconsider how an actin-myosin crossbridge works. In the Huxley model, the crossbridge can be in one of two states: bound or unbound. If it is unbound, its movement is governed by diffusion and



**Figure 15.28** Plots of the velocities of the molecular motor–cargo complex in the hard-spring limit ( $\kappa \rightarrow \infty$ ) and soft-spring limit ( $\kappa \rightarrow 0$ ), plotted for  $\frac{D_2}{D_1} = 0.1$ .

any applied load. If it is bound, then its movement is additionally governed by a force, the strength of which is proportional to the deviation from its preferred position.

This is the idea behind a *flashing ratchet* model. We suppose there are two conformations, bound and unbound, with binding and unbinding rate constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , respectively. In the unbound state the particle (or motor protein) moves by simple diffusion, while in the bound state it is also driven by the periodic potential  $V(x)$ . Since  $V(x)$  is periodic, there can be no net movement if the protein is always bound. However, if the potential is asymmetric, then net drift is possible, even against a load.

The reason that net movement is possible can be understood as follows. When the particle is bound, it is forced to be mostly near the location of the minimum of the potential well; the deeper the potential well, the more narrowly the particle is confined, and the faster it equilibrates. However, when the particle is unbound it is free to move away from the minimum, and the longer it stays unbound, the more uniform the distribution becomes. When the particle is bound again, there is some probability that the particle will remain in the same attractive basin and there is some probability that it will be in an adjacent attractive basin. If the potential is asymmetric, then the probability that the particle falls into an adjacent attractive basin is biased, with one direction preferred over another, decided by the asymmetry of the potential. Thus, if the minimum of the potential well is biased to the left, the particle is more likely to move to the left.

The following is a simple model of an ideal flashing ratchet. We suppose that the periodic potential is deep, with each attracting basin between  $n\delta$  and  $(n+1)\delta$  having its minimum at  $x = n\delta + a$ , so that binding has the effect of localizing the particle to exactly the minimum at position  $x = n\delta + a$ . Suppose we start the process with the particle localized at  $x = a$ . Then, when unbinding occurs, the probability distribution function for the position of the particle is exactly a delta function localized at  $x = a$ .

Diffusion renders the distribution a Gaussian with mean  $x = a$  and variance  $2Dt$ . When the next binding occurs, the probability of being in an attractive basin to the right,  $p_r$ , is the probability of being to the right of  $x = \delta$ , while the probability of moving to the left,  $p_l$ , is the probability of being to the left of  $x = 0$ . Thus,

$$p_r(t) = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{\delta - a}{\sqrt{2Dt}}\right), \quad p_l(t) = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{a}{\sqrt{2Dt}}\right). \quad (15.140)$$

Since the average time spent unbound is  $\frac{1}{\alpha}$  and the average time spent bound is  $\frac{1}{\beta}$ , the average velocity is approximately (making the approximation that the particle moves no more than one position to the left or right)

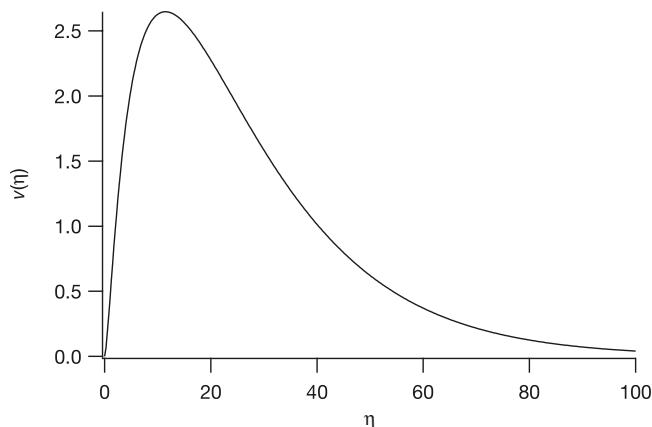
$$\begin{aligned} V &= \delta \frac{\alpha\beta}{\alpha + \beta} \left[ p_r\left(\frac{1}{\alpha}\right) - p_l\left(\frac{1}{\alpha}\right) \right] \\ &= \frac{\delta\alpha}{2} \frac{\beta}{\alpha + \beta} \left[ \operatorname{erfc}\left(\sqrt{\frac{\alpha\delta^2}{2D}}\left(1 - \frac{a}{\delta}\right)\right) - \operatorname{erfc}\left(\sqrt{\frac{\alpha\delta^2}{2D}}\frac{a}{\delta}\right) \right] \\ &= \frac{D}{\delta} \frac{\beta}{\alpha + \beta} v\left(\frac{\alpha\delta^2}{2D}\right), \end{aligned} \quad (15.141)$$

where

$$v(\eta) = \eta \left[ \operatorname{erfc}\left(\sqrt{\eta}\frac{a}{\delta}\right) - \operatorname{erfc}\left(\sqrt{\eta}\left(1 - \frac{a}{\delta}\right)\right) \right]. \quad (15.142)$$

The function  $v(\eta)$  is shown in Fig. 15.29 with  $\frac{a}{\delta} = \frac{3}{4}$ . It is a nonmonotone function of  $\eta$ , with a maximum at about  $\eta = 11.5$ .

One can easily understand that there should be an optimal rate of switching between the bound and the unbound states. If the switching occurs rapidly (compared to the rate of diffusion), then there is not much time for the distribution to spread out from the localized minimum, and hence there is little opportunity to move to an adjacent potential well. On the other hand, if switching is slow, then much of the time



**Figure 15.29** Plot of the function  $v(x)$  given by (15.142), with  $\frac{a}{\delta} = \frac{3}{4}$ .

spent in the bound state is wasted, since once the asymmetric potential has localized the particle, there is no reason for the particle to remain bound.

It is typical in the literature on flashing ratchets that the driving potential is assumed to be asymmetric. If the binding and unbinding rates are independent of position, this is a necessary condition for net directional transport. However, if the binding and unbinding rates are spatially inhomogeneous, then it is not necessary that the potential be asymmetric. The symmetry can be broken by the arrangement of binding sites relative to the potential well locations. Thus, for example, actin–myosin crossbridge dynamics, wherein the force is assumed to be driven by a simple linear spring, have directed motion because the crossbridge binding site is shifted away from the minimum of the spring potential energy, due to the conformational change of the crossbridge.

A more detailed analysis of flashing ratchets requires examination of the appropriate Fokker–Planck equations. Suppose that there are a number of chemical states, and that the transition rates between the states are given by  $k_{ij}(x)$ . Further, assume that in each chemical state the molecule is subject to the potential  $\psi_j(x)$ . The governing Fokker–Planck equations are then given by

$$\frac{\partial p_j}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( D \left( \left( \frac{\psi'_j(x)}{kT} + \frac{f}{kT} \right) p_j + \frac{\partial p_j}{\partial x} \right) \right) + \sum_i k_{ij}(x) p_i - \sum_i k_{ji} p_j, \quad (15.143)$$

where  $p_j(x, t)$  is the probability distribution for being in state  $j$  at position  $x$  at time  $t$ . For example, a model of the myosin motor that follows the Huxley crossbridge model would have two states, bound and unbound, with spatially periodic binding and unbinding rates  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$ , and with a periodic, symmetric potential  $\psi(x)$ .

This general framework has been used in many studies of real and generic molecular motors. See, for example, Howard (2001) or Reimann (2002) and references therein.

## 15.11 EXERCISES

---

- Derive a differential equation for the load in a three-element Hill model with an elastic element in series with a contractile element (as shown in Fig. 15.9) in parallel with an additional elastic element of length  $L$ .
- When a muscle cell dies, its ATP is depleted, with the result that the power stroke stalls and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  cannot be withdrawn using the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase. How does this explain rigor mortis?
- Calculate the response of the Huxley model to a step change in length. In other words, calculate how  $n$  changes as a function of  $t$  and  $x$ , and hence calculate how the tension changes as a function of time following a step change in length.

4. Find the force–velocity relationship for the Huxley model for  $v > 0$  with

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} f_{\max} e^{(x-h)/\lambda}, & x < h, \\ 0, & x > h, \end{cases} \quad (15.144)$$

$$g(x) = f_{\max} \left( 1 - e^{(x-h)/\lambda} \right), \quad (15.145)$$

$$r(x) = r_{\max} \frac{e^{(x-h)/\lambda} - \alpha}{1 - \alpha}, \quad (15.146)$$

Remark: This model reproduces the Hill force–velocity curve exactly, although it gives poor agreement with the energy flux data.

5. Show that in the Huxley model,  $4\phi = v_{\max}$  (at least approximately) if  $g_2/(f_1 + g_1) = 3.919$ . Hint: To find the maximum velocity, set  $p = 0$  in (15.37). Then solve numerically for  $v_{\max}/\phi$ .

6. Assuming that the crossbridges act as linear springs, calculate the force–velocity curve for (15.42) and show that in the limit as  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$  and  $\delta \rightarrow 0$  it does not produce zero force for some positive velocity. Give an intuitive explanation for this.

7. This exercise and the next are based on the discrete binding site models of T.L. Hill (1974, 1975). Suppose that each crossbridge is within reach of no more than two binding sites at one time, and that adjacent crossbridges are not within reach of the same two binding sites. Suppose also that adjacent binding sites are separated by a distance  $\Delta x$ , and let  $x$  denote the distance of the crossbridge from one of the binding sites, binding site 0, say. Define  $x$  such that if the crossbridge is bound to site 0 and has  $x = 0$ , it exerts no force. Also, let  $n_i(x, t), i = 0, -1$ , denote the fraction of crossbridges with displacement  $x$  that are bound to binding site  $i$ .

- (a) Show that the conservation equations are

$$-\nu \frac{dn_0}{dx} = f(x)[1 - n_0(x) - n_{-1}(x)] - g(x)n_0(x), \quad (15.147)$$

$$-\nu \frac{dn_{-1}}{dx} = f(x - \Delta x)[1 - n_0(x) - n_{-1}(x)] - g(x - \Delta x)n_{-1}(x), \quad (15.148)$$

where, as usual,  $\nu$  denotes the steady contraction velocity.

- (b) Derive expressions for the isometric distributions of  $n_0$  and  $n_{-1}$ . Compute the isometric force. Show that if the Huxley model is modified to include two binding sites, the isometric force is increased.
- (c) Compute the force–velocity curve. Hint: For each  $v$  solve the differential equations numerically, using the boundary conditions  $n_0(h) = 0, n_{-1}(h + \Delta x) = 0$ , then substitute the result into the expression for the force and integrate numerically.
- (d) Modify the model to include slippage of the crossbridge from one binding site to another. Show that in the limit as slippage becomes very fast, the two differential equations (15.147) and (15.148) reduce to a single equation.
8. Consider the general binding site model (15.53) that incorporates the discrete distribution of binding sites. Why is this equation much harder to integrate than the models we have discussed previously? The isometric solution is considerably easier to calculate than the

fully general solution. To do so, let  $n_u(x) = 1 - \sum_{-\infty}^{\infty} n(x + i\Delta x)$ . Show that

$$1 - n_u(x) = \frac{\sum_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(x+i\Delta x)}{g(x+i\Delta x)}}{1 + \sum_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(x+i\Delta x)}{g(x+i\Delta x)}}. \quad (15.149)$$

Use this to calculate the isometric solution  $n(x)$ .

9. A muscle fiber must be able to produce a force even at negative velocities. For example, if you slowly lower a brick onto a table, your bicep is extending and simultaneously resisting the freefall of the brick. Investigate the behavior of the Huxley model when  $v < 0$ .
    - (a) Calculate the force-velocity curve for  $v < 0$ . Plot the full force-velocity curve using Huxley's parameter values.
    - (b) Plot  $n(x)$  for  $v = -0.01, -0.1$ , and  $-1$ .
    - (c) Derive an expression for the maximum force as  $v \rightarrow -\infty$ .
  10. Show that, in the limit as the number of bound crossbridges goes to infinity, the gliding rate of an actin filament (cf. Section 15.7) is given by
 
$$v \approx \frac{g_2 h}{2}. \quad (15.150)$$

Hint: When many crossbridges are bound, we recover the Huxley model. Use (15.37) with  $p = 0$  to estimate  $v$  when  $R = \frac{f_1 + g_1}{g_2}$  is small.
  11. Use a formal perturbation calculation to find the load–velocity relationship for the polymerization ratchet (15.111) and (15.112) in the limit that  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are small. That is, introduce a nondimensional scaling and define an appropriate small parameter  $\epsilon$ , and then find a power series solution  $p = p_0 + \epsilon p_1 + \dots$  and the corresponding flux  $J = J_0 + \epsilon J_1 + \dots$
  12. Suppose  $V(x)$  is the driving potential for a Brownian ratchet, and that  $V'(x)$  is periodic with period  $\delta$ . What is the stall load for the molecular motor driven by the potential  $V(x)$ ?
  13. Use a regular perturbation expansion to find the force-velocity curve for the flashing ratchet in the limit that the reaction rates are slow compared to diffusion.
-

# The Endocrine System

Hormones control a vast array of bodily functions, including sexual reproduction and sexual development, whole-body metabolism, blood glucose levels, plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, and growth. Hormones are produced in, and released from, diverse places, including the hypothalamus and pituitary, the adrenal gland, the thyroid gland, the testes and ovaries, and the pancreas, and they act on target cells that are often at a considerable physical distance from the site of production. Since they are carried in the bloodstream, hormones are capable of a diffuse whole-body effect, as well as a localized effect, depending on the distance between the production site and the site of action. In many ways the endocrine system is similar to the nervous system, in that it is an intercellular signaling system in which cells communicate via cellular secretions. Hormones are, in a sense, neurotransmitters that are capable of acting on target cells throughout the body, or conversely, neurotransmitters can be thought of as hormones with a localized action.

Despite the analogy with neural transmission, there are significant differences between the endocrine and nervous systems that have important ramifications for mathematical modeling. Not only is the endocrine system extremely complicated, but the data that are presently obtainable are less susceptible to quantitative analysis than, say, voltage measurements in neurons. Further, the distance between the sites of hormone production and action, and the complexities inherent in the mode of transport, make it extraordinarily difficult to construct quantitative models of hormonal control. For these reasons, models in endocrinology are less mechanistic than many of the models presented elsewhere in this book, and thus, in some ways, less realistic.

There are a number of basic types of hormones. Some, such as adrenaline and noradrenaline, originate from the amino acid tyrosine. Other, water-soluble, hormones are derived from proteins or peptides, while the *steroid* hormones are derived from

cholesterol and are thus lipid-soluble. The diversity of the chemical composition of hormones results in a corresponding diversity of mechanisms of hormone action.

Steroid hormones, being lipid-soluble, diffuse across the cell membrane and bind to receptors located in the cell cytoplasm. The resultant conformational change in the receptor leads to activation of specific portions of DNA, thus initiating the transcription of RNA, eventually (possibly hours or days later) resulting in the production of specific proteins that modify cell behavior. An example of one such hormone is aldosterone, whose effect on epithelial cells is to enhance the production of ion channel proteins, rendering the cell more permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$ .

Other hormones, such as acetylcholine, act by binding to receptors located on the cell-surface membrane and causing a conformational change that results in the opening or closing of ionic channels.

Another important mechanism of hormone action is through second messengers, of which there are several examples in this book. Many hormone receptors are linked to G-proteins; binding of a hormone to the receptor results in the activation of the G-protein, and the triggering of a cascade of enzymatic reactions. For example, in the adenylate cyclase cascade, a wide variety of hormones (including adrenocorticotropin, luteinizing hormone, and vasopressin) cause activation of a G-protein, which in turn activates the membrane-bound enzyme adenylate cyclase. This activation results in an increase in the intracellular concentration of cAMP, and the consequent activation of a number of enzymes, with eventual effects on cell behavior; the specific effects depend on the cell type and the type of hormonal stimulus. In Chapter 7 we described the result of another signaling cascade, the phosphoinositide cascade, in which activation of cell-surface receptors leads to the activation of phospholipase C, the cleavage of phosphatidyl inositol 4,5-bisphosphate, and the resultant production of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate ( $\text{IP}_3$ ) and diacylglycerol. As we saw,  $\text{IP}_3$  releases  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from internal stores, and this can lead to intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations and traveling waves.

Hormones can also act by directly converting the receptors into activated enzymes. For example, when insulin binds to a membrane receptor, the portion of the binding protein that protrudes into the cell interior becomes an activated kinase, which then promotes the phosphorylation of several substances inside the cell. The phosphorylation of proteins in the cell leads to a variety of other effects, including the enhanced uptake of glucose.

Much hormonal activity is characterized by oscillatory behavior, with the period of oscillation ranging from milliseconds ( $\beta$ -cell spiking) to minutes (insulin secretion) to hours ( $\beta$ -endorphin). In Table 16.1 are shown examples of pulsatile secretion of various hormones in humans. The pulsatility of normal hormonal activity is not well understood, but has significant implications for the treatment of hormonal abnormalities with drug therapies.

**Table 16.1** Examples of pulsatile secretion of hormones in man (Brabant et al., 1992). Different values correspond to different primary sources.

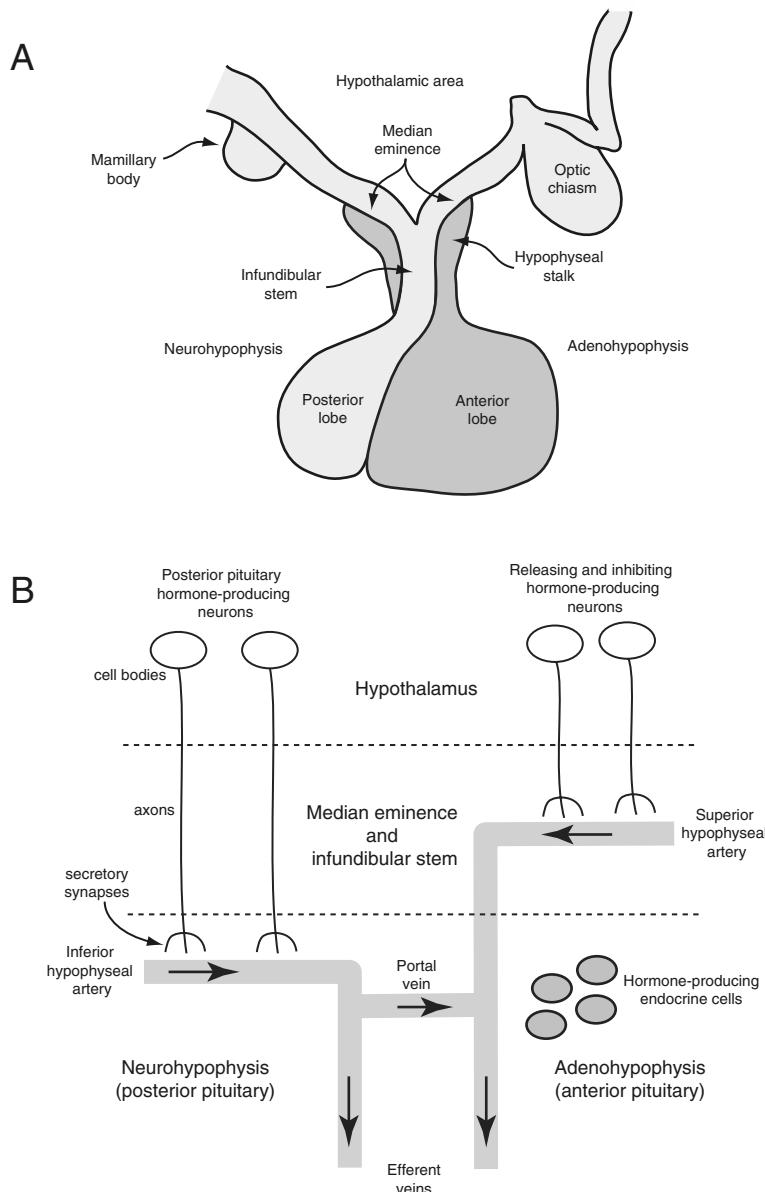
Hormone	Pulses/Day
Growth hormone	9–16, 29
Prolactin	4–9, 7–22
Thyroid-stimulating hormone	6–12, 13
Adrenocorticotrophic hormone	15, 54
Luteinizing hormone	7–15, 90–121
Follicle-stimulating hormone	4–16, 19
$\beta$ -endorphin	13
Melatonin	18–24, 12–20
Vasopressin	12–18
Renin	6, 8–12
Parathyroid hormone	24–139, 23
Insulin	108–144, 120
Pancreatic polypeptide	96
Somatostatin	72
Glucagon	103, 144
Estradiol	8–19
Progesterone	6–6
Testosterone	8–12, 13
Aldosterone	6, 9–12
Cortisol	15, 39

## 16.1 The Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland

One of the most important components of the endocrine system is the hypothalamus and pituitary gland (Fig. 16.1A). The pituitary gland sits below the hypothalamic region of the brain and is a combination of two different types of cells. The adenohypophysis, or anterior pituitary, is made up of hormone-producing endocrine cells, while the neurohypophysis, or posterior pituitary, consists of secretory neural cells. In fact, the posterior pituitary is a collection of axons of neurons whose cell bodies lie in the hypothalamus. Hormones are synthesized at the cell body and transported to the secretory terminals, where they await release in response to an appropriate stimulus.

The pattern of blood circulation from the posterior to the anterior pituitary is a crucial part of the function of the gland (Fig. 16.1B). Hormones released from the posterior pituitary enter the inferior hypophyseal artery, whence they can travel through the portal vein to stimulate the endocrine cells of the anterior pituitary. In this way the hypothalamus can exert direct control over the pituitary gland.

Cells in the anterior pituitary can also be stimulated (or inhibited) by hormones released from other hypothalamic neurons that secrete into the superior hypophyseal artery.



**Figure 16.1** A: Schematic diagram of the hypothalamus and pituitary gland. B: Schematic diagram of the pituitary circulation. (Adapted from Berne and Levy, 1998, Figs. 49-1 and 49-2.)

Communication between the hypothalamus and pituitary is not all unidirectional. It is possible for hormones secreted from the anterior pituitary to be carried by a reverse blood flow back up to the axons in the median eminence or the cell bodies in the hypothalamus, thus forming a short feedback loop.

Almost all the hormones secreted from the anterior pituitary stimulate the secretion of hormones from target glands in the periphery, such as the thyroid and adrenal glands, or the gonads. This gives a feedforward control system: hormones secreted from hypothalamic neurons stimulate the secretion of hormones from the anterior pituitary, which in turn stimulate secretion of hormones from target glands in the periphery. For example, secretion of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) from the hypothalamus stimulates the secretion of gonadotropins, such as luteinizing hormone (LH) or follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), from the anterior pituitary. These in turn have multiple effects on the gonads, one example of which is stimulating the secretion of estradiol and progesterone from the ovaries.

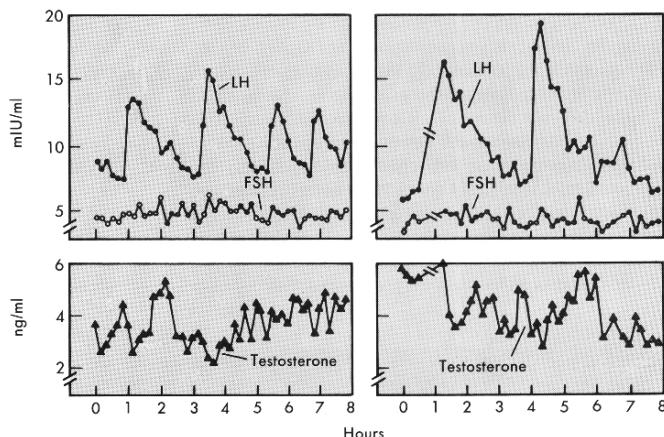
The enormous complexity of the endocrine system arises partly because the hormones released by the peripheral glands can influence, in their turn, the secretion of the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary. This allows for a highly complicated system of feedbacks, both positive and negative, most of which involve delays due to the circulation of the blood from one gland to another.

### 16.1.1 Pulsatile Secretion of Luteinizing Hormone

Luteinizing hormone and follicle-stimulating hormone, known collectively as gonadotropin, have a monthly cycle (in humans) related to ovulation, and also vary periodically on a time scale of hours. Although the precise function of these hourly variations is unclear, they occur in both males and females, and are crucial to development and maturation in both sexes. Gonadotropin is produced by the pituitary gonadotrophs in response to gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), sometimes called luteinizing-hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH), which is itself produced in the hypothalamus. Periodic variations in gonadotropin secretion are therefore the result of periodic variations in GnRH secretion. In fact, if GnRH secretion is constant rather than pulsatile, the secretion of gonadotropin is greatly reduced, and thus the pulsatility of GnRH secretion has an important regulatory function (Knobil, 1981).

This observation has been used as the basis for clinical treatments of certain reproductive disorders. In women suffering from abnormal GnRH secretion, the pulsatile administration of GnRH can, in some cases, restore normal ovulation and fertility. However, the frequency of the pulse must be controlled carefully. Wildt et al. (1981) have shown that the secretion of gonadotropin in rhesus monkeys is approximately maximized by the administration of GnRH pulses with a frequency of one per hour. If the frequency of the GnRH pulse is increased to 2 per hour, gonadotropin secretion is inhibited. Conversely, if the frequency is decreased to one pulse every three hours, the rate of secretion of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) increases, while the rate of secretion of luteinizing hormone (LH) decreases.

An example of pulsatile secretion of LH and testosterone in males is shown in Fig. 16.2. Although the testosterone secretion is not obviously oscillatory, the fluctuations in LH secretion clearly are.



**Figure 16.2** Pulsatile secretion of LH, FSH, and testosterone in men. (Berne and Levy, 1993, Fig. 48-15, p. 912.)

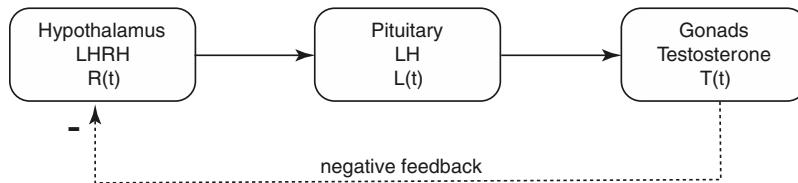
In males, gonadotropin stimulates the production of testosterone from the testes, while in females it stimulates the production of estradiol from the ovaries. Under some circumstances (see the model of ovulation below) estradiol can stimulate further production of gonadotropin, forming a positive feedback loop. However, estradiol can have both positive and negative feedback effects on the production of gonadotropin. In models of pulsatile testosterone and gonadotropin secretion, negative feedback from estradiol and testosterone to gonadotropin production is the important mechanism.

An early model of LH levels in the rat is that of Shotkin (1974a,b), although this model did not consider oscillatory aspects. One of the earliest models of oscillatory GnRH release is that of Smith (1980, 1983), later extended by Cartwright and Husain (1986) and by Murray (2002). Although these early models are highly simplistic and phenomenological, they illustrate the basic modeling approach often used to model pulsatile hormone release. A later model of this type is due to Liu and Deng (1991), and was the first to make a serious attempt to determine model parameters by fitting to experimental data, while similar models of the hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal axis have been constructed by Jelić et al. (2005) and Lenbury and Pornsawad (2005).

A schematic diagram of the Smith model is shown in Fig. 16.3. LHRH, with concentration  $R$ , is produced by the hypothalamus, and stimulates the secretion of LH, with concentration  $L$ , from the pituitary. This in turn stimulates the secretion of testosterone, with concentration  $T$ , from the testes, which then decreases the rate of LHRH secretion by the hypothalamus. The simplest possible formulation of this model is obtained by assuming that all the reactions, except the feedback of  $T$  to  $R$ , are linear. In this case,

$$\dot{R} = f(T) - b_1 R, \quad (16.1)$$

$$\dot{L} = g_1 R - b_2 L, \quad (16.2)$$



**Figure 16.3** Schematic diagram of the Smith model of pulsatile LH release.

$$\dot{T} = g_2 L - b_3 T, \quad (16.3)$$

where  $b_i$  and  $g_i$  are positive constants, and  $f(T)$  is a decreasing function. This is an example of a feedback repression model, a type of model that was studied in detail in the 1970s by a number of authors (Rapp, 1975, 1976; Othmer, 1976; Rapp and Berridge, 1977; Hastings et al., 1977).

Because of the presence of negative feedback, it comes as no surprise that this model can exhibit stable oscillations; the exact conditions under which these occur and are stable are given by Smith (1980).

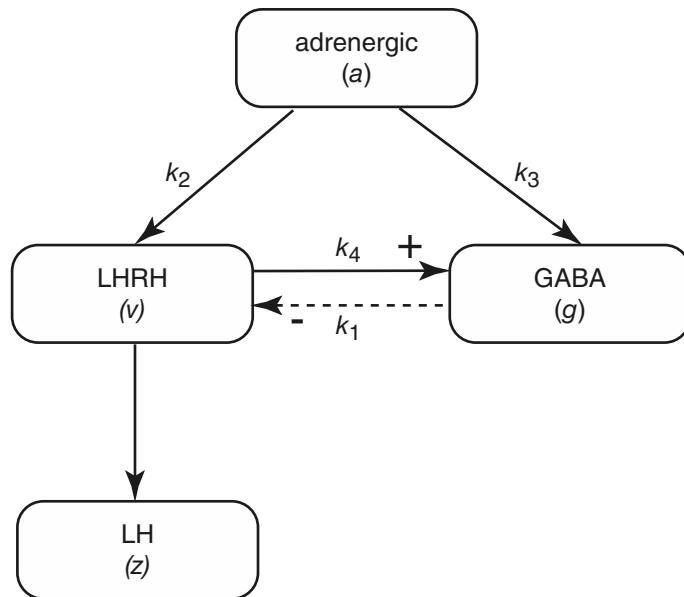
In a later modification, Murray (2002) introduced a delay into the production of testosterone, replacing the term  $g_2 L$  with  $g_2 L(t - \tau)$ , for some delay  $\tau$ . They argued that the control of testosterone secretion could occur only after the LH has traveled through the blood to the testes, a process necessarily involving some delay.

Although this gives a minimal increase in model realism, the model remains too simplistic to be a useful model for comparing to data. Nevertheless, it illustrates the basic approach that has been used many times subsequently in the modeling of pulsatile hormone secretion. Typically such models (i) are compartmental, with different compartments for the various hormones and glands, (ii) involve negative or positive feedback, or both, and (iii) use discrete delays, either single or multiple, to model the time taken for the transport of hormones in the blood, and their subsequent action on sites distant from the point of action.

## 16.1.2 Neural Pulse Generator Models

A completely different approach to modeling pulsatile secretion of LH was taken by Brown et al. (1994), and has since been used in a number of modeling studies (Brown et al., 2004; MacGregor and Leng, 2005). In this model, pulsatile secretion of LH is assumed to be the result of pulsatile bursts of electrical activity in the hypothalamus, without any need for feedback from the peripheral gland (although such feedback is not ruled out). Experimental evidence that immortalized LHRH neurons exhibit spontaneous pulsatile electrical activity (Wetsel et al., 1992) lends considerable support to this assumption.

In this model, LHRH neurons stimulate the release of the neurotransmitter GABA from neighboring GABA neurons, which, in turn, decreases the activity of LHRH



**Figure 16.4** Schematic diagram of the neural model of pulsatile LH release.

neurons, thus resulting in a negative feedback loop. Both LHRH and GABA neurons are driven by adrenergic input from the neurotransmitters adrenaline and noradrenaline, which are released from neurons whose cell bodies lie at distant sites in the brainstem. Finally, the activity of LHRH neurons drives the release of LH, with no feedback from LH to LHRH or GABA.

A schematic diagram of this system is given in Fig. 16.4. Each group of neurons is modeled by a single compartment, which assumes complete synchronization within each group. The core of the model is the assumption that the activity of LHRH neurons is intrinsically bistable (see Chapter 5). Thus, if we let  $v$  denote the activity of the LHRH neurons, the neurons can be turned off, and not firing (denoted by  $v = 0$ ), or they can be turned on and firing (denoted arbitrarily by  $v = 1$ ). To avoid possible confusion we emphasize that the variable  $v$  does not denote the voltage of the synchronized neuron group, merely its activity state. Using the bistable equation to model the activity of the LHRH neurons, we get

$$\epsilon \frac{dv}{dt} = v(c - v)(v - 1) - k_1 g + k_2 a(t), \quad (16.4)$$

$$\frac{dg}{dt} = k_3 a(t) + k_4 v - r_g g, \quad (16.5)$$

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = p(v) - r_z z, \quad (16.6)$$

where, as indicated in Fig. 16.4,  $a(t)$  denotes a time-dependent adrenergic input,  $g$  denotes the activity of GABA neurons, and  $z$  denotes the blood concentration of LH. The constants  $r_g$  and  $r_z$  denote the linear removal rate of  $g$  and  $z$  respectively. The rate of production of LH is assumed to be some increasing and bounded function of  $v$ .

This model has a structure similar to that of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations (Chapter 5). Here, however, both the excitatory ( $v$ ) and inhibitory ( $g$ ) variables are driven by the same input, and the LH concentration is a filtered version of the LHRH activity. Because of this similarity with the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, we can understand intuitively how this model behaves. If the input  $a$  is a low-frequency spike train, each peak of  $a$  gives a spike, or a series of spikes in  $v$ , since an increase in  $a$  is equivalent to an increase in injected current in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations. However, when the frequency of  $a$  is high enough, and thus the average level of  $a$  is high enough, it is possible that this increases the level of the inhibitory variable,  $g$ , to such an extent that further firing of  $v$  is prevented. At intermediate frequencies, irregular firing patterns can develop, dependent on the exact balance between excitation and inhibition. Each burst of firing of the LHRH neurons results in a burst of LH release.

A typical solution is shown in Fig. 16.5. The input is given by

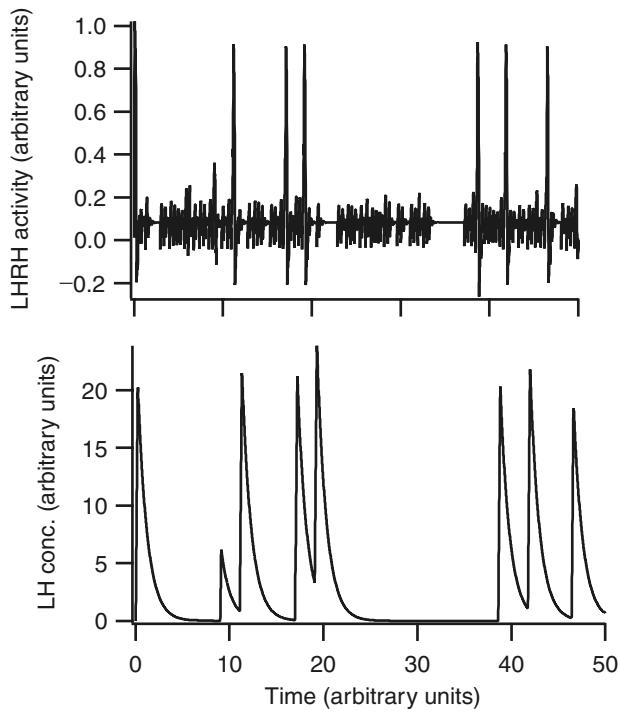
$$a(t) = \begin{cases} 3.5, & 0 < t < 0.2, \\ 0, & 0.2 \leq t \leq 0.21, \end{cases}$$

and then repeated periodically. For this input, LHRH activity is mostly inhibited, but every so often it increases for a short time, resulting in a burst of LH release. More realistic stochastic inputs were considered by Brown et al. (1994), but these give qualitatively similar results.

Although this model can reproduce patterns of pulsatile LH release that look reasonably realistic, it suffers from the fault of not providing a mechanistic explanation of the pulsatility. Essentially, the pulsatility of hormonal release is assumed to arise from an unexplained pulsatility in a neural network deeper in the brain. Nevertheless, this is as likely an explanation as any other; it is entirely plausible that the origins of pulsatile hormone release lie in neural networks in the brain rather than in an intrinsic oscillatory delayed feedback from the peripheral glands.

### Pulsatile Release of Growth Hormone

In humans, and most other mammals, growth hormone (GH) is secreted in a pulsatile manner. In the male rat, which has one of the most defined secretory patterns, pulses occur every three hours, with very little secretion between the pulses. Secretion of GH from the anterior pituitary is stimulated by growth-hormone-releasing hormone (GHRH), which is secreted from the hypothalamus and is inhibited by somatostatin, which is also secreted from the hypothalamus. GH, in turn, activates the production of somatostatin, and inhibits the production of GHRH, both effects occurring with a time delay. In addition, there is evidence that somatostatin can inhibit GHRH neurons directly.



**Figure 16.5** Typical results of the neural model of pulsatile LH release. Parameter values are  $\epsilon = 1/200$ ,  $c = 0.2$ ,  $k_1 = 1$ ,  $k_2 = 0.02$ ,  $k_3 = 0.02$ ,  $k_4 = 1$ ,  $k_5 = 2.5$ ,  $b_1 = 2$ ,  $b_2 = 0.59$ ,  $b_3 = 10$ ,  $b_4 = 0.1$ ,  $p_1 = 100$ ,  $p_2 = 100$ ,  $p_3 = 0.3$ ,  $d_1 = 1$ . All the units are arbitrary.

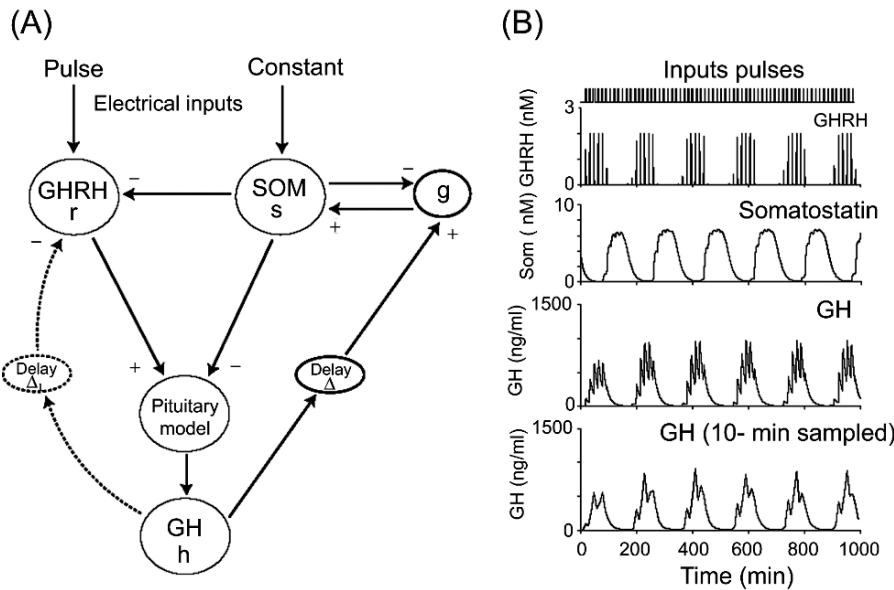
Feedback from the periphery occurs via somatomedins, secreted by the liver and other tissues, which increase the production of both GHRH and somatostatin, and decrease the rate of GH secretion from the pituitary. However, peripheral effects are not included directly in the model discussed below.

A model of this system, similar in style to the model of Section 16.1.2, was constructed and studied by Brown et al. (2004) and by MacGregor and Leng (2005). They showed how, as in the previous model, a train of input pulses to the hypothalamus could be converted into pulsatile release. They also showed how, by mimicking experimental sampling that is done only every 10 minutes or so, the output of the model could be made to look considerably more stochastic, and thus much more realistic.

A schematic diagram of the model structure, and some typical results, are shown in Fig. 16.6.

### Pulsatile Prolactin Secretion

Another model that explains pulsatile hormone secretion by interactions between the hypothalamus and pituitary, without the need for feedback from the periphery, is that of Bertram et al. (2006), who modeled the mating-induced prolactin rhythm



**Figure 16.6** Schematic diagram (A) and some typical results (B) of the model of pulsatile GH secretion. The lowest panel of B shows how, by mimicking experimental sampling (which occurs every 10 minutes), the model results can be made to look much more realistic. Reproduced from MacGregor and Leng, 2005, Fig. 6, with permission from Blackwell Publishing.

of female rats. In response to a copulatory stimulus, or an injection of a bolus of oxytocin, the hormone prolactin is secreted by pituitary lactotrophs; in the first 10 days of pregnancy, secretion of prolactin is pulsatile, with regular morning and afternoon surges. Since these rhythms can be observed in ovariectomized rats, it is plausible that the rhythm is generated by interactions between the hypothalamus and the pituitary. Prolactin secretion is regulated principally by the hormone dopamine, which is secreted from the hypothalamus, but, because of the circadian nature of the pulsatility, is presumably also influenced by the suprachiasmatic nucleus of the hypothalamus.

The basis for pulsatility in the model is the interaction between dopamine neurons and lactotrophs. Dopamine inhibits the production of prolactin, which in turn activates, with a time delay, the production of dopamine, leading to a classic negative feedback loop, and oscillations. However, Bertram et al. proceed to build a much more complex model on this simple base; the complex model can explain much more of the experimental data, including different surges in morning and afternoon, the persistence of the oscillations after a single brief stimulus, and abrupt termination of the oscillation after 10 days. This work provides a good example of how to build more complex models from simpler ones, ensuring that, at each step, there is a compelling scientific reason for the incorporation of additional complexity.

## 16.2 Ovulation in Mammals

### 16.2.1 A Model of the Menstrual Cycle

At birth, the human ovary contains approximately 2 million ovarian *follicles*, which consist of germ cells, or oocytes, surrounded by a cluster of endocrine cells that provide an isolated and protected environment for the oocyte. In the first stage of follicle development, occurring mostly before puberty, and taking anywhere from 13 to 50 years, the cells surrounding the oocyte (the granulosa cells) divide and form several layers around the oocyte, forming the so-called secondary follicle. Subsequent to puberty, these secondary follicles form a reserve pool from which follicles are recruited to begin the second stage of development. In this second stage, follicles increase to a final size of up to 20 mm before they rupture and release the oocyte to be fertilized. The release of the oocyte is called *ovulation*.

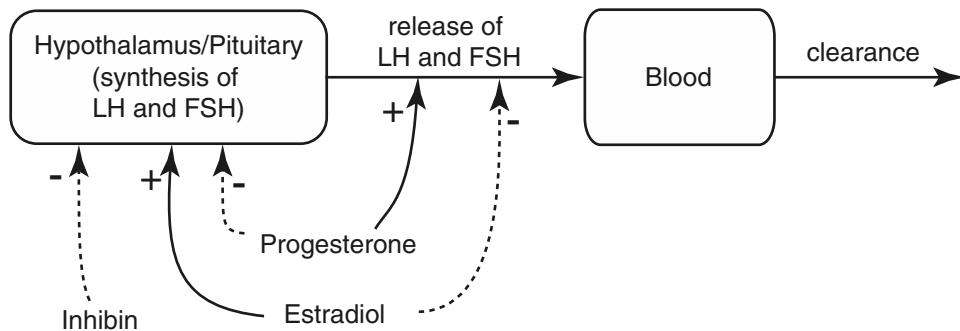
A normal menstrual cycle for an adult woman has a period anywhere from 25 to 35 days, and is regulated by the complex interplay of a number of different hormones. In response to the release of LHRH from the hypothalamus, LH and FSH (follicle-stimulating hormone) are released from the pituitary. LH and FSH initiate follicle development and control the release of the ovarian hormones, estradiol, inhibin and progesterone. Feedback occurs because the ovarian hormones themselves affect, in multiple ways, the rate of secretion of LH and FSH.

Blood concentrations of all these hormones vary in a systematic manner throughout the menstrual cycle. During the *follicular phase* (which begins after the onset of menstrual bleeding and averages 15 days), LH and FSH levels remain fairly low, while the concentration of estradiol rises. The follicular phase is followed by the *ovulatory phase* (about 1 to 3 days long), during which there is very large increase in LH levels, the so-called LH surge, while the level of estradiol falls rapidly. The final phase, the *luteal phase* (lasting about 13 days), ends with the onset of menstrual bleeding, and is characterized by high levels of progesterone and low levels of LH and FSH.

A model of the menstrual cycle has been constructed by Selgrade, Schlosser, and their colleagues (Selgrade and Schlosser, 1999; Schlosser and Selgrade, 2000; Clark et al., 2003). It consists of two submodels, one for the pituitary and one for the ovaries. Its most prominent features are, first, the omission of a specific variable for LHRH concentration, and, second, a detailed model of the different stages of the ovary.

#### The Pituitary Submodel

A schematic diagram of the pituitary submodel is shown in Fig. 16.7. Both the synthesis and release of LH and FSH are modulated by estradiol and progesterone levels, but in an antagonistic manner. These interactions are not modeled in a mechanistic way, but are described by mathematical functions with the correct qualitative behavior, and thus have a limited physiological interpretation.



**Figure 16.7** Schematic diagram of the pituitary submodel of the model of the menstrual cycle. Adapted from Clark et al., 2003, Fig. 1.

We begin by defining the variables

- $LH_R$  – amount of LH in the releasable pool,
- $LH$  – blood concentration of LH,
- $FSH_R$  – amount of FSH in the releasable pool,
- $FSH$  – blood concentration of FSH,
- $E$  – blood concentration of estradiol,
- $P$  – blood concentration of progesterone,
- $I$  – blood concentration of inhibin.

Then, based on the feedbacks shown in Fig. 16.7, LH and FSH production and release are modeled by the phenomenological equations

$$\frac{d}{dt}LH_R = \frac{V_{0L} + \frac{V_{1L}E^8}{K_{mL}^8+E^8}}{1+P(t-\tau)/K_{iL}} - \frac{k_L(1+c_{LPP})LH_R}{1+c_{LEE}}, \quad (16.7)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}LH = \frac{1}{v} \frac{k_L(1+c_{LPP})LH_R}{1+c_{LEE}} - c_{LLH}, \quad (16.8)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}FSH_R = \frac{V_F}{1+I(t-\tau)/K_{iF}} - \frac{k_F(1+c_{FP}P)FSH_R}{1+c_{FEE}^2}, \quad (16.9)$$

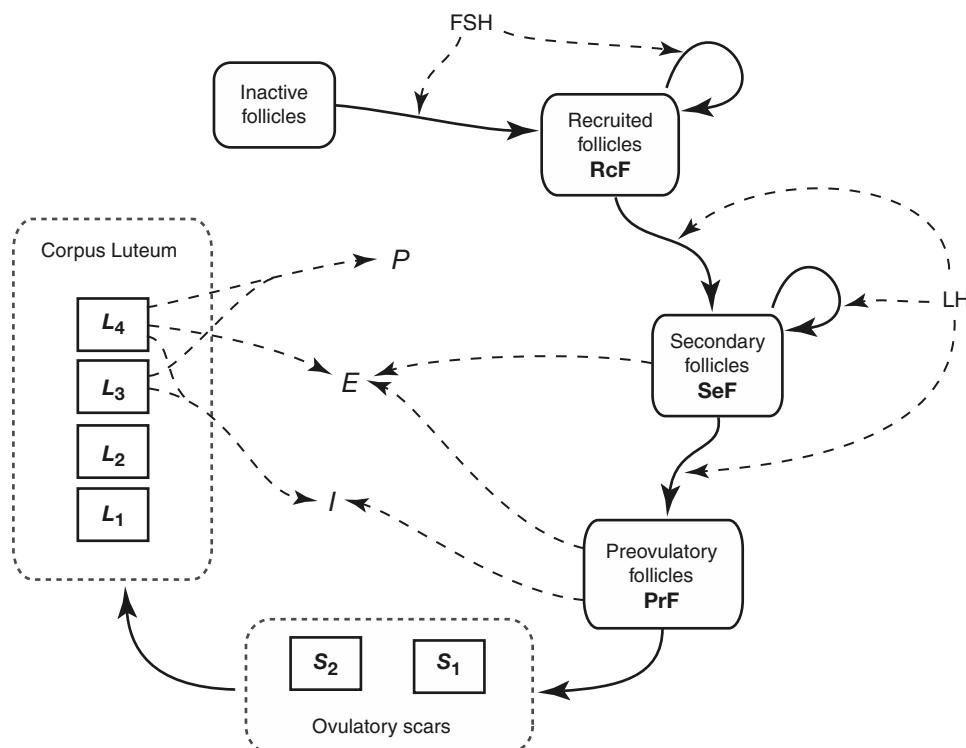
$$\frac{d}{dt}FSH = \frac{1}{v} \frac{k_F(1+c_{FP}P)FSH_R}{1+c_{FEE}^2} - c_FFSH. \quad (16.10)$$

Thus, the rate of production of  $LH_R$  is an increasing function of  $E$ , but a decreasing function of  $P$ , with some time delay,  $\tau$ . Similarly, the rate of secretion of LH into the blood (i.e., the second term on the right of (16.7) and the first term on the right of (16.8)) is an increasing function of  $P$ , but a decreasing function of  $E$ . In (16.8) this secretion term is multiplied by the scale factor  $1/v$ , which takes into account the different volumes of the two compartments. The equations for  $FSH_R$  and  $FSH$  have the same form, with slightly different functional forms.

### The Ovary Submodel

A schematic diagram of the ovary submodel is shown in Fig. 16.8. Each follicle is assumed to move through 10 different stages, with different rates of hormone production during each stage. This allows for time-dependent rates of hormone release, without the need to build in such time dependence explicitly. The passage of the follicle through the stages is described mostly by linear transitions (making many of the stages act like linear filters, as described briefly in the appendix to Chapter 19; see also Exercise 7 of this chapter, and Exercise 7 of Chapter 13), although some of the transitions are dependent on LH.

Inactive follicles are recruited (i.e., moved into the recruited follicle box, **RcF**) by FSH (at rate  $b_{FSH}$ ). Recruited follicles also multiply at a rate proportional to both **RcF** and FSH. In a similar manner, LH stimulates the movement of follicles into the secondary phase and then into the preovulatory phase, while simultaneously stimulating an increase in the number of follicles in the secondary phase by a process of positive feedback. Subsequently, the follicle moves through the different phases in a



**Figure 16.8** Schematic diagram of the ovary submodel of the model of the menstrual cycle. Adapted from Clark et al., 2003, Fig. 2.

linear fashion. This sequence of steps, as illustrated in Fig. 16.8, is modeled by

$$\frac{d}{dt} \text{RcF} = c_1 \text{FSH} + (c_1 \text{FSH} - c_2 \text{LH}^\alpha) \text{RcF}, \quad (16.11)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \text{SeF} = c_2 \text{LH}^\alpha \cdot \text{RcF} + (c_3 \text{LH}^\beta - c_4 \text{LH}) \text{SeF}, \quad (16.12)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \text{PrF} = c_4 \text{LH} \cdot \text{SeF} - c_5 \text{PrF}, \quad (16.13)$$

$$\frac{dS_1}{dt} = c_5 \text{PrF} - S_1/k, \quad (16.14)$$

$$k \frac{dS_2}{dt} = S_1 - S_2, \quad (16.15)$$

$$k \frac{dL_1}{dt} = S_2 - L_1, \quad (16.16)$$

$$k \frac{dL_2}{dt} = L_1 - L_2, \quad (16.17)$$

$$k \frac{dL_3}{dt} = L_2 - L_3, \quad (16.18)$$

$$k \frac{dL_4}{dt} = L_3 - L_4. \quad (16.19)$$

To complete the model we need to specify how the levels of estradiol, progesterone, and inhibin depend on the various follicle stages. The model assumes that each hormone can be produced only at certain follicle stages, as indicated in Fig. 16.8. Thus we also have the auxiliary equations

$$E = e_0 + e_1 \text{SeF} + e_2 \text{PrF} + e_3 L_4, \quad (16.20)$$

$$P = p(L_3 + L_4), \quad (16.21)$$

$$I = h_0 + h_1 \text{PrF} + h_2 L_3 + h_3 L_4. \quad (16.22)$$

## Comparing to Data

The model parameters were determined by fitting the model to the data of MacLachlan et al. (1990), who measured blood concentrations of the major hormones over the course of a menstrual cycle. Such a procedure does not determine the parameters to any degree of accuracy, and certainly does not demonstrate that this model is the only possible model that can reproduce the data. Nevertheless, it does show that this model is sufficient to explain many important features of the menstrual cycle.

The parameter values (slightly changed from the original values of Clark et al., 2003) are given in Tables 16.2 and 16.3, and a typical stable oscillatory solution is shown in Fig. 16.9. The LH surge can be clearly seen in the upper panel, while the typical multihumped solution for the estradiol concentration is shown in the lower panel.

Interestingly, Clark et al. found a second stable limit cycle solution of this same model, a periodic solution that has a slightly smaller period, much less variation in

**Table 16.2** Parameter values for the pituitary submodel of the model of the menstrual cycle.

LH equations			FSH equations		
$k_L$	2.5	day <sup>-1</sup>	$V_F$	5700	μg/day
$c_L$	14	day <sup>-1</sup>	$c_F$	8.2	day <sup>-1</sup>
$V_{OL}$	1263	μg/day	$k_F$	7.3	day <sup>-1</sup>
$V_{1L}$	91000	μg/day	$c_{FE}$	0.16	(L/ng) <sup>2</sup>
$K_{mL}$	360	ng/L	$K_{iF}$	641	U/L
$K_{iL}$	31	nmol/L	$c_{FP}$	644	L/nmol
$c_{LE}$	0.005	L/ng	$v$	2.5	L
$c_{LP}$	0.07	L/nmol			
$\tau$	2.00	day			

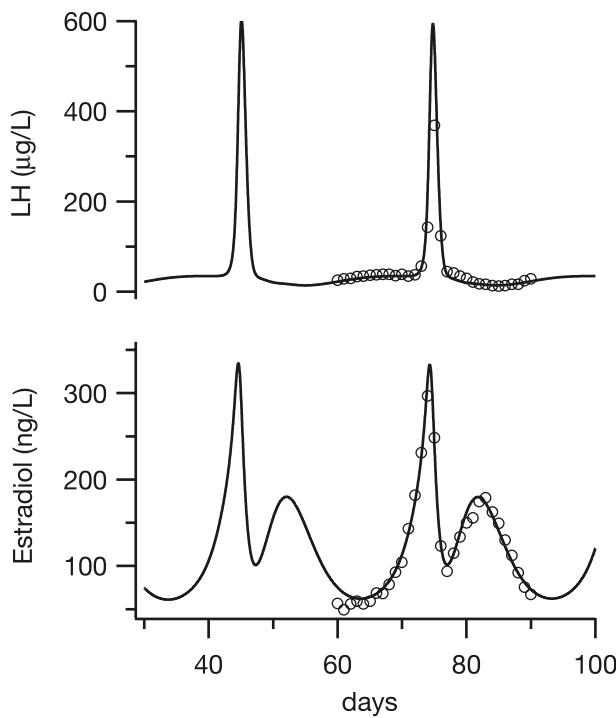
**Table 16.3** Parameter values for the ovarian submodel and the auxiliary equations of the model of the menstrual cycle.

Ovarian equations			Auxiliary equations		
$b$	0.004	L/day	$e_0$	48	ng/L
$c_1$	0.006	(L/μg)/day	$e_1$	0.1	1/kL
$c_2$	0.05	day <sup>-1</sup>	$e_2$	0.17	1/kL
$c_3$	0.004	day <sup>-1</sup>	$e_3$	0.23	1/kL
$c_4$	0.006	day <sup>-1</sup>	$p$	0.05	(nmol/L)/μg
$c_5$	1.3	day <sup>-1</sup>	$h_0$	274	U/L
$k$	1.43	day	$h_1$	0.5	(U/L)/μg
$\alpha$	0.77		$h_2$	0.5	(U/L)/μg
$\beta$	0.16		$h_3$	2	(U/L)/μg

estradiol levels, lower levels of progesterone, and an elevated LH/FSH ratio. Since these features are typical of the disease polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), one of the leading causes of female infertility, it is possible that the model might provide a way to investigate proposed treatments. For example, Clark et al. showed that the solution can be switched from the abnormal cycle to the normal cycle by the application of a sufficient amount of exogenous progesterone, but not by the application of too small a dose. Although such conclusions are highly tentative, the possibility of using this model to test proposed treatments is intriguing.

### 16.2.2 The Control of Ovulation Number

One particularly remarkable feature about ovulation is that, although many follicles begin the second developmental stage, few reach full maturity and ovulate, as the rest atrophy and die. In fact, the number of oocytes reaching full maturity is carefully controlled, so that litter sizes are generally restricted to within a relatively narrow range, and different species have different typical litter sizes. For example, to quote



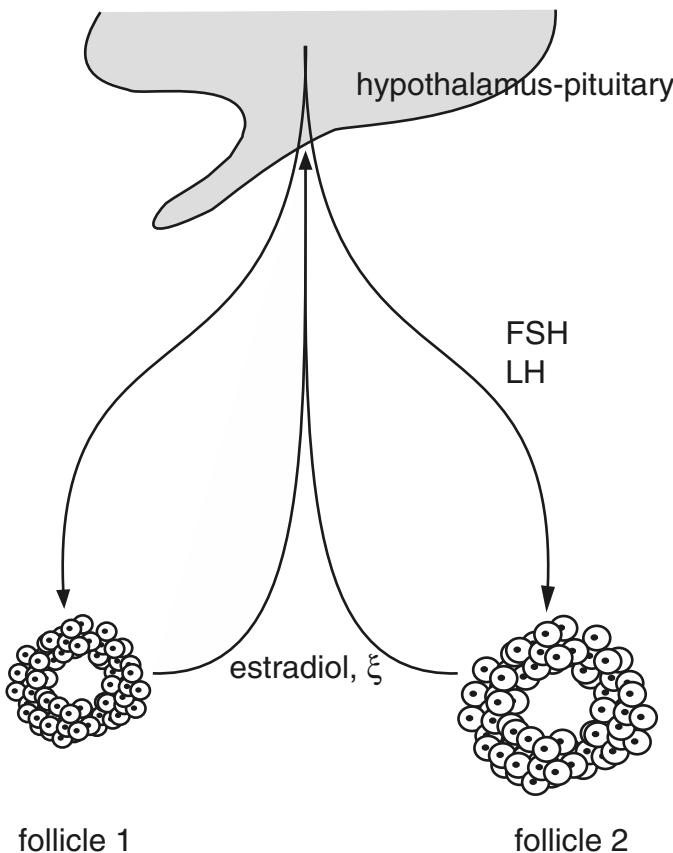
**Figure 16.9** An oscillatory solution of the model of the menstrual cycle. The experimental data of MacLachlan et al. (1990) are shown as open circles.

some interesting, if not particularly useful, facts from Asdell (1946), both the dugong and llama have a typical litter size of 1, the crestless Himalayan porcupine typically gives birth to two offspring, while the dingo produces, on average, 3. Different breeds of pigs have litter sizes ranging from 6 to 11.

There must therefore be a complex process that, despite the continuous recruitment of secondary follicles into the second developmental stage, allows precise regulation of the number remaining at ovulation. Further, the temporal periodicity of ovulation is tightly controlled, with ovulation occurring at regularly spaced time intervals.

In addition to questions related to the nature of the control of ovulation, there is the question of efficiency. It appears inefficient to regulate the final number of mature follicles by initiating the growth of many and killing off most of them. One might speculate that it would be more reasonable to initiate growth in only the required number and ensure that they all progress through to ovulation.

Normal ovulation involves growth in both ovaries. However, since removal of one ovary does not change the total number of eggs released during ovulation, the control mechanism is not a local one, but a global one, known to operate through the circulatory system. Maturation of follicles is stimulated by *gonadotropin*, which is released



**Figure 16.10** Schematic diagram of the Lacker model of ovulation in mammals. (Adapted from Lacker, 1981, Fig. 1.)

from pituitary gonadotrophs. Gonadotropin consists of two different hormones called *follicle-stimulating hormone* (FSH) and *luteinizing hormone* (LH). However, follicles themselves secrete *estradiol*, which stimulates the production of gonadotropin, forming a feedback control loop for the control of follicle maturation (Fig. 16.10).

One of the most elegant models of hormonal control is due to Lacker (1981; Lacker and Peskin, 1981; Akin and Lacker, 1984) and describes a possible mechanism by which mammals control the number of eggs released at ovulation. In the model it is assumed that each follicle interacts with other follicles only through the hormone concentrations in the bloodstream. As follicles mature they become more sensitive to gonadotropin, and their secretion of estradiol increases. The model of this feedback control loop is considerably oversimplified, since it does not incorporate a detailed mechanistic description of how estradiol production depends on gonadotropin or vice versa. However, it provides a phenomenological description of how a global interaction mechanism can be organized to give precise control over the final number of eggs reaching maturity.

The three basic assumptions of the model are that

1. The rate at which follicles secrete estradiol is a marker of follicle maturity.
2. The concentration of estradiol in the blood controls the release of FSH and LH from the pituitary.
3. The concentrations of FSH and LH control the rate of follicle maturation, and at any given instant, the response of each follicle to FSH and LH is a function of the follicle's maturity.

To express these assumptions mathematically, we define the following variables and parameters:

- $\xi$  concentration of estradiol,
- $\gamma$  rate of clearance of estradiol from the blood,
- $V$  plasma volume,
- $s_i$  rate of secretion of estradiol from the  $i$ th follicle,
- $N$  number of interacting follicles.

Here, all concentrations refer to serum concentrations (i.e., concentrations in the blood). Then, the rate of change of the total estradiol concentration is given by

$$V \frac{d\xi}{dt} = \sum_{i=1}^N s_i(t) - \gamma \xi. \quad (16.23)$$

Assuming that the rates of addition and removal of estradiol are much faster than the rate of follicle maturation, we take  $\xi$  to be at pseudo-steady state, and thus

$$\xi = \frac{1}{\gamma} \sum_{i=1}^N s_i(t) = \sum_{i=1}^N \xi_i(t), \quad (16.24)$$

where  $\xi_i(t) = s_i(t)/\gamma$  is the contribution that the  $i$ th follicle makes to  $\xi$ . In general,  $d\xi_i/dt$  is a function of both  $\xi_i$  and  $\xi$ , but does not depend directly on any other  $\xi_j, j \neq i$ . This is because we assume that local follicle–follicle interactions are not an important feature of the control mechanism, but that follicles interact only via the total estradiol concentration. Hence, the most general form of the model equations is

$$\frac{d\xi_i}{dt} = f(\xi_i, \xi), \quad i = 1, \dots, N. \quad (16.25)$$

The function  $f$  is called the *maturity function*. Note that the concentrations of FSH and LH do not appear explicitly, as their effect on  $\xi_i$  is modeled indirectly by assuming that  $\frac{d\xi_i}{dt}$  depends on  $\xi$ .

Here we describe one particular form of the maturity function. This form is not based on experimental evidence but is chosen to give the correct behavior. Specifically, we take

$$\frac{d\xi_i}{dt} = f(\xi_i, \xi) = \xi_i \phi(\xi_i, \xi), \quad i = 1, \dots, N, \quad (16.26)$$

where

$$\phi(\xi_i, \xi) = 1 - (\xi - M_1 \xi_i)(\xi - M_2 \xi_i). \quad (16.27)$$

The constants  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  are parameters that are the same for every follicle, so that each follicle obeys the same developmental rules. As a function of  $\xi_i$ , for fixed  $\xi$ ,  $\phi$  is an inverted parabola with a maximum at

$$\xi_{i,\max} = \frac{\xi}{2} \left( \frac{1}{M_1} + \frac{1}{M_2} \right). \quad (16.28)$$

If  $\xi_i$  is large or small, the growth of  $\xi_i$  is negative, and so this growth rate is fastest for those follicles with maturity within a narrow range, depending on the total estradiol concentration. Thus, with a given initial distribution of follicle maturities, those with  $\xi_i$  close to  $\xi_{i,\max}$  grow at the expense of the others. Further, since the growth rate  $f$  is proportional to  $\xi_i$ , the selective growth of the  $i$ th follicle leads to an autocatalytic increase in  $\xi_i$ .

## Numerical Solutions

Before we study the behavior of the model analytically, it is helpful to see some typical numerical solutions. The numerical solution of (16.26)–(16.27), with  $M_1 = 3.85$ , and  $M_2 = 15.15$ , starting with a group of 10 follicles with initial maturities randomly distributed between 0 and 0.1, shows that the maturity of four or five follicles goes to infinity in finite time, while the other follicles die (Fig. 16.11). Since ovulation is triggered by high, fast-rising estradiol levels, solutions that become infinite in finite time are interpreted as ovulatory solutions. Not only do a similar number of follicles ovulate in each run, they also ovulate at the same time. Hence, ovulatory solutions for  $\xi_i$  and  $\xi_j$ , say, are ones in which  $\xi_i(t)$  and  $\xi_j(t) \rightarrow \infty$  as  $t \rightarrow T < \infty$ , with  $\xi_i/\xi_j \rightarrow 1$ . These numerical solutions show that the model has the correct qualitative behavior. However, analytic methods give a deeper understanding of how this control is accomplished.

## Symmetric Solutions

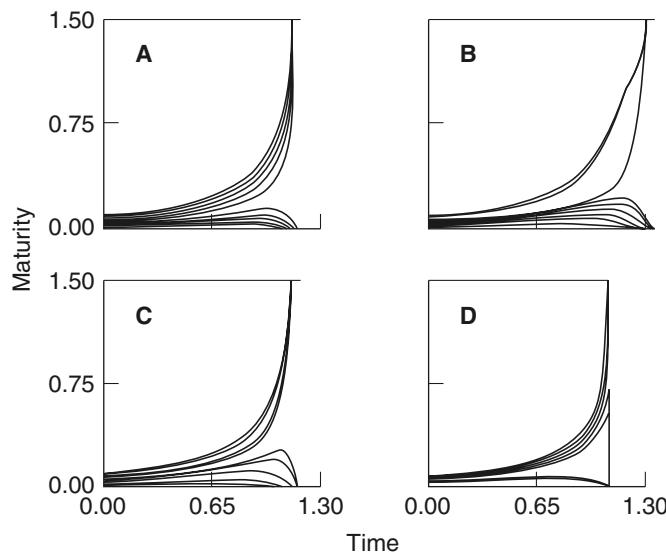
Much of the behavior of the ovulation model can be understood by considering symmetric solutions, in which  $M$  of the follicles have the same maturity, while all others have zero maturity. Thus,  $\xi_i = \xi/M$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, M$ , and  $\xi_i = 0$ ,  $i = M+1, \dots, N$ , in which case the model simplifies to

$$\frac{d\xi}{dt} = \xi + \mu \xi^3, \quad (16.29)$$

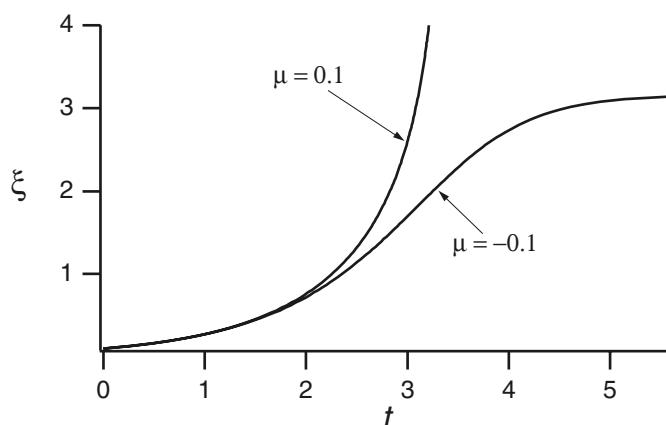
where  $\mu = -(1 - M_1/M)(1 - M_2/M)$ . The solution is given implicitly by

$$\frac{\xi}{\xi_0} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \mu \xi_0^2}{1 + \mu \xi^2}} = e^t, \quad (16.30)$$

where  $\xi_0 = \xi(0)$  is the initial value. When  $\mu > 0$ ,  $t \rightarrow \log \left( \sqrt{(1 + \mu \xi_0^2)/(\mu \xi_0^2)} \right)$  as  $\xi \rightarrow \infty$ , while when  $\mu < 0$ ,  $t$  blows up to infinity as  $\xi \rightarrow \sqrt{-1/\mu}$  (Fig. 16.12). Thus, when  $\mu > 0$ ,



**Figure 16.11** Typical numerical solutions of the ovulation model. Each numerical simulation was started with a group of 10 follicles with maturities randomly distributed between 0 and 0.1. Parameter values are  $M_1 = 3.85$ ,  $M_2 = 15.15$ . In panels A and D five follicles ovulate (their maturity blows up in finite time), while in panels B and C only four ovulate. All other follicles atrophy and die. (Lacker, 1981, Fig. 7.)



**Figure 16.12** Symmetric solutions of the ovulation model for two values of  $\mu$ . The initial condition was set arbitrarily at  $\xi_0 = 0.1$ . When  $\mu > 0$ , the solution blows up in finite time, while when  $\mu < 0$ , the solution approaches a steady state as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .

$\xi$  becomes infinite in finite time, while when  $\mu < 0$ ,  $\xi$  goes to the steady state  $\sqrt{-1/\mu}$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . The former solution corresponds to an ovulatory solution, and the time of ovulation,  $T$ , is

$$T = \log \left( \sqrt{\frac{1 + \mu \xi_0^2}{\mu \xi_0^2}} \right). \quad (16.31)$$

It follows that if  $M$  is between  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ , all  $M$  follicles progress to ovulation at time  $T$  and the other follicles are suppressed, but if  $M$  is outside this range, all  $M$  follicles go to the steady (nonovulatory) state

$$\xi_M = \frac{1}{M} \sqrt{\frac{-1}{\mu}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(M - M_1)(M - M_2)}}. \quad (16.32)$$

Hence, in the symmetric case, ovulation numbers must be between  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ .

### Solutions in Phase Space

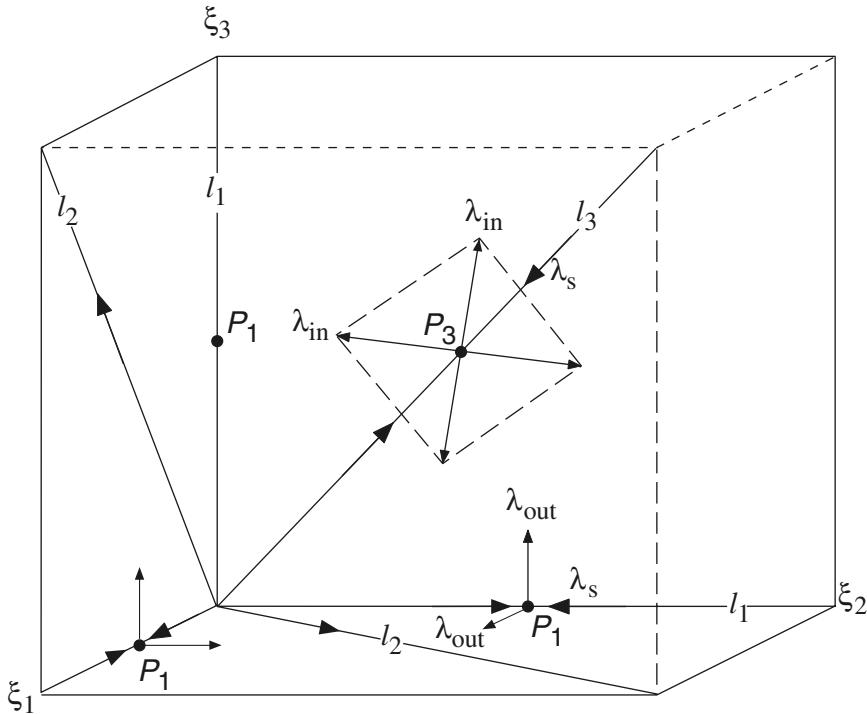
To understand these symmetric solutions more fully, and to understand how they relate to the behavior of nonsymmetric solutions, it is helpful to consider the trajectories in the  $N$ -dimensional phase space defined by  $\xi_i, i = 1, \dots, N$ . Each symmetric solution lies on a line of symmetry  $l_M$  of the  $M$ -dimensional coordinate hyperplane. This is illustrated in Fig. 16.13 for the case  $N = 3$ : the  $l_1$  lines are the  $\xi_1, \xi_2$ , and  $\xi_3$  axes, the  $l_2$  lines lie in the two-dimensional coordinate planes, and the  $l_3$  line makes a 45 degree angle with the  $\xi_1, \xi_2$  plane. Note that not all the  $l_1$  and  $l_2$  lines of symmetry are included in the diagram. When  $M$  is between  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ ,  $l_M$  contains no critical point, and any trajectory starting on  $l_M$  goes to infinity along  $l_M$ , reaching infinity in finite time  $T$ . However, when  $M$  is outside the range of  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ ,  $l_M$  contains a critical point,  $P_M$ , and solutions that start on  $l_M$  stay on  $l_M$ , approaching  $P_M$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . In Fig. 16.13,  $M_1 = 1.9$  and  $M_2 = 2.9$ , and so the only possible ovulation number is 2. Thus, each  $l_1$  contains a critical point,  $P_1$ , that prevents the ovulation of single follicles, and similarly for  $l_3$ . The  $l_2$  lines are the only lines of symmetry not containing a critical point.

The relationship between the symmetric solutions and the general solutions is most easily seen by analyzing the stability of the critical points  $P_M$ . Linearizing (16.25) around  $P_M$  gives the linear system (after rearranging the variables)

$$\frac{d\tilde{P}}{dt} = A\tilde{P}, \quad (16.33)$$

where  $\tilde{P}$  is a small perturbation from  $P_M$  and

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 + B_1 & B_2 \\ 0 & A_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (16.34)$$



**Figure 16.13** Phase space for a system of 3 interacting follicles ( $N = 3$ ) with  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  chosen such that only two follicles ovulate.  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$  denotes eigenvalues with eigenvectors that point out of the coordinate hyperplane, while  $\lambda_{\text{in}}$  denotes eigenvalues with eigenvectors that are in the coordinate hyperplane.  $\lambda_s$  denotes the eigenvalue with eigenvector in the direction of the line of symmetry.

where  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  are diagonal matrices with diagonal elements  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  respectively, and  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  are matrices with all elements equal to  $b_1$ ,

$$a_1 = \xi_M \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \xi_i} \Big|_{(\xi_M, M\xi_M)}, \quad a_2 = \phi(0, M\xi_M), \quad b_1 = \xi_M \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \xi} \Big|_{(\xi_M, M\xi_M)}. \quad (16.35)$$

The stability of  $P_M$  is determined by the eigenvalues of  $A$ , which, because of its block structure, are the eigenvalues of the two diagonal block matrices  $A_1 + B_1$  and  $A_2$ . Hence,  $A$  has an eigenvalue  $\lambda_{\text{out}} = a_2$  of multiplicity  $N - M$  (from  $A_2$ ), an eigenvalue  $\lambda_s = a_1 + Mb_1 = -2$  of multiplicity 1, and an eigenvalue  $\lambda_{\text{in}} = a_1$  of multiplicity  $M - 1$ , both coming from  $A_1$ . To verify the multiplicities of these eigenvalues, note that  $A - a_1 I$  is a matrix of rank 1, so has a nullspace of dimension  $M - 1$ .

In the following discussion we let  $Z = (\delta\xi_1, \dots, \delta\xi_N)$  denote an eigenvector at  $P_M$ , and use subscripts to denote the different eigenvectors.

**Perturbations Along  $l_M$ .** Corresponding to the simple eigenvalue  $\lambda_s$  is the eigenvector  $Z_s$  whose components satisfy  $\delta\xi_i = 1, i = 1, \dots, M, \delta\xi_i = 0, i = M + 1, \dots, N$ . Hence,

$Z_s$  is in the direction of  $l_M$ . Since  $\lambda_s < 0$ , it follows that  $l_M$  is on the stable manifold of  $P_M$ . Since symmetry is preserved along  $l_M$ , any solution that starts on  $l_M$  goes to  $P_M$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .

**Perturbations Orthogonal to  $l_M$  in the Coordinate Hyperplane.** Corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda_{\text{in}}$  are the eigenvectors  $Z_1, \dots, Z_{M-1}$  whose components are  $\sum_{i=1}^M \delta\xi_i = 0, \delta\xi_i = 0, i = M+1, \dots, N$ .  $Z_1$  to  $Z_{M-1}$  are independent vectors that lie in the coordinate hyperplane (since all have their last  $M-N$  components equal to 0). Since they are also orthogonal to  $l_M$ , they span the orthogonal complement of  $l_M$  in the coordinate hyperplane.

**Perturbations Orthogonal to  $l_M$  and the Coordinate Hyperplane.** The eigenvalue  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$  has the corresponding eigenvectors  $Z_{M+1}, \dots, Z_{N-1}$  whose components satisfy  $\sum_{i=M+1}^N \delta\xi_i = 0, \delta\xi_i = 0, i = 1, \dots, M$ . Finally, there is also the eigenvector  $Z_N$  with components  $\delta\xi_i = (M-N)b_1, i = 1, \dots, M$  and  $\delta\xi_i = (a_1 - a_2) + Mb_1, i = M+1, \dots, N$ . All the eigenvectors corresponding to  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$  are orthogonal to both  $l_M$  and the coordinate hyperplane and span the orthogonal complement of the coordinate hyperplane.

These eigenvectors are illustrated in Fig. 16.13. At the critical point  $P_1$ , situated on the  $\xi_2$  axis, there are two independent eigenvectors corresponding to  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$ , and these are both orthogonal to  $l_1$ , the  $\xi_2$  axis. Note that as the coordinate hyperplane is a line in this case, there are no eigenvectors corresponding to  $\lambda_{\text{in}}$ . At  $P_3$  the converse is true. Here there are no eigenvectors corresponding to  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$ , as the coordinate hyperplane is the entire space. In three dimensions, the only critical point that could have eigenvectors corresponding to all the eigenvalues  $\lambda_s, \lambda_{\text{in}}$ , and  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$  would be  $P_2$ . However, for these parameter values  $P_2$  does not exist as  $M_1 < 2 < M_2$ .

It remains to determine the stability of each critical point  $P_M$ . This is easily done by direct computation of the eigenvalues, which gives

$$\lambda_s = a_1 + Mb_1 = -2, \quad (16.36)$$

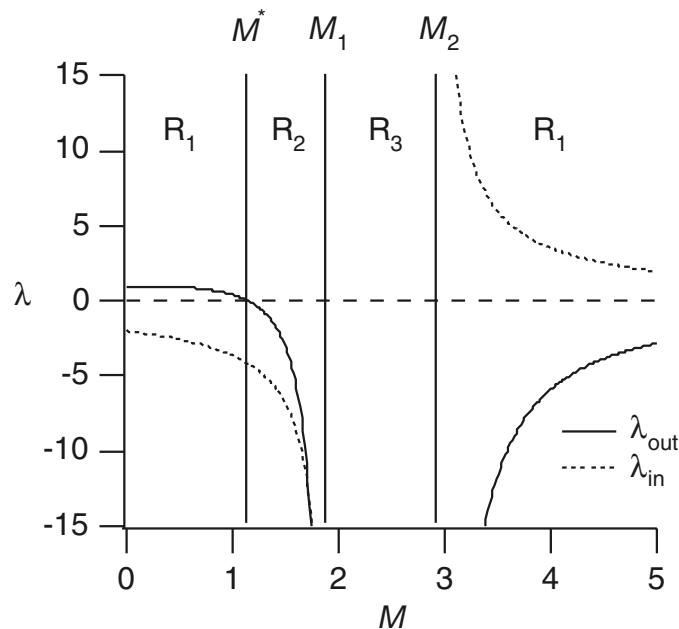
$$\lambda_{\text{in}} = a_1 = \frac{(M_1 + M_2)M - 2M_1M_2}{(M - M_1)(M - M_2)}, \quad (16.37)$$

$$\lambda_{\text{out}} = a_2 = -\frac{(M_1 + M_2)M - M_1M_2}{(M - M_1)(M - M_2)}. \quad (16.38)$$

Plots of  $\lambda_{\text{in}}$  and  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$  as functions of  $M$  are shown in Fig. 16.14. For  $M$  between  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ ,  $P_M$  does not exist, but for  $M > M_2$  and for  $M < M^* = M_1M_2/(M_1 + M_2)$ ,  $\lambda_{\text{in}}$  and  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$  are of opposite signs. For  $M^* < M < M_1$ , the eigenvalues are both negative. It follows that if there are integers in the interval  $(M^*, M_1)$ , then there are stable critical points  $P_M$ , with  $M^* < M < M_1$ . All other symmetric critical points are unstable.

Finally, we note (without proof) that there are critical points other than the symmetric ones, but they are all unstable.

In summary, when there are no integers in the interval  $(M^*, M_1)$  all the critical points are unstable and all the symmetric critical points are saddle points. In fact, from any starting point, all solutions approach infinity along one of the symmetric

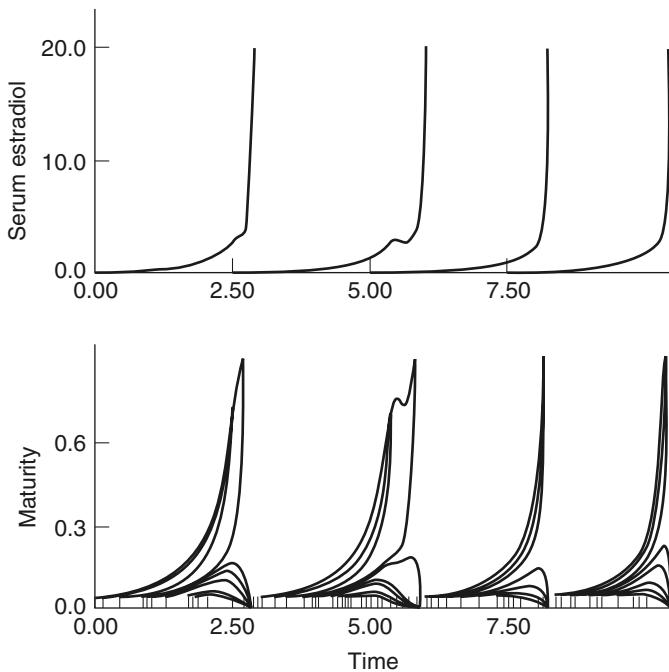


**Figure 16.14** The eigenvalues of  $A$  as functions of  $M$ , calculated with the parameter values  $M_1 = 1.9$ ,  $M_2 = 2.9$ . In the regions labeled  $R_1$  the steady state  $P_M$  is a saddle point; in the region labeled  $R_2$ ,  $P_M$  is stable; and in the region labeled  $R_3$ , there are no symmetric critical points, i.e.,  $P_M$  does not exist for those values of  $M$ . Note that only integer values for  $M$  have any physical meaning. As described in the text, the eigenvalues  $\lambda_{\text{out}}$  and  $\lambda_{\text{in}}$  correspond, respectively, to eigenvectors pointing out and in of the symmetric hyperplane.

trajectories,  $l_M$ , where  $M_1 < M < M_2$ . These trajectories become infinite in finite time and are interpreted as ovulatory solutions. However, if there are integers in the interval  $(M^*, M_1)$ , there are corresponding stable critical points. Any solution that starts in the domain of attraction of one of these stable critical points,  $P_{M_s}$  say, approaches  $P_{M_s}$  as time increases, and the system becomes stuck there. No follicles ovulate, but  $M_s$  follicles remain fixed at an intermediate maturity.

### Stability of $l_M$

Although one might expect to observe ovulation numbers anywhere in the range  $M_1$  to  $M_2$ , numerical simulations show that only some of these actually occur. This is illustrated in Fig. 16.15, where  $M_1 = 3.85$  and  $M_2 = 15.15$ . In the previous numerical simulations (Fig. 16.11) we started with a fixed number of follicles with random initial maturities normally distributed; in Fig. 16.15, however, follicles mature at random times (generated by a Poisson process), so that the simulation more accurately reflects the physiological situation.



**Figure 16.15** Typical solutions when follicles begin to develop at random times, generated by a Poisson process. Each small tick on the horizontal axis marks the initiation of development in a single follicle. Although the parameter values are  $M_1 = 3.85$ ,  $M_2 = 15.15$ , and thus one might expect to observe ovulation numbers ranging from 4 to 15, only the ovulation numbers 4 and 5 are observed. (Lacker and Peskin, 1981, Fig. 11.)

Despite the random entry of follicles into the maturing pool, ovulation occurs at regular intervals, and the ovulation number varies little. Hence, the model generates periodic behavior from stochastic input. Furthermore, although we might expect to see ovulation numbers anywhere in the range 4 to 15, only the ovulation numbers 4 and 5 are observed. An explanation of this observation is found by examining the stability of the symmetric ovulatory solutions. This is done by transforming to a new coordinate system in which the ovulatory solutions, which become infinite in finite time, are transformed into finite critical points. The stability of these finite critical points can then be analyzed using standard linear stability methods.

We begin by noting that the initial ordering of a solution can never change. That is, if  $\xi_i$  starts above  $\xi_j$ , it remains above  $\xi_j$  for all time. This is true because

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\xi_i - \xi_j) = \xi_i \phi(\xi_i, \xi) - \xi_j \phi(\xi_j, \xi) = h(\xi_i, \xi_j, \xi)(\xi_i - \xi_j) \quad (16.39)$$

for some function  $h$ , and as long as  $\xi_i$  and  $\xi_j$  are bounded, so also is  $h(\xi_i, \xi_j, \xi)$ . Clearly,

$$\ln(\xi_i(t) - \xi_j(t)) = \ln(\xi_i(0) - \xi_j(0)) + \int_0^t h(\xi_i, \xi_j, \xi) dt. \quad (16.40)$$

If the right-hand side of this expression is bounded, so also is the left-hand side, so that  $\xi_i(t) \neq \xi_j(t)$ .

Since the original ordering of the maturities is preserved, we arrange the  $N$  follicles in order of maturity, with  $\xi_1$  denoting the follicle with the greatest maturity, and define a new time scale by

$$\tau(t) = \int_0^t \xi_1^2(s) ds. \quad (16.41)$$

As  $t \rightarrow T$ , the finite time of ovulation,  $\tau(t) \rightarrow \infty$ . For as  $\xi_1$  gets large,  $d\xi_1/dt \approx \xi_1^3$ , and hence  $\xi_1^2$  behaves like  $1/(T-t)$  as  $t \rightarrow T$ . Furthermore,  $\xi_1^2$  is positive, and so  $\tau$  is an increasing function of  $t$  that is therefore invertible. We use the inverse function to define new variables

$$\gamma_i(\tau) = \frac{\xi_i(t(\tau))}{\xi_1(t(\tau))}, \quad (16.42)$$

$$\Gamma(\tau) = \frac{\xi(t(\tau))}{\xi_1(t(\tau))}. \quad (16.43)$$

In terms of these new variables (16.26)–(16.27) become

$$\frac{d\gamma_i}{d\tau} = \gamma_i \Phi(\gamma_i, \Gamma), \quad i = 1, \dots, N, \quad (16.44)$$

$$\Gamma = \sum_{j=1}^N \gamma_j, \quad (16.45)$$

$$\Phi(\gamma_i, \Gamma) = (1 - \gamma_i)[M_1 M_2 (1 + \gamma_i) - \Gamma(M_1 + M_2)]. \quad (16.46)$$

Note that  $\gamma_1(\tau) \equiv 1$ , and  $0 \leq \gamma_i(\tau) \leq 1$  for each  $i$ .

All ovulatory and anovulatory solutions correspond to critical points of (16.44)–(16.46) of the form

$$\gamma_i = \begin{cases} 1, & i = 1, \dots, M, \\ 0, & i = M + 1, \dots, N. \end{cases} \quad (16.47)$$

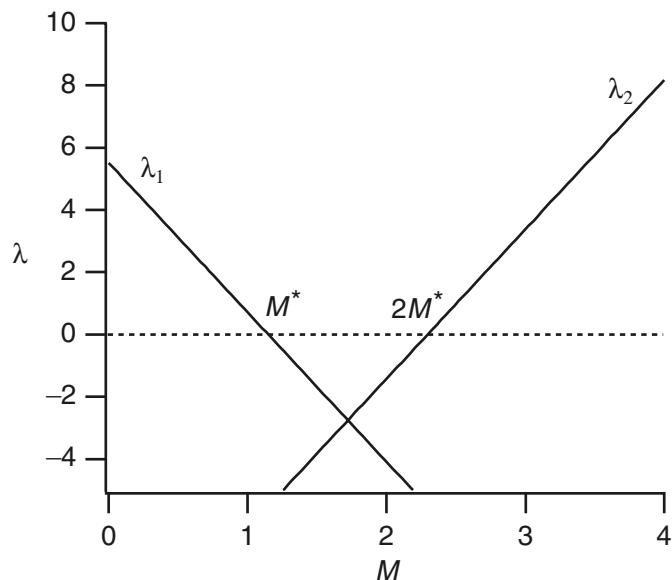
Although ovulatory and anovulatory solutions look the same, they can be distinguished by determining whether the original variable  $\xi$  is finite. If so, the critical point corresponds to an anovulatory solution.

Equations (16.44)–(16.46) have only two distinct eigenvalues,

$$\lambda_1 = (M_1 + M_2)M - 2M_1 M_2, \quad (16.48)$$

$$\lambda_2 = -(M_1 + M_2)M + M_1 M_2, \quad (16.49)$$

which are plotted in Fig. 16.16. If  $M$  lies between  $M^*$  and  $2M^*$ , then both  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  are negative, so that the critical point is stable. Otherwise, the critical point is unstable. It follows that only ovulation numbers between  $M_1$  and  $2M^*$  are stable, and are therefore observable.

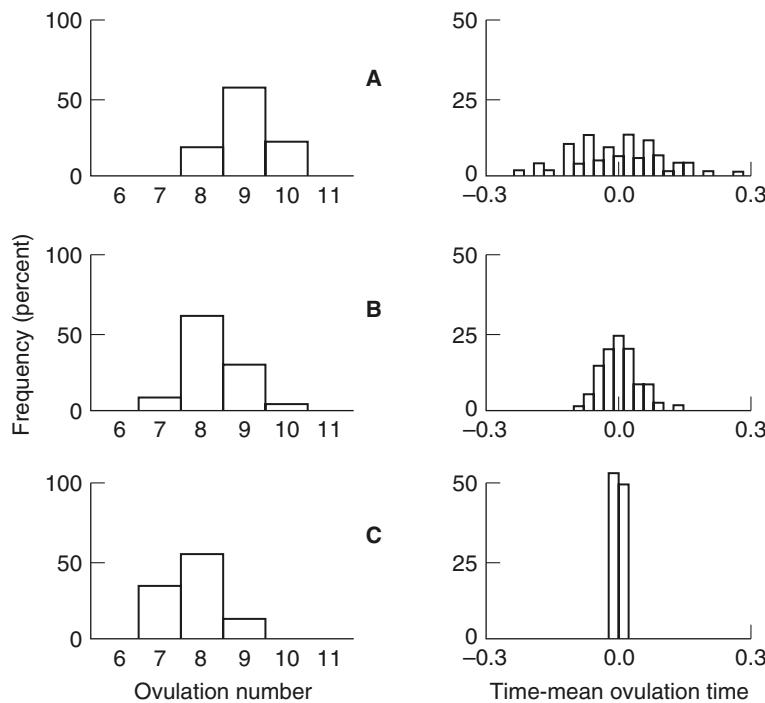


**Figure 16.16** The eigenvalues  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  of the ovulation model in the transformed variables  $\gamma_i$  and  $\tau$ .

In the numerical simulations shown in Fig. 16.15,  $M_1 = 3.85$  and  $M_2 = 15.15$ , in which case  $2M^* = 6.14$ . This is consistent with the numerical simulations in which only ovulation numbers 4 and 5 were observed. One possible reason why ovulation number 6 is not observed is that it lies close to the stability boundary. Thus, its domain of attraction is relatively small, and therefore the probability that a random process finds this domain of attraction is also small.

### The Effect of Population Size

With this model we can suggest an answer to the question of efficiency, namely, why do so many follicles begin the maturation process, only to atrophy and die? The answer appears to be that the mean time to ovulation is controlled more precisely by a large population than by a small one. This is illustrated in Fig. 16.17. For this figure, the model was simulated for 80 cycles, and the distribution of ovulation numbers and times was plotted for three different population sizes. Each population had the parameter values  $M_1 = 6.1$ ,  $M_2 = 5000$ , and thus the expected ovulation numbers lie in the range 7 to 12. As the population size increases, the mean ovulation number decreases, but the shape of the distribution does not change a great deal. However, although the mean ovulation time (shown here centered at 0) does not change as the population size is increased, the distribution sharpens dramatically, and the range of observed ovulation times is dramatically reduced. Thus, while the majority of follicles atrophy and die, they have an important, although not immediately obvious, function: helping to regulate the timing



**Figure 16.17** The effect of the population size on the distribution of ovulation numbers. In panels A, B, and C, there are, respectively, 10, 100, and 1000 follicles interacting. Parameter values are  $M_1 = 6.1$ ,  $M_2 = 5000$ . As the follicle population gets larger, the mean ovulation time decreases only slightly, while the standard deviation of the distribution of ovulation times decreases. Thus, larger populations allow more precise control over the ovulation time. (Lacker, 1981, Fig. 13.)

of ovulation. This provides a possible explanation of why women near menopause (i.e., with fewer available oocytes) typically experience menstrual irregularities.

### An Application of the Lacker Model

The Lacker model has been used as a tool to predict the response to ovarian superstimulation (Sarty and Pierson, 2005). A possible treatment for infertility is superstimulation of the ovaries by exogenous doses of hormones; an equivalent to FSH during the first portion of the ovulation cycle, followed by an equivalent to LH. In one treatment program, the size of the follicles and the level of estradiol were measured over the course of the treatment, with a number of individual follicles followed from day to day. For each follicle followed, this gave a vector  $\xi_i(t), \dot{\xi}_i(t), \ddot{\xi}_i(t)$ , where the derivative is calculated numerically from the data. Model parameters were then chosen so that  $\dot{\xi}_i - \xi_i \phi(\xi_i, \dot{\xi})$  is as small as possible in the least squares sense.

Because the experimental data were collected during a period of exogenous super-stimulation of the ovaries, one should not expect the Lacker model to give a close fit to the data, and indeed it does not. However, the model is a useful predictor of the ratio of ovulating follicles to dominant follicles (defined to be those with a diameter of 19 mm or greater). In particular, the model predicts that faster-growing follicles are less likely to ovulate, i.e., the speed with which the largest follicle reaches the target size of 19 mm is inversely related to probable ovulatory success. This result is similar to others which have shown that follicles from women who did not ovulate show more rapid growth patterns than follicles from women who do. Although the reasons for this are unclear, it gives a clear indication that to increase the number of ovulating follicles, it might be advantageous to slow the rate of follicle growth, possibly by reducing the size of the exogenous FSH dose.

### 16.2.3 Other Models of Ovulation

Although this model of ovulation is one of the simplest and most elegant, other, more complex, models have been constructed. For example, Schwarz (1969) and Bogumil et al. (1972) have proposed models that incorporate large numbers of parameters and are based more directly on experimental data.

The Lacker model was extended and generalized by Chávez-Ross et al. (1997) in a study of the possible mechanisms underlying polycystic ovary syndrome, a condition in which many large follicles develop but none becomes predominant, leading to failure of ovulation.

A model of a different type is due to Faddy and Gosden (1995). They constructed a compartmental model of follicle dynamics over the lifetime of an individual female and fit their model to experimental data to obtain follicle growth and death rates as functions of the individual's age. Although this compartmental model does not provide insight into the mechanisms underlying periodic ovulation and a constant ovulation number, it provides an understanding of follicle dynamics over a larger time span.

Most recently, Clément, Monniaux and their colleagues (Clément et al., 1997, 2001, 2002; Clément, 1998; Echenim et al., 2005) have modeled the follicle selection process, in a manner quite different from that of Lacker. In the Clément model, the progress of the granulosa cells through the cell cycle (see Chapter 10) is monitored, with some cells becoming atretic (i.e., dying) and others becoming differentiated. For each follicle, the maturity of the granulosa cells is described by a density function which satisfies a conservation PDE. The rates of entry into apoptosis and differentiation are governed by the blood concentration of FSH, where the rate of FSH production is governed by the total maturity of all the follicles, thus giving feedback between the follicles.

So far (i.e., by 2007), this model has been solved only for a population of five follicles, so it is too early to know whether or not it will prove to be an accurate and useful model of the follicle selection process.

## 16.3 Insulin and Glucose

Hormones secreted from cells in the pancreas are responsible for the control of glucose, amino acids, and other molecules that are necessary for metabolism. The pancreas contains a large number of secretory cells, grouped into about one million *islets of Langerhans* consisting of approximately 2,500 cells each. There are three principal secretory cell types: the  $\alpha$ -cells secrete glucagon, the  $\beta$ -cells secrete insulin (see Chapter 9), and the  $\delta$ -cells secrete somatostatin. Glucagon and insulin have complementary actions. A high concentration of glucose in the bloodstream (corresponding to an overabundance of nutrients) stimulates the production of insulin, which in turn induces storage of excess nutrient and decreases the rate at which nutrients are mobilized from storage areas such as adipose tissue or the liver. Insulin acts principally on three tissues: striated muscle (including the heart), liver, and adipose tissue. All the actions of insulin apparently stem from its interaction with a specific receptor in the plasma membrane of insulin-sensitive cells. How this interaction leads to the many actions of insulin on the cell is not fully understood. In striated muscle and adipose tissue, one important action of insulin is to stimulate the transport of glucose into the cell by a specific carrier (or carriers) in the plasma membrane. It appears to do this by recruiting glucose carriers to the plasma membrane from intracellular sites where they are inactive. Insulin thus increases the  $V_{max}$  of transport, often as much as 10- to 20-fold. When glucose enters the cell it is rapidly phosphorylated and metabolized.

In the case of the liver, insulin does not increase the rate of transport of glucose into the cell (although it increases the net uptake of glucose). In the liver, insulin acts on a number of intracellular enzymes to increase glucose storage and decrease mobilization of glucose stores. The details of how insulin does this are far from clear.

Glucagon raises the concentration of glucose in the bloodstream. It acts mainly but not entirely on the liver, where it stimulates glycogen breakdown and the formation of glucose from noncarbohydrate precursors such as lactate, glycerol, and amino acids. Glucagon released in the islets stimulates the  $\beta$  cells in the vicinity to secrete insulin.

### Insulin Units

Historically, a unit (U) of insulin was defined to be that amount of insulin (in cubic centimeters) that lowers the percentage of blood sugar in a normal rabbit to 0.045 in 2 to 6 hours. The crudity of such a unit was the result of the fact that it was not possible to purify insulin until relatively recently, and thus a bioassay was the only way of determining the amount. An excellent discussion of historical insulin units is given by Lacy (1967).

Later, mouse units became more convenient, and a unit was defined to be the amount of insulin required to produce convulsions in half the mice under standard conditions. A mouse unit is about 1/600 of a rabbit unit. Fortunately, insulin extracted from most animals has equivalent activity in rabbits, mice, and men, although the guinea pig and capybara are exceptions to this rule. Various modifications were made

to the conditions of these assays, but with the advent of reasonably pure preparations of insulin the unit has been redefined as 1/24 milligrams.

### 16.3.1 Insulin Sensitivity

Insulin resistance (i.e., a lowered ability of insulin to control blood glucose) plays a crucial role in diabetes, and has been implicated in a host of other diseases. Thus there have been a large number of studies of how insulin sensitivity can be measured experimentally (Mari, 2002). In general, these methods involve the addition of exogenous glucose and/or insulin, and then measurement of the time course of their blood concentrations. One of the most accurate methods is the euglycemic hyperinsulinemic glucose tolerance test (deFronzo et al., 1979). In this test a steady intravenous infusion of insulin is administered, to bring the blood concentration to a steady high level, while simultaneously the blood glucose concentration is clamped by continuous infusion of glucose through a second intravenous infusion. Once a steady state has been reached (which can take over an hour), the amount of glucose needed to maintain the glucose clamp is a measure of insulin sensitivity. At high insulin levels there is little glucose production by the liver, and thus the rate of glucose removal from the blood is due almost entirely to glucose metabolism, including uptake into the periphery. Thus, if insulin sensitivity is higher, it takes more glucose added continuously in the clamp to maintain a steady state; conversely, if insulin sensitivity is low, then the high insulin levels will not stimulate much glucose removal, and less added glucose is needed to maintain the steady state. However, since this procedure requires simultaneous IV infusions over a long time, and numerous blood samples, it is difficult to implement.

Subsequent methods have tried to determine insulin sensitivity in ways that are easier to apply. Some, such as the intravenous glucose tolerance test (IVGTT; for a mathematical study of this test see Gaetano and Arino, 2000), examine the response to a single intravenous bolus of glucose, while others such as the oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT; Mari et al., 2001) consider the response to a bolus of glucose taken orally. These methods depend crucially on mathematical models of the underlying processes, and most use, in one form or another, the so-called *minimal model* of Bergman et al. (1979; Bergman, 1989).

The meal tolerance test of Caumo et al. (2000), which is similar to the OGTT, provides a typical example of this kind of approach. In this test, glucose is administered orally and then the blood concentration of both glucose and insulin are measured as functions of time. (As a matter of interest, the meal consisted of 15 g Weetabix, 10 g skimmed milk, 250 ml pineapple juice, 50 g white-meat chicken, 60 g wholemeal bread and 10 g polyunsaturated margarine.)

To build a model of insulin sensitivity, we let  $G(t)$ , in units of mg/dl, denote the blood concentration of glucose, and let  $X(t)$ , in units of  $\text{min}^{-1}$ , denote insulin activity. We assume that  $G$  has a base value,  $G_b$ , to which it returns in the absence of perturbation,

and that  $G$  is decreased at a rate proportional to both  $X$  and  $G$ . Hence,

$$\frac{dG}{dt} = p_1(G_b - G) - XG + \frac{r(t)}{V}, \quad (16.50)$$

where  $r(t)$  is the rate at which glucose enters the bloodstream as a result of the meal, and is not known a priori. Here  $V$  is the glucose distribution volume per unit body weight, in units of ml/kg.

Similarly, insulin activity is assumed to increase whenever the concentration of insulin,  $I(t)$  (in units of  $\mu\text{U}/\text{ml}$ ), is above its base level,  $I_b$ , and is also assumed to decay spontaneously. Thus,

$$\frac{dX}{dt} = p_3(I(t) - I_b) - p_2X. \quad (16.51)$$

The parameter  $p_2$  has units  $\text{min}^{-1}$ , while  $p_3$  has units  $\text{ml } \mu\text{U}^{-1}\text{min}^{-2}$ . Notice that at steady state,  $X = \frac{p_3}{p_2}(I - I_b)$ , so that the ratio  $\frac{p_3}{p_2}$  is a measure of insulin sensitivity. That is, the larger the value of  $\frac{p_3}{p_2}$ , the greater the insulin activity for a given insulin concentration.

The test for insulin sensitivity is an inverse problem. That is, the glucose and insulin concentrations,  $G(t)$  and  $I(t)$ , are measured quantities, and we wish to determine the ratio  $\frac{p_3}{p_2}$ .

First, notice that by integrating (16.51) from  $t = 0$  to  $t = \infty$ , we find

$$\frac{p_3}{p_2} = \frac{\int_0^\infty X dt}{\int_0^\infty (I(t) - I_b) dt}, \quad (16.52)$$

where we have assumed that  $X$  is the same at the beginning ( $t = 0$ ) as at the end ( $t = \infty$ ) of the experiment, so that  $\int_0^\infty \frac{dX}{dt} dt = 0$ .

Since  $I(t)$  is known, it remains to express  $\int_0^\infty X dt$  in terms of known quantities. Dividing (16.50) by  $G$  and integrating from  $t = 0$  to  $t = \infty$ , we learn that

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{1}{G} \frac{dG}{dt} dt = p_1 \int_0^\infty \frac{G_b - G}{G} dt - \int_0^\infty X dt + \frac{1}{V} \int_0^\infty \frac{r(t)}{G} dt. \quad (16.53)$$

However, since  $G$  is also the same at the beginning and end of the experiment, so that  $\int_0^\infty \frac{1}{G} \frac{dG}{dt} dt = 0$ , it follows that

$$\int_0^\infty X dt = p_1 \int_0^\infty \frac{G_b - G}{G} dt + \frac{1}{V} \int_0^\infty \frac{r(t)}{G} dt. \quad (16.54)$$

If we can estimate  $r(t)$ , the problem is solved. One option is to assume some functional form for  $r(t)$ , ensuring that it peaks at approximately the correct time and has the correct integral (since the total amount of added glucose is known). However, the approach used by Caumo et al. (2000) was to estimate the integral of  $r/G$  based on knowledge of  $G$ . An alternative model of  $G$  is

$$\frac{dG}{dt} = a(G_b - G) + br(t), \quad (16.55)$$

for some unknown constants  $a$  and  $b$ . The assumption here is that both (16.55) and (16.50) provide reasonable descriptions of the data for  $G(t)$ , provided  $a$  and  $b$  are chosen appropriately.

However, we can eliminate  $a$  and  $b$  from the problem as follows. First we integrate (16.55) directly, to get

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{\int_0^\infty r(t) dt}{\int_0^\infty (G - G_b) dt}. \quad (16.56)$$

Next we divide (16.55) by  $G$  and integrate, to get

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{r(t)}{G} dt = \frac{a}{b} \int_0^\infty \left( \frac{G - G_b}{G} \right) dt. \quad (16.57)$$

Substituting for  $\frac{a}{b}$ , we find that

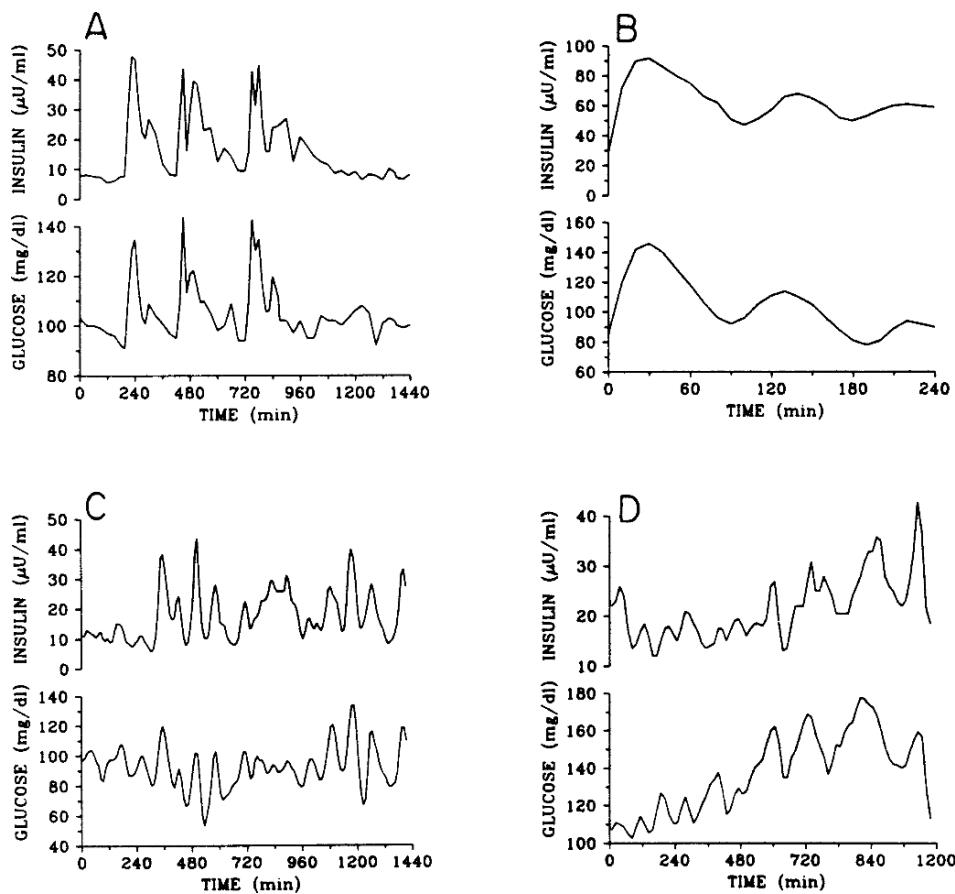
$$\int_0^\infty \frac{r(t)}{G} dt = \left( \frac{\int_0^\infty r(t) dt}{\int_0^\infty (G - G_b) dt} \right) \int_0^\infty \left( \frac{G - G_b}{G} \right) dt. \quad (16.58)$$

Since  $\int_0^\infty r(t) dt$  is the total amount of glucose ingested in the meal, which is known, the combination of (16.52), (16.54) and (16.58) gives an expression for  $p_3/p_2$  entirely in terms of known quantities, as desired.

### 16.3.2 Pulsatile Insulin Secretion

Insulin secretion oscillates on a number of different time scales, ranging from tens of seconds to more than 100 minutes. The fast oscillations are caused (at least in part) by bursting electrical activity described in Chapter 9. During each burst of action potentials the cytoplasmic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration rises as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  flows in through voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, and this rise in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stimulates insulin secretion. Oscillations with a much larger period of around 100 minutes are also observed, and are called *ultradian oscillations* (Fig. 16.18). Finally, oscillations with intermediate frequencies of around 10 minutes or so also occur. One of the earliest observations of these oscillations was made in the rhesus monkey by Goodner et al. (1977), and some of their results are reproduced in Fig. 16.19. Glucagon and insulin oscillate out of phase, while insulin and glucose are in phase, with the increase of glucose leading the increase of insulin by an average of about one minute. Oscillations with intermediate frequency are also observed in isolated rat islets (Bergstrom et al., 1989; Berman et al., 1993), although, as can be seen from Fig. 16.20, spectral analysis is usually necessary to determine the principal underlying frequency. Once the underlying trend has been removed, a spectral decomposition of the data shows a frequency peak at about  $0.07 \text{ min}^{-1}$ , corresponding to a period of 14.5 minutes.

Ultradian insulin oscillations have a number of observable features. First, oscillations occur during constant intravenous glucose infusion and are not dependent on periodic nutrient absorption from the gut. However, damped oscillations occur after a

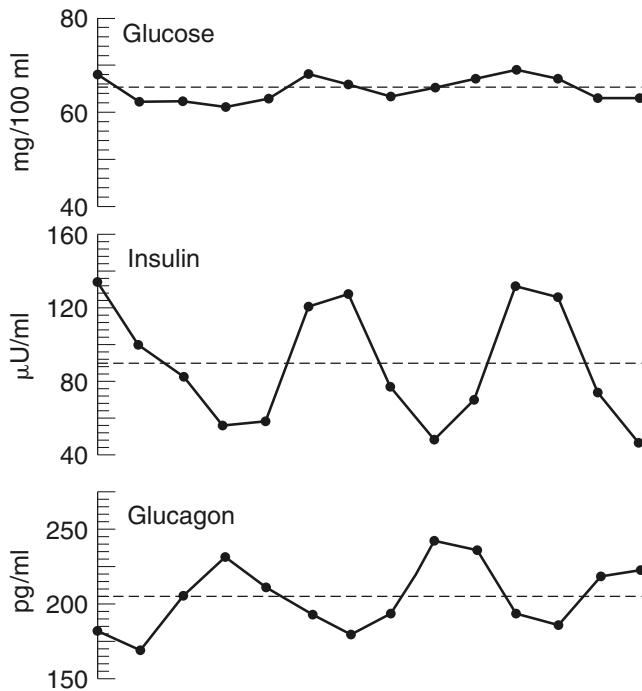


**Figure 16.18** Oscillations of insulin and glucose. A: During the ingestion of three meals. B: During oral glucose. C: During continuous nutrition. D: During constant glucose infusion. Oscillations with a period of around 120 minutes occur even during constant stimulation (i.e., constant glucose infusion), and occur in a damped manner after a single stimulus such as ingestion of a meal. (Sturis et al., 1991, Fig. 1.)

single stimulus such as a meal. Second, glucose and insulin concentrations are highly correlated, with the glucose peak occurring about 10–20 minutes earlier than that of insulin. Third, the amplitude of the oscillations is an increasing function of glucose concentration, while the frequency is not; and fourth, the oscillations do not appear to depend on glucagon.

Although there are many possible mechanisms that are consistent with the above observations, they can all be explained by a relatively simple model (Sturis et al., 1991) in which the oscillations are produced by interactions between glucose and insulin.

A schematic diagram of the model is shown in Fig. 16.21. There are three pools in the model, representing remote insulin storage in the interstitial fluid, insulin in the



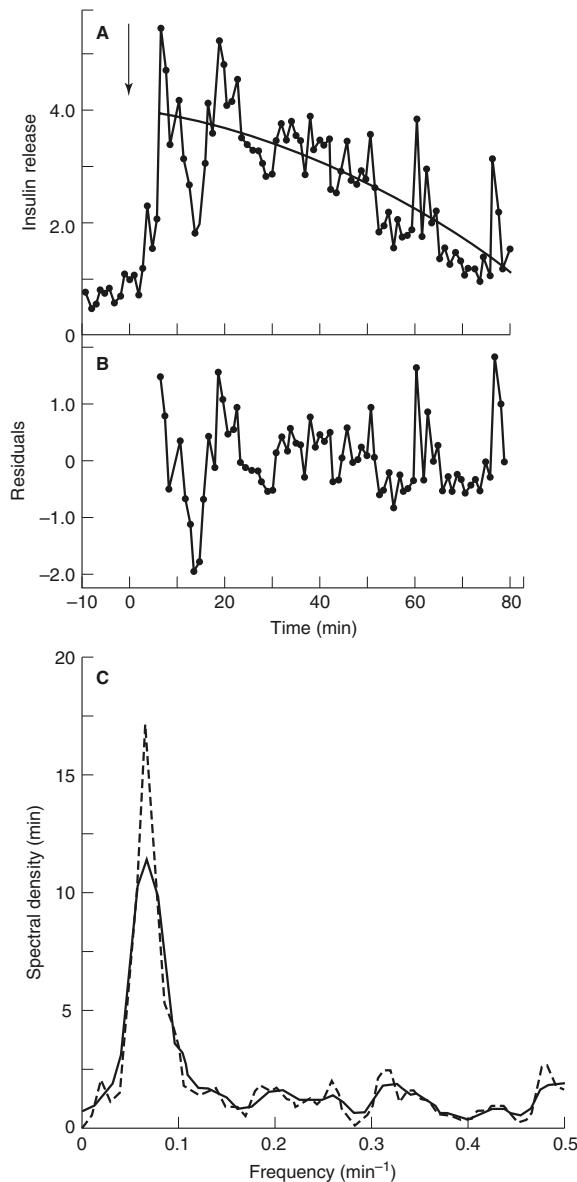
**Figure 16.19** Intermediate frequency oscillations of glucose, insulin, and glucagon in monkeys. (Goodner et al., 1977, Fig. 1A.)

blood, and blood glucose. It turns out that two insulin pools are necessary, which is, by itself, an interesting model prediction. There are two delays, one explicit and the other implicit. Although plasma insulin regulates glucose production, it does so only after a delay of about 36 minutes. This delay is incorporated explicitly as a three-stage linear filter. An additional implicit delay arises because glucose utilization is regulated by the remote (interstitial) insulin, and not by the plasma insulin, while glucose has a direct effect (through insulin secretion from the pancreas) on plasma insulin levels.

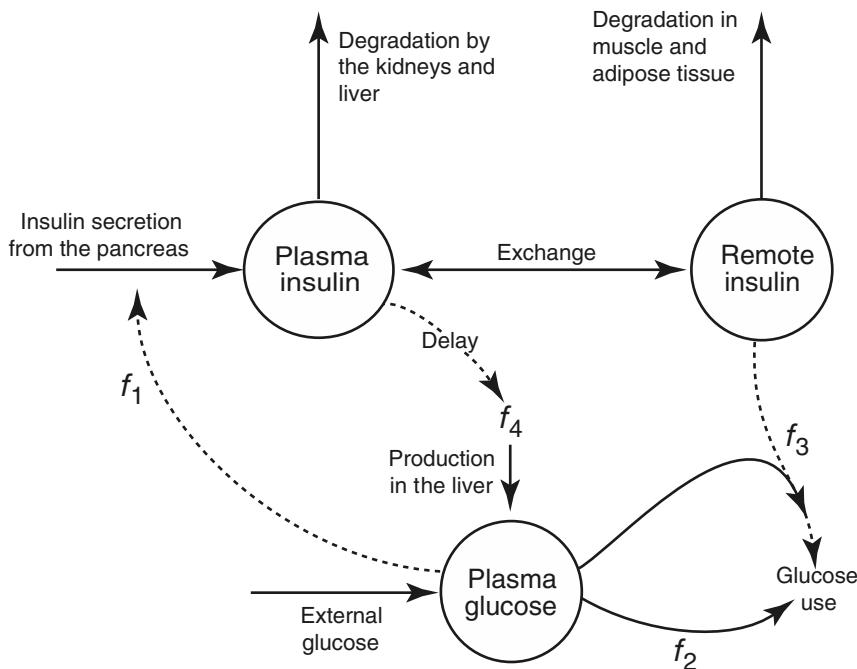
We let  $I_p$  and  $I_i$ , in units of mU, denote the amounts of plasma insulin and remote insulin, respectively, and we let  $G$ , in units of mg, denote the total amount of glucose. Then the model equations follow from the following assumptions:

1. Plasma insulin is produced at a rate  $f_1(G)$  that is dependent on plasma glucose. The insulin exchange with the remote pool is a linear function of the concentration difference between the pools  $I_p/V_p - I_i/V_i$  with rate constant  $E$ , where  $V_p$  is the plasma volume and  $V_i$  is the interstitial volume. In addition, there is linear removal of insulin from the plasma by the kidneys and the liver, with rate constant  $1/t_p$ . Thus,

$$\frac{dI_p}{dt} = f_1(G) - \left( \frac{I_p}{V_p} - \frac{I_i}{V_i} \right) E - \frac{I_p}{t_p}. \quad (16.59)$$



**Figure 16.20** A: Oscillations of insulin release in perfused islets. The data indicate a slow time scale decreasing trend (the smooth line) on which are superimposed faster time scale oscillations. B: When the slow decrease is removed from the data, the residuals exhibit oscillations around 0. C: Spectral analysis of the residuals shows a frequency peak at about  $0.07 \text{ min}^{-1}$ , corresponding to oscillations with a period of 14.5 minutes. The dashed and continuous lines correspond to two different filters used in the spectral analysis. (Bergstrom et al., 1989. Figs. 1A, C, and 3.)



**Figure 16.21** Schematic diagram of the model of ultradian insulin oscillations.

Note that this equation and the two that follow are written in terms of total amounts of insulin and glucose, rather than concentrations. Formulations using concentrations or total quantities are equivalent, provided that the blood and interstitial volumes remain constant, which we assume.

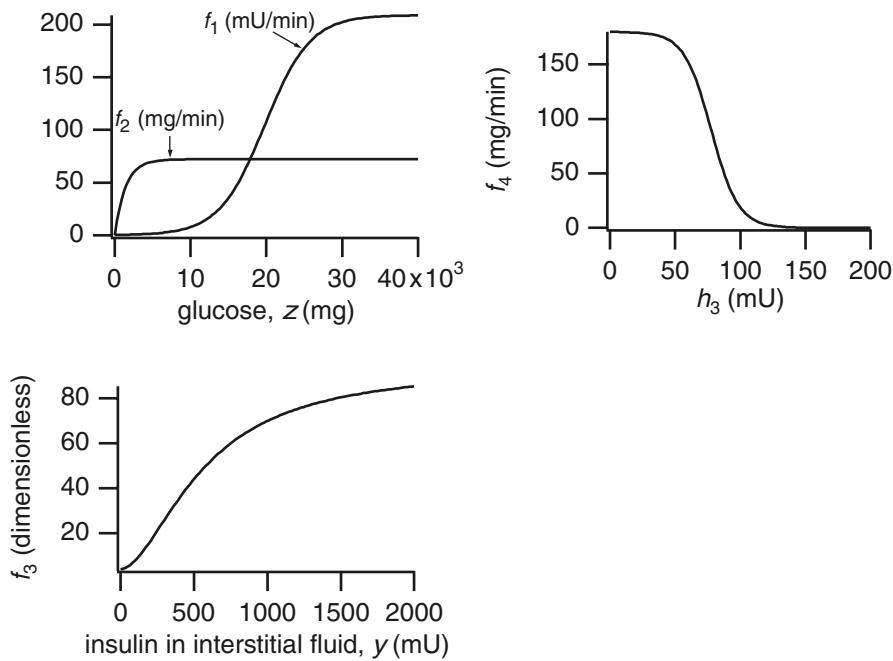
2. Remote insulin accumulates via exchange with the plasma pool and is degraded in muscle and adipose tissue at rate  $1/t_i$ :

$$\frac{dI_i}{dt} = \left( \frac{I_p}{V_p} - \frac{I_i}{V_i} \right) E - \frac{I_i}{t_i}. \quad (16.60)$$

3. Plasma glucose is produced at a rate  $f_4$  that is dependent on plasma insulin, but only indirectly, as  $f_4$  is a function of  $h_3$ , the output of a three-stage linear filter. The input to the filter is  $I_p$ , so glucose production is regulated by plasma insulin but delayed by the filter. There is input  $I_G(t)$  from the addition of glucose from outside the system, by eating a meal, say. Finally, glucose is removed from the plasma by two processes. Thus,

$$\frac{dG}{dt} = f_4(h_3) + I_G(t) - f_2(G) - f_3(I_i)G. \quad (16.61)$$

Glucose utilization is described by two terms:  $f_2(G)$  describes utilization of glucose that is independent of insulin, as occurs, for example, in the brain, and is



**Figure 16.22** Graphs of  $f_1, \dots, f_4$  in the model of ultradian insulin oscillations. The exact forms of these functions are not physiologically significant, but are chosen to give the correct qualitative behavior.

an increasing function that saturates quickly. The second removal term,  $f_3(I_i)G$ , describes insulin-dependent utilization of glucose.  $f_3$  is an increasing, sigmoidal function of  $I_i$ .

4. The three-stage linear filter satisfies the system of differential equations

$$t_d \frac{dh_1}{dt} = I_p - h_1, \quad (16.62)$$

$$t_d \frac{dh_2}{dt} = h_1 - h_2, \quad (16.63)$$

$$t_d \frac{dh_3}{dt} = h_2 - h_3. \quad (16.64)$$

The specific functional forms used for  $f_1, \dots, f_4$  are

$$f_1(G) = \frac{R_m}{1 + \exp(\frac{-G}{V_g C_1} + a_1)}, \quad (16.65)$$

$$f_2(G) = U_b \left[ 1 - \exp\left(\frac{-G}{C_2 V_g}\right) \right], \quad (16.66)$$

**Table 16.4** Parameter values for the model of ultradian insulin oscillations.

$V_p$	3 l	$C_2$	144 mg l <sup>-1</sup>
$V_i$	11 l	$C_3$	100 mg l <sup>-1</sup>
$V_g$	10 l	$C_4$	80 mU l <sup>-1</sup>
$E$	0.2 l min <sup>-1</sup>	$C_5$	26 mU l <sup>-1</sup>
$t_p$	6 min	$U_b$	72 mg min <sup>-1</sup>
$t_i$	100 min	$U_0$	4 mg min <sup>-1</sup>
$t_d$	12 min	$U_m$	94 mg min <sup>-1</sup>
$R_m$	209 mU min <sup>-1</sup>	$R_g$	180 mg min <sup>-1</sup>
$a_1$	6.67	$\alpha$	7.5
$C_1$	300 mg l <sup>-1</sup>	$\beta$	1.77

$$f_3(I_i) = \frac{1}{C_3 V_g} \left( U_0 + \frac{U_m - U_0}{1 + (\kappa I_i)^{-\beta}} \right), \quad (16.67)$$

$$f_4(h_3) = \frac{R_g}{1 + \exp[\alpha(\frac{h_3}{C_5 V_p} - 1)]}, \quad (16.68)$$

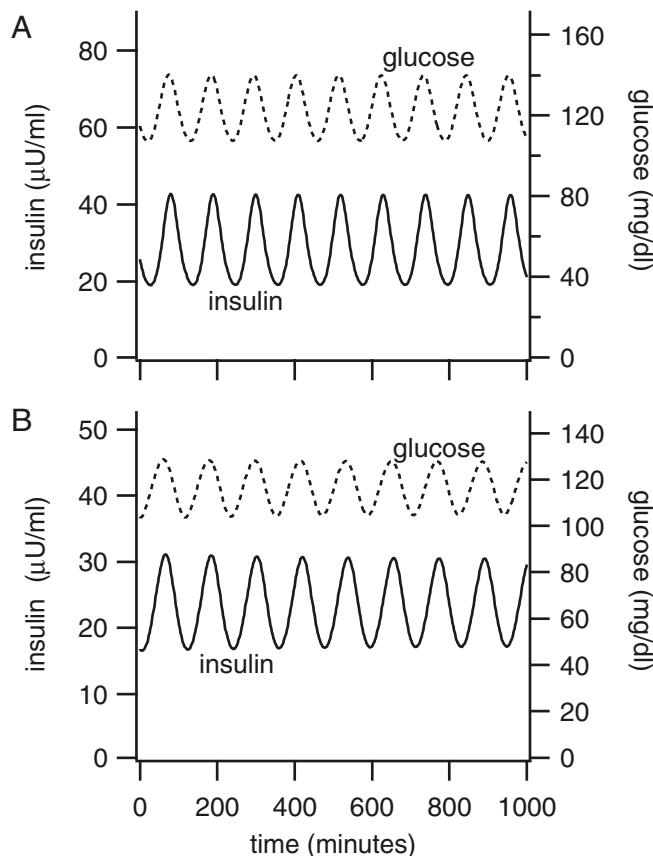
where  $\kappa = \frac{1}{C_4} \left( \frac{1}{V_i} + \frac{1}{E t_i} \right)$ , and these are graphed in Fig. 16.22. The parameter values are given in Table 16.4.

Numerical solution of the model equations shows that a constant infusion of glucose causes oscillations in insulin and glucose. As  $I$  increases, the oscillation period remains practically unchanged, but the amplitude increases (Fig. 16.23), in good qualitative agreement with experimental data. However, it is interesting that these oscillations disappear if the compartment of remote insulin is removed from the model.

This indicates that the division of insulin into two functionally separate stores could play an important role in the dynamic control of insulin levels. Another prediction of the model is that the oscillations are dependent on the delay in the regulation of glucose production. If the delay caused by the three-stage filter is either too large or too small, the oscillations disappear (Exercise 8).

### The Effect of Oscillatory Insulin Release

Sturis et al. (1995) found experimentally that an oscillatory insulin supply is more efficient at increasing glucose usage than is a constant insulin supply. The experiments were done by the addition of exogenous insulin, after somatostatin was used to suppress endogenous insulin production. Tolić et al. (2000) then used a simplified version of the above model of ultradian insulin oscillations to explain how such dependency on insulin oscillations could arise.

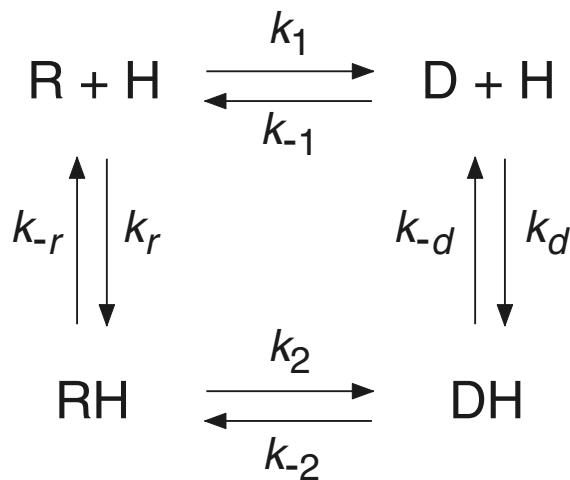


**Figure 16.23** Ultradian insulin oscillations in the model. The glucose infusion rates are A:  $I = 108 \text{ mg}/\text{min}$ , and B:  $I = 216 \text{ mg}/\text{min}$ . Note that insulin and glucose are expressed in units of concentration. An amount is easily converted to a concentration by dividing by the volume of the appropriate compartment.

## 16.4 Adaptation of Hormone Receptors

It remains to answer the question of why hormone secretion is pulsatile in the first place. As with many oscillatory physiological systems, there is no completely satisfactory answer to this question. However, one plausible hypothesis has been proposed by Li and Goldbeter (1989). Based on a model of a hormone receptor first constructed by Segel, Goldbeter, and their coworkers (Segel et al., 1986; Knox et al., 1986), Li and Goldbeter constructed a model of a hormone receptor that responds best to stimuli of a certain frequency, thus providing a possible reason for the importance of pulsatility.

Closely linked to this hypothesis is the phenomenon of receptor adaptation. Often, the response to a constant hormone stimulus is much smaller than the response to a



**Figure 16.24** Schematic diagram of a model of a hormone receptor.

time-varying stimulus. In the extreme case, the receptor responds to a time-varying input, but has no response to a steady input, regardless of the input magnitude, a phenomenon called *exact adaptation*. A number of examples of adaptation are described in this book; for example, the models of the IP<sub>3</sub> receptor discussed in Chapter 7 show adaptation in their response to a step-function increase in Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration; i.e., their response is an initial peak in the Ca<sup>2+</sup> release, followed by a decrease to a lower plateau as the receptor is slowly inactivated by Ca<sup>2+</sup>. Similarly, as described in Chapter 19 biochemical feedback in photoreceptors can result in a system that displays remarkably precise adaptational properties, as embodied in Weber's law. Because of the importance of adaptation in physiological systems, it is interesting to study how adaptation arises in a simple receptor model.

The key assumption is that the hormone receptor can exist in two different conformational states, R and D, and each conformational state can have hormone bound or unbound (Fig. 16.24). For simplicity we assume that the active form of the receptor has hormone bound to the receptor in state R. The addition of hormone to the receptor system causes a change in the proportion of each receptor state, but the total receptor concentration is fixed.

Letting  $r, x, y, d$  denote  $[R]/R_T$ ,  $[RH]/R_T$ ,  $[DH]/R_T$  and  $[D]/R_T$  respectively, where  $R_T$  is the total receptor concentration, we find the following equations for the receptor system:

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = -[k_1 + k_r H(t)]r + k_{-r}x + k_{-1}d, \quad (16.69)$$

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = k_r H(t)r - (k_2 + k_{-r})x + k_{-2}y, \quad (16.70)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = k_2x - (k_{-2} + k_{-d})y + k_dH(t)d. \quad (16.71)$$

Because of the conservation condition  $r+x+y+d = 1$  there are only three independent variables, so only three equations are needed. The function  $H(t)$  denotes the hormone concentration as a function of time, and is assumed to be known.

Each state of the receptor is assumed to have an intrinsic activity, and the total activity of the receptor is given by the sum over all the receptor states, weighted by the intrinsic activity of the state. Thus, the total activity  $A$  of the receptor is

$$A = a_1r + a_2x + a_3y + a_4d, \quad (16.72)$$

for some constants  $a_1, \dots, a_4$ .

For simplicity, we assume that the binding of the ligand is essentially instantaneous, and thus

$$x = \frac{H(t)r}{K_r}, \quad (16.73)$$

$$y = \frac{H(t)d}{K_d}, \quad (16.74)$$

where  $K_r = k_{-r}/k_r$  and  $K_d = k_{-d}/k_d$ . Using a standard quasi-equilibrium reduction (see Chapters 1 and 2), and assuming that  $H(t)$  is slowly varying on the time scale of receptor binding, we find the single differential equation for the receptor,

$$\left(1 + \frac{H}{K_r}\right) \frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{k_{-1}K_d + k_{-2}H}{K_d + H} \left(1 - r\left(\frac{K_d + H}{K_d K_1} + \frac{K_r + H}{K_r}\right)\right), \quad (16.75)$$

where  $K_1 = k_{-1}/k_1$ , and  $k_2 = \frac{k_{-2}K_r}{K_1 K_d}$  in order to satisfy detailed balance. The steady states are given by

$$r_0 = \frac{1}{\frac{K_d + H}{K_1 K_d} + \frac{K_r + H}{K_r}}, \quad (16.76)$$

$$x_0 = \frac{Hr_0}{K_r}, \quad (16.77)$$

$$y_0 = \frac{H\left(1 - \frac{K_r + H}{K_r}r_0\right)}{K_d + H}. \quad (16.78)$$

If  $a_4 = 0$ , so that the state  $d$  is completely inactive, the steady-state activity of the receptor is

$$\begin{aligned} A &= a_1r_0 + a_2x_0 + a_3y_0 \\ &= \frac{a_1K_1K_dK_r + H(a_2K_1K_d + a_3K_r)}{K_rK_d(K_1 + 1) + H(K_r + K_1K_d)}. \end{aligned} \quad (16.79)$$

In general, this is a saturating curve as a function of  $H$ . However, exact adaptation occurs if  $A$  is independent of  $H$ , in which case it must be that

$$A = A|_{H=0} = \lim_{H \rightarrow \infty} A, \quad (16.80)$$

so that

$$\frac{K_1 a_1}{1 + K_1} = \frac{a_3 K_r + K_1 K_d a_2}{K_r + K_1 K_d}. \quad (16.81)$$

Note that since the right-hand side of (16.81) is the weighted average of  $a_2$  and  $a_3$ , exact adaptation is possible only when  $a_1$  is greater than the smaller of  $a_2$  and  $a_3$  (more precisely when  $\frac{K_1 a_1}{1 + K_1}$  lies between  $a_2$  and  $a_3$ ). In general, one expects  $a_2$  to be larger than  $a_3$  (as the RH form of the receptor has a greater intrinsic activity than its inactivated form DH), and thus  $a_1 > a_3$  is required for exact adaptation. In other words, the intrinsic activity of the unbound receptor (R form) must be higher than the intrinsic activity of the inactivated receptor, even when the hormone is bound.

In response to a step increase in hormone concentration, the receptor state is first quickly converted to the RH form, which has a high activity, and thus the overall activity initially increases. However, over a longer time period, the RH form gradually converts to the DH form, which has a lower activity than the R (unbound) form. Thus, receptor inactivation decreases the activity back to the basal level. Thus, exact adaptation arises from a process of fast activation and slow inactivation, a mechanism that has appeared in many forms throughout this book.

## 16.5 EXERCISES

---

1. By taking partial derivatives of  $f(\xi, \xi_i)$  with respect to  $\xi_i$  confirm that the model (16.25), when linearized about  $P_M$ , takes the form given in (16.33)–(16.35). Calculate the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix  $A$ .
2. This exercise works through the derivation of a Lyapunov function for the Lacker model (Akin and Lacker, 1984). Define  $\delta(\xi) = \xi^2$ ,  $\rho(\xi) = \xi^{-2} - 1$ , and  $\phi(p_i) = p_i(M_1 + M_2 - M_1 M_2 p_i)$ , where  $p_i = \xi_i/\xi$ . Show that

$$\frac{d\xi_i}{dt} = \delta(\xi)\xi_i[\rho(\xi) + \phi(p_i)], \quad (16.82)$$

$$\frac{d\xi}{dt} = \delta(\xi)\xi[\rho(\xi) + \bar{\phi}], \quad (16.83)$$

$$\frac{dp_i}{dt} = \delta(\xi)p_i[\phi(p_i) - \bar{\phi}], \quad (16.84)$$

where

$$\bar{\phi} = \sum_{i=1}^n p_i \phi(p_i). \quad (16.85)$$

Define a new time scale  $\tau$  by

$$\frac{d\tau}{dt} = \delta(\xi), \quad (16.86)$$

and show that

$$\frac{dp_i}{d\tau} = p_i[\phi(p_i) - \bar{\phi}]. \quad (16.87)$$

Finally, show that

$$V(p_1, \dots, p_n) = \sum_{i=1}^n \int_0^{p_i} \phi(s) ds \quad (16.88)$$

is a Lyapunov function for the model by showing that

$$\frac{dV}{d\tau} = \sum_{i=1}^n p_i [\xi(p_i) - \bar{\phi}]^2 \geq 0. \quad (16.89)$$

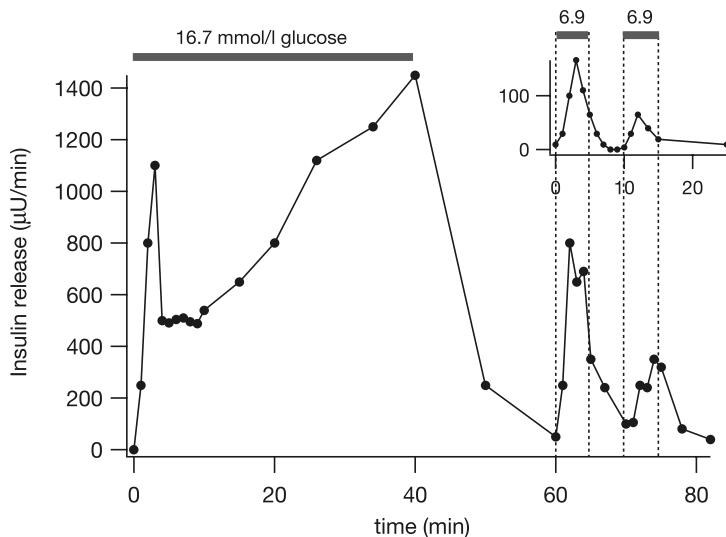
Hint: Derive and use the fact that  $\sum p_i (\xi(p_i) - \bar{\phi}) = 0$ .

3. Since  $\gamma_1 \equiv 1$ , (16.44)–(16.46) provide no information about  $\xi_1$ . Use the original variables to show that  $\bar{\xi}_1(\tau) = \xi(t(\tau))$  satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d\tau} \bar{\xi}_1^2 = 1 - \bar{\xi}_1^2 (\Gamma - M_1)(\Gamma - M_2). \quad (16.90)$$

Find  $t$  as a function of  $\tau$ . Describe how the original variables  $\xi_i(t)$  may be obtained once the  $\gamma_i(\tau)$  have been obtained by numerical solution of (16.44)–(16.46). Why is it preferable to numerically simulate the model in the transformed variables  $\gamma_i$  rather than the original variables  $\xi_i$ ?

4. For the model of a hormone receptor assuming fast ligand binding (Section 16.4), calculate the response to a step function, and then to a stimulus of the form  $H(t) = 1$  for  $0 < t < t_0$ ,  $H(t) = 0$  otherwise (call this stimulus a step pulse). Calculate the response to a series of step pulses, and calculate the width of the pulse and the time between pulses that gives the greatest average activity. Li and Goldbeter (1989) give the details.
5. (From Loeb and Strickland, 1987.) Many cells respond maximally to a hormone concentration that is much too low to saturate the hormone receptors. This can be explained by assuming that the response is dependent on a secondary mediator. Suppose that the hormone, H, combines reversibly with its receptor,  $R^0$ , to form the complex  $HR^0$ . Suppose that the secondary mediator M is formed at a rate proportional to  $[HR^0]$  and is degraded with linear kinetics. Finally, suppose that M combines reversibly with its own receptor, R, to form MR, and that the cellular response is linearly proportional to  $[MR]$ . What is the fractional receptor occupancy as a function of [H]? Show that the fractional response (as a function of [H]) has the same shape as the fractional receptor occupancy curve, shifted to the left by a constant factor (when plotted against  $\log[H]$ ). Give a biological interpretation.
6. Consider the model of the activity of the LHRH neurons described by (16.4)–(16.6). Let  $a$  be a constant, instead of a function of time.
- How does the steady state depend on  $a$ ? What are the different possibilities?
  - Show that, depending on the values of the other parameters, an increase in  $a$  can lead either to an increase or a decrease in excitability.
  - Suppose that  $a$  is suddenly increased, held constant for a short period of time, and then returned to zero. Plot the solution in the phase plane. What happens as the period of time for which  $a$  is raised becomes shorter?
  - If  $a(t)$  is the delta function, sketch the solution in the phase plane.
7. Find the response of the three-stage linear filter (16.62)–(16.64) to the sinusoidal input  $I_p = I_0 + I_1 \sin(\omega t)$ .
8. Consider the model of insulin oscillations described in Section 16.3.2.
- Plot the steady states and periodic solutions of the model as, a function of  $I$ , and as a function of  $t_d$ . Show that, as  $t_d$  gets large or small, the oscillations disappear.



**Figure 16.25** The response to glucose of the rate of insulin release in the perfused rat pancreas. The inset at the top right show the response to two glucose steps (each of size 6.9 mmol/l), while directly below the inset is shown the response to two identical glucose steps, but after the pancreas has been primed by the prior addition of 16.7 mmol/l glucose for 40 minutes (Nesher and Cerasi, 2002). We thank Professor Erol Cerasi for providing the original data for this figure.

- (b) How can the model be modified to omit the remote insulin compartment? How does this change the oscillatory behavior in the model? (Hint: Combine both insulin compartments into a single compartment, with all the insulin inputs and outputs going to and from this single compartment, and no exchange term.) How is this approach different from assuming that the exchange between the plasma and remote insulin compartments is fast?
- 9. In response to a pulse of glucose, the rate of insulin release shows a biphasic response, as shown in Fig. 16.25. First, consider the responses shown in the inset at the top right. These are the responses to two identical glucose steps, each of magnitude 6.9 mmol/l, and each 5 minutes long. Clearly, the response during each glucose step first rises and then decays, while, in addition, the response to the second step is smaller than to the first.

Next, consider the curve in the main part of the figure. Initially, a step of 16.7 mmol/l glucose was added for 40 minutes; during this 40 minutes the rate of insulin release shows a clear triphasic behavior, first rising, then falling, then rising again. After this “priming” by glucose, the same two steps as in the inset were applied. Now, the response to these two steps is greatly enhanced, although, as in the inset, the response to the second step is smaller.

Clearly, there are a number of dynamic processes controlling the rate of insulin release, each operating on a different time scale. For instance, addition of glucose clearly first stimulates insulin release, then inhibits then, then stimulates it again. Furthermore, the data in the inset show that addition of glucose initiates an inhibiting mechanism that is still in operation 5 minutes after cessation of the initial stimulus.

Construct a mathematical model of this behavior. Do not worry about relating your model to specific known physiological mechanisms; construct a system of equations that exhibits approximately the correct behavior. Although there are many possible answers, your model will probably have a number of different variables, one for each of the dynamic processes discussed above and each with a different time constant, with the rate of insulin release modeled as a product of these variables.

---

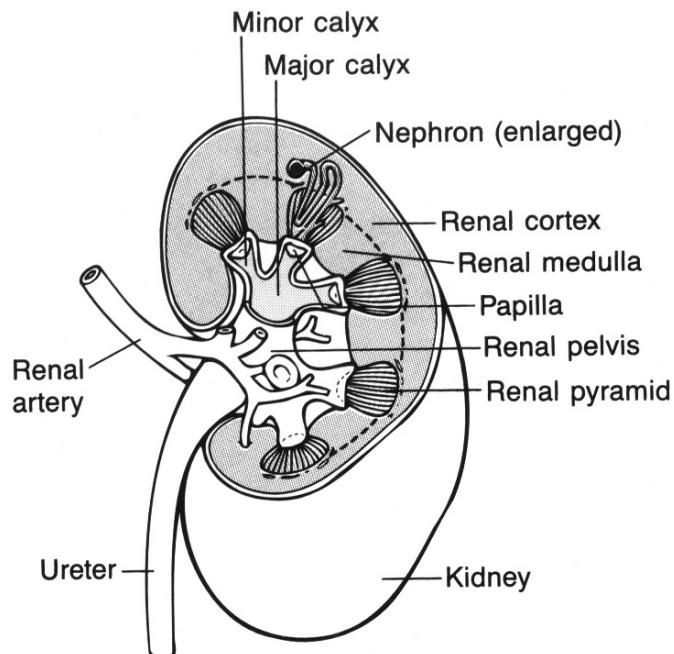
# **Renal Physiology**

The kidneys perform two major functions. First, they excrete most of the end products of bodily metabolism, and second, they control the concentrations of most of the constituents of the body fluids. The main goal of this chapter is to gain some understanding of the processes by which the urine is formed and waste products removed from the bloodstream. The control of the constituents of the body fluids is discussed only secondarily.

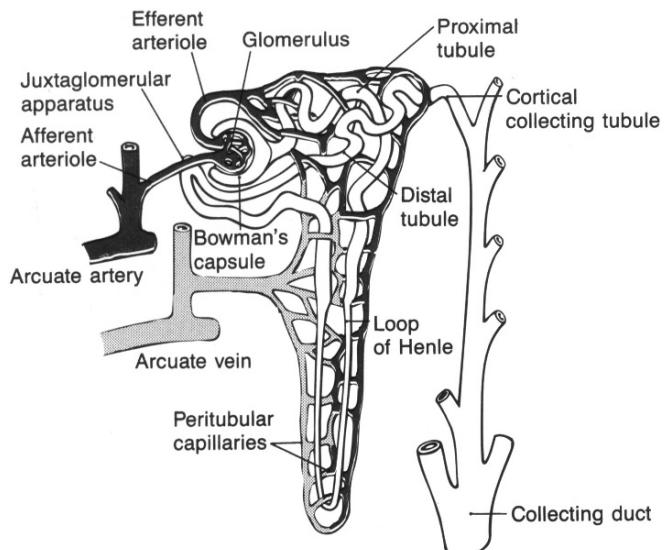
The primary operating unit of the kidney is called a *nephron*, of which there are about a million in each kidney (Figs. 17.1 and 17.2). Each nephron is capable of forming urine by itself. The entrance of blood into the nephron is by the *afferent arteriole*, located in the renal cortex, and the tubules of the nephron and the associated peritubular capillaries extend deep into the renal medulla. The principal functional units of the nephron are the *glomerulus*, through which fluid is filtered from the blood; the *juxtaglomerular apparatus*, by which glomerular flow is controlled; and the *long tubule*, in which the filtered fluid is converted into urine.

## **17.1 The Glomerulus**

The first stage of urine formation is the production of a filtrate of the blood plasma. The glomerulus, the primary filter, is a network of up to 50 parallel branching and anastomosing (rejoining) capillaries covered by epithelial cells and encased by *Bowman's capsule*. Blood enters the glomerulus by way of the afferent arteriole and leaves through the *efferent arteriole*. Pressure of the blood in the glomerulus makes the fluid filter into Bowman's capsule, carrying with the filtrate all the dissolved substances of small molecular weight. The glomerular membrane is almost completely impermeable



**Figure 17.1** The kidney. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 26-2, p. 317.)



**Figure 17.2** The nephron. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 26-3, p. 318.)

to all plasma proteins, the smallest of which is albumin (molecular weight 69,000). As a result, the glomerular filtrate is identical to plasma except that it contains no significant amount of protein.

The quantity of filtrate formed each minute is called the *glomerular filtration rate*, and in a normal person averages about 125 ml/min. The filtration fraction is the fraction of renal plasma flow that becomes glomerular filtrate and is typically about 20 percent. Over 99 percent of the filtrate is reabsorbed in the tubules, with the remaining small portion passing into the urine.

There are three pressures that affect the rate of glomerular filtration. These are the pressure inside the glomerular capillaries that promote filtration, the pressure inside Bowman's capsule that opposes filtration, and the colloidal osmotic pressure (Section 2.7) of the plasma proteins inside the capillaries that opposes filtration.

A mathematical model of the glomerular filter can be described simply as follows. We assume that the glomerular capillaries comprise a one-dimensional tube with flow  $q_1$  and that the surrounding Bowman's capsule is also effectively a one-dimensional tube with flow  $q_2$  (Fig. 17.3). Since the flow across the glomerular capillaries is proportional to the pressure difference across the capillary wall, at steady state the rate of change of the flow in the capillary is

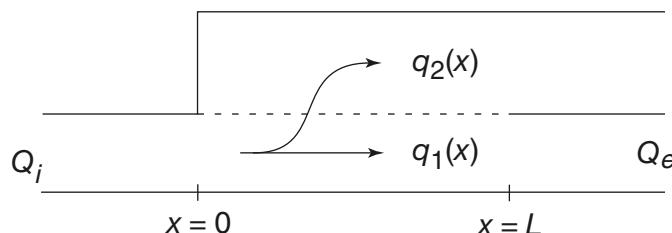
$$\frac{dq_1}{dx} = K_f(P_2 - P_1 + \pi_c), \quad (17.1)$$

where  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are the hydrostatic fluid pressures in tubes 1 and 2, respectively,  $\pi_c$  is the osmotic pressure of suspended proteins and formed elements of blood, and  $K_f$  is the capillary filtration rate. The osmotic pressure of the suspended proteins is given by

$$\pi_c = RTc, \quad (17.2)$$

where  $c$ , the concentration expressed in moles per liter, is a function of  $x$ , since the suspension becomes more concentrated as it moves through the glomerulus. Since the large proteins bypass the filter, we have the conservation equation

$$c_i Q_i = c q_1, \quad (17.3)$$



**Figure 17.3** Schematic diagram of the glomerular filtration.

where  $c_i$  is the input concentration and  $Q_i$  is the input flux. It follows that

$$\pi_c = \pi_i \frac{Q_i}{q_1}, \quad (17.4)$$

where  $\pi_i = RTc_i$  is the input osmotic pressure. Since the hydrostatic pressure drop in the glomerulus is small compared to the pressure drop in the efferent and afferent arterioles, we take  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  to be constants.

Equation (17.1) along with (17.4) gives a first-order differential equation for  $q_1$ , which is easily solved. Setting  $q_1(L) = Q_e$  we find that

$$\frac{Q_e}{Q_i} + \alpha \ln \left( \frac{\frac{Q_e}{Q_i} - \alpha}{1 - \alpha} \right) = 1 - K_f L \frac{\pi_i}{\alpha Q_i}, \quad (17.5)$$

where  $Q_e$  is the efflux through the efferent arterioles,  $L$  is the length of the filter, and  $\alpha = \pi_i/(P_1 - P_2)$ .

Finally, we assume that the pressures and flow rates are controlled by the input and output arterioles, via

$$P_a - P_1 = R_a Q_i, \quad (17.6)$$

$$P_1 - P_e = R_e Q_e, \quad (17.7)$$

and that the flow out of the glomerulus into the proximal tubule is governed by

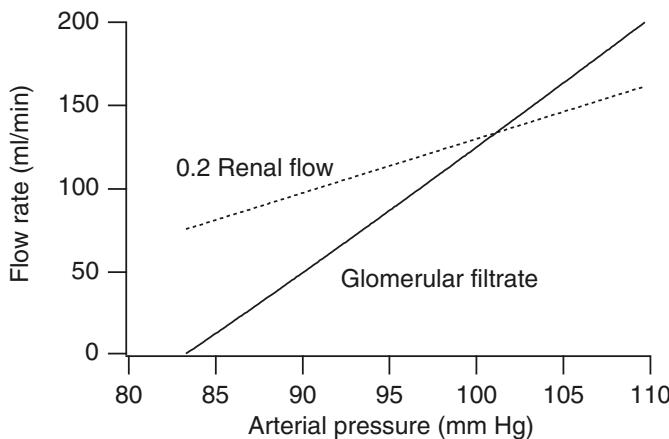
$$P_2 - P_d = R_d (Q_i - Q_e), \quad (17.8)$$

where  $P_a$ ,  $P_e$ , and  $P_d$  are the afferent arteriole, efferent arteriole, and descending tubule pressures, respectively, and  $R_a$ ,  $R_e$ , and  $R_d$  are the resistances of the afferent and efferent arterioles and proximal tubule, respectively. Typical values are  $P_1 = 60$ ,  $P_2 = 18$ ,  $P_a = 100$ ,  $P_e = 18$ ,  $P_d = 14 - 18$ ,  $\pi_i = 25$  mm Hg, with  $Q_i = 650$ ,  $Q_d = Q_i - Q_e = 125$  ml/min.

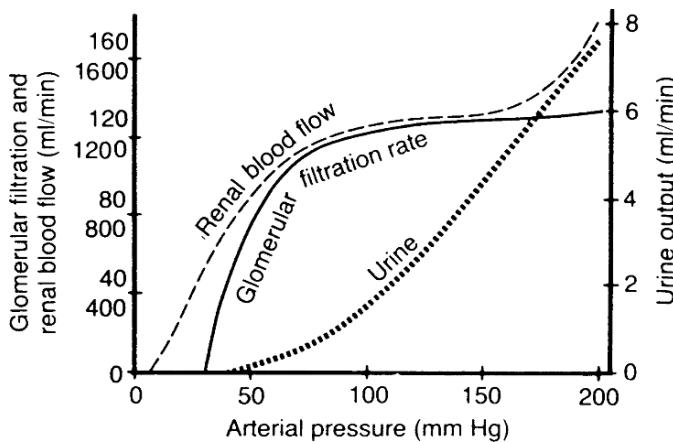
The flow rates and pressures vary as functions of the arterial pressure. To understand something of this variation, in Fig. 17.4 is shown the renal blood flow rate  $Q_i$  and the glomerular filtration flow rate as functions of the arterial pressure. It is no surprise that both of these are increasing functions of arterial pressure  $P_a$ .

The strategy for numerically computing this curve is as follows: with resistances  $R_a$  and  $R_e$  and pressures  $P_e$ ,  $P_d$ , and  $\pi_i$  specified and fixed at typical levels, we pick a value for glomerular filtrate  $Q_d = Q_i - Q_e$ . For this value, we solve (17.5) (using a simple bisection algorithm) to find both  $Q_i$  and  $Q_e$ . From these, the corresponding pressures  $P_a$ ,  $P_1$ , and  $P_2$  are determined from (17.6) and (17.7), and plotted.

For this model, the filtration rate varies substantially as a function of arterial pressure. However, in reality (according to data shown in Fig. 17.5), the glomerular filtration rate remains relatively constant even when the arterial pressure varies between 75 to 160 mm Hg, suggesting that there is some autoregulation of the flow rate.



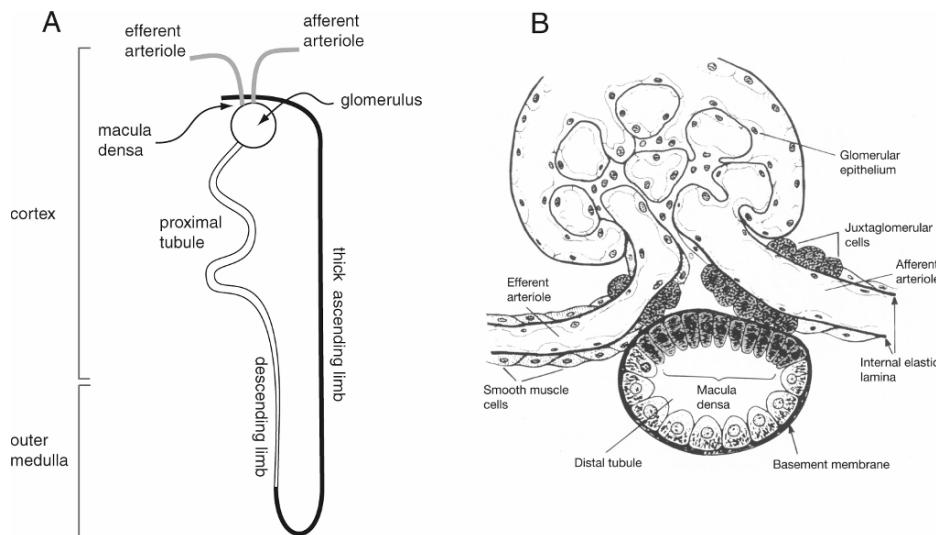
**Figure 17.4** Unregulated glomerular filtration and renal blood flow plotted as functions of arterial pressure, with  $P_d = 18$ ,  $P_e = 0$  mm Hg.



**Figure 17.5** Autoregulation of renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate but lack of autoregulation of urine flow during changes in renal arterial pressure. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 26-13, p. 327.)

### 17.1.1 Autoregulation and Tubuloglomerular Oscillations

The need for autoregulation of the glomerular filtration rate is apparent. If the flow rate of filtrate is too slow, then we expect reabsorption to be too high, and the kidney fails to eliminate necessary waste products. On the other hand, at too high a flow rate, the tubules are unable to reabsorb those substances that need to be preserved and not eliminated, so that valuable substances are lost into the urine.

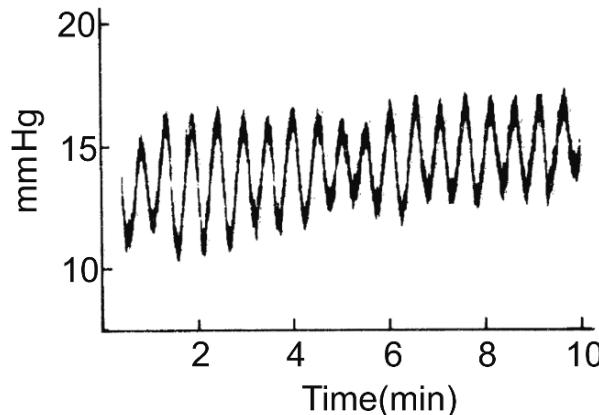


**Figure 17.6** A: Schematic diagram of a short nephron, showing how the thick ascending limb ascends to the region of the glomerulus, enabling autoregulation of the glomerular filtration rate. Adapted from Pitman et al. (2004), Fig. 1. B: Structure of the juxtaglomerular apparatus. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 26-14, p. 328.)

The glomerulus controls the rate of filtration by detecting the concentration of NaCl at the top of the thick ascending limb, most probably by detecting the chloride concentration. After its descent into the renal medulla, the loop of Henle returns to the proximity of the afferent and efferent arterioles at the glomerulus (Fig. 17.6A). The *juxtaglomerular complex* consists of *macula densa* cells in the distal tubule and *juxtaglomerular cells* in the walls of the afferent and efferent arterioles (as depicted in Fig. 17.6B).

As described in Section 17.2, the principal function of the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle is the pumping of Na<sup>+</sup> out of the tubule into the interstitial space; it is almost entirely impermeable to water. Thus, the slower the rate of flow through the tubule, the greater the amount of Na<sup>+</sup> that can be transported out of the thick ascending limb, with Cl<sup>-</sup> following passively. A low flow rate causes excessive reabsorption of Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup> ions, resulting in too large a decrease of these ionic concentrations at the end of the loop. Conversely, a high flow rate results in a higher concentration of Na<sup>+</sup> and Cl<sup>-</sup> at the macula densa.

The macula densa cells respond to decreases of NaCl concentration (by a mechanism not completely understood), by releasing a vasodilator that decreases the resistance of the afferent arterioles. Simultaneously, the juxtaglomerular cells release renin, an enzyme that enables the formation of angiotensin II, which constricts the efferent arterioles. The simultaneous effect of these is to increase the flow of filtrate through the glomerulus. Conversely, an increase in the concentration of NaCl



**Figure 17.7** Spontaneous oscillations in proximal tubule pressure in a Sprague-Dawley rat. From Holstein-Rathlou and Leyssac, 1987, Fig. 5.

at the macula densa has the effect of decreasing the resistance of the afferent arteriole, and increasing the resistance of the efferent arteriole, thus decreasing the rate of filtration and the flow along the tubule.

It comes as no surprise that a control system such as this can result in oscillations in the rate of fluid flow along the loop of Henle (Fig. 17.7). These oscillations were first described in halothane-anesthetized Sprague-Dawley rats by Leyssac and Baumbach (1983), and have since been studied in detail by both modelers and experimentalists (Holstein-Rathlou and Leyssac, 1987; Holstein-Rathlou and Marsh, 1989, 1990, 1994; Holstein-Rathlou et al., 1991; Layton et al., 1991, 1995b, 1997, 2000; Pitman et al., 2004). A useful recent review is that of Just (2006).

A simple model of tubuloglomerular oscillations (Layton et al., 1991) focuses on the role of the chloride concentration in the thick ascending limb. We model the thick ascending limb as a one-dimensional tube, through which  $\text{Cl}^-$  is transported by fluid flow, while being removed actively (of course, it is the  $\text{Na}^+$  that is removed actively, but since  $\text{Cl}^-$  follows passively, the effect is the same).

If we let  $y = 0$  and  $y = L$  denote, respectively, the beginning and end of the thick ascending limb of length  $L$ , and let  $C(y, \tau)$  denote the  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration at  $y$  at time  $\tau$ , then conservation of  $\text{Cl}^-$  gives

$$\frac{\partial C}{\partial \tau} + \phi \frac{\partial C}{\partial y} = -R(C), \quad (17.9)$$

where  $R(C)$  denotes the rate of removal of  $\text{Cl}^-$  from the tube via the pumping of  $\text{Na}^+$ , and  $\phi$  denotes the velocity of fluid flow along the tube. For our simple model we assume that  $\text{Cl}^-$  is removed by a first-order process,

$$R(C) = -r_c C. \quad (17.10)$$

When the  $\text{NaCl}$  concentration at the macula densa is changed, the resistance of the afferent arteriole changes only after a time delay. Thus,  $\phi$  is a function of the  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration at the macula densa at some previous time, i.e., a function of  $C(L, \tau - \bar{\tau})$ .

The functional form of  $\phi$  has been established by experimental studies to be of the form

$$\phi(C) = F_{\text{op}} + \Delta F \tanh(\alpha(\bar{C} - C)). \quad (17.11)$$

Notice that  $\phi$  is a decreasing function of  $C$ . The constant  $\bar{C}$  is the  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration for which  $\phi$  has an inflection point.

Finally, we assume that the input  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration is known,  $C(0, t) = C_0$ .

We now rescale  $y$ ,  $\tau$ , and  $C$ , setting  $y = Lx$ ,  $\tau = \frac{L}{F_{\text{op}}}t$ ,  $\bar{\tau} = \frac{L}{F_{\text{op}}}\bar{t}$ ,  $C = C_0c$ ,  $K_1 = \Delta F/F_{\text{op}}$ , and  $K_2 = C_0$ , so that the conservation law becomes the delayed partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} + F(c(1, t - \bar{\tau})) \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} = -\mu c, \quad (17.12)$$

where

$$F(c) = 1 + K_1 \tanh(K_2(\bar{c} - c)), \quad (17.13)$$

and  $\mu = r_c \frac{L}{F_{\text{op}}}$ , subject to the boundary condition,  $c(0, t) = 1$ .

The first step in our analysis is to examine the steady-state solution. The steady-state solution,  $s(x)$ , is the solution of

$$F(s(1)) \frac{\partial s}{\partial x} = -\mu s, \quad (17.14)$$

and so

$$s(x) = s(0)e^{-kx}, \quad (17.15)$$

where  $k = \frac{\mu}{F(s(1))}$ . Since  $s(0) = 1$ , and  $s(1) = e^{-k}$ , for consistency it must be that

$$kF(e^{-k}) = \mu. \quad (17.16)$$

Since  $F$  is a decreasing function of its argument, there is a unique value of  $k$  for which (17.16) holds, and hence a unique steady-state solution.

Layton et al. made the additional assumption that in normal, steady, operating conditions,  $c(1, t) = \bar{c}$  and they chose the  $\text{Cl}^-$  uptake rate to be  $\mu = -\ln \bar{c} = k$ . In order to allow for abnormal operating conditions, we do not make this additional assumption here.

To understand something about this control mechanism, we calculate the sensitivity of  $s(1)$  to changes in  $s(0)$ . The sensitivity  $\sigma$  is defined as

$$\sigma = \frac{s(0)}{s(1)} \frac{ds(1)}{ds(0)}. \quad (17.17)$$

Since

$$s(1) \exp\left(\frac{\mu}{F(s(1))}\right) = s(0), \quad (17.18)$$

it follows (after implicit differentiation) that

$$\sigma = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{k^2}{\mu} e^{-k} F'(e^{-k})} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{k}{\mu} \gamma}, \quad (17.19)$$

where  $\gamma = -ke^{-k}F'(e^{-k})$ . Since,  $F'(e^{-k}) < 0$ , this implies that  $s(1)$  becomes less sensitive to changes in input  $s(0)$  as  $F'(s(1))$  decreases (i.e., as  $F$  becomes steeper). Notice that with no control,  $F'(c) = 0$ , so that  $\sigma = 1$ .

The sensitivity is also changed by changes in the  $\text{Cl}^-$  removal rate. Sensitivity is smallest (and  $\gamma$  is largest) when  $\mu = \ln \bar{c}$ . (This is an approximate statement because the derivative of  $\gamma$  with respect to  $\mu$  is nearly, but not exactly, zero at  $\mu = \ln \bar{c}$ .) However, as  $\mu$  deviates from this optimal value, the steady solution  $s(1)$  deviates from  $\bar{c}$ , leading to a flatter feedback response. With  $F'$  smaller in magnitude, so also is  $\gamma$ .

Oscillations in the macula densa  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration, and thus in the other variables such as flow rate and glomerular pressure, can occur if the steady-state solution becomes unstable via a Hopf bifurcation. This is not the only possible instability mechanism, but it is a reasonable one to look for. The stability of  $s(x)$  can be determined by writing  $c(x, t) = s(x) + \epsilon u(x, t)$  and then expanding (17.12) to first order in  $\epsilon$ . This gives

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + F(e^{-k}) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = -\mu u + kF'(e^{-k})e^{-kx}u(1, t - \bar{t}), \quad (17.20)$$

with the boundary condition  $u(0, t) = 0$ .

We now look for solutions for  $u$  of the form  $u(x, t) = f(x)e^{\lambda t}$ , where  $f(0) = 0$ . Substituting this into (17.20) gives

$$\frac{\mu}{k}f'(x) = -(\mu + \lambda)f(x) + kF'(e^{-k})e^{-kx}f(1)e^{-\lambda\bar{t}}, \quad (17.21)$$

which can be solved to give

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\lambda}kF'(e^{-k})f(1)e^{-\lambda\bar{t}} \left[ e^{-kx} - e^{-\frac{k}{\mu}(\mu+\lambda)x} \right]. \quad (17.22)$$

For consistency, it must be that

$$f(1) = \frac{1}{\lambda}kF'(e^{-k})f(1)e^{-\lambda\bar{t}} \left[ e^{-k} - e^{-\frac{k}{\mu}(\mu+\lambda)} \right], \quad (17.23)$$

from which it follows that  $\lambda$  must be a root of

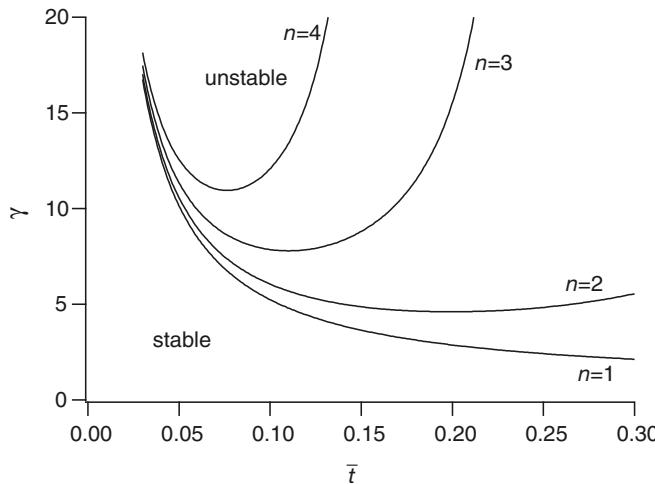
$$\lambda = \gamma e^{-\lambda\bar{t}} \left( e^{-\frac{k}{\mu}\lambda} - 1 \right) = -2\gamma e^{-\lambda(\bar{t} + \frac{k}{2\mu})} \sinh \left( \frac{k\lambda}{2\mu} \right), \quad (17.24)$$

where  $\gamma = -kF'(e^{-k})e^{-k}$ . Note that  $\gamma > 0$  is related to the sensitivity of the feedback regulation in (17.19).

The only parameter values for which a Hopf bifurcation can occur are those for which  $\lambda$  has zero real part and nonzero imaginary part. If  $\lambda$  has zero real part we can take  $\lambda = i\omega$ . Substituting  $\lambda = i\omega$  into (17.24) and equating real and imaginary parts gives the two equations

$$0 = 2\gamma \sin \left( \omega \left( \bar{t} + \frac{k}{2\mu} \right) \right) \sin \left( \frac{k\omega}{2\mu} \right), \quad (17.25)$$

$$\omega = -2\gamma \cos \left( \omega \left( \bar{t} + \frac{k}{2\mu} \right) \right) \sin \left( \frac{k\omega}{2\mu} \right). \quad (17.26)$$



**Figure 17.8** Plot of (17.28) for  $n = 1, 2, 3, 4$ . The steady-state solution is stable below the  $n = 1$  curve, and unstable above it.

The only nontrivial solution of the first of these has

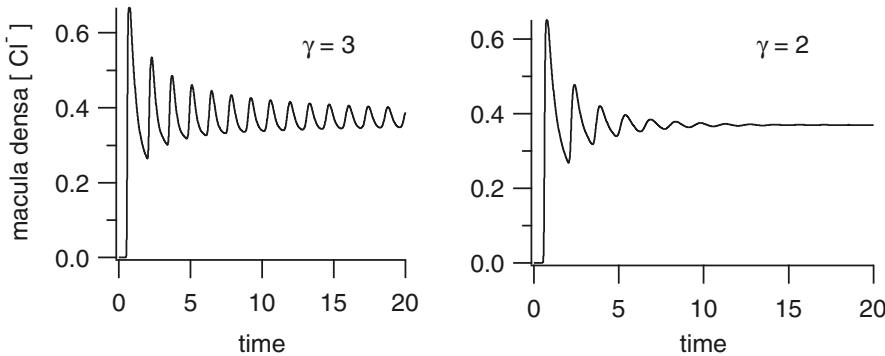
$$\omega = \frac{n\pi}{\bar{t} + \frac{k}{2\mu}}, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots . \quad (17.27)$$

Thus, the curves in parameter space at which there are Hopf bifurcations are given by

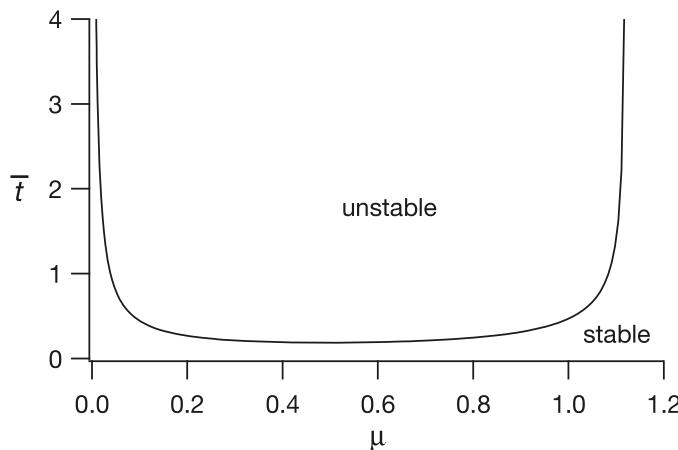
$$\gamma = (-1)^{n+1} \frac{\omega}{2 \sin(\frac{k\omega}{2\mu})}, \quad \omega = \frac{n\pi}{\bar{t} + \frac{k}{2\mu}}, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots . \quad (17.28)$$

A plot of the curves (17.28) is given in Fig. 17.8 for  $n = 1, 2, 3, 4$  with  $\frac{k}{\mu} = 1$ . The primary instability occurs at the curve corresponding to  $n = 1$ , while higher-frequency instabilities occur at the other curves. Typical corresponding solutions (calculated numerically) are shown in Fig. 17.9.

The main point of this plot is to demonstrate the importance of the two parameters, the time delay,  $\bar{t}$ , and the sensitivity feedback parameter,  $\gamma$ , on the onset of oscillations. Since the primary critical curve is monotone decreasing, oscillations occur if either of these parameters is sufficiently large (but both must be nonzero). The role of the other parameter of the problem, the rate of  $\text{Cl}^-$  removal from the thick ascending limb, is more subtle to unravel. As can be seen from (17.28), the primary critical curve is moved around a bit if  $\frac{k}{\mu}$  is changed, but the basic shape of the curve is unchanged. What is more significant is that changes in  $\mu$  lead to changes in the parameter  $\gamma$ . In fact, if  $\mu$  deviates from its optimal value at  $\mu = -\ln \bar{c}$ , then  $\gamma$  decreases. Thus, the primary effect of changes of  $\mu$  from its optimal value is to make oscillations less likely. Another way to express this is that if the delay  $\bar{t}$  is sufficiently large, then there are two values of  $\mu$  that are Hopf bifurcation points, one below and one above the optimal removal rate at  $\mu = -\ln \bar{c}$ . A plot of this critical curve is shown in Fig. 17.10.



**Figure 17.9** Typical oscillatory solutions of the model of tubuloglomerular oscillations, for two different feedback strengths. For both panels,  $\bar{t} = 0.2$ ,  $\frac{k}{\mu} = 1$ . The  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration is plotted in dimensionless units, where the concentration at the start of the thick ascending limb is 1. The time is also dimensionless; to get seconds, multiply by 15.5.



**Figure 17.10** Critical curve in the  $\mu, \bar{t}$  parameter space along which there are Hopf bifurcations in the glomerular feedback model. Parameter values are  $K_1 = 1$ ,  $K_2 = 10$ ,  $\bar{c} = e^{-0.5}$ .

A much more complex model of tubuloglomerular oscillations was constructed by Holstein-Rathlou and Marsh (1990), and the simple model above was compared in detail to this more complex model by Layton et al. (1991).

## 17.2 Urinary Concentration: The Loop of Henle

The challenge of any model of urine formation is to see how concentrating and diluting mechanisms work together to determine the composition of the urine and to regulate the interstitial contents, and then to account quantitatively for the concentrating

ability of particular species. The challenge is substantial. For example, for humans, the maximal urine concentrating ability is 1200 mOsm/liter, while some desert animals, such as the Australian hopping mouse, can concentrate urine to as high as 10,000 mOsm/liter. It is not understood how such high urine concentrations can be obtained. It is also necessary that the kidney be able to produce a dilute urine under conditions of high fluid intake.

A normal 70 kg human must excrete about 600 mOsm of solute (waste products of metabolism and ingested ions) every day. The minimal amount of urine to transport these solutes, called the *obligatory urine volume* is

$$\text{obligatory volume} = \frac{\text{total solute/day}}{\text{maximal urine concentration}} \quad (17.29)$$

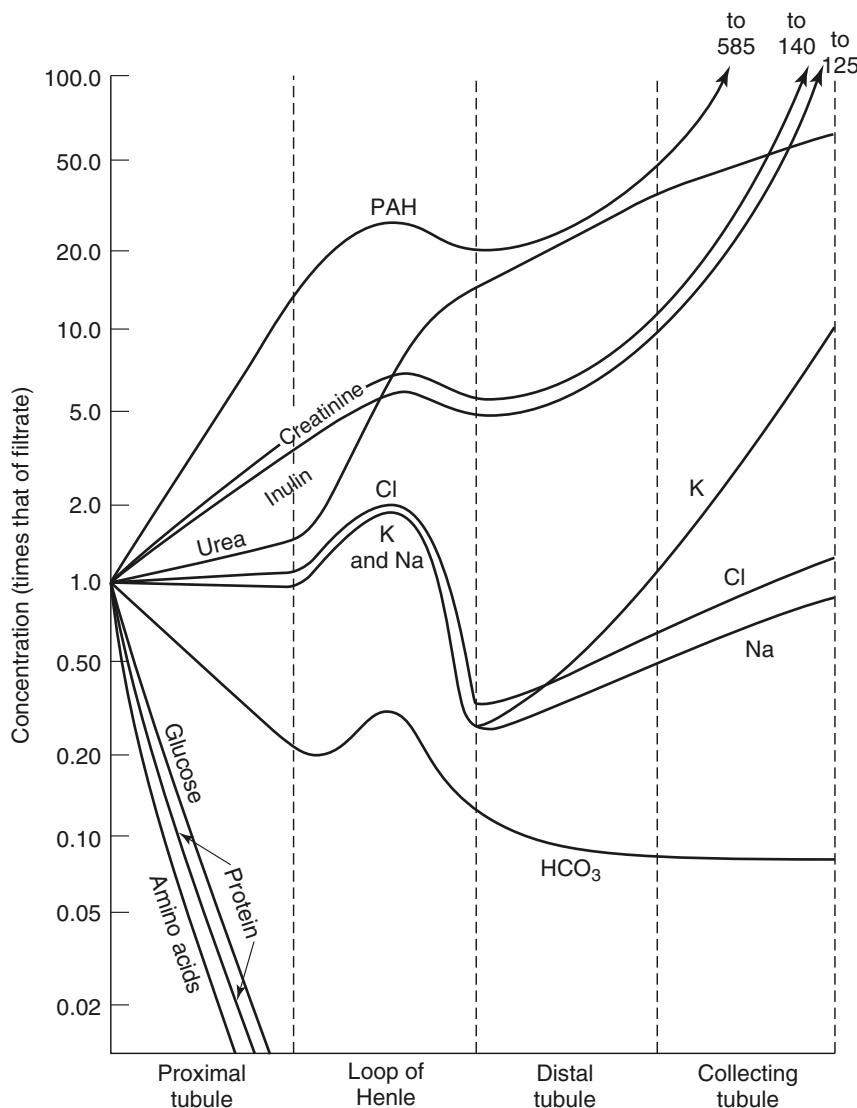
$$= \frac{600 \text{ mOsm/day}}{1200 \text{ mOsm/L}} = 0.5 \text{ L/day}. \quad (17.30)$$

This explains why severe dehydration occurs from drinking seawater. The concentration of salt in the oceans averages 3% sodium chloride, with osmolarity between 2000 and 2400 mOsm/liter. Drinking 1 liter of water with a concentration of 2400 mOsm/liter provides 2400 mOsm of solute that must be excreted. If the maximal urine concentration is 1200 mOsm/liter, then 2 liters of urine are required to rid the body of this ingested solute, a deficit of 1 liter, which must be drawn from the interstitial fluid. This explains why shipwreck victims who drink seawater are rapidly dehydrated, while (as Guyton and Hall have kindly pointed out) the victim's pet Australian hopping mouse can drink all the seawater it wants with impunity.

Urinary concentration or dilution is accomplished primarily in the loop of Henle. After leaving Bowman's capsule, the glomerular filtrate flows into a tubule having five sections: the *proximal tubule*, the *descending limb of the loop of Henle*, the *ascending limb of the loop of Henle*, the *distal tubule*, and, finally, the *collecting duct*. These tubules are surrounded by capillaries, called the *peritubular capillaries*, that reabsorb the fluid that has been extracted from the tubules. In Fig. 17.11 are shown the relative concentrations of various substances at different locations along the tubular system.

The purpose of the proximal tubule is to extract much of the water and dissolved chemicals (electrolytes, glucose, various amino acids, etc.) to be reabsorbed into the bloodstream while concentrating the waste products of metabolism. It is this concentrate that eventually flows as urine into the bladder. The proximal tubular cells have large numbers of mitochondria to support rapid active transport processes. Indeed, about 65 percent of the glomerular filtrate is reabsorbed before reaching the descending limb of the loop of Henle. Furthermore, glucose, proteins, amino acids, acetooacetate ions, and the vitamins are almost completely reabsorbed by active cotransport processes through the epithelial cells that line the proximal tubule.

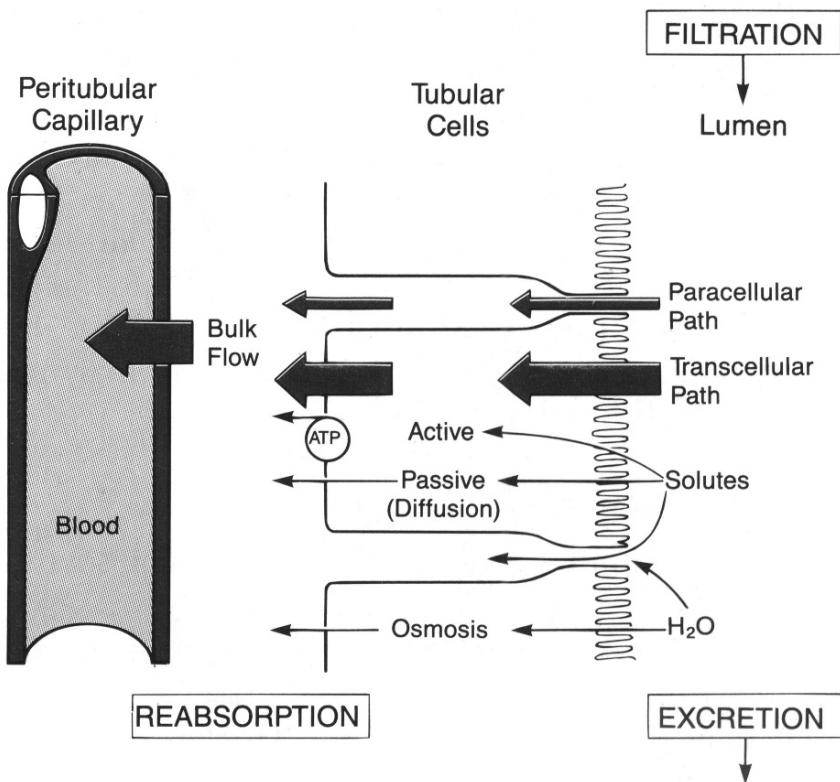
Any substance that is reabsorbed into the bloodstream must first pass through the tubular membrane into the interstitium and then into peritubular capillaries. There are three primary mechanisms by which this transport takes place, all of which we have seen before (Fig. 17.12). First, there is active transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  from the interior



**Figure 17.11** Relative concentrations of various substances as functions of distance along the renal tubule system. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 27-11, p. 341.)

of the epithelial cells into the interstitium, mediated by a  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase. Although this pump actively pumps  $\text{K}^+$  into the cell from the interstitium, both sides of the tubular epithelial cells are so permeable to  $\text{K}^+$  that virtually all of the  $\text{K}^+$  leaks back out of the cell almost immediately.

There are secondary transporters that use the gradient of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions (established by the ATPase) to transport other substances from the tubular lumen into the interior



**Figure 17.12** Schematic diagram of the reabsorption of water and solutes in the proximal tubule. (Guyton and Hall, 1996, Fig. 27-1, p. 332.)

of the epithelial cell. The most important of these are cotransporters of glucose and amino acid ions, but the epithelial cells of the proximal tubule also contain transporters of phosphate,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ . There is also a transporter that exchanges  $\text{H}^+$  for  $\text{Na}^+$  across the membrane of the epithelial cell membrane into the tubule. The third mechanism of transport is that of water across cell membranes, mediated by osmotic pressure (see Chapters 2 and 18).

The descending limb of the loop of Henle is lined with thin epithelial cells with few mitochondria, indicating minimal metabolic activity; it is highly permeable to water and moderately permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$ , urea, and most ions. The ascending limb of the loop of Henle begins with a thin wall but then about halfway up becomes grossly thickened. In contrast to the descending limb, the ascending limb is highly impermeable to water and urea. The cells of the thick ascending limb are similar to those of the proximal tubule, suited for strong active transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions from the tubular lumen into the interstitial fluid.

The thick segment travels back to the region of the glomerulus, where it passes between the afferent and efferent arterioles, forming the juxtaglomerular apparatus,

where much of the feedback control of the flow rate takes place. Passing beyond this point, the tubule becomes the distal tubule, the function of which is similar to that of the ascending limb of the loop of Henle.

Finally, the flow enters the descending collecting duct, which gathers the flow from several nephrons and descends back through the cortex and into the outer and inner zones of the medulla. The flow from the collecting duct then flows out of the kidney through the ureter on the way to the bladder. The cells lining the collecting duct are sensitive to a number of hormones that act to regulate their function as well as the final chemical composition of the urine. Primary among these hormones are *aldosterone* and *antidiuretic hormone* (ADH). Aldosterone determines the rate at which  $\text{Na}^+$  ions are transported out of the tubular lumen, and ADH determines the permeability of the collecting duct to water, and thereby determines the final concentration of the urine. When there is no ADH present, the collecting duct is impermeable to water, but with ADH present, the permeability of the collecting duct allows water to be reabsorbed out of the collecting duct, leaving behind a more highly concentrated urine.

Putting this all together, we arrive at a qualitative summary of how a nephron operates. Along the ascending limb of the loop of Henle  $\text{Na}^+$  is absorbed into the interstitium, either passively (in the thin ascending limb) or actively (in the thick ascending limb). This creates a high  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration in the interstitium, which then serves to draw water out of the descending limb and allows  $\text{Na}^+$  to reenter the descending limb. Hence, fluid entering the descending limb is progressively concentrated until, at the turning point of the loop, the fluid osmolarity is about 1200 mOsm/liter (the entering fluid is about 300 mOsm/liter). Clearly, because the fluid entering the ascending limb is so concentrated,  $\text{Na}^+$  extraction from the ascending limb is enhanced, which further enhances water extraction from the descending limb, and so on. This positive feedback process is at the heart of the countercurrent mechanism, to be discussed in more detail below. As the fluid ascends the ascending limb,  $\text{Na}^+$  is continually extracted until, at the level of the juxtaglomerular apparatus, the fluid in the tubule is considerably more dilute than the original filtrate. However (and this is the crucial part), the dilution process results in a steep gradient of  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration in the interstitium, a gradient that can, when needed, concentrate the urine.

When there is no ADH present, the dilute urine formed by the loop of Henle proceeds through the collecting duct essentially unchanged, resulting in a large quantity of dilute urine. In the presence of large amounts of ADH, the collecting duct is highly permeable to water, so that by the time the filtrate reaches the level of the turning point of the loop of Henle, it is essentially at the same concentration as the interstitium, about 1200 mOsm/liter, thus giving a small quantity of concentrated urine.

It is important to emphasize that the principal functions of the loop of Henle are, first, the formation of dilute urine, which allows water to be excreted when necessary, and, second, the formation of the interstitial gradient in  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration, which allows for the formation of a concentrated urine when necessary. The importance of the loop of Henle in creating the interstitial gradient of  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration is underlined by the fact that although all vertebrates can produce dilute urine, only birds and mammals

can produce hyperosmotic urine, and it is the kidneys of only these animals that contain loops of Henle.

### 17.2.1 The Countercurrent Mechanism

Solutes are exchanged between liquids by diffusion across their separating membranes. Since the rate of exchange is affected by the concentration difference across the membrane, the exchange rate is increased if large concentration differences can be maintained. One important way that large concentration differences can be maintained is by the *countercurrent mechanism*. As is described below, the countercurrent mechanism is important to renal function. Other examples of the countercurrent mechanism include the exchange of oxygen from water to blood through fish gills and the exchange of oxygen in the placenta between mother and fetus.

Suppose that two gases or liquids containing a solute flow along parallel tubes of length  $L$ , separated by a permeable membrane. We model this in the simplest possible way as a one-dimensional problem, and we assume that solute transport is a linear function of the concentration difference. Then the concentrations in the two one-dimensional tubes are given by

$$\frac{\partial C_1}{\partial t} + q_1 \frac{\partial C_1}{\partial x} = d(C_2 - C_1), \quad (17.31)$$

$$\frac{\partial C_2}{\partial t} + q_2 \frac{\partial C_2}{\partial x} = d(C_1 - C_2). \quad (17.32)$$

The mathematical problem is to find the outflow concentrations, given that the inflow concentrations, the length of the exchange chamber, and the flow velocities are known. It is a relatively easy matter to generalize this model to allow for an interstitium (see Exercise 5).

We assume that the flows are in steady state and that the input concentrations are  $C_1^0$  and  $C_2^0$ . Then, if we add the two governing equations and integrate, we find that

$$q_1 C_1 + q_2 C_2 = k \text{ (a constant).} \quad (17.33)$$

Pretending that  $k$  is known, we eliminate  $C_2$  from (17.32) and find the differential equation for  $C_1$ ,

$$\frac{dC_1}{dx} = \frac{d}{q_1 q_2} (k - (q_1 + q_2) C_1), \quad (17.34)$$

from which we learn that

$$C_1(x) = \kappa + (C_1(0) - \kappa) e^{-\lambda x}, \quad (17.35)$$

where  $\kappa = \frac{k}{q_1 + q_2}$  and  $\lambda = d \left( \frac{q_1 + q_2}{q_1 q_2} \right)$ .

There are two cases to consider, namely when  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  are of the same sign and when they have different signs. If they have the same signs, say positive, then the input is at  $x = 0$ , and it must be that  $C_1(0) = C_1^0, C_2(0) = C_2^0$ , from which, using (17.33), it

follows that

$$\frac{C_1(L)}{C_1^0} = \frac{1 + \gamma\rho}{1 + \rho} + \rho \frac{1 - \gamma}{1 + \rho} e^{-\lambda L}, \quad (17.36)$$

where  $\gamma = C_2^0/C_1^0$ ,  $\rho = q_2/q_1$ ,  $\lambda = \frac{d}{q_1}(1 + \frac{1}{\rho})$ .

Suppose that the goal is to transfer material from vessel 1 to vessel 2, so that  $\gamma < 1$ . We learn from (17.36) that the output concentration from vessel 1 is an exponentially decreasing function of the residence length  $dL/q_1$ . Furthermore, the best that can be done (i.e., as  $dL/q_1 \rightarrow \infty$ ) is  $\frac{1+\gamma\rho}{1+\rho}$ .

In the case that  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  are of opposite sign, say  $q_1 > 0, q_2 < 0$ , the inflow for vessel 1 is at  $x = 0$ , but the inflow for vessel 2 is at  $x = L$ . In this case we calculate that

$$\frac{C_1(L)}{C_1^0} = \frac{-\gamma\rho + (1 - \rho + \gamma\rho)e^{-\lambda L}}{e^{-\lambda L} - \rho}, \quad (17.37)$$

where  $\gamma = C_2(L)/C_1^0 = C_2^0/C_1^0$ ,  $\rho = -q_2/q_1 > 0$ ,  $\lambda = \frac{d}{q_1}(1 - \frac{1}{\rho})$ , provided that  $\rho \neq 1$ . In the special case  $\rho = 1$ , we have

$$\frac{C_1(L)}{C_1^0} = \frac{q_1 + \gamma dL}{q_1 + dL}. \quad (17.38)$$

Now we can see the substantial difference between a cocurrent ( $q_1$  and  $q_2$  of the same sign) and a countercurrent ( $q_1$  and  $q_2$  with the opposite sign). At fixed parameter values, if  $\gamma < 1$ , the expression for  $C_1(L)/C_1^0$  in (17.36) is always larger than that in (17.37), implying that the total transfer of solute is always more efficient with a countercurrent than with a cocurrent.

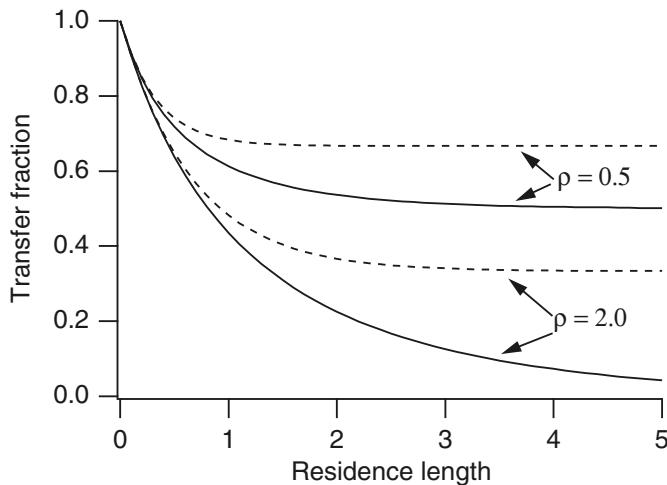
In Fig. 17.13 is shown a comparison between a countercurrent and a cocurrent. The dashed curves show the transfer fraction  $C_1(L)/C_1^0$  for a cocurrent, plotted as a function of the residence length  $dL/q_1$ , with input in tube 2,  $C_2^0 = C_2(0) = 0$ . The solid curves show the same quantity for a countercurrent, with input concentration  $C_2^0 = C_2(L) = 0$ .

In the limit of a long residence time (large  $dL/q_1$ ), the transfer fraction becomes  $1 - \rho + \gamma\rho$  if  $\rho < 1$ , and  $\gamma$  if  $\rho > 1$ . Indeed, this is always smaller than the result for a cocurrent,  $\frac{1+\gamma\rho}{1+\rho}$ .

## 17.2.2 The Countercurrent Mechanism in Nephrons

The countercurrent mechanism works slightly differently in nephrons because the two parallel tubes, the descending branch and the ascending branch of the loop of Henle, are connected at their bottom end. Thus the flow and concentration of solute out of the descending tube must match the flow and concentration of solute into the ascending tube.

Mathematical models of the urine-concentrating mechanism have been around for some time, but all make use of the same basic physical principles, namely, the establishment of chemical gradients via active transport processes, the movement of ions via diffusion, and the transport of water by osmosis. The unique feature of the nephron is

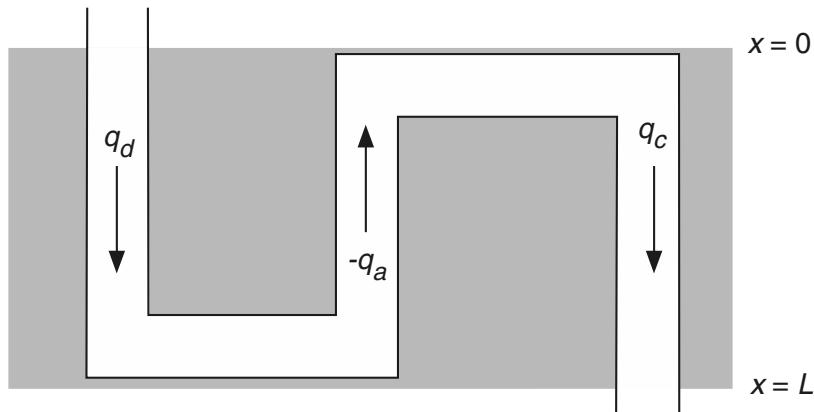


**Figure 17.13** Transfer fraction for a cocurrent (dashed) and a countercurrent (solid) when  $\gamma = 0$  plotted as a function of residence length.

its physical organization, which allows it to eliminate waste products while controlling other quantities. In what follows we present a model similar to that of Stephenson (1972, 1992) of urinary concentration that represents the gross organizational features of the loop of Henle. A number of other models are discussed in a special issue of the *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology* (volume 56, number 3, May 1994), while two useful reviews of mathematical work on the kidney are Knepper and Rector (1991) and Roy et al. (1992).

We view the loop of Henle as consisting of four compartments, including three tubules, the descending limb, the ascending limb, and the collecting duct, and a single compartment for the interstitium and peritubular capillaries (Fig. 17.14). The interstitium/capillary bed is treated as a one-dimensional tubule that accepts fluid from the other three tubules and loses it to the venules. It is an easy generalization to separate the peritubular capillaries and interstitium into separate compartments, but little is gained by doing so. In each of these compartments, one must keep track of the flow of water and the concentration of solutes. For the model presented here, we track only one solute,  $\text{Na}^+$ , because it is believed that the concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the interstitium determines over 90 percent of the osmotic pressure.

We assume that the flow in each of the tubes is a simple plug flow (positive in the positive  $x$  direction) with flow rates  $q_d, q_a, q_c, q_s$  for descending, ascending, collecting, and interstitial tubules, respectively. Similarly, the concentration of solute in each of these is denoted by  $c_d, c_a, c_c, c_s$ . The tubules are assumed to be one-dimensional, with glomerular filtrate entering the descending limb at  $x = 0$ , turning from the descending limb to the ascending limb at  $x = L$ , turning from the ascending limb to the collecting duct at  $x = 0$ , and finally exiting the collecting duct at  $x = L$ . We assume that the interstitium/capillary compartment drains at  $x = 0$  with no flow at  $x = L$ .



**Figure 17.14** Diagram of the simple four-compartment model of the loop of Henle.

**Descending Limb:** The flux of water from the descending limb to the interstitium is controlled by the pressure difference and the osmotic pressure difference; hence

$$\frac{1}{k_d} \frac{dq_d}{dx} = P_s - \pi_s - P_d + 2RT(c_d - c_s), \quad (17.39)$$

where  $P_d$  and  $P_s$  are the hydrostatic pressures in the descending tubule and interstitium,  $\pi_s$  is the colloidal osmotic pressure of the interstitium, and  $k_d$  is the filtration rate for the descending tubule. The factor two multiplying the osmotic pressure due to the solute is to take into account the fact that the fluid is electrically neutral, and the flow of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions is followed closely by the flow of chloride ions, both of which contribute to the osmotic pressure. The transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions from the descending limb is governed by simple diffusion, so that at steady state we have

$$\frac{d(q_d c_d)}{dx} = h_d(c_s - c_d), \quad (17.40)$$

where  $h_d$  is the permeability of the descending limb to  $\text{Na}^+$  ions.

**Ascending Limb:** The ascending limb is assumed to be impermeable to water, so that

$$\frac{dq_a}{dx} = 0, \quad (17.41)$$

and the flow of  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the ascending limb is by an active process, so that

$$\frac{d(q_a c_a)}{dx} = -p. \quad (17.42)$$

The pump rate  $p$  certainly depends in nontrivial ways on the local concentrations of various ions. However, for this model we take  $p$  to be a constant. This simplifying assumption causes problems with the behavior of the model at low  $\text{Na}^+$  concentrations, because there is nothing preventing the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration to become negative. Although the  $\text{Na}^+$  ATPase is actually a  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase, the

epithelial cells are highly permeable to  $K^+$ , and so we assume that  $K^+$  can be safely ignored. For simplicity, we also ignore the fact that the  $Na^+$  transport properties of the thin ascending limb are different from those of the thick ascending limb, and we assume active removal along the entire ascending limb.

**Collecting Duct:** The flow of water from the collecting duct is also controlled by the hydrostatic and osmotic pressure differences, via

$$\frac{1}{k_c} \frac{dq_c}{dx} = P_s - \pi_s - P_c + 2RT(c_c - c_s), \quad (17.43)$$

and the transport of  $Na^+$  from the collecting duct is governed by

$$\frac{d(q_c c_c)}{dx} = h_c(c_s - c_c). \quad (17.44)$$

Here,  $k_c$  and  $h_c$  are the permeability of the collecting duct to water and  $Na^+$ , and are controlled by ADH and aldosterone, respectively.

**Conservation Equations:** Finally, because total fluid is conserved,

$$\frac{dq_s}{dx} = -\frac{d}{dx}(q_d + q_a + q_c), \quad (17.45)$$

and because total solute is conserved,

$$\frac{d(q_s c_s)}{dx} = -\frac{d}{dx}(q_d c_d + q_a c_a + q_c c_c). \quad (17.46)$$

To complete the description, we have the relationship between pressure and flow in a tube,

$$\frac{dP_j}{dx} = -R_j q_j, \quad (17.47)$$

for  $j = d, a, c, s$ . However, for renal modeling it is typical to take each pressure to be constant. Typical values for the pressures are  $P_d = 14-18$  mm Hg,  $P_a = 10-14$  mm Hg,  $P_c = 0-10$  mm Hg,  $P_s = 6$  mm Hg, and  $\pi_s = 17$  mm Hg.

This description of the nephron consists of eight first-order differential equations in the eight unknowns  $q_j$  and  $c_j$ , for  $j = d, a, c, s$ . To complete the description, we need boundary conditions. We assume that the inputs  $q_d(0)$  and  $c_d(0)$  are known and given. Then, because the flow from the descending limb enters the ascending limb,  $q_d(L) = -q_a(L)$  and  $c_d(L) = c_a(L)$ . Furthermore,  $q_s(L) = 0$ . At  $x = 0$ , flow from the ascending limb enters the collecting duct, so that  $q_a(0) = -q_c(0)$  and  $c_a(0) = c_c(0)$ . Finally, since total fluid must be conserved, what goes in must go out, so that  $q_d(0) + q_s(0) = q_c(L)$ .

It is useful to nondimensionalize the equations by normalizing the flows and solute concentrations. Thus, we let

$$x = Ly, Q_j = \frac{q_j}{q_d(0)}, C_j = \frac{c_j}{c_d(0)} \text{ for } j = d, a, c, s,$$

and the dimensionless parameters are

$$\rho_j = \frac{q_d(0)}{2LRTc_d(0)k_j}, \Delta P_j = \frac{P_j + \pi_s - P_s}{RT2c_d(0)}, H_j = \frac{Lh_j}{q_d(0)}, \text{ for } j = d, c.$$

In this scaling  $Q_d(0) = C_d(0) = 1$ .

Three of these equations are trivially solved. In fact, it follows easily from (17.41), (17.45), and (17.46) that

$$Q_a = Q_a(0) = Q_a(L), \quad (17.48)$$

$$Q_d + Q_a + Q_c + Q_s = Q_c(L), \quad (17.49)$$

$$Q_d C_d + Q_a C_a + Q_c C_c + Q_s C_s = Q_c(L) C_c(L). \quad (17.50)$$

Two more identities can be found. If we use (17.40) to eliminate  $c_d - c_s$  from (17.39), we obtain

$$\rho_d \frac{dQ_d}{dy} + \Delta P_d = C_d - C_s = -\frac{1}{H_d} \frac{d(Q_d C_d)}{dy}, \quad (17.51)$$

from which it follows that

$$\rho_d(Q_d - 1) + \frac{1}{H_d}(Q_d C_d - 1) = -\Delta P_d y. \quad (17.52)$$

Similarly, we use (17.44) to eliminate  $c_c - c_s$  from (17.43) to obtain

$$\rho_c \frac{dQ_c}{dy} + \frac{1}{H_c} \frac{d(Q_c C_c)}{dy} = -\Delta P_c, \quad (17.53)$$

which integrates to

$$\rho_c(Q_c - Q_c(0)) + \frac{1}{H_c}(Q_c C_c - Q_c(0)C_c(0)) = -\Delta P_c y. \quad (17.54)$$

As discussed above, we assume that the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration in the ascending limb is always sufficiently high so that the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump is saturated and the pump rate is independent of concentration, in which case the solution of (17.42) (in nondimensional variables) is

$$Q_a C_a = Q_a C_a(0) - P y, \quad (17.55)$$

where  $P = \frac{pL}{c_d(0)q_d(0)}$  is the dimensionless  $\text{Na}^+$  pump rate.

Having solved six of the original eight differential equations, we are left with a system of two first-order equations in two unknowns. The two equations are

$$\rho_d \frac{dQ_d}{dy} = -\Delta P_d + C_d - C_s, \quad (17.56)$$

$$\rho_c \frac{dQ_c}{dy} = -\Delta P_c + C_c - C_s, \quad (17.57)$$

subject to boundary conditions  $Q_d = 1, Q_c = -Q_a$  at  $y = 0$ , and  $Q_d = -Q_a$  at  $y = 1$ , where  $C_c, C_s$ , and  $C_d$  are functions of  $Q_d$  and  $Q_c$ . Although there are three boundary conditions for two first-order equations, the number  $Q_a$  is also unknown, so that this problem is well posed. Our goal in what follows is to understand the behavior of the solution of this system.

### Formation of Urine Without ADH

The primary control of renal dialysis is accomplished in the collecting duct, where the amount of ADH determines the permeability of the collecting duct to water and the amount of aldosterone determines the permeability of the collecting duct to  $\text{Na}^+$ . Impairment of normal kidney function is often related to ADH. For example, the inability of the pituitary to produce adequate amounts of ADH is called *central diabetes insipidus*, and results in the formation of large amounts of dilute urine. On the other hand, with *nephrogenic diabetes insipidus*, the abnormality resides in the kidney, either as a failure of the countercurrent mechanism to produce an adequately hyperosmotic interstitium, or as the inability of the collecting ducts to respond to ADH. In either case, large volumes of dilute urine are formed.

Various drugs and hormones can have similar effects. For example, alcohol, clonidine (an antihypertensive drug), and haloperidol (a dopamine blocker) are known to inhibit the release of ADH. Other drugs such as nicotine and morphine stimulate the release of ADH. Drugs such as lithium (used to treat manic-depressives) and the antibiotic tetracyclines impair the ability of the collecting duct to respond to ADH.

The second important controller of urine formation is the hormone aldosterone. Aldosterone, secreted by zona glomerulosa cells in the adrenal cortex, works by diffusing into the epithelial cells, where it interacts with several receptor proteins and diffuses into the cell nucleus. In the cell nucleus it induces the production of the messenger RNA associated with several important proteins that are ingredients of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. The net effect is that (after about an hour) the number of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in the cell membrane increases, with a consequent increase of  $\text{Na}^+$  conductance. Aldosterone is also known to increase the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase activity in the collecting duct, as well as in other places in the nephron (a feature not included in this model), thereby increasing  $\text{Na}^+$  removal and also  $\text{K}^+$  excretion into the urine. For persons with *Addison's disease* (severely impaired or total lack of aldosterone), there is tremendous loss of  $\text{Na}^+$  by the kidneys and accumulation of  $\text{K}^+$ . Conversely, excess aldosterone secretion, as occurs in patients with adrenal tumors (Conn's syndrome), is associated with  $\text{Na}^+$  retention and  $\text{K}^+$  depletion.

To see the effect of these controls we examine the behavior of our model in two limiting cases. In the first case, we assume that there is no ADH present, so that  $\rho_c = \infty$ , and that there is no aldosterone present, so that  $H_c = 0$ . In this case it follows from (17.53) that  $Q_c = Q_c(0) = -Q_a$  and that  $C_c = C_c(0) = C_a(0)$ . In other words, there is no loss of either water or  $\text{Na}^+$  from the collecting duct: the collecting duct has effectively been removed from the model.

It remains to determine what happens in the descending and ascending tubules. The flow is governed by the single differential equation

$$\rho_d \frac{dQ_d}{dy} = C_d - C_s - \Delta P_d = f(Q_d, Q_a, y), \quad (17.58)$$

where, from (17.50), (17.52), and (17.55),

$$C_d = \frac{1}{Q_d}(1 + \rho_d H_d(1 - Q_d) - \Delta P_d H_d y), \quad (17.59)$$

$$C_s = \frac{(P + \Delta P_d H_d)(1 - y)}{Q_d + Q_a} - \rho_d H_d, \quad (17.60)$$

subject to the boundary conditions  $Q_d(0) = 1$ ,  $Q_d(1) = -Q_a$ . As before,  $Q_a$  is a constant, as the ascending limb is impermeable to water, and  $C_a$  is a linearly decreasing function of  $y$ .

We view this problem as a nonlinear eigenvalue problem, since it is a single first-order differential equation with two boundary conditions. The unknown parameter  $Q_a$  is the parameter that we adjust to make the solution satisfy the two boundary conditions. It is reasonable to take  $\rho_d$  to be small, since the descending tubule is quite permeable to water. In this case, however, the differential equation (17.58) is singular, since a small parameter multiplies the derivative. We overcome this difficulty by seeking a solution in the form  $y = y(Q_d, \rho_d)$  satisfying the differential equation

$$f(Q_d, Q_a, y) \frac{dy}{dQ_d} = \rho_d \quad (17.61)$$

subject to boundary conditions  $y = 0$  at  $Q_d = 1$  and  $y = 1$  at  $Q_d = -Q_a$ .

With  $\rho_d$  small we have a regular perturbation problem in which we seek  $y$  as a function of  $Q_d$  as a power series of  $\rho_d$ , which is solved as follows. We assume that  $y$  has a power series representation of the form

$$y = y_0 + \rho_d y_1 + \rho_d^2 y_2 + O(\rho_d^2), \quad (17.62)$$

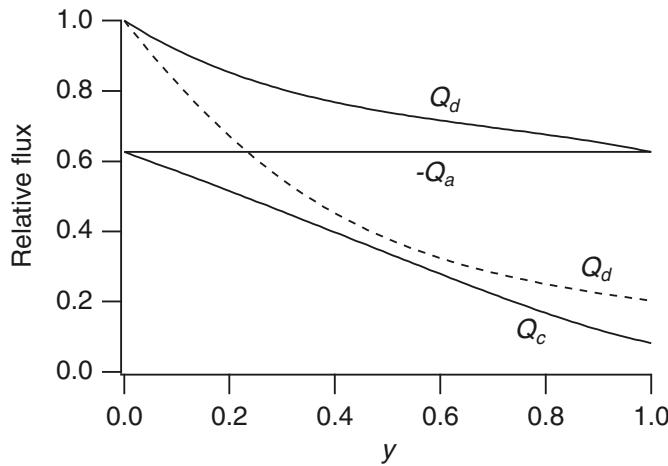
substitute into (17.61), expand in powers of  $\rho_d$ , collect like powers of  $\rho_d$ , and then solve these sequentially. We find that

$$y = 1 - \frac{Q_a + Q_d}{PQ_d - \Delta P_d H_d Q_a} \left[ 1 - \Delta P_d (Q_d + H_d) \right] + O(\rho_d). \quad (17.63)$$

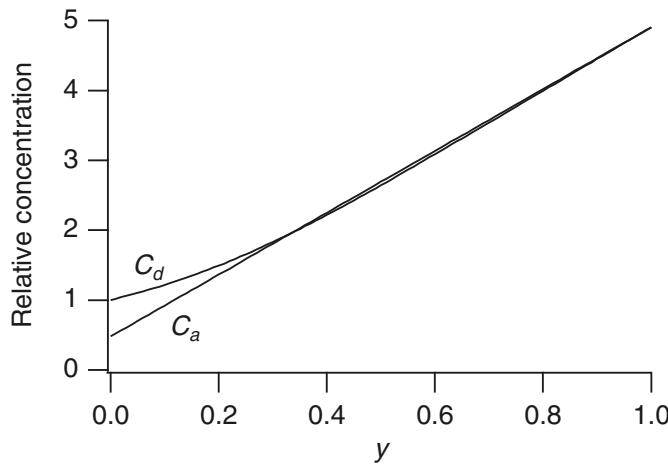
Notice that  $y = 1$  at  $Q_d = -Q_a$ . Now we determine  $Q_a$  by setting  $y = 0$ ,  $Q_d = 1$  in (17.63), and solving for  $Q_a$ . To leading order in  $\rho_d$  we find that

$$-Q_a = 1 - \frac{P + H_d \Delta P_d}{1 - \Delta P_d} + O(\rho_d). \quad (17.64)$$

It is now a straightforward matter to plot  $y$  as a function of  $Q_d$ , and then rotate the axes so that we see  $Q_d$  as a function of  $y$ . This is depicted with a dashed curve in Fig. 17.15 (using formulas that include higher-order correction terms for  $\rho_d$ ). For comparison we also include the curves calculated for the case where ADH is present;



**Figure 17.15** The flux of fluid in the loop of Henle, with ADH present (solid curve,  $\rho_c = 2.0$ ) and without ADH present (dashed curve,  $\rho_c = \infty$ ). Parameter values are  $P = 0.9$ ,  $\Delta P_d = 0.15$ ,  $H_d = 0.1$ ,  $\rho_d = 0.15$ ,  $H_c = 0$ .



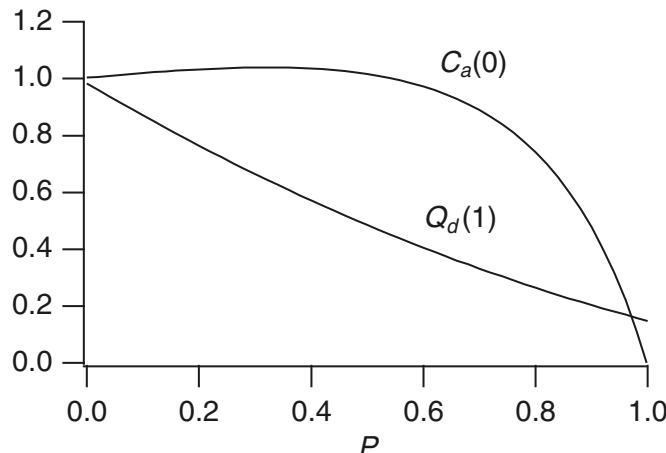
**Figure 17.16** The solute concentration in the descending ( $C_d$ ) and ascending ( $C_a$ ) tubules with no ADH present ( $\rho_c = \infty$ ), plotted as a function of distance  $y$  for the parameter set as in Fig. 17.15.

the details of that calculation are given below. Note that in either the presence or absence of ADH,  $Q_a$  is always independent of  $y$ , while in the absence of ADH,  $Q_c$  is also independent of  $y$ . Once  $Q_d$  is determined as a function of  $y$ , it is an easy matter to plot the concentrations  $C_d$  and  $C_a$  as functions of  $y$ , as shown in Fig. 17.16.

From these we can draw some conclusions about how the loop of Henle works in this mode. Sodium is extracted from the descending limb by simple diffusion and from

the ascending loop by an active process. The  $\text{Na}^+$  that is extracted from the ascending loop creates a large osmotic pressure in the interstitial region that serves to enhance the extraction of water from the descending loop. This emphasizes the importance of the countercurrent mechanism in the concentrating process. As the fluid proceeds down the descending loop, its  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration is continually increasing, and during its passage along the ascending loop, its  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration falls. At the lower end of the loop the relative concentration of the formed urine (i.e., of substances that are impermeable, such as creatinine) is  $\frac{1}{Q_d(1)}$ . This quantity represents the concentrating ability of the nephron in this mode. Since  $C_a(0) < C_d(0)$ , as can be seen from Fig. 17.16, by the time the fluid reaches the top of the ascending loop, it has been diluted. Furthermore, comparing the value of  $Q_d(1)(= Q_c)$  in the absence of ADH (dashed curve in Fig. 17.15) to the value of  $Q_c(1)$  in the presence of ADH (solid curve in Fig. 17.15) shows that the flux out of the collecting duct is higher in the absence of ADH. Hence, combining these two observations, we conclude that in the absence of ADH, the nephron produces a large quantity of dilute urine, while in the presence of ADH, it produces a smaller quantity of concentrated urine. This is consistent with the qualitative explanation of nephron function given earlier in the chapter.

In Fig. 17.17 are shown the solute concentration  $C_a$  and the flow rate  $Q$  at the upper end of the ascending tubule as functions of dimensionless pump rate  $P$ . The formed urine is dilute whenever this solute concentration is less than one. The fact that this concentration can become negative at larger pump rates is a failure of the model, since the pump rate in the model is not concentration dependent.



**Figure 17.17** The solute concentration and the flow rate at the upper end of the ascending tubule plotted as functions of pump rate  $P$  when there is no ADH or aldosterone present ( $\rho_c = \infty, H_c = 0$ ). Dilution occurs if the solute concentration is less than one. Parameter values are  $\Delta P_d = 0.15, H_d = 0.1, \rho_d = 0.15$ .

## Formation of Urine With ADH

In the presence of ADH, the collecting tube is highly permeable to water, so that, since the concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the interstitium at the lower end of the tube is high, additional water can be extracted from the collecting duct, thereby concentrating the dilute urine formed by the loop of Henle.

To solve the governing equations in this case is much harder than in the case with no ADH. This is because the equations governing the flux (17.56) and (17.57) are both singular in the limit of zero  $\rho_d$  and  $\rho_c$ . Furthermore, one can show that the quasi-steady solution (found by setting  $\rho_d = \rho_c = 0$  in (17.56) and (17.57)) cannot be made to satisfy the boundary conditions at  $y = 1$ , suggesting that the solution has a boundary layer. To avoid the difficulties associated with boundary layers, it is preferable to formulate the problem in terms of the solute flux  $S_d = Q_d C_d$ , because according to (17.51) this function is nearly linear and does not change rapidly when  $\rho_d$  is small.

In the case that ADH is present but there is no aldosterone ( $H_c = 0$ ), the governing equations are

$$\frac{dS_d}{dy} = H_d \left( \frac{S_s}{Q_s} - \frac{S_d}{Q_d} \right) = H_d F_d(S_d, Q_c), \quad (17.65)$$

$$\rho_c \frac{dQ_c}{dy} = -\Delta P_c + \frac{S_c(0)}{Q_c} - \frac{S_s}{Q_s} = F_c(S_d, Q_c), \quad (17.66)$$

where

$$S_s = P(y - 1) + S_d(1) - S_d, \quad (17.67)$$

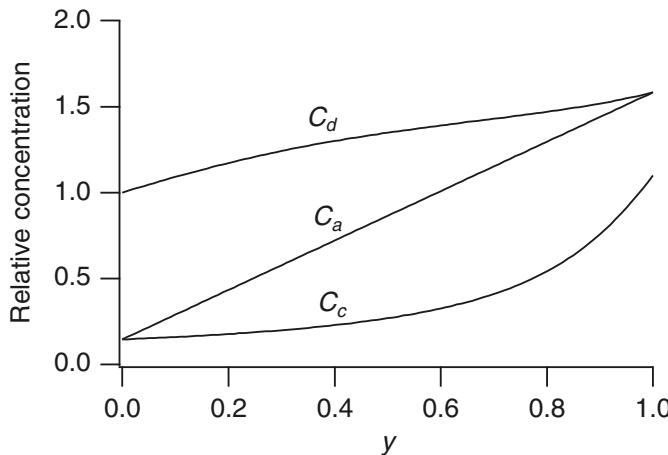
$$Q_s = -1 - Q_a - Q_c + Q_c(1) - \frac{1 - S_d - \Delta P_d H_d y}{\rho_d H_d}, \quad (17.68)$$

$$Q_d = 1 + \frac{1 - S_d - \Delta P_d H_d y}{\rho_d H_d}, \quad (17.69)$$

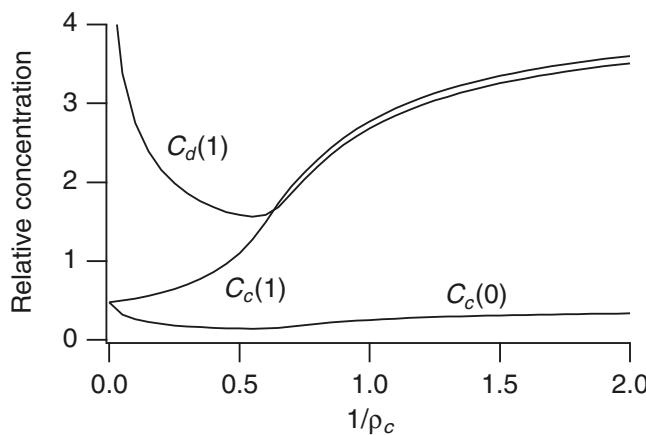
subject to boundary conditions  $S_d(0) = 1$ ,  $Q_c(0) = 1 + \frac{1 - S_d - \Delta P_d H_d}{\rho_d H_d}$ , and  $Q_d(1) = -Q_a$ .

These equations are difficult to solve because there are two unknown functions,  $S_d$  and  $Q_c$ , and an unknown constant  $Q_a$ , subject to three boundary conditions. One way to solve them is to introduce the constants  $Q_a$  and  $Q_c(1)$  as unknown variables satisfying the obvious differential equations  $\frac{dQ_a}{dy} = \frac{dQ_c(1)}{dy} = 0$ , and to solve the expanded fourth-order system of equations in the four unknowns  $S_d$ ,  $Q_c$ ,  $Q_a$ ,  $Q_c(1)$  with four corresponding boundary conditions (adding the requirement that  $Q_c = Q_c(1)$  at  $y = 1$ ).

These equations were solved numerically using a centered difference scheme for the discretization and Newton's method to find a solution of the nonlinear equations (see Exercise 9). Typical results are shown in Fig. 17.18. Here we see what we expected (or hoped), namely that the collecting duct concentrates the dilute urine by extracting water. In fact, we see that the concentration increases on its path through the descending loop, decreases in the ascending loop, and then increases again in the collecting duct. This behavior is similar to the data for  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration shown in Fig. 17.11.



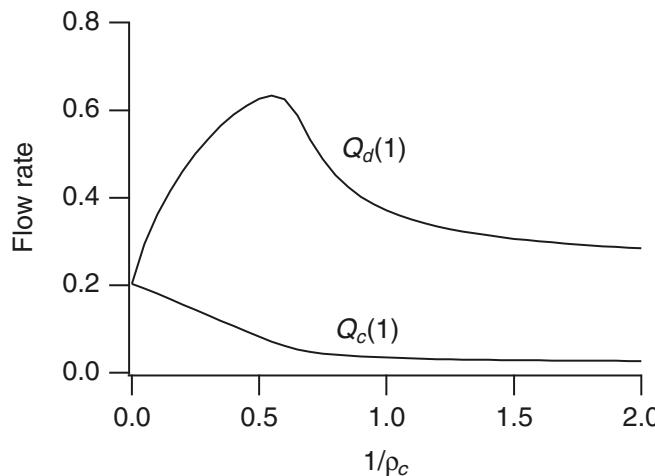
**Figure 17.18** Solute concentrations in the loop of Henle and the collecting duct, plotted as functions of  $y$  for  $P = 0.9$ ,  $\Delta P_d = 0.15$ ,  $\Delta P_c = 0.22$ ,  $H_d = 0.1$ ,  $\rho_d = 0.15$  and with  $\rho_c = 2.0$ ,  $H_c = 0$ .



**Figure 17.19** Solute concentrations at the bottom and top of the loop of Henle and at the end of the collecting duct plotted as functions of inverse permeability  $\frac{1}{\rho_c}$ , with  $P = 0.9$ ,  $\Delta P_d = 0.15$ ,  $\Delta P_c = 0.22$ ,  $H_d = 0.1$ ,  $\rho_d = 0.15$ , and  $H_c = 0$ .

The effect of the parameter  $\rho_c$  is shown in Figs. 17.19 and 17.20. In these figures are shown the solute concentrations and the flow rates at the bottom and top of the loop of Henle and at the end of the collecting duct. Here we see that the effect of ADH is, as expected, to reconcentrate the solute and to further reduce the loss of water.

The asymptotic value of  $C_c(1)$  as  $\rho_c \rightarrow 0$  is the maximal solute concentration possible and determines, for example, whether or not the individual can safely drink seawater without dehydration. The asymptotic value of  $1/Q_c(1)$  represents the highest possible relative concentration of impermeable substances such as creatinine.



**Figure 17.20** Fluid flow rates at the bottom of the loop of Henle and at the end of the collecting duct plotted as functions of inverse permeability  $\frac{1}{\rho_c}$ , with  $P = 0.9$ ,  $\Delta P_d = 0.15$ ,  $\Delta P_c = 0.22$ ,  $H_d = 0.1$ ,  $\rho_d = 0.15$ , and  $H_c = 0$ .

### Further Generalizations

This model shows the basic principles behind nephron function, but the model is qualitative at best, and there are many questions that remain unanswered and many generalizations that might be pursued. For example, the model could be improved by incorporating a better representation of the interstitial/capillary bed flow, taking into account that the peritubular capillaries issue directly from the efferent arteriole of the glomerulus, thus determining the hydrostatic and osmotic pressures in the capillary bed. The model is also incorrect in that the active pumping of  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the ascending limb is not concentration dependent, and as a result negative concentrations can occur for certain parameter values.

It is a fairly easy matter to add equations governing the flux of solutes other than  $\text{Na}^+$ , as the principles governing their flux are the same. One can also consider a time-dependent model in which the flow of water is not steady, by allowing the cross-sectional area of the tubules to vary. Nonsteady models are difficult to solve because they are stiff, and there is a substantial literature on the numerical analysis and simulation of time-dependent models (Layton et al., 1991).

Nephrons occur in a variety of lengths, and models describing kidney function have been devised that recognize that nephrons are distributed both in space and in length (Layton et al., 2004; Layton and Layton, 2003, 2005a,b). These models are partial differential equations, and again, because of inherent stiffness, their simulation requires careful choice of numerical algorithms (Layton et al., 1995a; Layton and Layton, 2002, 2003).

## 17.3 Models of Tubular Transport

So far in this chapter we have discussed glomerular filtration and the formation of urine. The third major group of models in renal physiology consists of those of the transport of water and solutes by the various epithelial cells that line the tubules. The

most important of these models are undoubtedly those of Alan Weinstein; see, for example, Weinstein (1994, 1998a,b, 2000, 2003).

Two of the most significant questions addressed by these models is how the epithelial cell layer can transport water against an osmotic gradient, so-called *uphill* transport, or under conditions of little or no osmotic gradient, so-called *isotonic* transport. These questions were the subject of some of the earliest models (see, for instance, Weinstein and Stephenson, 1981), and remain important today. Discussion of simple models of uphill and isotonic water transport are deferred to Section 18.1.2, since these questions are also important in the gastrointestinal system.

Models of tubular transport usually also include descriptions of solute transport by both active and passive mechanisms. Typical solutes include  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{H}$ ,  $\text{HPO}_4$ ,  $\text{NH}_4$ , glucose, and  $\text{PO}_4$ , giving rise to complex models with a multitude of variables and parameters. Because the epithelial cells in different parts of the nephron have different permeabilities, pumps, and exchangers, there are different models of the collecting duct, the ascending and descending limbs, and the proximal tubule. As is described in Chapter 18, the lateral intercellular spaces (the spaces between the epithelial cells) play a crucial role in water and solute transport in models of this type, and are usually included explicitly in the models.

## 17.4 EXERCISES

---

1. The flow of glomerular filtrate and the total renal blood flow increase by 20 to 30 percent within 1 to 2 hours following a high-protein meal. How can this feature be incorporated into a model of renal function and regulation of glomerular function?

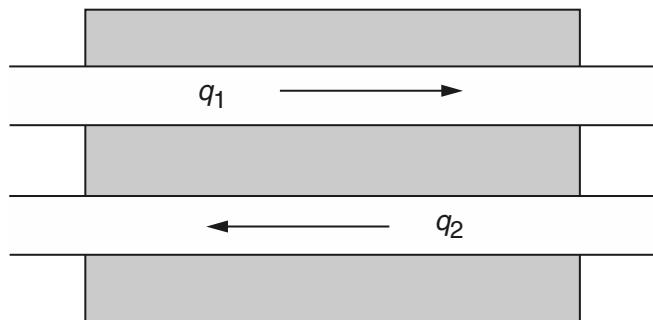
*Hint:* Amino acids, which are released into the blood after a high-protein meal, are cotransported with  $\text{Na}^+$  ions from the filtrate in the proximal tubule. Thus, high levels of amino acids leads to high reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the proximal tubule, and therefore lower than normal levels of  $\text{Na}^+$  at the macula densa.

2. Show that (17.16) has a unique positive root.
3. How much water must one drink to prevent any dehydration after eating a 1.5 oz bag of potato chips? (See Exercise 18 in Chapter 2.) Remark: A mole of  $\text{NaCl}$  is 58.5 grams and it dissociates in water into 2 osmoles.
4. Why is alcohol a diuretic? What is the combined effect on urine formation of drinking beer (instead of water) while eating potato chips? What is the combined effect on urine formation of drinking beer while smoking cigarettes?

*Hint:* Alcohol inhibits the release of ADH, while nicotine stimulates ADH release.

5. Construct a simple model of the countercurrent mechanism that includes an interstitial compartment (Fig. 17.21). Show that inclusion of the interstitium has no effect on the overall rates of transport. Allow the solute to diffuse in the interstitium, but not escape the boundaries.

*Hint:* View the interstitium as a tube with zero flow rate.



**Figure 17.21** Diagram of a countercurrent flow mediated by an interstitium, for Exercise 5.

6. Generalize the four-compartment model of the loop of Henle by separating the interstitium and peritubular capillaries into separate compartments, allowing no flow across  $x = 0$  or  $x = L$  for the interstitium.
7. What changes in the exchange rates of the four-compartment model of the loop of Henle might better represent the geometry of the loop of Henle, as depicted in Fig. 17.2? *Remark:* Some features to consider include the location of the thickening of the ascending and descending limbs and the location of the junction of the peritubular capillaries with the arcuate vein.
8. Formulate a time-dependent four-compartment model of urine concentration that tracks the concentration of both  $\text{Na}^+$  ions and urea.
9. Develop a numerical computer program to solve the equations of renal flow in the case that both ADH and aldosterone are present. It is preferable to formulate the problem in terms of the unknowns  $S_d$  and  $S_c$  and to expand the system of equations to a fourth-order system by allowing  $S_d(1)$  and  $S_c(1)$  to be unknowns that satisfy the simple differential equations  $\frac{dS_d(1)}{dy} = 0$  and  $\frac{dS_c(1)}{dy} = 0$ . With the four unknowns,  $S_d(y)$ ,  $S_c(y)$ ,  $S_d(1)$ , and  $S_c(1)$ , the Jacobian matrix is a banded matrix, and numerical algorithms to solve banded problems are faster and more efficient than full matrix solvers.
10. Generalize the renal model to include a concentration-dependent  $\text{Na}^+$  pump in the ascending tubule. Does this change in the model guarantee that the flux and concentrations are nowhere negative?

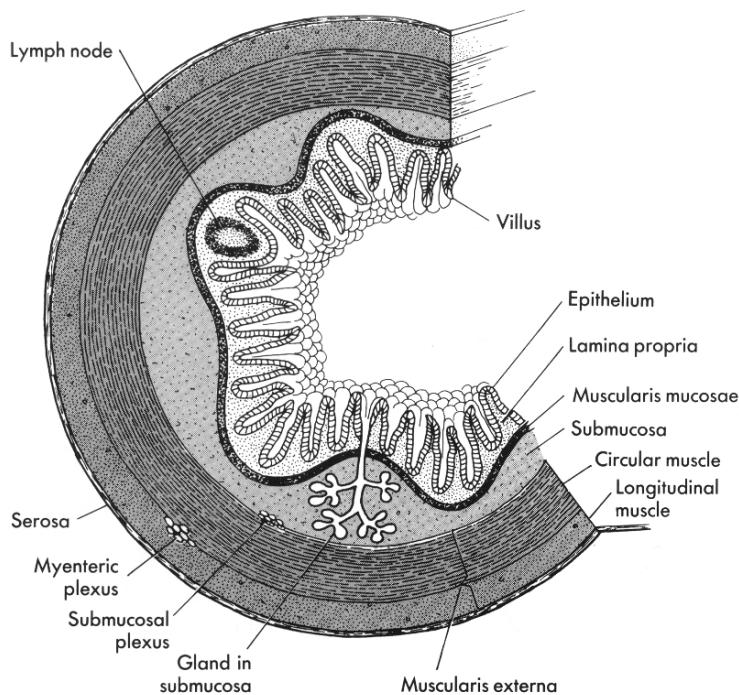
# The Gastrointestinal System

Although the detailed structure of the gastrointestinal tract varies from region to region, there is a common basic structure, outlined in the cross-section shown in Fig. 18.1. It is surrounded by a number of heavily innervated muscle layers, arranged both circularly and longitudinally. Contraction of these muscle layers can mix the contents of the tract and move food in a controlled manner in the appropriate direction. Beneath the muscle layer is the *submucosa*, consisting mostly of connective tissue, and beneath that is a thin layer of smooth muscle called the *muscularis mucosae*. Finally, there is the *lamina propria*, a layer of connective tissue containing capillaries and many kinds of secreting glands, and then a layer of epithelial cells, whose nature varies in different regions of the tract.

In addition to the muscle layers, there are two principal layers of neurons; the myenteric plexus, between the longitudinal and circular muscle layers, and the submucosal plexus, which lies in the submucosa. In general, stimulation of the myenteric plexus increases the rate and intensity of the rhythmic contractions of the gut, and increases the velocity of conduction of waves of excitation along the gut wall. The submucosal plexus is mainly sensory, receiving signals from stretch receptors in the gut wall, and from the gut epithelium. The gastrointestinal tract is also heavily innervated, which can control the activity of the entire gut, or part of it.

## 18.1 Fluid Absorption

The primary function of the gastrointestinal tract is to absorb nutrients from the mix of food and liquid that moves through it. To accomplish this, the absorptive surface of the intestines consists of many folds and bends called *valvulae conniventes*, which increase



**Figure 18.1** Cross-section of the gastrointestinal tract. The outermost layers of the tract consist of smooth muscle, while the innermost layer consists of epithelial cells. The epithelial cell layer contains many gastric pits, glands that secrete hydrochloric acid, and thus the stomach lumen is highly acidic. (Berne and Levy, 1993, Fig. 38-1, p. 616.)

the surface area of the absorptive mucosa about threefold. Located over the entire surface of the mucosa of the small intestine are millions of *villi*, which project about 1 mm from the surface of the mucosa and enhance the absorptive area another tenfold. The absorptive surface of the villi consists of epithelial cells that are characterized by a brush border, consisting of as many as 1000 *microvilli* 1  $\mu\text{m}$  in length and 0.1  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. The brush border increases the surface area exposed to the intestinal material by another twentyfold. The combination of all surface protrusions yields an absorptive surface area of about 250 square meters—about the surface area of a tennis court.

Epithelial cells are responsible for the absorption of nutrients and water from the intestine. The absorption of chemical nutrients, for example glucose and amino acids, is by the same process as in the kidney, via cotransporters with  $\text{Na}^+$ .

For many years, it was believed that water is absorbed, or transported through cells, simply because the membrane is porous to water. In this scenario, the movement of ions, either by passive diffusion or by active transport, sets up osmotic gradients which, in turn, drive the flow of water across the membrane. Recall that this is the basic assumption underlying the cell volume control models described in Chapter 2. However, the discovery in 1992 of transmembrane proteins that allow only (or at least mostly)

water to permeate, called *aquaporins*, has changed this view dramatically (Reuss and Hirst, 2002). The first aquaporin to be discovered was AQP1, discovered in 1992 by Agre and his colleagues (Preston et al., 1992). Agre received the 2003 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for this discovery. Aquaporins have since been identified in practically every living organism, and have such high selectivity to water that they repel even  $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$  and hydrogen ions. The fact that water flow is through transmembrane protein structures means that, although it is driven by osmotic gradients, it is genetically regulated, and that malfunctioning channels may be associated with many diseases of the kidneys, skeletal muscle and other organs. A review by Agre et al. (2002) discusses a number of areas in which the discovery of aquaporins has had a major impact on our understanding of physiology and pathophysiology.

To complicate matters further, there is evidence that water can be transported actively, by cotransport with a solute (Loo et al., 2002; Zeuthen, 2000). This view has been challenged by other researchers, who claim that the water transport is osmotically driven but that the solute accumulates in spatially restricted areas not amenable to experimental access (Lapointe et al., 2002). However, it remains an intriguing possibility that, if true, would necessitate significant rethinking of models of water transport.

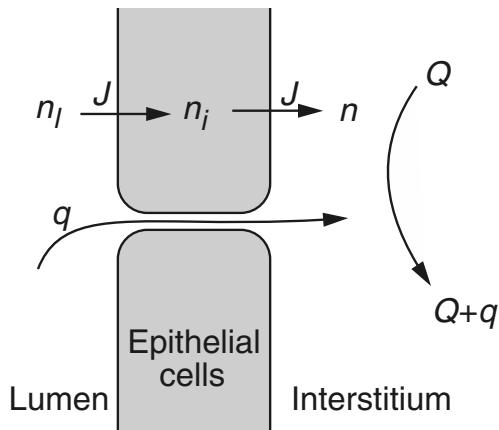
Although the control of absorption and transport of water is perhaps more complicated than first thought, osmosis appears to be the primary driving force. This being the case, one particularly important question arises; how can an epithelial cell layer transport water against its osmotic gradient (*uphill* transport)? Water transport under such conditions is observed in both the gastrointestinal system and the kidney. A related question is the mechanism of *isotonic* transport, in which the transported fluid has the same osmolality of the fluid into which it is transported.

Here we present two models of water transport via osmosis; the first is a simpler model that includes no spatial information, while the second, due to Diamond and Bossert (1967), shows how the maintenance of a standing gradient of solute concentration in a restricted spatial area can lead to isotonic and uphill water transport.

### 18.1.1 A Simple Model of Fluid Absorption

In general, gastrointestinal tract epithelial cells are not permeable to water on their luminal side. However, there are 0.7–1.5 nm pores through the *tight junctions* between epithelial cells that permit water to diffuse readily between the lumen and the interstitium. The absorption of water through these pores is driven primarily by the  $\text{Na}^+$  gradient between the lumen and the interstitium. Sodium is transported to the interior of the epithelial cell by passive transport and then is removed from the interior to the interstitium by a  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase. The  $\text{Na}^+$  is transported from the interstitium by capillary blood flow.

To model the transport of water by the epithelial cell lining, we consider a small section of the epithelial gastrointestinal tract as two well-mixed compartments, the lumen and the interstitium, separated by a membrane (Fig. 18.2). We suppose that the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration in the lumen is  $n_l$  and in the cell interior is  $n_i$ , and that the



**Figure 18.2** Diagram for osmotic transport of water across the epithelial cell wall.  $J$  denotes the flow of  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $q$  denotes the flow of water, and  $Q$  denotes capillary blood flow.

concentration of all osmolites in the interstitium is  $n$ . The flow,  $J$ , of  $\text{Na}^+$  from the lumen to the interior of the cells is assumed to be passive (i.e., we ignore the effects of the membrane potential; see Exercise 1), and so

$$J = g(n_i - n_l), \quad (18.1)$$

for some constant  $g$ . Sodium flux from the cell interior to the interstitium is via an active  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  ATPase,

$$J = f(n_i), \quad (18.2)$$

for some saturating function  $f$ . The flow of water  $q$  through the tight junctions is driven by the osmotic pressure difference between the lumen and the interstitium, so that

$$Rq = n - n_l, \quad (18.3)$$

where  $R$  is the resistance (in appropriate units) of the tight junctions. Finally, we assume that there is a flow into and out of the interstitium provided by capillary flow. The influx of fluid is  $Q$  with an incoming concentration of osmolites  $n_0$ , while the outflow of osmolites is  $Q+q$  at concentration  $n$ . At steady state, the conservation of  $\text{Na}^+$  implies that

$$g(n_l - n_i) = f(n_i) \quad (18.4)$$

and

$$(Q + q)n - Qn_0 = f(n_i). \quad (18.5)$$

The behavior of this system of three algebraic equations is relatively easy to sort out. Since  $f$  is a positive, monotone increasing function of its argument, there is a one-to-one relationship between  $n_l$  and  $n_i$ ,

$$n_l = n_i + \frac{1}{g}f(n_i). \quad (18.6)$$

We can use (18.3) to eliminate  $n$  from (18.5) and obtain

$$Rq^2 + (RQ + n_l)q + Q(n_l - n_0) - f(n_i) = 0. \quad (18.7)$$

Because the rate of  $\text{Na}^+$  removal is dependent on the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration, we take  $f(n) = \frac{Q_f n^3}{N^3 + n^3}$ , for some constants  $Q_f$  and  $N$ .

It is valuable to nondimensionalize this problem by scaling all concentrations by  $N$ , setting  $u_j = n_j/N$  and  $y = q/Q$ . Then (18.7) becomes

$$\rho y^2 + (\rho + u_l)y + \kappa = 0, \quad (18.8)$$

where  $\kappa = u_i - u_0 + (1 - \gamma)\beta F(u_i) = 0$ ,  $\rho = RQ/N$ ,  $\gamma = g/Q$ , and  $\beta = \frac{Q_f}{gN}$ , and (18.6) becomes

$$u_l = u_i + \beta F(u_i), \quad (18.9)$$

where  $F(u) = \frac{u^3}{1+u^3}$ . There are four nondimensional parameters, namely  $u_0$ , the (relative) concentration of incoming interstitial osmolites;  $\rho$ , the resistance of the tight junctions to water;  $\gamma$ , the relative permeability of the luminal cell wall to  $\text{Na}^+$ ; and  $\beta$ , the maximal velocity of active  $\text{Na}^+$  transport (which depends primarily on the density of  $\text{Na}^+$  pumps).

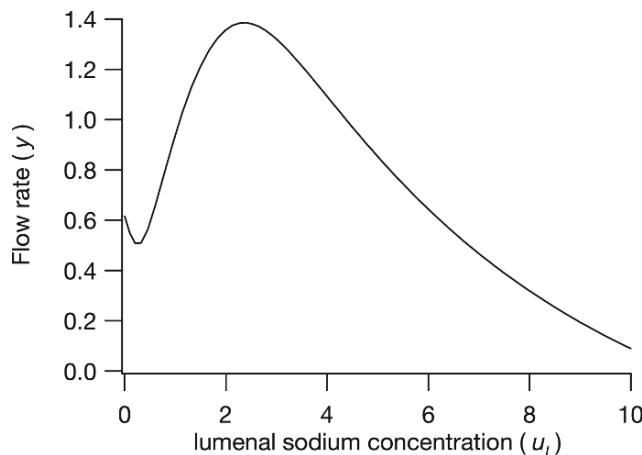
The easiest way to solve these equations for  $y$  as a function of  $u_l$  is to view the solution as the curve  $y = y(u_i)$ ,  $u_l = u_l(u_i)$ , parameterized by  $u_i$ , since for each  $u_i$ ,  $u_l$  is readily determined from (18.9), and then  $y$  is determined from (18.8). Observe that (18.8) is a quadratic polynomial in  $y$  that has at most one positive root. In fact, the larger root of this polynomial is positive if and only if  $\kappa < 0$ . Furthermore, the positive root is a monotone decreasing function of  $\kappa$ .

There are several behaviors of the solution depending on the parameter values. However, the behavior that is of most interest here occurs when  $\beta(\gamma - 1)$  is a large positive number. In this case,  $\kappa$  is an N-shaped function of  $u_i$ , negative at  $u_i = 0$ , increasing for small values of  $u_i$ , then decreasing and finally increasing and eventually becoming positive for large  $u_i$ .

For much of parameter space this N-shaped behavior for  $\kappa$  translates into N-shaped behavior for the positive root of (18.8). That is, with  $u_l = 0$ , there is a positive root. This root initially decreases to a minimal value and then increases to a maximal value, whereupon it decreases and eventually becomes negative, as a function of  $u_l$ . This behavior is depicted in Fig. 18.3, with parameter values  $\rho = u_0 = \beta = 1$ ,  $\gamma = 10$ .

The implications of this are interesting. It implies that one can maximize the absorption of water by adjusting the  $\text{Na}^+$  level of the luminal water. Thus, hydration occurs more quickly with fluids containing electrolytes than with pure water, as many high-performance athletes (such as road cyclists and long-distance runners) already know. However, too much  $\text{Na}^+$  has the opposite effect of dehydrating the interstitium. This is a local effect only, as water is reabsorbed further along the tract.

When a person becomes dehydrated, large amounts of aldosterone are secreted by the adrenal glands. Aldosterone greatly enhances the transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  by epithelial



**Figure 18.3** Flux of water through the epithelial membrane plotted as a function of lumenal  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration, with parameter values  $\rho = u_0 = \beta = 1$ ,  $\gamma = 10$ .

cells by activating the production of channel and pump proteins, which increases the passive and active transport of  $\text{Na}^+$ . Indeed, a person can acclimatize to heavy exercise in hot weather, as over a period of weeks increased aldosterone secretion from the adrenal cortex prevents excessive  $\text{Na}^+$  loss in sweat, thus dispensing with the need for dietary  $\text{Na}^+$  supplements. Loss of  $\text{K}^+$  can still, however, be a problem.

In this model the presence of aldosterone can be modeled by increasing  $g$ , the conductivity of  $\text{Na}^+$  transport from the lumen, and/or by increasing  $Q_f$ , the maximal rate of active  $\text{Na}^+$  pumping. It is easy to see that the total flux of  $\text{Na}^+$   $J = f(n_i)$  and the flux of water  $q$  both increase if either  $g$  or  $Q_f$  (or both) are increased. However, this increase is not without bound, since in the limit  $g \rightarrow \infty$ , we have  $n_i \rightarrow n_l$ , so that

$$\lim_{g \rightarrow \infty} J = f(n_l), \quad (18.10)$$

and

$$\lim_{g \rightarrow \infty} q = Q \left( \frac{n_0}{n_l} - 1 \right) + \frac{f(n_l)}{n_l}, \quad (18.11)$$

when  $R = 0$ . Thus, if a person is dehydrated, aldosterone production works to increase  $\text{Na}^+$  absorption and decrease water loss.

Now we can construct a simple model of water content and  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration as a function of distance along the intestinal length. We suppose that the *chyme* (the mixture of food, water, and digestive secretions entering from the stomach) moves as a plug flow with constant velocity. Water is removed from the chyme by osmosis and  $\text{Na}^+$  is removed by the epithelial cells at local rates determined by the local  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration. In steady state,

$$\frac{dQ_w}{dx} = -q(n_l), \quad (18.12)$$

$$\frac{d(n_l Q_w)}{dx} = -J(n_l), \quad (18.13)$$

where  $Q_w$  is the flow of water in the intestine,  $x$  is the distance along the intestine, and  $q(n_l)$  and  $J(n_l)$  are the removal rates of water and  $\text{Na}^+$ , such as those suggested above. The analysis of this system of equations is straightforward and is left as an exercise (Exercise 2).

There are two common abnormalities that can occur in this process. *Constipation* occurs if the movement of feces through the large intestine is abnormally slow, allowing more time for the removal of water and therefore hardening and drying of the feces. Any pathology of the intestines that obstructs normal movement, including tumors, ulcers, or forced inhibition of normal defecation reflexes, can cause constipation.

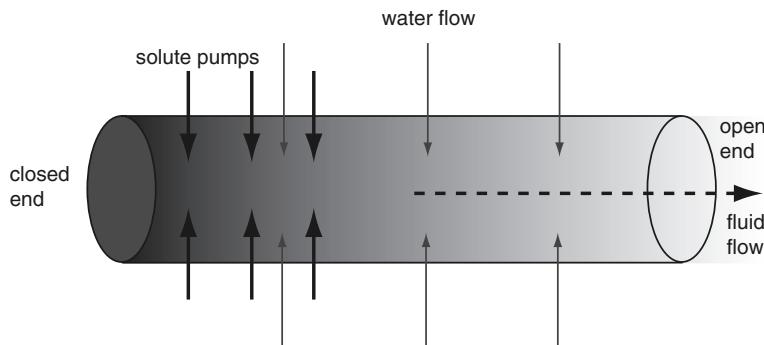
The opposite condition, in which there is rapid movement of the feces through the large intestine, is known as *diarrhea*. There are several causes of diarrhea, the most common of which is infectious diarrhea, in which a viral or bacterial infection causes an inflammation of the mucosa. Wherever it is infected, the rate of secretion of the mucosa is greatly increased, with the net effect that large quantities of fluid are made available to aid in the elimination of the infectious agent.

For example, the toxins of cholera and other diarrheal bacteria stimulate immature epithelial cells (which are constantly being produced) to release large amounts of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water, presumably to combat the disease by washing away the bacteria. However, if this excess secretion of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water cannot be overcome by the absorption by mature, healthy cells, the result can be lethal because of serious dehydration. In most instances, the life of a cholera victim can be saved by intravenous administration of large amounts of  $\text{NaCl}$  solution to make up for the loss.

### 18.1.2 Standing-Gradient Osmotic Flow

In order for water transport to occur by osmosis, it appears at first glance that the extracellular fluid must be hypertonic, i.e., have a higher solute concentration than the cell cytoplasm. For, if it were not, how could water be transported osmotically out of the cell? However, it has been known for many years that many types of epithelia (such as in the intestine and the kidney) are capable of transporting water in the absence of an osmotic gradient, or even against an osmotic gradient. Furthermore, the transported fluid itself is very close to isotonic. Both of these observations are difficult to reconcile with simple theories of solute-linked transport.

To explain such observations, Diamond and Bossert (1967; their model was an extension of the original idea of Curran and MacIntosh, 1962) proposed the standing-gradient osmotic flow model, a model that was, until recently, the basis for most quantitative explanations of solute-linked water transport. The standing-gradient



**Figure 18.4** Schematic diagram of a long, narrow, tube in which solute-linked water transport occurs. The open end is the side to which fluid is secreted.

model was analyzed mathematically by Segel (1970; see also Lin and Segel, 1988), and Weinstein and Stephenson (1981) analyze a slight variant of this model.

One important characteristic of solute-linked water transport by epithelia is that, at the ultrastructural level, such epithelia have long, narrow channels, open at the end out of which water is flowing, and closed at the other end. This channel is sometimes the lateral intercellular space (long, narrow channels between neighboring cells), but it can also be infoldings of the basilar membrane. Because this is such a common feature of transporting epithelial cells, Diamond and Bossert proposed that it was this anatomical feature that was responsible for the ability of epithelia to secrete (almost) isotonic fluid, and they constructed a mathematical model to show how this could be.

Before embarking on the mathematical presentation, it is helpful first to gain an intuitive feel for how such a process works. Suppose we have a long, narrow tube, closed at one end and open at the other, as shown in Fig. 18.4. When solute is actively pumped into the closed end of the tube, the higher solute concentration in this restricted space is not immediately dissipated by diffusion, and thus a localized concentration gradient is set up across the tube wall, drawing water into the tube from the cytoplasm. However, water transport into the tube sets up a flow of water, which washes the solute out of the tube into the extracellular medium. Thus, a localized high solute concentration can be used to drive water flow even in the absence of concentration gradients on a larger spatial scale.

Suppose that solute-linked water transport occurs in a long, narrow, cylindrical tube of length  $L$  and radius  $r$ , closed at one end (Fig. 18.4). Solute is actively transported across the border of the tube, from the cell cytoplasm into the tube, and water follows passively, driven by the osmotic pressure difference.

Let  $N(x)$  be the rate of active solute transport, with units of moles per unit area per unit time, across the boundary of the cylindrical tube. Usually,  $N$  is nonzero only at that portion of the channel close to the closed end. Also, let  $v(x)$  be the velocity of the fluid

flow at point  $x$ , where a positive velocity denotes flow in the direction of increasing  $x$ , and let  $c(x, t)$  be the concentration of the solute in the tube at position  $x$ .

The differential equations for  $c$  and  $v$  are derived by standard conservation arguments (see, for example, Section 14.1.2, or Section 15.3). For a circular tube of radius  $r$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\pi r^2 \frac{\partial c}{\partial t} &= -\pi r^2 \frac{\partial J}{\partial x} + 2\pi r N(x) \\ &= -\pi r^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( vc - D \frac{\partial c}{\partial x} \right) + 2\pi r N(x),\end{aligned}\quad (18.14)$$

since  $J = vc - D \frac{\partial c}{\partial x}$  is the flux per unit area of solute in the tube.

In steady state, this gives

$$D \frac{d^2 c}{dx^2} - \frac{d}{dx}(vc) + \frac{2N(x)}{r} = 0. \quad (18.15)$$

Similarly, the velocity of water along the tube is  $v$ , and the flow per unit area of water entering the tube driven by osmotic pressure is  $P(c(x) - c_0)$ , where  $c_0$  is the concentration of solute everywhere outside the cylindrical tube. Thus, in steady state, conservation of water implies that

$$\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{2P}{r}(c(x) - c_0). \quad (18.16)$$

At the closed end there is no flow of water or solute, and thus

$$v(0) = \frac{dc(0)}{dx} = 0. \quad (18.17)$$

However, because this is a third-order system, we need a third boundary condition. For this we assume that the open end of the channel opens into a large space for which  $c$  is everywhere  $c_0$ , so take

$$c(L) = c_0. \quad (18.18)$$

Notice that this boundary condition is an approximation only; a more accurate model would determine the movement of solute and water in the tube as well as in the surrounding space. However,  $c = c_0$  is a reasonable approximation if solute is quickly transported away from the end of the tube, and is thus forced to remain at a constant concentration there. This is the same approximation that is made in all introductory textbooks that discuss the heat equation for a one-dimensional conducting rod, with ends held at a fixed temperature by a large heat bath. Notice also that a similar problem occurs at the external sides of the tube walls, since anywhere solute is removed, the concentration cannot be identically  $c_0$  there, even though that is the assumption we make.

Several features of the solution can be deduced without completely solving the equations. First, integrating (18.15) and (18.16) over the length of the tube, and applying the boundary conditions, one finds that

$$v(L)c_0 - D \frac{dc(L)}{dx} = \int_0^L \frac{2N(x)}{r} dx, \quad (18.19)$$

and

$$v(L) = \frac{2LP}{r}(\bar{c} - c_0), \quad \bar{c} = \frac{1}{L} \int_0^L c dx. \quad (18.20)$$

The second of these tells us that the higher the average concentration of solute in the tube, the higher the efflux velocity.

The concentration of solute in the efflux,  $c_e$ , is defined to be the rate of total solute pumped into the tube, divided by the total flow out of the tube:

$$c_e = \frac{2\pi r \int_0^L N(x) dx}{\pi r^2 v(L)} = \frac{2 \int_0^L N(x) dx}{rv(L)}. \quad (18.21)$$

Clearly,  $c_e$  is not the same as  $c_0$ . In fact, from (18.19),

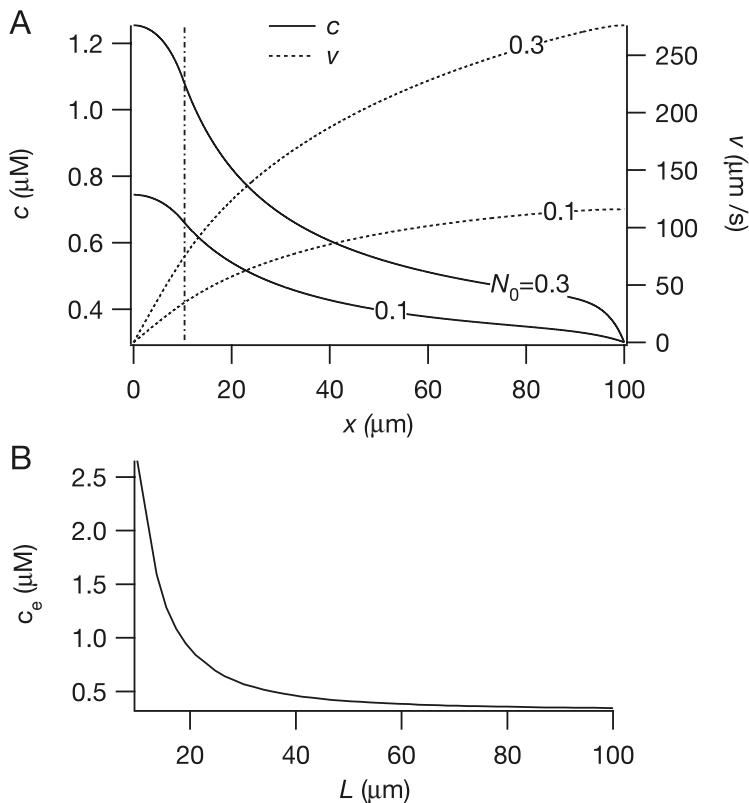
$$c_e = c_0 - \frac{D}{v(L)} \frac{dc(L)}{dx}. \quad (18.22)$$

Thus, the greater the fluid velocity at the mouth of the channel, the lower the efflux concentration, and the closer the efflux fluid is to isotonic.

Some typical solutions are shown in Fig. 18.5. We take  $N(x)$  to be the step function  $N(x) = N_0 H(aL - x)$ , so that solute is pumped into the tube only in the region  $0 < x < aL$ , with  $a = 0.1$ . For  $x > aL$ , the concentration of solute decreases along the length of the tube, and, depending on the parameters, the efflux can be almost isotonic with the background solution. For the parameters given in the caption to Fig. 18.5, the efflux concentration is  $0.434 \mu\text{M}$  when  $N_0 = 0.3$ , and is  $0.344$  when  $N_0 = 0.1$ . As the length of the channel decreases, but with solute actively pumped into only the 10% of the channel closest to the closed end ( $a = 0.1$ ), the efflux concentration increases; for a short channel (with these same parameter values) the efflux concentration can be almost ten times the background concentration. This is because in a short channel the solute diffuses out of the tube relatively rapidly, so that the osmotic driving force is decreased, and there is less space over which osmotic balance can be achieved.

The solutions shown in Fig. 18.5 were computed numerically using a shooting method. Since we know  $v(0) = 0$  and  $\frac{dc(0)}{dx} = 0$ , we can guess a value of  $c(0)$ , and then solve the initial value problem numerically to determine  $c(L)$ . If  $c(L)$  is smaller than  $c_0$ , we increase the initial value for  $c$ , while if  $c(L)$  is too large, we reduce the initial value for  $c$ . Thus, by trial and error (or more systematically, using bisection), we can determine the value  $c(0)$  that gives the correct boundary value at  $L$ .

Although this numerical method is direct, there are difficulties because the problem is stiff. Near  $x = L$ , the solution of the differential equations is close to a saddle point, and shooting into a saddle point is notoriously unstable. Said another way, if  $D$  is small (in a way made precise below), then this problem is singular, since a small number multiplies the largest derivative.



**Figure 18.5** A: The standing concentration gradient of solute in the tube and the associated fluid velocity, computed numerically. Parameters are  $D = 1000 \mu\text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$ ,  $r = 0.05 \mu\text{m}$ ,  $c_0 = 0.3 \mu\text{M}$ ,  $P = 0.2 \mu\text{m s}^{-1} \mu\text{M}^{-1}$ , and  $L = 100 \mu\text{m}$ . Furthermore,  $N(x) = N_0$  on the region  $0 \leq x \leq aL$ ,  $a = 0.1$  (i.e., to the left of the vertical dashed line) and is zero elsewhere. Two different values were used for  $N_0$  (in units of nmoles per square meter per second);  $N_0 = 0.3$  and  $N_0 = 0.1$ . B: The efflux solute concentration as a function of  $L$  with other parameters the same as in A ( $N_0 = 0.1$ ).

Thus, the second way to find solutions of this problem is with perturbation arguments, taking advantage of small parameters. To study the problem in the small diffusion limit (which is the limit in which numerical solutions are most difficult to obtain), we nondimensionalize the problem, setting  $y = \frac{x}{L}$ ,  $u = \frac{c}{c_0}$  and  $w = \frac{vr}{c_0 PL}$ , and substituting into the equations to get

$$\epsilon \frac{d^2 u}{dy^2} - \frac{d}{dy}(wu) = -2n(y), \quad (18.23)$$

$$\frac{dw}{dy} = 2(u - 1), \quad (18.24)$$

where  $\epsilon = \frac{Dr}{L^2 c_0 P}$  and  $n(x) = \frac{N(x)}{c_0^2 P}$ , with the corresponding boundary conditions

$$w(0) = \frac{du}{dy}(0) = 0, \quad (18.25)$$

$$u(1) = 1. \quad (18.26)$$

For the parameter values shown in Fig. 18.5,  $\epsilon = 0.08$ . Notice that while we call this the small diffusion limit, the diffusion coefficient is not really a parameter that can be freely varied, but is fixed for the particular solute. For the analysis that follows  $\epsilon$  is required to be small, and this can be accomplished by many combinations of parameters, including cytoplasmic concentration, permeability, tube length or tube radius, which are not a priori fixed. Thus, we could equally well identify this as the long tube limit or the high permeability limit.

To find the outer solution we set  $\epsilon = 0$ , which gives the reduced system of equations

$$w_o \frac{du_o}{dy} + 2(u_o - 1) = 2n(y), \quad (18.27)$$

$$\frac{dw_o}{dy} = 2(u_o - 1). \quad (18.28)$$

Since this is a second-order system, rather than a third-order system, we can satisfy only two of the three boundary conditions. Which one of the three to drop is not apparent until one examines the boundary layer equations, as is done next. However, in anticipation of that result, we solve the reduced system subject to the conditions  $w_o(0) = \frac{du_o(0)}{dy} = 0$ .

Now, since  $\frac{du_o(0)}{dy} = 0$ , for consistency it must be that

$$u_o(0)(u_o(0) - 1) = n(0). \quad (18.29)$$

The unique positive root of this quadratic equation, say  $u_d$  (which is also greater than 1), is the initial value for  $u_o(y)$ . The solution of the outer problem is now readily determined. If  $n(y)$  is a step function,  $n(y) = n_0 H(a - y)$ , with  $0 < a < 1$ , then for  $0 < y < a$ ,  $u_o$  is constant, and  $w_o(y)$  is linear in  $y$ ,

$$u_o(y) = u_d, \quad w_o(y) = 2(u_d - 1)y. \quad (18.30)$$

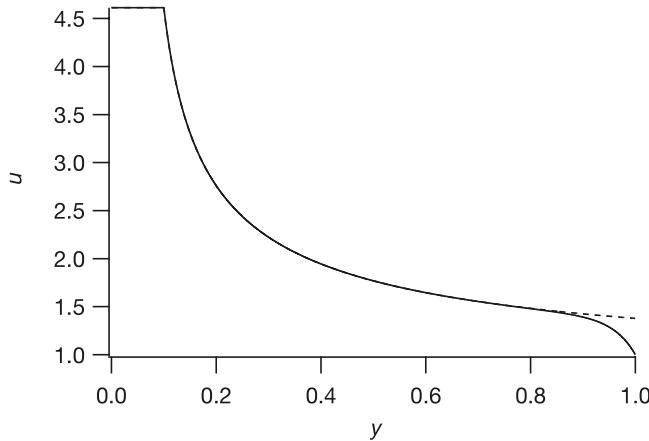
For  $a < y < 1$ ,  $w_o(y)u_o(y) = w_a u_d$ , where  $w_a = w(a) = 2a(u_d - 1)$ . Then,

$$\frac{dw_o}{dy} = 2 \left( \frac{w_a u_d}{w_o} - 1 \right), \quad (18.31)$$

which can be integrated to find

$$-w_o + w_a - w_a u_d \ln \left( \frac{w_o - w_a u_d}{w_a - w_a u_d} \right) = 2(y - a), \quad (18.32)$$

so that  $w_o(y)$  and  $u_o(y)$  are determined implicitly. A plot of this outer solution is shown in Fig. 18.6.



**Figure 18.6** The outer solution  $u_0(y)$  (shown dashed) and uniformly valid composite solution, computed with the same parameter values as in Fig. 18.5, with  $N_0 = 0.3$ . Note that the two solutions agree well everywhere except in the boundary layer close to  $y = 1$ , where the boundary layer correction changes rapidly in order to satisfy the boundary condition at  $y = 1$ .

The outer solution cannot satisfy the boundary condition at  $y = 1$ . In fact,  $u_o(1)$  is certain to be greater than one. To satisfy the condition  $u(1) = 1$ , we seek a boundary layer correction to the outer solution. We introduce the scaled variable

$$\xi = \frac{y - 1}{\epsilon}, \quad (18.33)$$

and in terms of this variable the original system of equations becomes

$$\frac{d^2u}{d\xi^2} - \frac{d}{d\xi}(wu) = -2\epsilon n(y), \quad (18.34)$$

$$\frac{dw}{d\xi} = 2\epsilon(u - 1). \quad (18.35)$$

To leading order in  $\epsilon$ , we have the boundary layer equations

$$\frac{d^2u_i}{d\xi^2} - \frac{d}{d\xi}(w_i u_i) = 0, \quad (18.36)$$

$$\frac{dw_i}{d\xi} = 0, \quad (18.37)$$

where the subscript  $i$  is intended to denote that this is the inner solution. This system is also easily solved:  $w_i$  is constant and clearly must be equal to  $w_o(1)$ , so that the boundary layer equation for  $u_i$  reduces to

$$\frac{d^2u_i}{d\xi^2} - w_o(1)\frac{du_i}{d\xi}u_i = 0, \quad (18.38)$$

with general solution

$$u_i(\xi) = A + B \exp(w_o(1)\xi). \quad (18.39)$$

Now we see why this boundary layer is located at  $y = 1$ . Since the solution  $u_i(\xi)$  is bounded in the limit  $\xi \rightarrow -\infty$ , but not in the limit  $\xi \rightarrow \infty$ , it can be a boundary layer solution only on the right, not the left. We pick the constants  $A$  and  $B$  so that  $u_i(0) = 1$  and so that it matches the outer solution, i.e.,  $\lim_{\xi \rightarrow -\infty} u_i = u_o(1)$ . Thus,

$$u_i(\xi) = u_o(1) + (1 - u_o(1)) \exp(w_o(1)\xi) + O(\epsilon). \quad (18.40)$$

Finally, the composite solution, or uniformly valid solution, is given by

$$u(y) = u_o(y) + (1 - u_o(1)) \exp\left(\frac{1}{\epsilon} w_o(1)(y - 1)\right) + O(\epsilon). \quad (18.41)$$

A plot of this composite solution is also shown in Fig. 18.6.

A different scaling is necessary if the tube is short or permeability is small. As before, we let  $y = \frac{x}{L}$ , and  $u = \frac{c}{c_0}$  but take  $W = \frac{vL}{D}$ , and find

$$\frac{d^2u}{dy^2} - \frac{d}{dy}(Wu) + 2m(x) = 0, \quad (18.42)$$

where  $m(x) = \frac{L^2 N(x)}{Drc_0}$ , and

$$\frac{dW}{dx} = 2\eta(u - 1), \quad (18.43)$$

where  $\eta = \frac{c_0 PL^2}{Dr} = \frac{1}{\epsilon}$ . The boundary conditions are unchanged from before.

With  $\eta \ll 1$ , this is a regular perturbation problem whose solution is readily found as a power series in  $\eta$ . We leave the details of this calculation as an exercise. However, the result is that to leading order in  $\eta$ , but expressed in terms of original dimensional variables,

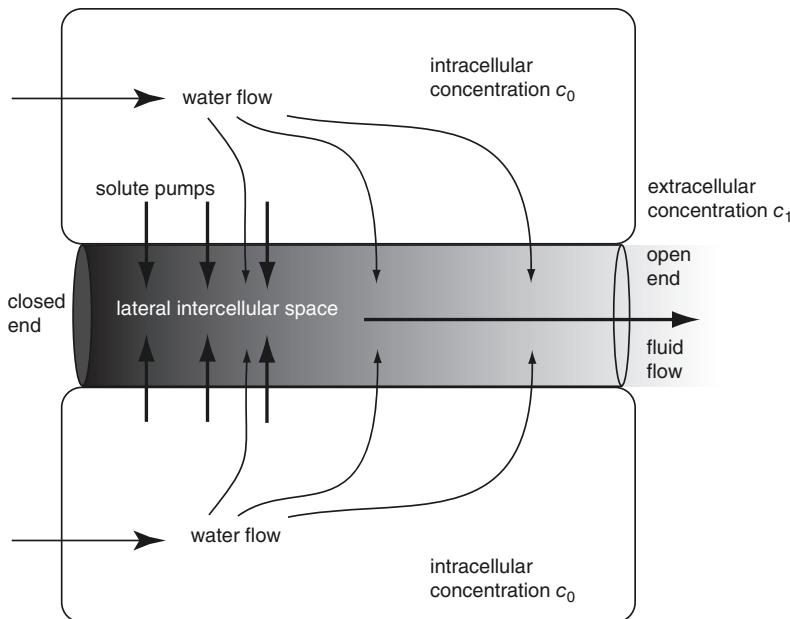
$$\bar{c} = c_0 + \frac{N_0}{Dr} \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}a^2\right)aL^2. \quad (18.44)$$

We recover the efflux velocity from (18.20).

### 18.1.3 Uphill Water Transport

In the model of the previous section, the background concentration everywhere outside the cylindrical tube was assumed to be the same,  $c_0$ . Thus, the model demonstrated that a standing gradient of solute concentration can transport water between regions of identical osmolality, and do so in such a way that the transported fluid is as close to this background osmolality as desired.

However, in many cases an epithelial cell layer can do something even more surprising; it can transport water against an osmotic pressure difference, yet using only osmosis to do so. How this works can be seen by a simple modification of the standing-gradient model (Weinstein and Stephenson, 1981).



**Figure 18.7** Schematic diagram of the standing-gradient model with separated intracellular and extracellular regions.

Instead of assuming that the concentration everywhere outside the cylindrical tube is the same, we divide the external region into intracellular and extracellular regions, with concentrations  $c_0$  and  $c_1$ , respectively (Fig. 18.7), with  $c_0 > c_1$ . The model equations remain the same as previously, with the one exception that the boundary condition for  $c$  at  $x = l$  is  $c(L) = c_1$ .

The solution of this system of equations has the same general features as before, namely solute concentration is a decreasing function of  $x$ . Anywhere that  $c > c_0$ , water is drawn from the cell into the tube, while anywhere that  $c < c_0$ , water is drawn from the tube into the cell. The net flux is determined by (18.20). Accordingly, if the average concentration in the tube is greater than that in the cell, there is a net positive fluid velocity at the open end. Conversely, if the average concentration in the tube is less than that in the cell, there is a net negative fluid velocity at the open end, drawing water into the cell.

So an interesting question is to determine under what conditions there is net fluid outflow when  $c_1 < c_0$ .

In the small diffusion (long tube length) limit, the net flow is always positive, regardless of how small  $c_1$  might be. This is because, in the small diffusion limit, the concentration drops below  $c_0$  only in a thin boundary layer, and the net velocity is affected by this only slightly.

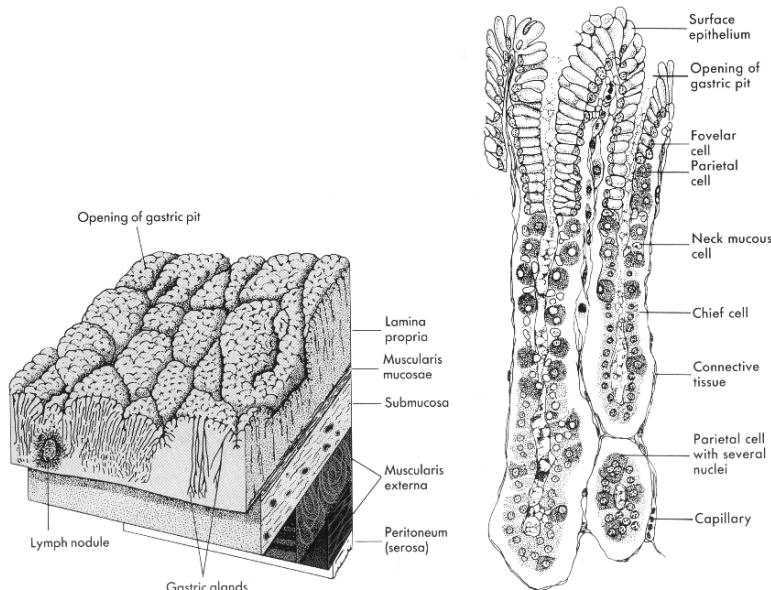
In the small tube length (large diffusion, small permeability) limit, the flow can go either way. It is easy to determine that

$$\bar{c} = c_1 + a \frac{N_0}{r} \frac{L^2}{D} \left(1 - \frac{1}{3} a^2\right), \quad (18.45)$$

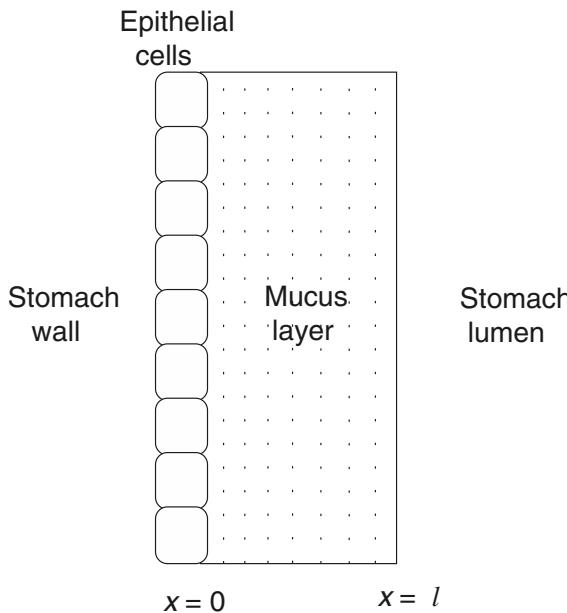
from which the direction of net flow is also easily determined.

## 18.2 Gastric Protection

The inner surface of the gastrointestinal tract is a layer of columnar epithelial cells that actively secrete mucus and a fluid rich in bicarbonate. The mucus is highly viscous and coats the cells with a 0.5–1.0 mm thick layer that is insoluble by other gastric secretions and creates a lubricating boundary for the intestinal wall. In addition, this layer of cells is studded with a large number of gastric pits (Fig. 18.8). Each gastric pit contains *parietal cells* that secrete hydrochloric acid through an active transport process, leading to a pH of about 1 in the stomach lumen. Since the pH of the blood supplying the surface epithelium is about 7.4, there is a large H<sup>+</sup> concentration gradient (approximately a millionfold increase in concentration of hydrogen) across each epithelial cell. Clearly, the epithelial cells must be protected from the high luminal acidity. It is believed that



**Figure 18.8** Closeup view of the gastric mucosa and two gastric pits. The epithelium of the gastric wall contains large numbers of gastric pits, each of which is lined by parietal cells that secrete HCl. (Berne and Levy, 1993, Fig. 39-9, p. 659.)

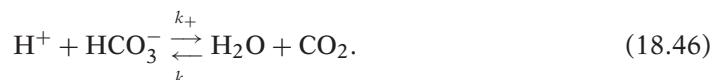


**Figure 18.9** Schematic diagram of the mucus layer in the model of gastric protection.

the secretion of mucus and bicarbonate by epithelial cells plays an important role in gastric protection.

### 18.2.1 A Steady-State Model

To model gastric protection (following Engel et al., 1984) we assume that the luminal surface of the gastric mucosa is a plane located at  $x = 0$ , where  $x$  is a coordinate measured perpendicular to the mucosal wall, while the mucus layer is of uniform thickness  $l$ . Thus, the mucus–lumen interface lies at  $x = l$ , as illustrated in Fig. 18.9. Inside the mucus layer  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  react according to



This bicarbonate buffering system is one of the most important buffering systems in the body, and its role in the transport of carbon dioxide is discussed in Chapter 14.

In the time-dependent problem, each species obeys a reaction–diffusion equation, such as

$$\frac{\partial [\text{H}^+]}{\partial t} = D_{\text{H}^+} \frac{\partial^2 [\text{H}^+]}{\partial x^2} - k_+ [\text{H}^+] [\text{HCO}_3^-] + k_- [\text{CO}_2], \quad (18.47)$$

where  $D_{\text{H}^+}$  is the diffusion coefficient of  $\text{H}^+$  in the mucus layer. However, at steady state the time derivatives are zero, and the partial derivatives with respect to  $x$  become

ordinary derivatives. Thus, at steady state,

$$D_{\text{H}^+} \frac{d^2 [\text{H}^+]}{dx^2} = D_{\text{HCO}_3^-} \frac{d^2 [\text{HCO}_3^-]}{dx^2} = k_+ [\text{H}^+] [\text{HCO}_3^-] - k_- [\text{CO}_2], \quad (18.48)$$

$$D_{\text{CO}_2} \frac{d^2 [\text{CO}_2]}{dx^2} = -k_+ [\text{H}^+] [\text{HCO}_3^-] + k_- [\text{CO}_2]. \quad (18.49)$$

To complete the formulation of the problem we add boundary conditions at the epithelial and luminal boundaries of the mucus layer. On the luminal side we assume that  $[\text{H}^+] = [\text{H}^+]_l$  and  $[\text{CO}_2] = [\text{CO}_2]_l$  are constant and known, determined by the concentration of the contents of the gastrointestinal tract, while  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  is given by the equilibrium relation

$$[\text{HCO}_3^-]_l = \frac{k_-}{k_+} \frac{[\text{CO}_2]_l}{[\text{H}^+]_l}. \quad (18.50)$$

On the epithelial side we assume that the fluxes of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  are known, as these chemicals are actively secreted by the epithelial cells, and thus, from Fick's law,

$$D_{\text{HCO}_3^-} \frac{d [\text{HCO}_3^-]}{dx} = -\bar{J}, \quad (18.51)$$

$$D_{\text{CO}_2} \frac{d [\text{CO}_2]}{dx} = -\bar{I}, \quad (18.52)$$

at  $x = 0$ , for some known constants  $\bar{J}$  and  $\bar{I}$ . Finally, we assume that the flux of  $\text{H}^+$  across the boundary at  $x = 0$  is proportional to the concentration difference across the boundary; i.e.,

$$D_{\text{H}^+} \frac{d [\text{H}^+]}{dx} = P_{\text{H}^+} ([\text{H}^+] - [\text{H}^+]_{\text{epi}}), \quad (18.53)$$

where  $P_{\text{H}^+}$  is the permeability and  $[\text{H}^+]_{\text{epi}}$  is the concentration of  $\text{H}^+$  in the epithelial cells. Since the concentration of  $\text{H}^+$  in the epithelial cells is low compared to the concentration external to the cell, we set  $[\text{H}^+]_{\text{epi}}$  to zero, and thus require

$$D_{\text{H}^+} \frac{d [\text{H}^+]}{dx} = P_{\text{H}^+} [\text{H}^+] \quad (18.54)$$

at  $x = 0$ .

To study this system of equations, we introduce nondimensional variables  $y = x/l$ ,  $u = [\text{H}^+]/[\text{H}^+]_l$ ,  $v = [\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{H}^+]_l$ ,  $w = [\text{CO}_2]/[\text{H}^+]_l$ , in terms of which the model becomes

$$\epsilon \frac{d^2 u}{dy^2} = uv - \zeta w, \quad (18.55)$$

$$\frac{d^2 u}{dy^2} = \gamma \frac{d^2 v}{dy^2} = -\beta \frac{d^2 w}{dy^2}, \quad (18.56)$$

where  $\beta = D_{\text{CO}_2}/D_{\text{H}^+}$ ,  $\gamma = D_{\text{HCO}_3^-}/D_{\text{H}^+}$ ,  $\epsilon = \frac{D_{\text{H}^+}}{k_+ l^2 [\text{H}^+]_l}$ ,  $\zeta = \frac{k_-}{k_+ [\text{H}^+]_l}$ . The boundary conditions at  $y = 1$  ( $x = l$ ) are

$$u(1) = 1, \quad v(1) = \zeta \alpha, \quad w(1) = \alpha, \quad (18.57)$$

and the boundary conditions at  $y = 0$  are

$$\frac{du}{dy}(0) = \lambda u(0), \quad \gamma \frac{dv}{dy}(0) = -J, \quad \beta \frac{dw}{dy}(0) = -I, \quad (18.58)$$

where  $\alpha = \frac{[\text{CO}_2]_l}{[\text{H}^+]_l}$ ,  $J = \frac{\bar{J}l}{D_{\text{H}^+}[\text{H}^+]_l}$ ,  $I = \frac{\bar{I}l}{D_{\text{H}^+}[\text{H}^+]_l}$ ,  $\lambda = \frac{P_{\text{H}^+}l}{D_{\text{H}^+}}$ . Integrating (18.56) from 0 to  $y$  and using the boundary conditions (18.58) we obtain

$$\frac{du}{dy} - \lambda u(0) = \gamma \frac{dv}{dy} + J = -\beta \frac{dw}{dy} - I. \quad (18.59)$$

Integrating (18.58) from  $y$  to 1 and applying the boundary conditions (18.57) gives

$$u - 1 - \lambda u(0)(y - 1) = \gamma(v - \zeta \alpha) + J(y - 1) = -\beta(w - \alpha) - I(y - 1). \quad (18.60)$$

From this we obtain  $v$  and  $w$  as functions of  $u$  and  $y$ :

$$v(y) = \zeta \alpha + \frac{1}{\gamma}[u(y) - 1 - (\lambda u(0) + J)(y - 1)], \quad (18.61)$$

and

$$w(y) = \alpha - \frac{1}{\beta}[u(y) - 1 + (I - \lambda u(0))(y - 1)]. \quad (18.62)$$

Thus, we can write the model as

$$\epsilon \frac{d^2u}{dy^2} = uv - \zeta w = f(u(y), y), \quad (18.63)$$

$$\frac{du}{dy}(0) = \lambda u(0), \quad u(1) = 1. \quad (18.64)$$

From the molecular weights of the chemicals, we estimate  $\beta \approx 0.14$  and  $\gamma \approx 0.13$ . The forward and reverse rates of the bicarbonate reaction are, respectively,  $k_- = 11 \text{ s}^{-1}$  and  $k_+ = 2.6 \times 10^{10} \text{ cm}^3 \cdot \text{mol}^{-1} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ . Other experimentally determined quantities include  $\bar{J} = 1.4 \times 10^{-10} \text{ mol} \cdot \text{cm}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ ,  $[\text{H}^+]_l = 140 \text{ mM}$ ,  $l = 0.05 \text{ cm}$ ,  $D_{\text{H}^+} = 1.75 \times 10^{-5} \text{ cm}^2 \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ , and  $P_{\text{H}^+} = 1.3 \times 10^{-5} \text{ cm} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$ . From these parameter values we see that  $\epsilon = O(10^{-7})$  and  $\zeta = O(10^{-6})$  are small parameters, while  $\lambda = 0.037$  and  $J = 0.0003$ .

We now use singular perturbation theory to solve this two-point boundary value problem. This approach is possible because  $\epsilon$ , which is the ratio of the rate of diffusion through the mucus to the rate of reaction, is small. Outside of a thin layer the bicarbonate reaction is in a pseudo-steady state at each point in space; in this region, diffusion of hydrogen ions or bicarbonate plays little role. It is only within the thin layer that the bicarbonate concentration is determined by the balance of reaction and diffusion. This allows the representation of the solution in two different spatial variables, one

describing the solution outside this thin layer, and one describing the solution inside it. The solutions are then matched to obtain a uniformly valid solution. As described below, although the bicarbonate reaction is in local chemical equilibrium outside the thin layer, the bulk of the reaction actually occurs within the thin layer. For the parameter values used here, the thin layer occurs at  $y = 0$ , but this need not necessarily be so. If the acidity of the lumen is low enough, the thin reaction layer occurs within the mucus layer (see Exercise 4).

### The Outer Solution

We look for a solution of the form

$$u = u_0 + \epsilon u_1 + \dots, \quad (18.65)$$

substitute into the differential equation, and equate coefficients of powers of  $\epsilon$ . This gives a hierarchy of equations for the outer solution. To lowest order in  $\epsilon$  we have

$$0 = f(u_0, y), \quad (18.66)$$

$$\frac{du_0}{dy}(0) = \lambda u_0(0), \quad u_0(1) = 1. \quad (18.67)$$

Obviously, both boundary conditions cannot be satisfied, so we drop the boundary condition at  $y = 0$  and keep the boundary condition at  $y = 1$ . There are good physical reasons for this choice. As discussed above, the balance of reaction and diffusion is important only in a thin layer around  $y = 0$ . Thus, if we ignore diffusion (by setting  $\epsilon = 0$ ) we do not expect to be able to satisfy the boundary condition at  $y = 0$ . (This is also the correct mathematical choice, because, as is discussed below, there is a “corner layer” at  $y = 0$ ; the other choice, ignoring the boundary condition at  $y = 1$ , fails to produce a valid solution.)

The equation  $f(u_0, y) = 0$  is the quadratic polynomial in  $u_0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \beta u_0^2 + [\xi\gamma(\alpha\beta + 1) - \beta + \beta(J + \lambda u_0(0))(1 - y)]u_0 \\ + \xi\gamma[(\lambda u_0(0) - I)(1 - y) - \alpha\beta - 1] = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (18.68)$$

so it can be solved exactly. The easiest way to represent this solution is to find  $y$  as a function of  $u_0$ , since (18.68) is linear in  $y$ . However, because  $\xi$  is small, we find that

$$u_0(y) = 1 + (\lambda u_0(0) + J)(y - 1) + O(\xi), \quad (18.69)$$

and

$$v = O(\xi). \quad (18.70)$$

Next we set  $y = 0$  in (18.68) and solve for  $u_0(0)$  to get

$$u_0(0) = \frac{1 - J}{1 + \lambda} + O(\xi), \quad (18.71)$$

from which it follows that

$$u_0(y) = 1 - \frac{\lambda + J}{\lambda + 1}(1 - y) + O(\xi), \quad (18.72)$$

$$w(y) = \alpha + \frac{J + I}{\beta}(1 - y) + O(\xi). \quad (18.73)$$

Hence, to leading order, there is no  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in the mucus layer, and  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  vary linearly with distance through the mucus layer.

### The Inner Solution

The outer solution (18.72) does not satisfy the boundary condition at  $y = 0$ . A uniformly valid solution of this problem must include a “corner layer,” that is, a solution with large second derivative, which therefore changes slope, but not value (at least to lowest order), in a small region close to  $y = 0$ . The corner layer here results from the fact that the boundary condition at  $y = 0$  is expressed in terms of the derivative of  $u$  at 0. Hence, to satisfy the boundary condition, the derivative of  $u$  must change quickly. It is beyond the scope of this book to give a detailed description of the construction of this corner layer (see Engel et al., 1984, or, for a more general description, Keener, 1998, or Holmes, 1995). Suffice it to say that the corner layer is found by introducing a scaled variable  $\tilde{y} = y/\sqrt{\epsilon}$  (which eliminates  $\epsilon$  from the second derivative term in (18.63)) and then seeking a power series solution in powers of  $\sqrt{\epsilon}$ . The result is a modification of the outer solution by the addition of a term of the form

$$\sqrt{\epsilon}e^{-\mu y/\sqrt{\epsilon}}, \quad (18.74)$$

which is of small amplitude and satisfies the boundary condition at the origin. As a result, to leading order in  $\epsilon$ , the outer solution provides a uniformly valid representation of the solution on the entire interval  $0 < y < 1$ . A sketch of the solution is given in Fig. 18.10.

### Physical Interpretation of the Corner Layer

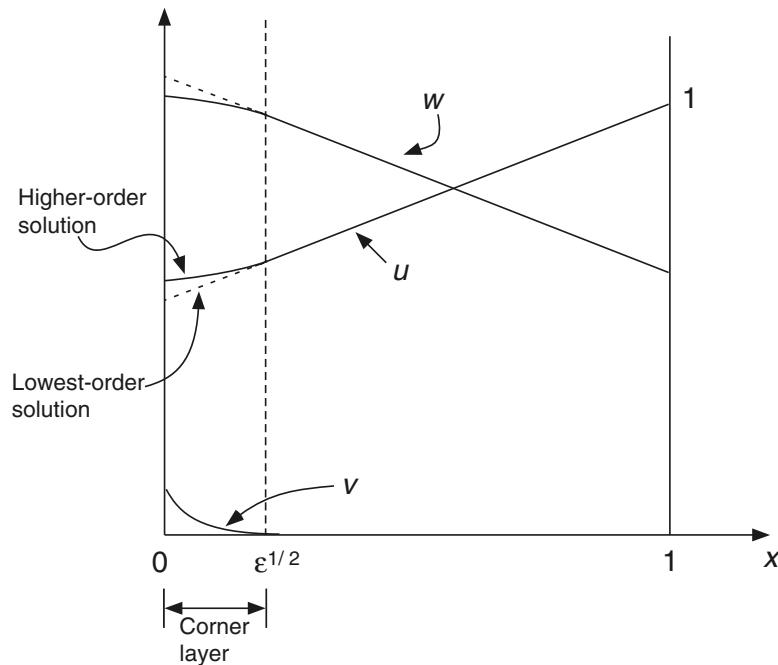
There is an interesting interpretation of the corner layer in terms of the physiology of the problem. Recall that the boundary conditions at  $y = 0$  for the original problem are

$$\frac{du}{dy}(0) = \lambda u(0), \quad \gamma \frac{dv}{dy}(0) = -J, \quad \beta \frac{dw}{dy}(0) = -I. \quad (18.75)$$

The outer solution does not satisfy these boundary conditions. Instead, if we evaluate the derivatives of the outer solution to leading order, we find that

$$\frac{du_0}{dy}(0) = \lambda u_0(0) + J, \quad \frac{dv_0}{dy}(0) = 0, \quad \beta \frac{dw_0}{dy}(0) = -I + J. \quad (18.76)$$

In other words, to lowest order, the bicarbonate flux  $J$  can be replaced by a flux of hydrogen ions in the opposite direction with the same magnitude, and the  $\text{CO}_2$  flux must be altered to compensate. Thus the original problem, which has a bicarbonate source at  $y = 0$ , is replaced by a simpler problem that has a  $\text{H}^+$  sink and a  $\text{CO}_2$  source



**Figure 18.10** Sketch (not to scale) of the solution to the model of gastric protection. (Adapted from Engel et al., 1984, Fig. 10.)

at  $y = 0$  and no  $\text{H}^+ - \text{HCO}_3^-$  reaction. This implies that each bicarbonate molecule that exits the epithelium reacts immediately with a hydrogen ion, with the consequent disappearance of the hydrogen ion. Hence, to lowest order, all the chemical reaction occurs within the corner layer.

In dimensional variables, the outer solution is

$$[\text{H}^+] = [\text{H}^+]_l - \frac{\bar{J} + P_{\text{H}^+} [\text{H}^+]_l}{D_{\text{H}^+} + P_{\text{H}^+} l} (l - x), \quad (18.77)$$

$$[\text{CO}_2] = [\text{CO}_2]_l + \frac{\bar{J} + \bar{I}}{D_{\text{CO}_2}} (l - x), \quad (18.78)$$

and thus, at the epithelial surface,

$$[\text{H}^+]_0 = \frac{D_{\text{H}^+} [\text{H}^+]_l - \bar{J} l}{D_{\text{H}^+} + P_{\text{H}^+} l}. \quad (18.79)$$

Using experimentally determined values for the parameters, we find that  $[\text{H}^+]_0 = 135 \text{ mM}$ , a decrease of only 3.5%, which is too small to protect the epithelial cells from high luminal acidity. Thus, this simple model of the mucus layer is insufficient to explain how the epithelial layer is protected.

### 18.2.2 Gastric Acid Secretion and Neutralization

The primary difficulty with the above model of gastric protection is that the flux of bicarbonate,  $J$ , is too small to cause a sufficient reduction of hydrogen ions at the surface of the epithelial cells. A model that addresses this shortcoming by examining the relationship between hydrochloric acid secretion and the release of bicarbonate was constructed by Lacker and his coworkers (de Beus et al., 1993).

Hydrochloric acid is secreted from the parietal cells of the oxyntic glands using a number of reactions. First, water in the cells is dissociated into hydrogen and hydroxyl ions in the cell cytoplasm. The hydrogen ions are actively secreted via a  $H^+ - K^+$  ATPase. In addition, chloride ions are actively secreted and  $Na^+$  ions are actively absorbed, via separate ATPases. The result is a high concentration of hydrochloric acid in the lumen. At the same time, carbon dioxide combines with hydroxyl ions (catalyzed by carbonic anhydrase) to form carbonic acid and thence bicarbonate. This bicarbonate diffuses out of the cell into the extracellular medium and is transported by the capillary blood flow. The direction of capillary blood flow is from the oxyntic cell in the gastric pit to the epithelial lining of the lumen. Since the epithelial cells are downstream of the oxyntic cells, they absorb bicarbonate from the blood and then secrete it into the mucus. Thus, as acid production increases, so does the rate at which bicarbonate is secreted into the lumen by the epithelial cells. According to de Beus et al., the lack of this feature in the Engel model caused an underestimation of the rate of bicarbonate secretion from the epithelial layer.

De Beus et al. estimated the model parameters from the available experimental literature and showed that analytic solutions in certain simplified cases agreed well with the full solution. Of particular interest is their reproduction of the *alkaline tide*. As the rate of  $H^+$  secretion into the lumen increases, the downstream  $[H^+]$  (i.e., the gastric venous  $[H^+]$ ) decreases. This reinforces the major idea behind this model, that secretion of  $HCO_3^-$  by the epithelial cells is driven by  $H^+$  secretion by the oxyntic cells, so that gastric protection is automatically increased as the luminal  $[H^+]$  increases.

Over longer time scales the secretion of gastric acid is controlled by a complex network of positive and negative feedback processes involving the enteric and central nervous systems and a number of different cell types. For example, food stimulates the production of gastrin by G cells, which in turn stimulates the production of  $H^+$  from parietal cells. However, gastrin also stimulates the production of somatostatin from D cells (in the corpus of the stomach) which inhibits the production of  $H^+$  from the parietal cells. Gastrin also acts on enterochromaffin-like cells (ECL cells) in the corpus to stimulate the secretion of histamine, which enhances acid secretion and potentiates the effect of gastrin on parietal cells. To further complicate matters, D cells in the antrum produce somatostatin in response to high  $H^+$  concentrations to form another negative feedback loop by inhibiting the production of gastrin by the antral G cells.

In addition to these control mechanisms, the numbers of G, ECL, D and parietal cells are controlled by additional feedback mechanisms that operate over a time scale

of days to weeks, so that gastric acid secretion can be modulated by long-term changes in food ingestion.

A complicated model of this system has been constructed and analyzed by Joseph et al., (2002). Their principal conclusion was that the action of somatostatin was the most crucial feedback mechanism for maintaining a stable acid balance in the stomach.

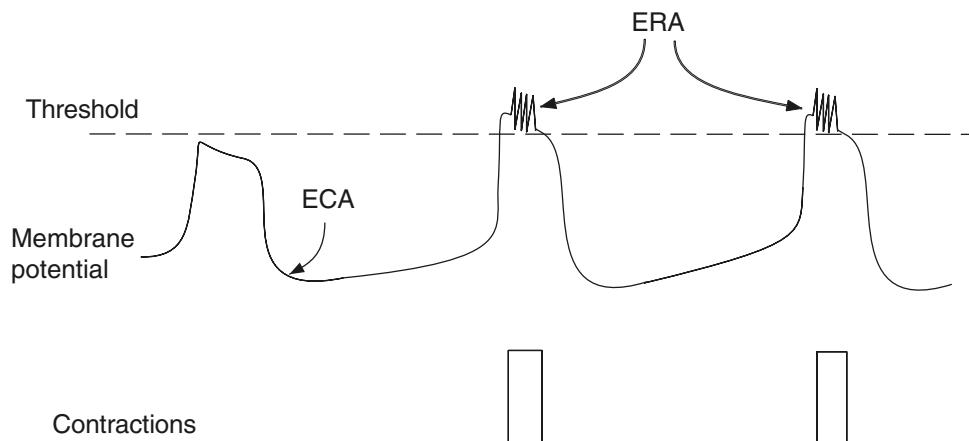
## 18.3 Coupled Oscillators in the Small Intestine

One principal function of the gastrointestinal tract is to mix ingested food and move it through the tract in the appropriate direction. It does this by contraction of the layers of smooth muscle illustrated in Fig. 18.1, contractions that are controlled on a number of different levels. At the lowest level, each smooth muscle cell has intrinsic electrical activity, which can be oscillatory in nature. At higher levels, the properties of the local oscillations are modified by extrinsic and intrinsic neuronal stimulation, or chemical stimuli. Different parts of the tract have different kinds of contractile behavior. Here, we focus on the electrical activity of the smooth muscle of the small intestine. The small intestine is itself divided into three different sections: the first 25 cm or so after the pylorus (the passage from the stomach to the small intestine, controlled by the pyloric sphincter) is called the *duodenum*; the next section, comprising about 40% of the length of the small intestine, is called the *jejunum*; while the remainder is called the *ileum*. However, although this nomenclature is useful for understanding some of the experimental results we present here, we do not distinguish between the electrical activity of different sections of the small intestine.

### 18.3.1 Temporal Control of Contractions

Smooth muscle cells throughout the gastrointestinal tract exhibit oscillations in their membrane potential, with periods ranging from 2 to 40 cycles/min. A typical example of this *electrical control activity*, or ECA, is shown in Fig. 18.11. Although depolarization of the cell membrane potential can cause muscular contractions, this happens only if the membrane potential is depolarized past a threshold, in which case the potential begins to oscillate, or burst, at a much higher frequency. Whether or not bursting occurs depends on the level of neuronal or chemical stimulation. In this way, contractile activity depends on the local oscillatory properties of the smooth muscle cells, as well as on the higher-level control processes. Electrical bursts are termed *electrical response activity*, or ERA. Muscular contractions cannot occur with a frequency greater than that of the ECA, and thus the properties of the local ECA constrain the possible types of muscular contraction.

Often, when faced with cellular oscillators, modelers seek to understand the cellular mechanisms that cause such behavior; this book contains many examples of this approach. Here, by contrast, we examine what happens when a large number of oscillators are coupled to one another, without concern for the exact mechanisms underlying each



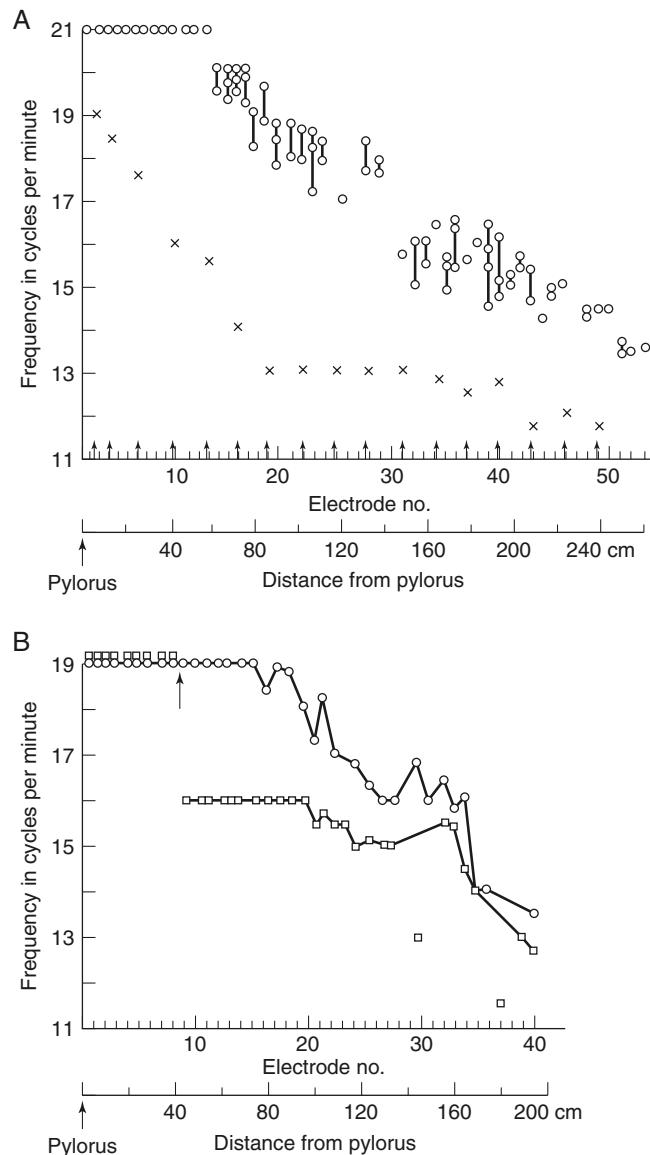
**Figure 18.11** Schematic diagram of electrical control activity (ECA), electrical response activity (ERA), and muscular contraction. (Adapted from Sarna, 1989, Fig. 2.)

oscillation. Although this approach cannot determine a direct relationship between cellular properties and global behavior, it provides greater insight into how coupled oscillators can give rise to organized wave activity of the type that is frequently seen in the stomach and small intestine.

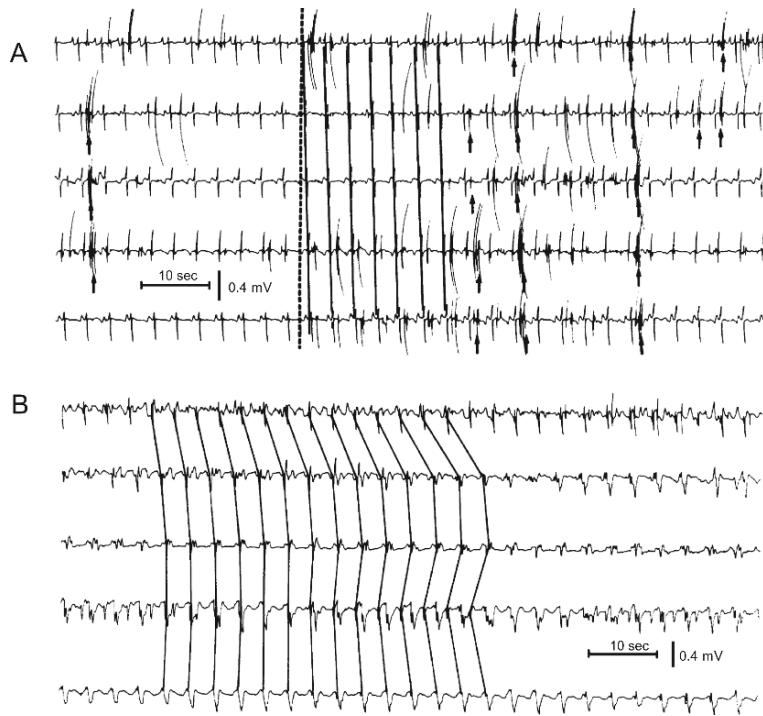
### 18.3.2 Waves of Electrical Activity

If each local oscillator were uncoupled from its neighbors, we expect there would be no organized waves of contraction moving along the intestine. However, the main point of this section is that weak coupling between the oscillators causes the propagation of waves of ECA and ERA along the intestine.

The importance of coupling between the local oscillators is demonstrated in the top panel of Fig. 18.12, where is shown the experimentally measured frequency of segments of the small intestine in the intact intestine, and in segments that have been dissociated from one another by circumferential cuts across the intestine. In the intact intestine, the frequency of the ECA is constant over the entire region close to the pylorus, even though the intrinsic frequency is steadily decreasing over this region. At approximately 60 cm from the pylorus the ECA frequency begins to decrease. In the frequency plateau (the region of constant frequency) region, each oscillator is phase-locked to its neighbor, resulting in organized waves that move along the intestine away from the pylorus. This is illustrated in the top panel of Fig. 18.13, where the oscillation peaks in neighboring parts of the intestine are connected by solid lines. The slope of the solid line gives the speed of the wave along the intestine, and the fact that subsequent lines are regularly spaced, parallel and straight, shows that the waves are repetitive and highly organized. Following the frequency plateau is a region where the ECA frequency decreases along



**Figure 18.12** A: Intact (circles) and intrinsic frequency (crosses) of ECA in dog small intestine. The intrinsic frequencies were obtained by cutting across the small intestine at the places indicated by the arrows so as to disrupt oscillator coupling. B: The effect of a single cut (at the arrow) across the small intestine. To the right of the cut a frequency plateau still occurs, but now at a lower frequency than in the intact intestine. To the left of the cut the frequencies are unchanged. (Sarna, 1989, Fig. 10.)

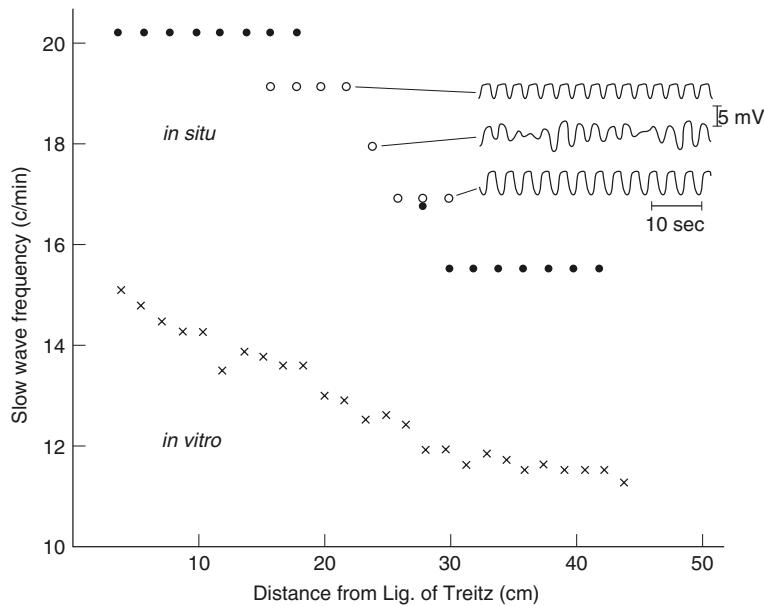


**Figure 18.13** Experimental recordings from dog small intestine. A: Recordings taken from the frequency plateau region close to the pylorus. Solid lines connect the peaks of the ERA; these lines are straight and parallel, indicating the propagation of regular wave trains in this region. B: Recordings taken from the variable frequency region. The peaks of the ERA are not well organized, indicating that regular wave propagation has broken down. (Sarna, 1989, Fig. 11 A and B.)

the intestine, and the corresponding waves are not phase-locked and therefore much less regular (lower panel of Fig. 18.13).

Note that phase locking (i.e., oscillation with the same frequency) does not necessarily imply that there is wave-like behavior. A *phase wave* occurs when there is a constant advance (or delay) of phase from one point to the next along the length of the intestine.

When the segments are uncoupled, each shows oscillatory ECA, but with an intrinsic frequency that decreases with distance from the pylorus; the frequency plateau disappears in the isolated segments. It appears that in the intact intestine, the highest-frequency segment closest to the pylorus entrains the nearby oscillators, which have similar but lower frequencies. However, when the difference in intrinsic frequency is too large, entrainment is not possible: the frequency plateau breaks down, and the waves lose regularity. This is illustrated further in the lower panel of Fig. 18.12, which



**Figure 18.14** Frequency of the ECA in the cat. As the distance from the ligament of Treitz increases, the *in vitro* measurements (crosses) show a steady decline in frequency, while the *in vivo* measurements (open and filled circles) show clear frequency plateaus. (Diamant and Bortoff, 1969, Fig. 2.) (The ligament of Treitz marks the beginning of the jejunum.)

shows the effect of a single cut in the intestine part of the way along the frequency plateau. To the left of the cut, the ECA frequency is entrained to the same high frequency as that of the frequency plateau in the intact intestine. To the right of the cut, a new frequency plateau emerges as the highest-frequency oscillator again entrains its neighbors. In this case the frequency of the second plateau is lower than that of the first, as it is entrained to an oscillator with a lower frequency, but it extends further to the right, into the region where the intact intestine has a variable ECA frequency.

There is some evidence to suggest that ECA frequency decreases along the intestine in a stepwise fashion, and this is illustrated in Fig. 18.14. The frequency plateaus are separated by regions where the amplitude of the oscillation is variable. Often, however, the wave activity in subsequent plateaus is less organized than in the first, as the oscillations are not so closely phase-locked.

### 18.3.3 Models of Coupled Oscillators

The two primary means by which the waves of electrical activity in the intestine have been studied are with numerical simulations of large coupled systems of oscillators and with rigorous mathematical analysis of approximating “phase equations.”

## Numerical Investigations

A number of investigators have used numerical simulations to study the behavior of chains of coupled oscillators in the small intestine (Nelsen and Becker, 1968; Diamant et al., 1970; Sarna et al., 1971; Robertson-Dunn and Linkens, 1974; Brown et al., 1975; Patton and Linkens, 1978). As a typical example, Diamant et al. (1970) coupled from 5 to 25 van der Pol oscillators with frequencies that decreased along the chain. Each oscillator was coupled to its nearest neighbor with the lower frequency in a procedure called forward coupling, and the coupling was assumed to be resistive. Numerical simulations showed that the oscillators are organized into frequency plateaus, whose lengths increased as the coupling strength increased. Because the coupling was in the forward direction only, the frequency plateaus lay above the intrinsic frequencies of the individual oscillators. The frequency plateaus were separated by regions in which the local frequency waxed and waned.

## The Phase Equations

The mathematical study of waves of electrical activity on the small intestine begins with the assumption that there are  $n + 1$  coupled oscillators, described by the system of equations

$$\frac{du_i}{dt} = F_i(u_i) + \epsilon \sum_{j=1}^{n+1} a_{ij} H(u_j), \quad (18.80)$$

where  $u_i$  is the vector of independent variables describing the  $i$ th oscillator, and where  $a_{ij}$  are the coupling coefficients. The oscillators are assumed to be nearly identical, so that the behavior of each oscillator is described approximately by some periodic function, denoted by  $u_i = U(\omega(\epsilon)t + \delta\theta_i(t))$ , where  $\delta\theta_i$  is the *phase shift* of the oscillator and is presumed to be slowly varying. Then, the equations (18.80) can be reduced (using multiscale or averaging techniques) to equations describing the phase shifts of the individual oscillators, of the form

$$\frac{d}{d\tau} \delta\theta_i = \xi_i - \Omega_1 + \sum_{j=1}^{n+1} a_{ij} h(\delta\theta_j - \delta\theta_i) + O(\epsilon^2), \quad i = 1, \dots, n+1, \quad (18.81)$$

for some periodic function  $h$ , where  $\tau = \epsilon t$  is a slow time. The phase equations are asymptotically valid in the limit that the coupling is weak and the oscillators are similar. A derivation of the phase equations is given in Section 12.7, where the function  $h$  and the constants  $\xi_i$  and  $\Omega_1$  are determined. As a reminder, recall that  $2\pi(1 + \epsilon\xi_i)$  is the natural (uncoupled) frequency of the  $i$ th oscillator, and that  $\omega(\epsilon) = 1 + \epsilon\Omega_1 + O(\epsilon^2)$ .

When each oscillator is coupled only to its nearest neighbors in a linear chain, the equations are

$$\frac{du_i}{dt} = F_i(u_i) + \epsilon(u_{i+1} - u_i) + \epsilon(u_{i-1} - u_i). \quad (18.82)$$

Here, the term  $\epsilon(u_{i+1} - u_i)$  is deleted if  $i = n + 1$ , and the term  $\epsilon(u_{i-1} - u_i)$  is deleted if  $i = 1$ . Then, the phase equations are of the form (18.81), where  $a_{ij} = 1$  if  $j = i + 1$  or if  $j = i - 1$ ,  $a_{ii} = -a_{i,i+1} - a_{i,i-1}$ , and all other elements of  $a_{ij}$  are zero. We find equations for the consecutive phase differences  $\phi_i = \delta\theta_{i+1} - \delta\theta_i$  to be

$$\frac{d\phi_i}{d\tau} = [\Delta_i + h(\phi_{i+1}) + h(-\phi_i) - h(\phi_i) - h(-\phi_{i-1})] + O(\epsilon^2), \quad (18.83)$$

where  $\Delta_i = \xi_{i+1} - \xi_i$  is a measure of the amount of detuning of the oscillators, i.e., how much the natural frequencies vary along the chain. The term  $h(-\phi_{i-1})$  is omitted if  $i = 1$ , and the term  $h(\phi_{i+1})$  is omitted if  $i = n$ . Finally, we take  $h$  to be odd, in which case the phase difference equation becomes

$$\dot{\phi} = \beta\Delta + K\mathbf{H}(\phi), \quad (18.84)$$

where  $\phi = (\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n)$ ,  $\beta\Delta = (\Delta_1, \dots, \Delta_n)$ , and  $\mathbf{H} = (h(\phi_1), \dots, h(\phi_n))$ , and  $K$  is a tridiagonal matrix with  $-2$  on the diagonal and  $1$  above and below the diagonal. Here, the dot denotes differentiation with respect to the slow time  $\tau = \epsilon t$ . The parameter  $\beta$  has been introduced as a control parameter for the amplitude of the gradient of the uncoupled oscillator frequency (i.e., the strength of the detuning).

## Some Simple Solutions

Before discussing how frequency plateaus arise in the phase equation, it is useful to consider the solution in some simpler cases.

## Two Coupled Oscillators

For two coupled oscillators there is only a single phase equation,

$$\frac{d\phi}{d\tau} = \beta\Delta - 2h(\phi). \quad (18.85)$$

A phase-locked solution is one for which the phase difference between neighboring oscillators does not change, i.e.,  $\phi$  is constant. Thus, phase-locked solutions are found by setting  $d\phi/d\tau = 0$  and solving for  $\Delta$ . This gives

$$\beta\Delta = 2h(\phi). \quad (18.86)$$

Since  $h$  is  $2\pi$ -periodic and odd, we can solve (18.86) only if  $\beta\Delta$  is not too large, as otherwise it would be greater than the maximum value of  $2h$ . In a common example,  $h(\phi)$  is taken to be  $\sin(\phi)$ , in which case  $|\beta\Delta|$  must be less than two for a phase-locked solution to exist. Since  $\beta\Delta$  measures the amount of detuning, a phase-locked solution exists if and only if the two oscillators have natural frequencies that are not too different. If  $\beta\Delta$  is small enough, the phase difference established between the oscillators (at least to lowest order in  $\epsilon$ ) is given by the solution of (18.86).

### Three Coupled Oscillators

When three oscillators are coupled, the two phase difference equations are

$$\frac{d\phi_1}{d\tau} = \beta\Delta_1 - 2h(\phi_1) + h(\phi_2), \quad (18.87)$$

$$\frac{d\phi_2}{d\tau} = \beta\Delta_2 - 2h(\phi_2) + h(\phi_1), \quad (18.88)$$

and so a phase-locked solution occurs if

$$\frac{2\beta\Delta_1 + \beta\Delta_2}{3} = h(\phi_1), \quad (18.89)$$

$$\frac{2\beta\Delta_2 + \beta\Delta_1}{3} = h(\phi_2). \quad (18.90)$$

Clearly, this can be solved only if  $|\beta(2\Delta_1 + \Delta_2)|$  and  $|\beta(2\Delta_2 + \Delta_1)|$  are small enough.

It is important to note that if solutions for  $\phi_1$  and  $\phi_2$  exist,  $\phi_1$  does not necessarily equal  $\phi_2$ . Thus, although the oscillators are phase-locked, the phase difference between the first and second oscillators is not necessarily the same as the phase difference between the second and third. If the phase differences are unequal, there is not a regular (constant speed) phase wave moving along the chain. Hence, phase locking does not necessarily imply a wavelike behavior.

To have a regular phase wave, the phase differences must be both constant and *equal* along the chain of oscillators. In this case, the peak of the wave moves at a constant speed down the oscillator chain. For the case of three coupled oscillators, phase wave solutions exist if  $\Delta_1 = \Delta_2$ . In other words, if the frequency difference between the first and second oscillators is the same as the difference between the second and third, and if this difference is not too large, then a phase wave solution exists.

This highlights the fact that in general, we can specify the frequency gradient along the oscillator chain and then solve for the phase differences, or we can specify the phase differences and then solve for the required frequency gradient, but we cannot specify the phase difference and the frequency gradient, expecting a phase wave.

### A Chain of Coupled Oscillators

The equations for a phase-locked steady-state solution for a chain of  $n + 1$  coupled oscillators are given by

$$\beta\Delta + K\mathbf{H}(\phi) = 0. \quad (18.91)$$

This is a system of  $n$  equations in  $n$  unknowns. In general, we can view the frequencies as given and the phase differences as unknown, or we can specify the phase differences and view the frequency differences as unknown. For example, if we seek a solution that is both phase-locked and has a phase wave, we need  $\phi_1 = \phi_2 = \dots = \phi_n$ . Letting  $h(\phi_i) = \eta$ , we obtain  $\Delta_1 = \Delta_n = \eta/\beta$  and  $\Delta_i = 0$  for  $i = 2, \dots, n - 1$ . Thus, a phase wave solution exists only if all the middle oscillators have the same frequency,  $\omega$  say, while the first oscillator is tuned to  $\omega - \eta/\beta$  and the last oscillator to  $\omega + \eta/\beta$ . Note that

$\eta$  can be either positive or negative, as different signs correspond to waves moving in opposite directions.

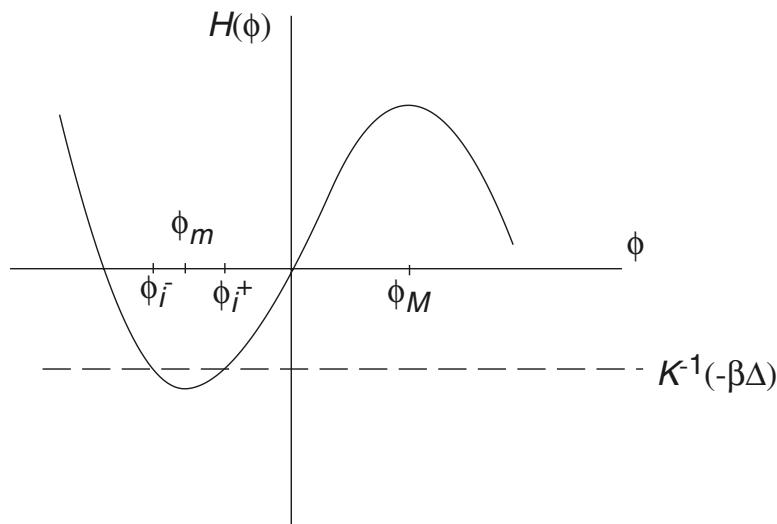
This observation poses a dilemma for the application of the phase equation to the electrical waves in the small intestine. Recall that ECA in the small intestine has a frequency plateau in the region close to the pylorus, and in this plateau, waves appear to be traveling away from the pylorus. These are phase-locked, with constant phase difference along the intestine. However, each segment of the small intestine has a natural oscillation frequency that decreases with distance from the pylorus. These two observations are inconsistent with the phase equations, for which a constant phase difference implies a constant natural frequency on the interior of the chain.

### Frequency Plateaus

One partial solution to this dilemma was given by Ermentrout and Kopell (1984). They showed that on each plateau, the phase differences are not exactly constant, but make small oscillations, being locked only in an average sense, a phenomenon sometimes called *phase trapping*.

For simplicity, we assume that  $h(\phi)$  is odd and  $2\pi$ -periodic, with a maximum  $M$  at  $\phi_M$  and a minimum  $m$  at  $\phi_m$ , qualitatively like  $\sin \phi$  (Fig. 18.15). Critical points of the differential equation (18.84) are solutions of

$$H(\phi) = K^{-1}(-\beta \Delta), \quad (18.92)$$



**Figure 18.15** The roots of the  $i$ th component of the phase difference equation.

which has a solution if and only if every component of  $K^{-1}(-\beta\Delta)$  lies between  $m$  and  $M$ . Let

$$\beta_0 = \max\{\beta : m \leq (K^{-1}(-\beta\Delta))_i \leq M, \text{ for every } i\}. \quad (18.93)$$

When  $\beta < \beta_0$ , for every  $i$  there are two solutions to the scalar equation  $h(\phi_i) = (K^{-1}(-\beta\Delta))_i$ . These solutions, which we denote by  $\phi_i^+$  and  $\phi_i^-$ , are shown in Fig. 18.15.

Since each component of  $\phi$  can have one of two values, there are  $2^n$  possible steady states when  $\beta < \beta_0$ . Because of the definition of  $\beta_0$ , there is some value  $j$  such that the roots  $\phi_j^+$  and  $\phi_j^-$  coalesce and disappear as  $\beta$  crosses  $\beta_0$ . Thus, as  $\beta$  crosses  $\beta_0$ , all the critical points coalesce in pairs and disappear. This follows because every critical point can be matched with another that agrees with it in every component  $i \neq j$ , one having  $j$ th component  $\phi_j^+$ , the other having  $j$ th component  $\phi_j^-$ . When  $\beta < \beta_0$  the members of the pair differ only in the  $j$ th component; when  $\beta = \beta_0$  the members of the pair are identical, and when  $\beta > \beta_0$  there is no solution for the  $j$ th component, and so both solutions fail to exist.

There is one particular pair of critical points that is of interest for reasons that are explained below. Let  $\xi_j(\beta)$  denote the critical point whose  $k$ th component is  $\phi_k^-$  for all  $k \neq j$ , and whose  $j$ th component is  $\phi_j^+$ . Also, let  $\xi_0(\beta)$  denote the critical point with the  $k$ th component equal to  $\phi_k^-$  for all  $k$ . Clearly, as  $\beta \rightarrow \beta_0$ ,  $\xi_j$  coalesces with  $\xi_0$  and the two critical points disappear.

Finally, to complete the preliminaries, we restrict  $\Delta$  to be of a particular form. Since experimental data suggest that the natural frequencies of the oscillators decrease approximately linearly along the small intestine, it is reasonable to take  $\Delta = (-1, \dots, -1)$ , corresponding to a linear decrease in frequency along the oscillator chain. We also assume that there is an even number of oscillators in the chain (an odd number of phase differences), i.e., that  $n$  is odd, with  $n = 2j - 1$ , and thus the central phase difference is at position  $j$ . For this choice of  $\Delta$  and  $n$ , the solution of (18.92) fails first at the  $j$ th component; that is, if  $j$  is the position of the middle phase difference, then  $\phi_j^+ \rightarrow \phi_j^-$  as  $\beta \rightarrow \beta_0$ . This is easily seen by noting that  $K^{-1}(\beta\Delta)$  has  $k$ th component  $-\beta k(n + 1 - k)/2 < 0$  (Exercise 5). Hence  $\phi_k^\pm(\beta) < 0$  for all  $k$  as long as  $\beta < \beta_0$ . Further, when  $n = 2j - 1$ ,  $k(n + 1 - k) = k(2j - k)$ , which is greatest when  $k = j$ . Since the  $j$ th component of the solution to (18.92) is the one with the greatest modulus, it follows that the  $j$ th component is the first to “hit” the minimum and disappear.

We now return to the particular pair of steady states,  $\xi_0$  and  $\xi_j$ , defined above. Linear stability analysis of the system (18.84) shows that  $\xi_0$  is a stable node, while  $\xi_j$  is a saddle point with one positive and  $n - 1$  negative eigenvalues. Further, both branches of the unstable manifold at  $\xi_j$  tend to  $\xi_0$  as  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ , and thus the closure of the unstable manifold forms a closed loop.

We can get some insight into the meaning of this last statement and why it is true by considering the special case  $n = 2$ . It is convenient to introduce the change of variables  $\psi = K^{-1}\phi$ , in which case the system of differential equations (18.84) becomes

$$\dot{\psi} = K^{-1}\beta\Delta + \mathbf{H}(K\psi), \quad (18.94)$$

or, in the specific case that  $n = 2$ ,

$$\dot{\psi}_1 = \beta + h(\psi_2 - 2\psi_1), \quad (18.95)$$

$$\dot{\psi}_2 = \beta + h(\psi_1 - 2\psi_2). \quad (18.96)$$

This is a two-dimensional system whose phase portrait is easily studied. First, note that since (18.84) is a flow on a torus, so also is this system. The torus for (18.84) is the domain  $0 \leq \phi_i \leq 2\pi, i = 1, \dots, n$ , with the boundary at  $\phi_i = 0$  “identified” with, or equivalent to, the boundary at  $\phi_i = 2\pi$ . Here, however, the boundaries of the torus are modified, being the four straight lines

$$\psi_1 - 2\psi_2 = 0, -2\pi, \quad (18.97)$$

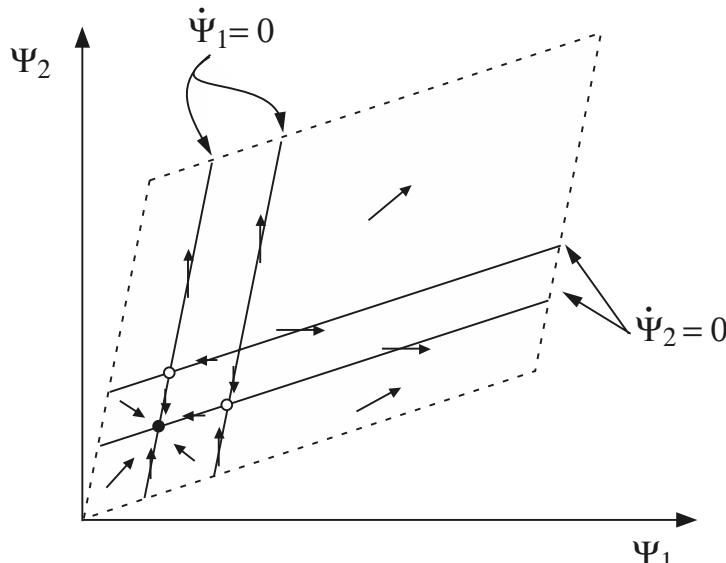
$$\psi_2 - 2\psi_1 = 0, -2\pi. \quad (18.98)$$

These bounding lines are shown dashed in Fig. 18.16. Now, the flow on this torus can be understood by first examining the nullclines  $\dot{\psi}_1 = 0$  and  $\dot{\psi}_2 = 0$ . There are four such curves,

$$\psi_2 - 2\psi_1 = -\phi_{\pm}, \quad (18.99)$$

$$\psi_1 - 2\psi_2 = -\phi_{\pm}, \quad (18.100)$$

where the numbers  $-\phi_{\pm}$  satisfy  $h(-\phi_{\pm}) = -\beta$ , as depicted in Fig. 18.15. The nullclines are shown in Fig. 18.16 by solid lines.



**Figure 18.16** Phase portrait for the two-dimensional system of equations (18.97)–(18.98). The stable critical point is denoted by a filled circle, and the two saddle points by open circles.

Clearly, there are four critical points. By sketching in a few elements of the vector field, we can see that the critical point at the leftmost and lowest position is the only stable critical point (denoted by a filled circle), two of the critical points are saddle points (denoted by open circles), and the fourth is an unstable node. We also see that the stable critical point is a global attractor. That is, every trajectory, excluding the other critical points, tends to the unique stable critical point as time goes to infinity. It follows that the unstable manifold of each saddle point forms a closed loop; both closed loops are therefore invariant manifolds.

In general, for arbitrary  $n$ , when  $\beta < \beta_0$  there is a closed invariant manifold containing the two steady states,  $\xi_j$  and  $\xi_0$ . Furthermore, this loop is a smooth invariant attracting cycle on which  $\phi_j$  completes a full rotation from 0 to  $2\pi$  but on which the other  $\phi_k$ 's do not. In other words, as  $\phi_j$  moves through the  $2\pi$ -cycle, all the other  $\phi_k, k \neq j$ , vary without making a full cycle. This is illustrated in Fig. 18.17 by orbit A. Orbit B, however, experiences a full  $2\pi$  cycle in angle  $\theta_2$  for every  $2\pi$  cycle of  $\theta_1$ . It follows that the invariant attracting manifold formed by the two branches of the unstable manifold of  $\xi_j$  is homotopic to (i.e., is continuously deformable into) the circle  $\phi_k = 0, k \neq j, 0 \leq \phi_j \leq 2\pi$ .

The crucial result proved by Ermentrout and Kopell is that this invariant attracting manifold exists even when  $\beta > \beta_0$ . Thus, although steady states of the phase difference equations disappear when  $\beta > \beta_0$ , a smooth, invariant, attracting manifold that is homotopic to the circle  $\phi_k = 0, k \neq j, 0 \leq \phi_j \leq 2\pi$ , persists. Since it contains no critical points, this manifold is an attracting limit cycle. This stable limit cycle corresponds to a pair of frequency plateaus in the chain of coupled oscillators. To see this, define the average frequency of the  $k$ th oscillator to be

$$\omega(\epsilon) + \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T \delta\theta'_k(t) dt, \quad (18.101)$$

provided that the limit exists. Here, a prime denotes differentiation with respect to  $t$ . Note that if  $\delta\theta'_k$  is constant, the frequency is exactly  $\omega(\epsilon) + \delta\theta'_k$ , as expected. Subtracting  $\delta\theta'_k$  from  $\delta\theta'_{k+1}$  gives the average phase difference as

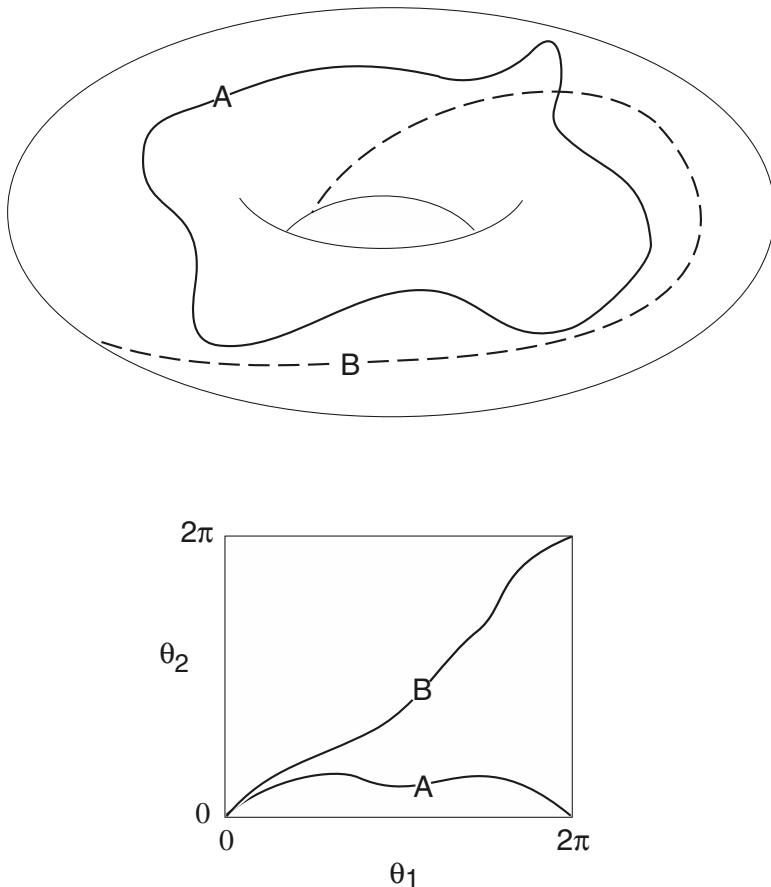
$$\lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\epsilon}{T} \int_0^T \phi'_{k+1}(\tau) d\tau - \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\epsilon}{T} \int_0^T \phi'_k(\tau) d\tau. \quad (18.102)$$

Around the attracting limit cycle, this simplifies to

$$\frac{\epsilon}{T_0} \int_0^{T_0} \phi'_k(\tau) d\tau, \quad (18.103)$$

where  $T_0(\beta)$  is the period of the limit cycle on the torus. However, we readily calculate that

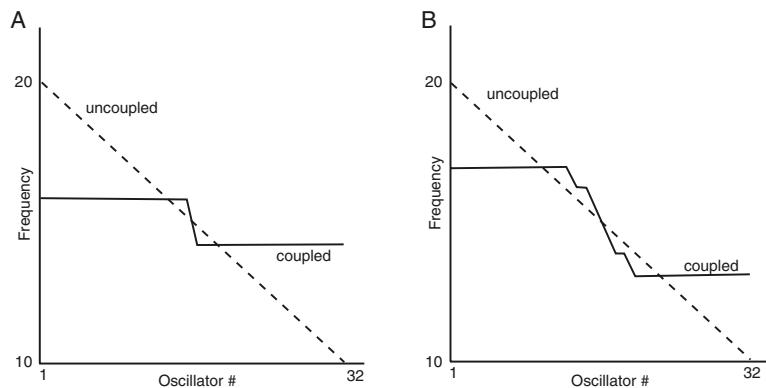
$$\int_0^{T_0} \phi'_k(\tau) d\tau = \begin{cases} 0, & k \neq j, \\ 2\pi, & k = j. \end{cases} \quad (18.104)$$



**Figure 18.17** Schematic diagram of two orbits on a torus, drawn two different ways. The upper panel shows the orbits on a torus, while the lower panel has unfolded the torus into a square, periodic in both directions. Orbit A is homotopic to the circle  $\theta_2 = 0$ , while orbit B is not.

It follows that the first  $j$  oscillators all have the same average frequency, as do the oscillators from  $j+1$  to  $n$ . Between the  $j$ th and the  $(j+1)$ st oscillators there is a frequency jump of  $2\pi\epsilon/T_0(\beta)$ .

It is important to note that the phase differences  $\phi_k, k \neq j$ , make small oscillations about the constant  $\phi_k^-$ , but are not identically constant. Thus, on each frequency plateau, the phases are not locked, but only “trapped” on average over each cycle. In contrast to some experimental data, one therefore does not expect to see exactly regular propagating waves appearing on each plateau, since such waves require phase locking at each instant and a constant phase difference along the plateau. The precise reasons for this discrepancy are, as yet, unknown.



**Figure 18.18** Frequency plateaus in a chain of 32 coupled oscillators. For these numerical simulations the phase equation was chosen to be  $\dot{\phi}_k = -10/31 + \delta(\sin \phi_{k+1} - 2 \sin \phi_k + \sin \phi_{k-1})$ . (A):  $\delta = 32$ , (B):  $\delta = 18$ . Note that decreasing  $\delta$  while leaving the intrinsic oscillator frequencies unchanged is equivalent to increasing  $\beta$ . (Ermentrout and Kopell, 1984, Fig. 4.1.)

### Numerical Solutions

Numerical solutions of the phase equation for two different values of  $\beta$  are shown in Fig. 18.18. Once  $\beta$  is greater than the critical value  $\beta_0$  a pair of plateaus emerges, and as  $\beta$  is increased further, multiple plateaus appear. Comparison of Fig. 18.12 with Fig. 18.18 shows that the above model differs from experimental results in an important way. In the model, the frequency of the plateau lies between the maximum and minimum natural frequencies of the oscillators in the plateau; a plateau cannot have a higher frequency than all of its constituent oscillators, as is seen in the experimental data. However, the above simple model can be extended to obtain better qualitative agreement with experiment. For example, the coupling between cells can be made stronger in one direction than the other (nonisotropic coupling) or it can be made nonuniform along the oscillator chain, in which case the phase difference equation can reproduce the asymmetrical behavior exhibited by the experimental system.

However, despite this qualitative agreement, it must be admitted that the simple model presented here does not give a quantitative explanation of the properties of frequency plateaus in the small intestine. It is an excellent example of how, to obtain an analytical understanding of a particular phenomenon, it is often necessary to study a model that has been reduced to caricature by successive approximations. Although hope of quantitative agreement is thereby lost, such simple models often permit a substantial understanding of the underlying structure.

### 18.3.4 Interstitial Cells of Cajal

There is, of course, much more than coupled oscillators involved in the control of the gastrointestinal electrical activity. In particular, in recent years it has become clear that

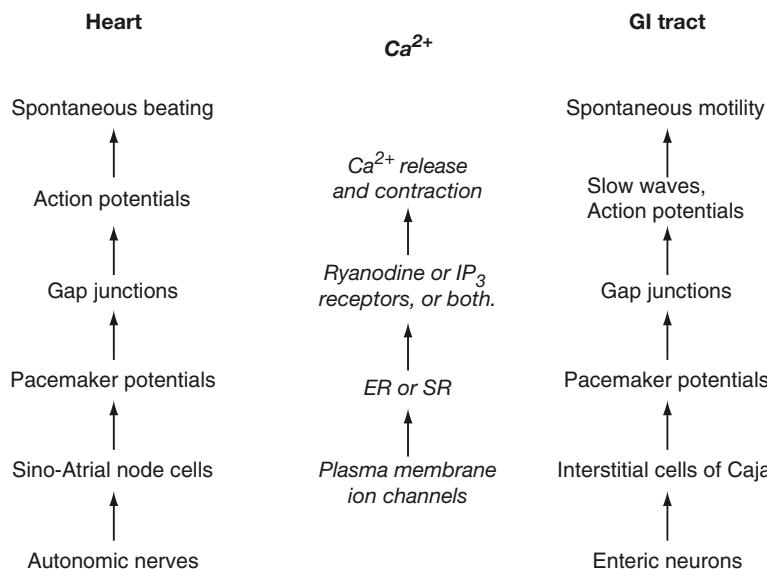
the interstitial cells of Cajal (ICC) play an extremely important role in the regulation of ECA, although we still have only a limited understanding of exactly what that role is.

ICC were first discovered by Santiago Ramon y Cajal in 1911 (Cajal, 1893, 1911) who called them “primitive neurons” and theorized that they were modulators of smooth muscle contraction, modulated by the nervous system in their turn. ICC can be divided into two groups. In most regions of the gastrointestinal tract, ICC form a thin layer between the longitudinal and circular layers of smooth muscle. These are called *myenteric* ICC. The second group of ICC, the *intramuscular* ICC, are distributed through the smooth muscle cells themselves. We now know that ICC are the pacemaker cells that drive the electrical slow wave in gastrointestinal smooth muscle, and that isolated smooth muscle cells cannot oscillate independently (Sanders, 1996; Čamborová et al., 2003; Takaki, 2003; Hirst and Ward, 2003; Hirst and Edwards, 2004). Although far more is known about the biophysical properties of myenteric ICC than of intramuscular ICC, the mechanisms controlling pacemaker activity are still far from clear. IP<sub>3</sub>-dependent release of Ca<sup>2+</sup> from internal stores such as the endoplasmic reticulum (see Chapter 7) is clearly one important mechanism, and this released Ca<sup>2+</sup> acts on Ca<sup>2+</sup>-sensitive ionic channels, particularly a Ca<sup>2+</sup>-sensitive Cl<sup>-</sup> current. It is likely that Ca<sup>2+</sup> release from the mitochondria also plays an important role. However, no more definite mechanism has yet been proposed and confirmed in detail. ICC are also modulated by the enteric nervous system; it seems that innervation of the gastrointestinal tract is directed more to the ICC than to the smooth muscle itself (Hirst and Edwards, 2004). The question of how ICC operate, how they are modulated by the nervous system, and how they in turn control smooth muscle contractility, is a fascinating area in which modeling is likely to play an increasingly important role over the next few years.

The importance of ICC for generating pacemaker potentials underlines the important similarities between the gastrointestinal tract and the heart. In both organs, neurons innervate pacemaker cells, which in turn coordinate their activity in some way to control muscle motility. In the pacemaker cells and the muscle cells of both the gastrointestinal tract and the heart, the control of internal Ca<sup>2+</sup>, via IP<sub>3</sub> receptors, ryanodine receptors, and Ca<sup>2+</sup>-sensitive ion channels, plays a crucial role. These similarities are shown schematically in Fig. 18.19.

### 18.3.5 Biophysical and Anatomical Models

The most detailed biophysical model of gastrointestinal electrical activity to date is that of Miftakhov et al. (1999a,b), who constructed a model of a “functional unit” of the small intestine. In addition to the smooth muscle cells themselves, this functional unit included a number of different neurons in the enteric nervous system (each with dendritic, somatic and axonal components), as well as the dynamics of neurotransmitters and Ca<sup>2+</sup> in the synapses. In this model local distention of the gut wall causes a response in mechanoreceptors (dendritic, somatic and axonal in sequence), stimulation of a response in a secondary neuron, and thence stimulation of the smooth muscle cell by opening of L-type Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels and a consequent increase of Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration



**Figure 18.19** Schematic diagram showing the similarities between the gastrointestinal tract and the heart. Adapted from Takaki, 2003, Fig. 15.

inside the smooth muscle cell, causing contraction. The generated force itself feeds back to stimulate the mechanoreceptors again, resulting in multiple contractions in response to the initial isolated stimulus.

The enormous number of parameters and equations required to construct this model, the almost complete lack of experimental data about most of these parameters, and the relative lack of experimental data against which such a model can be tested, raises a number of thorny questions about model identifiability. How much model complexity can be justified by experimental data, and how much is absolutely necessary to answer the scientific question under investigation, are difficult questions that have no generic answers; each model must be treated on its own merits. Although there is no doubt that complex biophysical models will be required before we can have a complete understanding of how a syncytium of smooth muscle and its associated innervation works to propel food along the gut, it is perhaps premature to place too much reliance on such complex models at this stage.

A different approach is taken by Pullan et al. (2004) in their detailed anatomical model of the stomach. Instead of studying a highly detailed biophysical model on a simple geometry, they constructed a complex geometry but used only highly simplified biophysical models. Using data from the visible human project (Spitzer et al., 1996) they constructed a geometrically accurate stomach on which a finite element grid could be superimposed and the model equations solved. However, they model the electrical activity using the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations (Chapter 5). Thus, although the model shows how a wave of electrical excitation can spread around the stomach, as yet it

offers little insight into the detailed mechanisms or significance of ECA, or into the behavior of a syncytium of coupled smooth muscle oscillators. However, as more detailed and accurate biophysical models become available they can (relatively) easily be incorporated into the detailed geometrical model.

The electrical activity of the stomach can be measured by an electrogastrogram (EGG) in the same way that the electrical activity of the heart can be measured by an ECG (Chapter 12). The earliest such recordings were those of Alvarez (1922) and Davis et al. (1957). However, even today EGG recordings, particularly those aimed at measuring electrical activity in the intestines, are difficult to make and to interpret (Bradshaw et al., 1997, 1999; Allescher et al., 1998). The difficulties are clear; each heartbeat is a single event, localized, relatively precise, and repeated many times in succession. Gastrointestinal electrical activity has none of these attributes, being diffuse, changing in nature and frequency along the length of the stomach and intestines, and continuously occurring.

## 18.4 EXERCISES

---

1. Modify (18.1) to account for the effects of the membrane potential on  $\text{Na}^+$  flux. How does membrane potential affect the transport of water?
2. Use the model of local  $\text{Na}^+$  removal and osmotic transport of water to analyze the removal of water and  $\text{Na}^+$  along the length of the intestinal tract.
  - (a) Give a phase-plane analysis for the system. What is the trajectory of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water if  $\text{Na}^+$  is initially quite high? What is the trajectory of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water if  $\text{Na}^+$  is initially quite low? How does this compare with the trajectory when there is no  $\text{Na}^+$ ?
  - (b) If the flow of water from the intestine is assumed to depend solely on the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration, then the flow can become negative, which is clearly unphysiological. How might this assumption be modified and justified on physical grounds?

*Hint:* As the chyme dries, one expects the continued extraction of water to become more difficult.
3. For the the model of Section 18.1.2, find the average concentration of solute in a tube for which  $\eta = \frac{c_0 PL^2}{Dr}$  is small. Use this to find the efflux velocity and efflux concentration. Under what conditions on parameters can water be pumped into pure water?
4. (a) Find two terms of the power series representation of the solution of (18.68) in powers of  $\zeta$ . Find  $u(0)$  to the same order in  $\zeta$ .
  - (b) It appears from the leading-order solution that  $u(0)$  is negative if  $J > 1$ . Show that this is not correct, but that  $u(0) > 0$  for all positive values of  $J$ . Show that when  $J > 1$ , the bulk of the reaction occurs in a thin layer contained within the mucus layer, and that the epithelial surface is completely protected. What is the physical interpretation of the condition  $J > 1$ ?
5. Show that the  $k$ th component of  $K^{-1}(\beta\Delta)$  in (18.92) is  $\alpha_k = -\beta k(n + 1 - k)/2$ .

*Hint:* Verify that  $(K\alpha)_i = \beta$ .

6. What steady phase-locked solutions are possible for two coupled identical oscillators? What stable, steady, phase-locked solutions are possible?
  7. Describe the behavior expected from two coupled oscillators when  $\beta\Delta = -2 - \epsilon$  and  $h(\phi) = \sin \phi$  for  $\epsilon \ll 1$ . Check your prediction numerically. This behavior is called *rhythm splitting*, and is discussed in more detail in Murray (2002).
  8. In Exercise 22 of Chapter 12 the coupling function  $h(\theta)$  is calculated for a collection of coupled FitzHugh–Nagumo equations. Solve the phase equation with this coupling function numerically with arbitrary initial data to determine  $\phi(t)$ . How quickly do identical FitzHugh–Nagumo oscillators synchronize?
  9. Extend the previous question (and refer to Chapters 7 and 8) to study the synchronization of intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations. Suppose two cells, each with a well-mixed interior, are coupled by a membrane through which  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can diffuse through gap junctions. Suppose further that each cell exhibits intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations of slightly different periods (i.e., each cell has a slightly different background  $\text{IP}_3$  concentration). Using your favorite model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, determine the coupling function numerically, and thus determine how fast such synchronization occurs, as a function of the intercellular permeability of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .
-

## The Retina and Vision

The visual system is arguably the most important system through which our brain gathers information about our surroundings, and forms one of our most complex physiological systems. In vertebrates, light entering the eye through the lens is detected by photosensitive pigment in the photoreceptors, converted to an electrical signal, and passed back through the layers of the retina to the optic nerve, and from there, through the visual nuclei, to the visual cortex of the brain. At each stage, the signal passes through an elaborate system of biochemical and neural feedbacks, the vast majority of which are poorly, if at all, understood.

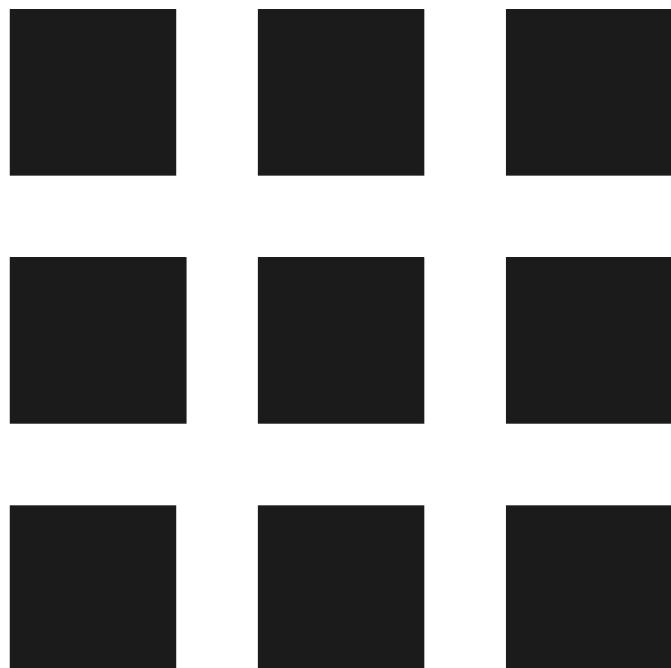
Although there is great variety in detail between the eyes of different species, a number of important features are qualitatively conserved. Perhaps the most striking of these features is the ability of the visual system to adapt to background light. As the background light level increases, the sensitivity of the visual system is decreased, which allows for operation over a huge range of light levels. From a dim starlit night to a bright sunny day, the background light level varies over 10 orders of magnitude (Hood and Finkelstein, 1986), and yet our eyes continue to operate across all these levels without becoming saturated with light. The visual system accomplishes this by ensuring that its sensitivity varies approximately inversely with the background light, a relationship known as *Weber's law* (Weber, 1834) and one that we discuss in detail in the next section.

Because of this adaptation, the eye is more sensitive to changes in light level than to a steady input. When a space-independent pulse of light is shone on the entire eye, the retina responds with a large-amplitude signal at the beginning followed by a decrease to a lower plateau. Similarly, at the end of the pulse, a large negative transient is followed by a return to a plateau. Response to transients with adaptation in steady conditions is characteristic of inhibitory feedback, or *self-inhibition*, which occurs at a number

of levels in the retina. Furthermore, the retina is sensitive to particular frequencies of flashing light, with the most sensitive frequency being a function of the background light level.

Adaptation is also manifested spatially. When a time-independent strip of light is applied to the retina, the response is greatest at the edges of the pattern. These response variations are known as *Mach bands* and are due to *lateral inhibition*, which plays a similar role in space as self-inhibition plays in time. For example, in the interior of a uniformly bright part of the visual field, neurons are inhibited from all sides, while regions near the edge receive little inhibition from their dimly illuminated neighbors and therefore appear brighter. The result is contour enhancement. The effect of lateral inhibition can be seen in the white intersections of Fig. 19.1. In particular, if one looks intently at one of the white intersections, the remaining intersections appear to have a gray or darkened interior, and the center of the white strips appear slightly darkened compared to their edges, because of lateral inhibition.

The visual system operates on many levels, ranging from the biochemistry of the photopigments, to the cellular electrophysiology of the individual retinal cells, to the neural pathways responsible for image processing, to the large-scale structure of the visual cortex. Because of this complexity, there is still much debate over the mechanisms of adaptation, and the place where it occurs. Certainly, adaptation occurs in psy-



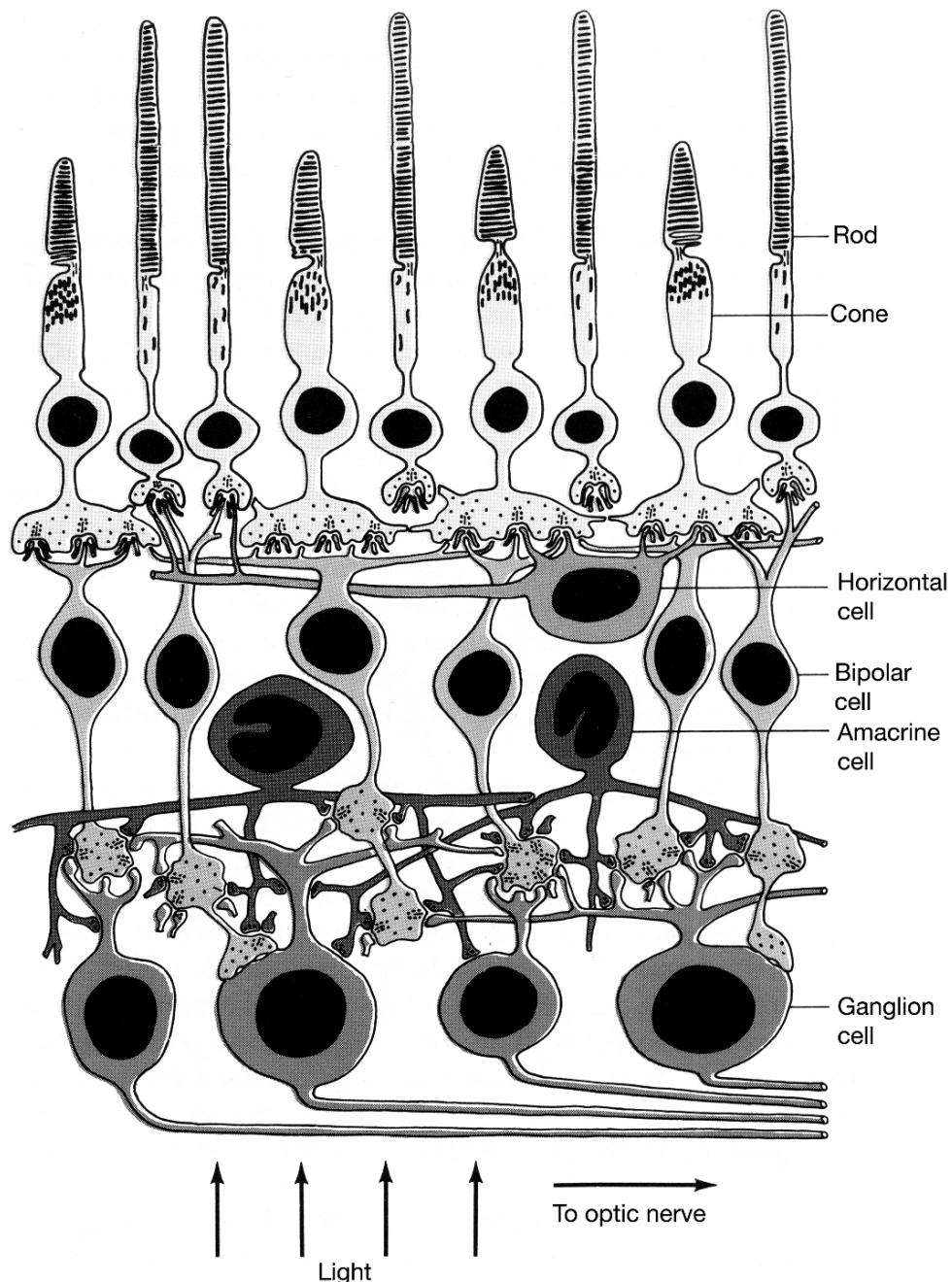
**Figure 19.1** Test pattern with which to observe the effects of self-inhibition and lateral inhibition.

chophysical experiments (i.e., with human subjects who report what they detect); one example of this has already been seen in Fig. 19.1. As another example, psychophysical measurement of the threshold-versus-intensity function shows Weber's law behavior. Plots of the ratio  $\delta I/I$ , where  $\delta I$  is the brightness of the smallest detectable flash superimposed on the background  $I$ , shows that  $\delta I/I$  is approximately constant over a range of background light levels. Although relating these psychophysical results to specific mechanisms is not an easy task, it is clear that adaptation occurs at the very lowest level of the visual system, inside the photoreceptors themselves.

Obviously, there is insufficient space here for a detailed study of all these aspects of the visual system. Here we concentrate on retinal mechanisms and omit discussion of mechanisms at the level of the visual cortex. The latter questions are better addressed in specialist books on neuroscience. For a more comprehensive view of the visual system, the reader is referred to the excellent book by Nicholls, Martin, and Wallace (1992); other discussions of visual processing can be found in Graham (1989), Blakemore (1990), Landy and Movshon (1991), and Spilmann and Werner (1990). A review of the connection between psychophysical experiments and the underlying physiology is given by Hood (1998), while an excellent earlier review of psychophysical experiments is Barlow (1972).

## 19.1 Retinal Light Adaptation

The first stage of visual processing occurs in the retina, a structure consisting of at least five major neuronal cell types (Fig. 19.2). After entering the eye, light passes through all the cell layers of the retina before being absorbed by photosensitive pigments in the photoreceptors in the final layer of cells. (A functional reason for this arrangement is not known.) Photoreceptors come in two varieties: rods, which operate in conditions of low light, and cones, which operate in bright light conditions and detect color. In the dark, photoreceptors have a resting membrane potential of around  $-40$  mV, and they hyperpolarize in response to light. The light response is graded, with larger light stimuli resulting in larger hyperpolarizations. Note that this is different behavior from typical neurons, in which the action potential is a depolarization and is all-or-nothing, as described in Chapter 5. Photoreceptors make connections to both horizontal cells and bipolar cells. Each horizontal cell makes connections to many photoreceptors (and, often, to bipolar cells), and is coupled to other horizontal cells by gap junctions. The bipolar cells form a more direct pathway, coupling photoreceptor responses to ganglion cells, but this is also a simplification. Amacrine cells connect only to bipolar cells and ganglion cells, and their precise function is unknown. Ganglion cells (which fire action potentials, unlike photoreceptors and horizontal cells) are the output stage of the retina and form the optic nerve. The interconnections among the retinal cells are complex and not well understood; there has been a great deal of work done on how the retina detects features such as moving edges and orientation, while ignoring much of the information presented to it. Here, we describe only the simplest models.



**Figure 19.2** Schematic diagram of the layers of the retina. (Nicholls et al., 1992, Chapter 16, Fig. 14, p. 583.)

### 19.1.1 Weber's Law and Contrast Detection

One of the basic features of the retina is *light adaptation*, the ability to adapt to varying levels of background light. Over a wide range of light levels, the sensitivity of the retina is observed to be approximately inversely proportional to the background light level. This is an example of Weber's law, as discussed above, and is sometimes called the *Weber–Fechner law*. There are three common definitions of sensitivity. It can mean *psychophysical sensitivity*, defined as 1/threshold, where the threshold is the minimal stimulus necessary to elicit an observable response when superimposed on a given background. Weber's law describes the fact that in psychophysical experiments the threshold increases as the background light level increases.

A second definition of sensitivity is the one used most in this chapter. In response to a small light flash, the membrane potential of a photoreceptor (or horizontal cell) first decreases and then returns to rest (recall that the voltage hyperpolarizes in response to a light flash). If  $V(I, I_0)$  is the maximum deviation of the membrane potential in response to a light flash of magnitude  $I$  on a background of  $I_0$ , then the *peak sensitivity* is

$$S(I_0) = \left. \frac{\partial V}{\partial I} \right|_{I=I_0}. \quad (19.1)$$

In the physiology literature (for example, Fain et al., 2001) the sensitivity is defined as the amplitude of the voltage response to a small flash divided by the intensity of the flash (in units of photons per area). Since  $V(I, I_0) \approx \frac{\partial V(I, I_0)}{\partial I}|_{I=I_0} I$ , these two definitions are equivalent as long as one uses only small flashes.

The third definition of sensitivity is the *steady-state sensitivity*. If  $V_0(I_0)$  is the steady response as a function of the background light level, then the steady-state sensitivity is defined to be  $dV_0/dI_0$ .

Light adaptation serves two fundamentally important purposes. First, it helps the retina handle the wide range of light levels in which the eye must operate. The eye functions in a range of light levels that spans about 10 log units, from a starlit night to bright sunlight. (Light intensities are typically plotted on a dimensionless logarithmic scale. For example, if  $I_0$  is a standard unit of light intensity, and the intensity of the light stimulus is  $I$ , then  $\log(\frac{I}{I_0}) = \log I - \log I_0$ , so that on a logarithmic scale, the unit scale  $I_0$  only shifts  $\log \frac{I}{I_0}$ ). Further, the retina is so sensitive that it can reliably detect as few as 20 photons, and can even, although less reliably, detect single photons.

The two requirements of operation over a wide range of light levels and high sensitivity in the dark are in conflict. Without control mechanisms, a retina that can detect single photons would be saturated, and hence blinded, by bright light. In bright light, there is a *saturation catastrophe*, in which every photoreceptor is saturated, each sending the same signal to the brain, so that no contrast in the scene can be detected. However, for the human retina this saturation catastrophe is about 10 log units above the level of no response. This range of light sensitivity is achieved partly by the use of two different types of photoreceptors, rods and cones, having different sensitivities, rods operating in dim light and cones in bright light. However, by itself, two

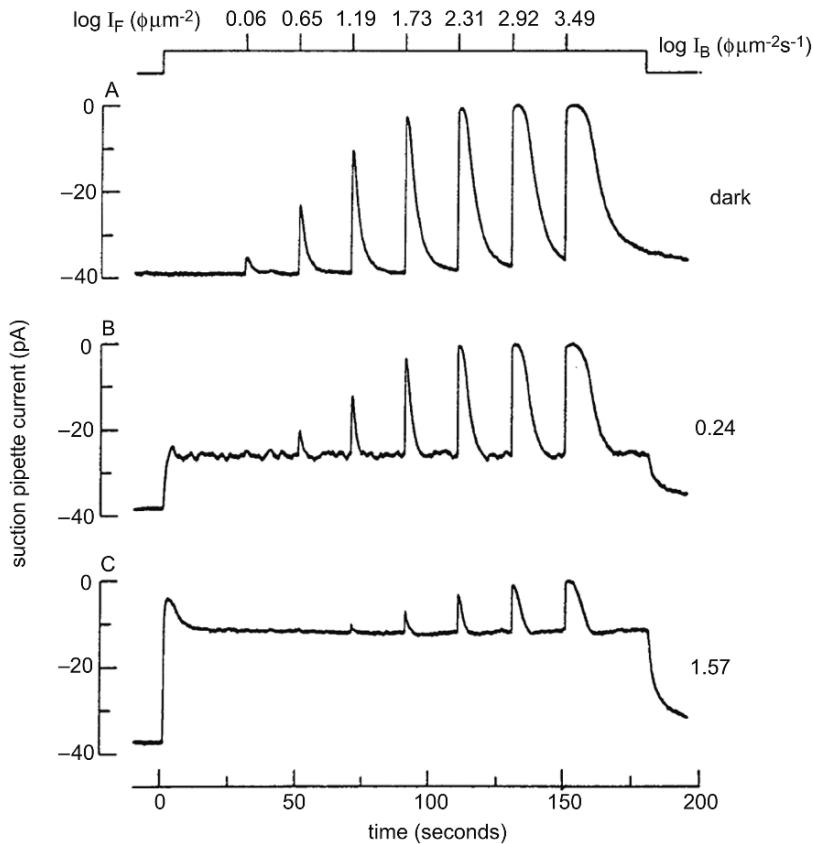
types of photoreceptors are inadequate to account for the observed range of light sensitivity.

The second effect of light adaptation is to send a signal to the brain that is dependent only on the contrast in the scene, not on the background light level. When a scene is observed with different background light levels, the amount of light reflected from an object in that scene varies considerably. For example, if you read a book inside where the light is relatively dim, it looks the same as if you were to read it outside in bright light. This happens despite the fact that the amount of light reflecting off the black letters outside is considerably more than the amount of light reflecting off the white page inside. Nevertheless, in both situations we see a white page and black text. Clearly, the eye is measuring something other than the total amount of light coming from an object. In fact, the eye measures the contrast in the scene, which, since it is dependent only on the reflectances of the objects, is independent of the background light level. As another striking example of the importance of contrast detection, consider a black and white television screen. When the television is switched off the screen is uniformly gray. When the television is switched on there is no mechanism for making parts of the screen darker. Nevertheless, we still see deep blacks on the screen. Of course, those parts of the screen that look black do so only in contrast to those other parts of the screen which are brighter.

Contrast detection is a consequence of Weber's law, as can be seen from the following argument of Shapley and Enroth-Cugell (1984). Suppose we observe an object superimposed on a background, where the background reflectance is  $R_b$ , the object reflectance is  $R_o$ , and the background light level is  $I$ . As the receptive field of a retinal neuron moves across the boundary of the object, the stimulus it receives changes from  $IR_b$  to  $IR_o$ , a difference of  $IR_o - IR_b$ . Since, according to Weber's law, the sensitivity of the cell is inversely proportional to  $IR_b$  (the amount of light reaching the cell from the background), the cell's response will be approximately proportional to  $(IR_o - IR_b)/(IR_b) = (R_o - R_b)/R_b$ , which is dependent only on the contrast in the scene.

### 19.1.2 Intensity–Response Curves and the Naka–Rushton Equation

Light adaptation in photoreceptors can be clearly seen in the experimental results reproduced in Fig. 19.3 (also discussed in detail by Fain et al., 2001). In that experiment, a salamander rod was presented with a series of light flashes superimposed on backgrounds of different intensities and the resultant photocurrent was measured. (Although we have not yet discussed the photocurrent in receptors, it is reasonable to assume that the voltage shows similar qualitative responses. The photocurrent is discussed in detail in Section 19.2.) Three important features can be easily seen. First, as the intensity of the flash increases (for any fixed background), the magnitude of the response increases with the intensity of the flash, but eventually saturates. Second, as the background light level increases, a larger flash is needed to evoke a response of a given size. Thus, the rod is adapting. Third, in response to the step of light at the beginning of the lowest trace (background light level 1.57), the response shows a clear



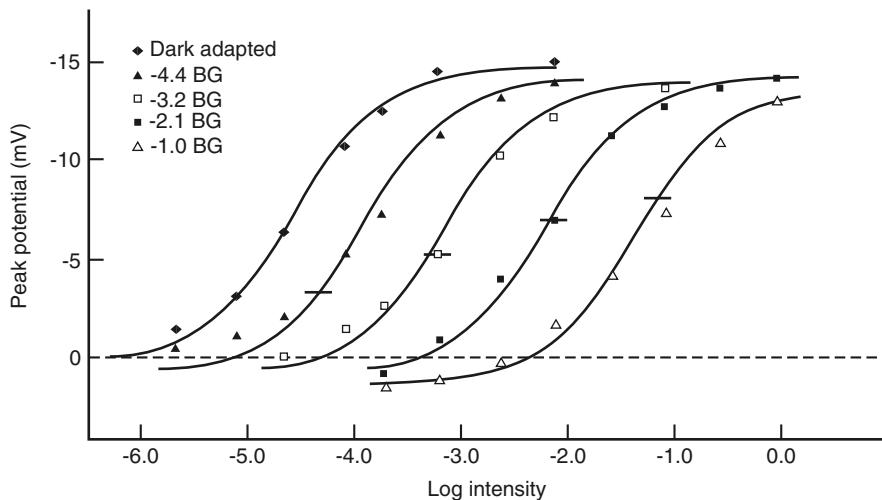
**Figure 19.3** Light adaptation in a salamander rod.  $I_F$  is the intensity of the light flash and  $I_B$  is the intensity of the background, both in units of photons per  $\mu\text{m}^2$ . The suction pipette current is the total photocurrent through the rod; models of the photocurrent are discussed in Section 19.2. However, note that a decrease in photocurrent corresponds to a hyperpolarization of the photoreceptor. The timing of the flashes is shown at the top of the figure. Fain et al., (2001), Fig. 1.

initial peak followed by relaxation to a lower steady level. This relaxation to a lower steady level is a consequence of the adaptation of the receptor.

Around each background light level the peak of the flash response is approximately described by the Naka–Rushton equation (Naka and Rushton, 1966; yet another incarnation of the Michaelis–Menten equation described in detail in Chapter 1)

$$\frac{R_{\text{peak}}}{R_{\text{max}}} = \frac{I}{I + \sigma(I_0)}, \quad (19.2)$$

where  $R_{\text{peak}}$  is the peak of the response,  $R_{\text{max}}$  is the maximal response to a saturating flash,  $I$  is the intensity of the flash, and  $I_0$  is the background light level. The response is



**Figure 19.4** Intensity response curves measured in a red-sensitive cone of the turtle. The peak of the response to a light flash (either increasing or decreasing) is plotted against the log of the intensity of flash. Each data set corresponds to a different background light level, and the smooth curves are drawn by using the Naka–Rushton equation, (19.3), as a template, and shifting it across and down for the higher background light levels. The short horizontal lines denote the resting hyperpolarization for each background light level. The membrane potential has been scaled to be zero in the dark (Normann and Perlman, 1979, Fig. 7).

half maximal when  $I = \sigma$ . It is experimentally observed that as  $I_0$  increases, so does  $\sigma$ . Thus at higher background light levels it takes a larger flash to obtain a half-maximal response, as would be expected from an adapting receptor.

Much of this information can be elegantly summarized by intensity-response curves (Fig. 19.4), a set of curves that repays careful consideration. For a fixed background light level  $I_0$ , we consider the response to a family of superimposed light flashes, positive or negative, and plot the peak of the flash response against the intensity of the flash. Note that Fig. 19.4 shows photoreceptor voltage plotted against flash intensity (instead of photocurrent as in Fig. 19.3) and the vertical axis is reversed.

Let  $V(I, I_0)$  denote the peak response to a flash of intensity  $I$  on a background of  $I_0$ . It turns out that the entire set of flash responses can be described by using the Naka–Rushton equation

$$\frac{V(I, I_0)}{V_{\max}} = \frac{I}{I + \sigma(I_0)} \quad (19.3)$$

as a template and moving it across and down slightly to describe the higher background light levels (see Exercise 1). From Fig. 19.4 it can be seen that  $\sigma$  is an increasing function of  $I_0$ . Thus, as the background light level increases, the response curve maintains its shape, but shifts to higher light levels and moves down slightly (although this downward

shift is not accounted for in (19.3)). Note that since  $I$  and  $\sigma$  are positive, the Naka–Rushton equation is always well defined.

In contrast to the peak response, the steady response, depicted by the small horizontal lines in Fig. 19.4, is a much shallower function of the background light level. In this way, retinal neurons can detect contrast over a wide range of light levels without saturating. The steep Naka–Rushton intensity–response curves around each background light level give a high sensitivity to changes superimposed on that background, but the shallower dependence of the steady response on the background light level postpones saturation.

In the experimental literature, adaptation is often discussed in terms of changes in sensitivity, so it is useful to present a brief discussion of this approach here also. Sensitivity (at least in the way we use it here) is defined by

$$S(I_0) = \frac{dV(I, I_0)}{dI} \Big|_{I=I_0}. \quad (19.4)$$

Note that the sensitivity,  $S$ , is a function of the background light level, which is the whole point of adaptation. If  $V$  satisfies the Naka–Rushton equation then

$$S = V_{\max} \frac{\sigma(I_0)}{(I_0 + \sigma(I_0))^2}. \quad (19.5)$$

Defining  $S_D$  to be the sensitivity in the dark, it follows that  $S_D = V_{\max}/\sigma(0)$  and thus

$$\frac{S(I_0)}{S_D} = \frac{\sigma(I_0)\sigma_D}{[I_0 + \sigma(I_0)]^2}. \quad (19.6)$$

We know that  $\sigma$  is an increasing function of  $I_0$ , but until now have not specified what the function is. If we specify  $\sigma$  to be a linear increasing function of  $I_0$ , i.e.,

$$\sigma = \sigma_D + kI_0, \quad (19.7)$$

for some constant,  $k$ , then

$$\frac{S(I_0)}{S_D} = \frac{(\sigma_D + kI_0)\sigma_D}{[I_0(1 + k) + \sigma_D]^2}. \quad (19.8)$$

Notice that as  $I_0$  gets large, so that  $kI_0 \gg \sigma_D$ , then  $S/S_D$  is proportional to  $1/I_0$ , which is Weber's law. Fortunately,  $\sigma(I_0)$  measured experimentally is close to linear for many photoreceptors (Perlman and Normann, 1998).

Many experimental measurements have shown that the relative sensitivity can be well fit by the expression

$$\frac{S}{S_D} = \frac{A}{A + I_0}, \quad (19.9)$$

where  $A$  is some constant to be determined by fitting to the data. Because this expression for the sensitivity satisfies all the necessary criteria (it is equal to 1 when  $I_0 = 0$ , it goes to zero as  $I_0 \rightarrow \infty$ , and it is approximately proportional to  $1/I_0$  for a range of  $I_0$ ) and is very simple, it has been used often in the literature (for example Baylor

and Hodgkin, 1974; Baylor et al., 1980; Fain, 1976). Although (19.9) differs from the expression for the sensitivity (19.8) given by the Naka–Rushton equation, it is left as an exercise (Exercise 2) to show that the two expressions for the sensitivity are practically indistinguishable.

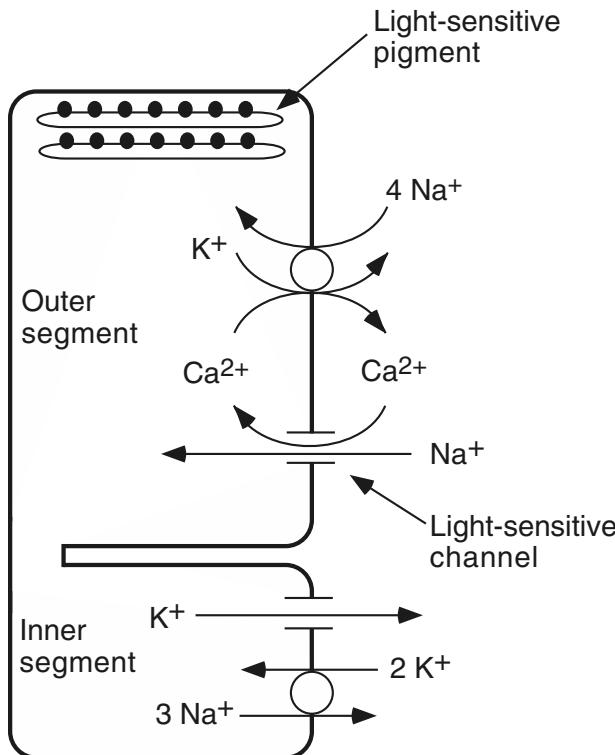
## 19.2 Photoreceptor Physiology

Since we know from the results in Fig. 19.3 that adaptation occurs at the level of the individual photoreceptor, we construct a model of the biochemistry and electrophysiology of a photoreceptor to see how such adaptation can come about. As a preliminary to the construction of such a model, we present a brief discussion of the physiology of the vertebrate photoreceptor. (Because of the significant differences between vertebrate and invertebrate photoreceptors we consider only the former here.) More detailed discussions are given in Fain and Matthews (1990), McNaughton (1990), and Pugh and Lamb (1990). A selection of detailed articles is given in Hargrave et al. (1992) and an excellent review of adaptation in vertebrate photoreceptors is given by Fain et al. (2001).

Vertebrate photoreceptors are composed of two principal segments: an outer segment that contains the photosensitive pigment, and an inner segment that contains the necessary cellular machinery. A connecting process, called an axon, connects the inner segment to a *synaptic pedicle*, which communicates with neurons (such as horizontal and bipolar cells) in the inner layers of the retina. In rods, the photosensitive pigment is located on a stack of membrane-enclosed disks that take up the majority of the space in the outer segment, while in cones, the pigment is located on invaginations of the outer segment membrane. The connecting process does not transmit action potentials, and hence the name “axon” is somewhat misleading. Photoreceptors respond in a graded manner to light, and give an analog, rather than a digital, output.

In the dark, the resting membrane potential is about  $-40$  mV. Current, carried by  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions, flows into the cell through light-sensitive channels in the outer segment, and is balanced by current, carried mostly by  $\text{K}^+$  ions, flowing out through  $\text{K}^+$  channels in the inner segment. Thus, in the dark there is a circulating current of about  $35\text{--}60$  pA. In the dark, the light-sensitive channels are held open by the binding of three molecules of cGMP. Ionic balance is maintained by a  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump in the inner segment that removes three  $\text{Na}^+$  ions for the entry of two  $\text{K}^+$  ions, and a  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}, \text{K}^+$  exchanger in the outer segment that removes one  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and one  $\text{K}^+$  for the entry of four  $\text{Na}^+$  ions. The  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}, \text{K}^+$  exchanger is the principal method for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  extrusion from the cytoplasm.

The light response begins when a photon of light strikes the photosensitive pigment, initiating a series of reactions (described in more detail below) that results in the activation of rhodopsin, and its subsequent binding to a G-protein, transducin. The bound transducin exchanges a molecule of GDP for GTP and then binds to cGMP-phosphodiesterase (PDE), thereby activating PDE to PDE\*. Since the rate of hydrolysis

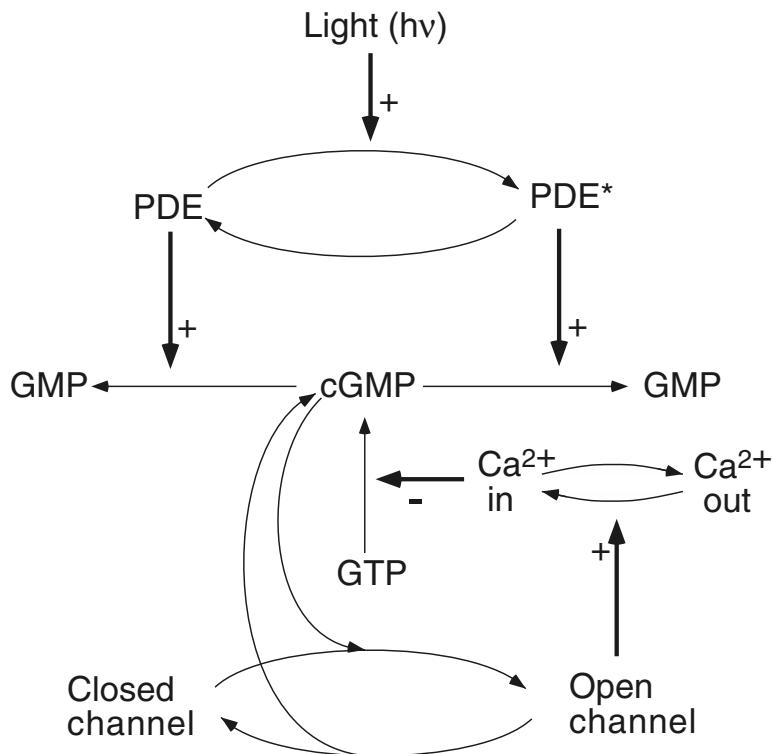


**Figure 19.5** Schematic diagram of a photoreceptor, showing the major ionic currents and pumps that regulate phototransduction. (Adapted from McNaughton, 1990.)

of cGMP by PDE\* is greater than by PDE, this leads to a decline in [cGMP] and subsequent closure of some of the light-sensitive channels. As the light-sensitive conductance decreases, the membrane potential moves closer to the reversal potential of the inner segment  $K^+$  conductance (about  $-65$  mV), hyperpolarizing the membrane.

Light adaptation is a highly complex process, resulting from a large number of interacting mechanisms, but there is little doubt that the most important player is the cytoplasmic free  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration. When the light-sensitive channels close, the entry of  $Ca^{2+}$  is restricted, as about 20–30% of the light-sensitive current is carried by  $Ca^{2+}$ . However, since the  $Na^+-Ca^{2+}, K^+$  exchanger continues to operate, the intracellular  $[Ca^{2+}]$  falls. This decrease in  $[Ca^{2+}]$  increases the activity of an enzyme called guanylate cyclase that makes cGMP from GTP. Thus, a decrease in  $[Ca^{2+}]$  results in an increase in the rate of production of cGMP, reopening the light-sensitive channels, completing the feedback loop. A schematic diagram of the reactions involved in adaptation is given in Fig. 19.6. Although it is likely that there are other important reactions involved in phototransduction (for example,  $Ca^{2+}$  may affect the activity of PDE), the above scheme incorporates many essential features of the light response.

The mechanisms of phototransduction are similar in rods and cones, with one important difference being the light-sensitive pigment contained in the cell. In rods, rhodopsin consists of retinal and a protein called *scotopsin*, while in cones, the



**Figure 19.6** Schematic diagram of the major reactions involved in light adaptation. The initial cascade, leading to the activation of PDE, is condensed into a single step here, but is considered in more detail in Fig. 19.7. (Adapted from Sneyd and Tranchina, 1989.)

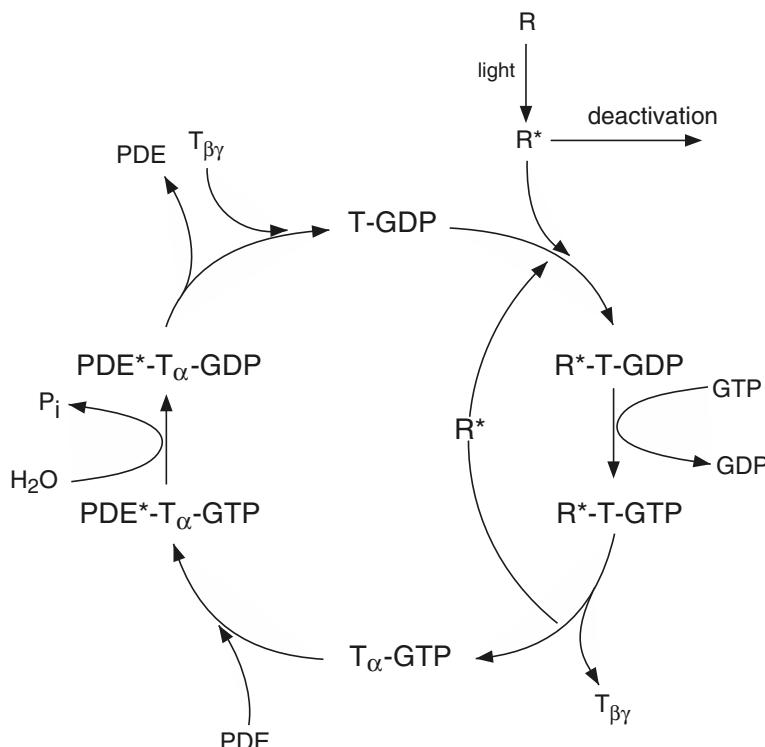
rhodopsin consists of retinal and different proteins, called *photopsins*. The primary effect of this compositional difference is that in rods, rhodopsin absorbs light in a range of wavelengths centered at 505 nm, while the rhodopsin in cones absorbs light in a range of wavelengths centered at 445 (blue cones), 535 (green cones), and 570 (red cones) nm. Night blindness is caused by insensitivity of rods because of inadequate amounts of rhodopsin, often associated with vitamin A deficiency. Colorblindness, on the other hand, occurs when green or red cones are missing or when blue cones are underrepresented. Colorblindness is a genetically inherited disorder. Another important difference between rods and cones is that the light response of a cone is much faster than that of a rod, due principally to its smaller size.

There are a number of models of phototransduction, some of which (Baylor et al., 1974a,b; Carpenter and Grossberg, 1981) were constructed before the molecular events underlying adaptation were well known. More detailed models include those of Tranchina and his colleagues for turtle cones (Sneyd and Tranchina, 1989; Tranchina et al., 1991), Forti et al. (1989) for newt rods, and Tamura et al. (1991) for primate

rods. These models have confirmed that feedback of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on the activity of guanylate cyclase is indeed sufficient to explain many features of the light response in both rods and cones. Detailed models of the initial cascade and the activation process have been constructed by Cobbs and Pugh (1987) and Lamb and Pugh (1992). The recent models of Hamer (Hamer 2000a,b; Hamer et al., 2005), building upon the earlier model of Nikonov et al. (1998), provide by far the most detailed quantitative fit of a model to experimental data, while a detailed stochastic view of the initial reactions in the cascade is given by Hamer et al. (2003).

### 19.2.1 The Initial Cascade

Although the main consequence of the absorption of light by a photoreceptor is the conversion of PDE to a more active form, and a resultant decline in the concentration of cGMP, there are many biochemical steps between these events (Fig. 19.7). Absorption of a photon causes the isomerization of 11-cis retinal to the all-trans form, and this in turn causes a series of isomerizations of rhodopsin, ending with metarhodopsin II.



**Figure 19.7** Schematic diagram of the biochemical reactions involved in the initial steps of phototransduction. (Adapted from Stryer, 1986, Fig. 6.)

Metarhodopsin II is converted to metarhodopsin III, which is, in turn, hydrolyzed to opsin and all-trans retinal. The activated form of rhodopsin is metarhodopsin II, called R\* here. In the dark, the G-protein transducin is in its deactivated form, T-GDP. After absorption of a photon, R\* binds to T-GDP and catalyzes the exchange of GDP for GTP. This exchange reduces the affinity of R\* for transducin, and also causes transducin to split into an  $\alpha$  subunit, T $_{\alpha}$ -GTP, and a  $\beta\gamma$  subunit, T $_{\beta\gamma}$ . It is T $_{\alpha}$ -GTP that then binds to PDE, forming the complex PDE\*-T $_{\alpha}$ -GTP, which is the activated form of the PDE. The cycle is completed when the GTP is dephosphorylated to GDP, the PDE leaves the complex, and the T $_{\alpha}$  subunit recombines with the T $_{\beta\gamma}$  subunit forming the deactivated form of transducin again. All of these reactions occur in the membrane that contains rhodopsin, and are thus influenced by the speed at which the various proteins can diffuse within the membrane, an aspect that we do not consider here (but see Lamb and Pugh, 1992).

Although it is possible to model this sequence of reactions in detail (Exercise 4), we do not do so here, as it appears that nonlinearities in the initial stages of the light response have little effect on adaptation at low light levels. This allows the considerable simplification of modeling the initial stages of the light response as a simple multistage linear system.

We model the initial cascade as a sequence of linear reactions,

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = l_1 I(t) - l_2 r, \quad (19.10)$$

$$\frac{dg_1}{dt} = l_3 r - l_4 g_1, \quad (19.11)$$

$$\frac{dg_2}{dt} = l_5 g_1 - l_6 g_2, \quad (19.12)$$

$$\frac{dg}{dt} = l_7 g_2 - l_8 g, \quad (19.13)$$

where  $l_1, \dots, l_8$  are rate constants,  $r$  is the concentration of R\*,  $g$  is the concentration of transducin, and  $g_1$  and  $g_2$  are hypothetical intermediate states between the formation of activated rhodopsin and the activation of transducin. These intermediate states need not occur in this specific location, but could be included anywhere preceding the activation of PDE. Two intermediate states are used because there is evidence that to get acceptable agreement with data, at least four stages are needed before the activation of PDE (Cobbs and Pugh, 1987; Hamer and Tyler, 1995). The transfer function (see Appendix 19.8) of this linear system is

$$H(\omega) = \frac{\eta}{(1 + i\omega\tau_1)^4}, \quad (19.14)$$

where  $\eta = l_1 l_3 l_5 l_7 \tau_1^4$ , and where we have assumed that  $l_2 = l_4 = l_6 = l_8 = 1/\tau_1$ . The impulse response  $K(t)$  of the system is given by

$$K(t) = \frac{\eta}{\tau_1 3!} \left( \frac{t}{\tau_1} \right)^3 e^{-t/\tau_1}. \quad (19.15)$$

Finally, we let  $p$  denote the concentration of PDE\*, and let  $P_0$  denote the total concentration of PDE, to get

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = s(t)(P_0 - p) - k_1 p, \quad (19.16)$$

where

$$s(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t I(\tau)K(t - \tau) d\tau. \quad (19.17)$$

If  $P_0/p \ll 1$  then  $P_0 - p \approx P_0$ , in which case the deactivation of PDE\* is linear (Hodgkin and Nunn, 1988).

## 19.2.2 Light Adaptation in Cones

We can now incorporate the model of the initial cascade into a complete model of excitation and adaptation by including equations for the concentrations of cGMP,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and  $\text{Na}^+$ , as well as the membrane potential. First, we scale  $p$  by  $P_0$ , and then let  $x = [\text{cGMP}] / [\text{cGMP}]_{\text{dark}}$ ,  $y = [\text{Ca}^{2+}] / [\text{Ca}^{2+}]_{\text{dark}}$ , and  $z = [\text{Na}^+] / [\text{Na}^+]_{\text{dark}}$ , so that  $x = y = z = 1$  in the dark. We also shift the membrane potential  $V$  so that  $V = 0$  in the dark.

cGMP is produced at some rate dependent upon  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, given by  $g(y)$ , an unknown function to be determined. cGMP is hydrolyzed by both the active (at rate proportional to  $xp$ ) and the inactive (at rate proportional to  $x(1 - p)$ ) forms of PDE, although the rate of hydrolysis by PDE\* is faster than by PDE. Thus,

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = g(y) - \gamma xp - \delta x(1 - p) = g(y) - (\gamma - \delta)xp - \delta x. \quad (19.18)$$

Note that the units of  $g(y)$ ,  $\gamma$ , and  $\delta$  are  $\text{s}^{-1}$ . (The assumptions behind (19.18) are not as simple as they may seem; see Exercise 5.)

The light-sensitive channel is held open by three cGMP molecules, and, in the physiological regime, has a current–voltage relation proportional to  $e^{-V/V^*}$ , for some constant  $V^*$ . In general, one expects the number of open light-sensitive channels to be a sigmoidal function of  $x$ , as in (1.70), with a Hill coefficient of 3. However, since  $x$  is very small in the dark (and becomes even smaller in the presence of light), few light-sensitive channels ever open, and thus the light-sensitive current  $J_{\text{ls}}$  is well represented by

$$J_{\text{ls}} = Jx^3 e^{-V/V^*}, \quad (19.19)$$

for some constant  $J$ , with units of current.

Calcium enters the cell via the light-sensitive current, of which approximately 15% is carried by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and is pumped out by the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}, \text{K}^+$  exchanger. Assuming that the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}, \text{K}^+$  exchanger removes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  with first-order kinetics, the balance equation for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is

$$\beta \frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{\kappa}{2Fvy_d} Jx^3 e^{-V/V^*} - k_2 y, \quad (19.20)$$

where  $v$  is the cell volume,  $\kappa$  is the fraction of the light-sensitive current carried by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $F$  is Faraday's constant,  $k_2$  is the rate of the exchanger, and  $y_d$  denotes  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_{\text{dark}}$ . To incorporate  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering, we assume that the ratio of bound to free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is  $\beta$ , and that the buffering is fast and linear. This means that the rate of change of  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  must be scaled by  $\beta$  (a detailed discussion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering is given in Section 7.4). Typically,  $\beta$  is approximately 99.

Similarly, the balance equation for  $\text{Na}^+$  is derived by assuming that the exchanger brings 4  $\text{Na}^+$  ions in for each  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion it pumps out, and that the rate of the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump is a linear function of  $\text{Na}^+$ . Further, most of the light-sensitive current not carried by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is carried by  $\text{Na}^+$ . Thus,

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = \frac{1-\kappa}{Fvz_d} Jx^3 e^{-V/V^*} + \frac{4k_2y_d}{z_d} y - k_3 z, \quad (19.21)$$

where  $z_d$  denotes  $[\text{Na}^+]_{\text{dark}}$ .

Some parameter relationships can be determined and the equations for  $y$  and  $z$  simplified by using the fact that  $x = y = 1$ ,  $V = 0$  must be a steady state. From this it follows that

$$k_2 = \frac{J\kappa}{2Fvy_d} \quad (19.22)$$

and

$$k_3 = \frac{(1-\kappa)J}{Fvz_d} + \frac{4k_2y_d}{z_d} = \frac{J(1+\kappa)}{Fvz_d}, \quad (19.23)$$

so that

$$\tau_y \frac{dy}{dt} = x^3 e^{-V/V^*} - y, \quad (19.24)$$

$$\tau_z \frac{dz}{dt} = \left(\frac{1-\kappa}{1+\kappa}\right) x^3 e^{-V/V^*} + \left(\frac{2\kappa}{1+\kappa}\right) y - z, \quad (19.25)$$

where  $\tau_z = \frac{Fvz_d}{J(1+\kappa)}$  and  $1/\tau_y = \beta k_2$ .

Finally, we derive an equation for the membrane potential. Since the exchangers and pumps transfer net charge across the cell membrane, there are four sources of transmembrane current: the light-sensitive current, the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump current, the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{Ca}^{2+}, \text{K}^+$  exchange current, and the light-insensitive  $\text{K}^+$  current, which is modeled as an ohmic conductance. Also note that for every 1  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion pumped out of the cell, one positive charge enters, and for every 3  $\text{Na}^+$  ions pumped out, one positive charge leaves. Thus

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = Jx^3 e^{-V/V^*} - \frac{Fk_3z_d v}{3} z - G(V - E) + (Fk_2y_d v)y, \quad (19.26)$$

where  $G$  and  $E$  are, respectively the conductance and reversal potential of the light-insensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channel, and  $C_m$  is the capacitance of the cell membrane. Recall that the potential  $V$  is measured relative to the potential in the dark. Using (19.22) and

(19.23), the voltage equation becomes

$$C_m \frac{dV}{dt} = Jx^3 e^{-V/V^*} - \frac{J(1+\kappa)}{3}z - G(V-E) + \frac{J\kappa}{2}y, \quad (19.27)$$

and then using that  $V = 0, y = z = 1$  must be a steady state, we get

$$J = \frac{-6GE}{4+\kappa}. \quad (19.28)$$

Substituting this expression back into the voltage equation gives

$$\tau_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -\left(\frac{6E}{4+\kappa}\right)x^3 e^{-V/V^*} + 2\left(\frac{1+\kappa}{4+\kappa}\right)Ez - (V-E) - \left(\frac{3E\kappa}{4+\kappa}\right)y, \quad (19.29)$$

where  $\tau_m = C_m/G$  is the membrane time constant.

In summary, the model equations are

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = g(y) - (\gamma - \delta)xp - \delta x, \quad (19.30)$$

$$\tau_y \frac{dy}{dt} = x^3 e^{-V/V^*} - y, \quad (19.31)$$

$$\tau_z \frac{dz}{dt} = \left(\frac{1-\kappa}{1+\kappa}\right)x^3 e^{-V/V^*} + \left(\frac{2\kappa}{1+\kappa}\right)y - z, \quad (19.32)$$

$$\tau_m \frac{dV}{dt} = -\left(\frac{6E}{4+\kappa}\right)x^3 e^{-V/V^*} + 2\left(\frac{1+\kappa}{4+\kappa}\right)Ez - (V-E) - \left(\frac{3E\kappa}{4+\kappa}\right)y. \quad (19.33)$$

### Determination of the Unknowns

The unknown function  $g(y)$  (the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent rate of cGMP production) is determined by requiring the steady-state membrane potential to be the logarithmic function

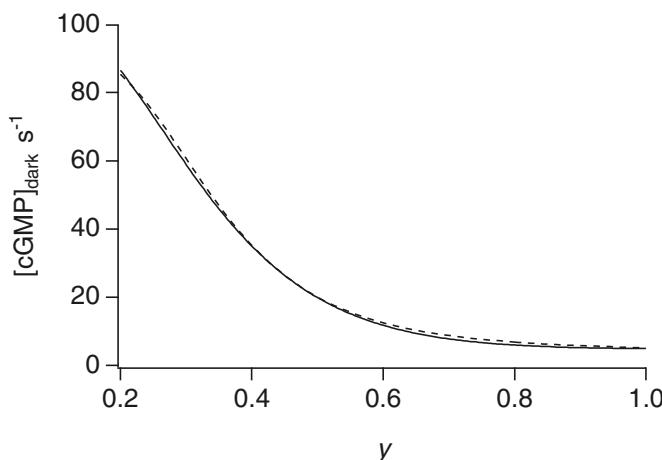
$$V_0 = -s_1 \log(1 + s_2 I_0), \quad (19.34)$$

for some constants  $s_1, s_2$ . The form of this steady-state relation gives very good agreement with experimental data from turtle cones (although it does not give exact Weber's law behavior). This results in a long and complicated expression for  $g(y)$  that we do not give here, as its analytic form has no physiological significance (see Exercise 3). Its shape, however, is of interest, and that can be determined only after the parameters are determined by fitting to experimental data.

Some of the parameters are known from experiment. For example,  $\kappa$ , the proportion of the light-sensitive current carried by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , is known to be 0.1–0.15, while  $\tau_z$ , the time constant for  $\text{Na}^+$  extrusion, is known to be around 0.04 s. Similarly, from measurements of the current/voltage relation of the light-sensitive channel,  $V^*$  is known to be 35.7 mV. The remaining unknown parameters ( $s_1, s_2, E, \tau_y, k_4, \gamma, \delta, \eta, \tau_1$ , and  $\tau_m$ ) are determined by fitting the first-order transfer function of the model to experimental data (typical experimental data are shown in Fig. 19.22). The results of this parameter estimation are given in Table 19.1.

**Table 19.1** Parameter values for the model of light adaptation in turtle cones. (Tranchina et al., 1991.)

$s_1 = 1.59 \text{ mV}$	$s_2 = 1130$
$E = -13 \text{ mV}$	$V^* = 35.7 \text{ mV}$
$\tau_y = 0.07 \text{ s}$	$k_1 = 35.4 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$\gamma = 303 \text{ s}^{-1}$	$\delta = 5 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$\kappa = 0.1$	$\eta = 52.5 \text{ s}^{-1}$
$\tau_1 = 0.012 \text{ s}$	$\tau_m = 0.016 \text{ s}$
$\tau_z = 0.04 \text{ s}$	



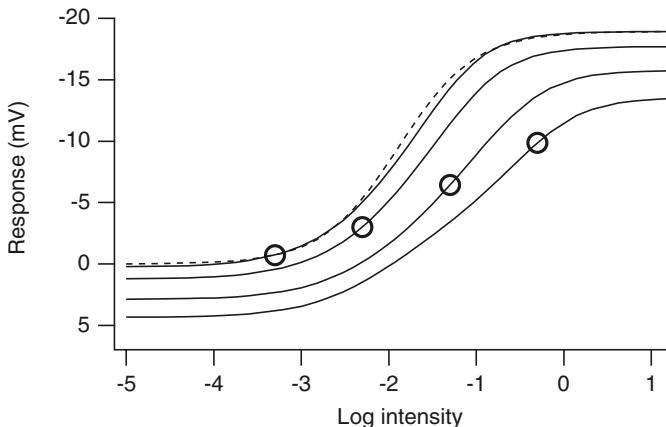
**Figure 19.8** Predicted and measured activities of guanylate cyclase as functions of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. The solid line denotes  $g(y)$  (theoretical prediction), and the dotted line denotes  $A(y)$  (experimental measurement). For convenience, the activity of guanylate cyclase is expressed in units of  $[\text{cGMP}]_{\text{dark}}$  per second.

### Model Predictions and Behavior

The most interesting prediction of the model is the shape of the feedback function  $g(y)$  that mediates light adaptation. A plot of  $g$  is given in Fig. 19.8. In the physiological regime,  $g(y)$  is well approximated by the function  $A(y)$ , where

$$A(y) = 4 + \frac{91}{1 + (y/0.34)^4}. \quad (19.35)$$

In other words, as  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  falls, the rate of cGMP production by guanylate cyclase rises along a sigmoidal curve, with a Hill coefficient of 4. This prediction of the model has been confirmed experimentally (Koch and Stryer, 1988), thus lending quantitative support to the hypothesis that the modulation of guanylate cyclase activity by  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  is sufficient to account for light adaptation in turtle cones. Although experimental data



**Figure 19.9** Intensity–response curves from the model of adaptation in turtle cones. The dotted line is the Naka–Rushton equation, and the solid lines are the model results. The open symbols denote the steady states for four different light levels.

are not entirely consistent, and there is thus still considerable debate about the correct Hill coefficient, more modern studies (Hamer, 2000b) have concluded that the Hill coefficient is possibly closer to 3 or even 2.

The model exhibits constant contrast sensitivity over a range of lower light levels. As  $I_0$  increases, the contrast sensitivity first increases and then decreases slightly, in agreement with the results of Daly and Normann (1985); the impulse response becomes biphasic; and the time-to-peak decreases as the response speeds up. Further, the intensity–response curves agree well with the Naka–Rushton equation (19.3) and shift to the right and slightly down as  $I_0$  increases (Fig. 19.9), again in good agreement with experimental data. Some of these properties of the model are explored further in Exercise 3.

An unexpected prediction of the model is that [cGMP] does not fall much as the background light level is increased. For example, if the background light level is changed so that the sensitivity decreases by a factor of 1000, [cGMP] decreases by less than a factor of two (see Sneyd and Tranchina, 1989, Fig. 4). This gives a possible explanation for the puzzling observation that even though a decrease in [cGMP] is believed to underlie light adaptation, such decreases are sometimes not experimentally observed (DeVries et al., 1979; Dawis et al., 1988). In other words, the model predicts that even though a decrease in [cGMP] may indeed mediate light adaptation, the actual decrease may be too small to measure reliably.

The model agrees quantitatively with experiment in a number of other ways (discussed in detail by Tranchina et al., 1991), lending further support to the hypothesis that it provides an excellent description of many features of light adaptation. Similar conclusions have been reached by Forti et al. (1989), who modeled phototransduction in newt rods, and Tamura et al. (1991), who modeled adaptation in primate rods. It thus

appears that although  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feedback on the activity of guanylate cyclase cannot explain all features of light adaptation in rods and cones (Fain et al., 2001), it is one of the principal mechanisms.

### 19.3 A Model of Adaptation in Amphibian Rods

The most elegant models of phototransduction in amphibian and vertebrate rods are those of Hamer, Tranchina, and their colleagues. Hamer (2000a,b) fitted a modified version of the earlier model of Nikonov et al. (1998) to a set of flash responses from the larval tiger salamander rod. Hamer also attempted to reproduce in a qualitative way a wider array of experimental data, including step responses from newt rods and responses to highly saturating flashes. This model was then extended by Hamer et al. (2003, 2005) to consider the single-photon response.

Hamer's model differs from the above model of adaptation in cones in two principal ways. First, it includes a more detailed description of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering, and, second, it models only the photocurrent, not the voltage. This latter feature makes the model simpler in some respects.

The initial cascade is modeled by two reactions only,

$$\frac{dR^*}{dt} = I(t) - \frac{1}{\tau_R} R^*, \quad (19.36)$$

$$\frac{dE^*}{dt} = \nu R^* - \frac{1}{\tau_E} E^*, \quad (19.37)$$

where  $R^*$  and  $E^*$  denote, respectively, the number of activated rhodopsin and PDE molecules, and as before,  $I(t)$  is the light input, and  $\nu$ ,  $\tau_R$ , and  $\tau_E$  are constants.

Calcium ( $c$ ) and cGMP ( $g$ ) concentrations are the only other model variables. The rate of production of cGMP is dependent on  $c$ , and is given by an expression similar to (19.35). Also, cGMP is degraded by  $E^*$  as well as at some background rate. Thus,

$$\frac{dg}{dt} = \frac{A_{\max}}{1 + (\frac{c}{K_{\text{Ca}}})^{n_c}} - (\beta_{\text{dark}} + \beta_E E^*) g. \quad (19.38)$$

The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  equations are similar to those discussed in Chapter 7. Calcium enters the cell via a light-sensitive current, is pumped out by membrane ATPases, and is buffered. Thus,

$$\frac{dc}{dt} = \alpha f J_{\text{dark}} - \gamma(c - c_{\min}) - k_{\text{on}}(b_t - b)c + k_{\text{off}}b, \quad (19.39)$$

$$\frac{db}{dt} = k_{\text{on}}(b_t - b)c - k_{\text{off}}b. \quad (19.40)$$

Here,  $J_{\text{dark}}$  is the light-sensitive current in the dark,  $f$  is the fraction of open light-sensitive channels, and  $\alpha$  is a constant that converts  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration flux. The model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pumping is highly simplified, since it is assumed that the pumps remove  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  at a linear rate that is zero at  $c_{\min}$ , while the buffering model is the same

**Table 19.2** Parameters of the model of light adaptation in amphibian rods (Hamer, 2000a).

$\tau_R$	= 0.42 s	$\tau_E$	= 1.2 s
$v$	= 1735 s <sup>-1</sup>	$b_t$	= 395 $\mu\text{M}$
$\gamma$	= 100 s <sup>-1</sup>	$k_{\text{on}}$	= 0.17 $\mu\text{M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$
$k_{\text{off}}$	= 2.35 s <sup>-1</sup>	$c_{\text{min}}$	= 0.005 $\mu\text{M}$
$K_c$	= 0.219 $\mu\text{M}$	$n_c$	= 2.85
$A_{\text{max}}$	= 4.461 $\mu\text{M s}^{-1}$	$\beta_E$	= $1.68 \times 10^{-5} \text{ s}^{-1}$
$\beta_{\text{dark}}$	= 0.136 s <sup>-1</sup>	$n_g$	= 2.21
$\alpha$	= 0.78 $\mu\text{M s}^{-1} \text{ pA}^{-1}$	$J_{\text{dark}}$	= 72.3 pA

as that discussed in Section 7.4. Hence,  $b_t$  is the total concentration of buffer, and  $b$  is the concentration of buffer bound to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .

It remains to specify the form of  $f$ , the fraction of open light-sensitive channels. As in the model of adaptation in cones, we assume that  $f$  is a power of  $g$ , and thus

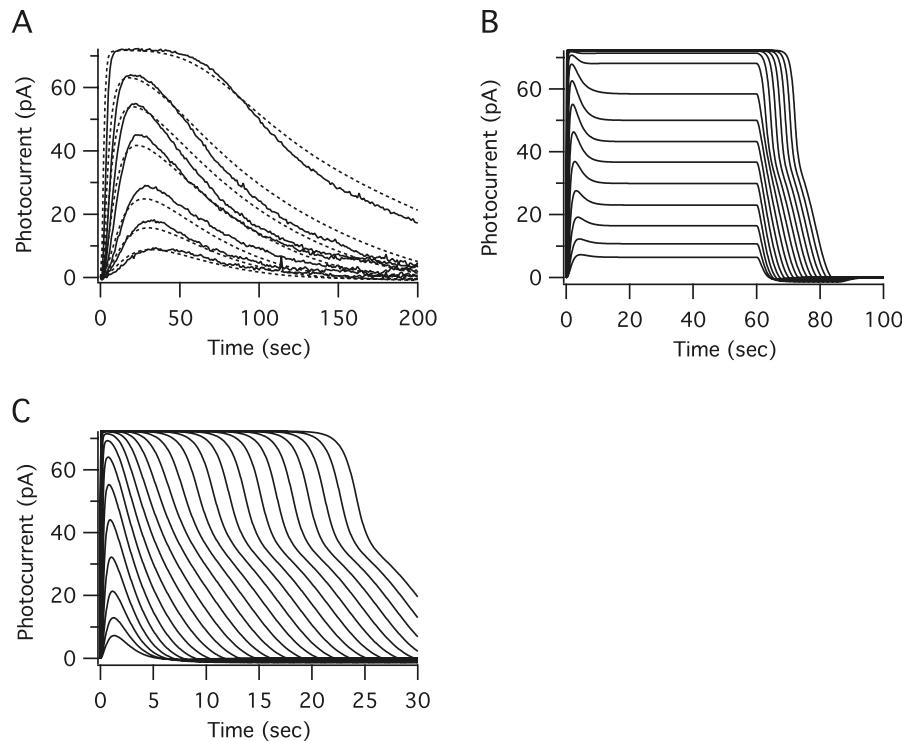
$$f = \left( \frac{g}{g_{\text{dark}}} \right)^{n_g}, \quad (19.41)$$

where  $g_{\text{dark}}$  is the concentration of cGMP in the dark.

Panel A in Fig. 19.10 shows the data and the model fit. The model was fit to a set of flash responses from the larval tiger salamander, and excellent quantitative agreement was obtained. However, Hamer then proceeded to make a series of more ambitious comparisons wherein the model response was compared to a series of step responses (panel B) and a series of highly saturating flash responses (panel C). Step responses of the model (panel B) capture the salient features of amphibian rod step responses over a range of step intensities spanning 4.7 log units (Forti et al., 1989), including the initial nose on the responses, and the recovery to a steady-state plateau. This feature is due to active  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -mediated gain control, and is observed in virtually all rod and cone step responses.

Similarly, the model captures features of highly saturated amphibian rod flash responses over a 6.5 log unit range (panel C), including the empirically observed intensity-dependence of saturation period (Pepperberg et al., 1992).

Both the model step responses and saturated flash responses have a multiphase recovery that comprises an initial faster phase, and then a slower, late phase that only appears for intense steps and for flashes sufficiently intense to elicit very long saturation periods (Pepperberg et al., 1992). The slow components in the model recovery are, however, still too fast (and less oscillatory) compared to the physiology. The transition to the slow phase is a common feature of high-intensity flash and step rod responses in both cold-blooded and mammalian species (Forti et al., 1989; Torre et al., 1990; Pepperberg et al., 1992; Nakatani et al., 1991; Tamura et al., 1991). Forti et al. (1989) and Hamer et al. (2005) showed that the slow phase of the recovery could be accounted for by including in a model a slow back-reaction from inactivated to activated rhodopsin, as suggested earlier by Lamb (1981).



**Figure 19.10** A: Experimental data and model fits from Hamer (2000a). Flash responses from larval tiger salamander rods (solid lines), and model fits (dotted lines). Responses were obtained under voltage-clamp, in the perforated patch mode, and provided to Hamer by J.I. Korenbrodt. The intensities applied to the rod were 13.33, 27.35, 53.79, 147.6, 309.8, 619.7, and 3541 R\*/20 ms flash. B: Model step responses, simulating a family of step responses from Newt rods as presented in Fig. 6A of Forti et al. (1989). The range of step intensities used was 5 to 220,000 R\*/sec. C: Highly saturated flash responses generated by the model, simulating the salient features of salamander rod responses shown in Pepperberg et al. (1992). The range of flash strengths used was 8 to  $> 2.9 \times 10^7$  R\*/flash. We thank R.D. Hamer for providing the original data for this figure.

These disagreements between model and experiment in the bright flash and bright step regime are almost certainly the result of mechanisms that have been omitted from such simple models. For example, nonlinearities in the initial stages of the light response are likely to be important for bright flashes, a feature that is lacking in both models discussed above (but see Exercise 4). In addition,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent modulation of cGMP production is not the only mechanism for adaptation (Fain et al., 2001). For example,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is also known to modulate the light-dependent channels directly, with a decrease in  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  causing an increase in the affinity of the channels for cGMP. It has also been proposed that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  modulates early steps in the phototransduction cascade, possibly by altering the gain of activation of PDE by rhodopsin in possible combination

with modulation of the PDE activity. In a theoretical study, Koutalos et al. (1995) estimated that, in dim light, about 80% of adaptation in salamander rods is mediated by the action of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on guanylate cyclase, while at bright light (6 log units brighter) about 60% is mediated by the action of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on the activity of PDE. However, whatever the exact details, according to Fain et al. (2001) there is no compelling evidence for adaptation being mediated by any messenger other than  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .

### 19.3.1 Single-Photon Responses

One of the most striking features of phototransduction is that not only can a rod respond to a single photon, it does so in a reproducible way that varies little from photon to photon. At first glance this might seem uninteresting, until one realizes that a single photon response is mediated by a single rhodopsin molecule in a random location on any one of 1000–2000 disk surfaces. Since the lifetime of a single molecule must, necessarily, be stochastic in nature, how can this produce a reproducible single-photon response? Baylor et al. (1979) were the first to study this question, which has long been considered one of the most puzzling and important problems in photoreceptor physiology.

To consider the problem in slightly more detail, suppose that the decay of an activated rhodopsin molecule is a Poisson process, with rate  $k_0$ . We are interested in the probability distribution for how long the rhodopsin molecule stays in the activated state, since this determines how many PDE molecules (on average) are activated.

Following the methods described in Section 2.9.1, we know that if the rhodopsin molecule is activated at time  $t = 0$ , the probability that it remains activated at time  $t$  is given by  $P_{R^*}$ , which is the solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{dP_{R^*}}{dt} = -k_0 P_{R^*}, \quad (19.42)$$

where  $P_{R^*}(0) = 1$ . Thus,  $P_{R^*}(t) = e^{-k_0 t}$ . It follows that the probability distribution function for the time that the rhodopsin molecule stays activated is  $k_0 P_{R^*}(t) = k_0 e^{-k_0 t}$ . This *activated time distribution* has mean  $\mu$ , and standard deviation  $\sigma$ , both equal to  $1/k_0$ , and thus

$$\frac{\sigma}{\mu} = 1. \quad (19.43)$$

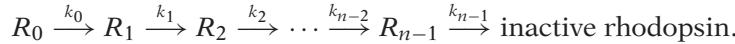
This ratio, called the coefficient of variation, is a nondimensional measure of the spread of the distribution.

Thus, a single inactivation step results in an activation lifetime that is highly variable, much more variable than is seen in experimental data. However, in reality, rhodopsin is inactivated in a series of phosphorylation steps, which results in a greatly decreased variation (Baylor et al., 1979; Rieke and Baylor, 1998a,b; Whitlock and Lamb, 1999; Field and Rieke, 2002; Hamer et al., 2003).

To see this, suppose that upon light activation, rhodopsin starts in state  $R_0$ , where  $R_i$  denotes rhodopsin that has been phosphorylated  $i$  times. Suppose further that each

state  $R_i$  activates PDE at the same rate. This second assumption is not necessary, but simplifies the analysis considerably (for a detailed analysis of a model that does not adopt this assumption, see Hamer et al., 2003). Finally, assume that there is a maximum of  $n$  phosphorylation sites and the rhodopsin is inactivated when all the sites are phosphorylated.

The corresponding Markov model is



The total time that rhodopsin is active is the time it takes to get from state  $R_0$  to the inactive state  $R_n$ . From Section 2.9.1, we know that the probability distribution function for the time of inactivation is  $\frac{dP_n}{dt} = k_{n-1}P_{n-1}$ , where  $P_k(t)$  is the probability of being in state  $k$  at time  $t$ , and is found as the solution of

$$\frac{dP_0}{dt} = -k_0P_0, \quad (19.44)$$

$$\frac{dP_1}{dt} = k_0P_0 - k_1P_1, \quad (19.45)$$

$$\vdots \quad (19.46)$$

$$\frac{dP_{n-1}}{dt} = k_{n-2}P_{n-2} - k_{n-1}P_{n-1}, \quad (19.47)$$

with  $P_0(0) = 1$ , and  $P_k(0) = 0$  for  $k > 0$ . In other words,  $P_{n-1}$  is the impulse response of an  $(n - 1)$ -stage linear filter (Appendix 19.8). For any  $n$  this system is easily solved using Fourier transforms (or any other method suitable for linear systems), and the mean and standard deviation calculated. For example, when  $n = 3$ , the distribution of the activated time has coefficient of variation

$$\frac{\sigma}{\mu} = \sqrt{\frac{k_2^2 k_1^2 + k_0^2 k_1^2 + k_0^2 k_2^2}{k_2 k_1 + k_1 k_0 + k_2 k_0}}, \quad (19.48)$$

which is less than one, since all the rate constants are positive. In particular, if the reaction sites are independent so that  $k_0 = 3k_2$ ,  $k_1 = 2k_2$ , then  $\frac{\sigma}{\mu} = \frac{7}{11}$ .

In the special case that all the  $k_i$ 's are equal, inactivation is by an  $n$ -step Poisson process, and the coefficient of variation is given by the simple formula

$$\frac{\sigma}{\mu} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}. \quad (19.49)$$

Clearly, as the number of phosphorylation steps increases, the coefficient of variation decreases. This has also been derived in Hamer et al. (2003), and verified empirically in transgenically modified mouse rods with varying numbers of functional phosphorylation sites on rhodopsin (Doan et al., 2006).

## A Unified Model

Although multiple phosphorylation steps provide a plausible answer to how a single photon can generate a reproducible response, to understand how phototransduction

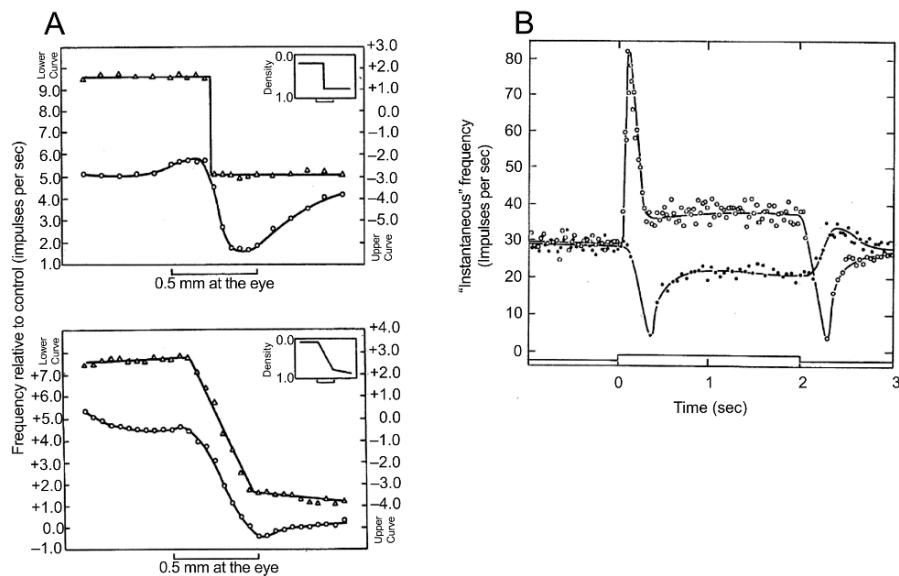
works at all light levels, it is necessary to construct a single model that can reproduce not only the single-photon response, but also the responses to flashes and steps of light, both bright and dim. This constitutes a severe set of tests against which to validate any model of phototransduction, and it was not until 2005 that such a model appeared (Hamer et al., 2005). Hamer et al. elaborated their 2003 model and were able to capture many qualitative and quantitative features of vertebrate rod responses from several species. Using a single set of parameters (except for sensitivity adjustments to account for differences between species and experimental preparations), Hamer et al. were able to account for (among other things): (i) single-photon responses and reproducibility statistics, (ii) dark-adapted flash responses over a wide range of flash intensities; (iii) step responses over a 4.7 log unit range, and (iv) steady-state light-adapted responses under normal conditions and when  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feedback was prevented.

## 19.4 Lateral Inhibition

Thus far we have considered only the responses of individual photoreceptors. However, spatial interactions in the retina also play an important role in regulation of the light response. Some of the earliest studies of this were done in the retina of the horseshoe crab *Limulus polyphemus*. As a side issue, it is interesting to note that the photoreceptors of the horseshoe crab (and other invertebrates) operate along quite different lines than those of vertebrates (Dorlöchter and Stieve, 1997). In fact, the mechanisms underlying the photoresponse in invertebrates have a great deal in common with the mechanisms underlying  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics in other cell types, as discussed in detail in Chapter 7. However, despite these intriguing similarities we do not discuss invertebrate phototransduction in any further detail.

In 1967 Haldan Hartline won (one third of) the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for his work on the retina of the horseshoe crab. Together with his colleague, Floyd Ratliff, he published in the 1950s a series of papers that showed how lateral inhibition played an important role in the horseshoe crab retina (Hartline et al., 1956; Hartline and Ratliff, 1957, 1958; Ratliff and Hartline, 1959).

The *Limulus* eye is a compound eye containing about 1000 ommatidia. Nerve fibers from each ommatidium come together to form the optic nerve, while lateral interconnections arise from a layer of nerve fibers directly behind the ommatidia. Two classic experiments are shown in Fig. 19.11. In panel A are shown the results of applying a light step (or ramp in the lower panel) to a single receptor. When lateral inhibition is removed (by the simple expedient of shining light only ever on a single receptor) then the receptor responds in a steplike fashion (open triangles). However, if the light stimulus is applied to the entire eye, thus allowing lateral inhibition, the receptor responds by accentuating the edges of the step or ramp (open circles). The temporal development of inhibition is shown in panel B. In a manner reminiscent of the responses of vertebrate photoreceptors (as is discussed above), receptors respond to a light stimulus with a transient peak followed by adaptation to a lower steady level. When the



**Figure 19.11** Lateral inhibition in the *Limulus* eye. A: the response to a step or a ramp. The open triangles show the response of a single receptor as a light step (or ramp) is moved across it, in conditions that eliminate lateral inhibition (i.e., only a single receptor was illuminated). The open circles correspond to the same experiment with lateral inhibition (i.e., when the step or ramp was applied to the entire eye and moved across the receptor). Reproduced from Ratliff and Hartline (1959), Figs. 4 and 5. B: simultaneous excitatory and inhibitory responses in neighboring receptors. One receptor (filled circles) was illuminated uniformly, while the other (open circles) was stimulated with light as indicated in the trace along the bottom of the graph. The stimulated receptor responds with a transient peak followed by adaptation and a return to a lower plateau (as in the vertebrate photoreceptors discussed above). The neighboring receptor, which is not directly stimulated by the light, is inhibited by the response of the first receptor. Reproduced from Ratliff (1961), Fig. 10.

light is removed the behavior is reversed, with a transient dip followed by recovery. A neighboring nonilluminated receptor (filled circles) responds in the opposite way as it is inhibited by the stimulated receptor.

To explain their results, Hartline and Ratliff formulated the Hartline–Ratliff equations which describe the steady response of a receptor subject to lateral inhibition. If  $r_p$  is the response of the  $p$ th receptor and  $e_p$  is the excitation applied to the  $p$ th receptor, then

$$r_p = e_p - \sum_{j=1}^n K_{p,j}(r_j - r_{p,j}^0), \quad (19.50)$$

where  $K_{p,j}$  is the inhibitory coupling coefficient from the  $j$ th receptor to the  $p$ th receptor, and  $r_{p,j}^0$  is the threshold below which the response of receptor  $j$  cannot inhibit receptor

$p$ .  $K_{pj}$  decreases with distance from cell  $p$ , while  $r^0$  increases with distance. Thus the decline of inhibition with distance is built into the model.

Although there have been a number of detailed studies of the Hartline–Ratliff equations and the *Limulus* eye (Knight et al., 1970; Hartline and Knight, 1974; Ratliff et al., 1974; Brodie et al., 1978a,b; Grzywacz et al., 1992), we do not discuss them here. Instead we discuss a simpler version of the model due to Peskin (1976).

### 19.4.1 A Simple Model of Lateral Inhibition

We suppose that  $E$  is the excitation of a receptor by light and that  $I$  is the inhibition of the receptor from its neighbors. The photoreceptor response is  $R = E - I$ . A light stimulus  $L$  causes an excitation  $E$  in the receptor, and  $E$  decays with time constant  $\tau$ . The response of the receptor  $R$  provides an input into a layer of inhibitory cells, which are laterally connected, and so the inhibition spreads laterally by diffusion and decays with time constant 1. The model equations are

$$\tau \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} = L - E, \quad (19.51)$$

$$\frac{\partial I}{\partial t} = \nabla^2 I - I + \lambda R, \quad (19.52)$$

$$R = E - I. \quad (19.53)$$

#### Space-Independent Behavior

If the light stimulus is spatially uniform, then spatial dependence can be ignored, and the model equations reduce to the ordinary differential equations

$$\tau \frac{dE}{dt} = L - E, \quad (19.54)$$

$$\frac{dI}{dt} + (\lambda + 1)I = \lambda E. \quad (19.55)$$

If  $L$  is a unit step applied at time  $t = 0$ , then the response at subsequent times is

$$R = E - I \quad (19.56)$$

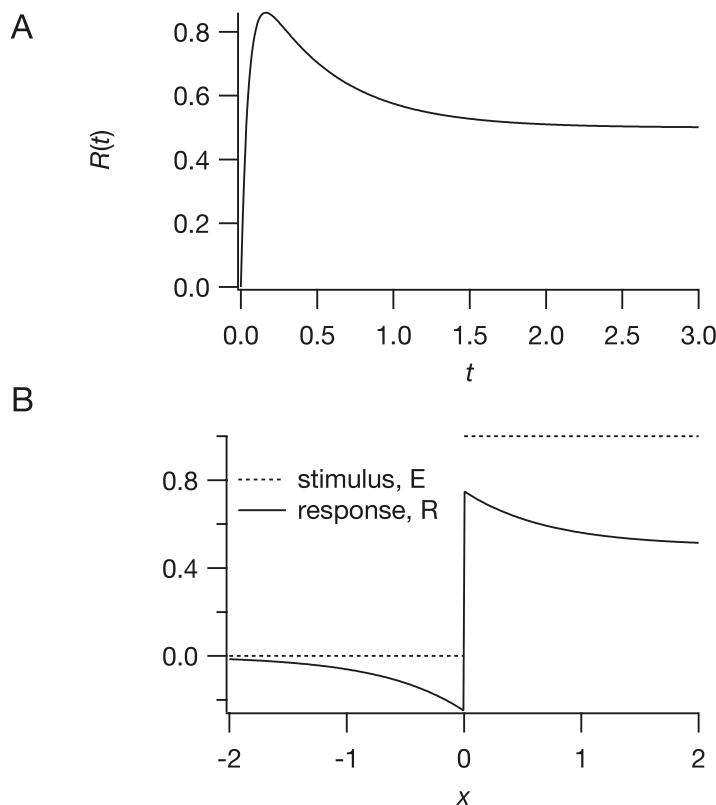
$$= \frac{1}{\lambda + 1} - \frac{k - 1}{k - \lambda - 1} e^{-kt} + \frac{\lambda k}{(k - \lambda - 1)(\lambda + 1)} e^{-(\lambda+1)t}, \quad (19.57)$$

where  $k = 1/\tau$ . The response  $R$  is graphed in Fig. 19.12A, whence it can be seen that the response is an initial peak followed by a decay to a plateau.

#### Time-Independent Behavior

If the input is steady, so that time derivatives vanish, then  $E = L$  and

$$\nabla^2 I = (\lambda + 1)I - \lambda L. \quad (19.58)$$



**Figure 19.12** Solutions of the qualitative model of lateral inhibition in the retina, calculated with the parameters  $\lambda = 1$ ,  $k = 20$ . A: The space-independent response. B: The steady response to a band of light extending from  $x = 0$  to  $x = \infty$ .

Suppose there is an edge in the pattern of light, represented by

$$L(x, y) = \begin{cases} 1, & x > 0, \\ 0, & x < 0. \end{cases} \quad (19.59)$$

Then the solution for  $I$  is

$$I = \begin{cases} \frac{\lambda}{\lambda+1} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} e^{-x\sqrt{\lambda+1}} \right), & x > 0, \\ \frac{\lambda}{\lambda+1} \frac{1}{2} e^{x\sqrt{\lambda+1}}, & x < 0, \end{cases} \quad (19.60)$$

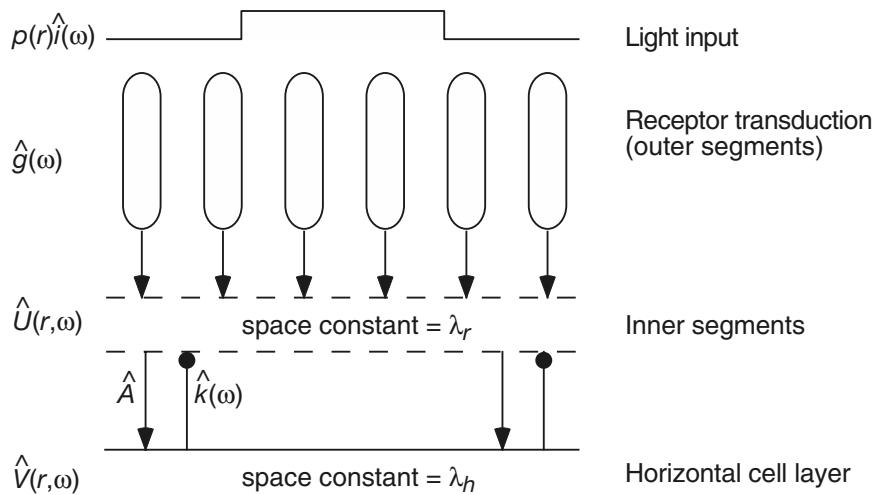
where  $I$  and  $dI/dx$  are required to be continuous at  $x = 0$ . However, since  $E = L$ ,  $R = E - I$  is discontinuous at  $x = 0$ . Graphs of  $E$  and  $R = E - I$  are shown in Fig. 19.12B: as can be seen,  $R$  exhibits Mach bands at the edge of the light stimulus.

### 19.4.2 Photoreceptor and Horizontal Cell Interactions

Lateral inhibition in the vertebrate retina results from different processes from those in the invertebrate. In the vertebrate retina photoreceptors and horizontal cells form layers of cells through which their potential can spread laterally. The output from the photoreceptors is directed toward the horizontal cells, but the response of the horizontal cells also influences the photoreceptors, forming a feedback loop with spatial interactions. A detailed model of receptor/horizontal cell interactions was constructed by Krausz and Naka (1980), and the model parameters were determined by fitting to experimental data from the catfish retina. The model is depicted in Fig. 19.13.

In this model, receptor and horizontal cells are assumed to form continuous sheets, within which voltage spreads continuously. The coupling coefficient for voltage spread in the sheet of receptors differs from that in the horizontal cell sheet. The receptors feed forward to the horizontal cells, with transfer function  $\hat{A}$ , and the horizontal cells feed back to the receptors with transfer function  $\hat{k}$ . The receptor response is the excitation due to light minus that due to horizontal cell feedback.

We first consider the model in which the voltage spreads laterally in the horizontal cell layer, but not in the photoreceptor layer. To specify this model we must first determine how voltage spreads within a cell layer. The primary assumption is that the horizontal cell layer is effectively a continuous two-dimensional sheet of cytoplasm, and spread of current within this layer can be modeled by the passive cable equation (Chapter 4), with a source term describing the current input from the photoreceptor layer. If the variations of light around the mean are small, it is reasonable to assume that the ionic currents are passive and that the governing equation is linear. Thus, from



**Figure 19.13** Schematic diagram of the lateral inhibition model of Krausz and Naka. (Adapted from Krausz and Naka, 1980.)

(4.14) we have

$$\tau_h \frac{\partial V}{\partial t} + V = \lambda_h^2 \nabla^2 V + R_h I_{\text{ph}}, \quad (19.61)$$

where  $\tau_h$  is the membrane time constant,  $\lambda_h$  is the membrane space constant,  $R_h$  is the membrane resistivity, and  $I_{\text{ph}}$  is the current input from the photoreceptor layer.

To simplify the model, we assume that the light input, and all subsequent responses, are radially symmetric, functions only of the distance from the center of the stimulus. We suppose that the light input is  $Ii(t)p(r)$ , i.e., modulated temporally by  $i(t)$  and spatially by  $p(r)$ . We let  $\hat{U}(r, \omega)$  denote the Fourier transform of receptor potential at position  $r$ , and let  $\hat{g}(\omega)$  denote the transfer function of the linear stages of receptor phototransduction. Then, in the frequency domain we have

$$\hat{U} = I p(r) \hat{g}(\omega) \hat{i}(\omega) - \hat{k}(\omega) \hat{V}. \quad (19.62)$$

$U$  is influenced by two terms, the first due to excitation by light, and the second due to inhibitory feedback from horizontal cells, with transfer function  $\hat{k}(\omega)$ . Finally, taking the feedforward transfer function to be  $\hat{A}(\omega)$ , and taking  $V = \hat{V} e^{i\omega t}$ , we obtain

$$\lambda_h^2 \nabla^2 \hat{V} - (1 + i\omega\tau_h) \hat{V} = -\hat{A}(\omega) \hat{U}. \quad (19.63)$$

Although we expect the qualitative behavior of the Krausz–Naka model to be similar to that of Peskin’s model, the goal of this model is to obtain quantitative agreement with experiment by fitting it directly to data.

We simplify (19.62) and (19.63) by a change of variables. We set

$$\Phi = \frac{\hat{U}}{I \hat{g}(\omega) \hat{i}(\omega)}, \quad (19.64)$$

$$\Psi = \frac{\hat{V}}{I \hat{g}(\omega) \hat{i}(\omega) \hat{A}(\omega)}, \quad (19.65)$$

and from (19.63) find that

$$\nabla^2 \Psi - \frac{1}{\alpha^2(\omega)} \Psi = -\frac{p(r)}{\lambda_h^2}, \quad (19.66)$$

where

$$\alpha^2(\omega) = \frac{\lambda_h^2}{1 + i\omega\tau_h + \hat{A}(\omega)\hat{k}(\omega)}. \quad (19.67)$$

It is left as an exercise (Exercise 10) to show that the solution of (19.66), assuming an infinite domain, is

$$\Psi = \frac{1}{\lambda_h^2} \int_0^\infty p(s) G(r, s) s ds, \quad (19.68)$$

where  $G$ , the fundamental solution, is given by

$$G(r, s) = \begin{cases} I_0(r/\alpha) K_0(s/\alpha), & r < s, \\ K_0(r/\alpha) I_0(s/\alpha), & r > s. \end{cases} \quad (19.69)$$

Here  $I_0$  and  $K_0$  are modified Bessel functions of the first and second kind of order zero. (Unfortunately,  $I_0$  is standard notation for the modified Bessel function of the first kind, but it should not be confused with the background light level.) Of particular interest is the case of a circular spot of light of radius  $R$ ,

$$p(s) = \begin{cases} 1, & s < R, \\ 0 & s > R. \end{cases} \quad (19.70)$$

In this case, we can use the identities  $\frac{d}{dz}(zK_1(z)) = zK_0(z)$  and  $\frac{d}{dz}(zI_1(z)) = zI_0(z)$  to evaluate the integral (19.68) with the result that

$$\Psi(r, \omega) = \frac{1}{\lambda_h^2} F(r, R, \omega), \quad (19.71)$$

where

$$F(r, R, \omega) = \begin{cases} \alpha^2 [1 - (R/\alpha)I_0(r/\alpha)K_1(R/\alpha)], & r < R, \\ \alpha R I_1(R/\alpha) K_0(r/\alpha), & r > R. \end{cases} \quad (19.72)$$

### Fitting to Data

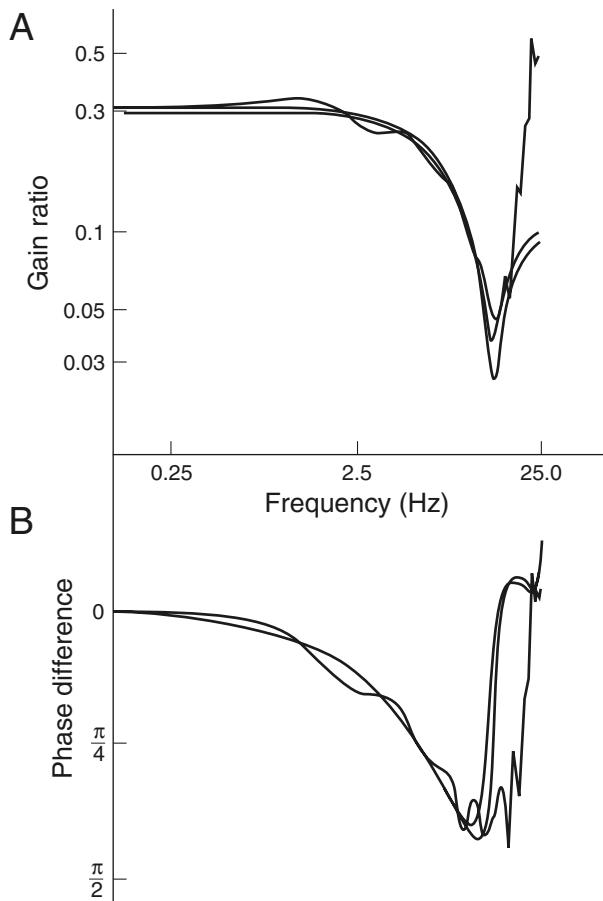
Krausz and Naka determined the model parameters by fitting the ratio of the uniform field response to the spot response to experimental data (Fig. 19.14). The field response (i.e., taking  $R \rightarrow \infty$ ) can be calculated from (19.66) by setting  $p(r) \equiv 1$ , in which case the constant solution for  $\Psi$  is easily seen to be  $\Psi(r, \omega)_{\text{field}} = \alpha^2 / \lambda_h^2$ . Thus,

$$\frac{\hat{V}_{\text{spot}}}{\hat{V}_{\text{field}}} = \frac{\Psi(r, \omega)_{\text{spot}}}{\Psi(r, \omega)_{\text{field}}} = \frac{1}{\alpha^2} F(r, R, \omega). \quad (19.73)$$

For fixed values of  $r$  and  $R$ ,  $\alpha(\omega)$  can be determined to give good agreement between model and experiment. Note that by taking response ratios, dependence on the feedforward steps within each photoreceptor is eliminated. Thus, attention is focused on the interactions between the horizontal cells and the photoreceptors. However, the model cannot distinguish between  $\hat{A}$  and  $\hat{k}$ , since only the product of these terms appear. So, for simplicity, it is assumed that  $\hat{A}$  is a constant gain, with no frequency dependence, and that  $\hat{k}$  has unity gain. Values for  $\hat{k}(\omega)$  are obtained at each frequency, and then  $k(t)$  determined from an inverse Fourier transform. The result is well approximated by

$$k(t) = \frac{3}{\tau} e^{-(t-t_0)/\tau} [1 - e^{-(t-t_0)/\tau}]^2, \quad (19.74)$$

a sigmoidal-shaped rising curve followed by exponential decay. The parameters  $t_0$  and  $\tau$  are, respectively, the feedback delay and the feedback time constant. The function  $k(t)$  has an important physiological interpretation, as it describes the feedback from horizontal cells to photoreceptors; in response to a delta function input from the horizontal cells, the photoreceptor response is given by  $-k(t)$ . Parameters resulting from the fit are given in Table 19.3. The membrane time constant of the horizontal cells was found to be small in all cases, and so was set to zero. Hence, the potential of the horizontal cell layer responds essentially instantaneously to a stimulus. However, the



**Figure 19.14** Spot-to-field transfer function measured in the catfish retina. The wavy traces are the experimental results, and the two smooth curves are results from the model, using two slightly different parameter sets, one of which is given in Table 19.3. (Krausz and Naka, 1980, Fig. 4.)

**Table 19.3** Parameters of the Krausz–Naka model for catfish retinal neurons. These parameters correspond to the model in which there is no coupling between photoreceptors.

$\lambda_h = 0.267 \text{ mm}$
$\tau_h = 0 \text{ ms}$
$\hat{A} = 3.77$
$\tau = 24.8 \text{ ms}$
$t_0 = 0.022 \text{ ms}$

time constant for the response of the photoreceptor layer to horizontal cell feedback is significant.

### Predicting the Response to a Moving Grating

As a test of the model, Krausz and Naka calculated the response to a 1-dimensional moving grating, and compared the result to experimental data. A moving grating provides

a light stimulus of the form  $l = l(t - x/c)$ , where  $c$  is the speed of the grating. We look for solutions of the form  $V = V(\xi)$ , where  $\xi = t - x/c$ , in which case the differential equation (19.61) becomes

$$\frac{\lambda_h^2}{c^2}V'' - \tau_h V' - V = -R_h I_{\text{ph}}, \quad (19.75)$$

where a prime denotes differentiation with respect to  $\xi$ . Taking Fourier transforms with respect to  $\xi$ , and recalling that in the frequency domain the input to the horizontal cell layer is given by  $\hat{A}\hat{U}$ , we find that

$$(1 + i\omega\tau_h)\hat{V} = -\frac{\omega^2\lambda_h^2}{c^2}\hat{V} + \hat{A}\hat{U}. \quad (19.76)$$

Assuming that the light input is given by  $Ie^{i\omega\xi}$ , then  $\hat{U}$  satisfies

$$\hat{U} = I\hat{g}(\omega) - \hat{k}(\omega)\hat{V}. \quad (19.77)$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} \Psi(\omega) &= \frac{\hat{V}}{\hat{I}\hat{g}(\omega)\hat{A}} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 + i\omega\tau_h + \hat{A}\hat{k} + \omega^2\lambda_h^2/c^2} \\ &= \left(\frac{\alpha^2}{\lambda_h^2}\right) \frac{c^2}{c^2 + \omega^2\alpha^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (19.78)$$

Krausz and Naka showed that the model predictions for the rectilinear stimulus predict experimental results accurately, confirming that the model provides a general quantitative description of the horizontal cell response that is not limited to the data on which it was based.

### Receptor Coupling

Receptors are electrically coupled by gap junctions, and the potential spreads through the receptor layer in a continuous fashion, as it does in the horizontal cell layer, but with a different space constant,  $\lambda_r$  (Lamb and Simon, 1977; Detwiler and Hodgkin, 1979). To incorporate receptor coupling, we need only add spatial coupling for the receptor layer. In the frequency domain, we have

$$\lambda_r^2 \nabla^2 \Phi - (1 + i\omega\tau_r)\Phi - \hat{k}(\omega)\hat{A}(\omega)\Psi = -p(r), \quad (19.79)$$

$$\lambda_h^2 \nabla^2 \Psi - (1 + i\omega\tau_h)\Psi = -\Phi, \quad (19.80)$$

where  $\tau_r$  is the membrane time constant for the receptor cell layer. Writing  $q_r = (1 + i\omega\tau_r)/\lambda_r^2$  and  $q_h = (1 + i\omega\tau_h)/\lambda_h^2$  and substituting (19.80) into (19.79) gives

$$\left(\nabla^2 - \frac{1}{\gamma^2}\right) \left(\nabla^2 - \frac{1}{\delta^2}\right) \Psi = \frac{p(r)}{\lambda_h^2 \lambda_r^2}, \quad (19.81)$$

where  $1/\gamma^2$  and  $1/\delta^2$  are defined by

$$\frac{1}{\gamma^2} + \frac{1}{\delta^2} = q_r + q_h, \quad (19.82)$$

$$\frac{1}{\gamma^2 \delta^2} = q_r q_h + \frac{\hat{A}(\omega) \hat{k}(\omega)}{\lambda_h^2 \lambda_r^2}. \quad (19.83)$$

Note that  $\gamma$  and  $\delta$  are analogous to  $\alpha$  in (19.66).

Now we define  $\chi(r, \gamma)$  to satisfy

$$\left( \nabla^2 - \frac{1}{\gamma^2} \right) \chi(r, \gamma) = -p(r). \quad (19.84)$$

Since the operator  $\left( \nabla^2 - \frac{1}{\gamma^2} \right)$  has a unique inverse, we use  $\chi(r, \gamma)$  to eliminate  $p$  in (19.81) and find that

$$\left( \nabla^2 - \frac{1}{\delta^2} \right) \Psi = \frac{-\chi(r, \gamma)}{\lambda_h^2 \lambda_r^2}. \quad (19.85)$$

Similarly, by symmetry

$$\left( \nabla^2 - \frac{1}{\gamma^2} \right) \Psi = \frac{-\chi(r, \delta)}{\lambda_h^2 \lambda_r^2}. \quad (19.86)$$

Subtracting these two equations, we obtain

$$\Psi(r, \omega) = \frac{1}{\lambda_h^2 \lambda_r^2} \left( \frac{\gamma^2 \delta^2}{\gamma^2 - \delta^2} \right) [\chi(r, \gamma) - \chi(r, \delta)]. \quad (19.87)$$

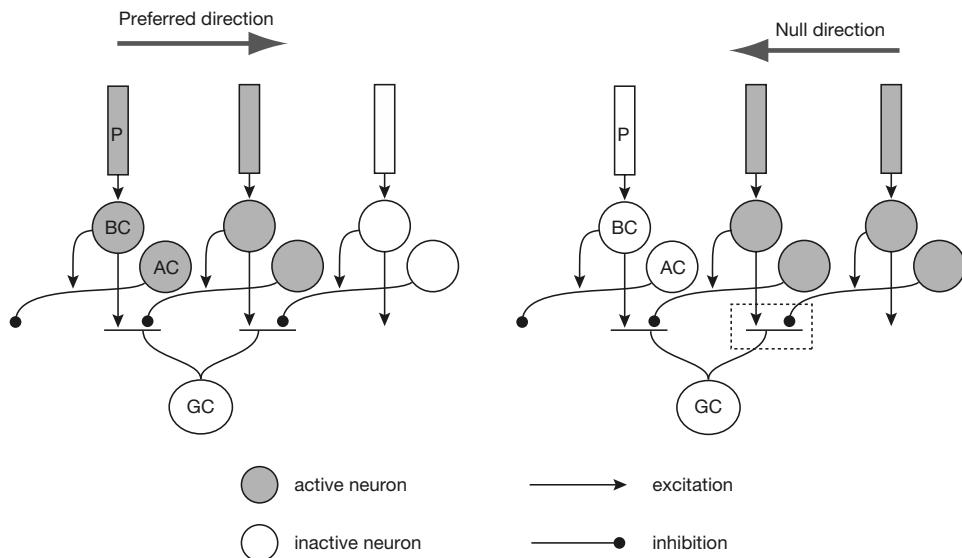
Solving (19.85) for  $\nabla^2 \Psi$ , substituting into (19.80), and using the expression for  $\Psi$  then gives

$$\Phi(r, \omega) = \frac{1}{\lambda_r^2} \left( \frac{\gamma^2 \delta^2}{\gamma^2 - \delta^2} \right) \left[ \left( q_h - \frac{1}{\gamma^2} \right) \chi(r, \gamma) - \left( q_h - \frac{1}{\delta^2} \right) \chi(r, \delta) \right]. \quad (19.88)$$

Since (19.84) for  $\chi$  is of the same form as (19.66) for  $\Psi$ , its solution takes the same form. Thus, (19.87) and (19.88) give an explicit solution to the general problem of electrical flow in two coupled cell layers connected by reciprocal pathways.

## 19.5 Detection of Motion and Directional Selectivity

It seems intuitively obvious that the detection of motion is one of the most important jobs of the visual system of an animal, either prey or predator, and it is believed to be one of the oldest features of the visual system (Nakayama, 1985; a detailed review of motion detection is given by Clifford and Ibbotson, 2003). It is known that, in some vertebrates at least, directional selectivity arises in the retina itself, with directionally sensitive ganglion cells responding preferentially to motion in a certain direction (Barlow and Levick, 1965; Taylor et al., 2000; Vaney and Taylor, 2002). A qualitative model of how



**Figure 19.15** Proposed mechanism for directional selective ganglion cells. P — photoreceptor; BC — bipolar cell; AC — amacrine cell; GC — ganglion cell. When motion is in the null direction, the inhibitory and excitatory inputs at the ganglion cell cancel out (as shown by the dashed box), giving a smaller response. Thus, directional selectivity arises from the asymmetry of the connections from amacrine cells to ganglion cells. Adapted from Taylor et al., 2000, Fig. 1.

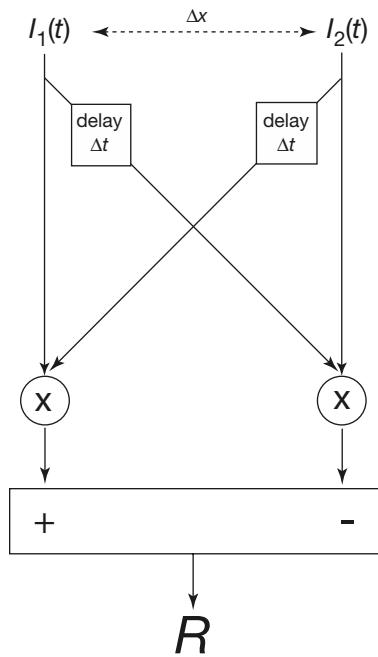
such direction selectivity arises is sketched in Fig. 19.15. According to this scheme, directional selectivity arises because of the asymmetry of the connections between amacrine and ganglion cells. When motion is in the preferred direction, the inhibitory effects of the amacrine cell layer are all in the reverse direction, and thus act too late to inhibit the ganglion cell responses. However, when motion is in the null direction, the amacrine cells feed forward making the excitation and inhibition happen at the same time at the same place, thus decreasing the ganglion cell response.

The earliest quantitative model of motion detection was that of Hassenstein and Reichardt (1956; Reichardt, 1961; Borst and Egelhaaf, 1989; an introduction for the nonexpert is given by Borst, 2000), a model that was based on experimental work on the beetle *Chlorophanus* and that has become a classic in the field. A schematic diagram of a simple Reichardt detector is shown in Fig. 19.16. Two photoreceptors (inputs  $I_1$  and  $I_2$ ), separated by a distance  $\Delta x$ , feed forward to the output stage (a ganglion cell, for example). Input  $I_1$  is delayed by  $\Delta t$  and multiplied by  $I_2$ , while the mirror image procedure is applied to  $I_2$ . Finally, the results are subtracted to get the response,  $R$ .

For ease of notation, let  $\Delta x = h$  and  $\Delta t = k$ . Then, if the light stimulus is  $s(x, t)$ , it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} R(t) &= I_1(t)I_2(t - k) - I_1(t - k)I_2(t) \\ &= s(0, t)s(h, t - k) - s(0, t - k)s(h, t), \end{aligned} \quad (19.89)$$

where for convenience we have assumed that the first photoreceptor,  $I_1$ , is at  $x = 0$ .



**Figure 19.16** Schematic diagram of a simple Reichardt detector. Two spatially separated inputs are delayed, cross-multiplied and subtracted to get a response,  $R$ , whose sign depends on the direction of motion.

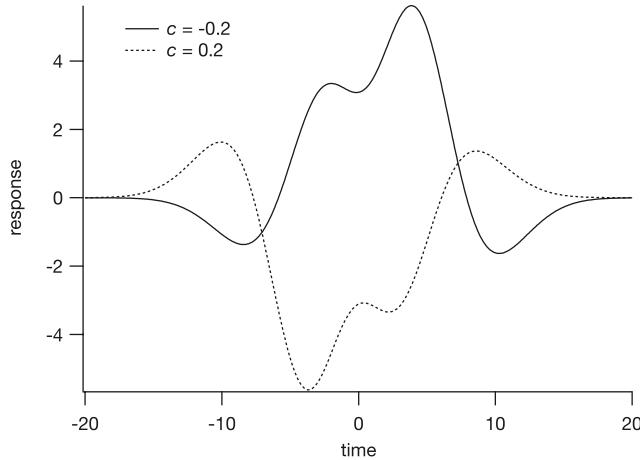
This motion detector has two important properties. First, when the response is integrated over a sufficiently long time, the steady components of  $I_1$  and  $I_2$  have no effect; only those portions of the input that correspond to a moving signal are detected. Although this is not true for an arbitrary input, it is true for realistic light stimuli. Second, when the velocity of the stimulus is reversed, the integral of the response changes sign. Thus, the sign of the integral of  $R$  determines the direction of motion.

Both these properties can be simply illustrated by using a stimulus of the form  $s(x, t) = s_0 + s_1(x - ct)$ , where  $c$  is the speed at which the stimulus is moved across the two receptors. Two basic forms for  $s_1$  cover almost the entire range of physiological stimuli; periodic with mean zero, or with compact support (i.e., nonzero only on some finite region). An example of the first case is a flicker stimulus presented to the eye, while an example of the second case is a moving bar. Assuming either one of these two forms for  $s_1$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} R(t) &= s_0 [s_1(h - ct + ck) - s_1(h - ct) + s_1(-ct) - s_1(-ct + ck)] \\ &\quad + s_1(-ct)s_1(h - ct + ck) - s_1(-ct + ck)s_1(h - ct). \end{aligned} \quad (19.90)$$

When this is integrated from  $t = -\infty$  to  $\infty$ , all the terms in the square brackets cancel out (since  $s_1$  has either mean zero or compact support, by assumption). Thus

$$\int R(t) dt = \int s_1(-ct)s_1(h - ct + ck) - s_1(-ct + ck)s_1(h - ct) dt. \quad (19.91)$$



**Figure 19.17** Response of a simple Reichardt detector to the stimulus  $s(x, t) = 10[1 + e^{-(x-ct-1)^2} + 0.8e^{-(x-ct+0.2)^2}]$  (calculated with the values  $\Delta x = 0.5$ ,  $\Delta t = 0.2$ ). When  $c$  changes sign, the response is close to a reflection through the origin of the first response. In fact, it is not an exact reflection, but the integrals of the two responses are of the same amplitude with opposite sign.

Now denote the response for stimulus speed  $c$ , by  $R_c(t)$ . Since

$$\begin{aligned}\int R_{-c}(-t) dt &= \int s_1(-ct)s_1(h - ct - ck) - s_1(-ct - ck)s_1(h - ct) dt \\ &= - \int R_c(t) dt\end{aligned}\tag{19.92}$$

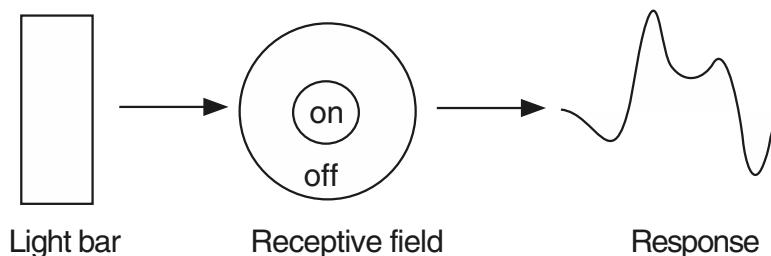
(use the change of variables  $\tau = t - k$ ), it follows that

$$\int [R_c(t) + R_{-c}(-t)] dt = 0.\tag{19.93}$$

Thus, if the velocity of the stimulus is reversed, the response is close to a reflection through the origin of the original response, having exactly the same integral, of opposite sign. We illustrate this in Fig. 19.17.

## 19.6 Receptive Fields

The output stage of the retina is the layer of ganglion cells, which extend through the optic nerve to the lateral geniculate nucleus, from there transmitting signals to the visual cortex. Each ganglion cell responds by a series of action potentials, with the information encoded in the frequency and duration of the wave train. Thus, ganglion cells transmit a digital signal typical of neurons. The input stage of ganglion cells is highly organized. Each ganglion cell responds only to light in a well-defined part of the retina, called the *receptive field* of the cell, and these receptive fields are organized into two concentric,



**Figure 19.18** Diagram of the center-surround arrangement of the receptive field of an on-center retinal ganglion cell, and its response to a wide bar moving across the receptive field. (Adapted from Rodieck, 1965, Fig. 1.)

mutually antagonistic regions, the center and the surround (Fig. 19.18). Although in reality the story is not quite so simple (see Troy and Shou, 2002, for an excellent modern review) we discuss only simple receptive fields of this type. This center-surround organization was discovered by Kuffler (1953, 1973) and is considered one of the landmark discoveries in visual science. Interestingly, one of Kuffler's early colleagues was FitzHugh, of later FitzHugh–Nagumo fame (Barlow, FitzHugh and Kuffler, 1957).

The center can be either excitatory (*on-center*) or inhibitory (*off-center*). A white figure moved across the receptive field of an on-center cell gives the same response as a black figure moved across the receptive field of an off-center cell. A typical response curve for a bar moving across the receptive field is shown in Fig. 19.18. Note that the ganglion cell has a large response to the edges of the bar, but responds much less to the maintained stimulus in the middle of the bar. This is reminiscent of the Mach bands seen in the Krausz–Naka model. There are different types of on/off responses for ganglion cells. Some respond to both “on” and “off,” while others respond only to one or the other. Some ganglion cells are directionally dependent, responding to a stimulus only if it enters the receptive field from a particular direction. Other ganglion cells are color dependent.

The different responses of the on-center and off-center ganglion cells are the result of their connections to different types of bipolar cells. On-center and off-center ganglion cells synapse to bipolar cells that respond, respectively, to light increments and decrements. These different bipolar cell responses are due, in turn, to their different responses to glutamate released at the synapse with the photoreceptor.

Recall that, in the dark the photoreceptor is depolarized and thus there is a continual release of glutamate at the synapse with the bipolar cell. A light stimulus causes hyperpolarization of the photoreceptor and a consequent decrease in glutamate release. To see what effect this decrease in glutamate has on the bipolar cell, consider first an on-center bipolar cell. These bipolar cells express glutamate receptors (metabotropic glutamate receptors) that, when bound to glutamate, activate intracellular pathways that result in the closure of cAMP-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels and hyperpolarization of the cell (contrast this with the ACh-sensitive channels discussed in Section 8.1.5). Thus, in

the dark, on-center bipolar cells are hyperpolarized due to the high levels of glutamate released by the photoreceptor. When the photoreceptor is stimulated by light glutamate levels fall, the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in the bipolar cells open and the bipolar cell depolarizes, sending a positive signal to the ganglion cell.

The off-center bipolar cell expresses a different type of glutamate receptor (an ionotropic, or AMPA, receptor) that responds to glutamate by depolarizing the cell. Thus, in the dark these bipolar cells are depolarized. When stimulated by light the photoreceptors release less glutamate and the off-center bipolar cell hyperpolarizes, thus sending a negative signal to the ganglion cell.

Although it is not yet entirely understood how the center-surround field occurs, it is likely that it is mediated by feedback from horizontal cells to photoreceptors. Horizontal cells synapse with photoreceptors over a considerable area and are connected to one another by gap junctions. It is thus plausible that negative feedback from the surround to the ganglion cell is mediated by feedback from the horizontal cell layer to the photoreceptors in the center, and thus to the bipolar cell and the ganglion cell.

One of the earliest models of ganglion cell behavior was constructed by Rodieck (1965). In this model it is assumed that the response of a ganglion cell is a weighted sum of the responses from each part of the receptive field, with negative weights for the inhibitory part of the field and positive weights for the excitatory part. Here we consider only on-center cells, as the model is the same for off-center cells, with reversed signs. We also consider the model in one spatial dimension only, as the extension to two dimensions introduces greater algebraic complexity, but no new concepts.

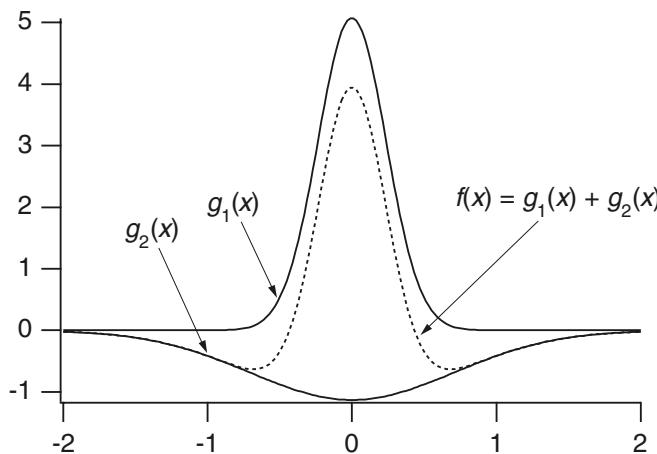
Suppose that the steady response to a step change in illumination of a small area  $dx$  centered at the point  $x$  is given by  $f(x)dx$ . From consideration of experimental data, Rodieck showed that  $f(x)$  can be described as the sum of two Gaussians, one contributing a positive component from the center and the other contributing a negative component from the surround. Thus,

$$f(x) = \frac{g_1\sigma_1}{\sqrt{\pi}}e^{-\sigma_1^2x^2} - \frac{g_2\sigma_2}{\sqrt{\pi}}e^{-\sigma_2^2x^2}, \quad (19.94)$$

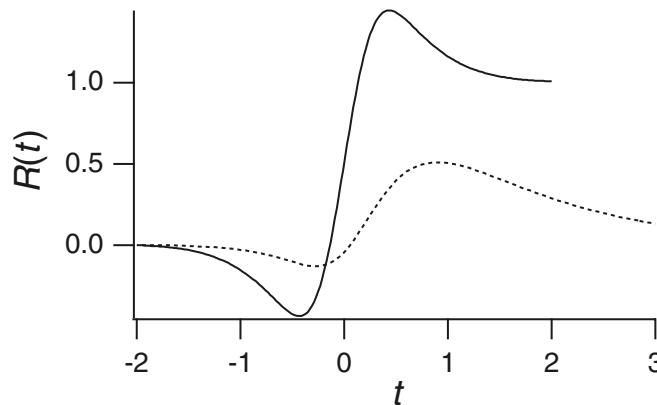
which is plotted in Fig. 19.19. The constants  $g_1$  and  $g_2$  are the gains of the excitatory center and inhibitory surround, respectively, and the parameters  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  control their radial size. Now suppose that the response of the ganglion cell is infinitely fast, and that the cell is stimulated with a semi-infinite bar, extending from  $x = -\infty$  to  $x = ct$ , so that the edge of the bar is moving from left to right with speed  $c$ . Then, the response of the ganglion cell,  $R(t)$ , is

$$R(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{ct} f(x) dx \quad (19.95)$$

$$= g_1 \left[ \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \operatorname{erf}(ct/\sigma_1) \right] + g_2 \left[ \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \operatorname{erf}(ct/\sigma_2) \right], \quad (19.96)$$



**Figure 19.19** The addition of two Gaussian distributions, one with positive sign denoting the excitatory center, and one with negative sign denoting the inhibitory surround, gives the response function  $f(x)$ , which weights the light stimulus according to its position in space. Computed using  $\sigma_1 = 3$ ,  $\sigma_2 = 1$ ,  $g_1 = 3$ ,  $g_2 = 1$ .



**Figure 19.20** Response of a ganglion cell to a moving bar of semi-infinite width. Solid line assuming that the response at each point  $x$  is infinitely fast; dotted line assuming that each point  $x$  responds to the light stimulus according to (19.98). Both curves were calculated with  $\sigma_1 = 3$ ,  $\sigma_2 = 1$ ,  $g_1 = 3$ ,  $g_2 = 1$ ,  $c = 1$ .

where  $\text{erf}(x)$ , the error function, is defined by

$$\text{erf}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} dx. \quad (19.97)$$

From the plot of  $R$  given in Fig. 19.20 (solid line) it can be seen that the ganglion cell responds preferentially to the edge of the bar, as is seen in experimental data.

In reality, the response of the ganglion cell is not infinitely fast, but the response to a step of light has an initial peak followed by a decrease to a lower plateau. Thus, in Rodieck's model, the time-dependent response to a step input is taken to be

$$h(t) = [1 + te^{-t}] H(t), \quad (19.98)$$

where  $H(t)$  is the Heaviside function. This is a simple way to incorporate the dynamic behavior of the earlier retinal stages. More general forms for the response produce little difference in the overall response.

To illustrate the temporal behavior of the overall response, we calculate the response to the moving bar, extending from  $x = -\infty$  to  $x = ct$ . Since the edge of the moving bar reaches an element at position  $x$  at time  $t = x/c$ , the response of an element at position  $x$  is  $f(x)h(t - x/c)dx$ . Integrating over the entire domain gives

$$R(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)h(t - x/c)dx, \quad (19.99)$$

$$= \underbrace{\int_{-\infty}^{ct} f(x) dx}_{\text{steady term}} + \underbrace{\int_{-\infty}^{ct} f(x)(t - x/c)e^{x/c-t} dx}_{\text{transient term}}, \quad (19.100)$$

which is graphed in Fig. 19.20 (dotted line). If  $f(x)$  decays sufficiently rapidly at  $\pm\infty$ , the transient term goes to zero as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , leaving only the steady response. Of course, since retinas are not infinite in extent,  $f$  is zero outside a bounded domain, and so such decay is guaranteed. Further, in the limit as  $c \rightarrow 0$ , keeping  $ct$  fixed, the transient term again approaches zero. That is, if the bar moves slowly, the effect of  $h(t)$  is small, again as expected. On the other hand, as  $c \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $R(t)$  approaches  $h(t) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx$ , which is exactly the response to a space-independent flash.

Not only should a model incorporate the temporal dynamics of the receptive field responses, it should also incorporate the fact that the responses of the center and surround have different temporal kinetics. Thus, the most accurate models include an additional temporal filter in the response of the surround, the so-called Gaussian center-surround model (Troy and Shou, 2002). However, since these models quickly become quite complicated we do not discuss them in any further detail here.

Cells higher up in the visual pathway, in the lateral geniculate nucleus and the visual cortex, have progressively more complex receptive fields, designed to make particular cells respond maximally to stimuli of particular orientation or direction of movement. The above model serves as a brief introduction to the type of modeling involved in the analysis of receptive fields. A more detailed discussion of receptive fields is given by Kuffler et al. (1984) and Troy and Shou (2002).

## 19.7 The Pupil Light Reflex

The control of pupil size is yet another way in which the eye can adjust to varying levels of light intensity. While the adjustment of pupil size accounts for much less of visual adaptation than those mechanisms described earlier, it is nonetheless an important control mechanism.

The size of the pupil of the eye is determined by a balance between constricting and dilating mechanisms. Pupil constriction is caused by contraction of the circularly arranged pupillary constrictor muscle, which is innervated by parasympathetic fibers. The motor nucleus for this muscle is the Edinger-Westphal nucleus located in the oculomotor complex of the midbrain. Dilation is controlled by contraction of the radially

arranged pupillary dilator muscle innervated by sympathetic fibers and by inhibition of the Edinger-Westphal nucleus.

The effect of the pupil light reflex is to control the retinal light flux

$$\phi = IA, \quad (19.101)$$

where  $I$  is the illuminance (lumen mm<sup>-1</sup>) and  $A$  is the pupil area (mm<sup>2</sup>). It performs this function by acting like the aperture of a camera. When light is shined on the retina, the pupil constricts, thereby decreasing  $\phi$ . However, there is a latency of  $\approx 180\text{--}400$  ms following a change in light input before changes in pupil size are detected.

This combination of negative feedback with delay may lead to oscillations of pupil size. These oscillations were first observed by a British army officer, Major Stern, who noticed that pupil cycling could be induced by carefully focusing a narrow beam of light at the pupillary margin. Initially, the retina is exposed to light, causing the pupil to constrict, but this causes the iris to block the light from reaching the retina, so that the pupil subsequently dilates, re-exposing the retina to light, and so on indefinitely.

Longtin and Milton (1989; Milton, 2003) developed a model of the dynamics of pupil contraction and dilation. In their model it is assumed that the light flux  $\phi$  is transformed after a time delay  $\tau_r$  into neural action potentials that travel along the optic nerve. The frequency of these action potentials is related to  $\phi$  by

$$N(t) = \eta F \left( \ln \left[ \frac{\phi(t - \tau_r)}{\bar{\phi}} \right] \right), \quad (19.102)$$

where  $F(x) = x$  for  $x \geq 0$  and  $F(x) = 0$  for  $x < 0$ ,  $\bar{\phi}$  is a threshold retinal light level (the light level below which there is no response), and  $\eta$  is a rate constant. The notation  $\phi(t - \tau_r)$  is used to indicate dependence on the flux at time  $\tau_r$  in the past.

This afferent neural action potential rate is used by the midbrain nuclei, after an additional time delay  $\tau_t$ , to produce an efferent neural signal. This signal exits the midbrain along preganglionic parasympathetic nerve fibers, which terminate in the ciliary ganglion where the pupillary sphincter is innervated. Neural action potentials at the neuromuscular junction result in the release of neurotransmitter (ACh), which diffuses across the synaptic cleft, thus generating muscle action potentials and initiating muscle contraction. These events are assumed to require an additional time  $\tau_m$ .

The relationship between iris muscle activity  $x$  and the rate of arriving action potentials  $E(t)$  is not known. We take a simple differential relationship

$$\tau_x \frac{dx}{dt} + x = E(t), \quad (19.103)$$

where

$$E(t) = \gamma F \left( \ln \left[ \frac{\phi(t - \tau)}{\bar{\phi}} \right] \right), \quad (19.104)$$

and  $\tau = \tau_r + \tau_t + \tau_m$  is the total time delay in the system.

Finally, we close the model by assuming some relationship between iris muscle activity  $x$  and pupil area  $A$  as  $A = f(x)$ . For example, one reasonable possibility is the

Hill equation

$$A = f(x) = \Lambda_0 + \frac{\Lambda\theta^n}{x^n + \theta^n}, \quad (19.105)$$

for which area is a decreasing function of activity, with maximal area  $\Lambda + \Lambda_0$  and minimal area  $\Lambda_0$ . It follows that the differential equation governing iris muscle activity is

$$\tau_x \frac{dx}{dt} + x = \gamma F \left( \ln \left[ \frac{I(t - \tau)f(x(t - \tau))}{\bar{\phi}} \right] \right) \quad (19.106)$$

$$= g(x(t - \tau), I(t - \tau)). \quad (19.107)$$

### 19.7.1 Linear Stability Analysis

Because  $f(x)$  is a decreasing function of  $x$ , a steady solution of (19.107) is assured when the input  $I(t)$  is constant. We identify this value of  $x$  as  $x^*$ , satisfying  $x^* = g(x^*, I)$ . Linearized about  $x^*$ , the delay differential equation becomes

$$\tau_x \frac{dX}{dt} + X = -GX(t - \tau), \quad (19.108)$$

where  $G = -g_x(x^*, I) = -\gamma \frac{f'(x^*)}{f(x^*)}$  is called the *gain* of this negative feedback system. If we set  $X = X_0 e^{\mu t}$ , we find the characteristic equation for  $\mu$  to be

$$\tau_x \mu + 1 = -Ge^{-\mu\tau}. \quad (19.109)$$

If  $|G| < 1$ , there are no roots of this equation with positive real part; the solution is linearly stable. Since  $G > 0$ , there are no positive real roots of this characteristic equation. The only possible way for the solution to become unstable is through a Hopf bifurcation, whereby a root of (19.109) with nonzero imaginary part changes the sign of its real part. If we set  $\mu = i\omega$ , we can separate (19.109) into real and imaginary parts, obtaining

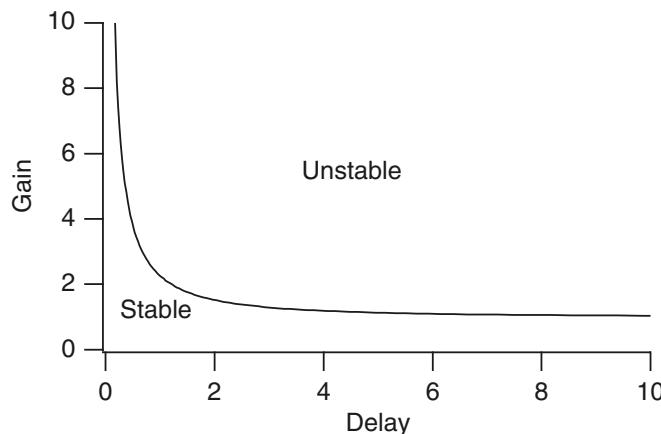
$$G \cos \omega\tau = -1, \quad (19.110)$$

$$G \sin \omega\tau = \tau_x \omega. \quad (19.111)$$

From these two expressions, we readily find a parametric representation of the critical stability curve to be

$$G = \frac{-1}{\cos \eta}, \quad \frac{\tau}{\tau_x} = \frac{-\eta}{\tan \eta}. \quad (19.112)$$

The first instability curve is plotted in Fig. 19.21, with the gain  $G$  plotted as a function of the dimensionless delay  $\tau/\tau_x$ . It is easily seen that on the critical curve  $G$  is a decreasing function of  $\tau/\tau_x$ . If the delay is larger than the critical delay, the steady solution is unstable and there is a stable periodic solution of the full differential delay equation (19.107), corresponding to periodic cycling of pupil size with constant light stimulus.



**Figure 19.21** Critical stability curve for the pupil light reflex.

## 19.8 Appendix: Linear Systems Theory

One of the most widely used tools in the study of the visual system is linear systems analysis. Here we have assumed that the basic tools of linear function theory, such as Fourier transforms, delta functions, and the convolution theorem, are familiar to readers. There are numerous books that provide the necessary background, for example, Papoulis (1962), Stakgold (1998) and Haberman (2004).

The essential idea of linear systems theory is that for any linear differential equation  $L[u] = f(t)$ , where  $L[\cdot]$  is a time-autonomous differential operator, the Fourier transform of the solution can be written as

$$\hat{u}(\omega) = T(\omega)\hat{f}(\omega), \quad (19.113)$$

where  $\hat{f}(\omega)$  is the Fourier transform of the input function  $f(t)$ , and  $T(\omega)$  is called the *transfer function* for this linear system. Note that if  $f(t)$  is the delta function, then  $\hat{u} = T(\omega)$ , and thus the transfer function is the Fourier transform of the impulse response. The transfer function can also be found by assuming an input of the form  $f = e^{i\omega t}$  and looking for an output of the form  $u = T(\omega)e^{i\omega t}$ . Thus, the amplitude and phase of the sinusoidal input are modulated by the amplitude and phase of the transfer function. Such sinusoidally varying inputs are commonly used in experimental studies of the visual system; by varying the frequency of the stimulus and measuring (at each fixed frequency) the amplitude and phase of the output, the transfer function can be experimentally determined.

Once the transfer function (and thus the impulse response) of a linear system is known, its response to any input can be calculated. Intuitively, any function  $f(t)$  can be considered a superposition of impulses, and thus the response to the input  $f(t)$  is the sum of the responses to these impulses. Thus, if  $K(t)$  is the impulse response of the linear operator  $L$ , the solution to  $L[u] = f(t)$  is  $u(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t f(\tau)K(t - \tau) d\tau$ . Although this exposition is far too brief for a complete presentation of the theory, the main

point is that, for a linear system, experimental measurement of the transfer function suffices for a complete determination of the system. For a detailed discussion of impulse responses, Green's functions, and fundamental solutions of differential equations, the reader is referred to Stakgold (1997), Haberman (2003) or Kevorkian (2000).

One of the simplest mathematical realizations of a linear system is the linear differential equation

$$\frac{dx}{dt} + ax = f(t), \quad a > 0, \quad (19.114)$$

where  $f(t)$  is the input to the system. If we assume that  $f(t) = e^{i\omega t}$ , and look for solutions of the form  $x = A(\omega)e^{i\omega t}$ , we get

$$A(\omega) = \frac{1}{a + i\omega}. \quad (19.115)$$

This is the transfer function of (19.114). It can also be calculated by taking the Fourier transform of (19.114). The inverse Fourier transform of the transfer function is  $H(t)e^{-at}$ , where  $H$  is the Heaviside function, which is the impulse response of (19.114) (Exercise 12). If we now solve (19.114) directly by using the integrating factor  $e^{at}$  we get

$$(x(t)e^{at})' = f(t)e^{at}, \quad (19.116)$$

and thus, integrating from  $-\infty$  to  $t$  and assuming the solution is bounded at  $-\infty$ , we get

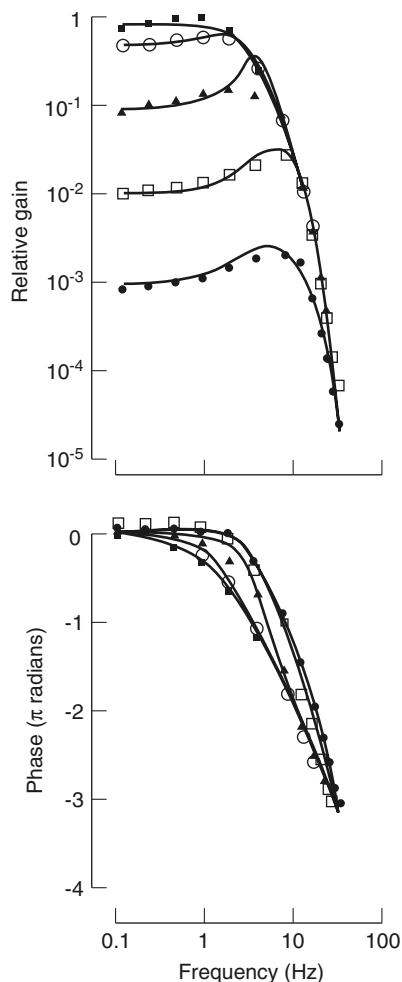
$$x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t f(\tau)e^{-a(t-\tau)} d\tau. \quad (19.117)$$

Thus the response to a general input is the convolution of the input with the impulse response, as claimed above.

This approach is easily extended to multiple linear differential equations, as in (19.10)–(19.13). The transfer function and impulse response of those equations is calculated in exactly the same way; we assume an input of the form  $I(t) = e^{i\omega t}$  and look for solutions of the form  $g(t) = H(\omega)e^{i\omega t}$ .

Typical experimental data are shown in Fig. 19.22. The light input to the system is modulated around a mean level, and the output is the membrane potential of a turtle horizontal cell. Here there are five different background light levels, corresponding to the five curves in the figure. Gain is measured in units of mV photon<sup>-1</sup> and plotted relative to gain in the dark.

As can be seen from Fig. 19.22, when the background light level increases by one log unit in intensity (indicated by moving from filled squares to open circles, or from open circles to filled triangles, etc.), the relative gain at low frequency decreases by approximately one log unit. Hence, over a range of light levels the low-frequency gain is inversely proportional to  $I_0$ , and thus the steady-state sensitivity obeys Weber's law. At high frequencies and low background light levels, Weber's law breaks down, and the gain becomes nearly independent of the background light level. It is important to note that the steady-state sensitivity is not the same as the peak sensitivity. In photoreceptors,



**Figure 19.22** A family of temporal frequency responses from turtle horizontal cells, measured at five different mean light levels. (From top to bottom, the filled square, open circle, filled triangle, open square, and filled circle denote background lights of intensity, respectively,  $-4$ ,  $-3$ ,  $-2$ ,  $-1$ , and  $0$  log units.) Symbols are experimental data, and the smooth curves are from the model of Tranchina et al. (1984), which is not described here. The data are presented in a typical Bode plot format, with the amplitude plotted in the upper panel, the phase difference in the lower. (Tranchina et al., 1984, Fig. 1.)

however, for reasons that are not clear, both the steady-state and peak sensitivity follow Weber's law approximately. From these data it can also be seen that turtle horizontal cells respond best to stimuli of a given frequency. At the two highest light levels the data are clearly band-pass in nature, with a maximal response at around 10 Hz.

One significant problem is that most realistic systems are nonlinear, so a transfer function cannot be defined (since solutions are not the linear superposition of fundamental solutions). However, if the amplitude of the sinusoidal input is small, so that  $I(t) = \epsilon e^{i\omega t}$ , then the response should also be small, of the form  $\epsilon T(\omega)e^{i\omega t} + O(\epsilon^2)$ . If  $\epsilon$  is small enough, and higher-order terms can be neglected, the response of the system is well described by the *first-order transfer function*  $T(\omega)$ .

Of course, the response of retinal cells to stimuli is not linear, and therefore one can determine only their first-order frequency response. However, measurement of the

amplitudes of higher harmonics ( $e^{2i\omega t}$ ,  $e^{3i\omega t}$ ,  $e^{4i\omega t}$ , etc.) in response to an input of the form  $e^{i\omega t}$  indicates that nonlinearities have little effect for the light stimuli used in the experiments. Thus, the behavior of retinal cells can be described well by their first-order frequency responses.

Suppose  $V_0(x)$  denotes the response to a steady input  $x$ . If the input is of the form  $I(t) = I_0 + \epsilon e^{i\omega t}$ , then the output is of the form  $V(t) = V_0(I_0) + \epsilon V_1(w; I_0)e^{i\omega t} + O(\epsilon^2)$ . The function  $V_1(w; I_0)$  is the first-order transfer function, or first-order frequency response. When  $\omega = 0$ , this becomes  $V_0(I_0 + \epsilon) = V_0(I_0) + \epsilon V_1(0; I_0) + O(\epsilon^2)$ . However, expanding  $V_0(I_0 + \epsilon)$  in a Taylor series around  $I_0$  gives  $V_0(I_0 + \epsilon) = V_0(I_0) + \epsilon V'_0(I_0) + O(\epsilon^2)$ , from which it follows that the steady-state sensitivity is

$$\frac{dV_0}{dI_0} = V_1(0; I_0), \quad (19.118)$$

an identity that is of considerable use.

## 19.9 EXERCISES

---

1. Show that changing  $\sigma$  in the Naka–Rushton equation (19.3) translates the curve along the log  $I$  axis.
2. Compare the two expressions (19.8) and (19.9) for the sensitivity. (Hint: Choose the arbitrary values  $\sigma_D = 0.1$ ,  $k = 1$  and plot (19.8), then adjust the value of  $A$  until the curves look the same.)
3. In this exercise, some of the solutions of the model of light adaptation in turtle cones are obtained (Section 19.2.2).
  - (a) Before one can calculate solutions of the model, the expression for  $g(y)$  must be derived. By requiring the steady-state solution of the model to be

$$V_0 = -s_1 \log(1 + s_2 I_0), \quad (19.119)$$

show that

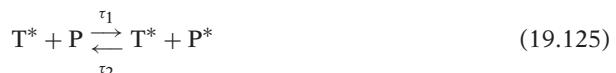
$$g(y) = \left( y e^{E(1-y)/V^*} \right)^{1/3} \left( \delta + \frac{(\gamma - \delta)\eta(e^{-E(1-y)/s_1} - 1)}{s_2 k_1 + \eta(e^{-E(1-y)/s_1} - 1)} \right). \quad (19.120)$$

Plot  $g(y)$  (using the parameters given in Table 19.1) and compare to the functional form found experimentally (19.35), i.e.,

$$A(y) = 4 + \frac{84}{1 + (y/0.34)^4}. \quad (19.121)$$

- (b) Calculate the impulse responses of the model for a range of background light levels. For each background light level  $I_0$ , let the magnitude of the impulse be  $I_0$  also. Do this for  $I_0 = 0.5, 0.05, 0.005, 0.0005$  and  $0.00005$ . How close to linear are the responses? What can be said about the contrast sensitivity?
- (c) Scale each of the impulse responses calculated above so that each has a maximum value of 1, and plot them all on the same graph. How do the impulse responses change as the light level increases?

- (d) Replace  $g(y)$  by  $A(y)$  and recalculate the steady state  $V_0$  and the impulse responses (at the same background light levels as in part (b) above). Are there any significant differences?
4. In 1989, Forti et al. published a model of phototransduction in newt rods. In many respects their model is similar to the model discussed here. However, one major difference is in how they chose to model the initial stages of the light response. Instead of using a linear filter (which is, to be sure, a bit simplistic), Forti et al. assumed that the initial stages of the light response could be modeled by the reactions



Here,  $R$  denotes rhodopsin,  $T$  denotes transducin and  $P$  denotes PDE. The  $*$  superscript denotes the activated form, and  $h\nu$  denotes the action of light. The parameter values of the model are given in Table 19.4. (These are not exactly the reactions assumed by Forti et al. as we have omitted the inactivated rhodopsin state. However, this makes almost no difference to the results presented here.)

- (a) Write down the differential equations for this system of reactions, assuming the amount of rhodopsin is not limiting, and solve them numerically. Plot  $P^*(t)$  for a variety of stimuli, each 10 ms in duration, with magnitudes 0.2, 0.5, 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100 and 500. What can you conclude about the linearity of the response when the magnitude of the stimulus is small? What can you conclude about the linearity of the response as the magnitude of the stimulus increases?
- (b) Compare the model in part (a) with the detailed reaction scheme in Fig. 19.7. Where do they disagree? Modify the model so that it agrees better with the more detailed reaction scheme. (Hint: The conservation equation for transducin must be considered more carefully, as must the differential equation for  $T^*$ .) Solve the new model numerically for the same stimuli as part (a), and compare with the solutions of the Forti et al. model. Explain the differences.
- (c) Compare the model of part (a) to the linear cascade model in the book. Where are they similar? Where are they not similar? Why?

**Table 19.4** Parameter values for the model of the initial stages of the light response in newt rods (Forti et al., 1989).  $P_0$  is the total amount of PDE, and  $T_0$  is the total amount of transducin.

$T_0 = 1000 \mu M$	$P_0 = 100 \mu M$
$\alpha_1 = 20 s^{-1}$	$\epsilon = 0.5 s^{-1} \mu M^{-1}$
$\tau_1 = 0.1 s^{-1} \mu M^{-1}$	$\tau_2 = 10 s^{-1}$
$\beta_1 = 10.6 s^{-1}$	

5. cGMP is hydrolyzed to GMP by PDE or PDE\* in an enzymatic reaction, and as was described in Chapter 1, such reactions do not necessarily follow the law of mass action. Assuming that cGMP reacts with PDE according to



derive the conditions under which (19.18) may be expected to apply, keeping in mind that [PDE] is much larger than [cGMP], and thus the usual approximation of enzyme kinetics does not apply. (See also Exercise 14 of Chapter 1.)

6. Show that the current generated by the electrogenic exchange pumps should not be ignored in the modeling of a photoreceptor. (Hint: By writing down the balance equations for  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  show that the outward current generated by the electrogenic  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump in the inner segment must be approximately a third of the total inward light-sensitive current.) How significant is the current generated by the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{Ca}^{2+}, \text{K}^+$  exchanger in the outer segment? Should the electrogenic pumps be included in the model if the model is compared to photocurrent measurements and not to voltage measurements?
7. Find the solution of (19.44)–(19.47) in the case that  $k_i = k$  for all  $i$ . Find the mean and variance for the time of inactivation.
8. Calculate the response of the lateral inhibition model (Section 19.4) when the light stimulus is a strip of width  $2a$ , modulated sinusoidally with frequency  $\omega$ . Show that as  $a$  increases (i.e., as the stimulus goes from a spot to a uniform field), the gain at  $x = 0$  becomes more band-pass in nature.

*Hint:* Show that the solution for  $\hat{I}$  is of the form

$$\hat{I} = \begin{cases} \frac{\lambda \hat{L}}{(i\omega\tau+1)(1+\lambda+i\omega)} [1 + A \cosh(x\sqrt{1+\lambda+i\omega})], & |x| < a, \\ B \exp(-|x|\sqrt{1+\lambda+i\omega}), & |x| > a, \end{cases} \quad (19.127)$$

and require that  $\hat{I}$  and its derivative be continuous at  $|x| = a$ . Define the gain as the response divided by the stimulus, and calculate the amplitude of the gain at  $x = 0$  as a function of  $\omega$  and  $a$ . (The details are given in Peskin (1976)).

9. Calculate the response of the lateral inhibition model (Section 19.4) to a moving step of light. Show that as the speed tends to zero, the response approaches the response to a steady step, while as the speed goes to infinity, the response behaves like the response to a step of light presented simultaneously to the entire retina. (This question is taken from Peskin (1976)).

*Hint:* To exhibit the space-like limit write  $R$  as a function of  $x + ct$ , where  $c$  is the speed of the moving step. To exhibit the timelike limit, write  $R$  as a function of  $t + x/c$ .

10. Derive (19.69) and verify (19.71). Hints: Show first that everywhere except  $r = s$ ,  $G$  satisfies the modified Bessel equation of order zero,  $z^2 \frac{d^2 u}{dz^2} + z \frac{du}{dz} - z^2 u = 0$ . Two independent solutions of the modified Bessel equation are the modified Bessel functions of the first and second kind. Then show that the jump condition at  $r = s$  is

$$\left. \frac{dG}{dr} \right|_{r=s^+} - \left. \frac{dG}{dr} \right|_{r=s^-} = -\frac{1}{s}, \quad (19.128)$$

and use the fact that the Wronskian  $W$  is

$$W(K_\nu, I_\nu) = K_\nu(z) \frac{d}{dz} I_\nu(z) - I_\nu(z) \frac{d}{dz} K_\nu(z) = \frac{1}{z}. \quad (19.129)$$

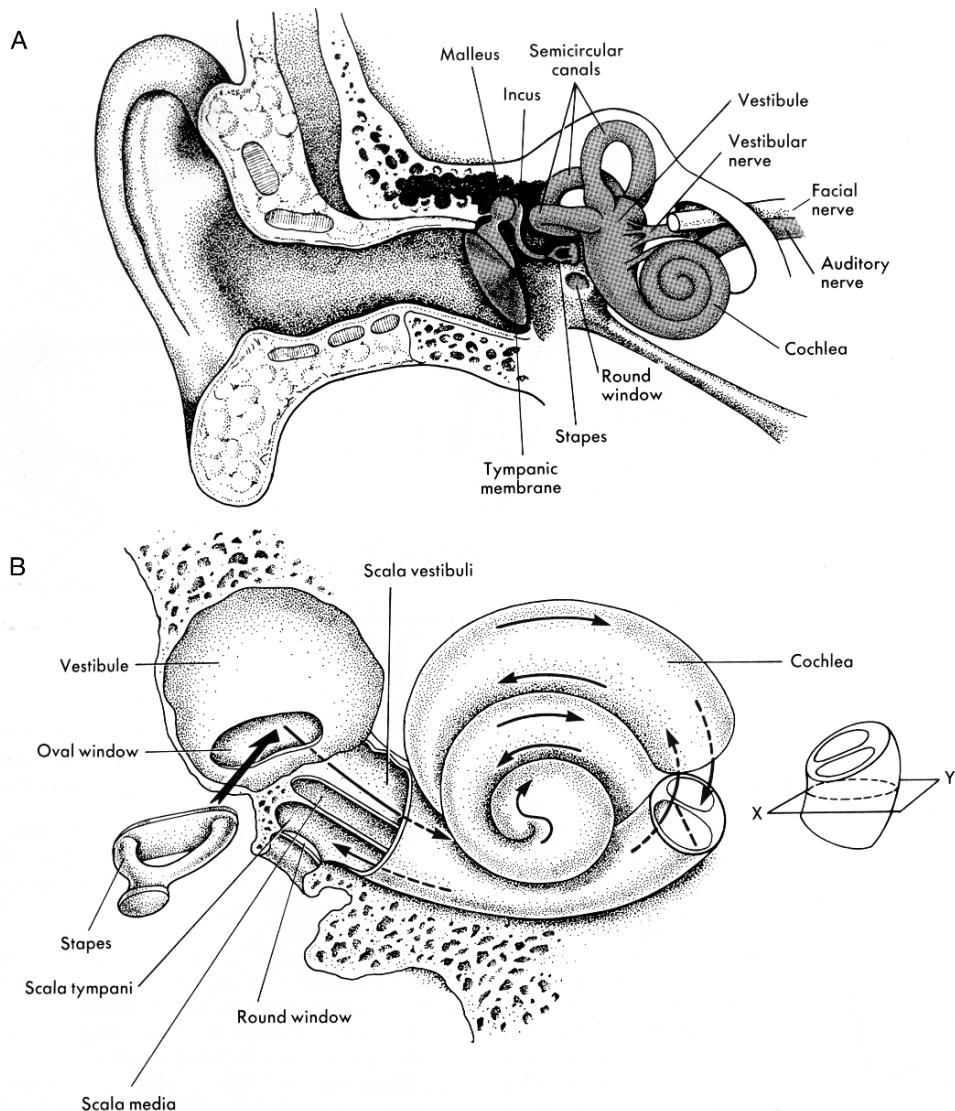
11. Show that the Krausz–Naka model (Section 19.4.2) is similar to the Peskin model (Section 19.4.1), with a few more details. Thus, investigate the response of the Krausz–Naka model to a space-independent light step and a time-independent bar of light. Demonstrate Mach bands and adaptation, as in the Peskin model.
  12. (a) By taking the Fourier transform of (19.114) show that the transfer function is given by (19.115).  
(b) Calculate the impulse response of (19.114) by solving the differential equation directly.  
*(Hint:* First integrate from  $t = -\epsilon$  to  $t = \epsilon$  and let  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$  to obtain a jump condition at  $t = 0$ . Then use that jump condition as an initial condition for the differential equation.)
-

## The Inner Ear

The mammalian ear has three major components: the outer, middle, and inner ears (Fig. 20.1A). The outer ear consists of a cartilaginous flange, the *pinna*, incorporating a resonant cavity that connects to the *ear canal* and finally to the *tympanic membrane*. It performs an initial filtering of the sound waves, increasing the sound pressure gain at the tympanic membrane in the 2 to 7 kHz region. It also aids sound localization. Bats, for example, have highly developed pinnae, with a high degree of directional selectivity. Although less efficient in humans, the outer ear accounts for our ability to distinguish whether sounds come from above or below, in front or behind.

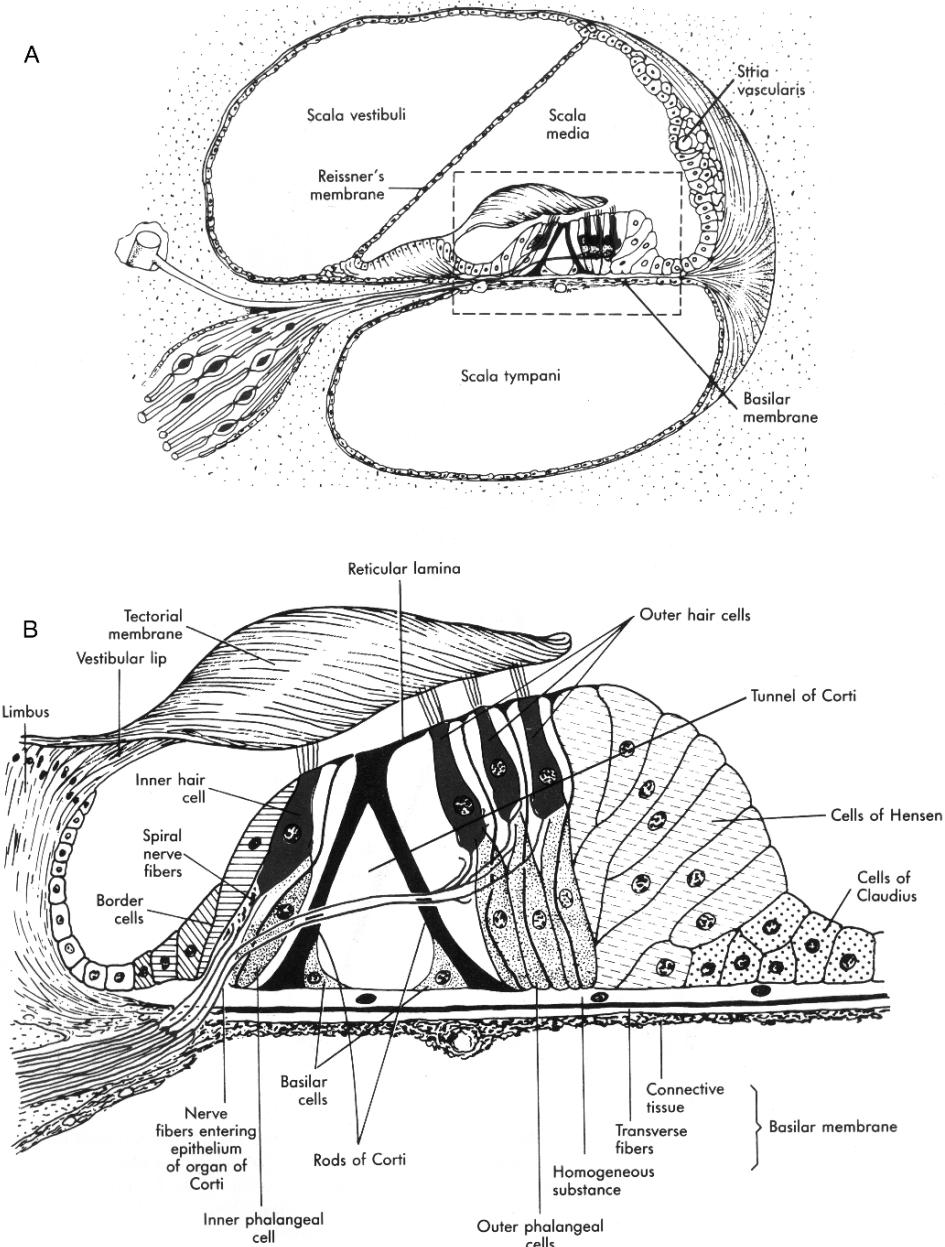
The function of the middle ear is to transmit the sound vibrations from the tympanic membrane to the cochlea. Because of the much higher impedance of the cochlear fluid, the middle ear also functions as an impedance-matching device, focusing the energy of the tympanic membrane on the oval window of the cochlea. If not for impedance matching, much of the energy of the sound waves in air would be reflected by the cochlear fluid. This impedance matching is carried out by the *ossicles*, three small bones, the *malleus*, *incus*, and *stapes*, that connect the tympanic membrane to the oval window. The tympanic membrane has a much higher surface area than the oval window, and the ossicles act as levers that increase the force at the expense of velocity, resulting in the required concentration of energy at the oval window.

Most of the events central to hearing occur in the inner ear, in particular the *cochlea*. The vestibular apparatus (the semicircular canals and the otolith organs) are also in the inner ear, but their principal function is the detection of movement and acceleration, not sound. The cochlea is a tube, about 35 mm long, divided longitudinally into three compartments and twisted into a spiral (Fig. 20.1B). The three compartments are the *scala vestibuli*, the *scala tympani*, and the *scala media*, and they wind around the spiral together, preserving their spatial orientation. Reissner's membrane separates the scala



**Figure 20.1** Location and structure of the cochlea. A: Location of the cochlea in relation to the middle ear, the tympanic membrane, and the outer ear. B: Diagram of the cochlea at increased magnification, showing its spiral structure and the relative positions of the two larger internal compartments, the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani. (Berne and Levy, 1993, Fig. 10-6.)

vestibuli from the scala media, which in turn is separated from the scala tympani by the *spiral lamina* and the *basilar membrane* (Fig. 20.2A). The scala vestibuli and the scala tympani are filled with *perilymph*, a fluid similar to extracellular fluid, while the scala media is filled with *endolymph*, a fluid with a high  $K^+$  concentration and a low  $Na^+$  concentration. Sound waves transmitted through the middle ear are focused by the



**Figure 20.2** Location and structure of the cochlea, continued. A: Cross-section of the cochlea in the plane indicated by the inset in Fig. 23.1B. B: Enlarged view of the organ of Corti, including the basilar membrane, the tectorial membrane, and the hair cells. (Berne and Levy, 1993, Fig. 10-6.)

stapes onto the oval window, an opening into the scala vestibuli. The resultant waves in the perilymph travel along the length of the scala vestibuli, creating complementary waves in the basilar membrane and the scala tympani. At the end of the cochlea, an opening between the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani, the *helicotrema*, equalizes the local pressure in the two compartments. Because the perilymph is essentially incompressible, it is necessary for the scala tympani also to have an opening analogous to the oval window; otherwise, conservation of mass would preclude movement of the stapes. The opening in the scala tympani is called the *round window*. Inward motion of the stapes at the oval window is compensated for by the corresponding outward motion of fluid at the round window.

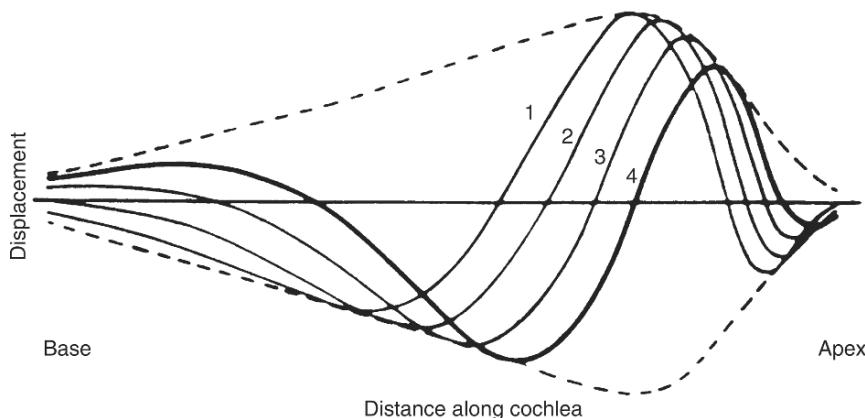
Transduction of sound into electrical impulses is carried out by the *organ of Corti* (Fig. 20.2B), which sits on top of the basilar membrane. *Hair cells* in the organ of Corti have hairs projecting out the top, and these hairs touch a flap called the *tectorial membrane* that sits over the organ of Corti. Waves in the basilar membrane create a shear force on these hairs, which in turn causes a change in the membrane potential of the hair cell. This is transmitted to nerve cells, and from there to the brain.

## 20.1 Frequency Tuning

The task of the cochlea is to identify the constituent frequencies of a sound wave, and thus identify the sound. The different ways in which this is accomplished in different animals fall into three principal groupings: mechanical tuning of the hair cells, mechanical tuning of the basilar membrane, and electrical tuning of the hair cells (Hudspeth, 1985; Eatock, 2000).

One of the earliest theories of frequency tuning was that of Helmholtz (1875) who proposed that the ear consists of an array of sharply tuned elements, each resonating with a particular frequency. Although this is far from the full story, resonance plays an important role. For example, in many lizards, the length of the hair bundles on the hair cells increases systematically from the base to the apex. In much the same way that a longer string produces notes of lower pitch, the longer hair cell bundles respond preferentially to inputs of lower frequency, while the short bundles are tuned to higher frequencies. Thus, the input frequency can be determined by the position of maximal stimulation. In mammals, the basilar membrane itself acts as a frequency analyzer, and this is discussed in the next section. The third tuning mechanism results from the properties of ionic channels in the hair cell membrane. Each hair cell is an electrical resonator, with a band-pass frequency response. The input frequency that gives the greatest response is a function of the biophysical properties of the hair cell, and the systematic variation of these properties along the length of the cochlea allows the cochlea to distinguish between frequencies based on the position of maximal response.

We do not discuss the first tuning mechanism further, but concentrate on the remaining two. We begin by looking at models of the basilar membrane that demonstrate



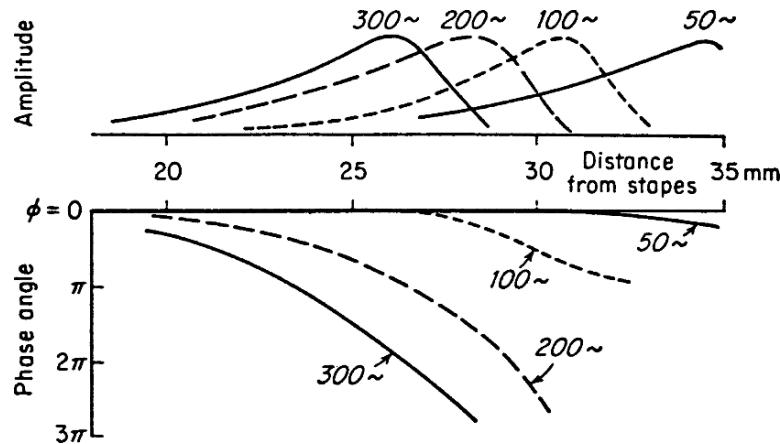
**Figure 20.3** Membrane waves and their envelope in the cochlea. The solid lines show the deflection of the basilar membrane at successive times, denoted (in order of increasing time) by 1, 2, 3, 4. The dashed line is the envelope of the membrane wave, and remains constant over time. (von Békésy, 1960, Fig. 12-17.)

mechanical tuning, and then discuss models of resonance of the hair cell membrane potential.

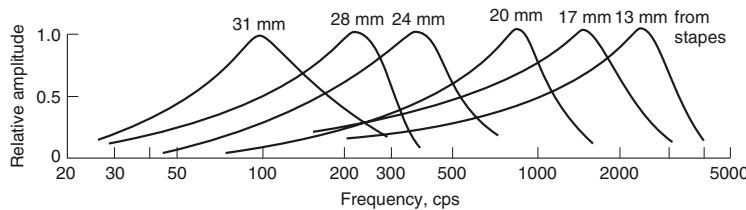
### 20.1.1 Cochlear Macromechanics

In mammals, vibrations of the stapes set up a wave with a particular shape on the basilar membrane. The amplitude envelope of the wave is first increasing, then decreasing, and the position of the peak of the envelope is dependent on the frequency of the stimulus (von Békésy, 1960), as illustrated in Fig. 20.3. The wave speed decreases as it moves along the membrane, resulting in a continual decrease in phase, and an apparent increase in frequency. Low-frequency stimuli have a wave envelope that peaks closer to the apex of the cochlea (i.e., near the helicotrema), and as the frequency of the stimulus increases, the envelope peak moves toward the base of the cochlea, as illustrated in Fig. 20.4.

The amplitude of the envelope is a two-dimensional function of distance from the stapes and frequency of stimulation; the curves shown in Fig. 20.4 are cross-sections of the function for fixed frequency. Another way to present the data is to give cross-sections for a fixed distance. This gives the envelope amplitude as a function of frequency, for a fixed distance from the stapes, i.e., the frequency response of the basilar membrane for that fixed distance. Frequency responses measured by von Békésy are shown in Fig. 20.5, from which it can be seen that each part of the basilar membrane responds maximally to a certain frequency, and as the frequency increases, the site of maximum response moves toward the stapes. In this way the cochlea determines the frequency of the incoming signal from the place on the basilar membrane of maximal amplitude, the so-called *place theory* of hearing.



**Figure 20.4** Amplitude and phase of the cochlear membrane wave for four different frequencies. As the frequency of the wave increases, the peak of the wave envelope moves toward the base of the cochlea (i.e., toward the oval and round windows). (von Békésy, 1960, Fig. 11-58.)



**Figure 20.5** Frequency responses of the basilar membrane measured at different distances from the stapes. Only the amplitude is shown. Close to the stapes, the basilar membrane responds preferentially to tones of high frequency, while farther away from the stapes, the membrane responds preferentially to tones of lower frequencies. (von Békésy, 1960, Fig. 11-49.)

Although many of von Békésy's results have since been superseded (he performed his experiments, somewhat gruesomely, on cadavers, but it is now known that the properties of the basilar membrane and hair cells in a living person are different), the experimental results of von Békésy, and the associated place theory, were some of the most important studies of the cochlea in the 20th century, and have had a huge effect on theoretical studies.

The name "basilar membrane" is misleading, as it is not a true membrane. This is shown by the fact that when it is cut, the edges do not retract. Thus it is not under tension; resistance to movement comes from the bending elasticity. The stiffness of the basilar membrane decreases exponentially from the base to the apex, with a length constant of about 7 mm. Although the width of the cochlea decreases from the base to the apex, the width of the basilar membrane increases in this direction.

Models of waves on the basilar membrane can be distinguished by the types of equations used for the membrane and the fluid. Early models by Ranke (1950)

and Zwischenberger (1965) assumed the perilymph to be incompressible and inviscid, and modeled the basilar membrane as a damped, forced harmonic oscillator, with no elastic coupling along the length of the membrane. Ranke used deep-water wave theory, while Zwischenberger used shallow-water wave theory, leading to considerable controversy over which was the best approach. These models were developed by many authors, the best known being due to Peterson and Bogert (1950), Fletcher (1951), Lesser and Berkley (1972), and Siebert (1974). Subsequent models by Steele (1974), Inselberg and Chadwick (1976), Chadwick et al. (1976), Chadwick (1980), and Holmes (1980a,b, 1982) used more sophisticated representations of the basilar membrane as an elastic plate and incorporated fluid viscosity and the geometry of the plate. Surveys of experimental and theoretical results can be found in Dallos et al. (1990, 1996). Here we give an overview of some of the earlier and simpler models, as they provide elegant demonstrations of how the basilar membrane and the perilymph can interact to give the types of waves observed by von Békésy.

## 20.2 Models of the Cochlea

### 20.2.1 Equations of Motion for an Incompressible Fluid

The fluid in the cochlea surrounding the basilar membrane is incompressible, and assumed to be inviscid. The equations of motion of this fluid are well known, and are derived in many places (e.g., Batchelor, 1967).

We let  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$  be the fluid velocity,  $p$  the pressure, and  $\rho$  the density of the fluid. The mass of fluid in a fixed volume  $V$  can change only in response to fluid flux across the boundary of the volume. Thus,

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_V \rho dV = - \int_S \rho (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{n}) dS, \quad (20.1)$$

where  $S$  is the surface of  $V$ , and  $\mathbf{n} = (n_1, n_2, n_3)$  is the outward unit normal to  $V$ . Similarly, the momentum of the fluid in a fixed domain  $V$  can change only in response to applied forces or to the flux of momentum across the boundary of the domain. Thus (for an inviscid fluid) conservation of momentum implies that

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_V \rho u_i dV = - \int_S [(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{n}) \rho u_i + p n_i] dS. \quad (20.2)$$

Using the divergence theorem to convert surface integrals to volume integrals, we obtain

$$\int_V \left( \frac{\partial \rho u_i}{\partial t} + \rho \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{u}_i \mathbf{u}) + \frac{\partial p}{\partial x_i} \right) dV = 0, \quad (20.3)$$

$$\int_V \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} dV = 0. \quad (20.4)$$

Finally, since  $V$  is arbitrary, and assuming that the density  $\rho$  is constant, it follows that

$$\rho \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + \rho(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u})\mathbf{u} + \nabla p = 0, \quad (20.5)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0. \quad (20.6)$$

When the fluid motions are of small amplitude, as is expected to be true in the cochlea, the nonlinear terms may be ignored, yielding

$$\rho \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + \nabla p = 0, \quad (20.7)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0. \quad (20.8)$$

An important special case is when  $\mathbf{u} = \nabla\phi$  for some potential  $\phi$  (an irrotational flow), in which case (20.7) and (20.8) become

$$\rho \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t} + p = 0, \quad (20.9)$$

$$\nabla^2 \phi = 0, \quad (20.10)$$

where  $p$  is normalized so that the constant of integration is zero.

## 20.2.2 The Basilar Membrane as a Harmonic Oscillator

One of the simplest models of the cochlea combines (20.9) and (20.10) with the equation of a damped, forced harmonic oscillator. One of the clearest presentations of this model is due to Lesser and Berkley (1972). In their model, the cochlea is assumed to have a configuration as shown in Fig. 20.6. Thus, letting subscripts 1 and 2 denote quantities in the upper and lower compartments, respectively, we have two copies of (20.9) and (20.10),

$$\rho \frac{\partial \phi_1}{\partial t} + p_1 = \rho \frac{\partial \phi_2}{\partial t} + p_2 = 0, \quad (20.11)$$

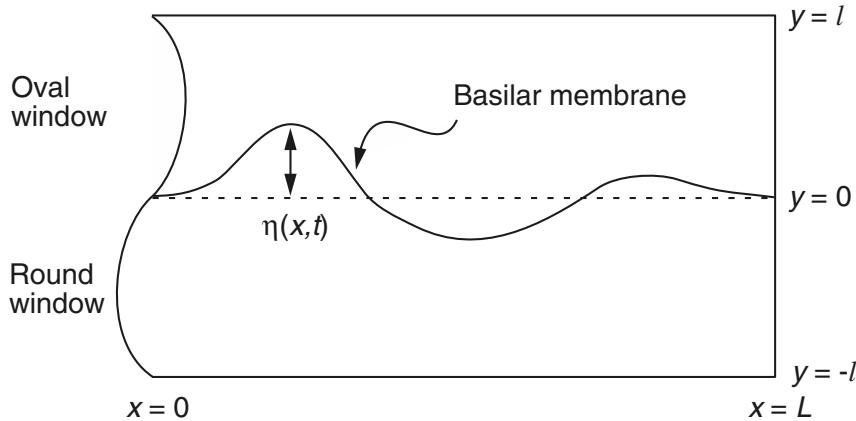
$$\nabla^2 \phi_1 = \nabla^2 \phi_2 = 0, \quad (20.12)$$

where the pressure is determined only up to an arbitrary constant.

Each point of the basilar membrane is modeled as a simple damped harmonic oscillator with mass, damping, and stiffness that vary along the length of the membrane. Thus, the movement of any part of the membrane is assumed to be independent of the movement of neighboring parts of the membrane, as there is no direct lateral coupling. The position of the basilar membrane,  $y = \eta(x, t)$ , is specified by

$$m(x) \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial t^2} + r(x) \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} + k(x)\eta = p_2(x, \eta(x, t), t) - p_1(x, \eta(x, t), t), \quad (20.13)$$

where  $m(x)$  is the mass per unit area of the basilar membrane,  $r(x)$  is its damping coefficient, and  $k(x)$  is its stiffness (Hooke's constant) per unit area.



**Figure 20.6** Schematic diagram of the cochlea, adapted from the model of Lesser and Berkley (1972). The cochlea is modeled as having two rectangular compartments filled with fluid, separated by the basilar membrane. The upper compartment corresponds to the scala vestibuli, and the lower compartment to the scala tympani. For simplicity, the scala media, shown in Fig. 20.1, is omitted from the model.

Boundary conditions are determined by requiring that the fluid velocity at the boundary matches the velocity of the boundary. Thus,

$$\frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \phi_1}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial \phi_2}{\partial y}, \quad y = \eta(x, t), \quad 0 < x < L. \quad (20.14)$$

We further assume that there is no vertical motion at the top, so that

$$\frac{\partial \phi_1}{\partial y} = 0, \quad y = l, \quad 0 < x < L. \quad (20.15)$$

As formulated, this is a very difficult free boundary problem. A significant simplification occurs if we assume that the displacement is small. Then, the leading-order linear problem has a driving force which is the pressure difference evaluated at  $y = 0$ , rather than at  $y = \eta$ , so that

$$m(x) \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial t^2} + r(x) \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} + k(x)\eta = p_2(x, 0, t) - p_1(x, 0, t). \quad (20.16)$$

The boundary conditions also simplify to

$$\frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \phi_1}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial \phi_2}{\partial y}, \quad y = 0, \quad 0 < x < L. \quad (20.17)$$

There are a number of ways to specify how the system is externally forced. One way, due to Lesser and Berkley, is to assume that the motion of the stapes in contact with the oval window determines the position of the oval window. Since  $\partial \phi / \partial x$  is the  $x$

component of the fluid velocity, the boundary condition at  $x = 0$  is

$$\frac{\partial \phi_1}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial F(y, t)}{\partial t}, \quad 0 < y < l, \quad (20.18)$$

where  $F(y, t)$  is the specified horizontal displacement of the oval window. Further, we assume that there is no horizontal motion at the far end, so that at  $x = L$

$$\frac{\partial \phi_1}{\partial x} = 0, \quad 0 < y < l. \quad (20.19)$$

### 20.2.3 An Analytical Solution

Because of the inherent symmetry of the problem, we seek solutions that are odd in  $y$  (Exercise 1). Thus, we consider only the problem in the upper region and drop the subscript 1.

When the input has a single frequency,  $F(y, t) = \hat{F}(y)e^{i\omega t}$ , then  $\phi(x, y, t)$  is of the form  $\hat{\phi}(x, y; \omega)e^{i\omega t}$  and similarly for the other variables. Looking for solutions of this form for all the variables, we obtain the equations

$$\nabla^2 \hat{\phi} = 0, \quad \hat{p} + i\omega \rho \hat{\phi} = 0, \quad (20.20)$$

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\phi}}{\partial y} = i\omega \hat{\eta}, \quad i\omega \hat{\eta} Z = -\hat{p}, \quad \text{on } y = 0, \quad (20.21)$$

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\phi}}{\partial x} = U_0, \quad \text{on } x = 0, \quad (20.22)$$

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\phi}}{\partial x} = 0, \quad \text{on } x = L, \quad (20.23)$$

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\phi}}{\partial y} = 0, \quad \text{on } y = l, \quad (20.24)$$

where  $Z = i\omega m + r + k/(i\omega)$  and  $U_0 = i\omega \hat{F}$ . By looking for solutions in the frequency domain, we have transformed the differential equations on the basilar membrane into algebraic equations. The term  $i\omega Z$  is the frequency response of the damped harmonic oscillator, and  $Z$ , the *impedance*, is a function of  $x$ . Also note that in (20.21) the pressure is assumed to be an odd function of  $y$ .

Finally, we nondimensionalize the model equations by scaling  $x$  and  $y$  by  $L$ ,  $Z$  by  $i\omega \rho L$ , and  $\hat{\phi}$  by  $U_0 L$ ; rearranging; and dropping the hats we get

$$\nabla^2 \phi = 0, \quad (20.25)$$

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial y} = \frac{2\phi}{Z}, \quad \text{on } y = 0, \quad (20.26)$$

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} = 1 \quad \text{on } x = 0, \quad (20.27)$$

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \text{on } x = 1, \quad (20.28)$$

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial y} = 0 \quad \text{on } y = \sigma, \quad (20.29)$$

where  $\sigma = l/L$ .

The analytical solution of this problem can be found using standard Fourier series. We look for solutions of the form

$$\phi = x \left(1 - \frac{x}{2}\right) - \sigma y \left(1 - \frac{y}{2\sigma}\right) + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n \cosh[n\pi(\sigma - y)] \cos(n\pi x), \quad (20.30)$$

for some, as yet undetermined, constants  $A_n$ . Since  $\phi$  satisfies all the boundary conditions except (20.26), we use (20.26) to determine the unknown coefficients  $A_n$ . This gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \sigma + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n\pi A_n \sinh(n\pi\sigma) \cos(n\pi x) \\ & - \frac{2}{Z} \left[ x \left(1 - \frac{x}{2}\right) + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n \cosh(n\pi\sigma) \cos(n\pi x) \right] = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (20.31)$$

Multiplying by  $\cos(m\pi x)$ , and integrating from 0 to 1, we find

$$A_m \alpha_m = f_m, \quad (20.32)$$

where

$$\alpha_m = \frac{1}{Z} \cosh(m\pi\sigma) - \frac{1}{2} n\pi \sinh(m\pi\sigma) \quad (20.33)$$

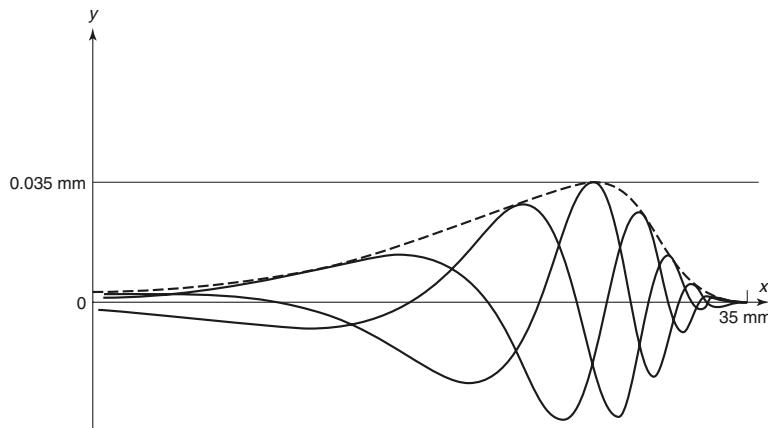
and

$$f_m = \sigma \delta_{m0} - \int_0^1 \frac{x(2-x) \cos(m\pi x)}{Z} dx = -\frac{2}{m^2 \pi^2}. \quad (20.34)$$

The coefficients  $A_n$  can now be evaluated explicitly, and substituted into (20.30). Typical results are shown in Fig. 20.7. The wave envelope has the same qualitative shape as von Békésy's results (Fig. 20.3), and the peak of the wave envelope moves toward the base of the cochlea as the frequency is increased.

## 20.2.4 Long-Wave and Short-Wave Models

Although the Fourier solution shows that the behavior of the Lesser and Berkley model is qualitatively correct, it would be nice to get a better analytical understanding of the behavior of the basilar membrane. There are two classic approximations of the model equations that allow further analytical investigation. The long-wave approximation, studied by Zwislocki and others, assumes that the wavelength is long compared to the depth of the cochlea, and the short-wave approximation of Ranke assumes the opposite,



**Figure 20.7** Results from the Lesser and Berkley model, showing a typical wave on the basilar membrane and the wave envelope. Parameters are  $m = 0.05 \text{ g/cm}^2$ ,  $k = 10^7 e^{-1.5x} \text{ dynes/cm}^3$ ,  $r = 3000e^{-1.5x} \text{ dynes sec/cm}^3$ ,  $\omega = 1000/\text{sec}$ . The perilymph was assumed to have the same density as water,  $1 \text{ g/cm}^3$  (Lesser and Berkley, 1972, Fig. 6.)

that the cochlea is effectively infinitely deep. Experiments suggest that the depth of the cochlea has little effect on the cochlear wave, supporting the short-wave theory. Indeed, even if one side of the cochlea is completely removed, there is little effect on the wave. However, neither model gives a complete description of cochlear behavior (Zwislocki, 1953).

Both short-wave and long-wave models can be derived as approximate cases of the model described in Section 20.2.2. To show this, we use a generalized form of the previous model (Siebert, 1974), as illustrated in Fig. 20.8. The only change is to assume that there is a direct mechanical forcing at the two ends of the basilar membrane. Modifying the equation of membrane motion (20.16) to include this direct forcing gives

$$m(x) \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial t^2} + r(x) \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} + k(x)\eta = p_2(x, 0, t) - p_1(x, 0, t) + F_0(t)\delta(x) - F_L(t)\delta(x - L). \quad (20.35)$$

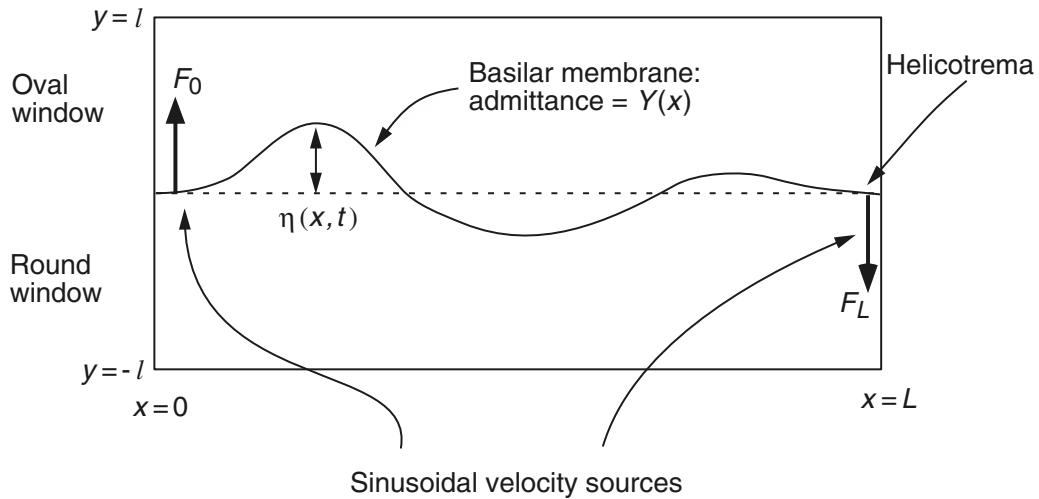
As before, we assume that the forcing is at a single frequency with  $F_0(t) = F_0 e^{i\omega t}$  and  $F_L(t) = F_L e^{i\omega t}$ . It follows from (20.17), (20.20), and (20.35) that

$$\nabla^2 p(x, y) = 0, \quad (20.36)$$

$$-i\omega\eta = \frac{1}{i\omega\rho} \frac{\partial p(x, 0)}{\partial y}, \quad (20.37)$$

$$Y(x)p(x, 0) = -i\omega\eta(x) + \eta_0\delta(x) - \eta_L\delta(x - L), \quad (20.38)$$

where  $Y = 2/Z$ ,  $\eta_0 = \frac{F_0}{Z(0)}$ ,  $\eta_L = \frac{F_L}{Z(L)}$ , and where we have dropped the hats associated with the Fourier transform.



**Figure 20.8** Schematic diagram of the cochlea model of Siebert (1974). It differs from the model of Lesser and Berkley in the boundary conditions at  $x = 0$  and  $x = L$ , where it is assumed that there is direct mechanical forcing at both ends of the membrane.

Because Laplace's equation is separable on a rectangular domain, we use Fourier series to write the solution of (20.36) as

$$p(x, y) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \alpha_n \frac{\cosh[2\pi n(y - l)/L]}{\cosh(2\pi nl/L)} e^{2\pi i n x / L}, \quad (20.39)$$

where we have used the boundary condition  $\partial p / \partial y = 0$  on  $y = l$ . It follows that

$$-i\omega\eta = \frac{1}{i\omega\rho} \frac{\partial p(x, 0)}{\partial y} = -\frac{1}{i\omega\rho} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \alpha_n \frac{2\pi n}{L} \tanh(2\pi nl/L) e^{2\pi i n x / L}. \quad (20.40)$$

Since our only interest is in the behavior of the basilar membrane, from now on we restrict our attention to  $p(x, 0)$ , which we denote by  $p(x)$ .

### The Shallow-Water Approximation

In the shallow-water approximation, the wavelengths of the waves on the basilar membrane are assumed to be greater than the depth of the cochlea. As a consequence, we assume that  $\alpha_n = 0$  for all  $n > N$ , for some integer  $N$  such that  $Nl/L \ll 1$ . Since the sum over  $n$  includes only those terms with  $nl/L \ll 1$ , it follows that for each term in the sum,  $\tanh(2\pi nl/L)$  can be approximated by the lowest-order term in its Taylor expansion. Thus,  $\tanh(2\pi nl/L) \approx 2\pi nl/L$ , and so (20.40) becomes

$$-i\omega\eta \approx -\frac{l}{i\omega\rho} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \alpha_n \left(\frac{2\pi n}{L}\right)^2 e^{2\pi i n x / L}. \quad (20.41)$$

However, a similar argument applied to (20.39) implies that

$$p(x) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \alpha_n e^{2\pi i n x / L}, \quad (20.42)$$

and thus, combining this with (20.41), we have

$$-i\omega\eta \approx \frac{l}{i\omega\rho} \frac{d^2 p}{dx^2}. \quad (20.43)$$

Combining this with (20.37) and (20.38), we get a single equation for  $p(x)$ ,

$$Y(x)p(x) = \frac{l}{i\omega\rho} \frac{d^2 p(x)}{dx^2} + \eta_0\delta_0(x) - \eta_L\delta_L(x). \quad (20.44)$$

To convert the delta functions in this equation into boundary conditions, we integrate the differential equation (20.44) from  $x = -\epsilon$  to  $x = +\epsilon$  and let  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$  and find that

$$\frac{dp}{dx} = -i\omega\rho\eta_0 \quad \text{at } x = 0, \quad (20.45)$$

where we have assumed that  $dp/dx = 0$  at  $x = 0^-$ , which is outside the boundaries of the cochlea. Similarly, integrating from  $x = L - \epsilon$  to  $x = L + \epsilon$  and letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$  gives

$$\frac{dp}{dx} = i\omega\rho\eta_L \quad \text{at } x = L. \quad (20.46)$$

Note that when  $\eta_0 = 1$  and  $\eta_L = 0$  (and since  $p + i\omega\rho\phi = 0$ ), these boundary conditions are the same as (20.27) and (20.28) used in the Lesser–Berkley model.

The analysis of this equation exploits the fact that  $Y(x)$  is a slowly varying function. To see what this means mathematically, note that  $i\omega\rho Y(x)/l$  has dimensional units of length $^{-2}$ , which determines the length scale (wavelength) of the spatial oscillations of  $p(x)$ . On the other hand,  $Y(x)$  varies exponentially with a length constant of  $\lambda^{-1} \approx 0.7$  cm. If the ratio of these two length constants is small, then we assert that  $Y(x)$  is a slowly varying function. Furthermore, there is a rescaling of space,  $x = z/q$ , of (20.44), putting it into the dimensionless form

$$\frac{d^2 p}{dz^2} + g^2(\epsilon z)p(z) = 0, \quad (20.47)$$

where  $\epsilon$  is a small positive number and  $g^2(\epsilon z) = \frac{-i\omega\rho Y(z/q)}{lq^2}$  is of order one in amplitude and slowly varying in  $z$ . Note that  $q$  is an arbitrary length scale, chosen so that  $g^2$  is of order one in amplitude; by assumption,  $\lambda/q \ll 1$ .

As a specific example, suppose that  $m = 0$ ,  $k(x) = k_0 e^{-\lambda x}$ ,  $r(x) = r_0 e^{-\lambda x}$ , in which case

$$\frac{i\omega\rho Y(x)}{l} = \frac{-2\omega^2\rho}{lk_0} \frac{e^{\lambda x}}{1 + i\omega r_0/k_0}. \quad (20.48)$$

We set  $q^2 = \frac{2\omega^2\rho}{lk_0}$ , and then define  $\epsilon$  by

$$\epsilon = \frac{\lambda}{2q}. \quad (20.49)$$

If the parameters are such that  $\epsilon \ll 1$ , we have a slowly varying oscillation.

Problems of this type are well known in the theory of oscillations and can be solved approximately using multiscale analysis (Kevorkian and Cole, 1996; Keener, 1998). We wish to find approximate solutions of (20.47). If  $g$  were a constant ( $\epsilon = 0$ ), the solution of (20.47) would be simply

$$p(z) = Ae^{igz} + Be^{-igz}. \quad (20.50)$$

However, since  $g$  is assumed to be slowly varying, we expect this basic solution to be a reasonable local (but not global) approximation. To find a solution that has a longer range of validity, we introduce two scales, a slow scale variable  $\sigma = \epsilon z$  and a fast variable  $\tau$  for which  $\frac{d\tau}{dz} = f(\epsilon z)$ , where  $f$  is a function to be determined. It follows that the derivative  $\frac{d}{dz}$  must be replaced by partial derivatives

$$\frac{d}{dz} = f(\sigma) \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \epsilon \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma}. \quad (20.51)$$

In terms of these two variables the original ordinary differential equation (20.47) becomes the partial differential equation

$$f^2(\sigma) \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial \tau^2} + \epsilon f(\sigma) \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial \sigma \partial \tau} + \epsilon \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} \left( f(\sigma) \frac{\partial p}{\partial \tau} \right) + \epsilon^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} \left( f(\sigma) \frac{\partial p}{\partial \sigma} \right) + g^2(\sigma)p = 0. \quad (20.52)$$

The obvious choice for  $f$  is  $f = g$ , because then the equation to leading order in  $\epsilon$  is

$$\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial \tau^2} + p = 0 \quad (20.53)$$

with general solution

$$P_0 = A(\sigma)e^{i\tau} + B(\sigma)e^{-i\tau}. \quad (20.54)$$

Notice that  $A$  and  $B$  are functions of the slow variable  $\sigma$ , since (20.53) is a partial differential equation.

To determine the functions  $A$  and  $B$ , we set  $p = P_0 + \epsilon P_1 + O(\epsilon^2)$ , collect like powers of  $\epsilon$ , and determine that the equation for  $P_1$  is

$$g^2(\sigma) \left( \frac{\partial^2 P_1}{\partial \tau^2} + P_1 \right) = -g(\sigma) \frac{\partial^2 P_0}{\partial \sigma \partial \tau} - \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} \left( g(\sigma) \frac{\partial P_0}{\partial \tau} \right). \quad (20.55)$$

Since we want  $P_1$  to be a periodic function of  $\tau$ , we require that  $P_1$  be “nonsecular,” that is, that the right-hand side of (20.55) contain no terms proportional to  $e^{i\tau}$  or  $e^{-i\tau}$ .

It follows that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} (gA^2) = 0, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} (gB^2) = 0, \quad (20.56)$$

or that

$$A(\sigma) = \frac{A_0}{\sqrt{g(\sigma)}}, \quad B(\sigma) = \frac{B_0}{\sqrt{g(\sigma)}}, \quad (20.57)$$

from which we obtain, to lowest order in  $\epsilon$ ,

$$p = \frac{1}{\sqrt{g(\sigma)}} (A_0 e^{iG(z)} + B_0 e^{-iG(z)}), \quad (20.58)$$

where  $G(z) = \int_0^z g(\epsilon z) dz$ .

In terms of the original dimensioned variables, this is

$$p(x) = \phi^{-1/2} \left( A_1 \exp \left[ i \int_0^x \phi(s) ds \right] + B_1 \exp \left[ -i \int_0^x \phi(s) ds \right] \right), \quad (20.59)$$

where

$$\phi(x) = \sqrt{\frac{-i\omega\rho Y(x)}{l}}. \quad (20.60)$$

The constants  $A_1$  and  $B_1$  are determined from boundary conditions (20.45) and (20.46), and then the membrane displacement is found from the identity  $i\omega\eta(x) = -Y(x)p(x)$ .

The key feature of this solution is that it is oscillatory with an envelope, whose maximal amplitude and position are determined by the frequency  $\omega$ . We get some idea of this behavior in the special case  $m = 0$ ,  $k(x) = k_0 e^{-\lambda x}$ , and  $r(x) = r_0 e^{-\lambda x}$  in which case  $\phi(x) = \alpha e^{\lambda x/2}$ , where  $\alpha^2 = \frac{2\omega^2\rho}{l(k_0 + i\omega r_0)}$ . If we let  $\alpha = \alpha_r + i\alpha_i$  and suppose that  $\frac{\alpha_i}{\lambda} \gg 1$  (not valid at low frequencies), then with  $\eta_L = 0$ , we find that

$$\eta(x) = -\frac{1}{i\omega} Y(x)p(x) \approx \hat{A} \exp \left( \frac{3\lambda x}{4} - \frac{2\alpha_i}{\lambda} e^{\lambda x/2} + \frac{2i\alpha_r}{\lambda} e^{\lambda x/2} \right). \quad (20.61)$$

This represents an oscillation with exponentially increasing phase and amplitude

$$|\eta| \approx |\hat{A}| \exp \left( \frac{3\lambda x}{4} - \frac{2\alpha_i}{\lambda} e^{\lambda x/2} \right). \quad (20.62)$$

The maximal value of this envelope occurs at

$$x_p = -\frac{2}{\lambda} \ln \left( \frac{4\alpha_i}{3\lambda} \right). \quad (20.63)$$

The location of this maximum is dependent on frequency, as

$$\alpha_i \approx \sqrt{\frac{\rho\omega}{lr_0}}, \quad (20.64)$$

provided that  $\omega$  is sufficiently large. Thus, for large  $\omega$  we have

$$x_p = -\frac{1}{\lambda} \ln \left( \frac{16\rho\omega}{9l\lambda^2 r_0} \right). \quad (20.65)$$

### The Deep-Water Approximation

The second approach, the *short-wave*, or *deep-water*, approximation, assumes that the wavelength of the membrane waves is short compared to the cochlear depth. In this case the Fourier expansion of  $p(x)$  includes only high frequencies, and so  $\alpha_n = 0$  whenever  $|n| < N$  for some large integer  $N$ . However, when  $|n| > N$  and  $l \gg L$ , then  $\tanh(2\pi nl/L) \approx \text{sign}(n)$ . Thus, (20.40) becomes

$$-i\omega\eta \approx -\frac{1}{i\omega\rho} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \alpha_n \frac{2\pi}{L} |n| e^{2\pi i n x / L}. \quad (20.66)$$

Now we separate the sum into two pieces by defining two functions,

$$p_+(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n e^{2\pi i n x / L} \quad (20.67)$$

and

$$p_-(x) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} \alpha_n e^{2\pi i n x / L}, \quad (20.68)$$

and then observe that (20.38) becomes

$$Yp = Y(p_+ + p_-) \approx \frac{1}{\omega\rho} \left[ \frac{dp_+}{dx} - \frac{dp_-}{dx} \right] + \eta_0 \delta_0(x) - \eta_L \delta_L(x), \quad (20.69)$$

which we take to be the governing equation for  $p$ .

We can remove the delta function influence from this equation by integrating across the boundaries at  $x = 0$  and  $x = L$ , and assuming that outside the cochlea,  $p = 0$ . This gives

$$\frac{1}{\omega\rho} [p_+(0) - p_-(0)] = \eta_0, \quad (20.70)$$

$$\frac{1}{\omega\rho} [p_+(L) - p_-(L)] = \eta_L. \quad (20.71)$$

Although  $p_+$  is a linear combination of only positive (spatial) frequencies, the same is not true of  $Yp_+$ . However, if we assume that  $Y$  is a slowly varying function of  $x$ , then the Fourier series of  $Y$  with Fourier coefficients  $b_k$  has  $b_k \approx 0$  whenever  $|k| > k_0$ , for some number  $k_0$  that is small compared to the dominant frequency of  $p_+$ . It follows that

$$Yp_+ = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} c_k e^{2\pi i k x / L}, \quad (20.72)$$

where  $c_k = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \alpha_j b_{k-j}$ . If the dominant frequencies of  $p_+$  and  $Y$  are separated, as stated above, then  $c_k$  is small for  $k \leq 0$ . Thus we can approximate  $Yp_+$  by its Fourier series with positive frequencies. A similar argument applies for  $Yp_-$ . With these approximations,

(20.69) separates into a pair of differential equations for the positive and negative frequencies separately,

$$Y(x)p_{\pm}(x) \approx \frac{\pm 1}{\omega\rho} \frac{dp_{\pm}}{dx}, \quad 0 < x < L. \quad (20.73)$$

These first-order linear equations can be integrated directly to get

$$p_{\pm}(x) = A_{\pm} \exp \left[ \pm \omega\rho \int_0^x Y(\zeta) d\zeta \right] \quad (20.74)$$

for some constants  $A_{\pm}$ , so that

$$p = A_+ \exp \left[ \omega\rho \int_0^x Y(\zeta) d\zeta \right] + A_- \exp \left[ -\omega\rho \int_0^x Y(\zeta) d\zeta \right]. \quad (20.75)$$

We use the boundary conditions at  $x = 0$  and  $x = L$  to determine the constants  $A_{\pm}$ . From (20.70) and (20.71) it follows that these constants must satisfy the equations

$$A_+ - A_- = \omega\rho\eta_0, \quad \gamma A_+ - \frac{1}{\gamma} A_- = \omega\rho\eta_L, \quad (20.76)$$

where  $\gamma = \exp[\omega\rho \int_0^L Y(\zeta) d\zeta]$ , from which it follows that

$$A_+ = \frac{\omega\rho}{\gamma^2 - 1} [\gamma\eta_L - \eta_0], \quad (20.77)$$

$$A_- = \frac{\omega\rho}{\gamma^2 - 1} [\gamma\eta_L - \gamma^2\eta_0]. \quad (20.78)$$

For physiological values of  $Y$ ,  $|\gamma| \gg 1$  for all except the lowest frequencies; for example, for the parameter values in Fig. 20.7,  $|\gamma| = 40$  when  $\omega = 800$ , and  $|\gamma| = 10^9$  when  $\omega = 1500$ . Since on physical grounds  $\eta_0$  and  $\eta_L$  are not large, it follows that  $|A_-| \approx -\omega\rho\eta_0 \gg |A_+|$ . Finally, from (20.38) and (20.75), we find that the membrane displacement is given by

$$\eta = -i\rho\eta_0 Y(x) \exp \left[ -\omega\rho \int_0^x Y(\zeta) d\zeta \right]. \quad (20.79)$$

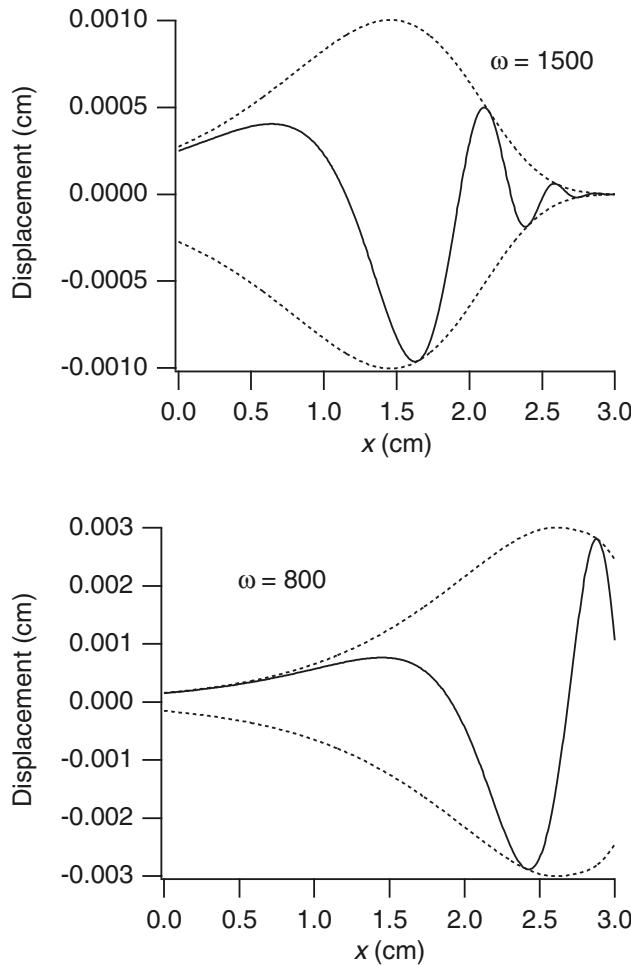
The amplitude of  $\eta$  can be plotted as a function of  $x$  to give the envelope of the wave on the basilar membrane. The frequency response is similarly obtained, by fixing  $x$  and plotting  $|\eta|$  as a function of  $\omega$ . Typical results are shown in Fig. 20.9. The qualitative agreement with data is good, with the peak of the wave envelope moving toward the stapes as the frequency increases.

In the special case  $m = 0, k(x) = k_0 e^{-\lambda x}, r(x) = r_0 e^{-\lambda x}$ , we can calculate the waveform (20.79) to be

$$\eta = 2\eta_0 \xi \exp[\lambda x + \beta(1 - e^{\lambda x})], \quad (20.80)$$

where

$$\beta = \frac{2\omega^3 \rho r_0}{\lambda(k_0^2 + \omega^2 r_0^2)} + i \frac{2\omega^2 \rho k_0}{\lambda(k_0^2 + \omega^2 r_0^2)} = \beta_r + i\beta_i \quad (20.81)$$



**Figure 20.9** Plots of the amplitude of the wave on the basilar membrane for two different frequencies. The envelope of the wave is shown as a dotted line. Calculated from the deep-water approximation (20.75) using the same parameter values as in the Lesser and Berkley model (given in the caption to Fig. 20.7).

and

$$\xi = \frac{\omega\rho}{i\omega\rho + k_0}. \quad (20.82)$$

Here we again see an oscillatory waveform with an envelope of amplitude

$$|\eta| = 2\eta_0|\xi| \exp[\lambda x + \beta_r(1 - e^{\lambda x})], \quad (20.83)$$

the maximum of which occurs at

$$x_p = \frac{-1}{\lambda} \ln \left( \frac{2\omega^3 \rho r_0}{\lambda(k_0^2 + \omega^2 r_0^2)} \right). \quad (20.84)$$

According to this expression, the peak of the envelope moves to the left (toward the base of the cochlea) as  $\omega$  increases. The principal fault of the short-wave model is that the phase of the model waves increases much more than is observed experimentally.

A similar solution was found by Peskin (1976, 1981), who calculated an exact solution to a special case of the cochlear model. In his model the cochlear membrane was taken to be infinitely long, with  $r(x)$  and  $k(x)$  chosen to be decaying exponential functions with decay rate  $\lambda$  and a fluid container of height  $\lambda l = \pi/2$ . With these assumptions and simplifications, Peskin found the exact solution using conformal mapping and contour integration techniques.

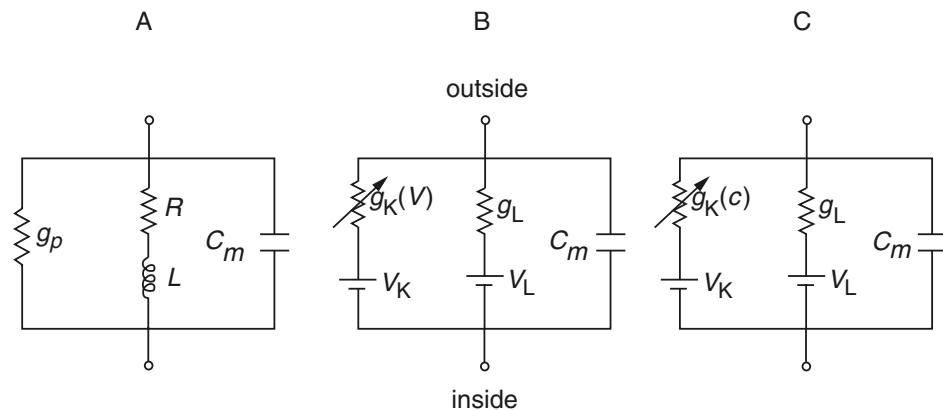
### 20.2.5 More Complex Models

In this chapter we have concentrated on the simpler models of the basilar membrane that assume that the cochlea is two-dimensional and that the basilar membrane can be described by a point impedance function, i.e., that each point of the basilar membrane acts as a damped harmonic oscillator, with no coupling along the length of the membrane except for that imposed indirectly via the fluid motion.

Although the wave motion on the basilar membrane is an important component of the hearing process, many other factors are involved (Pickles, 1982; Rhode, 1984; Hudspeth, 1985). Nonlinearities in the cochlear response and acoustic emissions suggest the presence of active feedback processes that modulate the waveform (Section 20.4). This feedback may occur in the outer hair cells and the organ of Corti. Simple hydrodynamic models do not reproduce the degree of tuning observed in the mammalian cochlea, and the precise tuning mechanism is still controversial. Many other, more complex, models have been constructed (see, for example, Steele, 1974; Steele and Tabor, 1979a,b; Inselberg and Chadwick, 1976; Chadwick et al., 1976; Chadwick, 1980; Holmes, 1980a,b, 1982). In general, these models use similar equations for the fluid flow, but model the basilar membrane in greater detail, including spatial coupling in the membrane. The resultant membrane equations are of fourth order in space, and heavy use is made of asymptotic expansions in the solution of the model equations. A particularly detailed study was performed by Steele (1974), who constructed a series of models ranging from a plate in an infinite body of fluid up to a tapered elastic basilar membrane, a cochlea with rigid walls, and flexible arches of Corti. Recent models are based on finite element descriptions of the basilar membrane, organ of Corti, and the outer hair cells, and incorporate acoustic, electrical and mechanical elements (Ramamoorthy et al., 2007), while the three-dimensional spiral nature of the cochlea has been modeled by Givelberg and Bunn (2003; Givelberg, 2004).

## 20.3 Electrical Resonance in Hair Cells

In many lower vertebrates frequency decomposition is performed, not by a wave on the basilar membrane, but by the hair cells themselves. Hair cells in the turtle cochlea and the bullfrog sacculus (to name but two examples) respond preferentially to stimuli of a certain frequency, and this band-pass response is mediated by the ionic channels



**Figure 20.10** Electrical circuits for electrical tuning, adapted from Ashmore and Attwell (1985). A: The basic model, with an inductance in place of ionic currents. B: Voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  current, with a conductance that is increased by membrane depolarization. C:  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -gated current, with the  $\text{K}^+$  conductance controlled by the intracellular concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , denoted by  $c$ .

in the hair cell membrane. At the top of each hair cell is the hair bundle, a group of stereocilia connected to each other at the tips by a thin fiber, called a tip link. Each stereocilium is rigid and, in response to a force applied at the tip, pivots around its base rather than bending. It is postulated that the tip links act like elastic springs connected directly to ionic channels such that when the hair bundle is deflected in one direction, the tip links pull channels open, while when the hair bundle is deflected in the opposite direction, the tip links relax and allow channels to close. The mechanically sensitive ion channels are nonselective, and the modulation of current flow through these channels results in hyperpolarization or depolarization of the hair cell membrane. The membrane potential is then modulated by other ionic channels, including  $\text{K}^+$  channels,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channels, and voltage-sensitive  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels. The structure, tuning, sensitivity, and function of hair cells are reviewed by Hudspeth (1985, 1989; Hudspeth and Gillespie, 1994), and these papers give a readable summary of the field.

In response to a step current input, the membrane potential of hair cells exhibits damped oscillations, with a period and amplitude dependent on the size of the step. Thus, each cell has a natural frequency of oscillation and responds best to a stimulus at a similar frequency. Crawford and Fettiplace (1981) and Ashmore and Attwell (1985) have developed simple models of electrical resonance that while not based on the details of known mechanisms, provide a good description of the experimental results. Later work by Hudspeth and Lewis (1988a,b), using a more detailed model, showed that the measured properties of the ionic conductances are sufficient to explain resonance in the hair cells of the bullfrog sacculus.

### 20.3.1 An Electrical Circuit Analogue

The models of Crawford and Fettiplace (1981) and Ashmore and Attwell (1985) are based on the electrical circuit shown in Fig. 20.10A. In response to a current input  $I$ , the voltage  $V$  is given by

$$\frac{d^2V}{dt^2} + \gamma \frac{dV}{dt} + \omega_0^2 V = f(t), \quad (20.85)$$

where

$$\gamma = \frac{g_p}{C_m} + \frac{R}{L}, \quad (20.86)$$

$$\omega_0^2 = \frac{g_p R + 1}{LC_m}, \quad (20.87)$$

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{C_m} \frac{dI}{dt} + \frac{IR}{LC_m}. \quad (20.88)$$

It is simplest to demonstrate resonance when  $f(t) = e^{i\omega t}$ , in which case  $V = V_1(\omega)e^{i\omega t}$ , where

$$V_1(\omega) = \frac{1}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2 + i\gamma\omega}. \quad (20.89)$$

Thus,  $|V_1|$  has a band-pass frequency response, with a maximum at  $\hat{\omega}$ , where  $\hat{\omega}^2 = \omega_0^2 - \gamma^2/2$ . Solutions of (20.85) are of the form  $\exp(-\gamma t/2) \exp(\pm i\sqrt{\omega_0^2 - \gamma^2/4}\omega t)$ , and thus  $\hat{\omega}$  is slightly smaller than the natural frequency of oscillation of the system. However, if damping is small (i.e., if  $\gamma$  is small), the maximum amplitude of the frequency response occurs at approximately the natural frequency of oscillation. The sharpness of the peak of  $|V_1|$  is a measure of the degree of tuning of the electrical circuit, with sharper peaks giving greater frequency selectivity. Since

$$\frac{d^2}{d\omega^2} \left[ (\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)^2 + \gamma^2 \omega^2 \right] \Big|_{\omega=\hat{\omega}} = 4\gamma^2(2Q^2 - 1), \quad (20.90)$$

where

$$Q = \frac{\omega_0}{\gamma}, \quad (20.91)$$

it follows that  $Q$ , often called the *quality factor*, is a useful measure of the degree of tuning. As  $Q$  increases, so does the frequency selectivity of the circuit.

We now consider the response of the circuit when the input is a sinusoidally varying current. When  $I = e^{i\omega t}$ ,

$$V_1(\omega) = \frac{\frac{R}{LC_m} + \frac{i\omega}{C_m}}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2 + i\gamma\omega}, \quad (20.92)$$

which again corresponds to a band-pass filter, with the maximum response occurring at  $\hat{\omega}$ , where

$$(\hat{\omega}^2)^2 + 2 \left( \frac{R}{L} \right)^2 \hat{\omega}^2 + \left( \frac{R}{L} \right)^2 (\gamma^2 - 2\omega_0^2) = 0. \quad (20.93)$$

Crawford and Fettiplace (1981) used a model of this type (without the leak conductance  $g_p$ ) to determine the electrical tuning characteristics of hair cells from the turtle cochlea. By comparison of these tuning curves with tuning curves obtained by acoustic stimulation of the hair cells they were able to determine that electrical resonance can account for most of the frequency selectivity of the hair cell.

Although the above circuit exhibits the required resonance, it would be much more satisfactory to explain electrical resonance in terms of components that have a more direct connection to the hair cell. This can be done in at least two ways. In Fig. 20.10B and C two circuits are shown, one involving a voltage-sensitive  $K^+$  conductance, the other a  $Ca^{2+}$ -sensitive  $K^+$  conductance, that, formally at least, are equivalent to the circuit in Fig. 20.10A.

Consider first the circuit in Fig. 20.10B. If the leak has a constant conductance, and the  $K^+$  conductance is a function of time and voltage, then

$$I = C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + g_L(V - V_L) + f g_K(V - V_K), \quad (20.94)$$

$$\tau \frac{df}{dt} = f_\infty - f, \quad (20.95)$$

where we take a linear approximation for  $f_\infty$ ,

$$f_\infty = f_r + \mu(V - V_r). \quad (20.96)$$

Here,  $V_r$  is assumed to be the resting membrane potential,  $f_r$  is the value of  $f$  when  $V = V_r$ , and  $\mu$  is the slope of the activation curve at the steady state. Note that at steady state,

$$0 = g_L(V_r - V_L) - g_K f_r (V_K - V_r), \quad (20.97)$$

and thus  $V_L$  can be eliminated.

It follows that

$$\frac{dI}{dt} + \frac{I}{\tau} = C_m \frac{d^2 \tilde{V}}{dt^2} + \left( g_L + g_K f_r + \frac{C_m}{\tau} \right) \frac{d\tilde{V}}{dt} + \left( \frac{g_L + g_K f_r + g_K (V_r - V_K) \mu}{\tau} \right) \tilde{V}, \quad (20.98)$$

where  $\tilde{V} = V - V_r$  and where we have linearized the equation around  $V_r$  by assuming that  $V \approx V_r$ . Equation (20.98) is equivalent to (20.85)–(20.88) if

$$L = \frac{\tau}{g_K (V_r - V_K) \mu}, \quad (20.99)$$

$$R = \frac{1}{g_K (V_r - V_K) \mu}, \quad (20.100)$$

$$g_p = g_L + g_K f_r. \quad (20.101)$$

A similar procedure can be followed for the circuit in Fig. 20.10C, in which the K<sup>+</sup> conductance is Ca<sup>2+</sup>-dependent rather than voltage-dependent, but extra assumptions about the Ca<sup>2+</sup> kinetics must be made. As a first approximation, it is assumed that Ca<sup>2+</sup> enters the cell through channels at a rate that is a linear function of voltage, with slope  $\theta$ , and is removed with first-order kinetics, i.e., at a rate proportional to its concentration. Finally, it is assumed that the proportion of open K<sup>+</sup> channels is linearly related to the Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration. Thus,

$$I = C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + g_L(V - V_L) + g_K k c (V - V_K), \quad (20.102)$$

$$W \frac{dc}{dt} = \frac{I_r + \theta(V - V_r)}{F} - pc, \quad (20.103)$$

where  $c$  denotes Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration,  $F$  is Faraday's constant,  $W$  is the cell volume,  $p$  is the rate of Ca<sup>2+</sup> pumping, and  $I_r$  is the steady Ca<sup>2+</sup> current when  $V = V_r$ . The constant  $k$  is the rate at which Ca<sup>2+</sup> activates the K<sup>+</sup> current. Again, linearizing this system about the steady state gives a system that is equivalent to (20.85)–(20.88), provided that

$$L = \frac{WF}{g_K(V_r - V_K)k\theta}, \quad (20.104)$$

$$R = \frac{pF}{g_K(V_r - V_K)k\theta}, \quad (20.105)$$

$$g_p = g_L + g_K k c_r, \quad (20.106)$$

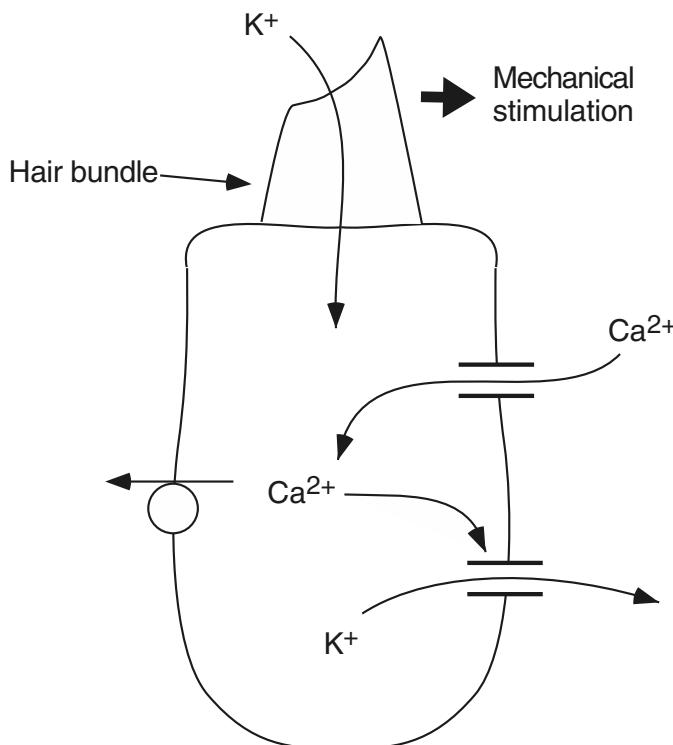
where  $c_r$  is the steady Ca<sup>2+</sup> concentration at the resting potential.

Ashmore and Attwell showed that although the model with the voltage-sensitive K<sup>+</sup> conductance can generate a wide range of optimal frequencies, physiological values for the parameters result in values for the quality factor  $Q$  that are an order of magnitude too low. Thus, for reasonable parameters, the model can distinguish between frequencies, but not sharply enough. Experimental values for  $Q$  are often 5 or more, while  $Q$  values in the model are not above 0.7. This, they argue, is the result of the low value of  $\mu$ : a physiological value for  $\mu$  is about 0.33 mV<sup>-1</sup>, but  $Q$  is large enough in the model with  $\mu$  about 3 mV<sup>-1</sup>. Thus, it appears that the activation of the K<sup>+</sup> current by voltage is not steep enough to account for the observed resonance in hair cells.

In the third model, however, the activation of the K<sup>+</sup> current by Ca<sup>2+</sup> can be made much steeper. Here, the effective activation slope of the K<sup>+</sup> channel is  $k\theta/(pF)$ , which can be made large by decreasing the pump rate  $p$  or by increasing the sensitivity of the K<sup>+</sup> channel to Ca<sup>2+</sup>. Ashmore and Attwell conclude that frequency tuning in hair cells is more likely the result of a Ca<sup>2+</sup>-sensitive K<sup>+</sup> conductance than of a voltage-sensitive conductance.

### 20.3.2 A Mechanistic Model of Frequency Tuning

This conclusion has been upheld by the work of Hudspeth and Lewis (1988a,b). Based on a series of experiments in which they measured the kinetic properties of the ionic



**Figure 20.11** Schematic diagram of a model of electrical tuning in hair cells, adapted from Hudspeth (1985).

conductances in saccular hair cells of the bullfrog, Hudspeth and Lewis constructed a detailed model of electrical resonance in these cells. They concluded that the observed properties of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  conductance, in concert with a voltage-sensitive  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conductance and a leak, are a sufficient quantitative explanation of frequency tuning in these cells.

A schematic diagram of their model is given in Fig. 20.11. Mechanical deflection of the hair bundle opens transduction channels in the hair bundle allowing the entry of positive ions, mostly  $\text{K}^+$ . The consequent depolarization of the cell activates voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, and the intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration rises. This, in turn, opens  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channels.  $\text{K}^+$  ions flow out of the cell, and the cell repolarizes.  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  balance is maintained by pumps that remove  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the hair cell. One crucial, and rather unusual, feature of the model is that  $\text{K}^+$  can both enter and leave the cell passively. Since the hair bundle projects into the scala media, the fluid surrounding the hair bundle (the endolymph in the case of hair cells in the cochlea) is of different composition from that surrounding the base of the hair cell, having a high  $\text{K}^+$  and a low  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration.

We do not present all the many details of the model here. Suffice it to say that it is assumed that there are three significant ionic currents contributing to resonance in the hair cell: a voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current, a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^+$  current, and a leak current.

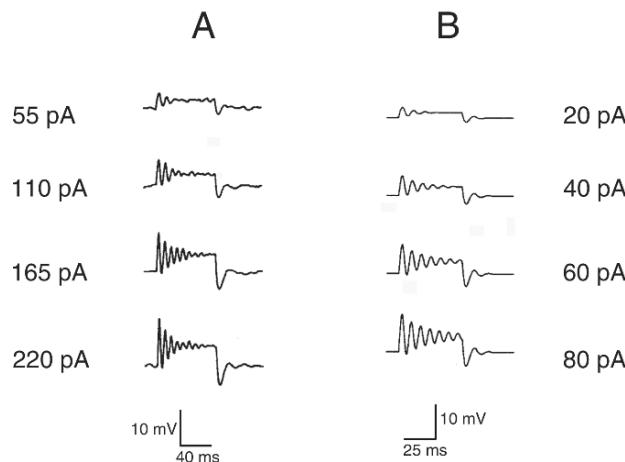
Thus, for an applied current  $I$ ,

$$I = C_m \frac{dV}{dt} + I_c + I_{kc} + I_L. \quad (20.107)$$

The voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current  $I_c$  and the leak currents are described by similar equations as in the Hodgkin-Huxley model (Chapter 5). The model of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{K}^+$  channel,  $I_{kc}$ , is considerably more complicated. It is assumed that the channel has three closed states and two open states: binding of two  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ions converts the channel into a state in which it can spontaneously open, while the binding of an additional  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ion can prolong opening. The transition rate constants are dependent on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and voltage. Finally,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  handling is treated simply by assuming that  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  enters through the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel and is removed by a first-order process.

The parameters (of which there are about 30) were determined by constraining the model to agree with voltage-clamp data from a single cell, and then the response of the model to current pulses was investigated. It was found that depolarizing current steps induced damped membrane potential oscillations in the model, with a frequency and amplitude dependent on the magnitude of the current step, in close agreement with experimental data (Fig. 20.12).

To simulate a transduction current, a term  $I_T = g_T(V - V_T)$  is added to the right-hand side of (20.107). The transduction conductance is assumed to be a function of hair cell displacement, which, in turn, is assumed to vary sinusoidally. The resultant model frequency response is band-pass in nature, with the maximal response at frequency 112 Hz and a quality factor of 3. The frequency at which the response is maximal (the



**Figure 20.12** A: Responses of bullfrog saccular hair cells to depolarizing current steps. As the current step increases in size, the hair cells show more pronounced oscillatory behavior. (Adapted from Hudspeth and Lewis, 1988b, Fig. 3.) B: Responses of the model to current steps. (Adapted from Hudspeth and Lewis, 1988b, Fig. 6.)

resonant frequency) is a function of the model parameters, and realistic changes in the model parameters can account for the range of experimentally observed resonant frequencies in the bullfrog sacculus. In particular, because the resonant frequency is sensitive to  $g_{kc}$ , the model predicts that controlling the number of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channels is one simple way in which cells could tune their frequency response.

## 20.4 The Nonlinear Cochlear Amplifier

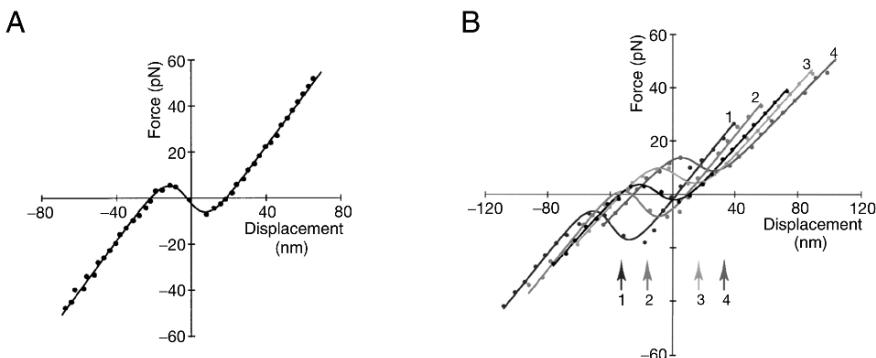
In Chapter 19 we saw that photoreceptors are able to respond in a reliable and reproducible way to single photons; the visual system thus attains the maximum possible sensitivity. Similarly, one of the most extraordinary things about the cochlea is its extreme sensitivity, which appears to be limited only by thermal noise (Manley, 2001).

The ability of the cochlea to detect low-amplitude signals is surprising, given that the cochlear fluid would be expected to damp out signals with low power. As Hudspeth (2005) has so graphically expressed it, asking the basilar membrane to vibrate under such conditions is akin to asking a tuning fork to vibrate in honey. As early as 1948, Gold pointed out this difficulty, and proposed the existence of some active mechanism amplifying the response to small sounds.

Such high sensitivity (as well as sharp frequency tuning) is believed to result from active mechanical amplification by hair cells. The exact molecular basis for such amplification is unclear, and almost certainly differs in different species. In mammals, outer hair cells contract and elongate in response to depolarization and hyperpolarization respectively. Vibrations of the basilar membrane cause lateral movement of the hair bundle on the top of the outer hair cell, which in turn opens and closes ion channels in the stereocilia, leading to changes in membrane potential (Hudspeth, 1997; Nobili et al., 1998; Manley, 2001; Hudspeth et al., 2000). It is fascinating to note that the opening and closing of ion channels in response to movement of the hair bundle is a direct mechanical interaction, and thus extremely fast. Elastic springs (tip links) connect the tip of one stereocilium directly to the ion channel; when the stereocilium moves, the tip link is pulled, thus opening the ion channel. It seems that these changes in the length of the outer hair cell result from the contraction or expansion of billions of proteins within the outer membrane, and that these proteins react to the membrane potential directly, without any need for ATP. However, the exact identity and properties of these proteins remains elusive (Ashmore et al., 2000).

### 20.4.1 Negative Stiffness, Adaptation, and Oscillations

Hair bundles of the bullfrog sacculus display spontaneous twitches, or oscillations that, when entrained by a stimulus of the resonant frequency, respond with an amplitude about twice that of the initial stimulus. One possible mechanism for such spontaneous oscillations has been proposed by Martin et al. (2000), and is based on the fact that the hair bundle has a negative stiffness for small displacements. This is an extraordinary



**Figure 20.13** A: Negative stiffness in hair bundles from the bullfrog sacculus. Small perturbations from the zero-displacement resting state cause greater displacements, and thus zero displacement is an unstable steady state (Martin et al., 2000, Fig. 1C). B: Adaptation of the force–displacement curve. When a fixed displacement is externally imposed, the force–displacement curve shifts in the direction of the applied displacement, and also moves vertically. The black curve is the force–displacement curve in the absence of any externally imposed displacement, while the other curves, in varying shades of gray (numbered for easier identification), were measured after the imposed displacement had been maintained for 100 ms. The arrows along the bottom show the positions of the externally imposed offset displacements (Martin et al., 2000, Fig. 2).

result. A typical spring (as taught in first year math and physics classes) has a positive stiffness; when perturbed from its rest position, the spring exerts a force that tries to restore the rest position, i.e., a positive displacement gives a positive force, while a negative displacement gives a negative force.

But hair bundles from the bullfrog sacculus have a very much more interesting response (Fig. 20.13A). A small positive displacement results in a negative force, tending to *increase* the displacement, leading to positive feedback and an unstable rest state. Similarly, a negative displacement causes a positive force. Hence there are two stable rest states; one with a positive displacement, one with a negative displacement.

Furthermore, the hair bundle displays adaptation, in a manner reminiscent of photoreceptor adaptation (Chapter 19). This is illustrated in Fig. 20.13B. If a fixed displacement is externally imposed, the force–displacement curve shifts both horizontally and vertically so as to bring the position of the imposed displacement within the region of negative stiffness. Hence, the response to a step increase in load is an initial large increase in force, followed by a slower relaxation. If the maintained displacement is large enough, this shift of the force–displacement curve results in the disappearance of two steady states in a saddle-node bifurcation.

Thus, spontaneous oscillations can arise. When the hair bundle tries to sit at the stable steady state with positive displacement, the force–displacement curve gradually adapts, shifting up and to the right, until this stable steady state no longer exists.

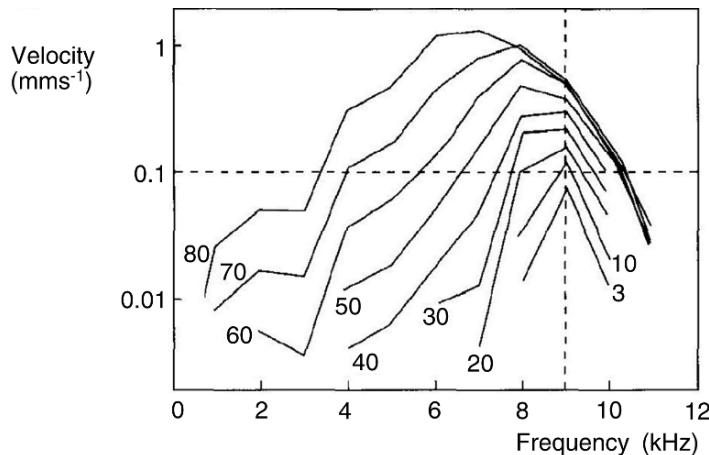
The hair bundle is then forced to flip to the other stable steady state (at a negative displacement), whereupon the process repeats itself in reverse. This results in a spontaneous oscillation where the hair bundle is alternately flipping between the two stable steady states, and the force–displacement curve is continually adapting. It is left as an exercise (Exercise 8) to formulate a mathematical model of this process.

## 20.4.2 Nonlinear Compression and Hopf Bifurcations

Another important feature of the cochlea is that low-amplitude signals are more sharply tuned than signals of high amplitude, and thus show greater frequency selectivity. Furthermore, there is no audible sound for which the cochlear response is linear; cochlear responses are essentially nonlinear.

Typical experimental data (from a living chinchilla) are shown in Fig. 20.14. At low signal amplitudes the frequency–response curve is sharply peaked, but becomes less so at high amplitudes. Also, at the resonant frequency (shown by the vertical dashed line), the response quickly saturates as the stimulus amplitude increases. This is called *nonlinear response compression*. Stated another way, the velocity of the response to a small-amplitude stimulus is much greater than would be expected were the cochlea to behave in a linear manner.

Eguíluz et al. (2000) have shown that both these properties of the response could result from the proximity of a Hopf bifurcation. Since we have already seen from



**Figure 20.14** The velocity of one point on the basilar membrane of a live chinchilla, plotted as a function of frequency. Each curve corresponds to a different stimulus amplitude, labeled in decibels. At low stimulus strength the frequency–response curve is sharply peaked, but becomes less so as the stimulus amplitude increases. In addition, the response at the resonant frequency is not a linear function of stimulus amplitude, but saturates (Reprinted from Ruggiero, 1992, Fig. 1b, with permission from Elsevier).

biophysical models that bullfrog saccular hair cells appear to be dynamically close to a Hopf bifurcation, this provides a plausible and appealing explanation of the responses seen in Fig. 20.13.

In normal form (Wiggins, 2003), the equations for a Hopf bifurcation are

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \mu x - \omega_0 y - (x^2 + y^2)x, \quad (20.108)$$

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \omega_0 x + \mu y - (x^2 + y^2)y, \quad (20.109)$$

or, in complex form,

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = (\mu + i\omega_0)z - |z|^2 z, \quad (20.110)$$

where  $z = x + iy$ . This system has a Hopf bifurcation at  $\mu = 0$ , and the oscillations that appear at the Hopf bifurcation have period  $2\pi/\omega_0$ , and have the form  $z = \sqrt{\mu}e^{i\omega_0 t}$ .

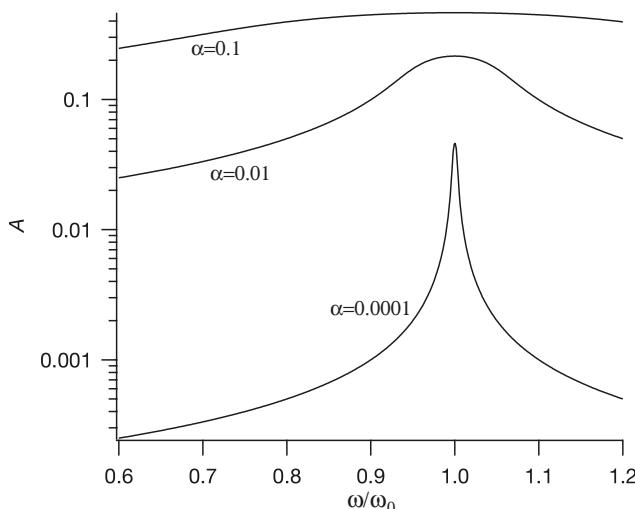
If we drive this oscillator with a forcing term  $\alpha e^{i\omega t}$ , and look for solutions of the form  $z = Ae^{i(\omega t+\phi)}$ , we get

$$(iA(\omega - \omega_0) - \mu A + A^3)e^{i\phi} = \alpha. \quad (20.111)$$

Since we are interested only in the amplitude,  $A$ , of the response, it suffices to take the modulus of both sides of (20.111), from which it follows that

$$\alpha^2 = A^6 - 2\mu A^4 + [\mu^2 + (\omega - \omega_0)^2]A^2. \quad (20.112)$$

For a given stimulus strength (i.e., a given  $\alpha$ ), we can plot  $A$  as a function of stimulus frequency,  $\omega$ . The results are shown in Fig. 20.15. When  $\alpha$  is small, the response has a sharp frequency tuning, and, at the resonant frequency  $\omega = \omega_0$ , the amplitude shows nonlinear compression. This behavior is qualitatively the same as that seen



**Figure 20.15** The amplitude,  $A$ , of the response of (20.108)–(20.109) to an input of the form  $\alpha e^{i\omega t}$ .

experimentally (Fig. 20.14). At the resonant frequency,  $\omega = \omega_0$ , (20.112) becomes

$$\alpha = A^3 - \mu A, \quad (20.113)$$

from which we see that, at the Hopf bifurcation point (i.e., when  $\mu = 0$ ),  $A$  depends on the one-third power of the input amplitude, and thus the response is nonlinearly compressed, as seen in the experimental data.

It is still uncertain whether the hair cells of any particular animal actually tune their responses in this way by sitting close to a Hopf bifurcation, and the exact mechanical forces that are responsible for nonlinear compression, sharp tuning, and amplification remain unclear. Nevertheless, this simple theory provides an intriguing explanation of this phenomenon.

## 20.5 EXERCISES

---

1. Show that if  $F(y, t)$  in the Lesser and Berkley model is an odd function of  $y$ , it is sufficient to consider only the solution in the region  $0 < y < l$ . Hint: Show that  $\phi_2(y, t) = -\phi_1(-y, t)$  and  $p_2(y, t) = -p_1(-y, t)$  satisfy the differential equations for  $\phi_2$  and  $p_2$ . Hence the potential and pressure are odd functions of  $y$ .
2. Formulate a model of the cochlea in which the basilar membrane is spatially coupled in the  $x$  direction as if it were a damped string. How does the Fourier transform of this problem differ from the Lesser–Berkley model (20.25)–(20.29)?
3. Show that (20.75) describes two waves moving in opposite directions. Hint:  $Y$  has an imaginary component, and thus the terms in (20.75) have phases with opposite signs. What are the envelopes of the waves?
4. If the functions  $m(x)$ ,  $r(x)$ , and  $k(x)$  are proportional to the same exponential, then the solution of (20.44) can be found exactly.

- (a) Suppose that  $m = m_0 e^{-\lambda x}$ ,  $k(x) = k_0 e^{-\lambda x}$ ,  $r(x) = r_0 e^{-\lambda x}$ . Show that (20.44) becomes

$$\frac{d^2 p}{dx^2} + \alpha^2 e^{\lambda x} p = 0, \quad (20.114)$$

$$\text{where } \alpha^2 = \frac{2\omega^2 \rho}{l(i\omega r_0 + k_0 - \omega^2 m_0)}.$$

- (b) Show that the transformation  $s = \frac{2\alpha}{\lambda} e^{\lambda x/2}$  transforms (20.114) into

$$s \frac{d}{ds} \left( s \frac{dp}{ds} \right) + s^2 p = 0, \quad (20.115)$$

which is Bessel's equation of order zero. Thus, the general solution of (20.114) is

$$p(x) = AJ_0 \left( \frac{2\alpha}{\lambda} e^{\lambda x/2} \right) + BY_0 \left( \frac{2\alpha}{\lambda} e^{\lambda x/2} \right), \quad (20.116)$$

where  $J_0$  and  $Y_0$  are the zeroth-order Bessel functions of the first and second kind, or equivalently,

$$p(x) = \tilde{A} H_0^{(1)}(s) + \tilde{B} H_0^{(2)}(s), \quad (20.117)$$

where  $H_0^{(1)}(s)$  and  $H_0^{(2)}(s)$  are the zeroth-order Hankel functions of the first and second kind. Use the boundary conditions (20.45) and (20.46) to determine the coefficients  $\tilde{A}$  and  $\tilde{B}$ .

- (c) Use the asymptotic behavior of the Hankel functions (Keener, 1998)

$$H_0^{(1)}(s) \sim \left(\frac{2}{\pi s}\right)^{1/2} e^{i(s-\pi/4)}, \quad H_0^{(2)}(s) \sim \left(\frac{2}{\pi s}\right)^{1/2} e^{-i(s-\pi/4)} \quad (20.118)$$

to approximate  $p(x)$  in the case that  $\tilde{B} = 0$ . Show that  $\eta(x)$  is approximated by (20.61). Under what conditions is this approximation valid?

5. For the long-wave model it was claimed that the phase of  $\eta$ , where  $\eta$  is given by (20.80), does not agree with experimental data. Confirm this by showing that for a fixed  $\omega$ , the phase increases exponentially with  $x$ , and that the phase does not approach zero as  $\omega$  approaches zero.
  6. Compare the location of the envelope maximum  $x_p$  for the shallow-water approximation (20.65) in the case  $l\lambda = \pi/2$  with that for the deep-water approximation (20.84), for large  $\omega$ .
  7. Let  $\eta_0 = 1$ ,  $\eta_L = 0$ , and  $m = 0.05e^{-1.5x}$ , and let the other parameters be the same as in the Lesser and Berkley model. Use the boundary conditions to solve for  $A_1$  and  $B_1$  in (20.59), and thus calculate the displacement of the basilar membrane for the shallow-water model. Compare the shallow-water and deep-water models by plotting the displacements for high and low frequencies. How does the behavior of the long-wave model change as  $l$  is decreased?
  8. Formulate a mathematical model of spontaneous oscillations that incorporates the force-displacement adaptation described in Section 20.4.1, and show that the model can exhibit relaxation oscillations. (Hint: Use a second-order differential equation to model the hair bundle as a damped spring, and at least one additional first-order equation to model adaptation of the spring. The model equations need not be biophysically realistic, but merely a qualitative caricature of the process.)
-

# Appendix: Units and Physical Constants

Quantity	Name	Symbol	Units
Amount	mole	mol	
Electric charge	coulomb	C	
Mass	gram	g	
Temperature	kelvin	K	
Time	second	s	
Length	meter	m	
Force	newton	N	$\text{kg} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{s}^{-2}$
Energy	joule	J	$\text{N} \cdot \text{m}$
Pressure	pascal	Pa	$\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$
Capacitance	farad	F	$\text{A} \cdot \text{s} \cdot \text{V}^{-1}$
Resistance	ohm	$\Omega$	$\text{V} \cdot \text{A}^{-1}$
Electric current	ampere	A	$\text{C} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$
Conductance	siemen	S	$\text{A} \cdot \text{V}^{-1} = \Omega^{-1}$
Potential difference	volt	V	$\text{N} \cdot \text{m} \cdot \text{C}^{-1}$
Concentration	molar	M	$\text{mol} \cdot \text{L}^{-1}$
Atomic Mass	dalton	D	$\text{g } N_A^{-1}$

## Unit Scale Factors

Name	Prefix	Scale factor
femto	f	$\times 10^{-15}$
pico	p	$\times 10^{-12}$
nano	n	$\times 10^{-9}$
micro	$\mu$	$\times 10^{-6}$
milli	m	$\times 10^{-3}$
centi	c	$\times 10^{-2}$
deci	d	$\times 10^{-1}$
kilo	k	$\times 10^3$
mega	M	$\times 10^6$
giga	G	$\times 10^9$

Physical Constant	Symbol	Value
Boltzmann's constant	$k$	$1.381 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J} \cdot \text{K}^{-1}$
Planck's constant	$h$	$6.626 \times 10^{-34} \text{ J} \cdot \text{s}$
Avogadro's number	$N_A$	$6.02257 \times 10^{23} \text{ mol}^{-1}$
unit charge	$q$	$1.6 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C}$
gravitational constant	$g$	$9.78049 \text{ m/s}^2$
Faraday's constant	$F$	$9.649 \times 10^4 \text{ C} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1}$
permittivity of free space	$\epsilon_0$	$8.854 \times 10^{-12} \text{ F/m}$
universal gas constant	$R$	$8.315 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \cdot \text{K}^{-1}$
atmosphere	atm	$1.01325 \times 10^5 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$
insulin unit	U	$\frac{1}{24000} \text{ g}$

## Other Useful Identities and Quantities

$$1 \text{ atm} = 760 \text{ mmHg}$$

$$R = kN_A$$

$$F = qN_A$$

$$\text{pH} = -\log_{10}[\text{H}^+]$$
 with  $[\text{H}^+]$  in moles per liter

$$273.15 \text{ K} = 0^\circ\text{C}$$
 (ice point)

$$T_{\text{Kelvin}} = T_{\text{centigrade}} - 273.15$$

$$T_{\text{Farenheit}} = \frac{9}{5}T_{\text{centigrade}} + 32$$

$$\frac{RT}{F} = 25.8 \text{ mV}$$
 at  $27^\circ\text{C}$

$$\text{density of pure water at } 4^\circ\text{C} = 1 \text{ gm/cm}^3$$

$$C_m; \text{capacitance of the cell membrane} \approx 1 \mu\text{F/cm}^2$$

$$\text{Liter; 1 liter} = 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3$$

$$\epsilon; \text{dielectric constant for water} = 80.4 \epsilon_0$$

**Lumen:** 1 lm = quantity of light emitted by  $\frac{1}{60} \text{ cm}^2$  surface area of pure platinum at its melting temperature ( $1770^\circ\text{C}$ ), within a solid angle of 1 steradian.

## References

- Adair, G. S. (1925) A critical study of the direct method of measuring osmotic pressure of hemoglobin, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London A.* 108: 627–637.
- Agre, P., L. S. King, M. Yasui, W. B. Guggino, O. P. Ottersen, Y. Fujiyoshi, A. Engel and S. Nielsen (2002) Aquaporin water channels—from atomic structure to clinical medicine, *Journal of Physiology.* 542: 3–16.
- Aharon, S., H. Parnas and I. Parnas (1994) The magnitude and significance of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  domains for release of neurotransmitter, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology.* 56: 1095–1119.
- Akin, E. and H. M. Lacker (1984) Ovulation control: the right number or nothing, *Journal of Mathematical Biology.* 20: 113–132.
- Albers, R. W., S. Fahn and G. J. Koval (1963) The role of sodium ions in the activation of electrophorus electric organ adenosine triphosphatase, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA.* 50: 474–481.
- Alberts, B., D. Bray, J. Lewis, M. Raff, K. Roberts and J. D. Watson (1994) *Molecular Biology of the Cell (Third Edition)*: Garland Publishing, Inc., New York, London.
- Aldrich, R. W., D. P. Corey and C. F. Stevens (1983) A reinterpretation of mammalian sodium channel gating based on single channel recording, *Nature.* 306: 436–441.
- Allbritton, N. L., T. Meyer and L. Stryer (1992) Range of messenger action of calcium ion and inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate, *Science.* 258: 1812–1815.
- Allen, N. A., K. C. Chen, C. A. Shaffer, J. J. Tyson and L. T. Watson (2006) Computer evaluation of network dynamics models with application to cell cycle control in budding yeast, *IEEE Proceedings Systems Biology.* 153: 13–21.
- Allescher, H. D., K. Abraham-Fuchs, R. E. Dunkel and M. Classen (1998) Biomagnetic 3-dimensional spatial and temporal characterization of electrical activity of human stomach, *Digestive Diseases and Sciences.* 43: 683–693.
- Alt, W. and D. A. Lauffenberger (1987) Transient behavior of a chemotaxis system modelling certain types of tissue inflammation, *Journal of Mathematical Biology.* 24: 691–722.
- Alvarez, W. C. (1922) The electrogastrogram and what it shows, *Journal of the American Medical Association.* 78: 1116–1119.
- Anand, M., K. Rajagopal and K. R. Rajagopal (2003) A model incorporating some of the mechanical and biochemical factors underlying clot formation and dissolution in flowing blood, *Journal of Theoretical Medicine.* 5: 183–218.
- Anand, M., K. Rajagopal and K. R. Rajagopal (2005) A model for the formation and lysis of blood clots, *Pathophysiology of Haemostasis and Thrombosis.* 34: 109–120.
- Anderson, C., N. Trayanova and K. Skouibine (2000) Termination of spiral waves with biphasic shocks: role of virtual electrode

- polarization, *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology*. 11: 1386–1396.
- Anliker, M., R. L. Rockwell and E. Ogden (1971a) Nonlinear analysis of flow pulses and shock waves in arteries. Part I: derivation and properties of mathematical model, *Zeitschrift für Angewandte Mathematik und Physik*. 22: 217–246.
- Anliker, M., R. L. Rockwell and E. Ogden (1971b) Nonlinear analysis of flow pulses and shock waves in arteries. Part II: parametric study related to clinical problems., *Zeitschrift für Angewandte Mathematik und Physik*. 22: 563–581.
- Apell, H. J. (1989) Electrogenic properties of the Na,K pump, *Journal of Membrane Biology*. 110: 103–114.
- Apell, H. J. (2004) How do P-type ATPases transport ions?, *Bioelectrochemistry*. 63: 149–156.
- Armstrong, C. M. (1981) Sodium channels and gating currents, *Physiological Reviews*. 61: 644–683.
- Armstrong, C. M. and F. Bezanilla (1973) Currents related to movement of the gating particles of the sodium channels, *Nature*. 242: 459–461.
- Armstrong, C. M. and F. Bezanilla (1974) Charge movement associated with the opening and closing of the activation gates of the Na channels, *Journal of General Physiology*. 63: 533–552.
- Armstrong, C. M. and F. Bezanilla (1977) Inactivation of the sodium channel II Gating current experiments, *Journal of General Physiology*. 70: 567–590.
- Arnold, V. I. (1983) *Geometric Methods in the Theory of Ordinary Differential Equations*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Aronson, D. G. and H. F. Weinberger (1975) *Nonlinear diffusion in population genetics, combustion and nerve pulse propagation*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Arrhenius, S. (1889) On the reaction velocity of the inversion of cane sugar by acids, *Zeitschrift für physikalische Chemie*. 4: 226 ff.
- Asdell, S. A. (1946) *Patterns of Mammalian Reproduction*: Comstock Publishing Company, New York.
- Ashmore, J. F. and D. Attwell (1985) Models for electrical tuning in hair cells, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 226: 325–344.
- Ashmore, J. F., G. S. Geleoc and L. Harbott (2000) Molecular mechanisms of sound amplification in the mammalian cochlea, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 97: 11759–11764.
- Ataullakhhanov, F. I., Y. V. Krasotkina, V. I. Sarbash, R. I. Volkova, E. I. Sinauridze and A. Y. Kondratovich (2002a) Spatio-temporal dynamics of blood coagulation and pattern formation. An experimental study., *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos*. 12: 1969–1983.
- Ataullakhhanov, F. I., V. I. Zarnitsina, A. V. Pokhilko, A. I. Lobanov and O. L. Morozova (2002b) Spatio-temporal dynamics of blood coagulation and pattern formation. A theoretical approach., *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos*. 12: 1985–2002.
- Atri, A., J. Amundson, D. Clapham and J. Sneyd (1993) A single-pool model for intracellular calcium oscillations and waves in the *Xenopus laevis* oocyte, *Biophysical Journal*. 65: 1727–1739.
- Atwater, I., C. M. Dawson, A. Scott, G. Eddlestone and E. Rojas (1980) The nature of the oscillatory behavior in electrical activity for pancreatic β-cell, *Hormone and Metabolic Research*. 10 (suppl.): 100–107.
- Atwater, I. and J. Rinzel (1986) *The β-cell bursting pattern and intracellular calcium*. In: *Ionic Channels in Cells and Model Systems*, Ed: R. Latorre, Plenum Press, New York, London.
- Bélair, J., M. C. Mackey and J. M. Mahaffy (1995) Age-structured and two-delay models for erythropoiesis, *Mathematical Biosciences*. 128: 317–346.
- Backx, P. H., P. P. d. Tombe, J. H. K. V. Deen, B. J. M. Mulder and H. E. D. J. t. Keurs (1989) A model of propagating calcium-induced calcium release mediated by calcium diffusion, *Journal of General Physiology*. 93: 963–977.
- Ball, F. G., Y. Cai, J. B. Kadane and A. O'Hagan (1999) Bayesian inference for ion-channel gating mechanisms directly from single-channel recordings, using Markov chain Monte Carlo, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London A*. 455: 2879–2932.
- Bar, M. and M. Eiswirth (1993) Turbulence due to spiral breakup in a continuous excitable medium, *Physical Review E*. 48: 1635–1637.
- Barcilon, V. (1992) Ion flow through narrow membrane channels: Part I, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 52: 1391–1404.
- Barcilon, V., D. P. Chen and R. S. Eisenberg (1992) Ion flow through narrow membrane channels: Part II, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 52: 1405–1425.

- Barkley, D. (1994) Euclidean symmetry and the dynamics of rotating spiral waves, *Physical Review Letters*. 72: 164–167.
- Barlow, H. B. (1972) Single units and sensation: a neuron doctrine for perceptual psychology?, *Perception*. 1: 371–394.
- Barlow, H. B., R. Fitzhugh and S. W. Kuffler (1957) Change of organization in the receptive fields of the cat's retina during dark adaptation, *Journal of Physiology*. 137: 338–354.
- Barlow, H. B. and W. R. Levick (1965) The mechanism of directionally selective units in rabbit's retina, *Journal of Physiology*. 178: 477–504.
- Batchelor, G. K. (1967) *An Introduction to Fluid Dynamics*: Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Batzel, J. J., F. Kappel, D. Schneditz and H. T. Tran (2007) *Cardiovascular and Respiratory System: Modeling, Analysis and Control*: SIAM, Philadelphia.
- Batzel, J. J. and H. T. Tran (2000a) Stability of the human respiratory control system. I. Analysis of a two-dimensional delay state-space model, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 41: 45–79.
- Batzel, J. J. and H. T. Tran (2000b) Stability of the human respiratory control system. II. Analysis of a three-dimensional delay state-space model, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 41: 80–102.
- Batzel, J. J. and H. T. Tran (2000c) Modeling instability in the control system for human respiration: applications to infant non-REM sleep, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*. 110: 1–51.
- Baylor, D. A. and A. L. Hodgkin (1974) Changes in time scale and sensitivity in turtle photoreceptors, *Journal of Physiology*. 242: 729–758.
- Baylor, D. A., A. L. Hodgkin and T. D. Lamb (1974a) The electrical response of turtle cones to flashes and steps of light, *Journal of Physiology*. 242: 685–727.
- Baylor, D. A., A. L. Hodgkin and T. D. Lamb (1974b) Reconstruction of the electrical responses of turtle cones to flashes and steps of light, *Journal of Physiology*. 242: 759–791.
- Baylor, D. A., T. D. Lamb and K. W. Yau (1979) Responses of retinal rods to single photons, *Journal of Physiology*. 288: 613–634.
- Baylor, D. A., G. Matthews and K. W. Yau (1980) Two components of electrical dark noise in toad retinal rod outer segments, *Journal of Physiology*. 309: 591–621.
- Beck, J. S., R. Laprade and J.-Y. Lapointe (1994) Coupling between transepithelial Na transport and basolateral K conductance in renal proximal tubule, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 266: F517–527.
- Beeler, G. W. and H. J. Reuter (1977) Reconstruction of the action potential of ventricular myocardial fibers, *Journal of Physiology*. 268: 177–210.
- Begenisich, T. B. and M. D. Cahalan (1980) Sodium channel permeation in squid axons I: reversal potential experiments, *Journal of Physiology*. 307: 217–242.
- Beltrami, E. and J. Jesty (1995) Mathematical analysis of activation thresholds in enzyme-catalyzed positive feedbacks: application to the feedbacks of blood coagulation, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 92: 8744–8748.
- Ben-Tal, A. (2006) Simplified models for gas exchange in the human lungs, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 238: 474–495.
- Ben-Tal, A. and J. C. Smith (2008) A model for control of breathing in mammals: coupling neural dynamics to peripheral gas exchange and transport, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 251: 480–497.
- Bennett, M. R., L. Farnell and W. G. Gibson (2004) The facilitated probability of quantal secretion within an array of calcium channels of an active zone at the amphibian neuromuscular junction, *Biophysical Journal*. 86: 2674–2690.
- Bennett, M. R., L. Farnell and W. G. Gibson (2005) A quantitative model of purinergic junctional transmission of calcium waves in astrocyte networks, *Biophysical Journal*. 89: 2235–2250.
- Bennett, M. R., L. Farnell, W. G. Gibson and P. Dickens (2007) Mechanisms of calcium sequestration during facilitation at active zones of an amphibian neuromuscular junction, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 247: 230–241.
- Bensoussan, A., J.-L. Lions and G. Papanicolaou (1978) *Asymptotic Analysis for Periodic Structures*: North-Holland, Amsterdam, New York.
- Bentele, K. and M. Falcke (2007) Quasi-steady approximation for ion channel currents, *Biophysical Journal*. 93: 2597–2608.
- Bergman, R. N. (1989) Toward physiological understanding of glucose tolerance: minimal-model approach, *Diabetes*. 38: 1512–1527.

- Bergman, R. N., Y. Z. Ider, C. R. Bowden and C. Cobelli (1979) Quantitative estimation of insulin sensitivity, *American Journal of Physiology — Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 236: E667–677.
- Bergstrom, R. W., W. Y. Fujimoto, D. C. Teller and C. D. Haén (1989) Oscillatory insulin secretion in perfused isolated rat islets, *American Journal of Physiology — Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 257: E479–485.
- Berman, N., H.-F. Chou, A. Berman and E. Ipp (1993) A mathematical model of oscillatory insulin secretion, *American Journal of Physiology — Regulatory, Integrative and Comparative Physiology*. 264: R839–851.
- Berne, R. M. and M. N. Levy, Eds. (1993) *Physiology (Third Edition)*. Mosby Year Book, St. Louis.
- Berne, R. M. and M. N. Levy, Eds. (1998) *Physiology (Fourth Edition)*. Mosby Year Book, St. Louis.
- Bernstein, J. (1902) Untersuchungen zur Thermodynamik der bioelektrischen Ströme. Erster Theil., *Pflügers Archive*. 82: 521–562.
- Berridge, M. J. (1997) Elementary and global aspects of calcium signalling, *Journal of Physiology*. 499: 291–306.
- Berridge, M. J., M. D. Bootman and H. L. Roderick (2003) Calcium signalling: dynamics, homeostasis and remodelling, *Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology*. 4: 517–529.
- Berridge, M. J. and A. Galione (1988) Cytosolic calcium oscillators, *FASEB Journal*. 2: 3074–3082.
- Bers, D. M. (2001) *Excitation–Contraction Coupling and Cardiac Contractile Force (Second edition)*: Kluwer, New York.
- Bers, D. M. (2002) Cardiac excitation–contraction coupling, *Nature*. 415: 198–205.
- Bers, D. M. and E. Perez-Reyes (1999) Ca channels in cardiac myocytes: structure and function in Ca influx and intracellular Ca release, *Cardiovascular Research*. 42: 339–360.
- Bertram, R., M. J. Butte, T. Kiemel and A. Sherman (1995) Topological and phenomenological classification of bursting oscillations, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 57: 413–439.
- Bertram, R., M. Egli, N. Toporikova and M. E. Freeman (2006b) A mathematical model for the mating-induced prolactin rhythm of female rats, *American Journal of Physiology — Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 290: E573–582.
- Bertram, R., M. Gram Pedersen, D. S. Luciani and A. Sherman (2006a) A simplified model for mitochondrial ATP production, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 243: 575–586.
- Bertram, R., L. Satin, M. Zhang, P. Smolen and A. Sherman (2004) Calcium and glycolysis mediate multiple bursting modes in pancreatic islets, *Biophysical Journal*. 87: 3074–3087.
- Bertram, R., L. S. Satin, M. G. Pedersen, D. S. Luciani and A. Sherman (2007b) Interaction of glycolysis and mitochondrial respiration in metabolic oscillations of pancreatic islets, *Biophysical Journal*. 92: 1544–1555.
- Bertram, R. and A. Sherman (2004a) A calcium-based phantom bursting model for pancreatic islets, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 66: 1313–1344.
- Bertram, R. and A. Sherman (2004b) Filtering of calcium transients by the endoplasmic reticulum in pancreatic beta-cells, *Biophysical Journal*. 87: 3775–3785.
- Bertram, R., A. Sherman and L. S. Satin (2007a) Metabolic and electrical oscillations: partners in controlling pulsatile insulin secretion, *American Journal of Physiology — Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 293: E890–900.
- Bertram, R., A. Sherman and E. F. Stanley (1996) Single-domain/bound calcium hypothesis of transmitter release and facilitation, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 75: 1919–1931.
- Beuter, A., L. Glass, M. C. Mackey and M. S. Titcombe (2003) *Nonlinear Dynamics in Physiology and Medicine*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Bezprozvanny, I., J. Watras and B. E. Ehrlich (1991) Bell-shaped calcium-response curves of Ins(1,4,5)P<sub>3</sub>- and calcium-gated channels from endoplasmic reticulum of cerebellum, *Nature*. 351: 751–754.
- Bier, M., B. Teusink, B. N. Kholodenko and H. V. Westerhoff (1996) Control analysis of glycolytic oscillations, *Biophysical Chemistry*. 62: 15–24.
- Blakemore, C., Ed. (1990) *Vision: Coding and Efficiency*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- Blatow, M., A. Caputi, N. Burnashev, H. Monyer and A. Rozov (2003) Ca<sup>2+</sup> buffer saturation underlies paired pulse facilitation in calbindin-D28k-containing terminals, *Neuron*. 38: 79–88.
- Bliss, R. D., P. R. Painter and A. G. Marr (1982) Role of feedback inhibition in stabilizing the classical operon, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 97: 177–193.
- Blum, J. J., D. D. Carr and M. C. Reed (1992) Theoretical analysis of lipid transport in

- sciatic nerve, *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*. 1125: 313–320.
- Blum, J. J. and M. C. Reed (1985) A model for fast axonal transport, *Cell Motility*. 5: 507–527.
- Blum, J. J. and M. C. Reed (1989) A model for slow axonal transport and its application to neurofilamentous neuropathies, *Cell Motility and the Cytoskeleton*. 12: 53–65.
- Bluman, G. W. and H. C. Tuckwell (1987) Methods for obtaining analytical solutions for Rall's model neuron, *Journal of Neuroscience Methods*. 20: 151–166.
- Bogumil, R. J., M. Ferin, J. Rootenberg, L. Speroff and R. L. Van De Wiele (1972) Mathematical studies of the human menstrual cycle. I. formulation of a mathematical model., *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 35: 126–156.
- Bohr, C., K. A. Hasselbach and A. Krogh (1904) Über einen in biologischen Beziehung wichtigen Einfluss, den die Kohlen-sauerspannung des Blutes auf dessen Sauerstoffbindung übt., *Skand Arch Physiol*. 15: 401–412.
- Boitano, S., E. R. Dirksen and M. J. Sanderson (1992) Intercellular propagation of calcium waves mediated by inositol trisphosphate, *Science*. 258: 292–294.
- Bootman, M., E. Niggli, M. Berridge and P. Lipp (1997a) Imaging the hierarchical  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signalling system in HeLa cells, *Journal of Physiology*. 499: 307–314.
- Bootman, M. D., M. J. Berridge and P. Lipp (1997b) Cooking with calcium: the recipes for composing global signals from elementary events, *Cell*. 91: 367–373.
- Borghans, J. A. M., R. J. De Boer and L. A. Segel (1996) Extending the quasi-steady state approximation by changing variables, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 58: 43–63.
- Borghans, J. M., G. Dupont and A. Goldbeter (1997) Complex intracellular calcium oscillations. A theoretical exploration of possible mechanisms, *Biophysical Chemistry*. 66: 25–41.
- Borisuk, M. T. and J. J. Tyson (1998) Bifurcation analysis of a model of mitotic control in frog eggs, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 195: 69–85.
- Borst, A. (2000) Models of motion detection, *Nature Neuroscience*. 3 Suppl: 1168.
- Borst, A. and M. Egelhaaf (1989) Principles of visual motion detection, *Trends in Neurosciences*. 12: 297–306.
- Bowen, J. R., A. Acritov and A. K. Oppenheim (1963) Singular perturbation refinement to quasi-steady state approximation in chemical kinetics, *Chemical Engineering Science*. 18: 177–188.
- Boyce, W. E. and R. C. DiPrima (1997) *Elementary Differential Equations and Boundary Value Problems (Sixth Edition)*: John Wiley and Sons, New York.
- Boyd, I. A. and A. R. Martin (1956) The end-plate potential in mammalian muscle, *Journal of Physiology*. 132: 74–91.
- Brabant, G., K. Prank and C. Schöfl (1992) Pulsatile patterns in hormone secretion, *Trends in Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 3: 183–190.
- Bradshaw, L. A., S. H. Allos, J. P. Wikswo, Jr. and W. O. Richards (1997) Correlation and comparison of magnetic and electric detection of small intestinal electrical activity, *American Journal of Physiology — Gastrointestinal and Liver Physiology*. 272: G1159–1167.
- Bradshaw, L. A., J. K. Ladipo, D. J. Staton, J. P. Wikswo, Jr. and W. O. Richards (1999) The human vector magnetogastrogram and magnetoenterogram, *IEEE Transactions in Biomedical Engineering*. 46: 959–970.
- Braun, M. (1993) *Differential Equations and their Applications (Fourth Edition)*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Briggs, G. E. and J. B. S. Haldane (1925) A note on the kinematics of enzyme action, *Biochemical Journal*. 19: 338–339.
- Brink, P. R. and S. V. Ramanan (1985) A model for the diffusion of fluorescent probes in the septate giant axon of earthworm: axoplasmic diffusion and junctional membrane permeability, *Biophysical Journal*. 48: 299–309.
- Britton, N. F. (1986) *Reaction-Diffusion Equations and their Applications to Biology*: Academic Press, London.
- Brodie, S. E., B. W. Knight and F. Ratliff (1978a) The response of the Limulus retina to moving stimuli: a prediction by Fourier synthesis, *Journal of General Physiology*. 72: 129–166.
- Brodie, S. E., B. W. Knight and F. Ratliff (1978b) The spatiotemporal transfer function of the Limulus lateral eye, *Journal of General Physiology*. 72: 167–202.
- Brokaw, C. J. (1976) Computer simulation of movement-generating cross-bridges, *Biophysical Journal*. 16: 1013–1027.
- Brown, B. H., H. L. Duthie, A. R. Horn and R. H. Smallwood (1975) A linked oscillator model of electrical activity of human small intestine, *American Journal of Physiology*. 229: 384–388.

- Brown, D., A. E. Herbison, J. E. Robinson, R. W. Marrs and G. Leng (1994) Modelling the luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone pulse generator, *Neuroscience*. 63: 869–879.
- Brown, D., E. A. Stephens, R. G. Smith, G. Li and G. Leng (2004) Estimation of parameters for a mathematical model of growth hormone secretion, *Journal of Neuroendocrinology*. 16: 936–946.
- Bugrim, A., R. Fontanilla, B. B. Eutener, J. Keizer and R. Nuccitelli (2003) Sperm initiate a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave in frog eggs that is more similar to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves initiated by  $\text{IP}_3$  than by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , *Biophysical Journal*. 84: 1580–1590.
- Bungay, S. D., P. A. Gentry and R. D. Gentry (2003) A mathematical model of lipid-mediated thrombin generation, *Mathematical Medicine and Biology*. 20: 105–129.
- Burger, H. C. and J. B. Van Milaan (1946) Heart-vector and leads, *British Heart Journal*. 8: 157–161.
- Burger, H. C. and J. B. Van Milaan (1947) Heart-vector and leads. Part II, *British Heart Journal*. 9: 154–160.
- Burger, H. C. and J. B. Van Milaan (1948) Heart-vector and leads. Part III: geometrical representation, *British Heart Journal*. 10: 229–233.
- Bursztyn, L., O. Eytan, A. J. Jaffa and D. Elad (2007) Modeling myometrial smooth muscle contraction, *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*. 1101: 110–138.
- Burton, W. K., N. Cabrera and F. C. Frank (1951) The growth of crystals and the equilibrium structure of their surfaces, *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London A*. 243: 299–358.
- Butera, R. J., Jr., J. Rinzel and J. C. Smith (1999a) Models of respiratory rhythm generation in the pre-Bötzinger complex. I. Bursting pacemaker neurons, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 82: 382–397.
- Butera, R. J., Jr., J. Rinzel and J. C. Smith (1999b) Models of respiratory rhythm generation in the pre-Bötzinger complex. II. Populations Of coupled pacemaker neurons, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 82: 398–415.
- Cajal, S. R. (1893) Sur les ganglions et plexus nerveux de l'intestin, *Comptes Rendus des Séances de la Société de Biologie et de ses Filiales*. 45: 217–223.
- Cajal, S. R. (1911) *Histologie du Système Nerveux de l'Homme et des Vertebrés*: Maloine, Paris.
- Callamaras, N., J. S. Marchant, X. P. Sun and I. Parker (1998) Activation and co-ordination of  $\text{InsP}_3$ -mediated elementary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  events during global  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signals in *Xenopus* oocytes, *Journal of Physiology*. 509: 81–91.
- Čamborová, P., P. Hubka, I. Šulková and I. Hulín (2003) The pacemaker activity of interstitial cells of Cajal and gastric electrical activity, *Physiological Research*. 52: 275–284.
- Campbell, D. T. and B. Hille (1976) Kinetic and pharmacological properties of the sodium channel of frog skeletal muscle, *Journal of General Physiology*. 67: 309–323.
- Carafoli, E. (2002) Calcium signaling: a tale for all seasons, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 99: 1115–1122.
- Carafoli, E., L. Santella, D. Branca and M. Brini (2001) Generation, control, and processing of cellular calcium signals, *Critical Reviews in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*. 36: 107–260.
- Carpenter, G. (1977) A geometric approach to singular perturbation problems with applications to nerve impulse equations, *Journal of Differential Equations*. 23: 335–367.
- Carpenter, G. A. and S. Grossberg (1981) Adaptation and transmitter gating in vertebrate photoreceptors, *Journal of Theoretical Neurobiology*. 1: 1–42.
- Cartwright, M. and M. Husain (1986) A model for the control of testosterone secretion, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 123: 239–250.
- Castellan, G. W. (1971) *Physical Chemistry (Second Edition)*: Addison-Wesley, Reading,
- Casten, R. G., H. Cohen and P. A. Lagerstrom (1975) Perturbation analysis of an approximation to the Hodgkin-Huxley theory, *Quarterly of Applied Mathematics*. 32: 365–402.
- Caulfield, J. B. and T. K. Borg (1979) The collagen network of the heart, *Laboratory Investigation*. 40: 364–372.
- Caumo, A., R. N. Bergman and C. Cobelli (2000) Insulin sensitivity from meal tolerance tests in normal subjects: a minimal model index, *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 85: 4396–4402.
- Chávez-Ross, A., S. Franks, H. D. Mason, K. Hardy and J. Stark (1997) Modelling the control of ovulation and polycystic ovary syndrome, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 36: 95–118.
- Chadwick, R. (1980) *Studies in cochlear mechanics*. In: Mathematical Modeling of the Hearing Process Lecture Notes in Biomathematics, 43, Ed: M. H. Holmes and L. A. Rubenfeld, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York.

- Chadwick, R. S., A. Inselberg and K. Johnson (1976) Mathematical model of the cochlea. II: results and conclusions, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 30: 164–179.
- Champneys, A. R., V. Kirk, E. Knobloch, B. E. Oldeman and J. Sneyd (2007) When Shil'nikov meets Hopf in excitable systems, *SIAM Journal on Applied Dynamical Systems*. 6: 663–693.
- Changeux, J. P. (1965) The control of biochemical reactions, *Scientific American*. 212: 36–45.
- Chapman, R. A. and C. H. Fry (1978) An analysis of the cable properties of frog ventricular myocardium, *Journal of Physiology*. 283: 263–282.
- Charles, A. (1998) Intercellular calcium waves in glia, *Glia*. 24: 39–49.
- Charles, A. C., J. E. Merrill, E. R. Dirksen and M. J. Sanderson (1991) Intercellular signaling in glial cells: calcium waves and oscillations in response to mechanical stimulation and glutamate, *Neuron*. 6: 983–992.
- Charles, A. C., C. C. G. Naus, D. Zhu, G. M. Kidder, E. R. Dirksen and M. J. Sanderson (1992) Intercellular calcium signaling via gap junctions in glioma cells, *Journal of Cell Biology*. 118: 195–201.
- Charnock, J. S. and R. L. Post (1963) Studies of the mechanism of cation transport. I. The preparation and properties of a cation-stimulated adenosine-triphosphatase from guinea pig kidney cortex, *Australian Journal of Experimental Biology and Medical Science*. 41: 547–560.
- Chay, T. R. (1986) On the effect of the intracellular calcium-sensitive  $K^+$  channel in the bursting pancreatic  $\beta$ -cell, *Biophysical Journal*. 50: 765–777.
- Chay, T. R. (1987) The effect of inactivation of calcium channels by intracellular  $Ca^{2+}$  ions in the bursting pancreatic  $\beta$ -cell, *Cell Biophysics*. 11: 77–90.
- Chay, T. R. (1996a) Modeling slowly bursting neurons via calcium store and voltage-independent calcium current, *Neural Computation*. 8: 951–978.
- Chay, T. R. (1996b) Electrical bursting and luminal calcium oscillation in excitable cell models, *Biological Cybernetics*. 75: 419–431.
- Chay, T. R. (1997) Effects of extracellular calcium on electrical bursting and intracellular and luminal calcium oscillations in insulin secreting pancreatic beta-cells, *Biophysical Journal*. 73: 1673–1688.
- Chay, T. R. and D. L. Cook (1988) Endogenous bursting patterns in excitable cells, *Mathematical Biosciences*. 90: 139–153.
- Chay, T. R. and H. S. Kang (1987) *Multiple oscillatory states and chaos in the endogenous activity of excitable cells: pancreatic  $\beta$ -cell as an example*. In: *Chaos in Biological Systems*, Ed: H. Degn, A. V. Holden and L. F. Olsen, Plenum Press, New York.
- Chay, T. R. and J. Keizer (1983) Minimal model for membrane oscillations in the pancreatic  $\beta$ -cell, *Biophysical Journal*. 42: 181–190.
- Cheer, A., R. Nuccitelli, G. F. Oster and J.-P. Vincent (1987) Cortical waves in vertebrate eggs I: the activation waves, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 124: 377–404.
- Chen, D. and R. Eisenberg (1993) Charges, currents, and potentials in ionic channels of one conformation, *Biophysical Journal*. 64: 1405–1421.
- Chen, D. P., V. Barcilon and R. S. Eisenberg (1992) Constant fields and constant gradients in open ionic channels, *Biophysical Journal*. 61: 1372–1393.
- Chen, K. C., L. Calzone, A. Csikasz-Nagy, F. R. Cross, B. Novak and J. J. Tyson (2004) Integrative analysis of cell cycle control in budding yeast, *Molecular Biology of the Cell*. 15: 3841–3862.
- Chen, K. C., A. Csikasz-Nagy, B. Gyorffy, J. Val, B. Novak and J. J. Tyson (2000) Kinetic analysis of a molecular model of the budding yeast cell cycle, *Molecular Biology of the Cell*. 11: 369–391.
- Chen, L. and M. Q. Meng (1995) Compact and scattered gap junctions in diffusion mediated cell-cell communication, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 176: 39–45.
- Chen, P. S., P. D. Wolf, E. G. Dixon, N. D. Danieley, D. W. Frazier, W. M. Smith and R. E. Ideker (1988) Mechanism of ventricular vulnerability to single premature stimuli in open-chest dogs, *Circulation Research*. 62: 1191–1209.
- Cheng, H., M. Fill, H. Valdivia and W. J. Lederer (1995) Models of  $Ca^{2+}$  release channel adaptation, *Science*. 267: 2009–2010.
- Cheng, H., W. J. Lederer and M. B. Cannell (1993) Calcium sparks: elementary events underlying excitation–contraction coupling in heart muscle, *Science*. 262: 740–744.
- Cherniack, N. S. and G. S. Longobardo (2006) Mathematical models of periodic breathing and their usefulness in understanding cardiovascular and respiratory disorders, *Experimental Physiology*. 91: 295–305.

- Cheyne, J. (1818) A case of apoplexy, in which the fleshy part of the heart was converted into fat, *Dublin Hospital Reports*. 2: 216.
- Christ, G. J., P. R. Brink and S. V. Ramanan (1994) Dynamic gap junctional communication: a delimiting model for tissue responses, *Biophysical Journal*. 67: 1335–1344.
- Ciliberto, A., B. Novak and J. J. Tyson (2003) Mathematical model of the morphogenesis checkpoint in budding yeast, *Journal of Cell Biology*. 163: 1243–1254.
- Civan, M. M. and R. J. Bookman (1982) Transepithelial  $\text{Na}^+$  transport and the intracellular fluids: a computer study, *Journal of Membrane Biology*. 65: 63–80.
- Civan, M. M. and R. J. Podolsky (1966) Contraction kinetics of striated muscle fibres following quick changes in load, *Journal of Physiology*. 184: 511–534.
- Clément, F., M. A. Gruet, P. Monget, M. Terqui, E. Jolivet and D. Monniaux (1997) Growth kinetics of the granulosa cell population in ovarian follicles: an approach by mathematical modelling, *Cell Proliferation*. 30: 255–270.
- Clément, F., D. Monniaux, J. Stark, K. Hardy, J. C. Thalabard, S. Franks and D. Claude (2001) Mathematical model of FSH-induced cAMP production in ovarian follicles, *American Journal of Physiology — Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 281: E35–53.
- Clément, F., D. Monniaux, J. C. Thalabard and D. Claude (2002) Contribution of a mathematical modelling approach to the understanding of the ovarian function, *Comptes Rendus des Séances de la Société de Biologie et de ses Filiales*. 325: 473–485.
- Clancy, C. E. and Y. Rudy (1999) Linking a genetic defect to its cellular phenotype in a cardiac arrhythmia, *Nature*. 400: 566–569.
- Clancy, C. E. and Y. Rudy (2001) Cellular consequences of HERG mutations in the long QT syndrome: precursors to sudden cardiac death, *Cardiovascular Research*. 50: 301–313.
- Clapham, D. (1995) Intracellular calcium-replenishing the stores, *Nature*. 375: 634–635.
- Clark, A. J. (1933) *The Mode of Action of Drugs on Cells*: Edward Arnold and Co., London.
- Clark, L. H., P. M. Schlosser and J. F. Selgrade (2003) Multiple stable periodic solutions in a model for hormonal control of the menstrual cycle, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 65: 157–173.
- Clifford, C. W. and M. R. Ibbotson (2003) Fundamental mechanisms of visual motion detection: models, cells and functions, *Progress in Neurobiology*. 68: 409–437.
- Cobbs, W. H. and E. N. Pugh (1987) Kinetics and components of the flash photocurrent of isolated retinal rods of the larval salamander *Ambystoma Tigrinum*, *Journal of Physiology*. 394: 529–572.
- Coddington, E. A. and N. Levinson (1984) *Ordinary Differential Equations*: Robert E. Krieger Publishing Company, Malabar, Florida.
- Cohen, M. A. and J. A. Taylor (2002) Short-term cardiovascular oscillations in man: measuring and modelling the physiologies, *Journal of Physiology*. 542: 669–683.
- Cole, K. S., H. A. Antosiewicz and P. Rabinowitz (1955) Automatic computation of nerve excitation, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 3: 153–172.
- Cole, K. S. and H. J. Curtis (1940) Electric impedance of the squid giant axon during activity, *Journal of General Physiology*. 22: 649–670.
- Colegrove, S. L., M. A. Albrecht and D. D. Friel (2000) Quantitative analysis of mitochondrial  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  uptake and release pathways in sympathetic neurons. Reconstruction of the recovery after depolarization-evoked  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  elevations, *Journal of General Physiology*. 115: 371–388.
- Colijn, C. and M. C. Mackey (2005a) A mathematical model of hematopoiesis—I. Periodic chronic myelogenous leukemia, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 237: 117–132.
- Colijn, C. and M. C. Mackey (2005b) A mathematical model of hematopoiesis: II. Cyclical neutropenia, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 237: 133–146.
- Colli-Franzone, P., L. Guerri and S. Rovida (1990) Wavefront propagation in an activation model of the anisotropic cardiac tissue: asymptotic analysis and numerical simulations, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 28: 121–176.
- Colli-Franzone, P., L. Guerri and B. Taccardi (1993) Spread of excitation in a myocardial volume: simulation studies in a model of anisotropic ventricular muscle activated by a point stimulation, *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology*. 4: 144–160.
- Colquhoun, D. (1994) *Practical analysis of single-channel records*. In: *Microelectrode Techniques: The Plymouth Workshop Handbook* (Second Edition), Ed: D. Ogden, Mill Hill, London.

## REFERENCES

- Colquhoun, D. (2006) The quantitative analysis of drug-receptor interactions: a short history, *Trends in Pharmacological Sciences*. 27: 149–157.
- Colquhoun, D. and A. G. Hawkes (1977) Relaxation and fluctuations of membrane currents that flow through drug-operated channels, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 199: 231–262.
- Colquhoun, D. and A. G. Hawkes (1981) On the stochastic properties of single ion channels, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 211: 205–235.
- Colquhoun, D. and A. G. Hawkes (1982) On the stochastic properties of bursts of single ion channel openings and of clusters of bursts, *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London B*. 300: 1–59.
- Colquhoun, D. and A. G. Hawkes (1994) *The interpretation of single channel recordings*. In: Microelectrode Techniques: The Plymouth Workshop Handbook (Second Edition), Ed: D. Ogden, Mill Hill, London.
- Coombes, S. (2001) The effect of ion pumps on the speed of travelling waves in the fire-diffuse-fire model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 63: 1–20.
- Coombes, S. and P. C. Bressloff (2003) Saltatory waves in the spike-diffuse-spike model of active dendritic spines, *Physical Review Letters*. 91: 028102.
- Coombes, S., R. Hinch and Y. Timofeeva (2004) Receptors, sparks and waves in a fire-diffuse-fire framework for calcium release, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 85: 197–216.
- Coombes, S. and Y. Timofeeva (2003) Sparks and waves in a stochastic fire-diffuse-fire model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, *Physical Review E — Statistical, Nonlinear and Soft Matter Physics*. 68: 021915.
- Cornell-Bell, A. H., S. M. Finkbeiner, M. S. Cooper and S. J. Smith (1990) Glutamate induces calcium waves in cultured astrocytes: long-range glial signaling, *Science*. 247: 470–473.
- Cornish-Bowden, A. and R. Eisenthal (1974) Statistical considerations in the estimation of enzyme kinetic parameters by the direct linear plot and other methods, *Biochemical Journal*. 139: 721–730.
- Costa, K. D., P. J. Hunter, J. M. Rogers, J. M. Guccione, L. K. Waldman and A. D. McCulloch (1996a) A three-dimensional finite element method for large elastic deformations of ventricular myocardium: I—Cylindrical and spherical polar coordinates, *Journal of Biomechanical Engineering*. 118: 452–463.
- Costa, K. D., P. J. Hunter, J. S. Wayne, L. K. Waldman, J. M. Guccione and A. D. McCulloch (1996b) A three-dimensional finite element method for large elastic deformations of ventricular myocardium: II—Prolate spheroidal coordinates, *Journal of Biomechanical Engineering*. 118: 464–472.
- Courant, R. and D. Hilbert (1953) *Methods of Mathematical Physics*: Wiley-Interscience, New York.
- Courtemanche, M., J. P. Keener and L. Glass (1993) Instabilities of a propagating pulse in a ring of excitable media, *Physical Review Letters*. 70: 2182–2185.
- Courtemanche, M., J. P. Keener and L. Glass (1996) A delay equation representation of pulse circulation on a ring in excitable media, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 56: 119–142.
- Courtemanche, M., R. J. Ramirez and S. Nattel (1998) Ionic mechanisms underlying human atrial action potential properties: insights from a mathematical model, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 275: H301–321.
- Courtemanche, M. and A. T. Winfree (1991) Re-entrant rotating waves in a Beeler-Reuter-based model of 2-dimensional cardiac electrical activity, *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos*. 1: 431–444.
- Cox, S. J. (2004) Estimating the location and time course of synaptic input from multi-site potential recordings, *Journal of Computational Neuroscience*. 17: 225–243.
- Crawford, A. C. and R. Fettiplace (1981) An electrical tuning mechanism in turtle cochlear hair cells, *Journal of Physiology*. 312: 377–412.
- Curran, P. F. and J. R. MacIntosh (1962) A model system for biological water transport, *Nature*. 193: 347–348.
- Cuthbertson, K. S. R. and T. R. Chay (1991) Modelling receptor-controlled intracellular calcium oscillators, *Cell Calcium*. 12: 97–109.
- Cytrynbaum, E. and J. P. Keener (2002) Stability conditions for the traveling pulse: Modifying the restitution hypothesis, *Chaos*. 12: 788–799.
- Dörlochter, M. and H. Stieve (1997) The Limulus ventral photoreceptor: light response and the role of calcium in a classic preparation, *Progress in Neurobiology*. 53: 451–515.
- Dallos, P., C. D. Geisler, J. W. Matthews, M. A. Ruggero and C. R. Steele, Eds. (1990)

- The Mechanics and Biophysics of Hearing. *Lecture Notes in Biomathematics*, 87: Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York.
- Dallos, P., A. N. Popper and R. R. Fay, Eds. (1996) *The Cochlea*. Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Daly, S. J. and R. I. Normann (1985) Temporal information processing in cones: effects of light adaptation on temporal summation and modulation, *Vision Research*. 25: 1197–1206.
- Danø, S., P. G. Sorensen and F. Hynne (1999) Sustained oscillations in living cells, *Nature*. 402: 320–322.
- Dani, J. A. and D. G. Levitt (1990) Diffusion and kinetic approaches to describe permeation in ionic channels, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 146: 289–301.
- Danielsen, M. and J. T. Ottesen (2001) Describing the pumping heart as a pressure source, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 212: 71–81.
- Dargan, S. L. and I. Parker (2003) Buffer kinetics shape the spatiotemporal patterns of IP<sub>3</sub>-evoked Ca<sup>2+</sup> signals, *Journal of Physiology*. 553: 775–788.
- Davis, B. O., N. Holtz and J. C. Davis (1985) *Conceptual Human Physiology*: C.E. Merrill Pub. Co., Columbus.
- Davis, R. C., L. Garafolo and F. P. Gault (1957) An exploration of abdominal potential, *Journal of Comparative and Physiological Psychology*. 52: 519–523.
- Dawis, S. M., R. M. Graeff, R. A. Heyman, T. F. Walseth and N. D. Goldberg (1988) Regulation of cyclic GMP metabolism in toad photoreceptors, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 263: 8771–8785.
- Dawson, D. C. (1992) *Water transport: principles and perspectives*. In: *The Kidney: Physiology and Pathophysiology*, Ed: D. W. Seldin and G. Giebisch, Raven Press, New York.
- Dawson, D. C. and N. W. Richards (1990) Basolateral K conductance: role in regulation of NaCl absorption and secretion, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 259: C181–195.
- Dayan, P. and L. F. Abbott (2001) *Theoretical Neuroscience: Computational and Mathematical Modeling of Neural Systems*: MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- de Beus, A. M., T. L. Fabry and H. M. Lacker (1993) A gastric acid secretion model, *Biophysical Journal*. 65: 362–378.
- De Gaetano, A. and O. Arino (2000) Mathematical modelling of the intravenous glucose tolerance test, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 40: 136–168.
- de Schutter, E., Ed. (2000) *Computational Neuroscience: Realistic Modeling for Experimentalists*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.
- de Vries, G. (1995) *Analysis of models of bursting electrical activity in pancreatic beta cells*. Ph.D Thesis, Department of Mathematics: University of British Columbia, Vancouver.
- De Young, G. W. and J. Keizer (1992) A single pool IP<sub>3</sub>-receptor based model for agonist stimulated Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillations, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 89: 9895–9899.
- deBoer, R. W., J. M. Karemaker and J. Strackee (1987) Hemodynamic fluctuations and baroreflex sensitivity in humans: a beat-to-beat model, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 253: H680–689.
- DeFronzo, R. A., J. D. Tobin and R. Andres (1979) Glucose clamp technique: a method for quantifying insulin secretion and resistance, *American Journal of Physiology — Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 237: E214–223.
- del Castillo, J. and B. Katz (1954) Quantal components of the end-plate potential, *Journal of Physiology*. 124: 560–573.
- del Castillo, J. and B. Katz (1957) Interaction at end-plate receptors between different choline derivatives, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 146: 369–381.
- Del Negro, C. A., C. G. Wilson, R. J. Butera, H. Rigatto and J. C. Smith (2002) Periodicity, mixed-mode oscillations, and quasiperiodicity in a rhythm-generating neural network, *Biophysical Journal*. 82: 206–214.
- Demer, L. L., C. M. Wortham, E. R. Dirksen and M. J. Sanderson (1993) Mechanical stimulation induces intercellular calcium signalling in bovine aortic endothelial cells, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 33: H2094–2102.
- Deonier, R. C., S. Tavaré and M. S. Waterman (2004) *Computational Genome Analysis: An Introduction*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Destexhe, A., Z. F. Mainen and T. J. Sejnowski (1998) *Kinetic models of synaptic transmission*. In: *Methods in Neuronal Modeling*, Ed: C. Koch and I. Segev, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Detwiler, P. B. and A. L. Hodgkin (1979) Electrical coupling between cones in the turtle retina, *Journal of Physiology*. 291: 75–100.
- DeVries, G. W., A. I. Cohen, O. H. Lowry and J. A. Ferendelli (1979) Cyclic nucleotides in the cone-dominant ground squirrel retina, *Experimental Eye Research*. 29: 315–321.

## REFERENCES

- Diamant, N. E. and A. Bortoff (1969) Nature of the intestinal slow-wave frequency gradient, *American Journal of Physiology*. 216: 301–307.
- Diamant, N. E., P. K. Rose and E. J. Davison (1970) Computer simulation of intestinal slow-wave frequency gradient, *American Journal of Physiology*. 219: 1684–1690.
- Diamond, J. M. and W. H. Bossert (1967) Standing-gradient osmotic flow. A mechanism for coupling of water and solute transport in epithelia, *Journal of General Physiology*. 50: 2061–2083.
- DiFrancesco, D. and D. Noble (1985) A model of cardiac electrical activity incorporating ionic pumps and concentration changes, *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London B*. 307: 353–398.
- Dixon, M. and E. C. Webb (1979) *Enzymes (Third Edition)*: Academic Press, New York.
- Doan, T., A. Mendez, P. B. Detwiler, J. Chen and F. Rieke (2006) Multiple phosphorylation sites confer reproducibility of the rod's single-photon responses, *Science*. 313: 530–533.
- Dockery, J. D. and J. P. Keener (1989) Diffusive effects on dispersion in excitable media, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 49: 539–566.
- Dodd, A. N., J. Love and A. A. Webb (2005a) The plant clock shows its metal: circadian regulation of cytosolic free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , *Trends in Plant Science*. 10: 15–21.
- Dodd, A. N., N. Salathia, A. Hall, E. Kevei, R. Toth, F. Nagy, J. M. Hibberd, A. J. Millar and A. A. Webb (2005b) Plant circadian clocks increase photosynthesis, growth, survival, and competitive advantage, *Science*. 309: 630–633.
- Doedel, E. (1986) *Software for continuation and bifurcation problems in ordinary differential equations*: California Institute of Technology, Pasadena.
- Dolmetsch, R. E., K. Xu and R. S. Lewis (1998) Calcium oscillations increase the efficiency and specificity of gene expression, *Nature*. 392: 933–936.
- Domijan, M., R. Murray and J. Sneyd (2006) Dynamic probing of the mechanisms underlying calcium oscillations, *Journal of Nonlinear Science*. 16: 483–506.
- Duffy, M. R., N. F. Britton and J. D. Murray (1980) Spiral wave solutions of practical reaction-diffusion systems, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 39: 8–13.
- Dunlap, J. C. (1998) Circadian rhythms: an end in the beginning, *Science*. 280: 1548–1549.
- Dunlap, J. C. (1999) Molecular bases for circadian clocks, *Cell*. 96: 271–290.
- Dupont, G. and C. Erneux (1997) Simulations of the effects of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate 3-kinase and 5-phosphatase activities on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, *Cell Calcium*. 22: 321–331.
- Dupont, G., O. Koukoui, C. Clair, C. Erneux, S. Swillens and L. Combettes (2003)  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in hepatocytes do not require the modulation of  $\text{InsP}_3$  3-kinase activity by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , *FEBS Letters*. 534: 101–105.
- Dupont, G., T. Tordjmann, C. Clair, S. Swillens, M. Claret and L. Combettes (2000) Mechanism of receptor-oriented intercellular calcium wave propagation in hepatocytes, *FASEB Journal*. 14: 279–289.
- Durand, D. (1984) The somatic shunt cable model for neurons, *Biophysical Journal*. 46: 645–653.
- Durrett, R. (2002) *Probability Models for DNA Sequence Evolution*: Springer Verlag, New York.
- Eason, J. and N. Trayanova (2002) Phase singularities and termination of spiral wave reentry, *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology*. 13: 672–679.
- Eatoock, R. A. (2000) Adaptation in hair cells, *Annual Review of Neuroscience*. 23: 285–314.
- Eaton, W. A., E. R. Henry, J. Hofrichter and A. Mozzarelli (1999) Is cooperative oxygen binding by hemoglobin really understood?, *Nature Structural Biology*. 6: 351–358.
- Ebihara, L. and E. A. Johnson (1980) Fast sodium current in cardiac muscle, a quantitative description, *Biophysical Journal*. 32: 779–790.
- Echenim, N., D. Monniaux, M. Sorine and F. Clément (2005) Multi-scale modeling of the follicle selection process in the ovary, *Mathematical Biosciences*. 198: 57–79.
- Edelstein-Keshet, L. (1988) *Mathematical Models in Biology*: McGraw-Hill, New York.
- Efimov, I. R., F. Aguel, Y. Cheng, B. Wollenzier and N. Trayanova (2000a) Virtual electrode polarization in the far field: implications for external defibrillation, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 279: H1055–1070.
- Efimov, I. R., Y. Cheng, D. R. Van Wagoner, T. Mazgalev and P. J. Tchou (1998) Virtual electrode-induced phase singularity: a basic mechanism of defibrillation failure, *Circulation Research*. 82: 918–925.
- Efimov, I. R., R. A. Gray and B. J. Roth (2000b) Virtual electrodes and deexcitation: new insights into fibrillation induction and

- defibrillation, *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology*. 11: 339–353.
- Eguiluz, V. M., M. Ospeck, Y. Choe, A. J. Hudspeth and M. O. Magnasco (2000) Essential nonlinearities in hearing, *Physical Review Letters*. 84: 5232–5235.
- Einstein, A. (1906) Eine neue Bestimmung der Moleküldimensionen, *Annals of Physics*. 19: 289.
- Eisenberg, E. and L. E. Greene (1980) The relation of muscle biochemistry to muscle physiology, *Annual Review of Physiology*. 42: 293–309.
- Eisenberg, E. and T. L. Hill (1978) A cross-bridge model of muscle contraction, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 33: 55–82.
- Eisenthal, R. and A. Cornish-Bowden (1974) A new graphical method for estimating enzyme kinetic parameters, *Biochemical Journal*. 139: 715–720.
- Elston, T., H. Wang and G. Oster (1998) Energy transduction in ATP synthase, *Nature*. 391: 510–513.
- Elston, T. C. (2000) Models of post-translational protein translocation, *Biophysical Journal*. 79: 2235–2251.
- Elston, T. C. and C. S. Peskin (2000) The role of protein flexibility in molecular motor function: coupled diffusion in a tilted periodic potential, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 60: 842–867.
- Endo, M., M. Tanaka and Y. Ogawa (1970) Calcium-induced release of calcium from the sarcoplasmic reticulum of skinned skeletal muscle fibres, *Nature*. 228: 34–36.
- Engel, E., A. Peskoff, G. L. Kauffman and M. I. Grossman (1984) Analysis of hydrogen ion concentration in the gastric gel mucus layer, *American Journal of Physiology — Gastrointestinal and Liver Physiology*. 247: G321–338.
- Ermentrout, B. (2002) *Simulating, Analyzing, and Animating Dynamical Systems: A Guide to Xppaut for Researchers and Students*: SIAM, Philadelphia.
- Ermentrout, G. B. and N. Kopell (1984) Frequency plateaus in a chain of weakly coupled oscillators, *SIAM Journal on Mathematical Analysis*. 15: 215–237.
- Ewens, W. J. and G. Grant (2005) *Statistical Methods in Bioinformatics: An Introduction*: Springer Verlag, New York.
- Eyring, H., R. Lumry and J. W. Woodbury (1949) Some applications of modern rate theory to physiological systems, *Record of Chemical Progress*. 10: 100–114.
- Fabiato, A. (1983) Calcium-induced release of calcium from the cardiac sarcoplasmic reticulum, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 245: C1–14.
- Faddy, M. J. and R. G. Gosden (1995) A mathematical model of follicle dynamics in the human ovary, *Human Reproduction*. 10: 770–775.
- Fain, G. and H. R. Matthews (1990) Calcium and the mechanism of light adaptation in vertebrate photoreceptors, *Trends in Neuroscience*. 13: 378–384.
- Fain, G. L. (1976) Sensitivity of toad rods: Dependence on wave-length and background illumination, *Journal of Physiology*. 261: 71–101.
- Fain, G. L., H. R. Matthews, M. C. Cornwall and Y. Koutalos (2001) Adaptation in vertebrate photoreceptors, *Physiological Reviews*. 81: 117–151.
- Fajmut, A., M. Brumen and S. Schuster (2005) Theoretical model of the interactions between  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , calmodulin and myosin light chain kinase, *FEBS Letters*. 579: 4361–4366.
- Falcke, M. (2003a) Buffers and oscillations in intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, *Biophysical Journal*. 84: 28–41.
- Falcke, M. (2003b) On the role of stochastic channel behavior in intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, *Biophysical Journal*. 84: 42–56.
- Falcke, M. (2004) Reading the patterns in living cells—the physics of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signaling, *Advances in Physics*. 53: 255–440.
- Falcke, M., J. L. Hudson, P. Camacho and J. D. Lechleiter (1999) Impact of mitochondrial  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  cycling on pattern formation and stability, *Biophysical Journal*. 77: 37–44.
- Falcke, M., M. Or-Guil and M. Bar (2000) Dispersion gap and localized spiral waves in a model for intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, *Physical Review Letters*. 84: 4753–4756.
- Fall, C. P., E. S. Marland, J. M. Wagner and J. J. Tyson, Eds. (2002) *Computational Cell Biology*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Farkas, I., D. Helbing and T. Vicsek (2002) Mexican waves in an excitable medium, *Nature*. 419: 131–132.
- Fast, V. G. and A. G. Kleber (1993) Microscopic conduction in cultured strands of neonatal rat heart cells measured with voltage-sensitive dyes, *Circulation Research*. 73: 914–925.
- Fatt, P. and B. Katz (1952) Spontaneous subthreshold activity at motor nerve endings, *Journal of Physiology*. 117: 109–128.

- Feldman, J. L. and C. A. Del Negro (2006) Looking for inspiration: new perspectives on respiratory rhythm, *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*. 7: 232–242.
- Felmy, F., E. Neher and R. Schneggenburger (2003) The timing of phasic transmitter release is  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -dependent and lacks a direct influence of presynaptic membrane potential, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 100: 15200–15205.
- Fenn, W. O., H. Rahn and A. B. Otis (1946) A theoretical study of the composition of the alveolar air at altitude, *American Journal of Physiology*. 146: 637–653.
- Field, G. D. and F. Rieke (2002) Mechanisms regulating variability of the single photon responses of mammalian rod photoreceptors, *Neuron*. 35: 733–747.
- Fields, R. D. and B. Stevens-Graham (2002) New insights into neuron–glia communication, *Science*. 298: 556–562.
- Fife, P. (1979) *Mathematical Aspects of Reacting and Diffusing Systems*: Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- Fife, P. C. and J. B. McLeod (1977) The approach of solutions of nonlinear diffusion equations to travelling front solutions, *Archive for Rational Mechanics and Analysis*. 65: 335–361.
- Fill, M. and J. A. Copello (2002) Ryanodine receptor calcium release channels, *Physiological Reviews*. 82: 893–922.
- Fill, M., A. Zahradníkova, C. A. Villalba-Galea, I. Zahradník, A. L. Escobar and S. Györke (2000) Ryanodine receptor adaptation, *Journal of General Physiology*. 116: 873–882.
- Finkelstein, A. and C. S. Peskin (1984) Some unexpected consequences of a simple physical mechanism for voltage-dependent gating in biological membranes, *Biophysical Journal*. 46: 549–558.
- Fishman, M. A. and A. S. Perelson (1993) Modeling T cell-antigen presenting cell interactions, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 160: 311–342.
- Fishman, M. A. and A. S. Perelson (1994) Th1/Th2 cross regulation, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 170: 25–56.
- FitzHugh, R. (1960) Thresholds and plateaus in the Hodgkin–Huxley nerve equations, *Journal of General Physiology*. 43: 867–896.
- FitzHugh, R. (1961) Impulses and physiological states in theoretical models of nerve membrane, *Biophysical Journal*. 1: 445–466.
- FitzHugh, R. (1969) *Mathematical models of excitation and propagation in nerve*. In: Biological Engineering, Ed: H. P. Schwan, McGraw-Hill, New York.
- Fletcher, H. (1951) On the dynamics of the cochlea, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 23: 637–645.
- Foerster, P., S. Muller and B. Hess (1989) Critical size and curvature of wave formation in an excitable chemical medium, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 86: 6831–6834.
- Fogelson, A. L. (1992) Continuum models of platelet aggregation: Formulation and mechanical properties, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 52: 1089–1110.
- Fogelson, A. L. and R. D. Guy (2004) Platelet–wall interactions in continuum models of platelet thrombosis: formulation and numerical solution, *Mathematical Medicine and Biology*. 21: 293–334.
- Fogelson, A. L. and A. L. Kuharsky (1998) Membrane binding-site density can modulate activation thresholds in enzyme systems, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 193: 1–18.
- Fogelson, A. L. and N. Tania (2005) Coagulation under flow: the influence of flow-mediated transport on the initiation and inhibition of coagulation, *Pathophysiology of Haemostasis and Thrombosis*. 34: 91–108.
- Fogelson, A. L. and R. S. Zucker (1985) Presynaptic calcium diffusion from various arrays of single channels, *Biophysical Journal*. 48: 1003–1017.
- Forger, D. B. and C. S. Peskin (2003) A detailed predictive model of the mammalian circadian clock, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 100: 14806–14811.
- Forger, D. B. and C. S. Peskin (2004) Model based conjectures on mammalian clock controversies, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 230: 533–539.
- Forger, D. B. and C. S. Peskin (2005) Stochastic simulation of the mammalian circadian clock, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 102: 321–324.
- Forti, S., A. Menini, G. Rispoli and V. Torre (1989) Kinetics of phototransduction in retinal rods of the newt *Triturus Cristatus*, *Journal of Physiology*. 419: 265–295.
- Fowler, A. C. and G. P. Kalamangalam (2000) The role of the central chemoreceptor in causing periodic breathing, *IMA Journal of Mathematics Applied in Medicine and Biology*. 17: 147–167.
- Fowler, A. C. and G. P. Kalamangalam (2002) Periodic breathing at high altitude, *IMA*

- Journal of Mathematics Applied in Medicine and Biology.* 19: 293–313.
- Fowler, A. C., G. P. Kalamangalam and G. Kember (1993) A mathematical analysis of the Grodins model of respiratory control, *IMA Journal of Mathematics Applied in Medicine and Biology.* 10: 249–280.
- Fowler, A. C. and M. J. McGuinness (2005) A delay recruitment model of the cardiovascular control system, *Journal of Mathematical Biology.* 51: 508–526.
- Fox, R. F. and Y. Lu (1994) Emergent collective behavior in large numbers of globally coupled independently stochastic ion channels, *Physical Review E.* 49: 3421–3431.
- Frank, O. (1899) Die Grundform des Arteriellen Pulses (see translation by Sagawa et al., 1990), *Zeitschrift für Biologie.* 37: 483–526.
- Frankel, M. L. and G. I. Sivashinsky (1987) On the nonlinear diffusive theory of curved flames, *Journal de Physique (Paris).* 48: 25–28.
- Frankel, M. L. and G. I. Sivashinsky (1988) On the equation of a curved flame front, *Physica D.* 30: 28–42.
- Frankenhaeuser, B. (1960a) Quantitative description of sodium currents in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis*, *Journal of Physiology.* 151: 491–501.
- Frankenhaeuser, B. (1960b) Sodium permeability in toad nerve and in squid nerve, *Journal of Physiology.* 152: 159–166.
- Frankenhaeuser, B. (1963) A quantitative description of potassium currents in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis*, *Journal of Physiology.* 169: 424–430.
- Frazier, D. W., P. D. Wolf and R. E. Ideker (1988) Electrically induced reentry in normal myocardium—evidence of a phase singularity, *PACE—Pacing and Clinical Electrophysiology.* 11: 482.
- Frazier, D. W., P. D. Wolf, J. M. Wharton, A. S. Tang, W. M. Smith and R. E. Ideker (1989) Stimulus-induced critical point. Mechanism for electrical initiation of reentry in normal canine myocardium, *Journal of Clinical Investigation.* 83: 1039–1052.
- Fredkin, D. R. and J. A. Rice (1992) Bayesian restoration of single-channel patch clamp recordings, *Biometrics.* 48: 427–448.
- Frenzen, C. L. and P. K. Maini (1988) Enzyme kinetics for a two-step enzymic reaction with comparable initial enzyme-substrate ratios, *Journal of Mathematical Biology.* 26: 689–703.
- Friel, D. (1995)  $[Ca^{2+}]_i$  oscillations in sympathetic neurons: an experimental test of a theoretical model, *Biophysical Journal.* 68: 1752–1766.
- Friel, D. (2000) Mitochondria as regulators of stimulus-evoked calcium signals in neurons., *Cell Calcium.* 28: 307–316.
- Fye, W. B. (1986) Carl Ludwig and the Leipzig Physiological Institute: “a factory of new knowledge”, *Circulation.* 74: 920–928.
- Gardiner, C. W. (2004) *Handbook of Stochastic Methods for Physics, Chemistry and the Natural Sciences (Third Edition)*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Garfinkel, A., Y. H. Kim, O. Voroshilovsky, Z. Qu, J. R. Kil, M. H. Lee, H. S. Karagueuzian, J. N. Weiss and P. S. Chen (2000) Preventing ventricular fibrillation by flattening cardiac restitution, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA.* 97: 6061–6066.
- Gatti, R. A., W. A. Robinson, A. S. Denaire, M. Nesbit, J. J. McCullough, M. Ballow and R. A. Good (1973) Cyclic leukocytosis in chronic myelogenous leukemia, *Blood.* 41: 771–782.
- Gerhardt, M., H. Schuster and J. J. Tyson (1990) A cellular automaton model of excitable media including curvature and dispersion, *Science.* 247: 1563–1566.
- Gilkey, J. C., L. F. Jaffe, E. B. Ridgway and G. T. Reynolds (1978) A free calcium wave traverses the activating egg of the medaka, *Oryzias latipes*, *Journal of Cell Biology.* 76: 448–466.
- Givelberg, E. (2004) Modeling elastic shells immersed in fluid, *Communications on Pure and Applied Mathematics.* 57: 283–309.
- Givelberg, E. and J. Bunn (2003) A comprehensive three-dimensional model of the cochlea, *Journal of Computational Physics.* 191: 377–391.
- Glass, L., A. L. Goldberger, M. Courtemanche and A. Shrier (1987) Nonlinear dynamics, chaos and complex cardiac arrhythmias, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London A.* 413: 9–26.
- Glass, L. and D. Kaplan (1995) *Understanding Nonlinear Dynamics*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Glass, L. and M. C. Mackey (1988) *From Clocks to Chaos*: Princeton University Press, Princeton.
- Glynn, I. M. (2002) A hundred years of sodium pumping, *Annual Review of Physiology.* 64: 1–18.
- Goel, P., J. Sneyd and A. Friedman (2006) Homogenization of the cell cytoplasm: the calcium bidomain equations, *SIAM Journal on*

## REFERENCES

- Multiscale Modeling and Simulation.* 5: 1045–1062.
- Gold, T. (1948) Hearing. II. The physical basis of the action of the cochlea, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B.* 135: 492–498.
- Goldberger, A. L. and E. Goldberger (1994) *Clinical Electrocardiography: a Simplified Approach (Fifth Edition)*: Mosby, St. Louis.
- Goldbeter, A. (1995) A model for circadian oscillations in the Drosophila period protein (PER), *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B.* 261: 319–324.
- Goldbeter, A. (1996) *Biochemical Oscillations and Cellular Rhythms: the Molecular Bases of Periodic and Chaotic Behaviour*: Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Goldbeter, A., G. Dupont and M. J. Berridge (1990) Minimal model for signal-induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations and for their frequency encoding through protein phosphorylation, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA.* 87: 1461–1465.
- Goldbeter, A. and D. E. Koshland, Jr. (1981) An amplified sensitivity arising from covalent modification in biological systems, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA.* 78: 6840–6844.
- Goldbeter, A. and R. Lefever (1972) Dissipative structures for an allosteric model; application to glycolytic oscillations, *Biophysical Journal.* 12: 1302–1315.
- Gomatam, J. and P. Grindrod (1987) Three dimensional waves in excitable reaction-diffusion systems, *Journal of Mathematical Biology.* 25: 611–622.
- Goodner, C. J., B. C. Walike, D. J. Koerker, J. W. Ensinck, A. C. Brown, E. W. Chidekel, J. Palmer and L. Kalnasy (1977) Insulin, glucagon, and glucose exhibit synchronous, sustained oscillations in fasting monkeys, *Science.* 195: 177–179.
- Goodwin, B. C. (1965) Oscillatory behavior in enzymatic control processes, *Advances in Enzyme Regulation.* 3: 425–438.
- Gordon, A. M., A. F. Huxley and F. J. Julian (1966) The variation in isometric tension with sarcomere length in vertebrate muscle fibres, *Journal of Physiology.* 184: 170–192.
- Graham, N. (1989) *Visual Pattern Analyzers*: Oxford University Press, New York.
- Greenstein, J. L., R. Hinch and R. L. Winslow (2006) Mechanisms of excitation–contraction coupling in an integrative model of the cardiac ventricular myocyte, *Biophysical Journal.* 90: 77–91.
- Greenstein, J. L. and R. L. Winslow (2002) An integrative model of the cardiac ventricular myocyte incorporating local control of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, *Biophysical Journal.* 83: 2918–2945.
- Griffith, J. S. (1968a) Mathematics of cellular control processes. I. Negative feedback to one gene, *Journal of Theoretical Biology.* 20: 202–208.
- Griffith, J. S. (1968b) Mathematics of cellular control processes. II. Positive feedback to one gene, *Journal of Theoretical Biology.* 20: 209–216.
- Griffith, J. S. (1971) *Mathematical Neurobiology*: Academic Press, London.
- Grindrod, P. (1991) *Patterns and Waves: the Theory and Application of Reaction-Diffusion Equations*: Clarendon Press, Oxford.
- Grodins, F. S., J. Buell and A. J. Bart (1967) Mathematical analysis and digital simulation of the respiratory control system, *Journal of Applied Physiology.* 22: 260–276.
- Grubelnik, V., A. Z. Larsen, U. Kummer, L. F. Olsen and M. Marhl (2001) Mitochondria regulate the amplitude of simple and complex calcium oscillations, *Biophysical Chemistry.* 94: 59–74.
- Grzywacz, N. M., P. Hillman and B. W. Knight (1992) Response transfer functions of Limulus ventral photoreceptors: interpretation in terms of transduction mechanisms, *Biological Cybernetics.* 66: 429–435.
- Guccione, J. M. and A. D. McCulloch (1993) Mechanics of active contraction in cardiac muscle: Part I—Constitutive relations for fiber stress that describe deactivation, *Journal of Biomechanical Engineering.* 115: 72–81.
- Guccione, J. M., L. K. Waldman and A. D. McCulloch (1993) Mechanics of active contraction in cardiac muscle: Part II—Cylindrical models of the systolic left ventricle, *Journal of Biomechanical Engineering.* 115: 82–90.
- Guckenheimer, J. and P. Holmes (1983) *Nonlinear Oscillations, Dynamical Systems, and Bifurcations of Vector Fields*: Springer-Verlag, New York, Heidelberg, Berlin.
- Guevara, M. R. and L. Glass (1982) Phase locking, period doubling bifurcations and chaos in a mathematical model of a periodically driven oscillator: a theory for the entrainment of biological oscillators and the generation of cardiac dysrhythmias, *Journal of Mathematical Biology.* 14: 1–23.

- Guntheroth, W. G. (1965) *Pediatric Electrocardiography*: W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia.
- Guo, J. S. and J. C. Tsai (2006) The asymptotic behavior of solutions of the buffered bistable system, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 53: 179–213.
- Guyton, A. C. (1963) *Circulatory Physiology: Cardiac Output and its Regulation*: W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.
- Guyton, A. C. and J. E. Hall (1996) *Textbook of Medical Physiology (Ninth Edition)*: W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.
- Höfer, T. (1999) Model of intercellular calcium oscillations in hepatocytes: synchronization of heterogeneous cells, *Biophysical Journal*. 77: 1244–1256.
- Höfer, T., H. Nathansen, M. Lohning, A. Radbruch and R. Heinrich (2002) GATA-3 transcriptional imprinting in Th2 lymphocytes: a mathematical model, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 99: 9364–9368.
- Höfer, T., A. Politi and R. Heinrich (2001) Intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave propagation through gap-junctional  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion: a theoretical study, *Biophysical Journal*. 80: 75–87.
- Höfer, T., L. Venance and C. Giaume (2002) Control and plasticity of intercellular calcium waves in astrocytes: a modeling approach, *Journal of Neuroscience*. 22: 4850–4859.
- Haberman, R. (2004) *Applied Partial Differential Equations : with Fourier Series and Boundary Value Problems*: Pearson Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, N.J.
- Hai, C. M. and R. A. Murphy (1989a)  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , crossbridge phosphorylation, and contraction, *Annual Review of Physiology*. 51: 285–298.
- Hai, C. M. and R. A. Murphy (1989b) Cross-bridge dephosphorylation and relaxation of vascular smooth muscle, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 256: C282–287.
- Hajnóczky, G. and A. P. Thomas (1997) Minimal requirements for calcium oscillations driven by the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor, *Embo Journal*. 16: 3533–3543.
- Hale, J. K. and H. Koçak (1991) *Dynamics and Bifurcations*: Springer-Verlag, New York, Berlin, Heidelberg.
- Hall, G. M., S. Bahar and D. J. Gauthier (1999) Prevalence of rate-dependent behaviors in cardiac muscle, *Physical Review Letters*. 82: 2995–2998.
- Hamer, R. D. (2000a) Computational analysis of vertebrate phototransduction: combined quantitative and qualitative modeling of dark- and light-adapted responses in amphibian rods, *Visual Neuroscience*. 17: 679–699.
- Hamer, R. D. (2000b) Analysis of  $\text{Ca}^{++}$ -dependent gain changes in PDE activation in vertebrate rod phototransduction, *Molecular Vision*. 6: 265–286.
- Hamer, R. D., S. C. Nicholas, D. Tranchina, T. D. Lamb and J. L. Jarvinen (2005) Toward a unified model of vertebrate rod phototransduction, *Visual Neuroscience*. 22: 417–436.
- Hamer, R. D., S. C. Nicholas, D. Tranchina, P. A. Liebman and T. D. Lamb (2003) Multiple steps of phosphorylation of activated rhodopsin can account for the reproducibility of vertebrate rod single-photon responses, *Journal of General Physiology*. 122: 419–444.
- Hamer, R. D. and C. W. Tyler (1995) Phototransduction: modeling the primate cone flash response, *Visual Neuroscience*. 12: 1063–1082.
- Hamill, O. P., A. Marty, E. Neher, B. Sakmann and F. J. Sigworth (1981) Improved patch-clamp techniques for high-resolution current recording from cells and cell-free membrane patches, *Pflügers Arch.* 391: 85–100.
- Hargrave, P. A., K. P. Hoffman and U. B. Kaupp, Eds. (1992) *Signal Transduction in Photoreceptor Cells*: Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- Harootunian, A. T., J. P. Kao and R. Y. Tsien (1988) Agonist-induced calcium oscillations in depolarized fibroblasts and their manipulation by photoreleased  $\text{Ins}(1,4,5)\text{P}_3$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{++}$ , and  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  buffer, *Cold Spring Harbor Symposia on Quantitative Biology*. 53: 935–943.
- Hartline, H. K. and B. W. Knight, Jr. (1974) The processing of visual information in a simple retina, *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*. 231: 12–18.
- Hartline, H. K. and F. Ratliff (1957) Inhibitory interaction of receptor units in the eye of Limulus, *Journal of General Physiology*. 40: 357–376.
- Hartline, H. K. and F. Ratliff (1958) Spatial summation of inhibitory influences in the eye of Limulus, and the mutual interaction of receptor units, *Journal of General Physiology*. 41: 1049–1066.
- Hartline, H. K., H. G. Wagner and F. Ratliff (1956) Inhibition in the eye of Limulus, *Journal of General Physiology*. 39: 651–673.
- Hassenstein, B. and W. Reichardt (1956) Systemtheoretische analyse der zeit-, reihenfolgen- und vorzeichenauswertung bei der bewegungsperzeption des rüsselkäfers

- Chlorophanus, *Zeitschrift für Naturforschung B*. 11: 513–524.
- Hastings, S., J. Tyson and D. Webster (1977) Existence of periodic solutions for negative feedback cellular control systems, *Journal of Differential Equations*. 25: 39–64.
- Hastings, S. P. (1975) The existence of progressive wave solutions to the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, *Archive for Rational Mechanics and Analysis*. 60: 229–257.
- Haurie, C., D. C. Dale and M. C. Mackey (1998) Cyclical neutropenia and other periodic hematological disorders: a review of mechanisms and mathematical models, *Blood*. 92: 2629–2640.
- Haurie, C., D. C. Dale, R. Rudnicki and M. C. Mackey (2000) Modeling complex neutrophil dynamics in the grey collie, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 204: 505–519.
- Haurie, C., R. Person, D. C. Dale and M. C. Mackey (1999) Hematopoietic dynamics in grey collies, *Experimental Hematology*. 27: 1139–1148.
- Hearn, T., C. Haurie and M. C. Mackey (1998) Cyclical neutropenia and the peripheral control of white blood cell production, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 192: 167–181.
- Hearon, J. Z. (1948) The kinetics of blood coagulation, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 10: 175–186.
- Heineken, F. G., H. M. Tsuchiya and R. Aris (1967) On the mathematical status of the pseudo-steady state hypothesis of biochemical kinetics, *Mathematical Biosciences*. 1: 95–113.
- Helmholtz, H. L. F. (1875) *On the Sensations of Tone as a Physiological Basis for the Theory of Music*: Longmans, Green and Co., London.
- Henriquez, C. S. (1993) Simulating the electrical behavior of cardiac tissue using the bidomain model, *CRC Critical Reviews in Biomedical Engineering*. 21: 1–77.
- Henriquez, C. S., A. L. Muzikant and C. K. Smoak (1996) Anisotropy, fiber curvature, and bath loading effects on activation in thin and thick cardiac tissue preparations: simulations in a three-dimensional bidomain model, *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology*. 7: 424–444.
- Hering, E. (1869) Über den einfluss der atmung auf den kreislauf i. Über athenbewegungen des gefasssystems., *Sitzungsberichte Kaiserlich Akad Wissenschaft Mathemat-Naturwissenschaft Classe*. 60: 829–856.
- Hess, B. and A. Boiteux (1973) *Substrate Control of Glycolytic Oscillations*. In: Biological and Biochemical Oscillators, Ed: B. Chance, E. K. Pye, A. K. Ghosh and B. Hess, Academic Press, New York.
- Hilgemann, D. W. (2004) New insights into the molecular and cellular workings of the cardiac  $\text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 287: C1167–1172.
- Hill, A. V. (1938) The heat of shortening and the dynamic constants of muscle, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 126: 136–195.
- Hill, T. L. (1974) Theoretical formalism for the sliding filament model of contraction of striated muscle. Part I., *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 28: 267–340.
- Hill, T. L. (1975) Theoretical formalism for the sliding filament model of contraction of striated muscle. Part II., *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 29: 105–159.
- Hille, B. (2001) *Ionic Channels of Excitable Membranes (Third Edition)*: Sinauer, Sunderland, MA.
- Hille, B. and W. Schwartz (1978) Potassium channels as multi-ion single-file pores, *Journal of General Physiology*. 72: 409–442.
- Himmel, D. M. and T. R. Chay (1987) Theoretical studies on the electrical activity of pancreatic  $\beta$ -cells as a function of glucose, *Biophysical Journal*. 51: 89–107.
- Hindmarsh, J. L. and R. M. Rose (1982) A model of the nerve impulse using two first order differential equations, *Nature*. 296: 162–164.
- Hindmarsh, J. L. and R. M. Rose (1984) A model of neuronal bursting using three coupled first order differential equations, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 221: 87–102.
- Hirose, K., S. Kadowaki, M. Tanabe, H. Takeshima and M. Iino (1999) Spatiotemporal dynamics of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate that underlies complex  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  mobilization patterns, *Science*. 284: 1527–1530.
- Hirsch, M. W., C. C. Pugh and M. Shub (1977) *Invariant Manifolds*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Hirsch, M. W. and S. Smale (1974) *Differential Equations, Dynamical Systems and Linear Algebra*: Academic Press, New York.
- Hirst, G. D. and F. R. Edwards (2004) Role of interstitial cells of Cajal in the control of gastric motility, *Journal of Pharmacological Sciences*. 96: 1–10.
- Hirst, G. D. and S. M. Ward (2003) Interstitial cells: involvement in rhythmicity and neural control of gut smooth muscle, *Journal of Physiology*. 550: 337–346.

- Hodgkin, A. L. (1976) Chance and design in electrophysiology: an informal account of certain experiments on nerve carried out between 1934 and 1952, *Journal of Physiology*. 263: 1–21.
- Hodgkin, A. L. and A. F. Huxley (1952a) Currents carried by sodium and potassium ions through the membrane of the giant axon of *Loligo*, *Journal of Physiology*. 116: 449–472.
- Hodgkin, A. L. and A. F. Huxley (1952b) The components of membrane conductance in the giant axon of *Loligo*, *Journal of Physiology*. 116: 473–496.
- Hodgkin, A. L. and A. F. Huxley (1952c) The dual effect of membrane potential on sodium conductance in the giant axon of *Loligo*, *Journal of Physiology*. 116: 497–506.
- Hodgkin, A. L. and A. F. Huxley (1952d) A quantitative description of membrane current and its application to conduction and excitation in nerve, *Journal of Physiology*. 117: 500–544.
- Hodgkin, A. L., A. F. Huxley and B. Katz (1952) Measurement of current-voltage relations in the membrane of the giant axon of *Loligo*, *Journal of Physiology*. 116: 424–448.
- Hodgkin, A. L. and B. Katz (1949) The effect of sodium ions on the electrical activity of the giant axon of the squid, *Journal of Physiology*. 108: 37–77.
- Hodgkin, A. L. and R. D. Keynes (1955) The potassium permeability of a giant nerve fibre, *Journal of Physiology*. 128: 61–88.
- Hodgkin, A. L. and B. J. Nunn (1988) Control of light-sensitive current in salamander rods, *Journal of Physiology*. 403: 439–471.
- Hodgkin, A. L. and W. A. H. Rushton (1946) The electrical constants of a crustacean nerve fibre, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 133: 444–479.
- Hodgson, M. E. A. and P. J. Green (1999) Bayesian choice among Markov models of ion channels using Markov chain Monte Carlo, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London A*. 455: 3425–3448.
- Hofer, A. M. and E. M. Brown (2003) Extracellular calcium sensing and signalling, *Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology*. 4: 530–538.
- Holmes, M. H. (1980a) An analysis of a low-frequency model of the cochlea, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 68: 482–488.
- Holmes, M. H. (1980b) Low frequency asymptotics for a hydroelastic model of the cochlea, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 38: 445–456.
- Holmes, M. H. (1982) A mathematical model of the dynamics of the inner ear, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*. 116: 59–75.
- Holmes, M. H. (1995) *Introduction to Perturbation Methods*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Holstein-Rathlou, N. H. (1993) Oscillations and chaos in renal blood flow control, *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*. 4: 1275–1287.
- Holstein-Rathlou, N. H. and P. P. Leyssac (1987) Oscillations in the proximal intratubular pressure: a mathematical model, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 252: F560–572.
- Holstein-Rathlou, N. H. and D. J. Marsh (1989) Oscillations of tubular pressure, flow, and distal chloride concentration in rats, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 256: F1007–1014.
- Holstein-Rathlou, N. H. and D. J. Marsh (1990) A dynamic model of the tubuloglomerular feedback mechanism, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 258: F1448–1459.
- Holstein-Rathlou, N. H. and D. J. Marsh (1994) A dynamic model of renal blood flow autoregulation, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 56: 411–429.
- Holstein-Rathlou, N. H., A. J. Wagner and D. J. Marsh (1991) Tubuloglomerular feedback dynamics and renal blood flow autoregulation in rats, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 260: F53–68.
- Hood, D. C. (1998) Lower-level visual processing and models of light adaptation, *Annual Review of Psychology*. 49: 503–535.
- Hood, D. C. and M. A. Finkelstein (1986) *Sensitivity to light*. In: *Handbook of Perception and Human Performance*, Volume 1: Sensory Processes and Perception (Chapter 5), Ed: K. R. Boff, L. Kaufman and J. P. Thomas, Wiley, New York.
- Hooks, D. A., K. A. Tomlinson, S. G. Marsden, I. J. LeGrice, B. H. Smaill, A. J. Pullan and P. J. Hunter (2002) Cardiac microstructure: implications for electrical propagation and defibrillation in the heart, *Circulation Research*. 91: 331–338.
- Hoppensteadt, F. C. and J. P. Keener (1982) Phase locking of biological clocks, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 15: 339–349.
- Hoppensteadt, F. C. and C. S. Peskin (2001) *Modeling and Simulation in Medicine and the Life Sciences*: Springer-Verlag, New York.

## REFERENCES

- Houart, G., G. Dupont and A. Goldbeter (1999) Bursting, chaos and birhythmicity originating from self-modulation of the inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate signal in a model for intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 61: 507–530.
- Howard, J. (2001) *Mechanics of Motor Proteins and the Cytoskeleton*: Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, MA.
- Howard, J., A. J. Hudspeth and R. D. Vale (1989) Movement of microtubules by single kinesin molecules, *Nature*. 342: 154–158.
- Hudspeth, A. (1997) Mechanical amplification of stimuli by hair cells, *Current Opinion in Neurobiology*. 7: 480–486.
- Hudspeth, A. J. (1985) The cellular basis of hearing: the biophysics of hair cells, *Science*. 230: 745–752.
- Hudspeth, A. J. (1989) How the ear's works work, *Nature*. 341: 397–404.
- Hudspeth, A. J. (2005) How the ear's works work: mechanoelectrical transduction and amplification by hair cells, *Comptes Rendus des Séances de la Société de Biologie et de ses Filiales*. 328: 155–162.
- Hudspeth, A. J., Y. Choe, A. D. Mehta and P. Martin (2000) Putting ion channels to work: mechanoelectrical transduction, adaptation, and amplification by hair cells, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 97: 11765–11772.
- Hudspeth, A. J. and P. G. Gillespie (1994) Pulling springs to tune transduction: adaptation by hair cells, *Neuron*. 12: 1–9.
- Hudspeth, A. J. and R. S. Lewis (1988a) Kinetic analysis of voltage- and ion-dependent conductances in saccular hair cells of the bull-frog, *Rana catesbeiana*, *Journal of Physiology*. 400: 237–274.
- Hudspeth, A. J. and R. S. Lewis (1988b) A model for electrical resonance and frequency tuning in saccular hair cells of the bull-frog, *Rana catesbeiana*, *Journal of Physiology*. 400: 275–297.
- Huertas, M. A. and G. D. Smith (2007) The dynamics of luminal depletion and the stochastic gating of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -activated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels and release sites, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 246: 332–354.
- Hunter, P. J. (1995) Myocardial constitutive laws for continuum mechanics models of the heart, *Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology*. 382: 303–318.
- Hunter, P. J., A. D. McCulloch and H. E. ter Keurs (1998) Modelling the mechanical properties of cardiac muscle, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 69: 289–331.
- Hunter, P. J., A. J. Pullan and B. H. Smaill (2003) Modeling total heart function, *Annual Review of Biomedical Engineering*. 5: 147–177.
- Huntsman, L. L., E. O. Attinger and A. Noordergraaf (1978) Metabolic autoregulation of blood flow in skeletal muscle. In: *Cardiovascular System Dynamics*, Ed: J. Baan, A. Noordergraaf and J. Raines, MIT Press, Cambridge MA.
- Huxley, A. F. (1957) Muscle structure and theories of contraction, *Progress in Biophysics*. 7: 255–318.
- Huxley, A. F. and R. M. Simmons (1971) Proposed mechanism of force generation in striated muscle, *Nature*. 233: 533–538.
- Iacobas, D. A., S. O. Suadicani, D. C. Spray and E. Scemes (2006) A stochastic two-dimensional model of intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave spread in glia, *Biophysical Journal*. 90: 24–41.
- Imredy, J. P. and D. T. Yue (1994) Mechanism of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive inactivation of L-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, *Neuron*. 12: 1301–1318.
- Inselberg, A. and R. S. Chadwick (1976) Mathematical model of the cochlea. I: formulation and solution, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 30: 149–163.
- Irving, M., J. Maylie, N. L. Sizto and W. K. Chandler (1990) Intracellular diffusion in the presence of mobile buffers: application to proton movement in muscle, *Biophysical Journal*. 57: 717–721.
- Iyer, A. N. and R. A. Gray (2001) An experimentalist's approach to accurate localization of phase singularities during reentry, *Annals of Biomedical Engineering*. 29: 47–59.
- Izhikevich, E. M. (2000) Neural excitability, spiking and bursting, *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos*. 10: 1171–1266.
- Izu, L. T., W. G. Wier and C. W. Balke (2001) Evolution of cardiac calcium waves from stochastic calcium sparks, *Biophysical Journal*. 80: 103–120.
- Jack, J. J. B., D. Noble and R. W. Tsien (1975) *Electric Current Flow in Excitable Cells*: Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Jacob, F. and J. Monod (1961) Genetic regulatory mechanisms in the synthesis of proteins, *Journal of Molecular Biology*. 3: 318–356.
- Jacob, F., D. Perrin, C. Sanchez and J. Monod (1960) L'opéron : groupe de gène à expression par un opérateur, *Comptes Rendus des*

- Sceances de la Société de Biologie et de ses Filiales.* 250: 1727–1729.
- Jaffrin, M.-Y. and C. G. Caro (1995) *Biological flows*: Plenum Press, New York.
- Jafri, M. S. and J. Keizer (1995) On the roles of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers and the endoplasmic reticulum in  $\text{IP}_3$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, *Biophysical Journal*. 69: 2139–2153.
- Jafri, M. S., J. J. Rice and R. L. Winslow (1998) Cardiac  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics: the roles of ryanodine receptor adaptation and sarcoplasmic reticulum load, *Biophysical Journal*. 74: 1149–1168.
- Jahnke, W., C. Henze and A. T. Winfree (1988) Chemical vortex dynamics in three-dimensional excitable media, *Nature*. 336: 662–665.
- Jahnke, W. and A. T. Winfree (1991) A survey of spiral-wave behaviors in the Oregonator model, *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos*. 1: 445–466.
- Jakobsson, E. (1980) Interactions of cell volume, membrane potential, and membrane transport parameters, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 238: C196–206.
- Janeway, C. A., P. Travers, M. Walport and M. Shlomchik (2001) *Immunobiology: The Immune System in Health and Disease (Fifth Edition)*: Garland Publishing, New York.
- Jelić, S., Z. Čupić and L. Kolar-Anić (2005) Mathematical modeling of the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal system activity, *Mathematical Biosciences*. 197: 173–187.
- Jesty, J., E. Beltrami and G. Willem (1993) Mathematical analysis of a proteolytic positive-feedback loop: dependence of lag time and enzyme yields on the initial conditions and kinetic parameters, *Biochemistry*. 32: 6266–6274.
- Jewell, B. R. and D. R. Wilkie (1958) An analysis of the mechanical components in frog's striated muscle, *Journal of Physiology*. 143: 515–540.
- Jones, C. K. R. T. (1984) Stability of the traveling wave solutions of the FitzHugh–Nagumo system, *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*. 286: 431–469.
- Jones, K. C. and K. G. Mann (1994) A model for the tissue factor pathway to thrombin. II. A mathematical simulation, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 269: 23367–23373.
- Joseph, I. M., Y. Zavros, J. L. Merchant and D. Kirschner (2003) A model for integrative study of human gastric acid secretion, *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 94: 1602–1618.
- Julian, F. J. (1969) Activation in a skeletal muscle contraction model with a modification for insect fibrillar muscle, *Biophysical Journal*. 9: 547–570.
- Julien, C. (2006) The enigma of Mayer waves: Facts and models, *Cardiovascular Research*. 70: 12–21.
- Jung, P., A. Cornell-Bell, K. S. Madden and F. Moss (1998) Noise-induced spiral waves in astrocyte syncytia show evidence of self-organized criticality, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 79: 1098–1101.
- Jung, P., A. Cornell-Bell, F. Moss, S. Kadar, J. Wang and K. Showalter (1998) Noise sustained waves in subexcitable media: From chemical waves to brain waves, *Chaos*. 8: 567–575.
- Just, A. (2006) Mechanisms of renal blood flow autoregulation: dynamics and contributions, *American Journal of Physiology — Regulatory Integrative and Comparative Physiology*. 292: 1–17.
- Kang, T. M. and D. W. Hilgemann (2004) Multiple transport modes of the cardiac  $\text{Na}^+/\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger, *Nature*. 427: 544–548.
- Kaplan, W. (1981) *Advanced Engineering Mathematics*: Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA.
- Karma, A. (1993) Spiral breakup in model equations of action potential propagation in cardiac tissue, *Physical Review Letters*. 71: 1103–1106.
- Karma, A. (1994) Electrical alternans and spiral wave breakup in cardiac tissue, *Chaos*. 4: 461–472.
- Katz, B. and R. Miledi (1968) The role of calcium in neuromuscular facilitation, *Journal of Physiology*. 195: 481–492.
- Keener, J. P. (1980a) Waves in excitable media, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 39: 528–548.
- Keener, J. P. (1980b) Chaotic behavior in piecewise continuous difference equations, *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*. 261: 589–604.
- Keener, J. P. (1981) On cardiac arrhythmias: AV conduction block, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 12: 215–225.
- Keener, J. P. (1983) Analog circuitry for the van der Pol and FitzHugh–Nagumo equation, *IEEE Transactions on Systems, Man and Cybernetics*. SMC-13: 1010–1014.
- Keener, J. P. (1986) A geometrical theory for spiral waves in excitable media, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 46: 1039–1056.

- Keener, J. P. (1987) Propagation and its failure in coupled systems of discrete excitable cells, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 47: 556–572.
- Keener, J. P. (1988) The dynamics of three dimensional scroll waves in excitable media, *Physica D*. 31: 269–276.
- Keener, J. P. (1991a) An eikonal–curvature equation for action potential propagation in myocardium, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 29: 629–651.
- Keener, J. P. (1991b) The effects of discrete gap junctional coupling on propagation in myocardium, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 148: 49–82.
- Keener, J. P. (1992) The core of the spiral, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 52: 1372–1390.
- Keener, J. P. (1994) Symmetric spirals in media with relaxation kinetics and two diffusing species, *Physica D*. 70: 61–73.
- Keener, J. P. (1998) *Principles of Applied Mathematics, Transformation and Approximation (Second Edition)*: Perseus Books, Cambridge, Massachusetts.
- Keener, J. P. (2000a) Homogenization and propagation in the bistable equation, *Physica D*. 136: 1–17.
- Keener, J. P. (2000b) Propagation of waves in an excitable medium with discrete release sites, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 61: 317–334.
- Keener, J. P. (2004) The topology of defibrillation, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 230: 459–473.
- Keener, J. P. (2006) Stochastic calcium oscillations, *Mathematical Medicine and Biology*. 23: 1–25.
- Keener, J. P. and E. Cytrynbaum (2003) The effect of spatial scale of resistive inhomogeneity on defibrillation of cardiac tissue, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 223: 233–248.
- Keener, J. P. and L. Glass (1984) Global bifurcations of a periodically forced oscillator, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 21: 175–190.
- Keener, J. P., F. C. Hoppensteadt and J. Rinzel (1981) Integrate and fire models of nerve membrane response to oscillatory input, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 41: 503–517.
- Keener, J. P. and A. V. Panfilov (1995) *Three-dimensional propagation in the heart: the effects of geometry and fiber orientation on propagation in myocardium*. In: Cardiac Electrophysiology From Cell to Bedside, Ed: D. P. Zipes and J. Jalife, Saunders, Philadelphia PA.
- Keener, J. P. and A. V. Panfilov (1996) A biophysical model for defibrillation of cardiac tissue, *Biophysical Journal*. 71: 1335–1345.
- Keener, J. P. and A. V. Panfilov (1997) *The effects of geometry and fibre orientation on propagation and extracellular potentials in myocardium*. In: Computational Biology of the Heart, Ed: A. V. Panfilov and A. V. Holden, John Wiley and Sons, New York.
- Keener, J. P. and J. J. Tyson (1986) Spiral waves in the Belousov–Zhabotinsky reaction, *Physica D*. 21: 307–324.
- Keener, J. P. and J. J. Tyson (1992) The dynamics of scroll waves in excitable media, *SIAM Review*. 34: 1–39.
- Keizer, J. and G. DeYoung (1994) Simplification of a realistic model of IP<sub>3</sub>-induced Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillations, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 166: 431–442.
- Keizer, J. and L. Levine (1996) Ryanodine receptor adaptation and Ca<sup>2+</sup>-induced Ca<sup>2+</sup> release-dependent Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillations, *Biophysical Journal*. 71: 3477–3487.
- Keizer, J. and G. Magnus (1989) ATP-sensitive potassium channel and bursting in the pancreatic beta cell, *Biophysical Journal*. 56: 229–242.
- Keizer, J. and G. D. Smith (1998) Spark-to-wave transition: saltatory transmission of calcium waves in cardiac myocytes, *Biophysical Chemistry*. 72: 87–100.
- Keizer, J., G. D. Smith, S. Ponce-Dawson and J. E. Pearson (1998) Saltatory propagation of Ca<sup>2+</sup> waves by Ca<sup>2+</sup> sparks, *Biophysical Journal*. 75: 595–600.
- Keizer, J. and P. Smolen (1991) Bursting electrical activity in pancreatic β-cells caused by Ca<sup>2+</sup> and voltage-inactivated Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 88: 3897–3901.
- Keller, E. F. and L. A. Segel (1971) Models for chemotaxis, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 30: 225–234.
- Kernevez, J.-P. (1980) *Enzyme Mathematics*: North-Holland Publishing Company, Amsterdam, New York.
- Kessler, D. A. and R. Kupferman (1996) Spirals in excitable media: the free-boundary limit with diffusion, *Physica D*. 97: 509–516.
- Kevorkian, J. (2000) *Partial Differential Equations: Analytical Solution Techniques*: Springer, New York.
- Kevorkian, J. and J. D. Cole (1996) *Multiple Scale and Singular Perturbation Methods*: Springer-Verlag, New York.

- Khoo, M. C., R. E. Kronauer, K. P. Strohl and A. S. Slutsky (1982) Factors inducing periodic breathing in humans: a general model, *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 53: 644–659.
- Kidd, J. F., K. E. Fogarty, R. A. Tuft and P. Thorn (1999) The role of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feedback in shaping  $\text{InsP}_3$ -evoked  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signals in mouse pancreatic acinar cells, *Journal of Physiology*. 520: 187–201.
- Kim, W. T., M. G. Rioult and A. H. Cornell-Bell (1994) Glutamate-induced calcium signaling in astrocytes, *Glia*. 11: 173–184.
- Klingauf, J. and E. Neher (1997) Modeling buffered  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion near the membrane: implications for secretion in neuroendocrine cells, *Biophysical Journal*. 72: 674–690.
- Kluger, Y., Z. Lian, X. Zhang, P. E. Newburger and S. M. Weissman (2004) A panorama of lineage-specific transcription in hematopoiesis, *Bioessays*. 26: 1276–1287.
- Knepper, M. A. and F. C. Rector, Jr. (1991) *Urinary concentration and dilution*. In: The Kidney (4th edition) Volume 1, Ed: B. M. Brenner and F. C. Rector, Jr., Saunders, Philadelphia.
- Knight, B. W. (1972) Dynamics of encoding a population of neurons, *Journal of General Physiology*. 59: 734–766.
- Knight, B. W., J. I. Toyoda and F. A. Dodge, Jr. (1970) A quantitative description of the dynamics of excitation and inhibition in the eye of Limulus, *Journal of General Physiology*. 56: 421–437.
- Knisley, S. B., T. F. Blitchington, B. C. Hill, A. O. Grant, W. M. Smith, T. C. Pilkington and R. E. Ideker (1993) Optical measurements of transmembrane potential changes during electric field stimulation of ventricular cells, *Circulation Research*. 72: 255–270.
- Knobil, E. (1981) Patterns of hormonal signals and hormone action, *New England Journal of Medicine*. 305: 1582–1583.
- Knox, B. E., P. N. Devreotes, A. Goldbeter and L. A. Segel (1986) A molecular mechanism for sensory adaptation based on ligand-induced receptor modification, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 83: 2345–2349.
- Koch, C. (1999) *Biophysics of Computation: Information Processing in Single Neurons*: Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Koch, C. and I. Segev, Eds. (1998) *Methods in Neuronal Modeling: From Ions to Networks (Third Edition)*. MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Koch, K.-W. and L. Stryer (1988) Highly cooperative feedback control of retinal rod guanylate cyclase by calcium ions, *Nature*. 334: 64–66.
- Koefoed-Johnsen, V. and H. H. Ussing (1958) The nature of the frog skin potential, *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica*. 42: 298–308.
- Koenigsberger, M., R. Sauser, J. L. Beny and J. J. Meister (2006) Effects of arterial wall stress on vasomotion, *Biophysical Journal*. 91: 1663–1674.
- Koenigsberger, M., R. Sauser, M. Lamboley, J. L. Beny and J. J. Meister (2004)  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics in a population of smooth muscle cells: modeling the recruitment and synchronization, *Biophysical Journal*. 87: 92–104.
- Koenigsberger, M., R. Sauser and J. J. Meister (2005) Emergent properties of electrically coupled smooth muscle cells, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 67: 1253–1272.
- Kohler, H.-H. and K. Heckman (1979) Unidirectional fluxes in saturated single-file pores of biological and artificial membranes I: pores containing no more than one vacancy, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 79: 381–401.
- Kopell, N. and G. B. Ermentrout (1986) Subcellular oscillations and bursting, *Mathematical Biosciences*. 78: 265–291.
- Kopell, N. and L. N. Howard (1973) Plane wave solutions to reaction-diffusion equations, *Studies in Applied Mathematics*. 52: 291–328.
- Koshland, D. E., Jr. and K. Hamadani (2002) Proteomics and models for enzyme cooperativity, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 277: 46841–46844.
- Koshland, D. E., Jr., G. Nemethy and D. Filmer (1966) Comparison of experimental binding data and theoretical models in proteins containing subunits, *Biochemistry*. 5: 365–385.
- Koutalos, Y., K. Nakatani and K. W. Yau (1995) The cGMP-phosphodiesterase and its contribution to sensitivity regulation in retinal rods, *Journal of General Physiology*. 106: 891–921.
- Kramers, H. A. (1940) Brownian motion in a field of force and the diffusion model of chemical reactions, *Physica*. 7: 284–304.
- Krane, D. E. and M. L. Raymer (2003) *Fundamental Concepts of Bioinformatics*: Benjamin Cummings, San Francisco.
- Krassowska, W., T. C. Pilkington and R. E. Ideker (1987) Periodic conductivity as a mechanism for cardiac stimulation and defibrillation, *IEEE Transactions in Biomedical Engineering*. 34: 555–560.

- Krausz, H. I. and K.-I. Naka (1980) Spatiotemporal testing and modeling of catfish retinal neurons, *Biophysical Journal*. 29: 13–36.
- Kreyszig, E. (1994) *Advanced Engineering Mathematics (Seventh Edition)*: John Wiley and Sons, New York.
- Kucera, J. P., S. Rohr and Y. Rudy (2002) Localization of sodium channels in intercalated disks modulates cardiac conduction, *Circulation Research*. 91: 1176–1182.
- Kuffler, S. W. (1953) Discharge patterns and functional organization of the mammalian retina, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 16: 37–68.
- Kuffler, S. W. (1973) The single-cell approach in the visual system and the study of receptive fields, *Investigative Ophthalmology*. 12: 794–813.
- Kuffler, S. W., J. G. Nicholls and R. Martin (1984) *From Neuron to Brain (Second Edition)*: Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, MA.
- Kuramoto, Y. and T. Tsuzuki (1976) Persistent propagation of concentration waves in dissipative media far from thermal equilibrium, *Progress of Theoretical Physics*. 55: 356–369.
- Kuramoto, Y. and T. Yamada (1976) Pattern formation in oscillatory chemical reactions, *Progress of Theoretical Physics*. 56: 724–740.
- Läuger, P. (1973) Ion transport through pores: a rate-theory analysis, *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*. 311: 423–441.
- Lacker, H. M. (1981) Regulation of ovulation number in mammals: a follicle interaction law that controls maturation, *Biophysical Journal*. 35: 433–454.
- Lacker, H. M. and C. S. Peskin (1981) *Control of ovulation number in a model of ovarian follicular maturation*. In: *Lectures on Mathematics in the Life Sciences*, Ed: S. Childress, American Mathematical Society, Providence.
- Lacker, H. M. and C. S. Peskin (1986) A mathematical method for unique determination of cross-bridge properties from steady-state mechanical and energetic experiments on macroscopic muscle, *Lectures on Mathematics in the Life Sciences*. 16: 121–153.
- Lacy, A. H. (1967) The unit of insulin, *Diabetes*. 16: 198–200.
- Laidler, K. J. (1969) *Theories of Chemical Reaction Rates*: McGraw-Hill, New York.
- Lamb, T. D. (1981) The involvement of rod photoreceptors in dark adaptation, *Vision Research*. 21: 1773–1782.
- Lamb, T. D. and E. N. Pugh (1992) A quantitative account of the activation steps involved in phototransduction in amphibian photoreceptors, *Journal of Physiology*. 449: 719–758.
- Lamb, T. D. and E. J. Simon (1977) Analysis of electrical noise in turtle cones, *Journal of Physiology*. 272: 435–468.
- Landy, M. S. and J. A. Movshon, Eds. (1991) *Computational Models of Visual Processing*: MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Lane, D. C., J. D. Murray and V. S. Manoranjan (1987) Analysis of wave phenomena in a morphogenetic mechanochemical model and an application to post-fertilisation waves on eggs, *IMA Journal of Mathematics Applied in Medicine and Biology*. 4: 309–331.
- Lange, R. L. and H. H. Hecht (1962) The mechanism of Cheyne–Stokes respiration, *Journal of Clinical Investigation*. 41: 42–52.
- Langer, G. A. and A. Peskoff (1996) Calcium concentration and movement in the diadic cleft space of the cardiac ventricular cell, *Biophysical Journal*. 70: 1169–1182.
- Lapointe, J. Y., M. Gagnon, S. Poirier and P. Bissonnette (2002) The presence of local osmotic gradients can account for the water flux driven by the  $\text{Na}^+$ -glucose cotransporter, *Journal of Physiology*. 542: 61–62.
- Layton, A. T. and H. E. Layton (2002) A numerical method for renal models that represent tubules with abrupt changes in membrane properties, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 45: 549–567.
- Layton, A. T. and H. E. Layton (2003) A region-based model framework for the rat urine concentrating mechanism, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 65: 859–901.
- Layton, A. T. and H. E. Layton (2005a) A region-based mathematical model of the urine concentrating mechanism in the rat outer medulla. I. Formulation and base-case results, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 289: F1346–1366.
- Layton, A. T. and H. E. Layton (2005b) A region-based mathematical model of the urine concentrating mechanism in the rat outer medulla. II. Parameter sensitivity and tubular inhomogeneity, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 289: F1367–1381.
- Layton, A. T., T. L. Pannabecker, W. H. Dantzler and H. E. Layton (2004) Two modes for

- concentrating urine in rat inner medulla, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 287: F816–839.
- Layton, H. E., E. B. Pitman and M. A. Knepper (1995a) A dynamic numerical method for models of the urine concentrating mechanism, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 55: 1390–1418.
- Layton, H. E., E. B. Pitman and L. C. Moore (1991) Bifurcation analysis of TGF-mediated oscillations in SNGFR, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 261: F904–919.
- Layton, H. E., E. B. Pitman and L. C. Moore (1995b) Instantaneous and steady-state gains in the tubuloglomerular feedback system, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 268: F163–174.
- Layton, H. E., E. B. Pitman and L. C. Moore (1997) Spectral properties of the tubuloglomerular feedback system, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 273: F635–649.
- Layton, H. E., E. B. Pitman and L. C. Moore (2000) Limit-cycle oscillations and tubuloglomerular feedback regulation of distal sodium delivery, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 278: F287–301.
- LeBeau, A. P., A. B. Robson, A. E. McKinnon, R. A. Donald and J. Sneyd (1997) Generation of action potentials in a mathematical model of corticotrophs, *Biophysical Journal*. 73: 1263–1275.
- LeBeau, A. P., A. B. Robson, A. E. McKinnon and J. Sneyd (1998) Analysis of a reduced model of corticotroph action potentials, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 192: 319–339.
- Lechleiter, J. and D. Clapham (1992) Molecular mechanisms of intracellular calcium excitability in *X. laevis* oocytes, *Cell*. 69: 283–294.
- Lechleiter, J., S. Girard, D. Clapham and E. Peralta (1991a) Subcellular patterns of calcium release determined by G protein-specific residues of muscarinic receptors, *Nature*. 350: 505–508.
- Lechleiter, J., S. Girard, E. Peralta and D. Clapham (1991b) Spiral calcium wave propagation and annihilation in *Xenopus laevis* oocytes, *Science*. 252: 123–126.
- Leloup, J. C. and A. Goldbeter (1998) A model for circadian rhythms in *Drosophila* incorporating the formation of a complex between the PER and TIM proteins, *Journal of Biological Rhythms*. 13: 70–87.
- Leloup, J. C. and A. Goldbeter (2003) Toward a detailed computational model for the mammalian circadian clock, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 100: 7051–7056.
- Leloup, J. C. and A. Goldbeter (2004) Modeling the mammalian circadian clock: sensitivity analysis and multiplicity of oscillatory mechanisms, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 230: 541–562.
- Lenbury, Y. and P. Pornsawad (2005) A delay-differential equation model of the feedback-controlled hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis in humans, *Mathematical Medicine and Biology*. 22: 15–33.
- Lesser, M. B. and D. A. Berkley (1972) Fluid mechanics of the cochlea. Part I., *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*. 51: 497–512.
- Levine, I. N. (2002) *Physical Chemistry (Fifth Edition)*: McGraw-Hill, Tokyo.
- Levine, S. N. (1966) Enzyme amplifier kinetics, *Science*. 152: 651–653.
- Lew, V. L., H. G. Ferreira and T. Moura (1979) The behaviour of transporting epithelial cells. I. Computer analysis of a basic model, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 206: 53–83.
- Lewis, M. (2005) The lac repressor, *CR Biologies*. 328: 521–548.
- Lewis, T. J. and J. P. Keener (2000) Wave-blocking in excitable media due to regions of depressed excitability, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 61: 293–396.
- Leyssac, P. P. and L. Baumbach (1983) An oscillating intratubular pressure response to alterations in Henle loop flow in the rat kidney, *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica*. 117: 415–419.
- Li, W., J. Llopis, M. Whitney, G. Zlokarnik and R. Y. Tsien (1998) Cell-permeant caged InsP<sub>3</sub> ester shows that Ca<sup>2+</sup> spike frequency can optimize gene expression, *Nature*. 392: 936–941.
- Li, Y.-X. and A. Goldbeter (1989) Frequency specificity in intercellular communication: influence of patterns of periodic signaling on target cell responsiveness, *Biophysical Journal*. 55: 125–145.
- Li, Y.-X., J. Keizer, S. S. Stojilkovic and J. Rinzel (1995) Ca<sup>2+</sup> excitability of the ER membrane: an explanation for IP<sub>3</sub>-induced Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillations, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 269: C1079–1092.
- Li, Y.-X. and J. Rinzel (1994) Equations for InsP<sub>3</sub> receptor-mediated [Ca<sup>2+</sup>] oscillations derived

- from a detailed kinetic model: a Hodgkin–Huxley like formalism, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 166: 461–473.
- Li, Y.-X., J. Rinzel, J. Keizer and S. S. Stojilkovic (1994) Calcium oscillations in pituitary gonadotrophs: comparison of experiment and theory, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 91: 58–62.
- Li, Y.-X., S. S. Stojilkovic, J. Keizer and J. Rinzel (1997) Sensing and refilling calcium stores in an excitable cell, *Biophysical Journal*. 72: 1080–1091.
- Lighthill, J. (1975) *Mathematical Biofluidynamics*: SIAM, Philadelphia, PA.
- Lin, C. C. and L. A. Segel (1988) *Mathematics Applied to Deterministic Problems in the Natural Sciences*: SIAM, Philadelphia.
- Lin, S. C. and D. E. Bergles (2004) Synaptic signaling between neurons and glia, *Glia*. 47: 290–298.
- Liu, B.-Z. and G.-M. Deng (1991) An improved mathematical model of hormone secretion in the hypothalamo–pituitary–gonadal axis in man, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 150: 51–58.
- Llinás, R., I. Z. Steinberg and K. Walton (1976) Presynaptic calcium currents and their relation to synaptic transmission: voltage clamp study in squid giant synapse and theoretical model for the calcium gate, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 73: 2918–2922.
- Loeb, J. N. and S. Strickland (1987) Hormone binding and coupled response relationships in systems dependent on the generation of secondary mediators, *Molecular Endocrinology*. 1: 75–82.
- Lombard, W. P. (1916) The Life and Work of Carl Ludwig, *Science*. 44: 363–375.
- Longobardo, G., C. J. Evangelisti and N. S. Cherniack (2005) Introduction of respiratory pattern generators into models of respiratory control, *Respiratory Physiology and Neurobiology*. 148: 285–301.
- Longtin, A. and J. G. Milton (1989) Modelling autonomous oscillations in the human pupil light reflex using non-linear delay-differential equations, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 51: 605–624.
- Loo, D. D., E. M. Wright and T. Zeuthen (2002) Water pumps, *Journal of Physiology*. 542: 53–60.
- Lugosi, E. and A. T. Winfree (1988) Simulation of wave propagation in three dimensions using Fortran on the Cyber 205, *Journal of Computational Chemistry*. 9: 689–701.
- Luo, C. H. and Y. Rudy (1991) A model of the ventricular cardiac action potential; depolarization, repolarization and their interaction, *Circulation Research*. 68: 1501–1526.
- Luo, C. H. and Y. Rudy (1994a) A dynamic model of the cardiac ventricular action potential; I: Simulations of ionic currents and concentration changes, *Circulation Research*. 74: 1071–1096.
- Luo, C. H. and Y. Rudy (1994b) A dynamic model of the cardiac ventricular action potential; II: Afterdepolarizations, triggered activity and potentiation, *Circulation Research*. 74: 1097–1113.
- Lytton, J., M. Westlin, S. E. Burk, G. E. Shull and D. H. MacLennan (1992) Functional comparisons between isoforms of the sarcoplasmic or endoplasmic reticulum family of calcium pumps, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 267: 14483–14489.
- MacGregor, D. J. and G. Leng (2005) Modelling the hypothalamic control of growth hormone secretion, *Journal of Neuroendocrinology*. 17: 788–803.
- Mackey, M. C. (1978) Unified hypothesis for the origin of aplastic anemia and periodic hematopoiesis, *Blood*. 51: 941–956.
- Mackey, M. C. (1979) Periodic auto-immune hemolytic anemia: an induced dynamical disease, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 41: 829–834.
- Mackey, M. C. and L. Glass (1977) Oscillation and chaos in physiological control systems, *Science*. 197: 287–289.
- Mackey, M. C., C. Haurie and J. Bélair (2003) *Cell replication and control*. In: Nonlinear Dynamics in Physiology and Medicine, Ed: A. Beuter, L. Glass, M. C. Mackey and M. S. Titcombe, Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Mackey, M. C. and J. G. Milton (1987) Dynamical diseases, *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*. 504: 16–32.
- Mackey, M. C., M. Santillán and N. Yildirim (2004) Modeling operon dynamics: the tryptophan and lactose operons as paradigms, *Comptes Rendus des Séances de la Société de Biologie et de ses Filiales*. 327: 211–224.
- Macknight, A. D. C. (1988) Principles of cell volume regulation, *Renal Physiology and Biochemistry*. 3–5: 114–141.
- MacLennan, D. H. and E. G. Kranias (2003) Phospholamban: a crucial regulator of cardiac contractility, *Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology*. 4: 566–577.

- MacLennan, D. H., W. J. Rice and N. M. Green (1997) The mechanism of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport by sarco(endo)plasmic reticulum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPases, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 272: 28815–28818.
- Madsen, M. F., S. Dano and P. G. Sorensen (2005) On the mechanisms of glycolytic oscillations in yeast, *FEBS Journal*. 272: 2648–2660.
- Maginu, K. (1985) Geometrical characteristics associated with stability and bifurcations of periodic travelling waves in reaction-diffusion equations, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 45: 750–774.
- Magleby, K. L. and C. F. Stevens (1972) A quantitative description of end-plate currents, *Journal of Physiology*. 223: 173–197.
- Magnus, G. and J. Keizer (1997) Minimal model of beta-cell mitochondrial  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  handling, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 273: C717–733.
- Magnus, G. and J. Keizer (1998a) Model of beta-cell mitochondrial calcium handling and electrical activity. I. Cytoplasmic variables, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 274: C1158–1173.
- Magnus, G. and J. Keizer (1998b) Model of beta-cell mitochondrial calcium handling and electrical activity. II. Mitochondrial variables, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 274: C1174–1184.
- Mallik, R. and S. P. Gross (2004) Molecular motors: strategies to get along, *Current Biology*. 14: R971–982.
- Manley, G. A. (2001) Evidence for an active process and a cochlear amplifier in nonmammals, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 86: 541–549.
- Marchant, J., N. Callamaras and I. Parker (1999) Initiation of  $\text{IP}_3$ -mediated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves in *Xenopus* oocytes, *Embo Journal*. 18: 5285–5299.
- Marchant, J. S. and I. Parker (2001) Role of elementary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  puffs in generating repetitive  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, *Embo Journal*. 20: 65–76.
- Marchant, J. S. and C. W. Taylor (1998) Rapid activation and partial inactivation of inositol trisphosphate receptors by inositol trisphosphate, *Biochemistry*. 37: 11524–11533.
- Marhl, M., T. Haberichter, M. Brumen and R. Heinrich (2000) Complex calcium oscillations and the role of mitochondria and cytosolic proteins., *Biosystems*. 57: 75–86.
- Mari, A. (2002) Mathematical modeling in glucose metabolism and insulin secretion, *Current Opinion in Clinical Nutrition and Metabolic Care*. 5: 495–501.
- Mari, A., G. Pacini, E. Murphy, B. Ludvik and J. J. Nolan (2001) A model-based method for assessing insulin sensitivity from the oral glucose tolerance test, *Diabetes Care*. 24: 539–548.
- Mariani, L., M. Lohning, A. Radbruch and T. Hofer (2004) Transcriptional control networks of cell differentiation: insights from helper T lymphocytes, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 86: 45–76.
- Marland, E. (1998) *The Dynamics of the Sarcomere*: PhD Thesis, Department of Mathematics, University of Utah, Salt Lake City.
- Martin, P., A. D. Mehta and A. J. Hudspeth (2000) Negative hair-bundle stiffness betrays a mechanism for mechanical amplification by the hair cell, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 97: 12026–12031.
- Matveev, V., R. Bertram and A. Sherman (2006) Residual bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  can account for the effects of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffers on synaptic facilitation, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 96: 3389–3397.
- Matveev, V., A. Sherman and R. S. Zucker (2002) New and corrected simulations of synaptic facilitation, *Biophysical Journal*. 83: 1368–1373.
- Matveev, V., R. S. Zucker and A. Sherman (2004) Facilitation through buffer saturation: constraints on endogenous buffering properties, *Biophysical Journal*. 86: 2691–2709.
- Mayer, S. (1877) Studien zur physiologie des herzens und der blutgefasse. V. Über spontane blutdruckschwankungen, *Sitzungsberichte Kaiserlich Akad Wissenschaft Mathe-Naturwissenschaft Classe*. 74: 281–307.
- McAllister, R. E., D. Noble and R. W. Tsien (1975) Reconstruction of the electrical activity of cardiac Purkinje fibres, *Journal of Physiology*. 251: 1–59.
- McCulloch, A., L. Waldman, J. Rogers and J. Guccione (1992) Large-scale finite element analysis of the beating heart, *Critical Reviews in Biomedical Engineering*. 20: 427–449.
- McCulloch, A. D. (1995) *Cardiac biomechanics*. In: *Biomedical Engineering Handbook: The Electrical Engineering Handbook Series*, Ed: J. D. Branzino, CRC Press, Boca Raton.
- McCulloch, A. D. and G. Paternostro (2005) Cardiac systems biology, *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*. 1047: 283–295.

- McDonald, D. A. (1974) *Blood Flow in Arteries (Second Edition)*: Arnold, London.
- McKean, H. P. (1970) Nagumo's equation, *Advances in Mathematics*. 4: 209–223.
- McKenzie, A. and J. Sneyd (1998) On the formation and breakup of spiral waves of calcium, *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos*. 8: 2003–2012.
- McLachlan, R. I., N. L. Cohen, K. D. Dahl, W. J. Bremner and M. R. Soules (1990) Serum inhibin levels during the periovulatory interval in normal women: relationships with sex steroid and gonadotrophin levels, *Clinical Endocrinology*. 32: 39–48.
- McNaughton, P. A. (1990) Light response of vertebrate photoreceptors, *Physiological Reviews*. 70: 847–883.
- McQuarrie, D. A. (1967) *Stochastic Approach to Chemical Kinetics*: Methuen and Co., London.
- Meinrenken, C. J., J. G. Borst and B. Sakmann (2003) Local routes revisited: the space and time dependence of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signal for phasic transmitter release at the rat calyx of Held, *Journal of Physiology*. 547: 665–689.
- Meyer, T. and L. Stryer (1988) Molecular model for receptor-stimulated calcium spiking, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 85: 5051–5055.
- Meyer, T. and L. Stryer (1991) Calcium spiking, *Annual Review of Biophysics and Biophysical Chemistry*. 20: 153–174.
- Michaelis, L. and M. I. Menten (1913) Die Kinetik der Invertinwirkung, *Biochemische Zeitschrift*. 49: 333–369.
- Miftakhov, R. N., G. R. Abdusheva and J. Christensen (1999a) Numerical simulation of motility patterns of the small bowel. I. formulation of a mathematical model, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 197: 89–112.
- Miftakhov, R. N., G. R. Abdusheva and J. Christensen (1999b) Numerical simulation of motility patterns of the small bowel. II. Comparative pharmacological validation of a mathematical model, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 200: 261–290.
- Mijailovich, S. M., J. P. Butler and J. J. Fredberg (2000) Perturbed equilibria of myosin binding in airway smooth muscle: bond-length distributions, mechanics, and ATP metabolism, *Biophysical Journal*. 79: 2667–2681.
- Milhorn, H. T., Jr. and P. E. Pulley, Jr. (1968) A theoretical study of pulmonary capillary gas exchange and venous admixture, *Biophysical Journal*. 8: 337–357.
- Miller, R. N. and J. Rinzel (1981) The dependence of impulse propagation speed on firing frequency, dispersion, for the Hodgkin–Huxley model, *Biophysical Journal*. 34: 227–259.
- Milton, J. (2003) *Pupil light reflex: delays and oscillations*. In: *Nonlinear Dynamics in Physiology and Medicine*, Ed: A. Beuter, L. Glass, M. C. Mackey and M. S. Titcombe, Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Milton, J. G. and M. C. Mackey (1989) Periodic haematological diseases: mystical entities or dynamical disorders?, *Journal of the Royal College of Physicians of London*. 23: 236–241.
- Mines, G. R. (1914) On circulating excitations in heart muscle and their possible relation to tachycardia and fibrillation, *Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada*. 4: 43–53.
- Minorsky, N. (1962) *Nonlinear Oscillations*: Van Nostrand, New York.
- Miura, R. M. (1981) *Nonlinear waves in neuronal cortical structures*. In: *Nonlinear Phenomena in Physics and Biology*, Ed: R. H. Enns, B. L. Jones, R. M. Miura and S. S. Rangnekar, Plenum Press, New York.
- Moe, G. K., W. C. Rheinboldt and J. A. Abildskov (1964) A computer model of atrial fibrillation, *American Heart Journal*. 67: 200–220.
- Mogilner, A., T. C. Elston, H. Wang and G. Oster (2002) *Molecular motors: examples*. In: *Computational Cell Biology*, Ed: C. P. Fall, E. S. Marland, J. M. Wagner and J. J. Tyson, Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Mogilner, A. and G. Oster (1996) Cell motility driven by actin polymerization, *Biophysical Journal*. 71: 3030–3045.
- Mogilner, A. and G. Oster (1999) The polymerization ratchet model explains the force–velocity relation for growing microtubules, *European Journal of Biophysics*. 28: 235–242.
- Mogilner, A. and G. Oster (2003) Force generation by actin polymerization II: the elastic ratchet and tethered filaments, *Biophysical Journal*. 84: 1591–1605.
- Monod, J., J. Wyman and J. P. Changeux (1965) On the nature of allosteric transition: A plausible model, *Journal of Molecular Biology*. 12: 88–118.
- Morley, A. (1979) Cyclic hemopoiesis and feedback control, *Blood Cells*. 5: 283–296.
- Morris, C. and H. Lecar (1981) Voltage oscillations in the barnacle giant muscle fiber, *Biophysical Journal*. 35: 193–213.

- Mount, D. W. (2001) *Bioinformatics: Sequence and Genome Analysis*: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, N.Y.
- Mountcastle, V. B., Ed. (1974) *Medical Physiology (Thirteenth Edition)*: C.V. Mosby Co., Saint Louis.
- Murphy, R. A. (1994) What is special about smooth muscle? The significance of covalent crossbridge regulation, *FASEB Journal*. 8: 311–318.
- Murray, J. D. (1971) On the molecular mechanism of facilitated oxygen diffusion by haemoglobin and myoglobin, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 178: 95–110.
- Murray, J. D. (1984) *Asymptotic Analysis*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Murray, J. D. (2002) *Mathematical Biology (Third Edition)*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Murray, J. D. and J. Wyman (1971) Facilitated diffusion: the case of carbon monoxide, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 246: 5903–5906.
- Nagumo, J., S. Arimoto and S. Yoshizawa (1964) An active pulse transmission line simulating nerve axon, *Proceedings of the Institute of Radio Engineers*. 50: 2061–2070.
- Naka, K. I. and W. A. Rushton (1966) S-potentials from luminosity units in the retina of fish (Cyprinidae), *Journal of Physiology*. 185: 587–599.
- Nakatani, K., T. Tamura and K. W. Yau (1991) Light adaptation in retinal rods of the rabbit and two other nonprimate mammals, *Journal of General Physiology*. 97: 413–435.
- Nakayama, K. (1985) Biological image motion processing: a review, *Vision Research*. 25: 625–660.
- Naraghi, M., T. H. Muller and E. Neher (1998) Two-dimensional determination of the cellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binding in bovine chromaffin cells, *Biophysical Journal*. 75: 1635–1647.
- Naraghi, M. and E. Neher (1997) Linearized buffered  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion in microdomains and its implications for calculation of  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]$  at the mouth of a calcium channel, *Journal of Neuroscience*. 17: 6961–6973.
- Nash, M. S., K. W. Young, R. A. Challiss and S. R. Nahorski (2001) Intracellular signalling. Receptor-specific messenger oscillations, *Nature*. 413: 381–382.
- Nasmyth, K. (1995) Evolution of the cell cycle, *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London B*. 349: 271–281.
- Nasmyth, K. (1996) Viewpoint: putting the cell cycle in order, *Science*. 274: 1643–1645.
- Nathanson, M. H., A. D. Burgstahler, A. Mennone, M. B. Fallon, C. B. Gonzalez and J. C. Saez (1995)  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves are organized among hepatocytes in the intact organ, *American Journal of Physiology — Gastrointestinal and Liver Physiology*. 269: G167–171.
- Nedergaard, M. (1994) Direct signaling from astrocytes to neurons in cultures of mammalian brain cells, *Science*. 263: 1768–1771.
- Neher, E. (1998a) Usefulness and limitations of linear approximations to the understanding of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signals, *Cell Calcium*. 24: 345–357.
- Neher, E. (1998b) Vesicle pools and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  microdomains: new tools for understanding their roles in neurotransmitter release, *Neuron*. 20: 389–399.
- Nelsen, T. S. and J. C. Becker (1968) Simulation of the electrical and mechanical gradient of the small intestine, *American Journal of Physiology*. 214: 749–757.
- Nesheim, M. E., R. P. Tracy and K. G. Mann (1984) "Clotspeed," a mathematical simulation of the functional properties of prothrombinase, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 259: 1447–1453.
- Nesheim, M. E., R. P. Tracy, P. B. Tracy, D. S. Boskovic and K. G. Mann (1992) Mathematical simulation of prothrombinase, *Methods in Enzymology*. 215: 316–328.
- Nesher, R. and E. Cerasi (2002) Modeling phasic insulin release: immediate and time-dependent effects of glucose, *Diabetes*. 51 Suppl 1: S53–59.
- Neu, J. C. (1979) Chemical waves and the diffusive coupling of limit cycle oscillators, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 36: 509–515.
- Neu, J. C. and W. Krassowska (1993) Homogenization of syncytial tissues, *Critical Reviews in Biomedical Engineering*. 21: 137–199.
- Nicholls, J. G., A. R. Martin and B. G. Wallace (1992) *From Neuron to Brain (Third Edition)*: Sinauer Associates, Inc., Sunderland, MA.
- Niederer, S. A., P. J. Hunter and N. P. Smith (2006) A quantitative analysis of cardiac myocyte relaxation: a simulation study, *Biophysical Journal*. 90: 1697–1722.
- Nielsen, K., P. G. Sørensen and F. Hynne (1997) Chaos in glycolysis, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 186: 303–306.
- Nielsen, P. M. F., I. J. LeGrice and B. H. Smaill (1991) A mathematical model of geometry and

## REFERENCES

- fibrous structure of the heart, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 260: H1365–1378.
- Nikonorov, S., N. Engheta and E. N. Pugh, Jr. (1998) Kinetics of recovery of the dark-adapted salamander rod photoreponse, *Journal of General Physiology*. 111: 7–37.
- Nobili, R., F. Mammano and J. Ashmore (1998) How well do we understand the cochlea?, *Trends in Neuroscience*. 21: 159–167.
- Noble, D. (1962) A modification of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations applicable to Purkinje fiber action and pacemaker potential, *Journal of Physiology*. 160: 317–352.
- Noble, D. (2002a) Modelling the heart: insights, failures and progress, *Bioessays*. 24: 1155–1163.
- Noble, D. (2002b) Modeling the heart—from genes to cells to the whole organ, *Science*. 295: 1678–1682.
- Noble, D. and S. J. Noble (1984) A model of sino-atrial node electrical activity using a modification of the DiFrancesco–Noble (1984) equations, *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B*. 222: 295–304.
- Nolasco, J. B. and R. W. Dahlen (1968) A graphic method for the study of alternation in cardiac action potentials, *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 25: 191–196.
- Norman, R. A. and I. Perlman (1979) The effects of background illumination on the photoreponses of red and green cones, *Journal of Physiology*. 286: 491–507.
- Novak, B., Z. Pataki, A. Ciliberto and J. J. Tyson (2001) Mathematical model of the cell division cycle of fission yeast, *Chaos*. 11: 277–286.
- Novak, B. and J. J. Tyson (1993a) Numerical analysis of a comprehensive model of M-phase control in *Xenopus* oocyte extracts and intact embryos, *Journal of Cell Science*. 106: 1153–1168.
- Novak, B. and J. J. Tyson (1993b) Modeling the cell division cycle: M phase trigger oscillations and size control, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 165: 101–134.
- Novak, B. and J. J. Tyson (2004) A model for restriction point control of the mammalian cell cycle, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 230: 563–579.
- Nowak, M. A. and R. M. May (2000) *Virus Dynamics: Mathematical Principles of Immunology and Virology*: Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Nowycky, M. C. and M. J. Pinter (1993) Time courses of calcium and calcium-bound buffers following calcium influx in a model cell, *Biophysical Journal*. 64: 77–91.
- Nuccitelli, R., D. L. Yim and T. Smart (1993) The sperm-induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave following fertilization of the *Xenopus* egg requires the production of  $\text{Ins}(1,4,5)\text{P}_3$ , *Developmental Biology*. 158: 200–212.
- Nunemaker, C. S., R. Bertram, A. Sherman, K. Tsaneva-Atanasova, C. R. Daniel and L. S. Satin (2006) Glucose modulates  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillations in pancreatic islets via ionic and glycolytic mechanisms, *Biophysical Journal*. 91: 2082–2096.
- O'Neill, P. V. (1983) *Advanced Engineering Mathematics*: Wadsworth, Belmont CA.
- Ohta, T., M. Mimura and R. Kobayashi (1989) Higher dimensional localized patterns in excitable media, *Physica D*. 34: 115–144.
- Olufsen, M. S., A. Nadim and L. A. Lipsitz (2002) Dynamics of cerebral blood flow regulation explained using a lumped parameter model, *American Journal of Physiology — Regulatory, Integrative, and Comparative Physiology*. 282: R611–622.
- Olufsen, M. S., C. S. Peskin, W. Y. Kim, E. M. Pedersen, A. Nadim and J. Larsen (2000) Numerical simulation and experimental validation of blood flow in arteries with structured-tree outflow conditions, *Annals of Biomedical Engineering*. 28: 1281–1299.
- Orrenius, S., B. Zhivotovsky and P. Nicotera (2003) Regulation of cell death: the calcium–apoptosis link, *Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology*. 4: 552–565.
- Ortoleva, P. and J. Ross (1973) Phase waves in oscillatory chemical reactions, *Journal of Chemical Physics*. 58: 5673–5680.
- Ortoleva, P. and J. Ross (1974) On a variety of wave phenomena in chemical reactions, *Journal of Chemical Physics*. 60: 5090–5107.
- Osher, S. and J. A. Sethian (1988) Fronts propagating with curvature-dependent speed: algorithms based on Hamilton–Jacobi formulations, *Journal of Computational Physics*. 79: 12–49.
- Otani, N. F. and R. F. Gilmour, Jr. (1997) Memory models for the electrical properties of local cardiac systems, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 187: 409–436.
- Othmer, H. G. (1976) The qualitative dynamics of a class of biochemical control circuits, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 3: 53–78.
- Ottesen, J. T. (1997) Modelling of the baroreflex-feedback mechanism with

- time-delay, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 36: 41–63.
- Ottesen, J. T., M. S. Olufsen and J. K. Larsen (2004) *Applied Mathematical Models in Human Physiology*: SIAM, Philadelphia.
- Ozbudak, E. M., M. Thattai, H. N. Lim, B. I. Shraiman and A. Van Oudenaarden (2004) Multistability in the lactose utilization network of *Escherichia coli*, *Nature*. 427: 737–740.
- Pace, N., E. Strajman and E. L. Walker (1950) Acceleration of carbon monoxide elimination in man by high pressure oxygen, *Science*. 111: 652–654.
- Panfilov, A. V. and P. Hogeweg (1995) Spiral break-up in a modified FitzHugh–Nagumo model, *Physics Letters A*. 176: 295–299.
- Panfilov, A. V. and A. V. Holden (1990) Self-generation of turbulent vortices in a two-dimensional model of cardiac tissue, *Physics Letters A*. 151: 23–26.
- Panfilov, A. V. and J. P. Keener (1995) Re-entry in an anatomical model of the heart, *Chaos, Solitons and Fractals*. 5: 681–689.
- Papoulis, A. (1962) *The Fourier Integral and its Applications*: McGraw-Hill, New York.
- Parker, I., J. Choi and Y. Yao (1996b) Elementary events of InsP<sub>3</sub>-induced Ca<sup>2+</sup> liberation in *Xenopus* oocytes: hot spots, puffs and blips, *Cell Calcium*. 20: 105–121.
- Parker, I. and Y. Yao (1996) Ca<sup>2+</sup> transients associated with openings of inositol trisphosphate-gated channels in *Xenopus* oocytes, *Journal of Physiology*. 491: 663–668.
- Parker, I., Y. Yao and V. Ilyin (1996a) Fast kinetics of calcium liberation induced in *Xenopus* oocytes by photoreleased inositol trisphosphate, *Biophysical Journal*. 70: 222–237.
- Parker, I., W. J. Zang and W. G. Wier (1996c) Ca<sup>2+</sup> sparks involving multiple Ca<sup>2+</sup> release sites along Z-lines in rat heart cells, *Journal of Physiology*. 497: 31–38.
- Parnas, H., G. Hovav and I. Parnas (1989) Effect of Ca<sup>2+</sup> diffusion on the time course of neurotransmitter release, *Biophysical Journal*. 55: 859–874.
- Parnas, H. and L. A. Segel (1980) A theoretical explanation for some effects of calcium on the facilitation of neurotransmitter release, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 84: 3–29.
- Parnas, H., J. C. Valle-Lisboa and L. A. Segel (2002) Can the Ca<sup>2+</sup> hypothesis and the Ca<sup>2+</sup>-voltage hypothesis for neurotransmitter release be reconciled?, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 99: 17149–17154.
- Pate, E. (1997) Mathematical modeling of muscle crossbridge mechanics. In: *Case Studies in Mathematical Biology*, Ed: H. Othmer, F. Adler, M. Lewis and J. Dallon, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.
- Pate, E. and R. Cooke (1989) A model of crossbridge action: the effects of ATP, ADP and Pi, *Journal of Muscle Research and Cell Motility*. 10: 181–196.
- Pate, E. and R. Cooke (1991) Simulation of stochastic processes in motile crossbridge systems, *Journal of Muscle Research and Cell Motility*. 12: 376–393.
- Patlak, J. (1991) Molecular kinetics of voltage-dependent Na<sup>+</sup> channels., *Physiological Reviews*. 71: 1047–1080.
- Patneau, D. K. and M. L. Mayer (1991) Kinetic analysis of interactions between kainate and AMPA: evidence for activation of a single receptor in mouse hippocampal neurons, *Neuron*. 6: 785–798.
- Patton, R. J. and D. A. Linkens (1978) Hodgkin–Huxley type electronic modelling of gastrointestinal electrical activity, *Medical and Biological Engineering and Computing*. 16: 195–202.
- Pauling, L. (1935) The oxygen equilibrium of hemoglobin and its structural interpretation, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 21: 186–191.
- Pauwelussen, J. P. (1981) Nerve impulse propagation in a branching nerve system: a simple model, *Physica D*. 4: 67–88.
- Payne, S. and C. Stephens (2005) The response of the cross-bridge cycle model to oscillations in intracellular calcium: A mathematical analysis, *Conference proceedings: Annual International Conference of the IEEE Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society*. 7: 7305–7308.
- Pearson, J. E. and S. Ponce-Dawson (1998) Crisis on skid row, *Physica A*. 257: 141–148.
- Pedley, T. J. (1980) *The Fluid Mechanics of Large Blood Vessels*: Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Pelce, P. and J. Sun (1991) Wave front interaction in steadily rotating spirals, *Physica D*. 48: 353–366.
- Pepperberg, D. R., M. C. Cornwall, M. Kahlert, K. P. Hofmann, J. Jin, G. J. Jones and H. Rippes (1992) Light-dependent delay in the falling phase of the retinal rod photoreponse, *Visual Neuroscience*. 8: 9–18.

## REFERENCES

- Perelson, A. S. (2002) Modelling viral and immune system dynamics, *Nature Reviews Immunology*. 2: 28–36.
- Perlman, I. and R. A. Normann (1998) Light adaptation and sensitivity controlling mechanisms in vertebrate photoreceptors, *Progress in Retinal and Eye Research*. 17: 523–563.
- Pernarowski, M. (1994) Fast subsystem bifurcations in a slowly varying Liénard system exhibiting bursting, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 54: 814–832.
- Pernarowski, M., R. M. Miura and J. Kevorkian (1991) *The Sherman–Rinzel–Keizer model for bursting electrical activity in the pancreatic  $\beta$ -cell*. In: Differential Equations Models in Biology, Epidemiology and Ecology, Ed: S. Busenberg and M. Martelli, Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Pernarowski, M., R. M. Miura and J. Kevorkian (1992) Perturbation techniques for models of bursting electrical activity in pancreatic  $\beta$ -cells, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 52: 1627–1650.
- Perutz, M. F. (1970) Stereochemistry of cooperative effects in haemoglobin, *Nature*. 228: 726–739.
- Perutz, M. F., W. Bolton, R. Diamond, H. Muirhead and H. Watson (1964) Structure of haemoglobin. An X-ray examination of reduced horse haemoglobin, *Nature*. 203: 687–690.
- Peskin, C. S. (1975) *Mathematical Aspects of Heart Physiology*: Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences Lecture Notes, New York.
- Peskin, C. S. (1976) *Partial Differential Equations in Biology*: Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences Lecture Notes, New York.
- Peskin, C. S. (1981) Lectures on mathematical aspects of physiology, *AMS Lectures in Applied Mathematics*. 19: 38–69.
- Peskin, C. S. (1991) *Mathematical Aspects of Neurophysiology*: Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences Lecture Notes, New York.
- Peskin, C. S. (2002) The immersed boundary method, *Acta Numerica*. 11: 479–517.
- Peskin, C. S. and D. M. McQueen (1989) A three-dimensional computational method for blood flow in the heart. I. Immersed elastic fibers in a viscous incompressible fluid., *Journal of Computational Physics*. 81: 372–405.
- Peskin, C. S. and D. M. McQueen (1992) Cardiac fluid dynamics, *Critical Reviews in Biomedical Engineering*. 20: 451–459.
- Peskin, C. S., G. M. Odell and G. F. Oster (1993) Cellular motions and thermal fluctuations: the Brownian ratchet, *Biophysical Journal*. 65: 316–324.
- Peskin, C. S. and G. Oster (1995) Coordinated hydrolysis explains the mechanical behavior of kinesin, *Biophysical Journal*. 68: 202S–210.
- Peskin, C. S. and G. F. Oster (1995) Force production by depolymerizing microtubules: load–velocity curves and run-pause statistics, *Biophysical Journal*. 69: 2268–2276.
- Peskoff, A. and G. A. Langer (1998) Calcium concentration and movement in the ventricular cardiac cell during an excitation–contraction cycle, *Biophysical Journal*. 74: 153–174.
- Peskoff, A., J. A. Post and G. A. Langer (1992) Sarcolemmal calcium binding sites in heart: II. Mathematical model for diffusion of calcium released from the sarcoplasmic reticulum into the diadic region, *Journal of Membrane Biology*. 129: 59–69.
- Peterson, L. C. and B. P. Bogert (1950) A dynamical theory of the cochlea, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 22: 369–381.
- Pickles, J. O. (1982) *An Introduction to the Physiology of Hearing*: Academic Press, London.
- Pitman, E. B., R. M. Zaritski, K. J. Kesseler, L. C. Moore and H. E. Layton (2004) Feedback-mediated dynamics in two coupled nephrons, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 66: 1463–1492.
- Plant, R. E. (1981) Bifurcation and resonance in a model for bursting nerve cells, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 11: 15–32.
- Podolsky, R. J. and A. C. Nolan (1972) *Cross-bridge properties derived from physiological studies of frog muscle fibres*. In: Contractility of Muscle Cells and Related Processes, Ed: R. J. Podolsky, Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.
- Podolsky, R. J. and A. C. Nolan (1973) *Muscle Contraction Transients, Cross-Bridge Kinetics and the Fenn Effect*.: 37th Cold Spring Harbor Symposium of Quantitative Biology, Cold Spring Harbor, New York.
- Podolsky, R. J., A. C. Nolan and S. A. Zavaler (1969) Cross-bridge properties derived from muscle isotonic velocity transients, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 64: 504–511.
- Politi, A., L. D. Gaspers, A. P. Thomas and T. Hofer (2006) Models of IP<sub>3</sub> and Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillations: frequency encoding and identification of underlying feedbacks, *Biophysical Journal*. 90: 3120–3133.

- Pollack, G. H. (1976) Intercellular coupling in the atrioventricular node and other tissues of the rabbit heart, *Journal of Physiology*. 255: 275–298.
- Ponce-Dawson, S., J. Keizer and J. E. Pearson (1999) Fire-diffuse-fire model of dynamics of intracellular calcium waves, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 96: 6060–6063.
- Preston, G. M., T. P. Carroll, W. B. Guggino and P. Agre (1992) Appearance of water channels in *Xenopus* oocytes expressing red cell CHIP28 protein, *Science*. 256: 385–387.
- Pries, A. R. and T. W. Secomb (2000) Microcirculatory network structures and models, *Annals of Biomedical Engineering*. 28: 916–921.
- Pries, A. R. and T. W. Secomb (2005) Control of blood vessel structure: insights from theoretical models, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 288: H1010–1015.
- Pries, A. R., T. W. Secomb and P. Gaehtgens (1996) Biophysical aspects of blood flow in the microvasculature, *Cardiovascular Research*. 32: 654–667.
- Pugh, E. N. and T. D. Lamb (1990) Cyclic GMP and calcium: messengers of excitation and adaptation in vertebrate photoreceptors, *Vision Research*. 30: 1923–1948.
- Pullan, A., L. Cheng, R. Yassi and M. Buist (2004) Modelling gastrointestinal bioelectric activity, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 85: 523–550.
- Qian, H. (2000) The mathematical theory of molecular motor movement and chemomechanical energy transduction, *Journal of Mathematical Chemistry*. 27: 219–234.
- Qu, Z., A. Garfinkel, P. S. Chen and J. N. Weiss (2000) Mechanisms of discordant alternans and induction of reentry in simulated cardiac tissue, *Circulation*. 102: 1664–1670.
- Röttingen, J. and J. G. Iversen (2000) Ruled by waves? Intracellular and intercellular calcium signalling, *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica*. 169: 203–219.
- Rahn, H. (1949) A concept of mean alveolar air and the ventilation–bloodflow relationships during pulmonary gas exchange, *American Journal of Physiology*. 158: 21–30.
- Rall, W. (1957) Membrane time constant of motoneurons, *Science*. 126: 454.
- Rall, W. (1959) Branching dendritic trees and motoneuron membrane resistivity, *Experimental Neurology*. 2: 491–527.
- Rall, W. (1960) Membrane potential transients and membrane time constant of motoneurons, *Experimental Neurology*. 2: 503–532.
- Rall, W. (1969) Time constants and electrotonic length of membrane cylinders and neurons, *Biophysical Journal*. 9: 1483–1508.
- Rall, W. (1977) *Core conductor theory and cable properties of neurons*. In: *Handbook of Physiology The Nervous System I*, Ed: J. M. Brookhart and V. B. Mountcastle, American Physiological Society, Bethesda, MD.
- Ramamoorthy, S., N. V. Deo and K. Grosh (2007) A mechano-electro-acoustical model for the cochlea: response to acoustic stimuli, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 121: 2758–2773.
- Ramanan, S. V. and P. R. Brink (1990) Exact solution of a model of diffusion in an infinite chain or monolayer of cells coupled by gap junctions, *Biophysical Journal*. 58: 631–639.
- Ramirez, J. M. and D. W. Richter (1996) The neuronal mechanisms of respiratory rhythm generation, *Current Opinion in Neurobiology*. 6: 817–825.
- Rand, R. H. and P. J. Holmes (1980) Bifurcation of periodic motions in two weakly coupled van der Pol oscillators, *Journal of Non-linear Mechanics*. 15: 387–399.
- Ranke, O. F. (1950) Theory of operation of the cochlea: A contribution to the hydrodynamics of the cochlea, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 22: 772–777.
- Rapp, P. E. (1975) A theoretical investigation of a large class of biochemical oscillations, *Mathematical Biosciences*. 25: 165–188.
- Rapp, P. E. (1976) Mathematical techniques for the study of oscillations in biochemical control loops, *Bulletin of the Institute of Mathematics and its Applications*. 12: 11–21.
- Rapp, P. E. and M. J. Berridge (1977) Oscillations in calcium–cyclic AMP control loops form the basis of pacemaker activity and other high frequency biological rhythms, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 66: 497–525.
- Ratliff, F. (1961) *Inhibitory interaction and the detection and enhancement of contours*. In: *Sensory Communication*, Ed: W. A. Rosenblith, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Ratliff, F. and H. K. Hartline (1959) The responses of *Limulus* optic nerve fibers to patterns of illumination on the receptor mosaic, *Journal of General Physiology*. 42: 1241–1255.

## REFERENCES

- Ratliff, F., B. W. Knight, Jr., F. A. Dodge, Jr. and H. K. Hartline (1974) Fourier analysis of dynamics of excitation and inhibition in the eye of Limulus: amplitude, phase and distance, *Vision Research*. 14: 1155–1168.
- Rauch, J. and J. Smoller (1978) Qualitative theory of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, *Advances in Mathematics*. 27: 12–44.
- Reed, M. C. and J. J. Blum (1986) Theoretical analysis of radioactivity profiles during fast axonal transport: effects of deposition and turnover, *Cell Motility and the Cytoskeleton*. 6: 620–627.
- Reeve, E. B. and A. C. Guyton, Eds. (1967) *Physical Bases of Circulatory Transport: Regulation and Exchange*: W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.
- Reichardt, W. (1961) *Autocorrelation, a principle for the evaluation of sensory information by the central nervous system*. In: *Sensory Communication*, Ed: W. A. Rosenblith, Cambridge, MA.
- Reijenga, K. A., H. V. Westerhoff, B. N. Kholodenko and J. L. Snoep (2002) Control analysis for autonomously oscillating biochemical networks, *Biophysical Journal*. 82: 99–108.
- Reimann, P. (2002) Brownian motors: Noisy transport far from equilibrium, *Physics Reports*. 361: 57–265.
- Reuss, L. and B. H. Hirst (2002) Water transport controversies—an overview, *Journal of Physiology*. 542: 1–2.
- Rhode, W. S. (1984) Cochlear mechanics, *Annual Review of Physiology*. 46: 231–246.
- Richter, D. W. (1996) *Neural regulation of respiration: rhythrogenesis and afferent control*. In: *Comprehensive Human Physiology*, Ed: R. Gregor and U. Windhorst, Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- Ridgway, E. B., J. C. Gilkey and L. F. Jaffe (1977) Free calcium increases explosively in activating medaka eggs, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 74: 623–627.
- Rieke, F. and D. A. Baylor (1998a) Origin of reproducibility in the responses of retinal rods to single photons, *Biophysical Journal*. 75: 1836–1857.
- Rieke, F. and D. A. Baylor (1998b) Single-photon detection by rod cells of the retina, *Reviews of Modern Physics*. 70: 1027–1036.
- Riley, R. L. and A. Cournand (1949) “Ideal” alveolar air and the analysis of ventilation–perfusion relationships in the lungs, *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1: 825–847.
- Riley, R. L. and A. Cournand (1951) Analysis of factors affecting partial pressures of oxygen and carbon dioxide in gas and blood of lungs; theory, *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 4: 77–101.
- Rinzel, J. (1978) On repetitive activity in nerve, *Federation Proceedings*. 37: 2793–2802.
- Rinzel, J. (1985) *Bursting oscillations in an excitable membrane model*. In: *Ordinary and Partial Differential Equations*, Ed: B. D. Sleeman and R. J. Jarvis, Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Rinzel, J. (1987) *A formal classification of bursting mechanisms in excitable systems*. In: *Mathematical Topics in Population Biology, Morphogenesis, and Neurosciences, Lecture Notes in Biomathematics*, Vol 71, Ed: E. Teramoto and M. Yamaguti, Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- Rinzel, J. (1990) Electrical excitability of cells, theory and experiment: review of the Hodgkin–Huxley foundation and an update, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 52: 5–23.
- Rinzel, J. and J. P. Keener (1983) Hopf bifurcation to repetitive activity in nerve, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 43: 907–922.
- Rinzel, J. and J. B. Keller (1973) Traveling wave solutions of a nerve conduction equation, *Biophysical Journal*. 13: 1313–1337.
- Rinzel, J. and Y. S. Lee (1986) *On different mechanisms for membrane potential bursting*. In: *Nonlinear Oscillations in Biology and Chemistry, Lecture Notes in Biomathematics*, Vol 66, Ed: H. G. Othmer, Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Rinzel, J. and Y. S. Lee (1987) Dissection of a model for neuronal parabolic bursting, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 25: 653–675.
- Rinzel, J. and K. Maginu (1984) *Kinematic analysis of wave pattern formation in excitable media*. In: *Non-equilibrium Dynamics in Chemical Systems*, Ed: A. Pacault and C. Vidal, Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- Robb-Gaspers, L. D. and A. P. Thomas (1995) Coordination of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  signaling by intercellular propagation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves in the intact liver, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 270: 8102–8107.
- Roberts, D. and A. M. Scher (1982) Effect of tissue anisotropy on extracellular potential fields in canine myocardium *in situ*, *Circulation Research*. 50: 342–351.
- Robertson-Dunn, B. and D. A. Linkens (1974) A mathematical model of the slow-wave

- electrical activity of the human small intestine, *Medical and Biological Engineering*. 12: 750–758.
- Robinson, T. F., L. Cohen-Gould and S. M. Factor (1983) Skeletal framework of mammalian heart muscle. Arrangement of inter- and pericellular connective tissue structures, *Laboratory Investigation*. 49: 482–498.
- Rodieck, R. W. (1965) Quantitative analysis of cat retinal ganglion cell response to visual stimuli, *Vision Research*. 5: 583–601.
- Rooney, T. A. and A. P. Thomas (1993) Intracellular calcium waves generated by Ins(1,4,5)P<sub>3</sub>-dependent mechanisms, *Cell Calcium*. 14: 674–690.
- Roper, P., J. Callaway and W. Armstrong (2004) Burst initiation and termination in phasic vasopressin cells of the rat supraoptic nucleus: a combined mathematical, electrical, and calcium fluorescence study, *Journal of Neuroscience*. 24: 4818–4831.
- Roper, P., J. Callaway, T. Shevchenko, R. Teruyama and W. Armstrong (2003) AHP's, HAP's and DAP's: how potassium currents regulate the excitability of rat supraoptic neurones, *Journal of Computational Neuroscience*. 15: 367–389.
- Rorsman, P. and G. Trube (1986) Calcium and delayed potassium currents in mouse pancreatic  $\beta$ -cells under voltage clamp conditions, *Journal of Physiology*. 375: 531–550.
- Roth, B. J. (1992) How the anisotropy of the intracellular and extracellular conductivities influences stimulation of cardiac muscle, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 30: 633–646.
- Roughton, F. J. W., E. C. DeLand, J. C. Kernohan and J. W. Severinghaus (1972) *Some recent studies of the oxyhaemoglobin dissociation curve of human blood under physiological conditions and the fitting of the Adair equation to the standard curve*. In: Oxygen Affinity of Hemoglobin and Red Cell Acid Base States, Ed: M. Rorth and P. Astrup, Academic Press, New York.
- Roy, D. R., H. E. Layton and R. L. Jamison (1992) *Countercurrent mechanism and its regulation*. In: The Kidney: Physiology and Pathophysiology, Ed: D. W. Seldin and G. Giebisch, Raven Press, New York.
- Rubinow, S. I. (1973) *Mathematical Problems in the Biological Sciences*: SIAM, Philadelphia.
- Rubinow, S. I. (1975) *Introduction to Mathematical Biology*: John Wiley and Sons, New York.
- Rubinow, S. I. and M. Dembo (1977) The facilitated diffusion of oxygen by hemoglobin and myoglobin, *Biophysical Journal*. 18: 29–42.
- Ruggero, M. A. (1992) Responses to sound of the basilar membrane of the mammalian cochlea, *Current Opinion in Neurobiology*. 2: 449–456.
- Rushmer, R. F. (1976) *Structure and Function of the Cardiovascular System (Second Edition)*: W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia.
- Rybak, I. A., J. F. Paton and J. S. Schwaber (1997a) Modeling neural mechanisms for genesis of respiratory rhythm and pattern. I. Models of respiratory neurons, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 77: 1994–2006.
- Rybak, I. A., J. F. Paton and J. S. Schwaber (1997b) Modeling neural mechanisms for genesis of respiratory rhythm and pattern. II. Network models of the central respiratory pattern generator, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 77: 2007–2026.
- Rybak, I. A., N. A. Shevtsova, J. F. Paton, T. E. Dick, W. M. St-John, M. Morschel and M. Dutschmann (2004) Modeling the ponto-medullary respiratory network, *Respiratory Physiology and Neurobiology*. 143: 307–319.
- Sabah, N. H. and R. A. Spangler (1970) Repetitive response of the Hodgkin-Huxley model for the squid giant axon, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 29: 155–171.
- Sachs, F., F. Qin and P. Palade (1995) Models of Ca<sup>2+</sup> release channel adaptation, *Science*. 267: 2010–2011.
- Sagawa, K., R. K. Lie and J. Schaefer (1990) Translation of Otto Frank's Paper "Die Grundform des Arteriellen Pulses", *Zeitschrift für Biologie*, 37:483–526 (1899), *Journal of Molecular and Cellular Cardiology*. 22: 253–277.
- Sagawa, K., H. Suga and K. Nakayama (1978) *Instantaneous pressure-volume ratio of the left ventricle versus instantaneous force-length relation of papillary muscle*. In: *Cardiovascular System Dynamics*, Ed: J. Baan, A. Noordergraaf and J. Raines, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Sakmann, B. and E. Neher (1995) *Single-Channel Recording (Second Edition)*: Plenum Press, New York.
- Sala, F. and A. Hernández-Cruz (1990) Calcium diffusion modeling in a spherical neuron: relevance of buffering properties, *Biophysical Journal*. 57: 313–324.
- Sanders, K. M. (1996) A case for interstitial cells of Cajal as pacemakers and mediators of

- neurotransmission in the gastrointestinal tract, *Gastroenterology*. 111: 492–515.
- Sanderson, M. J., A. C. Charles, S. Boitano and E. R. Dirksen (1994) Mechanisms and function of intercellular calcium signaling, *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology*. 98: 173–187.
- Sanderson, M. J., A. C. Charles and E. R. Dirksen (1990) Mechanical stimulation and intercellular communication increases intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in epithelial cells, *Cell Regulation*. 1: 585–596.
- Santillán, M. and M. C. Mackey (2001a) Dynamic behavior in mathematical models of the tryptophan operon, *Chaos*. 11: 261–268.
- Santillán, M. and M. C. Mackey (2001b) Dynamic regulation of the tryptophan operon: a modeling study and comparison with experimental data, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 98: 1364–1369.
- Santillán, M. and M. C. Mackey (2004) Influence of catabolite repression and inducer exclusion on the bistable behavior of the lac operon, *Biophysical Journal*. 86: 1282–1292.
- Sarna, S. K. (1989) *In vivo myoelectric activity: methods, analysis and interpretation*. In: *Handbook of Physiology. Section 6: The Gastrointestinal System*, Ed: S. G. Schultz, J. D. Wood and B. B. Rauner, American Physiological Society, Bethesda, Maryland.
- Sarna, S. K., E. E. Daniel and Y. J. Kingma (1971) Simulation of the slow wave electrical activity of small intestine, *American Journal of Physiology*. 221: 166–175.
- Sarty, G. E. and R. A. Pierson (2005) An application of Lacker's mathematical model for the prediction of ovarian response to superstimulation, *Mathematical Biosciences*. 198: 80–96.
- Schiefer, A., G. Meissner and G. Isenberg (1995)  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  activation and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  inactivation of canine reconstituted cardiac sarcoplasmic reticulum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -release channels, *Journal of Physiology*. 489: 337–348.
- Schlosser, P. M. and J. F. Selgrade (2000) A model of gonadotropin regulation during the menstrual cycle in women: qualitative features, *Environmental Health Perspectives*. 108 Suppl 5: 873–881.
- Schmitz, S., H. Franke, J. Brusis and H. E. Wichmann (1993) Quantification of the cell kinetic effects of G-CSF using a model of human granulopoiesis, *Experimental Hematology*. 21: 755–760.
- Schmitz, S., M. Loeffler, J. B. Jones, R. D. Lange and H. E. Wichmann (1990) Synchrony of bone marrow proliferation and maturation as the origin of cyclic haemopoiesis, *Cell and Tissue Kinetics*. 23: 425–442.
- Schultz, S. G. (1981) Homocellular regulatory mechanisms in sodium-transporting epithelia: avoidance of extinction by "flush-through", *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology*. 241: F579–590.
- Schumaker, M. F. and R. MacKinnon (1990) A simple model for multi-ion permeation, *Biophysical Journal*. 58: 975–984.
- Schuster, S., M. Marhl and T. Höfer (2002) Modelling of simple and complex calcium oscillations. From single-cell responses to intercellular signalling, *European Journal of Biochemistry*. 269: 1333–1355.
- Schwartz, N. B. (1969) A model for the regulation of ovulation in the rat, *Recent Progress in Hormone Research*. 25: 1–53.
- Segel, I. H. (1975) *Enzyme Kinetics: Behavior and Analysis of Rapid Equilibrium and Steady-State Enzyme Systems*: John Wiley & Sons. Republished in the Wiley Classics Library Edition, 1993. Wiley, Hoboken, New Jersey.
- Segel, L. and A. Goldbeter (1994) Scaling in biochemical kinetics: dissection of a relaxation oscillator, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 32: 147–160.
- Segel, L. A. (1970) Standing-gradient flows driven by active solute transport, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 29: 233–250.
- Segel, L. A. (1977) *Mathematics Applied to Continuum Mechanics*: MacMillan, New York.
- Segel, L. A. (1988) On the validity of the steady state assumption of enzyme kinetics, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 50: 579–593.
- Segel, L. A., I. Chet and Y. Henis (1977) A simple quantitative assay for bacterial motility, *Journal of General Microbiology*. 98: 329–337.
- Segel, L. A., A. Goldbeter, P. N. Devreotes and B. E. Knox (1986) A mechanism for exact sensory adaptation based on receptor modification, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 120: 151–179.
- Segel, L. A. and A. S. Perelson (1992) Plasmid copy number control: a case study of the quasi-steady state assumption, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 158: 481–494.
- Segel, L. A. and M. Slemrod (1989) The quasi-steady state assumption: a case study in perturbation, *SIAM Review*. 31: 446–447.
- Segev, I., J. Rinzel and G. M. Shepherd (1995) *The Theoretical Foundation of Dendritic Function*: MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.

- Sel'kov, E. E. (1968) Self-oscillations in glycolysis, *European Journal of Biochemistry*. 4: 79–86.
- Selgrade, J. F. and P. M. Schlosser (1999) A model for the production of ovarian hormones during the menstrual cycle, *Fields Institute Communications*. 21: 429–446.
- Selivanov, V. A., F. Ichas, E. L. Holmuhamedov, L. S. Jouaville, Y. V. Evtodienko and J. P. Mazat (1998) A model of mitochondrial  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release simulating the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations and spikes generated by mitochondria, *Biophysical Chemistry*. 72: 111–121.
- Sha, W., J. Moore, K. Chen, A. D. Lassaletta, C. S. Yi, J. J. Tyson and J. C. Sible (2003) Hysteresis drives cell-cycle transitions in *Xenopus laevis* egg extracts, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 100: 975–980.
- Shannon, T. R., F. Wang, J. Puglisi, C. Weber and D. M. Bers (2004) A mathematical treatment of integrated Ca dynamics within the ventricular myocyte, *Biophysical Journal*. 87: 3351–3371.
- Shapley, R. M. and C. Enroth-Cugell (1984) *Visual adaptation and retinal gain controls*. In: *Progress in Retinal Research*, Ed: N. Osborne and G. Chader, Pergamon Press, London.
- Sheetz, M. P. and J. A. Spudich (1983) Movement of myosin-coated fluorescent beads on actin cables in vitro, *Nature*. 303: 31–35.
- Shen, P. and R. Larter (1995) Chaos in intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations in a new model for non-excitable cells, *Cell Calcium*. 17: 225–232.
- Sherman, A. (1994) Anti-phase, asymmetric and aperiodic oscillations in excitable cells—I. coupled bursters, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 56: 811–835.
- Sherman, A. and J. Rinzel (1991) Model for synchronization of pancreatic  $\beta$ -cells by gap junction coupling, *Biophysical Journal*. 59: 547–559.
- Sherman, A., J. Rinzel and J. Keizer (1988) Emergence of organized bursting in clusters of pancreatic  $\beta$ -cells by channel sharing, *Biophysical Journal*. 54: 411–425.
- Shorten, P. R., A. B. Robson, A. E. McKinnon and D. J. Wall (2000) CRH-induced electrical activity and calcium signalling in pituitary corticotrophs, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 206: 395–405.
- Shorten, P. R. and D. J. Wall (2000) A Hodgkin–Huxley model exhibiting bursting oscillations, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 62: 695–715.
- Shotkin, L. M. (1974a) A model for LH levels in the recently-castrated adult rat and its comparison with experiment, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 43: 1–14.
- Shotkin, L. M. (1974b) A model for the effect of daily injections of gonadal hormones on LH levels in recently-castrated adult rats and its comparison with experiment, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 43: 15–28.
- Shuai, J. W. and P. Jung (2002a) Optimal intracellular calcium signaling, *Physical Review Letters*. 88: 068102.
- Shuai, J. W. and P. Jung (2002b) Stochastic properties of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release of inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate receptor clusters, *Biophysical Journal*. 83: 87–97.
- Shuai, J. W. and P. Jung (2003) Optimal ion channel clustering for intracellular calcium signaling, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 100: 506–510.
- Shuttleworth, T. J. (1999) What drives calcium entry during  $[\text{Ca}^{2+}]_i$  oscillations?—challenging the capacitative model, *Cell Calcium*. 25: 237–246.
- Siebert, W. M. (1974) Ranke revisited—a simple short-wave cochlear model, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 56: 594–600.
- Simon, S. M., C. S. Peskin and G. F. Oster (1992) What drives the translocation of proteins?, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 89: 3770–3774.
- Sinha, S. (1988) Theoretical study of tryptophan operon: application in microbial technology, *Biotechnology and Bioengineering*. 31: 117–124.
- Smart, J. L. and J. A. McCammon (1998) Analysis of synaptic transmission in the neuromuscular junction using a continuum finite element model, *Biophysical Journal*. 75: 1679–1688.
- Smith, G. D. (1996) Analytical steady-state solution to the rapid buffering approximation near an open  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel, *Biophysical Journal*. 71: 3064–3072.
- Smith, G. D., L. Dai, R. M. Miura and A. Sherman (2001) Asymptotic analysis of buffered calcium diffusion near a point source, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 61: 1816–1838.
- Smith, G. D., J. E. Keizer, M. D. Stern, W. J. Lederer and H. Cheng (1998) A simple numerical model of calcium spark formation and detection in cardiac myocytes, *Biophysical Journal*. 75: 15–32.
- Smith, G. D., J. E. Keizer, M. D. Stern, W. J. Lederer and H. Cheng (1998) A simple numerical model of calcium spark formation

## REFERENCES

- and detection in cardiac myocytes, *Biophysical Journal*. 75: 15–32.
- Smith, G. D., J. Wagner and J. Keizer (1996) Validity of the rapid buffering approximation near a point source of calcium ions, *Biophysical Journal*. 70: 2527–2539.
- Smith, J. C., A. P. Abdala, H. Koizumi, I. A. Rybak and J. F. Paton (2007) Spatial and functional architecture of the Mammalian brain stem respiratory network: a hierarchy of three oscillatory mechanisms, *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 98: 3370–3387.
- Smith, J. C., H. H. Ellenberger, K. Ballanyi, D. W. Richter and J. L. Feldman (1991) Pre-Bötziinger complex: a brainstem region that may generate respiratory rhythm in mammals, *Science*. 254: 726–729.
- Smith, J. M. and R. J. Cohen (1984) Simple finite element model accounts for wide range of cardiac dysrhythmias, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 81: 233–237.
- Smith, N. P. and E. J. Crampin (2004) Development of models of active ion transport for whole-cell modelling: cardiac sodium–potassium pump as a case study, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 85: 387–405.
- Smith, W. R. (1980) Hypothalamic regulation of pituitary secretion of luteinizing hormone—II. Feedback control of gonadotropin secretion, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 42: 57–78.
- Smith, W. R. (1983) Qualitative mathematical models of endocrine systems, *American Journal of Physiology — Regulatory, Integrative and Comparative Physiology*. 245: R473–477.
- Smolen, P. (1995) A model for glycolytic oscillations based on skeletal muscle phosphofructokinase kinetics, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 174: 137–148.
- Smolen, P. and J. Keizer (1992) Slow voltage inactivation of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  currents and bursting mechanisms for the mouse pancreatic  $\beta$ -cell, *Journal of Membrane Biology*. 127: 9–19.
- Smoller, J. (1994) *Shock Waves and Reaction-Diffusion Equations (Second Edition)*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Sneyd, J., Ed. (2005) *Tutorials in Mathematical Biosciences II: Mathematical Modeling of Calcium Dynamics and Signal Transduction*. Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Sneyd, J. and A. Atri (1993) Curvature dependence of a model for calcium wave propagation, *Physica D*. 65: 365–372.
- Sneyd, J., A. C. Charles and M. J. Sanderson (1994) A model for the propagation of intercellular calcium waves, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 266: C293–302.
- Sneyd, J., P. D. Dale and A. Duffy (1998) Traveling waves in buffered systems: applications to calcium waves, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 58: 1178–1192.
- Sneyd, J. and J. F. Dufour (2002) A dynamic model of the type-2 inositol trisphosphate receptor, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 99: 2398–2403.
- Sneyd, J. and M. Falcke (2005) Models of the inositol trisphosphate receptor, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 89: 207–245.
- Sneyd, J., M. Falcke, J. F. Dufour and C. Fox (2004a) A comparison of three models of the inositol trisphosphate receptor, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 85: 121–140.
- Sneyd, J., J. Keizer and M. J. Sanderson (1995b) Mechanisms of calcium oscillations and waves: a quantitative analysis, *FASEB Journal*. 9: 1463–1472.
- Sneyd, J. and J. Sherratt (1997) On the propagation of calcium waves in an inhomogeneous medium, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 57: 73–94.
- Sneyd, J. and D. Tranchina (1989) Phototransduction in cones: an inverse problem in enzyme kinetics, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology*. 51: 749–784.
- Sneyd, J., K. Tsaneva-Atanasova, V. Reznikov, Y. Bai, M. J. Sanderson and D. I. Yule (2006) A method for determining the dependence of calcium oscillations on inositol trisphosphate oscillations, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 103: 1675–1680.
- Sneyd, J., K. Tsaneva-Atanasova, D. I. Yule, J. L. Thompson and T. J. Shuttleworth (2004b) Control of calcium oscillations by membrane fluxes, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 101: 1392–1396.
- Sneyd, J., B. Wetton, A. C. Charles and M. J. Sanderson (1995a) Intercellular calcium waves mediated by diffusion of inositol trisphosphate: a two-dimensional model, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 268: C1537–1545.
- Sneyd, J., M. Wilkins, A. Strahonja and M. J. Sanderson (1998) Calcium waves and oscillations driven by an intercellular gradient of inositol (1,4,5)-trisphosphate, *Biophysical Chemistry*. 72: 101–109.
- Sobie, E. A., K. W. Dilly, J. dos Santos Cruz, W. J. Lederer and M. S. Jafri (2002)

- Termination of cardiac  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sparks: an investigative mathematical model of calcium-induced calcium release, *Biophysical Journal*. 83: 59–78.
- Soeller, C. and M. B. Cannell (1997) Numerical simulation of local calcium movements during L-type calcium channel gating in the cardiac diad, *Biophysical Journal*. 73: 97–111.
- Soeller, C. and M. B. Cannell (2002a) Estimation of the sarcoplasmic reticulum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release flux underlying  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  sparks, *Biophysical Journal*. 82: 2396–2414.
- Soeller, C. and M. B. Cannell (2002b) A Monte Carlo model of ryanodine receptor gating in the diadic cleft of cardiac muscle, *Biophysical Journal*. 82: 76a.
- Soeller, C. and M. B. Cannell (2004) Analysing cardiac excitation–contraction coupling with mathematical models of local control, *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*. 85: 141–162.
- Spach, M. S., W. T. Miller, 3rd, D. B. Geselowitz, R. C. Barr, J. M. Kootsey and E. A. Johnson (1981) The discontinuous nature of propagation in normal canine cardiac muscle. Evidence for recurrent discontinuities of intracellular resistance that affect the membrane currents, *Circulation Research*. 48: 39–54.
- Spilmann, L. and J. S. Werner, Eds. (1990) *Visual Perception: The Neurophysiological Foundations*: Academic Press, London.
- Spitzer, V., M. J. Ackerman, A. L. Scherzinger and R. M. Whitlock (1996) The visible human male: a technical report, *Journal of the American Medical Informatics Association*. 3: 118–130.
- Spudich, J. A., S. J. Kron and M. P. Sheetz (1985) Movement of myosin-coated beads on oriented filaments reconstituted from purified actin, *Nature*. 315: 584–586.
- Stakgold, I. (1998) *Green's Functions and Boundary Value Problems*: Wiley, New York.
- Starmer, C. F., A. R. Lancaster, A. A. Lastra and A. O. Grant (1992) Cardiac instability amplified by use-dependent Na channel blockade, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 262: H1305–1310.
- Starmer, C. F., A. A. Lastra, V. V. Nesterenko and A. O. Grant (1991) Proarrhythmic response to sodium channel blockade. Theoretical model and numerical experiments, *Circulation*. 84: 1364–1377.
- Steele, C. R. (1974) Behavior of the basilar membrane with pure-tone excitation, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 55: 148–162.
- Steele, C. R. and L. Tabor (1979a) Comparison of WKB and finite difference calculations for a two-dimensional cochlear model, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 65: 1001–1006.
- Steele, C. R. and L. Tabor (1979b) Comparison of WKB calculations and experimental results for three-dimensional cochlear models, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 65: 1007–1018.
- Stephenson, J. L. (1972) Concentration of the urine in a central core model of the counterflow system, *Kidney International*. 2: 85–94.
- Stephenson, J. L. (1992) *Urinary concentration and dilution: models*. In: *Handbook of Physiology*. Section 8: Renal Physiology, Ed: E. E. Windhager, American Physiological Society, Bethesda, Maryland.
- Stern, M. D. (1992) Buffering of calcium in the vicinity of a channel pore, *Cell Calcium*. 13: 183–192.
- Stern, M. D. (1992) Theory of excitation–contraction coupling in cardiac muscle, *Biophysical Journal*. 63: 497–517.
- Stern, M. D., G. Pizarro and E. Ríos (1997) Local control model of excitation–contraction coupling in skeletal muscle, *Journal of General Physiology*. 110: 415–440.
- Stern, M. D., L. S. Song, H. Cheng, J. S. Sham, H. T. Yang, K. R. Boheler and E. Ríos (1999) Local control models of cardiac excitation–contraction coupling. A possible role for allosteric interactions between ryanodine receptors, *Journal of General Physiology*. 113: 469–489.
- Stiles, J. R. and T. M. Bartol (2000) *Monte Carlo methods for simulating realistic synaptic microphysiology using MCell*. In: *Computational Neuroscience: Realistic Modeling for Experimentalists*, Ed: E. D. Schutter, CRC Press, New York.
- Stojilkovic, S. S., J. Reinhart and K. J. Catt (1994) Gonadotropin-releasing hormone receptors: structure and signal transduction pathways, *Endocrine Reviews*. 15: 462–499.
- Stoker, J. J. (1950) *Nonlinear Vibrations*: Interscience, New York.
- Stokes, W. (1854) *The Diseases of the Heart and Aorta*: Hodges and Smith, Dublin.

- Strang, G. (1986) *Introduction to Applied Mathematics*: Wellesley-Cambridge Press, Wellesley, MA.
- Streeter, D. D. J. (1979) *Gross morphology and fiber geometry of the heart*. In: *Handbook of Physiology. Section 2: The Cardiovascular System, Volume I: The Heart*, Ed: American Physiological Society, Bethesda, MD.
- Strieter, J., J. L. Stephenson, L. G. Palmer and A. M. Weinstein (1990) Volume-activated chloride permeability can mediate cell volume regulation in a mathematical model of a tight epithelium, *Journal of General Physiology*. 96: 319–344.
- Strogatz, S. H. (1994) *Nonlinear Dynamics and Chaos*: Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA.
- Stryer, L. (1986) Cyclic GMP cascade of vision, *Annual Review of Neuroscience*. 9: 87–119.
- Stryer, L. (1988) *Biochemistry (Third Edition)*: W.H. Freeman, New York.
- Sturis, J., K. S. Polonsky, E. Mosekilde and E. V. Cauter (1991) Computer model for mechanisms underlying ultradian oscillations of insulin and glucose, *American Journal of Physiology — Endocrinology and Metabolism*. 260: E801–809.
- Sturis, J., A. J. Scheen, R. Leproult, K. S. Polonsky and E. van Cauter (1995) 24-hour glucose profiles during continuous or oscillatory insulin infusion. Demonstration of the functional significance of ultradian insulin oscillations, *Journal of Clinical Investigation*. 95: 1464–1471.
- Sun, X. P., N. Callamaras, J. S. Marchant and I. Parker (1998) A continuum of InsP<sub>3</sub>-mediated elementary Ca<sup>2+</sup> signalling events in Xenopus oocytes, *Journal of Physiology*. 509: 67–80.
- Sveiczer, A., A. Csikasz-Nagy, B. Gyorffy, J. J. Tyson and B. Novak (2000) Modeling the fission yeast cell cycle: quantized cycle times in *wee1*<sup>-</sup> *cdc25Δ* mutant cells, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 97: 7865–7870.
- Swillens, S., P. Champeil, L. Combettes and G. Dupont (1998) Stochastic simulation of a single inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate-sensitive Ca<sup>2+</sup> channel reveals repetitive openings during “blip-like” Ca<sup>2+</sup> transients, *Cell Calcium*. 23: 291–302.
- Swillens, S., G. Dupont, L. Combettes and P. Champeil (1999) From calcium blips to calcium puffs: theoretical analysis of the requirements for interchannel communication, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 96: 13750–13755.
- Swillens, S. and D. Mercan (1990) Computer simulation of a cytosolic calcium oscillator, *Biochemical Journal*. 271: 835–838.
- Taccardi, B., R. L. Lux and P. R. Erschler (1992) Effect of myocardial fiber direction on 3-dimensional shape of excitation wavefront and associated potential distributions in ventricular walls, *Circulation*. 86 (Suppl. I): 752.
- Tai, K., S. D. Bond, H. R. MacMillan, N. A. Baker, M. J. Holst and J. A. McCammon (2003) Finite element simulations of acetylcholine diffusion in neuromuscular junctions, *Biophysical Journal*. 84: 2234–2241.
- Takaki, M. (2003) Gut pacemaker cells: the interstitial cells of Cajal (ICC), *Journal of Smooth Muscle Research*. 39: 137–161.
- Tameyasu, T. (2002) Simulation of Ca<sup>2+</sup> release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum with three-dimensional sarcomere model in cardiac muscle, *Japanese Journal of Physiology*. 52: 361–369.
- Tamura, T., K. Nakatani and K.-W. Yau (1991) Calcium feedback and sensitivity regulation in primate rods, *Journal of General Physiology*. 98: 95–130.
- Tang, Y., T. Schlumpberger, T. Kim, M. Lueker and R. S. Zucker (2000) Effects of mobile buffers on facilitation: experimental and computational studies, *Biophysical Journal*. 78: 2735–2751.
- Tang, Y. and J. L. Stephenson (1996) Calcium dynamics and homeostasis in a mathematical model of the principal cell of the cortical collecting tubule, *Journal of General Physiology*. 107: 207–230.
- Tang, Y., J. L. Stephenson and H. G. Othmer (1996) Simplification and analysis of models of calcium dynamics based on IP<sub>3</sub>-sensitive calcium channel kinetics, *Biophysical Journal*. 70: 246–263.
- Taniguchi, K., S. Kaya, K. Abe and S. Mardh (2001) The oligomeric nature of Na/K-transport ATPase, *Journal of Biochemistry*. 129: 335–342.
- Tawhai, M. H. and K. S. Burrowes (2003) Developing integrative computational models of pulmonary structure, *Anatomical record Part B, New anatomist*. 275: 207–218.
- Tawhai, M. H., P. Hunter, J. Tscharren, J. Reinhardt, G. McLennan and E. A. Hoffman (2004) CT-based geometry analysis and finite element models of the human and ovine bronchial tree, *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 97: 2310–2321.

- Tawhai, M. H., M. P. Nash and E. A. Hoffman (2006) An imaging-based computational approach to model ventilation distribution and soft-tissue deformation in the ovine lung, *Academic Radiology*. 13: 113–120.
- Taylor, C. W. (1998) Inositol trisphosphate receptors:  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -modulated intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*. 1436: 19–33.
- Taylor, W. R., S. He, W. R. Levick and D. I. Vaney (2000) Dendritic computation of direction selectivity by retinal ganglion cells, *Science*. 289: 2347–2350.
- ten Tusscher, K. H., D. Noble, P. J. Noble and A. V. Panfilov (2004) A model for human ventricular tissue, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 286: H1573–1589.
- Thomas, A. P., G. S. Bird, G. Hajnoczky, L. D. Robb-Gaspers and J. W. Putney, Jr. (1996) Spatial and temporal aspects of cellular calcium signaling, *FASEB Journal*. 10: 1505–1517.
- Thomas, D., P. Lipp, S. C. Tovey, M. J. Berridge, W. Li, R. Y. Tsien and M. D. Bootman (2000) Microscopic properties of elementary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release sites in non-excitable cells, *Current Biology*. 10: 8–15.
- Tolić, I. M., E. Mosekilde and J. Sturis (2000) Modeling the insulin–glucose feedback system: the significance of pulsatile insulin secretion, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 207: 361–375.
- Topor, Z. L., M. Pawlicki and J. E. Remmers (2004) A computational model of the human respiratory control system: responses to hypoxia and hypercapnia, *Annals of Biomedical Engineering*. 32: 1530–1545.
- Tordjmann, T., B. Berthon, M. Claret and L. Combettes (1997) Coordinated intercellular calcium waves induced by noradrenaline in rat hepatocytes: dual control by gap junction permeability and agonist, *Embo Journal*. 16: 5398–5407.
- Tordjmann, T., B. Berthon, E. Jacquemin, C. Clair, N. Stelly, G. Guillon, M. Claret and L. Combettes (1998) Receptor-oriented intercellular calcium waves evoked by vasopressin in rat hepatocytes, *Embo Journal*. 17: 4695–4703.
- Torre, V., S. Forti, A. Menini and M. Campani (1990) Model of phototransduction in retinal rods, *Cold Spring Harbor Symposia in Quantitative Biology*. 55: 563–573.
- Tosteson, D. C. and J. F. Hoffman (1960) Regulation of cell volume by active cation transport in high and low potassium sheep red cells, *Journal of General Physiology*. 44: 169–194.
- Tranchina, D., J. Gordon and R. Shapley (1984) Retinal light adaptation—evidence for a feedback mechanism, *Nature*. 310: 314–316.
- Tranchina, D., J. Sneyd and I. D. Cadena (1991) Light adaptation in turtle cones: testing and analysis of a model for phototransduction, *Biophysical Journal*. 60: 217–237.
- Tranquillo, R. and D. Lauffenberger (1987) Stochastic models of leukocyte chemosensory movement, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 25: 229–262.
- Traube, L. (1865) Ueber periodische thatigkeits-aeußerungen des vasomotorischen und hemmungs-nervencentrums, *Medizin Wissenschaft*. 56: 881–885.
- Troy, J. B. and T. Shou (2002) The receptive fields of cat retinal ganglion cells in physiological and pathological states: where we are after half a century of research, *Progress in Retinal and Eye Research*. 21: 263–302.
- Troy, W. C. (1976) Bifurcation phenomena in FitzHugh's nerve conduction equations, *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications*. 54: 678–690.
- Troy, W. C. (1978) The bifurcation of periodic solutions in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, *Quarterly of Applied Mathematics*. 36: 73–83.
- Tsai, J.-C. and J. Sneyd (2005) Existence and stability of traveling waves in buffered systems, *SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics*. 66: 1675–1680.
- Tsai, J.-C. and J. Sneyd (2007a) Are buffers boring?: uniqueness and asymptotical stability of traveling wave fronts in the buffered bistable system, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 54: 513–553.
- Tsai, J. C. and J. Sneyd (2007b) Traveling waves in the discrete fast buffered bistable system, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 55: 605–652.
- Tsaneva-Atanasova, K., D. I. Yule and J. Sneyd (2005) Calcium oscillations in a triplet of pancreatic acinar cells, *Biophysical Journal*. 88: 1535–1551.
- Tsaneva-Atanasova, K., C. L. Zimliki, R. Bertram and A. Sherman (2006) Diffusion of calcium and metabolites in pancreatic islets: killing oscillations with a pitchfork, *Biophysical Journal*. 90: 3434–3446.
- Tse, A., F. W. Tse, W. Almers and B. Hille (1993) Rhythmic exocytosis stimulated by GnRH-induced calcium oscillations in rat gonadotropes, *Science*. 260: 82–84.

## REFERENCES

- Tuckwell, H. C. (1988) *Introduction to Theoretical Neurobiology*: Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Tuckwell, H. C. and R. M. Miura (1978) A mathematical model for spreading cortical depression, *Biophysical Journal*. 23: 257–276.
- Tung, L. (1978) *A bi-domain model for describing ischemic myocardial D-C potentials. Ph.D. Thesis*: MIT, Cambridge, MA.
- Tyson, J. J., A. Csikasz-Nagy and B. Novak (2002) The dynamics of cell cycle regulation, *Bioessays*. 24: 1095–1109.
- Tyson, J. J. and P. C. Fife (1980) Target patterns in a realistic model of the Belousov-Zhabotinskii reaction, *Journal of Chemical Physics*. 73: 2224–2237.
- Tyson, J. J., C. I. Hong, C. D. Thron and B. Novak (1999) A simple model of circadian rhythms based on dimerization and proteolysis of PER and TIM, *Biophysical Journal*. 77: 2411–2417.
- Tyson, J. J. and J. P. Keener (1988) Singular perturbation theory of traveling waves in excitable media, *Physica D*. 32: 327–361.
- Tyson, J. J. and B. Novak (2001) Regulation of the eukaryotic cell cycle: molecular antagonism, hysteresis, and irreversible transitions, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 210: 249–263.
- Tyson, J. J. and H. G. Othmer (1978) The dynamics of feedback control circuits in biochemical pathways, *Progress in Theoretical Biology*. 5: 1–62.
- Ullah, G., P. Jung and A. H. Cornell-Bell (2006) Anti-phase calcium oscillations in astrocytes via inositol (1,4,5)-trisphosphate regeneration, *Cell Calcium*. 39: 197–208.
- Urban, B. W. and S. B. Hladky (1979) Ion transport in the simplest single file pore, *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*. 554: 410–429.
- Ursino, M. (1998) Interaction between carotid baroregulation and the pulsating heart: a mathematical model, *American Journal of Physiology — Heart and Circulatory Physiology*. 275: H1733–1747.
- Ursino, M. (1999) A mathematical model of the carotid baroregulation in pulsating conditions, *IEEE Transactions in Biomedical Engineering*. 46: 382–392.
- Ussing, H. H. (1949) The distinction by means of tracers between active transport and diffusion, *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica*. 19: 43–56.
- Ussing, H. H. (1982) Volume regulation of frog skin epithelium, *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica*. 114: 363–369.
- Uyeda, T. Q., S. J. Kron and J. A. Spudich (1990) Myosin step size. Estimation from slow sliding movement of actin over low densities of heavy meromyosin, *Journal of Molecular Biology*. 214: 699–710.
- van der Pol, B. and J. van der Mark (1928) The heartbeat considered as a relaxation oscillation, and an electrical model of the heart, *Philosophical Magazine*. 6: 763–775.
- van Kampen, N. G. (2007) *Stochastic Processes in Physics and Chemistry (Third Edition)*: Elsevier, Amsterdam.
- van Milligen, B. P., P. D. Bons, B. A. Carreras and R. Sanchez (2006) On the applicability of Fick's law to diffusion in inhomogeneous systems, *European Journal of Physics*. 26: 913–925.
- Vandenberg, C. A. and F. Bezanilla (1991) A sodium channel gating model based on single channel, macroscopic ionic, and gating currents in the squid giant axon, *Biophysical Journal*. 60: 1511–1533.
- Vaney, D. I. and W. R. Taylor (2002) Direction selectivity in the retina, *Current Opinion in Neurobiology*. 12: 405–410.
- Vesce, S., P. Bezzi and A. Volterra (1999) The active role of astrocytes in synaptic transmission, *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences*. 56: 991–1000.
- Vielle, B. (2005) Mathematical analysis of Mayer waves, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 50: 595–606.
- Vodopick, H., E. M. Rupp, C. L. Edwards, F. A. Goswitz and J. J. Beauchamp (1972) Spontaneous cyclic leukocytosis and thrombocytosis in chronic granulocytic leukemia, *New England Journal of Medicine*. 286: 284–290.
- von Békésy, V. (1960) *Experiments in Hearing*: McGraw-Hill, New York. Reprinted in 1989 by the Acoustical Society of America.
- von Euler, C. (1980) Central pattern generation during breathing, *Trends in Neuroscience*. 3: 275–277.
- Wagner, J. and J. Keizer (1994) Effects of rapid buffers on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffusion and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, *Biophysical Journal*. 67: 447–456.
- Wagner, J., Y.-X. Li, J. Pearson and J. Keizer (1998) Simulation of the fertilization  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave in *Xenopus laevis* eggs, *Biophysical Journal*. 75: 2088–2097.
- Waldo, A. L., A. J. Camm, et al. (1996) Effect of d-sotalol on mortality in patients with left ventricular dysfunction after recent and remote myocardial infarction. The SWORD

- Investigators. Survival With Oral d-Sotalol, *Lancet.* 348: 7–12.
- Wang, H. and G. Oster (1998) Energy transduction in the F1 motor of ATP synthase, *Nature.* 396: 279–282.
- Wang, X.-J. and J. Rinzel (1995) *Oscillatory and bursting properties of neurons.* In: The Handbook of Brain Theory and Neural Networks, Ed: M. Arbib, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Wang, I., A.Z. Politi, N. Tania, Y. Bai, M.J. Sanderson and J. Sneyd (2008) A mathematical model of airway and pulmonary arteriole smooth muscle, *Biophysical Journal.* 94: 2053–2064.
- Watanabe, M., N. F. Otani and R. F. Gilmour, Jr. (1995) Biphasic restitution of action potential duration and complex dynamics in ventricular myocardium, *Circulation Research.* 76: 915–921.
- Watanabe, M. A., F. H. Fenton, S. J. Evans, H. M. Hastings and A. Karma (2001) Mechanisms for discordant alternans, *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology.* 12: 196–206.
- Waterman, M. S. (1995) *Introduction to Computational Biology: Maps, Sequences, and Genomes.* Chapman and Hall, Boca Raton, FL.
- Webb, S. E. and A. L. Miller (2003) Calcium signalling during embryonic development, *Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology.* 4: 539–551.
- Weber, E. H. (1834) *De pulsu, respiratione, auditu et tactu annotationes anatomicae, et physiologicae. Author's summary: Ueber den Tastzinn,* Arch. Anat. u. Physiol., 1835, 152: Leipzig.
- Weinstein, A. (1992) Analysis of volume regulation in an epithelial cell model, *Bulletin of Mathematical Biology.* 54: 537–561.
- Weinstein, A. (1996) Coupling of entry to exit by peritubular K<sup>+</sup> permeability in a mathematical model of rat proximal tubule, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology.* 271: F158–168.
- Weinstein, A. M. (1994) Mathematical models of tubular transport, *Annual Review of Physiology.* 56: 691–709.
- Weinstein, A. M. (1998a) A mathematical model of the inner medullary collecting duct of the rat: pathways for Na and K transport, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology.* 274: F841–855.
- Weinstein, A. M. (1998b) A mathematical model of the inner medullary collecting duct of the rat: acid/base transport, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology.* 274: F856–867.
- Weinstein, A. M. (2000) A mathematical model of the outer medullary collecting duct of the rat, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology.* 279: F24–45.
- Weinstein, A. M. (2003) Mathematical models of renal fluid and electrolyte transport: acknowledging our uncertainty, *American Journal of Physiology — Renal, Fluid and Electrolyte Physiology.* 284: F871–884.
- Weinstein, A. M. and J. L. Stephenson (1981) Coupled water transport in standing gradient models of the lateral intercellular space, *Biophysical Journal.* 35: 167–191.
- Weiss, J. N., A. Karma, Y. Shiferaw, P. S. Chen, A. Garfinkel and Z. Qu (2006) From pulsus to pulseless: the saga of cardiac alternans, *Circulation Research.* 98: 1244–1253.
- Wenckebach, K. F. (1904) *Arrhythmia of the Heart: a Physiological and Clinical Study.* Green, Edinburgh.
- West, J. B. (1985) *Ventilation/Blood Flow and Gas Exchange.* Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford.
- West, J. B. (2004) Understanding pulmonary gas exchange: ventilation–perfusion relationships, *American Journal of Physiology — Lung, Cellular and Molecular Physiology.* 287: L1071–1072.
- Wetsel, W. C., M. M. Valenca, I. Merchenthaler, Z. Liposits, F. J. Lopez, R. I. Weiner, P. L. Mellon and A. Negro-Vilar (1992) Intrinsic pulsatile secretory activity of immortalized luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone-secreting neurons, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA.* 89: 4149–4153.
- White, D. C. S. and J. Thorson (1975) *The Kinetics of Muscle Contraction.* Pergamon Press. Originally published in Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology, volume 27, 1973, Oxford, New York.
- White, J. B., G. P. Walcott, A. E. Pollard and R. E. Ideker (1998) Myocardial discontinuities: a substrate for producing virtual electrodes that directly excite the myocardium by shocks, *Circulation.* 97: 1738–1745.
- Whiteley, J. P., D. J. Gavaghan and C. E. Hahn (2001) Modelling inert gas exchange in tissue and mixed-venous blood return to the lungs, *Journal of Theoretical Biology.* 209: 431–443.
- Whiteley, J. P., D. J. Gavaghan and C. E. Hahn (2002) Mathematical modelling of oxygen

- transport to tissue, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 44: 503–522.
- Whiteley, J. P., D. J. Gavaghan and C. E. Hahn (2003a) Periodic breathing induced by arterial oxygen partial pressure oscillations, *Mathematical Medicine and Biology*. 20: 205–224.
- Whiteley, J. P., D. J. Gavaghan and C. E. Hahn (2003b) Mathematical modelling of pulmonary gas transport, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 47: 79–99.
- Whitham, G. B. (1974) *Linear and Nonlinear Waves*: Wiley-Interscience, New York.
- Whitlock, G. G. and T. D. Lamb (1999) Variability in the time course of single photon responses from toad rods: termination of rhodopsin's activity, *Neuron*. 23: 337–351.
- Wichmann, H. E., M. Loeffler and S. Schmitz (1988) A concept of hemopoietic regulation and its biomathematical realization, *Blood Cells*. 14: 411–429.
- Wiener, N. and A. Rosenblueth (1946) The mathematical formulation of the problem of conduction of impulses in a network of connected excitable elements, specifically in cardiac muscle, *Archivos del Instituto de Cardiología de Mexico*. 16: 205–265.
- Wier, W. G., T. M. Egan, J. R. Lopez-Lopez and C. W. Balke (1994) Local control of excitation–contraction coupling in rat heart cells, *Journal of Physiology*. 474: 463–471.
- Wierschem, K. and R. Bertram (2004) Complex bursting in pancreatic islets: a potential glycolytic mechanism, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 228: 513–521.
- Wiggins, S. (2003) *Introduction to Applied Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Chaos*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Wikswo, J. P., Jr., S. F. Lin and R. A. Abbas (1995) Virtual electrodes in cardiac tissue: a common mechanism for anodal and cathodal stimulation, *Biophysical Journal*. 69: 2195–2210.
- Wildt, L., A. Häusler, G. Marshall, J. S. Hutchison, T. M. Plant, P. E. Belchetz and E. Knobil (1981) Frequency and amplitude of gonadotropin-releasing hormone stimulation and gonadotropin secretion in the Rhesus monkey, *Endocrinology*. 109: 376–385.
- Willems, G. M., T. Lindhout, W. T. Hermens and H. C. Hemker (1991) Simulation model for thrombin generation in plasma, *Haemostasis*. 21: 197–207.
- Williams, M. M. (1990) *Hematology*: McGraw-Hill, New York.
- Winfree, A. T. (1967) Biological rhythms and the behavior of populations of coupled oscillators, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 16: 15–42.
- Winfree, A. T. (1972) Spiral waves of chemical activity, *Science*. 175: 634–636.
- Winfree, A. T. (1973) Scroll-shaped waves of chemical activity in three dimensions, *Science*. 181: 937–939.
- Winfree, A. T. (1974) Rotating chemical reactions, *Scientific American*. 230: 82–95.
- Winfree, A. T. (1980) *The Geometry of Biological Time*: Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Winfree, A. T. (1987) *When Time Breaks Down*: Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.
- Winfree, A. T. (1991) Varieties of spiral wave behavior: an experimentalist's approach to the theory of excitable media, *Chaos*. 1: 303–334.
- Winfree, A. T. and S. H. Strogatz (1983a) Singular filaments organize chemical waves in three dimensions: 1. Geometrically simple waves, *Physica D*. 8: 35–49.
- Winfree, A. T. and S. H. Strogatz (1983b) Singular filaments organize chemical waves in three dimensions: 2. twisted waves, *Physica D*. 9: 65–80.
- Winfree, A. T. and S. H. Strogatz (1983c) Singular filaments organize chemical waves in three dimensions: 3. knotted waves, *Physica D*. 9: 333–345.
- Winfree, A. T. and S. H. Strogatz (1984) Singular filaments organize chemical waves in three dimensions: 4. wave taxonomy, *Physica D*. 13: 221–233.
- Winslow, R. L., R. Hinch and J. L. Greenstein (2005) *Mechanisms and models of cardiac excitation–contraction coupling*. In: *Tutorials in Mathematical Biosciences II: Mathematical Modeling of Calcium Dynamics and Signal Transduction*, Ed: J. Sneyd, Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Wittenberg, J. B. (1966) The molecular mechanism of haemoglobin-facilitated oxygen diffusion, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 241: 104–114.
- Wong, P., S. Gladney and J. D. Keasling (1997) Mathematical model of the lac operon: inducer exclusion, catabolite repression, and diauxic growth on glucose and lactose, *Biotechnology Progress*. 13: 132–143.
- Woodbury, J. W. (1971) *Eyring rate theory model of the current–voltage relationship of ion channels in excitable membranes*. In: *Chemical Dynamics: Papers in Honor of Henry Eyring*, Ed: J. Hirschfelder, John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York.

- Wyman, J. (1966) Facilitated diffusion and the possible role of myoglobin as a transport mechanism, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 241: 115–121.
- Wyman, R. J. (1977) Neural generation of breathing rhythm, *Annual Review of Physiology*. 39: 417–448.
- Yamada, W. M. and R. S. Zucker (1992) Time course of transmitter release calculated from simulations of a calcium diffusion model, *Biophysical Journal*. 61: 671–682.
- Yanagida, E. (1985) Stability of fast travelling pulse solutions of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equation, *Journal of Mathematical Biology*. 22: 81–104.
- Yanagihara, K., A. Noma and H. Irisawa (1980) Reconstruction of sino-atrial node pacemaker potential based on voltage clamp experiments, *Japanese Journal of Physiology*. 30: 841–857.
- Yao, Y., J. Choi and I. Parker (1995) Quantal puffs of intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  evoked by inositol trisphosphate in *Xenopus* oocytes, *Journal of Physiology*. 482: 533–553.
- Yates, A., R. Callard and J. Stark (2004) Combining cytokine signalling with T-bet and GATA-3 regulation in Th1 and Th2 differentiation: a model for cellular decision-making, *Journal of Theoretical Biology*. 231: 181–196.
- Yehia, A. R., D. Jeandupeux, F. Alonso and M. R. Guevara (1999) Hysteresis and bistability in the direct transition from 1:1 to 2:1 rhythm in periodically driven single ventricular cells, *Chaos*. 9: 916–931.
- Yildirim, N. and M. C. Mackey (2003) Feedback regulation in the lactose operon: a mathematical modeling study and comparison with experimental data, *Biophysical Journal*. 84: 2841–2851.
- Yildirim, N., M. Santillán, D. Horike and M. C. Mackey (2004) Dynamics and bistability in a reduced model of the lac operon, *Chaos*. 14: 279–292.
- Young, K. W., M. S. Nash, R. A. Challiss and S. R. Nahorski (2003) Role of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  feedback on single cell inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate oscillations mediated by G-protein-coupled receptors, *Journal of Biological Chemistry*. 278: 20753–20760.
- Young, R. C. (1997) A computer model of uterine contractions based on action potential propagation and intercellular calcium waves, *Obstetrics and Gynecology*. 89: 604–608.
- Young, R. C. and R. O. Hession (1997) Paracrine and intracellular signaling mechanisms of calcium waves in cultured human uterine myocytes, *Obstetrics and Gynecology*. 90: 928–932.
- Yule, D. I., E. Stuenkel and J. A. Williams (1996) Intercellular calcium waves in rat pancreatic acini: mechanism of transmission, *American Journal of Physiology — Cell Physiology*. 271: C1285–1294.
- Zahradníkova, A. and I. Zahradník (1996) A minimal gating model for the cardiac calcium release channel, *Biophysical Journal*. 71: 2996–3012.
- Zarnitsina, V. I., A. V. Pokhilko and F. I. Ataullakhhanov (1996a) A mathematical model for the spatio-temporal dynamics of intrinsic pathway of blood coagulation. I. The model description, *Thrombosis Research*. 84: 225–236.
- Zarnitsina, V. I., A. V. Pokhilko and F. I. Ataullakhhanov (1996b) A mathematical model for the spatio-temporal dynamics of intrinsic pathway of blood coagulation. II. Results, *Thrombosis Research*. 84: 333–344.
- Zeuthen, T. (2000) Molecular water pumps, *Reviews of Physiology, Biochemistry and Pharmacology*. 141: 97–151.
- Zhang, M., P. Goforth, R. Bertram, A. Sherman and L. Satin (2003) The  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics of isolated mouse beta-cells and islets: implications for mathematical models, *Biophysical Journal*. 84: 2852–2870.
- Zhou, X., S. B. Knisley, W. M. Smith, D. Rollins, A. E. Pollard and R. E. Ideker (1998) Spatial changes in the transmembrane potential during extracellular electric stimulation, *Circulation Research*. 83: 1003–1014.
- Zhou, Z. and E. Neher (1993) Mobile and immobile calcium buffers in bovine adrenal chromaffin cells, *Journal of Physiology*. 469: 245–273.
- Zigmond, S. H. (1977) Ability of polymorphonuclear leukocytes to orient in gradients of chemotactic factors, *Journal of Cell Biology*. 75: 606–616.
- Zigmond, S. H., H. I. Levitsky and B. J. Kreel (1981) Cell polarity: an examination of its behavioral expression and its consequences for polymorphonuclear leukocyte chemotaxis, *Journal of Cell Biology*. 89: 585–592.
- Zinner, B. (1992) Existence of traveling wavefront solutions for the discrete Nagumo equation, *Journal of Differential Equations*. 96: 1–27.
- Zipes, D. P. and J. Jalife (1995) *Cardiac Electrophysiology; From Cell to Bedside*

- (Second Edition): W. B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia.
- Zucker, R. S. and A. L. Fogelson (1986) Relationship between transmitter release and presynaptic calcium influx when calcium enters through discrete channels, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*. 83: 3032–3036.
- Zucker, R. S. and L. Landó (1986) Mechanism of transmitter release: voltage hypothesis and calcium hypothesis, *Science*. 231: 574–579.
- Zucker, R. S. and W. G. Regehr (2002) Short-term synaptic plasticity, *Annual Review of Physiology*. 64: 355–405.
- Zwislocki, J. (1953) Review of recent mathematical theories of cochlear dynamics, *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*. 25: 743–751.

# Index

- Absorption  
in the gastrointestinal tract, 851–857  
in the proximal tubules, 823, 825, 832,  
834, 849  
of bicarbonate, 873  
of light by photoreceptors, 895, 904, 905  
of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the intestine, 856, 890  
of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the loop of Henle, 826, 835  
of nutrients from the gut, 806  
of oxygen by hemoglobin, 689  
of water, 50, 835, 853–855  
acetylcholine, 349, 351, 774, 934  
and end-plate conductance, 364, 365  
binding, 348, 365, 366, 373  
degradation, 367, 373, 383  
effect on insulin secretion, 398  
effect on postsynaptic membrane, 152, 370  
in the synaptic cleft, 365, 367, 369, 370,  
383  
quantal release, 349–352  
receptors, 348, 349, 367, 370, 371, 373, 930  
activation by nicotine, 373  
acetylcholinesterase, 373  
ACh, *see* acetylcholine  
actin, 720, 721, 731, 738, 743, 749  
binding to myosin in smooth muscle, 756,  
757  
crossbridge binding sites, 721, 722, 730,  
739, 741, 747  
filament, 747, 750  
movement by myosin molecules, 755  
velocity of, 731  
*in vitro* assay, 755  
in a Brownian ratchet, 761, 762  
in a molecular motor, 760  
in smooth muscle, 756  
polymerization, 761  
action potential, 176, 187, 195  
and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx, 359, 419, 719  
and bursting oscillations, 385, 806  
and excitation–contraction coupling, 546,  
719  
and perturbation theory, 38  
and reentrant arrhythmias, 593  
and synaptic facilitation, 358, 359  
as a wave in an excitable system, 230  
at the presynaptic cell, 348, 349, 352, 357,  
384  
duration, 256, 584  
effects on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, 550  
fast–slow phase plane, 213  
FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 220  
historical studies, 199  
Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 196–215  
in a myelinated fiber, 237  
in an isotropic medium, 571  
in cardiac cells, 69, 523, 525, 534–546  
effects of drugs, 602

- action (*continued*)  
 in cardiac tissue, 38, 336  
 in defibrillation, 611  
 in ganglion cells, 895, 929  
 in gonadotrophs, 419  
 in muscle, 717, 719, 934  
 in neuroendocrine cells, 385  
 in Purkinje fibers, 524, 535–540  
 in smooth muscle, 756  
 in the atrioventricular node, 524, 586  
 in the optic nerve, 934  
 in the sinoatrial node, 535, 572, 541–583  
 in the squid axon, 196–215  
 in ventricular cells, 543–546  
 initiation sites in the heart, 571  
 integrate-and-fire model, 625  
 irregular wave trains, 256  
 kinematic theory, 256  
 lack of in photoreceptors, 895, 902  
 lengthened  
   Long QT syndrome, 604  
 measurement by ECG, 525–533  
 periodic, 252  
 perturbation methods, 221  
 phase locking, 572  
 propagation failure, 562  
 propagation in higher dimensions,  
   257–262, 553  
 propagation in one dimension, 229–257  
 qualitative analysis, 210  
 regulation by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 385  
 release of neurotransmitter, 350, 373  
 response to superthreshold stimulus, 208  
 RyR opening, 719  
 schematic diagram, 214  
 speed in cardiac tissue, 561, 598, 602  
 spiral waves, 262–268  
 threshold, 208, 609  
 wave front, 38  
   wave front in the heart, 528  
 active transport, 49, 73–79  
 adaptation  
   and contour enhancement, 894  
   exact, 814–816  
   in cones, 907–912  
   in hair cells, 969–971, 974  
     causing oscillations, 970  
   in photoreceptors, 902–912  
   in psychophysical experiments, 895  
   in rods, 912, 915  
   in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 286  
   in the pupil light reflex, 933  
   in the retina, 893, 895–942  
   in the *Limulus* eye, 917  
   mediated by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in photoreceptors, 273, 915  
   of  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors, 285, 814  
   of hair bundles, 970  
   of hormone receptors, 813–816  
   of RyR receptors, 552  
 Addison's disease, 842  
 adenine, 427  
 adenohypophysis, *see* pituitary, anterior  
 adenosine, 498, 603  
 adenylate cyclase, 774  
 adenylate kinase, 25  
 ADH, *see* antidiuretic hormone  
 adipose tissue, 386, 803, 810  
 ADP, 23, 24, 26  
   action on PFK1, 25  
   activation of  $\text{K}^+$  channel, 399  
   activation of platelets, 677  
   and ATPase pumps, 75, 77, 284  
   ATP/ADP ratio, 399  
     oscillations, 400  
   conversion to ATP, 25  
   extracellular messenger, 326  
   Gibbs free energy of formation, 5, 23  
   in muscle, 721  
     secretion by platelets, 676  
 adrenal gland, 773, 777, 855  
 adrenaline, 349, 483, 502, 780  
 adrenocorticotrophic hormone, 775  
 adrenocorticotropin, 774  
 agonist-controlled ion channels, 152–153,  
   349, 371  
   affinity, 152  
   efficacy, 152  
   single-channel analysis, 158  
 Agre, P., 853  
 alcohol, 557, 842, 849  
 aldosterone, 98, 775, 835, 840, 855, 856  
   control of urine formation, 842  
   effect on  $\text{Na}^+$  permeability, 774, 835, 842,  
     855  
   excess secretion, 842  
 Allbritton, N.L., 329  
 Alt, W., 655

- alveoli, 683–694, 696, 697, 714  
oxygen saturation, 715  
partial pressures, 697  
surface area, 683  
ventilation rate, 701  
amacrine cells, 895, 927  
direction selectivity, 927  
amiodarone, 603  
AMP, 23, 25, 26  
ATP/AMP ratio, 25  
PFK1 activity, 24  
AMPA receptor, 371, 372, 931  
anemia, 497, 522, 637  
angiotensin, 826  
anode break excitation, 224, 226, 605, 609  
anoxia, 118  
antidiuretic hormone, 835, 840, 842, 843, 845, 849, 850  
and urine formation, 846–847  
aorta, 471, 474, 476, 507, 511, 512, 516, 517  
Apell, H.J., 77, 79  
aquaporins, 853  
Armstrong, C.M., 125, 354  
Arnold, V.I., 36  
Arrhenius equation, 162, 163, 168–170  
arrhythmias, *see* reentrant arrhythmias  
arterial pulse, 472, 513–522  
arterioles, 471, 476, 477, 824, 834  
  afferent, 821, 826  
  blood velocity, 476  
  cardiovascular regulation, 495  
  efferent, 821, 824, 826, 848  
  pressure drop, 476  
  resistance, 498, 501, 824, 826  
  smooth muscle, 498  
asymptotic methods, *see* perturbation methods  
atherosclerosis, 495, 513  
atherosclerotic plaques, 495  
ATP, 23, 26, 33, 116, 284, 498  
  and  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  pumps, 77  
  and  $\text{K}^+$  currents, 393, 399  
  and actin polymerization, 755  
  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pumps, 50, 274  
  and compound bursting, 401  
  and  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  pumps, 50, 73, 98  
ATP/ADP ratio, 6, 399  
  oscillations, 400  
ATP/AMP ratio, 24, 25  
  consumption in muscle, 61  
  dephosphorylation, 46, 719, 732  
  extracellular messenger, 326  
  formation of cAMP, 46  
  generation by an ATPase pump in reverse, 283  
  hydrolysis, 5, 73, 74, 97  
  and glucose transport, 73, 761  
  driving active transport, 74  
  free energy, 6, 23, 76  
  in glycolysis, 24  
  in molecular motors, 760  
  in a simple ATPase model, 74  
  in muscle, 719–721, 732, 770  
  in smooth muscle, 756  
  inhibition of PFK1, 24  
  oscillations, 46, 401  
  production by ATP synthase, 760  
  production from ADP, 25  
  substrate of PFK1, 24  
atrial septal defect, 512  
atrioventricular node, 524–526, 535, 562, 572, 583, 586–593  
AUTO, 36, 252, 307, 342, 344, 437  
Avogadro's number, 53, 81, 129, 629  
axon, 55, 175  
  as a cable, 180  
  bursting oscillations, 414  
  crab, 180  
  earthworm, 180  
  growth, 276  
  lobster, 180  
  marine worm, 180  
  membrane potential oscillations, 209  
  myelination, 236  
  nonlocal coupling, 258  
  of a motoneuron, 349  
  of a photoreceptor, 902  
  periodic waves, 252  
  space clamped, 177  
squid, 51, 93, 95, 118, 125, 128, 180, 196  
  channel density, 236  
  conductances, 124  
  current–voltage curves, 122  
  equilibrium potentials, 95  
  Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 196–209  
  ion currents, 196  
  radius, 56, 93  
  space constant, 251  
  temperature effects, 225  
  wave speed, 235, 251

- axon (*continued*)
   
synaptic transmission, 348, 352
   
vertebrate, 122
   
wave propagation, 229–258
   
wave speed, 235
   
axonal transport, 760
   
azimilide, 603
- B**ar, M., 595
   
barbiturates, 153
   
Barclon, V., 130
   
Barkley, D., 267
   
Barlow, H.B., 895, 926, 930
   
barnacle muscle fiber, 180, 225, 269
   
baroreceptor reflex, 496, 500–506
   
oscillations, 503
   
basilar membrane, 944–946, 948, 949, 953
   
as a harmonic oscillator, 950–962
   
frequency analyzer, 946
   
frequency response, 947, 948
   
mechanical tuning, 946
   
nonlinear amplification, 969
   
of epithelial cells, 858
   
velocity, 971
   
waves, 946, 947, 949, 954, 961, 974
   
basophils, 627, 628, 652
   
Batchelor, G.K., 949
   
Bayesian inference, 161
   
Baylor, D.A., 901, 904, 915
   
Beeler-Reuter equations, 257, 537, 543–546,
   
549, 626
   
Begenisich, T.B., 144
   
Bélair, J., 633
   
Belousov–Zhabotinsky reaction, 226, 259,
   
262, 263
   
Bennett, M.R., 359
   
Berridge, M.J., 273, 276, 277, 341, 779
   
Bers, D.M., 546, 547, 550, 719
   
Bertram, R., 360, 361, 386, 387, 393, 400,
   
418, 782, 783
   
Bessel equation, 941, 973
   
Bessel functions, 923, 941, 973
   
 $\beta$ -endorphin, 775
   
 $\beta$  cell, 418, 419
   
and glycolysis, 385
   
bursting in clusters, 403
   
bursting oscillations, 386–410
   
insulin secretion, 386, 398, 803
   
islets, 403
   
Beuter, A., 36
- Bezanilla, F., 125, 157, 354
   
bicarbonate, 116, 628, 680
   
and blood pH, 651, 652
   
and carbon dioxide regulation, 649–651,
   
688, 689, 696, 867
   
chloride–bicarbonate exchanger, 116
   
concentration in blood, 681
   
exchange for chloride in red blood cells,
   
650
   
gastric protection, 866, 869, 873
   
reaction rates, 869
   
secretion in the stomach, 867, 873
   
bicuculline, 373
   
bidomain model, 336–341, 604, 606, 611
   
derivation by homogenization, 618–622
   
for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 336
   
for cardiac tissue, 336, 566–567
   
monodomain reduction, 567
   
plane-wave solutions, 568
   
bifurcation diagram, 28, 36, 342, 344
   
blood clotting, 674
   
bursting oscillations, 391–417
   
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 295, 297, 308, 341, 344,
   
345
   
traveling wave equations, 308, 309
   
cell cycle, 452, 457, 462
   
FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 223
   
Goldbeter–Lefever glycolysis model, 33, 34
   
Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 208, 210
   
Sel'kov glycolysis model, 28–30
   
bifurcation surface, 416, 418
   
bifurcations
   
homoclinic, 36, 345
   
bursting oscillations, 390, 391, 395–398,
   
415–418
   
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 308, 345
   
Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 251
   
traveling waves, 242
   
Hopf, 36, 625, 678, 679
   
baroreceptor loop, 505
   
blood clotting, 674, 681
   
bursting oscillations, 390, 391, 395, 397,
   
398, 401, 416, 418, 419, 425
   
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 297, 307, 309, 345
   
cell cycle, 451
   
FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 220, 223,
   
225
   
glycolysis, 25, 28, 30, 33
   
hair cells, 971, 973
   
hematopoiesis, 637–639, 642

- Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 208–210  
lac operon, 437, 438  
periodic plane waves, 308  
pupil light reflex, 935  
regulation of ventilation, 703, 704  
sinoatrial node, 577, 578, 580  
tubuloglomerular feedback, 829–831  
saddle-node, 36, 212, 345, 391  
bursting oscillations, 391, 397, 398, 417  
hair cells, 970  
Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 214, 224  
steady-state, 36  
bipolar cells, 895, 902, 927, 930, 931  
bistability  
  alternans, 585  
  and bursting oscillations, 390, 395, 410, 412, 415, 418  
  in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 306  
  in LHRH neurons, 780  
  in the cell cycle, 445  
  in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 231  
  in the lac operon, 438  
  traveling waves, 230, 258, 313  
bistable equation, 231, 247, 268  
  and defibrillation, 608  
  and the eikonal-curvature equation, 259, 261  
buffered, 313  
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 313, 345  
comparison property, 236  
discrete, 238–241  
LHRH neurons, 780  
piecewise-linear, 268  
threshold behavior, 236  
traveling waves, 231–235, 268  
black widow spider, 373  
blastula, 444  
blood clotting, 627, 669–678  
  control by platelets, 675  
  extrinsic pathway, 669, 670  
  *in vitro*, 671  
inhibition, 671  
intrinsic pathway, 669–671  
spatial patterning, 672  
stationary wave, 675  
traveling wave, 674  
blood loss, 493, 637  
blood pH, 385, 650, 651, 680, 681, 698, 701, 714, 866  
blood plasma, 627–629  
  filtration, 821  
blood pressure, 473  
  and filtration, 823, 824  
  arterial, 477, 482, 483, 487, 488, 493–495, 497–503, 511, 824, 825  
autoregulation, 497–500  
control of arterial pressure, 495, 500–503  
diastolic, 473, 474, 493, 521, 522  
hypertension, 495  
in arterioles, 476  
in capillaries, 476, 479  
in the fetal circulation, 509  
in the glomerulus, 823  
oscillations in, 496, 503–506  
pressure-volume relationship, 482, 483  
pulsatile, 513–521  
renal control of, 496  
shock wave, 516  
systemic, 493  
systolic, 473, 474, 482, 522  
typical values, 493  
venous, 477, 482, 484, 488, 493, 500, 511  
blood volume, 471, 472, 488, 491, 493, 495, 496, 627  
Blum, J.J., 760  
body surface potential, 526, 528, 529  
Bohr effect, 646, 650–652, 681  
Boltzmann distribution, 163, 165  
bone  
   $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  storage in, 273  
  conductivity tensor, 528  
  in the inner ear, 943  
  moved by skeletal muscle, 717  
bone marrow, 628, 630  
  production of blood cells, 630, 635, 666, 678  
  production of platelets, 676  
  role of erythropoietin, 632  
botulinus, 373  
boundary layers, *see* perturbation methods, boundary layers  
Bowman's capsule, 821, 823, 832  
Boyce, W.E., 36, 193  
Bressloff, P.C., 318  
bretium, 603  
Britton, N.F., 229  
Brown, D., 779, 781, 782  
Brownian motion, 53, 110, 165, 761  
Brownian ratchet, 760, 763

- bundle branch block, 528, 562, 583  
 bundle of HIS, 524, 562  
 Burger triangle, 531  
 bursting oscillations, 385  
     and glucose concentration, 392  
     and glycolysis, 399  
     and insulin secretion, 806  
     bifurcation analysis, 386, 395  
     classification, 418  
     compound, 400, 401  
     effects of agonists, 398  
     fast, 386, 395  
     in clusters of pancreatic  $\beta$  cells, 403  
     in gastrointestinal smooth muscle, 874  
     in gonadotrophs, 421  
     in pancreatic  $\beta$  cells, 386  
     in the Aplysia neuron, 413  
     medium, 386, 397  
     phantom, 393  
     phase-plane analysis, 389  
     qualitative model, 410  
     slow, 386, 399
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase, 50, 73, 77, 274, 283–285, 421, 546  
     and rigor mortis, 770  
     as a molecular motor, 760  
     blockage by  $\text{La}^{3+}$ , 298  
     in photoreceptors, 912
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering, 56, 282, 295, 309–314, 388  
     and synaptic facilitation, 359  
     by the plasma membrane, 282
- calbindin, 282, 309  
 calreticulin, 309  
 calretinin, 309  
 calsequestrin, 282, 309  
 fluorescent dyes, 282  
 in photoreceptors, 908, 912  
 parvalbumin, 309
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels  
     and bursting oscillations, 405  
     and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx, 273, 274  
     and insulin secretion, 806  
     and muscle contraction, 719  
     and synaptic facilitation, 359, 360, 363  
     blockers, 153, 603  
     in hair cells, 963, 967, 968  
     in presynaptic cells, 348, 352  
     in the sinoatrial node, 541  
     L-type, 546, 550, 552, 888  
     subunits, 354
- that are also receptors, 274  
     voltage-gated, 274, 276, 357, 387, 719, 806
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current  
     and bursting oscillations, 387–389, 393, 394, 415, 420  
     and volume regulation, 171  
     in hair cells, 966, 967  
     in photoreceptors, 902, 903, 912  
     in the Beeler–Reuter equations, 546  
     in the sinoatrial node, 541  
     L-type, 420, 546  
     presynaptic, 352, 355–358, 383  
     synaptic suppression, 356, 357  
     T-type, 420  
     through  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors, 287
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  microdomain, 324
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, 276–280  
     and bursting oscillations, 388  
     and fluid secretion, 281  
     and  $\text{IP}_3$  oscillations, 298  
     as periodic waves, 303  
     closed-cell models, 296  
     dependent on  $\text{IP}_3$ , 286, 298  
     dependent on ryanodine receptors, 301  
     in bullfrog sympathetic neurons, 301  
     in Chinese hamster ovary cells, 300  
     in epithelial cells, 326  
     in hepatocytes, 331  
     open-cell models, 296  
     stochastic, 321  
     two-pool model, 341  
     well-mixed models, 281
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  puffs, 321, 322
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 280  
     bifurcation analysis, 307  
     dependent on  $\text{IP}_3$ , 286  
     *Xenopus* oocytes, 278, 306  
     intercellular, 279, 326–332  
     periodic, 278, 331  
     saltatory, 315  
     spiral waves, 306  
     stochastic, 325
- $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, 301–303, 315, 341, 344, 546
- cable equation  
     and gap junctions, 564  
     and spread of current in photoreceptor layers, 921  
     and wave propagation, 231–236  
     at a junction, 562

- bidomain model, 604, 606  
cardiac fiber, 554, 560  
derivation, 177–180  
discrete, 238, 561  
in two and three dimensions, 257  
inhomogeneous resistance, 570  
linear, 181  
    fundamental solution, 193  
    Green's function, 193  
    input resistance, 182  
    on a branching structure, 182, 187, 192, 194  
    with sealed end, 193  
nondimensionalized, 180  
nonlinear  
    and wave propagation, 229  
    bistable equation, 231  
    comparison property, 562  
nonuniform, 609, 611  
space constant, 179, 557  
sudden change in properties, 562  
time constant, 179  
caffeine, 301, 303  
Cahalan, M.D., 144  
calbindin, 282  
calcium pump, *see*  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase  
calreticulin, 309  
calretinin, 309  
calsequestrin, 282, 309  
cancer, 442  
Cannell, M., 280, 546, 550  
capacitance, 179, 206  
    dependence of wave speed on, 235  
    effective, 538  
    in the bidomain model, 621  
    of an insulator, 86  
    of the cell membrane, 86, 93, 218, 387, 908  
        decreased by myelination, 236  
        in electrical bursting, 406  
        of postsynaptic cells, 370  
    of the soma, 188  
capillaries, 98, 115, 471, 474, 476, 479, 487, 501, 606, 671  
    and filtration, 479, 521  
    and gas transport, 685, 687, 688, 691  
blood velocity, 476  
diffusion into, 55  
electrode, 199  
filtration, 480  
    in the gastrointestinal tract, 851, 853, 873  
    in the glomerulus, 821, 823  
    in the kidney, 821, 832, 838, 848, 850  
    in the liver, 671  
    in the lungs, 671, 683–696  
    microcirculation, 480  
    perfusion, 694  
    peritubular, 832, 838, 848, 850  
    pressure, 476, 479, 480  
    pulmonary, 471, 687, 688, 696  
    resistance, 480, 481, 486, 489  
    systemic, 471, 486, 490  
Carafoli, E., 273, 309  
carbon dioxide  
    and blood pH, 650, 652, 680  
    and oxygen partial pressure curve, 698–700  
    and oxygen transport, 650  
    and regulation of ventilation, 701  
    and respiratory regulation, 706  
    arterial pressure, 681  
    binding to hemoglobin, 649  
    Bohr effect, 646, 652  
    carbonic acid, 698  
    causes vasoconstriction, 502  
    diffusion, 50, 54, 650, 687  
    facilitated diffusion, 115, 691  
    fractional volume in alveolus, 707  
    in venous blood, 649  
    oxidation of glucose to, 23  
    partial pressure, 680, 696–699, 701, 707, 709, 714  
    production, 700  
    removal, 650, 688–689, 708  
    respiratory exchange ratio, 698, 700  
    respiratory quotient, 700  
    solubility, 629, 687  
    storage in blood, 650  
    transport, 115, 471, 627, 648–651, 681, 688, 689, 702, 867  
    venous pressure, 681  
    volume fraction in expired air, 706, 707  
carbon monoxide  
    amount in blood, 714  
    and oxygen starvation, 648  
    binding to hemoglobin, 648, 681, 692  
    elimination rate, 714, 715  
    partial pressure, 648  
    poisoning, 497, 692–694  
    saturation curve, 648  
    solubility, 629

- carbonic acid, 650, 698, 873  
 carbonic anhydrase, 650–652, 688, 689, 873  
 cardiac arrhythmia, 154, 209, 583–618  
 Cardiac Arrhythmia Suppression Test (CAST) study, 603  
 cardiac cells, 484, 534–553  
    $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry, 276  
    $\text{Na}^+$  channels, 154  
    $\text{Na}^+–\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger, 285  
   action potential, 525  
    $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, 274, 324  
   coupling by gap junctions, 347, 374, 553  
   coupling resistance, 623  
   electrical wave propagation, 561  
   excitability, 195, 523  
   excitation–contraction coupling, 274, 546–553  
   parameters, 180  
   phase singularity, 604  
   resting potential, 96  
   ryanodine receptors, 301, 324  
   structure, 554  
 cardiac conduction system, 524, 532  
 cardiac output, 471, 482–695  
   regulation, 500, 502, 503  
 cardiac surgery, 593  
 cardiac tissue, 559, 717  
   anisotropic, 568, 569  
   as a syncytium, 523  
   bidomain model, 566–567  
   cable equation, 560  
   electrical coupling, 553, 566, 567, 572  
   electrical wave propagation, 229, 257, 523–561  
   electrical wave velocity, 251  
   electrocardiograms, 525–533  
   finite state automaton models, 601  
   homogenization, 618–622  
   length–tension curve, 724  
   model of one-dimensional fiber, 554  
   monodomain model, 567–568  
   phase singularity, 598  
   phaseless points, 597  
   reentrant arrhythmias, 583, 598, 601, 611  
   scroll waves, 268  
   space constant of fiber, 555, 556, 559, 623  
   speed of action potential, 598  
   spread of action potential, 528  
   wave propagation failure, 561  
 cardiorespiratory coupling, 496  
 carotid artery, 516  
 carotid chemoreceptors, 698  
 carotid sinus, 500  
 Carpenter, G., 250, 904  
 catalase, 54  
 Cdc13, 452, 455, 456, 460  
 Cdc2, 445, 452, 463–466, 469, 470  
 Cdc20, 445, 447–449, 452  
 Cdc25, 453, 460, 461, 463–465, 469, 470  
 Cdc28, 445  
 Cd1, 445, 447–449, 452  
 Cdk, 445, 452  
 Cdk1, 445  
 cell division, 442–468  
 cell membrane, 49–50, 63, 86, 91  
   active transport, 49, 73–79, 91  
   as a capacitor, 86, 196, 370  
   capacitance, 86, 93, 387, 406, 908  
   carrier-mediated transport, 63–73  
   concentration differences across, 49, 90  
   conductance, 87  
   dielectric constant, 86  
   diffusion through, 50, 54  
   effective resistance, 54  
   electrical circuit model, 86, 87, 218  
   gap junctions, 347  
   glucose transport, 50, 834  
   hormone diffusion, 774  
   intercalated disks, 553  
   ion channels, 121, 946, 963  
   ion pumps, 760  
   membrane potential, 50, 80–87, 135, 195, 276  
   movement of charge across, 354  
   myelination, 236  
    $\text{Na}^+$  transport, 834, 842  
   of photoreceptors, 908  
   of smooth muscle, 874  
   passive transport, 49, 91  
   T-tubules, 719  
   thickness, 56  
   vesicle fusion, 350  
   water transport, 49, 92, 834  
 cell volume  
   and anoxia, 118  
   and ionic transport, 91, 98  
   and membrane potential, 93, 95, 101, 118  
   and pump rate, 95, 96  
   in the presence of ouabain, 118  
   regulation, 50, 90–98, 101–103, 118

- CellML, 546  
cellular automata, *see* finite state automata  
central terminal of Wilson, 532  
Chadwick, R., 949, 962  
Champneys, A., 309  
Chapman–Kolmogorov equation, 109, 112  
characteristics  
  method of, 517, 519  
Chay, T.R., 298, 386, 387, 393, 404  
chemical potential, 3, 4  
  and osmosis, 88  
  and the equilibrium constant, 5  
chemokinesis, 654  
chemoreceptors, 496, 698  
chemotaxis, 653–655, 663, 665  
Cheyne–Stokes breathing, 496, 704  
Chinese hamster ovary cells, 300  
chloride–bicarbonate exchanger, 116  
cholera, 857  
cholesterol, 495, 774  
chyme, 856, 890  
cilia, 963, 969  
circadian clocks, 438–442  
  genes, 440  
circle maps, 588–593  
Clapham, D., 278, 282, 306  
clofilium, 603  
clonidine, 842  
cocaine, 373  
cochlea, 38, 943–962  
Coddington, E.A., 590  
codons, 427, 429  
Cole, K.S., 199, 210  
collecting duct, 832, 835, 838, 840, 842  
  concentration of urine, 835, 846  
  permeability to  $\text{Na}^+$ , 842  
  permeability to water, 835, 842  
  response to aldosterone, 842  
  response to antidiuretic hormone, 845, 846  
  solute concentrations, 847  
Colli-Franzone, P., 259  
colorblindness, 904  
Colquhoun, D., 152, 155, 158  
common myeloid precursors, 631, 633  
compartmental models  
  of follicle dynamics, 802  
  of neurons, 192  
  of pulsatile hormone secretion, 779  
compliance, 476–479  
  arterial, 477, 487, 490, 493, 494  
  as a function of time, 482  
  cardiac, 501, 503  
  diastolic, 484, 490, 495  
  end-systolic, 482  
  of the left heart, 494, 511, 512  
  of the right heart, 494, 511, 512  
  systemic, 495  
  systolic, 484, 487, 491, 509  
  venous, 477, 494, 501, 502  
  ventricular, 486  
  vessel, 478, 485, 486, 488, 491, 503, 515  
conductance  
  and effective diffusion, 54  
   $\text{K}^+$ , *see*  $\text{K}^+$  channels  
  leak, 198, 965  
  light-sensitive, 903  
   $\text{Na}^+$ , *see*  $\text{Na}^+$  channels  
  of agonist-controlled channels, 153  
  of the lumped-soma model, 189  
  of the soma, 189  
  time-dependent, 200–205  
  voltage-dependent, 95, 198, 200–205  
conductivity tensor, 528, 567, 569, 572, 624  
  and wave speed, 568  
  effective, 621  
  of entire body, 528  
Conn's syndrome, 842  
connective tissue, 671, 851  
connexin, 373  
connexons, 373  
constant field approximation, 84–86, 131, 136  
constipation, 857  
contour integration, 192, 269, 745, 746, 962  
contrast detection, 897–898  
contrast sensitivity, 911, 939  
convolution theorem, 160, 173, 936  
Coombes, S., 318, 320  
cooperativity, 15–20  
  and  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors, 287, 343  
  Goldbeter–Koshland function, 21  
  hemoglobin, 644, 646, 680  
  in cell cycle models, 450  
  in the Goodwin model, 469  
  Koshland–Nemethy–Filmer model, 19, 647  
Monod–Wyman–Changeux model, 17, 647  
negative cooperativity, 16, 17  
  of Cdc20 activation, 449  
positive cooperativity, 16, 17

- core conductor assumption, 177  
 corticosterones, 98  
 corticotrophs, 419  
 corticotropin-releasing hormone, 419  
 cortisol, 775  
 countercurrent mechanism  
     in the loop of Henle, 835–842, 845  
 coupled oscillators  
     frequency plateaus, 882–887  
     in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 626, 891  
     in the sinoatrial node, 572–583  
     in the small intestine, 874–887  
     invariant torus, 615  
     phase waves, 249, 256, 270, 574, 575, 877, 881  
     rhythm splitting, 891  
     the phase equations, 614–618, 879–882  
 Courant, R., 581  
 Courtemanche, M., 257, 546, 586, 595  
 CRH, *see* corticotropin-releasing hormone  
 Crick, F., 428  
 crossbridge, *see* myosin  
 curare, 373  
 current–voltage curve, 85, 121–125  
     comparison of linear and GHK  
         expressions, 122, 124  
     comparison of multi-ion and single-ion  
         models, 145  
 Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz, 99, 123, 132, 133, 136  
     in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 197, 198  
 instantaneous, 123, 147  
 linear, 87, 123, 133, 198, 202  
     of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel, 405  
     of endplates, 364  
     of  $\text{K}^+$  channels, 122  
     of light-sensitive channels in  
         photoreceptors, 907  
     of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels, 122  
     steady-state, 124, 147  
 cyclical neutropenia, 632, 634, 635, 641  
 cyclin-dependent kinase, *see* Cdk  
 cyclins, 445–467  
     cyclin B, 446, 448, 449, 452, 463, 469  
     discovery, 445  
 cytochrome, 54  
 cytochrome system, 23  
 cytokinesis, 443  
 cytosine, 427  
 Dallos, P., 949  
 de Schutter, E., 176, 192  
 de Vries, G., 387, 425  
 defibrillation, 604–613  
 dehydration  
     from drinking seawater, 832  
 del Castillo, J., 152, 350–352  
 dendrites, 175  
     dendritic network, 175, 176, 180, 181, 184, 187  
     passive flow of electricity, 180–187  
 deoxyribonucleic acid, *see* DNA  
 deoxyribose, 427  
 dephosphorylation, 21  
     in models of circadian clocks, 440  
     of  $\text{IP}_3$ , 299  
     of ATP, 46  
     of ATP in muscle, 719, 721, 732, 756  
     of GTP in photoreceptors, 906  
     of MPF, 463  
     of myosin in smooth muscle, 757  
     of preMPF, 453  
     of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase pump, 283  
 Destexhe, A., 371  
 detailed balance, 6, 43, 72, 75, 116, 145, 284, 287, 343, 551, 650, 651, 815  
 Devil's staircase, 589  
 diabetes, 386, 513, 804, 842  
 diarrhea, 857  
 diastole, 474, 482, 484, 586  
 diffusion, 51–55, 58  
     across an interface, 684  
     and buffering, 55–310  
     and countercurrent exchange, 836  
     and coupled oscillators, 230, 580  
     and Fick's Law, 114  
     and gas transport in the lung, 683  
     and wave propagation, 257  
 backwards diffusion equation, 112  
 coupling of excitable dynamics, 263  
 electrodiffusion, 83–86  
 facilitated, *see* facilitated diffusion  
 fundamental solution, 318  
 into a capillary, 55  
 nonuniform, 257  
 of  $\text{IP}_3$ , 306, 327, 330, 332

- of a flashing ratchet, 767, 769  
of bacteria, 657  
of bicarbonate in the gastric mucus, 869  
of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 280, 303, 306, 307, 312, 332, 410  
    in presynaptic neurons, 358, 363  
of carbon dioxide, 50, 650, 687, 691  
of chemoattractant, 658  
of electricity along a leaky cable, 175  
of extracellular messenger, 326  
of glucose, 761  
of inhibition in the retina, 919  
of ions and fluid absorption, 852  
of ions and the Nernst potential, 81  
of leukocytes, 657  
of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the descending loop of Henle, 844  
of neurotransmitter in the synaptic cleft, 348, 369  
of oxygen, 50  
of steroid hormones across the cell membrane, 774  
of vasodilators, 498  
of water, 49  
stochastic, 109–111  
through gap junctions, 326, 327, 330, 331, 374, 377  
through nuclear pore complexes, 79  
through the cell membrane, 50, 73  
    time, 55  
diffusion coefficient, 52, 53  
    and the eikonal-curvature equation, 262  
    effective, *see* effective diffusion coefficient  
homogeneous, 114  
in buffered diffusion, 57  
nonconstant, 115  
    of  $\text{H}^+$ , 867  
of a molecular motor, 766  
of bacteria, 115  
of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 317, 329, 359  
of carbon dioxide, 54  
of catalase, 54  
of cytochrome, 54  
of fibrinogen, 54  
of fluorescent dye, 115  
of glucose, 54  
    of  $\text{H}^+$ , 54  
of hemoglobin, 54  
of insulin, 54  
of myoglobin, 54, 58  
of myosin, 54  
    of oxygen, 54, 115  
    of serum albumin, 54  
    of the tobacco mosaic virus, 54  
    of urease, 54  
    scaling, 242  
digitalis, 98  
digoxin, 603  
dihydropyridine receptors, *see* calcium channels, L-type  
diisopropylphosphofluoridate, 373  
diltiazem, 603  
dinosaurs, 500  
Dirac delta function, 189, 192, 383, 607, 657, 728, 956  
directional selectivity, 926  
disopyramide, 603  
dispersion, 252  
    and coupled oscillators, 583  
    and spiral waves, 263, 264, 266, 267  
    for excitable systems, 252  
    in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 253–255  
    in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 252, 253  
    kinematic analysis, 256, 270  
    of refractoriness, 601, 602  
distal tubule, 826, 832, 835  
divergence theorem, 52, 333, 949  
DNA, 427–430, 442–445, 457, 460, 774  
Dockery, J.D., 255  
Dodd, A.N., 442  
Doedel, E., 36  
dofetilide, 603  
dopamine, 152, 349, 373, 414, 842  
    -secreting neurons, 349  
    and pulsatile prolactin secretion, 783  
ductus arteriosus, 507–512  
    patent ductus arteriosus, 511  
Dunlap, J.C., 438  
duodenum, 874  
Dupont, G., 298–300, 326, 331, 341  
dynein, 760
- E**ar canal, 943  
ectopic focus, 577, 578, 583  
Edelstein-Keshet, L., 35  
Edinger–Westphal nucleus, 933  
effective diffusion coefficient, 340, 374–383  
    and facilitated diffusion, 58

- effective (*continued*)  
 from homogenization, 257, 305, 336–341, 376  
 in cardiac tissue, 618  
 of a molecular motor, 766  
 of buffered diffusion, 57, 311  
 of oxygen, 115
- effective diffusion tensor, 338, 340
- eikonal equation, 262–264
- eikonal-curvature equation, 259–262, 264, 271
- Einstein, A., 53, 83, 109, 115
- Einthoven triangle, 530–532
- Eisenberg, R.S., 130
- electrodiffusion, 147  
 models of ionic current, 128–134  
 Nernst–Planck electrodiffusion equation, 84, 125  
 the Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz equations, 83
- electrogastrogram, 890
- elementary reactions, 3
- Elston, T.C., 760, 761, 766
- encainide, 154, 603
- end-plate current, 364, 367, 369, 383
- end-plate potential, 349, 350
- endolymph, 944, 967
- endoplasmic reticulum, 443, 760  
 and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  buffering, 309  
 and  $\text{IP}_3$  receptors, 327  
 and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 50, 73, 274, 327, 349, 888  
 and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release in gonadotrophs, 419  
 and ryanodine receptors, 301  
 in ICC, 888
- endothelial cells, 330, 632
- Engel, E., 867
- enzyme kinetics, 7, 941  
 allosteric activator, 25  
 allosteric binding sites, 12  
 allosteric inhibitor, 12, 14, 24, 43  
 catalytic power, 7, 10  
 competitive inhibitor, 12  
 conformational states, 17, 18  
 cooperativity, 15  
 determination of  $V_{\max}$  and  $K_m$ , 11  
 enzyme inhibition, 12  
 equilibrium approximation, 8  
 Goldbeter–Koshland function, 22  
 Hill equation, 16  
 in a spherical geometry, 115
- Koshland–Nemethy–Filmer model, 19, 647
- lock-and-key mechanism, 12
- maximum reaction velocity, 7, 8, 13, 14, 17
- Michaelis–Menten equation, 7, 11, 19, 41
- Monod–Wyman–Changeux model, 17, 43
- negative cooperativity, 16
- positive cooperativity, 16, 17
- quasi-steady-state approximation, 9
- reaction velocity, 8
- regulation, 7
- reversible, 20
- singular perturbation theory, 39
- specificity, 7
- eosinophils, 627, 628, 632, 652, 666
- epinephrine, *see* adrenaline
- epithelial cells  
 and cholera, 857  
 and diarrhea, 857  
 basilar membrane, 858  
 bicarbonate secretion, 873  
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, 326  
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 279, 326  
 cytokine release, 276  
 effect of aldosterone, 774, 842, 855  
 gastric protection, 867  
 glucose transport, 67, 834  
 glucose– $\text{Na}^+$  symport, 171  
 in nephrons, 101  
 in the gastrointestinal tract, 195, 851–853, 873  
 in the glomerulus, 821  
 in the loop of Henle, 834, 840  
 in the proximal tubule, 67, 834, 848  
 isotonic transport, 853, 858  
 mucus secretion, 866  
 $\text{Na}^+$  transport, 91, 98, 99, 101, 102, 833, 840, 853, 855, 856  
 nutrient absorption, 852  
 production of G-CSF, 632  
 secretion of erythropoietin, 631  
 transport in the proximal tubule, 832  
 uphill transport, 849, 853, 864  
 volume regulation, 98, 101, 102  
 water transport, 852–854, 857  
 against a gradient, 858
- equivalent cylinder theory, 184–185
- Ermentrout, B., 36, 417, 615, 882, 887
- erythrocytes, 116, 471, 474, 477, 522, 627, 628, 643–714

- and carbon dioxide transport, 650  
and carbonic anhydrase, 650  
maturation rate, 678  
production, 630–632  
  vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency, 678  
erythropoietin, 631, 632, 635, 639, 678  
esmolol, 603  
estradiol, 775, 777, 778, 784, 787, 788, 790–792  
excitation–contraction coupling, 274, 546–553, 719  
extrasystole, 526, 622  
Eyring rate theory, 135, 739  
Eyring, H., 134–136, 739
- Fabiato, A., 301  
facilitated diffusion, 58–63, 115  
  in muscle, 61–64  
  of carbon dioxide, 115, 691  
  of oxygen, 58–60  
facilitation, *see* synaptic facilitation  
Fain, G., 897–899, 902, 912, 914, 915  
Falcke, M., 278, 280, 282, 286, 296, 306, 312, 323–325  
Fenn, W.O., 694  
fetus, 507, 648, 836  
fibrillation, 594, 597, 600, 601, 611  
  atrial, 525, 527, 594  
  ventricular, 525, 527, 594  
fibrinogen, 54  
fibroblasts, 632  
Fick's law, 52, 54, 85, 114, 115, 375, 376, 868  
Fife, P., 226, 231, 236, 562  
filtration  
  autoregulation, 825  
  in the glomerulus, 823–826  
  in the loop of Henle, 839  
  in the microcirculation, 479–481, 521  
finite-state automata, 267  
fire-diffuse-fire model, 318–321  
Fisher's equation, 230, 249, 269, 270  
FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 216–223, 410  
  and Ca<sup>2+</sup> dynamics, 294, 309  
applied to  
  coupled oscillators, 577, 626, 891  
  defibrillation, 610  
  gastrointestinal electrical activity, 889  
  LHRH neurons, 781  
  neural oscillators, 715  
  the sinoatrial node, 543, 573  
  ventricular action potential, 226  
dispersion curve, 253, 254  
electrical analog, 226  
kinematic analysis, 256  
modified for bursting oscillations, 410  
perturbation methods, 221, 246, 247, 254  
piecewise-linear, 243, 253  
spiral waves, 263, 267  
wave propagation, 242–250  
flashing ratchet, 767  
flecainide, 154, 603  
Floquet theory, 617, 626  
flux coupling, 143  
Fogelson, A.L., 358, 671, 676, 677  
Fokker–Planck equation, 111, 114, 165, 166, 170, 765, 766, 770  
  backward, 112, 113  
folic acid, 678  
follicle-stimulating hormone, 775, 777, 778, 784, 786, 790, 791, 801, 802  
follicles, 784, 789–795, 797–802  
foramen ovale, 507–510  
  closed in utero, 512  
Fourier series, 191, 194, 953, 955, 959  
Fourier transform, 192, 916, 922, 923, 925, 936, 954, 973  
Fowler, A.C., 503, 706  
Franklin, R., 428  
frequency response  
  of a damped harmonic oscillator, 952  
  of hair cells, 946, 964, 968  
  of photoreceptors, 938  
  of the basilar membrane, 947, 948  
  of turtle horizontal cells, 938  
frequency tuning  
  of hair cells, 946–949, 965, 966, 969  
frog sartorius muscle, 236  
FSH, *see* follicle-stimulating hormone
- G-protein, 274, 275, 349, 774, 902, 906  
GABA, *see* γ-aminobutyric acid  
galactose, 50, 433, 436  
γ-aminobutyric acid, 152, 349, 373, 779, 780  
γ-aminobutyric acid neurons, 779, 781  
γ-aminobutyric acid receptor, 348, 371, 373  
ganglion cells, 355, 895, 927, 929–932  
  direction selectivity, 926, 927, 930  
  off-center, 930  
  on-center, 930, 931  
  receptive field, 929–931

- gap junctions, 257, 373–383  
 and effective diffusion coefficients, 374  
 and intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 326, 327  
 blockage, 557  
 coupling horizontal cells, 895, 931  
 coupling of myocardial cells, 347, 553, 554  
 coupling oscillators, 573, 891  
 coupling pancreatic  $\beta$  cells, 403, 409  
 coupling photoreceptors, 925  
 diffusion of an intracellular messenger, 326, 327, 330, 331  
 diffusion through, 377  
 distribution, 377–383  
 effective resistance, 557, 561  
 effects on electrical space constant, 555, 557  
 effects on wave propagation, 561, 564–565  
 permeability to  $\text{IP}_3$ , 327, 330, 332
- Gardiner, C.W., 103
- Garfinkel, A., 586
- garfish olfactory nerve, 236
- gastric mucosa, 866, 867
- gastric pits, 852, 866, 873
- genes, 269, 427, 429, 444, 445  
 and circadian clocks, 438, 439  
 regulation of gene expression, 428–438, 668  
 by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 276  
 in T lymphocytes, 667
- genetic code, 427, 428
- Gibbs free energy, 3  
 and the equilibrium constant, 5  
 of ATP hydrolysis, 5  
 of glucose oxidation, 23  
 of glucose phosphorylation, 23
- Gibbs–Donnan equilibrium, 82–83, 117, 118
- Gillespie's method, 107
- Givelberg, E., 962
- Glass, L., 586, 588, 624, 625, 633, 702, 706
- glial cells, 279, 326, 330
- glomerulus, 821–848  
 tubuloglomerular oscillations, 825–831
- glucagon, 775, 803, 806–808
- glucose, 89, 433, 436  
 absorption in the proximal tubule, 832, 834  
 and bursting oscillations, 392  
 and insulin, 803  
 and insulin oscillations, 806–808, 812
- and insulin secretion, 386, 388, 808  
 diffusion, 54  
 euglycemic hyperinsulinemic glucose tolerance test, 804  
 formation, 803  
 in blood plasma, 628  
 intravenous glucose tolerance test, 804  
 oral glucose tolerance test, 804  
 oscillations, 806–808, 812  
 oxidation, 23  
 phosphorylation, 23, 116, 803  
 transport, 50, 64, 66, 67, 116, 140, 171, 761, 834, 852
- glutamate, 152, 349  
 at the bipolar cell synapse, 930
- ionotropic receptor, 349, 931
- metabotropic receptor, 349, 930
- glycine, 349
- glycolysis, 23, 116  
 and bursting oscillations, 399–402  
 Goldbeter and Lefever model, 30  
 in the pancreatic  $\beta$  cell, 385, 399  
 oscillations, 23–33  
 Sel'kov model, 25
- Glynn, I.M., 77
- Goldbeter, A., 21, 25, 30, 31, 35, 341, 342, 400, 439, 440, 442, 459, 462, 469, 813, 817
- Goldbeter–Koshland function, 21, 22, 45, 459
- Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz current equation, 85, 87, 139, 170, 354  
 and the independence principle, 133  
 and volume regulation, 99  
 comparison to the linear  $I$ – $V$  curve, 122, 124
- derived from an electrodiffusion model, 128, 131, 132
- derived from nonsaturating barrier models, 136
- in vertebrate axons, 122, 198
- reversal potential in the multi-ion case, 123
- Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz potential, 86, 123, 124  
 derived from an electrodiffusion model, 128  
 multi-ion case, 85
- Golgi apparatus, 304, 759
- gonadotroph, 414, 419, 777, 790

- gonadotropin, 414, 419, 777, 778, 789, 790  
  pulsatile secretion, 777–781
- Goodwin, B.C., 429, 432, 439
- granulocytes, 627, 628, 630–633, 652
- granulosa cells, 784, 802
- Griffith, J.S., 429, 432, 435
- Grindrod, P., 229, 268
- Grodins, F.S., 706
- growth hormone, 775  
  pulsatile release, 781
- guanine, 427
- guanylate cyclase, 903, 905, 910, 912, 915
- Guckenheimer, J., 36
- Guevara, M.R., 624, 625
- Guyton, A.C., 237, 471–473, 486, 496–498,  
  554, 684, 687, 688, 701, 715, 822, 825,  
  826, 832–834
- H**aberman, R., 936, 937
- Hai, C.M., 756, 758
- hair bundle, 963, 967, 969  
  adaptation, 970, 971  
  and transduction, 967  
  mechanical tuning, 946  
  negative stiffness, 969, 970  
  oscillations, 969
- hair cells, 945, 946, 962  
  electrical resonance, 946, 962–969  
  electrical tuning, 946, 967  
  mechanical tuning, 946, 969  
  oscillations, 968
- Haldane effect, 650, 681
- Hale, J.K., 36
- haloperidol, 842
- Hamer, R.D., 905, 912–915, 917
- Hankel functions, 973
- harmonic oscillator, 949, 950, 952, 962
- Hartline, H.K., 917–919
- Hastings, S., 250, 779
- Hawkes, A.G., 152, 155, 158
- heart attack, 154, 495, 577, 604
- heart dipole vector, 529, 531, 532
- helicotrema, 946, 947
- Helmholtz, H.L.F., 946
- hemoglobin, 643, 644, 679, 714  
  allosteric effect of hydrogen ions, 648–650  
  and carbon monoxide, 681, 692  
  and cooperativity, 15, 644, 647  
  diffusion, 54  
  fetal, 648
- $\text{H}^+$  buffering, 650, 651, 681
- oxygen binding, 19, 643, 646, 648, 650,  
  680, 689
- saturation curve, 644, 646, 647, 649, 679,  
  680
- saturation shifts, 648
- hemophilia, 669
- heparin, 671
- Hering–Breuer inflation reflex, 710
- heteroclinic trajectory, 234, 249, 390  
  and traveling fronts, 232, 233, 242, 307  
  in Fisher's equation, 270  
  in the bistable equation, 247
- Hilbert, D., 581
- Hill equation, 16  
  modeling cooperativity, 17  
  modeling guanylate cyclase activity, 910  
  modeling light-sensitive channels in  
    photoreceptors, 907  
  modeling pupil area, 935  
  modeling the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase, 283, 328  
  modeling the hemoglobin saturation  
    curve, 645, 646  
  modeling the ventilation rate, 702
- Hill, T.L., 739
- Hille, B., 121, 122, 125, 128, 129, 135, 140,  
  144, 147, 156, 354
- Hindmarsh, J.L., 410
- Hirsch, M.W., 36, 615
- Hodgkin, A.L., 126–129, 143, 177, 198, 201,  
  203, 205, 224, 907
- Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 196–216, 224,  
  324  
  wave propagation, 250–252
- Höfer, T., 326, 330, 332, 667
- Höfer, T., 331
- Holmes, M.H., 38, 871, 949, 962
- Holmes, P., 36, 615
- Holstein-Rathlou, N.H., 827, 831
- homoclinic trajectory, 242, 251, 307  
  and bursting oscillations, 390, 392  
  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 309, 345
- homogenization, 315, 560, 606, 626  
  effective diffusion coefficients, 257, 336,  
  376
- gap junctions, 376
- periodic conductive domain, 618
- the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  bidomain equations, 304, 336
- the cardiac bidomain equations, 566,  
  618–622

- Hooke's constant, 950  
 Hooke's law, 753  
 Hoppensteadt, F.C., 90, 483, 491, 498, 624, 625  
 horizontal cells, 895, 897, 902, 925  
   and lateral inhibition, 921  
   coupling, 895, 921  
   coupling to photoreceptors, 895, 921–923, 931  
   frequency response, 938  
 Hudspeth, A., 946, 963, 967–969  
 Hunter, P.J., 572, 759  
 Huntington's disease, 349  
 Huxley, A.F., 126, 198, 201, 203, 205, 224, 735  
 hydrochloric acid  
   secretion in the stomach, 852, 866, 873  
 hydrogen bond, 427  
 hydrogen ions  
   and aquaporins, 853  
   and gastric protection, 872, 873  
   binding to hemoglobin, 648–651  
   buffering, 56, 650, 651, 681  
   concentration gradient in the stomach, 866  
   diffusion, 54, 115  
   from carbonic acid, 650  
   H<sup>+</sup>–K<sup>+</sup> pump, 873  
   Na<sup>+</sup>–H<sup>+</sup> exchanger, 50, 834  
 hydrolysis, 23  
   of ATP, 5, 24  
     and active transport, 73, 74  
     and glucose transport, 761  
     free energy, 76  
     in molecular motors, 760  
   of cAMP, 45  
   of cGMP, 902  
   of GTP, 79  
   of neurotransmitter in the synaptic cleft, 348  
 hypertension, 495  
 hyperventilation, 698  
 hypophyseal artery, 775  
 hypothalamus, 385, 419, 773, 775–784  
 hypoventilation, 698  
 hysteresis  
   and a biological switch, 341  
   and gene transduction, 668  
   in bursting oscillations, 391, 415, 418  
   in cardiac arrhythmia, 599  
   in the cell cycle, 449  
   in the control of breathing, 712, 715  
**I-V curves**, *see* current–voltage curves  
 ICC, *see* interstitial cells of Cajal  
 ideal gas law, 88, 89, 628  
 ileum, 874  
 impedance, 952  
   matching in the inner ear, 943  
   of the basilar membrane, 962  
   of the cochlear fluid, 943  
 incus, 943  
 independence principle, 125–128, 133, 139, 142, 143  
 infection, 627, 657, 666, 857  
 inositol (1,4,5)-triphosphate, *see* IP<sub>3</sub>  
 insulin, 98, 803  
   and bursting oscillations, 386  
   and glucose oscillations, 807, 812  
   and glucose storage, 803  
   and glucose transport, 66, 803  
   diffusion, 54  
   euglycemic hyperinsulinemic glucose tolerance test, 804  
   oscillations, 806–813, 817  
   pulsatile secretion, 774, 775, 803, 806–812  
   receptors, 774, 803  
   resistance, 804  
   secretion, 398–400, 403, 803  
   sensitivity, 804–806  
   units, 803  
 integrate-and-fire model, 625  
 intercalated disk, 553  
 interstitial cells of Cajal, 887  
 IP<sub>3</sub>, 274, 275, 377, 774, 891  
   and Ca<sup>2+</sup> influx, 282  
   and Ca<sup>2+</sup> oscillations, 276  
   and Ca<sup>2+</sup> waves, 278, 306  
   and intercellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> waves, 326, 327, 331  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup>-dependent production and degradation, 298, 299  
 diffusion of, 327, 329, 330, 332  
 in gonadotrophs, 419, 421, 422  
 in smooth muscle, 756  
 in the interstitial cells of Cajal, 888  
 intercellular permeability, 330  
   oscillations, 298, 300  
 IP<sub>3</sub> receptor, 152, 274, 285–293, 458, 552  
   and adaptation, 814

- and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  oscillations, 276  
 and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 306  
 clusters, 321  
 modulation by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 286  
 open probability, 288  
 similarity to ryanodine receptors, 301  
 stochastic behavior, 321, 323  
 subunits, 286  
 irrotational flow, 950  
 ischemia, 557  
 Izhikevich, E.M., 419  
 Izu, L.T., 280, 550
- J**ack, J.J.B., 181  
 Jafri, M.S., 259, 550, 551  
 Janeway, C.A., 628  
 jejunum, 874, 878  
 Jones, C.K.R.T., 245  
 Jung, P., 324, 327  
 juxtaglomerular apparatus, 821, 826, 834, 835
- K**<sup>+</sup> channels  
 activation, 148, 211, 212  
 and volume regulation, 102  
 ATP-sensitive, 399  
 blockers, 153, 201, 603, 604  
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive, 387, 389, 415, 420, 421, 963, 966–969  
 current–voltage curve, 122, 197, 202  
 flux ratio, 128  
 gating, 148–150, 206, 207  
 in barnacle muscle fibers, 225  
 in bursting oscillations, 387  
 in hair cells, 963, 965, 967  
 in photoreceptors, 902, 903, 908  
 in Purkinje fibers, 537  
 in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 201–204  
 in the squid axon, 124, 147  
 postsynaptic, 348  
 stretch-activated, 102  
 two-state model, 148
- K**<sup>+</sup> current  
 in hair cells, 963  
 in models of bursting oscillations, 393  
 in Purkinje fibers, 536, 539, 540  
 in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 197, 204, 207, 208  
 in the Noble model, 537  
 in the sinoatrial node, 541
- in ventricular cells, 543, 544  
 stochastic, 405  
 unaffected by TTX, 201
- Kaplan, W., 588  
 Karma, A., 267, 595  
 Katz, B., 152, 199, 349–352, 359  
 Keizer, J., 56, 259, 286, 288, 289, 298, 299, 311, 318, 386, 387, 400, 552  
 Keller, E.F., 655  
 Keller, J.B., 243, 254  
 Kevorkian, J., 38, 319, 937, 957  
 kidney failure, 386, 495  
 kinesin, 755, 760  
 Knight, B.W., 588, 625, 919  
 Knobil, E., 777  
 Koch, C., 176, 181, 192  
 Kopell, N., 306, 417, 615, 882, 887  
 Koshland, D.E., 16, 21, 647, 648  
 Koshland–Nemethy–Filmer model, 19  
 Kramers' rate theory, 135, 166–170  
 Kramers, H.A., 135  
 Krebs cycle, 23  
 Kreyszig, E., 193  
 Kuffler, S.W., 176, 350, 930, 933  
 Kuramoto, Y., 615  
 kymograph, 496
- Lacker, H.M., 739, 790, 801, 802, 873  
 lactose, 89, 432, 433, 436  
 the *lac* operon, 432–438  
 lactotroph, 783  
 Laidler, K.J., 135  
 Lamb, T.D., 902, 905, 906, 915, 925  
 lambda–omega systems, 615, 626  
 Langevin equation, 110  
 Laplace transform, 160, 173, 191–193, 744  
 Laplace's equation, 379, 380, 955  
 Laplace's law, 477, 521  
 larynx, 683  
 lateral geniculate nucleus, 929, 933  
 lateral inhibition, 894, 917–926  
 and Mach bands, 894  
 in the *Limulus* eye, 917  
 Lauffenberger, D.A., 653, 655  
 law of mass action, 1–3, 7, 8, 11  
 Layton, H.E., 827, 831, 848  
 Lechleiter, J., 278, 306  
 Lefever, R., 25, 31, 400  
 Leng, G., 779, 782, 783  
 leukemia, 632

- leukocytes, 627, 628, 652–665  
 level set method, 261  
*LH*, *see* luteinizing hormone  
 Li, Y.-X., 288, 419, 421–423, 813, 817  
*Liénard* equation, 425  
 lidocaine, 154, 603  
 light adaptation, *see* adaptation  
 Lighthill, J., 473, 513, 516  
 linear filter, 679  
     and frequency tuning, 965  
     in a model of follicle development, 786  
     in a model of insulin oscillations, 808,  
       810–812  
     in a model of periodic hematopoiesis, 640  
     in a model of the single-photon response,  
       916  
 Lineweaver–Burk plots, 11  
 lithium, 842  
 litter size, 788  
 lobster walking leg nerve, 236  
 Longtin, A., 934  
 loop of Henle, 101, 831–847  
     ascending limb, 826, 832, 834, 835, 845  
     countercurrent mechanism, 835–842  
     descending limb, 832, 834, 835, 844  
     formation of dilute urine, 835, 846  
     formation of  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration gradient,  
       835  
     four-compartment model, 839  
      $\text{Na}^+$  transport, 826, 835  
     oscillations in fluid flow, 827  
     urine formation, 832  
 Luo, C.H., 545  
 luteinizing hormone, 774, 775, 777, 778, 790,  
     791  
     pulsatile secretion, 777  
 Lyapunov function, 816  
 lymphocytes, 628  
     B lymphocytes, 628  
     differentiation, 665  
     T lymphocytes, 628
- M**ach bands, 894, 920, 930, 942  
 Mackey, M.C., 430, 433, 435, 436, 588, 625,  
     632, 633, 639, 702, 706  
 macula densa cells, 826, 827, 829, 849  
 Maini, P.K., 35, 45  
 malleus, 943  
 Marhl, M., 282
- Markov chain Monte Carlo, 161, 293  
 Markov process, 103–108  
     agonist-controlled ion channel, 158  
     AMPA receptor model, 371, 372  
      $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase model, 295  
      $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  puffs, 323  
     diffusion, 110  
     discrete-space continuous-time, 105  
     fast time scale reduction, 66  
     Gillespie's method, 107  
     glucose transporter, 66  
     hidden, 158  
     IP<sub>3</sub> receptor models, 280, 323  
     models of ion channels, 155  
      $\text{Na}^+$  channel model, 172  
     numerical simulation, 107  
     radioactive decay, 103  
     ryanodine receptor models, 280  
     single-channel analysis, 155  
     single-photon responses, 916  
     the Chapman–Kolmogorov equation, 109,  
       112  
     transition time, 107  
     waiting time, 106  
 mast cells, 666, 671  
 Matthews, H.R., 902  
 Matveev, V., 359, 360, 363, 365  
 May, R.M., 628  
 Mayer waves, 496, 503, 506  
 McAllister, R.E., 539  
 McCulloch, A.D., 759  
 McKean, H.P., 217  
 McQuarrie, D.A., 135  
 mean first exit time, 111, 166, 764  
 megakaryocytes, 627, 628, 630, 632, 633, 676  
 melatonin, 429, 775  
 membrane potential, 80–87  
     and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry, 276  
     and defibrillation, 611  
     and electrocardiograms, 526  
     and excitability, 195  
     and gating currents, 354  
     and glucose transport, 171  
     and ionic current, 121–145  
     and  $\text{Na}^+$  transport, 890  
     and smooth muscle contraction, 874  
     and the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump, 95–98, 171  
     and voltage-sensitive channels, 123, 125,  
       147–157

- and volume regulation, 93–95, 101, 102, 118  
bidomain model, 566, 621  
created by ionic concentration gradients, 50  
early theories, 199  
effect on rate constants, 138, 141  
Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 196–215  
integrate-and-fire model, 625  
maintained by membrane pumps, 73  
of coupled bursters, 406  
of coupled cells, 573  
of hair cells, 946, 947, 963, 968  
of horizontal cells, 937  
of  $\text{Na}^+$ -transporting epithelial cells, 99  
of photoreceptors, 895, 897, 902, 903, 908  
of postsynaptic cells, 348, 357, 370  
of presynaptic cells, 358  
of smooth muscle, 874  
of the soma, 187  
resting potentials in excitable cells, 96  
spatial gradients, 177  
stochastic variations, 404, 406  
membrane transport  
active, 49, 73–79, 91, 832, 834  
and volume regulation, 91, 98  
antiports, 64, 67, 69, 73  
carrier-mediated, 63, 64  
in the proximal tubule, 832, 834  
of amino acids, 68, 834, 849  
of charged ions, 76  
of glucose, 50, 64, 66, 67, 116, 140, 171, 834, 852  
of  $\text{Na}^+$ , 67, 91, 98, 99, 853, 856  
of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the loop of Henle, 840  
of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the proximal tubule, 832  
of water, 91, 834, 853, 854  
against a gradient, 857  
passive, 49, 91, 853  
symports, 64, 67, 68, 171  
the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase, 77  
uniports, 64, 68  
menopause, 801  
menstrual cycle, 784–788  
Menten, M.I., 7  
metoprolol, 603  
mexiletine, 603  
Meyer, T., 298  
Michaelis, L., 7  
microvilli, 852  
Milton, J.G., 633, 639, 934  
Minorsky, N., 219, 425  
mitochondria, 175, 275, 443, 832, 834  
and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 274, 276, 282, 306, 888  
metabolism, 400  
mitosis, 443, 444, 452, 457, 464  
in *wee1<sup>−</sup>* mutants, 461  
in *Xenopus* oocytes, 462  
minimal model, 469  
mitosis-promoting factor, 452, 453, 463  
autocatalysis, 464  
concentration dependent on cell mass, 460  
dephosphorylation, 463  
feedback interactions, 454, 456  
formation, 452, 464  
inactivation, 453  
inactive, 463  
initiation of mitosis, 463  
phosphorylation, 457, 463, 464  
regulation of, 452, 463  
Miura, R.M., 267  
Mogilner, A., 760, 764  
molecular motors, 759–770  
monocytes, 627, 628, 630–633, 652  
Monod, J., 17, 647  
Monod–Wyman–Changeux model, 17, 18, 30, 43  
cannot have negative cooperativity, 19  
of an L-type  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channel, 550  
of cooperativity, 647  
of hemoglobin, 647  
of oxygen binding to hemoglobin, 680  
moricizine, 603  
morphine, 842  
motion detection, 926  
Reichardt detector, 927  
MPF, *see* mitosis-promoting factor  
multiple sclerosis, 237  
Murphy, R.A., 756, 758  
Murray, J.D., 38, 39, 58, 229, 306, 341, 615, 778, 779, 891  
myelin, 236, 237  
myocardial infarction, 533  
myofibrils, 717  
myoglobin, 58, 59, 61, 115, 643, 644, 646  
diffusion, 54, 58  
facilitated diffusion, 60, 61  
oxygen transport, 58–61, 64, 643

- myosin, 717, 719, 720, 739  
 as a molecular motor, 760  
 crossbridge cycle, 721  
 crossbridge cycle in smooth muscle, 757, 758  
 dephosphorylation, 756  
 diffusion, 54  
*in vitro* assay, 755  
 in smooth muscle, 756  
 phosphorylation, 756
- $\text{Na}^+$  channels, 150, 151  
 activation, 147, 148, 157, 210, 213  
 and volume regulation, 98, 102  
 blockers, 153, 154, 602, 603  
 current–voltage curve, 122, 202  
 density, 236, 586  
   increased by aldosterone, 842  
 gated by cAMP in photoreceptors, 930  
 gating, 150–157  
 in bipolar cells, 931  
 in bursting oscillations, 415  
 in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 205–206  
 in the sinoatrial node, 541  
 in the squid axon, 124, 147  
 inactivation, 147, 148, 157, 208, 212  
 Markov model, 172  
 postsynaptic, 348  
 production of, 842  
 single-channel recording, 155–157
- $\text{Na}^+$  current  
 activation, 543  
 and cell volume regulation, 99  
 in photoreceptors, 902  
 in Purkinje fibers, 536, 538–540  
 in the Beeler–Reuter equations, 545  
 in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 197, 205, 208  
 in the sinoatrial node, 541, 542  
 in ventricular cells, 543, 545  
 $\text{Na}^+–\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exchanger, 69–73, 171, 274, 902, 903, 907  
   in cardiac cells, 552  
 $\text{Na}^+–\text{H}^+$  exchanger, 50, 834  
 $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  exchanger, 50, 98  
 $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  pump, 50, 73, 77–79  
   and cell volume regulation, 73, 91, 97  
   and ouabain, 118  
 in  $\text{Na}^+$ -transporting epithelia, 98, 833, 853  
 in photoreceptors, 902
- in the collecting duct, 842  
 in the loop of Henle, 839  
 inhibited by digitalis, 98  
 Post–Albers scheme, 78  
 regulation of intracellular ionic concentration, 80  
 setting the membrane potential, 95
- Nagumo, J., 218  
 Naka, K.I., 899  
 Naka–Rushton equation, 898–911  
 Nasmyth, K., 445  
 natural killer cells, 627, 628, 631, 652  
 Navier–Stokes equations, 474  
 Neher, E., 56, 155, 311, 312, 358, 359  
 nephron, 91, 101, 821, 822, 826  
   concentrating ability, 845  
   countercurrent mechanism, 837  
   formation of concentrated urine, 845  
   formation of dilute urine, 845  
   more complex models, 848  
   permeability, 849  
   response to aldosterone, 842  
   summary of how it works, 835
- Nernst potential, 80–82, 85, 121–123, 199  
 derived from the Nernst–Planck electrodiffusion equation, 84  
 in the electrical circuit model of the cell membrane, 87  
 of chloride, 82, 95  
 of ions in cardiac cells, 535  
 of  $\text{K}^+$ , 82, 123, 204, 207, 209, 389  
 of  $\text{Na}^+$ , 82, 122, 171  
 temperature effects, 118, 225  
 used by Bernstein in 1902, 199  
 values in some cell types, 51
- Nernst–Planck equation, 84, 122, 125, 128, 129
- nerve gas, 373
- Neu, J.C., 615, 620
- neural network, 258, 715  
   and pulsatile hormone secretion, 779  
 neurohypophysis, *see* pituitary, posterior  
 neuromuscular junction, 349, 934  
 acetylcholine receptors, 373  
 agonist-controlled ion channels, 152  
 facilitation, 359  
 finite element model, 369  
 in mammals, 350  
 miniature end-plate potentials, 350  
 neurotransmitter kinetics, 358, 364

- neurotransmitter, 152, 349  
and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, 274  
and synaptic facilitation, 358, 359  
and synaptic transmission, 175, 348, 352  
and the pupil light reflex, 934  
effect of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on release, 358  
effect of voltage on release, 358  
kinetics, 364–369  
quantal release, 348–352  
similarity to hormones, 385, 773  
neutrophils, 627, 628, 632, 640, 652  
Newton's law of cooling, 2, 52  
niacin, 429  
Nicholls, J.G., 895  
nicotine, 153, 373, 384, 842, 849  
Nielsen, P.M., 572  
night blindness, 904  
NMDA receptor, 371  
Noble, D., 536, 539, 545, 759  
node of Ranvier, 236, 237  
nondimensionalization, 10, 35  
noradrenaline, 331, 349, 502, 780  
norepinephrine, *see* noradrenaline  
Novak, B., 444, 446, 450, 452, 454, 460–462,  
    464–466, 469  
Nowak, M.A., 628  
Nuccitelli, R., 279  
nucleic acids, 427  
nucleotides, 427–429
- Oculomotor complex**, 933  
**Ohm's law**, 2, 54, 88, 375, 620  
**Ohta, T.**, 259  
**oocyte**, 784  
activation at fertilization, 276  
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  puffs, 280  
 $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 257, 259, 278, 312  
fewer at menopause, 801  
mitosis, 463, 465  
ovulation, 784  
oogenesis, 443  
operon, 429  
    *lac* operon, 432  
    *trp* operon, 430  
optic nerve, 893, 895, 929, 934  
    in the *Limulus* eye, 917  
organ of Corti, 945, 946, 962  
Ornstein–Uhlenbeck process, 111  
oscillations  
    and periodic waves, 230, 306, 575  
and reentrant arrhythmias, 593–602  
and waves on the basilar membrane, 947  
bursting oscillations, 385–401, 412, 419  
circadian, 438–442  
coupled oscillators in gastrointestinal  
    smooth muscle, 878–887  
harmonic, 949, 950  
in blood cell production, 632–642  
in blood pressure, 496, 503  
in glycolysis, 23–33, 46  
in hair cells, 963, 968, 969  
in heart rate, 496  
in hormone secretion, 774, 775  
in muscle, 726  
in proximal tubule pressure, 827  
in respiration, 496, 704–706  
in secretion of gonadotropin, 777, 778  
in secretion of insulin, 803–812  
in secretion of prolactin, 782  
in smooth muscle membrane potential,  
    874, 875  
in the baroreceptor loop, 503  
in the cell cycle, 444, 457, 460, 461, 467,  
    469  
in the ECG, 525, 594  
in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 219,  
    220, 222, 223, 228, 626  
in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations,  
    208–209, 224, 225, 252  
in the menstrual cycle, 787, 789  
in the respiratory center, 713  
in the sinoatrial node, 523, 572–583  
muscular tremors, 349  
of ATP, 46, 401  
of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 276–298, 301–303, 326  
    in hepatocytes, 331  
    in stochastic models, 321  
of fluid flow in the loop of Henle, 827–831  
of glucose, 807, 808  
of  $\text{IP}_3$ , 298–300  
of membrane potential in axons, 209  
of pupil size, 934  
phase-locked, 574  
relaxation, 219, 222  
slowly varying, 957  
the van der Pol oscillator, 219  
**Osher, S.**, 261  
osmosis, 49, 88–90, 837  
    and cell volume regulation, 50, 91  
water transport, 50, 853, 854, 856

- osmosis (*continued*)
  - against a gradient, 864
  - isotonic transport, 857
 osmotic pressure, 88–90
  - and filtration in the glomerulus, 823
  - and  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration in the interstitium, 838
  - and water transport in the gastrointestinal tract, 852
  - and water transport in the loop of Henle, 834, 845
  - in the descending limb of the loop of Henle, 839
  - in the interstitial fluid, 480
  - of blood plasma, 521, 628
 ossicles, 943
   
 Oster, G., 760, 764
   
 Othmer, H.G., 429, 779
   
 otolith organs, 943
   
 Ottesen, J.T., 472, 501, 503, 504, 506
   
 ouabain, 118
   
 oval window, 943, 946, 948, 951
   
 ovaries, 773, 777, 778, 784, 789, 801, 802
   
 ovulation, 777, 784–802
   
 oxygen
  - and autoregulation, 497–500
  - and carbon dioxide partial pressure curve, 698–700
  - and carbon dioxide transport, 650
  - and production of erythropoietin, 632
  - arterial pressure, 681
  - binding to hemoglobin, 643–692
    - allosteric effect of hydrogen ions, 648, 650
    - inhibited by carbon monoxide, 648, 692
    - MWC model, 647
  - binding to myoglobin, 61–63, 643–646
  - Bohr effect, 646
  - consumption, 61, 62, 498, 700
  - depletion, 62, 63, 118, 693
  - diffusion, 50, 54
  - exchange by countercurrent mechanism, 836
  - exchange in the placenta, 522
  - facilitated diffusion, 62
  - in the fetus, 507, 511, 648
  - partial pressure, 644, 696, 698, 714
  - respiratory exchange ratio, 698, 700
  - respiratory quotient, 700
  - saturation, 58, 497, 715
  - solubility, 629, 687
  - transport, 471, 648, 650, 681, 688
    - by red blood cells, 627, 643
    - facilitated diffusion, 58–63
    - in the capillaries, 686, 688
    - uptake, 688–691
  - venous pressure, 681
  - ventilation–perfusion ratio, 697, 698- oxymyoglobin, 58–60, 62, 644
- oxytic cells, 873
  

**P**ancreas, 385, 773, 803, 808, 818
   
 pancreatic  $\beta$  cell, *see*  $\beta$  cell
   
 pancreatic polypeptide, 775
   
 Panfilov, A.V., 218, 267, 572, 595, 596, 611, 620
   
 Papoulis, A., 936
   
 parathyroid hormone, 775
   
 parietal cells, 866, 873
   
 Parker, I., 280, 312, 321, 322, 325, 550
   
 Parkinson's disease, 349
   
 Parnas, H., 358
   
 partial pressure
 
  - definition, 629
 passive transport, 49
   
 Pate, E., 739, 755
   
 Pearson, J.E., 318
   
 Pedley, T.J., 513, 517
   
 Perelson, A.S., 35, 628, 667
   
 perilymph, 944, 946, 949, 954
   
 peritubular capillaries, 821, 832, 838, 848, 850
   
 permease, 433, 436
   
 Pernarowski, M., 410, 425
   
 perturbation methods, 37
 
  - applied to
    - bursting oscillators, 425
    - carbon dioxide removal, 689
    - coupled oscillators, 615
    - defibrillation, 610
    - enzyme kinetics, 39, 45
    - gastric protection, 869
    - ion channel flow, 132
    - the kidney, 843
    - waves in myelinated fibers, 239- boundary layers, 38, 382, 846
   
 corner layers, 38, 382, 870–872
   
 for the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 221, 228, 246–249, 253–255
   
 interior layers, 38

- multiscale methods, 38, 573, 606, 615, 616, 957  
references, 38  
regular perturbation problems, 37  
scroll waves, 268  
singular perturbation problems, 37  
spiral waves, 263, 267  
the eikonal-curvature equation, 259  
Perutz, M.F., 647  
Peskin, C.S., 90, 125, 130, 151, 224, 383, 442, 483, 491, 498, 513, 517, 724, 739, 741, 746, 759, 762, 764, 766, 790, 798, 919, 941, 962  
Peskoff, A., 550  
PKF, *see* phosphofructokinase  
phase locking, 618, 625, 891  
in a chain of coupled oscillators, 881  
in circle maps, 589, 593  
in the sinoatrial node, 572  
of coupled oscillators, 574  
of electrical activity in smooth muscle, 875, 877, 878, 882  
of heart rate and breathing, 496  
of three coupled oscillators, 881  
of two coupled oscillators, 880  
phase resetting  
of circadian clocks, 439  
phase resetting function, 618, 624  
phase trapping, 882  
phase waves, 249, 256, 270, 877, 881  
in the sinoatrial node, 574, 575  
of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 280, 331, 332  
phase-plane analysis  
of bursting oscillations, 389–411  
of capillary filtration, 522  
of cell cycle models, 448, 461, 467, 468  
of circadian clocks, 442  
of coupled oscillators, 884  
of defibrillation, 610  
of enzyme kinetics, 10, 41  
of glycolytic oscillations, 28, 34  
of leukocyte chemotaxis, 659–665, 681  
of ovulation, 794–797  
of the bistable equation, 268  
of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 220–223  
of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 210–215, 223, 224  
of the Morris–Lecar equations, 226  
of the respiratory center, 711  
of the sinoatrial node, 577  
of water and  $\text{Na}^+$  absorption in the gut, 890  
of waves in the bistable equation, 232–234  
of waves in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 248, 255  
of waves in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 230  
references, 35  
phenytoin, 603  
phosphofructokinase, 24, 25  
phospholipase C, 274  
phosphorylation, 774  
and the Goldbeter–Koshland function, 21  
by Cdk, 445, 447  
in circadian clocks, 439, 440  
in glycolysis, 23  
of Cdc2, 465  
of Cdh1, 445, 447  
of fructose, 23, 25, 26, 30  
of glucose, 23, 73, 116, 761, 803  
of  $\text{IP}_3$ , 299, 300  
of MPF, 453, 463, 464  
of myosin in smooth muscle, 756–758  
of rhodopsin in photoreceptors, 915  
of Rum1, 456  
of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase pump, 283, 284  
of the  $\text{Na}^+–\text{K}^+$  ATPase pump, 77  
of Wee1 by MPF, 457  
photoreceptors, 195, 893, 903  
absorption of light, 895  
adaptation, 814, 895, 898, 907–912  
coupling to horizontal cells, 921  
coupling to other retinal cells, 895  
electrical coupling, 925  
light response, 895, 897, 902  
physiology, 902–907  
sensitivity, 897, 937  
single-photon response, 915  
pistol-shot phenomenon, 517, 521  
Pitman, E.B., 826, 827  
pituitary, 274, 301, 385, 773, 791, 842  
anterior, 775, 777, 781  
model of the menstrual cycle, 784  
posterior, 775  
Planck's equation, 83  
Plant, R.E., 413  
platelets, 627, 628, 631–633  
and blood clotting, 670, 671, 675–678  
plug flow, 513, 838, 856

- pluripotential hemopoietic stem cells, 630
- Podolsky, R.J., 737, 738
- Poincaré oscillator, 624
- Poiseuille flow, 475, 514
- Poisson equation, 125, 528, 621, 622
- Poisson process, 797, 798, 915, 916
- Poisson–Nernst–Planck equations, 129, 130, 132, 133, 136
- Politi, A., 298
- polycythemia, 632
- polymerization ratchet, 761, 764
- Ponce-Dawson, S., 318
- potato chips, 118, 849
- potential energy
- in the Schrödinger equation, 580
  - of a spring, 770
  - of an ion passing through a channel, 134, 136, 137
  - of crossbridges in skeletal muscle, 752
  - profiles, and reaction rates, 162, 167
- Pries, A.R., 481
- procainamide, 603
- progesterone, 775, 777, 784, 788
- prolactin, 775
- pulsatile secretion, 782
- propafenone, 603
- propranolol, 603
- proximal tubules, 67, 832, 834, 849
- pressure oscillations, 827
  - reabsorption, 825, 832, 834
- Pugh, E.N., 902
- Pullan, A., 889
- pulmonary
- arteries, 471, 490, 511, 512, 522
  - in the fetus, 507
  - blood volume, 495
  - branching, 692
  - capillaries, 471, 687, 688
  - circulation, 523
  - edema, 495
  - resistance, 494, 512
  - in the fetus, 510, 511
  - veins, 471, 490
  - venous pH, 714
  - venous pressure
    - in the fetus, 511
- pupillary sphincter, 934
- Purkinje fibers, 96, 524–526, 535, 536, 540, 544, 571, 573, 593
- DiFrancesco and Noble model, 545
- McAllister, Noble and Tsien model, 539
- Pushchino model, 217, 226, 271
- pyloric sphincter, 874
- pylorus, 874, 875, 877, 882
- Qian, H.**, 760
- quality factor, 964, 966, 968
- quinidine, 153, 603
- R**adioactive decay, 103
- Rahn, H., 694
- Rall model neuron, 187–192
- Rall, W., 177, 184, 187
- Rapp, P.E., 779
- Ratliff, F., 917–919
- Rauch, J., 246
- receptive field, 898, 929–933
- red blood cells, *see* erythrocytes
- Reed, M.C., 760
- reentrant arrhythmias, 583, 593–612
- affected by drugs, 602
  - fibrillation, 594
  - initiation, 597, 598, 601, 602
  - mathematical study of, 595
  - phase singularity, 596
  - tachycardia, 594
- Reichardt detector, 928
- Reichardt, W., 927
- Reissner's membrane, 943
- renal cortex, 821
- renin, 775, 826
- residue theorem, 192, 745
- resistivity
- cytoplasmic, 178, 557
  - membrane, 179, 922
- resonance
- in hair cells, 946, 962–969
- respiratory acidosis, 698
- respiratory alkalosis, 698
- respiratory exchange ratio, 698, 700, 714
- respiratory quotient, 700
- respiratory sinus arrhythmia, 496
- reversal potential, 82, 86, 123, 198
- comparison of GHK and linear models, 124
  - model dependence, 123
  - multiple ion case, 82, 123
  - of ACh-sensitive channels in postsynaptic membrane, 370

- of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  current in sinoatrial nodal cells, 544  
of light-insensitive  $\text{K}^+$  photoreceptor current, 908  
rhodopsin, 902, 903, 905, 906  
ribonucleic acid, *see* RNA  
ribose, 427, 428  
ribosome, 428, 429  
rigor mortis, 770  
Riley, R.L., 694  
Rinzel, J., 198, 210, 243, 253, 254, 256, 288, 298, 386, 389, 391, 403, 407, 409, 414, 415, 418, 625  
RNA, 427–429, 774  
  messenger RNA, mRNA, 428, 429, 433, 435, 436, 468, 842  
  polymerase, 428, 429, 433  
  ribosomal RNA, 428  
  transfer RNA, tRNA, 428, 429  
Rodieck, R.W., 930, 931  
Roper, P., 419  
Rose, R.M., 410  
round window, 946, 948  
Rubinow, S.I., 39, 58, 643  
Rudy, Y., 545  
Rushton, W.A., 899  
ryanodine receptor, 152, 274–276, 301–303  
  excitation–contraction coupling, 546, 551–552, 719  
  in the interstitial cells of Cajal, 888
- Sakmann, B., 155, 358  
Sanderson, M.J., 326, 327  
sarcomere, 546, 547, 717, 718, 722–724, 730, 737  
  length, 550, 717  
sarcoplasmic reticulum, 73, 274, 301, 309, 547, 717, 719  
scala media, 943, 944, 951, 967  
scala tympani, 943, 944, 946, 951  
scala vestibuli, 943, 944, 951  
Schlosser, P.M., 784  
Schmitz, S., 633  
Schrödinger equation, 580, 625  
Schuster, S., 282, 286  
Schwann cell, 236  
Secomb, T.W., 481  
Segel, L.A., 35, 39, 45, 115, 358, 474, 655, 813, 858  
Segev, I., 176, 192  
Selgrade, J.F., 784  
semicircular canals, 943  
SERCA pump, *see*  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  ATPase  
serotonin, 152, 349, 429  
serum albumin, 54  
Sethian, J.A., 261  
Shapley, R.M., 898  
Sherman, A., 387, 393, 403, 404, 406–410  
shock wave, 516  
Shorten, P.R., 419  
Shuttleworth, T.J., 282  
single-channel analysis, 155–161  
  closed time distribution, 108, 156, 158  
  open time distribution, 108, 158  
  waiting-time distribution, 159  
sinoatrial node, 535, 541–571  
  bulk frequency, 574  
  coupled oscillators, 572  
  critical size, 577  
  pacemaker activity, 523, 535, 572, 575  
  sinus node dysfunction, 572  
  wave speed, 573  
skeletal muscle, 717  
  acetylcholine receptors, 348  
  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, 274, 719  
  and myoglobin, 643  
  crossbridges, 719–724  
  electrical wave propagation, 229, 257  
  excitability, 195  
  excitation–contraction coupling, 274, 546, 719  
heat generation, 745  
isometric force, 724, 732, 747, 751, 771  
length–tension curve, 724, 727  
myofibrils, 717  
 $\text{Na}^+$  channel density, 236  
 $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump, 98  
neuromuscular junction, 349, 373  
PFK1 kinetics, 30  
power stroke, 721, 723, 770  
resting potential, 96  
ryanodine receptors, 301, 551  
structure, 717, 718  
T-tubules, 719  
tetanus, 722, 724, 726, 743, 751  
the Hill model, 724–730  
the Huxley model, 730–739  
thick filaments, 717, 723  
thin filaments, 717, 719, 723  
velocity of action potential, 251

- Smith, G.D., 56, 280, 312, 324, 550, 552  
 Smith, W.R., 778  
 Smolen, P., 30, 387, 400  
 Smoller, J., 246  
 smooth muscle, 717, 756–759  
   action potentials, 756  
   and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release, 756  
   and ryanodine receptors, 301  
   crossbridge cycle, 757, 758  
   electrical control activity, 874  
   electrical response activity, 874  
   excitability, 195  
   Hai-Murphy model, 756  
   in arteries, 501  
   in arterioles, 498  
   in the gastrointestinal tract, 851, 852,  
     874–879, 888  
   modulated by interstitial cells of Cajal,  
     888  
   oscillatory electrical activity, 874–879  
   resting potential, 96  
   the latch state, 756  
 Soeller, C., 280, 546, 550  
 solubility, 629  
 soma, 175, 187–189, 192, 194  
 somatomedins, 782  
 somatostatin, 775, 781, 782, 803, 812, 873,  
   874  
 sotalol, 603  
 space clamp, 177, 199  
 space constant  
   and homogenization, 258  
   directionally dependent, 258, 569  
   effects of gap-junctional resistance, 555,  
     557  
   in the eikonal-curvature equation, 262  
   of a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  wave front, 345  
   of a cardiac fiber, 555–557, 559, 623  
   of coupled cells, 581  
   of myelinated fiber, 268  
   of squid axon, 251  
   of the cable equation, 179  
   of the horizontal cell layer, 922  
     of the photoreceptor cell layer, 925  
 spiral lamina, 944  
 squid axon  
   action potential speed, 251  
   conductances, 95  
   current–voltage curves, 122  
   electrical space constant, 251  
 Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 196–215  
 ionic concentrations, 82  
 synaptic transmission, 352  
 Stakgold, I., 936, 937  
 standing wave, 240, 241, 316, 562, 564, 565  
 standing-gradient osmotic flow, 857–866  
 stapes, 943, 946–948, 951, 960  
 Starling’s law, 484, 586  
 Steele, C.R., 949, 962  
 Stephenson, J.L., 103, 838, 849, 858, 864  
 stereocilia, 963, 969  
 Stern, M.D., 312, 549, 550, 552  
 Stevens, C.F., 364, 368, 369  
 stiff equations, 265, 848  
 stochastic  
    $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  dynamics, 280, 321  
   current through a  $\text{Na}^+$  channel, 155  
   effects on bursting oscillations, 406  
   effects on excitation–contraction coupling,  
     550  
   model of a  $\text{Na}^+$  channel, 172  
   model of an agonist-controlled channel,  
     173  
   model of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -sensitive  $\text{K}^+$  channel, 404,  
     405  
   model of phototransduction, 905  
   models of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 324  
   models of the  $\text{IP}_3$  receptor, 323  
 process, 103–108  
   and reaction rates, 166  
   diffusion, 109–111  
   discrete, 107  
   Fokker–Planck equation, 111–114  
   Gillespie’s method, 107  
   Langevin equation, 110  
   master equation, 106  
   mean first exit time, 111–114  
   Ornstein–Uhlenbeck process, 111  
   waiting time, 106  
   Wiener process, 110  
   single-photon response, 915  
 Stoker, J.J., 219, 425  
 Stokes equation, 474  
 Strang, G., 193  
 stretch receptors, 500, 710, 713  
 stretch-activated channels, 102  
 striated muscle, 523, 717, 719, 756, 803  
 Strogatz, S.H., 30, 36, 268, 588  
 stroke, 495  
 strychnine, 373

- Stryer, L., 23, 25, 298, 299, 905, 910  
Sturis, J., 807, 812  
sucrose, 50  
Swillens, S., 298, 323, 324  
synaptic cleft, 348–350, 358, 365, 367, 369,  
    373, 383, 384, 934  
synaptic facilitation, 358–364  
synaptic pedicle, 902  
synaptic suppression, 355–357  
systemic  
    arterial compliance, 490, 494  
    arterial pressure, 490, 493, 494, 511  
    arteries, 471, 477, 487, 507, 510–512  
    capillaries, 471, 486  
    resistance, 488, 494, 501, 503, 510, 512  
    veins, 471  
    venous pressure, 493, 511  
    volume, 495  
systole, 473, 482, 484, 586
- T-tubules, 546, 719  
tachycardia, 594, 597  
    atrial, 594  
    monomorphic, 594  
    polymorphic, 594  
    ventricular, 525, 527, 594  
Tang, Y., 286, 288, 359  
Tawhai, M.H., 692  
Taylor, C.W., 291  
TEA, *see* tetraethylammonium  
tectorial membrane, 945, 946  
ten Tusscher, K.H., 546  
terminal bronchioles, 683, 694, 710  
testes, 773, 778, 779  
testosterone, 775, 777, 778  
tetanus  
    in muscle, 722, 724, 726, 727, 743, 751  
tetanus toxin, 373  
tetracyclines, 842  
tetraethylammonium, 201  
tetrodotoxin, 153, 154, 201  
Thomas, A.P., 278  
thrombin, 669  
    activation of factor VIII, 671  
    activation of platelets, 670, 677  
    degradation, 671  
    inhibition, 677  
thrombocytes, *see* platelets  
thrombopoietin, 632
- thymine, 427  
thyroid gland, 773, 777  
thyroid-stimulating hormone, 775  
tight junctions, 553, 853–855  
tip link, 963, 969  
tobacco mosaic virus, 54  
tocainide, 603  
torsades de pointes, 594  
Tosteson, D.C., 90  
trachea, 683  
Tranchina, D., 45, 904, 910, 911, 938  
Tranquillo, R., 653  
transcription, 428, 429, 433  
    regulation, 429, 433  
transfer function, 906, 909, 921, 922, 924,  
    936  
transport  
    axonal, 760  
Traube–Hering waves, 496, 503  
Trayanova, N., 613  
triggered firing, 412  
tropomyosin, 720  
troponin, 720  
tryptophan, 429, 430  
    *trp* repressor, 429–432  
Tsai, J.C., 56, 313  
Tsaneva-Atanasova, K., 327  
Tsien, R.W., 539  
TTX, *see* tetrodotoxin  
tubuloglomerular oscillations, 825–831  
Tuckwell, H.C., 181, 182, 191, 267  
tympanic membrane, 943, 944  
Tyson, J.J., 226, 259, 268, 429, 441, 442, 444,  
    446, 450, 452, 461, 462, 464–466
- Uracil, 427  
urea, 50, 628, 834, 850  
urease, 54  
urine, 821, 825, 835, 842  
    and beer drinking, 849  
    concentrating mechanism, 831–847, 850  
    dilute, 835, 842, 845, 846  
    K<sup>+</sup> excretion, 842  
    maximal concentrating ability, 832  
    obligatory urine volume, 832  
    relative concentration, 845  
Ursino, M., 503  
Ussing flux ratio, 125–128, 133, 139, 142,  
    143, 145  
Ussing, H.H., 98, 99, 102, 126

- Vagus nerve, 236, 501  
van der Pol oscillator, 219, 438, 879  
van Kampen, N.G., 103  
van't Hoff's law, 89  
Vaney, D.I., 926  
vasoconstrictors, 475, 502  
vasodilators, 475, 498, 502, 826  
vasomotor waves, 496  
vasopressin, 277, 774, 775  
vasopressin neurons, 419  
vena cava, 523, 572, 593  
venae cavae, 471, 476  
ventilation-perfusion ratio, 695, 697, 698, 714  
the oxygen–carbon dioxide curve, 698  
ventricular  
hypertrophy, 532, 534  
venules, 471, 476, 838  
verapamil, 153, 154, 603  
villi, 852  
voltage clamp, 181, 200, 201, 203, 276, 352, 357, 368, 539
- Wagner, J.**, 56, 279, 311  
waiting time, 106, 159  
water  
absorption in the intestine, 852, 853  
the standing-gradient model, 857–866  
absorption in the proximal tubule, 832, 834  
active transport, 853  
channels, 853  
diffusion, 49  
evaporation, 377  
in blood plasma, 628  
isotonic transport, 853, 857  
permeability of the collecting duct, 835, 842  
reaction with carbon dioxide, 650  
transport against an osmotic gradient, 849, 853, 857, 864  
transport by osmosis, 50, 88, 837, 853  
transport in the loop of Henle, 834, 835, 839, 845  
transport in the proximal tubule, 848  
transport, and volume regulation, 91  
vapor in the alveolus, 696, 707  
Waterman, M.S., 428  
Watson, J.D., 428  
wave equation, 516, 517
- waves  
buffered, 313–314  
in excitable systems, 229–268  
in the bistable equation, 231–235  
in the discrete bistable equation, 238–241  
in the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, 242–250, 253–255, 269  
in the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, 250–251  
intercellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 326  
kinematic analysis, 256–257  
Mayer, 496  
of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , 257, 280, 303–309  
on the basilar membrane, 947–962  
periodic waves, 230, 252–257, 270, 306, 581, 610  
phase waves, 249, 256, 270, 574, 575, 881  
of electrical activity in smooth muscle, 877  
propagation failure, 240–241, 561–565, 586  
propagation in higher dimensions, 257–268  
saltatory propagation, 237, 315, 561  
scroll waves, 268, 594, 602  
shock wave, 516  
solitary waves, 242, 248, 249, 254, 269  
spiral waves, 262–268, 271, 278, 306, 594, 602, 610–612  
stability, 236, 255, 267, 270, 594  
standing, 240, 241, 316, 562, 564, 565  
stochastic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  waves, 324  
target patterns, 263  
traveling front, 231  
traveling pulse, 242  
vasomotor, 496  
with curvature, 259–262  
Weber's law, 814, 893, 897–898, 909, 937  
Weel, 455, 456, 458, 461, 463–465, 469, 470  
Weinstein, A.M., 103, 849, 858, 864  
Weiss, J.N., 601  
Wenckebach pattern, 586, 587, 592  
West, J.B., 694  
white blood cells, *see* leukocytes  
Whiteley, J.P., 692, 706  
Wichmann, H.E., 633  
Wiener process, 110, 111, 165  
Wier, W.G., 548  
Wiggins, S., 36  
Wikswo, J., 570

- windkessel model, 503, 514, 515  
Winfree, A.T., 263, 267, 268, 595, 596, 601,  
  615, 625  
Winslow, R.L., 546, 550  
Wittenberg, J.B., 59  
Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome, 593  
Wyman, J., 58
- XENOPUS* oocytes, 278, 463  
  Ca<sup>2+</sup> puffs, 280, 322  
  Ca<sup>2+</sup> waves, 257, 259, 278, 306, 312  
  mitosis, 462, 465  
XPPAUT, 36, 437
- Yanagida, E., 245  
Yates, A., 667  
yeast  
  budding yeast, 444, 445  
  cell cycle, 444, 452–461  
  fission yeast, 444, 445, 452  
  glycolysis, 25  
Young, R.C., 326  
Yule, D., 280
- Zahradnikova, A., 552  
Zeuthen, T., 853  
Zucker, R.S., 358, 359, 364, 365